2011-2012

BNF for children

The essential resource for clinical use of medicines in children

bnfc.org
Medicines information services

Information on any aspect of drug therapy can be obtained from Regional and District Medicines Information Services. Details regarding the local services provided within your Region can be obtained by telephoning the following numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>Birmingham</td>
<td>(0121) 424 7298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bristol</td>
<td>(0117) 342 2867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ipswich</td>
<td>(01473) 704 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leeds</td>
<td>(0113) 206 5377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leicester</td>
<td>(0116) 255 5779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liverpool</td>
<td>(0151) 794 8113/4/5/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(0151) 794 8206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guy's Hospital</td>
<td>(020) 7188 8750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(020) 7188 3849/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Northwick Park Hospital</td>
<td>(020) 8869 2761/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Newcastle</td>
<td>(0191) 282 4631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southampton</td>
<td>(023) 8079 6908/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>Cardiff</td>
<td>(029) 2074 2979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(029) 2074 2251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>Aberdeen</td>
<td>(01224) 552 316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dundee</td>
<td>(01382) 632 351/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edinburgh</td>
<td>(0131) 242 2920/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glasgow</td>
<td>(0141) 211 4407/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Ireland</td>
<td>Belfast</td>
<td>(028) 9063 2032/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(028) 9063 3847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Republic of Ireland</td>
<td>Dublin</td>
<td>473 0589/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>453 7941/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>United Kingdom Medicines Information Pharmacists Group (UKMIPG) website</td>
<td><a href="http://www.ukmi.nhs.uk">www.ukmi.nhs.uk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UK Teratology Information Service
Information on drug and chemical exposures in pregnancy 0844 892 0909

Medicines for Children information leaflets
Medicines information for parents and carers. www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk

Patient Information Lines
NHS Direct 0845 4647

Poisons Information Services
UK National Poisons Information Service 0844 892 0111

Travel Immunisation
Up-to-date information on travel immunisation requirements may be obtained from:
National Travel Health Network and Centre (for healthcare professionals only) 0845 602 6712 (09.00–12.00 and 14.00–16.30 hours weekdays)
Travel Medicine Team, Health Protection Scotland (0141) 300 1130 (14.00–16.00 hours weekdays)
www.travax.nhs.uk (for registered users of the NHS website Travax only)
Welsh Assembly Government (029) 2082 1318 (09.00–17.30 hours weekdays)
Department of Health and Social Services (Belfast) (028) 9052 2118 (weekdays)

Information on drug therapy relating to dental treatment can be obtained by telephoning:
Liverpool (0151) 794 8206

Sport
Information on substances currently permitted or prohibited is provided in a card supplied by UK Anti-Doping.
Further information regarding medicines in sport is available from: www.ukad.org.uk
Tel: (020) 7766 7350
information@ukad.org.uk

Telephone numbers and email addresses of manufacturers listed in BNF Publications are shown in the Index of Manufacturers
Material published in the BNF for Children may not be used for any form of advertising, sales or publicity without prior written permission. Each of the classification and the text are protected by copyright and/or database right.

The BNF for Children is for use by health professionals engaged in prescribing, dispensing, and administering medicines to children. It has been prepared under the guidance of the Paediatric Formulary Committee.

BNF for Children has been constructed using robust procedures for gathering, assessing and assimilating information on paediatric drug treatment. It is, however, expected that the reader will be relying on appropriate professional knowledge and expertise to interpret the contents in the context of the circumstances of the individual child. BNF for Children should be used in conjunction with other appropriate and up-to-date literature and, where necessary, supplemented by expert advice. Information is also available from Medicines Information Services (see inside front cover).

Special care is required in managing childhood conditions with unlicensed medicines or with licensed medicines for unlicensed uses. Responsibility for the appropriate use of medicines lies solely with the individual health professional.
Contents

Preface ................................................................................................................................. iv
Acknowledgements ............................................................................................................... v
BNF Staff ............................................................................................................................ vi
How BNF for Children is constructed ............................................................................... ix
How to use BNF for Children .......................................................................................... xi
Changes for this edition ..................................................................................................... xvii
General guidance ............................................................................................................... 1
Prescription writing ........................................................................................................... 4
Supply of medicines ........................................................................................................... 6
Emergency supply of medicines ......................................................................................... 8
Prescribing Controlled Drugs ......................................................................................... 9
Adverse reactions to drugs ............................................................................................... 12
Prescribing in hepatic impairment ..................................................................................14
Prescribing in renal impairment ......................................................................................14
Prescribing in pregnancy .................................................................................................. 16
Prescribing in breast-feeding ........................................................................................... 16
Prescribing in palliative care ........................................................................................... 17
Prescribing in dental practice ......................................................................................... 22
Drugs and sport .................................................................................................................. 23
Emergency treatment of poisoning .................................................................................. 24
Notes on drugs and Preparations
  1: Gastro-intestinal system .......................................................................................... 35
  2: Cardiovascular system ............................................................................................. 73
  3: Respiratory system ....................................................................................................133
  4: Central nervous system .............................................................................................169
  5: Infections ................................................................................................................... 242
  6: Endocrine system .......................................................................................................348
  7: Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders ............................................... 393
  8: Malignant disease and immunosuppression ............................................................... 414
  9: Nutrition and blood ................................................................................................... 442
 10: Musculoskeletal and joint diseases ......................................................................... 499
 11: Eye ............................................................................................................................ 517
 12: Ear, nose, and oropharynx ....................................................................................... 534
 13: Skin ........................................................................................................................... 550
 14: Immunological products and vaccines .................................................................... 599
 15: Anaesthesia ................................................................................................................ 628

Appendices and indices
Appendix 1: Interactions ................................................................................................. 655
Appendix 2: Borderline substances ................................................................................ 743
Appendix 3: Cautionary and advisory labels for dispensed medicines ............................ 788
Appendix 4: Intravenous infusions for neonatal intensive care ...................................... 791
Dental Practitioners’ Formulary ....................................................................................... 794
Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary ......................................................................................... 796
Non-medical prescribing ................................................................................................. 799
Index of manufacturers .................................................................................................. 800
Index .................................................................................................................................. 811
Medical emergencies in the community ................................................................. Inside back cover
BNFC aims to provide information suited to the needs of the clinician and recognises that, although this edition represents a considerable advance in the content and presentation of information on the paediatric use of medicines, further changes will be necessary. Comments from healthcare professionals are therefore very welcome and should be sent to: British National Formulary Publications, Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, 1 Lambeth High Street, London SE1 7JN.

bnfc@bnf.org

The contact email for manufacturers or pharmaceutical companies wishing to contact BNF publications is manufacturerinfo@bnf.org

BNFC 2011–2012
Acknowledgements

The Paediatric Formulary Committee is grateful to individuals and organisations that have provided advice and information to the BNF for Children.

The principal contributors for this edition were:


Members of the British Association of Dermatologists’ Therapy & Guidelines Subcommittee, D.A. Buckley, L.C. Fuller, J. Hughes, S.E. Hulley, J. Lear, A.J. McDonagh, J. McLelland, N. Morar, I. Nasr, S. Punjabi, M.J. Tidman, S.E. Haveron (Secretariat), and M.F. Mohd Mustapa (Secretariat) have provided valuable advice.

Members of the Advisory Committee on Malaria Prevention, R.H. Behrens, P.L. Chiodini, F Genasi, L. Goodyer, A. Green, D. Hill, G. Kassianos, D.G. Laloo, G. Pasvol, S. Patel, M. Powell, D.V. Shingadia, C.J.M. Whitty, M. Blaze (Secretariat), and V. Smith (Secretariat) have provided valuable advice.

Members of the UK Ophthalmic Pharmacy Group have also provided valuable advice.

R. Suvarna and colleagues at the MHRA have provided valuable assistance.

Correspondents in the pharmaceutical industry have provided information on new products and commented on products in the BNF for Children. NHS Prescription Services has supplied the prices of products in the BNF for Children.

Numerous doctors, pharmacists, nurses and others have sent comments and suggestions.
BNF Staff

Managing Editor: Knowledge Creation
John Martin BPharm, PhD, MRPharmS

Assistant Editors
Leigh-Anne Claase BSc, PhD
Bryony Jordan BSc, DipPharmPract, MRPharmS
Colin R. Macfarlane BPharm, MSc, MRPharmS
Paul S. Maycock MPharm, DipPharmPract, MRPharmS
Claire L. Preston BPharm, PGDipMedMan, MRPharmS
Rachel S. M. Ryan BPharm, MRPharmS
Shama M. S. Wagle BPharm, DipPharmPract, MRPharmS

Staff Editors
Sejal Amin BPharm, MSc
Angela K. Bennett MPharm, DipPharmPract
Shena S. Chauhan BPharm, MRPharmS
Susan E. Clarke BPharm, DipClinPharm, MRPharmS
Kristina Fowlie MPharm, PGCertPharmPract, MRPharmS
Belén Granell Villen BSc, PGDipClinPharm
Manjula Halai BScChem, MPharm
Emma E. Harris MPharm, DipPharmPract, MRPharmS
Amy E. Harvey MPharm, PGDipCommPharm
Amber F. Lauder BPharm, PGCertPharm
Angela M. G. McFarlane BSc, DipClinPharm, MRPharmS
Sarah Mohamad MPharm
Elizabeth Nix DipPharm(NZ), MRPharmS
Sanjay Patel BPharm
Vinaya K. Sharma BPharm, MSc, PGDipPIM, MRPharmS
Katie E. Walters MPharm, PGCertPharmPract, MRPharmS

Editorial Assistants
Rebecca S. Bastable BA, BTEC
Cristina Lopez-Bueno BA

Senior BNF Administrator
Heidi Homar BA

Digital Development Editor
Philip D. Lee BSc, PhD

Digital Development Assistants
Robert C. Buckingham BSc
Michelle Cartwright
Jennifer L. Palmer FdSc

Terminologist
Sarah Peck BSc

Head of Production
John Wilson

Senior Production Editor
Linda Paulus

BNF Publishing Director
Duncan S.T. Enright MA, PGCE, MInstP, FIDM

Managing Director, Pharmaceutical Press
Robert Bolick BA, MA

Senior Medical Adviser
Martin J. Kendall OBE, MB, ChB, MD, FRCP, FFPM
Paediatric Formulary Committee 2010–2011

Chair
Warren Lenney
MD, FRCP, FRCPCH, DCH

Committee Members
Jeffrey K. Aronson
MA, MChB, DPhil, FRCP, FBPharmacolS, FFPM

Neil A. Caldwell
BSc, MSc, MRPharmS

Ian Costello
BPharm, MSc, MRPharmS

Martin G. Duerden BMedSci, MB BS, DRCOG, MRCP, DipTher, DPH

Simon Keady
BSc, MRPharmS, SP

Martin J. Kendall
OBE, MB, ChB, MD, FRCP, FFPM (Chair, Content Strategy Committee)

James H. Larcombe
MB, ChB, FRCGP, DipAdvGP

E. David G. McIntosh
MB BS, MPH, PhD, FAFPHM, FRACP, FRCPC, FFPM, DRCOG, DCH, DipPharmMed

Neena Modi
MB, ChB, MD, FRCP, FRCPC

Matthew J. Thatcher
MB BS, FRCS, DRCOG, DMRD

David Tuthill MB, BCH, FRCPCH

William G. van’t Hoff
BSc, MB, MD, FRCPCH, FRCP

Edward R. Wozniak
BSc, MB BS, FRCPC, FRCPC, DCH

Executive Secretary
Heidi Homar
BA

Dental Advisory Group 2010–2011

Chair
David Wray
MD, BDS, MB ChB, FDSRCS, FDSRCS Ed, FMedSci

Committee Members
Christine Arnold
BDS, DDPhRCS, MCDH

Barry Cockcroft
BDS, FFDS (Eng)

Duncan S.T. Enright
MA, PGCE, MInstP, FIDM

Amy E. Harvey
MPHarm, PGDipCommPharm

Martin J. Kendall
OBE, MB, ChB, MD, FRCP, FFPM

Lesley P. Longman
BSc, BDS, FDSRCS Ed, PhD

Sarah Manton
BDS, FDSRCS Ed, FHEA, PhD

John Martin
BPharm, PhD, MRPharmS

Michelle Moffat
BDS, MFDS RCS Ed, M Paed Dent RPCS, FDS (Paed Dent) RSC Ed

Rachel S.M. Ryan
BPharm, MRPharmS

Secretary
Arianne J. Matlin
MA, MSc, PhD

Executive Secretary
Heidi Homar
BA

Advice on dental practice
The British Dental Association has contributed to the advice on medicines for dental practice through its representatives on the Dental Advisory Group.

Chair
Nicky A. Cullum (until November 2010)
PhD, RGN
Molly Courtenay (from December 2010)
PhD, MSc, Cert Ed, BSc, RGN

Committee Members
Fiona Culley
LLM, RN, BSc, Cert Ed
Duncan S.T. Enright
MA, PGCE, MInstP, FIDM
Fenny M. Franklin
RN, RCN, RSCPHN(HV), MA, PGCE
Belen Granell Villen
BSc, PGDipClinPharm
Margaret F. Helliwell
MB, BS, BSc, MFPHM
Bryony Jordan
BSc, DipPharmPract, MRPharmS
Martin J. Kendall
OBE, MB, ChB, MD, FRCP, FFPM
Fiona Lynch
BSc, MSc, RGN, RSCN
John Martin
BPharm, PhD, MRPharmS
Wendy J. Nicholson
BSc, MA, Cert Ed, RGN, RSCN
Jill M. Shearer
BSc, RGN, RM
Rabina Tindale
RN, RSCN, BSc, DipAEN, PGCE
Vicky Vidler
MA, RGN, RSCN
John Wright

Executive Secretary
Heidi Homar
BA
How **BNF for Children** is constructed

**BNF for Children** (BNFC) is unique in bringing together authoritative, independent guidance on best practice with clinically validated drug information, enabling healthcare professionals to select safe and effective medicines for individual children.

Information in BNFC has been validated against emerging evidence, best-practice guidelines, and advice from a network of clinical experts. BNFC includes a great deal of advice that goes beyond marketing authorisations (product licences or summaries of product characteristics). This is necessary because licensed indications frequently do not cover the clinical needs of children; in some cases, products for use in children need to be specially manufactured or imported. Careful consideration has been given to establishing the clinical need for unlicensed interventions with respect to the evidence and experience of their safety and efficacy.

Hundreds of changes are made between editions, and the most clinically significant changes are listed at the front of each edition.

---

**Paediatric Formulary Committee**

The Paediatric Formulary Committee (PFC) is responsible for the content of BNFC. The PFC includes a neonatologist and paediatricians appointed by the Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health, paediatric pharmacists appointed by the Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain and the Neonatal and Paediatric Pharmacists Group, doctors appointed by the BMJ Publishing Group, a GP appointed by the Royal College of General Practitioners, and representatives from the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Authority (MHRA) and the UK health departments. The PFC decides on matters of policy and reviews amendments to BNFC in the light of new evidence and expert advice. The Committee meets every 6 months and each member also receives proofs of all BNFC chapters for review before publication.

---

**Dental Advisory Group**

The Dental Advisory Group oversees the preparation of advice on the drug management of dental and oral conditions; the group includes representatives from the British Dental Association.

---

**Editorial team**

BNFC staff editors are pharmacists with a sound understanding of how drugs are used in clinical practice, including paediatrics. Each staff editor is responsible for editing, maintaining, and updating specific chapters of BNFC. During the publication cycle the staff editors review information in BNFC against a variety of sources (see below).

Amendments to the text are drafted when the editors are satisfied that any new information is reliable and relevant. The draft amendments are passed to expert advisers for comment and then presented to the Paediatric Formulary Committee for consideration. Additionally, for each edition, sections are chosen from every chapter for thorough review. These planned reviews aim to verify all the information in the selected sections and to draft any amendments to reflect current best practice.

Staff editors prepare the text for publication and undertake a number of checks on the knowledge at various stages of the production.

---

**Expert advisers**

BNFC uses about 80 expert clinical advisers (including doctors, pharmacists, nurses, and dentists) throughout the UK to help with the production of each edition. The role of these expert advisers is to review existing text and to comment on amendments drafted by the staff editors. These clinical experts help to ensure that BNFC remains reliable by:

- commenting on the relevance of the text in the context of best clinical practice in the UK;
- checking draft amendments for appropriate interpretation of any new evidence;
- providing expert opinion in areas of controversy or when reliable evidence is lacking;
- advising on areas where BNFC diverges from summaries of product characteristics;
- advising on the use of unlicensed medicines or of licensed medicines for unlicensed uses (‘off-label’ use);
- providing independent advice on drug interactions, prescribing in hepatic impairment, renal impairment, pregnancy, breast-feeding, neonatal care, palliative care, and the emergency treatment of poisoning.

In addition to consulting with regular advisers, BNFC calls on other clinical specialists for specific developments when particular expertise is required.

BNFC also works closely with a number of expert bodies that produce clinical guidelines. Drafts or pre-publication copies of guidelines are routinely received for comment and for assimilation into BNFC.

---

**Sources of BNFC information**

BNFC uses a variety of sources for its information; the main ones are shown below.

**Summaries of product characteristics**

BNFC receives summaries of product characteristics (SPCs) of all new products as well as revised SPCs for existing products. The SPCs are a key source of product information and are carefully processed, despite the ever-increasing volume of information being issued by the pharmaceutical industry. Such processing involves:

- verifying the approved names of all relevant ingredients including ‘non-active’ ingredients (BNFC is committed to using approved names and descriptions as laid down by the Medicines Act);
- comparing the indications, cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects with similar existing drugs. Where these are different from the expected pattern, justification is sought for their inclusion or exclusion;
- seeking independent data on the use of drugs in pregnancy and breast-feeding;
incorporating the information into BNFC using established criteria for the presentation and inclusion of the data; checking interpretation of the information by two staff editors before submitting to a senior editor; changes relating to doses receive an extra check; identifying potential clinical problems or omissions and seeking further information from manufacturers or from expert advisers; careful validation of any areas of divergence of BNFC from the SPC before discussion by the Committee (in the light of supporting evidence); constructing, with the help of expert advisers, a comment on the role of the drug in the context of similar drugs.

Much of this processing is applicable to the following sources as well.

**Expert advisers** The role of expert clinical advisers in providing the appropriate clinical context for all BNFC information is discussed above.

**Literature** Staff editors monitor core medical, paediatric, and pharmaceutical journals. Research papers and reviews relating to drug therapy are carefully processed. When a difference between the advice in BNFC and the paper is noted, the new information is assessed for reliability and relevance to UK clinical practice. If necessary, new text is drafted and discussed with expert advisers and the Paediatric Formulary Committee. BNFC enjoys a close working relationship with a number of national information providers.

**Systematic reviews** BNFC has access to various databases of systematic reviews (including the Cochrane Library and various web-based resources). These are used for answering specific queries, for reviewing existing text and for constructing new text. Staff editors receive training in critical appraisal, literature evaluation, and search strategies. Reviews published in Clinical Evidence are used to validate BNFC advice.

**Consensus guidelines** The advice in BNFC is checked against consensus guidelines produced by expert bodies. A number of bodies make drafts or pre-publication copies of the guidelines available to BNFC; it is therefore possible to ensure that a consistent message is disseminated. BNFC routinely processes guidelines from the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE), the Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC), and the Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN).

**Reference sources** Paediatric formularies and reference sources are used to provide background information for the review of existing text or for the construction of new text. The BNFC team works closely with the editorial team that produces *Martindale: The Complete Drug Reference*. BNFC has access to *Martindale* information resources and each team keeps the other informed of significant developments and shifts in the trends of drug usage.

**Statutory information** BNFC routinely processes relevant information from various Government bodies including Statutory Instruments and regulations affecting the Prescription only Medicines Order. Official compendia such as the British Pharmacopoeia and its addenda are processed routinely to ensure that BNFC complies with the relevant sections of the Medicines Act.

BNFC maintains close links with the Home Office (in relation to controlled drug regulations) and the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (including the British Pharmacopoeia Commission). Safety warnings issued by the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM) and guidelines on drug use issued by the UK health departments are processed as a matter of routine.

Relevant professional statements issued by the Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain are included in BNFC as are guidelines from bodies such as the Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health.

BNFC reflects information from the Drug Tariff, the Scottish Drug Tariff, and the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff.

**Pricing information** NHS Prescription Services provide information on prices of medicinal products and appliances in BNFC. BNFC also receives and processes price lists from product suppliers.

**Comments from readers** Readers of BNFC are invited to send in comments. Numerous letters and emails are received during the preparation of each edition. Such feedback helps to ensure that BNFC provides practical and clinically relevant information. Many changes in the presentation and scope of BNFC have resulted from comments sent in by users.

**Comments from industry** Close scrutiny of BNFC by the manufacturers provides an additional check and allows them an opportunity to raise issues about BNFC’s presentation of the role of various drugs; this is yet another check on the balance of BNFC advice. All comments are looked at with care and, where necessary, additional information and expert advice are sought.

**Virtual user groups** BNFC has set up virtual user groups across various healthcare professions (e.g. doctors, pharmacists, nurses). The aim of these groups will be to provide feedback to the editors and publishers to ensure that BNFC publications continue to serve the needs of its users.

**Market research** Market research is conducted at regular intervals to gather feedback on specific areas of development, such as drug interactions or changes to the way information is presented in digital formats.

BNFC is an independent professional publication that is kept up-to-date and addresses the day-to-day prescribing information needs of healthcare professionals treating children. Use of this resource throughout the health service helps to ensure that medicines are used safely, effectively, and appropriately in children.
How to use BNF for Children

BNF for Children (BNFC) provides information on the use of medicines in children ranging from neonates (including preterm neonates) to adolescents. The terms infant, child, and adolescent are not used consistently in the literature; to avoid ambiguity actual ages are used in the dose statements in BNFC. The term neonate is used to describe a newborn infant aged 0–28 days. The terms child or children are used generically to describe the entire range from infant to adolescent in BNFC.

In order to achieve the safe, effective, and appropriate use of medicines in children, healthcare professionals must be able to use BNFC effectively, and keep up to date with significant changes in each new edition of BNFC that are relevant to their clinical practice. How to Use BNF for Children is aimed as a quick refresher for all healthcare professionals involved with prescribing, monitoring, supplying, and administering medicines for children, and as a learning aid for students training to join these professions. While How to Use BNF for Children is linked to the main elements of rational prescribing, the generic structure of this section means that it can be adapted for teaching and learning in different clinical settings.

Structure of BNFC

The Contents list (on p. iii) shows that information in BNFC is divided into:

- How BNF for Children is Constructed (p. ix);
- Changes for this Edition (p. xvii);
- General Guidance (p. 1), which provides practical information on many aspects of prescribing from writing a prescription to prescribing in palliative care;
- Emergency Treatment of Poisoning (p. 24), which provides an overview on the management of acute poisoning;
- Classified notes on clinical conditions, drugs, and preparations, these notes are divided into 15 chapters, each of which is related to a particular system of the body (e.g. chapter 3, Respiratory System) or to an aspect of paediatric care (e.g. chapter 5, Infections). Each chapter is further divided into classified sections. Each section usually begins with prescribing notes followed by relevant drug monographs and preparations (see fig. 1). Drugs are classified in a section according to their pharmacology and therapeutic use;
- Appendices and Indices, includes 4 Appendices (providing information on drug interactions, borderline substances, cautionary and advisory labels for dispensed medicines, and intravenous infusions for neonatal intensive care), the Dental Practitioners’ Formulary, the Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary, Non-medical Prescribing, Index of Manufacturers, and the main Index. The information in the Appendices should be used in conjunction with relevant information in the chapters.

Finding information in BNFC

BNFC includes a number of aids to help access relevant information:

- Index (p. 811), where entries are included in alphabetical order of non-proprietary drug names, proprietary drug names, clinical conditions, and prescribing topics. A specific entry for ‘Dental Prescribing’ brings together topics of relevance to dental surgeons. The page reference to the drug monograph is shown in bold type. References to drugs in Appendices 1 and 3 are not included in the main Index;
- Contents (p. iii), provides a hierarchy of how information in BNFC is organised;
- The beginning of each chapter includes a classified hierarchy of how information is organised in that chapter;
- Running heads, located next to the page number on the top of each page, show the section of BNFC that is being used;
- Thumbnails, on the outer edge of each page, show the chapter of BNFC that is being used;
- Cross-references, lead to additional relevant information in other parts of BNFC.

Finding dental information in BNFC

Extra signposts have been added to help access dental information in BNFC:

- Prescribing in Dental Practice (p. 22), includes a contents list dedicated to drugs and topics of relevance to dentists, together with cross-references to the prescribing notes in the appropriate sections of BNFC. For example, a review of this list shows that information on the local treatment of oral infections is located in chapter 12 (Ear, Nose, and Oropharynx) while information on the systemic treatment of these infections is found in chapter 5 (Infections). Further guidance for dental practice can be found in the BNF;
- Side-headings, in the prescribing notes, side-headings facilitate the identification of advice on oral conditions (e.g. Dental and Orofacial Pain, p. 199);
- Dental prescribing on NHS, in the body of BNFC, preparations that can be prescribed using NHS form FP10D (GP14 in Scotland, WP10D in Wales) can be identified by means of a note headed ‘Dental prescribing on NHS’ (e.g. Aciclovir Oral Suspension, p. 225).

Identifying effective drug treatments

The prescribing notes in BNFC provide an overview of the drug management of common conditions and facilitate rapid appraisal of treatment options (e.g. epilepsy, p. 215). For ease of use, information on the management of certain conditions has been tabulated (e.g. acute asthma, p. 136).

Advice issued by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) is integrated within BNFC.
prescribing notes if appropriate. Summaries of NICE technology appraisals, and relevant short guidelines, are included in pink panels. BNFC also includes advice issued by the Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) when a medicine is restricted or not recommended for use within NHS Scotland.

In order to select safe and effective medicines for individual children, information in the prescribing notes must be used in conjunction with other prescribing details about the drugs and knowledge of the child’s medical and drug history.

Figure 1 Illustrates the typical layout of a drug monograph and preparation records in BNFC

In the case of compound preparations, the indications, cautions, contra-indications, side-effects, and interactions of all constituents should be taken into account for prescribing.

When no suitable licensed preparation is available, details of preparations that may be imported or formulations available as manufactured specials or extemporaneous preparations are included.

Drugs

Drugs appear under pharmacopoeial or other non-proprietary titles. When there is an appropriate current monograph (Medicines Act 1968, Section 65) preference is given to a name at the head of that monograph; otherwise a British Approved Name (BAN), if available, is used.

The symbol is used to denote those preparations considered to be less suitable for prescribing. Although such preparations may not be considered as drugs of first choice, their use may be justifiable in certain circumstances.

Prescription-only medicines

This symbol has been placed against preparations that are available only on a prescription from an appropriate practitioner. For more detailed information see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition).

The symbols indicate that the preparations are subject to the prescription requirements of the Misuse of Drugs Act. For advice on prescribing such preparations see Prescribing Controlled Drugs, p. 9.

Preparations not available for NHS prescription

This symbol has been placed against preparations that are not prescribable under the NHS. Those prescribable only for specific disorders have a footnote specifying the condition(s) for which the preparation remains available. Some preparations which are not prescribable by brand name under the NHS may nevertheless be dispensed using the brand name provided that the prescription shows an appropriate non-proprietary name.

Prices

Prices have been calculated from the basic cost used in pricing NHS prescriptions, see also Prices in BNFC, p. xvi for details.
A brief description of the clinical uses of a drug can usually be found in the Indication and Dose section of its monograph (e.g. ibuprofen, p. 503); a cross-reference is provided to any indications for that drug that are covered in other sections of BNFC.

The symbol ★ is used to denote preparations that are considered by the Joint Formulary Committee to be less suitable for prescribing. Although such preparations may not be considered as drugs of first choice, their use may be justifiable in certain circumstances.

Drug management of medical emergencies

Guidance on the drug management of medical emergencies can be found in the relevant BNFC chapters (e.g. treatment of anaphylaxis is included in section 3.4.3). A summary of drug doses used for Medical Emergencies in the Community can be found in the glossy pages at the back of BNFC. Algorithms for Newborn, Paediatric Basic, and Paediatric Advanced Life Support can also be found within these pages.

Minimising harm in children with co-morbidities

The drug chosen to treat a particular condition should have minimal detrimental effects on the child’s other diseases and minimise the child’s susceptibility to adverse effects. To achieve this, the Cautions, Contra-indications, and Side-effects of the relevant drug should be reviewed, and can usually be found in the drug monograph. However, if a class of drugs (e.g. tetracyclines, p. 274) share the same cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects, these are amalgamated in the prescribing notes while those unique to a particular drug in that class are included in its individual drug monograph.

 Occasionally, the cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects may be included within a preparation record if they are specific to that preparation or if the preparation is not accompanied by a monograph.

The information under Cautions can be used to assess the risks of using a drug in a child who has co-morbidities that are also included in the Cautions for that drug—if a safer alternative cannot be found, the drug may be prescribed while monitoring the child for adverse-effects or deterioration in the co-morbidity. Contra-indications are far more restrictive than Cautions and mean that the drug should be avoided in a child with a condition that is contra-indicated.

The impact that potential side-effects may have on a child’s quality of life should also be assessed. For instance, in a child who has constipation, it may be preferable to avoid a drug that frequently causes constipation. The prescribing notes in BNFC may highlight important safety concerns and differences between drugs in their ability to cause certain side-effects.

Prescribing for patients who are pregnant or breast-feeding

Drug selection should aim to minimise harm to the fetus, nursing infant, and mother. The infant should be monitored for potential side-effects of drugs used by the mother during pregnancy or breast-feeding. The general principles for prescribing are outlined under Prescribing in Pregnancy (p. 16) and Prescribing in Breast-feeding (p. 16). The prescribing notes in BNFC chapters provide guidance on the drug treatment of common conditions that can occur during pregnancy and breast-feeding (e.g. asthma, p. 133). Information about the use of specific drugs during pregnancy and breast-feeding can be found in their drug monographs under Pregnancy and Breast-feeding (e.g. fluconazole, p. 301). However, if a class of drugs (e.g. tetracyclines, p. 274) share the same recommendations for use during pregnancy or breast-feeding, this advice is amalgamated in the prescribing notes under Pregnancy and Breast-feeding while any advice that is unique to a particular drug in that class is included in its individual drug monograph.

Minimising drug interactions

Drug selection should aim to minimise drug interactions. If it is necessary to prescribe a potentially serious combination of drugs, children should be monitored appropriately. The mechanisms underlying drug interactions are explained in Appendix 1 (p. 655).

Details of drug interactions can be found in Appendix 1 of BNFC (p. 656). Drugs and their interactions are listed in alphabetical order of the non-proprietary drug name, and cross-references to drug classes are provided where appropriate. Each drug or drug class is listed twice: in the alphabetical list and also against the drug or class with which it interacts. The symbol ★ is placed against interactions that are potentially serious and where combined administration of drugs should be avoided (or only undertaken with caution and appropriate monitoring). Interactions that have no symbol do not usually have serious consequences.

If a drug or drug class has interactions, a cross reference to where these can be found in Appendix 1 is provided under the Cautions of the drug monograph or prescribing notes.
Selecting the dose

The drug dose is usually located in pink panels within the Indication and Dose section of the drug monograph or within the Dose section of the preparation record. Doses are linked to specific indications and routes of administration. The dose of a drug may vary according to different indications, routes of administration, age, body-weight, and body-surface area. When the dose of a drug varies according to different indications, each indication and its accompanying dose is located in a separate pink panel (e.g. aciclovir, p. 322). The dose is located within the preparation record when the dose varies according to different formulations of that drug (e.g. amphotericin, p. 305) or when a preparation has a dose different to that in its monograph. Occasionally, drug doses may be included in the prescribing notes for practical reasons (e.g. doses of drugs in Helicobacter pylori eradication regimens, p. 42). The right dose should be selected for the right age and body-weight (or body surface area) of the child, as well as for the right indication, route of administration, and preparation.

Doses in BNFC are usually assigned to specific age ranges; neonatal doses are preceded by the word Neonate, all other doses are preceded by the word Child. Age ranges in BNFC are described as shown in the following example:

Child 1 month–4 years refers to a child from 1 month old up to their 4th birthday;
Child 4–10 years refers to a child from the day of their 4th birthday up to their 10th birthday.

However, a pragmatic approach should be applied to these cut-off points depending on the child’s physiological development, condition, and if weight is appropriate for the child’s age.

For some drugs (e.g. gentamicin, p. 278) the neonatal dose varies according to the postmenstrual age of the neonate. Postmenstrual age is the neonate’s total age expressed in weeks from the start of the mother’s last menstrual period. For example, a 3 week old baby born at 27 weeks gestation is treated as having a postmenstrual age of 30 weeks. A term baby has a postmenstrual age of 37–42 weeks when born. For most other drugs, the dose is based on the child’s actual date of birth irrespective of postmenstrual age. However, the degree of prematurity, the maturity of renal and hepatic function, and the clinical properties of the drug need to be considered on an individual basis.

Many children’s doses in BNFC are standardised by body-weight. To calculate the dose for a given child the weight-standardised dose is multiplied by the child’s weight (or occasionally by the child’s ideal weight for height). The calculated dose should not normally exceed the maximum recommended dose for an adult. For example, if the dose is 8 mg/kg (max. 300 mg), a child of 10 kg body-weight should receive 80 mg, but a child of 40 kg body-weight should receive 300 mg (rather than 320 mg). Calculation by body-weight in the overweight child may result in much higher doses being administered than necessary; in such cases, the dose should be calculated from an ideal weight for height.

Occasionally, some doses in BNFC are standardised by body-surface area because many physiological phenomena correlate better with body surface area. In these cases, to calculate the dose for a given child, the body surface area-standardised dose is multiplied by the child’s body surface area. The child’s body surface area can be estimated from his or her weight using the tables for Body Surface Area in Children located in the glossy pages at the back of the print version of BNFC.

Selecting a suitable preparation

Children should be prescribed a preparation that complements their daily routine, and that provides the right dose of drug for the right indication and route of administration.

In BNFC, preparations usually follow immediately after the monograph for the drug which is their main ingredient. The preparation record (see fig. 1) provides information on the type of formulation (e.g. tablet), the amount of active drug in a solid dosage form, and the concentration of active drug in a liquid dosage form. The legal status is shown for prescription only medicines, or in patients with hepatic or renal impairment. The doses of some drugs may need to be adjusted if their effects are altered by concomitant use with other drugs, or in patients with hepatic or renal impairment (see Minimising Drug Interactions, and Prescribing for Children with Hepatic or Renal Impairment).

Wherever possible, doses are expressed in terms of a definite frequency (e.g. if the dose is 1 mg/kg twice daily, a child of body-weight 9 kg would receive 9 mg twice daily). Occasionally, it is necessary to include doses in the total daily dose format (e.g. 10 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses); in these cases the total daily dose should be divided into individual doses (in this example a child of body-weight 9 kg would receive 30 mg 3 times daily).

Most drugs can be administered at slightly irregular intervals during the day. Some drugs, e.g. antimicrobials, are best given at regular intervals. Some flexibility should be allowed in children to avoid waking them during the night. For example, the night-time dose may be given at the child’s bedtime.

Special care should be taken when converting doses from one metric unit to another, and when calculating infusion rates or the volume of a preparation to administer. Conversions for imperial to metric measures can be found in the glossy pages at the back of BNFC. Where possible, doses should be rounded to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid preparations, or an appropriate strength of tablet or capsule.

Electrolytes

BNFC 2011–2012
vent caries. Sugar-free preparations should be used whenever possible.

Where a drug has several preparations, those of a similar type may be grouped together under a heading (e.g. ‘Modified-release’ for theophylline preparations, p. 143). Where there is good evidence to show that the preparations for a particular drug are not inter-changeable, this is stated in a Note either in the Dose section of the monograph or by the group of preparations affected. When the dose of a drug varies according to different formulations of that drug, the right dose should be prescribed for the preparation selected.

In the case of compound preparations, the prescribing information of all constituents should be taken into account for prescribing.

Unlicensed preparations that are available from ‘Special order’ manufacturers and specialist importing companies are included (e.g. midazolam buccal liquid, p. 639). The availability of an extemporaneous formulation of a drug is shown after its other preparations (e.g. captopril, p. 102).

### Writing prescriptions

Guidance is provided on writing prescriptions that will help to reduce medication errors, see p. 4. Prescription requirements for controlled drugs are also specified on p. 9.

### Administering drugs

Basic information on the route of administration is provided in the Indication and Dose section of a drug monograph or the Dose section of a preparation record. Further details, such as masking the bitter taste of some medicines, may be provided in the Administration section of a drug monograph (e.g. proguaunil, p. 336). Practical information is also provided on the preparation of intravenous drug infusions, including compatibility of drugs with standard intravenous infusion fluids, method of dilution or reconstitution, and administration rates (e.g. co-amoxiclav, p. 263). The Administration section is located within preparation records when this information varies according to different preparations of that drug (e.g. amphotericin, p. 305). If a class of drugs (e.g. topical corticosteroids, p. 559) share the same administration advice, this may be presented in the prescribing notes.

Information on intravenous infusions for neonatal intensive care can also be found in Appendix 4, p. 791.

### Advising children (and carers)

The prescriber, the child’s carer, and the child (if appropriate) should agree on the health outcomes desired and on the strategy for achieving them (see Taking Medicines to Best Effect, p. 1). Taking the time to explain to the child (and carers) the rationale and the potential adverse effects of treatment may improve adherence. For some medicines there is a special need for counseling (e.g. recognising signs of blood, liver, or skin disorders with carbamazepine); this is shown in Counseling statements, usually in the Cautions or Indication and Dose section of a monograph, or within a preparation record if it is specific to that preparation.

Children and their carers should be advised if treatment is likely to affect their ability to perform skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

Cautionsary and advisory labels that pharmacists are recommended to add when dispensing are included in the preparation record (see fig. 1). Details of these labels can be found in Appendix 3 (p. 788).

### Monitoring drug treatment

Children should be monitored to ensure they are achieving the expected benefits from drug treatment without any unwanted side-effects. The prescribing notes or the Cautions in the drug monograph specify any special monitoring requirements. Further information on monitoring the plasma concentration of drugs with a narrow therapeutic index can be found in the Pharmacokinetics section or as a Note under the Dose section of the drug monograph.

### Identifying and reporting adverse drug reactions

Clinically relevant Side-effects for most drugs are included in the monographs. However, if a class of drugs (e.g. tetracyclines, p. 274) share the same side-effects, these are presented in the prescribing notes while those unique to a particular drug in that class are included in its individual drug monograph. Occasionally, side-effects may be included within a preparation record if they are specific to that preparation or if the preparation is not accompanied by a monograph.

Side-effects are generally listed in order of frequency and arranged broadly by body systems. Occasionally a rare side-effect might be listed first if it is considered to be particularly important because of its seriousness. The frequency of side-effects is described in fig. 1.

An exhaustive list of side-effects is not included for drugs that are used by specialists (e.g. cytotoxic drugs and drugs used in anaesthesia). Recognising that hypersensitivity reactions can occur with virtually all medicines, this effect is generally not listed, unless the drug carries an increased risk of such reactions. BNFC also omits effects that are likely to have little clinical consequence (e.g. transient increase in liver enzymes).

The prescribing notes in BNFC may highlight important safety concerns and differences between drugs in their ability to cause certain side-effects. Safety warnings issued by the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM) or Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) can also be found here or in the drug monographs.

Adverse Reactions to Drugs (p. 12) provides advice on preventing adverse drug reactions, and guidance on reporting adverse drug reactions to the MHRA. The black triangle symbol ▼ identifies those preparations in BNFC that are monitored intensively by the MHRA.
Finding significant changes in a new edition

BNFC is published in July each year and includes lists of changes in a new edition that are relevant to clinical practice:

- The print version includes an Insert that summarises the background to several key changes. A copy of the Insert can also be found at bnfc.org in the section on Updates under ‘What’s new in BNFC?’;
- Changes for this edition (p. xvii), provides a list of significant changes, dose changes, classification changes, new names, and new preparations that have been incorporated into a new edition, as well as a list of preparations that have been discontinued since the last edition. For ease of identification, the margins of these pages are marked in pink;
- E-newsletter, the BNF & BNFC e-newsletter service is available free of charge. It alerts healthcare professionals to details of significant changes in the clinical content of these publications and to the way that this information is delivered. Newsletters also review clinical case studies and provide tips on using these publications effectively. To sign up for e-newsletters go to bnfc.org/newsletter. To visit the e-newsletter archive, go to bnfc.org/bnfc/bnfcextra/current/450066.htm.

So many changes are made to each new edition of BNFC, that not all of them can be accommodated in the Insert and the Changes section. We encourage healthcare professionals to review regularly the prescribing information on drugs that they encounter frequently.

Nutrition

Appendix 2 (p. 743) includes tables of ACBS-approved enteral feeds and nutritional supplements based on their energy and protein content. There are separate tables for specialised formulae for specific clinical conditions. Classified sections on foods for special diets and nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases are also included.

Licensed status of medicines

BNFC includes advice on the use of unlicensed medicines or of licensed medicines for unlicensed applications (‘off-label’ use). Such advice reflects careful consideration of the options available to manage a given condition and the weight of evidence and experience of the unlicensed intervention. Limitations of the marketing authorisation should not preclude unlicensed use where clinically appropriate.

The Licensed Use statement in a drug monograph is used to indicate that:

- a drug is not licensed in the UK (e.g. pyrazinamide, p. 293);
- a drug is licensed in the UK, but not for use in children (e.g. lansoprazole, p. 45);
- BNFC advice for certain indications, age groups of children, routes of administration, or preparations falls outside a drug’s marketing authorisation (e.g. naproxen, p. 505).

The absence of the Licensed Use statement from a drug monograph indicates that the drug is licensed for all indications given in the monograph (e.g. zanamivir, p. 327).

Prescribing unlicensed medicines or medicines outside their marketing authorisation alters (and probably increases) the prescriber’s professional responsibility and potential liability. The prescriber should be able to justify and feel competent in using such medicines. Further information can be found in BNF for Children and Marketing Authorisation, p. 2.

Prices in BNFC

Basic net prices are given in BNFC to provide an indication of relative cost. Where there is a choice of suitable preparations for a particular disease or condition the relative cost may be used in making a selection. Cost-effective prescribing must, however, take into account other factors (such as dose frequency and duration of treatment) that affect the total cost. The use of more expensive drugs is justified if it will result in better treatment of the patient, or a reduction of the length of an illness, or the time spent in hospital. Prices have generally been calculated from the net cost used in pricing NHS prescriptions in October 2010. Prices generally reflect whole dispensing packs; prices for injections are stated per ampoule, vial, or syringe. The price for an extemporaneously prepared preparation has been omitted where the net cost of the ingredients used to make it would give a misleadingly low impression of the final price.

BNFC prices are not suitable for quoting to patients seeking private prescriptions or contemplating over-the-counter purchases because they do not take into account VAT, professional fees, and other overheads. A fuller explanation of costs to the NHS may be obtained from the Drug Tariff. Separate drug tariffs are applicable to England and Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland; prices in the different tariffs may vary.

Extra resources on the BNFC website

While the BNFC website (bnfc.org) hosts the digital content of BNFC proper, it also provides additional resources such as Frequently Asked Questions and online calculators.
Changes for this edition

Significant changes

The *BNF for Children* is revised yearly and numerous changes are made between issues. All copies of *BNF for Children 2010–2011* should therefore be withdrawn and replaced by *BNF for Children 2011–2012*. Significant changes have been made in the following sections for *BNF for Children 2011–2012*:

- How to use BNFC, p. xi
- New symbols introduced throughout *BNF for Children* to identify Controlled Drug preparations in Schedules 2, 3, and 4, Prescribing Controlled Drugs
- Ibuprofen poisoning, Emergency treatment of poisoning
- Paracetamol poisoning [calculating the potentially toxic dose ingested by obese children], Emergency treatment of poisoning
- Infliximab for Crohn’s Disease [NICE guidance], section 1.5
- Formoterol [MHRA/CHM advice], section 3.1.1.1
- Omalizumab [NICE guidance], section 3.4.2
- Fentanyl [counselling for the use of patches], section 4.7.2
- Epilepsy in pregnancy, section 4.8.1
- Neonatal seizures, section 4.8.1
- Febrile convulsions, section 4.8.3
- Nicotine dependence, section 4.10.2
- Summary of antibacterial therapy [advice reformatted], section 5.1, Table 1
- Cystic Fibrosis, section 5.1, Table 1
- Meningitis, section 5.1, Table 1
- Erysipelas and cellulitis, section 5.1, Table 1
- Prevention of pertussis, section 5.1, Table 2
- Prevention of pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease, section 5.1, Table 2
- Prevention of infection in open fractures, section 5.1, Table 2
- Urinary-tract infections [culture and sensitivity testing], section 5.1.13
- Treatment of fungal infections: aspergillosis, section 5.2
- HIV infection [initiation of treatment], section 5.3.1
- Antiretroviral drugs [doses included in their monographs], section 5.3.1
- Palivizumab [respiratory syncytial virus], section 5.3.5
- Prophylaxis against malaria [recommendations for Morocco and Turkmenistan removed], section 5.4.1
- Dexamethasone [parenteral doses expressed as dexamethasone base], section 6.3.2
- Somatropin for the treatment of growth failure in children [NICE guidance], section 6.5.1
- Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis [updated treatment regimens], section 7.2.2
- Combined hormonal contraceptive interactions, section 7.3.1

Dose changes

Changes in dose statements introduced into *BNF for Children 2011–2012*:

- Aciclovir [herpes simplex suppression], p. 322
- Actiq®, p. 206
- ACWY Vax®, p. 615
- AmBisome®, p. 306
- Amitriptyline [neuropathic pain], p. 185
- Ampicillin, p. 262
- Atorvastatin, p. 126
- Atropine [premedication by intravenous injection in neonates and intra-operative bradycardia in neonates], p. 635
- Azathioprine [severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease], p. 54
- Bendroflumethiazide, p. 77
- Cervarix® [alternative schedule], p. 611
- Cetirizine [dose and dose in renal impairment], p. 154
- Ciprofloxacin, p. 254
- Co-amoxiclav [intravenous dose], p. 263
- Colistimethate sodium (Colistin), p. 288
- Dexamethasone, p. 374
- Dexamfetamine, p. 189
- Diazepam [intravenous dose for status epilepticus], p. 232

Combined oral contraceptives [preparations tabulated], section 7.3.1
Progestogen-only contraceptive interactions, section 7.3.2.1 and section 7.3.2.2
Nocturnal enuresis, section 7.4.2
Rapamune® tablets [0.5 mg tablet not bioequivalent to other strengths], section 8.2.2
G6PD deficiency [rasburicase and risk of haemolysis], section 9.1.5
Calcium gluconate injection [MHRA advice], section 9.5.1.1
Drugs unsafe for use in acute porphyrias, section 9.8.2
Aqueous cream [skin reactions when used as a leave-on emollient], section 13.2.1
Nappy rash, section 13.2.2
Sunscreens [International Nomenclature for Cosmetic Ingredients, table added], section 13.8.1
Immunisation Schedule, section 14.1
Haemophilus type B conjugate vaccine and meningococcal vaccines [in asplenia, splenic dysfunction, or complement deficiency], section 14.4
Influenza vaccines, section 14.4
Meningococcal vaccines, section 14.4
Pertussis vaccine [management of contacts], section 14.4
Sedative and analgesic peri-operative drugs, section 15.1.4
Local anaesthesia [section updated and reorganised], section 15.2
Epilim Chronosphere®, p. 228
Fersamal®, p. 444
Flucloxacillin [staphylococcal lung infection in cystic fibrosis], p. 259
Fludrocortisone acetate [mineralocorticoid replacement in adrenocortical insufficiency in neonates], p. 369
Flumazenil [intravenous injection dose for reversal of sedative effects of benzodiazepines], p. 647
Foradil® [dose for children under 12 years], p. 138
Fresh frozen plasma, p. 125
Fungizone® [neonatal dose], p. 306
Glycopyrronium [premedication at induction in children 12–18 years and control of muscarinic side-effects of neostigmine in children 12–18 years], p. 636
Hydralazine [intravenous infusion in neonates], p. 93
Ipratropium [dose frequency for severe or life-threatening acute asthma in children 12–18 years], p. 134 and p. 136
Itraconazole [tinea capitis], p. 303
Isoniazid, p. 255
Indometacin [symptomatic ductus arteriosus], p. 130
Itraconazole [tinea capitis], p. 303
Isoniazid, p. 255
Lansoprazole [dose in hepatic impairment], p. 45
Levetiracetam [no dose adjustment when switching between intravenous and oral therapy], p. 222
Macrogol Oral Powder, Compound [faecal impaction], p. 62
Menveo®, p. 615
Mercuramine, p. 492
Meropenem, p. 273
Metronidazole, p. 296
Midazolam [neonatal dose for sedation in intensive care], p. 638
Modigraf®, p. 437
Morphine [intravenous injection and oral dose in children 12–18 years], p. 207
Movico® [faecal impaction], p. 62
Movico®-Half [faecal impaction], p. 62
Naloxone [intravenous infusion dose for overdosage with opioids], p. 29
Nifedipine [hypertensive crisis, acute angina in Kawasaki disease or progeria], p. 107
Nitrous oxide [maintenance of anaesthesia], p. 635
Paracetamol [severe postoperative pain by mouth and by rectum], p. 200
Phenytoin sodium, p. 235
Prednisolone [corticosteroid replacement therapy], p. 376
Prograf®, p. 437
Propranolol [migraine prophylaxis], p. 88
Retapamulin, p. 586
Salofalk® tablets, granules, and rectal foam, p. 51
Selenium sulphide [pityriasis versicolor], p. 584
Sodium valproate, p. 227
Sumatriptan [cluster headache], p. 213
Symbicort® 100/6 [dose for children 6–12 years], p. 149
Temazepam, p. 639
Tranexamic acid [prevention of excessive bleeding after dental procedures by intravenous injection and menorrhagia], p. 123
Trimethoprim, p. 255
Valaciclovir, p. 323
Xylometazoline nasal spray, p. 542
Zydol SR®, p. 211

Classification changes
Classification changes have been made in the following sections of BNF for Children 2011–2012:
Section 2.1.2 Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors [title change]
Section 4.7.1 Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations [title change]
Section 4.10.2 Nicotine dependence [new section]
Section 5.2.1 Triazole antifungals [new sub-section]
Section 5.2.2 Imidazole antifungals [new sub-section]
Section 5.2.3 Polyene antifungals [new sub-section]
Section 5.2.4 Echinocandin antifungals [new sub-section]
Section 5.2.5 Other antifungals [new sub-section]
Section 6.1.2 Antidiabetic drugs [title change]
Section 10.3 Drugs for the relief of soft-tissue inflammation and topical pain relief [title change]
Section 10.3.2 Rubefacients, topical NSAIDs, capsaicin, and poultices [title change]
Section 13.2.1.1 Emollient bath additives and shower preparations [title change]
Section 15.1.4.1 Anxiolytics [title change]

New Names
Colistimethate sodium [formerly Colistin], p. 288
Dulcolax® Pico Liquid and Pico Perles [formerly Dulcolax® Liquid and Perles], p. 61
Hydrocortisone mucoadhesive buccal tablets [formerly Corlan®], p. 544
Laxido® Orange [formerly Laxido®], p. 62
Oilatum® Junior bath additive [formerly Oilatum® Junior emollient bath additive], p. 555
Deleted preparations
Preparations listed below have been discontinued during the compilation of BNF for Children 2011–2012, or are still available but are not considered suitable for inclusion by the Paediatric Formulary Committee (see footnote):

Andropatch®
Atropine eye ointment
Atrovent Aerocaps®
Baxan®
Beclometasone Cyclocaps®
Betnesol-N® eye ointment
Budesonide Cyclocaps®
Chlorohex®
Citanest®
Crixivan®
Dexedrine®
Dimercaprol®
Ditropan® elixir
Dopram®
Dovonex® ointment
Doxapram®
Dexedrine®
Dimercaprol®
Ditropan® elixir
Dopram®
Dovonex® scalp solution
Doxapram1
Exelderm®
Flixotide® Diskhaler®
Hewletts®
Indinavir®
Ledermycin®
Linola® Γamma
Loceryl® cream
Metrotop®
Mixtard® 30
Neosporin®
Norvir® capsules
Octagam®
Pharmorubicin® rapid dissolution injection
Polytar AF®
Posalflin®
Protirelin
Pulmicort® aerosol inhalation
Salbutamol Cyclocaps®
Salinum®
Select-A-Jet® Dopamine
SpectraBan®
Sulconazole
Triclofos
Zantac® effervescent tablets
Zeffix® oral solution

1. Not considered suitable for inclusion by the Paediatric Formulary Committee

New preparations included in this edition
Preparations included in the relevant sections of BNF for Children 2011–2012:

Adoport® [tacrolimus], p. 436
Anthelios®, p. 582
Aquamol®, p. 552
Calcichew-D3® 500 mg/400 unit caplets [calcium carbonate with colecalciferol], p. 484
Capimmune® [ciclosporin], p. 435
Carmize® [carmellose sodium], p. 530
Catacrom® [sodium cromoglicate], p. 523
Crestor® [rosuvastatin], p. 127
Cyanokit® [hydroxocobalamin], p. 32
Dermatronics Heel Balm®, p. 553
Diovan® [valsartan], p. 104
Dovobet® [betamethasone with calcipotriol], p. 568
Dovonex® ointment [calcipotriol], p. 568
Eczmol®, p. 554
Epiduo® [adapalene with benzoyl peroxide], p. 577
FlebogammaDIF® [normal immunoglobulin], p. 624
Fulsavin® [griseofulvin], p. 309
Gammanorm® [normal immunoglobulin], p. 623
Gammagaplex® [normal immunoglobulin], p. 624
Gynoxin® intravaginal cream [fenticonazole], p. 395
Humulin 1 KwikPen® [insophane insulin], p. 355
Humulin M3 KwikPen® [biphasic insophane insulin], p. 356
Hyabak® [sodium hyaluronate], p. 531
Hydromol HC Intensive®, p. 560
Hylo-Care® [sodium hyaluronate], p. 531
Insuman® Comb 25 Solostar® [biphasic insophane insulin], p. 356
Jext® [adrenaline], p. 161
Kalcipos-D® [calcium carbonate with colecalciferol], p. 484
Lescol® XL [fluvastatin], p. 127
Lopresor SR® [metoprolol], p. 91
Lumecare® Long Lasting Tear Gel® [carbomers], p. 530
Lumecare® Preservative Free Tear Drops® [hypromellose], p. 531
Lumecare® Sodium Hyaluronate® [sodium hyaluronate], p. 531
Marol® [tramadol], p. 211
Miptel® [acetylcholine chloride], p. 532
Moxivig® [moxifloxacin], p. 520
Nebusal® [hypertonic sodium chloride], p. 166
Neokay® [phytomenadione], p. 487
Nexplanon® [etonogestrel], p. 405
Nicorette Quickmist® [nicotine], p. 240
Nivestim® [filgrastim], p. 456
Norvir® tablets [ritonavir], p. 318
Tears Naturale® Single Dose [hypromellose], p. 531
Tevagrastim® [filgrastim], p. 456
Tobravisc® [tobramycin], p. 520
Vismed® Gel [sodium hyaluronate], p. 531
Vivadex® [tacrolimus], p. 438
VPRIT® [velaglucerase alfa], p. 491
Wellvone® [atovaquone], p. 343
Xenical® [orlistat], p. 191
Zerocream®, p. 553
Zeroquent®, p. 553
Zerolatum®, p. 555
Zerolatum® Plus, p. 556
Zeroneum®, p. 555
Zerozole®, p. 556
General guidance

Medicines should be given to children only when they are necessary, and in all cases the potential benefit of administering the medicine should be considered in relation to the risk involved. This is particularly important during pregnancy, when the risk to both mother and fetus must be considered (for further details see Prescribing in Pregnancy, p. 16).

It is important to discuss treatment options carefully with the child and the child’s carer (see also Taking Medicines to Best Effect, below). In particular, the child and the child’s carer should be helped to distinguish the adverse effects of prescribed drugs from the effects of the medical disorder. When the beneficial effects of the medicine are likely to be delayed, this should be highlighted.

Taking medicines to best effect  Difficulties in adherence to drug treatment occur regardless of age. Factors that contribute to poor compliance with prescribed medicines include:

- difficulty in taking the medicine (e.g. inability to swallow the medicine);
- unattractive formulation (e.g. unpleasant taste);
- prescription not collected or not dispensed;
- purpose of medicine not clear;
- perceived lack of efficacy;
- real or perceived adverse effects;
- carers’ or child’s perception of the risk and severity of side-effects may differ from that of the prescriber;
- instructions for administration not clear.

The prescriber, the child’s carer, and the child (if appropriate) should agree on the health outcomes desired and on the strategy for achieving them (‘concordance’). The prescriber should be sensitive to religious, cultural, and personal beliefs of the child’s family that can affect acceptance of medicines.

Taking the time to explain to the child (and carers) the rationale and the potential adverse effects of treatment may improve adherence. Reinforcement and elaboration of the physician’s instructions by the pharmacist and other members of the healthcare team can be important. Giving advice on the management of adverse effects and the possibility of alternative treatments may encourage carers and children to seek advice rather than merely abandon unacceptable treatment.

Simplifying the drug regimen may help; the need for frequent administration may reduce adherence, although there appears to be little difference in adherence between once-daily and twice-daily administration. Combination products reduce the number of drugs taken but at the expense of the ability to titrate individual doses.

Drug treatment in children  Children, and particularly neonates, differ from adults in their response to drugs. Special care is needed in the neonatal period (first 28 days of life) and doses should always be calculated with care; the risk of toxicity is increased by a reduced rate of drug clearance and differing target organ sensitivity.

For guidance on selecting doses of drugs in children see How to Use BNF for Children, p. xiv.

Administration of medicines to children  Children should be involved in decisions about taking medicines and encouraged to take responsibility for using them correctly. The degree of such involvement will depend on the child’s age, understanding, and personal circumstances.

Occasionally a medicine or its taste has to be disguised or masked with small quantities of food. However, unless specifically permitted (e.g. some formulations of pancreatic), a medicine should not be mixed with large quantities of food because the full dose might not be taken and the child might develop an aversion to food if the medicine imparts an unpleasant taste. Medicines should not be mixed or administered in a baby’s feeding bottle.

Children under 5 years (and some older children) find a liquid formulation more acceptable than tablets or capsules. However, for long-term treatment it may be possible for a child to be taught to take tablets or capsules.

An oral syringe (see below) should be used for accurate measurement and controlled administration of an oral liquid medicine. The unpleasant taste of an oral liquid can be disguised by flavouring it or by giving a favourite food or drink immediately afterwards, but the potential for food-drug interactions should be considered.

Advice should be given on dental hygiene to those receiving medicines containing cariogenic sugars for long-term treatment; sugar-free medicines should be provided whenever possible.

Children with nasal feeding tubes in place for prolonged periods should be encouraged to take medicines by mouth if possible; enteral feeding should generally be interrupted before the medicine is given (particularly if enteral feeds reduce the absorption of a particular drug). Oral liquids can be given through the tube provided that precautions are taken to guard against blockage; the dose should be washed down with warm water. When a medicine is given through a nasogastric tube to a neonate, sterile water must be used to accompany the medicine or to wash it down.

The intravenous route is generally chosen when a medicine cannot be given by mouth; reliable access, often a central vein, should be used for children whose treatment involves irritant or inotropic drugs or who need to receive the medicine over a long period or for home therapy. The subcutaneous route is used most commonly for insulin administration. Intramuscular injections should preferably be avoided in children, particularly neonates, infants, and young children. However, the intramuscular route may be advantageous for administration of single doses of medicines when intravenous cannulation would be more problematic or
painless to the child. Certain drugs, e.g., some vaccines, are only administered intramuscularly.

The intrathecal, epidural and intraosseous routes should be used only by staff specially trained to administer medicines by these routes. Local protocols for the management of intrathecal injections must be in place (section 8.1).

**Managing medicines in school** Administration of a medicine during schooltime should be avoided if possible; medicines should be prescribed for once or twice-daily administration whenever practicable. If the medicine needs to be taken in school, this should be discussed with parents or carers and the necessary arrangements made in advance; where appropriate, involvement of a school nurse should be sought. Managing Medicines in Schools and Early Years Settings produced by the Department of Health provides guidance on using medicines in schools (www.dh.gov.uk).

**Patient information leaflets** Manufacturers’ patient information leaflets that accompany a medicine, cover only the licensed use of the medicine (see BNF for Children and Marketing Authorisation, below). Therefore, when a medicine is used outside its licence, it may be appropriate to advise the child and the child’s parent or carer that some of the information in the leaflet might not apply to the child’s treatment. Where necessary, inappropriate advice in the patient information leaflet should be identified and reassurance provided about the correct use in the context of the child’s condition.

**Biosimilar medicines** A biosimilar medicine is a new biological product that is similar to a medicine that has already been authorised to be marketed (the biological reference medicine) in the European Union. The active substance of a biosimilar medicine is similar, but not identical, to the biological reference medicine. Biological products are different from standard chemical products in terms of their complexity and although theoretically there should be no important differences between the biosimilar and biological reference medicine in terms of safety or efficacy, when prescribing biological products, it is good practice to use the brand name. This will ensure that substitution of a biosimilar medicine does not occur when the medicine is dispensed. Biosimilar medicines have black triangle status (see p. 12) at the time of initial marketing. It is important to report suspected adverse reactions to biosimilar medicines using the Yellow Card Scheme (p. 12). For biosimilar medicines, adverse reaction reports should clearly state the brand name of the suspected medicine.

**Complementary and alternative medicine** An increasing amount of information on complementary and alternative medicine is becoming available. Where appropriate, the child and the child’s carers should be asked about the use of their medicines, including dietary supplements and topical products. The scope of BNF for Children is restricted to the discussion of conventional medicines but reference is made to complementary treatments if they affect conventional therapy (e.g., interactions with St John’s wort—see Appendix 1). Further information on herbal medicines is available at www.mhra.gov.uk.

**BNF for Children and marketing authorisation** Where appropriate the doses, indications, cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects in BNF for Children reflect those in the manufacturers’ Summaries of Product Characteristics (SPCs) which, in turn, reflect those in the corresponding marketing authorisations (formerly known as Product Licences). BNF for Children does not generally include proprietary medicines that are not supported by a valid Summary of Product Characteristics or when the marketing authorisation holder has not been able to supply essential information. When a preparation is available from more than one manufacturer, BNF for Children reflects advice that is the most clinically relevant regardless of any variation in the marketing authorisation. Unlicensed products can be obtained from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or special-list importing companies, see p. 899.

As far as possible, medicines should be prescribed within the terms of the marketing authorisation. However, many children require medicines not specifically licensed for paediatric use. Although medicines cannot be promoted outside the limits of the licence, the Medicines Act does not prohibit the use of unlicensed medicines.

**BNF for Children** includes advice involving the use of unlicensed medicines or of licensed medicines for unlicensed uses (‘off-label’ use). Such advice reflects careful consideration of the options available to manage a given condition and the weight of evidence and experience of the unlicensed intervention (see also Unlicensed Medicines, p. 6). Where the advice falls outside a drug’s marketing authorisation, BNF for Children shows the licensing status in the drug monograph. However, limitations of the marketing authorisation should not preclude unlicensed use where clinically appropriate.

### Prescribing unlicensed medicines

Prescribing unlicensed medicines or medicines outside the recommendations of their marketing authorisation alters (and probably increases) the prescriber’s professional responsibility and potential liability. The prescriber should be able to justify and feel competent in using such medicines.

### Drugs and skilled tasks

Prescribers and other healthcare professionals should advise children and their carers if treatment is likely to affect their ability to perform skilled tasks (e.g., driving). This applies especially to drugs with sedative effects; patients should be warned that these effects are increased by alcohol.

General information about a patient’s fitness to drive is available from the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency at www.dvla.gov.uk.

### Oral syringes

**An oral syringe** is supplied when oral liquid medicines are prescribed in doses other than multiples of 5 mL. The oral syringe is marked in 0.5-mL divisions from 1 to 5 mL to measure doses of less than 5 mL (other sizes of oral syringe may also be available). It is provided with an adaptor and an instruction leaflet. The 5-mL spoon is used for doses of 5 mL (or multiples thereof).

### Excipients

Branded oral liquid preparations that do not contain fructose, glucose, or sucrose are described as ‘sugar-free’ in BNF for Children. Preparations containing hydrogenated glucose syrup, mannitol, maltitol, sorbitol, or xylitol are also marked ‘sugar-free’ since they do not cause dental caries. Children receiving
BNFC 2011–2012

medicines containing cariogenic sugars, or their carers, should be advised of dental hygiene measures to prevent caries. Sugar-free preparations should be used whenever possible, particularly if treatment is required for a long period.

Where information on the presence of alcohol, aspartame, gluten, sulphites, tartrazine, arachis (peanut) oil or sesame oil is available, this is indicated in BNF for Children against the relevant preparation. Information is provided on selected excipients in skin preparations (section 13.1.3), in vaccines (section 14.1), and on selected preservatives and excipients in eye drops and injections.

The presence of benzyl alcohol and polyoxyl castor oil (polyethoxylated castor oil) in injections is indicated in BNF for Children. Benzyl alcohol has been associated with a fatal toxic syndrome in preterm neonates, and therefore, parenteral preparations containing the preservative should not be used in neonates. Polyoxyl castor oils, used as vehicles in intravenous injections, have been associated with severe anaphylactoid reactions.

The presence of propylene glycol in oral or parenteral medicines is indicated in BNF for Children; it can cause adverse effects if its elimination is impaired, e.g. in renal failure, in neonates and young children, and in slow metabolisers of the substance. It may interact with metronidazole.

The lactose content in most medicines is too small to cause problems in most lactose-intolerant children. However in severe lactose intolerance, the lactose content should be determined before prescribing. The amount of lactose varies according to manufacturer, product, formulation, and strength.

**Important**

In the absence of information on excipients in BNF for Children and in the product literature (available at [www.emc.medicines.org.uk](http://www.emc.medicines.org.uk)), contact the manufacturer (see Index of Manufacturers) if it is essential to check details.

**Health and safety**

When handling chemical or biological materials particular attention should be given to the possibility of allergy, fire, explosion, radiation, or poisoning. Care is required to avoid sources of heat (including hair dryers) when flammable substances are used on the skin or hair. Irritants such as corticosteroids, some antimicrobials, phenothiazines, and many cytotoxics, are irritant or very potent and should be handled with caution; contact with the skin and inhalation of dust should be avoided. Healthcare professionals and carers should guard against exposure to sensitising, toxic or irritant substances if it is necessary to crush tablets or open capsules.

**EEA and Swiss prescriptions**

Pharmacists can dispense prescriptions issued by doctors and dentists from the European Economic Area (EEA) or Switzerland (except prescriptions for controlled drugs in Schedules 1, 2, or 3, or for drugs without a UK marketing authorisation). Prescriptions should be written in ink or otherwise so as to be indelible, should be dated, should state the name of the patient, should state the address of the prescriber, should contain particulars indicating whether the prescriber is a doctor or dentist, and should be signed by the prescriber.

**Security and validity of prescriptions**

The Councils of the British Medical Association and the Royal Pharmaceutical Society have issued a joint statement on the security and validity of prescriptions. In particular, prescription forms should:

- not be left unattended at reception desks;
- not be left in a car where they may be visible; and
- when not in use, be kept in a locked drawer within the surgery and at home.

Where there is any doubt about the authenticity of a prescription, the pharmacist should contact the prescriber. If this is done by telephone, the number should be obtained from the directory rather than relying on the information on the prescription form, which may be false.

**Patient group direction (PGD)**

In most cases, the most appropriate clinical care will be provided on an individual basis by a prescriber to a specific child. However, a Patient Group Direction for supply and administration of medicines by other healthcare professionals can be used where it would benefit the child’s care without compromising safety.

A Patient Group Direction is a written direction relating to the supply and administration (or administration only) of a licensed prescription-only medicine by certain classes of healthcare professionals; the Direction is signed by a doctor (or dentist) and by a pharmacist. Further information on Patient Group Directions is available in Health Service Circular HSC 2000/026 (England), HDL (2001) 7 (Scotland), and WHC (2000) 116 (Wales) and at [www.nelm.nhs.uk/en/Communities/NeLM/PGDs](http://www.nelm.nhs.uk/en/Communities/NeLM/PGDs).

**NICE and Scottish Medicines Consortium**

Advice issued by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) and by the Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) is included in BNF for Children when relevant. If advice within a NICE Single Technology Appraisal differs from SMC advice, the Scottish Executive expects NHS Boards within NHS Scotland to comply with the SMC advice. Details of the advice together with updates can be obtained from [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk) and from [www.scottishmedicines.org](http://www.scottishmedicines.org).
Prescription writing

Shared care

In its guidelines on responsibility for prescribing (circular EL (91) 127) between hospitals and general practitioners, the Department of Health has advised that legal responsibility for prescribing lies with the doctor who signs the prescription.

Prescriptions3 should be written legibly in ink or otherwise so as to be indelible4, should be dated, should state the full name and address of the patient, and should be signed in ink by the prescriber. The age and the date of birth of the child should preferably be stated, and it is a legal requirement in the case of prescription-only medicines to state the age for children under 12 years.

Wherever appropriate the prescriber should state the current weight of the child to enable the dose prescribed to be checked. Consideration should also be given to including the dose per unit mass e.g. mg/kg or the dose per m2 body-surface area e.g. mg/m2 where this would reduce error.

The following should be noted:

(a) The unnecessary use of decimal points should be avoided, e.g. 3 mg, not 3.0 mg.

Quantities of 1 gram or more should be written as 1 g, etc.

Quantities less than 1 gram should be written in milligrams, e.g. 500 mg, not 0.5 g.

Quantities less than 1 mg should be written in micrograms, e.g. 100 micrograms, not 0.1 mg.

When decimals are unavoidable a zero should be written in front of the decimal point where there is no other figure, e.g. 0.5 mL, not .5 mL.

(b) ‘Micrograms’ and ‘nanograms’ should not be abbreviated. Similarly ‘units’ should not be abbreviated.

(c) The term ‘millilitre’ (ml or mL)4 is used in medicine and pharmacy, and cubic centimetre, c.c., or cm3 should not be used.

(d) Dose and dose frequency should be stated; in the case of preparations to be taken ‘as required’ a minimum dose interval should be specified.

Care should be taken to ensure the child receives the correct dose of the active drug. Therefore, the dose should normally be stated in terms of the mass of the active drug (e.g. ‘125 mg 3 times daily’); terms such as ‘5 mL’ or ‘1 tablet’ should be avoided except for compound preparations.

When doses other than multiples of 5 mL are prescribed for oral liquid preparations the dose-volume will be provided by means of an oral syringe, see p. 2 (except for preparations intended to be measured with a pipette).

Abbreviation of titles

In general, titles of drugs and preparations should be written in full. Unofficial abbreviations should not be used as they may be misinterpreted.

Non-proprietary titles

Where non-proprietary (‘generic’) titles are given, they should be used for prescribing. This will enable any suitable product to be dispensed, thereby saving delay to the patient and sometimes expense to the health service. The only

1. These recommendations are acceptable for prescription-only medicines (see). For items marked (B), (J), (D), and (T), see also Prescribing Controlled Drugs, p. 9.

2. It is permissible to issue carbon copies of NHS prescriptions as long as they are signed in ink.

3. Computer-generated facsimile signatures do not meet the legal requirement.

4. The use of capital ‘L’ in mL is a printing convention throughout BNF for Children; both ‘mL’ and ‘ml’ are recognised SI abbreviations.

(e) For suitable quantities of dermatological preparations, see section 13.1.2.

(f) The names of drugs and preparations should be written clearly and not abbreviated, using approved titles only (see also advice in box on p. 5 to avoid creating generic titles for modified-release preparations).

(g) The quantity to be supplied may be stated by indicating the number of days of treatment required in the box provided on NHS forms. In most cases the exact amount will be supplied. This does not apply to items directed to be used as required—if the dose and frequency are not given then the quantity to be supplied needs to be stated.

When several items are ordered on one form the box can be marked with the number of days of treatment provided the quantity is added for any item for which the amount cannot be calculated.

(h) Although directions should preferably be in English without abbreviation, it is recognised that some Latin abbreviations are used (for details see Inside Back Cover).

For a sample prescription, see below.

Abbreviation of titles

In general, titles of drugs and preparations should be written in full. Unofficial abbreviations should not be used as they may be misinterpreted.

Non-proprietary titles

Where non-proprietary (‘generic’) titles are given, they should be used for prescribing. This will enable any suitable product to be dispensed, thereby saving delay to the patient and sometimes expense to the health service. The only
exception is where there is a demonstrable difference in clinical effect between each manufacturer’s version of the formulation, making it important that the child should always receive the same brand; in such cases, the brand name or the manufacturer should be stated.

Non-proprietary names of compound preparations
Non-proprietary names of compound preparations which appear in BNF for Children are those that have been compiled by the British Pharmacopoeia Commission or another recognised body; whenever possible they reflect the names of the active ingredients.

Prescribers should avoid creating their own compound names for the purposes of generic prescribing; such names do not have an approved definition and can be misinterpreted.

Special care should be taken to avoid errors when prescribing compound preparations; in particular the hyphen in the prefix ‘co-’ should be retained.

Special care should also be taken to avoid creating generic names for modified-release preparations where the use of these names could lead to confusion between formulations with different duration of action.

Strengths and quantities  The strength or quantity to be contained in capsules, lozenges, tablets, etc. should be stated by the prescriber. In particular, strengths of liquid preparations should be clearly stated (e.g. 125 mg/5 mL).
Supply of medicines

When supplying a medicine for a child, the pharmacist should ensure that the child and the child’s carer understand the nature and identity of the medicine and how it should be used. The child and the carer should be provided with appropriate information (e.g. how long the medicine should be taken for and what to do if a dose is missed or the child vomits soon after the dose is given).

Safety in the home  Carers and relatives of children must be warned to keep all medicines out of the reach and sight of children. Tablets, capsules and oral and external liquid preparations must be dispensed in a reclosable child-resistant container unless:

- the medicine is in an original pack or patient pack such as to make this inadvisable;
- the child’s carer will have difficulty in opening a child-resistant container;
- a specific request is made that the product shall not be dispensed in a child-resistant container;
- no suitable child-resistant container exists for a particular liquid preparation.

All patients should be advised to dispose of unwanted medicines by returning them to a pharmacy for destruction.

Strength and quantities If a pharmacist receives an incomplete prescription for a systemically administered preparation1 and considers it would not be appropriate for the patient to return to the prescriber, the following procedures will apply:

(a) an attempt must always be made to contact the prescriber to ascertain the intention;
(b) if the attempt is successful the pharmacist must, where practicable, subsequently arrange for details of quantity, strength where applicable, and dosage to be inserted by the prescriber on the incomplete form;
(c) where, although the prescriber has been contacted, it has not proved possible to obtain the written intention regarding an incomplete prescription, the pharmacist may endorse the form “p.c.” (prescriber contacted) and add details of the quantity and strength where applicable of the preparation supplied, and of the dose indicated. The endorsement should be initialled and dated by the pharmacist;
(d) where the prescriber cannot be contacted and the pharmacist has sufficient information to make a professional judgement the preparation may be dispensed. If the quantity is missing the pharmacist may supply sufficient to complete up to 5 days’ treatment; except that where a combination pack (i.e. a proprietary pack containing more than one medicinal product) or oral contraceptive is prescribed by name only, the smallest pack shall be dispensed. In all cases the prescription must be endorsed “p.c.” (prescriber not contacted), the quantity, the dose, and the strength (where applicable) of the preparation supplied must be indicated, and the endorsement must be initialled and dated;
(e) if the pharmacist has any doubt about exercising discretion, an incomplete prescription must be referred back to the prescriber.

Unlicensed medicines A drug or formulation that is not covered by a marketing authorisation (see also BNF for Children and Marketing Authorisation) may be obtained from a pharmaceutical company, imported by a specialist importer, manufactured by a commercial or hospital licensed manufacturing unit (see Special-order Manufacturers, p. 809), or prepared extemporaneously (see below) against a prescription.

The safeguards that apply to products with marketing authorisation should be extended, as far as possible, to the use of unlicensed medicines. The safety, efficacy, and quality (including labelling) of unlicensed medicines should be assured by means of clear policies on their prescribing, purchase, supply, and administration. Extra care is required with unlicensed medicines because less information may be available on the drug and any formulation of the drug.

The following should be agreed with the supplier when ordering an unlicensed or extemporaneously prepared medicine:

- the specification of the formulation;
- documentation confirming the specification and quality of the product supplied (e.g. a certificate of conformity or of analysis);
- for imported preparations product and licensing information should be supplied in English.

Extemporaneous preparations A product should be dispensed extemporaneously only when no product with a marketing authorisation is available. Every effort should be made to ensure that an extemporaneously prepared product is stable and that it delivers the requisite dose reliably; the child should be provided with a consistent formulation regardless of where the medicine is supplied to minimise variations in quality. Where there is doubt about the formulation, advice should be sought from a medicines information centre, the pharmacy at a children’s hospital, a hospital production unit, a hospital quality control department, or the manufacturer.

In many cases it is preferable to give a licensed product by an unlicensed route (e.g. an injection solution given by mouth) than to prepare a special formulation. When tablets or capsules are cut, dispersed, or used for preparing liquids immediately before administration, it is important to confirm uniform dispersal of the active ingredient, especially if only a portion of the solid content (e.g. a tablet segment) is used or if only an aliquot of the liquid is to be administered.

In some cases the child’s clinical condition may require a dose to be administered in the absence of full information on the method of administration. It is important to ensure that the appropriate supporting information is available at the earliest opportunity.

Preparation of products that produce harmful dust (e.g. cytotoxic drugs, hormones, or potentially sensitising

---

1. With the exception of temazepam, an incomplete prescription is not acceptable for controlled drugs in schedules 2 and 3 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001.
drugs such as neomycin) should be avoided or undertaken with appropriate precautions to protect staff and carers (see also Safety in the Home, above).

The BP direction that a preparation must be freshly prepared indicates that it must be made not more than 24 hours before it is issued for use. The direction that a preparation should be recently prepared indicates that deterioration is likely if the preparation is stored for longer than about 4 weeks at 15–25°C.

The term water used without qualification means either potable water freshly drawn direct from the public supply and suitable for drinking or freshly boiled and cooled purified water. The latter should be used if the public supply is from a local storage tank or if the potable water is unsuitable for a particular preparation. See also Water for Injections, section 9.2.2.

Labelling medicines. The name of the medicine should appear on the label unless the prescriber indicates otherwise; the name shown on the label should be that written on the prescription. The strength should also be stated on the label in the case of preparations that are available in different strengths.

Labels should indicate the total quantity of the product dispensed in the container to which the label refers. This requirement applies equally to solid, liquid, internal, and external preparations. If a product is dispensed in more than one container, the reference should be to the amount in each container.
Emergency supply requested by member of the public

Pharmacists are sometimes called upon by members of the public to make an emergency supply of medicines. The Prescription Only Medicines (Human Use) Order 1997 allows exemptions from the Prescription Only requirements for emergency supply to be made by a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business provided:

(a) that the pharmacist has interviewed the person requesting the prescription-only medicine and is satisfied:
   (i) that there is immediate need for the prescription-only medicine and that it is impracticable in the circumstances to obtain a prescription without undue delay;
   (ii) that treatment with the prescription-only medicine has on a previous occasion been prescribed for the person requesting it;
   (iii) as to the dose that it would be appropriate for the person to take;

(b) that no greater quantity shall be supplied than will provide 5 days’ treatment of phenobarbital, phenobarbital sodium, or Controlled Drugs in Schedules 4 or 5, 1 or 30 days’ treatment for other prescription-only medicines, except when the prescription-only medicine is:
   (i) insulin, an ointment or cream, or a preparation for the relief of asthma in an aerosol dispenser when the smallest pack can be supplied;
   (ii) an oral contraceptive when a full cycle may be supplied;
   (iii) an antibiotic in liquid form for oral administration when the smallest quantity that will provide a full course of treatment can be supplied;

(c) that an entry shall be made in the prescription book stating:
   (i) the date of supply;
   (ii) the name, quantity, and, where appropriate, the pharmaceutical form and strength;
   (iii) the name and address of the patient;
   (iv) the nature of the emergency;

(d) that the container or package must be labelled to show:
   (i) the date of supply;
   (ii) the name, quantity, and, where appropriate, the pharmaceutical form and strength;
   (iii) the name of the patient;
   (iv) the name and address of the pharmacy;
   (v) the words ‘Emergency supply’;
   (vi) the words ‘Keep out of the reach of children’ (or similar warning);

(e) that the prescription-only medicine is not a substance specifically excluded from the emergency supply provision, and does not contain a Controlled Drug specified in Schedules 1, 2, or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 except for phenobarbital or phenobarbital sodium for the treatment of epilepsy: for details see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, No. 34, London, Pharmaceutical Press, 2010 (and subsequent editions as available).1

Emergency supply requested by prescriber

Emergency supply of a prescription-only medicine may also be made at the request of a doctor, a dentist, a supplementary prescriber, a community practitioner nurse prescriber, a nurse, pharmacist or optometrist independent prescriber, or a doctor or dentist from the European Economic Area or Switzerland, provided:

(a) that the pharmacist is satisfied that the prescriber by reason of some emergency is unable to furnish a prescription immediately;

(b) that the prescriber has undertaken to furnish a prescription within 72 hours;

(c) that the medicine is supplied in accordance with the directions of the prescriber requesting it;

(d) that the medicine is not a Controlled Drug specified in Schedules 1, 2, or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 except for phenobarbital or phenobarbital sodium for the treatment of epilepsy: for details see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, No. 34, London, Pharmaceutical Press, 2010 (and subsequent editions as available);2

(e) that an entry shall be made in the prescription book stating:
   (i) the date of supply;
   (ii) the name, quantity, and, where appropriate, the pharmaceutical form and strength;
   (iii) the name and address of the practitioner requesting the emergency supply;
   (iv) the name and address of the patient;
   (v) the date on the prescription;
   (vi) when the prescription is received the entry should be amended to include the date on which it is received.

Royal Pharmaceutical Society’s guidelines

1. The pharmacist should consider the medical consequences of not supplying a medicine in an emergency.

2. If the pharmacist is unable to make an emergency supply of a medicine the pharmacist should advise the patient how to obtain essential medical care.

For conditions that apply to supplies made at the request of a patient, see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, No. 34, London Pharmaceutical Press, 2010 (and subsequent editions).

---

1. Doctors or dentists from the European Economic Area and Switzerland, or their patients, cannot request an emergency supply of Controlled Drugs in schedules 1, 2, or 3, or drugs that do not have a UK marketing authorisation.
Prescribing Controlled Drugs

The Misuse of Drugs Act, 1971 prohibits certain activities in relation to ‘Controlled Drugs’, in particular their manufacture, supply, and possession. The penalties applicable to offences involving the different drugs are graded broadly according to the applicable to offences involving the different drugs are graded broadly according to the applicable to offences involving the different drugs are graded broadly according to the penalties. The penalties apply (see Department of Health Guidance, p. 10) and Schedule 4 Controlled Drugs are not subject to safe custody requirements.

Schedule 5 includes those preparations which, because of their strength, are exempt from virtually all Controlled Drug requirements other than retention of invoices for two years.

Prescriptions. Preparations in Schedules 2, 3, and 4 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments) are identified throughout BNF for Children using the following symbols:

- S2 for preparations in Schedule 2;
- S3 for preparations in Schedule 3;
- S4.1 for preparations in Schedule 4 (Part I);
- S4.2 for preparations in Schedule 4 (Part II).

The principal legal requirements relating to medical prescriptions are listed below (see also Department of Health Guidance, p. 10).

Prescription requirements. Prescriptions for Controlled Drugs that are subject to prescription requirements must be indelible and must be signed by the prescriber, be dated, and specify the prescriber’s address. The prescription must always state:

1. The name and address of the patient;
2. In the case of a preparation, the form and where appropriate the strength of the preparation;
3. either the total quantity (in both words and figures) of the preparation, or the number (in both words and figures) of dosage units, as appropriate, to be supplied; in any other case, the total quantity (in both words and figures) of the Controlled Drug to be supplied;
4. The dose;
5. The words ‘for dental treatment only’ if issued by a dentist.

A pharmacist is not allowed to dispense a Controlled Drug unless all the information required by law is given on the prescription. In the case of a prescription for a Controlled Drug in Schedule 2 or 3, a pharmacist can amend the prescription if it specifies the total quantity only in words or in figures or if it contains minor typographical errors, provided that such amendments are indelible and clearly attributable to the pharmacist. Failure to comply with the regulations concerning the

1. All preparations in Schedules 2 and 3, except temazepam.
2. A machine-written prescription is acceptable. The prescriber’s signature must be handwritten.
3. The dosage form (e.g. tablets) must be included on a Controlled Drugs prescription irrespective of whether it is implicit in the proprietary name (e.g. MST Continus) or whether only one form is available.
4. When more than one strength of a preparation exists the strength required must be specified.
5. The Home Office has advised that quantities of liquid preparations such as methadone mixture should be written in millilitres.
6. The instruction ‘one as directed’ constitutes a dose but ‘as directed’ does not.
7. Implementation date for N. Ireland not confirmed.
Prescribing Controlled Drugs

Instalments and ‘repeats’ A prescription may order a Controlled Drug to be dispensed by instalments; the amount of instalments and the intervals to be observed must be specified.

Instalment prescriptions must be dispensed in accordance with the directions in the prescription. However, the Home Office has approved specific wording which may be included in an instalment prescription to cover certain situations; for example, if a pharmacy is closed on the day when an instalment is due. For details see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, No. 34, London, Pharmaceutical Press, 2010 (and subsequent editions as available) or see Drug Misuse and Dependence: UK Guidelines on Clinical Management (2007), available at www.nla.nhs.uk/uploads/clinical_guidelines_2007.pdf.

Prescriptions ordering ‘repeats’ on the same form are not permitted for Controlled Drugs in Schedules 2 or 3.

Private prescriptions Private prescriptions for Controlled Drugs in Schedules 2 and 3 must be written on specially designated forms provided by Primary Care Trusts in England, Health Boards in Scotland, Local Health Boards in Wales or the Northern Ireland Central Services Agency; in addition, prescriptions must specify the prescriber’s identification number. Prescriptions to be supplied by a pharmacist in hospital are exempt from the requirement for private prescriptions.

Department of Health guidance Guidance (June 2006) issued by the Department of Health in England on prescribing and dispensing of Controlled Drugs requires:

- in general, prescriptions for Controlled Drugs in Schedules 2, 3, and 4 to be limited to a supply of up to 30 days’ treatment; exceptionally, to cover a justifiable clinical need and after consideration of any risk, a prescription can be issued for a longer period, but the reasons for the decision should be recorded on the patient’s notes;
- the patient’s identifier to be shown on NHS and private prescriptions for Controlled Drugs in Schedules 2 and 3.

Further information is available at www.dh.gov.uk. For a sample prescription, see above.

Dependence and misuse The most serious drugs of addiction are cocaine, diamorphine (heroin), morphine, and the synthetic opioids.

Despite marked reduction in the prescribing of amphetamines there is concern that abuse of illicit amphetamine and related compounds is widespread.

Benzodiazepines are commonly misused. However, the misuse of barbiturates is now uncommon because of their declining medicinal use and consequent availability.

Cannabis (Indian hemp) has no approved medicinal use and cannot be prescribed by doctors. Its use is illegal but widespread. Cannabis is a mild hallucinogen seldom accompanied by a desire to increase the dose; withdrawal symptoms are unusual. Lysergide (lysergic acid diethylamide, LSD) is a much more potent hallucinogen; its use can lead to severe psychotic states which can be life-threatening.

There are concerns over increases in the availability and misuse of other drugs with variously combined hallucinogenic, anaesthetic, or sedative properties. These include ketamine and gamma-hydroxybutyrate (sodium oxybate, GHB).

Prescribing drugs likely to cause dependence or misuse The prescriber has three main responsibilities:

- to avoid creating dependence by introducing drugs to patients without sufficient reason. In this context, the proper use of the morphine-like drugs is well understood. The dangers of other Controlled Drugs are less clear because recognition of dependence is not easy and its effects, and those of withdrawal, are less obvious;
- to see that the patient does not gradually increase the dose of a drug, given for good medical reasons, to the point where dependence becomes more likely. The prescriber should keep a close eye on the amount prescribed to prevent patients or their carers from accumulating stocks. A minimal amount should be prescribed in the first instance, or when seeing a new patient for the first time;
to avoid being used as an unwitting source of supply for addicts and being vigilant to methods for obtaining medicines which include visiting more than one doctor, fabricating stories, and forging prescriptions.

 Patients under temporary care should be given only small supplies of drugs unless they present an unequivocal letter from their own doctor. It is sensible to reduce dosages steadily or to issue weekly or even daily prescriptions for small amounts if dependence is suspected.

The stealing and misuse of prescription forms could be minimised by the following precautions:

(a) do not leave unattended if called away from the consulting room or at reception desks; do not leave in a car where they may be visible; when not in use, keep in a locked drawer within the surgery and at home;

(b) draw a diagonal line across the blank part of the form under the prescription;

(c) the quantity should be shown in words and figures when prescribing drugs prone to abuse; this is obligatory for controlled drugs (see Prescriptions, above);

(d) alterations are best avoided but if any are made they should be clear and unambiguous; add initials against altered items;

(e) if prescriptions are left for collection they should be left in a safe place in a sealed envelope.

**Travelling abroad** Prescribed drugs listed in Schedule 4 Part II (CD Anab) and Schedule 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 are not subject to export or import licensing. However, patients intending to travel abroad for more than 3 months carrying any amount of drugs listed in Schedules 2, 3, or 4 Part I (CD Benz) will require a personal export/import licence. Further details can be obtained at www.homeoffice.gov.uk/drugs/licensing/personal, or from the Home Office by contacting licensing_enquiry.aadu@homeoffice.gsi.gov.uk (in cases of emergency, telephone (020) 7035 0484).

Applications must be supported by a covering letter from the prescriber and should give details of:

- the patient’s name and current address;
- the quantities of drugs to be carried;
- the strength and form in which the drugs will be dispensed;
- the country or countries of destination;
- the dates of travel to and from the United Kingdom.

Applications for licences should be sent to the Home Office, Drugs Licensing, Peel Building, 2 Marsham Street, London, SW1P 4DF. Alternatively, completed application forms can be emailed to licensing_enquiry.aadu@homeoffice.gsi.gov.uk with a scanned copy of the covering letter from the prescriber. A minimum of two weeks should be allowed for processing the application.

Patients travelling for less than 3 months do not require a personal export/import licence for carrying Controlled Drugs, but are advised to carry a letter from the prescribing doctor. Those travelling for more than 3 months are advised to make arrangements to have their medication prescribed by a practitioner in the country they are visiting.

**Notification of drug misusers** Doctors should report cases of drug misuse to their regional or national drug misuse database or centre—for further advice and contact telephone numbers consult the BNF.
Adverse reactions to drugs

Any drug may produce unwanted or unexpected adverse reactions. Rapid detection and recording of adverse drug reactions is of vital importance so that unrecognised hazards are identified promptly and appropriate regulatory action is taken to ensure that medicines are used safely. Healthcare professionals and coroners (see also Self-reporting, below) are urged to report suspected adverse drug reactions directly to the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) through the Yellow Card Scheme using the electronic form at www.yellowcard.gov.uk. Alternatively, prepaid Yellow Cards for reporting are available from the address below and are also bound in this book (inside back cover).

Send Yellow Cards to:
FREEPOST YELLOW CARD
(No other address details required)
Tel: 0800 731 6789

Suspected adverse drug reactions to any therapeutic agent should be reported, including drugs (self-medication as well as those prescribed), blood products, vaccines, radiographic contrast media, complementary and herbal products.

The reporting of all suspected adverse drug reactions, no matter how minor, in children under 18 years, including those relating to unlicensed or off-label use of medicines, is strongly encouraged through the Yellow Card Scheme even if the intensive monitoring symbol (▼, see below) has been removed. This is because experience in children may still be limited.

The identification and reporting of adverse reactions to drugs in children is particularly important because:

- the action of the drug and its pharmacokinetics in children (especially in the very young) may be different from that in adults;
- drugs may not be extensively tested in children;
- children may be more susceptible to development disorders or they may have delayed adverse reactions which do not occur in adults;
- many drugs are not specifically licensed for use in children and are used ‘off-label’;
- suitable formulations may not be available to allow precise dosing in children;
- the nature and course of illnesses and adverse drug reactions may differ between adults and children.

Spontaneous reporting is particularly valuable for recognising possible new hazards rapidly. An adverse reaction should be reported even if it is not certain that the drug has caused it, or if the reaction is well recognised, or if other drugs have been given at the same time. Reports of overdoses (deliberate or accidental) can complicate the assessment of adverse drug reactions, but provide important information on the potential toxicity of drugs.

A 24-hour Freephone service is available to all parts of the UK for advice and information on suspected adverse drug reactions; contact the National Yellow Card Information Service at the MHRA on 0800 731 6789. Outside office hours a telephone-answering machine will take messages.

The following Yellow Card Centres can be contacted for further information:

Yellow Card Centre, North West
Freepost SW2991
70 Pembroke Place
Liverpool L69 3GF
Tel: (0151) 794 8122

Yellow Card Centre, Northern & Yorkshire
Freepost SW2991
Wolfson Unit
Claremont Place
Newcastle upon Tyne NE2 4HH
Tel: (0191) 260 6181

Yellow Card Centre, Scotland
Freepost NAT3271
CARDS, Royal Infirmary of Edinburgh
Edinburgh EH16 4SA
Tel: (0131) 242 2919

The MHRA’s database facilitates the monitoring of adverse drug reactions.

More detailed information on reporting and a list of products currently under intensive monitoring can be found on the MHRA website:
www.mhra.gov.uk.

MHRA Drug Safety Update
Drug Safety Update is a monthly newsletter from the MHRA and the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM); it is available at www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate.

Self-reporting
Patients and their carers can also report suspected adverse drug reactions to the MHRA. Reports can be submitted directly to the MHRA through the Yellow Card Scheme using the electronic form at www.yellowcard.gov.uk or by telephone on 0808 100 3352. Alternatively, patient Yellow Cards are available from pharmacies and GP surgeries, or can be downloaded from www.mhra.gov.uk; where more detailed information on patient reporting is available. Information for patients about the Yellow Card Scheme is available in other languages at www.yellowcard.gov.uk.

Prescription-event monitoring
In addition to the MHRA’s Yellow Card Scheme, an independent scheme monitors the safety of new medicines using a different approach. The Drug Safety Research Unit identifies patients who have been prescribed selected new medicines and collects data on clinical events in these patients. The data are submitted on a voluntary basis by general practitioners on green forms. More information about the scheme and the Unit’s educational material is available from www.dsru.org.

Newer drugs and vaccines
Only limited information is available from clinical trials on the safety of new medicines. Further understanding about the safety of
medicines depends on the availability of information from routine clinical practice.

The black triangle symbol (\(\triangle\)) identifies newly licensed medicines that are monitored intensively by the MHRA. Such medicines include new active substances, biosimilar medicines, medicines that have been licensed for administration by a new route or drug delivery system, or for significant new indications which may alter the established risks and benefits of that drug, or that contain a new combination of active substances. There is no standard time for which products retain a black triangle; safety data are usually reviewed after 2 years.

Adverse reactions to medical devices Suspected adverse reactions to medical devices including dental or surgical materials, intra-uterine devices, and contact lens fluids should be reported. Information on reporting these can be found at: www.mhra.gov.uk.

Side-effects in the BNF for Children The BNF for Children includes clinically relevant side-effects for most drugs; an exhaustive list is not included for drugs that are used by specialists (e.g. cytotoxic drugs and drugs used in anaesthesia). Where causality has not been established, side-effects in the manufacturers’ literature may be omitted from the BNF for Children.

In the product literature the frequency of side-effects is generally described as follows:

- Very common: greater than 1 in 10
- Common: 1 in 100 to 1 in 10
- Uncommon (‘less commonly’ in BNF for Children): 1 in 1000 to 1 in 100
- Rare: 1 in 10 000 to 1 in 1000
- Very rare: less than 1 in 10 000

Special problems

Symptoms Children may be poor at expressing the symptoms of an adverse drug reaction and parental opinion may be required.

Delayed drug effects Some reactions (e.g. cancers and effects on development) may become manifest months or years after exposure. Any suspicion of such an association should be reported directly to the MHRA through the Yellow Card Scheme.

Congenital abnormalities When an infant is born with a congenital abnormality or there is a malformed aborted fetus doctors are asked to consider whether this might be an adverse reaction to a drug and to report all drugs (including self-medication) taken during pregnancy.

Prevention of adverse reactions

Adverse reactions may be prevented as follows:

- never use any drug unless there is a good indication. If the patient is pregnant do not use a drug unless the need for it is imperative;
- allergy and idiosyncrasy are important causes of adverse drug reactions. Ask if the child has had previous reactions to the drug or formulation;
- prescribe as few drugs as possible and give very clear instructions to the child, parent, or carer;
- whenever possible use a familiar drug; with a new drug be particularly alert for adverse reactions or unexpected events;
- consider if excipients (e.g. colouring agents) may be contributing to the adverse reaction. If the reaction is minor, a trial of an alternative formulation of the same drug may be considered before abandoning the drug;
- obtain a full drug history including asking if the child is already taking other drugs including over-the-counter medicines; interactions may occur;
- age and hepatic or renal disease may alter the metabolism or excretion of drugs, particularly in neonates, which can affect the potential for adverse effects. Genetic factors may also be responsible for variations in metabolism, and therefore for the adverse effects of the drug;
- warn the child, parent, or carer if serious adverse reactions are liable to occur.

Defective medicines

During the manufacture or distribution of a medicine an error or accident may occur whereby the finished product does not conform to its specification. While such a defect may impair the therapeutic effect of the product and could adversely affect the health of a patient, it should not be confused with an Adverse Drug Reaction where the product conforms to its specification.

The Defective Medicines Report Centre assists with the investigation of problems arising from licensed medicinal products thought to be defective and co-ordinates any necessary protective action. Reports on suspect defective medicinal products should include the brand or the non-proprietary name, the name of the manufacturer or supplier, the strength and dosage form of the product, the product licence number, the batch number or numbers of the product, the nature of the defect, and an account of any action already taken in consequence. The Centre can be contacted at:

The Defective Medicines Report Centre
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency
151 Buckingham Palace Road
London, SW1W 9SZ
Tel: (020) 3080 6588
info@mhra.gsi.gov.uk
Prescribing in hepatic impairment

Children have a large reserve of hepatic metabolic capacity and modification of the choice and dosage of drugs is usually unnecessary even in apparently severe liver disease. However, special consideration is required in the following situations:

- liver failure characterised by severe derangement of liver enzymes and profound jaundice; the use of sedative drugs, opioids, and drugs such as diuretics and amphotericin which produce hypokalaemia may precipitate hepatic encephalopathy;
- impaired coagulation, which can affect response to oral anticoagulants;
- in cholestatic jaundice elimination may be impaired of drugs such as fusidic acid and rifampicin which are excreted in the bile;
- in hypoproteinaemia, the effect of highly protein-bound drugs such as phenytoin, prednisolone, warfarin, and benzodiazepines may be increased;
- use of hepatotoxic drugs is more likely to cause toxicity in children with liver disease; such drugs should be avoided if possible;
- in neonates, particularly preterm neonates, and also in infants metabolic pathways may differ from older children and adults because liver enzyme pathways may be immature.

Where care is needed when prescribing in hepatic impairment, this is indicated under the relevant drug in BNF for Children.

Prescribing in renal impairment

The use of drugs in children with reduced renal function can give rise to problems for several reasons:

- reduced renal excretion of a drug or its metabolites may produce toxicity;
- sensitivity to some drugs is increased even if elimination is unimpaired;
- many side-effects are tolerated poorly by children with renal impairment;
- some drugs are not effective when renal function is reduced;
- neonates, particularly preterm, may have immature renal function.

Many of these problems can be avoided by reducing the dose or by using alternative drugs.

Principles of dose adjustment in renal impairment

The level of renal function below which the dose of a drug must be reduced depends on the proportion of the drug eliminated by renal excretion and its toxicity.

For many drugs with only minor or no dose-related side-effects, very precise modification of the dose regimen is unnecessary and a simple scheme for dose reduction is sufficient.

For more toxic drugs with a small safety margin dose regimens based on glomerular filtration rate should be used. When both efficacy and toxicity are closely related to plasma-drug concentration, recommended regimens should be regarded only as a guide to initial treatment; subsequent doses must be adjusted according to clinical response and plasma-drug concentration.

The following equations provide a guide to glomerular filtration rate.

\[
\text{Child over 1 year:} \\
\text{Estimated glomerular filtration rate (mL/minute/1.73 m}^2) = 40 \times \frac{\text{height (cm)}}{\text{serum creatinine (micromol/litre)}}
\]

\[
\text{Neonate:} \\
\text{Estimated glomerular filtration rate (mL/minute/1.73 m}^2) = 30 \times \frac{\text{height (cm)}}{\text{serum creatinine (micromol/litre)}}
\]

The serum-creatinine concentration is sometimes used as a measure of renal function but is only a rough guide even when corrected for age, weight, and sex.

1. The values used in these formulas may differ according to locality or laboratory.
Important

The information on dose adjustment in *BNF for Children* is expressed in terms of estimated glomerular filtration rate.

Renal function in adults is increasingly being reported as estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) normalised to a body surface area of 1.73 m²; however, eGFR is derived from the MDRD (Modification of Diet in Renal Disease) formula which is not validated for use in children. eGFR derived from the MDRD formula should not be used to adjust drug doses in children with renal impairment.

In *BNF for Children*, values for measures of renal function are included where possible. However, where such values are not available, the *BNF for Children* reflects the terms used in the published information.

**Chronic kidney disease in adults: UK guidelines for identification, management and referral** (March 2006) defines renal function as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree of impairment</th>
<th>eGFR - mL/minute/1.73 m²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal: Stage 1</td>
<td>More than 90 (with other evidence of kidney damage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild: Stage 2</td>
<td>60–89 (with other evidence of kidney damage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate: Stage 3</td>
<td>30–59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe: Stage 4</td>
<td>15–29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Established renal failure: Stage 5</td>
<td>Less than 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) derived from the Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) formula for use in patients over 18 years

2. NICE clinical guideline 73 (September 2008)—Chronic kidney disease: Stage 3A eGFR = 45–59, Stage 3B eGFR = 30–44

Dialysis

For prescribing in children on renal replacement therapy consult specialist literature.

Drug prescribing should be kept to the minimum in all children with severe renal disease.

If even mild renal impairment is considered likely on clinical grounds, renal function should be checked before prescribing any drug which requires dose modification.

Where care is needed when prescribing in renal impairment, this is indicated under the relevant drug in *BNF for Children*. 
Prescribing in pregnancy

Drugs can have harmful effects on the fetus at any time during pregnancy. It is important to bear this in mind when prescribing for a female of childbearing age or for men trying to father a child.

During the first trimester drugs may produce congenital malformations (teratogenesis), and the period of greatest risk is from the third to the eleventh week of pregnancy.

During the second and third trimesters drugs may affect the growth and functional development of the fetus or have toxic effects on fetal tissues, and drugs given shortly before term or during labour may have adverse effects on labour or on the neonate after delivery.

BNF for Children identifies drugs which:
- may have harmful effects in pregnancy and indicates the trimester of risk;
- are not known to be harmful in pregnancy.

The information is based on human data but information on animal studies has been included for some drugs when its omission might be misleading. Maternal drug doses may require adjustment during pregnancy due to changes in maternal physiology, but this is beyond the scope of BNF for Children.

Where care is needed when prescribing in pregnancy, this is indicated under the relevant drug in BNF for Children.

Breast-feeding is beneficial; the immunological and nutritional value of breast milk to the infant is greater than that of formula feeds.

Although there is concern that drugs taken by the mother might affect the infant, there is very little information on this. In the absence of evidence of an effect, the potential for harm to the infant can be inferred from:
- the amount of drug or active metabolite of the drug delivered to the infant (dependent on the pharmacokinetic characteristics of the drug in the mother);
- the efficiency of absorption, distribution and elimination of the drug by the infant (infant pharmacokinetics);
- the nature of the effect of the drug on the infant (pharmacodynamic properties of the drug in the infant).

Most medicines given to a mother cause no harm to breast-fed infants and there are few contra-indications to breast-feeding when maternal medicines are necessary. However, administration of some drugs to nursing mothers can harm the infant. In the first week of life, some such as preterm or jaundiced infants are at a slightly higher risk of toxicity.

Toxicity to the infant can occur if the drug enters the milk in pharmacologically significant quantities. The concentration in milk of some drugs (e.g. fluvastatin) may exceed the concentration in maternal plasma so that therapeutic doses in the mother can cause toxicity to the infant. Some drugs inhibit the infant’s sucking reflex (e.g. phenobarbital) while others can affect lactation (e.g. bromocriptine). Drugs in breast milk may, at least theoretically, cause hypersensitivity in the infant even when concentration is too low for a pharmacological effect. BNF for Children identifies drugs:
- which should be used with caution or which are contra-indicated in breast-feeding for the reasons given above;
- which, on present evidence, may be given to the mother during breast-feeding, because they appear in milk in amounts which are too small to be harmful to the infant;
- which are not known to be harmful to the infant although they are present in milk in significant amounts.

Where care is needed when prescribing in breast-feeding, this is indicated under the relevant drug in BNF for Children.
Prescribing in palliative care

Palliative care is the active total care of children and young adults who have incurable, life-limiting conditions and are not expected to survive beyond young adulthood.

The child may be cared for in a hospice or at home according to the needs of the child and the child’s family. In all cases, children should receive total care of their physical, emotional, social, and spiritual needs, and their families should be supported throughout. In particular, specialist palliative care is essential for end-of-life care of the child and for supporting the family through death and bereavement.

Drug treatment The number of drugs should be as few as possible. Oral medication is usually appropriate unless there is severe nausea and vomiting, dysphagia, weakness, or coma, when parenteral medication may be necessary.

Pain Analgesics are more effective in preventing pain than in the relief of established pain; it is important that they are given regularly.

Paracetamol (p. 200) or a NSAID (section 10.1.1) given regularly will often make the use of opioid analgesics unnecessary. A NSAID may also control the pain of bone secondaries. Radiotherapy and bisphosphonates (section 6.6.2) may also be useful for pain due to bone metastases.

An opioid analgesic (section 4.7.2) such as codeine (p. 204), alone or in combination with a non-opioid analgesic at adequate dosage, may be helpful in the control of moderate pain if non-opioid analgesics alone are not sufficient. If these preparations do not control the pain, morphine (p. 207) is the most useful opioid analgesic. Alternatives to morphine, including transdermal fentanyl (see below and p. 206), are best initiated by those with experience in palliative care. Initiation of an opioid analgesic should not be delayed by concern over a theoretical likelihood of psychological or physical dependence (addiction).

Equivalent single doses of opioid analgesics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analgesic</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Morphin salts (oral)</td>
<td>10 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamorphine hydrochloride</td>
<td>3 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydromorphine hydrochloride</td>
<td>1.3 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxycodone (oral)</td>
<td>5 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oral route Morphine (p. 207) is given by mouth as an oral solution or as standard (‘immediate release’) tablets regularly every 4 hours, the initial dose depending largely on the patient’s previous treatment. If the first dose of morphine is no more effective than the previous analgesic, the next dose should be increased by 30–50%, the aim being to choose the lowest dose that prevents pain. The dose should be adjusted with careful assessment of the pain, and the use of adjuvant analgesics (such as NSAIDs) should also be considered. Although low doses of morphine are usually adequate there should be no hesitation in increasing the dose stepwise according to response if necessary.

When the pain is controlled and the patient’s 24-hour morphine requirement is established, the daily dose can be given as a single dose or in 2 divided doses as a modified-release preparation. The first dose of the modified-release preparation is given within 30 minutes of the last dose of the oral solution. The child should be reviewed regularly for treatment efficacy and side-effects.

MST Continus® tablets or suspension (p. 209) are designed for twice daily administration; MXL® capsules (p. 209) allow administration of the total daily morphine requirement as a single dose.

Alternatively, a modified-release preparation may be commenced immediately and the dose adjusted according to pain control. The starting dose of modified-release preparations designed for twice daily administration is usually 200–800 micrograms/kg every 12 hours if no other analgesic (or only paracetamol) has been taken previously, but to replace a weaker opioid analgesic (such as codeine) the starting dose is usually higher. Increments should be made up to the dose, not to the frequency of administration, which should remain at every 12 hours.

If pain occurs between regular doses of morphine (‘breakthrough pain’), an additional dose (‘rescue dose’) should be given. An additional dose should also be given 30 minutes before an activity that causes pain (e.g. wound dressing). Morphine, as oral solution or standard formulation tablets, should be prescribed for breakthrough pain. The standard dose of a strong opioid for breakthrough pain is usually one-tenth to one-sixth of the standard formulation tablets, should be prescribed for breakthrough pain. The standard dose of a strong opioid for breakthrough pain is usually one-tenth to one-sixth of the regular 24 hour total daily dose, repeated every 4 hours if necessary (review pain management if analgesic required more frequently). Each child should be reassessed on an individual basis.

Children often require a higher dose of morphine in proportion to their body-weight compared to adults. Children are more susceptible to certain adverse effects of opioids such as urinary retention (which can be eased by carbachol or bethanechol), and opioid-induced pruritus.

Oxycodone (p. 209) is used in a child who requires an opioid but cannot tolerate morphine. If the child is already receiving an opioid, oxycodone should be started at a dose equivalent to the current analgesic.

Parenteral route Diamorphine (p. 205) is preferred for injection because, being more soluble, it can be given in a smaller volume. The equivalent subcutaneous dose is approximately a third of the oral dose of morphine. Subcutaneous infusion of diamorphine via a continuous infusion device can be useful (for details, see p. 19).

If the child can resume taking medicines by mouth, then oral morphine may be substituted for subcutaneous infusion of diamorphine. See table of approximate equivalent doses of morphine and diamorphine, p. 21.
Prescribing in palliative care

Rectal route Morphine (p. 209) is also available for rectal administration as suppositories.

Transdermal route Transdermal preparations of fentanyl (p. 206) are available; they are not suitable for acute pain or in those children whose analgesic requirements are changing rapidly because the long time to steady state prevents rapid titration of the dose. Prescribers should ensure that they are familiar with the correct use of transdermal preparations (see under fentanyl, p. 206) because inappropriate use has caused fatalities. The following 24-hour doses of morphine by mouth are considered to be approximately equivalent to the fentanyl patches shown:

- Morphine salt 45 mg daily = fentanyl '12' patch
- Morphine salt 90 mg daily = fentanyl '25' patch
- Morphine salt 180 mg daily = fentanyl '50' patch
- Morphine salt 270 mg daily = fentanyl '75' patch
- Morphine salt 360 mg daily = fentanyl '100' patch

Morphine (as oral solution or standard formulation tablets) is given for breakthrough pain.

Gastro-intestinal pain The pain of bowel colic may be reduced by loperamide (p. 47). Hyoscine hydrobromide (p. 198) may also be helpful in reducing the frequency of spasms; it is given sublingually at a dose of 10 micrograms/kg (max. 300 micrograms) 3 times daily as Kwells® tablets. For the dose by subcutaneous infusion, see p. 20.

Gastric distension pain due to pressure on the stomach may be helped by a preparation incorporating an antacid with an antiflatulent (p. 36) and a prokinetic such as domperidone (p. 41) before meals.

Muscle spasm The pain of muscle spasm can be helped by a muscle relaxant such as diazepam (p. 515) or baclofen (p. 514).

Neuropathic pain Patients with neuropathic pain (p. 212) may benefit from a trial of a tricyclic antidepressant, most commonly amitriptyline (p. 185), for several weeks. An anticonvulsant, such as carbamazepine (p. 218), may be added or substituted if pain persists. Ketamine is sometimes used under specialist supervision as an adjuvant for neuropathic pain that responds poorly to opioid analgesics.

Pain due to nerve compression may be reduced by a corticosteroid such as dexamethasone, which reduces oedema around the tumour, thus reducing compression. Nerve blocks can be considered when pain is localised to a specific area. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) may also help.

Miscellaneous conditions

Unlicensed indications or routes Several recommendations in this section involve unlicensed indications or routes.

Anorexia Anorexia may be helped by prednisolone or dexamethasone.

Anxiety Anxiety can be treated with a long-acting benzodiazepine such as diazepam, or by continuous infusion of the short-acting benzodiazepine midazolam. Interventions for more acute episodes of anxiety (such as panic attacks) include short-acting benzodiazepines such as lorazepam given sublingually or midazolam given subcutaneously. Temazepam provides useful night-time sedation in some children.

Capillary bleeding Capillary bleeding can be treated with tranexamic acid (p. 123) by mouth; treatment is usually continued for one week after the bleeding has stopped but it can be continued at a reduced dose if bleeding persists. Alternatively, gauze soaked in tranexamic acid 100 mg/mL or adrenaline (epinephrine) solution 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000) can be applied to the affected area. Vitamin K may be useful for the treatment and prevention of bleeding associated with prolonged clotting in liver disease. In severe chronic cholestasis, absorption of vitamin K may be impaired; either parenteral or water-soluble oral vitamin K should be considered (section 9.6.6).

Constipation Constipation is a common cause of distress and is almost invariable after administration of an opioid analgesic. It should be prevented if possible by the regular administration of laxatives. Suitable laxatives include osmotic laxatives (p. 61) (such as lactulose or macrogols), stimulant laxatives (p. 59) (such as codeine and senna) or the combination of lactulose and a senna preparation. Naloxone given by mouth may help relieve opioid-induced constipation; it is poorly absorbed but opioid withdrawal reactions have been reported.

Convulsions Intractable seizures are relatively common in children dying from non-malignant conditions. Phenoobarbital by mouth or as a continuous subcutaneous infusion may be beneficial; continuous infusion of midazolam is an alternative. Both cause drowsiness, but this is rarely a concern in the context of intractable seizures. For breakthrough convulsions diazepam (p. 232) given rectally (as a solution), buccal midazolam (p. 234), or paraldehyde (p. 234) as an enema may be appropriate.

For the use of midazolam by subcutaneous infusion using a continuous infusion device, see p. 20.

Dry mouth Dry mouth may be caused by certain medications including opioid analgesics, antimuscarinic drugs (e.g. hyoscine), antidepressants and some antiemetics; if possible, an alternative preparation should be considered. Dry mouth may be relieved by good mouth care and measures such as chewing sugar-free gum, sucking ice or pineapple chunks, or the use of artificial saliva (p. 548); dry mouth associated with candidiasis can be treated by oral preparations of nystatin (p. 546) or miconazole (p. 545); alternatively, fluconazole (p. 301) can be given by mouth.

Dysphagia A corticosteroid such as dexamethasone may help, temporarily, if there is an obstruction due to tumour. See also Dry Mouth, above.

Dyspnoea Breathlessness at rest may be relieved by regular oral morphine in carefully titrated doses. Diazepam may be helpful for dyspnoea associated with...
anxiety. Sublingual lorazepam or subcutaneous or buccal midazolam are alternatives. A nebulised short-acting beta, agonist (section 3.1.1.1) or a corticosteroid (section 3.2), such as dexamethasone or prednisolone, may also be helpful for bronchospasm or partial obstruction.

**Excessive respiratory secretion** Excessive respiratory secretion (death rattle) may be reduced by hyoscine hydrobromide patches (p. 196) or by subcutaneous or intravenous injection of hyoscine hydrobromide 10 micrograms/kg (max. 600 micrograms) every 4 to 8 hours; however, care must be taken to avoid the discomfort of dry mouth. Alternatively, glycopyrronium (p. 836) may be given.

For the administration of hyoscine hydrobromide by subcutaneous or intravenous infusion using a continuous infusion device, see p. 20.

**Fungating tumours** Fungating tumours can be treated by regular dressing and antibacterial drugs; systemic treatment with metronidazole (p. 296) is often required to reduce malodour, but topical metronidazole (p. 587) is also used.

**Hiccups** Hiccups due to gastric distension may be helped by a preparation incorporating an antacid with an anti-flatulant (p. 37).

**Hypercalcaemia** See section 9.5.1.2.

**Insomnia** Children with advanced cancer may not sleep because of discomfort, cramps, night sweats, joint stiffness, or fear. There should be appropriate treatment of these problems before hypnotics (p. 169) are used. Benzodiazepines, such as temazepam, may be useful.

**Intractable cough** Intractable cough may be relieved by moist inhalations or by regular administration of oral morphine every 4 hours. Methadone linctus should be avoided because it has a long duration of action and tends to accumulate.

**Mucosal bleeding** Mucosal bleeding from the mouth and nose occurs commonly in the terminal phase, particularly in a child suffering from haemopoietic malignancy. Bleeding from the nose caused by a single bleeding point can be arrested by cautery or by dressing it. Tranexamic acid (p. 123) may be effective applied topically or given systemically.

**Nausea and vomiting** Nausea and vomiting are common in children with advanced cancer. Ideally, the cause should be determined before treatment with an antiemetic (section 4.6) is started.

Nausea and vomiting with opioid therapy are less common in children than in adults but may occur particularly in the initial stages and can be prevented by giving an antiemetic. An antiemetic is usually necessary only for the first 4 or 5 days and therefore combined preparations containing an opioid with an antiemetic are not recommended because they lead to unnecessary antiemetic therapy (and associated side-effects when used long-term).

Metoclopramide has a prokinetic action and is used by mouth for nausea and vomiting associated with gastritis, gastric stasis, and functional bowel obstruction. Drugs with antimuscarinic effects antagonise prokinetic drugs and, if possible, should not therefore be used concurrently.

Haloperidol (p. 174) is used by mouth or by continuous intravenous or subcutaneous infusion for most metabolic causes of vomiting (e.g. hypercalcaemia, renal failure).

Cyclizine (p. 193) is used for nausea and vomiting due to mechanical bowel obstruction, raised intracranial pressure, and motion sickness.

Ondansetron (p. 197) is most effective when the vomiting is due to damaged or irritated gut mucosa (e.g. after chemotherapy or radiotherapy).

Antiemetic therapy should be reviewed every 24 hours; it may be necessary to substitute the antiemetic or to add another one.

Levomepromazine (p. 175) can be used if first-line antiemetics are inadequate. Dexamethasone by mouth can be used as an adjunct.

For the administration of antiemetics by subcutaneous infusion using a continuous infusion device, see below.

For the treatment of nausea and vomiting associated with cancer chemotherapy, see section 8.1.

**Pruritus** Pruritus, even when associated with obstructive jaundice, often responds to simple measures such as application of emollients (p. 552). Ondansetron may be effective in some children. Where opioid analgesics cause pruritus it may be appropriate to review the dose or to switch to an alternative opioid analgesic. In the case of obstructive jaundice, further measures include administration of colestyramine (p. 70).

**Raised intracranial pressure** Headache due to raised intracranial pressure often responds to a high dose of a corticosteroid, such as dexamethasone, for 4 to 5 days, subsequently reduced if possible; dexamethasone should be given before 6 p.m. to reduce the risk of insomnia. Treatment of headache and of associated nausea and vomiting should also be considered.

**Restlessness and confusion** Restlessness and confusion may require treatment with haloperidol (p. 174) 10–20 micrograms/kg by mouth every 8–12 hours. Levomepromazine (p. 175) is also used occasionally for restlessness. See also p. 20.

**Continuous infusion devices** Although drugs can usually be administered by mouth to control symptoms in palliative care, the parenteral route may sometimes be necessary. Repeated administration of intramuscular injections should be avoided in children, particularly if cachectic. This has led to the use of portable continuous infusion devices such as syringe drivers to give a continuous subcutaneous infusion.
which can provide good control of symptoms with little discomfort or inconvenience to the patient.

**Syringe driver rate settings**

Staff using syringe drivers should be **adequately trained** and different rate settings should be **clearly identified** and **differentiated**; incorrect use of syringe drivers is a common cause of medication errors.

**Indications for the parenteral route** are:

- inability to take medicines by mouth owing to nausea and vomiting, dysphagia, severe weakness, or coma;
- malignant bowel obstruction for which surgery is inappropriate (avoiding the need for an intravenous infusion or for insertion of a nasogastric tube);
- refusal by the child to take regular medication by mouth.

**Bowel colic and excessive respiratory secretions**

Hyoscine hydrobromide (p. 198) effectively reduces respiratory secretions and is sedative (but occasionally causes paradoxical agitation); it is given in a **subcutaneous or intravenous infusion dose** of 40–60 micrograms/kg/24 hours. Glycopyrronium (p. 636) may also be used.

Hyoscine butylbromide (p. 40) is effective in bowel colic, is less sedative than hyoscine hydrobromide, but is not always adequate for the control of respiratory secretions; it is given by **subcutaneous infusion** (**impor- tant**: hyoscine butylbromide must not be confused with hyoscine hydrobromide, above).

**Convulsions** If a child has previously been receiving an antiepileptic drug or has a primary or secondary cerebral tumour or is at risk of convulsion (e.g. owing to uraemia) antiepileptic medication should not be stopped. Midazolam (p. 234) is the benzodiazepine antiepileptic of choice for **continuous subcutaneous infusion**.

**Nausea and vomiting** Levomepromazine (p. 175) causes sedation in about 50% of patients. Haloperidol (p. 174) has little sedative effect.

Cyclizine (p. 193) is particularly likely to precipitate if mixed with diamorphine or other drugs (see under Mixing and Compatibility); it is given by **subcutaneous infusion**.

**Pain control** Diamorphine (p. 205) is the preferred opioid since its high solubility permits a large dose to be given in a small volume (see under Mixing and Compatibility). The table on p. 21 shows approximate equivalent doses of morphine and diamorphine.

Restlessness and confusion Haloperidol has little sedative effect. Levomepromazine (p. 175) has a sedative effect. Midazolam is a sedative and an antiepileptic that may be suitable for a very restless patient.

**Mixing and compatibility** The general principle that injections should be given into separate sites (and should not be mixed) does not apply to the use of syringe drivers in palliative care. Provided that there is evidence of compatibility, selected injections can be mixed in syringe drivers. Not all types of medication can be used in a subcutaneous infusion. In particular, chlorpromazine, prochlorperazine, and diazepam are **contra-indicated** as they cause skin reactions at the injection site; to a lesser extent cyclizine and levomepromazine also sometimes cause local irritation.

In theory injections dissolved in water for injections are more likely to be associated with pain (possibly owing to their hypotoncity). The use of physiological saline (sodium chloride 0.9%) however increases the likelihood of precipitation when more than one drug is used; moreover subcutaneous infusion rates are so slow (0.1–0.3 mL/hour) that pain is not usually a problem when water is used as a diluent.

Diamorphine can be given by subcutaneous infusion in a strength of up to 250 mg/mL; up to a strength of 40 mg/mL either water for injections or physiological saline (sodium chloride 0.9%) is a suitable diluent—above that strength only water for injections is used (to avoid precipitation).

The following can be mixed with **diamorphine**:

- Cyclizine
- Dexamethasone
- Haloperidol
- Metoclopramide
- Hyoscine butylbromide
- Midazolam

Subcutaneous infusion solution should be monitored regularly both to check for precipitation (and discoloration) and to ensure that the infusion is running at the correct rate.

**Problems encountered with syringe drivers** The following are problems that may be encountered with syringe drivers and the action that should be taken:

- if the subcutaneous infusion runs too quickly check the rate setting and the calculation;
- if the subcutaneous infusion runs too slowly check the start button, the battery, the syringe driver, the cannula, and make sure that the injection site is not inflamed;
- if there is an injection site reaction make sure that the site does not need to be changed—firmness or swelling at the site of injection is not in itself an indication for change, but pain or obvious inflammation is.

---

1. Cyclizine may precipitate at concentrations above 10 mg/mL or in the presence of sodium chloride 0.9% or as the concentration of diamorphine relative to cyclizine increases; mixtures of diamorphine and cyclizine are also likely to precipitate after 24 hours.
2. Special care is needed to avoid precipitation of dexamethasone when preparing it.
3. Mixtures of haloperidol and diamorphine are likely to precipitate after 24 hours if haloperidol concentration is above 2 mg/mL.
4. Under some conditions, infusions containing metoclopramide become discoloured; such solutions should be discarded.
Equivalent doses of morphine sulphate and diamorphine hydrochloride given over 24 hours

These equivalences are approximate only and may need to be adjusted according to response.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MORPHINE</th>
<th>PARENTERAL DIAMORPHINE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral morphine sulphate</td>
<td>Subcutaneous infusion of morphine sulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over 24 hours</td>
<td>over 24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 mg</td>
<td>15 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 mg</td>
<td>30 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 mg</td>
<td>45 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 mg</td>
<td>60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180 mg</td>
<td>90 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240 mg</td>
<td>120 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360 mg</td>
<td>180 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480 mg</td>
<td>240 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600 mg</td>
<td>300 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>780 mg</td>
<td>390 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>960 mg</td>
<td>480 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200 mg</td>
<td>600 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If breakthrough pain occurs give a subcutaneous injection equivalent to one-tenth to one-sixth of the total 24-hour subcutaneous infusion dose. With an intermittent subcutaneous injection absorption is smoother so that the risk of adverse effects at peak absorption is avoided (an even better method is to use a subcutaneous butterfly needle). To minimise the risk of infection no subcutaneous infusion solution should be used for longer than 24 hours.
Prescribing in dental practice

The following is a list of topics of particular relevance to dental surgeons.

**General guidance**
- Prescribing by dental surgeons, see BNF
- Oral side-effects of drugs, see BNF
- Medical emergencies in dental practice, see BNF
- Medical problems in dental practice, see BNF

**Drug management of dental and oral conditions**
- **Dental and orofacial pain**, p. 199
  - Neuropathic pain, p. 212
  - Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations, p. 199
  - Opioid analgesics, p. 204
  - Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, p. 500

**Oral infections**
- Bacterial infections, p. 244
  - Phenoxybenzylosillicin, p. 258
  - Broad-spectrum penicillins (amoxicillin and ampicillin), p. 261
  - Cephalexin p. 266
  - Tetracyclines, p. 274
  - Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin and azithromycin), p. 280
  - Clindamycin, p. 283
  - Metronidazole, p. 296
  - Fusidic acid p. 587
- Fungal infections, p. 545
  - Local treatment, p. 545
  - Systemic treatment, p. 300
- Viral infections, p. 545
  - Herpetic gingivostomatitis, local treatment, p. 545
  - Herpetic gingivostomatitis, systemic treatment, p. 321 and p. 545
  - Herpes labialis, p. 591

**Anaesthetics, anxiolytics and hypnotics**
- Anaesthesia, sedation, and resuscitation in dental practice, p. 629
- Hypnotics, p. 170
- Sedation for dental procedures, p. 637
- Local anaesthesia, p. 649

**Oral ulceration and inflammation**, p. 543
- Mouthwashes and gargles, p. 546
- Dry mouth, p. 548

**Minerals**
- Fluorides, p. 476
- Aromatic inhalations, p. 166
- Nasal decongestants, p. 541

**Dental Practitioners’ Formulary**, p. 794
Drugs and sport

UK Anti-Doping, the national body responsible for the UK's anti-doping policy, advises that athletes are personally responsible should a prohibited substance be detected in their body. An advice card listing examples of permitted and prohibited substances is available from:

UK Anti-Doping
Oceanic House
1a Cockspur Street
London SW1Y 5BG
Tel: (020) 7766 7350
information@ukad.org.uk
www.ukad.org.uk

General Medical Council's advice

Doctors who prescribe or collude in the provision of drugs or treatment with the intention of improperly enhancing an individual's performance in sport contravene the GMC's guidance, and such actions would usually raise a question of a doctor's continued registration. This does not preclude the provision of any care or treatment where the doctor's intention is to protect or improve the patient's health.
Emergency treatment of poisoning

These notes provide only an overview of the treatment of poisoning and it is strongly recommended that either TOXBASE or the UK National Poisons Information Service (see below) be consulted when there is doubt about the degree of risk or about appropriate management.

Most childhood poisoning is accidental. Other causes include intentional overdose, drug abuse, iatrogenic and deliberate poisoning. The drugs most commonly involved in childhood poisoning are paracetamol, ibuprofen, orally ingested creams, aspirin, iron preparations, cough medicines, and the contraceptive pill.

Hospital admission

Children who have features of poisoning should generally be admitted to hospital. Children who have taken poisons with delayed actions should also be admitted, even if they appear well. Delayed-action poisons include aspirin, iron, paracetamol, tricyclic antidepressants, and co-phenotrope (diphenoxylate with atropine, Lomotil®); the effects of modified-release preparations are also delayed. A note of all relevant information, including what treatment has been given, should accompany the patient to hospital.

Further information and advice

TOXBASE, the primary clinical toxicology database of the National Poisons Information Service, is available on the Internet to registered users at www.toxbase.org (a backup site is available at www.toxbasebackup.org if the main site cannot be accessed). It provides information about routine diagnosis, treatment, and management of patients exposed to drugs, household products, and industrial and agricultural chemicals.

Advice on laboratory analytical services can be obtained from TOXBASE or from the National Poisons Information Service.

Helper with identifying capsules or tablets may be available from a regional medicines information centre (see inside front cover) or (out of hours) from the National Poisons Information Service.

General care

It is often impossible to establish with certainty the identity of the poison and the size of the dose. This is not usually important because only a few poisons (such as opioids, paracetamol, and iron) have specific antidotes; few children require active removal of the poison. In most children, treatment is directed at managing symptoms as they arise. Nevertheless, knowledge of the type and timing of poisoning can help in anticipating the course of events. All relevant information should be sought from the poisoned child and from their carers. However, such information should be interpreted with care because it may not be complete or entirely reliable. Sometimes symptoms arise from other illnesses, and children should be assessed carefully. Accidents may involve a number of domestic and industrial products (the contents of which are not generally known). The National Poisons Information Service should be consulted when there is doubt about any aspect of suspected poisoning.

Respiration

Respiration is often impaired in unconscious children. An obstructed airway requires immediate attention. In the absence of trauma, the airway should be opened with simple measures such as chin lift or jaw thrust. An oropharyngeal or nasopharyngeal airway may be useful in children with reduced consciousness to prevent obstruction, provided ventilation is adequate. Intubation and ventilation should be considered in children whose airway cannot be protected or who have respiratory acidosis because of inadequate ventilation; such children should be monitored in a critical care area.

Most poisons that impair consciousness also depress respiration. Assisted ventilation (either mouth-to-mouth or using a bag-valve-mask device) may be needed. Oxygen is not a substitute for adequate ventilation, although it should be given in the highest concentration possible in poisoning with carbon monoxide and irritant gases.

The potential for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents should be considered.

Blood pressure

Hypotension is common in severe poisoning with central nervous system depressants; if severe this may lead to irreversible brain damage or renal tubular necrosis. Hypotension should be corrected initially by raising the foot of the bed and administration of either sodium chloride intravenous infusion or a colloidal infusion. Vasocostrictor sympathomimetics (section 2.7.2) are rarely required and their use may be discussed with the National Poisons Information Service.

Fluid depletion without hypotension is common after prolonged coma and after aspirin poisoning due to vomiting, sweating, and hyperpnoea.

Hypertension, often transient, occurs less frequently than hypotension in poisoning; it may be associated with sympathomimetic drugs such as amphetamines, phencyclidine, and cocaine.

Heart

Cardiac conduction defects and arrhythmias can occur in acute poisoning, notably with tricyclic antidepres-
Body temperature

Hyperthermia may develop in patients of any age who have been deeply unconscious for some hours, particularly following overdose with barbiturates or phenothiazines. It may be missed unless core temperature is measured using a low-reading rectal thermometer or by other means. Hyperthermia should be managed by prevention of further heat loss and appropriate re-warming as clinically indicated.

Hyperthermia can develop in children taking CNS stimulants; children are also at risk when taking therapeutic doses of drugs with antimuscarinic properties. Hyperthermia is initially managed by removing all unnecessary clothing and using a fan. Sponging with tepid water will promote evaporation. Advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service on the management of severe hyperthermia resulting from conditions such as the serotonin syndrome.

Both hypothermia and hyperthermia require urgent hospitalisation for assessment and supportive treatment.

Convulsions

Single short-lived convulsions do not require treatment. If convulsions are protracted or recur frequently, lorazepam 100 micrograms/kg (max. 4 mg) or diazepam (preferably as emulsion) 300–400 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) should be given by slow intravenous injection into a large vein. Benzodiazepines should not be given by the intramuscular route for convulsions. If the intravenous route is not readily available, midazolam (unlicensed use) can be given by the buccal route or diazepam can be administered as a rectal solution (section 4.8.2).

Removal and elimination

Prevention of absorption

Given by mouth, activated charcoal can adsorb many poisons in the gastro-intestinal system, thereby reducing their absorption. The sooner it is given the more effective it is, but it may still be effective up to 1 hour after ingestion of the poison—longer in the case of modified-release preparations or of drugs with antimuscarinic (anticholinergic) properties. It is particularly useful for the prevention of absorption of poisons that are toxic in small amounts such as antidepressants.

A second dose may occasionally be required when blood-drug concentration continues to rise suggesting delayed drug release or delayed gastric emptying. For the use of charcoal in active elimination techniques, see below.

Active elimination techniques

Repeated doses of activated charcoal by mouth may enhance the elimination of some drugs after they have been absorbed; repeated doses are given after overdosage with:

- Carbamazepine
- Dapsone
- Phenobarbital
- Quinine
- Theophylline

Vomiting should be treated (e.g. with an antiemetic drug) since it may reduce the efficacy of charcoal treatment. In cases of intolerance, the dose may be reduced and the frequency increased but this may compromise efficacy.

Other techniques intended to enhance the elimination of poisons after absorption are only practicable in hospital and are only suitable for a small number of severely poisoned patients. Moreover, they only apply to a limited number of poisons. Examples include:

- haemodialysis for ethylene glycol, lithium, methanol, phenobarbital, salicylates, and sodium valproate
- alkalinisation of the urine for salicylates.

Removal from the gastro-intestinal tract

Gastric lavage is rarely required as benefit rarely outweighs risk; advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service. Whole bowel irrigation (by means of a bowel cleansing preparation) has been used in poisoning with certain modified-release or enteric-coated formulations, in severe poisoning with lithium salts, and if illicit drugs are carried in the gastro-intestinal tract (‘body-packing’). However, it is not clear that the procedure improves outcome and advice should be sought from a poisons information centre.

The administration of laxatives alone has no role in the management of the poisoned child and is not a recommended method of gut decontamination. The routine use of a laxative in combination with activated charcoal has mostly been abandoned. Laxatives should not be administered to young children because of the likelihood of fluid and electrolyte imbalance.

CHARCOAL, ACTIVATED

Cautions

- drowsy or comatose child (risk of aspiration—ensure airway protected); reduced gastrointestinal motility (risk of obstruction); not for poisoning with petroleum distillates, corrosive substances, alcohols, malathion, and metal salts including iron and lithium salts

Side-effects

- black stools

Indication and dose

| Reduction of absorption of poisons | Neonate 1 g/kg | Child 1 month–12 years 1 g/kg (max. 50 g) | Child 12–18 years 50 g |

BNFC 2011–2012

sants, some antipsychotics, and some antihistamines. Arrhythmias often respond to correction of underlying hypoxia, acidosis, or other biochemical abnormalities, but ventricular arrhythmias that cause serious hypotension may require treatment (section 2.3.1). If the QT interval is prolonged, specialist advice should be sought because the use of some anti-arrhythmic drugs may be inappropriate. Supraventricular arrhythmias are seldom life-threatening and drug treatment is best withheld until the child reaches hospital.
Emergency treatment of poisoning

Aspirin

The main features of salicylate poisoning are

1. Analgesics (non-opioid)

- Alkaline diuresis (urinary alkalinisation) is measured and glucose given if indicated.
- The blood glucose concentration of 500 mg/litre (3.6 mmol/litre) unless there is evidence of metabolic acidosis.
- Activated charcoal should be given within 1 hour of ingesting more than 125 mg/kg aspirin.
- Fluid losses should be replaced and intravenous sodium bicarbonate may be given if plasma-salicylate concentration exceeds 700 mg/litre (5.1 mmol/litre) or in the presence of severe metabolic acidosis, convulsions, renal failure, pulmonary oedema or persistently high plasma-salicylate concentrations unresponsive to urinary alkalinisation.

2. Specific drugs

- Activated charcoal 1.04 g/5 mL, net price 25-g pack = £8.69
- Carbonmix® (Beacon)
  - Powder, activated charcoal, net price 25-g pack = £8.50, 50-g pack = £11.90
- Charcodote® (TEVA UK)
  - Oral suspension, activated charcoal 1 g/5 mL, net price 50-g pack = £11.88

3. Administration

- Suspension or reconstituted powder may be mixed with soft drinks (e.g. caffeine-free diet cola) or fruit juices to mask the taste.

Alcohol

Acute intoxication with alcohol (ethanol) is common in adults but also occurs in children. The features include ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, and drowsiness, which may progress to coma, with hypotension and acidosis. Aspiration of vomit is a special hazard and hypoglycaemia may occur in children and some adults. Patients are managed supportively, with particular attention to maintaining a clear airway and measures to reduce the risk of aspiration of gastric contents. The blood glucose is measured and glucose given if indicated.

Analgescs (non-opioid)

Aspirin

The main features of salicylate poisoning are hyperventilation, tinnitus, deafness, vasoconstriction, and sweating. Coma is uncommon but indicates very severe poisoning. The associated acid-base disturbances are complex.

Treatment must be in hospital, where plasma salicylate, pH, and electrolytes (particularly potassium) can be measured; absorption of aspirin may be slow and the plasma-salicylate concentration may continue to rise for several hours, requiring repeated measurement. Plasma-salicylate concentration may not correlate with clinical severity in children, and clinical and biochemical assessment is necessary. Generally, the clinical severity of poisoning is less below a plasma-salicylate concentration of 500 mg/litre (3.6 mmol/litre) unless there is evidence of metabolic acidosis. Activated charcoal should be given within 1 hour of ingesting more than 125 mg/kg aspirin. Fluid losses should be replaced and intravenous sodium bicarbonate may be given (ensuring plasma-potassium concentration is maintained within the reference range) to enhance urinary salicylate excretion (optimum urinary pH 7.5–8.5); treatment should be given in a high dependency unit.

Plasma-potassium concentration should be corrected before giving sodium bicarbonate as hypokalaemia may complicate alkalinisation of the urine.

Haemodialysis is the treatment of choice for severe salicylate poisoning and should be considered when the plasma-salicylate concentration exceeds 700 mg/litre (5.1 mmol/litre) or in the presence of severe metabolic acidosis, convulsions, renal failure, pulmonary oedema or persistently high plasma-salicylate concentrations unresponsive to urinary alkalinisation.

NSAIDs

Mefenamic acid has important consequences in overdosage because it can cause convulsions, which if prolonged or recurrent, require treatment with intravenous lorazepam or diazepam.

Overdosage with ibuprofen may cause nausea, vomiting, epigastric pain, and tinnitus, but more serious toxicity is very uncommon. Activated charcoal followed by symptomatic measures are indicated if more than 100 mg/kg has been ingested within the preceding hour.

Paracetamol

In cases of intravenous paracetamol poisoning contact the National Poisons Information Service for advice on risk assessment and management.

Paracetamol

Single or repeated doses totalling as little as 150 mg/kg of paracetamol ingested within 24 hours may cause severe hepatocellular necrosis and, much less frequently, renal tubular necrosis. To avoid underestimating the potentially toxic paracetamol dose ingested by obese children who weigh more than 110 kg, use a body-weight of 110 kg (rather than their actual body-weight) when calculating the total dose of paracetamol ingested (in mg/kg).

Children at high-risk of liver damage, including those taking enzyme-inducing drugs or who are malnourished (see below), may develop liver toxicity with as little as 75 mg/kg of paracetamol taken within 24 hours. Nausea and vomiting, the only early features of poisoning, usually settle within 24 hours. Persistence beyond this time, often associated with the onset of right subcostal pain and tenderness, usually indicates development of hepatic necrosis. Liver damage is maximal 3–4 days after ingestion and may lead to encephalopathy, haemorrhage, hypoglycaemia, cerebral oedema, and death.

Therefore, despite a lack of significant early symptoms, children who have taken an overdose of paracetamol should be transferred to hospital urgently.

Administration of activated charcoal should be considered if paracetamol in excess of 150 mg/kg (or in excess of 75 mg/kg for those considered to be at high-risk, see below) is thought to have been ingested within the previous hour.

Acetylcysteine protects the liver if infused up to, and possibly beyond, 24 hours of ingesting paracetamol. It is most effective if given within 8 hours of ingestion, after which effectiveness declines. In children who present 8–36 hours after a potentially toxic ingestion, acetylcysteine treatment should commence immediately even if plasma-paracetamol concentrations are not yet available. If more than 24 hours have elapsed advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service. Giving acetylcysteine by mouth [unlicensed route]
is an alternative if intravenous access is not possible—contact the National Poisons Information Service for advice. In remote areas, methionine by mouth is an alternative only if acetylcysteine cannot be given promptly. Once the child reaches hospital the need to continue treatment with the antidote will be assessed from the plasma-paracetamol concentration (related to the time from ingestion).

Children at high-risk of liver damage include those:
- taking liver enzyme-inducing drugs (e.g. carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rifampicin, rifabutin, efavirenz, nevirapine, alcohol, St John’s wort);
- who are malnourished (e.g. in anorexia or bulimia, cystic fibrosis, hepatitis C, in underweight children with failure to thrive, in alcoholism, or those who are HIV-positive);
- who have a febrile illness;
- who have not eaten for a few days.

These children should be treated if their plasma-paracetamol concentration is on or above the high-risk treatment line.

The prognostic accuracy after 15 hours is uncertain but a plasma-paracetamol concentration on or above the relevant treatment line should be regarded as carrying a serious risk of liver damage.

Graph reproduced courtesy of University of Wales College of Medicine Therapeutics and Toxicology Centre
Emergency treatment of poisoning

28 Emergency treatment of poisoning

4 hours and 6.25 mg/litre (0.04 mmol/litre) at 24 hours (see p. 27). Those whose plasma-paracetamol concentration is on or above the normal treatment line are treated with acetylcysteine by intravenous infusion (or, if acetylcysteine is not available, with methionine by mouth, provided the overdose has been taken within 10–12 hours and the child is not vomiting).

Children at high-risk of liver damage include those:
- taking liver enzyme-inducing drugs (e.g. carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rifampicin, rifabutin, efavirenz, nevirapine, alcohol, St John’s wort);
- who are malnourished (e.g. in anorexia or bulimia, cystic fibrosis, hepatitis C, in underweight children with ‘failure to thrive’, in alcoholism, or those who are HIV-positive);
- who have a febrile illness;
- who have not eaten for a few days.

These children may develop toxicity at lower plasma-paracetamol concentrations and should be treated if the concentration is on or above the high-risk treatment line (which joins plots that are at 50% of the plasma-paracetamol concentrations of the normal treatment line). The prognostic accuracy of plasma-paracetamol concentration taken after 15 hours is uncertain, but a concentration on or above the relevant treatment line should be regarded as carrying a serious risk of liver damage.

The plasma-paracetamol concentration may be difficult to interpret when paracetamol has been ingested over several hours (staggered overdose). If there is doubt about timing or the need for treatment then the child should be treated with acetylcysteine.

The National Poisons Information Service (Tel: 0844 892 0111) will provide specialist advice on all aspects of poisoning day and night

ACETYLCYSTEINE

Cautions asthma (see Side-effects below, but do not delay acetylcysteine treatment); acetylcysteine may mildly increase INR and prothrombin time

Side-effects hypersensitivity-like reactions managed by reducing infusion rate or suspending until reaction settles (rash also managed by giving antihistamine; acute asthma managed by giving nebulised short-acting beta, agonist)—contact the National Poisons Information Service if reaction severe; mild increase in INR and prothrombin time

Indication and dose

Paracetamol overdose see notes above
- By intravenous infusion

Neonate initially 150 mg/kg in 3 mL/kg Glucose 5% and given over 15 minutes, followed by 50 mg/kg in 7 mL/kg Glucose 5% and given over 4 hours, then 100 mg/kg in 14 mL/kg Glucose 5% and given over 16 hours

Child 1 month–5 years (or body-weight under 20 kg) initially 150 mg/kg in 3 mL/kg Glucose 5% and given over 15 minutes, followed by 50 mg/kg in 7 mL/kg Glucose 5% and given over 4 hours, then 100 mg/kg in 14 mL/kg Glucose 5% and given over 16 hours

METHIONINE

Hepatic impairment may precipitate coma

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, drowsiness, irritability

Indication and dose

Paracetamol overdose see notes above
- By mouth

Child under 6 years 1 g every 4 hours for a total of 4 doses
Child 6–18 years 2.5 g every 4 hours for a total of 4 doses

Methionine (Pharma Nord)
Tablets, f/c, methionine 500 mg, net price 20-tab pack = £9.95

Analgesics (opioid)

Opioids (narcotic analgesics) cause varying degrees of coma, respiratory depression, and pinpoint pupils. The specific antidote naloxone is indicated if there is coma or bradypnoea. Since naloxone has a shorter duration of action than many opioids, close monitoring and repeated injections are necessary according to the respiratory rate and depth of coma. When repeated administration of naloxone is required, it can be given by continuous intravenous infusion instead and the rate of infusion adjusted according to vital signs. All children should be observed for at least 6 hours after the last dose of naloxone. The effects of some opioids, such as buprenorphine, are only partially reversed by naloxone. Dextropropoxyphene and methadone have very long durations of action; patients may need to be monitored for long periods following large overdoses.

Naloxone reverses the opioid effects of dextropropoxyphene; the long duration of action of dextropropoxyphene calls for prolonged monitoring and further doses of naloxone may be required. Norpropoxyphene, a metabolite of dextropropoxyphene, also has cardiotoxic effects which may require treatment with sodium bicarbonate, or magnesium sulphate, or both; arrhythmias may occur for up to 12 hours.

Paracetamol overdosage

Child 5–12 years (or body-weight over 20 kg) initially 150 mg/kg in 100 mL Glucose 5% and given over 15 minutes, followed by 50 mg/kg in 250 mL Glucose 5% and given over 4 hours, then 100 mg/kg in 500 mL Glucose 5% and given over 16 hours

Child 12–18 years initially 150 mg/kg (max. 16.5 g) in 200 mL Glucose 5% and given over 15 minutes, followed by 50 mg/kg (max. 5.5 g) in 500 mL Glucose 5% and given over 4 hours, then 100 mg/kg (max.11 g) in 1 litre Glucose 5% and given over 16 hours

Note Glucose 5% is preferred infusion fluid; Sodium Chloride 0.9% is an alternative if Glucose 5% is unsuitable

Acetylcysteine (Non-proprietary)
Concentrate for intravenous infusion, acetylcysteine 200 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.96

Parvolex® (UCB Pharma)
Concentrate for intravenous infusion, acetylcysteine 200 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £2.25

Electrolytes Na+ 14 mmol/10-mL amp
NALOXONE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions  physical dependence on opioids; cardiac irritability; naloxone is short-acting, see notes above
Pregnancy  section 15.1.7
Breast-feeding  section 15.1.7

Indication and dose

Safe Practice
Doses used in acute opioid overdose may not be appropriate for the management of opioid-induced respiratory depression and sedation in those receiving palliative care and in chronic opioid use; see also section 15.1.7 for management of postoperative respiratory depression

Overdosage with opioids

- By intravenous injection

Neonate 10 micrograms/kg; if no response, give subsequent dose of 100 micrograms/kg (then review diagnosis); further doses may be required if respiratory function deteriorates

Child 1 month–12 years 10 micrograms/kg; if no response, give subsequent dose of 100 micrograms/kg (then review diagnosis); further doses may be required if respiratory function deteriorates

Child 12–18 years 0.4–2 mg; if no response repeat at intervals of 2–3 minutes to a max. of 10 mg (then review diagnosis); further doses may be required if respiratory function deteriorates

- By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection

As intravenous injection but only if intravenous route not feasible (onset of action slower)

- By continuous intravenous infusion using an infusion pump

Neonate rate adjusted according to response (initially, rate may be set at 60% of the initial resuscitative intravenous injection dose per hour)

Child 1 month–18 years rate adjusted according to response (initially, rate may be set at 60% of the initial resuscitative intravenous injection dose per hour)

Note: The initial resuscitative intravenous injection dose is that which maintained satisfactory ventilation for at least 15 minutes

Reversal of postoperative respiratory depression, reversal of respiratory and CNS depression in neonate following maternal opioid use during labour section 15.1.7

Administration  for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of up to 200 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Naloxone (Non-proprietary) (88)
Injection, naloxone hydrochloride 20 micrograms/mL, net price 2-ml amp = £5.50; 400 micrograms/mL, net price 1-ml amp = £4.10; 1 mg/mL, 2-ml prefilled syringe = £8.36

Minijet® Naloxone (UCB Pharma) (88)
Injection, naloxone hydrochloride 400 micrograms/mL, net price 1-ml disposable syringe = £20.40, 2-ml disposable syringe = £12.96, 5-ml disposable syringe = £12.68

Antidepressants

Tricyclic and related antidepressants  Tricyclic and related antidepressants cause dry mouth, coma of varying degree, hypotension, hyperthermia, hyperreflexia, extensor plantar responses, convulsions, respiratory failure, cardiac conduction defects, and arrhythmias. Dilated pupils and urinary retention also occur. Metabolic acidosis may complicate severe poisoning; delirium with confusion, agitation, and visual and auditory hallucinations, are common during recovery.

Assessment in hospital is strongly advised in case of poisoning by tricyclic and related antidepressants but symptomatic treatment can be given before transfer. Supportive measures to ensure a clear airway and adequate ventilation during transfer are mandatory. Intravenous lorazepam or diazepam (preferably in emulsion form) may be required to treat convulsions. Activated charcoal given within 1 hour of the overdose reduces absorption of the drug. Although arrhythmias are worrying, some will respond to correction of hypoxia and acidosis. The use of anti-arrhythmic drugs is best avoided, but intravenous infusion of sodium bicarbonate can arrest arrhythmias or prevent them in those with an extended QRS duration. Diazepam given by mouth is usually adequate to sedate delirious children but large doses may be required.

Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs)  Symptoms of poisoning by selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors include nausea, vomiting, agitation, tremor, nystagmus, drowsiness, and sinus tachycardia; convulsions may occur. Rarely, severe poisoning results in the serotonin syndrome, with marked neuropsychiatric effects, neuromuscular hyperactivity, and autonomic instability, hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, renal failure, and coagulopathies may develop.

Management of SSRI poisoning is supportive. Activated charcoal given within 1 hour of the overdose reduces absorption of the drug. Convolusions can be treated with lorazepam, diazepam, or buccal midazolam [unlicensed use] (see p. 25). Contact the National Poisons Information Service for the management of hyperthermia or the serotonin syndrome.

Antimalarials

Overdosage with quinine, chloroquine, or hydroxychloroquine is extremely hazardous and difficult to treat. Urgent advice from the National Poisons Information Service is essential. Life-threatening features include arrhythmias (which can have a very rapid onset) and convulsions (which can be intractable).

Beta-blockers

Therapeutic overdosages with beta-blockers may cause lightheadedness, dizziness, and possibly syncope as a result of bradycardia and hypotension; heart failure may be precipitated or exacerbated. These complications are most likely in children with conduction system disorders or impaired myocardial function. Bradycardia is the most common arrhythmia caused by beta-blockers,
Emergency treatment of poisoning

but sotalol may induce ventricular tachyarrhythmias (sometimes of the torsade de pointes type). The effects of massive overdosage can vary from one beta-blocker to another; propranolol overdosage in particular may cause coma and convulsions.

Acute massive overdose must be managed in hospital and expert advice should be obtained. Maintenance of a clear airway and adequate ventilation is mandatory. An intravenous injection of atropine is required to treat bradycardia (40 micrograms/kg, max. 3 mg). Cardiogenic shock unresponsive to atropine is probably best treated with an intravenous injection of glucagon (50–150 micrograms/kg, max. 10 mg) [unlicensed indication and dose] in glucose 5% (with precautions to protect the airway in case of vomiting) followed by an intravenous infusion of 50 micrograms/kg/hour. If glucagon is not available, intravenous isoprenaline (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is an alternative. A cardiac pacemaker can be used to increase the heart rate.

Calcium-channel blockers

Features of calcium-channel blocker poisoning include nausea, vomiting, dizziness, agitation, confusion, and coma in severe poisoning. Metabolic acidosis and hyperglycaemia may occur. Verapamil and diltiazem have a profound cardiac depressant effect causing hypotension and arrhythmias, including complete heart block and asystole. The dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers cause severe hypotension secondary to profound peripheral vasodilatation.

Activated charcoal should be considered if the child presents within 1 hour of overdosage with a calcium-channel blocker; repeated doses of activated charcoal are considered if a modified-release preparation is involved (although activated charcoal may be effective beyond 1 hour with modified-release preparations). In children with significant features of poisoning, calcium chloride or calcium gluconate (section 9.5.1.1) is given by injection; atropine is given to correct symptomatic bradycardia. In severe cases, an insulin and glucose infusion may be required in the management of hypotension and myocardial failure. For the management of hypotension, the choice of inotropic sympathomimetic depends on whether hypotension is secondary to vasodilatation or to myocardial depression—advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service.

Iron salts

Iron poisoning in childhood is usually accidental. The symptoms are nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, haematemesis, and rectal bleeding. Hypotension and hepatocellular necrosis can occur later. Coma, shock and metabolic acidosis indicate severe poisoning.

Advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service if a significant quantity of iron has been ingested within the previous hour. Mortality is reduced by intensive and specific therapy with desferrioxamine, which chelates iron. The serum-iron concentration is measured as an emergency and intravenous desferrioxamine given to chelate absorbed iron in excess of the expected iron binding capacity. In severe toxicity intravenous desferrioxamine should be given immediately without waiting for the result of the serum-iron measurement.

Hypnotics and anxiolytics

Benzodiazepines

Benzodiazepines taken alone cause drowsiness, ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, and occasionally respiratory depression, and coma. They potentiate the effects of other central nervous system depressants taken concomitantly. Activated charcoal can be given within 1 hour of ingesting a significant quantity of benzodiazepine, provided the child is awake and the airway is protected. Use of the benzodiazepine antagonist flumazenil [unlicensed indication] can be hazardous, particularly in mixed overdoses involving tricyclic antidepressants or in benzodiazepine-dependent patients. Flumazenil may prevent the need for ventilation, particularly in children with severe respiratory disorders; it should be used on expert advice and not as a diagnostic test in children with a reduced level of consciousness.

Lithium

Lithium intoxication can occur as a complication of long-term therapy and is caused by reduced excretion of the drug because of a variety of factors including dehydration, deterioration of renal function, infections, and co-administration of diuretics or NSAIDs (or other drugs that interact). Acute deliberate overdoses may also occur with delayed onset of symptoms (12 hours or more) due to slow entry of lithium into the tissues and continuing absorption from modified-release formulations.

The early clinical features are non-specific and may include apathy and restlessness which could be confused with mental changes due to the child’s depressive...
illness. Vomiting, diarrhoea, ataxia, weakness, dysarthria, muscle twitching, and tremor may follow. Severe poisoning is associated with convulsions, coma, renal failure, electrolyte imbalance, dehydration, and hypotension.

Therapeutic serum-lithium concentrations are within the range of 0.4–1 mmol/litre; concentrations in excess of 2 mmol/litre are usually associated with serious toxicity and such cases may need treatment with haemodialysis if neurological symptoms or renal failure are present. In acute overdosage, much higher serum-lithium concentrations may be present without features of toxicity and all that is usually necessary is to take measures to increase urine output (e.g. by increasing fluid intake, but avoiding diuretics). Otherwise, treatment is supportive with special regard to electrolyte balance, renal function, and control of convulsions. Whole-bowel irrigation should be considered for significant ingestion, but advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service, p. 24.

The National Poisons Information Service (Tel: 0844 892 0111) will provide specialist advice on all aspects of poisoning day and night

Phenothiazines and related drugs

Phenothiazines cause less depression of consciousness and respiration than other sedatives. Hypotension, hypothermia, sinus tachycardia, and arrhythmias may complicate poisoning. Dystonic reactions can occur with therapeutic doses (particularly with prochlorperazine and trifluoperazine), and convulsions may occur in severe cases. Arrhythmias may respond to correction of hypoxia, acidosis, and other biochemical abnormalities, but specialist advice should be sought if arrhythmias result from a prolonged QT interval; the use of some anti-arrhythmic drugs can worsen such arrhythmias. Dystonic reactions are rapidly abolished by injection of drugs such as procyclidine (section 4.9.2) or diazepam (section 4.8.2, emulsion preferred).

Atypical antipsychotic drugs

Features of poisoning by atypical antipsychotic drugs (section 4.2.1) include drowsiness, convulsions, ventricular arrhythmias, hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, acute renal failure, acute hepatitis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, adult respiratory distress syndrome, hyponatraemia, hypertension and intracerebral haemorrhage; hyponatraemia has also been associated with ecstasy use and syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH) can occur.

Treatment of methylenedioxymethamphetamine poisoning is supportive, with diazepam to control severe agitation or persistent convulsions and close monitoring including ECG. Self-induced water intoxication should be considered in patients with ecstasy poisoning. ‘Liquid ecstasy’ is a term used for sodium oxybate (gamma-hydroxybutyrate, GHB), which is a sedative.

Theophylline

Theophylline and related drugs are often prescribed as modified-release formulations and toxicity can therefore be delayed. They cause vomiting (which may be severe and intractable), agitation, restlessness, dilated pupils, sinus tachycardia, and hyperglycaemia. More serious effects are haematemesis, convulsions, and supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias. Severe hypokalaemia may develop rapidly. Repeated doses of activated charcoal can be used to eliminate theophylline even if more than 1 hour has elapsed after ingestion and especially if a modified-release preparation has been taken (see also under Active Elimination Techniques). Ondansetron (section 4.6) may be effective for severe vomiting that is resistant to other antiemetics. Hypokalaemia is corrected by intravenous infusion of potassium chloride (section 9.2.2.1) in 0.9% sodium chloride and may be so severe as to require high doses under ECG monitoring. Convulsions should be controlled by intravenous administration of lorazepam or diazepam (see Convulsions, p. 25). For the management of agitation associated with theophylline overdosage, seek specialist advice. Provided the child does not suffer from asthma, a short-acting beta-blocker (section 2.4) can be administered intravenously to reverse severe tachycardia, hypokalaemia, and hyperglycaemia.

Other poisons

Consult either the National Poisons Information Service day and night or TOXBASE, see p. 24.

Cocaine

Cocaine stimulates the central nervous system, causing agitation, dilated pupils, tachycardia, hypertension, hallucinations, hyperthermia, hypertonia, and hyperreflexia; cardiac effects include chest pain, myocardial infarction, and arrhythmias.

Initial treatment of cocaine poisoning involves intravenous administration of diazepam to control agitation and cooling measures for hyperthermia (see p. 25); hypertension and cardiac effects require specific treatment and expert advice should be sought.

Ecstasy

Ecstasy (methyleneoxymethamphetamine, MDMA) may cause severe reactions, even at doses that were previously tolerated. The most serious effects are delirium, coma, convulsions, ventricular arrhythmias, hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, acute renal failure, acute hepatitis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, adult respiratory distress syndrome, hyperreflexia, hypotension and intracerebral haemorrhage; hyponatraemia has also been associated with ecstasy use and syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH) can occur.

Treatment of methylenedioxymethamphetamine poisoning is supportive, with diazepam to control severe agitation or persistent convulsions and close monitoring including ECG. Self-induced water intoxication should be considered in patients with ecstasy poisoning. ‘Liquid ecstasy’ is a term used for sodium oxybate (gamma-hydroxybutyrate, GHB), which is a sedative.
Cyanides

Oxygen should be administered to children with cyanide poisoning. The choice of antidote depends on the severity of poisoning, certainty of diagnosis, and the cause. **Dicobalt edetate** is the antidote of choice when there is a strong clinical suspicion of severe cyanide poisoning. Dicobalt edetate itself is toxic, associated with anaphylactoid reactions, and is potentially fatal if administered in the absence of cyanide poisoning. A regimen of **sodium nitrite** followed by **sodium thiosulphate** is an alternative if dicobalt edetate is not available.

Hydroxocobalamin (Cyanokit®—no other preparation of hydroxocobalamin is suitable) can be considered for use in victims of smoke inhalation who show signs of significant cyanide poisoning.

**D I C O B A L T  E D E T A T E**

Cautions owing to toxicity to be used only for definite cyanide poisoning when patient tending to lose, or has lost, consciousness; **not** to be used as a precautionary measure

Side-effects hypotension, tachycardia, and vomiting; anaphylactoid reactions including facial and laryngeal oedema and cardiac abnormalities

Indication and dose

Severe poisoning with cyanides

- **By intravenous injection**

Consult the National Poisons Information Service

**S O D I U M  N I T R I T E**

Side-effects flushing and headache due to vasodilatation

Indication and dose

Poisoning with cyanides (used in conjunction with sodium thiosulphate)

See under preparation

**S O D I U M  T H I O S U L P H A T E**

Indication and dose

Poisoning with cyanides (used in conjunction with sodium nitrite)

See above under Sodium Nitrite

**E thylene glycol and methanol**

Fomepizole (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is the treatment of choice for ethylene glycol and methanol (methyl alcohol) poisoning. If necessary, ethyl alcohol (by mouth or by intravenous infusion) can be used, but with caution. Advice on the treatment of ethylene glycol and methanol poisoning should be obtained from the National Poisons Information Service. It is important to start antidote treatment promptly in cases of suspected poisoning with these agents.

**Hydroxocobalamin**

Side-effects gastro-intestinal disturbances, transient hypertension, peripheral oedema, dyspnoea, throat disorders, hot flush, dizziness, headache, restlessness, memory impairment, red coloration of urine, lymphocytopenia, eye disorders, pustular rashes, pruritus, reversible red coloration of skin and mucous membranes

Indication and dose

Poisoning with cyanides see notes above

- **By intravenous injection**

Consult the National Poisons Information Service

**Heavy metals**

Heavy metal antidotes include succimer (DMSA) [unlicensed], unithiol (DMPS) [unlicensed], sodium calcium edetate, and dimercaprol. Dimercaprol in the management of heavy metal poisoning has been superseded by other chelating agents. In all cases of heavy metal poisoning, the advice of the National Poisons Information Service should be sought.

**Dicobalt edetate** is the antidote of choice when there is a strong clinical suspicion of severe cyanide poisoning. Dicobalt edetate itself is toxic, associated with anaphylactoid reactions, and is potentially fatal if administered in the absence of cyanide poisoning. A regimen of sodium nitrite followed by sodium thiosulphate is an alternative if dicobalt edetate is not available.

Hydroxocobalamin (Cyanokit®—no other preparation of hydroxocobalamin is suitable) can be considered for use in victims of smoke inhalation who show signs of significant cyanide poisoning.
Side-effects

nausea, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, pain at site of injection, thrombophlebitis if given too rapidly, renal damage particularly in overdosage; hypotension, lacrimation, myalgia, nasal congestion, sneezing, malaise, thirst, fever, chills, headache and zinc depletion also reported

Licensed use

licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Lead poisoning

- By intravenous infusion
  
  | Child 1 month–18 years | 40 mg/kg twice daily for up to 5 days; if necessary a second course can be given at least 7 days after the first course, and a third course can be given at least 7 days after the second course |

Administration

for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of not more 30 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 1 hour

Ledclair® (Durbin) (T5i)

Injection, sodium calcium edetate 200 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £7.29

Noxious gases

Carbon monoxide

Carbon monoxide poisoning is usually due to inhalation of smoke, car exhaust, or fumes caused by blocked flues or incomplete combustion of fuel gases in confined spaces.

Immediate treatment of carbon monoxide poisoning is essential. The child should be moved to fresh air, the airway cleared, and high-flow oxygen 100% administered as soon as available. Artificial respiration should be given as necessary and continued until adequate spontaneous breathing starts, or stopped only after persistent and efficient treatment of cardiac arrest has failed. The child should be admitted to hospital because complications may arise after a delay of hours or days. Cerebral oedema may occur in severe poisoning and is treated with an intravenous infusion of mannitol (section 2.2.5). Referral for hyperbaric oxygen treatment should be discussed with the National Poisons Information Service if the patient is pregnant or in cases of severe poisoning such as if the child is or has been unconscious, or has psychiatric or neurological features other than a headache or has myocardial ischaemia or an arrhythmia, or has a blood carboxyhaemoglobin concentration of more than 20%.

Sulphur dioxide, chlorine, phosgene, ammonia

All of these gases can cause upper respiratory tract and conjunctival irritation. Pulmonary oedema, with severe breathlessness and cyanosis may develop suddenly up to 36 hours after exposure. Death may occur. Children are kept under observation and those who develop pulmonary oedema are given oxygen. Assisted ventilation may be necessary in the most serious cases.

CS Spray

CS spray, which is used for riot control, irritates the eyes (hence ‘tear gas’) and the respiratory tract; symptoms normally settle spontaneously within 15 minutes. If symptoms persist, the patient should be removed to a well-ventilated area, and the exposed skin washed with soap and water after removal of contaminated clothing. Contact lenses should be removed and rigid ones washed (soft ones should be discarded). Eye symptoms should be treated by irrigating the eyes with physiological saline (or water if saline is not available) and advice sought from an ophthalmologist. Patients with features of severe poisoning, particularly respiratory complications, should be admitted to hospital for symptomatic treatment.

Nerve agents

Treatment of nerve agent poisoning is similar to organophosphorus insecticide poisoning (see below), but advice must be sought from the National Poisons Information Service. The risk of cross-contamination is significant; adequate decontamination and protective clothing for healthcare personnel are essential. In emergencies involving the release of nerve agents, kits (‘NAAS pods’) containing pralidoxime can be obtained through the Ambulance Service from the National Blood Service (or the Welsh Blood Service in South Wales or designated hospital pharmacies in Northern Ireland and Scotland—see TOXBASE for list of designated centres).

Pesticides

Organophosphorus insecticides

Organophosphorus insecticides are usually supplied as powders or dissolved in organic solvents. All are absorbed through the bronchi and intact skin as well as through the gut and inhibit cholinesterase activity, thereby prolonging and intensifying the effects of acetylcholine. Toxicity between different compounds varies considerably, and onset may be delayed after skin exposure. Anxiety, restlessness, dizziness, headache, miosis, nausea, hypersalivation, vomiting, abdominal colic, diarrhoea, bradycardia, and sweating are common features of organophosphorus poisoning. Muscle weakness and fasciculation may develop and progress to generalised flaccid paralysis, including the ocular and respiratory muscles. Convulsions, coma, pulmonary oedema with copious bronchial secretions, hypoxia, and arrhythmias occur in severe cases. Hyperglycaemia and glycosuria without ketonuria may also be present.

Further absorption of the organophosphorus insecticide should be prevented by moving the child to fresh air, removing soiled clothing, and washing contaminated skin. In severe poisoning it is vital to ensure a clear airway, frequent removal of bronchial secretions, and adequate ventilation and oxygenation; gastric lavage may be considered provided that the airway is protected. Atropine will reverse the muscarinic effects of acetylcholine and is given by intravenous injection in a dose of 20 micrograms/kg (max. 2 mg) as atropine sulphate every 5 to 10 minutes (according to the severity of poisoning) until the skin becomes flushed and dry, the pupils dilate, and bradycardia is abolished.

Pralidoxime chloride, a cholinesterase reactivator, is used as an adjunct to atropine in moderate or severe poisoning. It improves muscle tone within 30 minutes of
administration. Pralidoxime chloride is continued until the patient has not required atropine for 12 hours. Pralidoxime chloride can be obtained from designated centres, the names of which are held by the National Poisons Information Service (see p. 24).

**Emergency treatment of poisoning**

**Snake bites** Envenoming from snake bite is uncommon in the UK. Many exotic snakes are kept, some illegally, but the only indigenous venomous snake is the adder (Vipera berus). The bite may cause local and systemic effects. Local effects include pain, swelling, bruising, and tender enlargement of regional lymph nodes. Systemic effects include early anaphylactic symptoms (transient hypotension with syncope, angioedema, urticaria, abdominal colic, diarrhoea, and vomiting), with later persistent or recurrent hypotension, coagulopathy, adult respiratory distress syndrome, and acute renal failure. Fatal envenoming is rare but the potential for severe envenoming must not be underestimated. Early anaphylactic symptoms should be treated with adrenaline (epinephrine) (section 3.4.3). Indications for antivenom treatment include systemic envenoming, especially hypotension (see above). ECG abnormalities, vomiting, haemostatic abnormalities, and marked local envenoming such that after bites on the hand or foot, swelling extends beyond the wrist or ankle within 4 hours of the bite. The contents of one vial (10 mL) of *European viper venom antiserum* (available from Movianto) is given by intravenous injection over 10–15 minutes or by intravenous infusion over 30 minutes after diluting in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9% (use 5 mL diluent/kg body-weight). The same dose should be used for adults and children. The dose can be repeated after 1–2 hours if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist. However, for those children who present with clinical features of severe envenoming (e.g. shock, ECG abnormalities, or local swelling that has advanced from the foot to above the knee or from the hand to above the elbow within 2 hours of the bite), an initial dose of 2 vials (20 mL) of the antiserum is recommended; if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist contact the National Poisons Information Service. Adrenaline (epinephrine) injection must be immediately to hand for treatment of anaphylactic reactions to the antivenom (for the management of anaphylaxis see section 3.4.3).

Antivenom is available for bites by certain foreign snakes and spiders, stings by scorpions and fish. For information on identification, management, and for supply in an emergency, telephone the National Poisons Information Service. Whenever possible the TOXBASE entry should be read, and relevant information collected, before telephoning the National Poisons Information Service (see p. 24).

**Insect stings** Stings from ants, wasps, hornets, and bees cause local pain and swelling but seldom cause severe direct toxicity unless many stings are inflicted at the same time. If the sting is in the mouth or on the tongue local swelling may threaten the upper airway. The stings from these insects are usually treated by cleaning the area with a topical antiseptic. Bee stings should be removed as quickly as possible. Anaphylactic reactions require immediate treatment with intramuscular adrenaline (epinephrine); self-administered (or administered by a carer) intramuscular adrenaline (e.g. EpiPen®) is the best first-aid treatment for children with severe hypersensitivity. An inhaled bronchodilator should be used for asthmatic reactions. For the management of anaphylaxis, see section 3.4.3. A short course of an oral antihistamine or a topical corticosteroid may help to reduce inflammation and relieve itching. A vaccine containing extracts of bee and wasp venom can be used to reduce the risk of severe anaphylaxis and systemic reactions in children with systemic hypersensitivity to bee or wasp stings (section 3.4.2).

**Snake bites and animal stings**

Snake bites Envenoming from snake bite is uncommon in the UK. Many exotic snakes are kept, some illegally, but the only indigenous venomous snake is the adder (Vipera berus). The bite may cause local and systemic effects. Local effects include pain, swelling, bruising, and tender enlargement of regional lymph nodes. Systemic effects include early anaphylactic symptoms (transient hypotension with syncope, angioedema, urticaria, abdominal colic, diarrhoea, and vomiting), with later persistent or recurrent hypotension, ECG abnormalities, spontaneous systemic bleeding, coagulopathy, adult respiratory distress syndrome, and acute renal failure. Fatal envenoming is rare but the potential for severe envenoming must not be underestimated. Early anaphylactic symptoms should be treated with adrenaline (epinephrine) (section 3.4.3). Indications for antivenom treatment include systemic envenoming, especially hypotension (see above). ECG abnormalities, vomiting, haemostatic abnormalities, and marked local envenoming such that after bites on the hand or foot, swelling extends beyond the wrist or ankle within 4 hours of the bite. The contents of one vial (10 mL) of *European viper venom antiserum* (available from Movianto) is given by intravenous injection over 10–15 minutes or by intravenous infusion over 30 minutes after diluting in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9% (use 5 mL diluent/kg body-weight). The same dose should be used for adults and children. The dose can be repeated after 1–2 hours if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist. However, for those children who present with clinical features of severe envenoming (e.g. shock, ECG abnormalities, or local swelling that has advanced from the foot to above the knee or from the hand to above the elbow within 2 hours of the bite), an initial dose of 2 vials (20 mL) of the antiserum is recommended; if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist contact the National Poisons Information Service. Adrenaline (epinephrine) injection must be immediately to hand for treatment of anaphylactic reactions to the antivenom (for the management of anaphylaxis see section 3.4.3).

Antivenom is available for bites by certain foreign snakes and spiders, stings by scorpions and fish. For information on identification, management, and for supply in an emergency, telephone the National Poisons Information Service. Whenever possible the TOXBASE entry should be read, and relevant information collected, before telephoning the National Poisons Information Service (see p. 24).

**Insect stings** Stings from ants, wasps, hornets, and bees cause local pain and swelling but seldom cause severe direct toxicity unless many stings are inflicted at the same time. If the sting is in the mouth or on the tongue local swelling may threaten the upper airway. The stings from these insects are usually treated by cleaning the area with a topical antiseptic. Bee stings should be removed as quickly as possible. Anaphylactic reactions require immediate treatment with intramuscular adrenaline (epinephrine); self-administered (or administered by a carer) intramuscular adrenaline (e.g. EpiPen®) is the best first-aid treatment for children with severe hypersensitivity. An inhaled bronchodilator should be used for asthmatic reactions. For the management of anaphylaxis, see section 3.4.3. A short course of an oral antihistamine or a topical corticosteroid may help to reduce inflammation and relieve itching. A vaccine containing extracts of bee and wasp venom can be used to reduce the risk of severe anaphylaxis and systemic reactions in children with systemic hypersensitivity to bee or wasp stings (section 3.4.2).
Dyspepsia

Dyspepsia covers upper abdominal pain, fullness, early satiety, bloating, and nausea. It can occur with gastric and duodenal ulceration (section 1.3), gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, gastritis, and upper gastrointestinal motility disorders, but most commonly it is of uncertain origin.

Children with dyspepsia should be advised about lifestyle changes (see Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, below). Some medications may cause dyspepsia—these should be stopped, if possible.

A compound alginate preparation (section 1.1.2) may provide relief from dyspepsia; persistent dyspepsia requires investigation. Treatment with a H₂-receptor antagonist (section 1.3.1) or a proton pump inhibitor (section 1.3.5) should be initiated only on the advice of a hospital specialist.

Helicobacter pylori may be present in children with dyspepsia. H. pylori eradication therapy (section 1.3) should be considered for persistent dyspepsia if it is ulcer-like. However, most children with functional (investigated, non-ulcer) dyspepsia do not benefit symptomatically from H. pylori eradication.

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease includes non-erosive gastro-oesophageal reflux and erosive oesophagitis. Uncomplicated gastro-oesophageal reflux is common in infancy and most symptoms, such as intermittent vomiting or repeated, effortless regurgitation, resolve
Antacids (usually containing aluminium or magnesium compounds) can be used for short-term relief of intermittent symptoms of ulcer dyspepsia and non-erosive gastro-oesophageal reflux (see section 1.1) in children; they are also used in functional (non-ulcer) dyspepsia, but the evidence of benefit is uncertain.

Aluminium- and magnesium-containing antacids, being relatively insoluble in water, are long-acting if retained in the stomach. Magnesium-containing antacids tend to be laxative whereas aluminium-containing antacids may be constipating; antacids containing both magnesium and aluminium may reduce these colonic side-effects. Aluminium-containing antacids should not be used in children with renal impairment, or in neonates and infants because accumulation may lead to increased plasma-aluminium concentrations.

Complexes such as hydrotalcite confer no special advantage.

Calcium-containing antacids can induce rebound acid secretion; with modest doses the clinical significance of this is doubtful, but prolonged high doses also cause hypercalcaemia and alkalosis.

Simeticone (activated dimeticone) is used to treat infantile colic, but the evidence of benefit is uncertain. Simeticone is added to an antacid as an antifoaming agent to relieve flatulence; such preparations may also be useful for the relief of hiccup in palliative care (see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 19).

Alginates act as mucosal protectants in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (section 1.1.2). The amount of additional ingredient or antacid in individual preparations varies widely, as does their sodium content, so that preparations may not be freely interchangeable.

Hepatic impairment. In children with fluid retention, avoid antacids containing large amounts of sodium. Avoid antacids that cause constipation because this can precipitate coma. Avoid antacids containing magnesium salts in hepatic coma if there is a risk of renal failure.

Renal impairment. In children with fluid retention, avoid antacids containing large amounts of sodium. There is a risk of accumulation and aluminium toxicity with antacids containing aluminium salts. Absorption of aluminium from aluminium salts is increased by citrates, which are contained in many effervescent preparations (such as effervescent analgesics). Antacids containing magnesium salts should be avoided or used at a reduced dose because there is an increased risk of toxicity.

Interactions. Antacids should preferably not be taken at the same time as other drugs since they may impair absorption. Antacids may also damage enteric coatings designed to prevent dissolution in the stomach. See also Appendix 1 (antacids, calcium salts).

### Antacids and simeticone

Without treatment between 12 and 18 months of age. Older children with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease may have heartburn, acid regurgitation and dysphagia. Gastro-oesophageal inflammation (oesophagitis), ulceration or stricture formation may develop in early childhood; gastro-oesophageal reflux disease may also be associated with chronic respiratory disorders including asthma.

Parents and carers of neonates and infants should be reassured that most symptoms of uncomplicated gastro-oesophageal reflux resolve without treatment. An increase in the frequency and a decrease in the volume of feeds may reduce symptoms. A feed thickener or pre-thickened formula feed (Appendix 2) can be used on the advice of a dietician. If necessary, a suitable alginate-containing preparation (section 1.1.2) can be used instead of thickened feeds.

Older children should be advised about life-style changes such as weight reduction if overweight, and the avoidance of alcohol and smoking. An alginate-containing antacid (section 1.1.2) can be used to relieve symptoms.

Children who do not respond to these measures or who have problems such as respiratory disorders or suspected oesophagitis need to be referred to hospital. On the advice of a paediatrician, a histamine H₂-receptor antagonist (section 1.3.1) can be used to relieve symptoms of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, promote mucosal healing and permit reduction in antacid consumption. A proton pump inhibitor (section 1.3.5) can be used for the treatment of moderate, non-erosive oesophagitis that is unreponsive to an H₂-receptor antagonist. Endoscopically confirmed erosive, ulcerative, or strictureting disease in children is usually treated with a proton pump inhibitor. Reassessment is necessary if symptoms persist despite 4–6 weeks of treatment; long-term use of an H₂-receptor antagonist or proton pump inhibitor should not be undertaken without full assessment of the underlying condition. For endoscopically confirmed erosive, ulcerative, or strictureting disease, the proton pump inhibitor usually needs to be maintained at the minimum effective dose.

Motility stimulants (section 1.2), such as domperidone or erythromycin may improve gastro-oesophageal sphincter contraction and accelerate gastric emptying. Evidence for the long-term efficacy of motility stimulants in the management of gastro-oesophageal reflux in children is unconvincing.

For advice on specialised formula feeds, see section 9.4.2.
Indication and dose

Dyspepsia for dose see preparations

Hyperphosphataemia section 9.5.2.2

Co-magaldrox
Co-magaldrox is a mixture of aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide; the proportions are expressed in the form $x/y$ where $x$ and $y$ are the strengths in milligrams per unit dose of magnesium hydroxide and aluminium hydroxide respectively

Maalox® (Sanofi-Aventis)
Suspension, sugar-free, co-magaldrox 195/220 (magnesium hydroxide 195 mg, dried aluminium hydroxide 220 mg/5 mL (low Na+)). Net price 500 mL = £2.79

Dose
- By mouth
  - Child 14–18 years 10–20 mL 20–60 minutes after meals and at bedtime, or when required

Mucogel® (Chemidex)
Suspension, sugar-free, co-magaldrox 195/220 (magnesium hydroxide 195 mg, dried aluminium hydroxide 220 mg/5 mL (low Na+)). Net price 500 mL = £1.71

Dose
- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mL 3 times daily, 20–60 minutes after meals and at bedtime, or when required

MAGNESIUM TRISILICATE

Cautions heart failure, hypertension; metabolic or respiratory alkalosis, hypermagnesaemia; interactions: Appendix 1 (antacids)

Contra-indications severe renal failure; hyperphosphataemia

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above; magnesium trisilicate mixture has a high sodium content

Side-effects see notes above; silica-based renal stones reported on long-term treatment

Indication and dose
Dyspepsia for dose see under preparation

Magnesium Trisilicate Mixture, BP
(Magnesium Trisilicate Oral Suspension)
Oral suspension, 5% each of magnesium trisilicate, light magnesium carbonate, and sodium bicarbonate in a suitable vehicle with a peppermint flavour. Contains about 6 mmol Na+/10 mL

Dose
- By mouth
  - Child 5–12 years 5–10 mL with water 3 times daily or as required
  - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mL with water 3 times daily or as required

Aluminium-magnesium complexes

HYDROTALCITE
Aluminium magnesium carbonate hydroxide hydrate

Cautions see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (antacids)

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose
Dyspepsia for dose see under preparation

With simeticone

Altacite Plus®
see below

Antacid preparations containing simeticone

Altacite Plus® (Peckforton)
Suspension, sugar-free, co-simalcite 125/500 (simeticone 125 mg, hydrotalcite 500 mg)/5 mL (low Na+). Net price 500 mL = £2.79

Dose
- By mouth
  - Child 8–12 years 5 mL 4 times daily (between meals and at bedtime) when required
  - Child 12–18 years 10 mL 4 times daily (between meals and at bedtime) when required

Asilone® (Thornton & Ross)
Suspension, sugar-free, dried aluminium hydroxide 420 mg, simeticone 135 mg, light magnesium oxide 70 mg/5 mL (low Na+). Net price 500 mL = £1.95

Dose
- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 5–10 mL after meals and at bedtime or when required up to 4 times daily

Maalox Plus® (Sanofi-Aventis)
Suspension, sugar-free, dried aluminium hydroxide 220 mg, simeticone 25 mg, magnesium hydroxide 195 mg/5 mL (low Na+). Net price 500 mL = £2.79

Dose
- By mouth
  - Child 2–5 years 5 mL 3 times daily
  - Child 5–12 years 5–10 mL 3–4 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 5–10 mL 4 times daily (after meals and at bedtime) or when required

Simeticone alone

SIMETICONE
Activated dimeticone

Indication and dose
Colic or wind pain for dose see under individual preparations
### Dentinox® (DDD)

**Colic drops (emulsion), simeticone 21 mg/2.5-mL dose. Net price 100 mL = £1.73**

**Dose**
- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 2.5 mL with or after each feed (max. 6 doses in 24 hours), may be added to bottle feed
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 2.5 mL with or after each feed (max. 6 doses in 24 hours), may be added to bottle feed

**Note** The brand name Dentinox® is also used for other preparations including teething gel

### Infacol® (Forest)

**Liquid, sugar-free, simeticone 40 mg/mL (low Na⁺). Net price 50 mL = £2.26. Counselling, use of dropper**

**Dose**
- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 0.5–1 mL before feeds
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 0.5–1 mL before feeds

### 1.1.2 Compound alginate preparations

Alginate taken in combination with an antacid increases the viscosity of stomach contents and can protect the oesophageal mucosa from acid reflux. Some alginate-containing preparations form a viscous gel (‘raft’) that floats on the surface of the stomach contents, thereby reducing symptoms of reflux. Alginate-containing preparations are used in the management of mild symptoms of dyspepsia and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (see section 1.1). Antacids may damage enteric coatings designed to prevent dissolution in the stomach. For interactions, see Appendix 1 (antacids, calcium salts).

Preparations containing aluminium should not be used in children with renal impairment, or in neonates and infants.

#### Alginate raft-forming oral suspensions

The following preparations contain sodium alginate, sodium bicarbonate, and calcium carbonate in a suitable flavoured vehicle, and conform to the specification for Alginate Raft-forming Oral Suspension, BP.

**Acidex® (Pinewood)**

**Liquid, sugar-free, sodium alginate 250 mg, sodium bicarbonate 133.5 mg, calcium carbonate 80 mg/5 mL. Contains about 3 mmol Na⁺/5 mL. Net price 500 mL (aniseed- or peppermint-flavoured) = £2.30**

**Dose**
- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–12 years** 5–10 mL after meals and at bedtime
  - **Child 12–18 years** 10–20 mL after meals and at bedtime

**Peptac® (IVAX)**

**Suspension, sugar-free, sodium bicarbonate 133.5 mg, sodium alginate 250 mg, calcium carbonate 80 mg/5 mL. Contains 3.1 mmol Na⁺/5 mL. Net price 500 mL (aniseed- or peppermint-flavoured) = £2.16**

**Dose**
- **Child 6–12 years** 5–10 mL after meals and at bedtime
- **Child 12–18 years** 10–20 mL after meals and at bedtime

### Other compound alginate preparations

**Gastrocote® (Actavis)**

**Tablets, alginic acid 200 mg, dried aluminium hydroxide 80 mg, magnesium trisilicate 40 mg, sodium bicarbonate 70 mg. Contains about 1 mmol Na⁺/tablet. Net price 100-tab pack = £3.51**

**Cautions** diabetes mellitus (high sugar content)

**Dose**
- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–18 years** 1–2 tablets chewed 4 times daily (after meals and at bedtime)

**Gaviscon® Advance (Reckitt Benckiser)**

**Tablets, sugar-free, sodium alginate 500 mg, potassium bicarbonate 100 mg. Contains 2.25 mmol Na⁺, 1 mmol K⁺/tablet. Net price 60-tab pack (peppermint-flavour) = £3.07**

**Excipients** include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

**Dose**
- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–12 years** 1 tablet to be chewed after meals and at bedtime (under medical advice only)
  - **Child 12–18 years** 1–2 tablets to be chewed after meals and at bedtime

**Gaviscon® Infant (Reckitt Benckiser)**

**Oral powder, sugar-free, sodium alginate 225 mg, magnesium alginate 87.5 mg, with colloidal silica and mannitol/dose. Contains 0.92 mmol Na⁺/dose. Net price 30 doses = £2.46**

**Dose**
- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate body-weight under 4.5 kg** 1 ‘dose’ mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants) when required (max. 6 times in 24 hours)
  - **Neonate body-weight over 4.5 kg** 2 ‘doses’ mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants) when required (max. 6 times in 24 hours)
1.2 Antispasmodics and other drugs altering gut motility

Drugs in this section include antimuscarinic compounds and drugs believed to be direct relaxants of intestinal smooth muscle. The smooth muscle relaxant properties of antimuscarinic and other antispasmodic drugs may be useful in *irritable bowel syndrome*.

The dopamine-receptor antagonist *domperidone* stimulates transit in the gut.

**Antimuscarinics**

Antimuscarinics (formerly termed ‘anticholinergics’) reduce intestinal motility. They are occasionally used for the management of *irritable bowel syndrome* but the evidence of their value has not been established and response varies. Other indications for antimuscarinic drugs include asthma and airways disease (section 3.1.2), motion sickness (section 4.6), urinary frequency and retention, dilatation of the pupils with loss of accommodation, photophobia, dry mouth, flushing and dryness of the skin. Side-effects that occur occasionally include nausea, vomiting, and giddiness; very rarely, angle closure glaucoma may occur.

**Cautions** Antimuscarinics should be used with caution in children (especially children with Down’s syndrome) due to increased risk of side-effects; they should also be used with caution in autonomic neuropathy, hypertension, conditions characterised by tachycardia (including hyperthyroidism, cardiac insufficiency, cardiac surgery), pyrexia, and in children susceptible to angle-closure glaucoma. Antimuscarinics are not used in children with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, diarrhoea or ulcerative colitis. **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (antimuscarinics).

**Contra-indications** Antimuscarinics are contra-indicated in myasthenia gravis (but may be used to decrease muscarinic side-effects of anticholinesterases—section 10.2.1), paralytic ileus, pyloric stenosis, and toxic megacolon.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of antimuscarinics include constipation, transient bradycardia (followed by tachycardia, palpitation and arrhythmias), reduced bronchial secretions, urinary urgency and retention, dilatation of the pupils with loss of accommodation, photophobia, dry mouth, flushing and dryness of the skin. Side-effects that occur occasionally include nausea, vomiting, and giddiness; very rarely, angle closure glaucoma may occur.

**Dicycloverine hydrochloride**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above; child under 6 months

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises use only if essential

**Breast-feeding** avoid—present in milk; apnoea reported in infant

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm

- By mouth
  - Child 6 months–2 years 5–10 mg 3–4 times daily
  - 15 minutes before feeds
  - Child 2–12 years 10 mg 3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg 3 times daily

**Merbentyl**

**Cautions**

see notes above

**Contra-indications**

see notes above; child under 6 months

**Pregnancy**

not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises use only if essential

**Breast-feeding**

avoid—present in milk; apnoea reported in infant

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm

- By mouth
  - Child 6 months–2 years 5–10 mg 3–4 times daily
  - 15 minutes before feeds
  - Child 2–12 years 10 mg 3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg 3 times daily

**Merbentyl** (Sanofi-Aventis) 

Tablets, dicycloverine hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £4.84; 20 mg (*Merbentyl 20®*), 84-tab pack = £8.14

**Syrup**, dicycloverine hydrochloride 10 mg/5 mL, net price 120 mL = £1.77

**Note** Dicycloverine hydrochloride can be sold to the public provided that max. single dose is 10 mg and max. daily dose is 60 mg.

**Compound preparations**

**Kolantic** (Peckforton)

Get, sugar-free, dicycloverine hydrochloride 2.5 mg, dried aluminium hydroxide 200 mg, light magnesium oxide 100 mg, simeticone 20 mg/5 mL, net price 200 mL = £2.21, 500 mL = £3.35

**Dose**

- Child 12–18 years 10–20 mL every 4 hours when required

**Safe Practice**

Each half of the dual sachet is identified as ‘one dose’. To avoid errors prescribe with directions in terms of ‘dose’.

**Topal** (Fabre)

**Tablets**, alginic acid 200 mg, dried aluminium hydroxide 30 mg, light magnesium carbonate 40 mg with lactose 220 mg, sucrose 880 mg, sodium bicarbonate 40 mg (low Na+). Net price 42-tab pack = £1.67

**Cautions** diabetes mellitus (high sugar content)

**Contra-indications**

see notes above

**Pregnancy**

not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises use only if essential

**Breast-feeding**

avoid—present in milk; apnoea reported in infant

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–2 years Body-weight under 4.5 kg dose as for neonate
  - Body-weight over 4.5 kg 2 ‘doses’ mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants) when required (max. 6 times in 24 hours)

**Note** Not to be used in preterm neonates, or where excessive water loss is likely (e.g. fever, diarrhoea, vomiting, high room temperature), or if intestinal obstruction. Not to be used with other preparations containing thickening agents.

**BNFC 2011–2012**

1.2 Antispasmodics and other drugs altering gut motility
1.2 Antispasmodics and other drugs altering gut motility

**HYOSCINE BUTYLBROMIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also intestinal and urinary outlet obstruction

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years; injection not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

---

**Indication and dose**

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal or genito-urinary disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 6–12 years 10 mg 3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 20 mg 4 times daily

**Excessive respiratory secretions and bowel colic in palliative care** (see also p. 20)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–2 years 300–500 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg) 3–4 times daily
  - Child 2–5 years 5 mg 3–4 times daily
  - Child 5–12 years 10 mg 3–4 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 20–30 mg 3–4 times daily

- **By intramuscular or intravenous injection**
  - Child 1 month–4 years 300–500 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg) 3–4 times daily
  - Child 5–12 years 5–10 mg 3–4 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg 3–4 times daily

**Acute spasm, spasm in diagnostic procedures**

- **By intramuscular or intravenous injection**
  - Child 2–6 years 5 mg repeated after 30 minutes if necessary (may be repeated more frequently in endoscopy), max. 15 mg daily
  - Child 6–12 years 5–10 mg repeated after 30 minutes if necessary (may be repeated more frequently in endoscopy), max. 30 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years 20 mg repeated after 30 minutes if necessary (may be repeated more frequently in endoscopy), max. 80 mg daily

**Administration** for intravenous injection, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 1 minute.

For administration by mouth, injection solution may be used; content of ampoule may be stored in a refrigerator for up to 24 hours after opening

**Buscopan®** (Boehringer Ingelheim)

- **Tablets**, coated, hyoscine butylbromide 10 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £2.25

Note: Hyoscine butylbromide tablets can be sold to the public for medically confirmed irritable bowel syndrome, provided single dose does not exceed 20 mg, daily dose does not exceed 80 mg, and pack does not contain a total of more than 240 mg

**Injection**, hyoscine butylbromide 20 mg/mL. Net price 1-mL amp = 22p

---

**PROPANTHELINE BROMIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises caution

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution

**Breast-feeding** may suppress lactation

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed for use in children under 12 years

---

**Indication and dose**

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 300 micrograms/kg (max. 15 mg) 3–4 times daily at least one hour before food
  - Child 12–18 years 15 mg 3 times daily at least one hour before meals and 30 mg at night (max. 120 mg daily)

**Pro-Banthine®** (Archimedes)

- **Tablets**, pink, s/c, propantheline bromide 15 mg, net price 112-tab pack = £14.40. Label: 23

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

---

**Other antispasmodics**

Alverine, mebeverine, and peppermint oil are believed to be direct relaxants of intestinal smooth muscle and may relieve pain in irritable bowel syndrome and primary dysmenorrhoea. They have no serious adverse effects; peppermint oil occasionally causes heartburn.

**ALVERINE CITRATE**

**Contra-indications** paralytic ileus

**Pregnancy** use with caution

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available

**Side-effects** nausea; headache, dizziness; pruritus, rash; hepatitis also reported

---

**Indication and dose**

**Adjunct in gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm, dysmenorrhoea**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 60–120 mg 1–3 times daily

**Spasmonal® (Norgine)**

- **Capsules**, alverine citrate 60 mg (blue/grey), net price 100-cap pack = £9.47; 120 mg (Spasmonal® Forte, blue/grey), 60-cap pack = £10.94

---

**MEBEVERINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Contra-indications** paralytic ileus

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful—manufacturers advise caution

**Side-effects** allergic reactions (including rash, urticaria, angioedema) reported
Licensed use  tablets and liquid  not licensed for use in children under 10 years; granules not licensed for use in children under 12 years; modified-release capsules not licensed for use in children under 18 years

Indication and dose

Adjunct in gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 3–4 years**  25 mg 3 times daily, preferably 20 minutes before meals
  - **Child 4–8 years**  50 mg 3 times daily, preferably 20 minutes before meals
  - **Child 8–10 years**  100 mg 3 times daily, preferably 20 minutes before meals
  - **Child 10–18 years**  135–150 mg 3 times daily, preferably 20 minutes before meals

Mebeverine Hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)  Tablets, mebeverine hydrochloride 135 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £4.21

Oral suspension, mebeverine hydrochloride (as mebeverine embonate) 50 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £137.00

Colofac® (Abbott Healthcare)  Tablets, s/c, mebeverine hydrochloride 135 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £7.52

**Modified release**

Colofac® MR (Abbott Healthcare)  Capsules, m/r, mebeverine hydrochloride 200 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £6.67. Label: 25

**Compound preparations**

Fybogel® Mebeverine (Reckitt Benckiser)  Granules, buff, effervescent, ispaghula husk 3.5 g, mebeverine hydrochloride 135 mg/sachet, net price 10 sachets = £2.50. Label: 13, 22, counselling, see below

Electrolytes  K⁺ 2.5 mmol/sachet

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

**Dose**

Irritable bowel syndrome

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 12–18 years**  1 capsule twice daily

**Side-effects**

Heartburn, perianal irritation; rarely, allergic reactions (including rash, headache, bradycardia, muscle tremor, ataxia)

Local irritation  Capsules should not be broken or chewed because peppermint oil may irritate mouth or oesophagus

Indication and dose

Relief of abdominal colic and distension, particularly in irritable bowel syndrome

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 15–18 years**  1–2 capsules, swallowed whole with water, 3 times daily for up to 3 months if necessary

Colpermin® (McNeil)  Capsules, e/c, light blue/dark blue, blue band, peppermint oil 0.2 mL. Net price 100-cap pack = £12.05. Label: 5, 25

Excipients include arachis (peanut) oil

Motility stimulants

Domperidone and metoclopramide (section 4.6) are dopamine receptor antagonists which stimulate gastric emptying and small intestinal transit, and enhance the strength of oesophageal sphincter contraction. Metoclopramide and occasionally domperidone can cause acute dystonic reactions—for further details of this and other side-effects, see section 4.6.

A low dose of erythromycin stimulates gastro-intestinal motility and may be used on the advice of a paediatric gastroenterologist to promote tolerance of enteral feeds; erythromycin may be less effective as a prokinetic drug in preterm neonates than in older children.

DOMPERIDONE

**Cautions** see under Domperidone (section 4.6)

**Side-effects** see under Domperidone (section 4.6); also QT-interval prolongation reported

Licensed use  not licensed for use in gastro-intestinal stasis; not licensed for use in children for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

**Indication and dose**

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (but efficacy not proven, see section 1.1), gastro-intestinal stasis

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate**  100–300 micrograms/kg 4–6 times daily before feeds
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**  200–400 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) 3–4 times daily before food
  - **Child 12–18 years**  10–20 mg, 3–4 times daily before food

**Nausea and vomiting** section 4.6

**Preparations**

Section 4.6

ERYTHROMYCIN

**Cautions** see section 5.1.5; interactions: Appendix 1 (macrolides)

**Side-effects** see section 5.1.5

PEPPERMINT OIL

**Cautions** sensitivity to menthol

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** significant levels of menthol in breast milk unlikely
Peptic ulceration commonly involves the stomach, duodenum, and lower oesophagus; after gastric surgery it involves the gastro-enterostomy stoma.

In some cases, smoking and taking non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) can contribute to their development.

The management of Helicobacter pylori infection and of NSAID-associated ulcers is discussed below.

**Recommended regimen for Helicobacter pylori eradication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eradication therapy</th>
<th>Age range</th>
<th>Oral dose (to be used in combination with omeprazole, section 1.3.5)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin</td>
<td>1–6 years</td>
<td>250 mg twice daily (with clarithromycin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1–6 years</td>
<td>125 mg 3 times daily (with metronidazole)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6–12 years</td>
<td>500 mg twice daily (with clarithromycin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6–12 years</td>
<td>250 mg 3 times daily (with metronidazole)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12–18 years</td>
<td>1 g twice daily (with clarithromycin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg 3 times daily (with metronidazole)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarithromycin</td>
<td>1–12 years</td>
<td>7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily (with metronidazole or amoxicillin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg twice daily (with metronidazole or amoxicillin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
<td>1–6 years</td>
<td>100 mg twice daily (with clarithromycin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1–6 years</td>
<td>100 mg 3 times daily (with amoxicillin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6–12 years</td>
<td>200 mg twice daily (with clarithromycin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6–12 years</td>
<td>200 mg 3 times daily (with amoxicillin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12–18 years</td>
<td>400 mg twice daily (with clarithromycin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12–18 years</td>
<td>400 mg 3 times daily (with amoxicillin)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Test for Helicobacter pylori

$^{13}$C-Urea breath test kits are available for confirming the presence of gastro-duodenal infection with Helicobacter pylori. The test involves collection of breath samples before and after ingestion of an oral solution of $^{13}$C-urea; the samples are sent for analysis by an appropriate laboratory. The test should not be performed within 4 weeks of treatment with an antibacterial or within 2 weeks of treatment with an antiseptic drug. A specific $^{13}$C-Urea breath test kit for children is available (Helicobacter Test INFAI for children of the age 3–11 ε). However the appropriateness of testing for $H.\ pylori$ infection in children has not been established. Breath, saliva, faecal, and urine tests for $H.\ pylori$ are frequently unreliable in children; the most accurate method of diagnosis is endoscopy with biopsy.

Helicobacter Test INFAI for children of the age 3–11 ε (Infai)

Oral powder, $^{13}$C-urea 45 mg, net price 1 kit (including 4 breath sample containers, straws) = £19.20 (spectrometric analysis included)

Helicobacter Test INFAI ε (Infai)

Oral powder, $^{13}$C-urea 75 mg, net price 1 kit (including 4 breath-sample containers, straws) = £19.20 (spectrometric analysis included); 1 kit (including 2 breath bags) = £14.20 (spectrometric analysis not included); 50-test set = £85.00 (spectrometric analysis included)

NSAID-associated ulcers

Gastro-intestinal bleeding and ulceration can occur with NSAID use (section 10.1.1). In adults, the risk of serious upper gastro-intestinal side-effects varies between individual NSAIDs (see Gastro-intestinal side-effects, p. 501). Whenever possible, NSAIDs should be withdrawn if an ulcer occurs.

Children at high risk of developing gastro-intestinal complications with a NSAID include those with a history of peptic ulcer disease or serious upper gastrointestinal complication, those taking other medicines or an H2-receptor antagonist, such as ranitidine, may be considered for protection against gastric and duodenal ulcers associated with non-selective NSAIDs.

NSAID use and $H.\ pylori$ infection are independent risk factors for gastro-intestinal bleeding and ulceration. In children already taking a NSAID, eradication of $H.\ pylori$ is unlikely to reduce the risk of NSAID-induced bleeding or ulceration. However, in children about to start long-term NSAID treatment who are $H.\ pylori$ positive and have dyspepsia or a history of gastric or duodenal ulcer, eradication of $H.\ pylori$ may reduce the overall risk of ulceration.

If the NSAID can be discontinued in a child who has developed an ulcer, a proton pump inhibitor usually produces the most rapid healing; alternatively the ulcer can be treated with an H2-receptor antagonist. If NSAID treatment needs to continue, the ulcer is treated with a proton pump inhibitor (section 1.3.5).

Histamine H2-receptor antagonists

Histamine H2-receptor antagonists heal gastric and duodenal ulcers by reducing gastric acid output as a result of histamine H2-receptor blockade; they are also used to relieve symptoms of dyspepsia and gastro-esophageal reflux disease (section 1.1). H2-receptor antagonists should not normally be used for Zollinger–Ellison syndrome because proton pump inhibitors (section 1.3.5) are more effective.

Maintenance treatment with low doses has largely been replaced in Helicobacter pylori positive children by eradication regimens (section 1.3). H2-receptor antagonist therapy can promote healing of NSAID-associated ulcers (section 1.3).

Treatment with a H2-receptor antagonist has not been shown to be beneficial in haematemesis and melaena, but prophylactic use reduces the frequency of bleeding from gastroduodenal erosions in hepatic coma, and possibly in other conditions requiring intensive care. Treatment also reduces the risk of acid aspiration in obstetric patients at delivery (Mendelson’s syndrome).

H2-receptor antagonists are also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements (section 1.9.4) in children with cystic fibrosis.

Side-effects

Side-effects of H2-receptor antagonists include diarrhoea, headache, and dizziness. Rash (including erythema multiforme and toxic epidermal necrolysis) occurs less frequently. Other side-effects reported rarely or very rarely include hepatitis, cholestatic jaundice, bradycardia, psychiatric reactions (including confusion, depression, and hallucinations) particularly in the very ill, blood disorders (including leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, and pancytopenia), arthralgia, and myalgia. There are isolated reports of gynaeecomastia and impotence.

RANITIDINE

Cautions

- acute porphyria; interactions: Appendix 1 (histamine H2-antagonists)

Renal impairment

use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m2

Pregnancy

manufacturer advises avoid unless essential, but not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding

significant amount present in milk, but not known to be harmful

Side-effects

see notes above; also less commonly blurred vision; also reported pancreatitis, involuntary movement disorders, interstitial nephritis, alopecia

Licensed use

oral preparations not licensed for use in children under 3 years; injection not licensed for use in children under 6 months

Indication and dose

Reflux oesophagitis, benign gastric and duodenal ulceration, prophylaxis of stress ulceration, other conditions where gastric acid reduction is beneficial (see notes above and section 1.9.4)

- By mouth

Neonate 2 mg/kg 3 times daily but absorption unreliable; max. 3 mg/kg 3 times daily
Sucreflux is a complex of aluminium hydroxide and sulphated sucrose that appears to act by protecting the mucosa from acid-pepsin attack; it has minimal antacid properties. Sucreflux can be used to prevent stress ulceration in children receiving intensive care. It should be used with caution in this situation (important: reports of bezoar formation, see Bezoar Formation below).

**Sucralfate**

**Cautions** administration of sucralfate and enteral feeds should be separated by 1 hour; interactions: Appendix 1 (sucralfate)

**Bezoar formation** Following reports of bezoar formation associated with sucralfate, caution is advised in seriously ill patients, especially those receiving concomitant enteral feeds or those with predisposing conditions such as delayed gastric emptying.

**Renal impairment** use with caution; aluminium is absorbed and may accumulate.

**Pregnancy** no evidence of harm; absorption from gastro-intestinal tract negligible.

**Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful.

**Side-effects** constipation; less frequently diarrhoea, nausea, indigestion, flatulence, gastric discomfort, back pain, dizziness, headache, drowsiness, bezoar formation (see above), dry mouth, and rash.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 15 years; tablets not licensed for prophylaxis of stress ulceration.

**Indication and dose**

**Prophylaxis of stress ulceration in child under intensive care**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–2 years 250 mg 4–6 times daily
  - Child 2–12 years 500 mg 4–6 times daily
  - Child 12–15 years 1 g 4–6 times daily
  - Child 15–18 years 1 g 6 times daily; max. 8 g daily

**Benign gastric and duodenal ulceration**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–2 years 250 mg 4–6 times daily
  - Child 2–12 years 500 mg 4–6 times daily
  - Child 12–15 years 1 g 4–6 times daily
  - Child 15–18 years 2 g twice daily (on rising and at bedtime) or 1 g 4 times daily (1 hour before meals and at bedtime) taken for 4–6 weeks, or in resistant cases up to 12 weeks; max. 8 g daily

**Administration** for administration by mouth, sucralfate should be given 1 hour before meals, see also Cautions, above; oral suspension blocks fine-bore feeding tubes; crushed tablets may be dispersed in water.

**Antepsin** (Chugai) Tablets, scored, sucralfate 1 g, net price 50-tab pack = £5.77. Label: 5

**Suspension**, sucralfate, 1 g/5 mL, net price 250 mL (aniseed- and caramel-flavoured) = £5.77. Label: 5
Proton pump inhibitors inhibit gastric acid secretion by blocking the hydrogen-potassium adenosine triphosphatase enzyme system (the ‘proton pump’) of the gastric parietal cell. Omeprazole is an effective short-term treatment for gastric and duodenal ulcers; it is also used in combination with antibacterials for the eradication of Helicobacter pylori (see p. 42 for specific regimens). An initial short course of omeprazole is the treatment of choice in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease with severe symptoms; children with endoscopically confirmed erosive, ulcerative, or strictureing oesophagitis usually need to be maintained on omeprazole.

Omeprazole is also used for the prevention and treatment of NSAID-associated ulcers (see p. 43). In children who need to continue NSAID treatment after an ulcer has healed, the dose of omeprazole should not normally be reduced because asymptomatic ulcer deterioration may occur.

Omeprazole is effective in the treatment of the Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (including cases resistant to other treatment). It is also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements (section 1.9.4) to other treatment). It is also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements (section 1.9.4) to other treatment). It is also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements (section 1.9.4) to other treatment). It is also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements (section 1.9.4) to other treatment).

Lansoprazole is not licensed for use in children, but may be considered when the available formulations of omeprazole are unsuitable.

Esomeprazole can be used for the management of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease when the available formulations of omeprazole and lansoprazole are unsuitable.

Side-effects

Side-effects of the proton pump inhibitors include gastrointestinal disturbances (including nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, flatulence, diarrhoea, constipation), and headache. Less frequent side-effects include dry mouth, peripheral oedema, dizziness, sleep disturbances, fatigue, paraesthesia, arthralgia, myalgia, rash, and pruritus. Other side-effects reported rarely or very rarely include taste disturbance, stomatitis, hepatitis, jaundice, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis, bronchospasm), fever, depression, hallucinations, confusion, gynaecomastia, interstitial nephritis, hyponatraemia, blood disorders (including leucopenia, leucocytosis, pancytopenia, thrombocytopenia), visual disturbances, sweating, photosensitivity, alopecia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis. By decreasing gastric acidity, proton pump inhibitors may increase the risk of gastro-intestinal infections (including Clostridium difficile infection).

Lansoprazole

Cautions

Interactions: Appendix 1 (proton pump inhibitors)

Hepatic impairment

Child 1–12 years max. 10 mg daily in severe impairment; child 12–18 years max. 20 mg daily in severe impairment

Renal impairment

Manufacturer advises caution in severe renal insufficiency

Pregnancy

Manufacturer advises caution—no information available

Breast-feeding

Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects

See notes above

Licensed use

Not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (in the presence of erosive reflux oesophagitis)

- By mouth

Child 1–12 years

Body-weight 10–20 kg 10 mg once daily for 8 weeks

Body-weight over 20 kg 10–20 mg once daily for 8 weeks

Child 12–18 years 40 mg once daily for 4 weeks, continued for further 4 weeks if not fully healed or symptoms persist; maintenance 20 mg daily

Symptomatic treatment of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (in the absence of oesophagitis)

- By mouth

Child 1–12 years, body-weight over 10 kg 10 mg once daily for up to 8 weeks

Child 12–18 years 20 mg once daily for up to 4 weeks

Nexium® (AstraZeneca) (Sedative)

Tablets, f/c, esomeprazole (as magnesium trihydrate) 20 mg (light pink), net price 28-tab pack = £18.50; 40 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £25.19. Counselling, administration

Administration

Swallow whole or disperse in water, do not chew or crush tablets

Granules, yellow, f/c, esomeprazole (as magnesium trihydrate) 10 mg/sachet, net price 28-sachet pack = £25.19. Label: 25, counselling, administration

Administration

Disperse the contents of each sachet in approx. 15 mL water. Stir and leave to thicken for a few minutes; stir again before administration and use within 30 minutes; rinse container with 15 mL water to obtain full dose; can be administered through nasogastric or gastric tube

Lansoprazole

Cautions

Interactions: Appendix 1 (proton pump inhibitors)

Hepatic impairment

Use half normal dose in moderate to severe liver disease

Pregnancy

Manufacturer advises avoid

Breast-feeding

Avoid unless essential—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects

See notes above; also glossitis, pancreatitis, anorexia, restlessless, tremor, impotence, petechiae, and purpura; very rarely colitis, raised serum cholesterol or triglycerides

Licensed use

Not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, acid-related dyspepsia, treatment of duodenal and benign gastric ulcer including those complicating NSAID therapy, fat malabsorption despite pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy in cystic fibrosis

- By mouth

Child body-weight under 30 kg 0.5–1 mg/kg (max. 15 mg) once daily in the morning

Child body-weight over 30 kg 15–30 mg once daily in the morning
OMEPRAZOLE

Cautions interactions: Appendix 1 (proton pump inhibitors)

Hepatic impairment no more than 700 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) once daily

Pregnancy not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding present in milk but not known to be harmful

Side-effects see notes above; also agitation and impotence

Licensed use capsules and tablets not licensed for use in children except for severe ulcerating reflux oesophagitis in children over 1 year; injection not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, acid-related dyspepsia, treatment of duodenal and benign gastric ulcers including those complicating NSAID therapy, prophylaxis of acid related dyspepsia, treatment of duodenal and gastric ulcers.

• By mouth

Neonate 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary after 7–14 days to 1.4 mg/kg; some neonates may require up to 2.8 mg/kg once daily

Child 1 month–2 years 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg (max. 20 mg) once daily

Child body-weight 10–20 kg 10 mg once daily increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily (in severe ulcerating reflux oesophagitis, max. 12 weeks at higher dose)

Child body-weight over 20 kg 20 mg once daily increased if necessary to 40 mg once daily (in severe ulcerating reflux oesophagitis, max. 12 weeks at higher dose)

• By intravenous injection over 5 minutes or by intravenous infusion

Child 1 month–12 years initially 500 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) once daily, increased to 2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) once daily if necessary

Child 12–18 years 40 mg once daily

Helicobacter pylori eradication (in combination with antibacterials see p. 42)

• By mouth

Child 1–12 years 1–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) once daily

Child 12–18 years 40 mg once daily

Administration for administration by a nasogastric tube or an oral syringe, Zoton FasTab® can be dispersed in a small amount of water.

Zoton® (Wyeth) FasTab® (= orodispersible tablet), lanosprazole 15 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £2.99; 30 mg, 28-tab pack = £5.50. Label: 5, 22, counselling, administration. Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Counselling Tablets should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed, or may be swallowed whole with a glass of water.

OMEPRAZOLE

Administration for administration by mouth, swallow whole, or disperse Losec MUPS® tablets in water, or mix capsule contents or Losec MUPS® tablets with fruit juice or yoghurt. Preparations consisting of an e/c tablet within a capsule should not be opened. For administration through an enteral feeding tube, use Losec MUPS® or the contents of a capsule containing omeprazole dispersed in a large volume of water, or in 10 mL Sodium Bicarbonate 8.4% (1 mmol Na+/mL) (allow to stand for 10 minutes before administration).

For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of 400 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 20–30 minutes.

Omeprazole (Non-proprietary) Losec® (AstraZeneca) MUPS® (multiple-unit pellet system = dispersible tablets), e/c, omeprazole 10 mg (light pink), net price 28-tab pack = £5.84; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £7.75; 40 mg, 7-tab pack = £5.71; 40 mg, 7-tab pack = £5.15. Label: 25

Losec® (AstraZeneca) (Non-proprietary) Losec MUPS® (multiple-unit pellet system = dispersible tablets), e/c, omeprazole 10 mg (light pink), net price 28-tab pack = £7.75; 20 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £11.60; 40 mg (red-brown), 7-tab pack = £5.80. Counselling, administration

Counselling, powder for reconstitution, omeprazole (as sodium salt), net price 40-mg vial = £5.18

Losec® (AstraZeneca) (Non-proprietary) Losec® MUPS® (multiple-unit pellet system = dispersible tablets), e/c, omeprazole 10 mg (light pink), net price 28-tab pack = £7.75; 20 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £11.60; 40 mg (red-brown), 7-tab pack = £5.80. Counselling, administration

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, omeprazole (as sodium salt), net price 40-mg vial = £5.41

Injection, powder for reconstitution, omeprazole (as sodium salt), net price 40-mg vial (with solvent) = £5.41

1.4 Acute diarrhoea

The priority in acute diarrhoea, as in gastro-enteritis, is the prevention or reversal of fluid and electrolyte depletion—this is particularly important in infants. For details of oral rehydration preparations, see section 9.2.1.2. Severe dehydration requires immediate admission to hospital and urgent replacement of fluid and electrolytes.

Antimotility drugs (section 1.4.2) relieve symptoms of diarrhoea. They are used in the management of uncomplicated acute diarrhoea in adults, but are not recom
mended for use in children under 12 years. Fluid and electrolyte replacement (section 9.2.1.2) are of prime importance in the treatment of acute diarrhoea.

**Antispasmodics** (section 1.2) are occasionally of value in treating abdominal cramp associated with diarrhoea but they should not be used for primary treatment. Antispasmodics and antiemetics should be avoided in young children with gastro-enteritis since they are rarely effective and have troublesome side-effects.

Antibacterial drugs are generally unnecessary in simple gastro-enteritis because the complaint usually resolves quickly without such treatment, and infective diarrhoeas in the UK often have a viral cause. Systemic bacterial infection does, however, need appropriate systemic treatment; for drugs used in campylobacter enteritis, see p. 244.

**Colestyramine** (section 1.9.2) binds unabsorbed bile salts and provides symptomatic relief of diarrhoea following ileal disease or resection.

### 1.4.1 Adsorbents and bulk-forming drugs

Adsorbents such as kaolin are not recommended for acute diarrhoeas. Bulk-forming drugs, such as ispaghula, methylcellulose, and sterculia (section 1.6.1) are rarely effective in controlling faecal consistency in ileostomy and colostomy.

### 1.4.2 Antimotility drugs

Antimotility drugs have a role in the management of uncomplicated acute diarrhoea in adults but not in children under 12 years; see also section 1.4. However, in the case of dehydration, fluid and electrolyte replacement (section 9.2.1.2) are of primary importance.

For comments on their role in chronic bowel disorders see section 1.5. Antimotility drugs are also used in children with stoma (section 1.8).

#### CODEINE PHOSPHATE

**Cautions** see section 4.7.2; tolerance and dependence may occur with prolonged use; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (opioid analgesics)

**Contra-indications** see section 4.7.2; also conditions where inhibition of peristalsis should be avoided, where abdominal distension develops, or in acute diarrhoeal conditions such as acute ulcerative colitis or antibiotic-associated colitis

**Hepatic impairment** section 4.7.2

**Renal impairment** section 4.7.2

**Pregnancy** section 4.7.2

**Breast-feeding** section 4.7.2

**Side-effects** section 4.7.2

**Indication and dose**

- **Diarrhoea** (but see notes above)
  - By mouth
    - Child 12–18 years 30 mg (range 15–60 mg) 3–4 times daily
    - Child 2–4 years half tablet 3 times daily
    - Child 4–9 years 1 tablet 3 times daily
    - Child 9–12 years 1 tablet 4 times daily
    - Child 12–16 years 2 tablets 3 times daily
    - Child 16–18 years initially 4 tablets then 2 tablets 4 times daily

- **Pain** section 4.7.2

---

**Preparations**

Section 4.7.2

#### CO-PHENOTROPE

A mixture of diphenoxylate hydrochloride and atropine sulphate in the mass proportions 100 parts to 1 part respectively

**Cautions** section 4.7.2; also young children are particularly susceptible to overdosage and symptoms may be delayed and observation is needed for at least 48 hours after ingestion; presence of subclinical doses of atropine may give rise to atropine side-effects in susceptible individuals or in overdosage (section 1.2); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (antimuscarinics, opioid analgesics)

**Contra-indications** section 4.7.2 and also see under Antimuscarinics (section 1.2)

**Hepatic impairment** section 4.7.2; also avoid in jaundice

**Renal impairment** section 4.7.2

**Pregnancy** section 4.7.2

**Breast-feeding** may be present in milk

**Side-effects** section 4.7.2 and also see under Antimuscarinics (section 1.2); also abdominal pain, anorexia, fever

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 4 years

**Indication and dose**

- **See preparations**

**Administration** for administration by mouth tablets may be crushed

**Co-phenotrope** (Non-proprietary) Co-phenotrope 2.5/0.025 can be sold to the public for control of faecal consistency after colostomy or ileostomy, adjunct to rehydration in acute diarrhoea (but see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–4 years half tablet 3 times daily
  - Child 4–9 years 1 tablet 3 times daily
  - Child 9–12 years 1 tablet 4 times daily
  - Child 12–16 years 2 tablets 3 times daily
  - Child 16–18 years initially 4 tablets then 2 tablets 4 times daily

**Note** Co-phenotrope 2.5/0.025 can be sold to the public for children over 16 years (provided packs do not contain more than 20 tablets) as an adjunct to rehydration in acute diarrhoea (max. daily dose 10 tablets)

#### LOPERAMIDE HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** see notes above; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (loperamide)

**Contra-indications** conditions where inhibition of peristalsis should be avoided, where abdominal distension develops, or in conditions such as active ulcerative colitis or antibiotic-associated colitis

**Hepatic impairment** risk of accumulation—manufacturer advises caution

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful
1.5 Chronic bowel disorders

**Side-effects** abdominal cramps, dizziness, drowsiness, and skin reactions including urticaria; paralytic ileus and abdominal bloating also reported

**Licensed use** capsules not licensed for use in children under 8 years; syrup not licensed for use in children under 4 years; not licensed for use in children for chronic diarrhoea

**Indication and dose**

**Chronic diarrhoea**
- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–1 year 100–200 micrograms/kg twice daily; 30 minutes before feeds; up to 2 mg/kg daily in divided doses occasionally required
  - Child 1–12 years 100–200 micrograms/kg (max. 2 mg); 3–4 times daily; up to 1.25 mg/kg daily in divided doses may be required (max. 16 mg daily)
  - Child 12–18 years 2–4 mg 2–4 times daily (max. 16 mg daily)

**Acute diarrhoea** (but see notes above)
- By mouth
  - Child 4–8 years 1 mg 3–4 times daily for up to 3 days only
  - Child 8–12 years 2 mg 4 times daily for up to 5 days
  - Child 12–18 years initially 4 mg, then 2 mg after each loose stool for up to 5 days (usual dose 6–8 mg daily; max. 16 mg daily)

**Loperamide** (Non-proprietary)  
Capsules, loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £1.07

Tablets, loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £2.15

Brands include Norimode®

Note Loperamide can be sold to the public, for use in children over 12 years, provided it is licensed and labelled for the treatment of acute diarrhoea

**Imodium®** (Janssen)  
Capsules, green/grey, loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg. Net price 50-cap pack = £1.09

Syrup, sugar-free, red, loperamide hydrochloride 1 mg/5 mL. Net price 100 mL = £1.17

**Compound preparations**

**Imodium® Plus** (McNeil)

Capslets (= tablets), loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg, simeticone 125 mg, net price 6-tab pack = £2.27; 12-tab pack = £3.58

**Dose**

**Acute diarrhoea with abdominal colic**

Child 12–18 years initially 1 caplet, then 1 caplet after each loose stool; max. 4 caplets daily for up to 2 days

**Inflammatory bowel disease**

Chronic inflammatory bowel diseases include ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease. The treatment of inflammatory bowel disease in children should be initiated and supervised by a paediatric gastroenterologist. Effective management requires drug therapy, attention to nutrition, and in severe or chronic active disease, surgery.

**Aminosalicylates** (balsalazide, mesalazine, olsalazine, and sulfasalazine), corticosteroids (hydrocortisone, budesonide, and prednisolone), and drugs that affect the immune response are used in the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease.

**Treatment of acute ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease**

Acute mild to moderate disease affecting the rectum (proctitis) or the recto-sigmoid (distal colitis) is treated initially with local application of an aminosalicylate (section 1.5.1); alternatively a local corticosteroid (section 1.5.2) can be used but it is less effective. Foam preparations and suppositories are useful for children who have difficulty retaining liquid enemas.

Diffuse inflammatory bowel disease or disease that does not respond to local therapy requires oral treatment. Mild disease affecting the proximal colon can be treated with an oral aminosalicylate alone; a combination of a local and an oral aminosalicylate can be used in proctitis or distal colitis. Refractory or moderate inflammatory bowel disease usually requires adjunctive use of an oral corticosteroid such as prednisolone (section 1.5.2) for 4–8 weeks. Modified-release budesonide is used for children with Crohn’s disease affecting the ileum and the ascending colon; it causes fewer systemic side-effects than oral prednisolone, but may be less effective.

As an alternative to an oral corticosteroid, enteral nutrition (Appendix 2) may be used for 6–8 weeks in children with active Crohn’s disease.

Severe inflammatory bowel disease or disease that is not responding to an oral corticosteroid requires hospital admission and treatment with an intravenous corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone (p. 375) or methylprednisolone (p. 376); other therapy may include intravenous fluid and electrolyte replacement, and possibly parenteral nutrition. Children with ulcerative colitis that fails to respond adequately to these measures may benefit from a short course of ciclosporin. Children with unresponsive or chronically active Crohn’s disease may benefit from azathioprine, mercaptopurine, or once-weekly methotrexate; these drugs have a slow onset of action.

**Infliximab** (section 1.5.3) is used in specialist centres for children with severe active Crohn’s disease whose condition has not responded adequately to treatment with a corticosteroid and a conventional drug that affects the immune response, or who are intolerant of them. Infliximab has also been used for the treatment of severe, refractory ulcerative colitis. There are concerns about the long-term safety of infliximab in children; hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma has been reported.

Crohn’s disease of the mouth or of the perineum is more common in children than in adults and it is difficult to treat; elimination diets and the use of a topical corticosteroid (section 13.4) may be beneficial, but a systemic corticosteroid (section 6.3.2) or occasionally azathioprine may be required in severe cases.
BNFC 2011–2012

1.5.1 Aminosalicylates

49

NICE guidance

Infliximab for Crohn’s disease (May 2010)

In children over 6 years of age, infliximab is recommended for the treatment of severe active Crohn’s disease that has not responded to conventional therapy (including corticosteroids, other drugs affecting the immune response, and primary nutrition therapy) or when conventional therapy cannot be used because of intolerance or contra-indications. Infliximab should be given as a planned course of treatment for 12 months or until treatment failure, whichever is shorter. Treatment should be continued beyond 12 months only if there is evidence of active disease—in these cases the need for treatment should be reviewed at least annually. If the disease relapses after stopping treatment, infliximab can be restarted [but see Hypersensitivity Reactions under Infliximab, p. 55].

NICE guidance

Infliximab for subacute manifestations of ulcerative colitis (April 2008)

Infliximab is not recommended for the treatment of subacute manifestations of moderate to severe active ulcerative colitis that would normally be managed in an outpatient setting.

Maintenance of remission of acute ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease

Children should be advised not to smoke because smoking increases the risk of relapse in Crohn’s disease. Smoking cessation (section 4.10.2) should be encouraged when necessary. Aminosalicylates are efficacious in the maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis, but there is no evidence of efficacy in the maintenance of remission of Crohn’s disease. Corticosteroids are not suitable for maintenance treatment because of their side-effects. In resistant or frequently relapsing cases either azathioprine (section 1.5.3) or mercaptopurine (section 1.5.3) may be helpful. Methotrexate (section 1.5.3) is used in Crohn’s disease when azathioprine or mercaptopurine are ineffective or not tolerated. Infliximab (p. 55) can be used for maintenance therapy in Crohn’s disease or ulcerative colitis in children who respond to the initial induction course of this drug. There are concerns about the long-term safety of infliximab in children.

Fistulating Crohn’s disease

Treatment may not be necessary for simple, asymptomatic perianal fistulas. Metronidazole (section 5.1.11) or ciprofloxacin (section 5.1.12) may be beneficial for the treatment of fistulating Crohn’s disease [both unlicensed for this indication]. Metronidazole by mouth is used at a dose of 7.5 mg/kg 3 times daily, usually for 1 month; it should not be used for longer than 3 months because of concerns about peripheral neuropathy. Ciprofloxacin by mouth is given at a dose of 5 mg/kg twice daily. Other antibacterials should be given if specifically indicated (e.g. sepsis associated with fistulas and perianal disease) and for managing bacterial overgrowth in the small bowel. Fistulas may also require surgical exploration and local drainage. Either azathioprine or mercaptopurine is used as a second-line treatment for fistulating Crohn’s disease and continued for maintenance. Infliximab is used for fistulating Crohn’s disease refractory to conventional treatments; maintenance therapy with infliximab should be considered for patients who respond to the initial induction course.

Adjunctive treatment of inflammatory bowel disease

Due attention should be paid to diet; high-fibre or low-residue diets should be used as appropriate. Antimotility drugs such as codeine phosphate and loperamide, and antispasmodic drugs may precipitate paralytic ileus and megacolon in active ulcerative colitis; treatment of the inflammation is more logical. Laxatives may be required in proctitis. Diarrhoea resulting from the loss of bile-salt absorption (e.g. in terminal ileal disease or bowel resection) may improve with colestyramine (section 1.9.2), which binds bile salts.

Irritable bowel syndrome

Irritable bowel syndrome can present with pain, constipation, or diarrhoea. Some children have important psychological aggravating factors which respond to reassurance. The fibre intake of children with irritable bowel syndrome should be reviewed. If an increase in dietary fibre is required, soluble fibre (e.g. oats, ispaghula husk, or sterculia) is recommended; insoluble fibre (e.g. bran) should be avoided. A laxative (section 1.6) can be used to treat constipation. An osmotic laxative, such as a macrocol, is preferred; lactulose may cause bloating. Loperamide (section 1.4.2) may relieve diarrhoea and antispasmodics (section 1.2) may relieve pain. Opioids with a central action, such as codeine, are better avoided because of the risk of dependence.

Clostridium difficile infection

Clostridium difficile infection is caused by colonisation of the colon with Clostridium difficile and production of toxin. It often follows antibiotic therapy and is usually of acute onset, but may become chronic. It is a particular hazard of ampicillin, amoxicillin, co-amoxiclav, second- and third-generation cephalosporins, clindamycin, and quinolones, but few antibacterials are free of this side-effect. Oral metronidazole (section 5.1.11) or oral vancomycin (section 5.1.7) are used as specific treatment; vancomycin may be preferred for very sick patients. Metronidazole can be given by intravenous infusion if oral treatment is inappropriate.

Malabsorption syndromes

Individual conditions need specific management and also general nutritional consideration. Coeliac disease (gluten enteropathy) usually needs a gluten-free diet (Appendix 2) and pancreatic insufficiency needs pancreatic supplements (section 1.9.4).

For further information on foods for special diets (ACBS), see Appendix 2.

1.5.1 Aminosalicylates

Sulfasalazine is a combination of 5-amino salicylic acid (‘5-ASA’) and sulfapyridine; sulfapyridine acts only as a carrier to the colonic site of action but still causes side-effects. In the newer aminosalicylates, mesalamine (5-amino salicylic acid), balsalazide (a prodrug of 5-amino-
salicylic acid) and olsalazine (a dimer of 5-aminosalicylic acid which cleaves in the lower bowel), the sulfonamide-related side-effects of sulfasalazine are avoided, but 5-aminosalicylic acid alone can still cause side-effects including blood disorders (see recommendation below) and lupus-like syndrome also seen with sulfasalazine.

**Cautions** Renal function should be monitored before starting an oral aminosalicylate, at 3 months of treatment, and then annually during treatment (more frequently in renal impairment). Blood disorders can occur with aminosalicylates (see recommendation below).

**Contra-indications** Aminosalicylates should be avoided in salicylate hypersensitivity.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of the aminosalicylates include diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, exacerbation of symptoms of colitis, headache, hypersensitivity reactions (including rash and urticaria); side-effects that occur rarely include acute pancreatitis, hepatitis, myocardiitis, pericarditis, lung disorders (including eosinophilia and fibrosing alveolitis), peripheral neuropathy, blood disorders (including agranulocytosis, aplastic anaemia, leucopenia, methaemoglobinemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia—see also recommendation above), renal dysfunction (interstitial nephritis, nephrotic syndrome), myalgia, arthralgia, skin reactions (including lupus erythematosus-like syndrome, Stevens-Johnson syndrome), alopecia.

---

**BALSALAZIDE SODIUM**

**Cautions** see notes above; also history of asthma; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (aminosalicylates)

**Blood disorders** see recommendation above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** use with caution; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** negligible quantity crosses placenta

**Breast-feeding** diarrhoea reported but negligible amounts detected in breast milk; monitor infant for diarrhoea

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** Asacol® (all preparations) and Salofalk® enema not licensed for use in children under 18 years; Salofalk® suppositories, Pentasa® tablets and suppositories not licensed for use in children under 15 years; Pentasa® granules not licensed for use in children under 6 years; Salofalk® rectal foam no dose recommendations for children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose** Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis and maintenance of remission for dose see under preparations below

**Note** The delivery characteristics of oral mesalazine preparations may vary; these preparations should not be considered interchangeable

---

**Asacol®** (Warner Chilcott) (c)

**Foam enema**, mesalazine 1 g/metered application, net price 14-application canister with disposable applicators and plastic bags = £26.72. Counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**Excipients** include disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbate 20, sodium metabisulphite

**Dose**

- **Acute attack affecting the rectosigmoid region**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 12–18 years 1 metered application (mesalazine 1 g) into the rectum daily for 4–6 weeks

- **Acute attack affecting the descending colon**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 12–18 years 2 metered applications (mesalazine 2 g) once daily for 4–6 weeks

**Suppositories**, mesalazine 250 mg, net price 20-suppos pack = £4.82; 500 mg, 10-suppos pack = £4.82. Counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**Dose**

- **Treatment and maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis affecting the rectosigmoid region**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 12–18 years 250–500 mg 3 times daily, with last dose at bedtime
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
<th>Tablet/Suppository Type</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Dosage and Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Asacol MR | Warner Chilcott | Tablets, red, e/c | Asacol | Acute attack: By mouth. Child 12–18 years 800 mg 3 times daily. 
Maintenance of remission: By mouth. Child 12–18 years 400–800 mg 2–3 times daily. |
| Ipocol | Sandoz | Tablets, e/c | Ipocol | Acute attack: By mouth. Child 12–18 years 800 mg 3 times daily. 
Maintenance of remission: By mouth. Child 12–18 years 400–800 mg 2–3 times daily. |
| Mesren MR | IVAX | Tablets, red-brown | Mesren MR | Acute attack: By mouth. Child 12–18 years 800 mg 3 times daily. 
Maintenance of remission: By mouth. Child 12–18 years 400–800 mg 2–3 times daily. |
| Pentasa | Ferring | Tablets, m/r, scored | Pentasa | Acute attack: By mouth. Child 6–18 years and body-weight under 40 kg 10–20 mg/kg 3 times daily. 
Child 6–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg 0.5–1 g 3 times daily. 
Maintenance of remission: By mouth. Child 6–18 years and body-weight under 40 kg 5–10 mg/kg 3 times daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2 divided doses. 
Child 6–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg 500 mg 3 times daily. |
| Salofalk | Dr Falk | Tablets, e/c | Salofalk | Acute attack affecting the rectosigmoid region: By rectum. Child 12–18 years 1 g at bedtime. 
Maintenance of remission: By rectum. Child 12–18 years 1 g daily for 2–4 weeks. |

Administration: Tablets may be halved, quartered, or dispersed in water, but should not be chewed. Granules should be placed on the tongue and washed down with water or orange juice without chewing. Retention enema: Granules should be placed on tongue and washed down with water. Granules should not be chewed. 

**Note:** Preparations that lower stool pH (e.g. lactulose) may prevent release of mesalazine.

---

1.5.1 Aminosalicylates

**Dose**

**Acute attack**
- By mouth
  - Child 5–12 years 15–20 mg/kg (max. 1 g) 3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 1–2 g twice daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

**Maintenance of remission**
- By mouth
  - Child 5–12 years 10 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) 2–3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 2 g once daily

Administration: Contents of one sachet should be weighed and divided immediately before use; discard any remaining granules. Granules should be placed on the tongue and washed down with water or orange juice without chewing.

**Retention enema**
- By mouth
  - Child 5–12 years 15–20 mg/kg (max. 1 g) 3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 1–2 g twice daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

**Maintenance of remission**
- By mouth
  - Child 5–12 years 10 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) 2–3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 2 g once daily

Administration: Contents of one sachet should be weighed and divided immediately before use; discard any remaining granules. Granules should be placed on the tongue and washed down with water or orange juice without chewing.

**Excipients**
- Include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

---

**BNFC 2011–2012 1.5.1 Aminosalicylates**

---

1 Gastro-intestinal system
1.5.1 Aminosalicylates

- **Child 6–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg**: 1.5–3 g once daily (preferably in the morning) or 0.5–1 g 3 times daily

**Maintenance of remission**
- **By mouth**
- **Child 6–18 years and body-weight under 40 kg**: 5–10 mg/kg/3 times daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2 divided doses
- **Child 6–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg**: 500 mg 3 times daily

**Administration**
Granules should be placed on tongue and washed down with water without chewing

**Note**
Preparations that lower stool pH (e.g. lactulose) may prevent release of mesalazine

**Suppositories**
mesalazine 500 mg. Net price 30-suppos pack = £14.81. Counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**Dose**
- **Acute attack**
  - **By rectum**
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 0.5–1 g 2–3 times daily adjusted according to response

**Enema**
mesalazine 2 g in 59-mL pack. Net price 7 enemas = £29.92. Counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**Dose**
- **Acute attack or maintenance**
  - **By rectum**
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 2 g once daily at bedtime

**Rectal foam**
mesalazine 1 g/metered application, net price 14-application canister with disposable applicators and plastic bags = £30.17. Counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**Excipients**
include cetostearyl alcohol, disodium edetate, polysorbate 60, propylene glycol, sodium metabisulphite

**Dose**
- **Mild ulcerative colitis affecting sigmoid colon and rectum**
  - **By rectum**
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 2 g metered applications (mesalazine 2 g) into the rectum at bedtime or in 2 divided doses

**OLSALAZINE SODIUM**

**Cautions**
see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (aminosalicylates)

**Blood disorders**
see recommendation above

**Contra-indications**
see notes above; also sulfonamide hypersensitivity; child under 2 years of age

**Renal impairment**
use with caution

**Pregnancy**
theoretical risk of neonatal haemolysis in third trimester; adequate folate supplements should be given to mother

**Breast-feeding**
small amount in milk (1 report of bloody diarrhoea); theoretical risk of neonatal haemolysis especially in G6PD-deficient infants

**Side-effects**
see notes above; also cough, insomnia, dizziness, fever, blood disorders (including Heinz body anaemia, megaloblastic anaemia), proteinuria, tinnitus, stomatitis, taste disturbances, and pruritus; less commonly dyspnoea, depression, convulsions, vasculitis, and alopecia; also reported loss of appetite, hypersensitivity reactions (including exfoliative dermatitis, epidermal necrolysis, photosensitivity, anaphylaxis, serum sickness), ataxia, hallucinations, aseptic meningitis, oligospermia, crystalluria, disturbances of smell, and parotitis; yellow-orange discoloration of skin, urine, and other body fluids; some soft contact lenses may be stained

**Licensed use**
not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**
Treatment of acute attack of mild ulcerative colitis
- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–18 years**: 500 mg twice daily after food increased if necessary over 1 week to max. 1 g 3 times daily
  - **Child 2–12 years**: 10–15 mg/kg (max. 1 g) 4–6 times daily until remission occurs; increased to max. 60 mg/kg daily in divided doses, if necessary
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 250–500 mg twice daily after food

**Administration**
Capsules can be opened and contents sprinkled on food

Dipentum® (UCB Pharma) 

**Capsules**
brown, olsalazine sodium 250 mg. Net price 112-cap pack = £19.77. Label: 21, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**Tablets**
yellow, scored, olsalazine sodium 500 mg. Net price 60-tab pack = £21.18. Label: 21, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above)

**SULFASALAZINE**
(Sulphasalazine)

**Cautions**
see notes above; also history of allergy or asthma; G6PD deficiency (section 9.1.5); slow acetylator status; risk of haematological and hepatic toxicity (dif...
Maintenance of remission of mild to moderate and severe ulcerative colitis

- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–12 years: 5–7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) 4 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years: 500 mg 4 times daily

Treatment of mild to moderate or severe ulcerative colitis and maintenance of remission, active Crohn’s disease

- **By rectum as suppositories**
  - Child 5–8 years: 500 mg twice daily
  - Child 8–12 years: 500 mg in the morning and 1 g at night
  - Child 12–18 years: 0.5–1 g twice daily

Juvenile idiopathic arthritis section 10.1.3

Sulfasalazine (Non-proprietary)

- **Tablets**, sulfasalazine 500 mg, net price 112 = £6.74. Label: 14, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above), contact lenses may be stained
- **Tablets**, e/c, sulfasalazine 500 mg. Net price 112-tab pack = £14.46. Label: 5, 14, 25, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above), contact lenses may be stained
- **Suspension**, sulfasalazine 250 mg/5 mL, net price 500 mL = £29.50. Label: 14, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above), contact lenses may be stained
- **Excipients** may include alcohol

Salazopyrin® (Pharmacia)

- **Tablets**, yellow, scored, sulfasalazine 500 mg. Net price 112-tab pack = £6.97. Label: 14, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above), contact lenses may be stained
- **EN-Tabs® (= tablets e/c)**, yellow, T/c, sulfasalazine 500 mg. Net price 112-tab pack = £8.43. Label: 5, 14, 25, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above), contact lenses may be stained
- **Suppositories**, yellow, sulfasalazine 500 mg. Net price 10 = £3.30. Label: 14, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see recommendation above), contact lenses may be stained

Licensed use  not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**See preparations**

**Administration** Capsules can be opened and the contents mixed with apple or orange juice

Budenofalk® (Dr Falk)

- **Tablets**, pink, enclosing e/c granules, budesonide 3 mg, net price 100-cap pack = £75.05. Label: 5, 10, steroid card, 22, 25

**Dose**

- **Mild to moderate Crohn’s disease affecting ileum or ascending colon, chronic diarrhoea due to collagenous colitis**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years: 3 mg 3 times daily for up to 8 weeks; reduce dose for the last 2 weeks of treatment. See also section 6.3.2

Entocort® (AstraZeneca)

- **CR Capsules**, grey/pink, enclosing e/c, m/r granules, budesonide 3 mg, net price 100-cap pack = £99.00. Label: 5, 10, steroid card, 22, 25

**Dose**

- **Mild to moderate Crohn’s disease affecting the ileum or ascending colon**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years: 9 mg once daily in the morning before breakfast for up to 8 weeks; reduce dose for the last 2–4 weeks of treatment. See also section 6.3.2

**Enema**, budesonide 2 mg/100 mL when dispersible tablet reconstituted in isotonic saline vehicle, net price pack of 7 dispersible tablets and bottles of vehicle = £33.00

**Dose**

- **Ulcerative colitis involving rectal and recto-sigmoid disease**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 12–18 years: 1 enema at bedtime for 4 weeks

**HYDROCORTISONE**

**Cautions** section 6.3.2; systemic absorption may occur; prolonged use should be avoided

**Contra-indications** intestinal obstruction, bowel perforation, recent intestinal anastomoses, extensive fistulas; untreated infection

**Side-effects** section 6.3.2; also local irritation

**Indication and dose**

**Inflammatory bowel disease**

- **By intravenous administration**

  See p. 375

- **By rectum**

  See preparations

**Colifoam® (Meda)**

- **Foam** in aerosol pack, hydrocortisone acetate 10%, net price 14-application cannister with applicator = £9.28

  **Excipients** include cetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

**Dose**

- **Ulcerative colitis, proctitis, proctosigmoiditis**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 2–18 years: initially 1 metered application (125 mg hydrocortisone acetate) inserted into the rectum once or twice daily for 2–3 weeks, then once on alternate days
### PREDNISOLONE

**Cautions** section 6.3.2; systemic absorption may occur; prolonged use should be avoided

**Contra-indications** section 6.3.2; intestinal obstruction, bowel perforation, recent intestinal anastomoses, extensive fistulas, untreated infection

**Hepatic impairment** section 6.3.2

**Renal impairment** section 6.3.2

**Pregnancy** section 6.3.2

**Breast-feeding** section 6.3.2

**Side-effects** section 6.3.2

**Licensed use** Predfoam®, Predsol® retention enema not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

#### Indication and dose

**Ulcerative colitis, Crohn’s disease** see also under preparations, below

- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–18 years 2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) once daily until remission occurs, followed by reducing doses

- **By rectum**
  - See under preparations

**Other indications** section 6.3.2

#### Oral preparations

Section 6.3.2

#### Rectal preparations

Predenema® (Chemidex)

**Retention enema**, prednisolone 20 mg (as sodium metasulphobenzoate) in 100-mL single-dose disposable pack. Net price 1 (standard tube) = 71p, 1 (long tube) = £1.21

**Dose**

- **Ulcerative colitis**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 12–18 years initially 20 mg at bedtime for 2–4 weeks, continued if good response

Predfoam® (Forest)

Foam in aerosol pack, prednisolone 20 mg (as metasulphobenzoate sodium)/metered application, net price 14-application cannister with disposable applicators = £6.32

**Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol, disodium edetate, polysorbate 20, sorbic acid

**Dose**

- **Proctitis and distal ulcerative colitis**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 12–18 years 1 metered application (20 mg prednisolone) inserted into the rectum once or twice daily for 2 weeks, continued for further 2 weeks if good response

Predsol® (UCB Pharma)

**Suppositories**, prednisolone 5 mg (as sodium phosphate). Net price 10 = £1.35

**Dose**

- **Proctitis and rectal complications of Crohn’s disease**
  - **By rectum**
    - Child 2–18 years 5 mg inserted night and morning after a bowel movement

### AZATHIOPRINE

**Cautions** section 8.2.1; interactions: Appendix 1 (azathioprine)

**Contra-indications** section 8.2.1

**Hepatic impairment** section 8.2.1

**Renal impairment** section 8.2.1

**Pregnancy** section 8.2.1

**Breast-feeding** section 8.2.1

**Side-effects** section 8.2.1

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in ulcerative colitis or Crohn’s disease

#### Indication and dose

**Severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–18 years initially 2 mg/kg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 2.5 mg/kg once daily

#### Transplantation rejection section 8.2.1

#### Rheumatic diseases section 10.1.3

#### Preparations

Section 8.2.1

#### CICLOSPORIN

**Cautions** section 8.2.2; interactions: Appendix 1 (cyclosporin)

**Contra-indications** section 8.2.2

**Hepatic impairment** section 8.2.2

**Renal impairment** section 8.2.2

**Pregnancy** section 8.2.2

**Breast-feeding** section 8.2.2

**Side-effects** section 8.2.2

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in ulcerative colitis
Indication and dose

**Refractory ulcerative colitis**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–18 years: initially 2 mg/kg twice daily, dose adjusted according to blood-ciclosporin concentration and response; max. 5 mg/kg twice daily.
  - Important: For advice on counselling and conversion between preparations, see section 8.2.2.

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 3–18 years: initially 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily, dose adjusted according to blood-ciclosporin concentration and response.

**Nephrotic syndrome** section 8.2.2

**Transplantation rejection and auto-immune conditions** section 8.2.2

**Atopic dermatitis and psoriasis** section 13.5.3

Administration for intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 0.5–2.5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 2–6 hours; not to be used with PVC equipment; observe patient for signs of anaphylaxis for at least 30 minutes after starting infusion and at frequent intervals thereafter.

**Preparations**
Section 8.2.2

---

**MERCAPTOPURINE**

(6-Mercaptopurine)

Cautions section 8.1.3; see also Azathioprine, section 8.2.1

Contra-indications section 8.1.3

Hepatic impairment section 8.1.3

Renal impairment section 8.1.3

Pregnancy section 8.1.3

Breast-feeding section 8.1.3

Side-effects section 8.1.3

Licensed use not licensed for use in severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease; for other indications, see section 8.1.3

**Indication and dose**

**Severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–18 years: 1–1.5 mg/kg once daily (initial max. 50 mg; may be increased to 75 mg once daily).

**Acute leukaemias** section 8.1.3

**Preparations**
Section 8.1.3

---

**METHOTREXATE**

Cautions section 10.1.3

Contra-indications section 10.1.3

Hepatic impairment section 10.1.3

Renal impairment section 8.1.3

Pregnancy section 8.1.3

Breast-feeding section 8.1.3

Side-effects section 10.1.3

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for non-malignant conditions

**Indication and dose**

**Severe acute Crohn’s disease**

- **By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection**
  - Child 7–18 years: 15 mg/m² (max. 25 mg) once weekly.

**Maintenance of remission of severe Crohn’s disease**

- **By mouth or by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection**
  - Child 7–18 years: 15 mg/m² (max. 25 mg) once weekly; dose reduced according to response to lowest effective dose.

**Safe Practice**

Note that the above dose is a weekly dose. To avoid error with low-dose methotrexate, it is recommended that:

- the child or their carer is carefully advised of the dose and frequency and the reason for taking methotrexate and any other prescribed medicine (e.g. folic acid);
- only one strength of methotrexate tablet (usually 2.5 mg) is prescribed and dispensed;
- the prescription and the dispensing label clearly show the dose and frequency of methotrexate administration;
- the child or their carer is warned to report immediately the onset of any feature of blood disorders (e.g. sore throat, bruising, and mouth ulcers), liver toxicity (e.g. nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, and dark urine), and respiratory effects (e.g. shortness of breath).

**Preparations**
Section 10.1.3

---

**Cytokine modulators**

Infliximab is a monoclonal antibody which inhibits the pro-inflammatory cytokine, tumour necrosis factor alpha. It should be administered under specialist supervision where adequate resuscitation facilities are available and is used in the treatment of severe refractory or fistulating Crohn’s disease in children. Infliximab should be used only when treatment with other immunomodulating drugs has failed or is not tolerated and for children in whom surgery is inappropriate.

**INFLIXIMAB**

Cautions monitor for infections before, during, and for 6 months after treatment (see also Tuberculosis below); predisposition to infection; chronic hepatitis B—monitor for active infection; heart failure (discontinue if symptoms develop or worsen; avoid in moderate or severe heart failure); demyelinating CNS disorders (risk of exacerbation); history of malignancy (consider discontinuing treatment if malignancy...
1.5.4 Food allergy

**SODIUM CROMOGlicate** (Sodium cromoglicate)

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** unlikely to be present in milk

**Side-effects** occasional nausea, rashes, and joint pain

**Indication and dose**

**Food allergy** (in conjunction with dietary restriction)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–14 years** 100 mg 4 times daily before meals, dose may be increased after 2–3 weeks to a max. 40 mg/kg daily and then reduced accordingly to response
  - **Child 14–18 years** 200 mg 4 times daily before meals, dose may be increased after 2–3 weeks to max. 40 mg/kg daily and then reduced accordingly to response

**Asthma** section 3.3.1

**Allergic conjunctivitis** section 11.4.2

**Allergic rhinitis** section 12.2.1

**Licensed use** not licensed for fistulating Crohn’s disease in children

**Indication and dose**

**Severe active Crohn’s disease**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 5 mg/kg, then 5 mg/kg 2 weeks and 6 weeks after initial dose, then 5 mg/kg every 8 weeks; interval between maintenance doses adjusted according to response; discontinue if no response within 10 weeks of initial dose

**Administration** for **intravenous infusion** reconstitute each 100-mg vial of powder with 10 mL Water for Injections; to dissolve, gently swirl vial without shaking; allow to stand for 5 minutes; dilute required dose with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a final volume of 250 mL and give through a low protein-binding filter (1.2 micron or less) over at least 2 hours; start infusion within 3 hours of reconstitution

**Remicade®** (Schering-Plough) see **intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, infliximab, net price 100-mg vial = £419.62. Label: 10, alert card, counselling, tuberculosis and hypersensitivity reactions

Allergy with classical symptoms of vomiting, colic and diarrhoea caused by specific foods such as cow’s milk should be managed by strict avoidance. The condition should be distinguished from symptoms of occasional food intolerance in children with irritable bowel syndrome. **Sodium cromoglicate** (sodium cromoglycate) may be helpful as an adjunct to dietary avoidance.

**Fistulating Crohn’s disease**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 5 mg/kg, then 5 mg/kg 2 weeks and 6 weeks after initial dose, then if condition has responded, consult literature for guidance on further doses

**Tuberculosis** Children should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment. Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment (section 5.1.9) at least 2 months before starting infliximab. Children who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start infliximab but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In those without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting infliximab. In children at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with infliximab. Children and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Hypersensitivity reactions (including fever, chest pain, hypotension, hypertension, dyspnoea, pruritus, urticaria, serum sickness-like reactions, angioedema, anaphylaxis) reported during or within 1–2 hours after infusion (risk greatest during first or second infusion or in children who discontinue other immunosuppressants). All children should be observed carefully for 1–2 hours after infusion and resuscitation equipment should be available for immediate use. Prophylactic antihistamines, antihypertensives, antipyretics, antidiabetics, or hydrocortisone may be administered. Readministration not recommended after infliximab-free interval of more than 16 weeks—risk of delayed hypersensitivity reactions. Children and carers should be advised to keep Alert card with them at all times and seek medical advice if symptoms of delayed hypersensitivity develop

**Contra-indications** severe infections (see also under cautions)

**Pregnancy** use only if essential; manufacturer advises adequate contraception during and for at least 6 months after last dose

**Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful

**Side-effects** see under Cytokine Modulators (section 10.1.3) and Cautions above; also diarrhoea, dyspepsia; flushing, chest pain; dyspnoea; dizziness, fatigue; sinusitis; rash, increased sweating, dry skin; less commonly constipation, gastro-oesophageal reflux, cholecystitis, palpitation, arrhythmia, hypertension, hypotension, vasospasm, cyanosis, bradycardia, syncope, oedema, thrombophlebitis, epistaxis, pleurisy, confusion, agitation, nervousness, amnesia, sleep disturbances, vaginitis, demyelinating disorders, antibody formation, pylonephritis, myalgia, arthralgia, eye disorders, abnormal skin pigmentation, ecchymosis, chilosis, and alopecia; rarely hepatitis, intestinal stenosis, intestinal perforation, gastrointestinal haemorrhage, pancreatitis, lymphoma (including hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma), circulatory failure, meningitis, and seizure; very rarely pericardial effusion, and skin reactions (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis); also reported interstitial lung disease, transverse myelitis, neuropathy, paraesthesia, new onset or worsening psoriasis

**Licensed use** not licensed for fistulating Crohn’s disease in children

**Indication and dose**

**Severe active Crohn’s disease**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 5 mg/kg, then 5 mg/kg 2 weeks and 6 weeks after initial dose, then 5 mg/kg every 8 weeks; interval between maintenance doses adjusted according to response; discontinue if no response within 10 weeks of initial dose

**Administration** capsules may be swallowed whole or the contents dissolved in hot water and diluted with cold water before taking

**Nalcrom®** (Sanofi-Aventis) see **capsules, sodium cromoglicate 100 mg. Net price 100-cap pack = £59.75. Label: 22, counselling, administration
1.6 Laxatives

1.6.1 Bulk-forming laxatives

Before prescribing laxatives it is important to be sure that the child is constipated and that the constipation is not secondary to an underlying undiagnosed complaint.

Laxatives should be prescribed by a healthcare professional experienced in the management of constipation in children. Delays of greater than 3 days between stools may increase the likelihood of pain on passing hard stools leading to anal fissure, anal spasm and eventually to a learned response to avoid defaecation.

In infants, increased intake of fluids, particularly fruit juice containing sorbitol (e.g. prune, pear, or apple), may be sufficient to soften the stool. In infants under 1 year of age with mild constipation, lactulose (section 1.6.4) can be used to soften the stool; either an oral preparation containing macrogols or, rarely, glycerol suppositories can be used to clear faecal impaction. The infant should be referred to a hospital paediatrician specialist if these measures fail.

The diet of children over 1 year of age should be reviewed to ensure that it includes an adequate intake of fibre and fluid. An osmotic laxative containing macrogols (section 1.6.4) can also be used, particularly in children with chronic constipation; lactulose is an alternative in children who cannot tolerate a macrogol. If there is an inadequate response to the osmotic laxative, a stimulant laxative (section 1.6.2) can be added.

Treatment of faecal impaction may initially increase symptoms of soiling and abdominal pain. In children over 1 year of age with faecal impaction, an oral preparation containing macrogols (section 1.6.4) is used to clear faecal mass and to establish and maintain soft well-formed stools. If disimpaction does not occur after 2 weeks, a stimulant laxative (section 1.6.2) can be added. If the impacted mass is not expelled following treatment with macrogols and a stimulant laxative, a sodium citrate enema can be administered. Although rectal administration of laxatives may be effective, this route is frequently distressing for the child and may lead to persistence of withholding. A phosphate enema may be administered under specialist supervision if disimpaction does not occur after a sodium citrate enema; a bowel cleansing preparation (section 1.6.5) is an alternative. Manual evacuation under anaesthetic may be necessary if disimpaction does not occur after oral and rectal treatment, or if the child is afraid.

Long-term regular use of laxatives is essential to maintain well-formed stools and prevent recurrence in children with chronic constipation or a history of faecal impaction; intermittent use may provoke relapses. In children with chronic constipation, laxatives should be continued for several weeks after a regular pattern of bowel movements or toilet training is established. The dose of laxatives should then be tapered gradually, over a period of months, according to response. Some children may require laxative therapy for several years.

1.6.2 Stimulant laxatives

For children with chronic constipation, it may be necessary to exceed the licensed doses of some laxatives. Parents and carers of children should be advised to adjust the dose of laxative in order to establish a regular pattern of bowel movements in which stools are soft, well-formed, and passed without discomfort.

Laxatives should be administered at a time that produces an effect that is likely to fit in with the child’s toilet routine.

Pregnancy

If dietary and lifestyle changes fail to control constipation in pregnancy, moderate doses of poorly absorbed laxatives may be used. A bulk-forming laxative should be tried first. An osmotic laxative, such as lactulose, can also be used. Bisacodyl or senna may be suitable, if a stimulant effect is necessary.

Laxatives are also of value in drug-induced constipation (see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 18), in distal intestinal obstruction syndrome in children with cystic fibrosis, for the expulsion of parasites after anthelmintic treatment, and to clear the alimentary tract before surgery and radiological procedures (section 1.6.5).

1.6.3 Faecal softeners

The laxatives that follow have been divided into five main groups (sections 1.6.1–1.6.5). This simple classification disguises the fact that some laxatives have a complex action.

1.6.4 Osmotic laxatives

For the role of laxatives in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome, see p. 49. For the prevention of opioid-induced constipation in palliative care, see p. 18.

1.6.5 Bowel cleansing preparations

For children under 1 year of age with faecal impaction, an oral preparation containing a bulk-forming agent such as ispaghula husk is often difficult to administer to children.

Bulk-forming laxatives may be used in the management of children with haemorrhoids, anal fissure, and irritable bowel syndrome.

ISPAGHULA HUSK

Cautions

adequate fluid intake should be maintained to avoid intestinal obstruction

Contra-indications
difficulty in swallowing, intestinal obstruction, colonic atony, faecal impaction

Side-effects

flatulence and abdominal distension (especially during the first few days of treatment), gastro-intestinal obstruction or impaction; hypersensitivity reported

Licensed use

Isogel® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)
### Indication and dose

See under preparations.

**Counselling** Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed.

**Cautions** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Side-effects** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Licensed use** No age limit specified by manufacturer.

### Dose

**Normacol** (Reckitt Benckiser) 2 tablets twice daily.

**Normacol Plus** (Norgine) 3–6 tablets twice daily.

### Administration

In constipation the dose should be taken with at least 300 mL liquid. In diarrhoea, ileostomy, and colostomy control, avoid liquid intake for 30 minutes before and after dose.

### Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Normacol</strong></td>
<td>2 tablets twice daily</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Normacol Plus</strong></td>
<td>3–6 tablets twice daily</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Methycellose

**Cautions** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Contra-indications** See under Ispaghula Husk; also infective bowel disease.

**Licensed use** No age limit specified by manufacturer.

### Indication and dose

See under preparation below.

**Counselling** Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed.

**Cautions** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Side-effects** See under Ispaghula Husk.

### Dose

**Constitution, diarrhoea** (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 7–12 years 2 tablets twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years 3–6 tablets twice daily

### Administration

In constipation the dose should be taken with at least 300 mL liquid. In diarrhoea, ileostomy, and colostomy control, avoid liquid intake for 30 minutes before and after dose.

### Sterculia

**Cautions** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Contra-indications** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Licensed use** No age limit specified by manufacturer.

### Indication and dose

**Constipation** for dose see under preparation.

**Counselling** Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed.

**Cautions** See under Ispaghula Husk.

**Side-effects** See under Ispaghula Husk.

### Dose

- **By mouth**
  - Child 6–12 years ½–1 level 5-mL spoonful in water twice daily, preferably after meals
  - Child 12–18 years 1 sachet (or 2 level 5-mL spoonfuls) in water twice daily, preferably after meals

### Administration

In constipation the dose should be taken with at least 300 mL liquid. In diarrhoea, ileostomy, and colostomy control, avoid liquid intake for 30 minutes before and after dose.

### Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6
1.6.2 Stimulant laxatives

Stimulant laxatives include bisacodyl, sodium picosulfate, and members of the anthraquinone group, senna and dantron. The indications for dantron are limited (see below) by its potential carcinogenicity (based on rodent carcinogenicity studies) and evidence of genotoxicity. Powerful stimulants such as cascara (an anthraquinone) and castor oil are obsolete. Docusate sodium probably acts both as a stimulant and as a softening agent.

Stimulant laxatives increase intestinal motility and often cause abdominal cramp; they should be avoided in intestinal obstruction. Stools should be softened by increasing dietary fibre and liquid or with an osmotic agent. In chronic constipation, especially where withholding is sometimes necessary (see section 1.6), but long-term use of stimulant laxatives is sometimes necessary (see section 1.6), but excessive use can cause diarrhoea and related effects such as hypokalaemia.

Glycerol suppositories act as a lubricant and as a rectal stimulant by virtue of the mildly irritant action of glyce-rol.

**BISACODYL**

Cautions prolonged use (risk of electrolyte imbalance) CONTRA-INDICATIONS intestinal obstruction, acute abdominal conditions, acute inflammatory bowel disease, severe dehydration

Pregnancy see Pregnancy, p. 57

Side-effects nausea and vomiting; colitis also reported; local irritation

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation** (tablets act in 10–12 hours; suppositories act in 20–60 minutes)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 4–18 years: 5–20 mg once daily, adjusted according to response
  - By rectum (suppositories)
    - Child 2–18 years: 5–10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response

Bowel clearance before radiological procedures and surgery

- **By mouth and by rectum**
  - Child 4–10 years: by mouth, 5 mg at bedtime for 2 days before procedure and, if necessary, by rectum, 5 mg suppository 1 hour before procedure
  - Child 10–18 years: by mouth, 10 mg at bedtime for 2 days before procedure and, if necessary, by rectum, 10 mg suppository 1 hour before procedure

Bisacodyl (Non-proprietary)

- **Tablets**
  - e/c, bisacodyl 5 mg, net price 100 = £3.27. Label: 5, 25
- **Suppositories**
  - bisacodyl 10 mg, net price 12 = £1.11
- **Paediatric suppositories**
  - bisacodyl 5 mg, net price 5 = 94p

Note The brand name Dulcolax®. (Boehringer Ingelheim) is used for bisacodyl tablets, net price 10-tab pack = 74p; suppositories (10 mg), 10 = £1.57; paediatric supposi-
tories (5 mg), 5 = 94p

*The brand names Dulcolax® Pico Liquid and Dulcolax® Pico Pdrles are used for sodium picosulfate preparations*

**DANTRON**

(Dantron)

Cautions avoid prolonged contact with skin (as in incontinent patients or infants wearing nappies)—risk of irritation and excoriation; rodent studies indicate potential carcinogenic risk

Contra-indications see Bisacodyl above

Pregnancy manufacturers of co-danthramer and co-danthrusate advise avoid—no information available

Breast-feeding manufacturers of co-danthramer and co-danthrusate advise avoid—limited information available

Side-effects see notes above; also urine may be coloured red

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation in terminally ill children** for dose see under preparations

- With poloxamer ‘188’ (as co-danthramer)

  **Note** Co-danthramer suspension 5 mL = one co-danthramer capsule, but strong co-danthramer suspension 5 mL = two strong co-danthramer capsules

  **Co-danthramer** (Non-proprietary)

  **Capsules**
  - dantron 25 mg, poloxamer ‘188’ 200 mg. Net price 60-cap pack = £12.86. Label: 14, (urine red)

  **Dose**

  - **By mouth**
    - Child 6–12 years: 1 capsule at night (restricted indica-
tions, see notes above)
    - Child 12–18 years: 1–2 capsules at night (restricted indica-
tions, see notes above)

  **Strong capsules**
  - co-danthramer 37.5/500 (dantron 37.5 mg, poloxamer ‘188’ 500 mg). Net price 60-cap pack = £15.55. Label: 14, (urine red)

  **Dose**

  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years: 1–2 capsules at night (restricted indica-
tions, see notes above)

  **Suspension**
  - co-danthramer 25/200 in 5 mL (dantron 25 mg, poloxamer ‘188’ 200 mg). Net price 300 mL = £11.27, 1 litre = £37.57. Label: 14, (urine red)

  **Dose**

  - **By mouth**
    - Child 2–12 years: 2.5–5 mL at night (restricted indica-
tions, see notes above)
    - Child 12–18 years: 5–10 mL at night (restricted indica-
tions, see notes above)

  **Strong suspension**
  - co-danthramer 75/1000 in 5 mL (dantron 75 mg, poloxamer ‘188’ 1 g/5 mL). Net price 300 mL = £30.13. Label: 14, (urine red)

  **Dose**

  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years: 5 mL at night (restricted indications, see notes above)
With docusate sodium (as co-danthrusate)

**Co-danthrusate** (Non-proprietary) Co-danthrusate capsules, co-danthrusate 50/60 (dantron 50 mg, docusate sodium 60 mg). Net price 63-cap pack = £15.87. Label: 14, (urine red)

**Capsules**, co-danthrusate 50/60 (dantron 50 mg, docusate sodium 60 mg). Net price 63-cap pack = £15.87. Label: 14, (urine red)

**Brands include** Normax c

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation**

*By mouth*

- Child 6–12 years 1 capsule at night (restricted indications, see notes above)
- Child 12–18 years 1–3 capsules at night (restricted indications, see notes above)

**Suspension**, yellow, co-danthrusate 50/60 (dantron 50 mg, docusate sodium 60 mg/5 mL). Net price 200 mL = £8.75. Label: 14, (urine red)

**Brands include** Normax c

**Capsules**, yellow, co-danthrusate 50/60 (dantron 50 mg, docusate sodium 60 mg/5 mL). Net price 200 mL = £8.75. Label: 14, (urine red)

**Brands include** Normax c

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation**

*By mouth*

- Child 6–12 years 5 mL at night (restricted indications, see notes above)
- Child 12–18 years 5–15 mL at night (restricted indications, see notes above)

**DOCUSATE SODIUM**

(Dioctyl sodium sulphosuccinate)

**Cautions** see notes above; do not give with liquid paraffin

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also for *rectal preparations*, haemorrhoids or anal fissure

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful—manufacturer advises caution

**Breast-feeding** present in milk following oral administration—manufacturer advises caution; rectal administration not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** see notes above; also rash

**Licensed use** adult oral solution and capsules not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation**

*By mouth*

- Child 6 months–2 years 12.5 mg 3 times daily, adjusted according to response (use paediatric oral solution)
- Child 2–12 years 12.5–25 mg 3 times daily, adjusted according to response (use paediatric oral solution)
- Child 12–18 years up to 500 mg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to response

**Note** Oral preparations act within 1–2 days; response to rectal administration usually occurs within 20 minutes

**Adjunct in abdominal radiological procedures**

*By mouth*

- Child 12–18 years 400 mg with barium meal

**Administration** for administration by mouth, solution may be mixed with milk or squash

**Dioctyl** (UCB Pharma) capsules, yellow/white, docusate sodium 100 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £1.92, 100-cap pack = £6.40

**Docusol** (Typharm) Adult oral solution, sugar-free, docusate sodium 50 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £5.49

**Paediatric oral solution**, sugar-free, docusate sodium 12.5 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £5.29

**Rectal preparations**

**Norgalax Micro-enema** (Norgine)

Enema, docusate sodium 120 mg in 10-g single-dose disposable packs. Net price 10-g unit = 57p

**Dose**

- By rectum
  - Child 12–18 years 1 enema as a single dose

**GLYCEROL**

(Glycerin)

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation**

*By rectum*

- Child 1 month–1 year 1-g suppository as required
- Child 1–12 years 2-g suppository as required
- Child 12–18 years 4-g suppository as required

**Glycerol Suppositories**, BP (Glycerin Suppositories)

**Suppositories**, gelatin 140 mg, glycerol 700 mg, purified water to 1 g, net price 12 = £1.27 (1 g), £1.29 (2 g), £1.48 (4 g)

**Administration** Moisten with water before insertion

**SENNA**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see Pregnancy, p. 57

**Breast-feeding** not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years; syrup not licensed for use in children under 2 years

**Indication and dose**

**Constipation** for dose see under preparations

**Note** Onset of action 8–12 hours; initial dose should be low

**Senna** (Non-proprietary)

**Tablets**, total sennosides (calculated as sennoside B) 7.5 mg. Net price 60 = £1.47

**Brands include** Senokot c

**Dose**

*By mouth*

- Child 2–4 years ½–2 tablets once daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 4–6 years ½–4 tablets once daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 6–18 years 1–4 tablets once daily, adjusted according to response

**Manevac** (HFA Healthcare)

**Granules**, coated, senna fruit 12.4%, ispaghula 54.2%, net price 400 g = £7.45. Label: 25, counselling, administration

**Excipients** include sucrose 800 mg per level 5-mL spoonful of granules

**Dose**

*By mouth*

- Child 12–18 years 1–2 level 5-mL spoonfuls at night with at least 150 mL water, fruit juice, milk, or warm drink

**Counselling** Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water or appropriate fluid and should not be taken immediately before going to bed
**1.6.3 Faecal softeners**

Enemas containing arachis oil (ground-nut oil, peanut oil) lubricate and soften impacted faeces and promote a bowel movement. Bulk laxatives (section 1.6.1) and non-ionic surfactant ‘wetting’ agents e.g. docu- sate sodium (section 1.6.2) also have softening properties. Such drugs are useful for oral administration in the management of anal fissure; glycerol suppositories (section 1.6.2) are useful for rectal use.

### ARACHIS OIL

**Cautions** intestinal obstruction; hypersensitivity to soya

**Contra-indications** inflammatory bowel disease, hypersensitivity to arachis oil or peanuts

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**

**Impacted faeces**

- **By rectum**
  - Child 3–7 years 45–65 mL as required
  - Child 7–12 years 65–100 mL as required
  - Child 12–18 years 100–130 mL as required

**Administration** warm enema in warm water before use

**Arachis Oil Enema** (Non-proprietary)

Enema, arachis (peanut) oil in 130-mL single-dose disposable packs. Net price 130 mL = £7.98

### LACTULOSE

Osmotic laxatives increase the amount of water in the large bowel, either by drawing fluid from the body into the bowel or by retaining the fluid they were administered with.

**Lactulose** is a semi-synthetic disaccharide which is not absorbed from the gastro-intestinal tract. It produces an osmotic diarrhoea of low faecal pH, and discourages the proliferation of ammonia-producing organisms. It is therefore useful in the treatment of hepatic encephalopathy.

Macrogols are inert polymers of ethylene glycol which sequester fluid in the bowel; giving fluid with macrogols may reduce the dehydrating effect sometimes seen with osmotic laxatives. Macrogols are an effective non-traumatic means of evacuation in children with faecal impaction and can be used in the long-term management of chronic constipation.

Saline purgatives such as magnesium hydroxide are commonly abused but are satisfactory for occasional use; adequate fluid intake should be maintained.

**Magnesium salts** are useful where rapid bowel evacuation is required. **Sodium salts** should be avoided as they may give rise to sodium and water retention in susceptible individuals. **Phosphate enemas** are useful in bowel clearance before radiology, endoscopy, and surgery. Enemas containing phosphate or sodium citrate, and oral bowel cleansing preparations (section 1.6.5) should only be used on the advice of a specialist practitioner.
### Gastro-intestinal system

#### 1.6.4 Osmotic laxatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BNFC 2011–2012</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Licensed use
Not licensed for use in children for hepatic encephalopathy

#### Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constipation (may take up to 48 hours to act)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1–5 years: 2.5–10 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 5–18 years: 5–20 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Hepatic encephalopathy

| By mouth |
| Child 12–18 years: 30–50 mL 3 times daily; adjust dose to produce 2–3 soft stools per day |

### MACROGOLS (Polyethylene glycols)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discontinue if symptoms of fluid and electrolyte disturbance, see also preparations below</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contra-indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal perforation or obstruction, paralytic ileus, severe inflammatory conditions of the intestinal tract (such as Crohn’s disease, ulcerative colitis, and toxic megacolon); see also preparations below</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturers advise use only if essential—no information available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breast-feeding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturers advise use only if essential—no information available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Side-effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal distension and pain, nausea, flatulence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Licensed use |
| Movicol® Paediatric Plain not licensed for use in faecal impaction in children under 5 years, or for chronic constipation in children under 2 years |

#### Indication and dose

See under preparations below

### Macrogol Oral Powder, Compound (Non-proprietary)

| Oral powder, macrogol ‘3350’ (polyethylene glycol ‘3350’) 13.125 g, sodium bicarbonate 178.5 mg, sodium chloride 350.7 mg, potassium chloride 46.6 mg/sachet, net price 20-sachet pack = £4.45, 30-sachet pack = £6.68. Label: 13 |
| Brands include: Laxaid® Orange, Movicol®-Half (Norgine) |

| Cautions |
| Patients with cardiovascular impairment should not take more than 2 sachets in any 1 hour |

#### Dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chronic constipation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years: 1–3 sachets daily in divided doses usually for up to 2 weeks; maintenance, 1–2 sachets daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Movicol® (Norgine) Oral powder, macrogol ‘3350’ (polyethylene glycol ‘3350’) 13.125 g, sodium bicarbonate 178.5 mg, sodium chloride 350.7 mg, potassium chloride 46.6 mg/sachet, net price 20-sachet pack (lime- and lemon-flavoured) = £4.45, 30-sachet pack (lime- and lemon- or plain-flavoured) = £6.68, 50-sachet pack (lime- and lemon- or plain-flavoured) = £11.13. Label: 13 |
| Note Amount of potassium chloride varies according to flavour of Movicol® as follows: plain-flavour (sugar-free) = 50.2 mg/sachet; lime and lemon flavour = 46.6 mg/sachet; chocolate flavour = 31.7 mg/sachet. 1 sachet when reconstituted with 125 mL water provides K⁺ 5.4 mmol/litre |

| Cautions |
| Patients with impaired cardiovascular function should not take more than 2 sachets in any 1 hour |

#### Faecal impaction

| **By mouth** |
| Child 12–18 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily to max. 8 sachets daily; total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period |

| Movicol®-Half (Norgine) Oral powder, sugar-free, macrogol ‘3350’ (polyethylene glycol ‘3350’) 6.563 g, sodium bicarbonate 89.3 mg, sodium chloride 175.4 mg, potassium chloride 23.3 mg/sachet, net price 20-sachet pack (lime and lemon flavour) = £2.67, 30-sachet pack = £4.01. Label: 13 |
| Caution: patients with impaired cardiovascular function should not take more than 4 sachets in any 1 hour |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Faecal impaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily to max. 8 sachets daily; total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movicol® Paediatric Plain (Norgine) Oral powder, sugar-free, macrogol ‘3350’ (polyethylene glycol ‘3350’) 6.563 g, sodium bicarbonate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Faecal impaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years: 8 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 4 sachets daily to max. 16 sachets daily; total daily dose to be drunk within 6 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Administration Mix contents of each sachet in half a glass (approx. 125 mL) of water |

### Faecal impaction

| **By mouth** |
| Child 12–18 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily to max. 8 sachets daily; total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period |

| Administration Mix contents of 2 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours |

#### Note

- **By mouth**
- Child 12–18 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily to max. 8 sachets daily; total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period
- Administration Mix contents of 2 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours

- **By mouth**
- Child 12–18 years: 8 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 4 sachets daily to max. 16 sachets daily; total daily dose to be drunk within 6 hours
- Administration Mix contents of 4 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours

- **By mouth**
- Child 1–5 years: 2.5–10 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response
- Administration Mix contents of 2 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours

- **By mouth**
- Child 6–10 years: 5–20 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response
- Administration Mix contents of 2 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours

- **By mouth**
- Child 1–5 years: 2.5–10 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response
- Administration Mix contents of 2 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours

- **By mouth**
- Child 6–10 years: 5–20 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response
- Administration Mix contents of 2 sachets in a glass (approx. 250 mL) of water. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 6 hours

- **By mouth**
- Child 12–18 years: 1–3 sachets daily in divided doses usually for up to 2 weeks; maintenance, 1–2 sachets daily
- Administration Mix contents of each sachet in half a glass (approx. 125 mL) of water
BNFC 2011–2012

1.6.4 Osmotic laxatives

Renal impairment use enema with caution
Side-effects local irritation; with enema, electrolyte disturbances

Indication and dose

Constipation, bowel evacuation before abdominal radiological procedures, endoscopy, and surgery

For dose see preparations

Carbalax® (Chemidex)
Suppositories, sodium acid phosphate (anhydrous) 1.3 g, sodium bicarbonate 1.08 g, net price 12 = £2.01

Dose

By rectum
Child 12–18 years 1 suppository, inserted 30 minutes before evacuation required; moisten with water before use

Fleet® Ready-to-use Enema (Casen-Fleet)
Enema, sodium acid phosphate 21.4 g, sodium phosphate 9.4 g/118 mL, net price 133-mL pack (delivers 118 mL dose) with standard tube = 57p

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–7 years 40–60 mL once daily
Child 7–12 years 60–90 mL once daily
Child 12–18 years 90–118 mL once daily

Phosphates Enema BP Formula B
Enema, sodium dihydrogen phosphate dihydrate 12.8 g, disodium phosphate dodecahydrate 10.24 g, purified water, freshly boiled and cooled, to 128 mL. Net price 128 mL with standard tube = £2.98, with long rectal tube = £3.98

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–7 years 45–65 mL once daily
Child 7–12 years 65–100 mL once daily
Child 12–18 years 100–128 mL once daily

SODIUM CITRATE (RECTAL)

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications acute gastro-intestinal conditions

Indication and dose

Constipation for dose see under preparations

Micolette Micro-enema® (Pinewood)
Enema, sodium citrate 450 mg, sodium lauryl sulphocacate 45 mg, glycerol 625 mg, together with citric acid, potassium sorbate, and sorbitol in a viscous solution, in 5-mL single-dose disposable packs with nozzle. Net price 5 mL = 38p

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–18 years 5–10 mL as a single dose

Micralax Micro-enema® (UCB Pharma)
Enema, sodium citrate 450 mg, sodium alkylsulfophosphate 45 mg, sorbic acid 5 mg, together with glycerol and sorbitol in a viscous solution in 5-mL single-dose disposable packs with nozzle. Net price 5 mL = 41p

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–18 years 5 mL as a single dose

PHOSPHATES (RECTAL)

Cautions see also notes above; with enema, electrolyte disturbances, congestive heart failure, ascites, uncontrolled hypertension, maintain adequate hydration
Contra-indications acute gastro-intestinal conditions (including gastro-intestinal obstruction, inflammatory bowel disease, and conditions associated with increased colonic absorption)

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–18 years 5–10 mL as a single dose

MAGNESIUM SALTS

Cautions see also notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (antacids)
Contra-indications acute gastro-intestinal conditions
Hepatic impairment avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure
Renal impairment avoid or reduce dose; increased risk of toxicity

Side-effects colic

Indication and dose

Constipation see under preparations below

Magnesium hydroxide

Magnesium Hydroxide Mixture, BP
Aqueous suspension containing about 8% hydrated magnesium oxide. Do not store in cold place

Dose

By mouth
Child 3–12 years 5–10 mL with water at bedtime when required
Child 12–18 years 30–45 mL with water at bedtime when required

Bowel cleansing preparations
Section 1.6.5

Faecal impaction

By mouth
Child under 1 year ½–1 sachet daily
Child 1–5 years (treat until impaction resolves) 2 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily to max. 12 sachets daily
Child 5–12 years (treat until impaction resolves) 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily to max. 12 sachets daily

Administration Mix each sachet in quarter of a glass (approx. 60–65 mL) of water; total daily dose to be taken over a 12-hour period

Renal impairment use enema with caution
Side-effects local irritation; with enema, electrolyte disturbances

Indication and dose

Constipation, bowel evacuation before abdominal radiological procedures, endoscopy, and surgery

For dose see preparations

Carbalax® (Chemidex)
Suppositories, sodium acid phosphate (anhydrous) 1.3 g, sodium bicarbonate 1.08 g, net price 12 = £2.01

Dose

By rectum
Child 12–18 years 1 suppository, inserted 30 minutes before evacuation required; moisten with water before use

Fleet® Ready-to-use Enema (Casen-Fleet)
Enema, sodium acid phosphate 21.4 g, sodium phosphate 9.4 g/118 mL, net price 133-mL pack (delivers 118 mL dose) with standard tube = 57p

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–7 years 40–60 mL once daily
Child 7–12 years 60–90 mL once daily
Child 12–18 years 90–118 mL once daily

Phosphates Enema BP Formula B
Enema, sodium dihydrogen phosphate dihydrate 12.8 g, disodium phosphate dodecahydrate 10.24 g, purified water, freshly boiled and cooled, to 128 mL. Net price 128 mL with standard tube = £2.98, with long rectal tube = £3.98

Dose

By rectum
Child 3–7 years 45–65 mL once daily
Child 7–12 years 65–100 mL once daily
Child 12–18 years 100–128 mL once daily
1.6.5 Bowel cleansing preparations

Bowel cleansing preparations are used before colonic surgery, colonoscopy, or radiological examination to ensure the bowel is free of solid contents. They are not treatments for constipation.

**Cautions** Bowel cleansing preparations should be used with caution in children, particularly in those with fluid and electrolyte disturbances. Renal function should be measured before starting treatment in patients at risk of fluid and electrolyte disturbances. Hypovolaemia should be corrected before administration of bowel cleansing preparations. Adequate hydration should be maintained during treatment. Bowel cleansing preparations should be used with caution in colitis (avoid if acute severe colitis), or in those who are debilitated. They should also be used with caution in patients with an impaired gag reflex or possibility of regurgitation or aspiration. Other oral drugs should not be taken one hour before or after administration of bowel cleansing preparations because absorption may be impaired.

**Contra-indications** Bowel cleansing preparations are contra-indicated in patients with gastro-intestinal obstruction or perforation, gastric retention, acute intestinal ulceration, or systemic manifestations of collagen disease. They should not be used in patients with an impaired renal function or severe congestive cardiac failure, or in those who are debilitated. They should also be used with caution in patients with an impaired gag reflex or possibility of regurgitation or aspiration. Other oral drugs should not be taken one hour before or after administration of bowel cleansing preparations because absorption may be impaired.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of bowel cleansing preparations include nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain (usually transient—reduced by taking more slowly), and abdominal distention. Less frequent side-effects include headache, dizziness, dehydration, and electrolyte disturbances.

**MACROGOLS**

| Cautions | see notes above; also heart failure |
| Contra-indications | see notes above; also gastro-intestinal ulceration |
| Pregnancy | manufacturers advise use only if essential—no information available |
| Breast-feeding | manufacturers advise use only if essential—no information available |
| Side-effects | see notes above; also anal discomfort |
| Licensed use | Klean-Prep® not licensed for use in children |
| Indication and dose | See preparations |

**Klean-Prep®** (Norgine)

**Indication and dose**

**Bowel cleansing before radiological examination, colonoscopy, or surgery**

**By mouth**

- **Child 1–18 years**
  - A glass (approx. 250 mL) of reconstituted solution every 10–15 minutes, or by nasogastric tube 20–30 mL/minute, starting on the day before procedure until 4 litres have been consumed; alternatively, administration may be divided into two (2 litres of reconstituted solution taken on the evening before procedure and 2 litres of reconstituted solution taken on the morning of procedure). Treatment can be stopped if bowel motions become watery and clear. To facilitate gastric emptying, domperidone (section 1.2) may be given 30 minutes before starting.

**Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome**

- **By mouth, nasogastric or gastrostomy tube**
  - **Child 1–18 years**
    - 10 mL/kg/hour for 30 minutes, then 20 mL/kg/hour for 30 minutes, then increase to 25 mL/kg/hour if tolerated; max. 100 mL/kg (or 4 litres) over 4 hours, repeat 4-hour treatment if necessary.

**Electrolytes**

1 sachet when reconstituted with 1 litre water provides Na+ 120 mmol, K+ 10 mmol, Cl− 15 mmol, HCO3− 20 mmol.

**Dose**

**Bowel evacuation on day before radiological examination, colonoscopy, or surgery**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 5–10 years** a glass (approx. 250 mL) of reconstituted solution every 10–15 minutes, or by nasogastric tube 20–30 mL/minute, starting on the day before procedure until 4 litres have been consumed; alternatively, administration may be divided into two (2 litres of reconstituted solution taken on the evening before procedure and 2 litres of reconstituted solution taken on the morning of procedure). Treatment can be stopped if bowel motions become watery and clear. To facilitate gastric emptying, domperidone (section 1.2) may be given 30 minutes before starting.

**MAGNESIUM CITRATE**

Reconstitution of a sachet containing 11.57 g magnesium carbonate and 17.79 g anhydrous citric acid produces a solution containing magnesium citrate.

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

**Bowel evacuation on day before radiological examination, colonoscopy, or surgery**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 5–10 years** on day before procedure, one-third of a sachet at 8 a.m. and one-third of a sachet between 2 and 4 p.m.

**Electrolytes**

1 sachet when reconstituted with 1 litre water provides Na+ 118 mmol, K+ 10 mmol, Cl− 15 mmol, HCO3− 20 mmol.

**Dose**

**Bowel evacuation on day before radiological examination, colonoscopy, or surgery**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 5–10 years** on day before procedure, one-third of a sachet at 8 a.m. and one-third of a sachet between 2 and 4 p.m.
Uncomplicated meconium ileus

- By rectum
  - Neonate 15–30 mL as a single dose

Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome

- By mouth or by rectum
  - Child 1 month–2 years 15–30 mL as a single dose
  - Child body-weight 15–25 kg 50 mL as a single dose
  - Child body-weight over 25 kg 100 mL as a single dose

Administration

Intravenous prehydration is essential in neonates and infants. Fluid intake should be encouraged for 3 hours after administration. By mouth, for child bodyweight under 25 kg, dilute Gastrografin® with 3 times its volume of water or fruit juice; for child bodyweight over 25 kg, dilute Gastrografin® with twice its volume of water or fruit juice. By rectum, administration must be carried out slowly under radiological supervision to ensure required site is reached. For child under 5 years, dilute Gastrografin® with 5 times its volume of water; for child over 5 years dilute Gastrografin® with 4 times its volume of water.

Radiological investigations dose to be recommended by radiologist

Gastrografin® (Bayer Schering)
Solution, sodium amidotrizoate 100 mg, meglumine amidotrizoate 660 mg/mL, net price 100-mL bottle = £14.69
Excipients include disodium edetate

Peripheral opioid-receptor antagonists

Classification not used in BNF for Children.
In children with perianal soreness or pruritus ani, good toilet hygiene is essential; the use of alcohol-free ‘wet-wipes’ after each bowel motion, regular bathing and the avoidance of local irritants such as bath additives is recommended. Excoriated skin is best treated with a protective barrier emollient (section 13.2.2); in children over 1 month, hydrocortisone ointment or cream (section 13.4) or a compound rectal preparation (section 1.7.2) may be used for a short period of time, up to a maximum of 7 days.

Pruritus ani caused by threadworm infection requires treatment with an anthelmintic (section 5.5.1). Topical application of white soft paraffin or other bland emollient (section 13.2.1) may reduce anal irritation caused by threadworms.

Perianal erythema caused by streptococcal infection should be treated initially with an antibiotic such as phenoxymethyl penicillin (section 5.1.1.1) or erythromycin (section 5.1.5), while awaiting results of culture and sensitivity testing.

Perianal candidiasis (thrush) requires treatment with a topical antifungal preparation (section 13.10.2). For treatment of vulvar candidiasis, see section 7.2.2.

Pruritus ani associated with inflammatory bowel disease in children is treated with corticosteroids and aminosalicylates (section 1.5).

For the management of anal fissures, see section 1.7.4.

### 1.7 Local preparations for anal and rectal disorders

#### 1.7.1 Soothing anal and rectal preparations

Haemorrhoids in children are rare, but may occur in infants with portal hypertension. Soothing rectal preparations containing mild astringents such as bismuth subgallate, zinc oxide, and hamamelis may provide symptomatic relief, but proprietary preparations which also contain lubricants, vasoconstrictors, or mild anti-septics may cause further perianal irritation.

Local anaesthetics may be used to relieve pain in children with anal fissures or pruritus ani, but local anaesthetics are absorbed through the rectal mucosa and may cause sensitisation of the anal skin. Excessive use of local anaesthetics may result in systemic effects, see section 15.2. Preparations containing local anaesthetics should be used for no longer than 2–3 days.

Lidocaine ointment (section 15.2) may be applied before defaecation to relieve pain associated with anal fissure, but local anaesthetics can cause stinging initially and this may aggravate the child’s fear of pain.

Other local anaesthetics such as tetracaine, cinchocaine (dibucaine), and pramocaine (pramoxine) may be included in rectal preparations, but these are more irritant than lidocaine.

Corticosteroids are often combined with local anaesthetics and soothing agents in topical preparations for haemorrhoids and proctitis. Topical preparations containing corticosteroids (section 1.7.2) should not be used long-term or if infection (such as herpes simplex) is present. For further information on the use of topical corticosteroids, see section 13.4.

#### 1.7.2 Compound anal and rectal preparations with corticosteroids

**Anugesic-HC®** (Pfizer) (Dermal)

Cream, benzyl benzoate 1.2%, bismuth oxide 0.875%, hydrocortisone acetate 0.5%, Peru balsam 1.85%, pramocaine hydrochloride 1%, zinc oxide 12.35%. Net price 30 g (with rectal nozzle) = £3.71

**Dose**

- **Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani**
  - By rectum
  - **Child 12–18 years** apply night and morning and after a bowel movement; do not use for longer than 7 days

**Suppositories**, buff, benzyl benzoate 33 mg, bismuth oxide 24 mg, bismuth subgallate 59 mg, hydrocortisone acetate 5 mg, Peru balsam 49 mg, pramocaine hydrochloride 27 mg, zinc oxide 296 mg, net price 12 = £2.69

**Dose**

- **Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani**
  - By rectum
  - **Child 12–18 years** insert 1 suppository night and morning and after a bowel movement; do not use for longer than 7 days

**Anusol-HC®** (McNeil) (Dermal)

Ointment, benzyl benzoate 1.25%, bismuth oxide 0.875%, bismuth subgallate 2.25%, hydrocortisone acetate 0.25%, Peru balsam 1.875%, zinc oxide 10.75%. Net price 30 g (with rectal nozzle) = £3.29

**Dose**

- **Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani**
  - By rectum
  - **Child 12–18 years** apply night and morning and after a bowel movement; do not use for longer than 7 days

**Suppositories**, benzyl benzoate 33 mg, bismuth oxide 24 mg, bismuth subgallate 59 mg, hydrocortisone acetate 10 mg, Peru balsam 49 mg, zinc oxide 296 mg, net price 12 = £2.31

**Dose**

- **Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani**
  - By rectum
  - **Child 12–18 years** insert 1 suppository night and morning and after a bowel movement; do not use for longer than 7 days

**Perinal®** (Dermal)

Spray application, hydrocortisone 0.2%, lidocaine hydrochloride 1%. Net price 30-mL pack = £6.11

**Dose**

- **Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani**
  - By rectum
  - **Child 2–18 years** spray once over the affected area up to 3 times daily, do not use for longer than 7 days without medical advice (child under 14 years, on medical advice only)
1.7.4 Management of anal fissures

**Proctofoam HC** (Meda) 
Ointment, hydrocortisone acetate 1%, pramocaine hydrochloride 1%. Net price 21.2-g pack (approx. 40 applications) with applicator = £5.06

**Dose**
- **Pain and irritation** associated with local, non-infected anal or perianal conditions
  - **By rectum**
    - **Child 12–18 years**: 1 applicatorful (4–6 mg hydrocortisone acetate, 4–6 mg pramocaine hydrochloride) by rectum 2–3 times daily and after a bowel movement (max. 4 times daily); do not use for longer than 7 days

**Uniroid-HC** (Chemidex)
Ointment, cinchocaine (dibucaine) hydrochloride 0.5%, hydrocortisone 0.5%, net price 30 g (with cannula) = £10.34

**Dose**
- Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani
  - **By rectum**
    - **Child 1 month–18 years**: apply morning and night and after a bowel movement, externally or by rectum; do not use for longer than 7 days

**Scheriproct** (Bayer Schering)
Ointment, cinchocaine (dibucaine) hydrochloride 0.5%, prednisolone hexanoate 0.19%, net price 30 g = £2.94

**Dose**
- Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani
  - **By rectum**
    - **Child 1 month–18 years**: apply twice daily for 5–7 days (3–4 times daily on 1st day if necessary), then once daily for a few days after symptoms have cleared

**Suppositories, cinchocaine (dibucaine) hydrochloride 1 mg, prednisolone hexanoate 1.3 mg, net price 12 = £1.38

**Dose**
- Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani
  - **By rectum**
    - **Child 12–18 years**: insert 1 suppository twice daily and after a bowel movement; do not use for longer than 7 days

**Xyloproct** (AstraZeneca)
Ointment (water-miscible), aluminium acetate 3.5%, hydrocortisone acetate 0.275%, lidocaine 5%, zinc oxide 18%, net price 20 g (with applicator) = £2.26

**Dose**
- Haemorrhoids, pruritus ani
  - **By rectum**
    - **Child 1 month–18 years**: apply several times daily; short-term use only

---

1.7.3 Rectal sclerosants

Classification not used in *BNF for Children*.

---

1.7.4 Management of anal fissures

The management of anal fissures includes stool softening (section 1.6) and the short-term use of a topical preparation containing a local anaesthetic (section 1.7.1). If these measures are inadequate, children with chronic anal fissures should be referred for specialist treatment in hospital. Topical *glyceryl trinitrate*, 0.05% or 0.1% ointment, may be used in children to relax the anal sphincter, relieve pain and aid healing of anal fissures. Excessive application of topical nitrates causes side-effects such as headache, flushing, dizziness, and postural hypotension.

Before considering surgery, *diltiazem* 2% ointment may be used in children with chronic anal fissures resistant to topical nitrates.
1.8 Stoma and enteral feeding tubes

Stoma

Prescribing for children with stoma calls for special care. The following is a brief account of some of the main points to be borne in mind.

When a solid-dose formulation such as a capsule or a tablet is given the contents of the ostomy bag should be checked for any remnants; response to treatment should be carefully monitored because of the possibility of incomplete absorption. Enteric-coated and modified-release preparations are unsuitable, particularly in children with an ileostomy, as there may not be sufficient release of the active ingredient.

Laxatives

Enemas and washouts should be used in children with stoma only under specialist supervision; they should not be prescribed for those with an ileostomy as they may cause rapid and severe loss of water and electrolytes.

Children with colostomy may suffer from constipation and whenever possible it should be treated by increasing fluid intake or dietary fibre. If a laxative (section 1.6) is required, it should generally be used for short periods only.

Antidiarrhoeals

Loperamide, codeine phosphate, and co-phenotrope (section 1.4.2) are effective for controlling excessive stool losses. Bulk-forming drugs (section 1.6.1) may be tried but it is often difficult to adjust the dose appropriately.

Antibacterials should not be given for an episode of acute diarrhoea.

Antacids

The tendency to diarrhoea from magnesium salts or constipation from aluminium salts may be increased in children with stoma.

Diuretics

Diuretics should be used with caution in children with an ileostomy because they may become excessively dehydrated and potassium depletion may easily occur. It is usually advisable to use a potassium-sparing diuretic (section 2.2.3).

Digoxin

Children with stoma are particularly susceptible to hypokalaemia. This predisposes children on digoxin to digoxin toxicity; potassium supplements (section 9.2.1.1) or a potassium-sparing diuretic (section 2.2.3) may be advisable.

Analgesics

Opioid analgesics (section 4.7.2) may cause troublesome constipation in children with colostomy. When a non-opioid analgesic is required paracetamol is usually suitable; anti-inflammatory analgesics may cause gastric irritation and bleeding.

Iron preparations

Iron supplements may cause loose stools and sore skin at the stoma site. If this is troublesome and if iron is definitely indicated a parenteral iron preparation (section 9.1.1.2) should be used. Modified-release iron preparations should be avoided.

Care of stoma

Children and carers are usually given advice about the use of cleansing agents, protective creams, lotions, deodorants, or sealants whilst in hospital, either by the surgeon or by a stoma-care nurse. Voluntary organisations offer help and support to patients with stoma.

Enteral feeding tubes

Care is required in choosing an appropriate formulation of a drug for administration through a nasogastric narrow-bore feeding tube or through a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) or jejunostomy tube. Liquid preparations (or soluble tablets) are preferred; injection solutions may also be suitable for administration through an enteral tube.

If a solid formulation of a medicine needs to be given, it should be given as a suspension of particles fine enough to pass through the tube. It is possible to crush many immediate-release tablets but enteric-coated or modified-release preparations should not be crushed.

Enteral feeds may affect the absorption of drugs and it is therefore important to consider the timing of drug administration in relation to feeds. If more than one drug needs to be given, they should be given separately and the tube should be flushed with water after each drug has been given.

Clearing blockages

Carbonated (sugar-free) drinks may be marginally more effective than water in unblocking feeding tubes, but mildly acidic liquids (such as pineapple juice or cola-based drinks) can coagulate protein in feeds, causing further blockage. If these measures fail to clear the enteral feeding tube, an alkaline solution containing pancreatic enzymes may be introduced into the tube (followed after at least 5 minutes by water). Specific products designed to break up blockages caused by formula feeds are also available.

1.9 Drugs affecting intestinal secretions

1.9.1 Drugs affecting biliary composition and flow

Bile acids (ursodeoxycholic and chenodeoxycholic acid) may be used as dietary supplements in children with inborn errors of bile acid synthesis. Ursodeoxycholic acid is used to improve the flow of bile in children with cholestatic conditions such as familial intrahepatic cholestasis, biliary atresia in infants, cystic-fibrosis-related liver disease, and cholestasis caused by total parenteral nutrition or following liver transplantation.
Ursodeoxycholic acid may also relieve the severe itching associated with cholestasis.
In sclerosing cholangitis, ursodeoxycholic acid is used to lower liver enzyme and serum-bilirubin concentrations. Ursodeoxycholic acid is also used in the treatment of intrahepatic cholestasis in pregnancy.

Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome Chenodeoxycholic and ursodeoxycholic acid have been used with cholesterol in children with Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome. Chenodeoxycholic acid is also used in combination with cholic acid to treat bile acid synthesis defects but cholic acid is difficult to obtain. Chenodeoxycholic acid and cholesterol are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809.

URSODEOXYCHOLIC ACID
Cautions interactions: Appendix 1 (bile acids)
Contra-indications radio-opaque stones; non-functioning gall bladder (in patients with radiolucent gallstones)
Hepatic impairment avoid in chronic liver disease (but used in primary biliary cirrhosis)
Pregnancy no evidence of harm but manufacturer advises avoid
Breast-feeding not known to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid
Side-effects rarely, diarrhoea
Licensed use not licensed for use in children for indications shown below

Indication and dose
Cholestasis
• By mouth
Neonate 5 mg/kg 3 times daily, adjust dose and frequency according to response, max. 10 mg/kg 3 times daily
Child 1 month–2 years 5 mg/kg 3 times daily, adjust dose and frequency according to response, max. 10 mg/kg 3 times daily

Improvement of hepatic metabolism of essential fatty acids and bile flow, in children with cystic fibrosis
• By mouth
Child 1 month–18 years 10–15 mg/kg twice daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses

Cholestasis associated with total parenteral nutrition
• By mouth
Neonate 10 mg/kg 3 times daily
Child 1 month–18 years 10 mg/kg 3 times daily

Sclerosing cholangitis
• By mouth
Child 1 month–18 years 5–10 mg/kg 2–3 times daily, adjusted according to response, max. 15 mg/kg 3 times daily

Other preparations for bile synthesis defects
CHENODEOXYCHOLIC ACID
Cautions see under Ursodeoxycholic Acid; interactions: Appendix 1 (bile acids)
Contra-indications see under Ursodeoxycholic Acid
Pregnancy avoid—fetotoxicity reported in animal studies
Side-effects see under Ursodeoxycholic Acid
Licensed use not licensed

Indication and dose
Cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis
• By mouth
Neonate 5 mg/kg 3 times daily
Child 1 month–18 years 5 mg/kg 3 times daily

Defective synthesis of bile acid
• By mouth
Neonate initially 5 mg/kg 3 times daily, reduced to 2.5 mg/kg 3 times daily
Child 1 month–18 years initially 5 mg/kg 3 times daily, reduced to 2.5 mg/kg 3 times daily

Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome see notes above
• By mouth
Neonate 7 mg/kg once daily or in divided doses
Child 1 month–18 years 7 mg/kg once daily or in divided doses

Administration for administration by mouth, add the contents of a 250-mg capsule to 25 mL of sodium bicarbonate solution 8.4% (1 mmol/mL) to produce a suspension containing chenodeoxycholic acid 10 mg/mL; use immediately after preparation, discard any remaining suspension.
1.9.2 Bile acid sequestrants

Cholestyramine is an anion-exchange resin that forms an insoluble complex with bile acids in the gastrointestinal tract; it is used to relieve diarrhoea associated with surgical procedures such as ileal resection, or following radiation therapy. Cholestyramine is also used in the treatment of familial hypercholesterolaemia (see section 2.12), and to relieve pruritus in children with partial biliary obstruction, (for treatment of pruritus, see section 3.4.1). Cholestyramine is not absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, but will interfere with the absorption of a number of drugs, so timing of administration is important.

### 1.9.3 Aprotinin

Pancreatin, containing a mixture of protease, lipase and amylase in varying proportions, aids the digestion of starch, fat, and protein. Supplements of pancreatin are given by mouth to compensate for reduced or absent exocrine secretion in cystic fibrosis, and following pancreatectomy, total gastrectomy, or chronic pancreatitis. The dose of pancreatin is adjusted according to size, number, and consistency of stools, and the nutritional status of the child; extra allowance will be needed if snacks are taken between meals. Daily dose should not exceed 10 000 lipase units per kg body-weight per day, (important: see advice on Higher-strength preparations below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation</th>
<th>Protease units</th>
<th>Amylase units</th>
<th>Lipase units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creon® 10 000 capsule, e/c granules</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>8000</td>
<td>10 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creon® Micro e/c granules (per 100 mg)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrizym 10® capsule, e/c minitablets</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>9000</td>
<td>10 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrex® granules (300 mg)</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrex V® capsule, powder</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>9000</td>
<td>8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrex V® ‘125®’ capsule, powder</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>3300</td>
<td>2950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrex V® e/c tablet</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrex V® Forte e/c tablet</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>5600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrex V® powder (per gram)</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>30 000</td>
<td>25 000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Higher-strength pancreatin preparations. Pancrease HL® and Nutrizym 22® have been associated with the development of large bowel strictures (fibrosing colonopathy) in children with cystic fibrosis aged between 2 and 13 years. The following is recommended:

- Pancrease HL®, Nutrizym 22® should not be used in children under 16 years with cystic fibrosis;
- the total dose of pancreatic enzyme supplements used in patients with cystic fibrosis should not usually exceed 10 000 units of lipase per kg body-weight daily;
- if a patient on any pancreatin preparation develops new abdominal symptoms (or any change in existing abdominal symptoms) the patient should be reviewed to exclude the possibility of colonic damage.

Possible risk factors are gender (boys at greater risk than girls), more severe cystic fibrosis, and concomitant use of laxatives. The peak age for developing fibrosing colonopathy is between 2 and 8 years.

### Higher-strength pancreatin preparations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation</th>
<th>Protease units</th>
<th>Amylase units</th>
<th>Lipase units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creon® capsule, e/c pellets</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>18 000</td>
<td>25 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creon® granules</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>25 000</td>
<td>40 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrizym 22®, e/c minitablets</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>19 800</td>
<td>22 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancrease HL®, e/c minitablets</td>
<td>1250</td>
<td>22 500</td>
<td>25 000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pancrease is inactivated by gastric acid therefore pancreatin preparations are best taken with food (or immediately before or after food). In children with cystic fibrosis with persistent fat malabsorption despite optimal use of enzyme replacement, an H₂-receptor antagonist (section 1.3.1), or a proton pump inhibitor (section 1.3.3) may improve fat digestion and absorption. Enteric-coated preparations are designed to deliver a higher enzyme concentration in the duodenum (provided the capsule contents are swallowed whole without chewing). If the capsules are opened the enteric-coated granules should be mixed with milk, slightly acidic soft food or liquid such as apple juice, and then swallowed immediately without chewing. Any left-over food or liquid should not be used.

Pancrases are: Pancrease HL®, Nutrizym 22®, Creon® 10 000, Creon® Micro, Nutrizym 10%, Pancrex® and Pancrex V®.

### Indication and dose

**Pancreatic insufficiency** for dose see individual preparations, below

**Creon® 10 000** (Abbott Healthcare)

Capsules, brown/clear, enclosing buff-coloured e/c granules of pancreatin (pork), providing: protease 600 units, lipase 10 000 units, amylase 8000 units, net price 100-cap pack = £12.93. Counselling, see dose

**Dose**

- By mouth
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1–2 capsules with each meal either taken whole or contents mixed with fluid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing), see notes above

**Creon® Micro** (Abbott Healthcare)

Gastro-resistant granules, brown, pancreatin (pork), providing: protease 200 units, lipase 5000 units, amylase 3600 units per 100 mg, net price 20 g = £31.50. Counselling, see dose

**Dose**

- By mouth
  - **Neonate** initially 100 mg before each feed, granules can be mixed with a small amount of breast milk or formula feed and administered immediately (manufacturer recommends mixing with a small amount of apple juice before administration)

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 100 mg before each feed or meal; granules can be mixed with a small amount of milk or soft food and administered immediately (manufacturer recommends mixing with acidic liquid or pureed fruit before administration); see notes above

**Note** 100 mg granules = one measured scoopful (scop supplied with product). Granules should not be chewed before swallowing.

**Nutrizym 10%** (Merck Serono)

Capsules, red/yellow, enclosing e/c minitablets of pancreatin (pork) providing minimum of: protease 500 units, lipase 10 000 units, amylase 9000 units. Net price 100 = £14.47. Counselling, see dose

**Dose**

- By mouth
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 1–2 capsules with meals and 1 capsule with snacks, swallowed whole or contents taken with water or mixed with soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing, see notes above), higher doses may be required according to response

**Pancrex®** (Paines & Byrne)

Granules, pancreatin (pork), providing minimum of: protease 300 units, lipase 5000 units, amylase 4000 units/g. Net price 300 g = £20.59. Label: 25, counselling, see dose

**Excipients** include lactose (7 g per 10 g dose)

**Dose**

- By mouth
  - **Child 2–18 years** 5–10 g just before meals washed down or mixed with milk or water

**Pancrex V®** (Paines & Byrne)

Capsules, pancreatin (pork), providing minimum of: protease 430 units, lipase 8000 units, amylase 9000 units, net price 300-cap pack = £15.80. Counselling, see dose

**Dose**

- By mouth
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** contents of 1–2 capsules mixed with feeds
### 1.9.4 Pancreatin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Example Use</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrizym 22™</strong></td>
<td>Capsules, red/yellow, enclosing e/c minitablets</td>
<td>Child 2–18 years 6–10 tablets before meals</td>
<td>1–2 capsules with meals, taken whole or contents mixed with water or soft food</td>
<td>Dose:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pancrease HL™</strong></td>
<td>Capsules, enclosing light brown e/c minitablets</td>
<td>Child 15–18 years 1–2 capsules during each meal and 1 capsule with snacks</td>
<td>250–500 mg with each feed</td>
<td>Dose:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Higher-strength preparations

See warning above

**Counselling** It is important to ensure adequate hydration at all times in children receiving higher-strength pancreatin preparations.

**Creon® 25 000** (Abbott Healthcare)  
Capsules, orange/clear, enclosing brown-coloured e/c pellets of pancreatin (pork), providing protease (total) 1000 units, lipase 25 000 units, amylase 18 000 units, net price 100-cap pack = £28.25. Counselling, see above and under dose

**Creon® 40 000** (Abbott Healthcare)  
Capsules, brown/clear, enclosing brown-coloured e/c granules of pancreatin (pork), providing: protease (total) 1600 units, lipase 40 000 units, amylase 25 000 units, net price 100-cap pack = £60.00. Counselling, see above and under dose

#### By mouth

- **Neonate** contents of 1–2 capsules in each feed (or mix with feed and give by spoon)
- **Child 1–18 years** 2–6 capsules with meals, swallowed whole or sprinkled on food
- **Child 2–18 years** initially 1 capsule with meals either taken whole or contents mixed with fluid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing), see notes above

---

**72 1.9.4 Pancreatin**

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**

**1 Gastro-intestinal system**
2.1 Positive inotropic drugs

2.1.1 Cardiac glycosides

Cardiac glycosides increase the force of myocardial contraction and reduce conductivity within the atrioventricular (AV) node. Digoxin is most useful in the treatment of supraventricular tachycardias, especially for controlling ventricular

2.1.2 Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors

Positive inotropic drugs increase the force of contraction of the myocardium. Drugs which produce inotropic effects include cardiac glycosides, phosphodiesterase inhibitors, and some sympathomimetics (section 2.7.1).
response in persistent atrial fibrillation (section 2.3.1). Digoxin has a limited role in children with chronic heart failure; for reference to the role of digoxin in heart failure, see section 2.2.

For the management of atrial fibrillation, the maintenance dose of digoxin is determined on the basis of the ventricular rate at rest, which should not be allowed to fall below an acceptable level for the child.

Digoxin is now rarely used for rapid control of heart rate (see section 2.3.2), even with intravenous administration, response may take many hours; persistence of tachycardia is therefore not an indication for exceeding the recommended dose. The intramuscular route is not recommended.

In children with heart failure who are in sinus rhythm, a loading dose may not be required. Unwanted effects depend both on the concentration of digoxin in the plasma and on the sensitivity of the conducting system or of the myocardium, which is often increased in heart disease. It can sometimes be difficult to distinguish between toxic effects and clinical deterioration because the symptoms of both are similar. The plasma-digoxin concentration alone cannot indicate toxicity reliably, but the likelihood of toxicity increases progressively through the range 1.5 to 3 micrograms/litre for digoxin. Renal function is very important in determining digoxin dosage.

Hypokalaemia predisposes the child to digitalis toxicity and should be avoided; it is managed by giving a potassium-sparing diuretic or, if necessary, potassium supplements.

If toxicity occurs, digoxin should be withdrawn; serious manifestations require urgent specialist management.

Digoxin-specific antibody fragments are available for reversal of life-threatening overdosage (see below).

**DIGOXIN**

**Cautions**  sick sinus syndrome; thyroid disease; hypoxia; severe respiratory disease; avoid hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypercalcaemia, and hypoxia (risk of digitalis toxicity); monitor serum electrolytes and renal function; avoid rapid intravenous administration (risk of hypertension and reduced coronary flow); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (cardiac glycosides).

**Contra-indications**  intermittent complete heart block, second degree AV block; supraventricular arrhythmias associated with accessory conducting pathways e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome (although can be used in infancy); ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation; hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (unless concomitant atrial fibrillation and heart failure—but use with caution); myocarditis; constrictive pericarditis (unless to control atrial fibrillation or improve systolic dysfunction—but use with caution).

**Renal impairment**  use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate is 10–50 mL/minute/1.73 m² and use a quarter normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²; monitor plasma-digoxin concentration; toxicity increased by electrolyte disturbances

**Pregnancy**  may need dosage adjustment

**Breast-feeding**  amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects**  see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea; arrhythmias, conduction disturbances; dizziness; blurred or yellow vision; rash, eosinophilia; less commonly depression; very rarely anorexia, intestinal ischaemia and necrosis, psychosis, apathy, confusion, headache, fatigue, weakness, gynaecomastia on long-term use, and thrombocytopenia

**Pharmacokinetics**  For plasma-digoxin concentration assay, blood should be taken at least 6 hours after a dose; plasma-digoxin concentration should be maintained in the range 0.8–2 micrograms/litre (see also notes above)

**Licensed use**  heart failure, supraventricular arrhythmias

### Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supraventricular arrhythmias and chronic heart failure (see also notes above) consult product literature for details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate under 1.5 kg</strong> initially 25 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 1.5–2.5 kg</strong> initially 30 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate over 2.5 kg</strong> initially 45 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–2 years</strong> initially 45 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2–5 years</strong> initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–10 years</strong> initially 25 micrograms/kg (max. 750 micrograms) in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 6 micrograms/kg daily (max. 250 micrograms daily) in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 10–18 years</strong> initially 0.75–1.5 mg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 62.5–250 micrograms daily in 1–2 divided doses (higher doses may be necessary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• By intravenous infusion (but rarely necessary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate under 1.5 kg</strong> initially 20 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 1.5–2.5 kg</strong> initially 30 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate over 2.5 kg</strong> initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–2 years</strong> initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2–5 years</strong> initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–10 years</strong> initially 25 micrograms/kg (max. 500 micrograms) in 3 divided doses for 24 hours then 6 micrograms/kg daily (max. 250 micrograms daily) in 1–2 divided doses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cardiovascular system

2.1.2 Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors

Enoximone and milrinone are phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors that exert most of their effect on the myocardium. They possess positive inotropic and vasodila-
tor activity and are useful in infants and children with low cardiac output especially after cardiac surgery. Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors should be limited to short-term use because long-term oral administration has been associated with increased mortality in adults with congestive heart failure.

### Enoximone

**Cautions** heart failure associated with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, stenotic or obstructive valvular disease or other outlet obstruction; monitor blood pressure, heart rate, EEG, central venous pressure, fluid and electrolyte status, renal function, platelet count, hepatic enzymes; avoid extravasation; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors)

**Hepatic impairment** dose reduction may be required

**Renal impairment** consider dose reduction

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Side-effects** ectopic beats; less frequently ventricular tachycardia or supraventricular arrhythmias (more likely in children with pre-existing arrhythmias); hypotension; also headache, insomnia, nausea and vomiting, diarrhoea; occasionally, chills, oliguria, fever, urinary retention; upper and lower limb pain

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Digoxin-specific antibody

Digoxin-specific antibody fragments are indicated for the treatment of known or strongly suspected digoxin or digitoxin overdose when measures beyond the withdrawal of the cardiac glycoside and correction of any electrolyte abnormalities are felt to be necessary (see also notes above).

**Digibind® (GSK)**

- **Injection**, digoxin 62.5 micrograms/mL. For dilution before intravenous administration, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5% to a maximum concentration of 62.5 micrograms/mL; loading doses should be given over 30–60 minutes and maintenance dose over 10–20 minutes.

- For oral administration, oral solution must not be diluted

**Dose**

*Consult product literature or Poisons Information Centre*

**Note** The above doses may need to be reduced if digoxin (or another cardiac glycoside) has been given in the preceding 2 weeks. When switching from intravenous to oral route may need to increase dose by 20–30% to maintain the same plasma-digoxin concentration. Plasma monitoring may be required when changing formulation to take account of varying bioavailabilities. For plasma concentration monitoring, blood should ideally be taken at least 6 hours after a dose

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5% to a maximum concentration of 62.5 micrograms/mL; loading doses should be given over 30–60 minutes and maintenance dose over 10–20 minutes.

For oral administration, oral solution must not be diluted

**Digoxin (Non-proprietary)**

- **Tablets**, digoxin 62.5 micrograms, net price 28-tab pack = £2.03; 125 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £1.12; 250 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £1.13

- **Injection**, digoxin 250 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 70p

- **Excipients** include alcohol, propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Paediatric injection**, digoxin 100 micrograms/mL

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Lanoxin-PG® (Aspen)**

- **Tablets**, blue, digoxin 62.5 micrograms, net price 500-tab pack = £8.09

- **Injection**, digoxin 250 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 66p

**Lanoxin-PG® (Aspen)**

- **Tablets**, blue, digoxin 62.5 micrograms, net price 500-tab pack = £8.09

- **Elixir**, yellow, digoxin 50 micrograms/mL. Do not dilute, measure with pipette. Net price 60 mL = £5.35. Counselling, use of pipette

**MILRINONE**

**Cautions** see under Enoximone; also correct hypokalaemia; monitor renal function; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors)

**Renal impairment** use half to three-quarters normal dose and monitor response if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m2

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Note** Children: 6 months–18 years

**Tablets**

- 25 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £1.12; 50 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £1.13; 100 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £1.14; 250 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £2.03; 500 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £2.03; 250 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £2.03; 500 micrograms, 28-tab pack = £2.03

**Injection**

- 50 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 25p; 100 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 50p

**Side-effects** vomiting, diarrhoea; occasionally, chills, oliguria, fever, urinary retention; upper and lower limb pain

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Congestive heart failure, low cardiac output following cardiac surgery**

- By intravenous injection and continuous intravenous infusion

- **Neonate** initial loading dose of 500 micrograms/kg by slow intravenous injection, followed by 5–20 micrograms/kg/minute by continuous intravenous infusion over 24 hours adjusted according to response; max 24 mg/kg over 24 hours

- **Child 1 month–18 years** initial loading dose of 500 micrograms/kg by slow intravenous injection, followed by 5–20 micrograms/kg/minute by continuous intravenous infusion over 24 hours adjusted according to response; max 24 mg/kg over 24 hours

**Administration** for intravenous administration, dilute to concentration of 2.5 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Water for Injections; the initial loading dose should be given by slow intravenous injection over at least 15 minutes. Use plastic apparatus—crystal formation if glass used

**Perfan® (INCA-Pharm)**

- **Injection**, enoximone 5 mg/mL. For dilution before use. Net price 20-mL amp = £15.02

**Excipients** include alcohol, propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)
Diuretics

Diuretics are used for a variety of conditions in children including pulmonary oedema (caused by conditions such as respiratory distress syndrome and bronchopulmonary dysplasia), congestive heart failure, and hypertension. Hypertension in children is often resistant to therapy and may require the use of several drugs in combination (see section 2.5). Maintenance of fluid and electrolyte balance can be difficult in children on diuretics, particularly neonates whose renal function may be immature.

Loop diuretics (section 2.2.2) are used for pulmonary oedema, congestive heart failure, and in renal disease.

Thiazides (section 2.2.1) are used less commonly than loop diuretics but are often used in combination with loop diuretics or spironolactone in the management of pulmonary oedema and, in lower doses, for hypertension associated with cardiac disease.

Aminophylline infusion has been used with intravenous furosemide to relieve fluid overload in critically ill children.

Heart failure Heart failure is less common in children than in adults; it can occur as a result of congenital heart disease (e.g. septal defects), dilated cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or cardiac surgery. Drug treatment of heart failure due to left ventricular systolic dysfunction is covered below; optimal management of heart failure with preserved left ventricular function has not been established.

Acute heart failure can occur after cardiac surgery or as a complication in severe acute infections with or without myocarditis. Therapy consists of volume loading, vasodilator or inotropic drugs.

Chronic heart failure is initially treated with a loop diuretic (section 2.2.2), usually furosemide supplemented with spironolactone, amiloride, or potassium. If diuresis with furosemide is insufficient, the addition of metolazone or a thiazide diuretic (section 2.2.1) can be considered. With metolazone, the resulting diuresis can be profound and care is needed to avoid potentially dangerous electrolyte disturbance.

If diuretics are insufficient an ACE inhibitor, titrated to the maximum tolerated dose, can be used. ACE inhibitors (section 2.5.5.1) are used for the treatment of all grades of heart failure in adults and can also be useful for children with heart failure. Addition of digoxin (section 2.1.1) can be considered in children who remain symptomatic despite treatment with a diuretic and an ACE inhibitor.

Some beta-blockers improve outcome in adults with heart failure, but data on beta-blockers in children are limited. Carvedilol (section 2.4) has vasodilatory properties and therefore (like ACE inhibitors) also lowers afterload.

In children receiving specialist cardiology care, the phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitor enoximone is sometimes used by mouth for its inotropic and vasodilator effects. Spironolactone (section 2.2.3) is usually used as a potassium-sparing drug with a loop diuretic; in adults low doses of spironolactone are effective in the treatment of heart failure. Careful monitoring of serum potassium is necessary if spironolactone is used in combination with an ACE inhibitor.

Potassium loss Hypokalaemia can occur with both thiazide and loop diuretics. The risk of hypokalaemia depends on the duration of action as well as the potency and is thus greater with thiazides than with an equipotent dose of a loop diuretic.

Hypokalaemia is particularly dangerous in children being treated with cardiac glycosides. In hepatic failure hypokalaemia caused by diuretics can precipitate encephalopathy.

The use of potassium-sparing diuretics (section 2.2.3) avoids the need to take potassium supplements.

Thiazides and related diuretics

Thiazides and related compounds are moderately potent diuretics; they inhibit sodium reabsorption at the beginning of the distal convoluted tubule. They are usually administered early in the day so that the diuresis does not interfere with sleep.

In the management of hypertension a low dose of a thiazide produces a maximal or near-maximal blood pressure lowering effect, with very little biochemical disturbance. Higher doses cause more marked changes in plasma potassium, sodium, uric acid, glucose, and lipids, with little advantage in blood pressure control. For reference to the use of thiazides in chronic heart failure see section 2.2.
Bendroflumethiazide is licensed for use in children; chlorothiazide is also used.

Chlortalidone, a thiazide-related compound, has a longer duration of action than the thiazides and may be given on alternate days in younger children.

Metolazone is particularly effective when combined with a loop diuretic (even in renal failure) and is most effective when given 30–60 minutes before furosemide; profound diuresis can occur and the child should therefore be monitored carefully.

**Cautions** See also section 2.2. Thiazides and related diuretics can exacerbate diabetes, gout, and systemic lupus erythematous. Electrolytes should be monitored particularly with high doses, long-term use, or in renal impairment. Thiazides and related diuretics should also be used with caution in nephrotic syndrome, hyperaldosteronism, and malnourishment; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (diuretics).

**Contra-indications** Thiazides and related diuretics should be avoided in refractory hypokalaemia, hypernatraemia, and hypercalcaemia, symptomatic hyperuricaemia, and Addison’s disease.

**Hepatic impairment** Thiazides and related diuretics should be used with caution in mild to moderate impairment and avoided in severe impairment. Hypokalaemia may precipitate coma, although hypokalaemia can be prevented by using a potassium-sparing diuretic.

**Renal impairment** Thiazides and related diuretics should be used with caution because they can further reduce renal function. They are ineffective if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m² and should be avoided; metolazone remains effective but with a risk of excessive diuresis.

**Pregnancy** Thiazides and related diuretics should not be used to treat gestational hypertension. They may cause neonatal thrombocytopenia, bone marrow suppression, jaundice, electrolyte disturbances, and hypoglycaemia; placental perfusion may also be reduced. Stimulation of labour, uterine inertia, and meconium staining have also been reported.

**Breast-feeding** The amount of bendroflumethiazide, chlorothiazide, chlortalidone, and metolazone present in milk is too small to be harmful; large doses may suppress lactation.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of thiazides and related diuretics include mild gastro-intestinal disturbances, postural hypotension, altered plasma-lipid concentrations, metabolic and electrolyte disturbances including hypokalaemia (see also notes above), hypernatraemia, hypercalcaemia, hyperglycaemia, hypochloroaemic alkalosis, and hyperuricaemia, and gout. Less common side-effects include blood disorders including agranulocytosis, leucopenia and thrombocytopenia, and impotence. Pancreatitis, intrahepatic cholestasis, cardiac arrhythmias, headache, dizziness, paraesthesia, visual disturbances, and hypersensitivity reactions (including pneumonitis, pulmonary oedema, photosensitivity, and severe skin reactions) have also been reported.

---

### Bendroflumethiazide (Bendrofluazide)

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

**Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease; pulmonary oedema; hypertension**

- By mouth
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 50–100 micrograms/kg daily adjusted according to response
  - **Child 2–12 years** initially 50–400 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) daily then 50–100 micrograms/kg daily adjusted according to response (max. 10 mg daily)
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 5–10 mg daily or on alternate days (2.5 mg daily in hypertension) as a single morning dose, adjusted according to response (max. 10 mg daily)

**Bendroflumethiazide** (non-proprietary)

Tablets, bendroflumethiazide 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = 79p; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = 86p

Brands include *Aprinox*, *Neo-NoClor*.

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

---

### Chlorothiazide

**Cautions** see notes above; also neonate (theoretical risk of kernicterus if very jaundiced)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed

**Indication and dose**

**Heart failure, hypertension, ascites**

- By mouth
  - **Neonate** 10–20 mg/kg twice daily
  - **Child 1–6 months** 10–20 mg/kg twice daily
  - **Child 6 months–12 years** 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. 1 g daily)
  - **Child 12–18 years** 0.25–1 g once daily or 125–500 mg twice daily

**Chronic hypoglycaemia** section 6.1.4

**Diabetes insipidus** section 6.5.2

---

**Preparations**

Chlorothiazide oral suspension 250 mg/5 mL is available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
2.2.2 Loop diuretics

**CHLORTALIDONE** (Chlorthalidone)

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also rarely jaundice

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg in the morning every 48 hours; max. 1.7 mg/kg every 48 hours
  - Child 12–18 years 25 mg daily in the morning, increased to 50 mg daily if necessary (but see notes above)

**Stable heart failure**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg in the morning every 48 hours; max. 1.7 mg/kg every 48 hours
  - Child 12–18 years 25–50 mg daily in the morning, increased if necessary to 100–200 mg daily (reduce to lowest effective dose for maintenance)

**Ascites, oedema in nephrotic syndrome**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg in the morning every 48 hours; max. 1.7 mg/kg every 48 hours
  - Child 12–18 years up to 50 mg daily

**Hygroton** (Alliance)

Tablets, yellow, scored, chlortalidone 50 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.64

**METOLAZONE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also chills, chest pain

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Oedema resistant to loop diuretics in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease; pulmonary oedema; adjunct to loop diuretics to induce diuresis

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 100–200 micrograms/kg once or twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years 5–10 mg once daily in the morning, increased to 5–10 mg twice daily in resistant oedema

**Administration** tablets may be crushed and mixed with water immediately before use

**Renal impairment**

High doses of loop diuretics may occasionally be needed; high doses or rapid intravenous administration can cause tinnitus and deafness; high doses of bumetanide can also cause musculoskeletal pain.

**Pregnancy** Furosemide and bumetanide should not be used to treat gestational hypertension because of the maternal hypovolaemia associated with this condition.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of loop diuretics include mild gastrointestinal disturbances, pancreatitis, hepatic encephalopathy, postural hypotension, temporary increase in serum-cholesterol and triglyceride concentration, hyperglycaemia (less common than with thiazides), acute urinary retention, electrolyte disturbances (including hyperkalaemia, hypokalaemia (see section 2.2), increased calcium excretion (nephrocalcinosis and nephrolithiasis reported with long-term use of furosemide in preterm infants), hyperchloremia, and hypomagnesaemia), metabolic alkalosis, blood disorders (including bone marrow depression, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia), hyperuricaemia, visual disturbances, tinnitus and deafness (usually with high doses and rapid intravenous administration, and in renal impairment), rash, and photosensitivity.

**Furosemide**

**Indication and dose**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg in the morning
  - Child 12–18 years up to 50 mg daily

**Metninex 5®** (Sanofi-Aventis)

Tablets, blue, metolazone 5 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £18.20

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

2.2.2 Loop diuretics

Loop diuretics inhibit reabsorption of sodium, potassium, and chloride from the ascending limb of the loop of Henlé in the renal tubule and are powerful diuretics.

**Furosemide and bumetanide** are similar in activity; they produce dose-related diuresis. Furosemide is used extensively in children. It can be used for pulmonary oedema (e.g. in respiratory distress syndrome and bronchopulmonary dysplasia), congestive heart failure, and in renal disease.

**Cautions** Hypovolaemia and hypotension should be corrected before initiation of treatment with loop diuretics; electrolytes should be monitored during treatment (see also Potassium Loss, section 2.2). Loop diuretics should be used with caution in comatose and precoma-tose states associated with liver cirrhosis. Loop diuretics can exacerbate diabetes (but hyperglycaemia less likely than with thiazides) and gout; they can also cause acute urinary retention in children with obstruction of urinary outflow, therefore adequate urinary output should be established before initiating treatment.

**Contra-indications** Loop diuretics should be avoided in severe hypokalaemia, severe hyperonatraemia, anuria, and in renal failure due to nephrotoxic or hepatotoxic drugs.

**Hepatic impairment** Hypokalaemia induced by loop diuretics may precipitate hepatic encephalopathy and coma—potassium-sparing diuretics can be used to prevent this.

**Renal impairment** High doses of loop diuretics may occasionally be needed; high doses or rapid intravenous administration can cause tinnitus and deafness; high doses of bumetanide can also cause musculoskeletal pain.

**Pregnancy** Furosemide and bumetanide should be used with caution in comatose and precoma—potassium-sparing diuretics can be used to prevent this.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of loop diuretics include mild gastrointestinal disturbances, pancreatitis, hepatic encephalopathy, postural hypotension, temporary increase in serum-cholesterol and triglyceride concentration, hyperglycaemia (less common than with thiazides), acute urinary retention, electrolyte disturbances (including hyperkalaemia, hypokalaemia (see section 2.2), increased calcium excretion (nephrocalcinosis and nephrolithiasis reported with long-term use of furosemide in preterm infants), hyperchloremia, and hypomagnesaemia), metabolic alkalosis, blood disorders (including bone marrow depression, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia), hyperuricaemia, visual disturbances, tinnitus and deafness (usually with high doses and rapid intravenous administration, and in renal impairment), rash, and photosensitivity.
**BUMETANIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** no information available; may inhibit lactation

**Side-effects** see notes above; also gynaecomastia, breast pain, musculoskeletal pain (associated with high doses in renal failure)

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease; pulmonary oedema

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 15–50 micrograms/kg 1–4 times daily (max. single dose 2 mg); do not exceed 5 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years 1 mg in the morning, repeated after 6–8 hours if necessary; severe cases up to 5 mg daily

- **By intravenous injection**
  - Child 12–18 years 1–2 mg, repeated after 20 minutes if necessary

- **By intravenous infusion over 30–60 minutes**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 25–50 micrograms/kg
  - Child 12–18 years 1–5 mg

**Administration** for **intravenous infusion**, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; concentrations above 25 micrograms/mL may cause precipitation

**Bumetanide** (Non-proprietary)

- **Tablets**, bumetanide 1 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.12; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £4.33
- **Oral liquid**, bumetanide 1 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £128.00
- **Injection**, bumetanide 500 micrograms/mL, net price 4-mL amp = £1.79

**Burinex** (LEO)

- **Tablets**, scored, bumetanide 1 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.52; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £9.67

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

---

**FUROSEMIDE**

(Furosemide)

**Cautions** see notes above; also hypoproteinaemia may reduce effect and increase risk of side-effects; hepatoresal syndrome; risk of ototoxicity may be reduced by giving high oral doses in 2 or more divided doses; effect may be prolonged in neonates; some liquid preparations contain alcohol, caution especially in neonates; **Interactions**: Appendix 1 (diuretics)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful; may inhibit lactation

**Side-effects** see notes above; also intrahepatic cholestasis and gout

**Indication and dose**

Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease; pulmonary oedema

- **By mouth**
  - Neonate 0.5–2 mg/kg every 12–24 hours (every 24 hours if postmenstrual age under 31 weeks)
  - Child 1 month–12 years 0.5–2 mg/kg 2–3 times daily (every 24 hours if postmenstrual age under 31 weeks); higher doses may be required in resistant oedema; max. 12 mg/kg daily, not to exceed 80 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years 20–40 mg daily, increased in resistant oedema to 80–120 mg daily

- **By slow intravenous injection**
  - Neonate 0.5–1 mg/kg every 12–24 hours (every 24 hours if postmenstrual age under 31 weeks)
  - Child 1 month–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg repeated every 8 hours as necessary; max. 2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) every 8 hours
  - Child 12–18 years 20–40 mg repeated every 8 hours as necessary; higher doses may be required in resistant cases

- **By continuous intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 0.1–2 mg/kg/hour (following cardiac surgery, initially 100 micrograms/kg/hour, doubled every 2 hours until urine output exceeds 1 mL/kg/hour)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years initially 250 mg daily; if necessary, dose increased in steps of 250 mg given every 4–6 hours; max. single dose 2 g (rarely used)

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 2–5 mg/kg up to 4 times daily (max. 1 g daily)
  - Child 12–18 years initially 250 mg over 1 hour (rate not exceeding 4 mg/minute), increase to 500 mg over 2 hours if satisfactory urine output not obtained, then give a further 1 g over 4 hours if no satisfactory response within subsequent hour, if no response obtained dialysis probably required; effective dose (up to 1 g) can be repeated every 24 hours

**Administration** for **administration by mouth**, tablets can be crushed and mixed with water or injection solution diluted and given by mouth.

For **intravenous injection**, give over 5–10 minutes at a usual rate of 100 micrograms/kg/minute (not exceeding 500 micrograms/kg/minute), max. 4 mg/minute.

For **intravenous infusion**, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 1–2 mg/mL; glucose solutions unsuitable (infusion pH must be above 5.5)
2.2.3 Potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists

Spiromolactone is the most commonly used potassium-sparing diuretic in children; it is an aldosterone antagonist and enhances potassium retention and sodium excretion in the distal tubule. Spiromolactone is combined with other diuretics to reduce urinary potassium loss. It is also used in nephrotic syndrome, the long-term management of Bartter’s syndrome, and high doses can be given with potassium-conserving diuretics (see section 2.2.4 for compound preparations with thiazide or loop diuretics).

A potassium-sparing diuretic such as spironolactone or amiloride is required and the child is not able to take oral medication. It is metabolised to canrenone, which is also a metabolite of spironolactone.

Amiloride on its own is a weak diuretic. It causes retention of potassium and is therefore given with thiazide or loop diuretics as an alternative to giving potassium supplements (see section 2.2.4 for compound preparations with thiazide or loop diuretics).

A potassium-sparing diuretic such as spironolactone or amiloride may also be used in the management of amphotericin-induced hypokalaemia.

Potassium supplements must not be given with potassium-sparing diuretics. Administration of a potassium-sparing diuretic to a child receiving an ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist (section 2.5.5) can cause severe hyperkalaemia.

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects abdominal pain, gastrointestinal bleeding, dry mouth, thirst, diarrhea, constipation, anorexia, jaundice, dyspepsia, flatulence, vomiting, nausea, angina, arrhythmias, palpitation, postural hypotension, dysphonia, cough, nasal congestion, confusion, headache, insomnia, weakness, tremor, agitation, dizziness, malaise, paraesthesia, encephalopathy, urinary disturbances, sexual dysfunction, hyperkalaemia, muscle cramp, arthralgia, visual disturbances, raised intra-ocular pressure, tinnitus, alopecia, pruritus, rash

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Adjunct to thiazide or loop diuretics for oedema in heart failure, and hepatic disease (where potassium conservation desirable)

| Oral solution, sugar-free, furosemide 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp | £0.60 |
| Injection, furosemide 10 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp | £0.55 |

Note Large-volume furosemide injections also available; brands include Minijet®

2.2.4 Aldosterone antagonists

Spiromolactone (Non-proprietary) (Sanofi-Aventis) Tablets, spironolactone 20 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £4.05

Oral solution, sugar-free, furosemide, net price 20 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £13.97; 40 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £18.19; 50 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £19.35

Brands include Lasix® (Sanofi-Aventis) (contains alcohol 10%)

Injection, furosemide 10 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 38p; 25-mL amp = £2.50

Lasix® (Sanofi-Aventis) (Sanofi-Aventis) Tablets, amiloride hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = 75p

Oral solution, sugar-free, amiloride hydrochloride 5 mg/5 mL, net price 2-mL amp = £0.60

Note Large-volume furosemide injections also available; brands include Minijet®

Note Large-volume furosemide injections also available; brands include Minijet®

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects abdominal pain, gastrointestinal bleeding, dry mouth, thirst, diarrhea, constipation, anorexia, jaundice, dyspepsia, flatulence, vomiting, nausea, angina, arrhythmias, palpitation, postural hypotension, dysphonia, cough, nasal congestion, confusion, headache, insomnia, weakness, tremor, agitation, dizziness, malaise, paraesthesia, encephalopathy, urinary disturbances, sexual dysfunction, hyperkalaemia, muscle cramp, arthralgia, visual disturbances, raised intra-ocular pressure, tinnitus, alopecia, pruritus, rash

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Adjunct to thiazide or loop diuretics for oedema in heart failure, and hepatic disease (where potassium conservation desirable)

| Oral solution, sugar-free, furosemide 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp | £0.60 |
| Injection, furosemide 10 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp | £0.55 |

Note Large-volume furosemide injections also available; brands include Minijet®

Compound preparations with thiazide or loop diuretics See section 2.2.4

Aldosterone antagonists

SPIRONOLACTONE

Cautions potential metabolic products carcinogenic in rodents; monitor electrolytes (discontinue if hyperkalaemia); acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (diuretics)

Contra-indications hyperkalaemia, hypokalaemia, anuria; Addison’s disease

Renal impairment monitor plasma-potassium concentration (high risk of hyperkalaemia in renal impairment); avoid if rapidly deteriorating or severe impairment

Pregnancy feminisation of male fetus in animal studies

Breast-feeding metabolites present in milk but unlikely to be harmful

Side-effects gastrointestinal disturbances, hepatoxicity; malaise, headache, confusion, drowsiness, dizziness; gynaecomastia, benign breast tumour, breast pain, menstrual disturbances, changes in libido; hyperkalaemia (discontinue), hypokalaemia, acute renal failure, hyperuricaemia, leucopenia, agranulocytosis, thrombocytopenia; leg cramps; alopecia, hirsutism, rash, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome

Licensed use not licensed for reduction of hypokalaemia induced by diuretics or amphotericin
**2.2.4 Potassium-sparing diuretics with other diuretics**

**Indication and dose**

**Oedema in heart failure and in ascites, nephrotic syndrome, reduction of hypokalaemia induced by diuretics or amphotericin**

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 1–2 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; up to 7 mg/kg daily in resistant ascites
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 1–3 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; up to 9 mg/kg daily in resistant ascites
  - **Child 12–18 years** 50–100 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; up to 9 mg/kg daily (max. 400 mg daily) in resistant ascites

**Spironolactone** (Non-proprietary) *(Note)*

- **Tablets** spironolactone 25 mg, net price 28 = £1.50; 50 mg, 28 = £2.11; 100 mg, 28 = £2.46. Label: 21
- **Oral suspensions** spironolactone 5 mg/5 mL, 10 mg/5 mL, 25 mg/5 mL, 50 mg/5 mL, and 100 mg/5 mL. Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Aldactone** *(Pharmacia)* *(Note)*

- **Tablets**, f/c, spironolactone (discontinue if hyperkalaemia); hypotension; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); **interactions**: Appendix 1 (diuretics)
- **Contra-indications** hyperkalaemia; hyponatraemia
- **Renal impairment** use with caution and monitor plasma-potassium concentration if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²
- **Pregnancy** crosses placenta; feminisation and undescended testes in male fetus in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid
- **Breast-feeding** present in breast milk—manufacturer advises avoid
- **Side-effects** drowsiness, headache, ataxia; menstrual irregularities; hyperuricaemia; pain at injection site on rapid administration; less commonly thrombocytopenia, eosinophilia, and hyperkalaemia; rarely hepatotoxicity, agranulocytosis, osteomalacia, hoarseness and deepening of voice, hypersensitivity reactions (including urticaria and erythema), and alopecia; also gastrointestinal disturbances, hypotension, transient confusion with high doses, hyponatraemia, hypercholesteremic acidosis, mastalgia, gynaecomastia, and hirsutism
- **Licensed use** not licensed for use in the UK

**Kidney disease** (section 2.2.5)

**Short-term diuresis for oedema in heart failure and in ascites**

- **By intravenous injection over at least 3 minutes or intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 1–2 mg/kg twice daily
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 1–2 mg/kg twice daily

**Child 12–18 years** 1–2 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) twice daily

**Note** To convert to equivalent oral spironolactone dose, multiply potassium canrenoate dose by 0.7

**Administration** consult product literature

**Preparations**

Potassium canrenoate injection is available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**2.2.4 Potassium-sparing diuretics with other diuretics**

Although it is preferable to prescribe diuretics separately in children, the use of fixed combinations may be justified in older children if compliance is a problem. The most commonly used preparations are listed below (but they may not be licensed for use in children—consult product literature), for other preparations see the BNFC. For interactions, see Appendix 1 (diuretics).

**Amiloride with thiazides**

**Co-amilozide** (Non-proprietary) *(Note)*

- **Tablets**, co-amilozide 2.5/25 (amiloride hydrochloride 2.5 mg, hydrochlorothiazide 25 mg), net price 28-tab pack = £3.73
  - **Brands include Moduret 25®**

**Amiloride with loop diuretics**

**Co-amilofruse** (Non-proprietary) *(Note)*

- **Tablets**, co-amilofruse 2.5/20 (amiloride hydrochloride 2.5 mg, furosemide 20 mg), net price 28-tab pack = £1.18, 56-tab pack = £1.83
  - **Brands include Frumil L3®**
  - **Tablets**, co-amilofruse 5/40 (amiloride hydrochloride 5 mg, furosemide 40 mg), net price 28-tab pack = £1.17, 56-tab pack = £1.42
  - **Brands include Frumil®**
  - **Tablets**, co-amilofruse 10/80 (amiloride hydrochloride 10 mg, furosemide 80 mg), net price 28-tab pack = £11.51

**2.2.5 Osmotic diuretics**

Mannitol is used to treat cerebral oedema, raised intracranial pressure, peripheral oedema, and ascites.

**Mannitol** *(Pharmacia)* *(Note)*

- **Cautions** extravasation causes inflammation and thrombophlebitis; monitor fluid and electrolyte balance, serum osmolality, and pulmonary and renal function; assess cardiac function before and during treatment; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (mannitol)
- **Contra-indications** severe heart failure; severe pulmonary oedema; intracranial bleeding (except during craniotomy); anuria; severe dehydration
- **Renal impairment** use with caution in severe impairment
- **Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available
Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available

Side-effects less commonly hypotension, thrombophlebitis, fluid and electrolyte imbalance; rarely dry mouth, thirst, nausea, vomiting, oedema, raised intracranial pressure, arrhythmia, hypertension, pulmonary oedema, chest pain, headache, convulsions, dizziness, chill, fever, urinary retention, focal osmotic nephrosis, dehydration, cramp, blurred vision, rhinitis, skin necrosis, and hypersensitivity reactions (including urticaria and anaphylaxis); very rarely congestive heart failure and acute renal failure

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Cerebral oedema, raised intra-ocular pressure

- By intravenous infusion over 30–60 minutes
  - Child 1 month–12 years 0.25–1.5 g/kg repeated if necessary 1–2 times after 4–8 hours
  - Child 12–18 years 0.25–2 g/kg repeated if necessary 1–2 times after 4–8 hours

Peripheral oedema and ascites

- By intravenous infusion over 2–6 hours
  - Child 1 month–18 years 1–2 g/kg

Administration examine infusion for crystals; if crystals present, dissolve by warming infusion fluid (allow to cool to body temperature before administration); for mannitol 20%, an in-line filter is recommended (15-micron filters have been used)

Mannitol (Baxter) In Intravenous infusion, mannitol 10%, net price 500-mL Viaflex® bag = £2.26, 500-mL Viaflo® bag = £2.15; 20%, 250-mL Viaflex® bag = £3.27, 250-mL Viaflo® bag = £3.12

2.2.6 Mercurial diuretics

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

2.2.7 Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors

The carbonic anhydrase inhibitor acetazolamide is a weak diuretic although it is little used for its diuretic effect. Acetazolamide and eye drops of dorzolamide and brinzolamide inhibit the formation of aqueous humour and are used in glaucoma (section 11.6). In children, acetazolamide is also used in the treatment of epilepsy (section 4.8.1), and raised intracranial pressure (section 11.6).

2.2.8 Diuretics with potassium

Diuretics and potassium supplements should be prescribed separately for children.

82 |

2.2.7 Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors

2.3 Anti-arrhythmic drugs

2.3.1 Management of arrhythmias

2.3.2 Drugs for arrhythmias

Management of an arrhythmia requires precise diagnosis of the type of arrhythmia; electrocardiography and referral to a paediatric cardiologist is essential; underlying causes such as heart failure require appropriate treatment.

Arrhythmias may be broadly divided into bradyarrhythmias, supraventricular tachycardias, and ventricular arrhythmias.

Bradyarrhythmias Adrenaline (epinephrine) is useful in the treatment of symptomatic bradycardia in an infant or child.

Supraventricular tachycardias In supraventricular tachycardia adenosine is given by rapid intravenous injection. If adenosine is ineffective, intravenous amiodarone, flecainide, or a beta-blocker (such as esmolol, see section 2.4) can be tried; verapamil can also be considered in children over 1 year. Atenolol, sotalol (section 2.4), and flecainide are used for the prophylaxis of paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardias.

The use of d.c. shock and vagal stimulation also have a role in the treatment of supraventricular tachycardia.

Syndromes associated with accessory conducting pathways Amiodarone, flecainide, or a beta-blocker is used to prevent recurrence of supraventricular tachycardia in infants and young children with these syndromes (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome).

Atrial flutter In atrial flutter without structural heart defects, sinus rhythm is restored with d.c. shock or cardiac pacing; drug treatment is usually not necessary. Amiodarone is used in atrial flutter when structural heart defects are present or after heart surgery. Sotalol (section 2.4) may also be considered.

Atrial fibrillation Atrial fibrillation is very rare in children. To restore sinus rhythm d.c. shock is used; beta-blockers, alone or together with digoxin, may be useful for ventricular rate control.

Ectopic tachycardia Intravenous amiodarone is used in conjunction with body cooling and synchronised pacing in postoperative junctional ectopic tachycardia. Oral amiodarone or flecainide are used in congenital junctional ectopic tachycardia.

Amiodarone, flecainide, or a beta-blocker are used in atrial ectopic tachycardia; amiodarone is preferred in those with poor ventricular function.
Amiodarone is useful in the management of both supraventricular and ventricular tachyarrhythmias. It can be given by intravenous infusion and by mouth, and causes little or no myocardial depression. Unlike oral amiodarone, intravenous amiodarone acts relatively rapidly. Intravenous amiodarone is also used in cardiopulmonary resuscitation for ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia unresponsive to d.c. shock (see algorithm, inside back cover).

Amiodarone has a very long half-life (extending to several weeks) and only needs to be given once daily (but high doses may cause nausea unless divided). Many weeks or months may be required to achieve steady-state plasma-amiodarone concentration; this is particularly important when drug interactions are likely (see also Appendix I).

Most patients taking amiodarone develop corneal microdeposits (reversible on withdrawal of treatment); these rarely interfere with vision, but drivers may be dazzled by headlights at night. However, if vision is impaired or if optic neuritis or optic neuropathy occur, amiodarone must be stopped to prevent blindness and expert advice sought. Because of the possibility of phototoxic reactions, children and carers should be advised to shield the child’s skin from light during treatment and for several months after discontinuing amiodarone; a wide-spectrum sunscreen (section 13.8.1) should be used to protect against both long-wave ultraviolet and visible light.

Amiodarone contains iodine and can cause disorders of thyroid function; both hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism can occur. Clinical assessment alone is unreliable, and laboratory tests should be performed before treatment and every 6 months. Thyroxine (T4) may be raised in the absence of hyperthyroidism; therefore triiodothyronine (T3), T4, and thyroid-stimulating hormone (thyrotrophin, TSH) should all be measured. A raised T3 and T4 with a very low or undetectable TSH concentration suggests the development of thyrotoxicosis. The thyrotoxicosis may be very refractory, and amiodarone should usually be withdrawn at least temporarily to help achieve control; treatment with carbimazole may be required. Hypothyroidism can be treated with replacement therapy without withdrawing amiodarone if it is essential; careful supervision is required. Pneumonitis should always be suspected if new or progressive shortness of breath or cough develops in a patient taking amiodarone. Fresh neurological symptoms should raise the possibility of peripheral neuropathy. Amiodarone is also associated with hepatotoxicity (see under amiodarone, below).

Amiodarone enhances the arrhythmogenic (pro-arrhythmic) effect of many drugs. Therefore special care should be taken if two or more are used, especially if myocardial function is impaired. Most drugs that are effective in countering arrhythmias can also provoke them in some circumstances; moreover, hypokalaemia enhances the arrhythmogenic (pro-arrhythmic) effect of many drugs.

Adenosine is the treatment of choice for terminating supraventricular tachycardias, including those associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome). It is also used in the diagnosis of supraventricular arrhythmias. It is not negatively inotropic and does not cause significant hypotension; it can be used safely in children with impaired cardiac function or postoperative arrhythmias. The injection should be administered by rapid intravenous injection into a central or large peripheral vein.

Anti-arrhythmic agents can also be classified according to their effects on the electrical behaviour of myocardial cells during activity (the Vaughan Williams classification) although this classification is of less clinical significance:

- Class I: membrane stabilising drugs (e.g. lidocaine, flecainide)
- Class II: beta-blockers
- Class III: amiodarone; sotalol (also Class II)
- Class IV: calcium-channel blockers (includes verapamil but not dihydropyridines)

Cautions

The negative inotropic effects of anti-arrhythmic drugs tend to be additive. Therefore special care should be taken if two or more are used, especially if myocardial function is impaired. Most drugs that are effective in countering arrhythmias can also provoke them in some circumstances; moreover, hypokalaemia enhances the arrhythmogenic (pro-arrhythmic) effect of many drugs.

Beta-blockers act as anti-arrhythmic drugs principally by attenuating the effects of the sympathetic system on automaticity and conductivity within the heart, for details see section 2.4. For special reference to the role of sotalol in ventricular arrhythmias, see section 2.4.

Oral administration of digoxin (section 2.1.1) slows the ventricular rate in atrial fibrillation and in atrial flutter. However, intravenous infusion of digoxin is rarely effective for rapid control of ventricular rate.

Flecainide is useful for the treatment of resistant re-entry supraventricular tachycardia, ventricular tachycardia, ventricular ectopic beats, arrhythmias associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome), and paroxysmal atrial fibrillation. Flecainide crosses the placenta and can be used to control fetal supraventricular arrhythmias.
Lidocaine can be used in cardiopulmonary resuscitation in children with ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia unresponsive to d.c. shock, but only if amiodarone is not available. Doses may need to be reduced in children with persistently poor cardiac output and hepatic or renal failure (see under lidocaine, below).

Verapamil (section 2.6.2) can cause severe haemodynamic compromise (refractory hypotension and cardiac arrest) when used for the acute treatment of arrhythmias in neonates and infants; it is contra-indicated in children under 1 year. It is also contra-indicated in those with congestive heart failure, syndromes associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome) and in most receiving concomitant beta-blockers. It can be useful in older children with supraventricular tachycardia.

**ADENOSINE**

Cautions monitor ECG and have resuscitation facilities available; atrial fibrillation or flutter with accessory pathway (conduction down anomalous pathway may increase); first degree AV block; bundle branch block; left main coronary artery stenosis; uncorrected hypovolaemia; stenotic valvular heart disease; left to right shunt; pericarditis; pericardial effusion; autonomic dysfunction; stenotic carotid artery disease with cerebrovascular insufficiency; recent myocardial infarction; heart failure; heart transplant (see dose); interactions: Appendix 1 (adenosine)

**Contra-indications** second- or third-degree AV block and sick sinus syndrome (unless pacemaker fitted); long QT syndrome; severe hypotension; decompensated heart failure, asthma

**Pregnancy** large doses may produce fetal toxicity; manufacturer advises use only if essential

**Breast-feeding** no information available—unlikely to be present in milk owing to short half-life

**Side-effects** nausea, arrhythmia (discontinue if asymptote or severe bradycardia occur), sinus pause, AV block, flushing, angina (discontinue), dizziness; dysphagia; headache; less commonly metallic taste, palpitation, hyperventilation, weakness, blurred vision, sweating; very rarely transient worsening of intracranial hypertension, bronchospasm, injection-site reactions; also reported vomiting, syncope, hypotension (discontinue if severe), cardiac arrest, respiratory failure (discontinue), and convulsions

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Arrhythmias (see also section 2.3.1), diagnosis of arrhythmias**

- **By rapid intravenous injection**

  **Neonates** 150 micrograms/kg; if necessary repeat injection every 1–2 minutes increasing dose by 50–100 micrograms/kg until tachycardia terminated or max. single dose of 300 micrograms/kg given

  **Child 1 month–1 year** 150 micrograms/kg; if necessary repeat injection every 1–2 minutes increasing the dose by 50–100 micrograms/kg until tachycardia terminated or max. single dose of 500 micrograms/kg given

  **Child 1–12 years** 100 micrograms/kg; if necessary repeat injection every 1–2 minutes increasing dose by 50–100 micrograms/kg until tachycardia terminated or max. single dose of 500 micrograms/kg (max. 12 mg) given

**Child 12–18 years** initially 3 mg; if necessary followed by 6 mg after 1–2 minutes, and then by 12 mg after a further 1–2 minutes

**Note** In some children over 12 years 3-mg dose ineffective (e.g. if a small peripheral vein is used for administration) and higher initial dose sometimes used; however, those with heart transplant are very sensitive to the effects of adenosine, and should not receive higher initial doses. In children receiving dipyridamole reduce dose to a quarter of usual dose of adenosine

**Administration** by rapid intravenous injection over 2 seconds into central or large peripheral vein followed by rapid Sodium Chloride 0.9% flush; injection solution may be diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9% if required

**Adenocor® (Sanofi-Aventis)**

Injection, adenosine 3 mg/mL in physiological saline, net price 2-mL vial = £4.45 ( hosp. only)

**Note** Intravenous infusion of adenosine (Adenoscan®). Sanofi-Aventis may be used in conjunction with radionuclide myocardial perfusion imaging in patients who cannot exercise adequately or for whom exercise is inappropriate—consult product literature

**AMIODARONE HYDROCHLORIDE**

Cautions liver-function and thyroid-function tests required before treatment and then every 6 months (see notes above for tests of thyroid function); hypokalaemia (measure serum-potassium concentration before treatment); pulmonary function tests and chest x-ray required before treatment; heart failure; severe bradycardia and conduction disturbances in excessive dosage; intravenous use may cause moderate and transient fall in blood pressure (circulatory collapse precipitated by rapid administration or overdosage) or severe hepato-cellular toxicity (monitor transaminases closely); ECG monitoring and resuscitation facilities must be available during intravenous use; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); avoid benzyl alcohol containing injections in neonates (see Excipients, p. 2); interactions: Appendix 1 (amiodarone)

**Contra-indications** except in cardiac arrest sinus bradycardia, sino-atrial heart block; unless pacemaker fitted avoid in severe conduction disturbances or sinus node disease; thyroid dysfunction; iodine sensitivity; avoid intravenous use in severe respiratory failure, circulatory collapse, or severe arterial hypertension; avoid bolus injection in congestive heart failure or cardiomyopathy; avoid rapid loading after cardiac surgery

**Pregnancy** possible risk of neonatal goitre; use only if no alternative

**Breast-feeding** avoid; significant amount present in milk—risk of neonatal hypothyroidism from release of iodine

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, taste disturbances, raised serum transaminases (may require dose reduction or withdrawal if accompanied by acute liver disorders), jaundice; bradycardia (see Cautions); pulmonary toxicity (including pneumonitis and fibrosis); tremor, sleep disorders; hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism; reversible corneal microdeposits (sometimes with night glare); phototoxicity, persistent slate-grey skin discoloration (see also notes above); less commonly onset or worsening of arrhythmias, conduction disturbances (see Cautions), peripheral
neuropathy and myopathy (usually reversible on withdrawal); very rarely chronic liver disease including cirrhosis, sinus arrest, bronchospasm (in patients with severe respiratory failure), ataxia, benign intracranial hypertension, headache, vertigo, epididymo-orchitis, impotence, haemolytic or aplastic anaemia, thrombocytopenia, rash (including exfoliative dermatitis), hypersensitivity including vasculitis, alopecia, impaired vision due to optic neuritis or optic neuropathy (including blindness), anaphylaxis on rapid injection, also hypotension, respiratory distress syndrome, sweating, and hot flushes

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 3 years

**Indication and dose**

**Supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias**

* see notes above (initiated in hospital or under specialist supervision)

* By mouth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>initially 5–10 mg/kg twice daily for 7–10 days, then reduced to maintenance dose of 5–10 mg/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years</td>
<td>initially 5–10 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) twice daily for 7–10 days, then reduced to maintenance dose of 5–10 mg/kg once daily (max. 200 mg daily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>200 mg 3 times daily for 1 week then 200 mg twice daily for 1 week then usually 200 mg daily adjusted according to response</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* By intravenous infusion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>initially 5 mg/kg over 30 minutes then 5 mg/kg over 30 minutes every 12–24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>initially 5–10 mg/kg over 20 minutes–2 hours then by continuous infusion 300 micrograms/kg/hour, increased according to response to max. 1.5 mg/kg/hour; do not exceed 1.2 g in 24 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia refractory to defibrillation** (see also section 2.3.1)

* By intravenous injection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>5 mg/kg over at least 3 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>5 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) over at least 3 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Administration** intravenous administration via central venous catheter recommended if repeated or continuous infusion required, as infusion via peripheral veins may cause pain and inflammation.

For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of not less than 600 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5%, incompatible with Sodium Chloride infusion; avoid equipment containing the plasticizer di-2-ethylhexylphthalate (DEHP).

For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed and dispersed in water; injection solution should not be given orally (irritant)

**Amiodarone** *(Non-proprietary)*

Tablets, amiodarone hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.75; 200 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.22. Label: 11

**Pharmacokinetics** plasma-flecainide concentrations are usually lower than those after flecainide administration

**Side-effects** oedema, pro-arrhythmic effects; dyspnoea; dizziness, asthenia, fatigue, fever; visual disturbances; rarely pneumonitis, hallucinations, depression, confusion, amnesia, dyskinesia, convulsions, peripheral neuropathy, also reported gastrointestinal disturbances, anorexia, hepatic dysfunction, flushing, syncope, drowsiness, tremor, vertigo, headache, anxiety, insomnia, ataxia, paraesthesia, hypoaesthesia, anaemia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, skin rash, deposits, tinnitus, increased antinuclear antibodies, hypersensitivity reactions (including rash, urticaria, and photosensitivity), increased sweating

**Injection** amiodarone hydrochloride 30 mg/mL, net price 10-mL prefilled syringe = £19.60

**Excipients** may include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates unless no safer alternative available, see Excipients, p. 2)

**Sterile concentrate** amiodarone hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 3-mL amp = £1.33, 6-mL amp = £2.86. For dilution and use as an infusion

**Excipients** may include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates unless no safer alternative available, see Excipients, p. 2)

**Extemporaneous formulations available see** Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**Cordarone X®** *(Sanofi-Aventis)*

Tablets, scored, amiodarone hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £4.28; 200 mg, 28-tab pack = £6.99. Label: 11

**Sterile concentrate** amiodarone hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 3-mL amp = £1.33. For dilution and use as an infusion

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates unless no safer alternative available, see Excipients, p. 2)

**Flecainide Acetate**

**Cautions** children with pacemakers (especially those who may be pacemaker dependent because stimulation threshold may rise appreciably); atrial fibrillation following heart surgery; monitor ECG and have resuscitation facilities available during intravenous use; interactions: Appendix 1 (flecainide)

**Contra-indications** heart failure; abnormal left ventricular function; long-standing atrial fibrillation where conversion to sinus rhythm not attempted; haemodynamically significant valvular heart disease; avoid in sinus node dysfunction, atrial conduction defects, second-degree or greater AV block, bundle branch block or distal block unless pacing rescue available

**Hepatic impairment** avoid or reduce dose in severe impairment; monitor plasma concentration (see pharmacokinetics below)

**Renal impairment** reduce dose by 25–50% if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 35 mL/minute/1.73 m² and monitor plasma-flecainide concentration (see pharmacokinetics below)

**Pregnancy** used in pregnancy to treat maternal and fetal arrhythmias in specialist centres; toxicity reported in animal studies; infant hyperbilirubinaemia also reported

**Breast-feeding** significant amount present in milk but not known to be harmful
Licensed use
not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Resistant re-entry supraventricular tachycardia, ventricular ectopic beats or ventricular tachycardia, arrhythmias associated with accessory conduction pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome), paroxysmal atrial fibrillation

- By mouth

Neonate 2 mg/kg 2–3 times daily adjusted according to response and plasma-flecainide concentration

Child 1 month–12 years 2 mg/kg 2–3 times daily adjusted according to response and plasma-flecainide concentration (max. 8 mg/kg/day or 300 mg daily)

Child 12–18 years initially 50–100 mg twice daily; max. 300 mg daily (max. 400 mg daily for ventricular arrhythmias in heavily built children)

- By slow intravenous injection or intravenous infusion

Neonate 1–2 mg/kg over 10–30 minutes; if necessary followed by continuous infusion at a rate of 100–250 micrograms/kg/hour until arrhythmia controlled; transfer to oral treatment as above

Child 1 month–12 years 2 mg/kg over 10–30 minutes; if necessary followed by continuous infusion at a rate of 100–250 micrograms/kg/hour until arrhythmia controlled (max. cumulative dose 600 mg in 24 hours); transfer to oral treatment as above

Child 12–18 years 2 mg/kg (max. 150 mg) over 10–30 minutes; if necessary followed by continuous infusion at a rate of 1.5 mg/kg/hour for 1 hour, then reduced to 100–250 micrograms/kg/hour until arrhythmia controlled (max. cumulative dose 600 mg in first 24 hours); transfer to oral treatment as above

Administration
for administration by mouth, milk, infant formula, and dairy products may reduce absorption of flecainide—separate doses from feeds. Liquid has a local anaesthetic effect and should be given at least 30 minutes before or after food. Do not store liquid in refrigerator as precipitation occurs. For intravenous administration, give initial dose over 30 minutes in children with sustained ventricular tachycardia or cardiac failure.

Dilute injection using Glucose 5%; concentrations of more than 300 micrograms/mL are unstable in chloride-containing solutions

Flecainide (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, flecainide acetate 50 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £8.94; 100 mg, 60-tab pack = £8.95

Liquid, available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Tambocor® (SM) TH

Tablets, flecainide acetate 50 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £11.57; 100 mg (scored), 60-tab pack = £16.53

Injection, flecainide acetate 10 mg/mL, net price 15-mL amp = £4.40

Adderal (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, flecainide acetate 200 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £14.77. Label: 25

Dose

Supraventricular arrhythmias

- By mouth

Child 12–18 years 200 mg once daily

Note Not to be used to control arrhythmias in acute situations; children stabilised on 200 mg daily of immediate-release flecainide may be transferred to Tambocor® XL

LIDOCAINE HYDROCHLORIDE

(Lignocaine hydrochloride)

Cautions
lower doses in congestive heart failure and following cardiac surgery; monitor ECG; resuscitation facilities should be available; interactions: Appendix 1 (lidocaine)

Contra-indications sino-atrial block, all grades of atrioventricular block, severe myocardial depression; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment caution—increased risk of side-effects

Renal impairment possible accumulation of lidocaine and active metabolite; caution in severe impairment

Pregnancy crosses the placenta but not known to be harmful in animal studies—use if benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding present in milk but amount too small to be harmful

Side-effects dizziness, paraesthesia, or drowsiness (particularly if injection too rapid); other CNS effects include confusion, respiratory depression and convulsions; hypotension and bradycardia (may lead to cardiac arrest); rarely hypersensitivity reactions including anaphylaxis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose

Ventricular arrhythmias, pulseless ventricular tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation

- By intravenous or intraosseous injection, and intravenous infusion

Neonate 0.5–1 mg/kg by injection followed by infusion of 0.6–3 mg/kg/hour; if infusion not immediately available following initial injection, injection of 0.5–1 mg/kg may be repeated at intervals of not less than 5 minutes (to max. total dose 3 mg/kg) until infusion can be initiated

Child 1 month–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg by injection followed by infusion of 0.6–3 mg/kg/hour; if infusion not immediately available following initial injection, injection of 0.5–1 mg/kg may be repeated at intervals of not less than 5 minutes (to max. total dose 3 mg/kg) until infusion can be initiated

Child 12–18 years 50–100 mg by injection followed by infusion of 120 mg over 30 minutes then 240 mg over 2 hours then 60 mg/hour; reduce dose further if infusion continued beyond 24 hours; if infusion not immediately available following initial injection, injection of 50–100 mg may be repeated at intervals of not less than 5 minutes (to max. 300 mg in 1 hour) until infusion can be initiated
Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs (beta-blockers) block the beta-adrenoceptors in the heart, peripheral vasculature, bronchi, pancreas, and liver. Many beta-blockers are available but experience in children is limited to the use of only a few.

Differences between beta-blockers may affect choice. The water-soluble beta-blockers, atenolol and sotalol, are less likely to enter the brain and may therefore cause less sleep disturbance and nightmares. Water-soluble beta-blockers are excreted by the kidneys and dosage reduction is often necessary in renal impairment. Some beta-blockers, such as atenolol, have an intrinsically longer duration of action and need to be given only once daily. Carvedilol and labetalol are beta-blockers which have, in addition, an arteriolar vasodilating action and thus lower peripheral resistance. Although carvedilol and labetalol possess both alpha- and beta-blocking properties, these drugs have no important advantages over other beta-blockers in the treatment of hypertension.

Beta-blockers slow the heart and can depress the myocardium; they are contra-indicated in children with second- or third-degree heart block. Sotalol may prolong the QT interval, and it occasionally causes life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias (important: particular care is required to avoid hypokalaemia in children taking sotalol).

Beta-blockers can precipitate asthma and should usually be avoided in children with a history of asthma or bronchospasm. If there is no alternative, a child with well-controlled asthma can be treated for a co-existing condition (e.g. arrhythmia) with a cardioselective beta-blocker, which should be initiated with caution at a low dose by a specialist and the child monitored closely for adverse effects. Atenolol and metoprolol have less effect on the beta, (bronchial) receptors and are, therefore, relatively cardioselective, but they are not cardioselective; they have a lesser effect on airways resistance but are not free of this side-effect.

Beta-blockers are also associated with fatigue, coldness of the extremities, and sleep disturbances with nightmares (may be less common with the water-soluble beta-blockers, see above). Beta-blockers can affect carbohydrate metabolism causing hypoglycaemia or hyperglycaemia in children with or without diabetes; they can also interfere with metabolic and autonomic responses to hypoglycaemia thereby masking symptoms such as tachycardia. However, beta-blockers are not contra-indicated in diabetes, although the cardioselective beta-blockers (e.g. atenolol and metoprolol) may be preferred. Beta-blockers should be avoided altogether in those with frequent episodes of hypoglycaemia.

Pregnancy Beta-blockers may cause intra-uterine growth restriction, neonatal hypoglycaemia, and bradycardia; the risk is greater in severe hypertension. The use of labetalol in maternal hypertension is not known to be harmful, except possibly in the first trimester. Information on the safety of carvedilol during pregnancy is lacking. If beta-blockers are used close to delivery, infants should be monitored for signs of beta-blockade (and alpha-blockade with labetalol or carvedilol). For the treatment of hypertension in pregnancy, see section 2.5.

Breast-feeding Infants should be monitored as there is a risk of possible toxicity due to beta-blockade (and alpha-blockade with labetalol or carvedilol), but the amount of most beta-blockers present in milk is too small to affect infants. Atenolol and sotalol are present in milk in greater amounts than other beta-blockers. The manufacturer of esmolol advises avoidance if breast-feeding.

Hypertension Beta-blockers are effective for reducing blood pressure (section 2.5), but their mode of action is not understood; they reduce cardiac output, alter baroreceptor reflex sensitivity, and block peripheral adrenoceptors. Some beta-blockers depress plasma renin secretion. It is possible that a central effect may also partly explain their mode of action. Blood pressure can usually be controlled with relatively few side-effects. In general, the dose of beta-blocker does not have to be high.

Labetalol may be given intravenously for hypertensive emergencies in children (section 2.5); however, care is needed to avoid dangerous hypotension or beta-blockade, particularly in neonates. Esmolol is also used intravenously for the treatment of hypertension particularly in the peri-operative period.

Beta-blockers can be used to control the pulse rate in children with *phaeochromocytoma* (section 2.5.4). However, they should never be used alone as beta-blockade without concurrent alpha-blockade may lead to a hypertensive crisis; phenoxybenzamine should always be used together with the beta-blocker.
Arrhythmias In arrhythmias (section 2.3), beta-blockers act principally by attenuating the effects of the sympathetic system on automaticity and conductivity within the heart. They can be used alone or in conjunction with digoxin to control the ventricular rate in atrial fibrillation. Beta-blockers are also useful in the management of supraventricular tachycardias and ventricular tachycardias particularly to prevent recurrence of the tachycardia.

Esmolol is a relatively cardioselective beta-blocker with a very short duration of action, used intravenously for the short-term treatment of supraventricular arrhythmias and sinus tachycardia, particularly in the peri-operative period. Sotalol is a non-cardioselective beta-blocker with an additional class III anti-arrhythmic activity. Atenolol and sotalol suppress ventricular ectopic beats and non-sustained ventricular tachycardia (section 2.3.1). However, the pro-arrhythmic effects of sotalol, particularly in children with sick sinus syndrome, may prolong the QT interval and induce torsade de pointes.

Heart failure Beta-blockers may produce benefit in heart failure by blocking sympathetic activity and the addition of a beta-blocker such as carvedilol to other treatment for heart failure may be beneficial. Treatment should be initiated by those experienced in the management of heart failure (see section 2.2 for details on heart failure).

Thyrotoxicosis Beta-blockers are used in the management of thyrotoxicosis including neonatal thyrotoxicosis; propranolol can reverse clinical symptoms within 4 days. Beta-blockers are also used for the pre-operative preparation for thyroidectomy; the thyroid gland is rendered less vascular, thus facilitating surgery (section 4.7.4.2). Betaxolol, carteolol, and timolol are used topically in glaucoma (section 11.6). PRopranolol HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above; also avoid abrupt withdrawal; first-degree AV block: portal hypertension (risk of deterioration in liver function); diabetes (see also notes above); history of obstructive airways disease (introduce cautiously and monitor lung function—see also notes above); myasthenia gravis; symptoms of thyrotoxicosis may be masked (see also notes above); psoriasis; history of hypersensitivity—may increase sensitivity to allergens and result in more serious hypersensitivity response, also may reduce response to adrenaline (epinephrine); interactions: Appendix 1 (beta-blockers); important: verapamil interaction, see also p. 109

Contra-indications asthma (but see notes above), uncontrolled heart failure, marked bradycardia, hypotension, sick sinus syndrome, second- or third-degree AV block, cardiogenic shock, metabolic acidosis, severe peripheral arterial disease; phaeochromocytoma (apart from specific use with alpha-blockers, see also notes above)

Brenchospsam Beta-blockers, including those considered to be cardioselective, should usually be avoided in children with a history of asthma or bronchospasm. However, where there is no alternative a cardioselective beta-blocker can be given with caution under specialist supervision.

Hepatic impairment reduce oral dose

Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution—dose reduction may be required

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also gastro-intestinal disturbances; bradycardia, heart failure, hypotension, conduction disorders, peripheral vasoconstriction (including exacerbation of intermittent claudication and Raynaud’s phenomenon); bronchospasm (see above), dyspnoea; headache, fatigue, sleep disturbances, paraesthesia, dizziness, psychoses; sexual dysfunction; purpura, thrombocytopenia; visual disturbances; exacerbation of psoriasis, alopecia; rarely rashes and dry eyes (reversible on withdrawal); overdosage: see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 29

Licensed use not licensed for treatment of hypertension in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrhythmias</th>
<th>By mouth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>250–500 micrograms/kg 3 times daily, adjusted according to response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>250–500 micrograms/kg 3–4 times daily, adjusted according to response; max. 1 mg/kg 4 times daily, total daily dose not to exceed 160 mg daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypertension</th>
<th>By mouth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate initially</td>
<td>250 micrograms/kg 3 times daily, increased if necessary to max. 2 mg/kg 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years</td>
<td>0.25–1 mg/kg 3 times daily, increased at weekly intervals to max. 5 mg/kg daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**INDERAL** (AstraZeneca)\(^{\text{TM}}\)
Capsules, m/r, lavender/pink, propranolol hydrochloride 160 mg. Net price 28-cap pack = £1.91.
Label: 8, 25
Note Modified-release capsules containing propranolol hydrochloride 160 mg also available, brands include Bedranol SR\(^{\circ}\), Beta-Prograne\(^{\circ}\), Slo-Pro\(^{\circ}\).

**Atenolol** (Non-proprietary)\(^{\text{TM}}\)
Tablets, atenolol 25 mg, net price 28-tab pack = 83p; 50 mg, 28-tab pack = 86p; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = 91p.
Label: 8
Tenormin\(^{\circ}\) (AstraZeneca)\(^{\text{TM}}\)
‘25’ tablets, f/c, atenolol 25 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.16. Label: 8
LS tablets, orange, f/c, scored, atenolol 50 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £2.04. Label: 8
Tablets, orange, f/c, scored, atenolol 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £3.46. Label: 8
Syrup, sugar-free, atenolol 25 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £8.55. Label: 8

**CARVEDILOL**
Cautions see under Propranolol Hydrochloride
Contra-indications see under Propranolol Hydrochloride
Renal impairment initially use 50% of usual dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–35 mL/minute/1.73 m\(^2\); initially use 30–50% of usual dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m\(^2\)
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see under Propranolol Hydrochloride
Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**BNFC 2011–2012**
2.4 Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs
pressure, renal impairment, ischaemic heart disease, or diffuse vascular disease

**Contra-indications** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; acute or decompensated heart failure requiring intravenous inotropes

**Hepatic impairment** avoid

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** postural hypotension, dizziness, headache, fatigue, gastro-intestinal disturbances, brady-cardia; occasionally diminished peripheral circulation, peripheral oedema and painful extremities, dry mouth, dry eyes, eye irritation or disturbed vision, impotence, disturbances of micturition, influenza-like symptoms; rarely angina, AV block, exacerbation of intermittent claudication or Raynaud’s phenomenon; allergic skin reactions, exacerbation of psoriasis, nasal stuffiness, wheezing, depressed mood, sleep disturbances, paraesthesia, heart failure, changes in liver enzymes, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia also reported

**Renal impairment** dose reduction may be required

**Contra-indications** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

**Cautions** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; intermittent claudication or Raynaud’s phenomenon; laboratory testing needed at first symptom of liver dysfunction and if laboratory evidence of damage (or if jaundice) labetalol should be stopped and not restarted

**Labetalol hydrochloride**

**Cautions** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; interferes with laboratory tests for catecholamines; liver damage (see below)

**Liver damage** Severe hepatocellular damage reported after both short-term and long-term treatment. Appropriate laboratory testing needed at first symptom of liver dysfunction and if laboratory evidence of damage (or if jaundice) labetalol should be stopped and not restarted

**Contra-indications** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

**Renal impairment** dose reduction may be required

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** postural hypotension (avoid upright position during and for 3 hours after intravenous administration), tiredness, weakness, headache, rashes, scalp tingling, difficulty in micturition, epigastric pain, nausea, vomiting; liver damage (see above); rarely lichenoid rash

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Adjunct in heart failure** (limited information available)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–18 years** initially 50 micrograms/kg twice daily, double dose at intervals of at least 2 weeks up to 350 micrograms/kg (max. 25 mg) twice daily

**Carvedilol** (Non-proprietary) (Roche)

**Tablets**, carvedilol 3.125 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.10; 6.25 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.25; 12.5 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.37; 25 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.84. Label: 8

**Eucardic®** (Roche) (Baxter)

**Tablets**, scored, carvedilol 3.125 mg (pink), net price 28-tab pack = £7.13; 6.25 mg (yellow), 28-tab pack = £7.92; 12.5 mg (peach), 28-tab pack = £8.81; 25 mg, 28-tab pack = £11.00. Label: 8

**Esmolol hydrochloride**

**Cautions** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

**Contra-indications** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; infusion causes venous irritation and thrombophlebitis

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Arrhythmias, hypertensive emergencies** (see also notes above and section 2.5)

- **By intravenous administration**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially by intravenous injection over 1 minute 500 micrograms/kg then by intravenous infusion 50 micrograms/kg/minute for 4 minutes (rate reduced if low blood pressure or low heart rate); if inadequate response, repeat loading dose and increase maintenance infusion by 50 micrograms/kg/minute increments; repeat until effective or max. infusion of 200 micrograms/kg/minute reached; doses over 300 micrograms/kg/minute not recommended

**Hypertensive emergencies** see also section 2.5

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 500 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted at intervals of at least 15 minutes according to response; max. 4 mg/kg/hour
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 0.5–1 mg/kg/hour adjusted at intervals of at least 15 minutes according to response; max. 3 mg/kg/hour
  - **Child 12–18 years** 30–120 mg/hour adjusted at intervals of at least 15 minutes according to response

**Note** Consult local guidelines. In hypertensive encephalopathy reduce blood pressure to normotensive level over 24–48 hours (more rapid reduction may lead to cerebral infarction, blindness, and death). If child fitting, reduce blood pressure rapidly, but not to normal levels

**Hypertension**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 1–2 mg/kg 3–4 times a day
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 50–100 mg twice daily increased if required at intervals of 3–14 days to usual dose of 200–400 mg twice daily (3–4 divided doses if higher); max. 2.4 g daily
BNFC 2011–2012

2.4 Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs

**METOPROLOL TARTRATE**

*Cautions* see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

*Contra-indications* see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

*Hepatic impairment* reduce dose in severe impairment

*Pregnancy* see notes above

*Breast-feeding* see notes above

*Side-effects* see under Propranolol Hydrochloride

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension**

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years: initially 1 mg/kg twice daily, increased as necessary up to 8 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) daily in 2–4 divided doses
  - Child 12–18 years: initially 50–100 mg daily, increased as necessary to 200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; max. 400 mg daily (but high doses rarely necessary)

**Arrhythmias**

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years: usually 50 mg 2–3 times daily; up to 300 mg daily in divided doses if necessary

**Metoprolol Tartrate** (Non-proprietary) Tablets, metoprolol tartrate 50 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.31; 56-tab pack = £1.74; 100 mg, 56-tab pack = £6.68. Label: 8

**Lopresor** (Recordati) Tablets, f/c, scored, metoprolol tartrate 50 mg (pink), net price 56-tab pack = £2.57; 100 mg (blue), 56-tab pack = £6.68. Label: 8

- Modified release

**Lopresor SR** (Recordati) Tablets, m/t, yellow, f/c, metoprolol tartrate 200 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £9.80. Label: 8, 25

**Dose**

- Hypertension
  - By mouth
    - Child 12–18 years: 200 mg once daily

- Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**SOTALOL HYDROCHLORIDE**

*Cautions* see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; correct hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, or other electrolyte disturbances; severe or prolonged diarrhoea; reduce dose or discontinue if corrected QT interval exceeds 550 msec

*Contra-indications* see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; congenital or acquired long QT syndrome; torsade de pointes

*Renal impairment* halve normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; use one-quarter normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²

*Pregnancy* see notes above

*Breast-feeding* see notes above

*Side-effects* see under Propranolol Hydrochloride; arrhythmogenic (pro-arrhythmic) effect (torsade de pointes—increased risk in females)

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

**Ventricular arrhythmias, life-threatening ventricular tachyarrhythmia and supraventricular arrhythmias** initiated under specialist supervision and ECG monitoring and measurement of corrected QT interval

- By mouth
  - Neonate: initially 1 mg/kg twice daily, increased as necessary every 3–4 days to max. 4 mg/kg twice daily
  - Atrial flutter, ventricular arrhythmias, life-threatening ventricular tachyarrhythmia and supraventricular arrhythmias: initiated under specialist supervision and ECG monitoring and measurement of corrected QT interval

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years: initially 1 mg/kg twice daily, increased as necessary every 2–3 days to max. 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. 80 mg twice daily)
  - Child 12–18 years: initially 80 mg once daily or 40 mg twice daily, increased gradually at intervals of 2–3 days to usual dose 80–160 mg twice daily; higher doses of 480–640 mg daily for life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias under specialist supervision

**BNFC 2011–2012**

**By intravenous injection**

- Child 1 month–12 years: 250–500 micrograms/kg as a single dose; max. 20 mg
- Child 12–18 years: 50 mg over at least 1 minute, repeated after 5 minutes if necessary; max. total dose 200 mg

**Note** Excessive bradycardia can be countered with intravenous injection of atropine sulphate; for *overdosage* see p. 29

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose 5%; if fluid restricted may be given undiluted, preferably through a central venous catheter.

For administration by mouth, injection may be given orally with squash or juice

**Labetalol Hydrochloride** (Non-proprietary) Tablets, f/c, labetalol hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 56 = £7.85; 200 mg, 56 = £11.49; 400 mg, 56 = £20.60. Label: 8, 21

**Trandate** (UCB Pharma) Tablets, all orange, f/c, labetalol hydrochloride 50 mg, net price 56 = £3.64; 100 mg, 56 = £5.89; 200 mg, 56 = £9.05. Label: 8. 21

**Injection**, labetalol hydrochloride 5 mg/mL, net price 20-mL amp = £2.04

- Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

---

**Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6**

---

**Cardiovascular system**
2.5 Hypertension

Administration for administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed and dispersed in water.

Note: Excessive bradycardia can be countered with intravenous injection of atropine sulphate; for overdose see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 29.

Sotalol (non-proprietary) (BNF)

Tablets, sotalol hydrochloride 40 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £1.29; 80 mg, 56-tab pack = £1.91; 160 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.52. Label: 8

Beta-Cardone (UCB Pharma) (BNF)

Tablets, scored, sotalol hydrochloride 40 mg (green), net price 56-tab pack = £1.29; 80 mg (pink), 56-tab pack = £1.91; 200 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.40. Label: 8

Sotacor (Bristol-Myers Squibb) (BNF)

Tablets, scored, sotalol hydrochloride 80 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £3.06. Label: 8

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Hypertension in children and adolescents can have a substantial effect on long-term health. Possible causes of hypertension (e.g. congenital heart disease, renal disease and endocrine disorders) and the presence of any complications (e.g. left ventricular hypertrophy) should be established. Treatment should take account of contributory factors and any factors that increase the risk of cardiovascular complications.

Serious hypertension is rare in neonates but it can present with signs of congestive heart failure; the cause is often renal and can follow embolic arterial disease. Children (or their parents or carers) should be given advice on lifestyle changes to reduce blood pressure or cardiovascular risk; these include weight reduction (in obese children), reduction of dietary salt, reduction of total and saturated fat, increasing exercise, increasing fruit and vegetable intake, and not smoking.

Indications for antihypertensive therapy in children include symptomatic hypertension, secondary hypertension, hypertensive target-organ damage, diabetes mellitus, persistent hypertension despite lifestyle measures (see above), and pulmonary hypertension (section 2.5.1.2). The effect of antihypertensive treatment on growth and development is not known; treatment should be started only if benefits are clear.

Antihypertensive therapy should be initiated with a single drug at the lowest recommended dose; the dose can be increased until the target blood pressure is achieved. Once the highest recommended dose is reached, or sooner if the patient begins to experience side-effects, a second drug may be added if blood pressure is not controlled. If more than one drug is required, these should be given as separate products to allow dose adjustment of individual drugs, but fixed-dose combination products may be useful in adolescents if compliance is a problem.

Acceptable drug classes for use in children with hypertension include ACE inhibitors (section 2.5.5.1), alpha-blockers (section 2.5.4), beta-blockers (section 2.4), calcium-channel blockers (section 2.6.2), and thiazide diuretics (section 2.2.1). There is limited information on the use of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists (section 2.5.5.2) in children. Diuretics and beta-blockers have a long history of safety and efficacy in children. The newer classes of antihypertensive drugs, including ACE inhibitors and calcium-channel blockers have been shown to be safe and effective in short-term studies in children. Refractory hypertension may require additional treatment with agents such as minoxidil (section 2.5.1.1) or clonidine (section 2.5.2).

Other measures to reduce cardiovascular risk

Aspirin (section 2.9) may be used to reduce the risk of cardiovascular events; however, concerns about an increased risk of bleeding and Reye’s syndrome need to be considered.

A statin can be of benefit in older children who have a high risk of cardiovascular disease and have hypercholesterolaemia (see section 2.12).

Hypertension in diabetes

Hypertension can occur in type 2 diabetes and treatment prevents both macro-vascular and microvascular complications. ACE inhibitors (section 2.5.5.1) may be considered in children with diabetes and microalbuminuria or proteinuric renal disease (see also section 6.1.5). Beta-blockers are best avoided in children with, or at a high risk of developing, diabetes, especially when combined with a thiazide diuretic.

Hypertension in renal disease

ACE inhibitors may be considered in children with micro-albuminuria or proteinuric renal disease (see also section 6.1.5). High doses of loop diuretics may be required. Specific cautions apply to the use of ACE inhibitors in renal impairment, see section 2.5.5.1, but ACE inhibitors may be effective. Dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers may be added.

Hypertension in pregnancy

High blood pressure in pregnancy may usually be due to pre-existing essential hypertension or to pre-eclampsia. Methyldopa (BNF section 2.5.2) is safe in pregnancy. Beta-blockers are effective and safe in the third trimester. Modified-release preparations of nifedipine [unlicensed] are also used for hypertension in pregnancy. Intravenous administration of labetalol (section 2.4) can be used to control hypertensive crises; alternatively hydralazine (section 2.5.1.1) can be given by the intravenous route.

Hypertensive emergencies

Hypertensive emergencies in children may be accompanied by signs of hypertensive encephalopathy, including seizures. Controlled reduction in blood pressure over 72–96 hours is essential; rapid reduction can reduce perfusion leading to
organ damage. Treatment should be initiated with intra-
venous drugs; once blood pressure is controlled, oral
therapy can be started. It may be necessary to infuse
fluids particularly during the first 12 hours to expand
plasma volume should the blood pressure drop too
rapidly.

Controlled reduction of blood pressure is achieved by
intravenous administration of labetalol (section 2.4) or
sodium nitroprusside (section 2.5.1.1). Esmolol (sec-
tion 2.4) is useful for short-term use and has a short
duration of action. Nicardipine (section 2.6.2) can be
administered as a continuous intravenous infusion but it
is not licensed for this use. In less severe cases, nife-
dipine capsules (section 2.6.2) can be used.

In resistant cases, diazoxide (section 2.5.1.1) is given
intravenously, but it can cause sudden hypotension.
Other antihypertensive drugs which can be given intra-
venously include hydralazine (section 2.5.1.1) and cloni-
dine (section 2.5.2).

Hypertension in acute nephritis occurs as a result of
sodium and water retention; it should be treated with
sodium and fluid restriction, and with furosemide (sec-
tion 2.2.2); antihypertensive drugs may be added if
necessary.

For advice on short-term management of hypertensive
episodes in phaeochromocytoma, see under Phaeo-
chromocytoma, section 2.5.4.

### 2.5.1 Vasodilator antihypertensive drugs and pulmonary hypertension

#### 2.5.1.1 Vasodilator antihypertensives

Vasodilators have a potent hypotensive effect, espe-
cially when used in combination with a beta-blocker
and a thiazide. **Important**: for a warning on the hazards
of a very rapid fall in blood pressure, see Hypertensive
Emergencies, p. 92.

Sodium nitroprusside is given by intravenous infusion
to control severe hypertensive crisis when parental
treatment is necessary. At low doses it reduces systemic
vascular resistance and increases cardiac output; at high
doses it can produce profound systemic hypotension—
continuous blood pressure monitoring is therefore
essential. Sodium nitroprusside may also be used to
control paradoxical hypertension after surgery for
coarctation of the aorta.

Diazoxide has also been used by intravenous injection
in hypertensive emergencies; however it is not first-line
therapy.

Hydralazine is given by mouth as an adjunct to other
antihypertensives for the treatment of resistant hyper-
tension but is rarely used; when used alone it causes
tachycardia and fluid retention. The incidence of side-
effects is lower if the dose is kept low, but systemic lupus
erythematosus should be suspected if there is unex-
plained weight loss, arthritis, or any other unexplained
ill health.

Minoxidil should be reserved for the treatment of
severe hypertension resistant to other drugs. Vasodila-
tion is accompanied by increased cardiac output and
tachycardia and children develop fluid retention. For
this reason the addition of a beta-blocker and a diuretic
(usually furosemide, in high dosage) are mandatory.
Hypertrichosis is troublesome and renders this drug
unsuitable for females.

Prazosin and doxazosin (section 2.5.4) have alpha-
blocking and vasodilator properties.

### DIAZOXIDE

**Cautions** during prolonged use monitor white cell and
platelet count, and regularly assess growth, bone, and
psychological development; **interactions**: Appendix 1
(diazoxide)

**Renal impairment** dose reduction may be required

**Pregnancy** prolonged use may produce alopecia,
hypertrichosis, and impaired glucose tolerance in
neonate; inhibits uterine activity during labour

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no
information available

**Side-effects** tachycardia, hypotension, hyperglyc-
aemia, sodium and water retention; rarely cardiome-
galy, hypereosinophilic non-ketotic coma, leucopenia,
thrombocytopenia, and hirsutism

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed for resistant
hypertension

#### Hypertensive emergencies initiated on specialist advice

- **By intravenous injection**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 1–3 mg/kg (max. 150 mg) as a single dose, repeat dose after 5–15
  minutes until blood pressure controlled; max. 4
  doses in 24 hours

#### Resistive hypertension

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** initially 1.7 mg/kg 3 times daily, adjusted
growing according to response; usual max. 15 mg/kg daily
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1.7 mg/kg 3
times daily, adjusted according to response; usual
  max. 15 mg/kg daily

#### Intractable hypoglycaemia section 6.1.4

**Administration** intravenous injection over 30 sec-
onds. Do not dilute

**Eudemine®** (Goldshield) 

**Injection**, diazoxide 15 mg/mL, net price 20-mL amp
= £30.00

**Tablets**, see section 6.1.4

**Extemporaneous formulations available see**
Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

### HYDRALAZINE HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** cerebrovascular disease; occasionally blood
pressure reduction too rapid even with low parenteral
doses; manufacturer advises test for antinuclear factor
and for proteinuria every 6 months and check acet-
ylator status before increasing dose, but evidence of
clinical value unsatisfactory; **interactions**: Appendix
1 (hydralazine)
Contra-indications  idiopathic systemic lupus erythematosus, severe tachycardia, high output heart failure, myocardial insufficiency due to mechanical obstruction, cor pulmonale; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment  reduce dose

Renal impairment  reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy  neonatal thrombocytopenia reported, but risk should be balanced against risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension; manufacturer advises avoid before third trimester

Breast-feeding  present in milk but not known to be harmful; monitor infant

Side-effects  tachycardia, palpitation, flushing, hypotension, fluid retention, gastrointestinal disturbances; headache, dizziness; systemic lupus erythematosus-like syndrome after long-term therapy (especially in slow acetylator individuals); rarely rashes, fever, peripheral neuritis, polyneuritis, arthralgia, myalgia, increased lacrimation, nasal congestion, dyspnoea, agitation, anxiety, anorexia; blood disorders (including leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anaemia), abnormal liver function, jaundice, raised plasma creatinine, proteinuria and haematuria reported

Licensed use  not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Hypertension

• By mouth

Neonate  250–500 micrograms/kg every 8–12 hours increased as necessary to max. 2–3 mg/kg every 8 hours

Child 1 month–12 years  250–500 micrograms/kg every 8–12 hours increased as necessary to max. 7.5 mg/kg daily (not exceeding 200 mg daily)

Child 12–18 years  25 mg twice daily, increased to max. 50–100 mg twice daily

• By slow intravenous injection

Neonate  100–500 micrograms/kg repeated every 4–6 hours as necessary; max. 3 mg/kg daily

Child 1 month–12 years  100–500 micrograms/kg repeated every 4–6 hours as necessary; max. 3 mg/kg daily (not exceeding 60 mg daily)

Child 12–18 years  5–10 mg repeated every 4–6 hours as necessary

• By continuous intravenous infusion (preferred route in cardiac patients)

Neonate  12.5–50 micrograms/kg/hour; max. 2 mg/kg daily

Child 1 month–12 years  12.5–50 micrograms/kg/hour; max. 3 mg/kg daily

Child 12–18 years  3–9 mg/hour; max. 3 mg/kg daily

Administration  for intravenous injection, initially reconstitute 20 mg with 1 mL Water for Injections, then dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Incompatible with Glucose intravenous infusion.

For administration by mouth, diluted injection may be given orally

Hydralazine  (Non-proprietary)  

Tablets, hydralazine hydrochloride 25 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £9.32; 50 mg; 56-tab pack = £16.84

Apresoline  (Amdipharm)  

Tablets, yellow, s/c, hydralazine hydrochloride 25 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £3.38

Excipients include gluten, propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, hydralazine hydrochloride, net price 20-mg amp = £2.22

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Minoxidil

Cautions  see notes above; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (vasodilator antihypertensives)

Contra-indications  phaeochromocytoma

Renal impairment  use with caution in significant impairment

Pregnancy  avoid—possible toxicity including reduced placental perfusion; neonatal hirsutism reported

Breast-feeding  present in milk but not known to be harmful

Side-effects  sodium and water retention; weight gain, peripheral oedema, tachycardia, hypertrichosis; reversible rise in creatinine and blood urea nitrogen; occasionally, gastro-intestinal disturbances, breast tenderness, rashes

Indication and dose

Severe hypertension

• By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years  initially 200 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased in steps of 100–200 micrograms/kg daily at intervals of at least 3 days; max. 1 mg/kg daily

Child 12–18 years  initially 5 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses increased in steps of 5–10 mg at intervals of at least 3 days; max. 100 mg daily (seldom necessary to exceed 50 mg daily)

Loniten  (Pharmacia)  

Tablets, scored, minoxidil 2.5 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £8.88; 5 mg, 60-tab pack = £15.83; 10 mg, 60-tab pack = £30.68

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Sodium Nitroprusside

Cautions  hypothyroidism, hyponaetraemia, impaired cerebral circulation, hypothermia; monitor blood pressure and blood-cyanide concentration, and if treatment exceeds 3 days also blood-thiocyanate concentration; avoid sudden withdrawal—terminate infusion over 15–30 minutes; interactions: Appendix 1 (nitroprusside)

Contra-indications  severe vitamin B₁₂ deficiency; Leber’s optic atrophy; compensatory hypertension
Hepatic impairment use with caution; avoid in hepatic failure—cyanide or thiocyanate metabolites may accumulate
Renal impairment avoid prolonged use—cyanide or thiocyanate metabolites may accumulate
Pregnancy avoid prolonged use—potential for accumulation of cyanide in fetus
Breast-feeding no information available; caution advised due to thiocyanate metabolite

Side-effects associated with over rapid reduction in blood pressure (reduce infusion rate); headache, dizziness, nausea, retching, abdominal pain, perspiration, palpitation, anxiety, retrosternal discomfort; occasionally reduced platelet count, acute transient phlebitis

Cyanide Side-effects caused by excessive plasma concentration of the cyanide metabolite include tachycardia, sweating, hyperventilation, arrhythmias, marked metabolic acidosis (discontinue and give antidote, see p. 32)

Licensed use not licensed for use in the UK

Indication and dose

Hypertensive emergencies
• By continuous infusion

Neonate 500 nanograms/kg/minute then increased in steps of 200 nanograms/kg/minute as necessary to max. 8 micrograms/kg/minute (max. 4 micrograms/kg/minute if used for longer than 24 hours)

Child 1 month–18 years 500 nanograms/kg/minute then increased in steps of 200 nanograms/kg/minute as necessary to max. 8 micrograms/kg/minute (max. 4 micrograms/kg/minute if used for longer than 24 hours)

Administration for continuous intravenous infusion in Glucose 5%, infuse via infusion device to allow precise control; protect infusion from light. For further details, consult product literature

Sodium Nitroprusside (Non-proprietary) intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, sodium nitroprusside 10 mg/mL. For dilution and use as an infusion. Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

2.5.1.2 Pulmonary hypertension

Only pulmonary arterial hypertension is currently suitable for drug treatment. Pulmonary arterial hypertension includes persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension in children, and pulmonary hypertension related to congenital heart disease and cardiac surgery. Some types of pulmonary hypertension are treated with vasodilator antihypertensive therapy and oxygen. Diuretics (section 2.2) may also have a role in children with right-sided heart failure.

Initial treatment of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn involves the administration of nitric oxide; epoprostenol can be used until nitric oxide is available. Oral sildenafil may be helpful in less severe cases. Epoprostenol and sildenafil can cause profound systemic hypotension. In rare circumstances either tolazoline or magnesium sulphate can be given by intravenous infusion when nitric oxide and epoprostenol have failed.

Treatment of idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension is determined by acute vasodilator testing; drugs used for treatment include calcium-channel blockers (usually nifedipine, section 2.6.2), long-term intravenous epoprostenol, nebulised iloprost, bosentan, or sildenafil. Anticoagulation (usually with warfarin) may also be required to prevent secondary thrombosis.

Inhaled nitric oxide is a potent and selective pulmonary vasodilator. It acts on cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) resulting in smooth muscle relaxation. Inhaled nitric oxide is used in the treatment of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, and may also be useful in other forms of arterial pulmonary hypertension. Dependency can occur with high doses and prolonged use; to avoid rebound pulmonary hypertension the drug should be withdrawn gradually, often with the aid of sildenafil.

Excess nitric oxide can cause methaemoglobinemia; therefore, methaemoglobin concentration should be measured regularly, particularly in neonates. Nitric oxide increases the risk of haemorrhage by inhibiting platelet aggregation, but it does not usually cause bleeding.

Epoprostenol is a prostaglandin and a potent vasodilator. It is used in the treatment of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension, and in the acute phase following cardiac surgery. It is given by continuous 24-hour intravenous infusion.

Epoprostenol is a powerful inhibitor of platelet aggregation and there is a possible risk of haemorrhage. It is sometimes used as an antiplatelet in renal dialysis when heparins are unsuitable or contra-indicated. It can also cause serious systemic hypertension and, if withdrawn suddenly, can cause pulmonary hypertensive crisis.

Children on prolonged treatment can become tolerant to epoprostenol, and therefore require an increase in dose.

Iloprost is a synthetic analogue of epoprostenol and is efficacious when nebulised in adults with pulmonary arterial hypertension, but experience in children is limited. It is more stable than epoprostenol and has a longer half-life.

Bosentan is a dual endothelin receptor antagonist used orally in the treatment of idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension. The concentration of endothelin, a potent vasoconstrictor, is raised in sustained pulmonary hypertension.

Sildenafil, a vasodilator developed for the treatment of erectile dysfunction, is also used for pulmonary arterial hypertension. It is used either alone or as an adjunct to other drugs and has relatively few side-effects.

Sildenafil is a selective phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitor. Inhibition of this enzyme in the lungs enhances the vasodilatory effects of nitric oxide and promotes relaxation of vascular smooth muscle.

Sildenafil has also been used in pulmonary hypertension for weaning children off inhaled nitric oxide following cardiac surgery, and less successfully in idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension.

Tolazoline is now rarely used to correct pulmonary artery vasospasm in pulmonary hypertension of the newborn as better alternatives are available (see
above). Tolazoline is an alpha-blocker and produces both pulmonary and systemic vasodilation.

## BOSENTAN

**Cautions** not to be initiated if systemic systolic blood pressure is below 85 mmHg; monitor liver function before and at monthly intervals during treatment, and 2 weeks after dose increase (reduce dose or suspend treatment if liver enzymes raised significantly)—discontinue if symptoms of liver impairment (see Contra-indications below); monitor haemoglobin before and during treatment (monthly for first 4 months, then 3-monthly thereafter), withdraw treatment gradually; interactions: Appendix 1 (bosentan)

**Contra-indications** acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic Impairment** avoid in moderate and severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic in animal studies); effective contraception required during and for at least 3 months after administration (hormonal contraception not considered effective); monthly pregnancy tests advised

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances, dry mouth, rectal haemorrhage, hepatic impairment (see Cautions, above); flushing, hypotension, palpitation, oedema, chest pain; dyspnoea; headache; dizziness; flushing, sweating with higher doses; hypotension; anxiety, agitation; dry mouth, jaw pain, chest pain; also reported, hyperglycaemia and injection-site reactions

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 3–18 years and body-weight 10–20 kg initially 31.25 mg once daily increased after 4 weeks to 62.5 mg twice daily
  - Child 3–18 years and body-weight 20–40 kg initially 31.25 mg twice daily increased after 4 weeks to 62.5 mg twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg initially 62.5 mg twice daily increased after 4 weeks to 125 mg twice daily; max. 250 mg twice daily

**Administration** tablets may be cut, or suspended in water or non-acidic liquid. Suspension is stable at room-temperature (max. 25°C) for 24 hours

**Tracleer®** (Actelion) ▼

Tablets, f/c, orange, bosentan (as monohydrate) 62.5 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £1510.21; 125 mg, 56-tab pack = £1510.21

### EPROPROSTENOL

**Cautions** anticoagulant monitoring required when given with anticoagulants; haemorrhagic diathesis; avoid abrupt withdrawal (see notes above); monitor blood pressure; concomitant use of drugs that increase risk of bleeding

**Contra-indications** severe left ventricular dysfunction; pulmonary veno-occlusive disease

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Side-effects** see notes above; gastro-intestinal disturbances, hypotension, bradycardia, tachycardia, pallor, flushing, sweating with higher doses; headache; lassitude, anxiety, agitation; dry mouth, jaw pain, chest pain; also reported, hyperglycaemia and injection-site reactions

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn**

- **By continuous intravenous infusion**
  - Neonate initially 2 nanograms/kg/minute adjusted according to response; usual max. 20 nanograms/kg/minute (rarely up to 40 nanograms/kg/minute)

**Idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension**

- **By continuous intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 2 nanograms/kg/minute increased as necessary up to 40 nanograms/kg/minute

**Administration** reconstitute using the glycine buffer diluent provided to make a concentrate (pH 10.5); filter the concentrate using the filter provided. The concentrate can be administered via a central venous catheter, alternatively it may be diluted further either with the glycine buffer diluent or to a minimum concentration of 1.43 micrograms/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Solution stable for 12 hours at room temperature, although some units use for 24 hours and allow for loss of potency; solution stable for 24 hours if prepared in glycine buffer diluent only and administered via an ambulatory cold pouch system (to maintain solution at 2–8°C).

**Neonatal intensive care** prepare a filtered concentrate of 10 micrograms/mL using the 500-microgram vial. **Neonate body-weight under 2 kg**, using the concentrate, dilute 150 micrograms/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 nanograms/kg/minute. **Neonate body-weight over 2 kg**, using the concentrate, dilute 60 micrograms/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 2 nanograms/kg/minute

**Flolan®** (GSK) ▼

Infusion, powder for reconstitution, epoprostenol (as sodium salt), net price 500-microgram vial (with diluent) = £62.05; 1.5-mg vial (▼) (with diluent) = £125.00

### ILOPROST

**Cautions** unstable pulmonary hypertension with advanced right heart failure; hypotension (do not initiate if systolic blood pressure below 85 mmHg); acute pulmonary infection; severe asthma; interactions: Appendix 1 (iloprost)

**Contra-indications** decompensated cardiac failure (unless under medical supervision); severe coronary heart disease; severe arrhythmias; congenital or acquired valvular defects of the myocardium; pulmonary veno-occlusive disease; conditions which increase risk of haemorrhage

**Infusion** prepare a filtered concentrate of 2 nanograms/kg/minute increased as necessary up to 40 nanograms/kg/minute

**EPOPROSTENOL**

Infusion, powder for reconstitution, epoprostenol (as sodium salt), net price 500-microgram vial (with diluent) = £62.05; 1.5-mg vial (▼) (with diluent) = £125.00
Hepatic impairment dose may need to be halved in liver cirrhosis—initially 2.5 micrograms at intervals of at least 3 hours (max. 6 times daily), adjusted according to response (consult product literature).

Pregnancy: manufacturer advises avoid (toxicity in animal studies); effective contraception must be used during treatment.

Breast-feeding: manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

Side-effects: vasodilatation, hypotension, syncope, cough, headache, throat or jaw pain; nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, chest pain, dyspnoea, bronchospasm, and wheezing also reported.

Licensed use: not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

Indication and dose

Idiopathic or familial pulmonary arterial hypertension

- By inhalation of nebulised solution

  Child 8–18 years initial dose 2.5 micrograms increased to 5 micrograms for second dose, if tolerated maintain at 5 micrograms 6–9 times daily according to response; reduce to 2.5 micrograms 6–9 times daily if higher dose not tolerated.

Raynaud’s syndrome section 2.6.4.1

Venlafaxine® (Bayer Schering) Nebuliser solution, iloprost (as trometamol) 10 micrograms/mL, net price 30 × 1 mL (10 microgram) unit-dose vials = £400.19, 168 × 1 mL = £2241.08. For use with Prodose® and or Venta-Neb® and nebuliser.

MAGNESIUM SULPHATE

Cautions: see section 9.5.1.3

Hepatic impairment: see section 9.5.1.3

Renal impairment: see section 9.5.1.3.

Side-effects: see section 9.5.1.3.

Indication and dose

Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn

- By intravenous infusion

  Neonate initially 200 mg/kg over 20–30 minutes; if response occurs, then by continuous intravenous infusion of 20–75 mg/kg/hour (to maintain plasma-magnesium concentration between 3.5–5.5 mmol/litre), given for up to 5 days.

Severe acute asthma section 3.1.

Torsade de pointes section 9.5.1.3.

Neonatal hypocalcaemia section 9.5.1.3.

Hypomagnesaemia section 9.5.1.3.

Administration: for intravenous infusion, dilute to a max. concentration of 100 mg/mL (200 mg/mL if fluid restricted) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

Magnesium Sulphate (Non-proprietary): Injection, magnesium sulphate 50% (Mg2+ approx. 2 mmol/mL), net price 2 mL (1-g) amp = £2.39, 5-mL (2.5-g) amp = £3.00, 10-mL (5-g) amp = 69p; prefilled 10-mL (5-g) syringe = £4.95.

SILDENAFIL

Cautions: hypotension (avoid if severe); intravascular volume depletion; left ventricular outflow obstruction; autonomic dysfunction; avoid abrupt withdrawal; other cardiovascular disease; pulmonary veno-occlusive disease; predisposition to priapism; anatomical deformation of the penis; bleeding disorders or active peptic ulceration; ocular disorders; initiate cautiously if child also on epoprostenol, iloprost, bosentan or nitric oxide. Interactions: Appendix 1 (sildenafil).

Contra-indications: recent history of stroke; history of non-arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy; hereditary degenerative retinal disorders; avoid concomitant use of nitrates.

Hepatic impairment: reduce dose if not tolerated in mild to moderate impairment; manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment.

Renal impairment: reduce dose if not tolerated.

Pregnancy: manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no evidence of harm in animal studies.

Breast-feeding: manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

Side-effects: gastro-intestinal disturbances, dry mouth; flushing, oedema; bronchitis, cough; headache, migraine, night sweats, paraesthesia, insomnia, anxiety, tremor, vertigo; fever, influenza-like symptoms; anaemia; back and limb pain, myalgia; visual disturbances, retinal haemorrhage, photophobia, painful red eyes; nasal congestion, epistaxis; cellulitis, erysipelas; alopecia; less commonly: gynaecomastia, priapism; also reported rash, retinal vascular occlusion, non-arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (discontinue if sudden visual impairment occurs), and sudden hearing loss (advise patient to seek medical help).

Licensed use: not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

Indication and dose

Pulmonary hypertension after cardiac surgery, weaning from nitric oxide, idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension, persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn

- By mouth

  Neonate initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 4–8 hours, adjusted according to response; max. 2 mg/kg every 6 hours; start with lower dose and frequency especially if used with other vasodilators (see Cautions above); withdraw gradually.

  Child 1 month–18 years initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 4–8 hours, adjusted according to response; max. 2 mg/kg every 6 hours; start with lower dose and frequency especially if used with other vasodilators (see Cautions above).

Administration: tablet may be dissolved in water or blackcurrant drink and given by mouth or through a nasogastric tube.

Viagra® (Pfizer) Tablets, all blue, 1/2, c, sildenafil (as citrate), 25 mg, net price 4-tab pack = £16.59, 8-tab pack = £33.19, 50 mg, 4-tab pack = £21.27, 8-tab pack = £45.54; 100 mg, 4-tab pack = £23.50, 8-tab pack = £46.99.
2.5.2 Centrally acting antihypertensive drugs

Methyldopa, a centrally acting antihypertensive, is of little value in the management of refractory sustained hypertension in infants and children. On prolonged use it is associated with fluid retention (which may be alleviated by concomitant use of diuretics).

Methyldopa is effective for the management of hypertension in infants and children. On prolonged use it is associated with fluid retention (which may be alleviated by concomitant use of diuretics). Methyldopa is effective for the management of sustained systemic hypertension; interactions: Appendix 1 (alpha-blockers)

Contra-indications peptic ulcer disease
Renal impairment accumulates in renal impairment; risk of cardiotoxicity; lower doses may be necessary

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, epigastric pain; flushing, tachycardia, cardiac arrhythmias; headache, shivering, sweating; oliguria, metabolic alkalosis, haematuria, blood dyscrasias (including thrombocytopenia); blothy skin; at high doses severe hypotension, marked hypertension, renal failure, and haemorrhage reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose
Correction of pulmonary vasospasm in neonates

* By intravenous injection and continuous intravenous infusion (maintenance)

Neonate initially 1 mg/kg by intravenous injection over 2–5 minutes, followed if necessary by continuous intravenous infusion of 200 micrograms/kg/hour with careful blood pressure monitoring; doses above 300 micrograms/kg/hour associated with cardiotoxicity and renal failure

* By endotracheal administration

Neonate 200 micrograms/kg

Administration for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Prepare a fresh solution every 24 hours. For endotracheal administration, dilute with 0.5–1 mL of Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

Tolazoline (Non-proprietary)

Injection, tolazoline 25 mg/mL. Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 669

Adrenergic neurone blocking drugs

Adrenergic neurone blocking drugs prevent the release of noradrenaline from postganglionic adrenergic neurones. These drugs do not control supine blood pressure and may cause postural hypotension. For this reason
they have largely fallen from use in adults and are rarely used in children.

2.5.4 Alpha-adrenoceptor blocking drugs

Doxazosin and prazosin have post-synaptic alpha-blocking and vasodilator properties and rarely cause tachycardia. They can, however, reduce blood pressure rapidly after the first dose and should be introduced with caution. Alpha-blockers can be used with other antihypertensive drugs in the treatment of resistant hypertension.

**DOXAZOSIN**

**Cautions** care with initial dose (postural hypotension); pulmonary oedema due to aortic or mitral stenosis; cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome); heart failure; interactions: Appendix 1 (alpha-blockers)

**Driving** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving

**Contra-indications** history of postural hypotension

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment—no information available

**Pregnancy** no evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturers advise use only when potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** accumulates in milk in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances; oedema, hypotension, postural hypotension, palpitation, tachycardia; dyspnoea, rhinitis, coughing; asthenia, fatigue, vertigo, dizziness, headache, paraesthesia, sleep disturbance, anxiety, depression; influenza-like symptoms; back pain, myalgia; less commonly weight changes; angina, myocardial infarction; hypoaesthesia, syncope, tremor, agitation, micturition disturbances, impotence, epistaxis, arthralgia, gout, tinnitus, hypersensitivity reactions (including pruritus, purpura, rash); very rarely cholestasis, hepatitis, jaundice, bradycardia, arthralgias, bronchospasm, hot flushes, gynaecomastia, priapism, abnormal ejaculation, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, blurred vision, and alopecia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension** (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 6–12 years 500 micrograms once daily, increased at 1-week intervals to 2–4 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years 1 mg daily, increased after 1–2 weeks to 4 mg once daily, and thereafter to 4 mg once daily if necessary; usual max. 4 mg daily (rarely up to 16 mg daily may be required)

**Dysfunctional voiding** section 7.4.1

Doxazosin (Non-proprietary) (Pfizer)

Tablets, doxazosin (as mesilate) 1 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.39; counselling, initial dose, driving

**Modified-release**

**Note** Children stabilised on immediate-release doxazosin can be transferred to the equivalent dose of modified-release doxazosin

**Hypertension** (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 5–15 micrograms/kg 2–4 times daily (initial dose at bedtime) increased gradually to max. 500 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses (not exceeding 20 mg daily)
  - Child 12–18 years 500 micrograms 2–3 times daily (initial dose at bedtime), increased after 3–7 days to 1 mg 2–3 times daily for a further 3–7 days; further increased gradually if necessary to max. 20 mg daily in divided doses

Cardura® (Pfizer) (Pfizer)

Tablets, doxazosin (as mesilate) 1 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £10.56; 2 mg, 28-tab pack = £14.08. Counselling, initial dose, driving

**Extemporaneous formulations available** see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**PRAZOSIN**

**Cautions** first dose may cause collapse due to hypotension (therefore should be taken on retiring to bed); cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome); interactions: Appendix 1 (alpha-blockers)

**Driving** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving

**Contra-indications** not recommended for congestive heart failure due to mechanical obstruction (e.g. aortic stenosis)

**Hepatic impairment** start with low doses and adjust according to response

**Renal impairment** start with low doses in moderate to severe impairment; increase with caution

**Pregnancy** no evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturer advises use only when potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** present in milk; manufacturer advises use with caution

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances; postural hypotension, oedema, palpitation; dyspnoea, nasal congestion, drowsiness, headache, depression, nervousness, vertigo; urinary frequency; weakness; blurred vision, less commonly tachycardia, insomnia, paraesthesia, sweating, impotence, arthralgia, eye disorders, tinnitus, epistaxis, allergic reactions including rash, pruritus, and urticaria; rarely pancreatitis, flushing, vasculitis, bradycardia, hallucinations, worsening of narcolepsy, gynaecomastia, priapism, urinary incontinence, and alopecia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension** (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 10–15 micrograms/kg 2–4 times daily (initial dose at bedtime) increased gradually to max. 500 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses (not exceeding 20 mg daily)
  - Child 12–18 years 500 micrograms 2–3 times daily (initial dose at bedtime), increased after 3–7 days to 1 mg 2–3 times daily for a further 3–7 days; further increased gradually if necessary to max. 20 mg daily in divided doses
2.5.5 Drugs affecting the renin-angiotensin system

---

**CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE** (but rarely used, see section 2.2)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years: 5 micrograms/kg twice daily (initial dose at bedtime), increased gradually to max. 100 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses
  - Child 12–18 years: 500 micrograms 2–4 times daily (initial dose at bedtime), increasing to 4 mg daily in divided doses; maintenance 4–20 mg daily in divided doses

**Administration** for administration by mouth, tablets may be dispersed in water

**Prazosin** (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, prazosin (as hydrochloride) 500 micrograms, net price 56-tab pack = £3.55; 1 mg, 56-tab pack = £3.23; 2 mg, 56-tab pack = £4.39; 5 mg, 56-tab pack = £8.75. Counselling, initial dose, driving

**Hypovase®** (Pfizer)

Tablets, prazosin (as hydrochloride) 500 micrograms, net price 60-tab pack = £2.69; 1 mg, scored, 60-tab pack = £3.46. Counselling, initial dose, driving

---

**Phaeochromocytoma**

Long-term management of phaeochromocytoma involves surgery. However, surgery should not take place until there is adequate blockade of both alpha- and beta-adrenoceptors. Alpha-blockers are used in the short-term management of hypertensive episodes in phaeochromocytoma. Once alpha blockade is established, tachycardia can be controlled by the cautious addition of a beta-blocker (section 2.4); a cardioselective beta-blocker is preferred. There is no nationwide consensus on the optimal drug regimen or doses used for the management of phaeochromocytoma.

**Phenoxybenzamine**, a powerful alpha-blocker, is effective in the management of phaeochromocytoma but it has many side-effects.

---

**PHENOXYBENZAMINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** congestive heart failure; severe ischaemic heart disease (see also Contra-indications); cerebrovascular accident; monitor blood pressure regularly during infusion; carcinogenic in animals; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); avoid extravasation (irritant to tissues); avoid contact with skin (risk of contact sensitisation)

**Contra-indications** history of cerebrovascular accident; avoid infusion in hypovolaemia

**Renal impairment** use with caution

**Pregnancy** hypotension in newborn may occur

**Breast-feeding** may be present in milk

**Side-effects** postural hypotension with dizziness and marked compensatory tachycardia, lassitude, nasal congestion, miosis, inhibition of ejaculation; rarely gastrointestinal disturbances; decreased sweating and dry mouth after intravenous infusion; idiosyncratic profound hypotension within few minutes of starting infusion; convulsions following rapid intravenous infusion also reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

---

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension in phaeochromocytoma**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily adjusted according to response

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg daily adjusted according to response; occasionally up to 2 mg/kg daily may be required; do not repeat dose within 24 hours

**Administration** for administration by mouth, capsules may be opened.

For intravenous infusion, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over at least 2 hours; max. 4 hours between dilution and completion of infusion

**Phenoxybenzamine** (Goldshield)

Injection concentrate, phenoxybenzamine hydrochloride 50 mg/mL. To be diluted before use. Net price 2-mL amp = £57.14 (hosp. only)

**Dibenzyline®** (Goldshield)

Capsules, red/white, phenoxybenzamine hydrochloride 10 mg. Net price 30-cap pack = £10.84

---

**2.5.5 Drugs affecting the renin-angiotensin system**

- **2.5.5.1 Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors**
- **2.5.5.2 Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists**

---

**2.5.5.1 Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors**

Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACE inhibitors) inhibit the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II. The main indications of ACE inhibitors in children are shown below. In infants and young children, captopril is often considered first.

**Initiation under specialist supervision** Treatment with ACE inhibitors should be initiated under specialist supervision and with careful clinical monitoring in children.

**Heart failure** ACE inhibitors have a valuable role in all grades of heart failure, usually combined with a loop diuretic (section 2.2). Potassium supplements and potassium-sparing diuretics should be discontinued before introducing an ACE inhibitor because of the risk of hyperkalaemia. In adults, a low dose of spironolactone may be beneficial in severe heart failure and can be used with an ACE inhibitor provided serum potassium is monitored carefully. Profound first-dose hypotension can occur when ACE inhibitors are introduced to children with heart failure who are already taking a high dose of a loop diuretic (see Cautions below). Temporary withdrawal of the loop diuretic reduces the risk, but can cause severe rebound pulmonary oedema.
Hypertension  ACE inhibitors may be considered for hypertension when thiazides and beta-blockers are contra-indicated, not tolerated, or fail to control blood pressure; they may be considered for hypertension in children with type 1 diabetes with nephropathy (see also section 6.1.5). ACE inhibitors can reduce blood pressure very rapidly in some patients particularly in those receiving diuretic therapy (see Cautions, below); the first dose should preferably be given at bedtime.

Renal effects  Renal function and electrolytes should be checked before starting ACE inhibitors (or increasing the dose) and monitored during treatment (more frequently if features mentioned below are present). Hyperkalaemia and other side-effects of ACE inhibitors are more common in children with impaired renal function and the dose may need to be reduced (see Renal Impairment, below).

Concomitant treatment with NSAIDs increases the risk of renal damage, and potassium-sparing diuretics (or potassium-containing salt substitutes) increase the risk of hyperkalaemia. In children with severe bilateral renal artery stenosis (or severe stenosis of the artery supplying a single functioning kidney), ACE inhibitors reduce or abolish glomerular filtration and are likely to cause severe and progressive renal failure. They are therefore contra-indicated in children known to have these forms of critical renovascular disease.

ACE inhibitor treatment is unlikely to have an adverse effect on overall renal function in children with severe unilateral renal artery stenosis and a normal contralateral kidney, but glomerular filtration is likely to be reduced (or even abolished) in the affected kidney and the long-term consequences are unknown.

ACE inhibitors are therefore best avoided in those with known or suspected renovascular disease, unless the blood pressure cannot be controlled by other drugs. If they are used in these circumstances renal function needs to be monitored.

ACE inhibitors should also be used with particular caution in children who may have undiagnosed and clinically silent renovascular disease. ACE inhibitors are useful for the management of hypertension and proteinuria in children with nephritis. They are thought to have a beneficial effect by reducing intra-glomerular hypertension and protecting the glomerular capillaries and membrane.

Cautions  ACE inhibitors need to be initiated with care in children receiving diuretics (important: see Concomitant Diuretics, below); first doses can cause hypotension especially in children taking high doses of diuretics, on a low-sodium diet, on dialysis, dehydrated, or with heart failure (see above). Discontinue if marked elevation of hepatic enzymes or jaundice (risk of hepatic necrosis). Renal function should be monitored before and during treatment. For use in pre-existing renovascular disease, see Renal Effects above. The risk of agranulocytosis is possibly increased in collagen vascular disease (blood counts recommended). ACE inhibitors should be used with care in children with severe or symptomatic aortic stenosis (risk of hypotension) and in hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. They should be used with care (or avoided) in those with a history of idiopathic or hereditary angioedema. Children with primary aldosteronism and Afro-Caribbean children may respond less well to ACE inhibitors. Interactions: Appendix 1 (ACE inhibitors).

Anaphylactoid reactions  To prevent anaphylactoid reactions, ACE inhibitors should be avoided during dialysis with high-flux polycrylonitrile membranes and during low-density lipoprotein apheresis with dextran sulphate; they should also be withheld before desensitisation with wasp or bee venom.

Concomitant diuretics  ACE inhibitors can cause a very rapid fall in blood pressure in volume-depleted children; treatment should therefore be initiated with very low doses. In some children the diuretic dose may need to be reduced or the diuretic discontinued at least 24 hours beforehand (may not be possible in heart failure—risk of pulmonary oedema). If high-dose diuretic therapy cannot be stopped, close observation is recommended after administration of the first dose of ACE inhibitor, for at least 2 hours or until the blood pressure has stabilised.

Contra-indications  ACE inhibitors are contra-indicated in children with hypersensitivity to ACE inhibitors (including angioedema) and in bilateral renovascular disease (see also above).

Renal impairment  See Renal Effects above; start with low dose and adjust according to response.

Pregnancy  ACE inhibitors should be avoided in pregnancy unless essential—they may adversely affect fetal and neonatal blood pressure control and renal function; skull defects and oligohydramnios have also been reported.

Side-effects  ACE inhibitors can cause profound hypotension (see Cautions), renal impairment (see Renal Effects above), and a persistent dry cough. They can also cause angioedema (onset may be delayed; higher incidence reported in Afro-Caribbean patients), rash (which may be associated with pruritus and urticaria), pancreatitis, and upper respiratory-tract symptoms such as sinusitis, rhinitis, and sore throat. Gastro-intestinal effects reported with ACE inhibitors include nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, diarrhoea, constipation, and abdominal pain. Altered liver function tests, cholestatic jaundice, hepatitis, fulminant hepatic necrosis, and hepatic failure have been reported—discontinue if marked elevation of hepatic enzymes or jaundice. Hyperkalaemia, hypoglycaemia and blood disorders including thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, neutropenia, and haemolytic anaemia have also been reported. Other reported side-effects include headache, dizziness, fatigue, malaise, taste disturbance, paraesthesia, bronchospasm, fever, serositis, vasculitis, myalgia, arthralgia, positive antinuclear antibody, raised erythrocyte sedimentation rate, eosinophilia, leukocytosis, and photosensitivity.

Neonates  The neonatal response to treatment with ACE inhibitors is very variable, and some neonates develop profound hypotension with even small doses; a test-dose should be used initially and increased cautiously. Adverse effects such as apnoea, seizures, renal failure, and severe unpredictable hypotension are very common in the first month of life and it is therefore...
recommended that ACE inhibitors are avoided whenever possible, particularly in preterm neonates.

**CAPTOPRIL**

Cautions see notes above; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Contra-indications see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding avoid in first few weeks after delivery, particularly in preterm infants—risk of profound neonatal hypotension; can be used in older infant if essential but monitor infant’s blood pressure

Side-effects see notes above; tachycardia, serum sickness, weight loss, stomatitis, maculopapular rash, photosensitivity, flushing and acidosis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 18 years

**Indication and dose**

Hypertension, heart failure, proteinuria in nephritis (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth

**Neonate** (caution, see neonatal information above) test dose, 10–50 micrograms/kg (10 micrograms/kg in neonate less than 37 weeks postmenstrual age), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; if tolerated give 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times daily increased as necessary to max. 2 mg/kg daily in divided doses (max. 300 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses in neonate less than 37 weeks postmenstrual age)

**Child 1 month–12 years** test dose, 100 micrograms/kg (max. 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; if tolerated give 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, increased as necessary to max. 6 mg/kg daily in divided doses (max. 4 mg/kg daily in divided doses for child 1 month–1 year)

**Child 12–18 years** test dose, 100 micrograms/kg or 6.25 mg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; if tolerated give 12.5–25 mg 2–3 times a day, increased as necessary to max. 150 mg daily in divided doses

Diabetic nephropathy (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth

**Child 12–18 years** test dose, 100 micrograms/kg or 6.25 mg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; if tolerated give 12.5–25 mg 2–3 times a day, increased as necessary to max. 150 mg daily in divided doses

Administration Administer under close supervision, see notes above. Give test dose whilst child supine. Tablets can be dispersed in water

Captopril (Non-proprietary) Tablets, captopril 12.5 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £1.51; 25 mg, 56-tab pack = £1.56; 50 mg, 56-tab pack = £1.96

Brands include Ecopace®, Kaplov®

Liquid, various strengths available from ‘specialorder’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Capoten®** (Squibb)

Tablets, captopril 25 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £5.26; 50 mg (scored), 56-tab pack = £17.96

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**ENALAPRIL MALEATE**

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding avoid in first few weeks after delivery, particularly in preterm infants—risk of profound neonatal hypotension; can be used in older infant if essential but monitor infant’s blood pressure

Side-effects see notes above; also dyspnoea; depression, asthenia; blurred vision; less commonly dry mouth, peptic ulcer, anorexia, ileus; arrhythmias; palpitation, flushing; confusion, nervousness, drowsiness, insomnia, vertigo; impotence; muscle cramps; tinnitus; alopecia, sweating; hyponatraemia; rarely stomatitis, glossitis, Raynaud’s syndrome, pulmonary infiltrates, allergic alveolitis, abnormal dreams, gynaecomastia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, exfoliative dermatitis, pemphigus; very rarely gastro-intestinal angioedema

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for congestive heart failure, proteinuria in nephritis or diabetic nephropathy; not licensed for use in children less than 20 kg for hypertension

**Indication and dose**

Hypertension, congestive heart failure, proteinuria in nephritis (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth

**Neonate** (limited information) initially 10 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, increased as necessary up to 500 micrograms/kg daily in 1–3 divided doses

**Child 1 month–12 years** initially 100 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, increased as necessary up to max. 1 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses

**Child 12–18 years** initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, usual maintenance dose 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; max. 40 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses if body-weight over 50 kg

Diabetic nephropathy (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth

**Child 12–18 years** initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, usual maintenance dose 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; max. 40 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses if body-weight over 50 kg

Administration tablets may be crushed and suspended in water immediately before use

Enalapril Maleate (Non-proprietary) Tablets, enalapril maleate 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.05; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = 96p; 10 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.05; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.24

Brands include Ednyt®
**Zestril**

**Lisinopril** (Non-proprietary)

**Indication and dose**
Not licensed for use in children

**Licensed use**
See notes above; also

**Side-effects**
Avoid—no information available

**Breast-feeding**
See notes above

**Pregnancy**
See notes above

**Renal impairment**
See notes above

**Contra-indications**
See notes above

**Cautions**
See notes above

---

**Innovace** (MSD) (Full)

**Tablets**
Enalapril maleate 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £5.35; 5 mg (scored), 28-tab pack = £7.51; 10 mg (red), 28-tab pack = £10.53; 20 mg (peach), 28-tab pack = £12.51

---

**2.5.5 Drugs affecting the renin-angiotensin system**

**Lisinopril**

**Contra-indications**
See notes above; also

**Cautions**
See notes above

**Breast-feeding**
Avoid—no information available

**Pregnancy**
See notes above

**Renal impairment**
See notes above; also

---

**Losartan and valsartan** are specific angiotensin-II receptor antagonists with many properties similar to those of the ACE inhibitors. However, unlike ACE inhibitors, they do not inhibit the breakdown of bradykinin and other kinins, and thus are less likely to cause the persistent dry cough which can complicate ACE inhibitor therapy. They are therefore a useful alternative for children who have to discontinue an ACE inhibitor because of persistent cough.

Losartan or valsartan can be used as an alternative to an ACE inhibitor in the management of hypertension.

**Cautions**
Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists should be used with caution in renal artery stenosis (see also Renal Effects under ACE Inhibitors, section 2.5.5.1). Monitoring of plasma-potassium concentration is advised, particularly in children with renal impairment. Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists should be used with caution in aortic or mitral valve stenosis and in hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. They should be used with caution in those with a history of angioedema. Children with primary aldosteronism, and Afro-Caribbean children (particularly those with left ventricular hypertrophy), may not benefit from an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist.

**Interactions**
Appendix 1 (angiotensin-II receptor antagonists).

**Hypertension, proteinuria in nephritis** (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 6–12 years initially 70 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg) once daily, increased in intervals of 1–2 weeks to max. 600 micrograms/kg (or 40 mg) once daily
  - Child 12–18 years initially 5 mg once daily; usual maintenance dose 10–20 mg once daily; max. 80 mg once daily

**Diabetic nephropathy** (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years initially 5 mg once daily; usual maintenance dose 10–20 mg once daily; max. 80 mg once daily

**Heart failure (adjunct)** (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years initially 2.5 mg once daily; increased in steps no greater than 10 mg at intervals of at least 2 weeks up to max. 35 mg once daily if tolerated

**Losartan Potassium (Non-proprietary)**

**Tablets**
Lisinopril (as dihydrate) 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.78; 5 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £1.31; 10 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £2.05; 20 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £2.17

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**Losartan Potassium**

**Cautions**
See notes above; also severe heart failure

**Hepatic impairment**
Avoid—no information available

**Renal impairment**
See notes above; also avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73m²—no information available

**Pregnancy**
See notes above

**Breast-feeding**
See notes above

**Side-effects**
See notes above; also malaise, anaemia; less commonly abdominal pain, constipation, diarr-
2.6 Nitrates and calcium-channel blockers

Nitrates and calcium-channel blockers have a vasodilating and, consequently, blood-pressure lowering effect. Vasodilators can act in heart failure by arteriolar dilatation, which reduces both peripheral vascular resistance and left ventricular pressure during systole resulting in improved cardiac output. They can also cause venous dilatation, which results in dilatation of capacitance vessels, increase of venous pooling, and diminution of venous return to the heart (decreasing left ventricular end-diastolic pressure).

2.6.1 Nitrates

Nitrates are potent coronary vasodilators, but their principal benefit follows from a reduction in venous return which reduces left ventricular work. Unwanted effects such as flushing, headache, and postural hypotension may limit therapy, especially if the child is unusually sensitive to the effects of nitrates or is hypovolaemic.

For the use of glyceryl trinitrate in extravasation, see section 10.3.

Children receiving nitrates continuously throughout the day can develop tolerance (with reduced therapeutic effects). Reduction of blood-nitrate concentrations to low levels for 4 to 8 hours each day usually maintains effectiveness in such patients.

GLYCERYL TRINITRATE

Cautions hypothyroidism; malnutrition; hypothermia; recent history of myocardial infarction; heart failure due to obstruction; hypoxaemia or other ventilation and perfusion abnormalities; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; metal-containing transdermal systems should be removed before magnetic resonance imaging procedures, cardioversion, or diathermy; avoid abrupt withdrawal; monitor blood pressure and heart rate during infusion; tolerance (see notes above); interactions: Appendix 1 (nitrates)
Contra-indications hypersensitivity to nitrates; hypertensive conditions and hypovolaemia; hypertrophic cardiomyopathy; aortic stenosis; cardiac tamponade; constrictive pericarditis; mitral stenosis; toxic pulmonary oedema; head trauma; cerebral haemorrhage; cerebrovascular disease; marked anaemia

Hepatic impairment caution in severe impairment

Renal impairment manufacturers advise use with caution in severe impairment

Pregnancy not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding no information available—manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Side-effects postural hypotension, tachycardia (but paradoxical bradycardia also reported); throbbing headache, dizziness; less commonly nausea, vomiting, heartburn, flushing, syncope, temporary hypoxaemia, rash, application-site reactions with transdermal patches; very rarely angle-closure glaucoma

Injection Specific side-effects following injection (particularly if given too rapidly) include severe hypotension, diaphoresis, apprehension, restlessness, muscle twitching, retrosternal discomfort, palpitation, abdominal pain; prolonged phoresis, apprehension, restlessness, muscle twitching, retinal haemorrhage, rhinorrhoea, syncope, hypoxaemia; dysphoria; paraesthesia, apprehension, restlessness, muscle twitching, retinal haemorrhage; dysphoria; paraesthesia. Aseptic meningitis has been reported on rare occasions with intrathecal (but not intraventricular) injection

Licenced use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Hypertension during and after cardiac surgery, heart failure after cardiac surgery, coronary vasoconstriction in myocardial ischaemia, vasoconstriction in shock

- By continuous intravenous infusion

  Neonate 0.2–0.5 micrograms/kg/minute, dose adjusted according to response; usual dose 1–3 micrograms/kg/minute; max. 10 micrograms/kg/minute

  Child 1 month–18 years initially 0.2–0.5 micrograms/kg/minute, dose adjusted according to response, usual dose 1–3 micrograms/kg/minute; max. 10 micrograms/kg/minute (do not exceed 200 micrograms/minute)

Administration for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to max. concentration of 400 micrograms/mL (but concentration of 1 mg/mL has been used via a central venous catheter) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Glass or polyethylene apparatus is preferable; loss of potency will occur if PVC is used. Neonatal intensive care, dilute 3 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 1 mL/hour provides a dose of 1 microgram/kg/minute

Glyceryl Trinitrate (Non-proprietary) Injection, glyceryl trinitrate 1 mg/mL. To be diluted before use or given undiluted with syringe pump. Net price 5-mL vial = £1.80; 50-mL vial = £14.76

Nitroglycerin® (UCB Pharma) Injection, glyceryl trinitrate 1 mg/mL. To be diluted before use or given undiluted with syringe pump. Net price 10-mL amp = £5.88; 50-mL bottle = £13.77

2.6.2 Calcium-channel blockers

Calcium-channel blockers (less correctly called ‘calcium-antagonists’) interfere with the inward displacement of calcium ions through the slow channels of active cell membranes. They influence the myocardial cells, the cells within the specialised conducting system of the heart, and the cells of vascular smooth muscle. Thus, myocardial contractility may be reduced, the formation and propagation of electrical impulses within the heart may be depressed, and coronary or systemic vascular tone may be diminished.

Calcium-channel blockers differ in their predilection for the various possible sites of action and, therefore, their therapeutic effects are disparate, with much greater variation than those of beta-blockers. There are important differences between verapamil, diltiazem, and the dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers (amlodipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, and nimodipine). Verapamil and diltiazem should usually be avoided in heart failure because they may further depress cardiac function and cause clinically significant deterioration.

Verapamil is used for the treatment of hypertension (section 2.5) and arrhythmias (section 2.3.2). However, it is no longer first-line treatment for arrhythmias in children because it has been associated with fatal collapse especially in infants under 1 year; adenosine is now recommended for first-line use.

Verapamil is a highly negatively inotropic calcium-channel-blocker and it reduces cardiac output, slows the heart rate, and may impair atrioventricular conduction. It may precipitate heart failure, exacerbate conduction disorders, and cause hypotension at high doses and should not be used with beta-blockers (see p. 109). Constipation is the most common side-effect.

Nifedipine relaxes vascular smooth muscle and dilates coronary and peripheral arteries. It has more influence on vessels and less on the myocardium than does verapamil, and unlike verapamil has no anti-arrhythmic activity. It rarely precipitates heart failure because any negative inotropic effect is offset by a reduction in left ventricular work. Short-acting formulations of nifedipine are not recommended for long-term management of hypertension; their use may be associated with large variations in blood pressure and reflex tachycardia. However, they may be used if a modified-release preparation delivering the appropriate dose is not available or if a child is unable to swallow (a liquid preparation may be prepared using capsules). Nifedipine may also be used for the management of angina due to coronary artery disease in Kawasaki disease or progeria and in the management of Raynaud’s syndrome.

Nicardipine has similar effects to those of nifedipine and may produce less reduction of myocardial contractility; it is used to treat hypertensive crisis.

Amlodipine also resembles nifedipine and nicardipine in its effects and does not reduce myocardial contractility or produce clinical deterioration in heart failure. It has a longer duration of action and can be given once daily. Nifedipine and amlodipine are used for the treat-
2.6.2 Calcium-channel blockers

- **Nimodipine**
  - Contra-indications: severe bradycardia, significant aortic stenosis, cardiogenic shock; profound hypotension; acute aortic dissection; aortic stenosis; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)
  - Cautions: hypokalaemia, hypocalcaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypophosphataemia; hyperkalaemia, hypercalcaemia, hypermagnesaemia, hyperphosphataemia
  - Side-effects: headache, fever, rash, photosensitivity, angioedema, urticaria

- **Diltiazem**
  - Contra-indications: cardiogenic shock, significant aortic stenosis, left ventricular failure with pulmonary congestion, second- or third-degree AV block (unless pacing is fitted), sick sinus syndrome, acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)
  - Hepatic impairment: reduce dose
  - Renal impairment: start with smaller dose
  - Pregnancy: avoid
  - Breast-feeding: significant amount present in milk—no evidence of harm but avoid unless no safer alternative

**AMLODIPINE**

**Cautions**
- acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2);
- interactions: Appendix 1 (calcium-channel blockers)
- Contra-indications: cardiogenic shock, significant aortic stenosis

**Hepatic impairment** may need dose reduction—half-life prolonged

**Pregnancy**
- no information available
  - Breast-feeding: manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects**
- abdominal pain, nausea, palpitation, flushing, oedema, headache, dizziness, sleep disturbances, fatigue; less commonly gastrointestinal disturbances; dry mouth, taste disturbances, hypertension, syncope, chest pain, dyspnoea, rhinitis, mood changes, asthenia, tremor, paraesthesia, urinary disturbances, impotence, gynaecomastia, weight changes, myalgia, muscle cramps, back pain, arthralgia, visual disturbances, tinnitus, pruritus, rashes (including isolated reports of erythema multiforme), sweating, alopecia, purpura, and skin discoloration; very rarely gastritis, pancreatitis, hepatitis, jaundice, cholestasis, gingival hyperplasia, myocardial infarction, arrhythmias, tachycardia, vasculitis, coughing, peripheral neuropathy, hyperglycaemia, thrombocytopenia, angioedema, and urticaria

**Licensed use**
- not licensed for use in children under 6 years

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension**
- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 100–200 micrograms/kg once daily; if necessary increase at intervals of 1–2 weeks up to 400 micrograms/kg once daily; max. 10 mg once daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 5 mg once daily; if necessary increase at intervals of 1–2 weeks to max. 10 mg once daily

**Administration** tablets may be dispersed in water

Note: Tablets from various suppliers may contain different salts (e.g. amlodipine besilate, amlodipine maleate, and amlodipine mesilate) but the strength is expressed in terms of amlodipine (base); tablets containing different salts are considered interchangeable

**BNFC 2011–2012**
### 2.6.2 Calcium-channel blockers

**BNFC 2011-2012**

- **Hepatic impairment** half-life prolonged in severe impairment—may need dose reduction
- **Renal impairment** start with smaller dose
- **Pregnancy** may inhibit labour; toxicity in animal studies; manufacturer advises avoid, but risk to fetus should be balanced against risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension
- **Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available
- **Side-effects** dizziness, headache, peripheral oedema, flushing, palpitation, nausea; also gastro-intestinal disturbances, drowsiness, insomnia, tinnitus, hypertension, rashes, dyspnea, paraesthesia, frequency of micturition; thrombocytopenia, depression and impotence reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

#### Hypertensive crisis
- **By continuous intravenous infusion**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate initial 500 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response; usual maintenance of 1–4 micrograms/kg/minute</td>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years initially 500 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response; usual maintenance of 1–4 micrograms/kg/minute (max. 250 micrograms/minute)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; to minimise peripheral venous irritation, change site of infusion every 12 hours

**Cardene IV**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Injection ricardipine 2.5 mg/mL (10-mL ampoule)</td>
<td>Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cautions

- **Hepatic impairment** dose reduction may be required in severe liver disease
- **Pregnancy** may inhibit labour; manufacturer advises avoid before week 20, but risk to fetus should be balanced against risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension; use only if other treatment options are not indicated or have failed
- **Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid
- **Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbance; hypertension, oedema, vasodilatation, palpitation; headache, dizziness, lethargy, asthma; less commonly tachycardia, hypotension, syncope, chills, nasal congestion, dyspnea, anxiety, sleep disturbance, vertigo, migraine, paraesthesia, tremor, polypuya, dysuria, nocturia, erectile dysfunction, epistaxis, myalgia, joint swelling, visual disturbance, sweating, and hypersensitivity reactions (including angioedema, jaundice, pruritus, urticaria, and rash); rarely anorexia, gum hyperplasia, mood disturbances, hyperglycaemia, male infertility, purpura, and photosensitivity reactions; also reported dysphagia, intestinal obstruction, intestinal ulcer, bezoar formation, gynaecomastia, agranulocytosis, and anaphylaxis

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Hypertension, angina in Kawasaki disease or progeria
- **By mouth** (see Administration, below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years 250–500 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) as a single dose</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Dose frequency depends on preparation used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Administration** for rapid effect in hypertensive crisis or acute angina, bite capsules and swallow liquid or use liquid preparation if 5-mg or 10-mg dose inappropriate; if liquid unavailable, extract contents of capsule via a syringe and use immediately—cover syringe with foil to protect contents from light; capsule contents may be diluted with water if necessary. Modified-release tablets may be crushed—this may alter the release profile; crushed tablets should be administered within 30–60 seconds to avoid significant loss of potency of drug

**Nifedipine (Non-proprietary)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capsules, nifedipine 5 mg, net price 84-cap pack = £2.97; 10 mg, 84-cap pack = £4.00</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Dose frequency depends on preparation used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral liquid, available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809</td>
<td>Give 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adalat®** (Bayer Schering)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capsules, orange, nifedipine 5 mg, net price 90-cap pack = £5.73; 10 mg, 90-cap pack = £7.30</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Adalat liquid gel capsules contain 5 mg nifedipine in 0.17 mL and 10 mg nifedipine in 0.34 mL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral liquid, available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809</td>
<td>Give 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note Different versions of modified-release preparations may not have the same clinical effect. To avoid confusion between these different formulations of nifedipine, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed. Modified-release formulations may not be suitable for dose titration in hepatic disease.

**Adalat** LA (Bayer Schering)

- LA 20 tablets, m/r, f/c, pink, nifedipine 20 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £4.97. Label: 25
- LA 30 tablets, m/r, f/c, pink, nifedipine 30 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £6.85. Label: 25
- LA 60 tablets, m/r, f/c, pink, nifedipine 60 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £9.93. Label: 25

Counselling: Table membrane may pass through gastro-intestinal tract unchanged, but being porous has no effect on efficacy.

Cautions: dose form not appropriate for use in hepatic impairment or where there is a history of oesophageal or gastro-intestinal obstruction, decreased lumen diameter of the gastro-intestinal tract, or inflammatory bowel disease (including Crohn's disease).

Dose
- Give once daily

**Adalat Retard** (Bayer Schering)

- Retard 10 tablets, m/r, f/c, grey-pink, nifedipine 10 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £7.34. Label: 25
- Retard 20 tablets, m/r, f/c, grey-pink, nifedipine 20 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £8.81. Label: 25

Dose
- Give twice daily

**Adaline** MR (Chiesi)

- Tablets, m/r, nifedipine 10 mg (pink), net price 56-tab pack = £3.73; 20 mg (pink), 56-tab pack = £5.21. Label: 25

Dose
- Give twice daily

**Adaline** XL (Chiesi)

- Tablets, m/r, red, nifedipine 30 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £4.70; 60 mg, 28-tab pack = £7.10. Label: 25

Dose
- Give once daily

**Coracten SR** (UCB Pharma)

- Capsules, m/r, nifedipine 10 mg (grey/pink, enclosing yellow pellets), net price 60-cap pack = £3.90; 20 mg (pink/brown, enclosing yellow pellets), 60-cap pack = £5.41. Label: 25

Dose
- Give twice daily

**Coracten XL** (UCB Pharma)

- Capsules, m/r, nifedipine 30 mg (brown), net price 28-cap pack = £4.89; 60 mg (orange), 28-cap pack = £7.34. Label: 25

Dose
- Give once daily

**Fortipine LA 40** (Goldshield)

- Tablets, m/r, red, nifedipine 40 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £9.60. Label: 21, 25

Dose
- Give 1–2 times daily

**Hypolcor® Retard 20** (Sandoz)

- Tablets, m/r, red, f/c, nifedipine 20 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £5.75. Label: 25

Dose
- Give twice daily

**Nifedipress** MR (Dexcel)

- Tablets, m/r, pink, nifedipine 10 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £9.23; 20 mg, 56-tab pack = £10.06. Label: 25

Dose
- Give twice daily

Note: Also available as Calchan® MR.

**Tensipine MR** (Genus)

- Tablets, m/r, pink-grey, nifedipine 10 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £4.30; 20 mg, 56-tab pack = £5.49. Label: 21, 25

Dose
- Give twice daily

**Valni XL** (Winthrop)

- Tablets, m/r, red, nifedipine 30 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £7.29; 60 mg, 28-tab pack = £9.13. Label: 25

Cautions: dose form not appropriate for use in hepatic impairment, or where there is a history of oesophageal or gastro-intestinal obstruction, decreased lumen diameter of the gastro-intestinal tract, inflammatory bowel disease, or ileostomy after proctocolectomy.

Dose
- Give once daily

---

### NIMODIPINE

Cautions: cerebral oedema or severely raised intracranial pressure; hypotension; avoid concomitant administration of nimodipine tablets and infusion, other calcium-channel blockers, or beta-blockers; concomitant nephrotoxic drugs; avoid grapefruit juice (may affect metabolism); Interactions: Appendix 1 (calcium-channel blockers, alcohol (infusion only)).

Contra-indications: acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment: elimination reduced in cirrhosis—monitor blood pressure.

Renal impairment: manufacturer advises monitor renal function closely with intravenous administration.

Pregnancy: manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risks.

Breast-feeding: manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk.

Side-effects: hypotension, variation in heart-rate, flushing, headache, gastro-intestinal disorders, nausea, sweating and feeling of warmth; thrombocytopenia and ileus reported.

Licensed use: not licensed for use in children.

### Indication and dose

Treatment of vasospasm following subarachnoid haemorrhage under specialist advice only.

- By intravenous infusion

  **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 15 micrograms/kg/hour (max. 500 micrograms/hour) or initially 7.5 micrograms/kg/hour if blood pressure unstable; increase after 2 hours to 30 micrograms/kg/hour (max. 2 mg/hour) if no severe decrease in blood pressure; continue for at least 5 days (max. 14 days).

  **Child 12–18 years** initially 500 micrograms/hour (up to 1 mg/hour if body-weight over 70 kg and
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**2.6.2 Calcium-channel blockers**

and gingival hyperplasia after long-term treatment; after intravenous administration or high doses, hypotension, heart failure, bradycardia, heart block, and asystole; hypersensitivity reactions involving reversibly raised liver function tests

**Licensed use** Modified release preparation not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Hypertension, prophylaxis of supraventricular arrhythmias under specialist advice only**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1–2 years** 20 mg 2–3 times daily
  - **Child 2–18 years** 40–120 mg 2–3 times daily

**Treatment of supraventricular arrhythmias**

- **By intravenous injection over 2–3 minutes**
  - **with ECG and blood-pressure monitoring and under specialist advice**
  - **Child 1–18 years** 100–300 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg) as a single dose, repeated after 30 minutes if necessary

**Administration for intravenous injection, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; incompatible with solutions of pH greater than 6

**Verapamil (Non-proprietary)**

**Tablets**, coated, verapamil hydrochloride 40 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £1.55; 80 mg, 84-tab pack = £1.91; 120 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.54; 160 mg, 56-tab pack = £2.80

**Oral solution**, verapamil hydrochloride 40 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £36.90

**Days brands include Zolven®**

**Cordilox® (Dexcel)**

**Tablets**, yellow, f/c, verapamil hydrochloride 40 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £1.50; 80 mg, 84-tab pack = £2.05; 120 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.55; 80 mg, 56-tab pack = £2.80

**Injection**, verapamil hydrochloride 2.5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £1.11

**Securon® (Abbott)**

**Injection**, verapamil hydrochloride 2.5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £1.08

**Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6**

**Modified release**

**Half Securon SR® (Abbott)**

**Tablets**, m/r, f/c, verapamil hydrochloride 120 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £7.71. Label: 25

**Dose**

Give once daily (doses above 240 mg daily, give 2–3 times daily)

**Securon SR® (Abbott)**

**Tablets**, m/r, pale green, f/c, scored, verapamil hydrochloride 240 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £5.00. Label: 25

**Dose**

Give once daily (doses above 240 mg daily, give 2–3 times daily)

---

**VERAPAMIL HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** first-degree AV block; patients taking beta-blockers [important: see below]; avoid grapefruit juice (may affect metabolism); interactions: Appendix 1 (calcium-channel blockers)

**Verapamil and beta-blockers** Verapamil injection should not be given to patients recently treated with beta-blockers because of the risk of hypotension and asystole. The suggestion that when verapamil injection has been given first, an interval of 30 minutes before giving a beta-blocker is sufficient has not been confirmed.

It may also be hazardous to give verapamil and a beta-blocker together by mouth (should only be contemplated if myocardial function well preserved).

**Contra-indications** hypotension, bradycardia, second- and third-degree AV block; sick sinus syndrome, cardiogenic shock, sino-atrial block; history of heart failure or significantly impaired left ventricular function, even if controlled by therapy; atrial flutter or fibrillation complicating syndromes associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome), acute porphyria (section 9.8.2).

**Hepatic impairment** oral dose may need to be reduced

**Pregnancy** may reduce uterine blood flow with fetal hypoxia; manufacturer advises avoid during first trimester unless absolutely necessary; may inhibit labour

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects** constipation; less commonly nausea, vomiting, flushing, headache, dizziness, fatigue, anode oedema; rarely allergic reactions (erythema, pruritus, urticaria, angioedema, Stevens-Johnson syndrome), myalgia, arthralgia, paraesthesia, erythromelalgia, increased prolactin concentration; gynaecomastia

**Blood pressure stable**, increase after 2 hours to 1–2 mg/hour if no severe fall in blood pressure; continue for at least 5 days (max. 14 days)

**Prevention of vasospasm following subarachnoid haemorrhage**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 0.9–1.2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) 6 times daily, starting within 4 days of haemorrhage and continued for 21 days

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, administer undiluted via a Y-piece on a central venous catheter connected to a running infusion of Glucose 5%, or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; not to be added to an infusion container; incompatible with polyvinyl chloride giving sets or containers; protect infusion from light.

For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed or halved but are light sensitive—administer immediately

**Nimotop®** (Bayer Schering)

**Tablets**, yellow, f/c, nimodipine 30 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £33.60

**Intravenous infusion**, nimodipine 200 micrograms/mL, also contains ethanol 20% and macrogol ‘400’ 17%. Net price 50-mL vial (with polyethylene infusion catheter) = £11.46

**Note** Polyethylene, polypropylene, or glass apparatus should not be used; PVC should be avoided

**BNFC 2011–2012**

**2.6.2 Calcium-channel blockers**

Cardiovascular System
2.6.4 Peripheral vasodilators and related drugs

**Univer** (Cephalon) (Capsules, m/r, verapamil hydrochloride 120 mg (yellow/dark blue), net price 28-cap pack = £4.86; 180 mg (yellow), 56-cap pack = £11.38; 240 mg (yellow/dark blue), 28-cap pack = £7.87. Label: 25 Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Verapress MR** (Dexcel) (Tablets, m/r, pale green, f/c, verapamil hydrochloride 240 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £6.04. Label: 25

**Vertab** SR 240 (Chiesi) (Tablets, m/r, pale green, f/c, scored, verapamil hydrochloride 240 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £5.45. Label: 25

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 200 nanograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; alternatively, may be diluted to a concentration of 2 micrograms/mL and given via syringe driver

**Iloprost** (Non-proprietary) Concentrate for infusion, iloprost (as trometamol) 100 micrograms/mL. For dilution and use as an intravenous infusion

**Note** available on a named patient basis from Bayer Schering in 0.5 mL and 1 mL ampoules

---

2.7 Sympathomimetics

2.7.1 Inotropic sympathomimetics

2.7.2 Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics

2.7.3 Cardiopulmonary resuscitation

The properties of sympathomimetics vary according to whether they act on alpha or on beta adrenergic receptors. Response to sympathomimetics can also vary considerably in children, particularly neonates. It is important to titrate the dose to the desired effect and to monitor the child closely.

2.7.1 Inotropic sympathomimetics

The cardiac stimulants dobutamine and dopamine act on beta receptors in cardiac muscle and increase contractility with little effect on rate.

Dopamine has a variable, unpredictable, and dose-dependent impact on vascular tone. Low dose infusion (2 micrograms/kg/minute) normally causes vasodilatation, but there is little evidence that this is clinically beneficial; moderate doses increase myocardial contractility and cardiac output in older children, but in neonates moderate doses may cause a reduction in cardiac output. High doses cause vasoconstriction and increase vascular resistance, and should therefore be used with caution following cardiac surgery, or where there is coexisting neonatal pulmonary hypertension.

In neonates the response to inotropic sympathomimetics varies considerably, particularly in those born prematurely; careful dose titration and monitoring are necessary.

**Isoprenaline** injection is available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809.

**Shock** Shock is a medical emergency associated with a high mortality. The underlying causes of shock such as haemorrhage, sepsis or myocardial insufficiency should be corrected. Additional treatment is dependent on the type of shock.

**Septic shock** is associated with severe hypovolaemia (due to vasodilation and capillary leak) which should be corrected with crystalloids or colloids (section 9.2.2). If hypotension persists despite volume replacement, dopamine should be started. For shock refractory to treatment with dopamine, if cardiac output is high and peripheral vascular resistance is low (warm shock), noradrenaline (norepinephrine) (section 2.7.2) should be added or if cardiac output is low and peripheral
vascular resistance is high (cold shock), adrenaline (epinephrine) (section 2.7.2) should be added. Additionally, in cold shock, a vasodilator such as milrinone (section 2.1.2), glyceryl trinitrate (section 2.6.1), or sodium nitroprusside (section 2.5.1.1) can be used to reduce vascular resistance.

If the shock is resistant to volume expansion and catecholamines, and there is suspected or proven adrenal insufficiency, low dose hydrocortisone (section 6.3.2) can be used. ACTH-stimulated plasma-cortisol concentration should be measured; however, hydrocortisone can be started without such information.

Alternatively, if the child is resistant to catecholamines, and vascular resistance is low, vasopressin (section 6.5.2) can be added.

Neonatal septic shock can be complicated by the transition from fetal to neonatal circulation. Treatment to reverse right ventricular failure, by decreasing pulmonary artery pressures, is commonly needed in neonates with fluid-refractory shock and persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn (section 2.5.1.2). Rapid administration of fluid in neonates with patent ductus arteriosus may cause left-to-right shunting and congestive heart failure induced by ventricular overload.

In cardiogenic shock, the aim is to improve cardiac output and to reduce the afterload on the heart. If central venous pressure is low, cautious volume expansion with a colloid or crystalloid can be used. An inotrope such as adrenaline (epinephrine) (section 2.7.2) or dopamine should be given to increase cardiac output. Dobutamine is a peripheral vasodilator and is an alternative if hypotension is not significant.

Milrinone (section 2.1.2) has both inotropic and vasodilatory effects and can be used when vascular resistance is high. Alternatively, glyceryl trinitrate (2.6.1) or sodium nitroprusside (on specialist advice only) (section 2.5.1.1) can be used to reduce vasoconstriction.

Hypovolaemic shock should be treated with a crystalloid or colloid solution (or whole or reconstituted blood if source of hypovolaemia is haemorrhage) and further steps to improve cardiac output and decrease vascular resistance can be taken, as in cardiogenic shock.

The use of sympathomimetic inotropes and vasoconstrictors should preferably be confined to the intensive care setting and undertaken with invasive haemodynamic monitoring.

For advice on the management of anaphylactic shock, see section 3.4.3.

### 2.7.1 Inotropic sympathomimetics

**Side-effects** nausea; hypotension, hypertension (marked increase in systolic blood pressure indicates overdose), arrhythmias, palpitation, chest pain; dyspnoea, bronchospasm; headache; fever; increased urinary urgency; eosinophilia; rash, phlebitis; very rarely myocardial infarction, hypokalaemia; also reported coronary artery spasm and thrombocytopeinia

**Licensed use** strong sterile solution not licensed for use in children

#### Indication and dose

**Inotropic support in low cardiac output states, after cardiac surgery, cardiomyopathies, shock**

- By continuous intravenous infusion

  **Neonate** initially 5 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response to 2–15 micrograms/kg/minute; max. 20 micrograms/kg/minute

  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 5 micrograms/kg/minute adjusted according to response to 2–20 micrograms/kg/minute

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, using infusion pump, dilute to a concentration of 0.5–1 mg/mL (max. 5 mg/mL if fluid restricted) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; infuse higher concentration solutions through central venous catheter only. Incompatible with bicarbonate and other strong alkaline solutions.

**Neonatal intensive care,** dilute 30 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.5 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 micrograms/kg/minute

**Dobutamine** (Non-proprietary) (DOBUTAMINE)

**Injection,** dobutamine (as hydrochloride) 5 mg/mL. To be diluted before use or given undiluted with syringe pump. Net price 50-mL vial = £7.50

**Excipients** may include sulphites

**Concentrate for intravenous infusion,** dobutamine (as hydrochloride) 12.5 mg/mL. To be diluted before use. Net price 20-mL amp = £5.20

**Excipients** may include sulphites

### DOPAMINE HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** correct hypovolaemia; hyperthyroidism; interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

**Contra-indications** tachyarrhythmia, phaeochromocytoma

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, chest pain, palpitation, tachycardia, vasoconstriction, hypotension, dyspnoea, headache; less commonly bradycardia, hypertension, gangrene, mydriasis; rarely fatal ventricular arrhythmias

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 12 years

#### Indication and dose

To correct the haemodynamic imbalance due to acute hypotension, shock, cardiac failure, adjunct following cardiac surgery

- By continuous intravenous infusion

  **Neonate** initially 3 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response (max. 20 micrograms/kg/minute)
2.7.2 Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics

Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics raise blood pressure transiently by acting on alpha-adrenergic receptors to constrict peripheral vessels. They are sometimes used as an emergency method of elevating blood pressure where other measures have failed (see also section 2.7.1).

The danger of vasoconstrictors is that although they raise blood pressure they also reduce perfusion of vital organs such as the kidney.

Ephedrine is used to reverse hypotension caused by spinal and epidural anaesthesia.

Metaraminol is used as a vasopressor during cardiopulmonary bypass.

Phenylephrine causes peripheral vasoconstriction and increases arterial pressure.

Ephedrine, metaraminol and phenylephrine are rarely needed in children and should be used under specialist supervision.

Noradrenaline (norepinephrine) is reserved for children with low systemic vascular resistance that is unresponsive to fluid resuscitation following septic shock, spinal shock, and anaphylaxis.

Adrenaline (epinephrine) is mainly used for its inotropic action. Low doses (acting on beta receptors) cause systemic and pulmonary vasodilation, with some increase in heart rate and stroke volume and also an increase in contractility; high doses act predominantly on alpha receptors causing intense systemic vasoconstriction.

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a max. concentration of 3.2 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Infuse higher concentrations through central venous catheter using a syringe pump to avoid extravasation and fluid overload. Incompatible with bicarbonate and other alkaline solutions.

**Neonatal intensive care**, dilute 30 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.3 mL/hour provides a dose of 3 micrograms/kg/minute

**Dopamine (Non-proprietary) (Non-proprietary)**

Concentrate for intravenous infusion, dopamine hydrochloride 40 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = 90p; 160 mg/mL, 5-mL amp = £3.40. To be diluted before use

Intravenous infusion, dopamine hydrochloride 1.6 mg/mL in glucose 5% intravenous infusion, net price 250-mL container (400 mg) = £11.69. Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, p. 809

**Indication and dose**

Reversal of hypotension from epidural and spinal anaesthesia

- By slow intravenous injection of a solution containing ephedrine hydrochloride 3 mg/mL
  - Child 1–12 years 500–750 micrograms/kg or 17–25 mg/m² every 3–4 minutes according to response; max. 30 mg during episode
  - Child 12–18 years 3–7.5 mg (max. 9 mg) repeated every 3–4 minutes according to response, max. 30 mg during episode

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, anorexia; tachycardia (sometimes bradycardia), arrhythmias, anginal pain, vasoconstriction with hypertension, vasodilatation with hypotension, dizziness and flushing; dyspnoea; headache; anxiety, restlessness, confusion, psychosis, insomnia; tremor; difficulty in micturition, urine retention; sweating, hypersalivation; changes in blood-glucose concentration; very rarely angle-closure glaucoma

**Renal impairment** use with caution

**Pregnancy** increased fetal heart rate reported with parenteral ephedrine

**Breast-feeding** irritability and disturbed sleep reported

**Nasal congestion** section 12.2.2

**Administration** for slow intravenous injection, give via central venous catheter

Ephedrine Hydrochloride (Non-proprietary) (Non-proprietary)

Injection, ephedrine hydrochloride 3 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £3.25; 30 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 41p

**Ephedrine Hydrochloride** (Non-proprietary) (Non-proprietary)

By intravenous administration

- Acute hypotension
  - Child 12–18 years 15–100 mg adjusted according to response

**METARAMINOL**

Cautions see under Noradrenaline; longer duration of action than noradrenaline (norepinephrine), see below; cirrhosis; interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

Hypertensive response Metaraminol has a longer duration of action than noradrenaline, and an excessive vasopressor response may cause a prolonged rise in blood pressure.

Contra-indications see under Noradrenaline

Pregnancy may reduce placental perfusion—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises caution—no information available

Side-effects see under Noradrenaline; tachycardia; fatal ventricular arrhythmia reported in Laennec’s cirrhosis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Acute hypotension**

- By intravenous infusion
  - Child 12–18 years 15–100 mg adjusted according to response

**Indication and dose**

Emergency treatment of acute hypotension

- By intravenous administration
  - Child 12–18 years initially by intravenous injection 0.5–5 mg, then by intravenous infusion 15–100 mg adjusted according to response
**NORADRENALINE/NOREPINEPHRINE**

**Cautions** coronary, mesenteric, or peripheral vascular thrombosis; following myocardial infarction; Prinzmetal's variant angina, hyperthyroidism, diabetes mellitus; hypoxia or hypercapnia; uncorrected hypovolaemia; extravasation at injection site may cause necrosis; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

**Contra-indications** hypertension (monitor blood pressure and rate of flow frequently)

**Pregnancy** avoid—may reduce placental perfusion

**Side-effects** anorexia, nausea, vomiting, hypokalaemia, arrhythmias, peripheral ischaemia, palpitation, hypertension, bradycardia, tachycardia, dyspnoea, headache, insomnia, confusion, anxiety, psychosis, weakness, tremor, urinary retention, angle-closure glaucoma

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children by intravenous infusion or injection

**Indication and dose**

**Acute hypotension (septic shock) or shock secondary to excessive vasodilation (as noradrenaline)**

- **By continuous intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 20–100 nanograms (base)/kg/minute, adjusted according to response; max. 1 microgram (base)/kg/minute
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 20–100 nanograms (base)/kg/minute, adjusted according to response; max. 1 microgram (base)/kg/minute
  - **Note** 500 micrograms of noradrenaline base is equivalent to 1 mg of acid tartrate. Dose expressed as the base

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a max. concentration of 40 micrograms/mL (higher concentrations can be used if fluid-restricted) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose. Infuse through central venous catheter; discard if discoloured. Incompatible with bicarbonate or alkaline solutions.

**Neonatal intensive care** care, dilute 600 micrograms (base)/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 20 nanograms (base)/kg/minute

**Noradrenaline/Norepinephrine (Non-proprietary)**

**Injection**, noradrenaline base 1 mg/mL (equivalent to noradrenaline acid tartrate 2 mg/mL). For dilution before use. Net price 2-mL amp = £2.40, 4-mL amp = £4.40, 20-mL amp = £6.35

**Note** For a period of time preparations on the UK market may be described as either noradrenaline base or noradrenaline acid tartrate; doses above are expressed as the base

---

**ADRENALEINE/PINEPHRINE**

**Cautions** ischaemic heart disease, severe angina, obstructive cardiomyopathy, hypertension, arrhythmias, cerebrovascular disease; occlusive vascular disease, monitor blood pressure and ECG; cor pulmonale; organic brain damage, psychoneurosis; pheochromocytoma; diabetes mellitus, hyperthyroidism; hypokalaemia, hypercalcaemia; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

**Renal impairment** manufacturers advise use with caution in severe impairment
Cardiovascular system

2 Cardiovascular system

Because it provides rapid and effective response; if intravenous access, the intravenous access route is chosen during cardiopulmonary arrest in children without respiratory failure. The terminal event of progressive shock or respiratory arrest in children is rare and frequently represents the onset of cardiopulmonary arrest.

Paediatric advanced life support

The algorithms for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (see inside back cover) reflect the recommendations of the Resuscitation Council (UK); they cover paediatric basic life support, paediatric advanced life support, and newborn life support. The guidelines are available at www.resus.org.uk.

Paediatric advanced life support

Cardiopulmonary arrest

The algorithms for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (see inside back cover) reflect the recommendations of the Resuscitation Council (UK); they cover paediatric basic life support, paediatric advanced life support, and newborn life support. The guidelines are available at www.resus.org.uk.

2.7.3 Cardiopulmonary resuscitation

Pregnancy may reduce placental perfusion and can delay second stage of labour; manufacturers advise use only if benefit outweighs risk.

Breast-feeding present in milk but unlikely to be harmful as poor oral bioavailability.

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, anorexia, hypersalivation; arrhythmias, palpitation, tachycardia, syncope, angina, hypertension (risk of cerebral haemorrhage), cold extremities, pallor; dyspnœa, pulmonary oedema (on excessive dosage or extreme sensitivity); anxiety, tremor, restlessness, headache, insomnia, confusion, weakness, dizziness, hallucinations, psychosis; hyperglycaemia; difficulty in micturition, urinary retention; metabolic acidosis; hypokalaemia; mydriasis, angle-closure glaucoma; tissue necrosis at injection site and of extremities, liver and kidneys, sweating.

Indication and dose

Acute hypotension

- By continuous intravenous infusion

**Neonate** initially 100 nanograms/kg/minute adjusted according to response; higher doses up to 1.5 micrograms/kg/minute have been used in acute hypotension.

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 100 nanograms/kg/minute adjusted according to response; higher doses up to 1.5 micrograms/kg/minute have been used in acute hypotension.

Anaphylaxis section 3.4.3

Cardiopulmonary arrest section 2.7.3

Administration for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give through a central venous catheter. Incompatible with bicarbonate and alkaline solutions.

Neonatal intensive care, dilute 3 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 100 nanograms/kg/minute.

**Note** These infusions are usually made up with adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution; this concentration of adrenaline is not licensed for intravenous administration.

Preparations

Section 3.4.3

2.7.3 Cardiopulmonary resuscitation

The algorithms for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (see inside back cover) reflect the recommendations of the Resuscitation Council (UK); they cover paediatric basic life support, paediatric advanced life support, and newborn life support. The guidelines are available at www.resus.org.uk.

Paediatric advanced life support

Cardiopulmonary (cardiac) arrest in children is rare and frequently represents the terminal event of progressive shock or respiratory failure.

During cardiopulmonary arrest in children without intravenous access, the intravenous route is chosen because it provides rapid and effective response; if circulatory access cannot be gained, the endotracheal tube can be used. When the endotracheal route is used ten times the intravenous dose should be used; the drug should be injected quickly down a narrow bore suction catheter beyond the tracheal end of the tube and then flushed in with 1 or 2 mL of sodium chloride 0.9%. The endotracheal route is useful for lipid-soluble drugs, including lidocaine, adrenaline, atropine, and naloxone. Drugs that are not lipid-soluble (e.g. sodium bicarbonate and calcium chloride) should not be administered by this route because they will injure the airways.

For the management of acute anaphylaxis see section 3.4.3.

2.8 Anticoagulants and protamine

2.8.1 Parenteral anticoagulants

2.8.2 Oral anticoagulants

2.8.3 Protamine sulphate

Although thrombotic episodes are uncommon in childhood, anticoagulants may be required in children with congenital heart disease; in children undergoing haemodialysis; for preventing thrombosis in children requiring chemotherapy and following surgery; and for systemic venous thromboembolism secondary to inherited thrombophilias, systemic lupus erythematosus, or indwelling central venous catheters.

2.8.1 Parenteral anticoagulants

Heparin

Heparin initiates anticoagulation rapidly but has a short duration of action. It is now often referred to as being standard or unfractionated heparin to distinguish it from the low molecular weight heparins (see p. 116), which have a longer duration of action. For children at high risk of bleeding, unfractionated heparin is more suitable than low molecular weight heparin because its effect can be terminated rapidly by stopping the infusion.

Heparins are used in both the treatment and prophylaxis of thromboembolic disease, mainly to prevent further clotting rather than to lyse existing clots—surgery or a thrombolytic drug may be necessary if a thrombus obstructs major vessels.

Treatment For the initial treatment of thrombotic episodes unfractionated heparin is given as an intravenous loading dose, followed by continuous intravenous infusion (using an infusion pump); or by intermittent subcutaneous injection; the use of intermittent intravenous injection is no longer recommended. Alternatively, a low molecular weight heparin may be given for initial treatment. If an oral anticoagulant (usually warfarin, section 2.8.2) is also required, it may be started at the same time as the heparin (the heparin needs to be continued for at least 5 days and until the INR has been in the therapeutic range for 2 consecutive days). Labora-
tory monitoring of coagulation activity, preferably on a daily basis, involves determination of the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) (for unfractionated heparin only) or of the anti-Factor Xa concentration (for low molecular weight heparins). Local guidelines on recommended APTT for neonates and children should be followed; monitoring of APTT should be discussed with a specialist prior to treatment for thrombotic episodes in neonates.

Prophylaxis Low-dose unfractionated heparin by subcutaneous injection is used to prevent thrombotic episodes in ‘high-risk’ patients; laboratory monitoring of APTT or anti-Factor Xa concentration is also required in prophylactic regimens in children. Low molecular weight heparins, aspirin (section 2.9), and warfarin (section 2.8.2) can also be used for prophylaxis.

Pregnancy Heparins are used for the management of thromboembolic disease in pregnancy because they do not cross the placenta. Low molecular weight heparins are preferred because they have a lower risk of osteoporosis and of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. Low molecular weight heparins are eliminated more rapidly in pregnancy, requiring alteration of the dosage regimen for drugs such as dalteparin, enoxaparin, and tinzaparin. Treatment should be stopped at the onset of labour and advice sought from a specialist on continuing therapy after birth.

Extracorporeal circuits Unfractionated heparin is also used in the maintenance of extracorporeal circuits in cardiopulmonary bypass and haemodialysis.

Haemorrhage If haemorrhage occurs it is usually sufficient to withdraw unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin, but if rapid reversal of the effects of the heparin is required, protamine sulphate (section 2.8.3) is sufficient to withdraw unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin, and regular monitoring of platelet counts is recommended if given for longer than 4 days. Signs of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia include a 50% reduction of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia; rarely rebound hyperlipidaemia following unfractionated heparin withdrawal, priapism, hyperkalaemia (see Cautions), osteoporosis (risk lower with low molecular weight heparins), alopecia on prolonged use, injection-site reactions, skin necrosis, and hypersensitivity reactions (including urticaria, angioedema, and anaphylaxis).

Licensed use Some preparations licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Maintenance of neonatal umbilical arterial catheter
- By intravenous infusion
Neoate 0.5 units/hour

Treatment of thrombotic episodes
- By intravenous administration
Neoate initially 75 units/kg (50 units/kg if under 35 weeks postmenstrual age) by intravenous injection, then by continuous intravenous infusion 25 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT

Child 1 month–1 year initially 75 units/kg by intravenous injection, then by continuous intravenous infusion 25 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT

Child 1–18 years initially 75 units/kg by intravenous injection, then by continuous intravenous infusion 20 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT
- By subcutaneous injection
Child 1 month–18 years 250 units/kg twice daily, adjusted according to APTT

Prevention of clotting in extracorporeal circuits consult product literature

Maintenance of cardiac shunts and critical stents consult local protocol
Low molecular weight heparins

Dalteparin, enoxaparin, and tinzaparin are low molecular weight heparins used for treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes in children (see also Heparin, p. 114). Their duration of action is longer than that of unfractionated heparin and in adults and older children once-daily subcutaneous dosage is sometimes possible; however, younger children require relatively higher doses (possibly due to larger volume of distribution, altered heparin pharmacokinetics, or lower plasma concentrations of antithrombin) and twice daily dosage is sometimes necessary. Low molecular weight heparins are convenient to use, especially in children with poor venous access. Routine monitoring of anti-Factor Xa activity is not usually required except in neonates; monitoring may also be necessary in severely ill children and those with renal or hepatic impairment.

Haemorrhage See under Heparin.

Hepatic impairment Reduce dose in severe impairment—risk of bleeding may be increased.

Pregnancy Not known to be harmful, low molecular weight heparins do not cross the placenta; see also Heparin, p. 115.

Breast-feeding Due to the relatively high molecular weight of these drugs and inactivation in the gastrointestinal tract, passage into breast-milk and absorption by the nursing infant are likely to be negligible; however manufacturers advise avoid.

Renal impairment risk of bleeding may be increased—dose reduction and monitoring of anti-Factor Xa may be required; use of unfractionated heparin may be preferable.

Pregnancy see notes above; also multidose vial contains benzyl alcohol—manufacturer advises avoid

Breast-feeding see notes above

Fragmin® (Pharmacia) (Non-proprietary)

Injection (single-dose syringe), dalteparin sodium 12 500 units/mL, net price 2500-unit (0.2 mL) syringe = £1.86; 25 000 units/mL, 5000-unit (0.2 mL) syringe = £2.82; 7500-unit (0.3 mL) syringe = £4.23; 10 000-unit (0.4 mL) syringe = £5.63; 12 500-unit (0.5 mL) syringe = £7.06, 15 000-unit (0.6 mL) syringe = £8.47, 18 000-unit (0.72 mL) syringe = £10.16

Injection, dalteparin sodium 2500 units/mL, for subcutaneous or intravenous use, 1 mL (10 000-unit) amp = £5.12; 10 000 units/mL, (for subcutaneous or intravenous use), 1 mL (10 000-unit) amp = £5.12; 25 000 units/mL, (for subcutaneous use only), 4 mL (100 000-unit) vial = £48.66

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in 100 000-unit/4 mL multidose vial) (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2)

Injection (graduated syringe), dalteparin sodium 10 000 units/mL, net price 1 mL (10 000-unit) syringe = £5.65

ENOXAPARIN SODIUM

Cautions see under Heparin and notes above

Contra-indications see under Heparin

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment risk of bleeding may be increased; reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; monitoring of anti-Factor Xa may be required; use of unfractionated heparin may be preferable

Pregnancy see notes above
## 2.8.1 Parenteral anticoagulants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy</th>
<th>Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong> early pregnancy body-weight</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> 50 units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| $50–70$ kg: $40$ mg (4000 units) twice daily; $70–90$ kg: $60$ mg (6000 units) twice daily; $90–100$ kg: $80$ mg (8000 units) twice daily | **Innohep** (LEO)

**Injection**, tinzaparin sodium 10 000 units/mL, net price $2500$-unit ($0.25$-mL) syringe = £1.98, $3500$-unit ($0.35$-mL) syringe = £2.77, $4500$-unit ($0.45$-mL) syringe = £3.56, $20000$-unit ($2$-mL) vial = £10.56

**Injection**, tinzaparin sodium 20 000 units/mL, net price $0.5$-mL ($10000$-unit) syringe = £8.46, $0.7$-mL ($14000$-unit) syringe = £11.85, $0.9$-mL ($18000$-unit) syringe = £15.23, $2$-mL ($40000$-unit) vial = £34.20

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in vials) (avoid in neonates; see Excipients, p. 2), sulphites (in $20000$-unit/mL vial and syringe)

### Heparinoids

**Danaparoid** is a heparinoid that has a role in children who develop heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, providing they have no evidence of cross-reactivity.

#### DANAPAROID SODIUM

**Cautions** recent bleeding or risk of bleeding; concomitant use of drugs that increase risk of bleeding; antibodies to heparins (risk of antibody-induced thrombocytopenia)

**Contra-indications** haemophilia and other haemorrhagic disorders, thrombocytopenia (unless patient has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia), recent cerebral haemorrhage, severe hypertension, acute peptic ulcer (unless this is the reason for operation), diabetic retinopathy, acute bacterial endocarditis, spinal or epidural anaesthesia with treatment doses of danaparoid

**Hepatic impairment** caution in moderate impairment (increased risk of bleeding); avoid in severe impairment unless the child has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and no alternative available

**Renal impairment** use with caution in moderate impairment; increased risk of bleeding (monitor anti-Factor Xa activity); avoid in severe impairment unless child has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and no alternative available

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available but not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects** haemorrhage; hypersensitivity reactions (including rash)

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### TINZAPARIN SODIUM

**Cautions** see under Heparin and notes above

**Contra-indications** see under Heparin

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** risk of bleeding may be increased—dose reduction and monitoring of anti-Factor Xa may be required; unfractionated heparin may be preferable

**Pregnancy** see notes above; also vials contain benzyl alcohol—manufacturer advises avoid

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment of thrombotic episodes</th>
<th>Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By subcutaneous injection</strong></td>
<td><strong>Child 1–2 months</strong> 750 micrograms/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–2 months</strong> 1.5 mg/kg twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Neonate</strong> initially $30$ units/kg by intravenous injection then by continuous intravenous infusion $1.2–2$ units/kg/hour adjusted according to coagulation activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2 months–1 year</strong> 250 micrograms/kg twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–5 years</strong> 240 units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 2–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–10 years</strong> 200 units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 10–18 years</strong> $175$ units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Tinzaparin Sodium**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Contra-indications</th>
<th>Hepatic impairment</th>
<th>Renal impairment</th>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
<th>Breast-feeding</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Licensed use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see under Heparin and notes above</td>
<td>see under Heparin</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
<td>not licensed for use in children</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment of thrombotic episodes</th>
<th>Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By subcutaneous injection</strong></td>
<td><strong>Child 1–2 months</strong> 750 micrograms/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–2 months</strong> 1.5 mg/kg twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Neonate</strong> initially $30$ units/kg by intravenous injection then by continuous intravenous infusion $1.2–2$ units/kg/hour adjusted according to coagulation activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2 months–1 year</strong> 250 micrograms/kg twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–5 years</strong> 240 units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 2–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–10 years</strong> 200 units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 10–18 years</strong> $175$ units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Danaparoid Sodium**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Contra-indications</th>
<th>Hepatic impairment</th>
<th>Renal impairment</th>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
<th>Breast-feeding</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Licensed use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>recent bleeding or risk of bleeding; concomitant use of drugs that increase risk of bleeding; antibodies to heparins (risk of antibody-induced thrombocytopenia)</td>
<td>haemophilia and other haemorrhagic disorders, thrombocytopenia (unless patient has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia), recent cerebral haemorrhage, severe hypertension, active peptic ulcer (unless this is the reason for operation), diabetic retinopathy, acute bacterial endocarditis, spinal or epidural anaesthesia with treatment doses of danaparoid</td>
<td>caution in moderate impairment (increased risk of bleeding); avoid in severe impairment unless the child has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and no alternative available</td>
<td>use with caution in moderate impairment; increased risk of bleeding (monitor anti-Factor Xa activity); avoid in severe impairment unless child has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and no alternative available</td>
<td>manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available but not known to be harmful</td>
<td>amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid</td>
<td>haemorrhage; hypersensitivity reactions (including rash)</td>
<td>not licensed for use in children</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment of thrombotic episodes</th>
<th>Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By subcutaneous injection</strong></td>
<td><strong>Child 1–2 months</strong> 750 micrograms/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–2 months</strong> 1.5 mg/kg twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Neonate</strong> initially $30$ units/kg by intravenous injection then by continuous intravenous infusion $1.2–2$ units/kg/hour adjusted according to coagulation activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2 months–1 year</strong> 250 micrograms/kg twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–5 years</strong> 240 units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 2–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–10 years</strong> 200 units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 10–18 years</strong> $175$ units/kg once daily</td>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong> $50$ units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Venous thromboembolism in children undergoing surgery; alternatively warfarin can be continued in selected children currently taking warfarin and who are at a high risk of thromboembolism (seek expert advice).

**Dose**
The base-line prothrombin time should be determined but the initial dose should not be delayed whilst awaiting the result.

An induction dose is usually given over 4 days (see under Warfarin Sodium below). The subsequent maintenance dose depends on the prothrombin time, reported as INR (international normalised ratio) and should be taken at the same time each day. The following indications and target INRs for adults take into account recommendations of the British Society for Haematology:

- INR 2.5 for treatment of deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism (including those associated with antiphospholipid syndrome or for recurrence in patients no longer receiving warfarin), for atrial fibrillation, cardioversion (higher target values, such as an INR of 3, can be used for up to 4 weeks before the procedure to avoid cancellations due to low INR; anticoagulation should continue for at least 4 weeks following the procedure), dilated cardiomyopathy, mural thrombus, symptomatic inherited thrombophilia, coronary artery thrombosis (if anticoagulated), and paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria;

- INR 3.5 for recurrent deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism (in patients currently receiving warfarin with INR above 2);

For mechanical prosthetic heart valves, the recommended target INR depends on the type and location of the valve. Generally, a target INR of 3 is recommended for mechanical aortic valves, and 3.5 for mechanical mitral valves.

**Monitoring**
It is essential that the INR be determined daily or on alternate days in early days of treatment, then at longer intervals (depending on response) then up to every 12 weeks.

### Haemorrhage
The main adverse effect of all oral anticoagulants is haemorrhage. Checking the INR and omitting doses when appropriate is essential; if the anticoagulant is stopped but not reversed, the INR should be measured 2–3 days later to ensure that it is falling. The following recommendations are based on the result of the INR and whether there is major or minor bleeding; the recommendations apply to adults taking warfarin:

- Major bleeding—stop warfarin; give phytonenadione (vitamin K$_1$) 5–10 mg by slow intravenous injection; give dried prothrombin complex (factors II, VII, IX, and X—see section 2.11) 30–50 units/kg (if

---

1. An INR which is within 0.5 units of the target value is generally satisfactory, larger deviations require dosage adjustment. Target values (rather than ranges) are now recommended.
3. Change in child’s clinical condition, particularly associated with liver disease, intercurrent illness, or drug administration, necessitates more frequent testing. See also interactions, Appendix 1 (warfarin). Major changes in diet (especially involving salads and vegetables) and in alcohol consumption may also affect warfarin control.
dried prothrombin complex unavailable, fresh frozen plasma 15 mL/kg can be given but is less effective)

- INR > 8.0, no bleeding or minor bleeding—stop warfarin and give phytonadione (vitamin K)
  1)
  2.5–5 mg by mouth using the intravenous preparation orally [unlicensed use], or 0.5–1 mg by slow intravenous injection (if complete reversal required 5–10 mg by slow intravenous injection); repeat dose of phytonadione if INR still too high after 24 hours; restart warfarin when INR < 5.0

- INR 5.0–8.0, no bleeding—stop warfarin; minor bleeding—stop warfarin and give phytonadione (vitamin K), 1–2.5 mg by mouth using the intravenous preparation orally [unlicensed use]; restart warfarin when INR < 5.0

- Unexpected bleeding at therapeutic levels—always investigate possibility of underlying cause e.g. unsuspected renal or gastro-intestinal tract pathology

**Pregnancy** Oral anticoagulants are teratogenic and should not be given in the first trimester of pregnancy. Adolescents at risk of pregnancy should be warned of this danger since stopping warfarin before the sixth week of gestation may largely avoid the risk of fetal abnormality. Oral anticoagulants cross the placenta with risk of congenital malformations, and placental, fetal, or neonatal haemorrhage, especially during the last few weeks of pregnancy and at delivery. Therefore, if at all possible, oral anticoagulants should be avoided in pregnancy, especially in the first and third trimesters. Difficult decisions may have to be made, particularly in those with prosthetic heart valves or with a history of recurrent venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, or atrial fibrillation.

Babies of mothers taking warfarin at the time of delivery need to be offered immediate prophylaxis with at least 100 micrograms/kg of intramuscular phytonadione [vitamin K], see section 9.6.5.

**Dietary differences** Infant formula is supplemented with vitamin K, which makes formula-fed infants resistant to warfarin; they may therefore need higher doses. In contrast breast milk contains low concentrations of vitamin K making breast-fed infants more sensitive to warfarin.

**Treatment booklets** Anticoagulant treatment booklets should be issued to children or their carers, and are available for distribution to local healthcare professionals from Health Authorities and from:

3M Security Printing and Systems Limited
Gorse Street
Chadderton
Oldham, OL9 9QH
Tel: 0845 610 1112
nhsforms@3psl.uk.com

These booklets include advice for children or their carers on anticoagulant treatment, an alert card to be carried by the patient at all times, and a section for recording of INR results and dosage information. Electronic copies are also available at www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/alerts-and-directives/alerts/anticoagulant.
2.8.3 Protamine sulphate

Protamine sulphate is used to treat overdosage of unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin. The long half-life of low molecular weight heparins should be taken into consideration when determining the dose of protamine sulphate; the effects of low molecular weight heparins can persist for up to 24 hours after administration. Excessive doses of protamine sulphate can have an anticoagulant effect.

### PROTAMINE SULPHATE

**(Protamine Sulfate)**

**Cautions** see above; also monitor activated partial thromboplastin time or other appropriate blood clotting parameters; if increased risk of allergic reaction to protamine (includes previous treatment with protamine or protamine insulin, allergy to fish, and adolescent males who are infertile)

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, lassitude, flushing, hypotension, hypertension, bradycardia, dyspnoea, rebound bleeding, back pain; hypersensitivity reactions (including angioedema, anaphylaxis) and pulmonary oedema reported

**Indication and dose**

**Overdosage with intravenous injection or intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin**

- **By intravenous injection (rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute)**

  **Child 1 month–18 years to neutralise each 100 units of unfractionated heparin.** 1 mg if less than 30 minutes lapsed since overdose, 500–750 micrograms if 30–60 minutes lapsed, 375–500 micrograms if 60–120 minutes lapsed, 250–375 micrograms if over 120 minutes lapsed; max. 50 mg

**Overdosage with subcutaneous injection of unfractionated heparin**

- **By intravenous injection and intravenous infusion**

  **Child 1 month–18 years** 1 mg neutralises approx. 100 units of unfractionated heparin; give 50–100% of the total dose by intravenous injection (rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute), then give any remainder of dose by intravenous infusion over 8–16 hours; max. total dose 50 mg

**Overdosage with subcutaneous injection of low molecular weight heparin**

- **By intermittent intravenous injection (rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute) or by continuous intravenous infusion**

  **Child 1 month–18 years** 1 mg neutralises approx. 100 units low molecular weight heparin (consult product literature of low molecular weight heparin for details); max. 50 mg

**Administration** may be diluted if necessary with Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Protamine Sulphate (Non-proprietar)**

- **Injection, protamine sulphate 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £1.43, 10-mL amp = £4.15**

2.9 Antiplatelet drugs

Antiplatelet drugs decrease platelet aggregation and inhibit thrombus formation in the arterial circulation, because in faster-flowing vessels, thrombi are composed mainly of platelets with little fibrin. Aspirin has limited use in children because it has been associated with Reye’s syndrome. Aspirin-containing preparations should not be given to children and adolescents under 16 years, unless specifically indicated, such as for Kawasaki syndrome (see below), for prophylaxis of clot formation after cardiac surgery, or for prophylaxis of stroke in children at high risk.

If aspirin causes dyspepsia, or if the child is at a high risk of gastrointestinal bleeding, a proton pump inhibitor (section 1.3.5) or a H₂-receptor antagonist (section 1.3.1) can be added.

Dipyridamole is also used as an antiplatelet drug to prevent clot formation after cardiac surgery and may be used with specialist advice for treatment of persistent coronary artery aneurysms in Kawasaki syndrome.

**Kawasaki syndrome** Initial treatment is with high-dose aspirin and a single dose of intravenous normal immunoglobulin (p. 622); this combination has an additive anti-inflammatory effect resulting in faster resolution of fever and a decreased incidence of coronary artery complications. After the acute phase, when the patient is afebrile, aspirin is continued at a lower dose to prevent coronary artery abnormalities.

### ASPIRIN (antiplatelet)

**(Acetylsalicylic Acid)**

**Cautions** asthma; uncontrolled hypertension; previous peptic ulceration (but manufacturers may advise avoidance of low-dose aspirin in history of peptic ulceration); concomitant use of drugs that increase risk of bleeding; G6PD deficiency (section 9.1.5); interactions: Appendix 1 (aspirin)

**Contra-indications** children under 16 years (risk of Reye’s syndrome) unless for indications below; active peptic ulceration; haemophilia and other bleeding disorders

**Hypersensitivity** Aspirin and other NSAIDs are contra-indicated in history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria, or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment—increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding

**Renal impairment** use with caution (avoid in severe impairment); sodium and water retention; deterioration in renal function; increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding

**Pregnancy** use with caution during third trimester; impaired platelet function and risk of haemorrhage; delayed onset and increased duration of labour with increased blood loss; avoid analgesic doses if possible in last few weeks (low doses probably not harmful); with high doses, closure of fetal ductus arteriosus in utero and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of newborn; kernicterus in jaundiced neonates

**Breast-feeding** avoid—possible risk of Reye’s syndrome; regular use of high doses could impair platelet function and produce hypoprothrombinaemia in infant if neonatal vitamin K stores low
### Aspirin

**Dispensable tablets,** aspirin 75 mg, net price 28 = £3.59; 300 mg, 100-tab pack = £2.88 Label: 13, 21, 32

**Oral suspension,** dipyridamole 50 mg/5 ml, net price 150 mL = £40.63

**Persantin** (Boehringer Ingelheim)

- **Tablets,** coated, dipyridamole, 100 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £4.16. Label: 22
- **Injection,** dipyridamole 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 12p

### Dipyridamole

**Cautions**
- aortic stenosis, left ventricular outflow obstruction, heart failure; may exacerbate migraine; hypotension; myasthenia gravis (risk of exacerbation); concomitant use of drugs that increase risk of bleeding; coagulation disorders; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (dipyridamole)
- Pregnancy not known to be harmful
- Breast-feeding manufacturers advise use only if essential—small amount present in milk
- Side-effects gastro-intestinal effects, dizziness, myalgia, throbbing headache, hypotension, hot flushes and tachycardia; hypersensitivity reactions such as rash, urticaria, severe bronchospasm and angioedema; increased bleeding during or after surgery; thrombocytopenia reported
- Licensed use not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Kawasaki syndrome**

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** initially 8 mg/kg 4 times daily for 2 weeks or until afebrile, followed by 5 mg/kg once daily for 6–8 weeks; if no evidence of coronary lesions after 8 weeks, discontinue treatment or seek expert advice
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 7.5–12.5 mg/kg 4 times daily for 2 weeks or until afebrile, then 2–5 mg/kg once daily for 6–8 weeks; if no evidence of coronary lesions after 8 weeks, discontinue treatment or seek expert advice

**Prevention of thrombus formation after cardiac surgery**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 1 mg/kg 3 times daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** 75 mg once daily

**Administration** injection solution can be given orally

**Dipyridamole (Non-proprietary)**

- **Tablets,** coated, dipyridamole 25 mg, net price 84 = £3.11; 100 mg, 84 = £2.80. Label: 22
- **Oral suspension,** dipyridamole 50 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £40.63

**Persantin** (Boehringer Ingelheim)

- **Tablets,** coated, dipyridamole, 100 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £4.16. Label: 22
- **Injection,** dipyridamole 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 12p

### Fibrinolytic drugs

Fibrinolytic drugs act as thrombolytics by activating plasminogen to form plasmin, which degrades fibrin and so breaks up thrombi.

- **Alteplase**, streptokinase, and urokinase are used in children to dissolve intravascular thrombi and unblock occluded arteriovenous shunts, catheters, and indwelling central lines blocked with fibrin clots. Treatment should be started as soon as possible after a clot has formed and discontinued once a pulse in the affected limb is detected, or the shunt or catheter unblocked.
- The safety and efficacy of treatment remains uncertain, especially in neonates. A fibrinolytic drug is probably only appropriate where arterial occlusion threatens ischaemic damage; an anticoagulant may stop the clot getting bigger. Alteplase is the preferred fibrinolytic in children and neonates; there is less risk of adverse effects including allergic reactions.

**Cautions** Thrombolytic drugs should be used with caution if there is a risk of bleeding including that from venepuncture or invasive procedures. They should
also be used with caution in external chest compression, pregnancy (see individual drugs), hypertension, other conditions in which thrombolysis might give rise to embolic complications such as enlarged left atrium with atrial fibrillation (risk of dissolution of clot and subsequent embolisation), and recent or concurrent use of drugs that increase the risk of bleeding.

**Contra-indications** Thrombolytic drugs are contra-indicated in recent haemorrhage, trauma, or surgery (including dental extraction), coagulation defects, bleeding diatheses, aortic dissection, aneurysm, coma, history of cerebrovascular disease especially recent events or with any residual disability, recent symptoms of possible peptic ulceration, heavy vaginal bleeding, severe hypertension, active pulmonary disease with cavitation, acute pancreatitis, pericarditis, bacterial endocarditis, severe liver disease, and oesophageal varices; also in the case of streptokinase, previous allergic reactions to streptokinase.

Prolonged persistence of antibodies to streptokinase can reduce the effectiveness of subsequent treatment; therefore, streptokinase should not be used again beyond 4 days of first administration. Streptokinase should also be avoided in children who have had streptococcal infection in the last 12 months.

**Hepatic impairment** Thrombolytic drugs should be avoided in severe hepatic impairment as there is an increased risk of bleeding.

**Pregnancy** Thrombolytic drugs can possibly lead to premature separation of the placenta in the first 18 weeks of pregnancy. There is also a risk of maternal haemorrhage throughout pregnancy and post-partum, and also a theoretical risk of fetal haemorrhage through-out pregnancy.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of thrombolytics are mainly bleeding, nausea, and vomiting. Reperfusion can cause cerebral and pulmonary oedema. Hypotension can also occur and can usually be controlled by elevating the patient’s legs, or by reducing the rate of infusion or stopping it temporarily. Back pain, fever, and convulsions have been reported. Bleeding is usually limited to the site of injection, but intracerebral haemorrhage or bleeding from other sites can occur. Serious bleeding calls for discontinuation of the thrombolytic and may require administration of coagulation factors and anti-fibrinolytic drugs (e.g. tranexamic acid). Thrombolytics can cause allergic reactions (including rash, flushing and uraemics) and anaphylaxis has been reported (for details of management see Allergic Emergencies, section 3.4.3). Guillain-Barre syndrome has been reported rarely after streptokinase treatment.

**ALTEPLASE** (rt-PA; tissue-type plasminogen activator)

**Cautions** see notes above; in children who have had an acute stroke, monitor for intracranial haemorrhage and monitor blood pressure

**Contra-indications** see notes above; in children who have had an acute stroke, convulsion accompanying stroke, severe stroke, history of stroke in children with diabetes, stroke in last 3 months, hypoglycaemia, hyperglycaemia

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also risk of cerebral bleeding increased in acute stroke

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

#### Intravascular thrombosis

**Doses may vary—consult local guidelines**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 100–500 micrograms/kg/hour for 3–6 hours; use ultrasound assessment to monitor effect before considering a second course of treatment
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 100–500 micrograms/kg/hour for 3–6 hours; max. 100 mg total daily dose; use ultrasound assessment to monitor effect before considering a second course of treatment

**Occluded arteriovenous shunts, catheters, and indwelling central lines**

- **By injection direct into catheter or central line**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** using 1 mg/mL solution, instill up to 2 mL according to dead-space of catheter or central line; aspirate lyase after 4 hours; flush with Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Administration for intravenous infusion**, dissolve in Water for Injections to a concentration of 1 mg/mL or 2 mg/mL and infuse intravenously; alternatively dilute further in Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of not less than 200 micrograms/mL; not to be diluted in Glucose

**Actilyse®** (Boehringer Ingelheim) [\(\text{Alteplase 10 mg (5.8 million units)/vial, net price per vial (with diluent)} \) = £120.00; 20 mg (11.6 million units)/vial (with diluent and transfer device) = £180.00; 50 mg (29 million units)/vial (with diluent, transfer device, and infusion bag) = £300.00

#### STREPTOKINASE

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 18 years

#### Indication and dose

**Intravascular thrombosis**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 2500–4000 units/kg over 30 minutes, followed by continuous intravenous infusion of 500–1000 units/kg/hour for up to 3 days until reperfusion occurs
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 250 000 units over 30 minutes, followed by continuous intravenous infusion of 100 000 units/hour for up to 3 days until reperfusion occurs

**Administration** reconstitute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%, then dilute further with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% after reconstitution. Monitor fibrinogen concentration closely; if fibrinogen concentration less than 1 g/litre, stop streptokinase infusion and start unfractionated heparin; restart streptokinase once fibrinogen concentration reaches 1 g/litre
2.11 Antifibrinolytic drugs and haemostatics

Fibrin dissolution can be impaired by the administration of tranexamic acid, which inhibits fibrinolysis. It can be used to prevent bleeding or treat bleeding associated with excessive fibrinolysis (e.g. in prostatectomy, bladder surgery, in dental extraction in children with haemophilia, and in traumatic hyphaema) and in the management of menorrhagia, it may also be used in hereditary angioedema (section 3.4.3), epistaxis, and thrombolytic overdose. Tranexamic acid can also be used in cardiac surgery to reduce blood loss and to reduce the need for use of blood products.

Desmopressin (section 6.5.2) is used in the management of mild to moderate haemophilia and von Willebrand’s disease. It is also used for testing fibrinolytic response;

therapy); regular liver function tests in long-term treatment of hereditary angioedema

Contra-indications thromboembolic disease; history of convulsions

Renal impairment reduce dose in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment

Pregnancy no evidence of teratogenicity in animal studies; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—crosses the placenta

Breast-feeding small amount present in milk—antifibrinolytic effect in infant unlikely

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea (reduce dose); rarely disturbances in colour vision (discontinue), thromboembolic events, convulsions, allergic skin reactions; dizziness and hypotension on rapid intravenous injection

Licensed use not licensed for reduction of blood loss during cardiac surgery

Indication and dose

Inhibition of fibrinolysis, hereditary angioedema

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–18 years 15–25 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g) 2–3 times daily
  - By intravenous injection over at least 10 minutes
    - Child 1 month–18 years 10 mg/kg (max. 1 g) 2–3 times daily
  - By continuous intravenous infusion
    - Child 1 month–18 years 45 mg/kg over 24 hours

Prevention of excessive bleeding after dental procedures (e.g. in haemophilia)

- By intravenous injection pre-operatively
  - Child 6–18 years 10 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g)

- By mouth pre-operatively
  - Child 6–18 years 15–25 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g)

- By mouth postoperatively
  - Child 6–18 years 15–25 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g) 2–3 times daily for up to 8 days

- Mouthwash 5% solution (specialist use only)
  - Child 6–18 years rinse mouth with 5–10 mL, 4 times daily for 2 days; not to be swallowed

Menorrhagia

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 g 3 times daily for up to 4 days; max. 4 g daily (initiate when menstruation has started)

Reduction of blood loss during cardiac surgery

consult local protocol

Administration for intravenous administration, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Tranexamic acid (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, tranexamic acid 500 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £5.27
2 Cardiovascular system

Indication and dose

very rarely

Cautions

risk of thrombosis or disseminated intravascular coagulation; history of myocardial infarction or cerebrovascular accident; coagulation disorders, fever, pain, and allergic reactions including rash

Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital factor VIII deficiency (haemophilia A), acquired factor VIII deficiency, or von Willebrand’s disease

Consult haematologist

Available from CSL Behring (Haemoctin®), Bayer Schering (ReFacto®), Optivate®, Octanate®; octocog alfa and moroctocog alfa are not indicated for use in von Willebrand’s disease

Note Preparation of recombinant human coagulation factor VIII (octocog alfa) available from CSL Behring (Helixate® NeoxGen), Baxter (Advate®), Bayer Schering (Kogenate® Bayer); preparation of recombinant human coagulation factor VIII (moroctocog alfa) available from Wyeth (ReFacto AIP®).

FACTOR VIII FRACTION, DRIED

(Human Coagulation Factor VIII, Dried)

Dried factor VIII fraction is prepared from human plasma by a suitable fractionation technique; it may also contain varying amounts of von Willebrand factor

Cautions

monitor for development of factor VIII inhibitors; intravascular haemolysis after large or frequently repeated doses in patients with blood groups A, B, or AB—less likely with high potency concentrates; vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required (not necessary with recombinant preparation)

Side-effects

gastro-intestinal disturbances, taste disturbances; flushing, palpitation; dyspnoea, coughing; headache, dizziness, paraesthesia, drowsiness; blurred vision; antibody formation; hypersensitivity reactions including hypotension, angioedema, chills, fever, urticaria, and anaphylaxis

Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital factor VIII deficiency (haemophilia A), acquired factor VIII deficiency, or von Willebrand’s disease

Consult haematologist

Available from Biotest UK (Beriplex® P/N), CSL Behring (Haemate® P), BPL (Optipette® RY®), Grifols (Alphanate®, Fanhdi®), Octapharma (Octanate®, Wilate®)

FACTOR IX FRACTION, DRIED

(Human Prothrombin Complex)

Dried prothrombin complex is prepared from human plasma by a suitable fractionation technique, and contains factor IX, together with variable amounts of factors II, VII, and X

Cautions

risk of thrombosis; disseminated intravascular coagulation; history of myocardial infarction or coronary heart disease; postoperative use; vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required

Contra-indications

angina; recent myocardial infarction (except in life-threatening haemorrhage following overdose of oral anti-coagulants, and before induction of fibrinolytic therapy); history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia

Hepatic impairment

monitor closely (risk of thromboembolic complications)

Side-effects

thrombotic events (including disseminated intravascular coagulation); rarely headache; very rarely pyrexia, antibody formation, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis); nephrotic syndrome also reported

Indication and dose

Treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X if purified specific coagulation factors not available, treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in acquired deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X (e.g. during warfarin treatment—see section 2.8.2)

Consult haematologist

Available from Baxter (Feiba®)

FACTOR VIIIA (RECOMBINANT)

Eptacog alfa (activated)

Cautions

risk of thrombosis or disseminated intravascular coagulation

Side-effects

very rarely nausea, thrombotic events (including myocardial infarction and cerebrovascular accident), coagulation disorders, fever, pain, and allergic reactions including rash

Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital deficiency of factors VIII or IX, acquired haemophilia, factor VII deficiency, or Glanzmann’s thrombasthenia

Consult haematologist

Available from Meda (Optivate®), and Biotest UK (Optivate®)

Blood products

These products should be used on the advice of a haematologist.

FACTOR VIII FRACTION, DRIED

(Human Coagulation Factor VIII, Dried)

Dried factor VIII fraction is prepared from human plasma by a suitable fractionation technique, it may also contain varying amounts of von Willebrand factor

Cautions

monitor for development of factor VIII inhibitors; intravascular haemolysis after large or frequently repeated doses in patients with blood groups A, B, or AB—less likely with high potency concentrates; vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required (not necessary with recombinant preparation)

Side-effects

gastro-intestinal disturbances, taste disturbances; flushing, palpitation; dyspnoea, coughing; headache, dizziness, paraesthesia, drowsiness; blurred vision; antibody formation; hypersensitivity reactions including hypotension, angioedema, chills, fever, urticaria, and anaphylaxis

Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital factor VIII deficiency (haemophilia A), acquired factor VIII deficiency, or von Willebrand’s disease

Consult haematologist

Available from CSL Behring (Haemoctin®), CSL Behring (Haemate® P), BPL (Optipette® RY®), Grifols (Alphanate®, Fanhdi®), Octapharma (Octanate®, Wilate®)

FACTOR IX A (RECOMBINANT)

Eptacog alfa (activated)

Cautions

risk of thrombosis or disseminated intravascular coagulation

Side-effects

very rarely nausea, thrombotic events (including myocardial infarction and cerebrovascular accident), coagulation disorders, fever, pain, and allergic reactions including rash

Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X if purified specific coagulation factors not available, treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in acquired deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X (e.g. during warfarin treatment—see section 2.8.2)

Consult haematologist

Available from Baxter (Feiba®)

FACTOR IX FRACTION, DRIED

(Human Prothrombin Complex)

Dried prothrombin complex is prepared from human plasma by a suitable fractionation technique, and contains factor IX, together with variable amounts of factors II, VII, and X

Cautions

risk of thrombosis; disseminated intravascular coagulation; history of myocardial infarction or coronary heart disease; postoperative use; vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required

Contra-indications

angina; recent myocardial infarction (except in life-threatening haemorrhage following overdose of oral anti-coagulants, and before induction of fibrinolytic therapy); history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia

Hepatic impairment

monitor closely (risk of thromboembolic complications)

Side-effects

thrombotic events (including disseminated intravascular coagulation); rarely headache; very rarely pyrexia, antibody formation, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis); nephrotic syndrome also reported

Indication and dose

Treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X if purified specific coagulation factors not available, treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in acquired deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X (e.g. during warfarin treatment—see section 2.8.2)

Consult haematologist

Available from CSL Behring (Beriplex® P/N), Octapharma (Octaplex®)

FACTOR VIIIA (RECOMBINANT)

Eptacog alfa (activated)

Cautions

risk of thrombosis or disseminated intravascular coagulation

Side-effects

very rarely nausea, thrombotic events (including myocardial infarction and cerebrovascular accident), coagulation disorders, fever, pain, and allergic reactions including rash

Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital deficiency of factors VIII or IX, acquired haemophilia, factor VII deficiency, or Glanzmann’s thrombasthenia

Consult haematologist

Available from Meda (Optivate®), and Biotest UK (Optivate®)
2.12 Lipid-regulating drugs

Atherosclerosis begins in childhood and raised serum cholesterol in children is associated with cardiovascular disease in adulthood. Lowering the cholesterol, without hindering growth and development in children and adolescents, should reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease in later life.

The risk factors for developing cardiovascular disease include raised serum cholesterol concentration, smoking, hypertension, impaired glucose tolerance, male sex, ethnicity, obesity, triglyceride concentration, chronic kidney disease, and a family history of cardiovascular disease. Heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia is the most common cause of raised serum cholesterol in children. Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia is very rare and its specialised management is not covered in *BNF for Children*. Familial hypercholesterolaemia can lead to a greater risk of early coronary heart disease and should be managed by a specialist.

Secondary causes of hypercholesterolaemia should be addressed, these include obesity, diet, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism (see below), nephrotic syndrome, obstructive biliary disease, glycan storage disease, and drugs such as corticosteroids.

Management

The aim of management of hypercholesterolaemia is to reduce the risk of atherosclerosis while ensuring adequate growth and development. Children with hypercholesterolaemia (or their carers) should receive advice on appropriate lifestyle changes such as improved diet, increased exercise, weight reduction, and not smoking; hypertension should also be managed appropriately (section 2.5). Drug therapy may also be necessary and is discussed below.

Hypothyroidism

Children with hypothyroidism should receive adequate thyroid replacement therapy before their requirement for lipid-regulating treatment is assessed because correction of hypothyroidism itself may resolve the lipid abnormality. Untreated hypothyroidism increases the risk of myositis with lipid-regulating drugs.

Drug treatment in heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia

Lifestyle modifications alone are unlikely to lower cholesterol concentration adequately in heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia and drug treatment is often required. Lipid-regulating drugs should be considered by the age of 10 years. The decision to initiate drug treatment will depend on the child’s age, the age of onset of coronary heart disease within the family, and the presence of other cardiovascular risk factors. In children with a family history of coronary heart disease in early adulthood, drug treatment before the age of 10 years, and a combination of lipid-regulating drugs may be necessary.

Drug treatment in secondary hypercholesterolaemia

If 6–12 months of dietary and other lifestyle interventions has failed to lower cholesterol concentration adequately, drug treatment may be indicated in children 10 years and older (rarely necessary in younger children) who are at a high risk of developing cardiovascular disease.

Choice of drugs

Experience in the use of lipid-regulating drugs in children is limited and they should be initiated on specialist advice.

Statins are the drugs of first choice in children and are generally well tolerated; atorvastatin and simvastatin are the preferred statins. Other lipid-regulating drugs can be used if statins are ineffective or are not tolerated.

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances; headache, dizziness; allergic reactions including chills, fever

**Indication and dose**

Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital factor IX deficiency (haemophilia B)

Consult haematologist

Available from CSL Behring (Mononine®, BPL (Replemine®), VF, Dried Factor IX Fraction), Grifols (AlphaNine®)

**Note** Preparation of recombinant coagulation factor IX (nonacog alfa) available from Wyeth (BeneFIX®)

**FACTOR XIII FRACTION, DRIED**

(Human Fibrin-stabilising Factor, Dried)

**Cautions** vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required

**Side-effects** rarely allergic reactions and fever

**Indication and dose**

Congenital factor XIII deficiency

Consult haematologist

Available from CSL Behring (Fibrogammin® P)

**FRESH FROZEN PLASMA**

Fresh frozen plasma is prepared from the supernatant liquid obtained by centrifugation of one donation of whole blood

**Cautions** need for compatibility; vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required

**Contra-indications** circulatory overload; avoid use as a volume expander

**Side-effects** allergic reactions including chills, fever, bronchospasm; acute respiratory distress syndrome

**Indication and dose**

Replacement of coagulation factors or other plasma proteins where their concentration or functional activity is critically reduced

Consult haematologist

Available from Regional Blood Transfusion Services

**Note** Children under 16 years should only receive virucidally inactivated preparations of fresh frozen plasma, sourced from ‘low prevalence BSE regions’ such as the USA

**PROTEIN C CONCENTRATE**

Protein C is prepared from human plasma

**Cautions** hypersensitivity to heparins; vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required

**Side-effects** very rarely fever, bleeding, dizziness, and hypersensitivity reactions

**Indication and dose**

Congenital protein C deficiency

Consult haematologist

Available from Baxter (Ceprotin®)

2.12 Lipid-regulating drugs

The aim of management of hypercholesterolaemia is to reduce the risk of atherosclerosis while ensuring adequate growth and development. Children with hypercholesterolaemia (or their carers) should receive advice on appropriate lifestyle changes such as improved diet, increased exercise, weight reduction, and not smoking; hypertension should also be managed appropriately (section 2.5). Drug therapy may also be necessary and is discussed below.

Hypothyroidism

Children with hypothyroidism should receive adequate thyroid replacement therapy before their requirement for lipid-regulating treatment is assessed because correction of hypothyroidism itself may resolve the lipid abnormality. Untreated hypothyroidism increases the risk of myositis with lipid-regulating drugs.

Drug treatment in heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia

Lifestyle modifications alone are unlikely to lower cholesterol concentration adequately in heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia and drug treatment is often required. Lipid-regulating drugs should be considered by the age of 10 years. The decision to initiate drug treatment will depend on the child’s age, the age of onset of coronary heart disease within the family, and the presence of other cardiovascular risk factors. In children with a family history of coronary heart disease in early adulthood, drug treatment before the age of 10 years, and a combination of lipid-regulating drugs may be necessary.

Drug treatment in secondary hypercholesterolaemia

If 6–12 months of dietary and other lifestyle interventions has failed to lower cholesterol concentration adequately, drug treatment may be indicated in children 10 years and older (rarely necessary in younger children) who are at a high risk of developing cardiovascular disease.

Choice of drugs

Experience in the use of lipid-regulating drugs in children is limited and they should be initiated on specialist advice.

Statins are the drugs of first choice in children and are generally well tolerated; atorvastatin and simvastatin are the preferred statins. Other lipid-regulating drugs can be used if statins are ineffective or are not tolerated.
Ezetimibe can be used alone when statins are not tolerated, or in combination with a statin when a high-dose statin fails to control cholesterol concentration adequately.

Bile acid sequestrants are also available but tolerability of and compliance with these drugs is poor, and their use is declining.

Evidence for the use of a fibrate (bezafibrate or fenofibrate) in children is limited; fibrates should be considered only if dietary intervention and treatment with a statin and a bile acid sequestrant is unsuccessful or contra-indicated.

In hypertriglyceridaemia which cannot be controlled by very strict diet, omega-3 fatty acid compounds can be considered.

**Statins**

The statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin, pravastatin, rosuvastatin, and simvastatin) competitively inhibit 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG CoA) reductase, an enzyme involved in cholesterol synthesis, especially in the liver. They are more effective than other classes of drugs in lowering LDL-cholesterol but less effective than the fibrates in reducing triglycerides. Statins also increase concentrations of HDL-cholesterol.

Statins reduce cardiovascular disease events and total mortality in adults, irrespective of the initial cholesterol concentration.

**Cautions** Hypothyroidism should be managed adequately before starting treatment with a statin (see Hypothyroidism, p. 125). Statins should be used with caution in those with a history of liver disease or with a high alcohol intake—see also Hepatic Impairment, below. There is little information available on a rational approach to liver-function monitoring; however, a NICE guideline suggests that liver enzymes should be measured before treatment, and repeated within 3 months and at 12 months of starting treatment, unless indicated at other times by signs or symptoms suggestive of hepatotoxicity. Those with serum transaminases that are raised, but less than 3 times the upper limit of the reference range, should not be routinely excluded from statin therapy. Those with serum transaminases of more than 3 times the upper limit of the reference range, should be advised to report unexplained muscle pain; see Muscle Effects below. Statins should be used with caution in those with risk factors for myopathy, including females and those with a personal or family history of muscular disorders, previous history of muscular toxicity, those with a high alcohol intake, renal impairment, and, hypothyroidism (see Hypothyroidism, p. 125). There is also an increased incidence of myopathy if a statin is given at a high dose or given with a fibrate, with lipid-lowering doses of nicotinic acid, or with drugs that increase the plasma-statin concentration, such as ciclosporin, close monitoring of liver function and, if symptomatic, of creatine kinase is required in children at increased risk of myopathy.

**Muscle effects** Myalgia, myositis, myopathy, and rarely rhabdomyolysis have been reported with the statins; if myopathy is suspected and creatine kinase is markedly elevated (more than 3 times the upper limit of reference range), or muscular symptoms are severe, treatment should be discontinued; in children at increased risk of muscle effects, a statin should not be started if creatine kinase is elevated. Children at increased risk of myopathy include females and those with a personal or family history of muscular disorders; previous history of muscular toxicity, those with a high alcohol intake, renal impairment, and, hypothyroidism (see Hypothyroidism, p. 125). There is also an increased incidence of myopathy if a statin is given at a high dose or given with a fibrate.

**Counselling** Advise children or their carers to report promptly unexplained muscle pain, tenderness, or weakness.

**Pregnancy** Statins should be avoided in pregnancy as congenital anomalies have been reported and the decreased synthesis of cholesterol possibly affects fetal development. Adequate contraception is required during treatment and for 1 month afterwards.

**Breast-feeding** The manufacturers of atorvastatin, fluvastatin, rosvastatin, and simvastatin advise avoiding use in mothers who are breast-feeding as there is no information available. The manufacturers of pravastatin advise against use in breast-feeding mothers as a small amount of drug is present in breast milk.

**Side-effects** Statins can cause various muscular side-effects, including myopathy, myositis, and rhabdomyolysis. Muscular effects are rare but often significant (see Muscle Effects below). Statins can cause gastro-intestinal disturbances, and very rarely pancreatitis. They can also cause altered liver function tests, and rarely hepatitis and jaundice; hepatic failure has been reported very rarely. Other side-effects include sleep disturbance, headache, dizziness, depression, paraesthesia, hypoesthesia, asthenia, peripheral neuropathy, amnesia, fatigue, sexual dysfunction, thrombocytopenia, arthralgia, visual disturbance, alopecia, and hypersensitivity reactions (including rash, pruritus, urticaria, and very rarely lupus erythematosus-like reactions). In very rare cases statins can cause interstitial lung disease; if children develop symptoms such as dyspnoea, cough, and weight loss, they should seek medical attention.

**ATORVASTATIN**

**Cautions** see notes above; also haemorrhagic stroke

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also chest pain; back pain; pruritus; less commonly anorexia, malaise, weight gain, hypoglycaemia, hyperglycaemia, and tinnitus; rarely cholestatic jaundice and peripheral oedema; very rarely taste disturbances, gynaecomastia, hearing loss, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis
**Indication and dose**

Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 10–18 years** initially 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary at intervals of at least 4 weeks to usual max. 20 mg once daily (max. 80 mg once daily in homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia)

**Note** Reduced dose required with concomitant ciclosporin, clarithromycin, or itraconazole—seek specialist advice

**Lipitor® (Pfizer)**

Tablets, all f/c, atorvastatin (as calcium trihydrate) 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £13.00; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £24.64; 40 mg, 28-tab pack = £24.64; 80 mg, 28-tab pack = £28.21. Counselling, muscle effects, see notes above

---

**PRAVASTATIN SODIUM**

Cautions see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment start with lower doses in moderate to severe impairment

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; less commonly abnormal urination (including dysuria, nocturia, and frequency); very rarely fulminant hepatic necrosis

**Indication and dose**

Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 8–14 years** 10 mg once daily at night, adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks to max. 20 mg once daily at night
  - **Child 14–18 years** 10 mg once daily at night, adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks to max. 40 mg once daily at night

Pravastatin (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, pravastatin sodium 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £17.72; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £22.02; 40 mg, 28-tab pack = £27.78. Counselling, muscle effects, see notes above

Lipostat® (Squibb)

Tablets, all yellow, pravastatin sodium 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £14.18; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £26.01; 40 mg, 28-tab pack = £26.01. Counselling, muscle effects, see notes above

---

**ROSUVASTATIN**

Cautions see notes above; children of Asian origin; use lower max. dose in children with risk factors for myopathy or rhabdomyolysis (including personal or family history of muscular disorders or toxicity)

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also diabetes mellitus, proteinuria; very rarely haematuria; also reported oedema

**Indication and dose**

Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 10–18 years** initially 5 mg daily, increased if necessary at intervals of at least 4 weeks to usual max. 20 mg once daily

**Note** Reduced dose required with concomitant fibrate—seek specialist advice

Creztor® (AstraZeneca)

Tablets, f/c, rosuvastatin (as calcium salt) 5 mg (yellow), net price 28-tab pack = £18.03; 10 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £18.03; 20 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £26.02. Counselling, muscle effects, see notes above
2 Cardiovascular system

**2.12 Lipid-regulating drugs**

**SIMVASTATIN**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** doses above 10 mg daily should be used with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also *rarely* anaemia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 10 years

**Indication and dose**

Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–10 years initially 10 mg at night increased, if necessary, at intervals of at least 4 weeks to max. 20 mg at night
  - Child 10–18 years initially 10 mg at night increased, if necessary, at intervals of at least 4 weeks to max. 40 mg at night
  - Note: Reduced dose required with concomitant ciclosporin, danazol, fibrates (except fenofibrate), amidarone, diltiazem, or verapamil—seek specialist advice

**Bile acid sequestrants**

**Cautions** Bile acid sequestrants interfere with the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins; supplements of vitamins A, D, K, and folic acid may be required when treatment is prolonged and the child’s growth and development should be monitored. **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (bile acid sequestrants).

**Pregnancy and breast-feeding** Bile acid sequestrants should be used with caution as although the drugs are not absorbed, they may cause fat-soluble vitamin deficiency on prolonged use.

**Side-effects** As bile acid sequestrants are not absorbed, gastro-intestinal side-effects predominate. Constipation is common, but diarrhoea has occurred, as have nausea, vomiting, and gastro-intestinal discomfort. Hypertriglyceridaemia may be aggravated. An increased bleeding tendency has been reported due to hypoprothrombinaemia associated with vitamin K deficiency.

**Counselling** Other drugs should be taken at least 1 hour before or 4–6 hours after bile acid sequestrants to reduce possible interference with absorption.

**COLESTYRAMINE**

*(Cholestyramine)*

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** complete biliary obstruction (not likely to be effective)

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; intestinal obstruction reported rarely and hyperchloraemic acidosis reported on prolonged use

**Licensed use** licensed in children over 6 years to reduce cholesterol; see also section 1.9.2

**Indication and dose**

**Familial hypercholesterolaemia**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 6–12 years initially 4 g once daily increased to 4 g up to 3 times daily according to response
  - Child 12–18 years initially 4 g once daily increased by 4 g at weekly intervals to 12–24 g daily in 1–4 divided doses, then adjusted according to response; max. 36 g daily

**Cholestatic pruritus** section 1.9.2

**Diarrhoea** section 1.9.2

**Administration** The contents of each sachet should be mixed with at least 150 mL of water or other suitable liquid such as fruit juice, skimmed milk, thin soups, and pulpy fruits with a high moisture content; total daily dose may be given as a single dose if tolerated

**COLESTYRAMINE** *(Cholestyramine)*

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** complete biliary obstruction (not likely to be effective)

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; intestinal obstruction reported rarely and hyperchloraemic acidosis reported on prolonged use

**Licensed use** licensed in children over 6 years to reduce cholesterol; see also section 1.9.2

**Indication and dose**

**Familial hypercholesterolaemia**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–10 years initially 10 mg at night increased, if necessary, at intervals of at least 4 weeks to max. 20 mg at night
  - Child 10–18 years initially 10 mg at night increased, if necessary, at intervals of at least 4 weeks to max. 40 mg at night
  - Note: Reduced dose required with concomitant ciclosporin, danazol, fibrates (except fenofibrate), amidarone, diltiazem, or verapamil—seek specialist advice

**Bile acid sequestrants**

**Cautions** Bile acid sequestrants interfere with the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins; supplements of vitamins A, D, K, and folic acid may be required when treatment is prolonged and the child’s growth and development should be monitored. **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (bile acid sequestrants).

**Pregnancy and breast-feeding** Bile acid sequestrants should be used with caution as although the drugs are not absorbed, they may cause fat-soluble vitamin deficiency on prolonged use.

**Side-effects** As bile acid sequestrants are not absorbed, gastro-intestinal side-effects predominate. Constipation is common, but diarrhoea has occurred, as have nausea, vomiting, and gastro-intestinal discomfort. Hypertriglyceridaemia may be aggravated. An increased bleeding tendency has been reported due to hypoprothrombinaemia associated with vitamin K deficiency.

**Counselling** Other drugs should be taken at least 1 hour before or 4–6 hours after bile acid sequestrants to reduce possible interference with absorption.
Ezetimibe

Ezetimibe inhibits the intestinal absorption of cholesterol. It is given in combination with a statin or alone if a statin is inappropriate. If ezetimibe is used in combination with a statin, there is an increased risk of rhabdomyolysis (see also Muscle Effects, p. 126).

**Indication and dose**

**Familial hypercholesterolaemia**
- **Child 12–18 years** initially 5 g 1–2 times daily increased if necessary in 5-g increments at intervals of 1 month to max. of 30 g daily in 1–2 divided doses

**Administration** the contents of each sachet should be mixed with at least 100 mL of water or other suitable liquid such as fruit juice or skimmed milk; alternatively it can be mixed with thin soups, cereals, yoghurt, or pulpy fruits ensuring at least 100 mL of liquid is provided; total daily dose may be given as a single dose if tolerated

**Cautions** see notes above

**Pregnancy** manufacturers advise avoid—no information available

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Ezetimibe Tablets**, ezetimibe 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £26.31

---

BEZAFIBRATE

**Cautions** correct hypothyroidism before initiating treatment (see Hypothyroidism, p. 125); see under Myotoxicity below; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (fibrates)

**Contra-indications** hypoaalbuminaemia, primary biliary cirrhosis, gall bladder disease, nephrotic syndrome

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe liver disease

**Renal impairment** reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 15–60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Myotoxicity** Special care needed in children with renal disease, as progressive increases in serum-creatinine concentration or failure to follow dosage guidelines may result in myotoxicity (rhabdomyolysis), discontinue if myotoxicity suspected or creatine kinase concentration increases significantly

**Pregnancy** manufacturers advise avoid—embryotoxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** gastrointestinal disturbances; headache, fatigue, myalgia; rarely arthralgia, hypersensitivity reactions (including rash, angioedema, and anaphylaxis), hepatitis; very rarely pancreatitis, cholelithiasis, cholecystitis, thrombocytopenia, raised creatine kinase, myopathy, and rhabdomyolysis

**Indication and dose**

Adjunct to dietary measures and statin treatment in primary hypercholesterolaemia and homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia (ezetimibe alone in primary hypercholesterolaemia if statin inappropriate or not tolerated); adjunct to dietary measures in homozygous sitosterolaemia
- **By mouth**
- **Child 10–18 years** 10 mg once daily

---

COLESTIPEL HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

**Familial hypercholesterolaemia**
- **Child 12–18 years** initially 5 g 1–2 times daily increased if necessary in 5-g increments at intervals of 1 month to max. of 30 g daily in 1–2 divided doses

**Administration** the contents of each sachet should be mixed with at least 100 mL of water or other suitable liquid such as fruit juice or skimmed milk; alternatively it can be mixed with thin soups, cereals, yoghurt, or pulpy fruits ensuring at least 100 mL of liquid is provided; total daily dose may be given as a single dose if tolerated

**Colestid® (Pharmacia)** granules, yellow, colestipol hydrochloride 5 g/sachet, net price 30 sachets = £15.05. Label: 13, counselling, avoid other drugs at same time (see notes above)

**Colestid Orange**, granules, yellow/orange, colestipol hydrochloride 5 g/sachet, with aspartame, net price 30 sachets = £15.05. Label: 13, counselling, avoid other drugs at same time (see notes above)

**Ezetrol® (MSD, Schering-Plough)** Tablets, ezetimibe 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £26.31

---

Fibrates

Bezafibrate and fenofibrate act mainly by decreasing serum triglycerides; they have variable effects on LDL-cholesterol. Fibrates may reduce the risk of coronary heart disease in those with low HDL-cholesterol or with raised triglycerides.

Fibrates can cause a myositis-like syndrome, especially in children with impaired renal function. Also, combination of a fibrate with a statin increases the risk of muscle effects (especially rhabdomyolysis) and should be used with caution (see Muscle Effects, p. 126).

There is limited evidence to support their use in children and they should only be considered if treatment with a statin and a bile acid sequestrant is unsuccessful or contra-indicated.

---

2.12 Lipid-regulating drugs 129

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**

---

2 Cardiovascular System

---
2.14 Drugs affecting the ductus arteriosus

Closure of the ductus arteriosus

Patent ductus arteriosus is a frequent problem in premature neonates with respiratory distress syndrome. Substantial left-to-right shunting through the ductus arteriosus may increase the risk of intraventricular haemorrhage, necrotising enterocolitis, bronchopulmonary dysplasia, and possibly death.

Indometacin or ibuprofen can be used to close the ductus arteriosus. Indometacin has been used for many years and is effective but it reduces cerebral blood flow, and causes a transient fall in renal and gastrointestinal blood flow. Ibuprofen may also be used; it has little effect on renal function (there may be a small reduction in sodium excretion) when used in doses for closure of the ductus arteriosus; gastrointestinal problems are uncommon.

If drug treatment fails to close the ductus arteriosus, surgery may be indicated.

FENOFIBRATE

Cautions see under Bezafibrate; liver function tests recommended every 3 months for first year (discontinue treatment if significantly raised)

Contra-indications gall bladder disease; photosensitivity to ketoprofen

Hepatic impairment avoid in severe impairment

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Myotoxicity Special care needed in patients with renal disease, as progressive increases in serum-creatinine concentration or failure to follow dosage guidelines may result in myotoxicity (rhabdomyolysis); discontinue if myotoxicity suspected or creatine kinase concentration increases significantly

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid—embryotoxicity in animal studies

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects see under Bezafibrate; also very rarely hepatotoxicity, pancreatitis, and interstitial pneumopathies

Licensed use Lipantil® (Abbott Healthcare) 67 mg is licensed for use in children with hypercholesterolaemia

Indication and dose

Hyperlipidaemias including familial hypercholesterolaemia (on specialist advice only)

• By mouth

  Child 4–15 years 1 capsule/20 kg body-weight daily

  Child 15–18 years initially 3 capsules daily in divided doses; usual range 2–4 capsules daily


IBUPROFEN

Cautions may mask symptoms of infection; monitor for bleeding; monitor gastrointestinal function; allergic disorders; interactions: Appendix 1 (NSAIDs)

Contra-indications life-threatening infection; active bleeding especially intracranial or gastrointestinal; thrombocytopenia or coagulation defects; marked unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia; known or suspected necrotising enterocolitis; pulmonary hypertension

Hepatic impairment increased risk of gastrointestinal bleeding and fluid retention; avoid in severe liver disease

Renal impairment use lowest effective dose and monitor renal function; sodium and water retention; deterioration in renal function possibly leading to renal failure; avoid if possible in severe impairment

Side-effects intestinal perforation; intraventricular haemorrhage; ischaemic brain injury; bronchopulmonary dysplasia, pulmonary haemorrhage; thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, oliguria, haematuria, fluid retention, hyponatraemia; less commonly gastrointestinal haemorrhage; hypoxaemia

Licensed use Orphan licence for the injection for closure of ductus arteriosus in premature neonates less than 34 weeks gestational age

Indication and dose

Closure of ductus arteriosus

• By slow intravenous injection

Neonate initially 10 mg/kg as a single dose followed at 24-hour intervals by 2 doses of 5 mg/kg; course may be repeated after 48 hours if necessary

Mild to moderate pain, pain and inflammation of soft tissue injuries and rheumatic disease, pyrexia section 10.1.1

Administration for slow intravenous injection, give over 15 minutes, preferably undiluted. May be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Pedea® (Orphan Europe) Intravenous solution, Ibuprofen 5 mg/mL, net price 4 x 2-mL vials = £298.00

INDOMETACIN

Cautions see notes above; also may mask symptoms of infection; may reduce urine output by 50% or more (monitor carefully)—see also under Anuria or Oliguria, below and precipitate renal impairment especially if extracellular volume depleted, heart failure, sepsis, or
BNFC 2011–2012

2.14 Drugs affecting the ductus arteriosus

concomitant use of nephrotoxic drugs; may induce hyponatraemia; inhibition of platelet aggregation (monitor for bleeding); interactions: Appendix 1 (NSAIDs)

Contra-indications untreated infection, bleeding (especially with active intracranial haemorrhage or gastro-intestinal bleeding); thrombocytopenia, coagulation defects, necrotising enterocolitis

Hepatic impairment increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention; avoid in severe impairment

Renal impairment use lowest effective dose and monitor renal function; sodium and water retention; deterioration in renal function possibly leading to renal failure; avoid if possible in severe impairment

Anuria or oliguria if anuria or marked oliguria (urinary output less than 0.6 mL/kg/hour), delay further doses until renal function returns to normal

Side-effects haemorrhagic, renal, gastro-intestinal, metabolic, and coagulation disorders; pulmonary hypertension, intracranial bleeding, fluid retention, and exacerbation of infection

Indometacin (Non-proprietary) (NSAIDs)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, indometacin (as sodium trihydrate) Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Indication and dose

Symptomatic ductus arteriosus • By intravenous infusion over 20–30 minutes

Neonate initially 100–200 micrograms/kg as a single dose followed by 2 doses of 100 micrograms/kg at 24-hour intervals; if residual patency present, give 100 micrograms/kg for a further 3 doses at 24-hour intervals

Note Monitor carefully to ensure adequate urine output, see Anuria or Oliguria above

Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease section 10.1.1

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute each vial with 1–2 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Water for Injections

Maintenance of patency

In the newborn with duct-dependent congenital heart disease it is often necessary to maintain the patency of the ductus arteriosus whilst awaiting surgery.

Alprostadil (prostaglandin E1) and dinoprostone (prostaglandin E2) are potent vasodilators that are effective for maintaining the patency of the ductus arteriosus. They are usually given by continuous intravenous infusion, but oral dosing of dinoprostone is still used in some centres.

During the infusion of a prostaglandin, the newborn requires careful monitoring of heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and core body temperature. In the event of complications such as apnoea, profound bradycardia, or severe hypotension, the infusion should be temporarily stopped and the complication dealt with; the infusion should be restarted at a lower dose. Recurrent or prolonged apnoea may require ventilatory support in order for the prostaglandin infusion to continue.

ALPROSTADIL

Cautions see notes above; also history of haemorrhage; avoid in hyaline membrane disease; monitor arterial pressure, respiratory rate, heart rate, temperature, and venous blood pressure in arm and leg; facilities for intubation and ventilation must be immediately available; interactions: Appendix 1 (alprostadil)

Side-effects apnoea (particularly in neonates under 2 kg), flushing, bradycardia, hypotension, tachycardia, cardiac arrest, oedema, diarrhoea, fever, convulsions, disseminated intravascular coagulation, hypokalaemia; cortical proliferation of long bones; weakening of the wall of the ductus arteriosus and pulmonary artery may follow prolonged use; gastric-outlet obstruction reported

Indication and dose

Maintaining patency of the ductus arteriosus • By continuous intravenous infusion

Neonate initially 5 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response in steps of 5 nanograms/kg/minute; max. 100 nanograms/kg/minute (but associated with increased side-effects)

Note Alprostadil doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature

Administration dilute 150 micrograms/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 nanograms/kg/minute. Undiluted solution must not come into contact with the barrel of the plastic syringe; add the required volume of alprostadil to a volume of infusion fluid in the syringe and then make up to final volume

Prostin VR® (Pharmacia) Intravenous solution, alprostadil 500 micrograms/mL in alcohol. For dilution and use as an infusion. Net price 1–mL amp = £75.19 (hosp.only)

DINOPROSTONE

Cautions see notes above; also history of haemorrhage; avoid in hyaline membrane disease; monitor arterial oxygenation, heart rate, temperature, and blood pressure in arm and leg; facilities for intubation and ventilation must be immediately available; interactions: Appendix 1 (prostaglandins)

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises avoid

Renal impairment manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea; flushing, bradycardia, hypotension, cardiac arrest; respiratory depression and apnoea, particularly with high doses and in low birth-weight neonates, bronchospasm; pyrexia and raised white blood cell count, shivering, local reactions, erythema; if used for longer than 5 days, gastric outlet obstruction; cortical hyperostosis (prolonged use)

Licensed use not licensed for use in children
Indication and dose

**Maintaining patency of the ductus arteriosus**

- **By continuous intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** initially 5 nanograms/kg/minute, increased as necessary in 5 nanogram/kg/minute increments to 20 nanograms/kg/minute
  - **Note** Doses up to 100 nanograms/kg/minute have been used but are associated with increased side-effects

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 20–25 micrograms/kg every 1–2 hours doubled if necessary; if treatment continues for more than 1 week gradually reduce the dose

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 1 microgram/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

For administration by mouth, injection solution can be given orally; dilute with water

Prostin® E2 (Pharmacia)

Intravenous solution, for dilution and use as an infusion, dinoprostone 1 mg/mL, net price 0.75-mL amp = £8.52; 10 mg/mL, 0.5-mL amp = £18.40 (both hosp. only)

- Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6
Asthma

Drugs used in the management of asthma include beta2 agonists (section 3.1.1), antimuscarinic bronchodilators (section 3.1.2), theophylline (section 3.1.3), corticosteroids (section 3.2), cromoglicate and nedocromil (section 3.3.1), leukotriene receptor antagonists (section 3.3.2), and in specialist centres, omalizumab (section 3.4.2). For tables outlining the management of chronic asthma and management of acute asthma, see p. 135 and p. 136.

Administration of drugs for asthma

Inhalation This route delivers the drug directly to the airways; the dose required is smaller than when given by mouth and side-effects are reduced. See Inhaler devices, section 3.1.5.

Solutions for nebulisation for use in acute severe asthma are administered over 5–10 minutes from a nebuliser, usually driven by oxygen in hospital. See Nebulisers, section 3.1.5.

Oral Systemic side-effects occur more frequently when a drug is given orally rather than by inhalation. Oral corticosteroids, theophylline, and leukotriene receptor antagonists are sometimes required for the management of asthma. Oral administration of a beta, agonist is generally not recommended for children, but may be necessary in infants and young children who are unable or unwilling to use an inhaler device.

Parenteral Drugs such as beta, agonists, corticosteroids, and aminophylline can be given by injection in acute severe asthma when drug administration by nebulisation is inadequate or inappropriate; in these circumstances the child should generally be treated in a high-dependency or intensive care unit.

Pregnancy and breast-feeding

Women with asthma should be closely monitored during pregnancy. Well-controlled asthma has no important effects on pregnancy, labour, or the fetus. Drugs for
Management of acute asthma:

Important
- Regard each emergency consultation as being for severe acute asthma until shown otherwise.
- Failure to respond adequately at any time requires immediate transfer to hospital.

Severe acute asthma can be fatal and must be treated promptly. Treatment of severe acute asthma is safer in hospital where resuscitation facilities are immediately available. Treatment should never be delayed for investigations, children should never be sedated, and the possibility of a pneumothorax should be considered. If the child’s condition deteriorates despite pharmacological treatment, urgent transfer to a paediatric intensive care unit should be arranged. For a table outlining the management of severe acute asthma, see Management of acute asthma p. 136.

Mild to moderate acute asthma
Administer a short-acting beta₂ agonist using a pressurised metered-dose inhaler with a spacer device; for a child under 3 years use a close-fitting facemask. Give 1 puff every 15–30 seconds up to a maximum of 10 puffs; repeat dose after 10–20 minutes if necessary.

Give prednisolone by mouth, child under 12 years 1–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) once daily for up to 3 days, or longer if necessary; if the child has been taking an oral corticosteroid for more than a few days, give prednisolone 2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) once daily. For children 12–18 years, give prednisolone 40–50 mg daily for at least 5 days. If oral administration is not possible, use intravenous hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate) 4 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) (alternatively, if weight unavailable, child under 2 years 25 mg, 2–5 years 50 mg, 5–18 years 100 mg) every 6 hours.

If response is poor, add nebulised ipratropium bromide, child under 12 years give 250 micrograms every 20–30 minutes for the first 2 hours, then every 4–6 hours as necessary. For children 12–18 years, give ipratropium bromide 500 micrograms every 4–6 hours as necessary.

If the condition does not respond or is life-threatening, transfer the child to an intensive care unit and treat with a parenteral short-acting beta₂ agonist (e.g. salbutamol, section 3.1.1.1) or parenteral aminophylline (section 3.1.3). Children over 2 years with severe acute asthma may be helped by intravenous infusion of magnesium sulphate 40 mg/kg (max. 2 g) over 20 minutes (section 9.5.1.3), but evidence of benefit is limited.

Follow-up in all cases
Episodes of acute asthma should be regarded as a failure of preventive therapy. A careful history should be taken to establish the reason for the exacerbation. Inhaler technique should be checked and regular treatment should be reviewed in accordance with the Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135. Children or their carers should be given an asthma action plan aimed at preventing relapse, optimising treatment, and preventing delay in seeking assistance in future exacerbations. If possible, follow-up within 48 hours should be arranged with the general practitioner or appropriate primary care health professional. Children should also be reviewed in a paediatric asthma clinic within 1–2 months of the exacerbation.

1. Advice on the management of acute asthma is based on the recommendations of the British Thoracic Society and Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (updated June 2009); updates available at www.brit-thoracic.org.uk.

Severe or life-threatening acute asthma
Start treatment below and transfer immediately to hospital. Administer high-flow oxygen (section 3.6) using a close-fitting face mask or nasal prongs.

Treat severe or life-threatening acute exacerbations of asthma with an inhaled short-acting beta₂ agonist (as above). Treatment of life-threatening asthma should be initiated with nebulised salbutamol 2.5 mg or terbutaline 5 mg (via an oxygen-driven nebuliser if available); nebulised doses may be doubled for children over 5 years. Repeat the dose every 20–30 minutes or as necessary, then reduce the frequency on improvement.

Give prednisolone by mouth, child under 12 years 1–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) once daily for up to 3 days, or longer if necessary; if the child has been taking an oral corticosteroid for more than a few days, give prednisolone 2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) once daily. For children 12–18 years, give prednisolone 40–50 mg daily for at least 5 days. If oral administration is not possible, use intravenous hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate) 4 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) (alternatively, if weight unavailable, child under 2 years 25 mg, 2–5 years 50 mg, 5–18 years 100 mg) every 6 hours.

If response is poor, add nebulised ipratropium bromide, child under 12 years give 250 micrograms every 20–30 minutes for the first 2 hours, then every 4–6 hours as necessary. For children 12–18 years, give ipratropium bromide 500 micrograms every 4–6 hours as necessary.

If the condition does not respond or is life-threatening, transfer the child to an intensive care unit and treat with a parenteral short-acting beta₂ agonist (e.g. salbutamol, section 3.1.1.1) or parenteral aminophylline (section 3.1.3). Children over 2 years with severe acute asthma may be helped by intravenous infusion of magnesium sulphate 40 mg/kg (max. 2 g) over 20 minutes (section 9.5.1.3), but evidence of benefit is limited.

Follow-up in all cases
Episodes of acute asthma should be regarded as a failure of preventive therapy. A careful history should be taken to establish the reason for the exacerbation. Inhaler technique should be checked and regular treatment should be reviewed in accordance with the Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135. Children or their carers should be given an asthma action plan aimed at preventing relapse, optimising treatment, and preventing delay in seeking assistance in future exacerbations. If possible, follow-up within 48 hours should be arranged with the general practitioner or appropriate primary care health professional. Children should also be reviewed in a paediatric asthma clinic within 1–2 months of the exacerbation.

1. Advice on the management of acute asthma is based on the recommendations of the British Thoracic Society and Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (updated June 2009); updates available at www.brit-thoracic.org.uk.
Management of chronic asthma

**Important** Start at step most appropriate to initial severity; before initiating a new drug consider whether diagnosis is correct, check compliance and inhaler technique, and eliminate trigger factors for acute exacerbations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Child 5–18 years</th>
<th>Child under 5 years*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1: occasional relief bronchodilator</strong></td>
<td><strong>Step 1: occasional relief bronchodilator</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required (up to once daily)</td>
<td>Short-acting beta, agonist as required (not more than once daily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Move to step 2 if needed more than twice a week, or if night-time symptoms more than once a week, or if exacerbation in the last 2 years</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Preferably by inhalation (less effective and more side-effects when given as tablets or syrup)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2: regular inhaled preventer therapy** | **Step 2: regular preventer therapy** |
| Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required **plus** | Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required **plus** |
| Regular standard-dose\(^1\) inhaled corticosteroid (alternatives\(^2\) are considerably less effective) | Regular standard-dose\(^1\) inhaled corticosteroid **Or** leukotriene receptor antagonist if inhaled corticosteroid cannot be used |

| **Step 3: inhaled corticosteroid + inhaled long-acting beta, agonist** | **Step 3: add-on therapy** |
| Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required **plus** | Child under 2 years: |
| Regular standard-dose\(^1\) inhaled corticosteroid **plus** | Refer to respiratory paediatrician |
| Regular inhaled long-acting beta, agonist (salmeterol or formoterol) **if asthma not controlled** | Child 2–5 years: |
| Increase dose of inhaled corticosteroid to upper end of standard dose range\(^1\) **and** | Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required **plus** |
| **Either** stop long-acting beta, agonist if of no benefit **Or** continue long-acting beta, agonist **if of some benefit** **if asthma still not controlled and long-acting beta, agonist stopped, add one of** | Leukotriene receptor antagonist **plus** |
| Leukotriene receptor antagonist **Modified-release oral theophylline** | Leukotriene receptor antagonist **Step 4: persistent poor control** |
| **Step 4: high-dose inhaled corticosteroid + regular bronchodilators** | Refer to respiratory paediatrician |
| Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required **with** | **Stepping down** |
| Regular high-dose\(^2\) inhaled corticosteroid **plus** | Regularly review need for treatment |
| Inhaled long-acting beta, agonist (if of benefit) **plus** | **1. Standard doses of inhaled corticosteroids** |
| A 6-week sequential therapeutic trial of one or more of | Beclometasone dipropionate or budesonide: |
| Leukotriene receptor antagonist | Child under 12 years 100–200 micrograms twice daily; |
| **Modified-release oral theophylline** | Child 12–18 years 100–400 micrograms twice daily. |

| **Step 5: regular corticosteroid tablets** | **2. Alternatives to inhaled corticosteroids are leukotriene receptor antagonists, theophylline, inhaled nedocromil, or inhaled cromoglicate** |
| Refer to respiratory paediatrician | |
| Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist as required **with** | |
| Regular high-dose\(^2\) inhaled corticosteroid **and** | |
| One or more long-acting bronchodilators (see step 4) **plus** | |
| Regular prednisolone tablets (as single daily dose) **Note** | In addition to regular prednisolone, continue high-dose \(\text{inhaled corticosteroid (in exceptional cases may exceed licensed doses)}\) |

| **Stepping down** | **4. Lung-function measurements cannot be used to guide management in those under 5 years** |
| Review treatment every 3 months; if control achieved | |
| stepwise reduction may be possible; reduce dose of | |
| inhaled corticosteroid slowly (consider reduction every 3 | |
| months, decreasing dose by up to 50% each time) to the | |
| lowest dose which controls asthma | |
### Management of acute asthma

**Important** The assessment of acute asthma in early childhood can be difficult. Children with severe or life-threatening acute asthma may not be distressed and may not have all of these abnormalities; the presence of any should alert the doctor. Regard each emergency consultation as being for severe acute asthma until shown otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moderate acute asthma</th>
<th>Severe acute asthma</th>
<th>Life-threatening acute asthma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symptoms</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child under 12 years too breathless to talk or feed, 12–18 years cannot complete sentences in one breath</td>
<td></td>
<td>Silent chest, cyanosis, poor respiratory effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use of accessory breathing muscles</td>
<td>Anrhthmia, hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Respiration (breaths/minute) Child 2–5 years &lt; 40, 5–12 years ≤ 30, 12–18 years ≤ 25</td>
<td>Exhaustion, altered consciousness, agitation, confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pulse (beats/minute) Child 2–5 years ≤ 140, 5–12 years ≤ 125, 12–18 years ≤ 110</td>
<td>Arterial oxygen saturation &lt;92%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arterial oxygen saturation ≥ 92%</td>
<td>Peak flow &lt; 33% of predicted or best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peak flow Child 5–12 years ≥ 50% of predicted or best, 12–18 years ≥ 50%</td>
<td>Start treatment below and send immediately to hospital; consult with senior medical staff and refer to paediatric intensive care</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moderate acute asthma</th>
<th>Severe acute asthma</th>
<th>Life-threatening acute asthma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist</strong> via a large-volume spacer (and a close-fitting face mask if child under 3 years) or oxygen-driven nebuliser (if available); give 2–10 puffs of salbutamol 100 micrograms/ metered inhalation each inhaled separately, and repeat at 10–20 minute intervals if necessary or give nebulised salbutamol, Child under 5 years 2.5 mg, 5–12 years 2.5–5 mg, 12–18 years 5 mg or terbutaline, Child under 5 years 5 mg, 5–12 years 5–10 mg, 12–18 years 10 mg, and repeat at 20–30 minute intervals as necessary</td>
<td><strong>Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist</strong> via a large-volume spacer (and a close-fitting face mask if child under 3 years) or oxygen-driven nebuliser (if available) as for moderate acute asthma</td>
<td><strong>Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist</strong> via oxygen-driven nebuliser (if available); give salbutamol, Child under 5 years 2.5 mg, 5–12 years 2.5–5 mg, 12–18 years 5 mg, or terbutaline, Child under 5 years 5 mg, 5–12 years 5–10 mg, 12–18 years 10 mg, and repeat as necessary; reserve intravenous beta, agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prednisolone</strong> by mouth Child under 12 years 1–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) daily for up to 3 days or longer if necessary; if the child has been taking an oral corticosteroid for more than a few days, give prednisolone 2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg), Child 12–18 years 40–50 mg daily for at least 5 days</td>
<td><strong>Prednisolone</strong> by mouth as for moderate acute asthma or intravenous hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate) 4 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) (alternatively, if weight unavailable, Child under 2 years 25 mg, 2–5 years 50 mg, 5–18 years 100 mg) every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible</td>
<td><strong>Prednisolone</strong> by mouth as for moderate acute asthma or intravenous hydrocortisone as for severe acute asthma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitor response for 15–30 minutes**

**High-flow oxygen** (if available)

**Inhaled short-acting beta, agonist** via a large-volume spacer (and a close-fitting face mask if child under 3 years) or oxygen-driven nebuliser (if available) as for moderate acute asthma

**Prednisolone** by mouth as for moderate acute asthma or intravenous hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate) 4 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) (alternatively, if weight unavailable, Child under 2 years 25 mg, 2–5 years 50 mg, 5–18 years 100 mg) every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible

**Monitor response for 15–30 minutes**

**Inhaled ipratropium bromide** via oxygen-driven nebuliser (if available) as for severe acute asthma

**Refer those who fail to respond and require ventilatory support to a paediatric intensive care or high-dependency unit**

**Consider intravenous beta, agonists, aminophylline, or magnesium sulphate** (unlicensed indication) only after consultation with senior medical staff

**Follow up in all cases**

Monitor symptoms and peak flow. Set up asthma action plan and check inhaler technique with child and carer.

Review by general practitioner or appropriate primary care health professional within 48 hours; see also p. 134

Advice on the management of acute asthma is based on the recommendations of the British Thoracic Society and Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (updated June 2009); updates available at [www.brit-thoracic.org.uk](http://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk)
Croup
Mild croup is largely self-limiting, but treatment with a single dose of a corticosteroid (e.g. dexamethasone 150 micrograms/kg) by mouth is of benefit.
Severe croup (or mild croup that might cause complications) calls for hospital admission—a single dose of either dexamethasone 150 micrograms/kg or prednisolone 1–2 mg/kg, can be administered by mouth before transfer to hospital. In hospital, dexamethasone 150 micrograms/kg (by mouth or by injection) or budesonide 2 mg by nebulisation (section 3.2) will often reduce symptoms; the dose may be repeated after 12 hours if necessary.
For severe croup not effectively controlled with corticosteroid treatment, nebulised adrenaline (section 3.4.3) solution 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) can be given with close clinical monitoring in a dose of 400 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg) repeated after 30 minutes if necessary (the dose may be diluted with sterile sodium chloride 0.9% solution). The effects of nebulised adrenaline last 2–3 hours; the child needs to be carefully monitored for recurrence of the obstruction.

Long-acting beta 2 agonists
Formoterol and salmeterol are longer-acting beta 2 agonists which are administered by inhalation. They should be used for asthma only in children who regularly use an inhaled corticosteroid (see CHM advice below). They have a role in the long-term control of chronic asthma (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135) and they can be useful in nocturnal asthma. Salmeterol should not be used for the relief of an asthma attack; it has a slower onset of action than salbutamol or terbutaline. Formoterol is licensed for short-term symptom relief and for the prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm; its speed of onset of action is similar to that of salbutamol.
Combination inhalers that contain a long-acting beta 2 agonist, agonist and a corticosteroid (section 3.2) ensure that long-acting beta 2 agonists are not used without concomitant corticosteroids, but reduce the flexibility to adjust the dose of each component.

CHM advice
To ensure safe use, the CHM has advised that for the management of chronic asthma, long-acting beta 2 agonists (formoterol and salmeterol) should:
• be added only if regular use of standard-dose inhaled corticosteroids has failed to control asthma adequately;
• not be initiated in patients with rapidly deteriorating asthma;
• be introduced at a low dose and the effect monitored before considering dose increase;
• be discontinued in the absence of benefit;
• not be used for the relief of exercise-induced asthma symptoms unless regular inhaled corticosteroids are also used;
• be reviewed as clinically appropriate; stepping down therapy should be considered when good long-term asthma control has been achieved.
A daily dose of 24 micrograms of formoterol should be sufficient for the majority of children, particularly for younger age-groups; higher doses should be used rarely, and only when control is not maintained on the lower dose.
Children and their carers should be advised to report any deterioration in symptoms following initiation of treatment with a long-acting beta 2 agonist, agonist, see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135.

Inhalation
A pressurised metered-dose inhaler is an effective method of drug administration in mild to moderate chronic asthma; to deliver the drug effectively particularly in children under 12 years, a spacer device should be used (see also NICE guidance, section 3.1.5). When a pressurised metered-dose inhaler with a spacer is unsuitable or inconvenient, a dry-powder inhaler or breath-actuated inhaler may be used instead if the child is able to use the device effectively. At recommended inhaled doses the duration of action of salbutamol and terbutaline is about 3 to 5 hours and for salmeterol and formoterol is about 12 hours. The dose, the frequency, and the maximum number of inhalations in 24 hours of the beta, agonist should be stated explicitly to the child and the child's carer. High doses of beta, agonists can be dangerous in some children (see Cautions, below). Excessive use is usually an indication of inadequately
controlled asthma and should be managed with a prophylactic drug such as an inhaled corticosteroid. The child and the child’s carer should be advised to seek medical advice when the prescribed dose of beta, agonist fails to provide the usual degree of symptomatic relief because this usually indicates a worsening of the asthma and the child may require alternative medication (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135).

Children and their carers should be advised to follow manufacturers’ instructions on the care and cleansing of inhaler devices.

Nebuliser (or respirator) solutions of salbutamol and terbutaline are used for the treatment of severe acute asthma both in hospital and in general practice. Children with a severe attack of asthma should have oxygen if possible during nebulisation since beta, agonists can increase arterial hypoxaemia, see also section 3.1.5.

Oral Oral preparations of beta, agonists may be used for children if an inhaler device cannot be used but inhaled beta, agonists are more effective and have fewer side-effects. A modified-release formulation of salbutamol may be of value in nocturnal asthma as an alternative to modified-release theophylline preparations (section 3.1.3), but an inhaled long-acting beta, agonist is preferable.

Parenteral Beta, agonists can be given intravenously in children with severe or life-threatening acute asthma. Chronic asthma unresponsive to stepwise treatment (see Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135) may benefit from continuous subcutaneous infusion of a beta, agonist, but this should be used only under the supervision of a respiratory specialist; the evidence of benefit is uncertain and it may be difficult to withdraw such treatment once started.

Cautions Beta, agonists should be used with caution in diabetes—monitor blood glucose (risk of ketoacidosis, especially when a beta, agonist is given intravenously). Beta, agonists should also be used with caution in hyperthyroidism, cardiovascular disease, arrhythmias, susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation, and hypertension. Interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics, beta,).

Hypokalaemia Potentially serious hypokalaemia may result from beta, agonist therapy. Particular caution is required in severe asthma, because this effect may be potentiated by concomitant treatment with theophylline and its derivatives, corticosteroids, and diuretics, and by hypoxia. Plasma-potassium concentration should therefore be monitored in severe asthma.

Side-effects Side-effects of the beta, agonists include fine tremor (particularly in the hands), nervous tension, headache, peripheral dilatation and palpitation. Other side-effects include tachycardia, arrhythmias, peripheral vasodilation, myocardial ischaemia, and disturbances of sleep and behaviour. Muscle cramps and hypersensitivity reactions including paradoxical bronchospasm (occasionally severe), urticaria, angioedema, hypotension, and collapse have also been reported. High doses of beta, agonists are associated with hypokalaemia (see Hypokalaemia, above).

**FORMOTEROL FUMARATE**
(Eformoterol fumarate)

Note For use in asthma only in children who regularly use an inhaled corticosteroid, see notes above

Cautions see notes above

Pregnancy see p. 133

Breast-feeding see p. 133

Side-effects see notes above; nausea, dizziness, rash, taste disturbances, and pruritus also reported

**Indication and dose**

Reversible airways obstruction (including nocturnal asthma and prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm) in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy see also Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135; for dose see preparations below

Counselling Advise children and carers not to exceed prescribed dose, and to follow manufacturer’s directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled formoterol fails to provide adequate relief, a doctor’s advice should be obtained as soon as possible

Formoterol (Non-proprietary) 

Dry powder for inhalation, formoterol fumarate 12 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £23.75. Counselling, administration

Brands include Easyhaler® Formoterol

**Dose**

Chronic asthma

- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 6–18 years 12 micrograms twice daily, increased to 24 micrograms twice daily in more severe airways obstruction (see also CHM advice above)

Atimos Modulite® (Chiesi) 

Aerosol inhalation, formoterol fumarate 12 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 100-dose unit = £39.06. Counselling, administration

**Dose**

Chronic Asthma

- By aerosol inhalation
  - Child 12–18 years 12 micrograms twice daily, increased to max. 24 micrograms twice daily in more severe airways obstruction

Foradil® (Novartis) 

Dry powder for inhalation, formoterol fumarate 12 micrograms/capsule, net price 60-cap pack (with inhaler device) = £23.38. Counselling, administration

**Dose**

Chronic asthma

- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 5–12 years 12 micrograms twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years 12 micrograms twice daily, increased to 24 micrograms twice daily in more severe airways obstruction

Oxis® (AstraZeneca) 

Turbohaler® (= dry powder inhaler), formoterol fumarate 6 micrograms/inhalation, net price 60-dose unit = £24.80; 12 micrograms/inhalation, 60-dose unit = £24.80. Counselling, administration

**Dose**

Chronic asthma

- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 6–18 years 6–12 micrograms 1–2 times daily; occasionally up to 48 micrograms daily may be needed (max. single dose 12 micrograms); reassess treatment if additional doses required on more than 2 days a week (see also CHM advice above)
Relief of bronchospasm
- By inhalation of powder
  Child 6–18 years 6–12 micrograms

Prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm
- By inhalation of powder
  Child 6–18 years 6–12 micrograms before exercise

**Compound preparations**
For compound preparations containing formoterol, see section 3.2

**SALBUTAMOL**
(Albuterol)

**Cautions** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see p. 133

**Breast-feeding** see p. 133

**Side-effects** see notes above; also lactic acidosis with high doses

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in hyperkalaemia; syrup not licensed for use in children under 2 years; modified-release tablets not licensed for use in children; Pulvinal® *Salbutamol* not licensed for use in children under 6 years

**Indication and dose**

**Acute asthma**
- By aerosol or nebulised solution inhalation
  See Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134

- By intravenous injection over 5 minutes (see also Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134)
  Child 1 month–2 years 5 micrograms/kg as a single dose
  Child 2–18 years 15 micrograms/kg (max. 250 micrograms) as a single dose

- By continuous intravenous infusion
  Child 1 month–18 years 1–2 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response and heart rate up to 5 micrograms/kg/minute; doses above 2 micrograms/kg/minute should be given in an intensive care setting

**Exacerbations of reversible airways obstruction (including nocturnal asthma) and prevention of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm, see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135**

- By aerosol inhalation
  Child 1 month–18 years 100–200 micrograms (1–2 puffs); for persistent symptoms up to 4 times daily

- By inhalation of powder
  (for Asmasal Clickhaler®, Salbulin Novolizer®, and Ventolin Accuhaler® doses, see under preparations)
  Child 5–12 years 200 micrograms; for persistent symptoms up to 4 times daily
  Child 12–18 years 200–400 micrograms; for persistent symptoms up to 4 times daily

- By mouth (but use by inhalation preferred)
  Child 1 month–2 years 100 micrograms/kg (max. 2 mg) 3–4 times daily

**Severe hyperkalaemia (section 9.2.1.1)**
- By intravenous injection over 5 minutes
  Neonate 4 micrograms/kg as a single dose; repeat if necessary
  Child 1 month–18 years 4 micrograms/kg as a single dose; repeat if necessary

- By inhalation of nebulised solution (but intravenous injection preferred)
  Neonate 2.5–5 mg as a single dose; repeat if necessary
  Child 1 month–18 years 2.5–5 mg as a single dose; repeat if necessary

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 200 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, or Water for injections

For intravenous injection, dilute to a concentration of 50 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5%, Sodium Chloride 0.9%, or Water for injections

For nebulisation, dilute nebuliser solution with a suitable volume of sterile Sodium Chloride 0.9% solution according to nebuliser type and duration of administration; salbutamol and ipratropium bromide solutions are compatible and can be mixed for nebulisation

**Oral**

Salbutamol (Non-proprietary)
- Tablets, salbutamol (as sulphate) 2 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £17.74; 4 mg, 28-tab pack = £16.40
- Oral solution, salbutamol (as sulphate) 2 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £1.55

Brands include Salopin® (sugar-free)

Ventmax® SR (Chiesi)
- Capsules, m/r, salbutamol (as sulphate) 4 mg (green/grey), net price 56-cap pack = £8.08; 8 mg (white), 56-cap pack = £9.69. Label: 25

**Dose**

Chronic asthma (but see notes above)
- By mouth
  Child 3–12 years 4 mg twice daily
  Child 12–18 years 8 mg twice daily

Ventolin® (A&H)
- Syrup, sugar-free, salbutamol (as sulphate) 2 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = 60p

**Parenteral**

Ventolin® (A&H)
- Injection, salbutamol (as sulphate) 500 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 58p

Solution for intravenous infusion, salbutamol (as sulphate) 1 mg/mL. Dilute before use. Net price 5-mL amp = £2.48
### Inhalaion

**Counselling** Advise children and carers not to exceed prescribed dose and to follow manufacturer’s directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled salbutamol fails to provide at least 3 hours relief, a doctor’s advice should be obtained as soon as possible.

**Salbutamol (Non-proprietary)**

- **Aerosol inhalation, salbutamol (as sulphate)**
  - 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £1.97. Counselling, administration

- **Dry powder for inhalation, salbutamol 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £3.19. Counselling, administration**

- **Brands include** 
  - Easyhaler® Salbutamol, Pulvina® Salbutamol

- **Nebuliser solution, salbutamol (as sulphate) 1 mg/mL, net price 20 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £0.63. Counselling, administration**

- **Brands include** 
  - Salamed Neb®

- **Airomir® (IVAX)**
  - **Aerosol inhalation, salbutamol (as sulphate)**
    - 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £1.97. Counselling, administration

- **Autohaler (breath-actuated aerosol inhalation), salbutamol (as sulphate) 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £6.02. Counselling, administration**

- **Asmasal Clickhaler® (UCB Pharma)**
  - **Dry powder for inhalation, salbutamol (as sulphate)**
    - 95 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £5.65. Counselling, administration

**Dose**

- **Acute bronchospasm**
  - By inhalation of powder
    - Child 5–18 years 1–2 puffs; for persistent symptoms up to 4 times daily (but see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135)

- **Prophylaxis of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm**
  - By inhalation of powder
    - Child 5–18 years 1–2 puffs

- **Salbutamol Easi-Breathe® (IVAX)**
  - **Aerosol inhalation, salbutamol 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose breath-actuated unit = £6.30. Counselling, administration**

- **Salbutin Novolizer® (Meda)**
  - **Dry powder for inhalation, salbutamol (as sulphate)**
    - 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price refillable 200-dose unit = £4.95; 200-dose refill = £2.75. Counselling, administration

**Dose**

- **Acute bronchospasm**
  - By inhalation of powder
    - Child 6–12 years 100–200 micrograms; for persistent symptoms up to 400 micrograms daily (but see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135)
    - Child 12–18 years 100–200 micrograms; for persistent symptoms up to 800 micrograms daily (but see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135)

**Salmeterol**

Note: Not for immediate relief of acute attacks; for use in asthma only in children who regularly use an inhaled corticosteroid, see notes above.

**Cautions** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see p. 133

**Breast-feeding** see p. 133

**Side-effects** see notes above; nausea, dizziness, arthralgia, and rash also reported

**Indication and dose**

Reversible airways obstruction (including nocturnal asthma and prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm) in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135

- **By inhalation**
  - Child 5–12 years 50 micrograms (2 puffs or 1 blister) twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years 50 micrograms (2 puffs or 1 blister) twice daily; up to 100 micrograms (4 puffs or 2 blisters) twice daily in more severe airways obstruction

Counselling: Advise children and carers that salmeterol should not be used for relief of acute attacks, not to exceed prescribed dose, and to follow manufacturer’s directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled salmeterol fails to provide adequate relief, a doctor’s advice should be obtained as soon as possible.

**Serevent® (A&H)**

Accuhaler® (dry powder for inhalation), disk containing 60 blisters of salmeterol (as xinafoate) 50 micrograms/blister with Accuhaler® device, net price = £29.26. Counselling, administration
3.1.2 Antimuscarinic bronchodilators

**TERBUTALINE SULPHATE**

**Indication and dose**

**Acute asthma**
- By inhalation of nebulised solution
  - See Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134
- By subcutaneous or slow intravenous injection
  - Child 2–15 years: 10 micrograms/kg (max. 300 micrograms) up to 4 times daily
  - Child 15–18 years: 250–500 micrograms up to 4 times daily
- By continuous intravenous infusion
  - Child 1 month–18 years: initially 2–4 micrograms/kg as a loading dose, then 1–10 micrograms/kg/hour according to response and heart rate (doses above 10 micrograms/kg/hour with close monitoring)

**Exacerbations of reversible airways obstruction (including nocturnal asthma) and prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm** see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135

- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 5–18 years: 500 micrograms (1 inhalation) up to 4 times daily (for occasional use only)
- By mouth (but not recommended)
  - Child 1 month–7 years: 75 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) 3 times daily
  - Child 7–15 years: 2.5 mg 2–3 times daily
  - Child 15–18 years: initially 2.5 mg 3 times daily, increased if necessary to 5 mg 3 times daily

**Administration** For continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 5 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; if fluid-restricted, dilute to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL.

For nebulisation, dilute nebuliser solution with sterile Sodium Chloride 0.9% solution according to nebuliser type and duration of administration; terbutaline and ipratropium bromide solutions are compatible and may be mixed for nebulisation.

### Oral and parenteral

- **Bricanyl** (AstraZeneca)
  - Tablets, scored, terbutaline sulphate 5 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £4.09
  - Syrup, sugar-free, terbutaline sulphate 1.5 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £2.00
  - Injection, terbutaline sulphate 500 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 30p; 5-mL amp = £1.40

### Inhalation

**Cautions** Advise children and carers not to exceed prescribed dose and to follow manufacturer’s directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled terbutaline fails to provide at least 3 hours relief, a doctor’s advice should be obtained as soon as possible

- **Bricanyl** (AstraZeneca)
  - Turbohaler® (= dry powder inhaler, terbutaline sulphate 500 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 100-dose unit = £6.92. Counselling, administration needed to protect the child’s eyes from nebulised drug or from drug powder

- **Respules®** (= single-dose units for nebulisation), terbutaline sulphate 2.5 mg/mL, net price 20 × 2-mL units (5 mg) = £4.04

### Other adrenoceptor agonists

**Adrenaline (epinephrine) injection** (1 in 1000) is used in the emergency treatment of acute allergic and ana phylactic reactions (section 3.4.3), in angioedema (section 3.4.3), and in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (section 2.7.3). Adrenaline solution (1 in 1000) is used by nebulisation in the management of severe croup (section 3.1).

### Antimuscarinic bronchodilators

**Ipratropium** by nebulisation can be added to other standard treatment in life-threatening acute asthma or if acute asthma fails to improve with standard therapy (see Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134). Ipratropium can be used to provide short-term relief in chronic asthma, but short-acting beta, agonists act more quickly and are preferred.

The aerosol inhalation of ipratropium has a maximum effect 30–60 minutes after use; its duration of action is 3 to 6 hours.

### IPRATROPIUM BROMIDE

**Cautions** risk of glaucoma (see below), bladder outflow obstruction; interactions: Appendix 1 (antimuscarinics)

Glaucoma: Acute angle-closure glaucoma reported with nebulised ipratropium, particularly when given with nebulised salbutamol (and possibly other beta2 agonists); care needed to protect the child’s eyes from nebulised drug or from drug powder

**Pregnancy** see p. 133

**Breast-feeding** see p. 133

**Side-effects** dry mouth, nausea, throat irritation, cough, headache, dizziness; less commonly diarrhoea, constipation, vomiting, palpitation, tachycardia, bronchospasm (including paradoxical bronchospasm), laryngospasm, pharyngeal oedema, urinary retention, blurred vision, mydriasis, raised intra-ocular pressure, angle-closure glaucoma, eye pain, con-
Theophylline is a xanthine used as a bronchodilator in the treatment of asthma. It can be given by inhalation of nebulised solution, intravenous injection, or orally as a capsule or tablet. Theophylline is metabolised in the liver and is excreted in the urine. Its therapeutic window is narrow, and its plasma concentration needs to be monitored closely to avoid toxicity. Theophylline should be used with caution in children, as they are more sensitive to its side effects. Theophylline is used in the management of acute asthma and chronic asthma. It is contraindicated in patients with hepatic impairment, acute porphyria, and in neonates. In some cases, aminophylline may be used as a respiratory stimulant in neonates with apnoea. If a loading dose of aminophylline is to be given to children who are already taking theophylline, because serious side-effects such as convulsions and arrhythmias can occasionally precede other symptoms of toxicity. Theophylline is metabolised in the liver. The plasma-theophylline concentration is increased in heart failure, hepatic impairment, viral infections, and by drugs that inhibit its metabolism. The plasma-theophylline concentration is decreased in smokers, by alcohol consumption, and by drugs that induce its metabolism. For interactions of theophylline, see Appendix 1.

**3.1.3 Theophylline**

Theophylline is a xanthine used as a bronchodilator in asthma, as management of Chronic Asthma p. 135. It may have an additive effect when used in conjunction with small doses of beta, agonists; the combination may increase the risk of side-effects, including hypokalaemia (see p. 138). Theophylline is given by injection as aminophylline, a mixture of theophylline with ethylenediamine, which is 20 times more soluble than theophylline alone. Aminophylline injection is needed rarely for severe acute asthma (see Management of Acute Asthma p. 136). It must be given by very slow intravenous injection (over at least 20 minutes) or by intravenous infusion; it is too irritant for intramuscular use. Intravenous aminophylline may be used as a respiratory stimulant in neonates with apnoea, but caffeine, a xanthine derivative, (section 3.5.1) is usually preferred. Measurement of plasma-theophylline concentration may be helpful and is essential if a loading dose of aminophylline is to be given to children who are already taking theophylline, because serious side-effects such as convulsions and arrhythmias can occasionally precede other symptoms of toxicity. Theophylline is metabolised in the liver. The plasma-theophylline concentration is increased in heart failure, hepatic impairment, viral infections, and by drugs that inhibit its metabolism. The plasma-theophylline concentration is decreased in smokers, by alcohol consumption, and by drugs that induce its metabolism. For interactions of theophylline, see Appendix 1.

**Plasma-theophylline concentration** In most individuals a plasma-theophylline concentration of 10–20 mg/litre (55–110 micromol/litre) is required for satisfactory bronchodilation, but a lower concentration of 5–15 mg/litre may be effective. Adverse effects can occur within the range 10–20 mg/litre and both the frequency and severity increase if the concentration exceeds 20 mg/litre. In neonates, toxic symptoms sometimes occur when the plasma-theophylline concentration exceeds 14 mg/litre (78 micromol/litre). If theophylline is used in the treatment of neonatal apnoea, the usual target range is 8–12 mg/litre (44–66 micromol/litre).

Plasma-theophylline concentration is measured 5 days after starting oral treatment and at least 3 days after any dose adjustment. A blood sample should be taken 1–2 hours after an oral dose (after 4–6 hours in the case of a modified-release preparation). If aminophylline is given intravenously, a blood sample should be taken 4–6 hours after starting treatment.

**Cautions** see notes above; also cardiac arrhythmias or other cardiac disease, hypertension, hyperthyroidism; peptic ulcer; epilepsy; fever; hypokalaemia risk, p. 138; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); monitor plasma-theophylline concentration (see notes above); dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment; interactions: Appendix 1 (theophylline) and notes above.

**Hepatic impairment** reduce dose

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—irritability in infant reported; modified-release preparations preferable; see also p. 133

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, gastric irritation, diarrhoea, palpitation, tachycardia, arrhythmias, headache, CNS stimulation, insomnia, convulsions

**Overdose:** see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 31

**Licensed use** Slo-Phyllin® capsules not licensed for use in children under 2 years
**AMINOPHYLLINE**

**Note** Aminophylline is a stable mixture or combination of theophylline and ethylenediamine; the ethylenediamine confers greater solubility in water

**Cautions** see under Theophylline; also rapid intravenous injection can cause arrhythmias

**Hepatic impairment** see under Theophylline

**Pregnancy** see under Theophylline

**Breast-feeding** see under Theophylline

**Side-effects** see under Theophylline; also allergy to ethylenediamine can cause urticaria, erythema, and exfoliative dermatitis; hypotension, arrhythmias, and convulsions, especially if given rapidly by intravenous injection

**Licensed use** Aminophylline injection not licensed for use in children under 6 months

**Indication and dose**

**Chronic asthma (see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135).**

**By mouth**

Child 6 months–2 years (body-weight under 10 kg) 5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) then by intravenous infusion

Child 1 month–18 years 5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) then by intravenous infusion

**Severe acute asthma not previously treated with theophylline** (with close monitoring; see also Management of Acute Asthma, section 3.1)

**By intravenous infusion**

Child 1 month–12 years 1 mg/kg/hour adjusted according to plasma-theophylline concentration

Child 12–18 years 500–700 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to plasma-theophylline concentration

**Note** Plasma-theophylline concentration for optimum response in asthma 10–20 mg/litre (55–110 micromol/litre); narrow margin between therapeutic and toxic dose; children taking oral theophylline or aminophylline should not normally receive a loading dose of intravenous aminophylline; it is recommended that plasma-theophylline concentration is measured in all children receiving intravenous aminophylline (see notes above)
3.1.4 Compound bronchodilator preparations

In general, children are best treated with single-ingredient preparations, such as a selective beta-agonist (section 3.1.1.1) or ipratropium bromide (section 3.1.2), so that the dose of each drug can be adjusted. This flexibility is lost with compound bronchodilator preparations.

3.1.5 Peak flow meters, inhaler devices, and nebulisers

### Peak flow meters

Peak flow meters may be used to assess lung function in children over 5 years with asthma, but symptom monitoring is the most reliable assessment of asthma control. They are best used for short periods to assess the severity of asthma and to monitor response to treatment; continuous use of peak flow meters may detract from compliance with inhalers.

#### Standard Range Peak Flow Meter

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747: 2007

**AirZone**, range 60–720 litres/minute, net price = £4.50, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (Respironics)

**Medi**, range 60–800 litres/minute, net price = £4.50 (Medicare)

**MicroPeak**, range 60–800 litres/minute, net price = £6.50, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (Micro Medical)

**Mini-Wright**, range 60–800 litres/minute, net price = £6.86, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (Clement Clarke)

**Personal Best**, range 60–800 litres/minute, net price = £6.86, replacement mouthpiece = 25p (Respironics)

**Piiko-1**, range 15–999 litres/minute, net price = £9.50, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (nSPIRE Health)

**Pinnacle**, range 60–900 litres/minute, net price = £6.50 (Fyne Dynamics)

**Pocketpeak**, range 60–800 litres/minute, net price = £6.53, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (nSPIRE Health)

**Vitalograph**, range 50–800 litres/minute, net price = £4.75 (a child’s peak flow meter is also available), replacement mouthpiece = 40p (Vitalograph)

#### Low Range Peak Flow Meter

Compliant to standard EN ISO 23747: 2007 except for scale range

**Medi**, range 40–420 litres/minute, net price = £6.50 (Medicare)

**Mini-Wright**, range 30–400 litres/minute, net price = £6.90, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (Clement Clarke)

**Pocketpeak**, range 50–400 litres/minute, net price = £6.53, replacement mouthpiece = 38p (nSPIRE Health)

#### Drug delivery devices

**Inhaler devices** A pressurised metered-dose inhaler is an effective method of drug administration in mild to moderate chronic asthma; to deliver the drug effectively, a spacer device should also be used (see also NICE guidance, below). By the age of 3 years, a child can usually be taught to use a spacer device without a mask. As soon as a child is able to use the mouthpiece, then this is the preferred delivery system.

**Dry powder inhalers** may be useful in children over 5 years, who are unwilling or unable to use a pressurised metered-dose inhaler with a spacer device; breath-actuated inhalers may be useful in older children if they are able to use the device effectively. The child or child’s carer should be instructed carefully on the use of the inhaler. It is important to check that the inhaler is being used correctly; poor inhalation technique may be mistaken for a lack of response to the drug.

On changing from a pressurised metered-dose inhaler to a dry powder inhaler, the child may notice a lack of sensation in the mouth and throat previously associated with each actuation; coughing may occur more frequently following use of a dry-powder inhaler. CFC-free metered-dose inhalers should be cleaned weekly according to the manufacturer’s instructions.
NICE guidance
Inhaler devices for children with chronic asthma (children under 5 years, August 2000; children 5–15 years, March 2002)
A child's needs, ability to develop and maintain effective technique, and likelihood of good compliance should govern the choice of inhaler and spacer device; only then should cost be considered.
For children aged under 5 years:
- corticosteroid and bronchodilator therapy should be delivered by pressurised metered-dose inhaler and spacer device, with a facemask if necessary;
- if this is not effective, and depending on the child’s condition, nebulised therapy may be considered and, in children over 3 years, a dry powder inhaler may also be considered [but see notes above].
For children aged 5–15 years:
- corticosteroid therapy should be routinely delivered by a pressurised metered-dose inhaler and spacer device;
- children and their carers should be trained in the use of the chosen device; suitability of the device should be reviewed at least annually. Inhaler technique and compliance should be monitored.

Spacer devices
Spacer devices are particularly useful for infants, for children with poor inhalation technique, or for nocturnal asthma, because the device reduces the need for coordination between actuation of a pressurised metered-dose inhaler and inhalation. The spacer device reduces the velocity of the aerosol and subsequent impaction on the oropharynx and allows more time for evaporation of the propellant so that a larger proportion of the particles can be inhaled and deposited in the lungs. Smaller-volume spacers may be more manageable for pre-school children and infants. The spacer device used must be compatible with the prescribed metered-dose inhaler.

Use and care of spacer devices
The suitability of the spacer device should be carefully assessed; opening the one-way valve is dependent on the child’s inspiratory flow. Some devices can be tipped to 45° to open the valve during inhaler actuation and inspiration to assist the child.
Inhalation from the spacer device should follow the actuation as soon as possible because the drug aerosol is very short-lived. The total dose (which may be more than a single puff) should be administered as single actuations (with tidal breathing for 10–20 seconds or 5–6 breaths for each actuation) for children with good inspiratory flow. Larger doses may be necessary for a child with acute bronchospasm; for guidance on the Management of Acute Asthma, see section 3.1.
The device should be cleansed once a month by washing in mild detergent and then allowed to dry in air without rinsing; the mouthpiece should be wiped clean of detergent before use. Some manufacturers recommend more frequent cleaning, but this should be avoided since any electrostatic charge may affect drug delivery. Spacer devices should be replaced every 6–12 months.

Able Spacer® (Clement Clarke)
Spacer device, small-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers, net price standard device = £4.20; with infant, child or adult mask = £6.86

AeroChamber® Plus (GSK)
Spacer device, medium-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers, net price standard device (blue) = £4.53; with mask (blue) = £7.56; infants device (orange) with mask = £7.56; child device (yellow) with mask = £7.56

Babyhaler® (A&H)
Spacer device, paediatric use with Flutiform®, and Ventolin® inhalers, net price = £11.34

Haleraid®
Inhalation aid, device to place over pressurised (aerosol) inhalers to aid when strength in hands is impaired (e.g. arthritis). For use with Flutiform®, Seretide®, Serevent®, and Ventolin® inhalers. Available as Haleraid®-120 for 120-dose inhalers and Haleraid®-200 for 200-dose inhalers, net price = 80p

Optichamber® (Respironic)
Spacer device, for use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers, net price = £4.28; with small, medium or large mask = £7.00

PARI Vortex Spacer® (Pari)
Spacer device, medium-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers, net price with mouthpiece = £6.07; with mask for infant or child = £7.91; with adult mask = £9.97

Pocket Chamber® (nSPIRE Health)
Spacer device, small-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers, net price = £4.18; with infant, small, medium, or large mask = £9.75

Volumatic® (A&H)
Spacer inhaler, large-volume device. For use with Clenil® Modukaps®, Flutiform®, Seretide®, Serevent®, and Ventolin® inhalers, net price = £2.81; with paediatric mask = £2.81

Nebulisers
In England and Wales nebulisers and compressors are not available on the NHS (but they are free of VAT); some nebulisers (but not compressors) are available on form GP10A in Scotland (for details consult Scottish Drug Tariff).
A nebuliser converts a solution of a drug into an aerosol for inhalation. It is used to deliver higher doses of drug to the airways than is usual with standard inhalers. The main indications for use of a nebuliser are:
- to deliver a beta, agonist or ipratropium to a child with an acute exacerbation of asthma or of airways obstruction;
- to deliver prophylactic medication to a child unable to use other conventional devices;
- to deliver an antibacterial (such as colistimethate sodium or tobramycin) to a child with chronic purulent infection (in cystic fibrosis or bronchiectasis);
- to deliver budesonide to a child with severe croup.
The proportion of a nebuliser solution that reaches the lungs depends on the type of nebuliser and although it can be as high as 30% it is more frequently close to 10% and sometimes below 10%. The remaining solution is left in the nebuliser as residual volume or it is deposited.
in the mouthpiece and tubing. The extent to which the nebulised solution is deposited in the airways or alveoli depends on particle size. Particles with a median diameter of 1–5 microns are deposited in the airways and are therefore appropriate for asthma whereas a particle size of 1–2 microns is needed for alveolar deposition. The type of nebuliser is therefore chosen according to the deposition required and according to the viscosity of the solution (antibacterial solutions usually being more viscous).

Some jet nebulisers are able to increase drug output during inspiration and hence increase efficiency.

Nebulised bronchodilators are appropriate for children with chronic persistent asthma or those with severe acute asthma. In chronic asthma, nebulised bronchodilators should only be used to relieve persistent daily wheeze, however, with the development of spacers with facemasks, it is now unusual for a child to require long-term nebulised asthma therapy (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135). The use of nebulisers in chronic persistent asthma should be considered only:

- after a review of the diagnosis and use of current inhaler devices;
- if the airflow obstruction is significantly reversible by bronchodilators without unacceptable side-effects;
- if the child does not benefit from use of conventional inhaler device, such as pressurised metered-dose inhaler plus spacer;
- if the child is complying with the prescribed dose and frequency of anti-inflammatory treatment including regular use of high-dose inhaled corticosteroid.

When a nebuliser is prescribed, the child or child’s carer must:

- have clear instructions from doctor, specialist nurse or pharmacist on the use of the nebuliser (and on peak-flow monitoring—see notes above);
- be instructed not to treat acute attacks without also seeking medical help;
- have regular follow up with doctor or specialist nurse.

Jet nebulisers are more widely used than ultrasonic nebulisers. Most jet nebulisers require an optimum flow rate of 6–8 litres/minute and in hospital can be driven by piped air or oxygen; in acute asthma the nebuliser should always be driven by oxygen. Domiciliary oxygen cylinders do not provide an adequate flow; therefore an electrical compressor is required for domiciliary use.

Safe practice

The Department of Health has reminded users of the need to use the correct grade of tubing when connecting a nebuliser to a medical gas supply or compressor.

Nebuliser diluent

Nebulisation may be carried out using an undiluted nebuliser solution or it may require dilution beforehand. The usual diluent is sterile sodium chloride 0.9% (physiological saline).

Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids are effective in the management of asthma; they reduce airway inflammation.

An inhaled corticosteroid is used regularly for prophylaxis of asthma when a child requires a beta, agonist more than twice a week, or if symptoms disturb sleep more than once a week, or if the child has suffered exacerbations in the last 2 years requiring a systemic corticosteroid or a nebulised bronchodilator (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135).

In adults, current or previous smoking reduces the effectiveness of inhaled corticosteroids and higher doses may be necessary.

Corticosteroid inhalers must be used regularly for maximum benefit; alleviation of symptoms usually occurs 3 to 7 days after initiation but may take longer. Budesonide, fluticasone propionate, and mometasone furoate appear to be equally effective. A spacer device should be used for administering inhaled corticosteroids in children under 15 years (see NICE guidance, section 3.1.5); a spacer device is also useful in children over 15 years, particularly if high doses are required.

In children 12–18 years using an inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting beta, agonist for the prophylaxis of asthma, but who are poorly controlled, (see step 3 of the Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135) Symbicort® (budesonide with formoterol) may be used as a reliever (instead of a short-acting beta, agonist), in addition to its regular use for the prophylaxis of asthma [unlicensed]. Symbicort® can also be used in this way in children 12–18 years using an inhaled corticosteroid with a dose greater than 400 micrograms beclometasone dipropionate daily\(^1\), but who are poorly controlled [unlicensed] (see step 2 of the Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135). When starting this treatment, the total regular dose of inhaled corticosteroid should not be reduced. Children and their carers must be carefully instructed on the appropriate dose and management of exacerbations before initiating this treatment, preferably by a respiratory specialist. Children using budesonide with formoterol as a reliever once a day or more should have their treatment reviewed regularly; see also Side-effects below. This management approach has not been investigated with combination inhalers containing other corticosteroids and long-acting beta, agonists.

High doses of inhaled corticosteroids can be prescribed for children who respond only partially to standard doses of an inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting beta, agonist or to other long-acting bronchodilators (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135). High doses should be continued only if there is clear benefit over the lower dose. The recommended maximum dose of an inhaled corticosteroid should not

---

1. For standard doses of other inhaled corticosteroids, see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135
 BNFC 2011–2012

3.2 Corticosteroids

Cautions of inhaled corticosteroids

Systemic therapy may be required during periods of stress, such as during severe infections, or when airways obstruction or mucus prevent drug access to smaller airways; interactions: Appendix 1 (corticosteroids).

Paradoxical bronchospasm: The potential for paradoxical bronchospasm (calling for discontinuation and alternative therapy) should be borne in mind—mild bronchospasm may be prevented by inhalation of a short-acting beta, agonist beforehand (or by transfer from an aerosol inhalation to a dry powder inhalation if suitable).

CFC-free inhalers

Chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) propellants in pressurised aerosol inhalers have been replaced by hydrofluoroalkane (HFA) propellants. Doses for corticosteroid CFC-free inhalers may be different from traditional CFC-containing inhalers and may differ between brands, see MHRA/CHM advice below.

MHRA/CHM advice (July 2008)

Beclometasone dipropionate CFC-free pressurised metered-dose inhalers (Qvar® and Clenil Modulite®) are not interchangeable and should be prescribed by brand name; Qvar® has extra-fine particles, is more potent than traditional beclometasone dipropionate CFC-containing inhalers, and is approximately twice as potent as Clenil Modulite®.

Side-effects of inhaled corticosteroids

Inhaled corticosteroids have considerably fewer systemic effects than oral corticosteroids, but adverse effects have been reported.

High doses of inhaled corticosteroids (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135) used for prolonged periods can induce adrenal suppression. Inhaled corticosteroids have occasionally been associated with adrenal crisis and coma in children; excessive doses should be avoided. Children using high doses of inhaled corticosteroids should be under the supervision of a paediatrician for the duration of the treatment; they should be given a ‘steroid card’ (section 6.3.2) and specific written advice to consider corticosteroid replacement during an episode of stress, such as a severe intercurrent illness or an operation.

In adults, bone mineral density is sometimes reduced following long-term inhalation of higher doses of corticosteroids, predisposing patients to osteoporosis (section 6.6). It is, therefore, sensible to ensure that the dose of an inhaled corticosteroid is no higher than necessary to keep a child’s asthma under good control.

Growth restriction associated with systemic corticosteroid therapy does not seem to occur with recommended doses of inhaled corticosteroids; although initial growth velocity may be reduced, there appears to be no effect on achieving normal adult height. However, the height of children receiving prolonged treatment with inhaled corticosteroid should be monitored; if growth is slowed, referral to a paediatrician should be considered.

Hoarseness and candidiasis of the mouth or throat have been reported, usually only with high doses (see also below). Hypersensitivity reactions (including rash and angioedema) have been reported rarely. Other side-effects that have very rarely been reported include paradoxical bronchospasm, anxiety, depression, sleep disturbances, and behavioural changes including hyperactivity, irritability, and aggression (particularly in children); skin thinning and bruising have also been reported.

Candidiasis: The risk of oral candidiasis can be reduced by using a spacer device with the corticosteroid inhaler; rinsing the mouth with water (or cleaning the child’s teeth) after inhalation of a dose may also be helpful. Antifungal oral suspension or oral gel (section 12.3.2) can be used to treat oral candidiasis while continuing corticosteroid therapy.

Oral

An acute attack of asthma should be treated with a short course (3–5 days) of oral corticosteroid, see Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134. The dose can usually be stopped abruptly but it should be reduced gradually in children under 12 years who have taken corticosteroids for more than 14 days. Tapering is not needed in children 12–18 years provided that the child receives an inhaled corticosteroid in an adequate dose (apart from those on maintenance oral corticosteroid treatment or where oral corticosteroids are required for 3 or more weeks); see also Withdrawal of Corticosteroids, section 6.3.2.

In chronic continuing asthma, when the response to other drugs has been inadequate, longer term administration of an oral corticosteroid may be necessary; in such cases high doses of an inhaled corticosteroid should be continued to minimise oral corticosteroid requirements.

An oral corticosteroid should normally be taken as a single dose in the morning to reduce the disturbance to circadian cortisol secretion. Dosage should always be titrated to the lowest dose that controls symptoms. Some clinicians use alternate-day dosing of an oral corticosteroid.

Parenteral

For the use of hydrocortisone injection in the emergency treatment of acute severe asthma, see Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134.

BECLOMETASONE DIPROPIONATE

(Beclometasone Dipropionate)

Cautions see notes above

Pregnancy see p. 133

Breast-feeding see p. 133

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use Becodisk®-400, Clenil Modulite®-200 and -250, and Qvar® are not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis of asthma

See Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135

Important for Asmabec Clickhaler®, Becodisks®, and Qvar® doses, see under preparations below

Beclometasone (Non-proprietary)

Dry powder for inhalation, beclometasone dipropionate 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 100-dose unit = £5.36; 200 micrograms/metered inhalation, 100-dose unit = £9.89, 200-dose
3.2 Corticosteroids

unit = £14.93; 400 micrograms/metered inhalation, 100-dose unit = £19.61. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Brands include Pulmicort® Beclometasone Dipropionate, Easyhaler® Beclometasone Dipropionate

Asmabec Clickhaler® (UCB Pharma) 
Dry powder for inhalation, beclometasone dipropionate 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £6.42; 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, 200-dose unit = £9.43; 250 micrograms/metered inhalation, 100-dose unit = £11.83. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 6–12 years 50–200 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary
  - Child 12–18 years 100–400 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary; max. 1 mg twice daily

Becodisks® (A&H) 
Dry powder for inhalation, disks containing 8 blisters of beclometasone dipropionate 100 micrograms/b blister, net price 15 disks with Diskhaler® device = £11.30, 15-disk refill = £10.76; 200 micrograms/b blister, 15 disks with Diskhaler® device = £21.54, 15-disk refill = £20.99; 400 micrograms/b blister, 15 disks with Diskhaler® device = £42.52, 15-disk refill = £41.98. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 5–12 years 100–200 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary
  - Child 12–18 years 400–800 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary

Clenil Modulite® (Chiesi) 
Aerosol inhalation, beclometasone dipropionate 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £3.70; 100 micrograms/metered inhalation = £7.42; 200 micrograms/metered inhalation = £16.17; 250 micrograms/metered inhalation = £16.29. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 2–12 years 100–200 micrograms twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years 200–400 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary up to 1 mg twice daily

Note Clenil Modulite® is not interchangeable with other CFC-free beclometasone dipropionate inhalers. the MHRA has advised (July 2008) that CFC-free beclometasone dipropionate inhalers should be prescribed by brand name, see p. 147

Dental Prescribing on NHS Clenil Modulite® 50 micrograms/metered inhalation may be prescribed

Qvar® (TEVA UK) 
Aerosol inhalation, beclometasone dipropionate 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £7.87; 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, 200-dose unit = £17.21. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Autohaler® (breath-actuated aerosol inhalation), beclometasone dipropionate 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £7.87; 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, 200-dose unit = £17.21. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Easi-Breathe® (breath-actuated aerosol inhalation), beclometasone dipropionate 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose = £7.74; 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, 200-dose = £16.95. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
- By aerosol inhalation
  - Child 12–18 years 50–200 micrograms twice daily, increased if necessary to max. 400 micrograms twice daily

Important When switching a child with well-controlled asthma from another corticosteroid inhaler, initially a 100-microgram metered dose of Qvar® should be prescribed for:
  - 200–250 micrograms of beclometasone dipropionate or budesonide
  - 100 micrograms of fluticasone propionate

When switching a child with poorly controlled asthma from another corticosteroid inhaler, initially a 100-microgram metered dose of Qvar® should be prescribed for 100 micrograms of beclometasone dipropionate, budesonide, or fluticasone propionate; the dose of Qvar® should be adjusted according to response

Note Qvar® is not interchangeable with other CFC-free beclometasone dipropionate inhalers; the MHRA has advised (July 2008) that beclometasone dipropionate CFC-free inhalers should be prescribed by brand name, see p. 147

Budesonide

Cautions see notes above

Pregnancy see p. 133

Breast-feeding see p. 133

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use Pulmicort® nebuliser solution not licensed for use in children under 3 months; not licensed for use in bronchopulmonary dysplasia; Symbicort® not licensed for use in children for asthma maintenance and reliever therapy

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis of asthma see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135, and preparations below

Croup
- By inhalation of nebuliser suspension
  - Child over 1 month 2 mg as single dose or in 2 divided doses separated by 30 minutes; dose may be repeated after 12 hours if necessary

Bronchopulmonary dysplasia with assisted ventilation
- By aerosol inhalation

Neonate 400 micrograms twice daily

Child 1–4 months 400 micrograms twice daily

Bronchopulmonary dysplasia with spontaneous respiration
- By inhalation of nebuliser suspension

Neonate 500 micrograms twice daily
Administration For aerosol inhalation in ventilated babies with bronchopulmonary dysplasia, use medium-volume spacer (section 3.1.5) attached directly to endotracheal tube; hand-ventilate through spacer, using a bag system; inflate chest 10 times between activations of inhaler

Budesonide (Non-proprietary)

Dry powder for inhalation, budesonide 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £8.86; 200 micrograms/metered inhalation 200-dose unit = £17.71; 400 micrograms/metered inhalation 100-dose unit = £17.71. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses. Brands include Easyhaler® Budesonide

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 6–12 years 100–400 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary, alternatively, in mild to moderate asthma, 200–400 micrograms as a single dose each evening if stabilised on daily dose given in 2 divided doses
  Child 12–18 years 100–800 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary, alternatively, in mild to moderate asthma, 200–400 micrograms as a single dose each evening if stabilised on daily dose given in 2 divided doses (max. 800 micrograms)

Budelin Novolizer® (Meda)

Dry powder for inhalation, budelin 200 micrograms, net price refillable inhaler device and 100-dose cartridge = £14.86; 100-dose refill cartridge = £9.59. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses. Brands include Easyhaler® Budelin

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 6–12 years 200–400 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary; alternatively, in mild to moderate asthma, 200–400 micrograms as a single dose each evening if stabilised on daily dose given in 2 divided doses
  Child 12–18 years 200–800 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary; alternatively, in mild to moderate asthma, 200–400 micrograms as a single dose each evening if stabilised on daily dose given in 2 divided doses (max. 800 micrograms)

Pulmicort® (AstraZeneca)

Turbohaler® (= dry powder inhaler), budesonide 100 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 200-dose unit = £11.84; 200 micrograms/metered inhalation, 100-dose unit = £11.84; 400 micrograms/metered inhalation, 50-dose unit = £13.86. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses. Brands include Easyhaler® Pulmicort

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 6–12 years 100–400 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary; alternatively, in mild to moderate asthma, 200–400 micrograms as a single dose each evening if stabilised on daily dose given in 2 divided doses
  Child 12–18 years 100–800 micrograms twice daily, adjusted as necessary; alternatively, in mild to moderate asthma, 200–400 micrograms as a single dose each evening if stabilised on daily dose given in 2 divided doses (max. 800 micrograms)

Respules® (= single-dose units for nebulisation), budesonide 250 micrograms/mL, net price 20 × 2-mL (500-microgram) unit = £20.02; 500 micrograms/mL, 20 × 2-mL (1-mg) unit = £30.30. May be diluted with sterile sodium chloride 0.9%. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

Note Not suitable for use in ultrasonic nebulisers

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
• By inhalation of nebuliser suspension
  Child 3 months–12 years initially 0.5–1 mg twice daily, reduced to 250–500 micrograms twice daily
  Child 12–18 years initially 1–2 mg twice daily, reduced to 0.5–1 mg twice daily

Compound preparations

For prescribing information on formoterol fumarate, see section 3.1.1.1

Symbicort® (AstraZeneca)

Symbicort 100/6 Turbohaler® (= dry powder inhaler), budesonide 100 micrograms, formoterol fumarate 6 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £33.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration

Dose

Asthma, maintenance therapy
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 6–12 years 1–2 puffs twice daily reduced to 1 puff once daily if control maintained
  Child 12–18 years 1–2 puffs twice daily reduced to 1 puff once daily if control maintained

Asthma, maintenance and reliever therapy (but see notes above, p. 146)
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 12–18 years 2 puffs daily in 1–2 divided doses; for relief of symptoms, 1 puff as needed up to max. 6 puffs at a time, max. 8 puffs daily

Symbicort 200/6 Turbohaler® (= dry powder inhaler), budesonide 200 micrograms, formoterol fumarate 6 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £38.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Dose

Asthma, maintenance therapy
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 12–18 years 1–2 puffs twice daily reduced in well-controlled asthma to 1 puff once daily

Asthma, maintenance and reliever therapy (but see notes above, p. 146)
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 12–18 years 2 puffs daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary to 2 puffs twice daily, for relief of symptoms, 1 puff as needed up to max. 6 puffs at a time; max. 8 puffs daily

Symbicort 400/12 Turbohaler® (= dry powder inhaler), budesonide 400 micrograms, formoterol fumarate 12 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 60-dose unit = £38.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

Dose

Asthma, maintenance therapy
• By inhalation of powder
  Child 12–18 years 1 puff twice daily; may be reduced in well-controlled asthma to 1 puff once daily

Notes above, p. 146)
3.2 Corticosteroids

**Ciclesonide**

**Indication and dose**

Prophylaxis of asthma

- By aerosol inhalation

**Child 12–18 years** 160 micrograms daily as a single dose reduced to 80 micrograms daily if control maintained

**Note** Not suitable for use in ultrasonic nebulisers

**Side-effects** see notes above; also very rarely dyspepsia, hyperglycaemia, and arthralgia

**Breast-feeding** see p. 133

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Cautions**

Alvesco® (Nycomed)
Aerosol inhalation, ciclesonide 80 micrograms/ metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £32.83; 160 micrograms/metered inhalation, 60-dose unit = £19.31; 120-dose unit = £38.62. Label: 8, counselling, administration

**Note** For prescribing information on salmeterol, see section 3.1.1

**Compound preparations**

For prescribing information on salmeterol, see section 3.1.1

**Seretide® (A&H)**

Seretide 100 Accuhaler® (dry powder for inhalation), disk containing 60 blisters of fluticasone propionate 50 micrograms/blister with Accuhaler® device, net price = £31.19. Label: 8, counselling, administration

**Seretide 250 Accuhaler®** (dry powder for inhalation), disk containing 60 blisters of fluticasone propionate 100 micrograms/blister with Accuhaler® device, net price = £40.92. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

**Seretide 500 Accuhaler®** (dry powder for inhalation), disk containing 60 blisters of fluticasone propionate 500 micrograms/blister with Accuhaler® device, net price = £60.14. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

**Evohaler®** (aerosol inhalation), fluticasone propionate 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £5.44; 125 micrograms/metered inhalation, 120-dose unit = £12.26; 250 micrograms/metered inhalation, 120-dose unit = £36.14. Label: 8, counselling, administration; also 10 and steroid card with high doses

**Dose**

Prophylaxis of asthma

- By aerosol inhalation

**Child 4–16 years** 50–100 micrograms twice daily adjusted as necessary; max. 1 mg twice daily (doses above 500 micrograms twice daily initiated by a specialist)

**Child 16–18 years** 100–500 micrograms twice daily adjusted as necessary; max. 1 mg twice daily (doses above 500 micrograms twice daily initiated by a specialist)

**Seretide 50 Evohaler®** (aerosol inhalation), fluticasone propionate 25 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL (500-microgram) unit = £9.34; 1 mg/mL, 10 × 2-mL (2-mg) unit = £37.35. May be diluted with sterile sodium chloride 0.9%. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

**Dose**

Prophylaxis of asthma

- By inhalation of nebuliser suspension

**Child 4–16 years** 1 mg twice daily

**Child 16–18 years** 0.5–2 mg twice daily

**Note** Not suitable for use in ultrasonic nebulisers

**Compound preparations**

For prescribing information on salmeterol, see section 3.1.1

**Seretide 250 Accuhaler®** (dry powder for inhalation), disk containing 60 blisters of fluticasone propionate 250 micrograms, salmeterol (as xinafoate) 50 micrograms/blister with Accuhaler® device, net price = £35.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

**Seretide 500 Accuhaler®** (dry powder for inhalation), disk containing 60 blisters of fluticasone propionate 500 micrograms, salmeterol (as xinafoate) 50 micrograms/blister with Accuhaler® device, net price = £40.92. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

**Seretide 125 Evohaler®** (aerosol inhalation), fluticasone propionate 125 micrograms, salmeterol (as xinafoate) 25 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £18.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration

**Dose**

Prophylaxis of asthma

- By aerosol inhalation

**Child 5–18 years** 1 blister daily if control maintained
BNFC 2011–2012

price 120-dose unit = £35.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
- By aerosol inhalation
  - Child 12–18 years 2 puffs twice daily

Seretide 250 Evohaler® (aerosol inhalation), fluticasone propionate 250 micrograms, salmeterol (as xinafoate) 25 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 120-dose unit = £59.48. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

Dose

Prophylaxis of asthma
- By aerosol inhalation
  - Child 12–18 years 2 puffs twice daily

MOMETASONE Furoate

Cautions see notes above
Pregnancy see p. 133
Breast-feeding see p. 133
Side-effects see notes above; also pharyngitis, headache; less commonly palpitation

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis of asthma see also Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135.
- By inhalation of powder
  - Child 12–18 years 200–400 micrograms as a single dose in the evening or in 2 divided doses; dose increased to 400 micrograms twice daily if necessary

Asmanex® (MSD) ▼ (Ex)
Twisthaler (= dry powder inhaler), mometasone furoate 200 micrograms/metered inhalation, net price 30-dose unit = £15.70, 60-dose unit = £23.54; 400 micrograms/metered inhalation, 30-dose unit = £21.78, 60-dose unit = £36.05. Label: 8, counselling, administration, 10, steroid card

Note The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (November 2003) that Asmanex® is restricted for use following failure of first-line inhaled corticosteroids

NEDOCROMIL SODIUM

Cautions see notes above
Pregnancy see p. 133
Breast-feeding see p. 133
Side-effects see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, pharyngitis; rarely taste disturbances

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 6 years

3.3 Cromoglicate and related therapy

The mode of action of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil is not completely understood; they may be of value as prophylaxis in asthma with an allergic basis, but the evidence for benefit of sodium cromoglicate in children is contentious. Prophylaxis with cromoglicate or nedocromil is less effective than with inhaled corticosteroids (see Management of Chronic Asthma table). Withdrawal of sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be done gradually over a period of one week—symptoms of asthma may recur.

Nedocromil may be of some benefit in the prophylaxis of exercise-induced asthma.

For the use of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil in allergic conjunctivitis see section 11.4.2; sodium cromoglicate is used also in allergic rhinitis (section 12.2.1) and allergy-related diarrhoea (section 1.5.4).

Paradoxical bronchospasm If paradoxical bronchospasm occurs, a short-acting beta, agonist such as salbutamol or terbutaline (section 3.1.1.1) should be used to control symptoms; treatment with sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be discontinued.

Side-effects Side-effects associated with inhalation of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil include throat irritation, cough, bronchospasm (including paradoxical bronchospasm—see above), and headache.

SODIUM CROMOGLCATE

(Sodium Cromoglycate)

Cautions see notes above; also discontinue if eosinophilic pneumonia occurs
Pregnancy see p. 133
Breast-feeding see p. 133
Side-effects see notes above; rhinitis and eosinophilic pneumonia also reported

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis of asthma (see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135).
- By aerosol inhalation

Aerosol inhalation, sodium cromoglicate 5 mg/metered inhalation, net price 112-dose unit = £14.84. Label: 8, counselling, administration

Intal® CFC-free inhaler (Sanofi-Aventis) 
Aerosol inhalation, sodium cromoglicate 5 mg/metered inhalation, net price 112-dose unit = £14.84. Label: 8, counselling, administration

3.3.1 Cromoglicate and related therapy

3.3.2 Leukotriene receptor antagonists

3.3.1 Cromoglicate and related therapy

The mode of action of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil is not completely understood; they may be of value as prophylaxis in asthma with an allergic basis, but the evidence for benefit of sodium cromoglicate in children is contentious. Prophylaxis with cromoglicate or nedocromil is less effective than with inhaled corticosteroids (see Management of Chronic Asthma table). Withdrawal of sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be done gradually over a period of one week—symptoms of asthma may recur.

Nedocromil may be of some benefit in the prophylaxis of exercise-induced asthma.

For the use of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil in allergic conjunctivitis see section 11.4.2; sodium cromoglicate is used also in allergic rhinitis (section 12.2.1) and allergy-related diarrhoea (section 1.5.4).

Paradoxical bronchospasm If paradoxical bronchospasm occurs, a short-acting beta, agonist such as salbutamol or terbutaline (section 3.1.1.1) should be used to control symptoms; treatment with sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be discontinued.

Side-effects Side-effects associated with inhalation of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil include throat irritation, cough, bronchospasm (including paradoxical bronchospasm—see above), and headache.

SODIUM CROMOGLCATE

(Sodium Cromoglycate)

Cautions see notes above; also discontinue if eosinophilic pneumonia occurs
Pregnancy see p. 133
Breast-feeding see p. 133
Side-effects see notes above; rhinitis and eosinophilic pneumonia also reported

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis of asthma (see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135).
- By aerosol inhalation

Aerosol inhalation, sodium cromoglicate 5 mg/metered inhalation, net price 112-dose unit = £14.84. Label: 8, counselling, administration

Intal® CFC-free inhaler (Sanofi-Aventis) 
Aerosol inhalation, sodium cromoglicate 5 mg/metered inhalation, net price 112-dose unit = £14.84. Label: 8, counselling, administration

3.3.1 Cromoglicate and related therapy

3.3.2 Leukotriene receptor antagonists

3.3.1 Cromoglicate and related therapy

The mode of action of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil is not completely understood; they may be of value as prophylaxis in asthma with an allergic basis, but the evidence for benefit of sodium cromoglicate in children is contentious. Prophylaxis with cromoglicate or nedocromil is less effective than with inhaled corticosteroids (see Management of Chronic Asthma table). Withdrawal of sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be done gradually over a period of one week—symptoms of asthma may recur.

Nedocromil may be of some benefit in the prophylaxis of exercise-induced asthma.

For the use of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil in allergic conjunctivitis see section 11.4.2; sodium cromoglicate is used also in allergic rhinitis (section 12.2.1) and allergy-related diarrhoea (section 1.5.4).

Paradoxical bronchospasm If paradoxical bronchospasm occurs, a short-acting beta, agonist such as salbutamol or terbutaline (section 3.1.1.1) should be used to control symptoms; treatment with sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be discontinued.

Side-effects Side-effects associated with inhalation of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil include throat irritation, cough, bronchospasm (including paradoxical bronchospasm—see above), and headache.

SODIUM CROMOGLCATE

(Sodium Cromoglycate)

Cautions see notes above; also discontinue if eosinophilic pneumonia occurs
Pregnancy see p. 133
Breast-feeding see p. 133
Side-effects see notes above; rhinitis and eosinophilic pneumonia also reported

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis of asthma (see also Management of Chronic Asthma, p. 135).
- By aerosol inhalation

Aerosol inhalation, sodium cromoglicate 5 mg/metered inhalation, net price 112-dose unit = £14.84. Label: 8, counselling, administration

Intal® CFC-free inhaler (Sanofi-Aventis) 
Aerosol inhalation, sodium cromoglicate 5 mg/metered inhalation, net price 112-dose unit = £14.84. Label: 8, counselling, administration

3.3.1 Cromoglicate and related therapy

3.3.2 Leukotriene receptor antagonists

3.3.1 Cromoglicate and related therapy

The mode of action of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil is not completely understood; they may be of value as prophylaxis in asthma with an allergic basis, but the evidence for benefit of sodium cromoglicate in children is contentious. Prophylaxis with cromoglicate or nedocromil is less effective than with inhaled corticosteroids (see Management of Chronic Asthma table). Withdrawal of sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be done gradually over a period of one week—symptoms of asthma may recur.

Nedocromil may be of some benefit in the prophylaxis of exercise-induced asthma.

For the use of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil in allergic conjunctivitis see section 11.4.2; sodium cromoglicate is used also in allergic rhinitis (section 12.2.1) and allergy-related diarrhoea (section 1.5.4).

Paradoxical bronchospasm If paradoxical bronchospasm occurs, a short-acting beta, agonist such as salbutamol or terbutaline (section 3.1.1.1) should be used to control symptoms; treatment with sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil should be discontinued.

Side-effects Side-effects associated with inhalation of sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil include throat irritation, cough, bronchospasm (including paradoxical bronchospasm—see above), and headache.
The leukotriene receptor antagonists, **montelukast** and **zafrilukast**, block the effects of cysteinyl leukotrienes in the airways; they can be used in children for the management of chronic asthma with an inhaled corticosteroid or as an alternative if an inhaled corticosteroid cannot be used (see Management of Chronic Asthma table, p. 135).

Montelukast has not been shown to be more effective than a standard dose of inhaled corticosteroid, but the two drugs appear to have an additive effect. The leukotriene receptor antagonists may be of benefit in exercise-induced asthma and in those with concomitant rhinitis, but they are less effective in children with severe asthma who are also receiving high doses of other drugs.

There is some limited evidence to support the intermittent use of montelukast in children under 12 years with episodic wheeze associated with viral infections [unlicensed use]. Treatment is started at the onset of either asthma symptoms or of coryzal symptoms and continued for 7 days; there is no evidence to support this use in moderate or severe asthma.

**Churg-Strauss syndrome** Churg-Strauss syndrome has occurred very rarely in association with the use of leukotriene receptor antagonists; in many of the reported cases the reaction followed the reduction or withdrawal of oral corticosteroid therapy. Prescribers should be alert to the development of eosinophilia, vasculitic rash, worsening pulmonary symptoms, cardiac complications, or peripheral neuropathy.

**Pregnancy** There is limited evidence for the safe use of leukotriene receptor antagonists during pregnancy; however, they can be taken as normal in females who have shown a significant improvement in asthma not achievable with other drugs before becoming pregnant, see also p. 133.

### ZAFIRLUKAST

**Cautions** interactions: Appendix 1 (leukotriene receptor antagonists)

**Hepatic disorders** Children or their carers should be told how to recognise development of liver disorder and advised to seek medical attention if symptoms or signs such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises avoid

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; see also notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances; headache; rarely bleeding disorders, hypersensitivity reactions including angioedema and skin reactions, arthralgia, myalgia, hepatitis, hyperbilirubinaemia, thrombocytopenia; very rarely Churg-Strauss syndrome (see notes above), agranulocytosis.
Antihistamines (histamine H₁-receptor antagonists) are classified as sedating or non-sedating, according to their relative potential for CNS depression. Antihistamines differ in their duration of action, incidence of drowsiness, and antimuscarinic effects; the response to an antihistamine may vary from child to child (see Side-effects, below). Either a sedating or a non-sedating antihistamine may be used to treat an acute allergic reaction; for conditions with more persistent symptoms which require regular treatment, a non-sedating antihistamine should be used to minimise the risk of sedation and psychomotor impairment associated with sedating antihistamines.

Oral antihistamines are used in the treatment of nasal allergies, particularly seasonal allergic rhinitis (hay fever), and may be of some value in vasomotor rhinitis; rhinorrhea and sneezing is reduced, but antihistamines are usually less effective for nasal congestion. Antihistamines are used topically to treat allergic reactions in the eye (see section 11.4.2) and in the nose (section 12.2.1). Topical application of antihistamines to the skin is not effective in children. Other non-sedating antihistamines include hypotension, palpitation, arrhythmias, hyperventilation, and antimuscarinic effects such as urinary retention, dry mouth, blurred vision, and gastrointestinal disturbances. Other rare side-effects of antihistamines include headache, psychomotor retardation, and paroxysmal stimulation may occur rarely in children, especially with high doses. Drowsiness may diminish after a few days of treatment and is considerably less of a problem with the newer antihistamines (see also notes above).

Side-effects Drowsiness is a significant side-effect with most of the older antihistamines although paradoxical stimulation may occur rarely in children, especially with high doses. Drowsiness may diminish after a few days of treatment and is considerably less of a problem with the newer antihistamines (see also notes above). Side-effects that are more common with the older antihistamines include headache, psychomotor impairment, and antimuscarinic effects such as urinary retention, dry mouth, blurred vision, and gastrointestinal disturbances. Other rare side-effects of antihistamines include hypotension, palpitation, arrhythmias, extrapyramidal effects, dizziness, confusion, depression, sleep disturbances, tremor, convulsions, and photosensitivity reactions (including bronchospasm, angioedema, anaphylaxis, rashes, and photosensitivity reactions), blood disorders, and liver dysfunction.

Non-sedating antihistamines

**Skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, children and their carers should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g., cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

**Cautions and contra-indications** Antihistamines should be used with caution in children with epilepsy. Most antihistamines should be avoided in acute porphyria, but some are thought to be safe (see section 9.8.2). Sedating antihistamines have significant antimuscarinic activity—they should not be used in neonates and should be used with caution in children with urinary retention, glaucoma, or pyloroduodenal obstruction. Phenothiazine sedating antihistamines, such as alimemazine and promethazine, should not be given to children under 2 years, except on specialist advice, because the safety of such use has not been established. See also MHRA/CHM advice, p. 167.

**Hepatic impairment** Sedating antihistamines should be avoided in children with severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.

**Pregnancy** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however there is no evidence of teratogenicity, except for hydroxyzine where toxicity has been reported with high doses in animal studies. The use of sedating antihistamines in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.

**Breast-feeding** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

**Interactions** see Appendix 1 (antihistamines).

BNFC 2011–2012 3.4 Antihistamines, immunotherapy, and allergic emergencies
ACRIVASTINE
Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above; also hypersensitivity to triprolidine
Renal impairment avoid in severe impairment
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose
Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria
• By mouth
  Child 12–18 years 8 mg 3 times daily

Acrivastine (Non-proprietary)
Capsules, acrivastine 8 mg, net price 12-cap pack = £2.59, 24-cap pack = £4.49. Counselling, skilled tasks
Brands include Benadryl Allergy Relief

CETIRIZINE HYDROCHLORIDE
Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Renal impairment use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73m²; use half normal dose and reduce dose frequency to alternate days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73m²
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 2 years

Indication and dose
Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria, atopic dermatitis
• By mouth
  Child 1–2 years 250 micrograms/kg twice daily
  Child 2–6 years 2.5 mg twice daily
  Child 6–12 years 5 mg twice daily
  Child 12–18 years 10 mg once daily

Cetirizine Hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)
Tablets, cetirizine hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 30-tab pack = 95p. Counselling, skilled tasks
Dental prescribing on NHS Cetirizine 10 mg tablets may be prescribed
Oral solution, cetirizine hydrochloride 5 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (bubblegum-flavour) = £6.77, 150 mL = £10.15. Counselling, skilled tasks
Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients p. 2)

FEXOFENADINE HYDROCHLORIDE
Note Fexofenadine is a metabolite of terfenadine
Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose
Symptomatic relief of seasonal allergic rhinitis
• By mouth
  Child 6–12 years 30 mg twice daily
  Child 12–18 years 120 mg once daily
Symptomatic relief of chronic idiopathic urticaria
• By mouth
  Child 12–18 years 180 mg once daily

Fexofenadine (Non-proprietary)
Tablets, f/c, fexofenadine hydrochloride 120 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £2.95; 180 mg, 30-tab pack = £3.68. Label: 5, counselling, skilled tasks
Telfast (Sanofi-Aventis) Tablets, f/c, peach, fexofenadine hydrochloride 30 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £5.46; 120 mg, 30-tab pack = £5.99; 180 mg, 30-tab pack = £7.58. Label: 5, counselling, skilled tasks

LEVOCETIRIZINE HYDROCHLORIDE
Note Levocetirizine is an isomer of cetirizine
Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Renal impairment estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m², reduce dose frequency to alternate days; estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m², reduce dose frequency to every 3 days; estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m², avoid
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above; very rarely weight gain
Licensed use tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years

Side-effects see notes above; rarely myalgia; very rarely hallucinations

Licensed use tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years

Indication and dose
Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria
• By mouth
  Child 1–6 years 1.25 mg once daily
  Child 6–12 years 2.5 mg once daily
  Child 12–18 years 5 mg once daily

Neoclarityn (Schering-Plough) Tablets, blue, f/c, desloratadine 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £6.77. Counselling, skilled tasks
Oral solution, desloratadine 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (bubblegum-flavour) = £6.77, 150 mL = £10.15. Counselling, skilled tasks
Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients p. 2)

Note Desloratadine is a metabolite of loratadine
Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above; also hypersensitivity to loratadine
Renal impairment use with caution in severe impairment
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above; rarely myalgia; very rarely hallucinations

Licensed use tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years

Indication and dose
Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria
• By mouth
  Child 12–18 years 5 mg once daily

Neoclarityn (Schering-Plough) Tablets, blue, f/c, desloratadine 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £6.77. Counselling, skilled tasks
Oral solution, desloratadine 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (bubblegum-flavour) = £6.77, 150 mL = £10.15. Counselling, skilled tasks
Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients p. 2)

Note Levocetirizine is an isomer of cetirizine
Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Renal impairment estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m², reduce dose frequency to alternate days; estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m², reduce dose frequency to every 3 days; estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m², avoid
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above; very rarely weight gain
Licensed use tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years

Indication and dose
Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria
• By mouth
  Child 1–6 years 1.25 mg once daily
  Child 6–12 years 2.5 mg once daily
  Child 12–18 years 5 mg once daily

Neoclarityn (Schering-Plough) Tablets, blue, f/c, desloratadine 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £6.77. Counselling, skilled tasks
Oral solution, desloratadine 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (bubblegum-flavour) = £6.77, 150 mL = £10.15. Counselling, skilled tasks
Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients p. 2)
**Indication and dose**

Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, urticaria.

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–6 years** 1.25 mg twice daily
  - **Child 6–18 years** 5 mg once daily

**Levocetirizine Hydrochloride** *(Non-proprietary)*

Tablets, levocetirizine hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £4.39. Counselling, skilled tasks

**Xyzal** *(UCB Pharma)*

Tablets, 1/2, levocetirizine hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £4.39. Counselling, skilled tasks

**Oral solution**, sugar-free, levocetirizine hydrochloride 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 200 mL = £6.00. Counselling, skilled tasks

**Mizollen** *(Sanofi-Aventis)*

Tablets, m/r, scored, mizolastine 10 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £5.77. Label: 25, counselling, skilled tasks

**Rupafin** *(GSK)*

Tablets, salmon, rupatadine (as fumarate) 10 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £5.00. Counselling, skilled tasks

**Sedating antihistamines**

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

**ALIMEMAZINE TARTRATE** *(Trimeprazine tartrate)*

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; weight gain; anxiety, asthenia; less commonly arthralgia and myalgia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 2 years

**Indication and dose**

Urticaria, pruritus.

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6 months–2 years** 250 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) 3–4 times daily—specialist use only
  - **Child 2–5 years** 2.5 mg 3–4 times daily
  - **Child 5–12 years** 5 mg 3–4 times daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** 10 mg 2–3 times daily, in severe cases up to max. 100 mg daily

**Premedication** section 15.1.4

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–7 years** up to max. 2 mg/kg 1–2 hours before operation
156 3.4.1 Antihistamines

Chlorphenamine Maleate

(Clorpheniramine maleate)

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also exfoliative dermatitis and tinnitus reported; injections may cause transient hypotension or CNS stimulation and may be irritant

Licensed use syrup not licensed for use in children under 1 year; tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years; injection not licensed for use in neonates

Indication and dose

Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, urticaria

• By mouth
  Child 1 month–2 years 1 mg twice daily
  Child 2–6 years 1 mg every 4–6 hours, max. 6 mg daily
  Child 6–12 years 2 mg every 4–6 hours, max. 12 mg daily
  Child 12–18 years 4 mg every 4–6 hours, max. 24 mg daily

Emergency treatment of anaphylactic reactions, symptomatic relief of allergy

• By intramuscular or intravenous injection
  Child under 6 months 250 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg), repeated if required up to 4 times in 24 hours
  Child 6 months–6 years 2.5 mg, repeated if required up to 4 times in 24 hours
  Child 6–12 years 5 mg, repeated if required up to 4 times in 24 hours
  Child 12–18 years 10 mg, repeated if required up to 4 times in 24 hours

Administration for intravenous injection, give over 1 minute; if small dose required, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Chlorphenamine (Non-proprietary) Tablets, chlorphenamine maleate 4 mg, net price 28 = £1.01. Label: 2
Dental prescribing on NHS Chlorphenamine tablets may be prescribed

Oral solution, chlorphenamine maleate 2 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £2.51. Label: 2

Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription
Dental prescribing on NHS Chlorphenamine oral solution may be prescribed

Ketotifen

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also irritability, nervousness; less commonly cystitis; rarely weight gain; very rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome

Indication and dose

Symptomatic relief of allergy such as allergic rhinitis

• By mouth
  Child 3–18 years 1 mg twice daily

Injection, chlorphenamine maleate 10 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.79
1. restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency

Piriton® (GSK Consumer Healthcare) Tablets, yellow, scored, chlorphenamine maleate 4 mg, net price 28 = £1.62. Label: 2
Syrup, chlorphenamine maleate 2 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £2.39. Label: 2

Hydroxyzine Hydrochloride

Cautions see notes above; also susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation

Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment reduce daily dose by one-third; see also notes above
Renal impairment reduce daily dose by half
Pregnancy toxicity in animal studies with high doses; see also notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above

Licensed use Cspr not licensed for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose

Pruritus

• By mouth
  Child 6 months–6 years initially 5–15 mg at night, increased if necessary to 50 mg daily in 3–4 divided doses
  Child 6–12 years initially 15–25 mg at night, increased if necessary to 50–100 mg daily in 3–4 divided doses
  Child 12–18 years initially 25 mg at night, increased if necessary to 100 mg in 3–4 divided doses

Atarax® (Alliance) Tablets, both f/c, hydroxyzine hydrochloride 10 mg (orange), net price 84-tab pack = £2.18; 25 mg (green), 28-tab pack = £1.17. Label: 2
Ucerax® (UCB Pharma) Tablets, f/c, scored, hydroxyzine hydrochloride 25 mg, net price 25-tab pack = £1.22. Label: 2
Syrup, hydroxyzine hydrochloride 10 mg/5 mL. Net price 200-mL pack = £1.78. Label: 2

Ketotifen

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also irritability, nervousness; less commonly cystitis; rarely weight gain; very rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome

Indication and dose

Symptomatic relief of allergy such as allergic rhinitis

• By mouth
  Child 3–18 years 1 mg twice daily
3.4.2 Allergen immunotherapy

Immunotherapy using allergen vaccines containing house dust mite, animal dander (cat or dog), or extracts of grass and tree pollen can improve symptoms of asthma and allergic rhino-conjunctivitis in children. A vaccine containing extracts of wasp and bee venom is used to reduce the risk of severe anaphylaxis and systemic reactions in children with hypersensitivity to wasp and bee stings. An oral preparation of grass pollen extract (Grazax®) is also licensed for grass pollen induced rhinitis and conjunctivitis. Children requiring immunotherapy must be referred to a hospital specialist for accurate allergy diagnosis, assessment, and treatment.

In view of concerns about the safety of desensitising vaccines, it is recommended that they are used by specialists and only for the following indications:

- seasonal allergic hay fever (caused by pollen) that has not responded to anti-allergic drugs;
- hypersensitivity to wasp and bee venom.

Desensitising vaccines should generally be avoided or used with particular care in children with asthma.

Desensitising vaccines should be avoided in pregnant women, in children under 5 years, and in those taking beta-blockers (adrenaline will be ineffective if a hypersensitivity reaction occurs), or ACE inhibitors (risk of severe anaphylactoid reactions).

Hypersensitivity reactions to immunotherapy (especially to wasp and bee venom extracts) can be life-threatening; bronchospasm usually develops within 1 hour and anaphylaxis within 30 minutes of injection. Therefore, facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be immediately available and the child needs to be monitored for at least 1 hour after injection. If symptoms or signs of hypersensitivity develop (e.g. rash, urticaria, bronchospasm, faintness), even when mild, the child should be observed until these have resolved completely. The first dose of oral grass pollen extract (Grazax®) should be taken under medical supervision and the child should be monitored for 20–30 minutes. For details on the management of anaphylaxis, see section 3.4.3.

Each set of allergen extracts usually contains vials for the administration of graded amounts of allergen. Maintenance sets containing vials at the highest strength are also available. Product literature must be consulted for details of allergens, vial strengths, and administration.

BEE AND WASP ALLERGEN EXTRACTS

Cautions see notes above and consult product literature
Contra-indications see notes above and consult product literature
Pregnancy avoid
Side-effects consult product literature
Indication and dose
Hypersensitivity to wasp or bee venom (see notes above)
- By subcutaneous injection
  Consult product literature

PharmaGen® (ALK-Abelló) 
Bee venom extract (Apis mellifera) or wasp venom extract (Vespula spp.). Net price initial treatment set = £54.81 (bee), £57.20 (wasp); maintenance treatment set = £63.76 (bee), £82.03 (wasp)

GRASS AND TREE POLLEN EXTRACTS

Cautions see notes above and consult product literature
Omalizumab

Omalizumab is a monoclonal antibody that binds to immunoglobulin E (IgE). It is licensed for use as additional therapy in children over 6 years with proven IgE-mediated sensitivity to inhaled allergens, whose severe persistent allergic asthma cannot be controlled adequately with high-dose inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta, agonists in addition to leukotriene receptor antagonists, theophylline, oral corticosteroids, oral beta2 agonists, and smoking cessation where clinically appropriate.

Churg-Strauss syndrome has occurred rarely in patients given omalizumab; the reaction is usually associated with the reduction or withdrawal of oral corticosteroid therapy. Churg-Strauss syndrome can present as eosinophilia, vasculitic rash, cardiac complications, worsening pulmonary symptoms, or peripheral neuropathy. Hypersensitivity reactions can also occur immediately following treatment with omalizumab or sometimes more than 24 hours after the first injection.

For details on the management of anaphylaxis, see section 3.4.3.

The Scottish Medicines Consortium, p. 3 has advised (September 2007 and March 2010) that omalizumab is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as add-on therapy to improve asthma control in children (6 to 12 years), adolescents, and adults with severe persistent allergic asthma. Omalizumab is restricted to patients who are prescribed chronic systemic corticosteroids and in whom all other treatments have failed. The response should be assessed at 16 weeks and omalizumab treatment discontinued in patients who have not shown a marked improvement in overall asthma control.

**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Contra-indications** see notes above and consult product literature

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Side-effects** consult product literature

**NICE guidance**

**Omalizumab for the treatment of severe persistent allergic asthma in children aged 6 to 11 years (October 2010)**

Omalizumab is not recommended for the treatment of severe persistent allergic asthma in children aged 6 to 11 years.

**OMALIZUMAB**

**Cautions** autoimmune disease; susceptibility to helminth infections—discontinue if infection does not respond to anthelmintic

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential; no evidence of teratogenicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies

**Side-effects** headache; injection-site reactions; less commonly nausea, diarrhoea, dyspepsia, flushing, fatigue, dizziness, drowsiness, paraesthesia, influenza-like symptoms, photosensitivity, hypersensitivity reactions (including hypotension, bronchospasm, laryngoedema, rash, pruritus, serum sickness, and anaphylaxis); arterial thromboembolic events, Churg-Strauss syndrome (see notes above), thrombocytopaenia, arthralgia, myalgia, and alopecia also reported
**3.4.3 Allergic emergencies**

**Adrenaline (epinephrine)** provides physiological reversal of the immediate symptoms associated with hypersensitivity reactions such as *anaphylaxis* and angioedema.

**Anaphylaxis**

Anaphylaxis is a severe, life-threatening, generalised or systemic hypersensitivity reaction. It is characterised by the rapid onset of respiratory and/or circulatory problems and is usually associated with skin and mucosal changes; prompt treatment is required. Children with pre-existing asthma, especially poorly controlled asthma, are at particular risk of life-threatening reactions. Insect stings are a recognised risk (in particular wasp and bee stings). Latex and certain foods, including eggs, fish, cows’ milk protein, peanuts, sesame, shellfish, soy, and tree nuts may also precipitate anaphylaxis. Medicinal products particularly associated with anaphylaxis include blood products, vaccines, allergen immunotherapy preparations, antibacterials, aspirin and other NSAIDs, and neuromuscular blocking drugs. In the case of drugs, anaphylaxis is more likely after parenteral administration; resuscitation facilities must always be available when giving injections associated with special risk. Refined arachis (peanut) oil, which may be present when giving injections associated with specific allergy diagnosis. Avoidance of the allergen is possible need for further reaction. The child, or carer, should be instructed in the self-administration of adrenaline is of paramount importance. The following adrenaline doses are based on the

**Treatment of anaphylaxis**

*First-line treatment* includes:

- **securing the airway, restoration of blood pressure (laying the child flat and raising the legs, or in the recovery position if unconscious or nauseous and at risk of vomiting);**
- **administering adrenaline (epinephrine) by intramuscular injection** (for doses see Intramuscular Adrenaline, below); the dose should be repeated if necessary at 5-minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory function. **Important:** possible need for *intravenous route using dilute solution* (Adrenaline 1 in 10 000), see Intravenous Adrenaline p. 160;  

- **administering high-flow oxygen** (section 3.6) and **intravenous fluids** (section 9.2.2);
- **administering an antihistamine,** such as **chlorpheniramine,** (section 3.4.1) by slow intravenous injection or intramuscular injection as adjunctive treatment given after adrenaline. An intravenous corticosteroid (section 6.3.2) such as **hydrocortisone** (preferably as sodium succinate) is of secondary importance in the initial management of anaphylaxis because the onset of action is delayed for several hours, but should be given to prevent further deterioration in severely affected children.

**Continuing respiratory deterioration** requires further treatment with **bronchodilators** including inhaled or intravenous salbutamol (see p. 139), inhaled ipratropium (see p. 141), intravenous aminophylline (see p. 143), or intravenous magnesium sulphate [unlicensed indication] (see Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134).

In addition to oxygen, assisted respiration and possibly emergency tracheotomy may be necessary. When a child is so ill that there is doubt as to the adequacy of the circulation, the initial injection of adrenaline may need to be given as a *dilute solution by the intravenous route,* or by the intramuscular route if venous access is difficult—for details of cautions, dose and strength, see under Intravenous Adrenaline (Epinephrine), p. 160.

On discharge, the child should be considered for further treatment with an oral antihistamine (section 3.4.1) and an oral corticosteroid (section 6.3.2) for up to 3 days to reduce the risk of further reaction. The child, or carer, should be instructed to return to hospital if symptoms recur and to contact their general practitioner for follow-up.

Children who are suspected of having had an anaphylactic reaction should be referred to a specialist for specific allergy diagnosis. Avoidance of the allergen is the principal treatment; if appropriate, an adrenaline auto-injector should be given or a replacement supplied (see Self-administration of Adrenaline, p. 180).

**Intramuscular adrenaline (epinephrine)**

The **intramuscular route** is the *first choice route* for the administration of adrenaline in the management of anaphylaxis. Adrenaline is best given as an intramuscular injection into the anterolateral aspect of the middle third of the thigh, it has a rapid onset of action after intramuscular administration and in the shocked patient its absorption from the intramuscular site is faster and more reliable than from the subcutaneous site. The intravenous route should be reserved for extreme emergency when there is doubt about the adequacy of the circulation; for details of cautions, dose and strength see Intravenous Adrenaline (Epinephrine), p. 160.

Children with severe allergy, and their carers, should ideally be instructed in the self-administration of adrenaline by intramuscular injection (for details see Self-administration of Adrenaline (Epinephrine), p. 160). **Prompt injection** of adrenaline is of paramount importance. The following adrenaline doses are based on

---

**Prophylaxis of severe persistent allergic asthma** (see notes above)

**Child 6–18 years** according to immunoglobulin E concentration and body-weight, consult product literature

**Xolair®** (Novartis)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, omalizumab, net price 150-mg vial = £256.15 (with solvent) Recipients include sucrose 108 mg/vial

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Indication and dose**

**Prophylaxis of severe persistent allergic asthma** (see notes above)

- **By subcutaneous injection**

  **Child 6–18 years** according to immunoglobulin E concentration and body-weight, consult product literature

---

**3.4.3 Allergic emergencies**

**Continuing respiratory deterioration** requires further treatment with **bronchodilators** including inhaled or intravenous salbutamol (see p. 139), inhaled ipratropium (see p. 141), intravenous aminophylline (see p. 143), or intravenous magnesium sulphate [unlicensed indication] (see Management of Acute Asthma, p. 134). In addition to oxygen, assisted respiration and possibly emergency tracheotomy may be necessary. When a child is so ill that there is doubt as to the adequacy of the circulation, the initial injection of adrenaline may need to be given as a *dilute solution by the intravenous route,* or by the intramuscular route if venous access is difficult—for details of cautions, dose and strength, see under Intravenous Adrenaline (Epinephrine), p. 160.

On discharge, the child should be considered for further treatment with an oral antihistamine (section 3.4.1) and an oral corticosteroid (section 6.3.2) for up to 3 days to reduce the risk of further reaction. The child, or carer, should be instructed to return to hospital if symptoms recur and to contact their general practitioner for follow-up.

Children who are suspected of having had an anaphylactic reaction should be referred to a specialist for specific allergy diagnosis. Avoidance of the allergen is the principal treatment; if appropriate, an adrenaline auto-injector should be given or a replacement supplied (see Self-administration of Adrenaline, p. 180).

**Intramuscular adrenaline (epinephrine)**

The **intramuscular route** is the *first choice route* for the administration of adrenaline in the management of anaphylaxis. Adrenaline is best given as an intramuscular injection into the anterolateral aspect of the middle third of the thigh, it has a rapid onset of action after intramuscular administration and in the shocked patient its absorption from the intramuscular site is faster and more reliable than from the subcutaneous site. The intravenous route should be reserved for extreme emergency when there is doubt about the adequacy of the circulation; for details of cautions, dose and strength see Intravenous Adrenaline (Epinephrine), p. 160.

Children with severe allergy, and their carers, should ideally be instructed in the self-administration of adrenaline by intramuscular injection (for details see Self-administration of Adrenaline (Epinephrine), p. 160). **Prompt injection** of adrenaline is of paramount importance. The following adrenaline doses are based on the
Respiratory system

revised recommendations of the Working Group of the Resuscitation Council (UK).

Dose of intramuscular injection of adrenaline (epinephrine) for anaphylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age range</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Volume of adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Under 6 years</td>
<td>150 micrograms</td>
<td>0.15 mL1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6–12 years</td>
<td>300 micrograms</td>
<td>0.3 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12–18 years</td>
<td>500 micrograms</td>
<td>0.5 mL2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These doses may be repeated several times if necessary at 5-minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory function.

1. Use suitable syringe for measuring small volume
2. 300 micrograms (0.3 mL) if child is small or prepubertal

Intravenous adrenaline (epinephrine)

Intravenous adrenaline should be given only by those experienced in its use, in a setting where patients can be carefully monitored.

Where the child is severely ill and there is real doubt about adequacy of the circulation and absorption from the intramuscular injection site, adrenaline may be given by slow intravenous injection. Children may respond to as little as 1 microgram/kg (0.01 mL/kg) of the dilute 1 in 10 000 adrenaline injection by slow intravenous injection repeated according to response. A single dose of adrenaline by intravenous injection should not exceed 50 micrograms; if multiple doses are required consider giving adrenaline by slow intravenous infusion. Great vigilance is needed to ensure that the correct strength of adrenaline injection is used; anaphylactic shock kits need to make a very clear distinction between the 1 in 10 000 strength and the 1 in 1000 strength. It is also important that, where intramuscular injection might still succeed, time should not be wasted seeking intravenous access.

For reference to the use of the intravenous route for acute hypotension, see section 2.7.2.

Self-administration of adrenaline (epinephrine)

Children at considerable risk of anaphylaxis need to carry (or have available) adrenaline at all times and the child, or child’s carers, need to be instructed in advance when and how to inject it; injection technique is device specific. Packs for self-administration need to be clearly labelled with instructions on how to administer adrenaline (intramuscularly, preferably at the midpoint of the outer thigh, through light clothing if necessary). It is important to ensure that an adequate supply is provided to treat symptoms until medical assistance is available.

Adrenaline for administration by intramuscular injection is available in ‘auto-injectors’ (e.g. Anapen®, EpiPen® or Jet²)®, pre-assembled syringes fitted with a needle suitable for very rapid administration (if necessary by a bystander or a healthcare provider if it is the only preparation available). A syringe delivering 300 micrograms of adrenaline is recommended for a child over 30 kg. A syringe delivering 150 micrograms of adrenaline is recommended for a child 15–30 kg, but on the basis of a dose of 10 micrograms/kg, 300 micrograms may be more appropriate for some children.

ADRENALINE/EPINEPHRINE

Cautions for cautions in non-life-threatening situations, see section 2.7.2

Interactions Severe anaphylaxis in children taking beta-blockers may not respond to adrenaline calling for bronchodilator therapy, see intravenous salbutamol (section 3.1.1); furthermore, adrenaline may cause severe hypertension and bradycardia in those receiving non-cardioselective beta-blockers. Other interactions, see Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics).

Renal impairment section 2.7.2

Pregnancy section 2.7.2

Breast-feeding section 2.7.2

Side-effects section 2.7.2

Licensed use auto-injector delivering 150-microgram dose of adrenaline not licensed for use in children body-weight under 15 kg

Indication and dose

Emergency treatment of acute anaphylaxis, angioedema
• By intramuscular injection (preferably midpoint in anterolateral thigh) of 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution

See notes and table above

Acute anaphylaxis when there is doubt as to the adequacy of the circulation
• By slow intravenous injection of 1 in 10 000 (100 micrograms/mL) solution (extreme caution—specialist use only)

See notes above

Safe Practice
Intravenous route should be used with extreme care by specialists only, see notes above

Croup (section 3.1)
• By inhalation of nebulised solution of adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL)

Child 1 month–12 years 400 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg), repeated after 30 minutes if necessary

Administration For nebulisation, dilute adrenaline 1 in 1000 solution with sterile sodium chloride 0.9% solution

Acute hypotension, low cardiac output section 2.7.2

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation section 2.7.3

Intramuscular or subcutaneous
1 Adrenaline/Epinephrine 1 in 1000 (Non-proprietary) (Tar)

Injection, adrenaline (as acid tartrate) 1 mg/mL, net price 0.5-mL amp = 52p, 1-mL amp = 57p

Excipients include sulphites

1. This restriction does not apply to adrenaline injection 1 mg/mL where administration is for saving life in emergency.
BNFC 2011–2012

1. **Minijet** Adrenaline 1 in 1000 (UCB Pharma) (proprietary)

   Injection, adrenaline (as hydrochloride) 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL). Net price 1 mL (with 21 gauge × 1.5 inch needle for intramuscular injection) = £10.79, 1 mL (with 21 gauge × 0.25 inch needle for subcutaneous injection) = £8.36 (both disposable syringes)

   Excipients include sulphites

   **Intravenous**

   Extreme caution, see notes above

   Adrenaline/Epinephrine 1 in 10 000, Dilute (Non-proprietary) (BNFC 2011–2012 3.4.3)

   Injection, adrenaline (as acid tartrate) 100 micrograms/mL, 10-mL amp, 1-mL and 10-mL prefilled syringe

   EpiPen (Meda) (BNFC 2011–2012 3.4.3)

   Auto-injector 0.3 mg (delivering a single dose of adrenaline 300 micrograms), adrenaline 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000), net price 2-mL auto-injector device = £26.45, 2 × 2-mL auto-injector device = £52.90

   Excipients include sulphites

   Note 1.7 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use

   **Dose**

   **Acute anaphylaxis**

   • By intramuscular injection

   Child body-weight under 15 kg

   Child body-weight over 30 kg

   3 Respiro System

   **Anaphylaxis**

   1. **Jext** (ALK-Abelló) (BNFC 2011–2012 3.4.3)

   1. **Jext** 300 micrograms (delivering a single dose of adrenaline (as tartrate) 300 micrograms), adrenaline 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000), net price 1.4-mL auto-injector device = £28.77

   Excipients include sulphites

   Note 1.1 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use

   **Dose**

   **Acute anaphylaxis**

   • By intramuscular injection

   Child body-weight under 15 kg 150 micrograms

   Child body-weight 15–30 kg 150 micrograms

   1. **Jext** 150 micrograms (delivering a single dose of adrenaline (as tartrate) 150 micrograms), adrenaline 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000), net price 1.4-mL auto-injector device = £28.77

   Excipients include sulphites

   Note 1.1 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use

   **Dose**

   **Acute anaphylaxis**

   • By intramuscular injection

   Child body-weight under 15 kg

   Child body-weight 15–30 kg

   1. **Jext** 300 micrograms (delivering a single dose of adrenaline (as tartrate) 300 micrograms), adrenaline 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000), net price 2.1-mL auto-injector device = £52.90

   Excipients include sulphites

   Note 1.7 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use

   **Dose**

   **Acute anaphylaxis**

   • By intramuscular injection

   Child body-weight under 15 kg

   Child body-weight over 30 kg

   1. **Jext** 150 micrograms (delivering a single dose of adrenaline (as tartrate) 150 micrograms), adrenaline 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000), net price 2.1-mL auto-injector device = £52.90

   Excipients include sulphites

   Note 1.7 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use

   **Dose**

   **Acute anaphylaxis**

   • By intramuscular injection

   Child body-weight under 15 kg

   Child body-weight over 30 kg

   1. **Jext** 300 micrograms (delivering a single dose of adrenaline (as tartrate) 300 micrograms), adrenaline 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000), net price 3.1-mL auto-injector device = £52.90

   Excipients include sulphites

   Note 1.7 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use

   **Dose**

   **Acute anaphylaxis**

   • By intramuscular injection

   Child body-weight under 15 kg

   Child body-weight 15–30 kg

   **Angioedema**

   Angioedema is dangerous if laryngeal oedema is present. In this circumstance adrenaline (epinephrine) injection and oxygen should be given as described under Anaphylaxis (see above); antihistamines and corticosteroids should also be given (see again above).
3 Respiratory system

Tracheal intubation may be necessary. In some children with laryngeal oedema, adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution may be given by nebuliser. However, nebulised adrenaline cannot be relied upon for a systemic effect—intramuscular adrenaline should be used.

**Hereditary angioedema**
The administration of C1-esterase inhibitor (in fresh frozen plasma or in partially purified form) may terminate acute attacks of *hereditary angioedema*, but is not practical for long-term prophylaxis; it can also be used for short-term prophylaxis before surgery or dental procedures [unlicensed indication]. *Tranexamic acid* (section 2.11) is used for short-term or long-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema; short-term prophylaxis is started several days before planned procedures which may trigger an acute attack of hereditary angioedema (e.g. dental work) and continued for 2–5 days afterwards. *Danazol* [unlicensed indication, see BNF section 6.7.2] is best avoided in children because of its androgenic effects but it can be used for short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema.

**C1-ESTERASE INHIBITOR**

**Cautions**
- Vaccination against hepatitis A (p. 607) and hepatitis B (p. 608) may be required
- Pregnancy
  - Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential
- Breast-feeding
  - Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available
- Side-effects
  - Rarely injection-site reactions, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis)
- Licensed use
  - Not licensed for short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema

**Indication and dose**

- Acute attacks of hereditary angioedema, short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema before surgery or dental procedures
  - By slow intravenous injection or intravenous infusion (specialist use only)
  - **Neonate**: 20 units/kg
  - **Child 1 month–18 years**: 20 units/kg

**Berinert® (CSL Behring)** ▼

- Injection, powder for reconstitution C1-esterase inhibitor, net price 500-unit vial = £550.00
- Electrolytes Na⁺ 2.1 mmol/10 mL-vial

**Note**

- Dose expressed as caffeine base

**Caffeine**

**Cautions**
- Gastro-oesophageal reflux; cardiovascular disease; monitor plasma-caffeine concentration (see notes above); monitor closely for 1 week after stopping treatment
- Side-effects
  - Hypertension, tachycardia; irritability, restlessness; hypoglycaemia, hyperglycaemia; fluid and electrolyte imbalance

**Indication and dose**

**Neonatal apnoea**

- **By mouth, expressed as caffeine base**
  - **Neonate** initially 10 mg/kg, then 2.5–5 mg/kg once daily starting 24 hours after initial dose

- **By intravenous infusion, expressed as caffeine base**
  - **Neonate** initially 10 mg/kg over 30 minutes, then 2.5–5 mg/kg over 10 minutes once daily starting 24 hours after initial dose

**Safe practice**

- When prescribing, always state dose in terms of caffeine base
  - Caffeine base 1 mg = cafeïne citrate 2 mg

**Administration**

- Caffeine injection may be administered by mouth or by intravenous infusion

**Caffeine**

- (Non-proprietary)
  - Injection, caffeine 5 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £4.89
  - Electrolytes Na⁺ < 0.5 mmol/amp

**3.5 Respiratory stimulants and pulmonary surfactants**

**3.5.1 Respiratory stimulants**

Respiratory stimulants (analeptic drugs), such as caffeine, reduce the frequency of neonatal apnoea, and the need for mechanical ventilation during the first 7 days of treatment. They are typically used in the management of very preterm neonates, and continued until a postmenstrual age of 34 to 35 weeks is reached (or longer if necessary). They should only be given under expert supervision in hospital; it is important to rule out any underlying disorder, such as seizures, hypoglycaemia, or infection, causing respiratory exhaustion before starting treatment with a respiratory stimulant.

Caffeine (as caffeine base) is licensed for the treatment of apnoea in preterm neonates; it is used in preference to theophylline (section 3.1.3). Caffeine has fewer adverse effects and a longer half-life than theophylline in neonates. It is well absorbed when given orally; intravenous treatment is rarely necessary. Plasma-caffeine concentration should be measured if the child has previously been treated with theophylline. The therapeutic range for plasma-caffeine concentration is usually 10–20 mg/litre (50–100 micromol/litre), but a concentration of 25–35 mg/litre (130–180 micromol/litre) may be required.

**Caffeine base 1 mg = caffeine citrate 2 mg**

**3.5.2 Pulmonary surfactants**

Pulmonary surfactants derived from animal lungs, beractant and poractant alfa are used to prevent and treat respiratory distress syndrome (hyaline membrane disease) in preterm neonates. Prophylactic use of a pulmonary surfactant may reduce the need for mechanical ventilation and is more effective than ‘rescue treat-
Indication and dose

Licensed use

Licensed for use in respiratory distress

Side-effects

see notes above; also

Cautions

see notes above and consult product literature

BERACTANT

Cautions see notes above and consult product literature

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use licensed for use in respiratory distress syndrome in newborn premature infants, birth weight over 700 g, and as prophylaxis in neonates less than 32 weeks post-menstrual age

Indication and dose

Treatment of respiratory distress syndrome in preterm neonate; prophylaxis of respiratory distress syndrome in preterm neonate

• By endotracheal tube

Neonate phospholipid 100 mg/kg equivalent to a volume of 4 mL/kg, preferably within 8 hours of birth (preferably within 15 minutes of birth for prophylaxis); dose may be repeated within 48 hours at intervals of at least 6 hours for up to 4 doses

Survanta® (Abbott) Suspension, beractant (bovine lung extract) providing phospholipid 25 mg/mL, with lipids and proteins, net price 8-mL vial = £306.43

PORACTANT ALFA

Cautions see notes above and consult product literature

Side-effects see notes above; also rarely hypotension

Licensed use licensed for use in respiratory distress syndrome in newborn premature infants, birth weight over 700 g, and as prophylaxis in neonates 24–32 weeks post-menstrual age

Indication and dose

Treatment of respiratory distress syndrome or hyaline membrane disease in preterm neonate; prophylaxis of respiratory distress syndrome in preterm neonate

• By endotracheal tube

Neonate treatment, 100–200 mg/kg; further doses of 100 mg/kg may be repeated at intervals of 12 hours; max. total dose 300–400 mg/kg; prophylaxis, 100–200 mg/kg soon after birth (preferably within 15 minutes); further doses of 100 mg/kg may be repeated 6–12 hours later and after a further 12 hours if still intubated; max. total dose 300–400 mg/kg

Curosurf® (Chiesi) Suspension, poractant alfa (porcine lung phospholipid fraction) 80 mg/mL, net price 1.5-mL vial = £281.64; 3-mL vial = £547.40

Oxygen should be regarded as a drug. It is prescribed for hypoxaemic patients to increase alveolar oxygen tension and decrease the work of breathing. The concentration of oxygen required depends on the condition being treated; administration of an inappropriate concentration of oxygen may have serious or even fatal consequences. High concentrations of oxygen can cause pulmonary epithelial damage (bronchopulmonary dysplasia), convulsions, and retinal damage, especially in preterm neonates.

Oxygen is probably the most common drug used in medical emergencies. It should be prescribed initially to achieve a normal or near-normal oxygen saturation. In most acutely ill children with an expected or known normal or low arterial carbon dioxide ($P_{aCO_2}$), oxygen saturation should be maintained above 92%; some clinicians may aim for a target of 94–96%. In some clinical situations, such as carbon monoxide poisoning, (see also Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 33), it is more appropriate to aim for the highest possible oxygen saturation until the child is stable. Hypercapnic respiratory failure is rare in children; in those children at risk, a lower oxygen saturation target of 88–92% is indicated, see below.

High concentration oxygen therapy is safe in uncomplicated cases of conditions such as pneumonia, pulmonary embolism, pulmonary fibrosis, shock, severe trauma, sepsis, or anaphylaxis. In such conditions, low arterial oxygen ($P_{aO_2}$) is usually associated with low or normal arterial carbon dioxide ($P_{aCO_2}$) and there is little risk of hypoventilation and carbon dioxide retention.

In severe acute asthma, the arterial carbon dioxide ($P_{aCO_2}$) is usually subnormal, but as asthma deteriorates it may rise steeply. These patients usually require a high concentration of oxygen and if the arterial carbon dioxide ($P_{aCO_2}$) remains high despite treatment, intermittent positive pressure ventilation needs to be considered urgently.

Oxygen should not be given to neonates except under expert supervision. Particular care is required in preterm neonates because of the risk of hyperoxia (see above).

Low concentration oxygen therapy (controlled oxygen therapy) is reserved for children at risk of hypercapnic respiratory failure, which is more likely in children with:

• advanced cystic fibrosis;
• advanced non-cystic fibrosis bronchiectasis;
3 Respiratory system

Oxygen

severe kyphoscoliosis or severe ankylosing spondylitis;
severe lung scarring caused by tuberculosis;
musculoskeletal disorders with respiratory weakness, especially if on home ventilation;
an overdose of opioids, benzodiazepines, or other drugs causing respiratory depression.

Until blood gases can be measured, initial oxygen should be given using a controlled concentration of 28% or less, titrated towards a target concentration of 88–92%. The aim is to provide the child with enough oxygen to achieve an acceptable arterial oxygen tension without worsening carbon dioxide retention and respiratory acidosis.

Domiciliary oxygen Oxygen should only be prescribed for use in the home after careful evaluation in hospital by a respiratory care specialist. Carers and children who smoke should be advised of the risks of smoking when receiving oxygen, including the risk of fire. Smoking cessation therapy (section 4.10.2) should be tried before home oxygen prescription.

Long-term oxygen therapy The aim of long-term oxygen therapy is to maintain oxygen saturation of at least 92%. Children (especially those with chronic neonatal lung disease) often require supplemental oxygen, either for 24-hours a day or during periods of sleep; many children are eventually weaned off long-term oxygen therapy as their condition improves.

Long-term oxygen therapy should be considered for children with conditions such as:
- bronchopulmonary dysplasia (chronic neonatal lung disease);
- congenital heart disease with pulmonary hypertension;
- pulmonary hypertension secondary to pulmonary disease;
- idiopathic pulmonary hypertension;
- sickle-cell disease with persistent nocturnal hypoxia;
- interstitial lung disease and obliterative bronchiolitis;
- cystic fibrosis;
- obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome;
- neuromuscular or skeletal disease requiring non-invasive ventilation;
- pulmonary malignancy or other terminal disease with disabling dyspnoea.

Increased respiratory depression is seldom a problem in children with stable respiratory failure treated with low concentrations of oxygen although it may occur during exacerbations; children and their carers should be warned to call for medical help if drowsiness or confusion occurs.

Short-burst oxygen therapy Oxygen is occasionally prescribed for short-burst (intermittent) use for episodes of breathlessness.

Ambulatory oxygen therapy

Ambulatory oxygen is prescribed for children on long-term oxygen therapy who need to be away from home on a regular basis.

Oxygen therapy equipment

Under the NHS oxygen may be supplied as oxygen cylinders. Oxygen flow can be adjusted by means of an oxygen flow meter. Oxygen delivered from a cylinder should be passed through a humidifier if used for long periods.

Oxygen concentrators are more economical for children who require oxygen for long periods, and in England and Wales can be ordered on the NHS on a regional tendering basis (see below). A concentrator is recommended for a child who requires oxygen for more than 8 hours a day (or 21 cylinders per month). Exceptionally, if a higher concentration of oxygen is required the output of 2 oxygen concentrators can be combined using a ‘Y’ connection.

A nasal cannula is usually preferred to a face mask for long-term oxygen therapy from an oxygen concentrator. Nasal cannulas can, however, cause dermatitis and mucosal drying in sensitive individuals.

Giving oxygen by nasal cannula allows the child to talk, eat, and drink, but the concentration is not controlled and the method may not be appropriate for acute respiratory failure. When oxygen is given through a nasal cannula at a rate of 1–2 litres/minute the inspiratory oxygen concentration is usually low, but it varies with ventilation and can be high if the child is underventilating.

Arrangements for supplying oxygen

The following services may be ordered in England and Wales:
- emergency oxygen;
- short-burst (intermittent) oxygen therapy;
- long-term oxygen therapy;
- ambulatory oxygen.

The type of oxygen service (or combination of services) should be ordered on a Home Oxygen Order Form (HOOF); the amount of oxygen required (hours per day) and flow rate should be specified. The supplier will determine the appropriate equipment to be provided. Special needs or preferences should be specified on the HOOF.

The clinician should obtain the patient’s consent to pass on the patient’s details to the supplier and the fire brigade. The supplier will contact the patient to make arrangements for delivery, installation, and maintenance of the equipment. The supplier will also train the patient to use the equipment.

The clinician should send order forms to the supplier by facsimile (see below); a copy of the HOOF should be sent to the Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board. The supplier will continue to provide the service until a revised order is received, or until notified that the patient no longer requires the home oxygen service.
3.7 Mucolytics

Mucolytics, such as carbocisteine and mecyclisteine, are used to facilitate mucociliary clearance and expectoration by reducing sputum viscosity but evidence of efficacy is limited.

Dornase alfa is a genetically engineered version of a naturally occurring human enzyme which cleaves extracellular deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA); it is used to reduce sputum viscosity in children with cystic fibrosis. Dornase alfa is administered by inhalation using a jet nebuliser (section 3.1.5), usually once daily at least 1 hour before physiotherapy; however, alternate-day therapy may be as effective as daily treatment. Not all children benefit from treatment with dornase alfa; improvement occurs within 2 weeks, but in more severely affected children a trial of 6–12 weeks may be required.

Nebulised hypertonic sodium chloride solution may improve mucociliary clearance in children with cystic fibrosis.

Mesna (Mistabron®, available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is used in some children with cystic fibrosis when other mucolytics have failed to reduce sputum viscosity; 3–6 mL of a 20% solution is nebulised twice daily.

Acetylcysteine has been used to treat meconium ileus in neonates and distal intestinal obstruction syndrome in children with cystic fibrosis, but evidence of efficacy is lacking. Gastrografin® (section 1.6.5), or a bowel cleansing preparation containing macrogols (section 1.6.5), is usually more effective. Acetylcysteine may be used as a mucolytic to prevent further obstruction.

### ACETYLCYSTEINE

**Cautions** history of peptic ulceration; asthma

**Side-effects** hypersensitivity-like reactions including rashes and anaphylaxis

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in meconium ileus or for distal intestinal obstructive syndrome in children with cystic fibrosis

#### Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meconium ileus (but see notes above)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>• By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200–400 mg up to 3 times daily if necessary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Treatment of distal intestinal obstructive syndrome (but see notes above)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>• By mouth</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–2 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4–3 g as a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2–7 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–3 g as a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 7–18 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–6 g as a single dose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prevention of distal intestinal obstruction syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>• By mouth</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–2 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100–200 mg 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2–12 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 mg 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200–400 mg 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Administration

For oral administration, use oral granules, or dilute injection solution (200 mg/mL) to a concentration of 50 mg/mL; orange or blackcurrant juice or cola drink may be used as a diluent to mask the bitter taste

**Acetylcysteine (Non-proprietary) **

Oral granules, acetylcysteine 100 mg/sachet; 200 mg/sachet. Label: 13

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

### CARBOCISTEINE

**Cautions** history of peptic ulceration

**Contra-indications** active peptic ulceration

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid in first trimester

**Breast-feeding** no information available

**Side-effects** rarely gastro-intestinal bleeding; hypersensitivity reactions (including rash and anaphylaxis) also reported

#### Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reduction of sputum viscosity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>• By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 2–5 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.5–125 mg 4 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–12 years</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250 mg 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.8 Aromatic inhalations

**Child 12–18 years** initially 2.25 g daily in divided doses, then 1.5 g daily in divided doses as condition improves.

**Carbocisteine** (Sanofi-Aventis)
- **Capsules**, carbocisteine 375 mg, net price 120-cap pack = £16.03
- Brands include **Mucodyne**
- **Oral liquid**, carbocisteine 125 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £4.39; 250 mg/5 mL, 300 mL = £5.61
- Brands include **Mucodyne**/Paediatric 125 mg/5 mL (cherry- and raspberry-flavoured) and **Mucodyne**/Paediatric 250 mg/5 mL (cinnamon- and rum-flavoured)

**Dornase Alfa**
- Phosphorylated glycosylated recombinant human deoxyribonuclease 1 (rhDNase)
- **Pregnancy** no evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk
- **Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful—manufacturer advises caution
- **Side-effects** pharyngitis, voice changes, chest pain; occasionally laryngitis, rashes, urticaria, conjunctivitis

**Indication and dose**
- Management of cystic fibrosis patients with a forced vital capacity (FVC) of greater than 40% of predicted to improve pulmonary function.
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution (by jet nebuliser)**
    - Child 5–18 years 2500 units (2.5 mg) once daily

**Pulmozyme** (Roche)
- **Nebuliser solution**, dornase alfa 1000 units (1 mg)/mL. Net price 2.5-mL (2500 units) vial = £16.55
- **Note** For use undiluted with jet nebulisers only; ultrasonic nebulisers are unsuitable

**Mecysteine Hydrochloride**
- (Methyl Cysteine Hydrochloride)
- **Cautions** history of peptic ulceration
- **Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid
- **Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid

**Indication and dose**
- **Reduction of sputum viscosity**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 5–12 years 100 mg 3 times daily
    - Child 12–18 years 200 mg 4 times daily for 2 days, then 200 mg 3 times daily for 6 weeks, then 200 mg twice daily

**Visclair** (Ranbaxy)
- **Tablets**, yellow, s/c, e/c, mecysteine hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 100 = £17.65. Label: 5, 22, 25

### Hypertonic sodium chloride

Nebulised hypertonic sodium chloride solution (3–7%) is used to mobilise lower respiratory tract secretions in mucous consolidation (e.g. cystic fibrosis). Temporary irritation, such as coughing, hoarseness, or reversible bronchoconstriction may occur; an inhaled bronchodilator can be used before treatment with hypertonic sodium chloride to reduce the risk of these adverse effects.

**MucoClear® 3%** (Pari)
- **Nebuliser solution**, sodium chloride 3%, net price 20 x 4 mL = £12.98; 60 x 4 mL = £27.00
- **Dose**
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
    - Child 4 mL 2–4 times daily

**MucoClear® 6%** (Pari)
- **Nebuliser solution**, sodium chloride 6%, net price 20 x 4 mL = £12.98; 60 x 4 mL = £27.00
- **Dose**
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
    - Child 4 mL twice daily

**Nebsal® 7%** (Forest)
- **Nebuliser solution**, sodium chloride 7%, net price 60 x 4 mL = £27.00
- **Dose**
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
    - Child 4 mL up to twice daily

### 3.8 Aromatic inhalations

Inhalations containing volatile substances such as eucalyptus oil are traditionally used to relieve congestion and ease breathing. Although the vapour may contain little of the additive, it encourages deliberate inspiration of warm moist air which is often comforting. Boiling water should not be used for inhalations owing to the risk of scalding.

Strong aromatic decongestants (applied as rubs or to pillows) are not recommended for infants under the age of 3 months. **Sodium chloride 0.9%** solution given as nasal drops can be used to liquefy mucous secretions and relieve nasal congestion in infants and young children.

**Benzoin Tincture, Compound, BP**
- **Tincture**, balsamic acids approx. 4.5%. Label: 15
- **Dose**
  - **Nasal congestion**
    - **By inhalation**
      - Add one teaspoonful to a pint of hot, not boiling, water and inhale the vapour

**Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation, BP 1980**
- **Inhalation**, ractemhol or levomenthol 2 g, eucalyptus oil 10 mL, light magnesium carbonate 7 g, water to 100 mL
- **Dose**
  - **Nasal congestion**
    - **By inhalation**
      - Add one teaspoonful to a pint of hot, not boiling, water and inhale the vapour

**Dental prescribing on the NHS** May be prescribed as Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation BP, 1980

---

**Carbocisteine (Sanofi-Aventis)**, **Capsules**, carbocisteine 375 mg, net price 120-cap pack = £16.03
**Brands include Mucodyne**
**Oral liquid**, carbocisteine 125 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £4.39; 250 mg/5 mL, 300 mL = £5.61
**Brands include Mucodyne**/Paediatric 125 mg/5 mL (cherry- and raspberry-flavoured) and **Mucodyne**/Paediatric 250 mg/5 mL (cinnamon- and rum-flavoured)

**Dornase Alfa**
- Phosphorylated glycosylated recombinant human deoxyribonuclease 1 (rhDNase)
- **Pregnancy** no evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk
- **Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful—manufacturer advises caution
- **Side-effects** pharyngitis, voice changes, chest pain; occasionally laryngitis, rashes, urticaria, conjunctivitis

**Indication and dose**
- Management of cystic fibrosis patients with a forced vital capacity (FVC) of greater than 40% of predicted to improve pulmonary function.
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution (by jet nebuliser)**
    - Child 5–18 years 2500 units (2.5 mg) once daily

**Pulmozyme** (Roche)
- **Nebuliser solution**, dornase alfa 1000 units (1 mg)/mL. Net price 2.5-mL (2500 units) vial = £16.55
- **Note** For use undiluted with jet nebulisers only; ultrasonic nebulisers are unsuitable

**Mecysteine Hydrochloride**
- (Methyl Cysteine Hydrochloride)
- **Cautions** history of peptic ulceration
- **Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid
- **Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid

**Indication and dose**
- **Reduction of sputum viscosity**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 5–12 years 100 mg 3 times daily
    - Child 12–18 years 200 mg 4 times daily for 2 days, then 200 mg 3 times daily for 6 weeks, then 200 mg twice daily

**Visclair** (Ranbaxy)
- **Tablets**, yellow, s/c, e/c, mecysteine hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 100 = £17.65. Label: 5, 22, 25

**Hypertonic sodium chloride**

Nebulised hypertonic sodium chloride solution (3–7%) is used to mobilise lower respiratory tract secretions in mucous consolidation (e.g. cystic fibrosis). Temporary irritation, such as coughing, hoarseness, or reversible bronchoconstriction may occur; an inhaled bronchodilator can be used before treatment with hypertonic sodium chloride to reduce the risk of these adverse effects.

**MucoClear® 3%** (Pari)
- **Nebuliser solution**, sodium chloride 3%, net price 20 x 4 mL = £12.98; 60 x 4 mL = £27.00
- **Dose**
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
    - Child 4 mL 2–4 times daily

**MucoClear® 6%** (Pari)
- **Nebuliser solution**, sodium chloride 6%, net price 20 x 4 mL = £12.98; 60 x 4 mL = £27.00
- **Dose**
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
    - Child 4 mL twice daily

**Nebsal® 7%** (Forest)
- **Nebuliser solution**, sodium chloride 7%, net price 60 x 4 mL = £27.00
- **Dose**
  - **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
    - Child 4 mL up to twice daily

**Benzoin Tincture, Compound, BP**
- **Tincture**, balsamic acids approx. 4.5%. Label: 15
- **Dose**
  - **Nasal congestion**
    - **By inhalation**
      - Add one teaspoonful to a pint of hot, not boiling, water and inhale the vapour

**Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation, BP 1980**
- **Inhalation**, ractemhol or levomenthol 2 g, eucalyptus oil 10 mL, light magnesium carbonate 7 g, water to 100 mL
- **Dose**
  - **Nasal congestion**
    - **By inhalation**
      - Add one teaspoonful to a pint of hot, not boiling, water and inhale the vapour

**Dental prescribing on the NHS** May be prescribed as Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation BP, 1980
Cough preparations

3.9.1 Cough suppressants

Cough may be a symptom of an underlying disorder such as asthma (section 3.1), gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (section 1.1), or rhinitis (section 12.2.1), which should be addressed before prescribing cough suppressants. Cough may be associated with smoking or environmental pollutants. Cough can also result from bronchiectasis including that associated with cystic fibrosis; cough can also have a significant habit component. There is little evidence of any significant benefit from the use of cough suppressants in children with acute cough in ambulatory settings. Cough suppressants may cause sputum retention and this can be harmful in children with bronchiectasis.

The use of cough suppressants containing pholcodine or similar opioid analgesics is not generally recommended in children and should be avoided in children under 6 years; the use of over-the-counter codeine-containing liquids should be avoided in children under 18 years, see MHRA/CHM advice below.

Sedating antihistamines (section 3.4.1) are used as the cough suppressant component of many compound cough preparations on sale to the public; all tend to cause drowsiness which may reflect their main mode of action.

3.9.2 Expectorant and demulcent cough preparations

Simple linctus and other demulcent cough preparations containing soothing substances, such as syrup or glycerol, may temporarily relieve a dry irritating cough. These preparations have the advantage of being harmless and inexpensive and sugar-free versions are available.

Expectorants are claimed to promote expulsion of bronchial secretions but there is no evidence that any drug can specifically facilitate expectoration.

Compound cough preparations for children are on sale to the public but should not be used in children under 6 years; the rationale for some is dubious. Care should be taken to give the correct dose and to not use more than one preparation at a time, see MHRA/CHM advice above.
Simple Linctus, Paediatric, BP

Linctus (= oral solution), citric acid monohydrate 0.625% in a suitable vehicle with an anise flavour. Net price 100 mL = 72p
A sugar-free version is also available

Dose

Cough

• By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years 5–10 mL 3–4 times daily

Simple Linctus, BP

Linctus (= oral solution), citric acid monohydrate 2.5% in a suitable vehicle with an anise flavour. Net price 100 mL = 42p
A sugar-free version is also available

Dose

Cough

• By mouth

Child 12–18 years 5 mL 3–4 times daily

3.10 Systemic nasal decongestants

Nasal congestion in children due to allergic or vaso-motor rhinitis should be treated with oral antihistamines (section 3.4.1), topical nasal preparations containing corticosteroids (section 12.2.1), or topical decongents (section 12.2.2).

There is little evidence to support the use of systemic decongestants in children.

Pseudoephedrine has few sympathomimetic effects, and is commonly combined with other ingredients (including antihistamines) in preparations intended for the relief of cough and cold symptoms but it should not be used in children under 6 years, see MHRA/CHM advice, p. 167.

PSEUDOEPHEDRINE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions hypertension, heart disease, diabetes, hyperthyroidism, raised intra-ocular pressure; interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

Contra-indications treatment with MAOI within previous 2 weeks

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment

Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment

Pregnancy defective closure of the abdominal wall (gastrochisis) reported very rarely in newborns after first trimester exposure

Breast-feeding amount too small to be harmful

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, hypertension, tachycardia, headache, anxiety, restlessness, insomnia; rarely hallucinations, rash; urinary retention also reported

1 Can be sold to the public provided no more than 720 mg of pseudoephedrine salts are supplied, and ephedrine base (or salts) are not supplied at the same time; for details see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition)
4 Central nervous system

4.1 Hypnotics and anxiolytics
4.1.1 Hypnotics
Most anxiolytics (‘sedatives’) will induce sleep when given at night and most hypnotics will sedate when given during the day. Hypnotics and anxiolytics should be reserved for short courses to alleviate acute conditions after causal factors have been established.
4.1.2 Anxiolytics
The role of drug therapy in the management of anxiety disorders in children and adolescents is uncertain; drug therapy should be initiated only by specialists after psychosocial interventions have failed. Benzodiazepines and tricyclic antidepressants have been used but adverse effects may be problematic.

4.1.3 Barbiturates

4.2 Drugs used in psychoses and related disorders
4.2.1 Antipsychotic drugs
4.2.2 Antipsychotic depot injections
4.2.3 Antimanic drugs
4.3 Antidepressant drugs
4.3.1 Tricyclic antidepressant drugs
4.3.2 Monoamine-oxidase inhibitors
4.3.3 Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors
4.3.4 Other antidepressant drugs

4.4 CNS stimulants and other drugs for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

4.5 Drugs used in the treatment of obesity

4.6 Drugs used in nausea and vertigo

4.7 Analgesics
4.7.1 Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations
4.7.2 Opioid analgesics
4.7.3 Neuropathic pain
4.7.4 Antimigraine drugs
4.7.4.1 Treatment of acute migraine
4.7.4.2 Prophylaxis of migraine
4.7.4.3 Cluster headache and the trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias

4.8 Antiepileptics
4.8.1 Control of the epilepsies
4.8.2 Drugs used in status epilepticus
4.8.3 Febrile convulsions

4.9 Drugs used in dystonias and related disorders
4.9.1 Dopaminergic drugs used in dystonias
4.9.2 Antimuscarinic drugs used in dystonias
4.9.3 Drugs used in essential tremor, chorea, tics, and related disorders

4.10 Drugs used in substance dependence
4.10.1 Alcohol dependence
4.10.2 Nicotine dependence
4.10.3 Opioid dependence

4.11 Drugs for dementia

4.1 Hypnotics and anxiolytics

4.1.1 Hypnotics

4.1.2 Anxiolytics

4.1.3 Barbiturates

Hypnotics and anxiolytics may impair judgement and increase reaction time, and so affect ability to drive or perform skilled tasks; they increase the effects of alcohol. Moreover the hangover effects of a night dose may impair performance on the following day.

Important
1. Benzodiazepines are indicated for the short-term relief (two to four weeks only) of anxiety that is severe, disabling or causing the child unacceptable distress, occurring alone or in association with insomnia or short-term psychotic, organic, or psychotic illness.
2. The use of benzodiazepines to treat short-term ‘mild’ anxiety is inappropriate.
3. Benzodiazepines should be used to treat insomnia only when it is severe, disabling, or causing the child extreme distress.

4.1.1 Hypnotics

The prescribing of hypnotics to children, except for occasional use such as for sedation for procedures (section 15.1.4), is not justified. There is a risk of habituation with prolonged use. Problems settling children at night should be managed with behavioural therapy.
Dental procedures  Some anxious children may benefit from the use of a hypnotic the night before the dental appointment. Hypnotics do not relieve pain, and if pain interferes with sleep an appropriate analgesic should be given.

Chloral and derivatives

Chloral hydrate and derivatives were formerly popular hypnotics for children.

Chloral hydrate is now mainly used for sedation during diagnostic procedures (section 15.1.4). It accumulates on prolonged use.

**CHLORAL HYDRATE**

Cautions  reduce dose in debilitated; avoid prolonged use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter); avoid contact with skin and mucous membranes;  
**Interactions:** Appendix 1 (anxiolytics and hypnotics)

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may persist the next day and affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

**Contra-indications** severe cardiac disease; gastritis; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment** can precipitate coma; reduce dose in mild to moderate hepatic impairment; avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** avoid in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Breast-feeding** risk of sedation in infant—avoid

**Side-effects** gastric irritation (nausea and vomiting reported), abdominal distention, flatulence, headache, tolerance, dependence, excitement, delirium (especially on abrupt withdrawal), ketonuria, and rash

**Licensed use** not licensed for sedation for painless procedures

**Indication and dose**

**Sedation for painless procedures**

- **By mouth** or by rectum (if oral route not available)

  **Neonate** 30–50 mg/kg 45–60 minutes before procedure; doses up to 100 mg/kg may be used with respiratory monitoring

  **Child 1 month–12 years** 30–50 mg/kg (max. 1 g) 45–60 minutes before procedure; higher doses up to 100 mg/kg (max. 2 g) may be used

  **Child 12–18 years** 1–2 g 45–60 minutes before procedure

**Administration** for administration  **by mouth** dilute liquid with plenty of water or juice to mask unpleasant taste.

**Chloral Mixture, BP 2000** (Chloral Oral Solution)

**Mixture**, chloral hydrate 500 mg/5 mL in a suitable vehicle. Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Chloral Elixir, Paediatric, BP 2000** (Chloral Oral Solution, Paediatric)

**Elixir**, chloral hydrate 200 mg/5 mL (4%) in a suitable vehicle with a black currant flavour. Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Antihistamines**

Some  **antihistamines** (section 3.4.1) such as promethazine are used for occasional insomnia in adults; their prolonged duration of action can often cause drowsiness the following day. The sedative effect of antihistamines may diminish after a few days of continued treatment; antihistamines are associated with headache, psychomotor impairment and antimuscarinic effects. The use of antihistamines as hypnotics in children is not usually justified.

**PROMETHAZINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

Cautions  see notes in section 3.4.1; also avoid extravasation with intravenous injection

**Contra-indications** see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1

**Hepatic impairment** see notes in section 3.4.1

**Renal impairment** see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1

**Pregnancy** see notes in section 3.4.1

**Breast-feeding** see notes in section 3.4.1

**Side-effects** see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 2 years

**Indication and dose**

**Sedation (short-term use)**

- **By mouth**

  **Child 2–5 years** 15–20 mg

  **Child 5–10 years** 20–25 mg

  **Child 10–18 years** 25–50 mg
Sedation in intensive care

- By mouth or by slow intravenous injection or by deep intramuscular injection

| Child 1 month–12 years | 0.5–1 mg/kg (max. 25 mg) 4 times daily, adjusted according to response |
| Child 12–18 years | 25–50 mg 4 times daily, adjusted according to response |

Allergy and urticaria section 3.4.1

Nausea and vomiting section 4.6

1Promethazine (Non-proprietary) Injection, promethazine hydrochloride 25 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 68p, 2-mL amp = £1.20

1Phenergan® (Sanofi-Aventis) Injection, promethazine hydrochloride 25 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 67p

1Oral preparations Section 3.4.1

Melatonin is a pineal hormone that may affect sleep pattern. Clinical experience suggests that when appropriate behavioural sleep interventions fail, melatonin may be of value for treating sleep onset insomnia and delayed sleep phase syndrome in children with conditions such as visual impairment, cerebral palsy, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, autism, and learning difficulties. It is also sometimes used before magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), computed tomography (CT), or EEG investigations. Little is known about its long-term effects in children, and there is uncertainty as to the effect on other circadian rhythms including endocrine or reproductive hormone secretion. Treatment with melatonin should be initiated and supervised by a specialist, but may be continued by general practitioners under a shared-care arrangement. The need to continue melatonin therapy should be reviewed every 6 months. Melatonin is available as a modified-release tablet (Circadin®) and also as unlicensed formulations. Circadin® is licensed for the short-term treatment of primary insomnia in adults over 55 years. Unlicensed immediate-release preparations may be more suitable for children; the manufacturer should be specified in the shared-care guideline because of variability in clinical effect of unlicensed formulations.

MELATONIN

Cautions autoimmune disease (manufacturer advises avoid—no information available); interactions: Appendix 1 (melatonin)

Hepatic impairment clearance reduced—manufacturer advises avoid

Renal impairment no information available—caution

Pregnancy no information available—avoid

Breast-feeding present in milk—avoid

Side-effects less commonly abdominal pain, dyspepsia, dry mouth, mouth ulceration, weight gain, hypertension, chest pain, malaise, dizziness, restlessness, nervousness, irritability, anxiety, migraine, proteinuria, glycosuria, pruritus, rash, dry skin; rarely thirst, flatulence, halitosis, hypersalivation, vomiting, gastritis, hypertriglyceridaemia, palpitation, syncope, hot flushes, agression, impaired memory, restless legs syndrome, paraesthesia, mood changes, priapism, increased libido, prostatitis, polyuria, haematuria, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, electrolyte disturbances, muscle spasm, arthritis, lacrimation, visual disturbances, nail disorder

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Sleep onset insomnia and delayed sleep phase syndrome (see notes above)

- By mouth

| Child 1 month–18 years | initially 2–3 mg daily before bedtime increased if necessary after 1–2 weeks to 4–6 mg daily before bedtime; max. 10 mg daily |

Circadin® (Lundbeck) Tablets, m/r, melatonin 2 mg, net price 21-tab pack = £10.77. Label: 2, 21, 25

Note Other formulations of melatonin are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

4.1.2 Anxiolytics

Anxiolytic treatment should be used in children only to relieve acute anxiety (and related insomnia) caused by fear (e.g. before surgery, section 15.1.4.1).

Anxiolytic treatment should be limited to the lowest possible dose for the shortest possible time (see p. 169).

Buspirone Buspirone is thought to act at specific serotonin (5HT1A) receptors; safety and efficacy in children have yet to be determined.

4.1.3 Barbiturates

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

4.2 Drugs used in psychoses and related disorders

4.2.1 Antipsychotic drugs

4.2.2 Antipsychotic depot injections

4.2.3 Antimanic drugs

Advice on doses of antipsychotic drugs above BNF for Children upper limit

1. Consider alternative approaches including adjuvant therapy.
2. Bear in mind risk factors, including obesity.
3. Consider potential for drug interactions—see interactions: Appendix 1 (antipsychotics).
4. Carry out ECG to exclude untoward abnormalities such as prolonged QT interval; repeat ECG periodically and reduce dose if prolonged QT interval or other adverse abnormality develops.
5. Increase dose slowly and not more often than once weekly.
6. Carry out regular pulse, blood pressure, and temperature checks; ensure that patient maintains adequate fluid intake.
7. Consider high-dose therapy to be for limited period and review regularly; abandon if no improvement after 3 months (return to standard dosage).

**Important** When prescribing an antipsychotic for administration on an emergency basis, the intramuscular dose should be lower than the corresponding oral dose (owing to absence of first-pass effect), particularly if the child is very active (increased blood flow to muscle considerably increases the rate of absorption). The prescription should specify the dose for each route and should not imply that the same dose can be given by mouth or by intramuscular injection. The dose of antipsychotic for emergency use should be reviewed at least daily.

### 4.2.1 Antipsychotic drugs

There is little information on the efficacy and safety of antipsychotic drugs in children and adolescents and much of the information available has been extrapolated from adult data; in particular, little is known about the long-term effects of antipsychotic drugs on the developing nervous system. Antipsychotic drugs should be initiated and managed under the close supervision of an appropriate specialist.

Antipsychotic drugs are also known as ‘neuroleptics’ and (misleadingly) as ‘major tranquillisers’. Antipsychotic drugs generally tranquilise without impairing consciousness and without causing paradoxical excitation but they should not be regarded merely as tranquillisers. For conditions such as schizophrenia the tranquilising effect is of secondary importance. In the short term they are used to calm disturbed children whatever the underlying psychopathology, which may be schizophrenia, brain damage, mania, toxic delirium, or agitated depression. Antipsychotic drugs are used to alleviate severe anxiety but this too should be a short-term measure.

**Schizophrenia** Antipsychotic drugs relieve psychotic symptoms such as thought disorder, hallucinations, and delusions, and prevent relapse. Although they are usually less effective in apathetic withdrawn children, they sometimes appear to have an activating influence. Children with acute schizophrenia generally respond better than those with chronic symptoms. Children should receive antipsychotic drugs for 4–6 weeks before the drug is deemed ineffective.

Long-term treatment of a child with a definite diagnosis of schizophrenia may be necessary even after the first episode of illness in order to prevent the manifest illness from becoming chronic. Withdrawal of drug treatment requires careful surveillance because children who appear well on medication may suffer a disastrous relapse if treatment is withdrawn inappropriately. In addition the need for continuation of treatment may not become immediately evident because relapse is often delayed for several weeks after cessation of treatment.

Antipsychotic drugs are considered to act by interfering with dopaminergic transmission in the brain by blocking dopamine D$_2$ receptors, which may give rise to the extrapyramidal effects described below, and also to hyperprolactinaemia. Antipsychotic drugs may also affect cholinergic, alpha-adrenergic, histaminergic, and serotonergic receptors.

Choice of drug is influenced by the potential for side-effects and is often guided by individual circumstances e.g. the psychological effects of potential weight gain. The drugs most commonly used in children are haloperidol, risperidone, and olanzapine.

**Cautions** Assess child for movement disorders before starting treatment. Monitor neurological parameters, bowel habit, pulse, and blood pressure. Regular clinical monitoring of endocrine function should be considered when children are taking an antipsychotic known to increase prolactin levels; this includes measuring weight and height, assessing sexual maturation, and monitoring menstrual function. Children with schizophrenia should have physical health monitoring (including cardiovascular disease risk assessment) at least once per year.

Antipsychotic drugs should be used with caution in children with cardiovascular disease; an ECG may be required (see individual drug monographs), particularly if physical examination identifies cardiovascular risk factors, if there is a personal history of cardiovascular disease, or if the child is being admitted as an inpatient. Antipsychotic drugs should also be used with caution in children with epilepsy (and conditions predisposing to epilepsy), depression, myasthenia gravis (avoid chlorpromazine, pericyazine and prochlorperazine in these conditions) or a susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma. Caution is also required in severe respiratory disease and in children with a history of jaundice or who have blood dyscrasias (perform blood counts if unexplained infection or fever develops). As photosensitisation may occur with higher dosages, children should avoid direct sunlight. **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (antipsychotics).

**Contra-indications** Antipsychotic drugs may be contra-indicated in comatose states, CNS depression, and phaeochromocytoma.

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving or operating machinery), especially at start of treatment; effects of alcohol are enhanced.

**Withdrawal** There is a high risk of relapse if medication is stopped after 1–2 years. Withdrawal of antipsychotic drugs after long-term therapy should always be gradual and closely monitored to avoid the risk of acute withdrawal syndromes or rapid relapse. Children should be monitored regularly for signs and symptoms of relapse for 2 years after withdrawal of antipsychotic medication.

**Hepatic impairment** All antipsychotics can precipitate coma if used in hepatic impairment; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.
Renal impairment Start with small doses of antipsychotic drugs in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity. Pericystine should be avoided in renal impairment.

Pregnancy Extrapyramidal effects have been reported occasionally in the neonate when antipsychotic drugs are taken during the third trimester of pregnancy.

Breast-feeding There is limited information available on the short- and long-term effects of antipsychotics on the breast-fed infant. Animal studies indicate possible adverse effects of antipsychotic medicines on the developing nervous system. Treatment with antipsychotics whilst breast-feeding should be avoided unless absolutely necessary.

Side-effects Extrapyramidal symptoms are the most troublesome. They occur most frequently with the piperazined phenothiazines (such as perphenazine, prochlorperazine, trifluoperazine), the butyrophenones (such as haloperidol), and the depot preparations. They are easy to recognise but cannot be predicted accurately because they depend on the dose, the type of drug, and on individual susceptibility.

Extrapyramidal symptoms consist of:

- **parkinsonian symptoms** (including tremor), which may appear gradually (but less commonly than in adults);
- **dystonia** (abnormal face and body movements) and **dyssynkinesia**, which appear after only a few doses;
- **akathisia** (restlessness), which characteristically occurs after large initial doses and may resemble an exacerbation of the condition being treated; and
- **tardive dyskinesia** (rhythmic, involuntary movements of tongue, face, and jaw), which usually develops on long-term therapy or with high dosage, but it may develop on short-term treatment with low doses—short-lived tardive dyskinesia may occur after withdrawal of the drug.

**Parkinsonian symptoms** remit if the drug is withdrawn and may be suppressed by the administration of anti-muscarinic drugs (section 4.9.2). However, routine administration of such drugs is not justified because not all children are affected and because they may unmask or worsen tardive dyskinesia.

**Tardive dyskinesia** is of particular concern because it may be irreversible on withdrawing therapy and treatment is usually ineffective. In children, tardive dyskinesia is more likely to occur when the antipsychotic is withdrawn. However, some manufacturers suggest that drug withdrawal at the earliest signs of tardive dyskinesia (fine vermicular movements of the tongue) may halt its full development. Tardive dyskinesia may occur and treatment must be carefully and regularly reviewed.

**Hypotension and interference with temperature regulation** are dose-related side-effects.

**Neuroleptic malignant syndrome** (hyperthermia, fluctuating level of consciousness, muscle rigidity, and autonomic dysfunction with pallor, tachycardia, labile blood pressure, sweating, and urinary incontinence) is a rare but potentially fatal side-effect of some antipsychotic drugs. Discontinuation of the antipsychotic is essential because there is no proven effective treatment, but cooling, bromocriptine, and dantrolene have been used. The syndrome, which usually lasts for 5–7 days after drug discontinuation, may be unduly prolonged if depot preparations have been used.

Other **side-effects** include: drowsiness; apathy; agitation, excitement and insomnia; convulsions; dizziness; headache; confusion; gastrointestinal disturbances; nasal congestion; antimuscarinic symptoms (such as dry mouth, constipation, difficulty with micturition, and blurred vision; very rarely angle-closure glaucoma); cardiovascular symptoms (such as hypotension, tachycardia, and arrhythmias); ECG changes (cases of sudden death have occurred); venous thromboembolism; endocrine effects such as menstrual disturbances, galactorrhoea, gynaecomastia, impotence, and weight gain; blood dyscrasias (such as agranulocytosis and leucopenia), photosensitisation, contact sensitisation and rashes, and jaundice (including cholestatic); corneal and lens opacities, and purplish pigmentation of the skin, cornea, conjunctiva, and retina.

**Overdosage:** for poisoning with phenothiazines and related compounds, see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 31.

**Classification of antipsychotics** The phenothiazine derivatives can be divided into 3 main groups.

**Group 1:** chlorpromazine, levomepromazine (methotrimeprazine), and promazine, generally characterised by pronounced sedative effects and moderate antimuscarinic and extrapyramidal side-effects.

**Group 2:** pericyazine and pipotizine, generally characterised by moderate sedative effects, marked antimuscarinic effects, but fewer extrapyramidal side-effects than groups 1 or 3.

**Group 3:** perphenazine, prochlorperazine, and trifluoperazine, generally characterised by fewer sedative effects, fewer antimuscarinic effects, but more pronounced extrapyramidal side-effects than groups 1 and 2.

**Choice** As indicated above, the various drugs differ somewhat in their clinical properties. They include the **butyrophenones** (e.g. haloperidol); **diphenylbutylpiperidines** (e.g. pimozide); **thioxanthenes** (flupentixol and zuclopenthixol); and the **substituted benzamides** (e.g. sulpiride).

For details of the newer antipsychotic drugs amisulpride, aripiprazole, clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone, see under Atypical Antipsychotic Drugs, p. 177.

Dissociative and hypnosedative effects are a particular concern when other antipsychotic drugs are ineffective or not tolerated.
Prescribing of more than one antipsychotic drug at the same time is not recommended; it may constitute a hazard and there is no significant evidence that side-effects are minimised.

Chlorpromazine is associated with a wide range of adverse effects, including marked sedation.

Pimozide is less sedating than chlorpromazine. Although pimozide is licensed for use in children, it is not used because of the risk of serious cardiac side-effects (see ECG Monitoring, p. 176).

Sulpiride in high doses controls florid positive symptoms, but in lower doses it has an alerting effect on patients with apathetic withdrawn schizophrenia.

Haloperidol and trifluoperazine are also licensed for use in children but their use is limited by the high incidence of extrapyramidal symptoms. Haloperidol may be preferred for the rapid control of hyperactive psychotic states; it causes less hypotension than chlorpromazine.

Other uses Nausea and vomiting (section 4.6), choreas, motor tics, and intractable hiccup.

**Equivalent doses of oral antipsychotic drugs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antipsychotic drug</th>
<th>Daily dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorpromazine</td>
<td>100 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine</td>
<td>50 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>2–3 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimozide</td>
<td>2 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone</td>
<td>0.5–1 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulpiride</td>
<td>200 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trifluoperazine</td>
<td>5 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dosage**

After an initial period of stabilisation, the total daily oral dose of antipsychotic drugs can be given as a single dose in most children. For advice on doses above the **BNF for Children** upper limit, see p. 171.

**CHLORPROMAZINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Warning** Owing to the risk of contact sensitisation, pharmacists, nurses, and other health workers should avoid direct contact with chlorpromazine; tablets should not be crushed and solutions should be handled with care

**Cautions** see notes above; also diabetes; children should remain supine, with blood pressure monitoring for 30 minutes after intramuscular injection; dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment

**Contra-indications** see notes above; hypothyroidism

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also hyperglycaemia

**Indication and dose**

**Childhood schizophrenia and other psychoses** (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 1–6 years 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours adjusted according to response (max. 40 mg daily)
  - Child 6–12 years 10 mg 3 times daily, adjusted according to response (max. 75 mg daily)
  - Child 12–18 years 25 mg 3 times daily (or 75 mg at night), adjusted according to response, to usual maintenance dose of 75–300 mg daily (but up to 1 g daily may be required)

**Relief of acute symptoms of psychoses** (under specialist supervision) but see also Cautions and Side-effects

- By deep intramuscular injection
  - Child 1–6 years 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (max. 40 mg daily)
  - Child 6–12 years 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (max. 75 mg daily)
  - Child 12–18 years 25–50 mg every 6–8 hours

**Chlorpromazine** (Non-proprietary) *(BNF)*

**Tablets**, chlorpromazine hydrochloride 25 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.77; 50 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.37; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.31. Label: 2, 11

**Brands** include [Chloractil®](https://www.chloractil.com/)

**Oral solution**, chlorpromazine hydrochloride 25 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £1.79; 100 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £4.28. Label: 2, 11

**Injection**, chlorpromazine hydrochloride 25 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 60p, 2-mL amp = 63p

**Largactil®** (Sanofi-Aventis) *(BNF)*

**Injection**, chlorpromazine hydrochloride 25 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 60p

**HALOPERIDOL**

**Cautions** see notes above; also subarachnoid haemorrhage and metabolic disturbances such as hypokalaemia, hypocalcaemia, or hypomagnesaemia; dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment

**Contra-indications** see notes above; QT-interval prolongation (avoid concomitant administration of drugs that prolong QT interval); bradycardia

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above, but less sedating and fewer antimuscarinic or hypotensive symptoms; pigmentation and photosensitivity reactions rare; depression; weight loss; less commonly dyspnoea, oedema; rarely bronchospasm, hypoglycaemia, and inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion; Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis also reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children for nausea and vomiting in palliative care
**Indication and dose**

**Schizophrenia and other psychoses, mania, short-term adjunctive management of psycho-motor agitation, excitement and violent or dangerously impulsive behaviour (under specialist supervision)**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 0.5–3 mg 2–3 times daily or 3–5 mg 2–3 times daily in severely affected or resistant disease; in resistant schizophrenia up to 30 mg daily may be needed; adjusted according to response to lowest effective maintenance dose (as low as 5–10 mg daily)

**Motor tics (including Tourette syndrome) (under specialist supervision)**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 5–12 years** 12.5–25 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response up to 10 mg daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** 1.5 mg 3 times daily, adjusted according to response up to 10 mg daily

**Nausea and vomiting in palliative care**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 12–18 years** 1.5 mg once daily at night, increased to 1.5 mg twice daily if necessary; max. 5 mg twice daily

**Haloperidol**

- **Tablets**
  - (Non-proprietary)
  - Tablets, haloperidol 500 micrograms, net price 28-tab pack = 91p; 1.5 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.39; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.15; 10 mg, 28-tab pack = £3.53; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £4.07. Label: 2

- **Injection**
  - haloperidol 5 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 49p

**Dozic® (Rosemont)**

- **Oral liquid**
  - sugar-free, haloperidol 1 mg/mL, net price 100-mL pack = £6.86. Label: 2

**Haldol® (Janssen)**

- **Tablets**
  - scored, haloperidol 5 mg (blue), net price 100-tab pack = £7.21; 10 mg (yellow), 100-tab pack = £14.08. Label: 2

- **Oral liquid**
  - sugar-free, haloperidol 2 mg/mL, net price 100-mL pack (with pipette) = £4.45. Label: 2

**Serenace® (IVAX)**

- **Capsules**
  - green, haloperidol 500 micrograms, net price 30-cap pack = 86p. Label: 2

- **Tablets**
  - haloperidol 1.5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £1.74; 5 mg (pink), 30-tab pack = £3.95; 10 mg (pale pink), 30-tab pack = £6.76. Label: 2

- **Oral liquid**
  - sugar-free, haloperidol 2 mg/mL, net price 500-mL pack = £34.48. Label: 2

---

**LEVOMEPROMAZINE**

- **(Methotrimeprazine)**

**Cautions** see notes above; diabetes; children receiving large initial doses should remain supine

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; occasionally raised erythrocyte sedimentation rate occurs; hyperglycaemia also reported

**Indication and dose**

**Restlessness and confusion in palliative care**

- **By continuous subcutaneous infusion**
  - **Child 1–12 years** 0.35–3 mg/kg over 24 hours
  - **Child 12–18 years** 12.5–200 mg over 24 hours

**Nausea and vomiting in palliative care**

- **By continuous intravenous or subcutaneous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 100–400 micrograms/kg over 24 hours
  - **Child 12–18 years** 5–25 mg over 24 hours

**Administration** for administration by subcutaneous infusion dilute with a suitable volume of Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Nozinan® (Sanofi-Aventis)**

- **Tablets**
  - scored, levomepromazine maleate 25 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £20.26. Label: 2

- **Injection**
  - levomepromazine hydrochloride 25 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £2.01

---

**PERICYAZINE**

- **(Periciazine)**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; more sedating; hypotension common when treatment initiated; respiratory depression

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Schizophrenia, psychoses (severe mental or behavioural disorders only) (under specialist supervision)**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1–12 years** initially 500 micrograms daily for 10-kg child, increased by 1 mg for each additional 5 kg to max. total daily dose of 10 mg; dose may be gradually increased according to response but maintenance should not exceed twice initial dose
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 25 mg 3 times daily increased at weekly intervals by steps of 25 mg according to response; usual max. 100 mg 3 times daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2 divided doses
4.2.1 Antipsychotic drugs

**Perphenazine**

**Cautions** see notes above; hypothyroidism

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; less sedating; extrapyramidal symptoms, especially dystonia, more frequent, particularly at high dosage; rarely systemic lupus erythematosus

**Indication and dose**

Schizophrenia and other psychoses, mania, short-term adjunctive management of anxiety, severe psychomotor agitation, excitement, violent or dangerously impulsive behaviour (under specialist supervision)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 14–18 years** initially 4 mg 3 times daily adjusted according to the response; max. 24 mg daily

Fentazin® (Goldshield)

Tablets, both s/c, perphenazine 2 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £22.38; 4 mg, 100-tab pack = £26.34. Label: 2

**Sulpiride**

**Cautions** see notes above; also excited, agitated, or aggressive children (even low doses may aggravate symptoms)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also hepatitis and venous thromboembolism

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in Tourette syndrome

**Indication and dose**

Schizophrenia (under specialist supervision)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 14–18 years** 200–400 mg twice daily; max. 800 mg daily in predominantly negative symptoms, dose increased to max. 2.4 g daily in mainly positive symptoms

Sulpiride (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, sulpiride 200 mg, net price 20-tab pack = £8.09; 56-tab pack = £8.46; 400 mg, 20-tab pack = £18.57. Label: 2

**Sulpor® (Rosemont)**

Oral solution, sugar-free, lemon- and aniseed-flavoured, sulpiride 200 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £25.38. Label: 2

**Trifluoperazine**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; extrapyramidal symptoms more frequent, especially at doses exceeding 6 mg daily; anorexia; muscle weakness
4.2.1 Antipsychotic drugs

Cautions and contra-indications While atypical antipsychotic drugs have not generally been associated with clinically significant prolongation of the QT interval, they should be used with care if prescribed with other drugs that increase the QT interval. Atypical antipsychotic drugs should be used with caution in children with cardiovascular disease, or a history of epilepsy; interactions: Appendix 1 (antipsychotics).

Skilled tasks Atypical antipsychotic drugs may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol are enhanced.

Withdrawal Withdrawal of antipsychotic drugs after long-term therapy should always be gradual and closely monitored to avoid the risk of acute withdrawal syndromes or rapid relapse.

Side-effects Side-effects of the atypical antipsychotic drugs include weight gain, dizziness, postural hypotension (especially during initial dose titration) which may be associated with syncope or reflex tachycardia in some children, extrapyramidal symptoms (usually mild and transient and which respond to dose reduction or to an antimuscarinic drug), and occasionally tardive dyskinesia on long-term administration (discontinue drug on appearance of early signs); venous thromboembolism has been reported. Hyperglycaemia and sometimes diabetes can occur, particularly with clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone; monitoring weight and plasma-glucose concentration may identify the development of hyperglycaemia. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome has been reported rarely. Hypersalivation associated with clozapine therapy can be treated with hyoscine hydrobromide (p. 198), provided that the patient is not at particular risk from the additive antimuscarinic side-effects of hyoscine and clozapine.

Atypical antipsychotic drugs

The ‘atypical antipsychotic’ drugs amisulpride, aripiprazole, clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone may be better tolerated than other antipsychotic drugs; extrapyramidal symptoms may be less frequent than with older antipsychotic drugs. Clozapine, olanzapine, and quetiapine cause little or no elevation of prolactin concentration; when changing from other antipsychotic drugs, a reduction in prolactin may increase fertility. Clozapine is used for the treatment of schizophrenia only in children unresponsive to, or intolerant of, conventional antipsychotic drugs. It can cause agranulocytosis and its use is restricted to patients registered with a clozapine Patient Monitoring Service (see under Clozapine).

NICE guidance

Aripiprazole for the treatment of schizophrenia in people aged 15 to 17 years (January 2011)

Aripiprazole is recommended as an option for the treatment of schizophrenia in adolescents aged 15 to 17 years who have not responded adequately to, or who are intolerant of, risperidone, or for whom risperidone is contra-indicated.
4.2.1 Antipsychotic drugs

Amisulpride (Non-proprietary)
Tablets, amisulpride 50 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £7.18; 100 mg, 60-tab pack = £31.74; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £16.47; 400 mg, 60-tab pack = £105.68. Label: 2

Solan® (Sanofi-Aventis)
Tablets, scored, amisulpride 50 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £22.76; 100 mg, 60-tab pack = £35.29; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £58.99. Label: 2

Solution, 100 mg/mL, net price 60 mL (caramel flavour) = £33.76. Label: 2

ARIPIPRAZOLE

Cautions see notes above; cerebrovascular disease
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment use with caution in severe impairment
Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available
Breast-feeding avoid—present in milk in very small quantities

Side-effects see notes above; gastrointestinal disturbances, tachycardia, fatigue, insomnia, agitation, akathisia, drowsiness, restlessness, tremor, headache, asthenia; blurred vision; less commonly depression, very rarely anorexia, dysphagia, oophorangelal spasm, laryngospasm, hepatitis, jaundice, hypersalivation, pancreatitis, oedema, thromboembolism, arrhythmias, bradycardia, hypertension, chest pain, anxiety, speech disorder, suicidal ideation, seizures, hyponatraemia, stiffness, myalgia, rhabdomyolysis, priapism, urinary retention and incontinence, blood disorders, sweating, alopecia, photosensitivity reactions, rash, and impaired temperature regulation

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 15 years; not licensed for mania in children

Indication and dose

Schizophrenia and treatment and recurrence prevention of mania (under specialist supervision)

By mouth
Child 13–18 years 2 mg once daily, increased to 5 mg once after a few days, then further increased to 10 mg once daily after a further 2 days; further increased if necessary in steps of 5 mg to max. 30 mg daily

Ability® (Bristol-Myers Squibb)
Tablets, aripiprazole 5 mg (blue), net price 28-tab pack = £95.74; 10 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £95.74; 15 mg (yellow), 28-tab pack = £191.47. Label: 2

Orodispersible tablets, aripiprazole 10 mg (pink), net price 28-tab pack = £95.74; 15 mg (yellow), 28-tab pack = £95.74. Label: 2; counselling, administration excepts include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Counselling Tablets should be placed on the tongue and allowed to dissolve, or be dispersed in water and swallowed

Oral solution, aripiprazole 1 mg/mL, net price 150 mL with measuring cup = £102.57. Label: 2

CLOZAPINE

Cautions see notes above; monitor leucocyte and differential blood counts; Agranulocytosis, below; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; taper off other antipsychotics before starting; close medical supervision during initiation (risk of collapse because of hypotension); dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment
Withdrawing On planned withdrawal reduce dose over 1–2 weeks to avoid risk of rebound psychosis. If abrupt withdrawal necessary observe child carefully

Agranulocytosis Neutropenia and potentially fatal agranulocytosis reported. Leucocyte and differential blood counts must be normal before starting; monitor counts every week for 18 weeks then at least every 2 weeks and if clozapine continued and blood count stable after 1 year at least every 4 weeks (and 4 weeks after discontinuation), if leucocyte count below 3000/mm³ or if absolute neutrophil count below 1500/mm³ discontinue permanently and refer to haematologist. Patients who have a low white blood cell count because of benign ethnic neutropenia may be started on clozapine with the agreement of a haematologist. Avoid drugs which depress leucopoiesis; children (or carers) should report immediately symptoms of infection, especially influenza-like illness

Myocarditis and cardiomyopathy Fatal myocarditis (most commonly in first 2 months) and cardiomyopathy reported.

• Perform physical examination and take full medical history before starting;
• Specialist examination required if cardiac abnormalities or history of heart disease found—clozapine initiated only in absence of severe heart disease and if benefit outweighs risk;
• Persistent tachycardia especially in first 2 months should prompt observation for other indicators for myocarditis or cardiomyopathy;
• If myocarditis or cardiomyopathy suspected clozapine should be stopped and child evaluated urgently by cardiologist;
• Discontinue permanently in clozapine-induced myocarditis or cardiomyopathy

Gastro-intestinal obstruction Reactions resembling gastro-intestinal obstruction reported. Clozapine should be used cautiously with drugs which cause constipation (e.g. anti-muscarinic drugs) or in children with history of colonic disease or bowel surgery. Monitor for constipation and prescribe laxative if required

Contra-indications severe cardiac disorders (e.g. myocarditis; see Cautions); history of neutropenia or agranulocytosis (see Cautions); bone-marrow disorders; paralytic ileus (see Cautions); alcoholic and toxic psychosis; history of circulatory collapse; drug intoxication; coma or severe CNS depression; uncontrolled epilepsy

Hepatic impairment monitor hepatic function regularly; avoid in symptomatic or progressive liver disease or hepatic failure

Renal impairment avoid in severe impairment

Pregnancy use with caution

Breast-feeding avoid

Side-effects see notes above; also constipation (see Cautions); hypersalivation, dry mouth, nausea, vomiting, anorexia; tachycardia, ECG changes, hypertension; drowsiness, dizziness, headache, tremor, seizures, fatigue, impaired temperature regulation; urinary incontinence and retention; leucopenia, eosinophilia, leucocytosis; blurred vision; sweating; rarely agranulocytosis (important: see Cautions); rarely dysphagia, hepatitis, cholestatic jaundice, pancreatitis, circulatory collapse, arrhythmia, myocarditis (important: see Cautions), pericarditis, thromboembolism, agitation, confusion, delirium, anaemia; very rarely parotid gland enlargement, intestinal obstruction (see Cautions), cardiomyopathy, myocardial infarction, respiratory depression, priapism, interstitial nephritis, thrombocytopenia, throm-
bocytthaemia, hypertriglyceridaemia, hypercholesterolaemia, hyperlipidaemia, fulminant hepatic necrosis, angle-closure glaucoma, and skin reactions

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 16 years

### Indication and dose

**Schizophrenia in children unresponsive to, or intolerant of, conventional antipsychotic drugs** (under specialist supervision)

- **Counselling**
  - Child 12–18 years: 12.5 mg once or twice on first day then 25–50 mg on second day then increased gradually (if well tolerated) in steps of 25–50 mg daily over 14–21 days up to 300 mg daily in divided doses (larger dose at night, up to 200 mg daily may be taken as a single dose at bedtime); if necessary may be further increased in steps of 50–100 mg once (preferably) or twice weekly; usual dose 200–450 mg daily (max. 900 mg daily)

  **Note:** Restarting after interval of more than 2 days. 12.5 mg once or twice on first day (but may be feasible to increase more quickly than on initiation)—extreme caution if previous respiratory or cardiac arrest with initial dosing

### Clozaril® (Novartis)

**Tablets**, yellow, clozapine 25 mg (scored), net price 28-tab pack = £5.40, 84-tab pack (hosp. only) = £16.18, 100-tab pack (hosp. only) = £19.26; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £21.56, 84-tab pack (hosp. only) = £84.68, 100-tab pack (hosp. only) = £77.00. Label: 2, 10, patient information leaflet

**Note:** Child, prescriber, and supplying pharmacist must be registered with the Clozaril Patient Monitoring Service—takes several days to do this

### Denzapine® (Merz)

**Tablets**, yellow, scored, clozapine 25 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £16.64, 100-tab pack = £19.80; 50 mg, 50-tab pack = £19.80; 100 mg, 84-tab pack = £66.53, 100-tab pack = £79.20; 200 mg, 50-tab pack = £79.20. Label: 2, 10, patient information leaflet

**Suspension**, clozapine 50 mg/mL, net price 100 mL = £39.60. Label: 2, 10, patient information leaflet, counselling, administration

**Counselling**
- Shake well for 10 seconds before use
- May be diluted in water

**Note:** Child, prescriber, and supplying pharmacist must be registered with the Demzapine Patient Monitoring Service—takes several days to do this

### Zaponex® (Teva UK)

**Tablets**, yellow, scored, clozapine 25 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £8.28, 100 mg, 84-tab pack = £33.88. Label: 2, 10, patient information leaflet

**Note:** Child, prescriber, and supplying pharmacist must be registered with the Zaponex Treatment Access System—takes several days to do this

**Hepatic impairment** initial dose 5 mg daily, increased slowly

**Renal impairment** initial dose 5 mg daily, increased slowly

**Pregnancy** use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; neonatal lethargy, tremor and hypotonia reported when used in third trimester

**Breast-feeding** avoid—present in milk

### Side-effects

- see notes above; also mild, transient antimuscarinic effects: drowsiness, speech difficulty, abnormal gait, hallucinations, akathisia, asthenia, increased appetite, increased body temperature, raised triglyceride concentration, oedema, hyperprolactinaemia (but clinical manifestations uncommon); eosinophilia; less commonly hypotension, bradycardia, QT interval prolongation, urinary incontinence, and photosensitivity; rarely seizures, leucopenia, and rash; very rarely hepatitis, pancreatitis, hypercholesterolaemia, hypothermia, urinary retention, priapism, thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, rhabdomyolysis, and angle-closure glaucoma; with injection, sinus pause and hyperventilation

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Schizophrenia, combination therapy for mania** (under specialist supervision)

- **Counselling**
  - Child 12–18 years: initially 5–10 mg daily adjusted to usual range of 5–20 mg daily; doses greater than 10 mg daily only after reassessment; max. 20 mg daily

**Monotherapy for mania** (under specialist supervision)

- **Counselling**
  - Child 12–18 years: 15 mg daily adjusted to usual range of 5–20 mg daily; doses greater than 15 mg only after reassessment; max. 20 mg daily

**Note:** When one or more factors present that might result in slower metabolism (e.g. female gender, non-smoker) consider lower initial dose and more gradual dose increase

### Zyprexa® (Lilly)

**Tablets**, f/c, olanzapine 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £21.85; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £43.70; 7.5 mg, 56-tab pack = £131.10; 10 mg, 28-tab pack = £87.40, 15 mg (blue), 28-tab pack = £119.18; 20 mg (pink), 28-tab pack = £158.90. Label: 2

**Orodispensible tablet** (Velotab®), yellow, olanzapine 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £48.07; 10 mg, 28-tab pack = £87.40; 15 mg, 28-tab pack = £131.10; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £174.79. Label: 2, counselling, administration

**Excipients** include aspartame (section 4.1)

**Counselling** Velotab® may be placed on the tongue and allowed to dissolve, or dispersed in water, orange juice, apple juice, milk, or coffee

### OLANZAPINE

**Cautions** see notes above; also susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma, paralytic ileus, diabetes mellitus (risk of exacerbation or ketoacidosis), low leucocyte or neutrophil count, bone-marrow depression, hyper-eosinophilic disorders, myeloproliferative disease; dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment

### QUETIAPINE

**Cautions** see notes above; cerebrovascular disease; children at risk of aspiration pneumonia

**Hepatic impairment** for immediate-release tablets, initially 25 mg daily, increased daily in steps of 25–50 mg

**Pregnancy** use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** avoid—no information available
Side-effects see notes above; also drowsiness, dyspepsia, constipation, dry mouth, hypertension, mild asthenia, rhinitis, tachycardia, irritability; leucopenia, neutropenia and occasionally eosinophilia reported; elevated plasma-triglyceride and cholesterol concentrations, hypothyroidism; possible QT interval prolongation; restless legs syndrome; rarely oedema; very rarely priapism

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Schizophrenia (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years initially 25 mg twice daily adjusted in steps of 25–50 mg according to response; max. 750 mg daily

Treatment of mania in bipolar disorder (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 25 mg twice daily on day 1, then 50 mg twice daily on day 2, then 100 mg twice daily on day 3, then 150 mg twice daily on day 4, then 200 mg twice daily on day 5; thereafter dose adjusted according to response in steps no greater than 100 mg daily, usual dose 400–600 mg daily in 2 divided doses

Seroquel® (AstraZeneca)  
Tablets, t/c, quetiapine (as fumarate) 25 mg (peach), net price 60-tab pack = £33.83; 100 mg (yellow), 60-tab pack = £113.10; 150 mg (palet yellow), 60-tab pack = £113.10; 200 mg (white), 60-tab pack = £113.10; 300 mg (white), 60-tab pack = £170.00. Label: 2

Modified release

Seroquel® XL (AstraZeneca)  
Tablets, m/r, quetiapine (as fumarate) 50 mg (peach), net price 60-tab pack = £67.66; 150 mg (white), 60-tab pack = £113.10; 200 mg (yellow), 60-tab pack = £113.10; 300 mg (pale yellow), 60-tab pack = £170.00; 400 mg (white), 60-tab pack = £226.20. Label: 2, 23, 25

Dose

Schizophrenia (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years initially 50 mg once daily adjusted in steps of 50 mg daily according to response, usual dose 400–800 mg once daily; max. 800 mg once daily

Note Patients can be switched from immediate-release to modified-release tablets at the equivalent daily dose; to maintain clinical response, dose titration may be required

Risperidone

Cautions see notes above; hyperprolactinaemia, prolactin-dependent tumours; dehydration; family history of sudden cardiac death (perform ECG); avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment initial and subsequent oral doses should be halved

Renal impairment initial and subsequent oral doses should be halved

Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; extrapyramidal effects reported in neonate when taken in third trimester

Breast-feeding use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—small amount present in milk

Side-effects see notes above; also gastro-intestinal disturbances (including diarrhoea, constipation, nausea and vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain), dry mouth; dyspepsia; drowsiness, asthenia, tremor, sleep disturbances, agitation, anxiety, headache; urinary incontinence; hyperprolactinaemia (less commonly galactorrhoea, menstrual disturbances, gynaecomastia); arthralgia, myalgia; abnormal vision; epistaxis; rash; less commonly anorexia, ECG changes, hypoesthesia, impaired concentration, sexual dysfunction, blood disorders, tinnitus, angioedema; rarely intestinal obstruction, pancreatitis, jaundice, seizures, hyperpyrexia, abnormal temperature regulation; oedema and priapism also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for psychosis, mania, or autism

Indication and dose

Acute and chronic psychosis (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 2 mg in 1–2 divided doses on first day then 4 mg in 1–2 divided doses on second day (slower titration appropriate in some children); usual dose range 4–6 mg daily; doses above 10 mg daily only if benefit considered to outweigh risk (max. 16 mg daily)

Short-term monotherapy of mania in bipolar disorder (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years initially 500 micrograms once daily adjusted in steps of 0.5–1 mg daily according to response; usual dose 2.5 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, max. 6 mg daily

Short-term treatment (up to 6 weeks) of persistent aggression in conduct disorder (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child 5–18 years and body-weight under 50 kg initially 250 micrograms once daily according to response in steps of 250 micrograms on alternate days; usual dose 500 micrograms daily (up to 750 micrograms once daily has been required)
  - Child 5–18 years and body-weight over 50 kg initially 500 micrograms once daily increased according to response in steps of 500 micrograms on alternate days; usual dose 1 mg daily (up to 1.5 mg once daily has been required)

Short-term treatment of severe aggression in autism (under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Child over 5 years and 15–20 kg 250 micrograms daily increased if necessary after at least 4 days to 500 micrograms daily; thereafter increased by 250 micrograms daily at 2-week intervals to max. 1 mg daily
  - Child over 5 years and over 20 kg 500 micrograms daily increased if necessary after at least 4 days to 1 mg daily; thereafter increased by 500 micrograms daily at 2-week intervals; max. daily dose 2.5 mg if under 45 kg; max. daily dose 3 mg if over 45 kg
Antipsychotic drugs

Atypical antipsychotic drugs (normally olanzapine, quetiapine, or risperidone) (section 4.2.1) are useful in acute episodes of mania and hypomania; if the response to antipsychotic drugs is inadequate, lithium or valproate may be added. An antipsychotic drug may be used concomitantly with lithium or valproate in the initial treatment of severe acute mania.

Atypical antipsychotics are the treatment of choice for the long-term management of bipolar disorder in children and adolescents; if the patient has frequent relapses or continuing functional impairment, consider concomitant therapy with lithium or valproate. An atypical antipsychotic that causes less weight gain and does not increase prolactin levels is preferred.

When discontinuing antipsychotics, the dose should be reduced gradually over at least 4 weeks if the child is continuing on other antimanic drugs; if the child is not continuing on other antimanic drugs, or has a history of manic relapse, a withdrawal period of up to 3 months is required.

High doses of haloperidol may be hazardous when used with lithium; irreversible toxic encephalopathy has been reported.

Carbamazepine

Carbamazepine (section 4.8.1) may be used under specialist supervision for the prophylaxis of bipolar disorder (manic-depressive disorder) in children unresponsive to a combination of other prophylactic drugs; it is used in those with rapid-cycling manic-depressive illness (4 or more afebrile episodes per year). The dose of carbamazepine should not normally be increased if an acute episode of mania occurs. When stopping treatment with carbamazepine, reduce the dose gradually over a period of at least 4 weeks.

Valproate

Valproic acid (as the semisodium salt) is licensed in adults for the treatment of manic episodes associated with bipolar disorder. Sodium valproate (section 4.8.1) is unlicensed for the treatment of bipolar disorder.

Valproate can be used for the prophylaxis of bipolar disorder [unlicensed use]; however, it should not normally be prescribed for women of child-bearing potential. In patients with frequent relapse or continuing functional impairment, consider switching therapy to lithium or an atypical antipsychotic, or adding lithium or an atypical antipsychotic to valproate. If a patient taking valproate experiences an acute episode of mania that is not ameliorated by increasing the valproate dose, consider concomitant therapy with olanzapine, quetiapine, or risperidone. When stopping valproate reduce the dose gradually over at least 4 weeks.

Lithium

Lithium salts are used in the prophylaxis and treatment of mania, in the prophylaxis of bipolar disorder (manic-depressive disorder), as concomitant therapy with antidepressant medication in children who have had an incomplete response to treatment for acute depression in bipolar disorder, and in the prophylaxis of recurrent depression (unipolar illness or unipolar depression).

4.2.2 Antipsychotic depot injections

There is limited information on the use of antipsychotic depot injections in children and use should be restricted to specialist centres.

4.2.3 Antimanic drugs

Antimanic drugs are used in mania to control acute attacks and to prevent recurrence of episodes of mania or hypomania. Long-term treatment of bipolar disorder should continue for at least two years from the last manic episode and up to five years if the patient has risk factors for relapse.

An antidepressant drug (section 4.3) may also be required for the treatment of co-existing depression, but should be avoided in patients with rapid-cycling bipolar disorder, recent history of hypomania, or rapid mood fluctuations.

Benzodiazepines

Use of benzodiazepines (section 4.1) may be helpful in the initial stages of treatment for behavioural disturbance or agitation; they should not be used for long periods because of the risk of dependence.
Lithium is used to treat acute episodes of mania in children who have responded to lithium before and whose symptoms are not severe.

The decision to give prophylactic lithium usually requires specialist advice, and must be based on careful consideration of the likelihood of recurrence in the individual child, and the benefit of treatment weighed against the risks. The full prophylactic effect of lithium may not occur for six to twelve months after the initiation of therapy. An atypical antipsychotic or valproate (given alone or as adjunctive therapy with lithium) are alternative prophylactic treatments in patients who experience frequent relapses or continuing functional impairment. Long-term use of lithium has been associated with thyroid disorders and mild cognitive and memory impairment. Long-term treatment should therefore be undertaken only with careful assessment of risk and benefit, and with monitoring of thyroid function at baseline and every 6 months (more often if there is evidence of deterioration). Renal function should be monitored at baseline and every 6 months thereafter (more often if there is evidence of deterioration or the patient has other risk factors, such as starting ACE inhibitors, NSAIDs, or diuretics). The need for continued therapy should be assessed regularly and children should be maintained on lithium after 3 to 5 years only if benefit persists.

**Serum concentrations** Lithium salts have a narrow therapeutic/toxic ratio and should not be prescribed unless facilities for monitoring serum-lithium concentrations are available. Samples should be taken 12 hours after the dose to achieve a serum-lithium concentration of 0.4–1 mmol/litre. A target serum-lithium concentration of 0.8–1 mmol/litre is recommended for acute episodes of mania, and for patients who have previously relapsed or have sub-syndromal symptoms. It is important to determine the optimum range for each individual child. Serum-lithium monitoring should be performed weekly after initiation and after each dose change until concentrations are stable, then every 3 months thereafter. Additional serum-lithium measurements should be made if a child develops significant intercurrent disease or if there is a significant change in a child’s sodium or fluid intake.

**Overdosage**, usually with serum-lithium concentration of over 1.5 mmol/litre, may be fatal and toxic effects include tremor, ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, renal impairment, and convulsions. If these potentially hazardous signs occur, treatment should be stopped, serum-lithium concentrations redetermined, and steps taken to reverse lithium toxicity. In mild cases withdrawal of lithium and administration of sodium and fluid will reverse the toxicity. A serum-lithium concentration in excess of 2 mmol/litre requires urgent treatment as described under Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 30.

**Interactions** Lithium toxicity is made worse by sodium depletion, therefore concurrent use of diuretics (particularly thiazides) is hazardous and should be avoided. For other interactions with lithium, see Appendix 1 (lithium).

**Withdrawal** While there is no clear evidence of withdrawal or rebound psychosis, abrupt discontinuation of lithium increases the risk of relapse. If lithium is to be discontinued, the dose should be reduced gradually over a period of at least 4 weeks (preferably over a period of up to 3 months). Children and carers should be warned of the risk of relapse if lithium is discontinued abruptly. If lithium is stopped or has to be discontinued abruptly, consider changing therapy to an atypical antipsychotic or valproate.

---

**LITHIUM CARBONATE**

**Cautions** measure serum-lithium concentration regularly (every 3 months on stabilised regimens), measure renal function and thyroid function every 6 months on stabilised regimens and advise children and carers to seek attention if symptoms of hypothyroidism develop (females are at greater risk) e.g. lethargy, feeling cold; maintain adequate sodium and fluid intake; test renal function before initiating and if evidence of toxicity, avoid in cardiac disease, and conditions with sodium imbalance such as Addison’s disease; reduce dose or discontinue in diarrhoea, vomiting, and intercurrent infection (especially if sweating profusely); psoriasis (risk of exacerbation); diuretic treatment, myasthenia gravis; surgery (section 15.1); if possible avoid abrupt withdrawal (see notes above); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (lithium)

**Counselling** Children should maintain adequate fluid intake and avoid dietary changes which reduce or increase sodium intake; lithium treatment packs are available (see above)

**Renal impairment** avoid if possible or reduce dose and closely monitor serum-lithium concentration

**Pregnancy** avoid if possible in first trimester (risk of teratogenicity, including cardiac abnormalities); dose requirements increased in second and third trimesters (but on delivery, return abruptly to normal); close monitoring of serum-lithium concentration advised (risk of toxicity in neonate)

**Breast-feeding** present in milk and risk of toxicity in infant—avoid

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances, fine tremor, renal impairment (particularly impaired urinary concentration and polyuria), polydipsia, leucocytosis; also weight gain and oedema (may respond to dose reduction); hyperparathyroidism and hypercalcaemia reported; signs of intoxication are blurred vision, increasing gastro-intestinal disturbances (anorexia, vomiting, diarrhoea), muscle weakness, increased CNS disturbances (mild drowsiness and sluggishness increasing to giddiness with ataxia, coarse tremor; lack of coordination, dysarthria), and require withdrawal of treatment; with severe **overdosage** (serum-lithium concentration above 2 mmol/litre) hyperreflexia and hyperextension of limbs, convulsions, toxic psychoses, syncope, renal failure, circulatory failure, coma, and occasionally death; goitre, raised anti-diuretic hormone concentration, hypothyroidism, hypokalaemia, ECG changes, and kidney changes may also occur; see also Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 30
Indication and dose

Treatment and prophylaxis of mania, bipolar disorder, recurrent depression (see also notes above), aggressive or self-mutilating behaviour

By mouth

See under preparations below, adjusted to achieve a serum-lithium concentration of 0.6–1 mmol/litre 12 hours after a dose on days 4–7 of treatment, then every week until dosage has remained constant for 4 weeks and every 3 months thereafter; doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

Note Preparations vary widely in bioavailability; changing the preparation requires the same precautions as initiation of treatment

Camcolit® (Norgine)

Camcolit 250 tablets, f/c, scored, lithium carbonate 250 mg (Li+ 6.8 mmol), net price 100-tab pack = £3.09; Label: 10, lithium card, counselling, see above

Camcolit 400 tablets, m/r, f/c, scored, lithium carbonate 400 mg (Li+ 10.8 mmol), net price 100-tab pack = £4.13; Label: 10, lithium card, 25, counselling, see above

Dose

Treatment

By mouth

(see above for advice on bioavailability and serum-lithium monitoring)

Child 12–18 years initially 1–1.5 g daily

Prophylaxis

By mouth

(see above for advice on bioavailability and serum-lithium monitoring)

Child 12–18 years initially 300–400 mg daily

Liskonum® (GSK)

Tablets, m/r, f/c, scored, lithium carbonate 450 mg (Li+ 12.2 mmol), net price 60-tab pack = £2.88; Label: 10, lithium card, 25, counselling, see above

Dose

Treatment

By mouth

(see above for advice on bioavailability and serum-lithium monitoring)

Child 12–18 years initially 225–675 mg twice daily

Prophylaxis

By mouth

(see above for advice on bioavailability and serum-lithium monitoring)

Child 12–18 years initially 225–450 mg twice daily

Indication and dose

See under Lithium Carbonate and notes above

By mouth

Adjust to achieve serum-lithium concentration of 0.6–1 mmol/litre as described under Lithium Carbonate above

Note Preparations vary widely in bioavailability, changing the preparation requires the same precautions as initiation of treatment

Li-Liquid® (Rosemont)

Oral solution, lithium citrate 509 mg/5 mL (Li+ 5.4 mmol/5 mL), yellow, net price 150-mL pack = £5.79; 1,018 g/5 mL (Li+ 10.8 mmol/5 mL), orange, 150-mL pack = £11.58; Label: 10, lithium card, counselling, see above

Note 5-mL dose of 509 mg/5 mL oral solution is equivalent to 200 mg lithium carbonate

Priadel® (Sanofi-Aventis)

Liquid, sugar-free, lithium citrate 520 mg/5 mL (approx. Li+ 5.4 mmol/5 mL), net price 150-mL pack = £5.61; Label: 10, lithium card, counselling, see above

Note 5-mL dose is equivalent to 204 mg lithium carbonate

4.3 Antidepressant drugs

The major classes of antidepressant drugs include the tricyclics and related antidepressant drugs (section 4.3.1), the selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs) (section 4.3.3), and the monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs).

Antidepressant drugs should not be used routinely in mild depression, and psychological therapy should be considered initially; however, a trial of antidepressant therapy may be considered in cases refractory to psychological treatments or in those associated with psychosocial or medical problems. Drug treatment of mild depression may also be considered in children with a history of moderate or severe depression.

Choice of antidepressant drug should be based on the individual child’s requirements, including the presence of concomitant disease, existing therapy, suicide risk, and previous response to antidepressant therapy.

When drug treatment of depression is considered necessary in children, the SSRIs should be considered first-line treatment; following a safety and efficacy review, fluoxetine is licensed to treat depression in children.
Tricyclic antidepressant drugs should be avoided for the treatment of depression in children.

St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum) is a popular herbal remedy on sale to the public for treating mild depression in adults. It should not be used for the treatment of depression in children because St John’s wort can induce drug metabolising enzymes and a number of important interactions with conventional drugs, including conventional antidepressants, have been identified (see Appendix 1, St John’s wort). Furthermore, the amount of active ingredient varies between different preparations of St John’s wort and switching from one to another can change the degree of enzyme induction. If a child stops taking St John’s wort, the concentration of interacting drugs may increase, leading to toxicity.

Hyponatraemia and antidepressant therapy
Hyponatraemia (possibly due to inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone) has been associated with all types of antidepressants; however, it has been reported more frequently with SSRIs than with other antidepressant drugs. Hyponatraemia should be considered in all children who develop drowsiness, confusion, or convulsions while taking an antidepressant drug.

Suicidal behaviour and antidepressant therapy
The use of antidepressant drugs has been linked with suicidal thoughts and behaviour. Where necessary, children should be monitored for suicidal behaviour, self-harm, and hostility, particularly at the beginning of treatment or if the dose is changed.

Management
Children should be reviewed every 1–2 weeks at the start of antidepressant treatment. Treatment should be continued for at least 4 weeks before considering whether to switch antidepressant due to lack of efficacy. In cases of partial response, continuing treatment should be considered for at least 4 weeks before a benzodiazepine.

Withdrawal
Withdrawal effects may occur within 5 days of stopping treatment with antidepressant drugs; they are usually mild and self-limiting, but in some cases may be severe. The risk of withdrawal symptoms is increased if the antidepressant is stopped suddenly after regular administration for 8 weeks or more. The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in children who have been on long-term maintenance treatment). See also section 4.3.1, and section 4.3.3.

Anxiety
Management of acute anxiety in children with tricyclic antidepressant drug treatment is contentious (section 4.1.2). For chronic anxiety (of longer than 4 weeks’ duration), it may be appropriate to use an antidepressant drug before a benzodiazepine.

Hepatic impairment
The sedative effects of tricyclic antidepressant drugs are increased in children with hepatic impairment. They should be avoided in severe liver disease.

Breast-feeding
The amount of tricyclic antidepressants secreted into breast milk is too small to be harmful (but see Doxepin, p. 185).

Side-effects
Arrhythmias and heart block occasionally follow the use of tricyclic antidepressants, particularly amitriptyline, and may be a factor in the sudden death of children with cardiac disease; other cardiovascular side-effects include postural hypotension, tachycardia, and ECG changes.

Central nervous system side-effects are common, and include anxiety, dizziness, agitation, confusion, sleep disturbances, irritability, and paraesthesia; drowsiness...
BNFC 2011–2012

4.3.1 Tricyclic antidepressant drugs

is associated with some of the tricyclic antidepressants. Convulsions, hallucinations, delusions, mania, and hypomania may occur (see also under Cautions, above), and, rarely, extrapyramidal symptoms including tremor and dysthria.

Antimuscarinic side-effects include dry mouth, blurred vision (very rarely precipitation of angle-closure glaucoma), constipation (rarely leading to paralytic ileus), and urinary retention.

Endocrine effects include breast enlargement, galactorrhoea, and gynaecomastia. Sexual dysfunction may occur. Changes in blood sugar, increased appetite, and weight gain can accompany treatment with tricyclic antidepressant drugs, but anorexia and weight loss are also seen. Hepatic and haematological reactions may occur. Hyponatraemia has been associated with antidepressant treatment (see Hyponatraemia and Anti-depressant Therapy, p. 184). Other class side-effects include nausea, vomiting, taste disturbance, tinnitus, rash, urticaria, pruritus, photosensitivity, alopecia, and sweating.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (section 4.2.1) may occur (see p. 184).

Withdrawal Withdrawal symptoms include influenza-like symptoms (chills, myalgia, sweating, headache, nausea), insomnia, vivid dreams, and may occasionally include movement disorders and mania. If possible tricyclic antidepressant drugs should be withdrawn slowly (see also section 4.3).

Doxepin

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Renal impairment use with caution
Pregnancy use with caution—limited information available
Breast-feeding see notes above; accumulation of doxepin metabolite may cause sedation and respiratory depression
Side-effects see notes above; also abdominal pain, stomatitis, diarrhoea, flushing, and oedema

Indication and dose

Depressive illness, particularly where sedation is required (but see notes above)

By mouth

Child 2–12 years initially 200–500 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) once daily at night, increased if necessary; max. 1 mg/kg twice daily on specialist advice

Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg once daily at night, increased gradually if necessary to usual dose 75 mg at night; higher doses on specialist advice

Amitriptyline (Non-proprietary) £1.00. Label: 2
Tablets, coated, amitriptyline hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 28 = 90p; 25 mg, 28 = 90p; 50 mg, 28 = £1.00. Label: 2
Oral solution, amitriptyline hydrochloride 25 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £15.47; 50 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £16.82. Label: 2

DOXEPIN

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Renal impairment use with caution
Pregnancy use with caution—limited information available
Breast-feeding see notes above; accumulation of doxepin metabolite may cause sedation and respiratory depression
Side-effects see notes above; also abdominal pain, stomatitis, diarrhoea, flushing, and oedema

Indication and dose

Depressive illness, particularly where sedation is required (but see notes above)

By mouth

Child 2–12 years initially 200–500 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) once daily at night, increased if necessary; max. 1 mg/kg twice daily on specialist advice

Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg once daily at night, increased gradually if necessary to usual dose 75 mg at night; higher doses on specialist advice

Amitriptyline (Non-proprietary) £1.00. Label: 2
Tablets, coated, amitriptyline hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 28 = 90p; 25 mg, 28 = 90p; 50 mg, 28 = £1.00. Label: 2
Oral solution, amitriptyline hydrochloride 25 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £15.47; 50 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £16.82. Label: 2

AMITRIPTYLINE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (antidepressants, tricyclic)
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above; also abdominal pain, stomatitis, palpitation, oedema, hypertension, restlessness, fatigue, mydriasis, and increased intra-ocular pressure; overdose: see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 29 (high rate of fatality—see Overdose, above)

Licensed use not licensed for use in neuropathic pain

Indication and dose

Depression (but see notes above)

By mouth

Child 2–12 years initially 200–500 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) once daily at night, increased if necessary; max. 1 mg/kg twice daily on specialist advice

Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg once daily at night, increased gradually if necessary to usual dose 75 mg at night; higher doses on specialist advice

Amitriptyline (Non-proprietary) £1.00. Label: 2
Tablets, coated, amitriptyline hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 28 = 90p; 25 mg, 28 = 90p; 50 mg, 28 = £1.00. Label: 2
Oral solution, amitriptyline hydrochloride 25 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £15.47; 50 mg/5 mL, 150 mL = £16.82. Label: 2

IMIPRAMINE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Renal impairment use with caution in severe impairment
Pregnancy colic, tachycardia, dyspnoea, irritability, and muscle spasms reported in neonates when used in third trimester

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also palpitation, flushing, restlessness, headache, fatigue; very rarely abdominal pain, stomatitis, diarrhoea, hypertension, oedema, cardiac decompensation, allergic alveolitis, aggression, myoclonus, peripheral vasospasm, and mydriasis

Licensed use not licensed for use for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
4.3.3 Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors

**Indication and dose**

**Nocturnal enuresis**
- By mouth
  - Child 6–8 years 25 mg at bedtime
  - Child 8–11 years 25–50 mg at bedtime
  - Child 11–18 years 50–75 mg at bedtime

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder** (under specialist supervision)
- By mouth
  - Child 6–18 years 10–30 mg twice daily

**Imipramine** (Non-proprietary)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Child 11–18 years</th>
<th>Max. period of treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablets, coated, imipramine hydrochloride 10 mg</td>
<td>100-tab pack = £1.30; 25 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.24.</td>
<td>3 months—full physical examination before further course; see also section 7.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution, imipramine hydrochloride 25 mg/5 mL</td>
<td>150-mL = £20.00.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NORTRIPTYLINE**

**Cautions** see notes above; manufacturer advises plasma-nortriptyline concentration monitoring if dose above 100 mg daily, but evidence of practical value uncertain

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also abdominal pain, stomatitis, diarrhoea, hypertension, oedema, flushing, restlessness, fatigue, and mydriasis

**Indication and dose**

**Depression** (but see notes above)
- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years low dose initially increased as necessary to 30–50 mg daily in divided doses or as a single dose (max. 150 mg daily)

**Allegron** (King)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Child 11–18 years</th>
<th>Max. period of treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablets, nortriptyline (as hydrochloride) 10 mg</td>
<td>100-tab pack = £12.06; 25 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.24.</td>
<td>3 months—full physical examination before further course; see also section 7.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution, nortriptyline hydrochloride 25 mg/5 mL</td>
<td>150-mL = £20.00.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Depressive illness in children and adolescents**

The balance of risks and benefits for the treatment of depressive illness in individuals under 18 years is considered unfavourable for the SSRIs citalopram, escitalopram, paroxetine, and sertraline, and for mirtazapine and venlafaxine. Clinical trials have failed to show efficacy and have shown an increase in harmful outcomes. However, it is recognised that specialists may sometimes decide to use these drugs in response to individual clinical need; children and adolescents should be monitored carefully for suicidal behaviour, self-harm or hostility, particularly at the beginning of treatment. Only fluoxetine has been shown in clinical trials to be effective for treating depressive illness in children and adolescents. However, it is possible that, in common with the other SSRIs, it is associated with a small risk of self-harm and suicidal thoughts. Overall, the balance of risks and benefits for fluoxetine in the treatment of depressive illness in individuals under 18 years is considered favourable, but children and adolescents must be carefully monitored as above.

**Cautions** SSRIs should be used with caution in children with epilepsy (avoid if poorly controlled, discontinue if convulsions develop), cardiac disease, diabetes mellitus, susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma, a history of mania or bleeding disorders (especially gastro-intestinal bleeding), and if used together with other drugs that increase the risk of bleeding. They should also be used with caution in those receiving concurrent electroconvulsive therapy (prolonged seizures reported with fluoxetine). SSRIs may also impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving). **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (antidepressants, SSRIs).

**Withdrawal** Gastro-intestinal disturbances, headache, anxiety, dizziness, paraesthesia, electric shock sensation in the head, neck, and spine, tinnitus, sleep disturbances, fatigue, influenza-like symptoms, and sweating are the most common features of abrupt withdrawal of an SSRI or marked reduction of the dose; palpitation and visual disturbances can occur less commonly. The dose should be tapered over a few weeks to avoid these effects. It may be necessary to withdraw treatment over a longer period; consider obtaining specialist advice if symptoms persist.

**Contra-indications** SSRIs should not be used if the child enters a manic phase.

**Pregnancy** Manufacturers advise that SSRIs should not be used if the child enters a manic phase.

**Side-effects** SSRIs are less sedating and have fewer antimuscarinic and cardiotoxic effects than tricyclic antidepressant drugs (section 4.3.1). Side-effects of the SSRIs include gastro-intestinal effects (dose-related and fairly common—including nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, constipation), anorexia with weight loss (increased appetite and weight gain

**Monoamine-oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

**4.3.3 Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors**

Citalopram, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, and sertraline selectively inhibit the re-uptake of serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine, 5-HT); they are termed selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs).
BNFC 2011–2012

4.3.3 Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors 187

also reported] and hypersensitivity reactions including rash (consider discontinuation—may be sign of impending serious systemic reaction, possibly associated with vasculitis), urticaria, angioedema, anaphylaxis, arthropathy, myalgia, myalgia and photosensitivity; other side-effects include dry mouth, nervousness, anxiety, headache, insomnia, tremor, dizziness, asthenia, hallucinations, drowsiness, convulsions (see Cautions above), galactorrhea, sexual dysfunction, urinary retention, sweating, hypomania or mania (see Cautions above), movement disorders and dyskinesias, visual disturbances, hypotension (see Hypotension and Antidepressant Therapy, p. 184), and bleeding disorders including ecchymoses and purpura. Suicidal behaviour has been linked with antidepressants; see p. 184. Angle-closure glaucoma may very rarely be precipitated by treatment with SSRIs.

CITALOPRAM

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment use doses at lower end of range
Renal impairment no information available for estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding present in milk—avoid

Side-effects see notes above; also hepatitis, palpitation, tachycardia, coughing, yawning, confusion, impaired concentration, aggression, malaise, amnesia, migraine, paraesthesia, abnormal dreams, euphoria, mydriasis, taste disturbance, increased salivation, rhinitis, tinnitus, polyuria, micturition disorders, and pruritus

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Major depression (but see Depressive Illness in Children and Adolescents, above)

• By mouth as tablets
Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily over 2–4 weeks; max. 60 mg once daily

• By mouth as oral drops
Child 12–18 years initially 8 mg once daily increased if necessary to 16 mg once daily over 2–4 weeks; max. 48 mg once daily

Citalopram (Non-proprietary) 8

Tablets, citalopram (as hydrobromide) 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.03; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.30; 40 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.37. Counselling, driving

Oral drops, citalopram (as hydrobromide) 40 mg/mL, net price 15-mL pack = £17.92. Counselling, driving, administration
Note 4 drops (8 mg) can be considered equivalent in therapeutic effect to 10 mg tablet
Mix with water, orange juice, or apple juice before taking

FLUOXETINE

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment reduce dose or increase dose interval
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding present in breast milk, avoid

Side-effects see notes above; also vasodilatation, postural hypotension, pharyngitis, dysphonia, chills, taste disturbance, sleep disturbances, euphoria, confusion, yawning, impaired concentration, changes in blood sugar, alopecia, urinary frequency; rarely pulmonary inflammation and fibrosis; very rarely hepatitis, toxic epidermal necrolysis, and neuroleptic malignant syndrome-like event

Indication and dose

Major depression

• By mouth
Child 8–18 years 10 mg once daily increased after 1–2 weeks if necessary, max. 20 mg once daily

Long duration of action Consider the long half-life of fluoxetine when adjusting dosage (or in overdose)

Fluoxetine (Non-proprietary) 8

Capsules, fluoxetine (as hydrochloride) 20 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £1.90; 60 mg, 30-cap pack = £54.43. Counselling, driving
Brands include Oxycontin®

Liquid, fluoxetine (as hydrochloride) 20 mg/5 mL, net price 70 mL = £5.04. Counselling, driving
Brands include Prozap®

Prozac® (Lilly) 8

Capsules, fluoxetine (as hydrochloride) 20 mg (green/yellow), net price 30-cap pack = £1.50. Counselling, driving

Liquid, fluoxetine (as hydrochloride) 20 mg/5 mL, net price 70 mL = £11.12. Counselling, driving

FLUOXAMINE MALEATE

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment start with low dose

Renal impairment start with low dose
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding present in milk—avoid

Side-effects see notes above; also palpitation, tachycardia, malaise; less commonly postural hypotension, confusion, ataxia; rarely abnormal liver function (usually symptomatic—discontinue treatment); also reported paraesthesia, taste disturbance, neuroleptic malignant syndrome-like event

Indication and dose

Obsessive-compulsive disorder

• By mouth
Child 8–18 years initially 25 mg daily increased if necessary in steps of 25 mg every
4.4 CNS stimulants and other drugs for ADHD

Classified as non-proprietary drugs

4.4.3 Other antidepressant drugs

CNS stimulants should be prescribed for children with severe and persistent symptoms of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), when the diagnosis has been confirmed by a specialist. Children with moderate symptoms of ADHD can be treated with CNS stimulants when psychological interventions have been unsuccessful or are unavailable. Prescribing of CNS stimulants may be continued by general practitioners under a shared-care arrangement. Treatment of ADHD often needs to be continued into adolescence, and may need to be continued into adulthood.

Drug treatment of ADHD should be part of a comprehensive treatment programme. The choice of medication should take into consideration co-morbid conditions (such as tic disorders, Tourette syndrome, and epilepsy), the adverse effect profile, potential for drug misuse, and preferences of the child and carers. Methylphenidate and atomoxetine are used for the management of ADHD; dexamphetamine is an alternative in children who do not respond to these drugs. Before initiation of drug therapy, and every 6 months thereafter, pulse, blood pressure, weight, and height should be measured.

The need to continue drug treatment for ADHD should be reviewed at least annually. This may involve suspending treatment.

A tricyclic antidepressant such as imipramine (section 4.3.3) is sometimes used in the treatment of ADHD; it should not be prescribed concomitantly with a CNS stimulant.

Modafinil is used for the treatment of daytime sleepiness associated with narcolepsy; dependence with long-term use cannot be excluded and it should therefore be used with caution.

Dexamphetamine and methylphenidate [both unlicensed] are also used to treat narcolepsy.

4.4 CNS stimulants and other drugs for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

Cns stimulants should be prescribed for children with severe and persistent symptoms of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), when the diagnosis has been confirmed by a specialist. Children with moderate symptoms of ADHD can be treated with CNS stimulants when psychological interventions have been unsuccessful or are unavailable. Prescribing of CNS stimulants may be continued by general practitioners under a shared-care arrangement. Treatment of ADHD often needs to be continued into adolescence, and may need to be continued into adulthood.

Drug treatment of ADHD should be part of a comprehensive treatment programme. The choice of medication should take into consideration co-morbid conditions (such as tic disorders, Tourette syndrome, and epilepsy), the adverse effect profile, potential for drug misuse, and preferences of the child and carers. Methylphenidate and atomoxetine are used for the management of ADHD; dexamphetamine is an alternative in children who do not respond to these drugs. Before initiation of drug therapy, and every 6 months thereafter, pulse, blood pressure, weight, and height should be measured.

The need to continue drug treatment for ADHD should be reviewed at least annually. This may involve suspending treatment.

A tricyclic antidepressant such as imipramine (section 4.3.3) is sometimes used in the treatment of ADHD; it should not be prescribed concomitantly with a CNS stimulant.

Modafinil is used for the treatment of daytime sleepiness associated with narcolepsy; dependence with long-term use cannot be excluded and it should therefore be used with caution.

Dexamphetamine and methylphenidate [both unlicensed] are also used to treat narcolepsy.

4.3.4 Other antidepressant drugs

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

SEROTrALINE

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment reduce dose or increase dose interval in mild or moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment
Renal impairment use with caution
Breast-feeding not known to be harmful but consider discontinuing breast-feeding

Side-effects see notes above: pancreatitis, hepatitis, jaundice, liver failure, stomatitis, palpitation, hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia, tachycardia, postural hypotension, bronchospasm, amnesia, paraesthesia, aggression, hypoglycaemia, hypothyroidism, hyperprolactinaemia, urinary incontinence, menstrual irregularities, leucopenia, and tinnitus also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for depression

Indication and dose

Obsessive-compulsive disorder
- By mouth
  Child 6–12 years initially 25 mg daily increased to 50 mg daily after 1 week, further increased if necessary in steps of 50 mg at intervals of at least 1 week; max. 200 mg daily
  Child 12–18 years initially 50 mg daily increased if necessary in steps of 50 mg over several weeks; max. 200 mg daily

Major depression (but see Depressive Illness in Children and Adolescents, above)
- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years initially 50 mg once daily increased if necessary in steps of 50 mg daily at intervals of at least a week; max. 200 mg once daily

Sertraline (Non-proprietary) 

Tablets, sertraline (as hydrochloride) 50 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.15; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.53. Counselling, driving

Lustral® (Pfizer) 

Tablets, both f/c, sertraline (as hydrochloride) 50 mg (scored), net price 28-tab pack = £17.82; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £29.16. Counselling, driving

Faverin® (Abbott Healthcare) 

Tablets, f/c, scored, fluvoxamine maleate 50 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £17.10; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £17.82; 100 mg, 30-tab pack = £17.10. Counselling, driving

Fluvoxamine (Non-proprietary) 

Tablets, fluvoxamine maleate 50 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £10.81; 100 mg, 30-tab pack = £11.67. Counselling, driving

Fluvoxamine maleate 50 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.15; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £17.10; 100 mg, 30-tab pack = £17.82. Counselling, driving

4–7 days according to response (total daily doses above 50 mg in 2 divided doses); max. 100 mg twice daily

Note If no improvement in obsessive-compulsive disorder within 10 weeks, treatment should be reconsidered
should be sought in case of abdominal pain, unexplained nausea, malaise, darkening of the urine or jaundice

Suicidal ideation Following reports of suicidal thoughts and behaviour, children and carers should be informed about the risk and told to report clinical worsening, suicidal thoughts or behaviour, irritation, agitation, or depression

Hepatic impairment halve dose in moderate impairment; quarter dose in severe impairment; see also Hepatic Disorders above

Pregnancy no information available; avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding avoid—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects anorexia, dry mouth, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, constipation, dyspepsia, flatulence; palpitation, tachycardia, increased blood pressure, postural hypotension, hot flushes; sleep disturbance, dizziness, headache, fatigue, lethargy, depression, psychotic or manic symptoms, aggression, hostility, emotional lability, drowsiness, anxiety, irritability, tremor, rigors; urinary retention, prostatitis, sexual dysfunction, menstrual disturbances; mydriasis, conjunctivitis; dermatitis, pruritus, rash, sweating; less commonly suicidal ideation (see Suicidal Ideation, above), cold extremities; very rarely hepatic disorders (see Hepatic Disorders, above), seizures, Raynaud’s phenomenon, and angle-closure glaucoma

Licensed use doses above 100 mg daily not licensed

Indication and dose

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder initiated by specialist

• By mouth

Child over 6 years (body-weight under 70 kg) initially 500 micrograms/kg daily for 7 days, increased according to response; usual maintenance dose 1.2 mg/kg daily, but may be increased to 1.8 mg/kg daily (max. 120 mg daily) under the direction of a specialist

Child over 6 years (body-weight over 70 kg) initially 40 mg daily for 7 days, increased according to response; usual maintenance dose 80 mg daily, but may be increased to max. 120 mg daily under the direction of a specialist

Note Total daily dose may be given either as a single dose in the morning or in 2 divided doses with last dose no later than early evening

Strattera® (Lilly) 15, 30, 45, 60 mg, scored, dexamfetamine sulphate 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £15.60. Counselling, driving

Dexamfetamine (Non-proprietary) 10, 20, 40, 60 mg, scored, dexamfetamine sulphate 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £15.60. Counselling, driving

METHYLPHENIDATE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above; also anorexia; mild hypertension (contra-indicated if moderate or severe); psychosis or bipolar disorder; monitor for aggressive behaviour or hostility during initial treatment; history of epilepsy (discontinue if convulsions occur); tics and Tourette syndrome (use with caution)—discontinue if tics occur; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; avoid abrupt withdrawal; data on safety and efficacy of long-term use not complete; acute porphyria (see section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

Growth restriction Monitor height and weight as growth restriction may occur during prolonged therapy (drug-free periods may allow catch-up in growth but withdraw slowly to avoid inducing depression or renewed hyperactivity)

Contra-indications cardiovascular disease including moderate to severe hypertension, structural cardiac abnormalities, hyperexcitability or agitated states, hyperthyroidism, history of drug or alcohol abuse

Skilled tasks May affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol unpredictable

Renal impairment use with caution

Pregnancy avoid (retrospective evidence of uncertain significance suggesting possible embryotoxicity)

Breast-feeding significant amount in milk—avoid

Side-effects nausea, diarrhoea, dry mouth, abdominal cramps, anorexia (increased appetite also reported), weight loss, taste disturbance, ischaemic colitis, palpititation, tachycardia, chest pain, hypertension, hypotension, cardiomyopathy, myocardial infarction, cardiovascular collapse, cerebral vasculitis, stroke, headache, restlessness, depression, hyperreflexia, hyperactivity, impaired concentration, ataxia, anxiety, aggression, dizziness, confusion, sleep disturbances, dysphoria, euphoria, irritability, nervousness, malaise, obsessive-compulsive behaviour, paranoia, psychosis, panic attack, tremor, convulsions (see also Caution), neuroleptic malignant syndrome, anhedonia, growth restriction in children (see also Cautions and notes above), hyperpyrexia, renal impairment, sexual dysfunction, acedia, rhabdomyolysis, mydriasis, visual disturbances, alopecia, rash, sweating, urticaria; central stimulants have provoked choreoathetoid movements and dyskinesia, tics and Tourette syndrome in predisposed individuals (see also Cautions); very rarely angle-closure glaucoma; overdosage: see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 31

Indication and dose

Refractory attention deficit hyperactivity disorder initiated by specialist

• By mouth

Child 6–18 years initially 2.5 mg 2–3 times daily, increased if necessary at weekly intervals by 5 mg; usual max. 1 mg/kg daily, up to 20 mg (40 mg daily has been required in some children); maintenance dose given in 2–4 divided doses

Administration tablets can be halved

References see Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics and stimulants)
abnormalities; phaeochromocytoma; vasculitis; cerebrovascular disorders

**Pregnancy** limited experience—avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** limited information available—avoid

**Side-effects** abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, dyspepsia, dry mouth, anorexia, reduced weight gain; tachycardia, palpitation, arrhythmias, changes in blood pressure; tics (very rarely Tourette syndrome), insomnia, nervousness, asthenia, depression, irritability, aggression, headache, drowsiness, dizziness, movement disorders; fever, arthralgia; rash, pruritus, alopecia; growth restriction; less commonly constipation, abnormal dreams, confusion, suicidal ideation, urinary frequency, haematuria, muscle cramps, epis-taxis; rarely sweating and visual disturbances; very rarely hepatic dysfunction, cerebral arteritis, psychosis, seizures, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, tolerance and dependence, blood disorders including leucopenia and thrombocytopenia, exfoliative dermatitis, and erythema multiforme; supraventricular tachycardia, bradycardia, and convulsions also reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 6 years; doses over 60 mg daily not licensed; doses of Concerta® XL over 54 mg daily not licensed

**Indication and dose**

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder initiated by specialist**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 4–6 years** 2.5 mg twice daily increased if necessary at weekly intervals by 2.5 mg daily to max. 1.4 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses; discontinue if no response after 1 month
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 5 mg 1–2 times daily, increased if necessary at weekly intervals by 5–10 mg daily; licensed max. 60 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses but may be increased to 2.1 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses (max. 90 mg daily) under the direction of a specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month
  - **Evening dose** If effect wears off in evening (with rebound hyperactivity) a dose at bedtime may be appropriate (establish need with trial bedtime dose)

**Administration**

- **Ritalin** tablets may be halved; contents of Equasym XL® capsules, and Medikinet XL® capsules, can be sprinkled on a tablespoon of apple sauce, then swallowed immediately without chewing

**Methylphenidate Hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

- **Tablets**, methylphenidate hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £2.67; 10 mg, 30-tab pack = £6.74; 20 mg, 30-tab pack = £9.59

**Brands include** Medikinet®

**Ritalin** (Novartis)

- **Tablets**, scored, methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £5.57

**Modified release**

- **Concerta**® XL (Janssen)

- **Tablets**, m/r, methylphenidate hydrochloride 18 mg (yellow), net price 30-tab pack = £31.19; 27 mg (grey), 30-tab pack = £36.81; 36 mg (white), 30-tab pack = £42.45. Label: 25

**Counselling** Tablet membrane may pass through gastrointestinal tract unchanged

**Cautions** dose form not appropriate for use in dysphagia or if gastro-intestinal lumen restricted

**Dose**

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 18 mg once daily (in the morning), increased if necessary at weekly intervals by 18 mg according to response; licensed max. 54 mg once daily, but may be increased to 2.1 mg/kg daily (max. 108 mg daily) under the direction of a specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month
  - **Note** Total daily dose of 15 mg of standard-release formulation is considered equivalent to Concerta® XL 18 mg once daily
  - **Note** Concerta® XL tablets consist of an immediate-release component (22% of the dose) and a modified-release component (78% of the dose)

**Equasym XL®** (Shire)

- **Capsules**, m/r, methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg (white/green), net price 30-cap pack = £25.00; 20 mg (white/blue), 30-cap pack = £30.00; 30 mg (white/brown), 30-cap pack = £35.00. Label: 25

**Dose**

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 10 mg once daily in the morning before breakfast, increased gradually at weekly intervals if necessary; licensed max. 60 mg daily, but may be increased to 2.1 mg/kg daily (max. 90 mg daily) under the direction of a specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month
  - **Note** Contents of capsule can be sprinkled on a tablespoon of apple sauce (then swallowed immediately without chewing)
  - **Note** Equasym XL® capsules consist of an immediate-release component (30% of the dose) and a modified-release component (70% of the dose)

**Medikinet XL®** (Flynn)

- **Capsules**, m/r, methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg (lilac/white), net price 28-cap pack = £20.18; 20 mg (lilac), 28-cap pack = £26.91; 30 mg (purple/light grey), 28-cap pack = £31.39; 40 mg (purple/grey), 28-cap pack = £35.00. Label: 25

**Dose**

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–18 years** 10 mg once daily in the morning with breakfast, adjusted at weekly intervals according to response; licensed max. 60 mg daily, but may be increased to 2.1 mg/kg daily (max. 90 mg daily) under the direction of a specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month
  - **Note** Contents of capsule can be sprinkled on a tablespoon of apple sauce (then swallowed immediately without chewing)
  - **Note** Medikinet XL® capsules consist of an immediate-release component (50% of the dose) and a modified-release component (50% of the dose)

**MODAFINIL**

**Cautions** monitor blood pressure and heart rate in hypertension (see Contra-indications); ECG required before initiation; possibility of dependence; bipolar disorder or history of psychiatric disorders; alcohol or drug abuse; interactions: Appendix 1 (modafinil)

**Contra-indications** moderate to severe uncontrolled hypertension, arrhythmia; history of left ventricular
hypertrophy, of cor pulmonale, or of clinically significant stimulant-induced mitral-valve prolapse (including ischaemic ECG changes, chest pain and arrhythmias)

**Hepatic impairment** half dose in severe impairment

Renal impairment use with caution—no information available

Pregnancy avoid

Breast-feeding avoid—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects dry mouth, appetite changes, gastrointestinal disturbances (including nausea, diarrhoea, constipation, and dyspepsia), abdominal pain; tachycardia, vasodilation, chest pain, palpitation; headache (uncommonly migraine), anxiety, sleep disturbances, dizziness, depression, confusion, paraesthesia, asthenia; visual disturbances; less commonly mouth ulcers, glossitis, pharyngitis, dysphagia, taste disturbance, increased thirst, hypertension, hypotension, bradycardia, arthralgia, peripheral oedema, hypercholesterolaemia, rhinitis, dyspnoea, agitation, dyskinesia, amnesia, emotional lability, abnormal dreams, suicidal ideation, tremor, decreased libido, weight changes, hyperglycaemia, urinary frequency, menstrual disturbances, eosinophilia, leucopenia, myasthenia, muscle cramps, dry eye, sinusitis, epistaxis, myalgia, arthralgia, acne, sweating, rash, and puritus; rarely hallucinations, mania, psychosis; very rarely, multi-organ hypersensitivity reaction, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

- **Narcolepsy**
  - **By mouth**
    - **Child 5–12 years** initially 100 mg daily in the morning, dose adjusted according to response to 100–400 mg daily either in 2 divided doses morning and at noon or as a single dose in the morning
    - **Child 12–18 years** 200 mg daily, either in 2 divided doses morning and at noon or as a single dose in the morning, dose adjusted according to response to 200–400 mg daily in 2 divided doses or as a single dose

- **Provigil** (Cephalon) ▼
  - **Tablets** modafinil 100 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £52.60; 200 mg, 30-tab pack = £105.20

### Drugs used in the treatment of obesity

Obesity is associated with many health problems including cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus, gallstones, and osteoarthritis. Factors that aggravate obesity may include depression, other psychosocial problems, and some drugs.

The main treatment of the obese individual is a suitable diet, carefully explained to the individual or carer, with appropriate support and encouragement; increased physical activity should also be encouraged. If appropriate, smoking cessation (while maintaining body weight) may be worthwhile before attempting supervised weight loss, since cigarette smoking may be more harmful than obesity.

Obesity should be managed in an appropriate setting by staff who have been trained in the management of obesity in children; the individual or carer should receive advice on diet and lifestyle modification and should be monitored for changes in weight as well as in blood pressure, blood lipids, and other associated conditions.

NICE has recommended (December 2006) that drug treatment should only be considered for obese children after dietary, exercise, and behavioural approaches have been started, and who have associated conditions such as orthopaedic problems or sleep apnoea; treatment is intended both to facilitate weight loss and to maintain reduced weight. Initial treatment should involve a 6–12 month trial of orlistat, with regular reviews of effectiveness, tolerance, and adherence.

**Choice** Orlistat, a lipase inhibitor, reduces the absorption of dietary fat. Some weight loss in those taking orlistat probably results from a reduction in fat intake to avoid severe gastro-intestinal effects including steatorrhoea. Vitamin supplementation (especially of vitamin D) should be considered.

Thyroid hormones have no place in the treatment of obesity except in biochemically proven hypothyroid children. The use of diuretics, choriionic gonadotrophin, or amfetamines is not appropriate for weight reduction.

### ORLISTAT

**Cautions** may impair absorption of fat-soluble vitamins; chronic kidney disease or volume depletion; interactions: Appendix 1 (orlistat)

**Multivitamins** If a multivitamin supplement is required, it should be taken at least 2 hours after orlistat dose

**Contra-indications** chronic malabsorption syndrome; cholestasis

**Pregnancy** use with caution

**Breast-feeding** avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** oily leakage from rectum, flatulence, faecal urgency, liquid or oily stools, faecal incontinence, abdominal distension and pain (gastro-intestinal effects minimised by reduced fat intake), tooth and gingival disorders, respiratory infections, malaise, anxiety, headache, menstrual disturbances, urinary tract infection, hypoglycaemia; also reported rectal bleeding, diverticulitis, cholelithiasis, hepatitis, hypothyroidism, oxalate nephropathy, bullous eruptions

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

- **Adjunct in obesity** initiated by specialist
  - **By mouth**
    - **Child 12–18 years** 120 mg taken immediately before, during, or up to 1 hour after each main meal (max. 120 mg 3 times daily); continue treatment beyond 12 weeks only under specialist recommendation
    - **Note** If a meal is missed or contains no fat, the dose of orlistat should be omitted

- **Xenical** (Roche)
  - **Capsules** turquoise, orlistat 120 mg, net price 84-cap pack = £31.63
**4.6 Drugs used in nausea and vertigo**

Antiemetics should be prescribed only when the cause of vomiting is known because otherwise they may delay diagnosis. Antiemetics are unnecessary and sometimes harmful when the cause can be treated, such as in diabetic ketoacidosis, or in digoxin or antiepileptic overdose.

If antiemetic drug treatment is indicated, the drug is chosen according to the aetiology of vomiting. **Antihistamines** are effective against nausea and vomiting resulting from many underlying conditions. There is no evidence that any one antihistamine is superior to another but their duration of action and incidence of adverse effects (drowsiness and antimuscarinic effects) differ.

The *phenothiazines* are dopamine antagonists and act centrally by blocking the chemoreceptor trigger zone. They may be considered for the prophylaxis and treatment of nausea and vomiting associated with diffuse neoplastic disease, radiation sickness, and the emesis caused by drugs such as opioids, general anaesthetics, and cytotoxics. Prochlorperazine, perphenazine, and trifluoperazine are less sedating than chlorpromazine; severe dystonic reactions sometimes occur with phenothiazines (see below). Some phenothiazines are available as rectal suppositories, which can be useful in children with persistent vomiting or with severe nausea; for children under 12 years prochlorperazine can also be administered as a buccal tablet which is placed between the upper lip and the gum.

**Domperidone** is a butyrophenone, structurally related to haloperidol, which blocks dopamine receptors in the chemoreceptor trigger zone. Other antipsychotic drugs including haloperidol and levomepromazine (section 4.2.1) are also used for the relief of nausea in palliative care (see p. 19 and p. 20).

**Metoclopramide** is an effective antiemetic and its activity closely resembles that of the phenothiazines. Metoclopramide also acts directly on the gastro-intestinal tract and it may be superior to the phenothiazines for emesis associated with gastroduodenal, hepatic, and biliary disease. In postoperative nausea and vomiting, metoclopramide has limited efficacy. For the role of metoclopramide in cytotoxic-induced nausea and vomiting see section 8.1.

**Acute dystonic reactions**

Phenothiazines and metoclopramide can all induce acute dystonic reactions such as facial and skeletal muscle spasms and oculargic crises; children (especially girls, young women, and those under 10 kg) are particularly susceptible. With metoclopramide, dystonic effects usually occur shortly after starting treatment and subside within 24 hours of stopping it. An antimuscarinic drug such as procyclidine (section 4.9.2) is used to abort dystonic attacks.

**Domperidone** acts at the chemoreceptor trigger zone; it has the advantage over metoclopramide and the phenothiazines of being less likely to cause central effects such as sedation and dystonic reactions because it does not readily cross the blood-brain barrier. For the role of domperidone in cytotoxic-induced nausea and vomiting see section 8.1. Domperidone is also used to treat vomiting due to emergency hormonal contraception (section 7.3.5).

**Granisetron** and **ondansetron** are specific 5HT3-receptor antagonists which block 5HT3 receptors in the gastrointestinal tract and in the CNS. They are of value in the management of nausea and vomiting in children receiving cytotoxics and in postoperative nausea and vomiting.

**Nabilone** is a synthetic cannabinoid with antiemetic properties. It may be used for nausea and vomiting caused by cytotoxic chemotherapy that is unresponsive to conventional antiemetics. Side-effects such as drowsiness and dizziness occur frequently with standard doses.

**Dexamethasone** (section 6.3.2) has antiemetic effects. For the role of dexamethasone in cytotoxic-induced nausea and vomiting see section 8.1.

**Vomiting during pregnancy**

Nausea in the first trimester of pregnancy is generally mild and does not require drug therapy. On rare occasions if vomiting is severe, short-term treatment with an antihistamine, such as promethazine, may be required. Prochlorperazine or metoclopramide may be considered as second-line treatments. If symptoms do not settle in 24 to 48 hours then specialist opinion should be sought. Hyperemesis gravidarum is a more serious condition, which requires intravenous fluid and electrolyte replacement and sometimes nutritional support. Supplementation with thiamine must be considered in order to reduce the risk of Wernicke’s encephalopathy.

**Postoperative nausea and vomiting**

The incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting depends on many factors including the anaesthetic used, and the type and duration of surgery. Other risk factors include female sex, a history of postoperative nausea and vomiting or motion sickness, and intraoperative and postoperative use of opioids. Therapy to prevent postoperative nausea and vomiting should be based on the assessed risk. Drugs used include 5HT3-receptor antagonists, droperidol, dexamethasone, some phenothiazines (e.g. prochlorperazine), and antihistamines (e.g. cyclizine). A combination of two or more antiemetic drugs that have different mechanisms of action is often indicated in those at high risk of postoperative nausea and vomiting or where postoperative vomiting presents a particular danger (e.g. in some types of surgery). When a prophylactic antiemetic drug has failed, postoperative nausea and vomiting should be treated with one or more drugs from a different class.

**Opioid-induced nausea and vomiting**

Cyclizine, ondansetron, and prochlorperazine are used to relieve opioid-induced nausea and vomiting; ondansetron has the advantage of not producing sedation.
Motion sickness

Antiemetics should be given to prevent motion sickness rather than after nausea or vomiting develop. The most effective drug for the prevention of motion sickness is hyoscine hydrobromide. For children over 10 years old, a transdermal hyoscine patch provides prolonged activity but it needs to be applied several hours before travelling. The sedating antihistamines are slightly less effective against motion sickness, but are generally better tolerated than hyoscine. If a sedative effect is desired promethazine is useful, but generally a slightly less sedating antihistamine such as cyclizine or cinnarizine is preferred. The 5HT3-receptor antagonists, domperidone, metoclopramide, and the phenothiazines (except the antihistamine phenothiazine promethazine) are ineffective in motion sickness.

Other vestibular disorders

Management of vestibular diseases is aimed at treating the underlying cause as well as treating symptoms of the balance disturbance and associated nausea and vomiting. Antihistamines (such as cinnarizine), and phenothiazines (such as prochlorperazine) are effective for prophylaxis and treatment of nausea and vertigo resulting from vestibular disorders; however, when nausea and vertigo are associated with middle ear surgery, treatment can be difficult.

Cytotoxic chemotherapy

For the management of nausea and vomiting induced by cytotoxic chemotherapy, see section 8.1.

Palliative care

For the management of nausea and vomiting in palliative care, see p. 19 and p. 20.

Migraine

For the management of nausea and vomiting associated with migraine, see p. 214.

Antihistamines

CINNARIZINE

Cautions section 3.4.1
Contra-indications section 3.4.1
Hepatic impairment section 3.4.1
Renal impairment use with caution—no information available
Pregnancy section 3.4.1
Breast-feeding section 3.4.1
Side-effects section 3.4.1; also rarely weight gain, sweating, lichen planus, and lupus-like skin reactions

Indication and dose

Relief of symptoms of vestibular disorders

- By mouth
  
  Child 5–12 years 15 mg 3 times daily
  
  Child 12–18 years 30 mg 3 times daily

- By rectum
  
  Child 2–6 years 12.5 mg up to 3 times daily
  
  Child 6–12 years 25 mg up to 3 times daily
  
  Child 12–18 years 50 mg up to 3 times daily

Note For motion sickness, take 1–2 hours before departure.

Valoid® (Amdipharm)

Tablets, scored, cyclizine hydrochloride 50 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £7.41. Label: 2

Injection (BNFC), cyclizine lactate 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 51p

CYCLIZINE

Cautions section 3.4.1; severe heart failure; may counteract haemodynamic benefits of opioids; interactions: Appendix 1 (antihistamines)

Skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

Contra-indications section 3.4.1

Hepatic impairment section 3.4.1

Pregnancy section 3.4.1

Breast-feeding no information available

Side-effects section 3.4.1

Licensed use tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years; injection not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Nausea and vomiting of known cause; nausea and vomiting associated with vestibular disorders and palliative care

- By mouth or by intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes
  
  Child 1 month–6 years 0.5–1 mg/kg up to 3 times daily; max. single dose 25 mg
  
  Child 6–12 years 25 mg up to 3 times daily
  
  Child 12–18 years 50 mg up to 3 times daily

Note For motion sickness, take 1–2 hours before departure.

- By rectum
  
  Child 2–6 years 12.5 mg up to 3 times daily
  
  Child 6–12 years 25 mg up to 3 times daily
  
  Child 12–18 years 50 mg up to 3 times daily

- By continuous intravenous or subcutaneous infusion
  
  Child 1 month–2 years 3 mg/kg over 24 hours
  
  Child 2–5 years 50 mg over 24 hours
  
  Child 6–12 years 75 mg over 24 hours
  
  Child 12–18 years 150 mg over 24 hours

Administration for administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed
Cyclizine (Non-proprietary)
Suppositories, 12.5 mg, 25 mg, 50 mg, 100 mg.
Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

PROMETHAZINE HYDROCHLORIDE
Cautions see notes in section 3.4.1
Contra-indications see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1
Hepatic impairment see notes in section 3.4.1
Renal impairment see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1
Pregnancy see notes in section 3.4.1
Breast-feeding see notes in section 3.4.1
Side-effects see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1 but more sedating

Indication and dose
Nausea and vomiting
• By mouth
  Child 2–5 years 5 mg at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary
  Child 5–10 years 10 mg at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary
  Child 10–18 years 20–25 mg at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary

Allergy and urticaria section 3.4.1
Sedation section 4.1.1

Preparations
Section 3.4.1

PROMETHAZINE TEOCLATE
Cautions section 3.4.1; severe coronary artery disease; asthma, bronchitis, bronchiectasis, Reye’s syndrome
Contra-indications section 3.4.1
Hepatic impairment section 3.4.1
Renal impairment use with caution
Pregnancy see notes in section 4.2.1
Breast-feeding see notes in section 4.2.1
Side-effects see Promethazine Hydrochloride, section 3.4.1 but more sedating

Indication and dose
Nausea and vomiting
• By mouth
  Child 2–5 years 5 mg at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary
  Child 5–10 years 10 mg at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary
  Child 10–18 years 20–25 mg at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary

Motion sickness prevention
• By mouth
  Child 5–10 years 12.5 mg at bedtime on night before travel or 12.5 mg 1–2 hours before travel
  Child 10–18 years 25 mg at bedtime on night before travel or 25 mg 1–2 hours before travel

Severe vomiting during pregnancy
• By mouth
  25 mg at bedtime increased if necessary to max. 100 mg daily (but see also Vomiting During Pregnancy, p. 192)

Phenothiazines and related drugs

CHLORPROMAZINE HYDROCHLORIDE
Cautions see Chlorpromazine Hydrochloride, section 4.2.1
Contra-indications see notes in section 4.2.1
Hepatic impairment see notes in section 4.2.1
Renal impairment see notes in section 4.2.1
Pregnancy see notes in section 4.2.1
Breast-feeding see notes in section 4.2.1
Side-effects see Chlorpromazine Hydrochloride, section 4.2.1

Indication and dose
Nausea and vomiting of terminal illness (where other drugs are unsuitable)
• By mouth
  Child 1–6 years 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 40 mg daily
  Child 6–12 years 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 75 mg daily
  Child 12–18 years 10–25 mg every 4–6 hours

• By deep intramuscular injection
  Child 1–6 years 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours; max. 40 mg daily
  Child 6–12 years 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours; max. 75 mg daily
  Child 12–18 years initially 25 mg then 25–50 mg every 3–4 hours until vomiting stops

Preparations
Section 4.2.1

DROPERIDOL
Cautions section 4.2.1; also chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or respiratory failure; electrolyte disturbances; history of alcohol abuse; continuous pulse oximetry required if risk of ventricular arrhythmia—continue for 30 minutes following administration; interactions: Appendix 1 (droperidol)

Contra-indications section 4.2.1; QT-interval prolongation (avoid concomitant administration of drugs
4.6 Drugs used in nausea and vertigo

that prolong QT interval); hypokalaemia; hypomagnesaemia; bradycardia

**Hepatic impairment** max. 625 micrograms repeated every 6 hours as required

**Renal impairment** max. 625 micrograms repeated every 6 hours as required

**Pregnancy** section 4.2.1

**Breast-feeding** limited information available—avoid repeated administration

**Side-effects** section 4.2.1; also anxiety, cardiac arrest, hallucinations, and inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone

**Indication and dose**

- Prevention and treatment of postoperative nausea and vomiting
  - **By intravenous injection**
    - **Child 2–18 years** 20–50 micrograms/kg (max. 1.25 mg) 30 minutes before the end of surgery, repeated every 6 hours as necessary

**Xomolix** (ProStrakan) Injection, droperidol 2.5 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £3.94

**PERPHENAZINE**

**Cautions** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Contra-indications** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Hepatic impairment** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Renal impairment** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Pregnancy** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Breast-feeding** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Side-effects** see Perphenazine, section 4.2.1

**Indication and dose**

- Severe nausea and vomiting unresponsive to other antiemetics
  - **By mouth**
    - **Child 14–18 years** 4 mg 3 times daily, adjusted according to response, max. 24 mg daily

**Preparations**

Section 4.2.1

**PROCHLORPERAZINE**

**Cautions** see notes in section 4.2.1; hypotension more likely after intramuscular injection

**Contra-indications** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Hepatic impairment** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Renal impairment** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Pregnancy** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Breast-feeding** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Side-effects** see notes in section 4.2.1; respiratory depression may occur in susceptible children

**Licensed use** injection not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

- Prevention and treatment of nausea and vomiting
  - **By mouth**
    - **Child 1–12 years and over 10 kg** 250 micrograms/kg 2–3 times daily
    - **Child 12–18 years** 5–10 mg, repeated if necessary up to 3 times daily

**Preparations**

Section 4.2.1

**TRIFLUOPERAZINE**

**Cautions** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Contra-indications** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Hepatic impairment** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Renal impairment** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Pregnancy** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Breast-feeding** see notes in section 4.2.1

**Side-effects** see Trifluoperazine section 4.2.1

**Indication and dose**

- Severe nausea and vomiting unresponsive to other antiemetics
  - **By mouth**
    - **Child 3–5 years** up to 500 micrograms twice daily
    - **Child 6–12 years** up to 2 mg twice daily
    - **Child 12–18 years** 1–2 mg twice daily; max. 3 mg twice daily

**Preparations**

Section 4.2.1

**Domperidone and metoclopramide**

**DOMPERIDONE**

**Cautions** children; interactions: Appendix 1 (domperidone)

**Contra-indications** prolactinaemia; if increased gastrointestinal motility harmful
Hepatic impairment avoid
Renal impairment reduce dose in renal impairment
Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk
Breast-feeding amount too small to be harmful
Side-effects rarely gastro-intestinal disturbances (including cramps), and hyperprolactinemia; very rarely ventricular arrhythmias, agitation, drowsiness, nervousness, seizures, extrapyramidal effects, headache, and rashes; also reported QT-interval prolongation
Side-effects (see p. 192), small amount present in milk; avoid Breast-feeding not known to be harmful
Renal impairment avoid or use small dose in severe impairment; reduced dose
Hepatic impairment avoid or use small dose in severe impairment; increased risk of extrapyramidal reactions
Pregnancy not known to be harmful
Breast-feeding small amount present in milk; avoid Side-effects extrapyramidal effects (see p. 192), hyperprolactinemia, occasionally tardive dyskinesia on prolonged administration; also reported, dysphoria, anxiety, confusion, drowsiness, dizziness, tremor, restlessness, diarrhoea, depression, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, visual disturbances, rashes, pruritus, oedema; cardiac conduction abnormalities reported following intravenous administration; rarely methaemoglobinaemia (more severe in G6PD deficiency)
Licensed use not licensed for use in neonates as a prokinetic
Indication and dose
Severe intractable vomiting of known cause, vomiting associated with radiotherapy and cytotoxics, aid to gastro-intestinal intubation, as a prokinetic in neonates
By mouth, or by intramuscular injection or by intravenous injection over 1–2 minutes
Neonate 100 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (by mouth or by intravenous injection only)
Child 1 month–1 year and body-weight up to 10 kg 100 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) twice daily
Child 1–3 years and body-weight 10–14 kg 1 mg 2–3 times daily
Child 3–5 years and body-weight 15–19 kg 2 mg 2–3 times daily
Child 5–9 years and body-weight 20–29 kg 2.5 mg 3 times daily
Child 9–18 years and body-weight 30–60 kg 5 mg 3 times daily
Child 15–18 years and body-weight over 60 kg 10 mg 3 times daily
Note Daily dose of metoclopramide should not normally exceed 500 micrograms/kg
Premedication in diagnostic procedures
By mouth as a single dose 5–10 minutes before examination
Child 1 month–3 years and body-weight up to 14 kg 100 micrograms/kg, max. 1 mg
Child 3–5 years and body-weight 15–19 kg 2 mg
Child 5–9 years and body-weight 20–29 kg 2.5 mg
Child 9–18 years and body-weight 30–60 kg 5 mg
Child 15–18 years and body-weight over 60 kg 10 mg
Metoclopramide (Non-proprietary) 
Tablets, metoclopramide hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.01
Oral solution, metoclopramide hydrochloride 5 mg/5 mL, net price 150-mL pack = £6.51. Counselling, use of pipette
Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription
Injection, metoclopramide hydrochloride 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £0.26
Maxolon® (Andipharm) 
Tablets, scored, metoclopramide hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £5.24
Injection, metoclopramide hydrochloride 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £0.27
Compound preparations (for migraine) 
Section 4.7.1
5HT3-receptor antagonists

GRANISETRON

Cautions QT-interval prolongation (avoid concomitant use of drugs that prolong QT interval)

Pregnancy use only when compelling reasons—no information available

Breast-feeding—no information available

Side-effects constipation, nausea, diarrhoea, vomiting, abdominal pain; headache, drowsiness, asthenia; fever; rarely hepatic dysfunction, chest pain, arrhythmia; very rarely anorexia, dizziness, insomnia, agitation, movement disorders, and rash

Licensed use sterile solution not licensed for use in children under 2 years

Indication and dose

Treatment and prevention of nausea and vomiting induced by cytotoxic chemotherapy or radiotherapy

• By mouth
  Child 12–18 years 1–2 mg within 1 hour before start of treatment, then 1 mg twice daily during treatment (total daily dose may alternatively be given as a single dose); when intravenous infusion also used, max. combined total 9 mg in 24 hours

• By intravenous infusion
  Child 1 month–12 years prevention, 40 micrograms/kg (max. 3 mg) before start of cytotoxic therapy; treatment, 40 micrograms/kg (max. 3 mg) repeated within 24 hours if necessary (not less than 10 minutes after initial dose)

• By intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
  Child 12–18 years prevention, 3 mg before start of cytotoxic therapy (up to 2 additional 3-mg doses may be given within 24 hours); treatment, 3 mg repeated if necessary (doses must not be given less than 10 minutes apart), max. 9 mg in 24 hours

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute up to 3 mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a total volume of 10–30 mL; give over 5 minutes

Granisetron (Non-proprietary) Tablets, granisetron (as hydrochloride) 1 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £51.20

Injection, granisetron (as hydrochloride) 1 mg/mL, for dilution before use, net price 1-mL amp = £1.20, 3-mL amp = £4.80

Kytril® (Roche) Tablets, f/c, granisetron (as hydrochloride) 1 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £52.39; 2 mg, 5-tab pack = £52.39

Injection, granisetron (as hydrochloride) 1 mg/mL, for dilution before use, net price 1-mL amp = £6.88, 3-mL amp = £20.63

ONDANSETRON

Cautions QT-interval prolongation (avoid concomitant use of drugs that prolong QT interval); subacute hepatic impairment; adrenomedullary surgery

Hepatic impairment reduce dose in moderate or severe impairment

Pregnancy no information available; avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding present in milk in animal studies—avoid

Side-effects constipation; headache; flushing; injection-site reactions; less commonly hiccup, hypotension, bradycardia, chest pain, arrhythmias, movement disorders, seizures; on intravenous administration, rarely dizziness, transient visual disturbances (very rarely transient blindness)

Licensed use not licensed for radiotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting in children

Indication and dose

Prevention and treatment of chemotherapy- and radiotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting

• By intravenous infusion over at least 15 minutes
  Child 6 months–18 years either 5 mg/m2 immediately before chemotherapy (max. single dose 8 mg), then give by mouth, or 150 micrograms/kg immediately before chemotherapy (max. single dose 8 mg) repeated every 4 hours for 2 further doses, then give by mouth; max. total daily dose 32 mg

• By mouth following intravenous administration
  Note Oral dosing can start 12 hours after intravenous administration

  Child 6 months–18 years
  Body surface area less than 0.6 m2 or body-weight 10 kg or less 2 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (max. total daily dose 32 mg)

  Body surface area 0.6 m2 or greater or body-weight over 10 kg 4 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (max. total daily dose 32 mg)

Treatment and prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting

• By slow intravenous injection over at least 30 seconds
  Child 1 month–18 years 100 micrograms/kg (max. 4 mg), as a single dose before, during, or after induction of anaesthesia

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 320–640 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 15 minutes

Ondansetron (Non-proprietary) Tablets, ondansetron (as hydrochloride) 4 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £66.85; 8 mg, 10-tab pack = £49.92

Brands include Ondensetron®

Otzan® solution, ondansetron (as hydrochloride) 4 mg/5 mL, net price 50-mL pack = £35.97

Brands include Ondores®

Injection, ondansetron (as hydrochloride) 2 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £5.39, 4-mL amp = £10.79

Brands include Ondensetron®

Zofran® (GSK) Tablets, yellow, f/c, ondansetron (as hydrochloride) 4 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £107.91; 8 mg, 10-tab pack = £71.94
Oral lyophilisates (Zofran Melt\textsuperscript{c}), ondansetron 4 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £35.97; 8 mg, 10-tab pack = £71.94. Counselling, administration

**Counselling** Tablets should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed

**Counselling** Tablets should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed

Ondansetron (as hydrochloride) 4 mg/5 mL, net price 50-mL pack = £35.97

Injection, ondansetron (as hydrochloride) 2 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £5.99; 4-mL amp = £11.99

**Cannabinoid**

**NABILONE**

**Cautions** history of psychiatric disorder; hypertension; heart disease; adverse effects on mental state can persist for 48–72 hours after stopping; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (nabilone)

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid unless essential

**Breast-feeding** avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** drowsiness, vertigo, euphoria, dry mouth, ataxia, visual disturbance, concentration difficulties, sleep disturbance, dysphoria, hypotension, headache and nausea; also confusion, disorientation, hallucinations, psychosis, depression, decreased coordination, tremors, tachycardia, decreased appetite, and abdominal pain

**Behavioural effects** Children and carers should be made aware of possible changes of mood and other adverse behavioural effects

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose** Nausea and vomiting caused by cytotoxic chemotherapy, unresponsive to conventional antiemetics (under close observation, preferably in hospital setting)

- **By mouth** Consult local treatment protocol for details

Nabilone (Meda)\textsuperscript{bl}

Capsules, blue/white, nabilone 1 mg, net price 20-cap pack = £125.84. Label: 2, counselling, behavioural effects

**Hyoscine**

**HYOSCINE HYDROBROMIDE** (Scopolamine Hydrobromide)

**Cautions** section 1.2; also epilepsy

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving) and may persist for up to 24 hours or longer after removal of patch; effects of alcohol enhanced

**Contra-indications** section 1.2

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution

**Renal impairment** use with caution

**Pregnancy** use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; injection may depress neonatal respiration

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects** section 1.2

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in excessive respiratory secretions or hypersalivation associated with clozapine therapy

**Indication and dose** Motion sickness

- **By mouth**
  - Child 4–10 years 75–150 micrograms 30 minutes before start of journey, repeated every 6 hours if required; max. 3 doses in 24 hours
  - Child 10–18 years 150–300 micrograms 30 minutes before start of journey, repeated every 6 hours if required; max. 3 doses in 24 hours

- **By topical application**
  - Child 10–18 years apply 1 patch (1 mg) to hairless area of skin behind ear 5–6 hours before journey; replace if necessary after 72 hours, siting replacement patch behind the other ear

**Excessive respiratory secretions**

- **By mouth or by sublingual administration**
  - Child 2–12 years 10 micrograms/kg, max. 300 micrograms 4 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years 300 micrograms 4 times daily

- **By subcutaneous injection, intravenous injection, or subcutaneous infusion** See Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 19 and p. 20

**Excessive respiratory secretions**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 300 micrograms up to 3 times daily; max. 900 micrograms daily

**By transdermal route**

- Child 1 month–3 years 250 micrograms every 72 hours (quarter of a patch)
- Child 3–10 years 500 micrograms every 72 hours (half a patch)
- Child 10–18 years 1 mg every 72 hours (one patch)

- **By subcutaneous injection, intravenous injection, intravenous infusion, or subcutaneous infusion**

**Hypersalivation associated with clozapine therapy**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 300 micrograms up to 3 times daily; max. 900 micrograms daily

**Premedication** section 15.1.3

**Administration** patch applied to hairless area of skin behind ear; if less than whole patch required either cut with scissors along full thickness ensuring membrane is not peeled away or cover portion to prevent contact with skin

For administration by mouth, injection solution may be given orally

Joy-Rides\textsuperscript{c} (GSK Consumer Healthcare)

Tablets, chewable, hyoscine hydrobromide 150 micrograms, net price 12-tab pack = £1.49. Label: 2, 24

Kwells\textsuperscript{c} (Bayer Consumer Care)

Tablets, chewable, hyoscine hydrobromide 150 micrograms (Kwells\textsuperscript{c} Kids), net price 12-tab pack = £1.67; 300 micrograms, 12-tab pack = £1.67. Label: 2
**4.7 Analgesics**

**4.7.1 Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations**

The non-opioid drugs (section 4.7.1), paracetamol and ibuprofen (and other NSAIDs), are particularly suitable for pain in musculoskeletal conditions, whereas the opioid analgesics (section 4.7.2) are more suitable for moderate to severe pain, particularly of visceral origin.

**Pain in palliative care** For advice on pain relief in palliative care, see p. 17.

**Pain in sickle-cell disease** The pain of mild sickle-cell crises is managed with paracetamol, an NSAID (section 10.1.1), codeine, or dihydrocodeine. Severe crises may require the use of morphine or diamorphine; concomitant use of an NSAID may potentiate analgesia (section 10.1.1), codeine, or dihydrocodeine. Severe cell crises is managed with paracetamol, an NSAID (section 10.1.1).

**Pain in palliative care** (BNFC 2011–2012 4.7 Analgesics 199)

Dysmenorrhoea Paracetamol or a NSAID (section 10.1.1) will generally provide adequate relief of pain from dysmenorrhoea. Alternatively use of a combined hormonal contraceptive in adolescent girls may prevent the pain.

**4.7.2 Opioid analgesics**

Opioid analgesics, such as Entonox, Equanox, and Scopoderm TTS (Novartis Consumer Health) have analgesic and antipyretic effects but no demonstrable anti-inflammatory activity; unlike paracetamol, it does not cause respiratory depression and is less irritant to the stomach than the NSAIDs.

**Opioid analgesics (section 4.7.2)** such as dihydrocodeine act on the central nervous system and are traditionally used for moderate to severe pain. However, opioid analgesics are relatively ineffective in dental pain and their side-effects can be unpleasant.

Combining a non-opioid with an opioid analgesic can provide greater relief of pain than either analgesic given alone. However, this applies only when an adequate dose of each analgesic is used. Most combination analgesic preparations have not been shown to provide greater relief of pain than an adequate dose of the non-opioid component given alone. Moreover, combination preparations have the disadvantage of an increased number of side-effects.

Any analgesic given before a dental procedure should have a low risk of increasing postoperative bleeding. In the case of pain after the dental procedure, taking an analgesic before the effect of the local anaesthetic has worn off can improve control. Postoperative analgesia with ibuprofen is usually continued for about 24 to 72 hours.

**Dysmenorrhoea** Paracetamol or a NSAID (section 10.1.1) will generally provide adequate relief of pain from dysmenorrhoea. Alternatively use of a combined hormonal contraceptive in adolescent girls may prevent the pain.

**4.7.3 Neuropathic pain**

Pain in dental and orofacial pain

**Dental and orofacial pain** Analgesics should be used judiciously in dental care as a temporary measure until the cause of the pain has been dealt with.

Dental pain of inflammatory origin, such as that associated with pulpitis, apical infection, localised osteitis (dry socket) or pericoronitis is usually best managed by treating the infection, providing drainage, restorative procedures, and other local measures. Analgesics provide temporary relief of pain (usually for about 1 to 7 days) until the causative factors have been brought under control. In the case of pulpitis, intra-osseous infection or abscess, reliance on analgesics alone is usually inappropriate.

Similarly the pain and discomfort associated with acute problems of the oral mucosa (e.g. acute herpetic gingivostomatitis, erythema multiforme) may be relieved by benzylamine (p. 543) or topical anaesthetics until the cause of the mucosal disorder has been dealt with. However, where a child is febrile, the antipyretic action of paracetamol (p. 200) or ibuprofen (p. 503) is often helpful.

**4.7.4 Antimigraine drugs**

The choice of an analgesic for dental purposes should be based on its suitability for the child. Most dental pain is relieved effectively by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) e.g. ibuprofen (section 10.1.1). Paracetamol has analgesic and antipyretic effects but no anti-inflammatory effect.

Opioid analgesics (section 4.7.2) such as dihydrocodeine act on the central nervous system and are traditionally used for moderate to severe pain. However, opioid analgesics are relatively ineffective in dental pain and their side-effects can be unpleasant.

Combining a non-opioid with an opioid analgesic can provide greater relief of pain than either analgesic given alone. However, this applies only when an adequate dose of each analgesic is used. Most combination analgesic preparations have not been shown to provide greater relief of pain than an adequate dose of the non-opioid component given alone. Moreover, combination preparations have the disadvantage of an increased number of side-effects.

Any analgesic given before a dental procedure should have a low risk of increasing postoperative bleeding. In the case of pain after the dental procedure, taking an analgesic before the effect of the local anaesthetic has worn off can improve control. Postoperative analgesia with ibuprofen is usually continued for about 24 to 72 hours.

**Dysmenorrhoea** Paracetamol or a NSAID (section 10.1.1) will generally provide adequate relief of pain from dysmenorrhoea. Alternatively use of a combined hormonal contraceptive in adolescent girls may prevent the pain.

**Paracetamol** has antipyretic properties but no demonstrable anti-inflammatory activity; unlike opioid analgesics, it does not cause respiratory depression and is less irritant to the stomach than the NSAIDs. **Overdosage** with paracetamol is particularly dangerous as it may cause hepatic damage which is sometimes not apparent for 4 to 6 days (see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 26).

**Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory analgesics** (NSAIDs, section 10.1.1) are particularly useful for the treatment of children with chronic disease accompanied by pain and inflammation. Some of them are also used in the short-term treatment of mild to moderate pain including transient musculoskeletal pain but paracetamol is now often preferred. They are also suitable for the relief of pain in **dysmenorrhoea** and to treat pain caused by secondary bone tumours, many of which produce lysis of bone and release prostaglandins (see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17). Due to an association with Reye’s syndrome (section 2.9), aspirin should be avoided in children under 16 years except in Kawasaki syndrome or for its antiplatelet action (section 2.9). NSAIDs are also used for peri-operative analgesia (section 15.1.4.2).

**Dental and orofacial pain** Most dental pain is relieved effectively by NSAIDs (section 10.1.1). Paracetamol is less irritant to the stomach than NSAIDs. Paracetamol is a suitable analgesic for children; sugar-free versions can be requested by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription.

For further information on the management of dental and orofacial pain, see above.
### Compound analgesic preparations

Compound analgesic preparations that contain a simple analgesic (such as aspirin or paracetamol) with an opioid component reduce the scope for effective titration of the individual components in the management of pain of varying intensity.

Compound analgesic preparations containing paracetamol or aspirin with a low dose of an opioid analgesic (e.g. 8 mg of codeine phosphate per compound tablet) may be used in older children but the advantages have not been substantiated. The low dose of the opioid may be enough to cause opioid side-effects (in particular, constipation) and can complicate the treatment of overdose (see p. 28) yet may not provide significant additional relief of pain.

A full dose of the opioid component (e.g. 60 mg codeine phosphate) in compound analgesic preparations effectively augments the analgesic activity but is associated with the full range of opioid side-effects (including nausea, vomiting, severe constipation, drowsiness, respiratory depression, and risk of dependence on long-term administration). For details of the side-effects of opioid analgesics, see p. 203.

### PARACETAMOL (Acetaminophen)

**Cautions**
- Alcohol dependence: max. daily infusion dose 3 g in patients with hepatocellular insufficiency.
- Chronic alcoholism, chronic malnutrition, or dehydration: high risk of liver toxicity with high doses.
- **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (paracetamol)

**Hepatic impairment**
- dose-related toxicity—avoid large doses; see also Cautions

**Renal impairment**
- increase infusion dose interval to every 6 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73m²

**Pregnancy**
- not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding**
- amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects**
- side-effects rare, but rashes, blood disorders (including thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, neutropenia) reported; hypotension, flushing, and tachycardia also reported on infusion; **important:** liver damage (and less frequently renal damage) following overdose, see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 26

**Licensed use**
- not licensed for use in children under 2 months by mouth; not licensed for use in preterm neonates by intravenous infusion; doses for severe symptoms not licensed; co-codamol 8/500 tablets not licensed for use in children under 12 years

### Indication and dose

**Pain; pyrexia with discomfort**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 28–32 weeks postmenstrual age</strong></td>
<td>20 mg/kg as a single dose then 10–15 mg/kg every 8–12 hours as necessary; max. 30 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate over 32 weeks postmenstrual age</strong></td>
<td>20 mg/kg as a single dose then 10–15 mg/kg every 6–8 hours as necessary; max. 60 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–3 months</strong></td>
<td>30–60 mg every 8 hours as necessary</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Neonate 28–32 weeks postmenstrual age**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–3 months</strong></td>
<td>30–60 mg every 8 hours as necessary</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–6 years</strong></td>
<td>120–250 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 6–12 years</strong></td>
<td>250–500 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong></td>
<td>500 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Neonate over 32 weeks postmenstrual age**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–3 months</strong></td>
<td>30–60 mg every 8 hours as necessary</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–6 years</strong></td>
<td>120–250 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 6–12 years</strong></td>
<td>250–500 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong></td>
<td>500 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**By rectum**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 28–32 weeks postmenstrual age</strong></td>
<td>20 mg/kg as a single dose then 15 mg/kg every 12 hours as necessary; max. 30 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate over 32 weeks postmenstrual age</strong></td>
<td>30 mg/kg as a single dose then 20 mg/kg every 8 hours as necessary; max. 60 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–3 months</strong></td>
<td>30–60 mg every 8 hours as necessary</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–6 years</strong></td>
<td>120–250 mg every 4–6 hours as necessary (max. 4 doses in 24 hours)</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–5 years</strong></td>
<td>125–250 mg every 4–6 hours as necessary (max. 4 doses in 24 hours)</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 5–12 years</strong></td>
<td>250–500 mg every 4–6 hours as necessary (max. 4 doses in 24 hours)</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong></td>
<td>500 mg every 4–6 hours</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**By intravenous infusion over 15 minutes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preterm neonate over 32 weeks postmenstrual age</strong></td>
<td>7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours; max. 25 mg/kg daily</td>
<td>By infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 10 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 30 mg/kg daily</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>By infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child body-weight under 50 kg</strong></td>
<td>15 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 60 mg/kg daily</td>
<td>By infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child body-weight over 50 kg</strong></td>
<td>1 g every 4–6 hours; max. 4 g daily</td>
<td>By infusion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Severe postoperative pain (but see Cautions)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–6 years</strong></td>
<td>20–30 mg/kg as a single dose then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 90 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 6–12 years</strong></td>
<td>20–30 mg/kg (max. 1 g) as a single dose then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 90 mg/kg (max. 4 g) daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong></td>
<td>1 g every 4–6 hours (max. 4 doses in 24 hours)</td>
<td>By mouth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1–3 months</strong></td>
<td>30 mg/kg as a single dose then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 90 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 3 months–6 years</strong></td>
<td>30–40 mg/kg as a single dose then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 90 mg/kg daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 6–12 years</strong></td>
<td>30–40 mg/kg (max. 1 g) as a single dose then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours; max. 90 mg/kg (max. 4 g) daily in divided doses</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong></td>
<td>1 g every 4–6 hours (max. 4 doses in 24 hours)</td>
<td>By rectum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Can be sold to the public under certain circumstances; for exemptions see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition)

Panadol OA® (GSK) (BNF) 1
Tablets, f/c, paracetamol 1 g, net price 100-tab pack = £3.30. Label: 30

Dose

Pain, pyrexia
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 1 tablet up to 4 times daily, not more often than every 4 hours

Perfalgan® (Bristol-Myers Squibb) (BNF)
Intravenous infusion, paracetamol 10 mg/mL, net price 50-mL vial = £1.39, 100-mL vial = £1.52

Administration give undiluted or dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, use within 1 hour of dilution

With codeine
For prescribing information on codeine, see p. 204.

When co-codamol tablets, dispersible (or effervescent) tablets, or capsules are prescribed and no strength is stated, tablets, dispersible (or effervescent) tablets, or capsules, respectively, containing codeine phosphate 8 mg and paracetamol 500 mg should be dispensed.

2 Co-codamol 8/500 (Non-proprietary) (BNF)
Tablets, co-codamol 8/500 (codeine phosphate 8 mg, paracetamol 500 mg), net price 30-tab pack = £1.25, 32-tab pack = 50p, 100-tab pack = £1.35. Label: 29, 30

Dose

Pain, pyrexia
• By mouth
Child 6–12 years ½–1 tablet every 4–6 hours; max. 4 tablets daily
Child 12–18 years 1–2 tablets every 4–6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily

Effervescent or dispersible tablets, co-codamol 8/500 (codeine phosphate 8 mg, paracetamol 500 mg), net price 32-tab pack = £1.00, 100-tab pack = £4.32. Label: 13, 29, 30

Brands include Paracodol®

Note The Drug Tariff allows tablets of co-codamol labelled ‘dispersible’ to be dispensed against an order for ‘effervescent’ and vice versa

Dose

Pain, pyrexia
• By mouth
Child 6–12 years ½–1 tablet in water every 4–6 hours; max. 4 tablets daily
Child 12–18 years 1–2 tablets in water every 4–6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily

Capsules, co-codamol 8/500 (codeine phosphate 8 mg, paracetamol 500 mg), net price 10-cap pack = £1.10, 20-cap pack = £1.71. Label: 29, 30

Brands include Paracodol®

Dose

Pain, pyrexia
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 1–2 capsules every 4 hours; max. 8 capsules daily

With dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg
For prescribing information on dihydrocodeine, see p. 205

See notes, p. 200

When co-dydramol tablets are prescribed and no strength is stated, tablets containing dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg and paracetamol 500 mg should be dispensed.

Co-dydramol (Non-proprietary) (BNF)
Tablets, scored, co-dydramol 10/500 (dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg, paracetamol 500 mg), net price 30-tab pack = £1.21. Label: 29, 30

Dose

Mild to moderate pain
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 1–2 tablets every 4–6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily
202 4.7.2 Opioid analgesics

**With dihydrocodeine tartrate 20 or 30 mg**

See warnings and notes, p. 200

When co-phenylcodamine tablets are prescribed and no strength is stated, tablets containing dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg and paracetamol 500 mg should be dispensed

**Remedeine®** (McNeil)

Tablets, paracetamol 500 mg, dihydrocodeine tartrate 20 mg, net price 112-tab pack = £10.57. Label: 2, 29, 30

**Dose**

**Severe pain**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 1–2 tablets every 4–6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily

**Forte tablets**, paracetamol 500 mg, dihydrocodeine tartrate 30 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £6.53. Label: 2, 29, 30

**Dose**

**Severe pain**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 1–2 tablets every 4–6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily

---

**With tramadol**

For prescribing information on tramadol, see section 4.7.2

**Tramacet®** (Grunenthal)

Tablets, f/c, yellow, tramadol hydrochloride 37.5 mg, paracetamol 325 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £9.68. Label: 2, 25, 29, 30

**Dose**

**Moderate to severe pain**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 2 tablets not more than every 6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily

**Effervescent tablets**, pink, tramadol hydrochloride 37.5 mg, paracetamol 325 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £9.68. Label: 2, 13, 29, 30 (contains Na⁺ 7.8 mmol/tablet)

**Dose**

**Moderate to severe pain**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 2 tablets not more than every 6 hours; max. 8 tablets daily

---

**With antiemetics**

**Migraleve®** (McNeil)

Tablets, all f/c, pink tablets, buclizine hydrochloride 6.25 mg, paracetamol 500 mg, codeine phosphate 8 mg; yellow tablets, paracetamol 500 mg, codeine phosphate 8 mg, net price 48-tab Migraleve Pink (32 pink + 16 yellow) = £4.81; 48 pink (Migraleve Pink) = £5.24. Label: 2, (Migraleve Pink), 17, 30

**Dose**

**Treatment of acute migraine**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 10–14 years 1 pink tablet at onset of attack, or if it is imminent, then 1 yellow tablet every 4 hours if necessary; max. 1 pink and 3 yellow tablets in 24 hours
  - Child 14–18 years 2 pink tablets at onset of attack, or if it is imminent, then 2 yellow tablets every 4 hours if necessary; max. in 24 hours 2 pink and 6 yellow

---

**Paramax®** (Sanofi-Aventis)

Tablets, scored, paracetamol 500 mg, metoclopramide hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 42-tab pack = £9.64. Label: 17, 30

**Sachets**, effervescent powder, sugar-free, the contents of 1 sachet = 1 tablet; to be dissolved in ¼ tumblerful of liquid before administration, net price 42-sachet pack = £12.52. Label: 13, 17, 30

**Dose**

**Treatment of acute migraine**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 1 at onset of attack then 1 every 4 hours when necessary to max. of 3 in 24 hours [max. dose of metoclopramide 500 micrograms/kg daily]

**Important** Metoclopramide can cause severe extra-pyramidal effects (for further details, see p. 192 and p. 196)

---

4.7.2 Opioid analgesics

Opioid analgesics are usually used to relieve moderate to severe pain particularly of visceral origin. Repeated administration may cause tolerance, but this is no deterrent in the control of pain in terminal illness, for guidelines see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17. Regular use of a potent opioid may be appropriate for certain cases of chronic non-malignant pain; treatment should be supervised by a specialist and the child should be assessed at regular intervals.

**Cautions** Opioids should be used with caution in children with impaired respiratory function and asthma (avoid during an acute attack), hypotension, shock, obstructive or inflammatory bowel disorders, diseases of the biliary tract, and convulsive disorders. A reduced dose is recommended in hypothyroidism or adrenocortical insufficiency. Repeated use of opioid analgesics is associated with the development of psychological and physical dependence; although this is rarely a problem with therapeutic use, caution is advised if prescribing for patients with a history of drug dependence. Avoid abrupt withdrawal after long-term treatment. Transdermal preparations (fentanyl or buprenorphine patches) are not suitable for acute pain or in those children whose analgesic requirements are changing rapidly, because the long time to steady state prevents rapid titration of the dose.

**Palliative care** In the control of pain in terminal illness, the cautions listed above should not necessarily be a deterrent to the use of opioid analgesics.

**Contra-indications** Opioid analgesics should be avoided in children with acute respiratory depression, and when there is a risk of paralytic ileus. They are also contra-indicated in conditions associated with raised intracranial pressure, and in head injury (opioid analgesics interfere with pupillary responses vital for neurological assessment). Comatose children should not be treated with opioid analgesics.

**Hepatic impairment** Opioid analgesics may precipitate coma in children with hepatic impairment; avoid use or reduce dose.

**Renal impairment** The effects of opioid analgesia are increased and prolonged and there is increased cerebral sensitivity when children with renal impairment are treated with opioid analgesics; avoid use or reduce dose.
Pregnancy Respiratory depression and withdrawal symptoms can occur in the neonate if opioid analgesics are used during delivery; also gastric stasis and inhalation pneumonia has been reported in the mother if opioid analgesics are used during labour.

Side-effects Opioid analgesics share many side-effects, although qualitative and quantitative differences exist. The most common side-effects include nausea and vomiting (particularly in initial stages), constipation, dry mouth and biliary spasm; larger doses produce muscle rigidity, hypotension and respiratory depression (for reversal of opioid-induced respiratory depression, see section 15.1.7); neonates, particularly if preterm, may be more susceptible. Other common side-effects of opioid analgesics include bradycardia, tachycardia, palpitation, oedema, postural hypotension, hallucinations, vertigo, euphoria, dysphoria, mood changes, dependence, dizziness, confusion, drowsiness, sleep disturbances, headache, sexual dysfunction, difficulty with micturition, urinary retention, ureteric spasm, miosis, visual disturbances, sweating, flushing, rash, urticaria, and pruritus. Overdose: see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning. p. 28.

Long-term use of opioid analgesics can lead to hypogonadism and adrenal insufficiency in both boys and girls. This is thought to be dose related and can lead to amenorrhea, reduced libido, infertility, depression, and erectile dysfunction. Long-term use of opioid analgesics has also been associated with a state of abnormal pain sensitivity (hyperalgesia). Pain associated with hyperalgesia is usually distinct from pain associated with disease progression or breakthrough pain, and is often more diffuse and less defined. Treatment of hyperalgesia involves reducing the dose of opioid medication or switching therapy; cases of suspected hyperalgesia should be referred to a specialist pain team.

Interactions See Appendix 1 (opioid analgesics) (important: special hazard with pethidine and possibly other opioids and MAOIs).

Skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced. Driving at the start of therapy with opioid analgesics, and following dose changes, should be avoided.

Strong opioids Morphine remains the most valuable opioid analgesic for severe pain although it frequently causes nausea and vomiting. It is the standard against which other opioid analgesics are compared. In addition to relief of pain, morphine also confers a state of euphoria and mental detachment. Morphine is the opioid of choice for the oral treatment of severe pain in palliative care. It is given regularly every 4 hours (or every 12 or 24 hours as modified-release preparations). For guidelines on dosage adjustment in palliative care, see p. 17.

Buprenorphine has both opioid agonist and antagonist properties and may precipitate withdrawal symptoms, including pain, in children dependent on other opioids. It has abuse potential and may itself cause dependence. It has a much longer duration of action than morphine and sublingually is an effective analgesic for 6 to 8 hours. Unlike most opioid analgesics, the effects of buprenorphine are only partially reversed by naloxone. It is used rarely in children.

Diamorphine (heroin) is a powerful opioid analgesic. It may cause less nausea and hypotension than morphine.

In palliative care the greater solubility of diamorphine allows effective doses to be injected in smaller volumes and this is important in the emaciated child. Diamorphine is sometimes given by the intranasal route to treat acute pain in children, for example, in accident and emergency units; however, as yet, there is limited safety and efficacy data to support this practice.

Remifentanil, fentanyl and remifentanil are used by injection for intra-operative analgesia (section 15.1.4.3). Fentanyl is available in a transdermal drug delivery system as a self-adhesive patch which is changed every 72 hours.

Methadone is less sedating than morphine and acts for longer periods. In prolonged use, methadone should not be administered more often than twice daily to avoid the risk of accumulation and opioid overdose. Methadone may be used instead of morphine when excitation (or exacerbation of pain) occurs with morphine. Methadone may also be used to treat children with neonatal abstinence syndrome (section 4.10).

Papaveretum should not be used in children; morphine is easier to prescribe and less prone to error with regard to the strength and dose.

Pethidine produces prompt but short-lasting analgesia; it is less constipating than morphine, but even in high doses is a less potent analgesic. Its use in children is not recommended. Pethidine is used for analgesia in labour; however, other opioids, such as morphine or diamorphine, are often preferred for obstetric pain.

Tramadol is used in older children and produces analgesia by two mechanisms: an opioid effect and an enhancement of serotonergic and adrenergic pathways. It has fewer of the typical opioid side-effects (notably, less respiratory depression, less constipation and less addiction potential); psychiatric reactions have been reported.

Weak opioids Codeine is used for the relief of mild to moderate pain but is too constipating for long-term use. Dihydrocodeine has an analgesic efficacy similar to that of codeine; doses may be given every 4 hours.

Dose Doses of opioids may need to be adjusted individually according to the degree of analgesia and side-effects; response to opioids varies widely, particularly in the neonatal period. Opioid overdosage can have serious consequences and the dose should be calculated and checked with care.

Postoperative analgesia A combination of opioid and non-opioid analgesics is used to treat postoperative pain (section 15.1.4.2). The use of intra-operative opioids affects the prescribing of postoperative analgesics. A postoperative opioid analgesic should be given with care since it may potentiate any residual respiratory depression (for the treatment of opioid-induced respiratory depression, see section 15.1.7).

Morphine is used most widely. Tramadol is not as effective in severe pain as other opioid analgesics. Buprenorphine may antagonise the analgesic effect of previously administered opioids and is generally not recommended. Pethidine is unsuitable for post-operative pain because it is metabolised to norpethidine which may accumulate, particularly in neonates and in renal impairment; norpethidine stimulates the central nervous system and may cause convulsions.
Opioids are also given epidurally [unlicensed route] in the postoperative period but are associated with side-effects such as pruritus, urinary retention, nausea and vomiting; respiratory depression can be delayed, particularly with morphine.

For details of patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) and nurse-controlled analgesia (NCA) to relieve postoperative pain, consult hospital protocols. Formulations specifically designed for PCA are available (Pharma-Ject® Morphine Sulphate).

**Dental and orofacial pain** Opioid analgesics are relatively ineffective in dental pain. Like other opioids, dihydrocodeine often causes nausea and vomiting which limits its value in dental pain; if taken for more than a few doses it is also liable to cause constipation. Dihydrocodeine is not very effective in postoperative dental pain.

For the management of dental and orofacial pain, see p. 199.

**Pain management and opioid dependence** Although caution is necessary, patients who are dependent on opioids or have a history of drug dependence may be treated with opioid analgesics when there is a clinical need. Treatment with opioid analgesics in this patient group should normally be carried out with the advice of specialists. However, doctors do not require a special license to prescribe opioid analgesics to patients with opioid dependence for relief of pain due to organic disease or injury.

**Dependence and withdrawal** Psychological dependence rarely occurs when opioids are used for pain relief but tolerance can develop during long-term treatment; they should be withdrawn gradually to avoid abstinence symptoms. For information on the treatment of neonatal abstinence syndrome, see section 4.10.

**CODEINE PHOSPHATE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also impaired consciousness; effects only partially reversed by naloxone

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also myasthenia gravis

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in low levels in breast milk—monitor neonate for drowsiness, adequate weight gain, and developmental milestones

**Side-effects** see notes above; can induce mild withdrawal symptoms in children dependent on opioids; also diarrhoea, abdominal pain, anorexia, dyspepsia; vasodilatation; dyspnoea; paraesthesia, anæmia, fatigue, agitation, anxiety; less commonly flatulence, taste disturbance, hypertension, syncope, hypoxia, wheezing, cough, restlessness, depersonalisation, dystartria, impaired memory, hypoaesthesia, tremor, influenza-like symptoms, pyrexia, rhinitis, rigors, muscle cramp, myalgia, tinnitus, dry eye, and dry skin; rarely paralytic ileus, dysphagia, diverticulitis, impaired concentration, and psychosis; very rarely retching, hyperventilation, hiccups, and muscle fasciculation

**Licensed use** sublingual tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years; injection not licensed for use in children under 6 months

**Indication and dose**

**Moderate to severe pain**
- **By sublingual administration**
  - Child body-weight 16–25 kg 100 micrograms every 6–8 hours
  - Child body-weight 25–37.5 kg 100–200 micrograms every 6–8 hours
  - Child body-weight 37.5–50 kg 200–300 micrograms every 6–8 hours
  - Child body-weight over 50 kg 200–400 micrograms every 6–8 hours

- **By intramuscular or by slow intravenous injection**
  - Child 6 months–12 years 3–6 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, max. 9 micrograms/kg
  - Child 12–18 years 300–600 micrograms every 6–8 hours

**Administration** for administration by mouth, tablets may be halved

**Temgesic® (Reckitt Benckiser)**

- Tablets (sublingual), buprenorphine (as hydrochloride), 200 micrograms, net price 50-tab pack = £5.13; 400 micrograms, 50-tab pack = £10.26. Label: 2, 26

- Injection, buprenorphine (as hydrochloride) 300 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 48p

**BUPRENORPHINE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also cardiac arrhythmias; myasthenia gravis; acute abdomen; gallstones

**Variation in metabolism** The capacity to metabolise codeine can vary considerably between individuals and lead to either reduced therapeutic effect or marked increase in side-effects

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** amount usually too small to be harmful, however, mothers vary considerably in their capacity to metabolise codeine—risk of morphine overdose in infant

**Side-effects** see notes above; also abdominal pain, anorexia, seizures, malaise, hypothermia, antidiuretic effect, and muscle fasciculation; pancreatitis also reported

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed for use in children; injection not licensed for use in children under 1 year

**Indication and dose**

**Mild to moderate pain**
- **By mouth or by rectum or by subcutaneous injection or by intramuscular injection**
  - Neonate 0.5–1 mg/kg every 4–6 hours
  - Child 1 month–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, max. 240 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years 30–60 mg every 4–6 hours, max. 240 mg daily
Diamorphine Hydrochloride (Heroin Hydrochloride)

**Cautions** see notes above; also severe diarrhoea; toxic psychosis, CNS depression; severe cor pulmonare

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also delayed gastric emptying; phaeochromocytoma

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** therapeutic doses unlikely to affect infant; withdrawal symptoms in infants of dependent mothers; breast-feeding not best method of treating dependence in offspring

**Side-effects** see notes above; also anorexia, taste disturbance; syncope; asthenia, raised intracranial pressure; myocardial infarction also reported

**Licensed use** intranasal route not licensed

### Indication and dose

**Acute or chronic pain**

• **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 100–200 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 12–18 years 5–10 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

• **By intravenous administration**
  - Neonate (ventilated) initially by intravenous injection over 30 minutes, 50 micrograms/kg then by continuous intravenous infusion, 15 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
  - Neonate (non-ventilated) by continuous intravenous infusion 2.5–7 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

• **Child 1 month–12 years** by continuous intravenous infusion 12.5–25 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

• **By intravenous injection**
  - Child 1–3 months 20 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 3–6 months 25–50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 6–12 months 75 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1–12 years 75–100 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg) every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 12–18 years 2.5–5 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

- **By continuous subcutaneous infusion**
  - See Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17

- **By subcutaneous or by intramuscular injection**
  - Child 12–18 years 5 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

**Acute pain in an emergency setting; short painful procedures**

• **Intranasally** (but see p. 203)
  - Child over 10 kg 100 micrograms/kg, max. 10 mg

**Administration** for intranasal infusion, dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; Glucose 5% is preferable

For intranasal administration, diamorphine powder should be dissolved in sufficient volume of Water for Injections to provide the requisite dose in 0.2 mL of solution; use solution immediately after preparation

**Diamorphine** (Non-proprietary)

- **Tablets**, diamorphine hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £16.42. Label: 2
- **Injection**, powder for reconstitution, diamorphine hydrochloride, net price 1-mL amp = £3.17, 30-mg amp = £3.82, 100-mg amp = £9.34, 500-mg amp = £42.07

- **Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6**

Dietycodeine Tartrate

**Cautions** see notes above; also pancreatitis; severe cor pulmonare

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Side-effects** see notes above; also paralytic ileus, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, seizures, and paraesthesia

**Licensed use** most preparations not licensed for use in children under 4 years

### Indication and dose

**Moderate to severe pain**

• **By mouth or by intramuscular injection or by subcutaneous injection**
  - Child 1–4 years 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours
  - Child 4–12 years 0.5–1 mg/kg (max. 30 mg) every 4–6 hours
  - Child 12–18 years 30 mg (max. 50 mg by intramuscular or deep subcutaneous injection) every 4–6 hours

**Dihydrocodeine** (Non-proprietary)

- **Tablets**, dihydrocodeine tartrate 30 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.58. Label: 2
  - Dental prescribing on NHS Dihydrocodeine Tablets 30 mg may be prescribed
- **Oral solution**, dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £3.50. Label: 2
  - **Injection**, dihydrocodeine tartrate 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £3.17

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**

4.7.2 Opioid analgesics 205
206 4.7.2 Opioid analgesics

DF 118 Forte® (Martindale) (c)
Tablets, dihydrocodeine tartrate 40 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £11.51. Label: 2

Dose
Severe pain
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 40–80 mg 3 times daily; max. 240 mg daily

Modified release
DHC Continus® (Napp) (c)
Tablets, m/r, dihydrocodeine tartrate 60 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £5.18; 90 mg, 56-tab pack = £8.66; 120 mg, 56-tab pack = £10.89. Label: 2, 25

Dose
Chronic severe pain
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 60–120 mg every 12 hours

With paracetamol Section 4.7.1

FENTANYL

Cautions see notes above; also diabetes mellitus, impaired consciousness, cerebral tumour, myasthenia gravis, see also Transdermal Fentanyl, below

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding monitor infant for opioid-induced side-effects

Side-effects see notes above; also abdominal pain, dyspepsia, diarrhoea, gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, stomatitis, anorexia, hypertension, vasodilatation, dyspnoea, asthma, myoclonus, anxiety, tremor, appetite changes, rhinitis, pharyngitis, anaemia, speech disorder, malaise, seizure, pyrexia, thirst, blood disorders (including thrombocytopenia), chills; rarely hiccups, very rarely arrhythmia, apnoea, haemoptysis, ataxia, delusions, bladder pain

Indication and dose
Severe chronic pain
• By transmucosal route
Child 2–16 years currently treated with strong opioid analgesic, initial dose based on previous 24-hour opioid requirement (consult product literature)

Child 16–18 years child not currently treated with strong opioid analgesic (but see Transdermal Fentanyl, below), ‘one 12’ or ‘25 micrograms/hour’ patch replaced after 72 hours; child currently treated with strong opioid analgesic, initial dose based on previous 24-hour opioid requirement (consult product literature)

Dose adjustment When starting, evaluation of the analgesic effect should not be made before the system has been worn for 24 hours (to allow for the gradual increase in plasma-fentanyl concentration)—previous analgesic therapy should be phased out gradually from time of first patch application; if necessary dose should be adjusted at 48–72-hour intervals in steps of 12–25 micrograms/hour. More than one patch may be used at a time (but applied at same time to avoid confusion)—consider additional or alternative analgesic therapy if dose required exceeds 300 micrograms/hour (important: it may take up to 25 hours for the plasma-fentanyl concentration to decrease by 50%—replacement opioid therapy should be initiated at a low dose and increased gradually).

Long duration of action In view of the long duration of action, children who have had severe side-effects should be monitored for up to 24 hours after patch removal

Breakthrough pain and premedication analgesia, see under preparation below

Peri-operative analgesia section 15.1.4.3

Conversion (from oral morphine to transdermal fentanyl), see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 18

Administration For patches, apply to dry, non-irritated, non-hairy skin on torso or upper arm, removing after 72 hours and siting replacement patch on a different area (avoid using the same area for several days).

Lozenges Actiq® (Flynn) (c)
Lozenge, (with oromucosal applicator), fentanyl (as citrate) 200 micrograms, net price £3 = £17.52, 30 = £17.52, 600 micrograms, 3 = £17.52, 30 = £17.52; 800 micrograms, 3 = £17.52, 30 = £17.52; 1.2 mg, 3 = £17.52, 30 = £17.52. Label: 2

Dose
Breakthrough pain
• By transmucosal application (lozenge with oromucosal applicator)
Child 16–18 years initially 200 micrograms (over 15 minutes) repeated if necessary 15 minutes after first dose (no more than 2 dose units for each pain episode); if adequate pain relief not achieved with 1 dose unit for consecutive breakthrough pain episodes, increase the strength of the dose unit until adequate pain relief achieved with 4 lozenges or less daily

Note If more than 4 episodes of breakthrough pain each day, adjust dose of background analgesic

Patches

Transdermal fentanyl

Fever or external heat Monitor patients using patches for increased side-effects if fever present (increased absorption possible); avoid exposing application site to external heat, for example a hot bath or sauna (may also increase absorption)

Respiratory depression Risk of fatal respiratory depression, particularly in patients not previously treated with a strong opioid analgesic; manufacturer recommends use only in opioid tolerant patients

Counselling Patients and carers should be informed about safe use, including correct administration and disposal, strict adherence to dosage instructions, and the symptoms and signs of opioid overdosage. Patches should be removed immediately in case of breathing difficulties, marked drowsiness, confusion, dizziness, or impaired speech, and patients and carers should seek prompt medical attention.

Prescriptions Prescriptions for fentanyl patches can be written to show the strength in terms of the release rate and it is acceptable to write ‘Fentanyl 25 patches’ to prescribe patches that release fentanyl 25 micrograms per hour. The dosage should be expressed in terms of the interval between applying a patch and replacing it with a new one, e.g. ‘one patch to be applied every 72 hours’. The total quantity of patches should be written in words and figures.

Fentanyl (Non-pro proprietary) (c)
Patches, self-adhesive, fentanyl, ‘12’ patch (releasing approx. 12 micrograms/hour for 72 hours), net price 5
**Durogesic DTrans® (Janssen)**

Patches, self-adhesive, transparent, fentanyl, ‘12’ patch (releasing approx. 12 micrograms/hour for 72 hours), net price $5 = £17.76; ‘25’ patch (releasing approx. 25 micrograms/hour for 72 hours), 5 = £25.38; ‘50’ patch (releasing approx. 50 micrograms/hour for 72 hours), 5 = £47.40; ‘75’ patch (releasing approx. 75 micrograms/hour for 72 hours), 5 = £66.08; ‘100’ patch (releasing approx. 100 micrograms/hour for 72 hours), 5 = £81.45. Label: 2, counselling, administration

**HYDROMORPHONE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also pancreatitis; toxic psychosis

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also acute abdomen

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** withdrawal symptoms in infant

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** avoid—no information available

**Indication and dose** Severe pain in cancer

- **By mouth**
  
  Child 12–18 years 1.3 mg every 4 hours, increased if necessary according to severity of pain

**Administration** Swallow whole capsule or sprinkle contents on soft food

**Palladone® (Napp)**

Capsules, hydromorphone hydrochloride 1.3 mg (orange/clear), net price 56-cap pack = £8.82; 2.6 mg (red/clear), 56-cap pack = £17.64. Label: 2, counselling, see below

**Methadone Hydrochloride**

Cautions see notes above; also myasthenia gravis; history of cardiac conduction abnormalities, family history of sudden death (ECG monitoring recommended; see also QT Interval Prolongation, below)

**QT interval prolongation** Children with the following risk factors for QT interval prolongation should be carefully monitored while taking methadone: heart or liver disease, electrolyte abnormalities, or concomitant treatment with drugs that can prolong QT interval; children requiring more than 100 mg daily should also be monitored

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also phaeochromocytoma

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** withdrawal symptoms in infant

**Side-effects** see notes above; also QT interval prolongation; torsade de pointes, hypothermia, restlessness, raised intracranial pressure, dysmennorrhea, dry eyes, and hyperprolactinaemia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose** Neonatal opioid withdrawal
dose may vary, consult local guidelines

- **By mouth**

  Neonate initially 100 micrograms/kg increased by 50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours until symptoms are controlled; for maintenance, total daily dose that controls symptoms given in 2 divided doses; to withdraw, reduce dose over 7–10 days

**Methadone (Non-proprietary)**

Oral solution 1 mg/mL, methadone hydrochloride 1 mg/mL, net price 30 mL = £62.90, 50 mL = £1.04, 100 mL = £1.27, 500 mL = £11.34. Label: 2

Brands include Eptadone®, Methanar®, (sugar-free), Physeptone (also as sugar-free)

**Safe Practice**

This preparation is 2½ times the strength of Methadone Linctus; many preparations of this strength are licensed for opioid dependence only but some are also licensed for analgesia in severe pain

**MORPHINE SALTS**

**Cautions** see notes above; also pancreatitis, myasthenia gravis, cardiac arrhythmias, severe cor pulmonale

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also delayed gastric emptying, acute abdomen; heart failure secondary to chronic lung disease; phaeochromocytoma

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** therapeutic doses unlikely to affect infant; withdrawal symptoms in infants of dependent mothers; breast-feeding not best method of treating dependence in offspring

**Side-effects** see notes above; also paralytic ileus, abdominal pain, anorexia, dyspepsia, exacerbation of pancreatitis, taste disturbance, hypertension, hypothermia, syncope, bronchospasm, inhibition of cough...
reflex, restlessness, seizures, paraesthesia, asthenia, malaise, disorientation, excitement, agitation, delirium, raised intracranial pressure, amenorrhea, myoclonus, muscle fasciculation, rhabdomyolysis, nystagmus

**Licensed use** Oramorph® solution not licensed for use in children under 1 year; Oramorph® unit dose vials not licensed for use in children under 6 years; Sevedol® tablets not licensed for use in children under 3 years; MST Continus® preparations licensed to treat children with cancer pain (age-range not specified by manufacturer); MXL® capsules not licensed for use in children under 1 year; preparations not licensed for use in children.

### Indication and dose

#### Pain
- **By subcutaneous injection**
  - Neonate: initially 100 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1–6 months: initially 100–200 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 6 months–2 years: initially 100–200 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 2–12 years: initially 200 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 12–18 years: initially 2.5–10 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **By intravenous injection over at least 5 minutes**
  - Neonate: initially 50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1–6 months: initially 100 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 6 months–12 years: initially 100 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
  - Child 12–18 years: initially 5 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **By intravenous administration**
  - Neonate: initially by intravenous injection (over at least 5 minutes) 50 micrograms/kg then by continuous intravenous infusion 5–20 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response
  - Child 1–6 months: initially by intravenous injection (over at least 5 minutes) 100 micrograms/kg then by continuous intravenous infusion 10–30 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response
  - Child 6 months–12 years: initially by intravenous injection (over at least 5 minutes) 100 micrograms/kg then by continuous intravenous infusion 20–30 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response
  - Child 12–18 years: initially by intravenous injection (over at least 5 minutes) 5 mg then by continuous intravenous infusion 20–30 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response
- **By mouth or by rectum**
  - Child 1–3 months: initially 50–100 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

#### Indication and dose

- **Child 3–6 months**: 100–150 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 6–12 months**: 200 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 1–2 years**: initially 200–300 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 2–12 years**: initially 200–300 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 12–18 years**: initially 5–10 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **By continuous subcutaneous infusion**
  - Child 1–3 months: 10 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
  - Child 3 months–18 years: 20 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

#### Neonatal opioid withdrawal under specialist supervision

#### Oral solutions

**Note** For advice on transfer from oral solutions of morphine to modified-release preparations of morphine, see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17

### Morphine Oral Solutions

- **Oramorph®** (Boehringer Ingelheim)
  - Oramorph® oral solution (‡), morphine sulphate 10 mg/5 mL, net price 100-mL pack = £1.78; 300-mL pack = £4.95; 500-mL pack = £7.47. Label: 2
  - Oramorph® concentrated oral solution (‡), sugar-free, morphine sulphate 100 mg/5 mL, net price 30-mL pack = £4.98; 120-mL pack = £18.59 (both with calibrated dropper). Label: 2

### Tablets

Sevedol® (Napp)

Tablets, f/c, scored, morphine sulphate 10 mg (blue), net price 56-tab pack = £5.28; 20 mg (pink), 56-tab pack = £10.55; 50 mg (pale green), 56-tab pack = £28.02. Label: 2
4.7.2 Opioid analgesics

**OXYCODONE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also toxic psychosis; pancreatitis

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also acute abdomen; delayed gastric emptying; chronic constipation; cor pulmonale; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in moderate to severe impairment; see also notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73m²; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—avoid

**Side-effects** see notes above; also diarrhoea, abdominal pain, anorexia, dyspepsia; bronchospasm, dysphagia, impaired cough reflex; asthenia, anxiety; chills; muscle fasciculation; less commonly paralytic ileus, cholestasis, gastritis, flatulence, dysphagia, taste disturbance, belching, hiccups, vasodilatation, supraventricular tachycardia, syncope, amnesia, hypoesthesia, restlessness, seizures, pyrexia, amenorrhoea, hypotonia, paraesthesia, disorientation, malaise, agitation, speech disorder, tremor, thirst, and dry skin

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Moderate to severe pain in palliative care** (see also Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**
    - Initially 200 microlitres/kg (up to 5 mg) every 4–6 hours, dose increased if necessary according to severity of pain
  - **Child 12–18 years**
    - Initially 5 mg every 4–6 hours, dose increased if necessary according to severity of pain

**Injection with antiemetic**

For prescribing information on cyclizine, see section 4.6

**Caution** Not recommended in palliative care, see Nausea and Vomiting, p. 19

**Cyclimorph** (Ampipharm) (92)

**Cyclimorph-15 Injection,** morphine tartrate 15 mg, cyclizine tartrate 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.82

**Dose**

- **Moderate to severe pain** (short-term use only)
  - **By subcutaneous, intramuscular, or intravenous injection**
    - **Child 12–18 years**
      - 1 mL, repeated not more often than every 4 hours, max. 3 doses in any 24-hour period

**OXYNORM** (Napp) (86)

**Capsules,** oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg (orange/beige), net price 56-cap pack = £11.36; 10 mg (white/beige), net price 28-cap pack = £36.43; 200 mg (red-brown), 28-cap pack = £14.95; 120 mg (green), 28-cap pack = £29.15; 150 mg (blue), 28-cap pack = £14.95; 90 mg (pink), 28-cap pack = £22.04; 60 mg (brown), 28-cap pack = £10.91

**Contraindications** see notes above; also acute abdomen; delayed gastric emptying; chronic constipation; cor pulmonale; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Cautions** see notes above; also toxic psychosis; pancreatitis

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in moderate to severe impairment; see also notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73m²; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—avoid

**Side-effects** see notes above; also diarrhoea, abdominal pain, anorexia, dyspepsia; bronchospasm, dysphagia, impaired cough reflex; asthenia, anxiety; chills; muscle fasciculation; less commonly paralytic ileus, cholestasis, gastritis, flatulence, dysphagia, taste disturbance, belching, hiccups, vasodilatation, supraventricular tachycardia, syncope, amnesia, hypoesthesia, restlessness, seizures, pyrexia, amenorrhoea, hypotonia, paraesthesia, disorientation, malaise, agitation, speech disorder, tremor, thirst, and dry skin

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Moderate to severe pain in palliative care** (see also Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 200 micrograms/kg (up to 5 mg) every 4–6 hours, dose increased if necessary according to severity of pain
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 5 mg every 4–6 hours, dose increased if necessary according to severity of pain

**Injection with antiemetic**

For prescribing information on cyclizine, see section 4.6

**Caution** Not recommended in palliative care, see Nausea and Vomiting, p. 19

**Cyclimorph** (Ampipharm) (92)

**Cyclimorph-15 Injection,** morphine tartrate 15 mg, cyclizine tartrate 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.82

**Dose**

- **Moderate to severe pain** (short-term use only)
  - **By subcutaneous, intramuscular, or intravenous injection**
    - **Child 12–18 years**
      - 1 mL, repeated not more often than every 4 hours, max. 3 doses in any 24-hour period

**OXYCODONE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above; also toxic psychosis; pancreatitis

**Contra-indications** see notes above; also acute abdomen; delayed gastric emptying; chronic constipation; cor pulmonale; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in moderate to severe impairment; see also notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73m²; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—avoid

**Side-effects** see notes above; also diarrhoea, abdominal pain, anorexia, dyspepsia; bronchospasm, dysphagia, impaired cough reflex; asthenia, anxiety; chills; muscle fasciculation; less commonly paralytic ileus, cholestasis, gastritis, flatulence, dysphagia, taste disturbance, belching, hiccups, vasodilatation, supraventricular tachycardia, syncope, amnesia, hypoesthesia, restlessness, seizures, pyrexia, amenorrhoea, hypotonia, paraesthesia, disorientation, malaise, agitation, speech disorder, tremor, thirst, and dry skin

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Moderate to severe pain in palliative care** (see also Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 17)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 200 micrograms/kg (up to 5 mg) every 4–6 hours, dose increased if necessary according to severity of pain
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 5 mg every 4–6 hours, dose increased if necessary according to severity of pain

**Injection with antiemetic**

For prescribing information on cyclizine, see section 4.6

**Caution** Not recommended in palliative care, see Nausea and Vomiting, p. 19

**Cyclimorph** (Ampipharm) (92)

**Cyclimorph-15 Injection,** morphine tartrate 15 mg, cyclizine tartrate 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.82

**Dose**

- **Moderate to severe pain** (short-term use only)
  - **By subcutaneous, intramuscular, or intravenous injection**
    - **Child 12–18 years**
      - 1 mL, repeated not more often than every 4 hours, max. 3 doses in any 24-hour period
210 4.7.2 Opioid analgesics

Central nervous system

OxyContin

Indication and dose

Side-effects
see notes above; also hypothermia
therapeutic doses unlikely to affect
Breast-feeding

Pregnancy
see notes above

Hepatic impairment
see notes above

Contra-indications
see notes above; supraventricular tachycardia

Cautions
see notes above; impaired consciousness;
excessive bronchial secretions; not suitable as sub-
substrate in opioid-dependent patients
General anaesthesia
Not recommended for analgesia during potentially light planes of general anaesthesia (possibly
increased intra-operative recall reported)
Contra-indications
see notes above; phaeochromocytoma

Hepatic impairment
see notes above

Renal impairment
see notes above

Pregnancy
embryotoxic in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid; see also notes above

Breast-feeding
amount probably too small to be harmful, but manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects
see notes above; also diarrhea, retching, fatigue, paraesthesia; less commonly gastritis, and
flatulence; rarely anorexia, syncope, hypertension, bronchospasm, dyspnoea, wheezing, seizures, and
muscle weakness; blood disorders also reported
Licensed use
not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Moderate to severe pain

By mouth
Child 12–18 years 50–100 mg not more often than every 4 hours; total of more than 40 mg daily not usually required

Papaveretum (Non-proprietary)
Injection, papaveretum 15.4 mg/mL (providing the equivalent of 10 mg of anhydrous morphine/mL), net price 1-mL amp = £1.64

PETHIDINE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions
see notes above; not suitable for severe
continuing pain; accumulation of metabolites may result in neurotoxicity; myasthenia gravis; cardiac
arrhythmias, severe cor pulmonale

Contra-indications
see notes above; phaeochromocytoma

Hepatic impairment
see notes above

Renal impairment
see notes above

Pregnancy
see notes above

Breast-feeding
present in milk but not known to be harmful

Side-effects
see notes above; also restlessness, tremor, and hypothermia; convulsions reported in

Indication and dose

Obstetric analgesia

By subcutaneous or by intramuscular injection
Child 12–18 years 1 mg/kg (max. 100 mg), repeated 1–3 hours later if necessary; max. 400 mg in 24 hours

Pethidine (Non-proprietary)
Injection, pethidine hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 48p, 2-mL amp = 51p; 10 mg/mL, 5-mL amp = £3.17, 10-mL amp = £2.18

TRAMADOL HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions
see notes above; impaired consciousness;
excessive bronchial secretions; not suitable as substi-
tute in opioid-dependent patients

General anaesthesia
Not recommended for analgesia during potentially light planes of general anaesthesia (possibly
increased intra-operative recall reported)

Contra-indications
see notes above; phaeochromocytoma

Hepatic impairment
see notes above

Renal impairment
see notes above

Pregnancy
embryotoxic in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid; see also notes above

Breast-feeding
amount probably too small to be harmful, but manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects
see notes above; also diarrhea, retching, fatigue, paraesthesia; less commonly gastritis, and
flatulence; rarely anorexia, syncope, hypertension, bronchospasm, dyspnoea, wheezing, seizures, and
muscle weakness; blood disorders also reported
Licensed use
not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Moderate to severe pain

By mouth
Child 12–18 years 50–100 mg not more often than every 4 hours; total of more than 40 mg daily not usually required
Tramadol Hydrochloride

For intravenous injection, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Postoperative pain

- By intravenous injection (over 2–3 minutes)
- By intravenous infusion or by intramuscular injection

Child 12–18 years 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours

By mouth

- For moderate to severe pain

Children 12–18 years initially 100 mg twice daily increased if necessary; usual max. 200 mg twice daily

By intravenous injection (over 2–3 minutes)

- Child 12–18 years initially then 50 mg every 10–20 minutes if necessary up to total max. 250 mg (including initial dose) in first hour; then 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours; max. 600 mg daily

Medicinal forms

Brands include Tramadol SR (M/S), m/r, tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £21.59; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £28.78. Label: 2, 13

Zamadol SR (Media) (M/S)

Capsules, m/r, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg (including initial dose) in first hour; then 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours; max. 600 mg daily

Capsules, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £2.29, 100-cap pack = £3.33. Label: 2, 13

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £1.10, 50 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £2.29, 100-cap pack = £3.33. Label: 2, 13

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £9.60, 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £12.21. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £13.68, 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £18.24. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £18.21, 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £24.28. Label: 2, 25

Zamadol SR (Actavis) (M/S)

Capsules, m/r, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg (dark green), net price 60-cap pack = £11.46; 100 mg, 60-cap pack = £14.43; 150 mg (dark green), 60-cap pack = £21.59; 200 mg (yellow), 60-cap pack = £28.78. Label: 2, 13

Zamadol Melt (Chiesi) (M/S)

Oral dispersible tablets should be sucked and then swallowed. May also be dispersed in water

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £1.10, 50 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £2.29, 100-cap pack = £3.33. Label: 2, 13

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £9.60, 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £12.21. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £13.68, 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £18.24. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £18.21, 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £24.28. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £21.59; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £28.78. Label: 2, 13

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £25.82; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £34.43. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £28.85; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £38.52. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £32.86; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £42.63. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £36.88; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £46.64. Label: 2, 25

Injection, tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £40.89; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £50.65. Label: 2, 25
4.7.3 Neuropathic pain

Neuropathic pain, which occurs as a result of damage to neural tissue, includes compression neuropathies, peripheral neuropathies (e.g. due to diabetes, HIV infection, chemotherapy), trauma, idiopathic neuropathy, central pain (e.g. pain following spinal cord injury and central pain syndrome), postherpetic neuralgia, and phantom limb pain. The pain may occur in an area of sensory deficit and may be described as burning, shooting or scalding; it may be accompanied by pain that is evoked by a non-noxious stimulus (allodynia).

Children with chronic neuropathic pain require multidisciplinary management, which may include physiotherapy and psychological support. Neuropathic pain is generally managed with a tricyclic antidepressant such as amitriptyline (p. 185) or antiepileptic drugs such as carbamazepine (p. 218). Children with localised pain may benefit from topical local anaesthetic preparations section 15.2, particularly while awaiting specialist review. Neuropathic pain may respond only partially to opioid analgesics. A corticosteroid may help to relieve pressure in compression neuropathy and thereby reduce pain.

For the management of neuropathic pain in palliative care, see p. 18.

Chronic facial pain Chronic oral and facial pain including persistent idiopathic facial pain (also termed 'atypical facial pain') and temporomandibular dysfunction (previously termed temporomandibular joint pain dysfunction syndrome) may call for prolonged use of analgesics or for other drugs. Tricyclic antidepressants (section 4.3.1) may be useful for facial pain [unlicensed indication], but are not on the Dental Practitioners’ List. Disorders of this type require specialist referral and psychological support to accompany drug treatment. Children on long-term therapy need to be monitored both for progress and for side-effects.

4.7.4 Antimigraine drugs

4.7.4.1 Treatment of acute migraine

Treatment of a migraine attack should be guided by response to previous treatment and the severity of the attacks. A simple analgesic such as paracetamol (preferably in a soluble or dispersible form) or an NSAID, usually ibuprofen, is often effective; concomitant antiemetic treatment may be required. If treatment with an analgesic is inadequate, an attack may be treated with a specific antimigraine compound such as the 5HT1-receptor agonist sumatriptan. Ergot alkaloids are associated with many side-effects and should be avoided.

Excessive use of acute treatments for migraine (opioid and non-opioid analgesics, 5HT1-receptor agonists, and ergotamine) is associated with medication-overuse headache (analgesic-induced headache); therefore, increasing consumption of these medicines needs careful management.

5HT1-receptor agonists

5HT1-receptor agonists are used in the treatment of acute migraine attacks; treatment of children should be initiated by a specialist. The 5HT1-receptor agonists ('triptans') act on the 5HT (serotonin) 1B/1D receptors and they are therefore sometimes referred to as 5HT1B/1D-receptor agonists. A 5HT1-receptor agonist may be used during the established headache phase of an attack and is the preferred treatment in those who fail to respond to conventional analgesics. 5HT1-receptor agonists are not indicated for the treatment of hemiplegic, basilar, or ophthalmoplegic migraine.

If a child does not respond to one 5HT1-receptor agonist, an alternative 5HT1-receptor agonist should be tried. For children who have prolonged attacks that frequently recur despite treatment with a 5HT1-receptor agonist, combination therapy with an NSAID such as...
naproxen can be considered. Sumatriptan and zolmitriptan are used for migraine in children. They may also be of value in cluster headache (see also section 4.7.4.3).

**Cautions** See interactions: Appendix 1 (5HT, agonists).

### Sumatriptan

**Cautions** See under 5HT₁-receptor agonists above; pre-existing cardiac disease; history of seizures; sensitivity to sulfonamides; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (5HT, agonists)

**Contra-indications** Vasospasm; previous cerebrovascular accident or transient ischaemic attack; peripheral vascular disease; moderate and severe hypertension

**Hepatic impairment** Reduce dose of oral therapy; avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** Use with caution

**Pregnancy** Limited experience—avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** Present in milk but amount probably too small to be harmful; withhold breast-feeding for 12 hours

**Side-effects** Nausea, vomiting; sensations of tingling, heat, heaviness, pressure, or tightness of any part of the body (including throat and chest—discontinue if intense, may be due to coronary vasocostriction or to anaphylaxis), transient increase in blood pressure, flushing; dyspnoea; drowsiness, dizziness, weakness; myalgia; also reported diarrhoea, ischaemic colitis, hypotension, bradycardia or tachycardia, palpitation, arrhythmias, myocardial infarction, Raynaud’s syndrome, anxiety, seizures, tremor, dystonia, nystagmus, arthralgia, visual disturbances, sweating; epistaxis with nasal spray

**Licensed use** Tablets and injection not licensed for use in children; not licensed for treating cluster headache in children

**Indication and dose**

**Treatment of acute migraine**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 6–10 years 25 mg as a single dose, repeated once after at least 2 hours if migraine recurs
  - Child 10–12 years 50 mg as a single dose, repeated once after at least 2 hours if migraine recurs
  - Child 12–18 years 50–100 mg as a single dose, repeated once after at least 2 hours if migraine recurs

- **By subcutaneous injection (using auto-injector)**
  - Child 10–18 years 6 mg as a single dose, repeated once after at least 1 hour if migraine recurs; max. 12 mg in 24 hours

- **Intranasally**
  - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg as a single dose, repeated once after at least 2 hours if migraine recurs; max. 40 mg in 24 hours

### Zolmitriptan

**Cautions** See under 5HT₁-receptor agonists above; should not be taken within 12 hours of any other 5HT₁-receptor agonist; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (5HT₁ agonists)

**Contra-indications** Vasospasm; Wolf-Parkinson-White syndrome or arrhythmias associated with accessory cardiac conduction pathways; previous cerebrovascular accident or transient ischaemic attack; ischaemic heart disease; uncontrolled hypertension

**Hepatic impairment** Max. 5 mg in 24 hours in moderate or severe impairment

**Pregnancy** Limited experience—avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** Use with caution—present in milk in animal studies

**Side-effects** Abdominal pain, dry mouth, nausea, vomiting; palpitation, sensations of tingling, heat, heaviness, pressure, or tightness of any part of the body (including throat and chest—discontinue if intense, may be due to coronary vasocostriction or to anaphylaxis); dizziness, drowsiness, headache, paraesthesia, asthenia; myalgia, muscle weakness; less commonly tachycardia, transient increase in blood pressure, polyuria; rarely urticaria; very rarely gastrointestinal and splenic infarction, ischaemic colitis.
angina pectoris, myocardial infarction; with nasal spray, taste disturbance, and epistaxis

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Treatment of acute migraine

**By mouth**

Children 12–18 years 2.5 mg, repeated after not less than 2 hours if migraine recurs (if response unsatisfactory after 3 attacks consider increasing dose to 5 mg or switching to alternative treatment); max. 10 mg in 24 hours

**Intranasally**

Children 12–18 years 5 mg (1 spray) into 1 nostril, repeated after not less than 2 hours if migraine recurs; max. 10 mg in 24 hours

### Treatment of acute cluster headache

**Intranasally**

Children 12–18 years 5 mg (1 spray) into 1 nostril, repeated after not less than 2 hours if headache recurs; max. 10 mg in 24 hours

### Zomig® (AstraZeneca)

- Tablets, f/c, yellow, zolmitriptan 2.5 mg, net price 6-tab pack = £18.00, 12-tab pack = £36.00
- Ondispersible tablets (Zomig Rapimelt®), zolmitriptan 2.5 mg, net price 6-tab pack = £17.90; 5 mg, 6-tab pack = £22.80. Counselling, administration
- **Counselling** Zomig Rapimelt® should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed. Excipients include aspartame equivalent to phenylalanine 2.81 mg/tablet (section 9.4.1)
- Nasal spray, zolmitriptan 5 mg/0.1-mL unit-dose spray device, net price 6 unit-dose sprays = £36.50

### Antiemetics

Antiemetics (section 4.6), including metoclopramide, domperidone, phenothiazines, and antihistamines, relieve the nausea associated with migraine attacks. Antiemetics may be given by intramuscular injection or rectally if vomiting is a problem. Metoclopramide and domperidone have the added advantage of promoting gastric emptying and normal peristalsis; a single dose should be given at the onset of symptoms (important: for warnings relating to extrapyramidal effects of metoclopramide see p. 192 and p. 196).

#### 4.7.4.2 Prophylaxis of migraine

Where migraine attacks are frequent, possible provoking factors such as stress should be sought; combined oral contraceptives may also provoke migraine. Preventive treatment should be considered if migraine attacks interfere with school and social life, particularly for children who:

- suffer at least two attacks a month;
- suffer an increasing frequency of headaches;
- suffer significant disability despite suitable treatment for migraine attacks;
- cannot take suitable treatment for migraine attacks.

In children it is often possible to stop prophylaxis after a period of treatment.

Propranolol (section 2.4) may be effective in preventing migraine in children but it is contra-indicated in those with asthma. Side-effects such as depression and postural hypotension can further limit its use.

Pizotifen, an antihistamine and serotonin antagonist, taken at night or two daily, may also be used but its efficacy in children has not been clearly established. Common side-effects include drowsiness and weight gain.

Topiramate (section 4.8.1) is licensed for migraine prophylaxis.

#### PIZOTIFEN

**Cautions** urinary retention; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; history of epilepsy; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (pizotifen)

Skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

Renal impairment use with caution

Pregnancy avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects** dry mouth, nausea, dizziness, drowsiness, increased appetite, weight gain; less commonly: constipation; rarely: anxiety, aggression, insomnia, paraesthesia, hallucination, depression, arthralgia, myalgia; very rarely seizures

**Licensed use** 1.5-mg tablets not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Prophylaxis of migraine**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–10 years initially 500 micrograms at night increased according to response up to 500 micrograms 3 times daily; max. single dose at night 1 mg; max. 1.5 mg in 24 hours
  - Child 10–12 years initially 1 mg at night increased according to response up to 500 micrograms 3 times daily; max. single dose at night 1 mg; max. 1.5 mg in 24 hours
  - Child 12–18 years initially 1.5 mg at night increased according to response to 1.5 mg 3 times daily; max. single dose 3 mg; max. 4.5 mg in 24 hours

**Pizotifen (Non-proprietary)**

- Tablets, pizotifen (as hydrogen malate), 500 micrograms, net price 28-tab pack = £1.28; 1.5 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.17. Label: 2

**Sanomigran®** (Novartis)

- Tablets, both ivory-yellow, s/c, pizotifen (as hydrogen malate), 500 micrograms, net price 60-tab pack = £2.06; 1.5 mg, 28-tab pack = £3.42. Label: 2

**Elixir**, pizotifen (as hydrogen malate) 250 micrograms/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £3.61. Label: 2

#### 4.7.4.3 Cluster headache and the trigeminal autonomic cephalalgies

Cluster headache rarely responds to standard analgesics. Sumatriptan, given by subcutaneous injection is the drug of choice for the treatment of cluster head-
ache. If an injection is unsuitable, sumatriptan nasal spray or zolmitriptan nasal spray may be used. Treatment should be initiated by a specialist. Alternatively, 100% oxygen at a rate of 10–15 litres/minute for 10–20 minutes is useful in aborting an attack.

The other trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias, paroxysmal hemicrania (sensitive to indometacin), and short-lasting unilateral neuralgiform headache attacks with conjunctival injection and tearing, are seen rarely and are best managed by a specialist.

**4.8 Antiepileptics**

4.8.1 Control of the epilepsies

The decision about when to start treatment with an antiepileptic drug and the choice of medication depends on frequency and type of seizures, neurological findings, the identification of an epilepsy syndrome, and the wishes of the child and carers. For the majority of children, epilepsy is controlled with a single antiepileptic drug.

The object of treatment is to prevent the occurrence of seizures by maintaining an effective dose of one or more antiepileptic drugs. Careful adjustment of doses is necessary, starting with low doses and increasing gradually until seizures are controlled or there are significant adverse effects.

When choosing an antiepileptic drug to use, the seizure type, epilepsy syndrome, concomitant medication, comorbidity, age, and sex should be taken into account. For women of child-bearing age, see Pregnancy, p. 216.

The frequency of administration is often determined by the plasma-drug half-life, and should be kept as low as possible to encourage better adherence. Most antiepileptics, when used in usual dosage, can be given twice daily. Lamotrigine, phenobarbital and phenytoin, which have long half-lives, can be given as a daily dose at bedtime. However, with large doses, some antiepileptics may need to be given 3 times daily to avoid adverse effects associated with high peak plasma-drug concentrations. Young children metabolise some antiepileptics more rapidly than adults and therefore may require more frequent doses and a higher amount per kilogram body-weight.

**Management** When monotherapy with a first-line antiepileptic drug has failed, monotherapy with a second drug should be tried; the diagnosis should be checked before starting an alternative drug if the first drug showed lack of efficacy. The change from one antiepileptic drug to another should be cautious, slowly withdrawing the first drug only when the new regimen has been established. Combination therapy with two or more antiepileptic drugs may be necessary, but the concurrent use of antiepileptic drugs increases the risk of adverse effects and drug interactions (see below). If combination therapy does not bring about worthwhile benefits, revert to the regimen (monotherapy or combination therapy) that provided the best balance between tolerability and efficacy.

**Interactions** Interactions between antiepileptics are complex and may increase toxicity without a corresponding increase in antiepileptic effect. Interactions are usually caused by hepatic enzyme induction or hepatic enzyme inhibition; displacement from protein binding sites is not usually a problem. These interactions are highly variable and unpredictable.

For interactions of antiepileptic drugs, see Appendix 1; for advice on hormonal contraception and enzyme-inducing drugs, see section 7.3.1 and section 7.3.2.

Significant interactions that occur between antiepileptics and that may affect dosing requirements are as follows:

**Note** Check under each drug for possible interactions when two or more antiepileptic drugs are used

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antiepileptic Drug</th>
<th>Interactions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine</td>
<td>often lowers plasma concentration of clobazam, clonazepam, lamotrigine, phenytoin (but may also raise plasma-phenytoin concentration), tiagabine, topiramate, valproate, and an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sometimes lowers plasma concentration of ethosuximide, primidone (but tendency for corresponding increase in plasma-phenobarbital concentration), and rufinamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sometimes raises plasma concentration of phenobarbital and primidone-derived phenobarbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethosuximide</td>
<td>sometimes raises plasma concentration of phenytoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamotrigine</td>
<td>sometimes raises plasma concentration of an active metabolite of carbamazepine (but evidence is conflicting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxcarbazepine</td>
<td>sometimes lowers plasma concentration of carbamazepine (but may raise plasma concentration of an active metabolite of carbamazepine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sometimes raises plasma concentration of phenytoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>often raises plasma concentration of phenobarbital and primidone-derived phenobarbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenobarbital or Primidone</td>
<td>often lowers plasma concentration of clonazepam, lamotrigine, phenytoin (but may also raise plasma-phenytoin concentration), tiagabine, valproate, and an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin</td>
<td>often lowers plasma concentration of clonazepam, carbamazepine, lamotrigine, tiagabine, topiramate, valproate, and an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sometimes lowers plasma concentration of ethosuximide, rufinamide, and topiramate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin</td>
<td>often lowers plasma concentration of clonazepam, carbamazepine, lamotrigine, tiagabine, topiramate, valproate, and an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sometimes raises plasma concentration of phenobarbital and primidone-derived phenobarbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sometimes lowers plasma concentration of ethosuximide, primidone (by increasing conversion to phenobarbital), and rufinamide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Patients who have had a first or single epileptic seizure must not drive for 6 months (5 years in the case of large goods or passenger carrying vehicles) after the event; driving may then be resumed, provided the patient has been assessed by a specialist as fit to drive because no abnormality was detected on investigation.

**Pregnancy**

Young women of child-bearing potential should discuss with a specialist, the impact of both epilepsy and its treatment, on the outcome of pregnancy.

There is an increased risk of teratogenicity associated with the use of antiepileptic drugs (especially if used during the first trimester and if the patient takes two or more antiepileptic drugs). Valproate is associated with the highest risk of major and minor congenital malformations, and with developmental delay. Valproate should not be prescribed unless there is no safer alternative and only after a careful discussion of the risks; doses greater than 1 g daily are associated with an increased risk of teratogenicity. There is also an increased risk of teratogenicity with phenytoin, primidone, phenobarbital, lamotrigine, and carbamazepine. There is not enough evidence to establish the risk of teratogenicity with other antiepileptic drugs.

Prescribers should also consider carefully the choice of antiepileptic therapy in pre-pubescent girls who may later become pregnant.

Young women of child-bearing potential who take antiepileptic drugs should be given contraceptive advice. Some antiepileptic drugs can reduce the efficacy of hormonal contraceptives, and the efficacy of some antiepileptics may be affected by hormonal contraceptives (see section 7.3.1 and interactions of antiepileptics, Appendix 1).

Young women who want to become pregnant should be referred to a specialist for advice in advance of conception. For some women, the severity of seizure or the seizure type may not pose a serious threat, and drug withdrawal may be considered; therapy may be resumed after the first trimester. If treatment with antiepileptic drugs must continue throughout pregnancy, then monotherapy is preferable at the lowest effective dose.

Once an unplanned pregnancy is discovered it is usually too late for changes to be made to the treatment regimen; the risk of harm to the mother and fetus from convulsive seizures outweighs the risk of continued therapy. The likelihood of a young woman who is taking antiepileptic drugs having a baby with no malformations is at least 90%, and it is important that women do not stop taking essential treatment because of concern over harm to the fetus.

To reduce the risk of neural tube defects, folate supplementation (section 9.1.2) is advised before conception and throughout the first trimester.

The concentration of antiepileptic drugs in the plasma can change during pregnancy. Doses of phenytoin p. 224, carbamazepine, and lamotrigine should be adjusted on the basis of plasma-drug concentration monitoring; the dose of other antiepileptic drugs should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis. Plasma-drug concentration monitoring during pregnancy is also useful to check compliance. Additionally, in patients taking topiramate or levetiracetam, it is recommended that fetal growth is monitored.
Young women who have seizures in the second half of pregnancy should be assessed for eclampsia before any change is made to antiepileptic treatment. Status epilepticus should be treated according to the standard protocol, see section 4.8.2.

Routine injection of vitamin K (section 9.6.6) at birth minimises the risk of neonatal haemorrhage associated with antiepileptics.

Withdrawal effects in the newborn may occur with some antiepileptic drugs, in particular benzodiazepines and phenobarbital, and can take several days to diminish.

**Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register**

All pregnant women with epilepsy, whether taking medication or not, should be encouraged to notify the UK Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register (Tel: 0800 389 1248).

**Breast-feeding**

Breast-feeding is acceptable with all antiepileptic drugs taken in normal doses, with the possible exception of the barbiturates and some of the newer antiepileptics (see under individual drugs).

**Focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

Carbamazepine, lamotrigine, oxcarbazepine, and sodium valproate are the drugs of choice for focal seizures; second-line drugs include clonazepam, gabapentin, levetiracetam, tiagabine, and topiramate.

**Generalised seizures**

**Tonic-clonic seizures**

The drugs of choice for tonic-clonic seizures are carbamazepine, lamotrigine, levetiracetam, and sodium valproate. For children who have tonic-clonic seizures as part of the syndrome of primary generalised epilepsy, sodium valproate is the drug of choice. Second-line drugs include clobazam, oxcarbazepine, and topiramate.

**Absence seizures**

Ethosuximide and sodium valproate are the drugs of choice in typical absence seizures; lamotrigine can be used if these are unsuitable. Sodium valproate is also highly effective in treating the generalised tonic-clonic seizures which can co-exist with absence seizures in idiopathic primary generalised epilepsy.

**Myoclonic seizures**

Myoclonic seizures (myoclonic jerks) occur in a variety of syndromes, and response to treatment varies considerably. Sodium valproate is the drug of choice, and clobazam, clonazepam, ethosuximide, lamotrigine, levetiracetam, or topiramate are second-line drugs.

**Atypical absence, tonic, and tonic seizures**

Atypical absence and tonic seizures can be managed with sodium valproate, lamotrigine, or ethosuximide. Tonic seizures can be treated with sodium valproate. Second-line drugs for atypical absence, tonic, and tonic seizures include clobazam, clonazepam, levetiracetam, and topiramate; tonic seizures are rarely aggravated by benzodiazepines.

**Epilepsy syndromes**

**Infantile spasms**

Vigabatrin is the drug of choice for infantile spasms associated with tuberous sclerosis. In spasms of other causes, high doses of corticosteroids, such as prednisolone (section 6.3.2) or tetracosactide (section 6.5.1), may be more effective. Second-line alternatives include clobazam, clonazepam, sodium valproate, and topiramate; nitrazepam is used but it is sedating.

**Lennox-Gastaut syndrome**

Lamotrigine, sodium valproate, and topiramate are first-line drugs for treating Lennox-Gastaut syndrome. Clobazam, clonazepam, ethosuximide, levetiracetam, and rufinamide are also used.

**Landau-Kleffner syndrome**

Prednisolone, lamotrigine, and sodium valproate are commonly used to treat Landau-Kleffner syndrome. Alternatives include clobazam, levetiracetam, and topiramate.

**Neonatal seizures**

Seizures can occur before delivery, but they are most common up to 24 hours after birth. Seizures in neonates occur as a result of biochemical disturbances, inborn errors of metabolism, hypoxic ischaemic encephalopathy, drug withdrawal, meningitis, stroke, cerebral haemorrhage or malformation, or severe jaundice (kermiterus).

Seizures caused by biochemical imbalance and those in neonates with inherited abnormal pyridoxine or biotin metabolism should be corrected by treating the underlying cause (section 9.6.2). Seizures caused by drug withdrawal following intra-uterine exposure are treated with a drug withdrawal regimen.

**Phenobarbital**

Can be used to manage neonatal seizures where there is a risk of recurrence; phenytoin is an alternative. Benzodiazepines (such as clonazepam (p. 232) and midazolam (p. 234)) and rectal paraldehyde (p. 234) may also be useful in the management of acute neonatal seizures. Lidocaine (p. 86) may be used if other treatments are unsuccessful; lidocaine should not be given to neonates who have received phenytoin infusion because of the risk of cardiac toxicity.

**Severe myoclonic epilepsy of infancy**

Stiripentol is licensed to treat severe myoclonic epilepsy of infancy (Dravet Syndrome).

**Carbamazepine and oxcarbazepine**

Carbamazepine is a drug of choice for simple and complex focal seizures and for tonic-clonic seizures secondary to a focal discharge. It can exacerbate myoclonic and absence seizures. It is essential to initiate carbamazepine therapy at a low dose and build this up slowly in small increments every 3–7 days. Some side-effects (such as headache, ataxia, drowsiness, nausea, vomiting, blurring of vision, dizziness, unsteadiness, and allergic skin reactions) are dose-related, and may be dose-limiting. These side-effects are more common at the start of treatment. They may be reduced by altering the timing of medication or by using a modified-release preparation.

Oxcarbazepine is licensed as monotherapy or adjunctive therapy for the treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures.
CARBAMAZEPINE

Cautions  cardiac disease (see also Contra-indications); skin reactions (see also Blood, Hepatic, or Skin disorders, below and under Side-effects); test for HLA-B*1502 allele in individuals of Han Chinese or Thai origin (avoid unless otherwise—risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome in the presence of HLA-B*1502 allele); history of haematological reactions to other drugs; manufacturer recommends blood counts and hepatic and renal function tests (but evidence of practical value uncertain); may exacerbate absence and myoclonic seizures; consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium; susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; cross-sensitivity reported with oxcarbazepine, and with phenytoin; avoid abrupt withdrawal; interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (carbamazepine)

Blood, hepatic, or skin disorders Children or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood, liver, or skin disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, rash, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop. Carbamazepine should be withdrawn immediately in cases of aggravated liver dysfunction or acute liver disease. Leucopenia that is severe, progressive, or associated with clinical symptoms requires withdrawal (if necessary under cover of a suitable alternative).

Contra-indications  AV conduction abnormalities; cardiac disease (see also Contra-indications); Cautions

Hepatic impairment  metabolism impaired in advanced liver disease; see also Blood, Hepatic, or Skin Disorders, above

Renal impairment  use with caution

Pregnancy  see Pregnancy, p. 216

Breast-feeding  amount probably too small to be harmful but monitor infant for possible adverse reactions; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

Side-effects  see notes above; also dry mouth, nausea, vomiting, oedema, ataxia, dizziness, drowsiness, fatigue, headache, hyponatraemia (leading in rare cases to water intoxication), blood disorders (including eosinophilia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, haematolytic anaemia, and aplastic anaemia), dermatitis, urticaria; less commonly diarrhoea, constipation, involuntary movements (including nystagmus), visual disturbances; rarely abdominal pain, anorexia, hepatitis, jaundice, vanishing bile duct syndrome, cardiac conduction disorders, hypertension, hypotension, peripheral neuropathy, dysarthria, aggression, agitation, confusion, depression, hallucinations, restlessness, paraesthesia, lymph node enlargement, muscle weakness, systemic lupus erythematosus, delayed multi-organ hypersensitivity disorder; very rarely pancreatitis, stomatitis, hepatic failure, taste disturbance, exacerbation of coronary artery disease, AV block with syncope, circulatory collapse, hypercholesterolaemia, thrombophlebitis, thromboembolism, pulmonary hypersensitivity (with dyspnoea, pneumonia, or pneumonitis), psychosis, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, osteomalacia (see Cautions), osteoporosis, galactorrhoea, gynaecomastia, impaired male fertility, interstitial nephritis, renal failure, sexual dysfunction, urinary frequency, urinary retention, arthralgia, muscle pain, muscle spasm, conjunctivitis, angle-closure glaucoma, hearing disorders, acne, alterations in skin pigmentation, alopecia, hirsutism, sweating, photosensitivity, purpura, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, aseptic meningitis; suicidal ideation

Pharmacokinetics  plasma concentration for optimum response 4–12 mg/litre (20–50 micromol/litre) measured after 1–2 weeks

Licensed use  suppositories not licensed for use in trigeminal neuralgia or prophylaxis of bipolar disorder

Indication and dose

Focal and generalised tonic-clonic seizures, trigeminal neuralgia, prophylaxis of bipolar disorder

- By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years initially 5 mg/kg at night or 2.5 mg/kg twice daily, increased as necessary by 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days; usual maintenance dose 5 mg/kg 2–3 times daily; doses up to 20 mg/kg daily have been used

Child 12–18 years initially 100–200 mg 1–2 times daily, increased slowly to usual maintenance dose 200–400 mg 2–3 times daily; in some cases doses up to 1.8 g daily may be needed

- By rectum

Child 1 month–18 years use approx. 25% more than the oral dose (max. 250 mg) up to 4 times daily

Note  Different preparations may vary in bioavailability; to avoid reduced effect or excessive side-effects, it may be prudent to avoid changing the formulation

Administration  Oral liquid has been used rectally—should be retained for at least 2 hours (but may have laxative effect)

Carbamazepine  (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, carbamazepine 100 mg, net price 28 = £5.69; 200 mg, 28 = £4.99; 400 mg, 28 = £6.59. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Brands include Epimaz®

Dental prescribing on NHS Carbamazepine Tablets may be prescribed

Tegretol® (Novartis)

Tablets, scored, carbamazepine 100 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £2.07; 200 mg, 84-tab pack = £3.83; 400 mg, 56-tab pack = £5.02. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Chewtabs, orange, carbamazepine 100 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £3.16. 200 mg, 56-tab pack = £5.88. Label: 3, 8, 21, 24, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Liquid, sugar-free, carbamazepine 100 mg/5 mL. Net price 300-mL pack = £6.12. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Suppositories, carbamazepine 125 mg, net price 5 = £8.03; 250 mg, 5 = £10.71. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Dose

Epilepsy for short-term use (max. 7 days) when oral therapy temporarily not possible

Note  Suppositories of 125 mg may be considered to be approximately equivalent in therapeutic effect to tablets of 100 mg but final adjustment should always depend on clin-
Modified release

Carbagem SR (Generics)  Tablets, m/t, f/c, scored, carbamazepine 200 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £5.20; 400 mg, 56-tab pack = £10.24. Label: 3, 8, 25, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Dose

Tegretol Prolonged Release (Novartis)  Tablets, m/t, scored, carbamazepine 200 mg (beige-orange), 56-tab pack = £10.24. Label: 3, 8, 25, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Dose

OXCARBAZEPINE

Cautions  hypersensitivity to carbamazepine; avoid abrupt withdrawal; hyponatraemia (monitor plasma-sodium concentration in patients at risk), heart failure (monitor body-weight), cardiac conduction disorders; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (oxcarbazepine)

Blood, hepatic, or skin disorders  Children or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood, liver, or skin disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as lethargy, confusion, muscular twitching, fever, rash, blistering, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop

Hepatic impairment  caution in severe impairment—no information available

Renal impairment  halve initial dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m², increase according to response at intervals of at least 1 week

Pregnancy  see Pregnancy, p. 216

Breast-feeding  amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

Side-effects  nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, dizziness, headache, drowsiness, agitation, amnesia, asthama, ataxia, confusion, impaired concentration, depression, tremor, hyponatraemia, acne, alopecia, rash, nephrotoxicity, visual disorders including diplopia; less commonly urticaria, leucopenia; very rarely hepatitis, pancreatitis, arthrythias, blood disorders, systemic lupus erythematosus, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis; hypertension and hypothyroidism also reported; suicidal ideation

Indication and dose

Monotherapy and adjunctive therapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures

- By mouth
  - Child 6–18 years initially 4–5 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) twice daily, increased according to response in steps of up to 5 mg/kg twice daily at weekly intervals (usual maintenance dose for adjunctive therapy 15 mg/kg twice daily); max. 23 mg/kg twice daily

Note  In adjunctive therapy the dose of concomitant antiepileptics may need to be reduced when using high doses of oxcarbazepine

Oxcarbazepine (Non-proprietary)  Tablets, oxcarbazepine 150 mg, net price 50-tab pack = £11.02; 300 mg, 50-tab pack = £22.38; 600 mg, 50-tab pack = £44.72. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorders (see above), driving (see notes above)

Dose

Trileptal (Novartis)  Tablets, f/c, scored, oxcarbazepine 150 mg (green), net price 50-tab pack = £8.50; 300 mg (yellow), 50-tab pack = £17.00; 600 mg (pink), 50-tab pack = £34.00. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorders (see above), driving (see notes above)

Oral suspension, sugar-free, oxcarbazepine 300 mg/5 mL, net price 250 mL (with oral syringe) = £34.00. Label: 3, 8, counselling, blood, hepatic or skin disorders (see above), driving (see notes above)

Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

Ethosuximide

Ethosuximide is used for typical absence seizures; it may also be used for myoclonic seizures and for atypical absence, tonic, and tonic seizures.

Ethosuximide

Cautions  avoid abrupt withdrawal; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (ethosuximide)

Blood disorders  Children or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop

Hepatic impairment  use with caution

Renal impairment  use with caution

Pregnancy  see Pregnancy, p. 216

Breast-feeding  present in milk; hyperelexicity and sedation reported; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

Side-effects  gastro-intestinal disturbances (including nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain, and anorexia), weight loss; less frequently headache, fatigue, drowsiness, dizziness, hiccup, ataxia, euphoria, irritability, aggression, and impaired concentration; rarely tongue swelling, sleep disturbances, depression, psychosis, photophobia, dyskinesia, increased libido, vaginal bleeding, myopia, gingival hypertrophy, rash; also reported hyperactivity, increase in seizure frequency, blood disorders (including leucopenia, agranulocytosis, pancytopenia, and aplastic anaemia—blood counts required if features of infection), systemic lupus erythematosus, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome; suicidal ideation

Indication and dose

Absence seizures, atypical absence, myoclonic seizures

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–6 years initially 5 mg/kg (max. 125 mg) twice daily, increased gradually over 2–3 weeks up to maintenance dose of 10–20 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily; total daily dose may rarely be given in 3 divided doses
4.8.1 Control of the epilepsies

**Central nervous system**

**Ethosuximide (Non-proprietary)**
Capsules, ethosuximide 250 mg, net price 56-cap pack = £38.23. Label: 8, counselling, blood disorders (see above), driving (see notes above)

**Emeside® (Chemidex)**
Syrup, black currant, ethosuximide 250 mg/5 mL, net price 200-mL pack = £6.60. Label: 8, counselling, blood disorders (see above), driving (see notes above)

**Zarontin® (Pfizer)**
Syrup, yellow, ethosuximide 250 mg/5 mL, net price 200-mL pack = £4.22. Label: 8, counselling, blood disorders (see above), driving (see notes above)

---

**Indication and dose**

**Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–6 years** 10 mg/kg once daily on day 1, then 10 mg/kg twice daily on day 2, then 10 mg/kg 3 times daily on day 3, increased according to response to usual dose of 30–70 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses
  - **Child 6–12 years** 10 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) once daily on day 1, then 10 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) twice daily on day 2, then 10 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) 3 times daily on day 3; usual dose 25–35 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses; max. 70 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses
  - **Child 12–18 years** 300 mg once daily on day 1, then 300 mg twice daily on day 2, then 300 mg 3 times daily on day 3 or initially 300 mg 3 times daily on day 1; then increased according to response in steps of 300 mg (in 3 divided doses) every 2–3 days; usual dose 0.9–3.6 g daily in 3 divided doses

**Monotherapy for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 12–18 years** 300 mg once daily on day 1, then 300 mg twice daily on day 2, then 300 mg 3 times daily on day 3 or initially 300 mg 3 times daily on day 1; then increased according to response in steps of 300 mg (in 3 divided doses) every 2–3 days; usual dose 0.9–3.6 g daily in 3 divided doses

---

**Gabapentin**

Gabapentin is used as adjunctive therapy for the treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation; it can be used as monotherapy in children over 12 years.

**GABAPENTIN**

**Cautions** avoid abrupt withdrawal (may cause anxiety, insomnia, nausea, pain, and sweating—taper off over at least 1 week); diabetes mellitus, false positive readings with some urinary protein tests; history of psychotic illness; interactions: Appendix 1 (gabapentin)

**Renal impairment** reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 80 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

**Pregnancy** see Pregnancy, p. 216

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

**Side-effects** diarrhoea, dry mouth, dyspepsia, nausea, vomiting, constipation, abdominal pain, flatulence, appetite changes, gingivitis, weight gain; hyper tension, vasodilatation, oedema; dyspnoea, cough, rhinitis; confusion, depression, hostility, sleep disturbances, headache; dizziness, anxiety, amnesia, ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, tremor, asthenia, paraesthesia, hyperkinesia; influenza-like symptoms; impotence, urinary incontinence; leucopenia; myalgia, arthralgia; diploria, amblyopia; rash, purpura, pruritus, acne; rarely pancreatitis, hepatitis, jaundice, palpitation, hallucinations, movement disorders, thrombocytopenia, blood-glucose fluctuations in patients with diabetes, tinnitus, acute renal failure, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and alopecia; suicidal ideation; also reported psychosis

**Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 6 years; not licensed at doses over 50 mg/kg daily in children under 12 years**

---

**Lacosamide**

Lacosamide is licensed for adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation. The **Scottish Medicines Consortium** (p. 3) has advised (January 2009) that lacosamide (**Vimpat**) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive treatment for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation in patients from 16 years. It is restricted for specialist use in refractory epilepsy
4.8.1 Control of the epilepsies

**LAMOTRIGINE**

**Cautions**
- Close monitor and consider withdrawal if rash, fever, or signs of hypersensitivity syndrome develop; avoid abrupt withdrawal (taper off over 2 weeks or longer) unless serious skin reaction occurs; myoclonic seizures may be exacerbated.
- Interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (lamotrigine).

**Blood disorders**
- Children and their carers should be alert for symptoms and signs suggestive of bone-marrow failure, such as anaemia, bruising, or infection. Aplastic anaemia, bone-marrow depression, and pancytopenia have been associated rarely with lamotrigine.

**Hepatic impairment**
- Halve dose in moderate impairment; quarter dose in severe impairment.

**Renal impairment**
- Caution in renal failure; metabolite may accumulate; consider reducing maintenance dose in significant impairment.

**Pregnancy**
- See Pregnancy, p. 216.

**Breast-feeding**
- Present in milk; limited data suggest no harmful effect on infant; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217.

**Side-effects**
- Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, dry mouth, aggression, agitation, headache, drowsiness, dizziness, tremor, insomnia, ataxia, back pain, arthralgia, dystonia, diplopia, blurred vision, rash (see Skin Reactions, below); rarely conjunctivitis; very rarely hepatic failure, movement disorders, unsteadiness, increased in seizure frequency, confusion, hallucination, blood disorders including anaemia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia—see Blood Disorders, above); hypersensitivity syndrome (possibly including rash, fever, facial oedema, lymphadenopathy, hepatic dysfunction, blood disorders, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and multi-organ dysfunction), lupus erythematosus-like reactions; also reported suicidal ideation, aseptic meningitis.

**Skin reactions**
- Serious skin reactions including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis have developed especially in children; most rashes occur in the first 8 weeks. Rash is sometimes associated with hypersensitivity syndrome (see Skin Reactions, above) and is more common in patients with history of allergy or rash from other antiepileptic drugs. Consider withdrawal if rash or signs of hypersensitivity syndrome develop. Factors associated with increased risk of serious skin reactions include concomitant use of valproate, initial lamotrigine dosing higher than recommended, and more rapid dose escalation than recommended.

**Counselling**
- Warn children and their carers to see their doctor immediately if rash or signs of symptoms of hypersensitivity syndrome develop.

**Indication and dose**
- Monotherapy and adjunctive treatment of focal seizures and primary and secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures; seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome.

**By mouth**
- Adjunctive therapy of seizures with valproate.

**Child 2–12 years**
- Initially 150 micrograms/kg once daily for 14 days (those weighing under 13 kg may receive 2 mg on alternate days for first 14 days) then 300 micrograms/kg once daily for further 14 days; thereafter increased by max. of 300 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance 1–5 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses (max. single dose 100 mg).

**Indication and dose**
- Adjunctive therapy of seizures with valproate.

**Child 2–12 years**
- Initially 150 micrograms/kg once daily for 14 days (those weighing under 13 kg may receive 2 mg on alternate days for first 14 days) then 300 micrograms/kg once daily for further 14 days; thereafter increased by max. of 300 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance 1–5 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses (max. single dose 100 mg).

**Lamotrigine**

**Cautions**
- Risk of PR-interval prolongation (including conduction problems, severe cardiac disease, and concomitant use of drugs that prolong PR interval), elderly; interactions: Appendix 1 (lamotrigine).

**Contra-indications**
- Second- or third-degree AV block.

**Hepatic impairment**
- Caution in severe impairment—no information available.

**Renal impairment**
- Titrate dose with caution; max. 250 mg daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m².

**Pregnancy**
- See Pregnancy, p. 216.

**Breast-feeding**
- Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217.

**Side-effects**
- Nausea, vomiting, constipation, flatulence, dizziness, headache, impaired coordination, cognitive disorder, drowsiness, tremor, depression, fatigue, abnormal gait, blurred vision, nystagmus, pruritus; also reported dyspepsia, dry mouth, first-degree AV block, bradycardia, PR-interval prolongation, confusion, hypoesthesia, dysarthria, irritability, muscle spasm, tinnitus, rash; suicidal ideation.

**Indication and dose**
- Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation.

**By intravenous infusion over 15–60 minutes** (for up to 5 days) or by mouth.

**Child 16–18 years**
- Initially 50 mg twice daily, increased in steps of 50 mg twice daily every 4 weeks; max, 200 mg twice daily.

**Administration**
- For intravenous infusion, give undiluted or dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

**Vimpat®**
- (UCB Pharma) (max. single dose 100 mg).

**Tablets**
- F/c, lamotrigine 50 mg (pink), net price 14-tab pack = £10.81; 100 mg (yellow), 14-tab pack = £21.62, 56-tab pack = £86.50; 150 mg (salmon), 14-tab pack = £32.44, 56-tab pack = £129.74; 200 mg (blue), 56-tab pack = £144.16. Label: 8, counselling, driving (see notes above).

**Syrup**
- Lamotrigine 15 mg/mL, net price 200 mL = £29.70. Labelling: 8, counselling, driving (see notes above). Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1).

**Intravenous infusion**
- Lamotrigine 10 mg/mL net price 200 mL vial = £29.70. Electrolytes Na⁺ 2.6 mmol/200-mg vial.
222 4.8.1 Control of the epilepsies

**Lamotrigine**

*Non-proprietary*

222 BNFC 2011–2012

---

**Notes**

Do not confuse the different combinations; see also Safe Practice.

---

**Control of the epilepsies**

---

**Adjunctive therapy of seizures (with enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate**

**Child 2–12 years** initially 300 micrograms/kg twice daily for 14 days then 600 micrograms/kg twice daily for further 14 days, thereafter increased by max. 1.2 mg/kg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance 2.5–7.5 mg/kg (max. single dose 200 mg) twice daily.

**Child 12–18 years** initially 50 mg daily for 14 days then 50 mg twice daily for further 14 days, thereafter increased by max. 100 mg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance 100–200 mg twice daily (up to 700 mg daily has been required).

---

**Adjunctive therapy of seizures (without enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate**

**Child 2–12 years** initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses for 14 days then 600 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses for further 14 days, thereafter increased by max. 600 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance 1–10 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; max. 200 mg daily.

**Child 12–18 years** initially 25 mg daily for 14 days, increased to 50 mg daily for further 14 days, then increased by max. 100 mg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance 100–200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

**Monotherapy of seizures**

**Child 12–18 years** initially 25 mg daily for 14 days, increased to 50 mg daily for further 14 days, then increased by max. 100 mg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance as monotherapy, 100–200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses (up to 500 mg daily has been required).

---

**Monotherapy of typical absence seizures**

- **By mouth**
  
  **Child 2–12 years** initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses for 14 days, then 600 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses for further 14 days, thereafter increased by max. 600 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; usual maintenance as monotherapy, 100–200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses (up to 15 mg/kg daily has been required).

---

**Safe Practice**

Do not confuse the different combinations; see also notes above.

---

**Lamotrigine**

*Non-proprietary*

**Tablets,** lamotrigine 25 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £2.25; 50 mg, 56-tab pack = £3.07; 100 mg, 56-tab pack = £4.53; 200 mg, 30-tab pack = £27.53, 56-tab pack = £7.51. Label: 8, counselling, driving (see notes above), skin reactions (see above).

**Dispersible tablets,** lamotrigine 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £2.27; 25 mg, 56-tab pack = £2.91; 100 mg, 56-tab pack = £5.86. Label: 8, 13, counselling, driving (see notes above), skin reactions (see above).

---

**Levetiracetam**

Levetiracetam is used for monotherapy and adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation, and for adjunctive treatment of myoclonic seizures in children with juvenile myoclonic epilepsy, and primary generalised tonic-clonic seizures.

---

**LEVETIRACETAM**

**Cautions**

Avoid abrupt withdrawal; interactions:

Appendix 1 (Levetiracetam)

**Hepatic impairment** halve dose in severe hepatic impairment if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Renal impairment** reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 80 mL/minute/1.73 m³ (consult product literature)

**Pregnancy** see Pregnancy, p. 216

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

**Side-effects**

Anorexia, weight changes, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, diarrhoea, cough, drowsiness, amnesia, ataxia, convulsion, dizziness, headache, tremor, hyperkinesia, malaise, impaired attention, aggression, agitation, depression, insomnia, anxiety, irritability, personality disorder, thrombocytopenia, myalgia, diplopia, blurred vision, rash; also reported pancreatitis, hepatic failure, paraesthesia, confusion, hallucinations, psychosis, suicidal ideation, leucopenia, neutropenia, pancytopenia, alopecia, toxic epidermal necrolysis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

**Indication and dose**

**Monotherapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- **By mouth**
  
  **Child 16–18 years** initially 250 mg once daily increased after 1 week to 250 mg twice daily; thereafter, increased according to response in steps of 250 mg twice daily every 2 weeks; max. 1.5 g twice daily

---

**Adjunctive therapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- **By mouth**
  
  **Child 1–6 months** initially 7 mg/kg once daily, increased gradually by max. 7 mg/kg twice daily every 2 weeks; max. 21 mg/kg twice daily
Phenobarbital is effective for tonic-clonic, focal seizures and neonatal seizures but may cause behavioural disturbances and hypertonia. It may be tried for atypical absence, atonic, and tonic seizures. For therapeutic purposes phenobarbital and phenobarbital sodium should be considered equivalent in effect. Rebound seizures may be a problem on withdrawal. Monitoring the plasma concentration is less useful than with other drugs because tolerance occurs.

Primidone is largely converted to phenobarbital and this is probably responsible for its antiepileptic action. It is used rarely in children. A low initial dose of primidone is essential.

**Phenobarbital**

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age Group</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years</td>
<td>initially 1–1.5 mg/kg twice daily, increased by 2 mg/kg daily as required; usual maintenance dose 2.5–4 mg/kg once or twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>60–180 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** For therapeutic purposes phenobarbital and phenobarbital sodium may be considered equivalent in effect.

**Administration** for intravenous injection, dilute requisite dose with at least 100 mL of glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9%; give over 15 minutes. For administration of oral solution, requisite dose may be diluted in a glass of water.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Brand</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keppra® (UCB Pharma)</td>
<td>Tablets, f/c, levetiracetam 250 mg (blue), net price 60-tab pack = £29.70; 500 mg (yellow), 60-tab pack = £52.30; 750 mg (orange), 60-tab pack = £89.10; 1 g (white), 60-tab pack = £110.10. Label: 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Keppra® (Phenobarbitone)**

**Cautions** see also notes above; debilitated; respiratory depression (avoid if severe); avoid abrupt withdrawal (dependence with prolonged use); history of drug and alcohol abuse; consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium; avoid in acute porphyria (see section 9.8.2); interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (barbiturates).

**Hepatic impairment** may precipitate coma; avoid in severe impairment.

**Renal impairment** use with caution.

**Pregnancy** see Pregnancy, p. 216.

**Breast-feeding** avoid if possible; drowsiness may occur; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217.

**Side-effects** hepatic, cholestasis; hypotension; respiratory depression; drowsiness, lethargy, depression, ataxia, behavioural disturbances, nystagmus, irritability, hallucinations, impaired memory and cognition; hyperactivity; osteomalacia (see Cautions); megaloblastic anaemia (may be treated with folic acid), agranulocytosis, thrombocytopenia; allergic skin reactions; very rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis; suicidal ideation.

**Overdosage** see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 25.

**Pharmacokinetics** trough plasma concentration for optimum response 15–40 mg/litre (60–180 micrograms/litre).

**Status epilepticus** section 4.8.2

**Note** For therapeutic purposes phenobarbital and phenobarbital sodium may be considered equivalent in effect.

**Administration** for administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed.

For intravenous injection, dilute to a concentration of 20 mg/mL with Water for Injections; give over 20 minutes (no faster than 1 mg/kg/minute).
Phenytoin (Non-proprietary) (53)

**Dosage**

- **Tablets**
  - phenobarbital 15 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £95; 30 mg, 28-tab pack = £96; 60 mg, 28-tab pack = £71. Label: 2, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

- **Elixir**
  - phenobarbital 15 mg/5 mL in a suitable flavoured vehicle, containing alcohol 38%; net price 100 mL = £78. Label: 2, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

- **Note**
  - Some hospitals supply alcohol-free formulations of varying phenobarbital strengths

**Injection**

- phenobarbital sodium 15 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.64; 30 mg/mL, 1-mL amp = £2.04; 60 mg/mL, 1-mL amp = £2.14; 200 mg/mL, 1-mL amp = £2.00

- **Excipients** include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Note**

- Must be diluted before intravenous administration (see Administration)

**Pharmacokinetics**

- monitor plasma concentrations of derived phenobarbital. Optimum range as for phenobarbital

**Indication and dose**

- All forms of epilepsy except absence seizures (but see notes above)
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 2–5 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days according to response; usual maintenance, 250–350 mg twice daily
    - Child 5–9 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days according to response; usual maintenance, 375–500 mg twice daily
    - Child 9–18 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days to 250 mg twice daily; then increased according to response by 250 mg every 3 days to max. 750 mg twice daily

- **Mysoline® (Acorus)** (79)
  - Tablets, scored, primidone 50 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £12.60; 250 mg, 100-tab pack = £12.60. Label: 2, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

**Phenytoin**

- Phenytoin is effective for tonic-clonic, focal, and neonatal seizures but it may worsen myoclonus. It has a narrow therapeutic index and the relationship between dose and plasma-drug concentration is non-linear; small dosage increases in some children may produce large increases in plasma concentration with acute toxic side-effects. Similarly, a few missed doses or a small change in drug absorption may result in a marked change in plasma concentration. Monitoring of plasma concentration improves dosage adjustment. Symptoms of phenytoin toxicity include nystagmus, diplopia, slurred speech, ataxia, confusion, and hyperglycaemia.

- Phenytoin may cause coarsening of the facial appearance, acne, hirsutism, and gingival hyperplasia and so may be particularly undesirable in adolescent patients.

- When only parenteral administration is possible, fosphenytoin (section 4.8.2), a pro-drug of phenytoin, may be convenient to give. Whereas phenytoin should be given intravenously only, fosphenytoin may also be given by intramuscular injection.

**PRIMIDONE**

**Cautions** see Phenobarbital; interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (primidone)

**Hepatic impairment** reduce dose, may precipitate coma

**Renal impairment** see Phenobarbital

**Pregnancy** see Phenobarbital

**Breast-feeding** see Phenobarbital

**Side-effects** see Phenobarbital; also nausea, visual disturbances; less commonly vomiting, headache, dizziness; rarely psychosis, lupus erythematosus, arthralgia; also reported Dupuytren’s contracture

**Pharmacokinetics** monitor plasma concentrations of derived phenobarbital. Optimum range as for phenobarbital

**Indication and dose**

- All forms of epilepsy except absence seizures (but see notes above)
  - **By mouth**
    - Child under 2 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days according to response; usual maintenance, 125–250 mg twice daily
    - Child 2–5 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days according to response; usual maintenance, 250–375 mg twice daily
    - Child 5–9 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days according to response; usual maintenance, 375–500 mg twice a day
    - Child 9–18 years initially 125 mg daily at bedtime, increased by 125 mg every 3 days to 250 mg twice daily; then increased according to response by 250 mg every 3 days to max. 750 mg twice daily

- **Mysoline® (Acorus)** (79)
  - Tablets, scored, primidone 50 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £12.60; 250 mg, 100-tab pack = £12.60. Label: 2, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

**Phenytoin**

- Phenytoin is effective for tonic-clonic, focal, and neonatal seizures but it may worsen myoclonus. It has a narrow therapeutic index and the relationship between dose and plasma-drug concentration is non-linear; small dosage increases in some children may produce large increases in plasma concentration with acute toxic side-effects. Similarly, a few missed doses or a small change in drug absorption may result in a marked change in plasma concentration. Monitoring of plasma concentration improves dosage adjustment. Symptoms of phenytoin toxicity include nystagmus, diplopia, slurred speech, ataxia, confusion, and hyperglycaemia.

- Phenytoin may cause coarsening of the facial appearance, acne, hirsutism, and gingival hyperplasia and so may be particularly undesirable in adolescent patients.

- When only parenteral administration is possible, fosphenytoin (section 4.8.2), a pro-drug of phenytoin, may be convenient to give. Whereas phenytoin should be given intravenously only, fosphenytoin may also be given by intramuscular injection.
BNFC 2011–2012

Child 3 months–18 years, 10–20 mg/litre (40–80 micromol/litre)

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

All forms of epilepsy except absence seizures

• By intravenous injection (over 20–30 minutes) and by mouth

Neonate initial loading dose by slow intravenous injection (section 4.8.2) 18 mg/kg then by mouth 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily adjusted according to response and plasma-phenytoin concentration (usual max. 7.5 mg/kg twice daily)

• By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years initially 1.5–2.5 mg/kg twice daily, then adjusted according to response and plasma-phenytoin concentration to 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily (usual max. 7.5 mg/kg twice daily or 300 mg daily)

Child 12–18 years initially 75–150 mg twice daily then adjusted according to response and plasma-phenytoin concentration to 150–200 mg twice daily (usual max. 300 mg twice daily)

Status epilepticus, acute symptomatic seizures associated with head trauma or neurosurgery section 4.8.2

Administration for administration by mouth, interrupt enteral feeds for at least 1–2 hours before and after giving phenytoin; give with water to enhance absorption

For administration by intravenous injection and intravenous infusion, see p. 235

Phenytoin (Non-proprietary) ≥

Tablets, coated, phenytoin sodium 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £30.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration, blood or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Note On the basis of single dose tests there are no clinically relevant differences in bioavailability between available phenytoin sodium tablets and capsules but there may be a pharmacokinetic basis for maintaining the same brand of phenytoin in some patients

Epanutin® (Pfizer) ≥

Capsules, phenytoin sodium 25 mg (white/purple), net price 28-cap pack = 66p; 50 mg (white/pink), 28-cap pack = £2.83; 300 mg (white/green), 24-cap pack = £2.83. Label: 8, counselling, administration, blood or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Note Contain phenytoin 50 mg (as against phenytoin sodium) therefore care is needed on changing to capsules or tablets containing phenytoin sodium

Suspension, red, phenytoin 30 mg/5 mL, net price 500 mL = £4.27. Label: 8, counselling, administration, blood or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Note Suspension of phenytoin 90 mg in 15 mL may be considered to be approximately equivalent in therapeutic effect to capsules or tablets containing phenytoin sodium 100 mg, but nevertheless care is needed in making changes

Rufinamide

Rufinamide is licensed for the adjunctive treatment of seizures in Lennox-Gastaut syndrome.

The Scottish Medicines Consortium (p. 3) has advised (October 2008) that rufinamide (Inovelon®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome in patients 4 years and above. It is restricted for use when alternative traditional antiepileptic drugs are unsatisfactory.

Status epilepticus, acute symptomatic seizures associated with head trauma or neurosurgery section 4.8.2

Administration for administration by mouth, interrupt enteral feeds for at least 1–2 hours before and after giving phenytoin; give with water to enhance absorption

For administration by intravenous injection and intravenous infusion, see p. 235

Phenytoin (Non-proprietary) ≥

Tablets, coated, phenytoin sodium 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £30.00. Label: 8, counselling, administration, blood or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Note On the basis of single dose tests there are no clinically relevant differences in bioavailability between available phenytoin sodium tablets and capsules but there may be a pharmacokinetic basis for maintaining the same brand of phenytoin in some patients

Epanutin® (Pfizer) ≥

Capsules, phenytoin sodium 25 mg (white/purple), net price 28-cap pack = 66p; 50 mg (white/pink), 28-cap pack = £2.83; 300 mg (white/green), 24-cap pack = £2.83. Label: 8, counselling, administration, blood or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Note Contain phenytoin 50 mg (as against phenytoin sodium) therefore care is needed on changing to capsules or tablets containing phenytoin sodium

Suspension, red, phenytoin 30 mg/5 mL, net price 500 mL = £4.27. Label: 8, counselling, administration, blood or skin disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Note Suspension of phenytoin 90 mg in 15 mL may be considered to be approximately equivalent in therapeutic effect to capsules or tablets containing phenytoin sodium 100 mg, but nevertheless care is needed in making changes

Parenteral preparations Section 4.8.2

Rufinamide

Cautions closely monitor and consider withdrawal if rash, fever, or other signs of hypersensitivity syndrome (see Side-effects) develop; avoid abrupt withdrawal, interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (rufinamide)

Hepatic impairment caution and careful dose titration in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment

Pregnancy see Pregnancy, p. 216

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhoea, dyspepsia, abdominal pain; rhinitis, epistaxis; weight loss, anorexia, dizziness, headache, drowsiness, insomnia, anxiety, fatigue, increase in seizure frequency, impaired coordination, hyperactivity, tremor, gait disturbances; influenza-like symptoms; oligomenorrhea; back pain; nyctagia, diplopia, blurred vision; rash, and acne; hypersensitivity syndrome (possibly including rash, fever, lymphadenopathy, hepatic dysfunction, haematuria, and multi-organ dysfunction) also reported

Hypersensitivity syndrome Serious hypersensitivity syndrome (see above) has developed especially in children and upon initiation of therapy, consider withdrawal if rash or signs or symptoms of hypersensitivity syndrome develop

Counselling Warn children and their carers to seek immediate medical attention if signs or symptoms of hypersensitivity syndrome develop

Indication and dose

Adjunctive treatment of seizures in Lennox-Gastaut syndrome

By mouth

Child 4–18 years body-weight less than 30 kg, initially 100 mg twice daily increased according to response in steps of 100 mg twice daily up to every 2 days; max. 500 mg twice daily (max. 300 mg twice daily if adjunctive therapy with valproate)

Child 4–18 years body-weight over 30 kg, initially 200 mg twice daily increased according to response in steps of 200 mg twice daily up to every 2 days; body-weight 30–50 kg max. 900 mg twice daily; body-weight 50–70 kg max. 1.2 g twice daily; body-weight over 70 kg max. 1.6 g twice daily

Administration Tablets may be crushed and given in half a glass of water

Inovelon® (Eisai) ≥

Tablets, pink, f/c, scored, rufinamide 100 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £5.15; 200 mg, 60-tab pack =
4.8.1 Control of the epilepsies

**Stiripentol**

Stiripentol is licensed for use in combination with clobazam and valproate as adjunctive therapy of refractory generalised tonic-clonic seizures in children with severe myoclonic epilepsy in infancy (Dravet Syndrome). It should be used under specialist supervision.

**Indication and dose**

Severe myoclonic epilepsy in infancy

- By mouth
  - Child 3–18 years: initially 10 mg/kg in 2–3 divided doses; titrate dose over minimum of 3 days to max. 50 mg/kg/day in 2–3 divided doses

**Side-effects**

nausea, vomiting; aggression, anorexia, ataxia, drowsiness, dystonia, hyperexcitability, hypokinesia, hypotonia, irritability, sleep disorders, weight loss; neutropenia; less commonly fatigue, photosensitivity, rash, and urticaria

**Contra-indications**

history of psychosis

**Hepatic impairment**

avoid—no information available

**Renal impairment**

avoid—no information available

**Pregnancy**

see Pregnancy, p. 216

**Breast-feeding**

present in milk in animal studies; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

**Diaco
d®**, stiripentol 250 mg (pink), net price 60-cap pack = £284.00; 500 mg (white), 60-cap pack = £493.00. Label: 1, 8, 21, counselling, administration

**Powder**, stiripentol 250 mg, net price 60-sachet pack = £284.00; 500 mg, 60-sachet pack = £493.00. Label: 1, 8, 13, 21, counselling, administration

**Counselling**

Do not take with milk, dairy products, carbonated drinks, fruit juice, or with food or drink that contains caffeine

**Topiramate**

Topiramate can be given alone or as adjunctive treatment in generalised tonic-clonic seizures or focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation. It can also be used as adjunctive treatment for seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome. Topiramate is also licensed for prophylaxis of migraine (section 4.7.4.2).

**Indication and dose**

Adjunctive treatment for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation not satisfactorily controlled by other antiepileptics

- By mouth
  - With enzyme-inducing drugs
    - Child 12–18 years: initially 5–10 mg in 1–2 divided doses, increased in steps of 5–10 mg daily at weekly intervals; usual maintenance dose 30–45 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses
  - Without enzyme-inducing drugs
    - Child 12–18 years: initially 5–10 mg in 1–2 divided doses; increased in steps of 5–10 mg daily at weekly intervals; initial maintenance dose 15–30 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses

**Diaco
d®** (Cephalon) Tablets, f/c, tiagabine (as hydrochloride) 5 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £61.77; 15 mg, 100-tab pack = £81.77; 15 mg, 100-tab pack = £122.66. Label: 21, counselling, driving (see notes above), hypersensitivity syndrome (see above)

**Breast-feeding**

manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

**Side-effects**

diarrhoea; dizziness, tiredness, nervousness, tremor, impaired concentration, emotional lability, speech impairment; rarely confusion, depression, drowsiness, psychosis, non-convulsive status epilepticus, bruising, and visual disturbances; suicidal ideation; leucopenia also reported

**Driving**

May impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)

**Contra-indications**

history of psychosis

**Hepatic impairment**

avoid abrupt withdrawal

**Renal impairment**

avoid—no information available

**Pregnancy**

see Pregnancy, p. 216

**Breast-feeding**

manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

**Stiripentol**

Cautions perform full blood count and liver function tests prior to initiating treatment and every 6 months thereafter; monitor growth; interactions: Appendix 1 (stiripentol)

**Counselling**

Do not take with milk, dairy products, carbonated drinks, fruit juice, or with food or drink that contains caffeine

**Diaco
d®** (Alan Pharmaceuticals) V Capsules, stiripentol 250 mg (pink), net price 60-cap pack = £284.00; 500 mg (white), 60-cap pack = £493.00. Label: 1, 8, 21, counselling, administration

**Powder**, stiripentol 250 mg, net price 60-sachet pack = £284.00; 500 mg, 60-sachet pack = £493.00. Label: 1, 8, 13, 21, counselling, administration

**Counselling**

Do not take with milk, dairy products, carbonated drinks, fruit juice, or with food or drink that contains caffeine
**Side-effects**

- nausea, diarrhoea, vomiting, constipation, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, dry mouth, taste disturbance, gastritis, appetite changes, dyspnoea, impaired attention, cognitive impairment, movement disorders, seizures, tremor, malaise, impaired coordination, speech disorder, drowsiness, dizziness, sleep disturbance, anxiety, confusion, paraesthesia, aggression, mood changes, depression, agitation, irritability, nephrolithiasis, urinary disorders, anaemia, arthralgia, muscle spasm, myalgia, muscular weakness, visual disturbances, nyctagmus, tinnitus, epistaxis, alopecia, rash, pruritus; less commonly pancreatitis, flatulence, abdominal distension, gingival bleeding, salivation, halitosis, thirst, glossodynia, bradycardia, palpitation, hypotension, postural hypotension, flushing, altered sense of smell, peripheral neuropathy, suicidal ideation, psychosis, panic attack, influenza-like symptoms, sexual dysfunction, urinary calculus, haematuria, blood disorders (including leucopenia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia), hypokalaemia, metabolic acidosis, dry eye, photophobia, blepharospasm, impaired lacrimation, mydriasis, hearing loss, reduced sweating, skin discoloration; rarely Raynaud’s syndrome, periobrital oedema, unilateral blindness, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, abnormal skin odour, calcinosis; very rarely angle-closure glaucoma; also reported hepatitis, hepatic failure, encephalopathy, hyperammonaemia, maculopathy, toxic epidermal necrolysis.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children for migraine prophylaxis

### Indication and dose

**Monotherapy of generalised tonic-clonic seizures or focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–18 years** initially 0.5–1 mg/kg (max. 25 mg) at night for 1 week then increased in steps of 250–500 micrograms/kg (max. 25 mg) twice daily at intervals of 1–2 weeks; initial target dose 50 mg twice daily; max. 7.5 mg/kg (max. 250 mg) twice daily

**Adjunctive treatment of generalised tonic-clonic seizures or focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation, adjunctive treatment of seizures in Lennox-Gastaut syndrome**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 2–18 years** initially 1–3 mg/kg (max. 25 mg) at night for 1 week then increased in steps of 0.5–1.5 mg/kg (max. 25 mg) twice daily at intervals of 1–2 weeks; usual dose 2.5–4.5 mg/kg twice daily; max. 7.5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) twice daily

**Migraine prophylaxis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 16–18 years** initially 25 mg daily at night for 1 week then increased in steps of 25 mg daily at intervals of 1 week; usual dose 50–100 mg daily in 2 divided doses; max. 200 mg daily

**Note** If child cannot tolerate titration regimens recommended above then smaller steps or longer interval between steps may be used

**Topiramate (Non-proprietary) ▼ Topmax**

- **Tablets**: topiramate 25 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £6.17; 50 mg, 60-tab pack = £10.74; 100 mg, 60-tab pack = £12.52; 200 mg, 60-tab pack = £17.21. Label: 3, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

**Capsules**: topiramate 15 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £16.61; 25 mg, 60-cap pack = £24.91; 50 mg, 60-cap pack = £40.93. Label: 3, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

**Topamax** (Janssen) ▼ Topahn

- **Tablets**: f/c, topiramate 25 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £19.29; 50 mg (light yellow), 60-tab pack = £31.69; 100 mg (yellow), 60-tab pack = £56.76; 200 mg (salmon), 60-tab pack = £110.23. Label: 3, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

**Sprinkle capsules**: topiramate 15 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £14.79; 25 mg, 60-cap pack = £22.18; 50 mg, 60-cap pack = £36.45. Label: 3, 8, counselling, administration, driving (see above)

**Counselling** Swallow whole or sprinkle contents of capsule on soft food and swallow immediately without chewing

---

**Valproate**

**Valproate** (as either sodium valproate or valproic acid) is effective in controlling tonic-clonic seizures, particularly in primary generalised epilepsy. It is a drug of choice in primary generalised epilepsy, generalised absences and myoclonic seizures, and can be tried in atypical absence, atonic, and tonic seizures. Valproate should generally be avoided in children under 2 years especially with other antiepileptics, but it may be required in infants with continuing epileptic tendency. Sodium valproate has widespread metabolic effects, and monitoring is essential (see Cautions below).

**Valproic acid** (as semisodium valproate) is licensed in adults for acute mania associated with bipolar disorder.

---

**SODIUM VALPROATE**

**Cautions** see notes above; monitor liver function before therapy and during first 6 months especially in children most at risk (see also below); measure full blood count and ensure no undue potential for bleeding before starting and before surgery; systemic lupus erythematosus; false-positive urine tests for ketones; avoid sudden withdrawal; consider vitamin D supplementation in patients that are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium; interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (valproate)

**Liver toxicity** Liver dysfunction (including fatal hepatic failure) has occurred in association with valproate especially in children under 3 years and in those with metabolic or degenerative disorders, organic brain disease or severe seizure disorders associated with mental retardation) usually in first 6 months and usually involving multiple antiepileptic therapy. Raised liver enzymes during valproate treatment are usually transient but children should be reassessed clinically and liver function (including prothrombin time) monitored until return to normal—discontinue if abnormally prolonged prothrombin time (particularly in association with other relevant abnormalities)

**Blood or hepatic disorders** Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood or liver disorders and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms develop

**Pancreatitis** Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of pancreatitis and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as abdominal pain, nausea, or vomiting develop; discontinue if pancreatitis is diagnosed
4 Central nervous system

Contra-indications  family history of severe hepatic dysfunction; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment  avoid if possible—hepatotoxicity and hepatic failure may occasionally occur (usually in first 6 months); avoid in active liver disease; see also under Cautions

Renal impairment  reduce dose; adjust dosage according to free serum valproic acid concentration

Pregnancy  see Pregnancy, p. 216; neonatal bleeding (related to hypofibrinemia) and neonatal hepatotoxicity also reported

Breast-feeding  amount too small to be harmful; see also Breast-feeding, p. 217

Side-effects  nausea, gastric irritation, diarrhoea; weight gain; hyperammonaemia, thrombocytopenia; transient hair loss (regrowth may be curty); less frequently increased alertness, aggression, hyperactivity, behavioural disturbances, ataxia, tremor, and vascu- litis; rarely hepatic dysfunction (see under Cautions); withdraw treatment immediately if persistent vomiting and abdominal pain, anorexia, jaundice, oedema, malaise, drowsiness, or loss of seizure control, lethargy, drowsiness, confusion, stupor, hallucinations, blood disorders (including anaemia, leucopenia, and pancytopenia), hearing loss, and rash; very rarely pancreatitis (see under Cautions), peripheral oedema, increase in bleeding time, extrapyramidal symptoms, encephalopathy, coma, gynaecomastia, Fanconi’s syndrome, hirsutism, enuresis, hypotenaemia, acne, toxic epidermal necrolysis, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome; suicidal ideation; reduced bone mineral density (see Cautions); also reported menstrual disturbances

Administration  for rectal administration, sodium valproate oral solution may be given rectally and retained for 15 minutes (may require dilution with water to prevent rapid expulsion). For intravenous injection, may be diluted in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and given over 3–5 minutes. For intravenous infusion, dilute injection solution with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Oral Sodium Valproate (Non-proprietary) (Symptocet)

Tablets (crushable), scored, sodium valproate 100 mg, net price 100 = £5.60. Label: 8, 21, counselling, pancreatitis, blood, or hepatic disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Tablets, e/c, sodium valproate 200 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £4.83; 500 mg, 100-tab pack = £10.09. Label: 5, 8, 25, counselling, pancreatitis, blood, or hepatic disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Brands include Orlipt®

Oral solution, sodium valproate 200 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £5.42. Label: 8, 21, counselling, pancreatitis, blood, or hepatic disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Brands include Orlipt® (sugar-free)

Epilem® (Sanofi-Aventis) (Sanoult)

Tablets (crushable), scored, sodium valproate 100 mg, net price 100 = £5.60. Label: 8, 21, counselling, pancreatitis, blood, or hepatic disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Brands include Orlipt®

Epilem Chrono® (Sanofi-Aventis) (Sanoult)

Tablets, m/r, lilac, sodium valproate 200 mg (as sodium valproate and valproic acid), net price 100-tab pack = £11.65; 300 mg, 100-tab pack = £17.47; 500 mg, 100-tab pack = £29.10. Label: 8, 21, 25, counselling, pancreatitis, blood, or hepatic disorder symptoms (see above), driving (see notes above)

Epilem Chronosphere® (Sanofi-Aventis) (Sanoult)

Granules, m/r, sodium valproate 50 mg (as sodium valproate and valproic acid), net price 30-sachet pack = £30.00; 100 mg, 30-sachet pack = £30.00; 250 mg, 30-sachet pack = £30.00; 500 mg, 30-sachet pack = £30.00; 1 g, 30-
Vigabatrin

Vigabatrin can be prescribed in combination with other antiepileptic treatment for focal epilepsy with or without secondary generalisation. It should not be prescribed unless all other appropriate drug combinations are ineffective or have not been tolerated, and it should be initiated and supervised by an appropriate specialist. Vigabatrin can be prescribed as monotherapy in the management of infantile spasms in West’s syndrome.

About one-third of those treated with vigabatrin have suffered visual field defects; counselling and careful monitoring for this side-effect are required (see also Visual Field Defects under Cautions below). Vigabatrin has prominent behavioural side-effects in some children.

**Adverse effects**

- Nausea, abdominal pain; oedema; drowsiness (rarely encephalopathic symptoms including marked sedation, stupor, and confusion with non-specific slow wave EEG—reduce dose or withdraw), fatigue, excitation, agitation, dizziness, headache, nervousness, depression, aggression, irritability, paranoia, impaired concentration, impaired memory, tremor, paraesthesia, speech disorder, weight gain, visual field defects (see under Cautions), blurred vision, nystagmus, diplopia; less commonly ataxia, psychosis, mania, and rash; occasional increase in seizure frequency (especially if myoclonic); rarely suicidal ideation and retinal disorders (including peripheral retinal neuropathy); very rarely hepatitis, optic neuritis and optic atrophy; also reported movement disorders in infantile spasms

**Indication and dose**

Adjuvant treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation not satisfactorily controlled with other antiepileptics

**By mouth**

**Neonate** initially 15–20 mg/kg twice daily increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose 30–40 mg/kg twice daily; max. 75 mg/kg twice daily

---

**Convulox**

Manufacturer advises that Convulox has a 1:1 dose relationship with products containing sodium valproate, but nevertheless care is needed in making changes
Central nervous system

Nitrazepam and clonazepam may decrease significantly after treatment of epilepsy.

Pregnancy

There is a risk of neonatal withdrawal hypotonia, coordination disturbances; also poor concentration, restlessness, confusion, amnesia, dependence, and withdrawal; salivary or bronchial hypersecretion in infants and small children; rarely gastrointestinal symptoms, respiratory depression, head-

Infantile spasms as monotherapy

By mouth

Neonate initially 15–25 mg/kg twice daily adjusted according to response over 7 days to usual maintenance dose 40–50 mg/kg twice daily; max. 75 mg/kg twice daily

Child 1 month–2 years initially 15–25 mg/kg twice daily increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose 1–1.5 g twice daily

Administration Tablets may be crushed and dispersed in liquid

Clonazepam

is occasionally used in tonic-clonic or focal seizures, but its sedative side-effects may be prominent. The effectiveness of clobazam 5 mg available on a named patient basis

Breast-feeding Benzodiazepines are present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.

Clobazam

Cautions see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Contra-indications see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 3 years

Indication and dose

Adjunctive therapy for epilepsy, monotherapy under specialist supervision for catamenial (menstruation) seizures (usually for 7–10 days each month, just before and during menstruation), cluster seizures

By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 250 micrograms/kg twice daily; max. 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, not exceeding 15 mg twice daily

Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 10–15 mg twice daily; max. 30 mg twice daily

Benzodiazepines

Clobazam may be used as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of epilepsy. Clonazepam is occasionally used in tonic-clonic or focal seizures, but its sedative side-effects may be prominent. The effectiveness of clonazepam may decrease significantly after weeks or months of continuous therapy.

Nitrazepam is used for treating infantile spasms.

Hepatic impairment Benzodiazepines can precipitate coma if used in hepatic impairment. Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose; avoid in severe impairment.

Renal impairment Children with renal impairment have increased cerebral sensitivity to benzodiazepines; start with small doses in severe impairment.

Pregnancy There is a risk of neonatal withdrawal symptoms when benzodiazepines are used during pregnancy. Avoid regular use and use only if there is a clear indication such as seizure control. High doses administered during late pregnancy or labour may cause neonatal hypothermia, hypotonia, and respiratory depression.

Breast-feeding Benzodiazepines are present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.

Clobazam

Cautions see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Contra-indications see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 3 years

Indication and dose

Adjunctive therapy for epilepsy, monotherapy under specialist supervision for catamenial (menstruation) seizures (usually for 7–10 days each month, just before and during menstruation), cluster seizures

By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 250 micrograms/kg twice daily; max. 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, not exceeding 15 mg twice daily

Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 10–15 mg twice daily; max. 30 mg twice daily

1 Clobazam (Non-proprietary) tablets, clobazam 5 mg available on a named patient basis

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Clonazepam

Cautions see notes above; respiratory depression; spinal or cerebellar ataxia; myasthenia gravis (avoid if unstable); history of alcohol or drug abuse, depression or suicidal ideation; debilitated patients; avoid sudden withdrawal; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (anxiolytics and hypnotics)

Driving Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

Contra-indications respiratory depression; acute pulmonary insufficiency; sleep apnoea syndrome; marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including unstable myasthenia gravis

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects drowsiness, fatigue, dizziness, muscle hypotonia, coordination disturbances; also poor concentration, restlessness, confusion, amnesia, dependence, and withdrawal; salivary or bronchial hypersecretion in infants and small children; rarely gastrointestinal symptoms, respiratory depression, head-

Sabril® (Sanofi-Aventis) tablets, f/c, scored, vigabatrin 500 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £30.84. Label: 3, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

Powder, sugar-free, vigabatrin 500 mg/sachet. Net price 50-sachet pack = £17.08. Label: 3, 8, 13, counselling, driving (see notes above)

Note The contents of a sachet should be dissolved in water or a soft drink immediately before taking

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>CLONAZEPAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjunctive therapy for epilepsy, monotherapy under specialist supervision for catamenial (menstruation) seizures (usually for 7–10 days each month, just before and during menstruation), cluster seizures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By mouth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years</td>
<td>initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 250 micrograms/kg twice daily; max. 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, not exceeding 15 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>initially 10 mg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 10–15 mg twice daily; max. 30 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>BENZODIAZEPINES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infantile spasms as monotherapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By mouth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>initially 15–25 mg/kg twice daily adjusted according to response over 7 days to usual maintenance dose 40–50 mg/kg twice daily; max. 75 mg/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–2 years</td>
<td>initially 15–25 mg/kg twice daily increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose 1–1.5 g twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Tablets may be crushed and dispersed in liquid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Benzo Employees can precipitate coma if used in hepatic impairment. Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose; avoid in severe impairment.

Renal impairment Children with renal impairment have increased cerebral sensitivity to benzodiazepines; start with small doses in severe impairment.

Pregnancy There is a risk of neonatal withdrawal symptoms when benzodiazepines are used during pregnancy. Avoid regular use and use only if there is a clear indication such as seizure control. High doses administered during late pregnancy or labour may cause neonatal hypothermia, hypotonia, and respiratory depression.

Breast-feeding Benzodiazepines are present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.

Clobazam

Cautions see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Contra-indications see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 3 years

Indication and dose

Adjunctive therapy for epilepsy, monotherapy under specialist supervision for catamenial (menstruation) seizures (usually for 7–10 days each month, just before and during menstruation), cluster seizures

By mouth

Child 1 month–12 years initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 250 micrograms/kg twice daily; max. 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, not exceeding 15 mg twice daily

Child 12–18 years initially 10 mg twice daily increased every 5 days to usual maintenance dose of 10–15 mg twice daily; max. 30 mg twice daily

1 Clobazam (Non-proprietary) tablets, clobazam 10 mg. Net price 30-tab pack = £4.68. Label: 2 or 19, 8, counselling, driving (see notes above)

Brands include Frisium® tablets, clobazam 5 mg available on a named patient basis

1 except for epilepsy and endorsed ‘SLS’

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Clonazepam

Cautions see notes above; respiratory depression; spinal or cerebellar ataxia; myasthenia gravis (avoid if unstable); history of alcohol or drug abuse, depression or suicidal ideation; debilitated patients; avoid sudden withdrawal; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (anxiolytics and hypnotics)

Driving Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

Contra-indications respiratory depression; acute pulmonary insufficiency; sleep apnoea syndrome; marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including unstable myasthenia gravis

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects drowsiness, fatigue, dizziness, muscle hypotonia, coordination disturbances; also poor concentration, restlessness, confusion, amnesia, dependence, and withdrawal; salivary or bronchial hypersecretion in infants and small children; rarely gastrointestinal symptoms, respiratory depression, head-
ache, paradoxical effects including aggression and anxiety, sexual dysfunction, urinary incontinence, urticaria, pruritus, reversible hair loss, skin pigmentation changes; dysarthria, and visual disturbances on long-term treatment; blood disorders reported; 

Contra-indications
Avoid abrupt withdrawal; respiratory depression, acute pulmonary insufficiency, sleep apnoea syndrome; marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including myasthenia gravis

Hepatic impairment 
see notes above

Renal impairment 
see notes above

Side-effects 
drowsiness, confusion, ataxia; see also under Diazepam (section 4.8.2); overdosage: see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 30

Licensed use 
not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Infantile spasms

• By mouth

Child 1 month–2 years initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response over 2–3 weeks to 250 micrograms/kg twice daily; max. 500 micrograms/kg (not exceeding 5 mg) twice daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses

Nitrazepam (Non-proprietary) [E41]

Oral suspension, nitrazepam 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £5.09. Label: 1, 8

Brands include Somnial

Other drugs

Acetazolamide (section 11.6), a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor, has a specific role in treating epilepsy associated with menstruation. It can also be used in conjunction with other antiepileptics for refractory tonic-clonic, absence, or focal seizures. It is occasionally helpful in atypical absence, tonic, and tonic seizures. Piracetam is used as adjunctive treatment for cortical myoclonus.

4.8.2 Drugs used in status epilepticus

Convulsive status epilepticus

Immediate measures to manage status epilepticus include positioning the child to avoid injury, supporting respiration including the provision of oxygen, maintaining blood pressure, and the correction of any hypoglycaemia. Pyridoxine (section 9.6.2) should be administered if the status epilepticus is caused by pyridoxine deficiency.

Seizures lasting longer than 5 minutes should be treated urgently with intravenous Lorazepam and repeated once after 10 minutes if seizures recur or fail to respond. Intravenous Diazepam is effective but it carries a high risk of venous thrombophlebitis (reduced by using an emulsion formulation of Diazepam injection). Nitrazepam can also be used as an alternative.

Where facilities for resuscitation are not immediately available, midazolam can be given into the buccal cavity, or diazepam can be administered as a rectal solution; the buccal route may be more acceptable in children.

Important

If, after initial treatment with benzodiazepines, seizures recur or fail to respond 20 minutes after onset, phenytoin sodium, fosphenytoin, or phenobarbital sodium should be used; the paediatric intensive care unit should be contacted.

If these measures fail to control seizures 40 minutes after onset, anaesthesia with thiopental (section 15.1.1) or midazolam (section 15.1.4) should be instituted with full intensive care support.

Phenytoin sodium can be given by slow intravenous injection, followed by the maintenance dosage if appropriate; monitor ECG and blood pressure, and reduce rate of administration if bradycardia or hypotension
## 4.8.2 Drugs used in status epilepticus

### Administration

**For intravenous injection**, dilute to a concentration of 500 micrograms/mL with Water for Injections for **intravenous infusion**, dilute to a concentration of 12 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; incompatible with bicarbonate; adsorbed on PVC—glass infusion apparatus preferred (if PVC apparatus used, complete infusion within 2 hours)

### Oral preparations

*See Section 4.8.1*

### Diazepam

#### Cautions

- Respiratory disease, muscle weakness and myasthenia gravis; history of drug or alcohol abuse, marked personality disorder; avoid prolonged use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter); when given parenterally, close observation required until full recovery from sedation; when given intravenously, facilities for reversing respiratory depression with mechanical ventilation must be at hand (but see also notes above); porphyria (section 9.8.2); **Interactions**: Appendix 1 (antibiotics and hypnotics).
- **Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced
- **Contra-indications** respiratory depression; marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including unstable myasthenia gravis; acute pulmonary insufficiency; sleep apnoea syndrome; not for chronic psychosis; should not be used alone in depression or in anxiety with depression; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see under preparations below)

### Hepatic impairment

*See Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

### Renal impairment

*See Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

### Pregnancy

*See Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

### Breast-feeding

*See Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

### Side-effects

*See Clonazepam, section 4.8.1; hypotension and apnoea*

### Indication and dose

#### Status epilepticus

- **By intravenous injection over at least 2 minutes**
  - Neonate 100 micrograms/kg repeated after 24 hours if necessary (avoid unless there is no safer alternative)
  - Child 1 month–12 years 50 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) repeated if necessary
  - Child 12–18 years 1 mg repeated if necessary
- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–12 years initially 50 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) by intravenous infusion then by intravenous infusion 10 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response; max. 60 micrograms/kg/hour
  - Child 12–18 years initially 1 mg by intravenous injection then by intravenous infusion 10 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response; max. 60 micrograms/kg/hour

### Other forms of epilepsy

#### Section 4.8.1

**Administration**

For intravenous injection, dilute to a concentration of 500 micrograms/mL with Water for Injections

For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 12 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; incompatible with bicarbonate; adsorbed on PVC—glass infusion apparatus preferred (if PVC apparatus used, complete infusion within 2 hours)

**Rivotril® (Roche)**

Injection, clonazepam 1 mg/mL in solvent, net price 1-mL amp (with 1 mL water for injections) = 60p

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates unless there is no safer alternative available; see Excipients, p. 2); ethanol, propylene glycol

### Oral preparations

*Section 4.8.1*

### Diazepam

Cautions respiratory disease, muscle weakness and myasthenia gravis; history of drug or alcohol abuse, marked personality disorder; avoid prolonged use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter); when given parenterally, close observation required until full recovery from sedation; when given intravenously, facilities for reversing respiratory depression with mechanical ventilation must be at hand (but see also notes above); porphyria (section 9.8.2); Interactions: Appendix 1 (antibiotics and hypnotics).

Skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

Contra-indications respiratory depression; marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including unstable myasthenia gravis; acute pulmonary insufficiency; sleep apnoea syndrome; not for chronic psychosis; should not be used alone in depression or in anxiety with depression; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see under preparations below)

Hepatic impairment *see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

Renal impairment *see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

Pregnancy *see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

Breast-feeding *see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1*

Side-effects drowsiness and lightheadedness the next day; confusion and ataxia; amnesia; dependence; paradoxical increase in aggression (see also section 4.1); muscle weakness; occasionally: headache, vertigo, hypotension, salivation changes, gastrointestinal disturbances, visual disturbances, dysarthria, tremor, changes in libido, incontinence, urinary retention; blood disorders and jaundice reported; skin reactions; on intravenous injection, pain, thrombophlebitis, and rarely anaphoea; overdose: see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 30

Licensed use Diazepam Rectubes® and Stesolid Rectal Tubes® not licensed for use in children under 1 year

### Indication and dose

Status epilepticus, febrile convulsions (section 4.8.3), convulsions caused by poisoning

- **By intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes**
  - Neonate 300–400 micrograms/kg repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary

**CLONAZEPAM**

**Cautions** see Clonazepam, section 4.8.1; facilities for reversing respiratory depression with mechanical ventilation must be at hand (but see also notes above) intravenous infusion Intravenous infusion of clonazepam is potentially hazardous (especially if prolonged), calling for close and constant observation and best carried out in specialist centres with intensive care facilities. Prolonged infusion may lead to accumulation and delay recovery

**Contra-indications** see Clonazepam, section 4.8.1; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see under preparations below)

**Hepatic impairment** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Renal impairment** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Pregnancy** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Breast-feeding** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Side-effects** see Clonazepam, section 4.8.1; hypotension and apnoea

**Indication and dose**

**Status epilepticus**

- **By intravenous injection over at least 2 minutes**
  - Neonate 100 micrograms/kg repeated after 24 hours if necessary (avoid unless there is no safer alternative)
  - Child 1 month–12 years 50 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) repeated if necessary
  - Child 12–18 years 1 mg repeated if necessary

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–12 years initially 50 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) by intravenous infusion then by intravenous infusion 10 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response; max. 60 micrograms/kg/hour
  - Child 12–18 years initially 1 mg by intravenous injection then by intravenous infusion 10 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response; max. 60 micrograms/kg/hour occurring. Intramuscular phenytoin should not be used (absorption is slow and erratic).

Alternatively, *fosphenytoin* (a pro-drug of phenytoin) can be given more rapidly, and when given intravenously causes fewer injection-site reactions than phenytoin. Intravenous administration requires ECG monitoring. Although it can also be given intramuscularly, absorption is too slow by this route for treatment of status epilepticus. Doses of fosphenytoin should be expressed in terms of phenytoin sodium.

**Paraldehyde** given rectally causes little respiratory depression and is therefore useful where facilities for resuscitation are poor.

For neonatal seizures, see p. 217.

**Non-convulsive status epilepticus** The urgency to treat non-convulsive status epilepticus depends on the severity of the child’s condition. If there is incomplete loss of awareness, oral antiepileptic therapy should be restarted or continued. Children who fail to respond to oral antiepileptic therapy or have complete lack of awareness can be treated in the same way as convulsive status epilepticus, although anaesthesia is rarely needed.

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates unless there is no safer alternative available; see Excipients, p. 2); ethanol, propylene glycol

**Intravenous infusion** of clonazepam is

- Initially 1 mg (max. 1 mg) repeated if necessary

Child 1 month–12 years 50 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) repeated if necessary

Child 12–18 years 1 mg repeated if necessary

- By intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes

- By intravenous infusion

Child 1 month–12 years initially 50 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) by intravenous infusion then by intravenous infusion 10 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response; max. 60 micrograms/kg/hour

Child 12–18 years initially 1 mg by intravenous injection then by intravenous infusion 10 micrograms/kg/hour adjusted according to response; max. 60 micrograms/kg/hour
Child 1 month–12 years 300–400 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
Child 12–18 years 10 mg repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  • By rectum (as rectal solution)

Neonate 1.25–2.5 mg repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary

Child 1 month–2 years 5 mg repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
Child 2–12 years 5–10 mg repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary

Muscle spasm section 10.2.2

Diazepam (Non-proprietary) (Non-proprietary) (Non-proprietary)
Injection (solution), diazepam 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 45p
Injection (emulsion), diazepam 5 mg/mL (0.5%), net price 2-mL amp = 91p
Rectal tubes (= rectal solution), diazepam 2 mg/mL, net price 1.25-mL (2.5-mg) tube = 90p; 2.5-mL (5-mg) tube = £1.41; 4 mg/mL, 2.5-mL (10-mg) tube = £1.88
Brands include Diazemuls®, Stesolid®

Oral preparations
Section 10.2.2

FOSPHENYTOIN SODIUM

Note Fosphenytoin is a pro-drug of phenytoin

Cautions see Phenytoin Sodium; resuscitation facilities must be available; interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (phenytoin)

Contra-indications see Phenytoin Sodium

Hepatic impairment consider 10–25% reduction in dose or infusion rate (except initial dose for status epilepticus)

Renal impairment consider 10–25% reduction in dose or infusion rate (except initial dose for status epilepticus)

Pregnancy see Phenytoin (section 4.8.1) and Pregnancy, p. 216

Breast-feeding see Phenytoin (section 4.8.1)

Side-effects see Phenytoin Sodium; also dry mouth, taste disturbance, vasodilatation, asthma, euphoria, incoordination, chills, visual disturbances, tinnitus, pruritus, ecchymosis; less commonly dysarthria, hypoaesthesia, increased or decreased reflexes, stupor, muscle weakness, pain, hypoacusis; also reported extrapyramidal disorder, twitching, confusion, hyperglycaemia

Important Intravenous infusion of fosphenytoin has been associated with severe cardiovascular reactions including asystole, ventricular fibrillation, and cardiac arrest. Hypotension, bradycardia, and heart block have also been reported. The following are recommended:
  • monitor heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory function for duration of infusion,
  • observe patient for at least 30 minutes after infusion;

Indication and dose
Expressed as phenytoin sodium equivalent (PE); fosphenytoin sodium 1.5 mg = phenytoin sodium 1 mg

Status epilepticus
  • By intravenous infusion (at a rate of 2–3 mg(PE)/kg/minute, max. 150 mg(PE)/minute)
Child 5–18 years initially 20 mg(PE)/kg, then (at a rate of 1–2 mg(PE)/kg/minute, max. 100 mg(PE)/minute) 4–5 mg(PE)/kg; total daily dose may be given in 1–4 divided doses; adjusted according to response and trough plasma-phenytoin concentration

Prophylaxis or treatment of seizures associated with neurosurgery or head injury
  • By intravenous infusion (at a rate of 1–2 mg(PE)/kg/minute, max. 100 mg(PE)/minute)
Child 5–18 years initially 10–15 mg(PE)/kg then 4–5 mg(PE)/kg daily; total daily dose may be given in 1–4 divided doses; adjusted according to response and trough plasma-phenytoin concentration

Temporary substitution for oral phenytoin
  • By intravenous infusion (at a rate of 1–2 mg(PE)/kg/minute, max. 100 mg(PE)/minute)
Child 5–18 years same dose and dosing frequency as oral phenytoin therapy

Note Fosphenytoin sodium doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature

Note Prescriptions for fosphenytoin sodium should state the dose in terms of phenytoin sodium equivalent (PE)

Administration for intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 1.5–25 mg (PE)/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Pro-Epanutin® (Pfizer) (Trade)
Injection, fosphenytoin sodium 75 mg/mL (equivalent to phenytoin sodium 50 mg/mL), net price 10-mL vial = £40.00
Electrolytes phosphate 3.7 micromol/mg fosphenytoin sodium (phosphate 5.6 micromol/mg phenytoin sodium)

LORAZEPAM

Cautions see Diazepam; facilities for reversing respiratory depression with mechanical ventilation must be available

Contra-indications see Diazepam

Hepatic impairment see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

Renal impairment see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

Pregnancy see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

Breast-feeding see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

Side-effects see Diazepam; hypotension and apnoea

Licensed use not licensed for use in febrile convulsions or convulsions caused by poisoning
### Indication and dose

**Status epilepticus, febrile convulsions (section 4.8.3), convulsions caused by poisoning**

- **By slow intravenous injection**
  - **Neonate** 100 micrograms/kg as a single dose, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 100 micrograms/kg (max. 4 mg) as a single dose, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 12–18 years** 4 mg as a single dose, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary

**Peri-operative use**

Section 15.1.4.1

**Administration** for intravenous injection, dilute with an equal volume of Sodium Chloride 0.9% (for neonates, dilute injection solution to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL)

**Preparations**

Section 15.1.4

**MIDAZOLAM**

- **Cautions** see Midazolam, section 15.1.4.1
- **Contra-indications** see Midazolam, section 15.1.4.1
- **Hepatic impairment** see Midazolam, section 15.1.4.1
- **Renal impairment** see Midazolam, section 15.1.4.1
- **Pregnancy** see Midazolam, section 15.1.4.1
- **Breast-feeding** see Midazolam, section 15.1.4.1
- **Side-effects** injection not licensed for use in status epilepticus or febrile convulsions

**Indication and dose**

**Status epilepticus, febrile convulsions (section 4.8.3)**

- **By buccal administration**
  - **Neonate** 300 micrograms/kg, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 1–6 months** 300 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg), repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 6 months–1 year** 2.5 mg, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 1–5 years** 5 mg, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 5–10 years** 7.5 mg, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  - **Child 10–18 years** 10 mg, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary

- **By intravenous administration**
  - **Neonate** initially by intravenous injection 150–200 micrograms/kg followed by continuous intravenous infusion of 60 micrograms/kg/hour (increased by 60 micrograms/kg/hour every 15 minutes until seizure controlled); max. 300 micrograms/kg/hour
  - **Neonate** initially 20 mg/kg then 2.5–5 mg/kg once or twice daily
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 20 mg/kg then 2.5–5 mg/kg once or twice daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 20 mg/kg (max. 1 g) then 300 mg twice daily

**PARALDEHYDE**

- **Cautions** bronchopulmonary disease; interactions: Appendix 1 (paraldehyde)
- **Contra-indications** gastric disorders; rectal administration in colitis
- **Hepatic impairment** use with caution
- **Pregnancy** avoid unless essential—crosses placenta
- **Breast-feeding** avoid unless essential—present in milk
- **Side-effects** rash
- **Licensed use** not licensed for use in children as an enema

**Indication and dose**

**Status epilepticus**

- **By rectum (doses expressed as undiluted paraldehyde)**
  - **Neonate** 0.4 mL/kg as a single dose
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 0.4 mL/kg (max. 10 mL) as a single dose

**Administration** for rectal administration, do not administer paraldehyde undiluted

**Paraldehyde (Non-proprietary)**

Enema, 8–50%, available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**PHENOBARBITAL SODIUM**

Phenobarbital sodium

- **Cautions** see Phenobarbital, section 4.8.1; interactions: see p. 215 and Appendix 1 (phenobarbital)
- **Hepatic impairment** see Phenobarbital, section 4.8.1
- **Renal impairment** see Phenobarbital, section 4.8.1
- **Pregnancy** see Pregnancy, p. 216
- **Breast-feeding** see Phenobarbital, section 4.8.1
- **Side-effects** see Phenobarbital, section 4.8.1

**Indication and dose**

**Status epilepticus**

- **By slow intravenous injection (no faster than 1 mg/kg/minute)**
  - **Neonate** initially 20 mg/kg then 2.5–5 mg/kg once or twice daily
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** initially 20 mg/kg then 2.5–5 mg/kg once or twice daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 20 mg/kg (max. 1 g) then 300 mg twice daily
4.8.3 Febrile convulsions

Brief febrile convulsions need no specific treatment; antipyretic medication (e.g. paracetamol, section 4.7.1) is commonly used to reduce fever and prevent further convulsions but evidence to support this practice is lacking. Prolonged febrile convulsions (those lasting 5 minutes or longer), or recurrent febrile convulsions without recovery, must be treated actively (as for convulsive status epilepticus section 4.8.2).

Long-term anticonvulsant prophylaxis for febrile convulsions is rarely indicated.

4.9 Drugs used in dystonias and related disorders

4.9.1 Dopaminergic drugs used in dystonias

Levodopa, the amino-acid precursor of dopamine, acts by replenishing depleted striatal dopamine. It is given with an extracerebral dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor, which reduces the peripheral conversion of levodopa to dopamine, thereby limiting side-effects such as nausea, vomiting, and cardiovascular effects; additionally, effective brain-dopamine concentrations can be achieved with lower doses of levodopa. The extracerebral dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor most commonly used in children is carbidopa (in co-careldopa).

Levodopa therapy should be initiated at a low dose and increased in small steps; the final dose should be as low as possible. Intervals between doses should be chosen to suit the needs of the individual child.

In severe dystonias related to cerebral palsy, improvement can be expected within 2 weeks. Children with Segawa syndrome are particularly sensitive to levodopa; they may even become symptom free on small doses. Levodopa also has a role in treating metabolic disorders such as defects in tetrahydrobiopterin synthesis and...
dihydrobiopterin reductase deficiency. For the use of tetrahydrobiopterin in metabolic disorders see section 9.4.1.

Children may experience nausea within 2 hours of taking a dose; nausea and vomiting with co-careldopa is rarely dose-limiting, but domperidone (section 4.6) can be useful in controlling these effects.

In dystonic cerebral palsy, treatment with larger doses of levodopa is associated with the development of potentially troublesome motor complications (including response fluctuations and dyskinesias). Response fluctuations are characterised by large variations in motor performance, with normal function during the ‘on’ period, and weakness and restricted mobility during the ‘off’ period.

Sudden onset of sleep
Excessive daytime sleepiness and sudden onset of sleep can occur with co-careldopa.

Children starting treatment with these drugs, and their carers, should be warned of the risk and of the need to exercise caution when performing skilled tasks e.g. driving or operating machinery. Children who have experienced excessive sedation or sudden onset of sleep should refrain from performing skilled tasks until these effects have stopped occurring. Management of excessive daytime sleepiness should focus on the identification of an underlying cause, such as depression or concomitant medication. Children, and their carers, should be counselled on improving sleep behaviour.

CO-CARELDOPA
A mixture of carbidopa and levodopa; the proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of carbidopa and levodopa respectively.

Cautions see also notes above; pulmonary disease, peptic ulceration, cardiovascular disease (including history of myocardial infarction with residual arrhythmia), diabetes mellitus, osteomalacia, susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma, history of skin melanoma (risk of activation), psychiatric illness (avoid if severe and discontinue if deterioration); warn children and carers about excessive drowsiness (see notes above); in prolonged therapy, psychiatric, hepatic, haematological, renal, and cardiovascular surveillance is advisable; warn patients to return for routine activities gradually; avoid abrupt withdrawal; interactions: Appendix 1 (levodopa)

Pregnancy use with caution—toxicity in animal studies
Breast-feeding may suppress lactation; present in milk—avoid

Side-effects see also notes above; anorexia, nausea and vomiting, insomnia, agitation, postural hypotension (rarely labile hypertension), dizziness, tachycardia, arrhythmias, reddish discoloration of urine and other body fluids; rarely hyperpyrexia; very rarely angle-closure glaucoma; abnormal involuntary movements and psychiatric symptoms which include hypomania and psychosis may be dose-limiting; depression, drowsiness, headache, flushing, sweating, gastro-intestinal bleeding, peripheral neuropathy, taste disturbance, pruritus, rash, and liver enzyme changes also reported; syndrome resembling neuroleptic malignant syndrome reported on withdrawal

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Dopamine-sensitive dystonias including Segawa syndrome and dystonias related to cerebral palsy

- By mouth, expressed as levodopa
  Child 3 months–18 years initially 250 micrograms/kg 2–3 times daily of a preparation containing 1:4 carbidopa:levodopa; increased according to response every 2–3 days to max. 1 mg/kg three times daily

Treatment of defects in tetrahydrobiopterin synthesis and dihydrobiopterin reductase deficiency

- By mouth, expressed as levodopa
  Neonate initially 250–500 micrograms/kg 4 times daily of a preparation containing 1:4 carbidopa:levodopa, increased according to response every 4–5 days to maintenance dose of 2.5–3 mg/kg 4 times daily; at higher doses consider preparation containing 1:10 carbidopa:levodopa; review regularly (every 3–6 months)

Child 1 month–18 years initially 250–500 micrograms/kg 4 times daily of a preparation containing 1:4 carbidopa:levodopa, increased according to response every 4–5 days to maintenance dose of 2.5–3 mg/kg 4 times daily; at higher doses consider preparation containing 1:10 carbidopa:levodopa; review regularly (every 3–6 months in early childhood)

Co-careldopa (Non-proprietary) tablets

- Tablets, co-careldopa 10/100 (carbidopa 10 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 100 mg), net price 100-tab pack = £7.30. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above
- Tablets, co-careldopa 25/100 (carbidopa 25 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 100 mg), net price 100-tab pack = £24.45. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above
- Tablets, co-careldopa 25/250 (carbidopa 25 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 250 mg), net price 100-tab pack = £34.58. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above

Sinemet (MSD) tablets

- Sinemet-62.5® tablets, yellow, scored, co-careldopa 12.5/50 (carbidopa 12.5 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 50 mg), net price 90-tab pack = £8.28. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above
- Sinemet-110® tablets, blue, scored, co-careldopa 10/100 (carbidopa 10 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 100 mg), net price 90-tab pack = £6.57. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above
- Sinemet-Plus® tablets, yellow, scored, co-careldopa 25/100 (carbidopa 25 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 100 mg), net price 90-tab pack = £9.66. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above
- Sinemet-275® tablets, blue, scored, co-careldopa 25/250 (carbidopa 25 mg (anhydrous), levodopa 250 mg), net price 90-tab pack = £13.72. Label: 14, counselling, skilled tasks, see notes above
4.9.2 Antimuscarinic drugs used in dystonias

The antimuscarinic drugs procyclidine and trihexyphenidyl reduce the symptoms of dystonias, including those induced by antipsychotic drugs; there is no justification for giving them routinely in the absence of dystonic symptoms. Tardive dyskinesia is not improved by antimuscarinic drugs and may be made worse.

There are no important differences between the antimuscarinic drugs, but some children tolerate one better than another. Procyclidine can be given parenterally and is effective emergency treatment for acute drug-induced dystonic reactions.

Cautions Antimuscarinics should be used with caution in cardiovascular disease, hypertension, psychotic disorders, pyrexia, and in those susceptible to angle-closure glaucoma. Antimuscarinics should not be withdrawn abruptly in children taking long-term treatment. Antimuscarinics are liable to abuse.

Interactions: Appendix 1 (Antimuscarinics).

Skilled tasks Antimuscarinics can affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

Contra-indications Antimuscarinics should be avoided in gastro-intestinal obstruction and myasthenia gravis.

Hepatic and renal impairment Procyclidine and trihexyphenidyl should be used with caution in children with hepatic or renal impairment.

Side-effects Side-effects of antimuscarinics include constipation, dry mouth, nausea, vomiting, tachycardia, dizziness, confusion, euphoria, hallucinations, impaired memory, anxiety, restlessness, urinary retention, blurred vision, and rash. Angle-closure glaucoma occurs very rarely.

**PROCYCLIDINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

Cautions see notes above; Interactions: Appendix 1 (antimuscarinics).

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding avoid

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

**Dystonia**

- By mouth

  **Child 3 months–18 years** initially 1–2 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased every 3–7 days by 1 mg daily; adjusted according to response and side-effects; max. 2 mg/kg daily

  **Child 10–18 years** 5–10 mg (occasionally more than 10 mg)

  Note Usually effective in 5–10 minutes but may need 30 minutes for relief

  **Procyclidine** (Non-proprietary) Tablets, procyclidine hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £2.77. Counselling, driving

  **Arpicon®** (Rosemont) Syrup, sugar-free, procyclidine hydrochloride 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £4.22; 5 mg/5 mL, 150 mL pack = £7.54. Counselling, driving

  **Kemadrin®** (Aspen) Tablets, scored, procyclidine hydrochloride 5 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £4.72. Counselling, driving

  **Kemadrin®** (Auden Mckenzie) Injection, procyclidine hydrochloride 5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £1.49

**TRIHEXYYPHENIDYL HYDROCHLORIDE** (Benzhexol hydrochloride)

Cautions see notes above; Interactions: Appendix 1 (antimuscarinics).

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding avoid

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Dystonia**

- By mouth

  **Child 7–12 years** 1.25 mg 3 times daily

  **Child 12–18 years** 2.5 mg 3 times daily

  **Acute dystonia**

    - By intramuscular or intravenous injection

      **Child under 2 years** 0.5–2 mg as a single dose

      **Child 2–10 years** 2–5 mg as a single dose

**4.9.3 Drugs used in essential tremor, chorea, tics, and related disorders**

Haloperidol can improve motor tics and symptoms of Tourette syndrome and related choras (see section 4.2.1). Other treatments for Tourette syndrome include pimozide (p. 176) [unlicensed indication] (important: ECG monitoring required) and sulpiride (p. 176) [unlicensed indication].

Propranolol or another beta-adrenoceptor blocking drug (section 2.4) may be useful in treating essential
4.10 Drugs used in substance dependence

This section includes drugs used in the treatment of neonatal abstinence syndrome and cigarette smoking.


**Concomitant medication**

Cigarette smoking increases the metabolism of some medicines by stimulating the hepatic enzyme CYP1A2. When smoking is discontinued, the dose of these drugs, in particular theophylline p. 142 and some antipsychotics (including clozapine p. 178, olanzapine p. 179, chlorpromazine p. 174, and haloperidol p. 174), may need to be reduced. Regular monitoring for adverse effects is advised.

**Neonatal abstinence syndrome**

Neonatal abstinence syndrome occurs at birth as a result of intrauterine exposure to opioids or high-dose benzodiazepines.

**BOTULINUM TOXIN TYPE A**

**Cautions**

- Neurological disorders (can lead to increased sensitivity and exaggerated muscle weakness);
- Excessive weakness or atrophy in target muscle; history of dysphagia or aspiration; chronic respiratory disorder.

**Contra-indications**

Generalised disorders of muscle activity (e.g. myasthenia gravis); injection at injection site.

**Pregnancy**

Low risk of systemic absorption but avoid unless essential.

**Breast-feeding**

Low risk of systemic absorption but avoid unless essential.

**Side-effects**

- Increased electrophysiologic jitter in some distant muscles; misplaced injections may paralyse nearby muscle groups and excessive doses may paralyse distant muscles; influenza-like symptoms, rarely arthrythmias, myocardial infarction, seizures, hypersensitivity reactions including rash, pruritus and anaphylaxis, antibody formation (substantial deterioration in response); very rarely exaggerated muscle weakness, dysphagia, and aspiration (seek medical attention if swallowing, speech, or respiratory disorder).

**Specific side-effects in paediatric cerebral palsy**

Drowniness, paraesthesia, urinary incontinence, myalgia.

**Indication and dose**

In children over 2 years for dynamic equinus foot deformity caused by spasticity in ambulant paediatric cerebral palsy for dose consult product literature (important: information specific to each individual preparation and not interchangeable).

**Botox®** (Allergan)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, botulinum toxin type A complex, net price 50-unit vial = £77.50, 100-unit vial = £138.20, 200-unit vial = £276.40.

**Dysport®** (Ipsen)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, botulinum type A toxin-geomagglutinin complex, net price 300-unit vial = £92.40, 500-unit vial = £154.00.

**4.10.1 Alcohol dependence**

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

**4.10.2 Nicotine dependence**

Smoking cessation interventions are a cost-effective way of reducing ill health and prolonging life. Smokers should be advised to stop and offered help with follow-up when appropriate. If possible, smokers should have access to smoking cessation services for behavioural support.

Therapy to aid smoking cessation is chosen according to the smoker’s likely compliance, availability of counselling and support, previous experience of smoking-cessation aids, contra-indications and adverse effects of the preparations, and the smoker’s preferences. Nicotine replacement therapy is an effective aid to smoking cessation. The use of nicotine replacement preparations in an individual who is already accustomed to nicotine introduces few new risks and it is widely accepted that there are no circumstances in which it is safer to smoke than to use nicotine replacement therapy.

Some individuals benefit from having more than one type of nicotine replacement therapy prescribed, such as a combination of transdermal and oral preparations.
Nicotine replacement therapy

Nicotine replacement therapy can be used in place of cigarettes after abrupt cessation of smoking, or alternatively to reduce the amount of cigarettes used in advance of making a quit attempt. Nicotine replacement therapy can also be used to minimise passive smoking, and to treat cravings and reduce compensatory smoking after enforced abstinence in smoke-free environments. Smokers who find it difficult to achieve abstinence should consult a healthcare professional for advice.

Choice
Nicotine patches are a prolonged-release formulation and are applied for 16 hours (with the patch removed overnight) or for 24 hours. If the individual experiences strong cravings for cigarettes on waking, a 24-hour patch may be more suitable. Immediate-release nicotine preparations (gum, lozenges, sublingual tablets, inhalator, nasal spray, and oral spray) are used whenever the urge to smoke occurs. The choice of nicotine replacement preparation depends largely on patient preference, and should take into account what preparations, if any, have been tried before. Patients with a high level of nicotine dependence, or who have failed with nicotine replacement therapy previously, may benefit from using a combination of an immediate-release preparation and patches to achieve abstinence.

All preparations are licensed for children over 12 years (with the exception of Nicotinell® lozenges which are licensed for children under 18 years only when recommended by a doctor).

Cautions
Most warnings for nicotine replacement therapy also apply to continued cigarette smoking, but the risk of continued smoking outweighs any risks of using nicotine preparations. Nicotine replacement therapy should be used with caution in haemodynamically unstable patients hospitalised with severe arrhythmias, myocardial infarction, or cerebrovascular accident, and in patients with phaeochromocytoma or uncontrolled hyperthyroidism. Care is also needed in individuals with diabetes mellitus—blood-glucose concentration should be monitored closely when initiating treatment. Specific cautions for individual preparations are usually related to the local effect of nicotine. Oral preparations should be used with caution in patients with oesophagitis, gastritis, or peptic ulcers because swallowed nicotine can aggravate these conditions. The gum may also stick to and damage dentures. Acidic beverages, such as coffee or fruit juice, may decrease the absorption of nicotine through the buccal mucosa and should be avoided for 15 minutes before the use of oral nicotine replacement therapy. Care should be taken with the inhalation cartridges in patients with obstructive lung disease, chronic throat disease, or bronchospastic disease. The nasal spray can cause worsening of bronchial asthma. Patchs should not be placed on broken skin and should be used with caution in patients with skin disorders.

Hepatic impairment
Nicotine replacement therapy should be used with caution in moderate to severe hepatic impairment.

Renal impairment
Nicotine replacement therapy should be used with caution in severe renal impairment.

Pregnancy
The use of nicotine replacement therapy in pregnancy is preferable to the continuation of smoking, but should be used only if smoking cessation without nicotine replacement fails. Intermittent therapy is preferable to patches but avoid liquorice-flavoured nicotine products. Patches are useful however, if the young woman is experiencing pregnancy-related nausea and vomiting. If patches are used, they should be removed before bed.

Breast-feeding
Nicotine is present in milk; however, the amount to which the infant is exposed is small and less hazardous than second-hand smoke. Intermittent therapy is preferred.

Side-effects
Some systemic effects occur on initiation of therapy, particularly if the individual is using high-strength preparations; however, the individual may confuse side-effects of the nicotine-replacement preparation with nicotine withdrawal symptoms. Common symptoms of nicotine withdrawal include malaise, headache, dizziness, sleep disturbance, coughing, influenza-like symptoms, depression, irritability, increased appetite, weight gain, restlessness, anxiety, drowsiness, aphthous ulcers, decreased heart rate, and impaired concentration. Mild topical reactions at the beginning of treatment are common because of the irritant effect of nicotine. Oral preparations and inhalation cartridges can cause irritation of the throat, gum, lozenges, and oral spray can cause increased salivation, and patches can cause minor skin irritation. The nasal spray commonly causes coughing, nasal irritation, epistaxis, sneezing, and watery eyes; the oral spray can cause watery eyes and blurred vision. Gastro-intestinal disturbances are common and may be caused by swallowed nicotine. Nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, and hiccup occur most frequently. Ulcerative stomatitis has also been reported. Dry mouth is a common side-effect of lozenges, patches, oral spray, and sublingual tablets. Lozenges cause diarrhoea, constipation, dysphagia, oesophagitis, gastritis, mouth ulcers, bloating, flatulence, and less commonly, taste disturbance. The oral spray may also cause abdominal pain, flatulence, and taste disturbance. Palpitations may occur with nicotine replacement therapy and rarely patches and oral spray can cause arrhythmia. Patches, lozenges, and oral spray can cause chest pain. Paraesthesia is a common side-effect of oral spray. Abnormal dreams can occur with patches; removal of the patch before bed may help. Lozenges and oral spray may cause rash and hot flushes. Sweating and myalgia can occur with patches and oral spray; the patches can also cause arthralgia.

Nicotine medicated chewing gum
Individuals who smoke fewer than 20 cigarettes each day should use one piece of 2-mg strength gum when the urge to smoke occurs; individuals who smoke more than 20 cigarettes each day or who require more than 15 pieces of 2-mg strength gum each day should use the 4-mg strength. Individuals should not exceed 15 pieces of 4-mg strength gum daily. If attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 3 months before reducing the dose.
4.10.2 Nicotine dependence

**Administration** Chew the gum until the taste becomes strong, then rest it between the cheek and gum; when the taste starts to fade, repeat this process. One piece of gum lasts for approximately 30 minutes.

**Nicotine inhalation cartridge** The cartridges can be used when the urge to smoke occurs or to prevent cravings, up to a maximum of 12 cartridges daily.

**Administration** Insert the cartridge into the device and draw in air through the mouthpiece. The amount of nicotine from 1 puff of the cartridge is less than that from a cigarette, therefore it is necessary to inhale more often than when smoking a cigarette. A single cartridge lasts for approximately 20 minutes of intense use.

**Nicotine lozenge** One lozenge should be used every 1–2 hours when the urge to smoke occurs. Individuals who smoke less than 20 cigarettes each day should usually use the lower-strength lozenges; individuals who smoke more than 20 cigarettes each day and those who fail to stop smoking with the low-strength lozenges should use the higher-strength lozenges. Individuals should not exceed 15 lozenges daily. If attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 6–12 weeks before attempting a reduction in dose.

**Administration** Slowly allow each lozenge to dissolve in the mouth; periodically move the lozenge from one side of the mouth to the other. Lozenges last for 10–30 minutes, depending on their size.

**Nicotine sublingual tablets** Individuals who smoke fewer than 20 cigarettes each day should initially use 1 tablet each hour, increased to 2 tablets each hour if necessary; individuals who smoke more than 20 cigarettes each day should use 2 tablets each hour. Individuals should not exceed 40 tablets daily. If attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for up to 3 months before reducing the dose.

**Administration** Each tablet should be placed under the tongue and allowed to dissolve.

**Nicotine oral spray** Individuals can use 1–2 sprays in the mouth when the urge to smoke occurs. Individuals should not exceed 2 sprays per episode (up to 4 sprays every hour), and a maximum of 64 sprays daily.

**Administration** The oral spray should be released into the mouth, holding the spray as close to the mouth as possible and avoiding the lips. The individual should not inhale while spraying and avoid swallowing for a few seconds after use.

Note If using the oral spray for the first time, or if unit not used for 2 or more days, prime the unit before administration.

**Nicotine nasal spray** Individuals can use 1 spray in each nostril when the urge to smoke occurs, up to twice every hour for 16 hours daily (maximum 64 sprays daily). If attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 8 weeks before reducing the dose.

**Administration** Initially 1 spray should be used in both nostrils but when withdrawing from therapy, the dose can be gradually reduced to 1 spray in 1 nostril.

**Nicotine transdermal patch** As a general guide for smoking cessation, individuals who smoke more than 10 cigarettes daily should apply a high-strength patch daily for 6–8 weeks, followed by the medium-strength patch for the final 2 weeks; individuals who smoke fewer than 10 cigarettes daily can usually start with the medium-strength patch for 6–8 weeks, followed by the low-strength patch for 2–4 weeks. A slower titration schedule can be used in patients who are not ready to quit but want to reduce cigarette consumption before a quit attempt.

If abstinence is not achieved, or if withdrawal symptoms are experienced, the strength of the patch used should be maintained or increased until the patient is stabilised. Individuals using the high-strength patch who experience excessive side-effects, that do not resolve within a few days, should change to a medium-strength patch for the remainder of the initial period and then use the low-strength patch for 2–4 weeks.

**Administration** Patches should be applied on waking to dry, non-hairy skin on the hip, trunk, or upper arm and held in position for 10–20 seconds to ensure adhesion; place next patch on a different area and avoid using the same site for several days.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NICOTINE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cautions see notes above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic impairment see notes above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal impairment see notes above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy see notes above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast-feeding see notes above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side-effects see notes above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

**Nicorette** (McNeil) Tablets (sublingual) (Nicorette Microtab®), nicotine (as a cyclodextrin complex) 2 mg, net price starter pack of 2 × 15-tablet discs with dispenser = £4.46; pack of 100 = £12.12. Label: 26, counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Also available as NicAssist® Excipients lemon flavour includes aspartame (section 9.4.1)

**Chewing gum** sugar-free, nicotine (as resin) 2 mg, net price pack of 30 = £3.41, pack of 105 = £9.37, pack of 210 = £14.82; 4 mg, pack of 30 = £3.99, pack of 105 = £11.48, pack of 210 = £18.24. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Available in mint, freshfruit, freshmint, and icy white flavours (icy white flavour not available for pack size of 210 pieces). Also available as NicAssist®

**Mint lozenge** sugar-free, nicotine (as bitartrate) 2 mg, net price pack of 24 = £2.55, pack of 96 = £8.29. Label: 24, counselling, administration, see notes above

**Patches**, self-adhesive, beige, nicotine, ‘5 mg’ patch (releasing approx. 5 mg/16 hours), net price 7 = £9.07; ‘10 mg’ patch (releasing approx. 10 mg/16 hours), 7 = £9.07; ‘15 mg’ patch (releasing approx. 15 mg/16 hours), 2 = £2.85, 7 = £9.07. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Also available as NicAssist®

**Invisi patches**, self-adhesive, beige, nicotine, ‘10 mg’ patch (releasing approx. 10 mg/16 hours), net price 7 = £9.97; ‘15 mg’ patch (releasing approx. 15 mg/16 hours), 7 = £9.97; ‘25 mg’ patch (releasing approx. 25 mg/16 hours), 7 = £9.97. Counselling, administration, see notes above

**Oral spray** (Nicorette Quickmist® mouthspray), nicotine 1 mg/metered dose, net price 150-dose pack...
= £11.48, 2 x 150-dose pack = £18.50. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Contains < 100 mg ethanol per dose

Nasal spray, nicotine 500 micrograms/metered spray, net price 200-spray unit = £13.40. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Also available as NicAssist®

Inhalator (nicotine-impregnated plug for use in inhalator mouthpiece), nicotine 10 mg/cartridge, net price 6-cartridge (starter) pack = £4.46, 42-cartridge (refill) pack = £14.01. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Also available as NicAssist®

Nicotinell® (Novartis Consumer Health)

Chewing gum, sugar-free, nicotine (as polacrilin complex) 2 mg, net price pack of 12 = £1.71, pack of 24 = £3.01, pack of 96 = £8.26, pack of 204 = £14.23; 4 mg, pack of 12 = £1.70, pack of 24 = £3.30, pack of 96 = £10.26. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Note Also available in fruit, liquorice, and mint flavours

Mint lozenge, sugar-free, nicotine (as bitartrate) 1 mg, net price pack of 12 = £1.71, pack of 36 = £4.27, pack of 96 = £9.12, 2 mg, pack of 12 = £1.99, pack of 36 = £4.95, pack of 96 = £10.60. Label: 24, counselling, administration, see notes above

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

TTS Patches, self-adhesive, all yellowish-ochre, nicotine, '10' patch (releasing approx. 7 mg/24 hours), net price 7 = £9.12; '20' patch (releasing approx. 14 mg/24 hours), net price 2 = £2.57, 7 = £9.40; '30' patch (releasing approx. 21 mg/24 hours), net price 2 = £2.85, 7 = £9.97, 21 = £24.51. Counselling, administration, see notes above

NiQuitin® (GSK Consumer Healthcare)

Chewing gum, sugar-free, mint-flavour, nicotine 2 mg (white), net price pack of 12 = £1.71, pack of 24 = £2.85, pack of 96 = £8.55; 4 mg (yellow), pack of 12 = £1.71, pack of 24 = £2.85, pack of 96 = £8.55. Counselling, administration, see notes above

Lozenges, sugar-free, nicotine (as resinate) 1.5 mg (cherry- and mint-flavoured), net price pack of 20 = £3.18, pack of 60 = £8.93; nicotine (as polacrilex) 2 mg (mint-flavoured), pack of 36 = £5.12, pack of 72 = £9.97; nicotine (as resinate) 4 mg (mint-flavoured), pack of 20 = £3.18, pack of 60 = £8.93, nicotine (as polacrilex) 4 mg (mint-flavoured) pack of 36 = £5.12, pack of 72 = £9.97. Label: 24, counselling, administration, see notes above

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1); contains 0.65 mmol Na⁺/lozenge

Note Nicotine (as polacrilex) also available as Niquitin® Pre-quit lozenges. Nicotine (as resinate) available as Niquitin® Minis lozenges

Note Also available as a clear patch

4.11 Drugs for dementia

Classification not used in BNF for Children.
### 5 Infections

#### 5.1 Antibacterial drugs

- **5.1.1 Penicillins**
  - Benzylpenicillin and phenoxy-methylpenicillin
  - Penicillinase-resistant penicillins
  - Broad-spectrum penicillins
  - Antipseudomonal penicillins
  - Mecillinams

- **5.1.2 Cephalosporins, carbapenems, and other beta-lactams**
  - Cephalosporins
  - Carbapenems
  - Other beta-lactam antibiotics
  - Tetracyclines
  - Aminoglycosides
  - Macrolides
  - Clindamycin
  - Some other antibacterials
  - Sulfonamides and trimethoprim

- **5.1.3 Antituberculosis drugs**

- **5.1.4 Antileprotic drugs**

- **5.1.5 Metronidazole**

- **5.1.6 Quinolones**

- **5.1.7 Some other antibacterials**

- **5.1.8 Sulfonamides and trimethoprim**

- **5.1.9 Antituberculosis drugs**

- **5.1.10 Antileprotic drugs**

- **5.1.11 Metronidazole**

- **5.1.12 Quinolones**

- **5.1.13 Urinary-tract infections**

#### 5.2 Antifungal drugs

- **5.2.1 Triazole antifungals**
- **5.2.2 Imidazole antifungals**
- **5.2.3 Polyene antifungals**
- **5.2.4 Echinocandin antifungals**
- **5.2.5 Other antifungals**

#### 5.3 Antiviral drugs

- **5.3.1 HIV infection**
- **5.3.2 Herpesvirus infections**
- **5.3.2.1 Herpes simplex and varicella-zoster infection**
- **5.3.2.2 Cytomegalovirus infection**
- **5.3.3 Viral hepatitis**
- **5.3.4 Influenza**
- **5.3.5 Respiratory syncytial virus**

#### 5.4 Antiprotozoal drugs

- **5.4.1 Antimalarials**
- **5.4.2 Amoebicides**
- **5.4.3 Trichomonacides**
- **5.4.4 Anti- giardial drugs**
- **5.4.5 Leishmaniacides**
- **5.4.6 Trypanocides**
- **5.4.7 Drugs for toxoplasmosis**
- **5.4.8 Drugs for pneumocystis pneumonia**

#### 5.5 Anthelmintics

- **5.5.1 Drugs for threadworms**
- **5.5.2 Ascaricides**
- **5.5.3 Drugs for tapeworm infections**
- **5.5.4 Drugs for hookworms**
- **5.5.5 Schistosomicides**
- **5.5.6 Filaricides**
- **5.5.7 Drugs for cutaneous larva migrans**
- **5.5.8 Drugs for strongyloidiasis**

---

This chapter includes advice on the drug management of the following:
- anthrax, p. 297
- bacterial infections: table 1, summary of antibacterial treatment, p. 244
- bacterial infections: table 2, summary of antibacterial prophylaxis, p. 254
- Lyme disease, p. 261
- MRSA infections, p. 259
- oral infections, p. 244 and p. 251
Notifiable diseases
Doctors must notify the Proper Officer of the local authority (usually the consultant in communicable disease control) when attending a patient suspected of suffering from any of the diseases listed below; a form is available from the Proper Officer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anthrax</td>
<td>Mumps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botulism</td>
<td>Paratyphoid fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brucellosis</td>
<td>Plague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholera</td>
<td>Poliomyelitis, acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhoea (infectious bloody)</td>
<td>Rabies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphtheria</td>
<td>Rubella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encephalitis, acute</td>
<td>SARS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food poisoning</td>
<td>Scarlet fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemolytic uraemic syndrome</td>
<td>Smallpox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemorrhagic fever (viral)</td>
<td>Streptococcal disease (Group A, invasive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis, viral</td>
<td>Tetanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legionnaires’ disease</td>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leprosy</td>
<td>Typhoid fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaria</td>
<td>Typhus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles</td>
<td>Whooping cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis</td>
<td>Yellow fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningococcal septicaemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note It is good practice for doctors to also inform the consultant in communicable disease control of instances of other infections (e.g. psittacosis) where there could be a public health risk.

5.1 Antibacterial drugs

5.1.1 Penicillins
5.1.2 Cephalosporins, carbapenems, and other beta-lactams
5.1.3 Tetracyclines
5.1.4 Aminoglycosides
5.1.5 Macrolides
5.1.6 Clindamycin
5.1.7 Some other antibacterials
5.1.8 Sulfonamides and trimethoprim
5.1.9 Antituberculosis drugs
5.1.10 Antileptic drugs
5.1.11 Metronidazole
5.1.12 Quinolones
5.1.13 Urinary-tract infections

Choice of a suitable drug Before selecting an antibacterial the clinician must first consider two factors—the child and the known or likely causative organism. Factors related to the child which must be considered include history of allergy, renal and hepatic function, susceptibility to infection (i.e. whether immunocompromised), ability to tolerate drugs by mouth, severity of illness, ethnic origin, age and, if an adolescent female, whether pregnant, breast-feeding or taking an oral contraceptive. The known or likely organism and its antibacterial sensitivity, in association with the above factors, will suggest one or more antibacterials, the final choice depending on the microbiological, pharmacological, and toxicological properties.

The principles involved in selection of an antibacterial must allow for a number of variables including age, changing renal and hepatic function, increasing bacterial resistance, and new information on side-effects. Duration of therapy, dosage, and route of administration depend on site, type and severity of infection and response.

Antibacterial policies Local policies often limit the antibacterials that may be used to achieve reasonable economy consistent with adequate cover, and to reduce the development of resistant organisms. A policy may indicate a range of drugs for general use, and permit other drugs only on the advice of the microbiologist or paediatric infectious diseases specialist.

Before starting therapy The following principles should be considered before starting:

• Viral infections should not be treated with antibacterials. However, antibacterials may be indicated for treatment of secondary bacterial infection (e.g. bacterial pneumonia secondary to influenza);
• Samples should be taken for culture and sensitivity testing whenever possible; ‘blind’ antibacterial prescribing for unexplained pyrexia usually leads to further difficulty in establishing the diagnosis;
• Knowledge of prevalent organisms and their current sensitivity is of great help in choosing an antibacterial before bacteriological confirmation is available. Generally, narrow-spectrum antibacterials are preferred to broad-spectrum antibacterials unless there is a clear clinical indication (e.g. life-threatening sepsis);
• The dose of an antibacterial varies according to a number of factors including age, weight, hepatic function, renal function, and severity of infection. The prescribing of the so-called ‘standard’ dose in serious infections may result in failure of treatment or even death of the patient; therefore it is important to prescribe a dose appropriate to the condition. An inadequate dose may also increase the likelihood of antibacterial resistance. On the other hand, for an antibacterial with a narrow margin between the toxic and therapeutic dose (e.g. an aminoglycoside) it is also important to avoid an excessive dose and the concentration of the drug in the plasma may need to be monitored;
• The route of administration of an antibacterial often depends on the severity of the infection. Life-threatening infections often require intravenous therapy. Antibacterials that are well absorbed may be given by mouth even for some serious infections. Far-
enteral administration is also appropriate when the oral route cannot be used (e.g. because of vomiting) or if absorption is inadequate (e.g. in neonates and young children). Whenever possible painful intramuscular injections should be avoided in children.

- **Duration** of therapy depends on the nature of the infection and the response to treatment. Courses should not be unduly prolonged because they encourage resistance, they may lead to side-effects and they are costly. However, in certain infections such as tuberculosis or osteomyelitis it may be necessary to treat for prolonged periods.

**Oral bacterial infections** Antibacterial drugs should only be prescribed for the treatment of oral infections on the basis of defined need. They may be used in conjunction with (but not as an alternative to) other appropriate measures, such as providing drainage or extracting a tooth.

The ‘blind’ prescribing of an antibacterial for unexplained pyrexia, cervical lymphadenopathy, or facial swelling can lead to difficulty in establishing the diagnosis. A sample should always be taken for bacteriology in the case of severe oral infection. Oral infections which may require antibacterial treatment include acute periapical or periodontal abscess, cellulitis, acute necrotising ulcerative gingivitis, and destructive forms of chronic periodontal disease. Most of these infections are readily resolved by the early establishment of drainage and removal of the cause (typically an infected necrotic pulp). Antibacterials may be required if treatment has to be delayed, in immunocompromised patients, or in those with conditions such as diabetes. Certain rarer infections including bacterial sialadenitis, osteomyelitis, actinomycosis, and infections involving fascial spaces such as Ludwig’s angina, require antibiotics and specialist hospital care. Antibacterial drugs may also be useful after dental surgery in some cases of spreading infection. Infection may spread to involve local lymph nodes, to fascial spaces (where it can cause airway obstruction), or into the bloodstream (where it can lead to cavernous sinus thrombosis and other serious complications). Extension of an infection can also lead to maxillary sinusitis; osteomyelitis is a complication, which usually arises when host resistance is reduced.

If the oral infection fails to respond to antibacterial treatment within 48 hours the antibacterial should be changed, preferably on the basis of bacteriological investigation. Failure to respond may also suggest an incorrect diagnosis, lack of essential additional measures (such as drainage), poor host resistance, or poor patient compliance.

Combination of a penicillin (or erythromycin) with metronidazole may sometimes be helpful for the treatment of severe or resistant oral infections. See also Penicillins (section 5.1.1), Cephalosporins (section 5.1.2.1), Tetracyclines (section 5.1.3), Macrolides (section 5.1.5), Clindamycin (section 5.1.6), Metronidazole (section 5.1.11), Fusidic acid (section 13.10.1.2).

**Superinfection** In general, broad-spectrum antibacterial drugs such as the cephalosporins are more likely to be associated with adverse reactions related to the selection of resistant organisms e.g. fungal infections or antibiotic-associated colitis (pseudomembranous colitis); other problems associated with superinfection include vaginitis and pruritus ani.

**Therapy** Suggested treatment is shown in Table 1. When the pathogen has been isolated treatment may be changed to a more appropriate antibacterial if necessary. If no bacterium is cultured the antibacterial can be continued or stopped on clinical grounds. Infections for which prophylaxis is useful are listed in table 2.

**Switching from parenteral to oral treatment** The ongoing parenteral administration of an antibacterial should be reviewed regularly. In older children it may be possible to switch to an oral antibacterial; in neonates and infants this should be done more cautiously because of the relatively high incidence of bacteraemia and the possibility of variable oral absorption.

**Prophylaxis** Infections for which antibacterial prophylaxis is useful are listed in Table 2. In most situations, only a short course of prophylactic antibacterial is needed. Longer-term antibacterial prophylaxis is appropriate in specific indications such as vesico-ureteric reflux.

### Table 1. Summary of antibacterial therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gastro-Intestinal system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gastro-enteritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequently self-limiting and may not be bacterial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibacterial not usually indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Campylobacter enteritis
Frequently self-limiting; treat if immunocompromised or if severe infection.
Clarithromycin
Alternative, ciprofloxacin

Salmonella (non-typhoid)
Treat invasive or severe infection. Do not treat less severe infection unless there is a risk of developing invasive infection (e.g. immunocompromised children, those with haemoglobinopathy, or children under 6 months of age).
Ciprofloxacin or cefotaxime

Shigellosis
Antibacterial not indicated for mild cases.
Azithromycin or ciprofloxacin
Alternatives if micro-organism sensitive, amoxicillin or trimethoprim

Typhoid fever
Infections from Middle-East, South Asia, and South-East Asia may be multiple-antibacterial-resistant and sensitivity should be tested.
Cefotaxime
Azithromycin may be an alternative in mild or moderate disease caused by multiple-antibacterial-resistant micro-organisms
Alternative, ciprofloxacin or chloramphenicol
Strains with decreased sensitivity to ciprofloxacin being isolated

Clostridium difficile infection
Oral metronidazole
Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days
For third or subsequent episode of infection, for severe infection, for infection not responding to metronidazole, or in children intolerant of metronidazole, oral vancomycin
Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days
For infection not responding to vancomycin, or for life-threatening infection, or in patients with ileus, oral vancomycin + i/v metronidazole
Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days

Necrotising enterocolitis in neonates
Benzylpenicillin + gentamicin + metronidazole or amoxicillin + gentamicin + metronidazole or amoxicillin + cefotaxime + metronidazole

Peritonitis
A cephalosporin + metronidazole or amoxicillin + gentamicin + metronidazole or piperacillin with tazobactam alone

Peritonitis: peritoneal dialysis-associated
Vancomycin* + ceftazidime added to dialysis fluid or vancomycin added to dialysis fluid + ciprofloxacin by mouth
Suggested duration of treatment 14 days or longer

---
1 Where clarithromycin is suggested azithromycin or erythromycin may be used
2 Where cefotaxime is suggested ceftriaxone may be used
3 Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
4 Where vancomycin is suggested teicoplanin may be used
Cardiovascular system

Endocarditis: initial ‘blind’ therapy
Flucloxacillin (or benzylpenicillin if symptoms less severe) + gentamicin
If cardiac prostheses present, or if penicillin-allergic, or if meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* suspected, vancomycin + rifampicin + gentamicin

Endocarditis caused by *staphylococci*
Flucloxacillin
Add rifampicin for at least 2 weeks in prosthetic valve endocarditis.
*Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)
If penicillin-allergic or if meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, vancomycin + rifampicin
*Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)

Endocarditis caused by *streptococci* (e.g. viridans streptococci)
Benzylpenicillin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks
Alternative if a large vegetation, intracardial abscess, or infected emboli are absent, benzylpenicillin + gentamicin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 2 weeks
If penicillin-allergic, vancomycin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks

Endocarditis caused by *enterococci* (e.g. *Enterococcus faecalis*)
Amoxicillin + gentamicin
If gentamicin-resistant, substitute gentamicin with streptomycin.
*Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)
If penicillin-allergic or penicillin-resistant, vancomycin + gentamicin
If gentamicin-resistant, substitute gentamicin with streptomycin.
*Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)

Endocarditis caused by *HACEK* micro-organisms
Amoxicillin + gentamicin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks (6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis); stop gentamicin after 2 weeks
If amoxicillin-resistant, ceftriaxone + gentamicin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks (6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis); stop gentamicin after 2 weeks

1. Where vancomycin is suggested teicoplanin may be used
2. Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
Respiratory system

Haemophilus influenzae epiglottitis
Cefotaxime
If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, chloramphenicol

Pneumonia: uncomplicated community-acquired
Neonate and child under 6 months, treat as for severe community-acquired pneumonia of unknown aetiology
Child 6 months–18 years, oral amoxicillin
Pneumococci with decreased penicillin sensitivity being isolated, but not yet common in UK.
If staphylococci suspected (e.g. in influenza or measles), add flucloxacillin.
Suggested duration of treatment 7 days (14–21 days for infections caused by staphylococci)
Child 6 months–18 years, if penicillin-allergic or if atypical pathogens suspected, oral clarithromycin
Suggested duration of treatment 7 days (14–21 days for infections caused by staphylococci)

Pneumonia: severe community-acquired of unknown aetiology
Neonate, benzylpenicillin + gentamicin
Child 1 month–18 years, co-amoxiclav or cefuroxime
Suggested duration of treatment 7–10 days (may extend treatment to 14–21 days in some cases e.g. if staphylococci or Gram-negative enteric bacilli suspected)
Child 1 month–18 years, if atypical pathogens such as mycoplasma (more common in children over 5 years) or chlamydia suspected, or if penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin
Suggested duration of treatment 7–10 days (may extend treatment to 14–21 days in some cases e.g. if staphylococci or Gram-negative enteric bacilli suspected)

Pneumonia possibly caused by atypical pathogens
Clarithromycin
Alternative for chlamydial or mycoplasma infections in children over 12 years, doxycycline
Suggested duration of treatment 14 days

Pneumonia: hospital-acquired
Early-onset infection (less than 5 days after admission to hospital), treat as for severe community-acquired pneumonia of unknown aetiology; if life-threatening infection, or if recent history of antibacterial treatment, or if resistant organisms suspected, treat as for late-onset hospital-acquired pneumonia
Late-onset infection (more than 5 days after admission to hospital), an antipseudomonal penicillin (e.g. piperacillin with tazobactam) or another antipseudomonal beta-lactam
If meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus suspected, add vancomycin.
If severe illness caused by Pseudomonas aeruginosa, add an aminoglycoside.
Suggested duration of treatment 7 days (longer if Pseudomonas aeruginosa confirmed)

Cystic fibrosis

Staphylococcal lung infection in cystic fibrosis
Flucloxacillin
If child already taking flucloxacillin prophylaxis or if severe exacerbation, add sodium fusidate or rifampicin; use flucloxacillin at treatment dose
If penicillin-allergic and if micro-organism sensitive, clarithromycin
Alternative if penicillin-allergic, clindamycin

Haemophilus influenzae lung infection in cystic fibrosis
Amoxicillin or a broad-spectrum cephalosporin
In severe exacerbation use a third-generation cephalosporin (e.g. cefotaxime)

Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis
Ciprofloxacin + nebulised colistimethate sodium
For severe exacerbation, an antipseudomonal beta-lactam antibacterial + parenteral tobramycin

1. Where cefotaxime is suggested ceftriaxone may be used
2. Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
3. Where clarithromycin is suggested azithromycin or erythromycin may be used
Central nervous system

Meningitis: initial empirical therapy

- Transfer patient to hospital urgently.
- If meningococcal disease (meningitis with non-blanching rash or meningococcal septicaemia) suspected, benzylpenicillin (see p. 258 for dose) should be given before transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer. If a patient with suspected bacterial meningitis without non-blanching rash cannot be transferred to hospital urgently, benzylpenicillin (see p. 258 for dose) should be given before the transfer. Cefotaxime (section 5.1.2) may be an alternative in penicillin allergy; chloramphenicol (section 5.1.7) may be used if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillins or to cephalosporins.
- In hospital, consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone (section 6.3.2), preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial; avoid dexamethasone in septic shock, meningococcal septicaemia, or if immunocompromised, or in meningitis following surgery.
- In hospital, if aetiology unknown:
  - Neonate and child 1–3 months: cefotaxime \( ^1 \) + amoxicillin \( ^2 \)
    Consider adding vancomycin if prolonged or multiple use of other antibacterials in the last 3 months, or if travelled, in the last 3 months, to areas outside the UK with highly penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci
    Suggested duration of treatment at least 14 days
  - Child 3 months–18 years: cefotaxime
    Consider adding vancomycin if prolonged or multiple use of other antibacterials in the last 3 months, or if travelled, in the last 3 months, to areas outside the UK with highly penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci
    Suggested duration of treatment at least 10 days

Meningitis caused by group B streptococcus
Benzylpenicillin + gentamicin or cefotaxime \( ^1 \) alone
Suggested duration of treatment at least 14 days

Meningitis caused by meningococci
Benzylpenicillin or cefotaxime \( ^1 \)
Suggested duration of treatment 7 days.
To eliminate nasopharyngeal carriage in patients treated with benzylpenicillin or cefotaxime see Table 2, section 5.1
If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, chloramphenicol
Suggested duration of treatment 7 days.
To eliminate nasopharyngeal carriage see Table 2, section 5.1

Meningitis caused by pneumococci
Cefotaxime
Consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone (section 6.3.2), preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial (may reduce penetration of vancomycin into cerebrospinal fluid).
If micro-organism penicillin-sensitive, replace cefotaxime with benzylpenicillin.
If micro-organism highly penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant, add vancomycin and if necessary rifampicin.
Suggested duration of antibacterial treatment 14 days

Meningitis caused by Haemophilus influenzae
cefotaxime
Consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone (section 6.3.2), preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial.
Suggested duration of antibacterial treatment 10 days.
For H. influenzae type b give rifampicin for 4 days before hospital discharge (see Table 2, section 5.1)
If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, or if micro-organism resistant to cefotaxime, chloramphenicol
Consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone (section 6.3.2), preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial.
Suggested duration of antibacterial treatment 10 days.
For H. influenzae type b give rifampicin for 4 days before hospital discharge (see Table 2, section 5.1)

Meningitis caused by Listeria
Amoxicillin \( ^2 \) + gentamicin
Suggested duration of treatment 21 days.
Consider stopping gentamicin after 7 days
If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin, co-trimoxazole
Suggested duration of treatment 21 days.

1. Where cefotaxime is suggested ceftiraxone may be used
2. Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
Urinary tract

Urinary-tract infection

Child under 3 months of age, i/v amoxicillin\(^1\) + gentamicin or i/v cephalosporin alone

Child over 3 months of age with uncomplicated lower urinary-tract infection, trimethoprim or nitrofurantoin

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 3 days.
- **Re-assess child if unwell 24–48 hours after initial assessment**

Child over 3 months of age, alternative for uncomplicated lower urinary-tract infection, amoxicillin\(^1\) or oral cephalosporin (e.g. cefalexin)

Use amoxicillin only if micro-organism sensitive.

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 3 days.
- **Re-assess child if unwell 24–48 hours after initial assessment**

Child over 3 months of age with acute pyelonephritis, a cephalosporin or co-amoxiclav

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 7–10 days

Genital system

Neonatal congenital syphilis

Benzylpenicillin

Also consider treating neonates with suspected congenital syphilis whose mothers were treated inadequately for syphilis, or whose mothers were treated for syphilis in the 4 weeks before delivery, or whose mothers were treated with non-penicillin antibacterials for syphilis.

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 10 days

Syphilis

Contact tracing recommended.

Child under 12 years, benzylpenicillin or procaine benzylpenicillin [unlicensed]

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 10 days

Child 12–18 years, early syphilis (infection of less than 2 years), benzathine benzylpenicillin [unlicensed]

- **Suggested duration of treatment** single-dose (repeat dose after 7 days for females in the third trimester of pregnancy)

Child 12–18 years, alternatives for early syphilis, doxycycline or erythromycin

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 14 days

Child 12–18 years, late latent syphilis (asymptomatic infection of more than 2 years), benzathine benzylpenicillin [unlicensed]

- **Suggested duration of treatment** once weekly for 2 weeks

Child 12–18 years, alternative for late latent syphilis, doxycycline

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 28 days

Child 12–18 years who is an asymptomatic contact of a patient with infectious syphilis, doxycycline

- **Suggested duration of treatment** 14 days

Gonorrhoea: uncomplicated

Contact tracing recommended. Consider chlamydia co-infection. Choice of antibacterial depends on locality where infection acquired.

Child under 12 years, ceftriaxone

- **Suggested duration of treatment** single-dose

Child 12–18 years, cefixime

- **Suggested duration of treatment** single-dose

Child 12–18 years, alternative if micro-organism sensitive, ciprofloxacin

- **Suggested duration of treatment** single-dose

Child 12–18 years with pharyngeal infection, ceftriaxone

- **Suggested duration of treatment** single-dose

---

\(^1\) Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
Uncomplicated genital chlamydial infection, non-gonococcal urethritis and non-specific genital infection
Contact tracing recommended.

**Child under 12 years**, erythromycin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 14 days

**Child 12–18 years**, azithromycin or doxycycline
*Suggested duration of treatment* azithromycin as a single dose or doxycycline for 7 days

**Child 12–18 years, alternative**, erythromycin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 14 days

Pelvic inflammatory disease
Contact tracing recommended

**Child 2–12 years**, erythromycin + metronidazole + i/m ceftriaxone
*Suggested duration of treatment* 14 days (use i/m ceftriaxone as a single dose)

**Child 12–18 years**, doxycycline + metronidazole + i/m ceftriaxone
If severely ill, seek specialist advice.
*Suggested duration of treatment* 14 days (use i/m ceftriaxone as a single dose)

Septicaemia

**Neonate less than 48 hours old**, benzylpenicillin + gentamicin or amoxicillin¹ + cefotaxime

**Neonate more than 48 hours old**, flucloxacillin + gentamicin or amoxicillin¹ + cefotaxime

**Child 1 month–18 years with community-acquired septicaemia**, aminoglycoside + amoxicillin² or cefotaxime² alone
- If pseudomonas suspected, use a broad-spectrum antipseudomonal beta-lactam antibacterial.
- If anaerobic infection suspected, add metronidazole.
- If Gram-positive infection suspected, add flucloxacillin or vancomycin³.

**Child 1 month–18 years with hospital-acquired septicaemia**, a broad-spectrum antipseudomonal beta-lactam antibacterial (e.g. piperacillin with tazobactam, ticarcillin with clavulanic acid, imipenem with cilastatin, or meropenem)
- If pseudomonas suspected, or if multiple-resistant organisms suspected, or if severe sepsis, add aminoglycoside.
- If meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* suspected, add vancomycin³.
- If anaerobic infection suspected, add metronidazole to a broad-spectrum cephalosporin

Septicaemia related to vascular catheter

**Vancomycin³**
- If Gram-negative sepsis suspected, especially in the immunocompromised, add a broad-spectrum antipseudomonal beta-lactam.
- Consider removing vascular catheter, particularly if infection caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*, pseudomonas, or candida

Meningococcal septicaemia
If meningococcal disease suspected, a single dose of benzylpenicillin (see p. 258 for dose) should be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer; cefotaxime (section 5.1.2) may be an alternative in penicillin allergy; chloramphenicol may be used if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins.

**Benzylpenicillin or cefotaxime²**
- To eliminate nasopharyngeal carriage in patients treated with benzylpenicillin or cefotaxime see Table 2, section 5.1

*If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins*, chloramphenicol
- To eliminate nasopharyngeal carriage see Table 2, section 5.1

¹ Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
² Where cefotaxime is suggested ceftriaxone may be used
³ Where vancomycin is suggested teicoplanin may be used
Osteomyelitis
Seek specialist advice if chronic infection or prostheses present.

**Flucloxacillin**
Consider adding fusidic acid or rifampicin for initial 2 weeks.
*Suggested duration of treatment* 6 weeks for acute infection

If *penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin
Consider adding fusidic acid or rifampicin for initial 2 weeks.
*Suggested duration of treatment* 6 weeks for acute infection

If *meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus suspected*, vancomycin
Consider adding fusidic acid or rifampicin for initial 2 weeks.
*Suggested duration of treatment* 6 weeks for acute infection

Septic arthritis
Seek specialist advice if prostheses present.

**Flucloxacillin**
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated)

If *penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated)

If *meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus suspected*, vancomycin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated)

If *gonococcal arthritis or Gram-negative infection suspected*, cefotaxime
*Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated; treat gonococcal infection for 2 weeks)

Eye

Purulent conjunctivitis
*Neonate*, chloramphenicol or neomycin eye drops
See also section 11.3.1

*Child 1 month–18 years*, chloramphenicol eye-drops
See also section 11.3.1

Congenital chlamydial conjunctivitis
Erythromycin (by mouth)
*Suggested duration of treatment* 14 days

Congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis
Cefotaxime
*Suggested duration of treatment* single-dose

Ear, nose, and oropharynx

Pericoronitis
Antibacterial required only in presence of systemic features of infection, or of trismus, or persistent swelling despite local treatment.

**Metronidazole**
*Suggested duration of treatment* 3 days or until symptoms resolve

Alternative, amoxicillin
*Suggested duration of treatment* 3 days or until symptoms resolve

---

1. Where vancomycin is suggested teicoplanin may be used
2. Where cefotaxime is suggested ceftriaxone may be used
Gingivitis: acute necrotising ulcerative
Antibacterial required only if systemic features of infection.
- **Metronidazole**
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 3 days or until symptoms resolve
- **Alternative, amoxicillin**
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 3 days or until symptoms resolve

Periapical or periodontal abscess
Antibacterial required only in severe disease with cellulitis or if systemic features of infection.
- **Amoxicillin**
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 5 days
- **Alternative, metronidazole**
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 5 days

Periodontitis
Antibacterial used as an adjunct to debridement in severe disease or disease unresponsive to local treatment alone.
- **Metronidazole**
  - *Alternative in child over 12 years, doxycycline*

Throat infections
Most throat infections are caused by viruses and many do not require antibacterial therapy. Consider antibacterial, if history of valvular heart disease, if marked systemic upset, if peritonsillar cellulitis or abscess, or if at increased risk from acute infection (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis); prescribe antibacterial for beta-haemolytic streptococcal pharyngitis.
- **Phenoxymethylpenicillin**
  - In severe infection, initial parenteral therapy with benzylpenicillin, then oral therapy with phenoxymethylpenicillin or amoxicillin. Avoid amoxicillin if possibility of glandular fever, see section 5.1.1.3.
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 10 days
- **If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin**
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 10 days

Sinusitis
Antibacterial should usually be used only for persistent symptoms and purulent discharge lasting at least 7 days or if severe symptoms. Also, consider antibacterial for those at high risk of serious complications (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis).
- **Amoxicillin** or clarithromycin
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days.
  - Consider oral co-amoxiclav if no improvement after 48 hours.
  - In severe infection, initial parenteral therapy with co-amoxiclav or cefuroxime may be required

Otitis externa
Consider systemic antibacterial if spreading cellulitis or child systemically unwell.
For topical preparations see section 12.1.1.
- **Flucloxacillin**
- **If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin**
- **If pseudomonas suspected, ciprofloxacin (or an aminoglycoside)**

Otitis media
Many infections caused by viruses. Most uncomplicated cases resolve without antibacterial treatment. In children without systemic features, antibacterial treatment may be started after 72 hours if no improvement. Consider earlier treatment if deterioration, if systemically unwell, if at high risk of serious complications (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis), if mastoiditis present, or in children under 2 years of age with bilateral otitis media.
- **Amoxicillin**
  - Consider co-amoxiclav if no improvement after 48 hours.
  - In severe infection, initial parenteral therapy with co-amoxiclav or cefuroxime.
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 5 days (longer if severely ill)
- **If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin**
  - *Suggested duration of treatment* 5 days (longer if severely ill)

1. Where amoxicillin is suggested ampicillin may be used
2. Where clarithromycin is suggested azithromycin or erythromycin may be used
Impetigo: small areas of skin infected
Seek local microbiology advice before using topical treatment in hospital.
  
  **Topical fusidic acid**
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days is usually adequate (max. 10 days)
  
  **Alternative if meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus, topical mupirocin**
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days is usually adequate (max. 10 days)

**Impetigo: widespread infection**

  **Oral flucloxacillin**
  
  If streptococci suspected in severe infection, add phenoxymethylpenicillin.
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days
  
  If *penicillin-allergic*, oral clarithromycin
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days

**Erysipelas**

  **Phenoxyemethylpenicillin or benzylpenicillin**
  
  If staphylococci suspected, replace phenoxymethylpenicillin or benzylpenicillin with flucloxacillin.
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment at least* 7 days
  
  If *penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin or clarithromycin
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment at least* 7 days

**Cellulitis: mild or moderate**

  **Flucloxacillin**
  
  If streptococcal infection confirmed, replace flucloxacillin with phenoxymethylpenicillin or benzylpeni-
  
  cillin.
  
  If Gram-negative bacteria or anaerobes suspected (e.g. facial infection, orbital infection, or infection caused
  
  by animal or human bites), use broad-spectrum antibacterials
  
  If *penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin or clarithromycin
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment at least* 7 days

**Cellulitis: severe**

  **Benzylpenicillin + flucloxacillin**
  
  If oral treatment required, replace benzylpenicillin with phenoxymethylpenicillin.
  
  If streptococcal infection confirmed, discontinue flucloxacillin.
  
  If Gram-negative bacteria or anaerobes suspected, use broad-spectrum antibacterials
  
  If *penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin or clarithromycin
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7–10 days

**Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome**

  **Flucloxacillin**
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7–10 days
  
  If *penicillin-allergic*, clarithromycin
  
  *Suggested duration of treatment* 7–10 days

**Animal and human bites**

  Cleanse wound thoroughly. For tetanus-prone wound, give human tetanus immunoglobulin (with a tetanus-
  containing vaccine if necessary, according to immunisation history and risk of infection), see under Tetanus
  Vaccines, section 14.4. Consider rabies prophylaxis (section 14.4) for bites from animals in endemic countries;
  assess risk of blood-borne viruses.
  
  **Co-amoxiclav**
  
  If *penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin

**Acne**

  See section 13.6.

**Paronychia or ‘septic spots’ in neonate**

  **Flucloxacillin**
  
  If systemically unwell, add an aminoglycoside

**Surgical wound infection**

  **Flucloxacillin or co-amoxiclav**

---

1. Where clarithromycin is suggested azithromycin or erythromycin may be used
### Table 2. Summary of antibacterial prophylaxis

#### Prevention of recurrence of rheumatic fever

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phenoxymethylpenicillin by mouth</td>
<td>Child 1 month–6 years</td>
<td>125 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 6–18 years</td>
<td>250 mg twice daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythromycin by mouth</td>
<td>Child 1 month–2 years</td>
<td>125 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 2–18 years</td>
<td>250 mg twice daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prevention of secondary case of invasive group A streptococcal infection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phenoxymethylpenicillin by mouth</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>12.5 mg/kg (max. 62.5 mg) every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–1 year</td>
<td>62.5 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1–6 years</td>
<td>125 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 6–12 years</td>
<td>250 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>250–500 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If child penicillin allergic, either erythromycin by mouth:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–2 years</td>
<td>125 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 2–8 years</td>
<td>250 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 8–18 years</td>
<td>250–500 mg every 6 hours for 10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

or azithromycin by mouth [unlicensed indication]:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 6 months–12 years</td>
<td>12 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) once daily for 5 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg once daily for 5 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prevention of secondary case of meningococcal meningitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ciprofloxacin by mouth [unlicensed indication]</td>
<td>Child 1 month–5 years</td>
<td>125 mg as a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 5–12 years</td>
<td>250 mg as a single dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg as a single dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rifampicin by mouth</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–1 year</td>
<td>5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1–12 years</td>
<td>10 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) every 12 hours for 2 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>600 mg every 12 hours for 2 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxone by intramuscular injection [unlicensed indication]</td>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years</td>
<td>125 mg as a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>250 mg as a single dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prevention of secondary case of Haemophilus influenzae type b disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rifampicin by mouth</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1–3 months</td>
<td>10 mg/kg once daily for 4 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 3 months–12 years</td>
<td>20 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) once daily for 4 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>600 mg once daily for 4 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prevention of secondary case of diphtheria in non-immune patient

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Erythromycin³ by mouth</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>7.5 mg/kg twice daily for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–2 years</td>
<td>125 mg every 6 hours for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 2–8 years</td>
<td>250 mg every 6 hours for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 8–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg every 6 hours for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Treat for further 10 days if nasopharyngeal swabs positive after first 7 days’ treatment. For immunisation again diphtheria see section 14.4.

#### Prevention of pertussis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dose/Route</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clarithromycin⁴ by mouth</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>7.5 mg/kg twice daily for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years</td>
<td>125 mg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body-weight under 8 kg</td>
<td>7.5 mg/kg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body-weight 8–11 kg</td>
<td>62.5 mg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body-weight 12–19 kg</td>
<td>125 mg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body-weight 20–29 kg</td>
<td>187.5 mg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body-weight 30–40 kg</td>
<td>250 mg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg twice daily for 7 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Within 3 weeks of onset of cough in the index case, give antibacterial prophylaxis to vulnerable close contacts and to other close contacts who are in contact with vulnerable individuals. Vulnerable contacts include neonates, unimmunised or partially immunised children under 10 years of age, females in the last month of pregnancy, the immunocompromised, or those with chronic illness (e.g. asthma, congenital heart disease). For immunisation against pertussis see section 14.4.

³ Where erythromycin is suggested another macrolide (e.g. azithromycin or clarithromycin) may be used.

⁴ Where clarithromycin is suggested erythromycin or azithromycin may be used.

---

1. For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact a consultant in communicable disease control (or a consultant in infectious diseases or the local Health Protection Agency Laboratory).

2. For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact a consultant in communicable disease control (or a consultant in infectious diseases or the local Health Protection Agency laboratory). Unless there has been direct exposure of the mouth or nose to infectious droplets from a patient with meningococcal disease who has received less than 24 hours of antibacterial treatment, healthcare workers do not generally require chemoprophylaxis.

3. For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact a consultant in communicable disease control (or a consultant in infectious diseases or the local Health Protection Agency Laboratory). Unless there has been direct exposure of the mouth or nose to infectious droplets from a patient with meningococcal disease who has received less than 24 hours of antibacterial treatment, healthcare workers do not generally require chemoprophylaxis.

4. Where clarithromycin is suggested another macrolide (e.g. azithromycin or clarithromycin) may be used.

5. Where erythromycin is suggested another macrolide (e.g. azithromycin or clarithromycin) may be used.

254 5.1 Antibacterial drugs

BNFC 2011–2012

Infections
**Prevention of pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease**

Phenoxymethylpenicillin by mouth

**Child under 1 year**
- 62.5 mg twice daily

**Child 1–5 years**
- 125 mg twice daily

**Child 5–18 years**
- 250 mg twice daily

If cover also needed for *H. influenzae* in child give amoxicillin instead

**Child 1 month–5 years**
- 125 mg twice daily

**Child 5–12 years**
- 250 mg twice daily

**Child 12–18 years**
- 500 mg twice daily

If penicillin-allergic, erythromycin by mouth

**Child 1 month–2 years**
- 125 mg twice daily

**Child 2–8 years**
- 250 mg twice daily

**Child 8–18 years**
- 500 mg twice daily

**Prevention of Staphylococcus aureus lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

**Primary prevention**, flucloxacillin by mouth

**Neonate**
- 125 mg every 12 hours

**Child 1 month–3 years**
- 125 mg every 12 hours

**Secondary prevention**, flucloxacillin by mouth

**Child 1 month–18 years**
- 50 mg/kg (max. 1 g) every 12 hours

**Prevention of tuberculosis in susceptible close contacts or those who have become tuberculin positive**

Isoniazid for 6 months

**Neonate**
- 10 mg/kg daily

**Child 1 month –12 years**
- 10 mg/kg daily (max. 300 mg daily)

**Child 12–18 years**
- 300 mg daily

or isoniazid + rifampicin for 3 months

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- isoniazid 10 mg/kg daily (max. 300 mg daily) + rifampicin 10 mg/kg daily (max. 450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg; max. 600 mg daily if body-weight over 50 kg)

**Child 12–18 years**
- isoniazid 300 mg daily + rifampicin 600 mg daily (rifampicin 450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg)

or (if isoniazid-resistant tuberculosis) rifampicin for 6 months

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- 10 mg/kg daily (max. 450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg; max. 600 mg daily if body-weight over 50 kg)

**Child 12–18 years**
- 600 mg daily (450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg)

**Note**
- Antibacterial prophylaxis is not fully reliable; for vaccines in asplenia see p. 602. Antibacterial prophylaxis may be discontinued in children over 5 years of age with sickle-cell disease who have received pneumococcal immunisation.

**Prevention of urinary-tract infection**

Trimethoprim by mouth

**Neonate**
- 2 mg/kg at night

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- 2 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) at night

**Child 6 weeks–6 months**
- 12.5 mg at night

**Child 6 months–6 years**
- 25 mg at night

**Child 6–12 years**
- 50 mg at night

**Child 12–18 years**
- 100 mg at night

**or**

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- 10 mg/kg daily (max. 450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg; max. 600 mg daily if body-weight over 50 kg)

**Child 12–18 years**
- 600 mg daily (450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg)

**Prevention of gas-gangrene in high lower-limb amputations or following major trauma**

**I/v benzylpenicillin**

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- 25 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) every 6 hours for 5 days

**Child 12–18 years**
- 300–600 mg every 6 hours for 5 days

**or**

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- 7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) every 8 hours for 5 days

**Child 12–18 years**
- 400–500 mg every 8 hours for 5 days

**or**

**Child 1 month–12 years**
- 10 mg/kg daily (max. 450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg; max. 600 mg daily if body-weight over 50 kg)

**Child 12–18 years**
- 600 mg daily (450 mg daily if body-weight less than 50 kg)

**Prevention of infection in gastro-intestinal procedures**

**Operations on stomach or oesophagus**

- Single dose$^3$ of i/v gentamicin or i/v cefuroxime or i/v co-amoxiclav

  **Add** i/v teicoplanin$^4$ if high risk of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*

**Open biliary surgery**

- Single dose$^3$ of i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole or i/v gentamicin + i/v metronidazole or i/v co-amoxiclav alone

  **Add** i/v teicoplanin$^4$ if high risk of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*

---

1. For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact the lead clinician for local tuberculosis services (or a consultant in communicable disease control). See also section 5.1.9, for advice on immunocompromised patients and on prevention of tuberculosis.

2. Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

3. Additional intra-operative or postoperative doses of antibacterial may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss.

4. Where teicoplanin is suggested vancomycin may be used.

5. Metronidazole may alternatively be given by suppository but to allow adequate absorption, it should be given 2 hours before surgery.
Resections of colon and rectum, and resections in inflammatory bowel disease, and appendicectomy

- Single dose of i/v gentamicin + i/v metronidazole or i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole or i/v co-amoxiclav alone
- Add i/v teicoplanin if high risk of meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography

- Single dose of i/v gentamicin or oral or i/v ciprofloxacin
- Prophylaxis recommended if pancreatic pseudocyst, immunocompromised, history of liver transplantation, or risk of incomplete biliary drainage. For biliary complications following liver transplantation, add i/v amoxicillin or i/v vancomycin

Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy or jejunostomy

- Single dose of i/v co-amoxiclav or i/v cefuroxime
- Use single dose of i/v teicoplanin if history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins, or if high risk of meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus

Prevention of infection in orthopaedic surgery

**Closed fractures**

- Single dose of i/v cefuroxime or i/v fluclacillin
  - If history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins or if high risk of meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus, use single dose of i/v teicoplanin

**Open fractures**

- i/v co-amoxiclav alone or i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole (or i/v clindamycin alone if history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins)
- Add i/v teicoplanin if high risk of meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Start prophylaxis within 3 hours of injury and continue until soft tissue closure (max. 72 hours).
- If history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins, use single dose of i/v teicoplanin
- At time of skeletal stabilisation and definitive soft tissue closure use a single dose of i/v gentamicin and i/v vancomycin

Prevention of infection in obstetric surgery

**Termination of pregnancy**

- Single dose of oral metronidazole
  - If genital chlamydial infection cannot be ruled out, give doxycycline (section 5.1.3) postoperatively

**Prevention of endocarditis**

**NICE Guidance**

Antimicrobial prophylaxis against infective endocarditis in children and adults undergoing interventional procedures (March 2008)

Antibacterial prophylaxis and chlorhexidine mouthwash are not recommended for the prevention of endocarditis in patients undergoing dental procedures.

Antibacterial prophylaxis is not recommended for the prevention of endocarditis in patients undergoing procedures of the:

- upper and lower respiratory tract (including ear, nose, and throat procedures and bronchoscopy);
- genito-urinary tract (including urological, gynaecological, and obstetric procedures);
- upper and lower gastrointestinal tract.

While these procedures can cause bacteraemia, there is no clear association with the development of infective endocarditis. Prophylaxis may expose patients to the adverse effects of antimicrobials when the evidence of benefit has not been proven.

Any infection in patients at risk of endocarditis should be investigated promptly and treated appropriately to reduce the risk of endocarditis.

If patients at risk of endocarditis are undergoing a gastro-intestinal or genito-urinary tract procedure at a site where infection is suspected, they should receive appropriate antibacterial therapy that includes cover against organisms that cause endocarditis.

Patients at risk of endocarditis should be:

- advised to maintain good oral hygiene;
- told how to recognise signs of infective endocarditis, and advised when to seek expert advice.

**Dermatological procedures**

Advice of a Working Party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy is that patients who undergo dermatological procedures do not require antibacterial prophylaxis against endocarditis.

---

1. Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure
2. Additional intra-operative or postoperative doses of antibacterial may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss
3. Metronidazole may alternatively be given by suppository but to allow adequate absorption, it should be given 2 hours before surgery
4. Where teicoplanin is suggested vancomycin may be used
5. Patients at risk of endocarditis include those with valve replacement, acquired valvular heart disease with stenosis or regurgitation, structural congenital heart disease (including surgically corrected or palliated structural conditions), but excluding isolated atrial septal defect, fully repaired ventricular septal defect, fully repaired patent ductus arteriosus, and closure devices considered to be endothelialised, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, or a previous episode of infective endocarditis
6. The British Association of Dermatologists Therapy Guidelines and Audit Subcommittee advise that such dermatological procedures include skin biopsies and excision of moles or of malignant lesions
Joint prosthesis and dental treatment

Advice of a Working Party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy is that patients with prosthetic joint implants (including total hip replacements) do not require antibacterial prophylaxis for dental treatment. The Working Party considers that it is unacceptable to expose patients to the adverse effects of antibacterials when there is no evidence that such prophylaxis is of any benefit, but that those who develop any intercurrent infection require prompt treatment with antibacterials to which the infecting organisms are sensitive.

The Working Party has commented that joint infections have rarely been shown to follow dental procedures and are even more rarely caused by oral streptococci.

Immunosuppression and indwelling intraperitoneal catheters

Advice of a Working Party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy is that patients who are immunosuppressed (including transplant patients) and patients with indwelling intraperitoneal catheters do not require antibacterial prophylaxis for dental treatment provided there is no other indication for prophylaxis.

The Working Party has commented that there is little evidence that dental treatment is followed by infection in immunosuppressed and immunodeficient patients nor is there evidence that dental treatment is followed by infection in patients with indwelling intraperitoneal catheters.

5.1.1 Penicillins

5.1.1.1 Benzylpenicillin and phenoxyethylpenicillin

Benzylpenicillin (Penicillin G) remains an important and useful antibiotic but is inactivated by bacterial beta-lactamases. It is effective for many streptococcal (including pneumococcal), gonococcal, and meningococcal infections and also for anthrax (section 5.1.12), diphtheria, gas-gangrene, leptospirosis, and treatment of Lyme disease (section 5.1.1.3) in children. It is also used in combination with gentamicin for the empirical treatment of sepsis in neonates less than 48 hours old. Pneumococci, meningococci, and gonococci which have decreased sensitivity to penicillin have been isolated; benzylpenicillin is no longer the drug of first choice for pneumococcal meningitis. Although benzylpenicillin is effective in the treatment of tetanus, metronidazole (section 5.1.11) is preferred. Benzylpenicillin is inactivated by gastric acid and absorption from the gastro-intestinal tract is low, therefore it must be given by injection.

Benanzathine benzylpenicillin or procaine benzylpenicillin is used in the treatment of syphilis (see Table 1 section 5.1); both are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809.

5.1.1.2 Penicillinase-resistant penicillins

5.1.1.3 Broad-spectrum penicillins

5.1.1.4 Antipseudomonal penicillins

5.1.1.5 Mecillinams

The penicillins are bactericidal and act by interfering with bacterial cell wall synthesis. They diffuse well into body tissues and fluids, but penetration into the cerebrospinal fluid is poor except when the meninges are inflamed. They are excreted in the urine in therapeutic concentrations.

Hypersensitivity reactions

The most important side-effect of the penicillins is hypersensitivity which causes rashes and anaphylaxis and can be fatal. Allergic reactions to penicillins occur in 1–10% of exposed individuals; anaphylactic reactions occur in fewer than 0.05% of treated patients. Individuals with a history of anaphylaxis, urticaria, or rash immediately after penicillin administration are at risk of immediate hypersensitivity to a penicillin; these individuals should not receive a penicillin. Children who are allergic to one penicillin will be allergic to all because the hypersensitivity is related to the basic penicillin structure. As patients with a history of immediate hypersensitivity to penicillins may also react to the cephalosporins and other beta-lactam antibiotics, they should not receive these antibacterials; aztreonam may be less likely to cause hypersensitivity in penicillin-sensitive patients and can be used with caution. If a penicillin (or another beta-lactam antibiotic) is essential in a child with immediate hypersensitivity to penicillin then specialist advice should be sought on hypersensitivity testing or using a beta-lactam antibiotic with a different structure to the penicillin that caused the hypersensitivity (see also p. 266).

Individuals with a history of a minor rash (i.e. non-confluent, non-pruritic rash restricted to a small area of the body) or a rash that occurs more than 72 hours after penicillin administration are probably not allergic to penicillin and in these individuals a penicillin should not be withheld unnecessarily for serious infections; the possibility of an allergic reaction should, however, be borne in mind. Other beta-lactam antibiotics (including cephalosporins) can be used in these patients.

Other side effects

A rare but serious toxic effect of the penicillins is encephalopathy due to cerebral irritation. This may result from excessively high doses or in patients with severe renal failure. The penicillins should not be given by intrathecal injection because they can cause encephalopathy which may be fatal.

Another problem relating to high doses of penicillin, or normal doses given to patients with renal failure, is the accumulation of electrolyte since most injectable penicillins contain either sodium or potassium. Diarrhoea frequently occurs during oral penicillin therapy. It is most common with broad-spectrum penicillins, which can also cause antibiotic-associated colitis.
Phenoxymethylpenicillin (Penicillin V) has a similar antibacterial spectrum to benzylpenicillin, but is less active. It is gastric acid-stable, so is suitable for oral administration. It should not be used for serious infections because absorption can be unpredictable and plasma concentrations variable. It is indicated principally for respiratory-tract infections in children, for streptococcal tonsillitis, and for continuing treatment after one or more injections of benzylpenicillin when clinical response has begun. It should not be used for meningococcal or gonococcal infections. Phenoxymethylpenicillin is used for prophylaxis against streptococcal infections following rheumatic fever and against pneumococcal infections following splenectomy or in sickle cell disease.

**Indication and dose**

Mild to moderate susceptible infections (including throat infections, otitis media, pneumonia, cellulitis, neonatal sepsis, Table 1, section 5.1)

- By intramuscular injection or by slow intravenous injection or infusion (intravenous route recommended in neonates and infants)

  **Neonate under 7 days** 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection
  **Neonate 7–28 days** 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection

  **Child 1 month–18 years** 25 mg/kg every 6 hours; increased to 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. 2.4 g every 4 hours) in severe infection

  **Endocarditis** (combined with another antibacterial if necessary, see Table 1, section 5.1)

    - By slow intravenous injection or infusion
      **Child 1 month–18 years** 25 mg/kg every 4 hours; increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg (max. 2.4 g) every 4 hours

  **Meningitis, meningococcal disease**

    - By slow intravenous injection or infusion
      **Neonate** 75 mg/kg every 8 hours
      **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. 2.4 g every 4 hours)

      **Important.** If meningococcal disease (meningitis with non-blanching rash or meningococcal septicaemia) is suspected, a single dose of benzylpenicillin should be given before transferring the child to hospital urgently, so long as this does not delay the transfer. If a child with suspected bacterial meningitis without non-blanching rash cannot be transferred to hospital urgently, a single dose of benzylpenicillin should be given before the transfer. Suitable doses of benzylpenicillin by intravenous injection (or by intramuscular injection) are: Infant under 1 year 300 mg; Child 1–9 years 600 mg; 10 years and over 1.2 g. In penicillin allergy, ceftriaxime (section 5.1.2) may be an alternative; chloramphenicol (section 5.1.7) may be used if there is a history of anaphylaxis to penicillin.

**Proven or suspected neonatal group B streptococcus infection**

- By slow intravenous injection or infusion
  **Neonate under 7 days** 50 mg/kg every 12 hours
  **Neonate 7–28 days** 50 mg/kg every 8 hours

  **Prophylaxis in limb amputation** Table 2, section 5.1

  **Administration** Intravenous route recommended in neonates and infants. For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15–30 minutes. Longer administration time is particularly important when using doses of 50 mg/kg (or greater) to avoid CNS toxicity.

  **Crystapen®** (Genus *Crystapen*)

  Injection, powder for reconstitution, benzylpenicillin sodium (unbuffered), net price 600-mg vial = £9.5p, 2-g vial “GP pack” = £2.54; 1.2-g vial = £1.89

  **Electrolytes Na+ 1.68 mmol/600-mg vial; 3.36 mmol/1.2-g vial**
**5.1.1 Penicillins 259**

**A glycopeptide** can be used for *pneumonia* associated with MRSA. **Linezolid** should be reserved for hospital-acquired pneumonia that has not responded to other antibacterials or for children who cannot tolerate other antibacterials.

**Trimethoprim** or **nitrofurantoin** can be used for **urinary-tract infections** caused by MRSA; a **tetracycline** is an alternative in children over 12 years of age. **A glycopeptide** can be used for urinary-tract infections that are severe or resistant to other antibacterials. **A glycopeptide** can be used for **septicaemia** associated with MRSA.

For the management of endocarditis, osteomyelitis, or septic arthritis associated with MRSA, see Table 1, section 5.1.

Prophylaxis with vancomycin or teicoplanin (alone or in combination with another antibacterial active against other pathogens) is appropriate for patients undergoing surgery if:

- there is a history of MRSA colonisation or infection without documented eradication;
- there is a risk that the patient’s MRSA carriage has recurred;
- the patient comes from an area with a high prevalence of MRSA.

It is important that hospitals have infection control guidelines to minimise MRSA transmission, including policies on isolation and treatment of MRSA carriers and on hand hygiene. For eradication of nasal carriage of MRSA, see section 12.2.3.

**FLUCLOXACILLIN**

**Cautions** see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); **risk of kernicterus in jaundiced neonates when high doses given parenterally**; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

**Hepatic disorders**

- Cholestatic jaundice and hepatitis may occur very rarely, up to two months after treatment with flucloxacillin has been stopped. Administration for more than 2 weeks and increasing age are risk factors. Healthcare professionals are reminded that:
  - flucloxacillin should not be used in patients with a history of hepatic dysfunction associated with flucloxacillin;
  - flucloxacillin should be used with caution in patients with hepatic impairment.
  - careful enquiry should be made about hypersensitivity reactions to beta-lactam antibacterials.

**Contra-indications** see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1)

**Hepatic impairment** see Cautions and Hepatic Disorders above

**Renal impairment** use normal dose every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** trace amounts in milk—not known to be harmful but be alert for hypersensitivity in infant

**Side-effects** see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also gastro-intestinal disturbances; very rarely hepatits and cholestatic jaundice reported (see also Hepatic Disorders above)

---

**5.1.2 Penicillinase-resistant penicillins**

Most staphylococci are now resistant to benzylpenicillin because they produce penicillinases. **Flucloxacillin**, however, is not inactivated by these enzymes and is thus effective in infections caused by penicillin-resistant *Staph. aureus*, which is the main indication for its use. Flucloxacillin is acid-stable and can, therefore, be given by mouth as well as by injection.

Flucloxacillin is well absorbed from the gut. For a warning on hepatic disorders see under Flucloxacillin.

**MRSA** Infection from *Staphylococcus aureus* strains resistant to meticillin [now discontinued] (meticillin-resistant *Staph. aureus*, MRSA) and to flucloxacillin can be difficult to manage. Treatment is guided by the sensitivity of the infecting strain.

**Rifampicin** (section 5.1.9) or **sodium fusidate** (section 5.1.7) should not be used alone because resistance may develop rapidly. **Clindamycin** alone or a combination of rifampicin and sodium fusidate can be used for **skin and soft-tissue infections** caused by MRSA; a **tetracycline** is an alternative in children over 12 years of age. A **glycopeptide** (e.g. vancomycin, section 5.1.7) can be used for severe skin and soft-tissue infections associated with MRSA. A combination of a glycopeptide and sodium fusidate or a glycopeptide and rifampicin can be considered for skin and soft-tissue infections that have failed to respond to a single antibacterial. **Linezolid** (section 5.1.7) should be reserved for skin and soft-tissue infections that have not responded to other antibacterials or for children who cannot tolerate other antibacterials.

---

| Child 6–12 years | 250 mg 4 times daily; increased up to 12.5 mg/kg 4 times daily in severe infection |
| Child 12–18 years | 500 mg 4 times daily; increased in severe infection up to 1 g 4 times daily |

**Prevention of pneumococcal infection in asplenia or sickle cell disease**, see Table 2, section 5.1

**Prevention of recurrence of rheumatic fever**, see Table 2, section 5.1

**Prevention of group A streptococcal infection**, see Table 2, section 5.1

**Phenoxymethylpenicillin (Non-proprietary)**

| Tablets, phenoxymethylpenicillin (as potassium salt) |
| 250 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.27. Label: 9, 23 |
| **Dental prescribing on NHS** Tablets may be prescribed |
| **Oral solution**, phenoxymethylpenicillin (as potassium salt) for reconstitution with water, net price 125 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £1.90; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £2.59. Label: 9, 23 |
| **Note** Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription |
| **Dental prescribing on NHS** Phenoxymethylpenicillin Oral Solution may be prescribed |

**BNFC 2011–2012**
5.1.1 Penicillins

Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing staphylococci including otitis externa; adjunct in pneumonia, impetigo, cellulitis

**Indication and dose**

**5.1.1 Penicillins** BNFC 2011–2012

**Infections**

- **Neonate under 7 days** 25 mg/kg twice daily
- **Neonate 7–21 days** 25 mg/kg 3 times daily
- **Neonate 21–28 days** 25 mg/kg 4 times daily

**By mouth**

- **Child 1 month–2 years** 62.5–125 mg 4 times daily
- **Child 2–10 years** 125–250 mg 4 times daily
- **Child 10–18 years** 250–500 mg 4 times daily

**By intramuscular injection**

- **Child 1 month–18 years** 12.5–25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. 500 mg every 6 hours)
- **By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion**
- **Neonate under 7 days** 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; may be doubled in severe infection
- **Neonate 7–21 days** 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; may be doubled in severe infection
- **Neonate 21–28 days** 25 mg/kg every 6 hours; may be doubled in severe infection
- **Child 1 month–18 years** 12.5–25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. 1 g every 6 hours); may be doubled in severe infection

**Osteomyelitis (Table 1, section 5.1), cerebral abscess, staphylococcal meningitis**

- **By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion**
- **Neonate under 7 days** 25 mg/kg every 12 hours
- **Neonate 7–21 days** 50–100 mg/kg every 12 hours
- **Neonate 21–28 days** 50–100 mg/kg every 8 hours
- **Neonate 21–28 days** 50–100 mg/kg every 6 hours
- **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg (max. 2 g) every 6 hours

**Endocarditis (Table 1, section 5.1)**

- **By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion**
- **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg (max. 2 g) every 6 hours

**Prevention of staphylococcal lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

Table 2, section 5.1

**Staphylococcal lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 25 mg/kg (max. 1 g) 4 times daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses
  - **By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion**
    - **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg (max. 2 g) every 6 hours

**Administration** for intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 30–60 minutes

**Flucloxacillin** (Non-proprietary) (Non-proprietary)

**Capsules**

- **Flucloxacillin (as sodium salt)** 250 mg, net price 28 = £2.07; 500 mg, 28 = £3.21. Label: 9, 23
  - **Brands include** Flucopen®, Flucitom®, Ladropen®

**Oral solution (= elixir or syrup)**

- **Flucloxacillin (as sodium salt)** for reconstitution with water, 125 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £4.41; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £3.18. Label: 9, 23
  - **Note** Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription

**Injection**

- **Powder for reconstitution**
  - **Flucloxacillin (as sodium salt)**. Net price 250-mg vial = £1.23; 500-mg vial = £2.45; 1-g vial = £4.90

5.1.3 Broad-spectrum penicillins

**Ampicillin** is active against certain Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms but is inactivated by penicillinasinases including those produced by *Staphylococcus aureus* and by common Gram-negative bacilli such as *Escherichia coli*. Ampicillin is also active against *Listeria* spp. and enterococci. Almost all staphylococci, approx. 60% of *E. coli* strains and approx. 20% of *Haemophilus influenzae* strains are now resistant. The likelihood of resistance should therefore be considered before using ampicillin for the ‘blind’ treatment of infections; in particular, it should not be used for hospital patients without checking sensitivity.

Ampicillin can be given by mouth, but less than half the dose is absorbed and absorption is further decreased by the presence of food in the gut. Ampicillin is well excreted in the bile and urine.

**Amoxicillin** is a derivative of ampicillin and has a similar antibacterial spectrum. It is better absorbed than ampicillin when given by mouth, producing higher plasma and tissue concentrations; unlike ampicillin, absorption is not affected by the presence of food in the stomach.

Amoxicillin or amoxicillin are principally indicated for the treatment of community-acquired pneumonia and middle ear infections, both of which may be due to *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *H. influenzae*, and for urinary-tract infections (section 5.1.13). They are also used in the treatment of endocarditis and listerial meningitis. Amoxicillin may also be used for the treatment of Lyme disease [not licensed], see below.

Maculopapular rashes occur commonly with ampicillin (and amoxicillin) but are not usually related to true penicillin allergy. They often occur in children with glandular fever; broad-spectrum penicillinas should not therefore be used for ‘blind’ treatment of a sore throat. The risk of rash is also increased in children with acute or chronic lymphocytic leukaemia or in cytomegalovirus infection.

**Co-amoxiclav** consists of amoxicillin with the beta-lactamase inhibitor clavulanic acid. Clavulanic acid itself has no significant antibacterial activity but, by inactivating beta-lactamasas, it makes the combination active against beta-lactamae-producing bacteria that are resistant to amoxicillin. These include resistant strains...
of *Staph. aureus*, *E. coli*, and *H. influenzae*, as well as many *Bacteroides* and *Klebsiella* spp. Co-amoxiclav should be reserved for infections likely, or known, to be caused by amoxicillin-resistant beta-lactamase-producing strains.

A combination of ampicillin with flucoxacin (as co-fluampicil) is available to treat infections involving either streptococci or staphylococci (e.g. cellulitis).

**Lyme disease** Lyme disease should generally be treated by those experienced in its management. **Amoxicillin** (section 5.1.1.1) or **doxycycline** are the antibacterials of choice for early Lyme disease or Lyme arthritis but doxycycline should only be used in children under 12 years of age. If these antibacterials are contra-indicated, a **macrolide** (e.g. clarithromycin) can be used for early Lyme disease. Intravenous administration of **ceftriaxone**, **cefofaxime** (section 5.1.2.1), or **benzylenicillin** (p. 258) is recommended for Lyme disease associated with cardiac or neurological complications. The duration of treatment is usually 2–4 weeks; Lyme arthritis may require further treatment.

**Oral infections** Amoxicillin or ampicillin are as effective as phenoxymethylpenicillin (section 5.1) but they are better absorbed; however, they may encourage emergence of resistant organisms. Like phenoxymethylpenicillin, amoxicillin and ampicillin are ineffective against bacteria that produce beta-lactamases. Co-amoxiclav is active against beta-lactamase-producing bacteria that are resistant to amoxicillin. Co-amoxiclav may be used for severe dental infection with spreading cellulitis or dental infection not responding to first-line antibacterial treatment.

**AMOXICILLIN**

**Cautions** see under Ampicillin; maintain adequate hydration with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy); **interactions**: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

**Contra-indications** see under Ampicillin

**Renal impairment** risk of crystalluria with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy). Reduce dose in severe impairment; rashes more common

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** trace amounts in milk—not known to be harmful but be alert for hypersensitivity in infant

**Side-effects** see under Ampicillin

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Susceptible infections including urinary-tract infections, sinusitis, uncomplicated community-acquired pneumonia, oral infections (Table 1, section 5.1), Lyme disease (see notes above), salmonellosis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>By mouth</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 7–28 days</strong> 30 mg/kg (max. 62.5 mg) 3 times daily; dose doubled in severe infection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–1 year</strong> 62.5 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, salmonellosis, or Lyme disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Child 1–5 years** 125 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, salmonellosis, or Lyme disease

**Child 5–18 years** 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, salmonellosis, or Lyme disease

- By intravenous injection or infusion
  - **Neonate under 7 days** 30 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis
  - **Neonate 7–28 days** 30 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 20–30 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection (max. 4 g daily)

- **Otis media** (but see Table 1, section 5.1)
  - **By mouth**
    - **Child 1 month–18 years** 40 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses (max. 1.5 g daily in 3 divided doses)

**Listerial meningitis** (in combination with another antibacterial, Table 1, section 5.1), group B streptococcal infection, enterococcal endocarditis (in combination with another antibiotic)

- By intravenous infusion
  - **Neonate under 7 days** 50 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose may be doubled in meningitis
  - **Neonate 7–28 days** 50 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose may be doubled in meningitis
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. 2.0 g every 4 hours)

**Cystic fibrosis** (treatment of asymptomatic *H. influenzae* carriage or mild exacerbations)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** 125 mg 3 times daily
  - **Child 1–7 years** 250 mg 3 times daily
  - **Child 7–18 years** 500 mg 3 times daily

**Helicobacter pylori eradication** section 1.3

Note Amoxicillin doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature

**Administration** Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. Dilute intravenous injection to a concentration of 50 mg/mL (100 mg/mL for neonates). May be further diluted with Glucose 5% or Glucose 10% or Sodium chloride 0.9% or 0.45% for intravenous infusion. Give intravenous infusion over 30 minutes when using doses over 30 mg/kg

**Amoxicillin** (Non-proprietary)

**Capsules** amoxicillin (as trihydrate) 250 mg, net price 21 = £1.07; 500 mg, 21 = £1.31. Label: 9

Brands include Amix®, Amoram®, Amoxident®, Gulexanox®, Rimoxallin®

**Dental prescribing on NHS** Amoxicillin Capsules may be prescribed

**Oral suspension** amoxicillin (as trihydrate) for reconstitution with water, 125 mg/5 mL, net price
Infections

5.1.1 Penicillins

Indication and dose

Susceptible infections including urinary-tract infections, otitis media, sinusitis, uncomplicated community-acquired pneumonia, oral infections (Table 1, section 5.1), salmonellosis

- By mouth

Neonate under 7 days 30 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis

Neonate 7–21 days 30 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis

Neonate 21–28 days 30 mg/kg every 6 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis

Child 1 month–18 years 25 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) every 6 hours; dose doubled in severe infection

Lislerian meningitis, group B streptococcal infection, enterococcal endocarditis (in combination with another antibacterial, see Table 1, section 5.1)

- By intravenous injection or infusion

Neonate under 7 days 30 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis

Neonate 7–21 days 30 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis

Neonate 21–28 days 30 mg/kg every 6 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia, or salmonellosis

Child 1 month–18 years 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. 2 g every 4 hours)

Administration Oral: administer at least 30 minutes before food

Injection: displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. Dilute intravenous injection to a concentration of 50–100 mg/mL. May be further diluted with glucose 5% or 10% or sodium chloride 0.9% or 0.45% for infusion. Give over 30 minutes when using doses of greater than 50 mg/kg to avoid CNS toxicity including convulsions.

Penbritin® (Chemidex)

Capsules, both grey/red, ampicillin (as trihydrate) 250 mg, net price 28 = £7.18; 500 mg, 28 = £3.93. Label: 9, 23

Dental prescribing on NHS Ampicillin Capsules may be prescribed

Oral suspension, ampicillin 125 mg/5 mL when reconstituted with water, net price 100 mL = £9.23; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £14.17. Label: 9, 23

Dental prescribing on NHS Ampicillin Oral Suspension may be prescribed

Injection, powder for reconstitution, ampicillin (as sodium salt), net price 500-mg vial = £7.83

Ampicillin Oral Suspension may be prescribed

Excipients include sucrose 6.0 g/3 mL
With flucloxacillin
Co-fluampicil (Non-proprietary) (Fluphenacillin)
Capsules, co-fluampicil 250/250 (flucloxacillin 250 mg as sodium salt, ampicillin 250 mg as trihydrate), net price 28-cap pack = £14.73. Label: 9, 22
Brands include: Flo-AMP®

Syrc, co-fluampicil 125/125 (flucloxacillin 125 mg as magnesium salt, ampicillin 125 mg as trihydrate)/5 mL when reconstituted with water, net price 100 mL= £4.99. Label: 9, 22

Magnapen® (Wockhardt) (Non-proprietary)
Injection 500 mg, powder for reconstitution, co-fluampicil 250/250 (flucloxacillin 250 mg as sodium salt, ampicillin 250 mg as sodium salt), net price per vial = £1.33
Electrolytes Na+ 1.3 mmol/vial

CO-AMOXICLAV
A mixture of amoxicillin (as the trihydrate or as the sodium salt) and clavulanic acid (as potassium clavulanate); the proportions are expressed in the form $x/y$ where $x$ and $y$ are the strengths in milligrams of amoxicillin and clavulanic acid respectively

Cautions see under Ampicillin and notes above; maintain adequate hydration with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy); interactions: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

Cholestatic jaundice Cholestatic jaundice can occur during or shortly after the use of co-amoxiclav. An epidemiological study has shown that the risk of acute liver toxicity was about 6 times greater with co-amoxiclav than with amoxicillin; these reactions have only rarely been reported in children. Jaundice is usually self-limiting and very rarely fatal. The duration of treatment should be appropriate to the indication and should not usually exceed 14 days

Contra-indications penicillin hypersensitivity, history of co-amoxiclav-associated or penicillin-associated jaundice or hepatic dysfunction

Hepatic impairment monitor liver function in liver disease. See also Cholestatic Jaundice above

Renal impairment risk of crystalluria with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy).
Co-amoxiclav 125/31 suspension, 250/62 suspension, 250/125 tablets, or 500/125 tablets: use normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m². Use the normal dose recommended for mild or moderate infections every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m².
Co-amoxiclav 400/57 suspension: avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m².
Co-amoxiclav injection: use normal initial dose and then use half normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; use normal initial dose and then use half normal dose every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy not known to be harmful
Breast-feeding trace amounts present in milk—not known to be harmful but be alert for hypersensitivity in the infant

Side-effects see under Ampicillin; hepatitis, cholestatic jaundice (see above); Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, exfoliative dermatitis, vasculitis reported; rarely prolongation of bleeding time, dizziness, headache, convulsions (particularly with high doses or in renal impairment); superficial staining of teeth with suspension, phlebitis at injection site

Indication and dose
Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing strains (where amoxicillin alone not appropriate) including respiratory-tract infections, bone and joint infections, genito-urinary and abdominal infections, cellulitis, animal bites
• By mouth, expressed as co-amoxiclav (see also under Twice Daily Oral Preparations below)

| Neomycin 0.25 mL/kg of 125/31 suspension 3 times daily |
|---|---|
| Child 1 month–1 year 0.25 mL/kg of 125/31 suspension 3 times daily, dose doubled in severe infection |
| Child 1–6 years 5 mL of 125/31 suspension 3 times daily or 0.25 mL/kg of 125/31 suspension 3 times daily, dose doubled in severe infection |
| Child 6–12 years 5 mL of 250/62 suspension 3 times daily or 0.15 mL/kg of 250/62 suspension 3 times daily; dose doubled in severe infection |
| Child 12–18 years one 250/125 strength tablet 3 times daily; increased in severe infections to one 500/125 strength tablet 3 times daily |

• By intravenous injection over 3–4 minutes or by intravenous infusion, expressed as co-amoxiclav

| Neomycin 30 mg/kg every 12 hours |
|---|---|
| Child 1–3 months 30 mg/kg every 12 hours |
| Child 3 months–18 years 30 mg/kg (max. 1.2 g) every 8 hours |

Severe dental infection with spreading cellulitis or dental infection not responding to first-line antibacterials, see notes above
• By mouth, expressed as co-amoxiclav
Child 12–18 years one 250/125 strength tablet every 8 hours for 5 days

Administration for intermittent intravenous infusion dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of 10 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30–40 minutes

Co-amoxiclav (Non-proprietary) (Fluphenacillin)
Tablets, co-amoxiclav 250/125 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt), net price 21-tab pack = £2.63. Label: 9
Dental prescribing on NHS Co-amoxiclav 250/125 Tablets may be prescribed
Tablets, co-amoxiclav 500/125 (amoxicillin 500 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt), net price 21-tab pack = £4.38. Label: 9
Oral suspension, co-amoxiclav 125/31 (amoxicillin 125 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 31.25 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water, net price 100 mL = £2.49. Label: 9
Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription
Dental prescribing on NHS Co-amoxiclav 125/31 Suspension may be prescribed
Infections

Co-amoxiclav (Non-proprietary)

Augmentin® (GSK) [TS]

Tablets 375 mg, f/c, co-amoxiclav 250/125 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt), net price 21-tab pack = £4.19. Label: 9

Tablets 625 mg, f/c, co-amoxiclav 500/125 (amoxicillin 500 mg as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt), net price 21-tab pack = £8.00. Label: 9

Suspension ‘125/31 SF’, sugar-free, co-amoxiclav 125/31 (amoxicillin 125 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 31.25 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water. Net price 100 mL (raspberry- and orange-flavoured) = £5.74. Label: 9

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Suspension ‘250/62 SF’, sugar-free, co-amoxiclav 250/62 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 62.5 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water. Net price 100 mL (raspberry- and orange-flavoured) = £5.74. Label: 9

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Injection 500/100, powder for reconstitution, co-amoxiclav 500/100 (amoxicillin 500 mg as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 100 mg as potassium salt), net price per vial = £1.21

Injection 1000/200, powder for reconstitution, co-amoxiclav 1000/200 (amoxicillin 1 g as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 200 mg as potassium salt), net price per vial = £2.63

Oral suspension, co-amoxiclav 250/62 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 62.5 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water, net price 100 mL = £6.29. Label: 9

Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription

Dental prescribing on NHS Co-amoxiclav 250/62 Suspension may be prescribed

Injection 500/100, powder for reconstitution, co-amoxiclav 500/100 (amoxicillin 500 mg as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 100 mg as potassium salt), net price per vial = £1.21

Injection 1000/200, powder for reconstitution, co-amoxiclav 1000/200 (amoxicillin 1 g as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 200 mg as potassium salt), net price per vial = £2.63

Augmentin®

Tablets 375 mg, f/c, co-amoxiclav 250/125 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt), net price 21-tab pack = £4.19. Label: 9

Tablets 625 mg, f/c, co-amoxiclav 500/125 (amoxicillin 500 mg as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt), net price 21-tab pack = £8.00. Label: 9

Suspension ‘125/31 SF’, sugar-free, co-amoxiclav 125/31 (amoxicillin 125 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 31.25 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water. Net price 100 mL (raspberry- and orange-flavoured) = £5.74. Label: 9

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Suspension ‘250/62 SF’, sugar-free, co-amoxiclav 250/62 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 62.5 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water. Net price 100 mL (raspberry- and orange-flavoured) = £5.74. Label: 9

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Injection 600 mg, powder for reconstitution, co-amoxiclav 500/100 (amoxicillin 500 mg as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 100 mg as potassium salt). Net price per vial = £1.31

Electrolytes Na+ 1.35 mmol, K+ 0.5 mmol/600-mg vial

Injection 1.2 g, powder for reconstitution, co-amoxiclav 1000/200 (amoxicillin 1 g as sodium salt, clavulanic acid 200 mg as potassium salt). Net price per vial = £2.61

Electrolytes Na+ 2.7 mmol, K+ 1 mmol/1.2-g vial

Twice daily oral preparations

Co-amoxiclav (Non-proprietary)

Suspension ‘400/57’, co-amoxiclav 400/57 (amoxicillin 400 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 57 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL when reconstituted with water. Net price 35 mL = £4.13, 70 mL = £5.79. Label: 9

Excipients may include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription

Dose

Child 2 months–2 years 0.15 mL/kg twice daily, doubled in severe infection

Child 2–6 years (13–21 kg) 2.5 mL twice daily, doubled in severe infection

Child 7–12 years (22–40 kg) 5 mL twice daily, doubled in severe infections

5.1.1.4 Antipseudomonal penicillins

Piperacillin, a ureidopenicillin, is only available in combination with the beta-lactamase inhibitor tazobactam.

Ticarcillin, a carbapenem, is only available in combination with the beta-lactamase inhibitor clavulanic acid (section 5.1.1.3). Both preparations have a broad spectrum of activity against a range of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, and anaerobes.

Piperacillin with tazobactam has activity against a wider range of Gram-negative organisms than ticarcillin with clavulanic acid and it is more active against Pseudomonas aeruginosa. These antibacterials are not active against MRSA.

These antipseudomonal penicillins are used in the treatment of septicaemia, peritonitis, hospital-acquired pneumonia, complicated urinary-tract infections, and skin and soft-tissue infections. They may be used for the empirical treatment of septicaemia in immunocompromised children but otherwise should generally be reserved for serious infections resistant to other antibacterials. For severe pseudomonas infections (especially in neutropenia or endocarditis) these antipseudomonal penicillins can be given with an aminoglycoside (e.g. gentamicin, section 5.1.4) since they have a synergistic effect.

Piperacillin with tazobactam is used in cystic fibrosis for the treatment of Ps. aeruginosa colonisation when ciprofloxacin and nebulised colistimethate sodium have been ineffective; it can also be used in infective exacerbations, when it is combined with an aminoglycoside.

Owing to the sodium content of many of these antibiotics, high doses may lead to hypernatraemia.

Piperacillin with Tazobactam

Cautions see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); interactions: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

Contra-indications see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1)

Renal impairment dose expressed as a combination of piperacillin and tazobactam (both as sodium salts).

Child under 12 years 90 mg/kg (max. 4.5 g) every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–40 mL/minute/1.73 m²; 90 mg/kg (max. 4.5 g) every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m². Child 12–18 years max. 4.5 g every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–80 mL/minute/1.73 m²; max. 4.5 g every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding present in milk—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Side-effects see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea; less commonly stomatitis, dyspepsia, constipation, jaundice, hypotension, headache, insomnia, and injection-site reactions; rarely abdominal pain, hepatitis, oedema, fatigue and eosinophilia; very rarely hypoglycaemia, hypokalaemia, pancytopenia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 12 years (except for children with neutropenia and complicated appendicitis)

5.1.1.3 β-Lactamase inhibitors

Appendix 1 (penicillins)

PIPERACILLIN WITH TAZOBA CTAM

Cautions see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); interactions: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

Contra-indications see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1)

Renal impairment dose expressed as a combination of piperacillin and tazobactam (both as sodium salts).

Child under 12 years 90 mg/kg (max. 4.5 g) every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–40 mL/minute/1.73 m²; 90 mg/kg (max. 4.5 g) every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m². Child 12–18 years max. 4.5 g every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–80 mL/minute/1.73 m²; max. 4.5 g every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding present in milk—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Side-effects see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea; less commonly stomatitis, dyspepsia, constipation, jaundice, hypotension, headache, insomnia, and injection-site reactions; rarely abdominal pain, hepatitis, oedema, fatigue and eosinophilia; very rarely hypoglycaemia, hypokalaemia, pancytopenia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 12 years (except for children with neutropenia and complicated appendicitis)
5.1.1 Penicillins

Neonate manufacturer advises caution in Hepatic impairment Contra-indications see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also cholestatic jaundice, see also liver and renal function tests required in long-term use; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); toxics i.e. appendicitis, enterobacter, and salmonellae. It is not active against Pseudomonas aeruginosa or enterococci. Pimvocillin is hydrolysed to mecillinam, which is the active drug.

Pimvocillin

Ticarcillin with clavulanic acid

Cautions see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also liver and renal function tests required in long-term use; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2);

Interactions: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

Contra-indications see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also carnitine deficiency, oesophageal

Pimvocillin hydrochloride

Cautions see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also liver and renal function tests required in long-term use; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2);

Interactions: Appendix 1 (penicillins)

Contra-indications see under Benzylpenicillin (section 5.1.1.1); also carnitine deficiency, oesophageal
5.1.2 Cephalosporins, carbapenems, and other beta-lactams

Antibiotics in this section include the cephalosporins, such as cefotaxime, ceftazidime, cefuroxime, cefalexin, and cefradine, as well as carbapenems, imipenem (a thienamycin derivative), meropenem, and ertapenem.

5.1.2.1 Cephalosporins

The cephalosporins are broad-spectrum antibacterials which are used for the treatment of septicaemia, pneumonia, meningitis, biliary-tract infections, peritonitis, and urinary-tract infections. The pharmacology of the cephalosporins is similar to that of the penicillins, excretion being principally renal. Cephalosporins penetrate the cerebrospinal fluid poorly unless the meninges are inflamed; cefotaxime and ceftazidime are suitable cephalosporins for infections of the CNS (e.g. meningitis).

The principal side-effect of the cephalosporins is hypersensitivity and about 0.5–6.5% of penicillin-sensitive patients will also be allergic to the cephalosporins. Patients with a history of immediate hypersensitivity to penicillin should not receive a cephalosporin. If a cephalosporin is essential in these patients because a suitable alternative antibacterial is not available, then cefixime, cefotaxime, ceftazidime, ceftaroline, or cefuroxime can be used with caution; cefaclor, cefadroxil, cefalexin, and cefradine should be avoided.

Antibiotic-associated colitis may occur with the use of broad-spectrum cephalosporins, particularly second- and third-generation cephalosporins.

Cefuroxime is a ‘second generation’ cephalosporin that is less susceptible than the earlier cephalosporins to inactivation by beta-lactamases. It is, therefore, active against certain bacteria that are resistant to the other drugs and has greater activity against *Haemophilus influenzae*.

Cefotaxime, ceftazidime and ceftiraxone are ‘third generation’ cephalosporins with greater activity than the ‘second generation’ cephalosporins against certain Gram-negative bacteria. However, they are less active than cefuroxime against Gram-positive bacteria, most notably *Staphylococcus aureus*. Their broad antibacterial spectrum may encourage superinfection with resistant bacteria or fungi.

Cefazidine has good activity against pseudomonas. It is also active against other Gram-negative bacteria.

Ceftiraxone has a longer half-life and therefore needs to be given only once daily. Indications include serious infections such as septicaemia, pneumonia, and meningitis. The calcium salt of ceftiraxone forms a precipitate in the gall bladder which may rarely cause symptoms but these usually resolve when the antibiotic is stopped. In neonates, ceftiraxone may displace bilirubin from plasma-albumin and should be avoided in neonates with unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia, hypoalbuminaemia, acidosis or impaired bilirubin binding.

Orally active cephalosporins are inhibitors of the ‘first generation’ cephalosporins, cefalexin, cefradine, and cefadroxil and the ‘second generation’ cephalosporin, cefaclor, have a similar antimicrobial spectrum. They are useful for urinary-tract infections which do not respond to other drugs or which occur in pregnancy, respiratory-tract infections, otitis media, sinusitis, and skin and soft-tissue infections. Cefaclor has good activity against *H. influenzae*, but it is associated with protracted skin reactions especially in children. Cefadroxil has a longer duration of action and can be given twice daily; it has poor activity against *H. influenzae*. Cefuroxime axetil, an ester of the ‘second generation’ cephalosporin cefuroxime, has the same antibacterial spectrum as the parent compound; it is poorly absorbed and needs to be given with food to maximise absorption.

Cefixime and cefpodoxime proxetil are orally active ‘third generation’ cephalosporins. Cefixime has a longer duration of action than the other cephalosporins that are active by mouth. It is only licensed for acute infections. Cefpodoxime proxetil is more active than the other oral cephalosporins against respiratory bacterial pathogens and it is licensed for upper and lower respiratory-tract infections.

For treatment of Lyme disease, see section 5.1.1.3.

Oral infections: The cephalosporins offer little advantage over the penicillins in dental infections, often being less active against anaerobes. Infections due to oral streptococci (often termed *viridans streptococci*)
which become resistant to penicillin are usually also resistant to cephalosporins. This is of importance in the case of children who have had rheumatic fever and are on long-term penicillin therapy. Cefalexin and cefradine have been used in the treatment of oral infections.

**Cefaclor** *(Non-proprietary)*

**Indication and dose**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years: 20 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, doubled for severe infection (usual max. 1 g daily)
  - or
  - Child 1 month–1 year: 62.5 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
  - Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
  - Child 5–12 years: 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
  - Child 12–18 years: 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections (max. 4 g daily)

- **Asymptomatic carriage of Haemophilus influenzae or mild exacerbations in cystic fibrosis**
  - By mouth
    - Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg every 8 hours
    - Child 1–7 years: 250 mg 3 times daily
    - Child 7–18 years: 500 mg 3 times daily

**Cautions**
- Sensitivity to beta-lactam antibacterials (avoid if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction, see also notes above and p. 257); false positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances) and false positive Coombs’ test; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)
- **Renal impairment**
  - No dosage adjustment required, manufacturer advises caution
- **Pregnancy**
  - Not known to be harmful
- **Breast-feeding**
  - Present in milk in low concentrations, considered compatible with breast-feeding
- **Side-effects**
  - Diarrhoea (rarely antibiotic-associated)
  - Headache; allergic reactions including rashes, pruritus, urticaria, serum sickness-like reactions with rashes, fever and arthralgia, and anaphylaxis; Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis reported; reversible interstitial nephritis, hyperactivity, nervousness, sleep disturbances, hallucinations, confusion, hypertonía, and dizziness

**Contra-indications**
- See under Cefaclor
- **Cautions**
  - See under Cefaclor; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)

**CEFADROXIL** *(Cefadroxil)*

**Indication and dose**

- **Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria but see notes above**
  - By mouth
    - Child 1 month–12 years: 20 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, doubled for severe infection (usual max. 1 g daily)
    - or
    - Child 1 month–1 year: 62.5 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
    - Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
    - Child 5–12 years: 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
    - Child 12–18 years: 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections (max. 4 g daily)

- **Asymptomatic carriage of Haemophilus influenzae or mild exacerbations in cystic fibrosis**
  - By mouth
    - Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg every 8 hours
    - Child 1–7 years: 250 mg 3 times daily
    - Child 7–18 years: 500 mg 3 times daily

**Cefadroxil (Non-proprietary)** *(Flynn)*

**Capsules**, cefadroxil (as monohydrate) 500 mg, net price 20-cap pack = £4.83. Label: 9

**Note**
- Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription
- Brands include *Kefadox*®

**Indication and dose**

- **Susceptible infections**
  - Child 12–18 years: 375 mg every 12 hours with food, dose doubled for pneumonia
  - Lower urinary-tract infections
  - Child 12–18 years: 375 mg every 12 hours with food

**Cefalexin** *(Cefalexin)*

**Indication and dose**

- **Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria but see notes above**
  - By mouth
    - Child 1 month–12 years: 20 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, doubled for severe infection (usual max. 1 g daily)
    - or
    - Child 1 month–1 year: 62.5 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
    - Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
    - Child 5–12 years: 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections
    - Child 12–18 years: 250 mg 3 times daily; dose doubled for severe infections (max. 4 g daily)

- **Asymptomatic carriage of Haemophilus influenzae or mild exacerbations in cystic fibrosis**
  - By mouth
    - Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg every 8 hours
    - Child 1–7 years: 250 mg 3 times daily
    - Child 7–18 years: 500 mg 3 times daily

**Cefalexin (Non-proprietary)** *(Flynn)*

**Capsules**, cefalexin (as monohydrate) 250 mg, net price 21-cap pack = £5.09; 500 mg, 50-cap pack = £3.19. Label: 9

**Note**
- Brands include *Kefalex*®

**Distaclor®** *(Flynn)*

**Capsules**, cefaclor (as monohydrate) 500 mg (violet/grey), net price 21-cap pack = £18.19. Label: 9

**Suspension**, both pink, cefaclor (as monohydrate) for reconstitution with water, 125 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £4.13; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £8.26. Label: 9

**Distaclor MR®** *(Flynn)*

**Tablets**, m/r, both blue, cefaclor (as monohydrate) 375 mg; Net price 14-tab pack = £8.31. Label: 9, 21, 25
Indication and dose

Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria but see notes above

- **By mouth**
  - Neonate under 7 days: 25 mg/kg (max. 125 mg) twice daily
  - Neonate 7–21 days: 25 mg/kg (max. 125 mg) 3 times daily
  - Neonate 21–28 days: 25 mg/kg (max. 125 mg) 4 times daily
  - Child 1 month–12 years: 12.5 mg/kg twice daily; dose doubled in severe infection; max. 25 mg/kg 4 times daily (max. 1 g 4 times daily)
  - Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg twice daily
  - Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 3 times daily
  - Child 5–12 years: 250 mg 3 times daily
  - Child 12–18 years: 500 mg 2–3 times daily, increased to 1–1.5 g 3–4 times daily for severe infection

Prophylaxis of recurrent urinary-tract infection

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 12.5 mg/kg at night (max. 125 mg at night)

Cefalexin

- **Capsules**: cefalexin 250 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £1.66; 500 mg, 21-cap pack = £2.09. Label: 9
- **Tablets**: cefalexin 250 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.94; 500 mg, 21-tab pack = £2.39. Label: 9
- **Oral suspension**: cefalexin for reconstitution with water, 125 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £1.75; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £2.15. Label: 9

CEFOTAXIME

Cautions see under Cefaclor; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)

Contra-indications see under Cefaclor

Renal impairment: reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy: not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding: manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects see under Cefaclor

Indication and dose

Acute infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, but see notes above

- **By mouth**
  - Child 6 months–1 year: 75 mg daily
  - Child 1–5 years: 100 mg daily
  - Child 5–10 years: 200 mg daily
  - Child 10–18 years: 400 mg as a single dose

Uncomplicated gonorrhoea [unlicensed indication, see also Table 1, section 5.1]

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years: 400 mg as a single dose

Suprax® (Sanofi-Aventis)

- **Tablets**: f/c, scored, cefixime 200 mg. Net price 7-tab pack = £13.23. Label: 9
- **Paediatric oral suspension**: cefixime 100 mg/5 mL when reconstituted with water, net price 50 mL (with double-ended spoon for measuring 3.75 mL or 5 mL since dilution not recommended) = £10.53, 100 mL = £18.91. Label: 9

CEFOTAXIME

Cautions see under Cefaclor; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)

Contra-indications see under Cefaclor

Renal impairment: usual initial dose, then use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 5 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy: not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding: present in milk in low concentration, considered compatible with breast-feeding

Side-effects see under Cefaclor; rarely arrhythmias following rapid injection reported

Indication and dose

Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, surgical prophylaxis, Haemophilus epiglottitis and meningitis (Table 1, section 5.1) see also notes above

- **By intramuscular or by intravenous injection or intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate under 7 days**: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection and meningitis
  - **Neonate 7–21 days**: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection and meningitis
  - **Neonate 21–28 days**: 25 mg/kg every 6–8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection and meningitis

Keflex® (Flynn)

- **Capsules**: cefalexin 250 mg (green/white), net price 28-cap pack = £1.46; 500 mg (pale green/dark green), 21-cap pack = £1.98. Label: 9
- **Tablets**: both peach, cefalexin 250 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.60; 500 mg (scored), 21-tab pack = £2.08. Label: 9
- **Suspension**: cefalexin for reconstitution with water, 125 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = 84p; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £1.40. Label: 9
### Cefaclor

- **Indication and dose**: see under Cefaclor
- **Side-effects**: present in milk in low concentration
- **Breast-feeding**: not known to be harmful
- **Pregnancy**: not known to be harmful
- **Renal impairment**: increase dose interval to every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m².
- **Contra-indications**: see under Cefaclor
- **Cautions**: see under Cefaclor;

### Cefotaxime

- **Non-proprietary**: Cefotaxime
- **Administration**: Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion dilute in glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9%; administer over 20–60 minutes; incompatible with alkaline solutions
- **Cefotaxime (Non-proprietary)**: injection, powder for reconstitution, cefotaxime (as sodium salt), net price 500-mg vial = £2.14; 1-g vial = £4.31; 2-g vial = £8.57
- **Indication and dose**: See above
- **Cautions** see under Cefaclor; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)

### Cefradine

- **Non-proprietary**: Cefradine
- **Cautions** see under Cefaclor; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)
- **Contra-indications**: see under Cefaclor
- **Renal impairment**: reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m².
- **Pregnancy**: not known to be harmful
- **Breast-feeding**: present in milk in low concentrations
- **Side-effects**: see under Cefaclor
- **Indication and dose**: See above

### Cepfodoxime

- **Cautions**: see under Cefaclor; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)
- **Contra-indications**: see under Cefaclor
- **Renal impairment**: increase dose interval to every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m².
- **Pregnancy**: not known to be harmful
- **Breast-feeding**: present in milk in low concentration
- **Side-effects**: see under Cefaclor
- **Indication and dose**: See above

### Ceftazidime

- **Cautions**: see under Cefaclor; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)
- **Contra-indications**: see under Cefaclor
- **Renal impairment**: reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m².
- **Pregnancy**: not known to be harmful
Breast-feeding present in milk in low concentration, considered compatible with breast-feeding

Side-effects see under Cefaclor

Licensed use nebulised route unlicensed

### Indication and dose

**Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria** but see notes above

- **By intravenous injection or infusion**
  - Neonate under 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 24 hours; dose doubled in severe infection and meningitis
  - Neonate 7–21 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection and meningitis
  - Neonate 21–28 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection and meningitis

- **Child 1 month–18 years**: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, febrile neutropenia and meningitis (max. 6 g daily)

**Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

- **By intravenous injection or infusion or by deep intramuscular injection**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. 9 g daily)

**Chronic Burkholderia cepacia infection in cystic fibrosis**

- **By inhalation of nebulised solution**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 1 g twice daily

### Administration

For parenteral administration, intravenous route recommended in children. Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion dilute reconstituted solution further to a concentration of not more than 40 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Glucose 10% or Sodium chloride 0.9%; give over 20–30 minutes.

For nebulisation, dissolve dose in 3 mL of water for injection

### Ceftriaxone (Non-proprietary)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dosage Form</th>
<th>Strength</th>
<th>Price (per vial)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Injection, powder for reconstitution, ceftazidime (as pentahydrate), with sodium carbonate, net price 1-g vial = £8.50, 2-g vial = £17.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortum® (GSK)</td>
<td>Injection, powder for reconstitution, ceftazidime (as pentahydrate), with sodium carbonate, net price 500-mg vial = £4.40, 1-g vial = £8.79, 2-g vial = £17.59, 3-g vial = £25.76</td>
<td>Electrolytes Na+ 2.3 mmol/g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kefadim® (Flynn)</td>
<td>Injection, powder for reconstitution, ceftazidime (as pentahydrate), with sodium carbonate, net price 1-g vial = £7.92, 2-g vial = £15.84</td>
<td>Electrolytes Na+ 2.3 mmol/g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Contra-indications

see under Cefaclor; neonates less than 41 weeks postmenstrual age; neonates over 41 weeks postmenstrual age with jaundice, hypoaalbuminaemia, or acidosis; concomitant treatment with intravenous calcium (including total parenteral nutrition containing calcium) in neonates over 41 weeks postmenstrual age—risk of precipitation in urine and lungs

### Hepatic impairment

if hepatic impairment is accompanied by severe renal impairment, reduce dose and monitor plasma concentration

### Renal impairment

max. 50 mg/kg daily (max. 2 g daily) in severe renal impairment; also monitor plasma concentration if hepatic impairment accompanied by severe renal impairment

### Pregnancy

not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding present in milk in low concentration, considered compatible with breast-feeding

### Side-effects

see under Cefaclor; calcium ceftriaxone precipitates in urine (particularly in very young, dehydrated or those who are immobilised) or in gall bladder—consider discontinuation if symptomatic; rarely prolongation of prothrombin time, pancreatitis

### Licensed use

not licensed for congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis or early syphilis; not licensed for use in children under 12 years of age for uncomplicated gonorrhoea or pelvic inflammatory disease

### Indication and dose

**Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria**

- **By intravenous infusion over 60 minutes**
  - Neonate: 20–50 mg/kg once daily
  - **By deep intramuscular injection, or by intravenous injection over 2–4 minutes, or by intravenous infusion**
    - Child 1 month–12 years: 50 mg/kg once daily; up to 80 mg/kg daily in severe infections and meningitis; doses of 30 mg/kg and over by intravenous infusion only
    - Body-weight under 50 kg: 50 mg/kg once daily; up to 80 mg/kg daily in severe infections and meningitis; doses of 30 mg/kg and over by intravenous infusion only
    - **Body-weight 50 kg and over**: dose as for child 12–18 years
  - Child 12–18 years: 1 g daily; 2–4 g daily in severe infections and meningitis; intramuscular doses over 1 g divided between more than one site; single intravenous doses above 1 g by intravenous infusion only

### Congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis

- **By intravenous infusion over 60 minutes or by deep intramuscular injection**
  - Neonate: 25–50 mg/kg (max. 125 mg) as a single dose

### Uncomplicated gonorrhoea, pelvic inflammatory disease (Table 1, section 5.1)

- **By deep intramuscular injection**
  - **Child under 12 years**
    - **Body-weight under 45 kg**: 125 mg as a single dose
    - **Body-weight over 45 kg**: 250 mg as a single dose
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 250 mg as a single dose

### Cautions

see under Cefaclor; neonates may displace bilirubin from serum albumin, administer over 60 minutes in neonates (see also Contra-indications); treatment longer than 14 days, renal failure, dehydration—risk of ceftriaxone precipitation in gall bladder; interactions: Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)
Early syphilis
- By deep intramuscular injection
  
  **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg daily for 10 days

Surgical prophylaxis
- By deep intramuscular injection or by intravenous injection over at least 2–4 minutes, or (for colorectal surgery) by intravenous infusion
  
  **Child 12–18 years** 1 g up to 30 minutes before the procedure; colorectal surgery, 2 g up to 30 minutes before the procedure; intramuscular doses over 1 g divided between more than one site.

Prophylaxis of meningococcal meningitis

**Administration** Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For **intravenous infusion**, dilute reconstituted solution with Glucose 5% or 10% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 30 minutes (60 minutes in neonates). Not to be given simultaneously with parenteral nutrition or infusion fluids containing calcium, even by different infusion lines; may be infused sequentially with infusion fluids containing calcium if flush with sodium chloride 0.9% between infusions or given infusions by different infusion lines at different sites; see also Contra-indications above.

For **intramuscular injection** ceftriaxone may be mixed with 1% Lidocaine Hydrochloride Injection to reduce pain at intramuscular injection site; final concentration 250–350 mg/mL.

**Ceftriaxone** (Non-proprietary) (Roche)
- **Injection**, powder for reconstitution, ceftriaxone (as sodium salt), net price 1-g vial = £10.17; 2-g vial = £20.36
- **Rocephin** (Roche) (A)
- **Injection**, powder for reconstitution, ceftriaxone (as sodium salt), net price 250-mg vial = £9.58; 2-g vial = £19.18

**CEFUROXIME**

**Cautions** see under Cefaclor; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (cephalosporins)

**Contra-indications** see under Cefaclor

**Renal impairment** reduce parenteral dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** present in milk in low concentration

**Side-effects** see under Cefaclor

**Licensed use** not licensed for treatment of Lyme disease in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria
- By mouth (as cefuroxime axetil)
  
  **Child 3 months–2 years** 10 mg/kg (max. 125 mg) twice daily
  **Child 2–12 years** 15 mg/kg (max. 250 mg) twice daily
  **Child 12–18 years** 250 mg twice daily; dose doubled in severe lower respiratory-tract infections, or if pneumonia suspected; dose reduced to 125 mg twice daily in lower urinary-tract infection

- By intravenous injection or infusion or by intramuscular injection
  
  **Neonate under 7 days** 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, intravenous route only
  **Neonate 7–21 days** 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, intravenous route only
  **Neonate 21–28 days** 25 mg/kg every 6 hours; dose doubled in severe infection, intravenous route only

**Child 1 month–18 years** 20 mg/kg (max. 750 mg) every 8 hours; increase to 50–60 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g) every 6–8 hours in severe infection and cystic fibrosis

**Lyne disease** (see also section 5.1.1.3)
- **By mouth**
  
  **Child 3 months–12 years** 15 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily for 14–21 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)
  **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg twice daily for 14–21 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)

**Surgical prophylaxis**
- **By intravenous injection**
  
  **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g) up to 30 minutes before the procedure; up to 3 further doses of 30 mg/kg (max. 750 mg) may be given by **intramuscular or intravenous injection** every 8 hours for high-risk procedures

**Administration** Single doses over 750 mg should be administered by the intravenous route only. Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9%; give over 30 minutes.

**Cefuroxime** (Non-proprietary) (A)
- **Tablets**, cefuroxime (as axetil) 250 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £10.39. Label: 9, 21, 25
  
  **Injection**, powder for reconstitution, cefuroxime (as sodium salt), net price 750-mg vial = £2.52; 1.5-g vial = £5.05

**Zinacef** (GSK) (A)
- **Injection**, powder for reconstitution, cefuroxime (as sodium salt), net price 250-mg vial = 94p; 750-mg vial = £5.05

**Zinnat** (GSK) (A)
- **Tablets**, both f/c, cefuroxime (as axetil) 125 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £4.56; 250 mg, 14-tab pack = £9.11. Label: 9, 21, 25
- **Suspension**, cefuroxime (as axetil) 125 mg/5 mL when reconstituted with water, net price 70 mL (tutti-frutti-flavoured) = £5.20. Label: 9, 21

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1), sucrose 3.1 g/5 mL.
5.1.2 Carbapenems

The carbapenems are beta-lactam antibiotics with a broad-spectrum of activity which includes many Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, and anaerobes; imipenem and meropenem have good activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. The carbapenems are not active against meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Enterococcus faecium*.

Imipenem and meropenem are used for the treatment of severe hospital-acquired infections and polymicrobial infections caused by multiple-antibacterial resistant organisms (including septicaemia, hospital-acquired pneumonia, intra-abdominal infections, skin and soft-tissue infections, and complicated urinary-tract infections).

Ertapenem is licensed for treating abdominal and gynaecological infections and for community-acquired pneumonia, but it is not active against atypical respiratory pathogens and it has limited activity against penicillin-resistant pneumococci. Unlike the other carbapenems, ertapenem is not active against *Pseudomonas* or against *Acinetobacter* spp.

Imipenem is partially inactivated in the kidney by enzymatic activity and is therefore administered in combination with cilastatin, a specific enzyme inhibitor, which blocks its renal metabolism. Meropenem and ertapenem are stable to the renal enzyme which inactivates imipenem and therefore can be given without cilastatin.

Side-effects of imipenem with cilastatin are similar to those of other beta-lactam antibiotics; neuropathy; toxicity has been observed at very high dosage, in renal failure, or in patients with CNS disease. Meropenem has less seizure-inducing potential and can be used to treat central nervous system infection. Ertapenem has been associated with seizures uncommonly.

**Ertapenem**

**Indication and dose**

**Abdominal infections, acute gynaecological infections, community-acquired pneumonia**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 3 months–13 years 15 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. 1 g daily)
  - Child 13–18 years 1 g once daily

**Administration** reconstitute 1 g with 10 mL Water for Injections or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; for *intermittent intravenous infusion*, dilute requisite dose in Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a final concentration not exceeding 20 mg/mL; incompatible with glucose solutions

**Imipenem with Cilastatin**

**Indication and dose**

**Aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative infections, hospital-acquired septicaemia** Table 1, section 5.1; not indicated for CNS infections

- **By intravenous infusion** expressed in terms of imipenem
  - Neonate under 7 days 20 mg/kg every 12 hours
  - Neonate 7–21 days 20 mg/kg every 8 hours
  - Neonate 21–28 days 20 mg/kg every 6 hours
  - Child 1–3 months 20 mg/kg every 6 hours
**BNFC 2011–2012**

### 5.1.2 Cephalosporins, carbapenems, and other beta-lactams

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Child 3 months–18 years** | Body-weight under 40 kg 15 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) every 6 hours
| | Body-weight over 40 kg 250–500 mg every 6 hours; less sensitive organisms up to 12.5 mg/kg (max. 1 g) every 6 hours; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses |

**Side-effects**
- nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea (antibiotic-unlikely to be absorbed (but manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available)

**Breast-feeding**
- unlikely to be absorbed (but manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk)

**Side-effects**
- nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea (antibiotic-associated colitis reported), abdominal pain, disturbances in liver function tests, headache, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia; rarely convulsions; also reported haemolytic anaemia, positive Coombs’ test, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis

**Licensed use**
- not licensed for use in children under 3 months

**Administration**
- for intermittent intravenous infusion dilute to a concentration of 5 mg (as imipenem)/mL in sodium chloride 0.9% or sodium chloride and glucose; give up to 500 mg over 20–30 minutes; give 1 g over 40–60 minutes

**Primaxin® (MSD)**
- In intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, imipenem (as monohydrate) 500 mg with cilastatin (as sodium salt) 500 mg, net price per vial = £12.00
- Electrolytes Na+ 1.72 mmol/vial

**MEROPENEM**

**Cautions**
- hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics (avoid if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction, see also p. 257); interactions: Appendix 1 (meropenem)

**Hepatic impairment**
- monitor liver function

**Renal impairment**
- use normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 26–50 mL/min/1.73 m²; use half normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–25 mL/min/1.73 m²; use half normal dose every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/min/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy**
- manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Breast-feeding**
- unlikely to be absorbed (but manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk)

**Side-effects**
- nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea (antibiotic-associated colitis reported), abdominal pain, disturbances in liver function tests, headache, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia; rarely convulsions; also reported haemolytic anaemia, positive Coombs’ test, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis

**Licensed use**
- not licensed for use in children under 3 months

**Indication and dose**
- Aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative infections (see notes above), hospital-acquired septicaemia Table 1, section 5.1
  - By intravenous injection over 5 minutes or by intravenous infusion
  - Neonate under 7 days 20 mg/kg every 12 hours, dose doubled in severe infection
  - Neonate 7–28 days 20 mg/kg every 8 hours; dose doubled in severe infection

**Meningitis**
- by intravenous infusion
  - Neonate under 7 days 40 mg/kg every 12 hours
  - Neonate 7–28 days 40 mg/kg every 8 hours
  - Child 1 month–12 years
  - Body-weight under 50 kg 40 mg/kg every 8 hours
  - Body-weight over 50 kg dose as for child 12–18 years
  - Child 12–18 years 2 g every 8 hours

**Exacerbations of chronic lower respiratory tract infections in cystic fibrosis**
- by intravenous infusion
  - Child 1 month–12 years
  - Body-weight under 50 kg 40 mg/kg every 8 hours
  - Body-weight over 50 kg dose as for child 12–18 years
  - Child 12–18 years 2 g every 8 hours

**Administration**
- displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. For intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further to a concentration of 1–20 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15–30 minutes

**Meronem® (AstraZeneca)**
- Injection, powder for reconstitution, meropenem (as trihydrate), net price 500-mg vial = £8.60; 1-g vial = £17.19
- Electrolytes Na+ 3.9 mmol/g

### 5.1.2.3 Other beta-lactam antibiotics

**Aztreonam**
- is a monocyclic beta-lactam (‘monobactam’) antibiotic with an antibacterial spectrum limited to Gram-negative aerobic bacteria including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Neisseria meningitidis,* and *Haemophilus influenzae*; it should not be used alone for ‘blind’ treatment since it is not active against Gram-positive organisms. Aztreonam is also effective against *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (but not against concurrent chlamydial infection). Side-effects are similar to those of the other beta-lactams although aztreonam may be less likely to cause hypersensitivity in penicillin-sensitive patients.

**AZTREONAM**

**Cautions**
- hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics; interactions: Appendix 1 (aztreonam)

**Contra-indications**
- aztreonam hypersensitivity

**Hepatic impairment**
- use with caution and monitor liver function

**Renal impairment**
- usual initial dose, then half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/
5 Infections

5.1.3 Tetracyclines

The tetracyclines are broad-spectrum antibiotics whose value has decreased owing to increasing bacterial resistance. In children over 12 years of age they are useful for infections caused by chlamydia (trachoma, psittacosis, salmonellosis, urethritis, and lymphogranuloma venereum), rickettsia (including Q-fever), brucella (doxycycline with or without streptomycin or rifampicin), and the spirochaete, Borrelia burgdorferi (Lyme disease—see section 5.1.1.3). They are also used in respiratory and genital infections caused by chlamydia (trachoma, psittacosis, urethritis, and lymphogranuloma venereum), neisseria (including systemic Ps. aeruginosa and lung infections in cystic fibrosis)

Administration Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of less than 20 mg/mL; to be given over 20–60 minutes

Azactam® (Squibb) Injection, powder for reconstitution, aztreonam. Net price 1-g vial = £9.40; 2-g vial = £18.82

5.1.3 Tetracyclines

Microbiologically, there is little to choose between the various tetracyclines, the only exception being minocycline which has a broader spectrum; it is active against Neisseria meningitidis and has been used for meningococcal prophylaxis but is no longer recommended because of side-effects including dizziness and vertigo (see Table 2, section 5.1 for current recommendations). Compared to other tetracyclines, minocycline is associated with a greater risk of lupus-erythematosus-like syndrome. Minocycline sometimes causes irreversible pigmentation.

The role of tetracyclines in the management of meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) infections, see p. 259.

Oral infections In children over 12 years of age, tetracyclines can be effective against oral anaerobes but the development of resistance (especially by oral streptococci) has reduced their usefulness for the treatment of acute oral infections; they may still have a role in the treatment of destructive (refractory) forms of periodontal disease. Doxycycline has a longer duration of action than tetracycline or oxytetracycline and need only be given once daily; it is reported to be more active against anaerobes than some other tetracyclines.

For the use of doxycycline in the treatment of recurrent aphthous ulceration, oral herpes, or as an adjunct to gingival scaling and root planing for periodontitis, see section 12.3.1 and section 12.3.2.

Cautions Tetracyclines may increase muscle weakness in patients with myasthenia gravis, and exacerbate systemic lupus erythematosus. Antacids, and aluminium, calcium, iron, magnesium and zinc salts decrease the absorption of tetracyclines; milk also reduces the absorption of demeclocycline, oxytetracycline, and tetracycline. Other interactions: Appendix 1 (tetracyclines).

Contra-indications Deposition of tetracyclines in growing bone and teeth (by binding to calcium) causes staining and occasionally dental hypoplasia, and they should not be given to children under 12 years, or to pregnant or breast-feeding women. However, doxycycline may be used in children for treatment and post-exposure prophylaxis of anthrax when an alternative antibacterial cannot be given [unlicensed indication]. Tetracyclines should not be given to children with acute porphyria (section 9.8.2).

Hepatic impairment Tetracyclines should be avoided or used with caution in children with hepatic impairment. Tetracyclines should also be used with caution in those receiving potentially hepatotoxic drugs.

Renal impairment With the exception of doxycycline and minocycline, the tetracyclines may exacerbate renal failure and should not be given to children with renal impairment.

Pregnancy Tetracyclines should not be given to pregnant women; effects on skeletal development have been documented in the first trimester in animal studies. Administration during the second or third trimester may cause discoloration of the child’s teeth, and maternal hepatotoxicity has been reported with large parenteral doses.

Indication and dose

Gram-negative infections including Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Haemophilus influenzae, and Neisseria meningitidis

- By intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes or by intravenous infusion

**Neonate under 7 days** 30 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Neonate 7–28 days** 30 mg/kg every 6–8 hours

**Child 1 month–2 years** 30 mg/kg every 6–8 hours

**Child 2–12 years** 30 mg/kg every 6–8 hours increased to 50 mg/kg every 6–8 hours in severe infection and cystic fibrosis (max. 2 g every 6 hours)

**Child 12–18 years** 1 g every 8 hours or 2 g every 12 hours; 2 g every 6–8 hours for severe infections (including systemic Ps. aeruginosa and lung infections in cystic fibrosis)

Administration Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of less than 20 mg/mL; to be given over 20–60 minutes

Azactam® (Squibb) Injection, powder for reconstitution, aztreonam. Net price 1-g vial = £9.40; 2-g vial = £18.82

5.1.3 Tetracyclines

The tetracyclines are broad-spectrum antibiotics whose value has decreased owing to increasing bacterial resistance. In children over 12 years of age they are useful for infections caused by chlamydia (trachoma, psittacosis, salmonellosis, urethritis, and lymphogranuloma venereum), rickettsia (including Q-fever), brucella (doxycycline with or without streptomycin or rifampicin), and the spirochaete, Borrelia burgdorferi (Lyme disease—see section 5.1.1.3). They are also used in respiratory and genital mycoplasma infections, in acne, in destructive (refractory) periodontal disease, in exacerbations of chronic respiratory diseases (because of their activity against Haemophilus influenzae), and for leptospirosis in penicillin hypersensitivity (as an alternative to erythromycin).
Breast-feeding  Tetracyclines should not be given to women who are breast-feeding (although absorption and therefore discoloration of teeth in the infant is probably usually prevented by chelation with calcium in milk).

Side-effects  Side-effects of the tetracyclines include nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea (antibiotic-associated colitis reported occasionally), dysphagia, and oesophageal irritation. Other rare side-effects include hepatotoxicity, pancreatitis, blood disorders, photosensitivity (particularly with demeclocycline), and hypersensitivity reactions (including rash, exfoliative dermatitis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, urticaria, angioedema, anaphylaxis, pericarditis). Headache and visual disturbances may indicate benign intracranial hypertension (discontinue treatment); bulging fontanelles have been reported in infants.

TETRACYCLINE

Cautions  see notes above
Contra-indications  see notes above
Hepatic impairment  see notes above; max. 1 g daily in divided doses
Renal impairment  see notes above
Pregnancy  see notes above
Breast-feeding  see notes above

Side-effects  see notes above; also acute renal failure, skin discoloration

Indication and dose

Susceptible infections  see notes above

- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years  150 mg 4 times daily or 300 mg twice daily

DOXYCYCLINE

Cautions  see notes above; alcohol dependence; photosensitivity reported (avoid exposure to sunlight or sun lamps)
Contra-indications  see notes above
Hepatic impairment  see notes above
Renal impairment  use with caution (avoid excessive doses)
Pregnancy  see notes above
Breast-feeding  see notes above

Side-effects  see notes above; also anorexia, dry mouth, flushing, anxiety, and tinnitus

Licensed use  not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Susceptible infections  see notes above

- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years  200 mg on first day, then 100 mg daily; severe infections (including refractory urinary-tract infections) 200 mg daily

Early syphilis
- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years  100 mg twice daily for 14 days

Late latent syphilis
- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years  100 mg twice daily for 28 days

Uncomplicated genital chlamydia, non-gonococcal urethritis, pelvic inflammatory disease

Table 1, section 5.1
- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years  100 mg twice daily for 7 days (14 days in pelvic inflammatory disease)

Lyme disease  (see also section 5.1.1.3)
- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years  100 mg twice daily for 10–14 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)

Anthrax (treatment or post-exposure prophylaxis)  see also section 5.1.12
- By mouth
  Child under 12 years  (only if alternative antibacterial cannot be given) 2.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. 100 mg twice daily)
  Child 12–18 years  100 mg twice daily

Acne  section 13.6.2

Tetracycline

(Non-proprietary)  Tablets, coated, tetracycline hydrochloride 250 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £13.67. Label: 7, 9, 23, counselling, posture

Dental prescribing on NHS  Tetracycline Tablets may be prescribed

Demeclocycline hydrochloride

(Non-proprietary)  Capsules, demeclocycline hydrochloride 150 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £25.09. Label: 7, 9, 11, 23
Adjunct to gingival scaling and root planing for periodontitis section 12.3.1

Counselling Capsules should be swallowed whole with plenty of fluid during meals while sitting or standing

Note Doxycycline doses in BNF for Children may differ from those in product literature

Doxycycline (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, doxycycline (as hyclate) 50 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £1.79; 100 mg, 8-cap pack = £1.16. Label: 6, 9, 11, 27, counselling, posture

Dental prescribing on NHS Doxycycline Capsules 100 mg may be prescribed

Vibramycin-D® (Pfizer)

Dispersible tablets, yellow, scored, doxycycline 100 mg, net price 8-tab pack = £4.91. Label: 6, 9, 11, 13

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Dispersible Doxycycline Tablets

**LYMECYCLINE**

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

**Susceptible infections** see notes above

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 408 mg twice daily, increased to 1.224–1.632 g daily in severe infections

Acne

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 408 mg daily for at least 8 weeks

Tetralysal 300® (Galderma)

Capsules, red/yellow, lymecycline 408 mg (= tetracycline 300 mg). Net price 28-cap pack = £7.77, 56-cap pack = £14.97. Label: 6, 9, 25

**MINOCYCLINE**

Cautions see notes above; if treatment continued for longer than 6 months, monitor every 3 months for hepatotoxicity, pigmentation and for systemic lupus erythematosus—discontinue if these develop or if pre-existing systemic lupus erythematosus worsens

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment use with caution (avoid excessive doses)

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also dizziness and vertigo (more common in women); rarely anorexia, tinnitus, impaired hearing, hyperaesthesia, paraesthesia, acute renal failure, pigmentation (sometimes irreversible), and alopecia; very rarely systemic lupus erythematosus, discoloration of conjunctiva, tears, and sweat

Indication and dose

**Susceptible infections** see notes above

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years 100 mg twice daily

Acne section 13.6.2

Oxytetracycline (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, coated, oxytetracycline dihydrate 250 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.28. Label: 7, 9, 23

Dental prescribing on NHS Oxytetracycline Tablets may be prescribed

5.1.4 Aminoglycosides

These include amikacin, gentamicin, neomycin, streptomycin, and tobramycin. All are bactericidal and active against some Gram-positive and many Gram-negative organisms. Amikacin, gentamicin, and tobramycin are also active against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, streptomycin is active against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and is now almost entirely reserved for tuberculosis (section 5.1.9).

The aminoglycosides are not absorbed from the gut (although there is a risk of absorption in inflammatory bowel disease and liver failure) and must therefore be given by injection for systemic infections.
Most side-effects of this group of antibiotics are dose-related; therefore care must be taken with dosage and whenever possible treatment should not exceed 7 days. The important side-effects are ototoxicity, and nephrotoxicity; they occur most commonly in children with renal failure.

Aminoglycosides may impair neuromuscular transmission and should not be given to children with myasthenia gravis; large doses given during surgery have been responsible for a transient myasthenic syndrome in patients with normal neuromuscular function.

Aminoglycosides should preferably not be given with potentially ototoxic diuretics (e.g. furosemide); if concurrent use is unavoidable, administration of the aminoglycoside and of the diuretic should be separated by at least a period as practicable.

Renal impairment Excretion of aminoglycosides is principally via the kidney and accumulation occurs in renal impairment. Ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity occur commonly in patients with renal failure. If there is impairment of renal function, the interval between doses must be increased; if the renal impairment is severe, the dose itself should be reduced as well. Serum-aminoglycoside concentrations must be monitored in patients with renal impairment, see Serum Concentrations below; renal, auditory, and vestibular function should also be monitored. A once-daily, high-dose regimen of an aminoglycoside should be avoided in children over 1 month of age with a creatinine clearance less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m².

Once daily dosage Once daily administration of aminoglycosides is more convenient, provides adequate serum concentrations, and has largely superseded multiple-daily-dose regimens (given in 2–3 divided doses during the 24 hours). Local guidelines on dosage and serum concentrations should be consulted. A once-daily, high-dose regimen of an aminoglycoside should be avoided in children with endocarditis or burns of more than 20% of the total body surface area, or in children over 1 month of age with a creatinine clearance of less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m². The extended interval dose regimen is used in neonates to reflect the changes in renal function that occur with increasing gestational and postnatal age (see Neonates below).

Serum concentrations Serum concentration monitoring avoids both excessive and subtherapeutic concentrations thus preventing toxicity and ensuring efficacy. In children with normal renal function, aminoglycoside concentration should be measured initially after 3 or 4 doses of a multiple-daily-dose regimen; children with renal impairment may require earlier and more frequent measurement of aminoglycoside concentration.

Blood samples should be taken just before the next dose is administered (‘trough’ concentration). If the post-dose (‘peak’) concentration is high, the dose must be decreased.

Serum-aminoglycoside concentration should be measured in all children and must be determined in infants, in neonates, in obesity, and in cystic fibrosis, or if high doses are being given, or if there is renal impairment.

Cystic fibrosis A higher dose of parenteral aminoglycoside is often required in children with cystic fibrosis because renal clearance of the aminoglycoside is increased. For the role of aminoglycosides in the treatment of pseudomonal lung infections in cystic fibrosis see Table 1, section 5.1. Nebulised tobramycin is used for chronic pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis; however, resistance may develop, and some children do not respond to treatment.

Endocarditis Gentamicin is used in combination with other antibiotics for the treatment of bacterial endocarditis (Table 1, section 5.1). Serum-gentamicin concentration should be determined twice each week (more often in renal impairment). Streptomycin may be used as an alternative in gentamicin-resistant enterococcal endocarditis.

Gentamicin is the aminoglycoside of choice in the UK and is used widely for the treatment of serious infections. It has a broad spectrum but is inactive against anaerobes and has poor activity against haemolytic streptococci and pneumococci. When used for the ‘blind’ therapy of undiagnosed serious infections it is usually given in conjunction with a penicillin or metronidazole (or both). Gentamicin is used together with another antibiotic for the treatment of endocarditis (see above and Table 1, section 5.1).

Loading and maintenance doses may be calculated on the basis of the patient's weight and renal function (e.g. using a nomogram); adjustments are then made according to serum-gentamicin concentrations. High doses are occasionally indicated for serious infections, especially in the neonate, children with cystic fibrosis or the immunocompromised patient; whenever possible treatment should not exceed 7 days.

Amikacin is more stable than gentamicin to enzyme inactivation. Amikacin is used in the treatment of serious infections caused by gentamicin-resistant Gram-negative bacilli.

Tobramycin has similar activity to gentamicin. It is slightly more active against Ps. aeruginosa but shows less activity against certain other Gram-negative bacteria. Tobramycin may be administered by nebuliser for the treatment of Ps. aeruginosa infection in cystic fibrosis (see Cystic Fibrosis, above).

Neomycin is too toxic for parenteral administration and can only be used for infections of the skin or mucous membranes or to reduce the bacterial population of the colon prior to bowel surgery or in hepatic failure. Oral administration may lead to malabsorption. Small amounts of neomycin may be absorbed from the gut in children with hepatic failure and, as these children may also be uraemic, cumulation may occur with resultant ototoxicity.

Neonates As aminoglycosides are eliminated principally via the kidney, neonatal treatment must reflect the changes in glomerular filtration that occur with increasing gestational and postnatal age. The extended interval dose regimen is used in neonates, and serum-aminoglycoside concentrations must be measured. In patients on single daily dose regimens it may become necessary to prolong the dose interval to more than 24 hours if the trough concentration is high.
Pregnancy There is a risk of auditory or vestibular nerve damage when aminoglycosides are used in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy. The risk is greatest with streptomycin (section 5.1.9). The risk is probably very small with gentamicin and tobramycin, but their use should be avoided unless essential (if given, serum-aminoglycoside concentration monitoring is essential).

**GENTAMICIN**

Cautions neonates, infants (adjust dose and monitor renal, auditory and vestibular function together with serum gentamicin concentrations); avoid prolonged use; conditions characterised by muscular weakness; see also notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (aminoglycosides)

Contra-indications myasthenia gravis

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Side-effects vestibular and auditory damage, nephrotoxicity; rarely, hypomagnesaemia on prolonged therapy; antibiotic-associated colitis; also reported, nausea, vomiting, rash, blood disorders; see also notes above

Licensed use not licensed for nebulisation

Pharmacokinetics Extended interval dose regimen in neonates: pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre

Once daily dose regimen: pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre

Multiple daily dose regimen: one hour (‘peak’) serum concentration should be 5–10 mg/litre (3–5 mg/litre for endocarditis, 8–12 mg/litre in cystic fibrosis); pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre (less than 1 mg/litre for endocarditis)

Intrathecal/intraventricular injection: cerebrospinal fluid concentration should not exceed 10 mg/litre

Indication and dose

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, use ideal weight for height to calculate parenteral dose and monitor serum-gentamicin concentration closely

Neonatal sepsis

- Extended interval dose regimen by slow intravenous infection or intravenous infusion

Neonate less than 32 weeks postmenstrual age

4–5 mg/kg every 36 hours

Neonate 32 weeks and over postmenstrual age

4–5 mg/kg every 24 hours

Multiple daily dose regimen by slow intravenous injection

Neonate less than 29 weeks postmenstrual age

2.5 mg/kg every 24 hours

Neonate 29–35 weeks postmenstrual age

2.5 mg/kg every 18 hours

Neonate over 35 weeks postmenstrual age

2.5 mg/kg every 12 hours

Septicaemia, meningitis and other CNS infections, biliary-tract infection, acute pyelonephritis, endocarditis (see notes above), pneumonia in hospital patients, adjunct in listerial meningitis (Table 1, section 5.1)

- Once daily dose regimen (not for endocarditis or meningitis) by intravenous infusion

  Child 1 month–18 years initially 7 mg/kg, then adjusted according to serum-gentamicin concentration

- Multiple daily dose regimen by intramuscular or by slow intravenous injection over at least 3 minutes

  Child 1 month–12 years 2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours

  Child 12–18 years 2 mg/kg every 8 hours

Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis

- Multiple daily dose regimen by slow intravenous injection over at least 3 minutes or by intravenous infusion

  Child 1 month–18 years 3 mg/kg every 8 hours

Bacterial ventriculitis and CNS infection (supplement to systemic therapy)

- By intrathecal or intraventricular injection, seek specialist advice

  Neonate seek specialist advice

  Child 1 month–18 years 1 mg daily (increased if necessary to 5 mg daily)

  Note only preservative-free, intrathecal preparation should be used

Eye section 11.3.1

Ear section 12.1.1

Note Local guidelines may vary

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, give over 30 minutes

For nebulisation, dilute preservative-free preparation in 3 mL sodium chloride 0.9%. Administer after physiotherapy and bronchodilators

For intrathecal or intraventricular injection, use preservative-free intrathecal preparations only

**Gentamicin** (Non-proprietary)

Injection, gentamicin (as sulphate), net price 40 mg/mL, 1-mL amp = £1.40, 2-mL amp = £1.54, 2-mL vial = £1.48

Paediatric injection, gentamicin (as sulphate) 10 mg/mL, net price 2-mL vial = £1.80

Intrathecal injection, gentamicin (as sulphate) 5 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 74p

Intravenous infusion, gentamicin (as sulphate) 1 mg/mL in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%, net price 80-mL (80 mg) bottle = £1.95; 3 mg/mL, 80-mL (240 mg) bottle = £2.95, 120-mL (360 mg) bottle = £8.45

**Cidomycin** (Sanofi-Aventis)

Injection, gentamicin (as sulphate) 40 mg/mL. Net price 2-mL amp or vial = £1.48
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Gentamicin® (Amidpharm)**

Injection, gentamicin (as sulphate) 40 mg/mL. Net price 2-mL amp = £1.40

**Isotonic Gentamicin Injection (Baxter)**

Intravenous infusion, gentamicin (as sulphate) 800 micrograms/mL in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%. Net price 100-mL (80-mg) Viaflex® bag = £1.61

**Electrolytes**

- Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30–60 minutes
- Glucose 5%; give over 30–60 minutes
- Sodium Chloride 0.9% and Glucose 5%; give over 30–60 minutes
- Sodium Chloride 0.9% and Glucose 5%, diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30–60 minutes

**AMIKACIN**

**Cautions** see under Gentamicin; interactions: Appendix 1 (aminoglycosides)

**Contra-indications** see under Gentamicin

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** see under Gentamicin

**Pharmacokinetics**

**Multiple dose regimen:** one-hour (‘peak’) serum concentration should not exceed 30 mg/litre, pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 10 mg/litre

**Once daily dose regimen:** pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 5 mg/litre

**Licensed use**

- dose for cystic fibrosis not licensed

**Indication and dose**

**Neonatal sepsis**

- Extended interval dose regimen by slow intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes or by intravenous infusion

**Neonate** 15 mg/kg every 24 hours

- Multiple daily dose regimen by intramuscular or by slow intravenous injection or by infusion

**Neonate** loading dose of 10 mg/kg then 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Serious Gram-negative infections resistant to gentamicin**

- By slow intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes

**Child 1 month–12 years** 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Child 12–18 years** 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased to 7.5 mg/kg every 4 hours in severe infections, max. 500 mg every 8 hours for up to 10 days (max. cumulative dose 15 g)

**Once daily dose regimen (not for endocarditis or meningitis)**

- By intravenous injection or infusion

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 15 mg/kg, then adjusted according to serum-aminoglycosin concentration

**Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

- Multiple daily dose regimen by slow intravenous injection or infusion

**Child 1 month–18 years** 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. 500 mg every 8 hours)

**Note** Local dosage guidelines may vary

**5.1.4 Aminoglycosides**

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30–60 minutes

**Amikacin** (Non-proprietary)

Injection, amikacin (as sulphate) 250 mg/mL. Net price 2-mL vial = £10.14

**Electrolytes**

- Na+ 0.5 mmol/100-mL bag

**TOBRAMYCIN**

**Cautions** see under Gentamicin; interactions: Appendix 1 (aminoglycosides)

**Specific cautions for inhaled treatment** Other inhaled drugs should be administered before tobramycin; monitor for bronchospasm with initial dose, measure peak flow before and after nebulisation—if bronchospasm occurs, repeat test using bronchodilator; monitor renal function before treatment and then annually, severe haemoptysis

**Contra-indications** see under Gentamicin

**Renal impairment** see notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** see under Gentamicin; on inhalation, mouth ulcers, taste disturbances, voice alteration, cough, bronchospasm (see Cautions)

**Pharmacokinetics**

**Extended interval dose regimen in neonates:** pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre

**Once daily dose regimen:** pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre

**Multiple daily dose regimen:** one-hour (‘peak’) serum concentration should not exceed 10 mg/litre

**Extended interval dose regimen**

**Neonate** 7–28 days 2–2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours

**Neonate 32 weeks and over postmenstrual age** 4–5 mg/kg every 8 hours

**Neonate less than 32 weeks postmenstrual age** 4–5 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Neonate 32 weeks and over postmenstrual age** 4–5 mg/kg every 24 hours

**Child 1 month–12 years**

- 4–5 mg/kg every 12 hours
- 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Child 12–18 years**

- 4–5 mg/kg every 8 hours
- 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Septicaemia, meningitis and other CNS infections, biliary-tract infection, acute pyelonephritis, pneumonia in hospital patients**

- Multiple daily dose regimen by slow intravenous injection over 3–5 minutes

**Child 1 month–12 years** 2–2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours

**Note** Local dosage guidelines may vary
5 Infections

Bramitob (Non-proprietary) Tobramycin

Divided doses but if a more serious infection, such as pneumatic-associated colitis, QT interval prolongation, insomnias, agitation, anxiety, asthenia, paraesthesia, hyperactivity, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anae-

5.1.5 Macrolides

Erythromycin has an antibacterial spectrum that is similar but not identical to that of penicillin; it is thus an alternative in penicillin-allergic patients.

Indications for erythromycin include respiratory infections, whooping cough, legionnaires’ disease, and campylobacter enteritis. It is active against many penicillin-resistant staphylococci but some are now also resistant to erythromycin; it has poor activity against macrolides or rapidly develop resistance; their use should therefore be limited to short courses. Metronidazole (section 5.1.11) may be preferred as an alternative to a penicillin.

Cautions Macrolides should be used with caution in children with a predisposition to QT interval prolongation (including electrolyte disturbances and concomitant use of drugs that prolong the QT interval).

Side-effects Nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, and diarrhoea are the most common side-effects of the macrolides, but they are mild and less frequent with azithromycin and clarithromycin than with erythromycin. Hepatotoxicity (including cholestatic jaundice) and rash occur less frequently. Other side-effects reported rarely or very rarely include pancreatitis, antibiotic-associated colitis, QT interval prolongation, arrhythmias, generally reversible hearing loss (sometimes with tinnitus) after large doses, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis. Intravenous infusion may cause local tenderness and phlebitis.

Azithromycin

Cautions see notes above; Interactions: Appendix 1 (macrolides)

Hepatic impairment manufacturers advise avoid in severe liver disease—no information available

Renal impairment use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy manufacturers advise use only if adequate alternatives not available

Breast-feeding present in milk; use only if no suitable alternative

Side-effects see notes above; also anorexia, dyspepsia, flatulence, syncope, dizziness, headache, drowsiness, convulsions, arthralgia, and disturbances in taste and smell, rarely constipation, hypotension, insomnia, agitation, anxiety, asthenia, paraesthesia, hyperactivity, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anae-
mia, interstitial nephritis, acute renal failure, photosensitivity, tooth and tongue discoloration

**Licensed use** not licensed for typhoid fever, Lyme disease, chronic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in cystic fibrosis, or prophylaxis of group A streptococcal infection

**Indication and dose**

**Respiratory-tract infections, otitis media, skin and soft-tissue infections**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child over 6 months** 10 mg/kg once daily (max. 500 mg once daily) for 3 days
  - **Body-weight 15–25 kg** 200 mg once daily for 3 days
  - **Body-weight 26–35 kg** 300 mg once daily for 3 days
  - **Body-weight 36–45 kg** 400 mg once daily for 3 days
  - **Body-weight over 45 kg** 500 mg once daily for 3 days

**Infection in cystic fibrosis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6 months–18 years** 10 mg/kg once daily (max. 500 mg once daily) for 3 days; course repeated after 1 week, then repeat as necessary

**Chronic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in cystic fibrosis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6–18 years** 10 mg/kg once daily (max. 500 mg once daily) for 3 days
  - **Body-weight 25–40 kg** 250 mg 3 times a week
  - **Body-weight over 40 kg** 500 mg 3 times a week

**Uncomplicated genital chlamydial infections and non-gonococcal urethritis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 12–18 years** 1 g as a single dose

**Lyme disease** (see also section 5.1.1.3), mild to moderate typhoid due to multiple-antibacterial resistant organisms

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 6 months–18 years** 10 mg/kg once daily (max. 500 mg once daily) for 7–10 days (for 7 days in typhoid)

**Prevention of Group A streptococcal infection** Table 2, section 5.1

**Azithromycin** (Non-proprietary) (Pfizer) Capsules, azithromycin (as dihydrate) 250 mg, net price 4-cap pack = £9.82, 6-cap pack = £14.73. Label: 5, 9, 23

**Tablets**, azithromycin (as monohydrate hemi-ethanolate) 250 mg, net price 4-tab pack = £9.83; 500 mg, 3-tab pack = £6.75. Label: 5, 9

**Note** Azithromycin tablets can be sold to the public for the treatment of confirmed, asymptomatic *Chlamydia trachomatis* genital infection in those over 16 years of age, and for the epidemiological treatment of their sexual partners, subject to max. single dose of 1 g, max. daily dose 1 g, and a pack size of 1 g

---

**Zithromax** (Pfizer) Capsules, azithromycin (as dihydrate) 250 mg, net price 4-cap pack = £7.16, 6-cap pack = £10.74. Label: 5, 9, 23

**Oral suspension**, cherry/banana-flavoured, azithromycin (as dihydrate) 200 mg/5 mL when reconstituted with water. Net price 15-mL pack = £4.06, 22.5-mL pack = £6.10, 30-mL pack = £11.04. Label: 5, 9

---

**CLRITHROMYCIN**

**Cautions** see notes above; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (macrolides)

**Hepatic impairment** hepatic dysfunction including jaundice reported

**Renal impairment** use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid *Klaricid XL* if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk

**Side-effects** see notes above; also dyspepsia, tooth and tongue discoloration, smell and taste disturbances, stomatitis, glossitis, and headache; less commonly arthralgia and myalgia; rarely tinnitus; very rarely dizziness, insomnia, nightmares, anxiety, confusion, psychosis, paraesthesia, convulsions, hypoglycaemia, renal failure, interstitial nephritis, leucopenia, and thrombocytopenia

**Licensed use** tablets and intravenous infusion not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

**Respiratory-tract infections, mild to moderate skin and soft-tissue infections, otitis media** (see also Table 1, section 5.1)

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 7.5 mg/kg twice daily
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**
    - **Body-weight under 8 kg** 7.5 mg/kg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 8–11 kg** 62.5 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 12–19 kg** 125 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 20–29 kg** 187.5 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 30–40 kg** 250 mg twice daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** 250 mg twice daily for 7 days, increased if necessary in severe infections to 500 mg every 12 hours for up to 14 days

- **By intravenous infusion into large proximal vein**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**
    - **Body-weight under 8 kg** 7.5 mg/kg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 8–11 kg** 62.5 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 12–19 kg** 125 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 20–29 kg** 187.5 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 30–40 kg** 250 mg twice daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** 250 mg twice daily for 7 days, increased if necessary in severe infections to 500 mg every 12 hours for up to 14 days

---

5 Infections

BNFC 2011–2012

5.1.5 Macrolides 281
**ERYTHROMYCIN**

*Cautions* see notes above; neonate under 2 weeks (risk of hypertrophic pyloric stenosis); acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (macrolides)

*Hepatic impairment* may cause idiosyncratic hepatotoxicity

*Renal impairment* reduce dose in severe renal impairment (ototoxicity)

*Pregnancy* not known to be harmful

*Breast-feeding* only small amounts in milk—not known to be harmful

*Side-effects* see notes above; also myasthenia-like syndrome

---

**Indication and dose**

Susceptible infections in patients with penicillin hypersensitivity, oral infections (see notes above), campylobacter enteritis, respiratory tract infections (including Legionella infection), skin infections, chlamydial ophthalmia, prevention and treatment of pertussis (see also Table 2, section 5.1)

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 125 mg 4 times daily; dose doubled in severe infections
  - **Child 2–8 years** 250 mg 4 times daily; dose doubled in severe infections
  - **Child 8–18 years** 500–500 mg 4 times daily; dose doubled in severe infections
  - **Note** Total daily dose may be given in two divided doses

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 10–12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 12.5 mg/kg (max. 1.5 g) every 6 hours

**Early syphilis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg 4 times daily for 14 days

**Uncomplicated genital chlamydia, non-gonococcal urethritis, pelvic inflammatory disease** (see also Table 1, section 5.1)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 12.5 mg/kg 4 times daily for 14 days
  - **Child 2–12 years** 250 mg twice daily for 14 days
  - **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg twice daily for 14 days

**Lyme disease** (see also section 5.1.1.3)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily for 14–21 days
  - **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg twice daily for 14–21 days

**Heliocacter pylori eradication** section 1.3

**Prevention of pertussis** Table 2, section 5.1

**Administration** for intermittent intravenous infusion dilute reconstituted solution further in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 2 mg/mL; give into large proximal vein over 60 minutes

**Clarithromycin** (Non-proprietary) *Tablets*, clarithromycin 250 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £3.17; 500 mg, 14-tab pack = £4.10. Label: 9

**Paediatric suspension**, clarithromycin for reconstitution with water 125 mg/5 mL, net price 70 mL = £6.82; 250 mg/5 mL, 70 mL = £13.63. Label: 9

**Dental prescribing on NHS** Clarithromycin Tablets may be prescribed

**Intravenous infusion**, powder for reconstitution, clarithromycin. Net price 500-mg vial = £10.31

**Klaricid®** (Abbott) *Tablets*, both yellow, f/c, clarithromycin 250 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £6.30; 500 mg, 14-tab pack = £10.17. Label: 9, 21, 25

**Granules**, clarithromycin 250 mg/sachet, net price 14-sachet pack = £11.68. Label: 9, 13

**Dose**

- **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg once daily (doubled in severe infections) for 7–14 days

---

**Prophylaxis against pneumococcal infection** Table 2, section 5.1

**Gastric stasis** section 1.2

**Acne vulgaris** section 13.6

**Diphtheria prophylaxis** Table 2, section 5.1

**Prevention of group A streptococcal infection** Table 2, section 5.1

**Administration** Dilute reconstituted solution further in glucose 5% (neutralised with Sodium bicarbonate) or sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 1–5 mg/mL; give over 20–60 minutes

Concentration of up to 10 mg/mL may be used in fluid-restriction if administered via a central venous catheter
Clindamycin is active against Gram-positive cocci, including streptococci and penicillin-resistant staphylococci, and also against many anaerobes, especially *Bacteroides fragilis*. It is well concentrated in bone and cox, and also against many anaerobes, especially including streptococci and penicillin-resistant staphylococci. Clindamycin is active against Gram-positive cocci, including streptococci and penicillin-resistant staphylococci.

Erythromycin (Non-proprietary)  
Capsules, enclosing e/c microgranules, erythromycin 250 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £15.00. Label: 5, 9, 25  
Brands include Erythromycin®  
Tablets, e/c, erythromycin 250 mg, net price 28 = £1.54. Label: 5, 9, 25  
Dental prescribing on NHS Erythromycin Tablets e/c may be prescribed

**Erythromycin Ethyl Succinate (Non-proprietary)**  
Oral suspension, erythromycin (as ethyl succinate) for reconstitution with water 125 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £1.99; 250 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £2.64; 500 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £4.31. Label: 9  
Note: Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription  
Brands include Erythromycin®  
Dental prescribing on NHS Erythromycin Ethyl Succinate Oral Suspension may be prescribed

**Erythromycin Lactobionate (Non-proprietary)**  
Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, erythromycin (as lactobionate), net price 1-g vial = £9.98

**Erymax®** (Cephalon)  
Capsules, opaque orange/clear orange, enclosing orange and white e/c pellets, erythromycin 250 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £5.61, 112-cap pack = £22.44. Label: 5, 9, 25

**Erythrin®** (Andipharm)  
Tablets, both f/c, erythromycin (as stearate), 250 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £18.20; 500 mg, 100-tab pack = £36.40. Label: 9  
Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Erythrin® Stearate Tablets

**Erythroped®** (Andipharm)  
Suspension SF, sugar-free, banana-flavoured, erythromycin (as ethyl succinate) for reconstitution with water, 125 mg/5 mL. (Suspension PI SF), net price 140 mL = £3.06; 250 mg/5 mL, 140 mL = £5.95; 500 mg/5 mL, (Suspension SF Forte), 140 mL = £10.56. Label: 9

**Erythroped A®** (Andipharm)  
Tablets, yellow, f/c, erythromycin 500 mg (as ethyl succinate). Net price 28-tab pack = £10.78. Label: 9  
Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Erythroped® A Ethyl Succinate Tablets

**5.1.6 Clindamycin**

Clindamycin is active against Gram-positive cocci, including streptococci and penicillin-resistant staphylococci, and also against many anaerobes, especially *Bacteroides fragilis*. It is well concentrated in bone and excreted in bile and urine.

Clindamycin is recommended for staphylococcal joint and bone infections such as osteomyelitis, and intra-abdominal sepsis; it is an alternative to macrolides for erysipelas or cellulitis in penicillin-allergic patients. It is also used in combination with other antibacterials for cellulitis in immunocompromised children. Clindamycin can also be used for infections associated with meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in bone and joint infections, and skin and soft-tissue infections.

Clindamycin has been associated with antibiotic-associated colitis (section 1.5), which may be fatal. Although it can occur with most antibacterials, antibiotic-associated colitis occurs more frequently with clindamycin. Children should therefore discontinue treatment immediately if diarrhoea develops.

**Oral infections**  
Clindamycin should not be used routinely for the treatment of oral infections because it may be no more effective than penicillins against anaerobes and there may be cross-resistance with erythromycin-resistant bacteria. Clindamycin can be used for the treatment of dentoalveolar abscess that has not responded to penicillin or to metronidazole.

**CLINDAMYCIN**  
Cautions: Discontinue immediately if diarrhoea or colitis develops; monitor liver and renal function if treatment exceeds 10 days, and in neonates and infants; avoid rapid intravenous administration; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (clindamycin)

**Contra-indications** diarrhoeal states; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see under preparations below)

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful; bloody diarrhoea reported in 1 infant

**Side-effects** diarrhoea (discontinue treatment), abdominal discomfort, oesophagitis, oesophageal ulcers, taste disturbances, nausea, vomiting, antibiotic-associated colitis; jaundice, leucopenia, eosinophilia, and thrombocytopenia reported; polyarthritis reported; rash, pruritus, urticaria, anaphylactoid reactions, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, exfoliative and vesiculobullous dermatitis reported; pain, induration, and abscess after intramuscular injection; thrombophlebitis after intravenous injection

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Staphylococcal bone and joint infections, peri-tonitis see notes above</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate under 14 days</strong> 3–6 mg/kg 3 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate 14–28 days</strong> 3–6 mg/kg 4 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–12 years</strong> 3–6 mg/kg 4 times daily (body-weight under 10 kg, minimum dose 37.5 mg 3 times daily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong> 150–300 mg 4 times daily; in severe infections 450 mg 4 times daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• By deep intramuscular injection or by intra-venous infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–12 years</strong> 3.75–6.25 mg/kg 4 times daily; increased up to 10 mg/kg 4 times daily in severe infections; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 12–18 years</strong> 150–675 mg 4 times daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses; in life-threatening infection up to 1.2 g 4 times daily; single doses above 600 mg by intravenous infusion only; single doses by intra-venous infusion not to exceed 1.2 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Infections

**Chloramphenicol**

Chloramphenicol is a potent broad-spectrum antibiotic; however, it is associated with serious haematological side-effects when given systemically and should therefore be reserved for the treatment of life-threatening infections, particularly those caused by *Haemophilus influenzae*, and also for typhoid fever. Chloramphenicol is also used in cystic fibrosis for the treatment of respiratory *Burkholderia cepacia* infection resistant to other antibiotics.

Grey baby syndrome may follow excessive doses in neonates with immature hepatic metabolism; monitoring of plasma concentrations is recommended. Chloramphenicol eye drops (section 11.3.1) and chloramphenicol ear drops (section 12.1.1) are also available.

**Chloramphenicol**

Cautions avoid repeated courses and prolonged treatment; blood counts required before and periodically during treatment; monitor plasma-chloramphenicol concentrations; see also pharmacokinetics above

Contra-indications cause ‘grey-baby syndrome’

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of not more than 18 mg/mL with glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 10–60 minutes at a max. rate of 20 mg/kg/hour

Contra-indications for the treatment of life-threatening infections, particularly those caused by *Haemophilus influenzae*, and also for typhoid fever. Chloramphenicol is also used in cystic fibrosis for the treatment of respiratory *Burkholderia cepacia* infection resistant to other antibiotics.

Grey baby syndrome may follow excessive doses in neonates with immature hepatic metabolism; monitoring of plasma concentrations is recommended. Chloramphenicol eye drops (section 11.3.1) and chloramphenicol ear drops (section 12.1.1) are also available.

**CHLORAMPHENICOL**

Cautions avoid repeated courses and prolonged treatment; blood counts required before and periodically during treatment; monitor plasma-chloramphenicol concentrations; see also pharmacokinetics above

Contra-indications acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)
caused by penicillin-resistant staphylococci, especially osteomyelitis, as they are well concentrated in bone; they are also used for staphylococcal endocarditis. A second antistaphylococcal antibiotic is usually required to prevent emergence of resistance during treatment.

**SODIUM FUSIDATE**

**Cautions** monitor liver function with high doses or on prolonged therapy; elimination may be reduced in hepatic impairment or biliary disease or biliary obstruction; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (fusidic acid)

**Hepatic impairment** impaired biliary excretion, avoid or reduce dose; possibly increased risk of hepatotoxicity; monitor liver function.

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** present in milk; manufacturer advises caution

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, reversible jaundice, especially after high dosage or rapid infusion (withdraw therapy if persistent); rarely hypersensitivity reactions, acute renal failure (usually with jaundice), blood disorders

**Indication and dose** Penicillin-resistant staphylococcal infection including osteomyelitis, staphylococcal endocarditis in combination with other antibiotics see under Preparations, below

**Sodium fusidate** *(LEO)*

- **Intravenous infusion**, powder for reconstitution, sodium fusidate 500 mg (= fusidic acid 480 mg), with buffer, net price per vial (with diluent) = £70.04
- **Electrolytes** Na⁺ 3.1 mmol/vial when reconstituted with buffer

**Dose**
- As sodium fusidate
  - *By intravenous infusion*
    - **Neonate** 10 mg/kg every 12 hours
    - **Child 1 month–18 years** 6–7 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) every 8 hours

**Administration** reconstitute with buffer solution provided, further dilute to 1 mg/mL, with Sodium chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5% intravenous infusion (but see below); infuse over at least 6 hours via a superficial vein or 2 hours via a central venous line; incompatible in solution of pH less than 7.4

**Fucidin®** *(LEO)*

- **Tablets**, f/c, sodium fusidate 250 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £6.02. Label: 9

**Dose**
- As sodium fusidate
  - *By mouth*
    - **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg every 8 hours, dose doubled for severe infections

**Skin infection** as sodium fusidate
- *By mouth*
  - **Child 12–18 years** 250 mg every 12 hours for 5–10 days

**Suspension**, off-white, banana- and orange-flavoured, fusidic acid 250 mg/5 mL, net price 50 mL = £6.73. Label: 9, 21

**Dose**
- As fusidic acid
  - *By mouth*
    - **Neonate** 15 mg/kg 3 times daily
    - **Child 1 month–1 year** 15 mg/kg 3 times daily

---

**5.1.7 Some other antibacterials**

**Vancomycin and teicoplanin**

The glycopeptide antibiotics vancomycin and teicoplanin have bactericidal activity against aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive bacteria including multi-resistant *Staphylococcus*. However, there are reports of *Staphylococcus aureus* with reduced susceptibility to glycopeptides. There are increasing reports of glycopeptide-resistant *Enterococci*.

Vancomycin is used by the intravenous route in the prophylaxis and treatment of serious infections caused by Gram-positive cocci. Vancomycin is principally excreted via the kidney and dose reduction is necessary in renal impairment.

Penetration into cerebrospinal fluid is poor; vancomycin may be administered by the intrathecal or intraventricular route for treatment of meningitis [unlicensed]. Vancomycin (added to dialysis fluid) is also used in the treatment of peritonitis associated with peritoneal dialysis [unlicensed route] (Table 1 section 5.1).

Vancomycin given *by mouth* for 10–14 days is effective in the treatment of *Clostridium difficile* infection (see also section 1.5); low doses are considered adequate (higher dose may be considered if the infection fails to respond or if it is life-threatening). Vancomycin should not be given by mouth for systemic infections since it is not significantly absorbed.

Teicoplanin is similar to vancomycin but has a significantly longer duration of action allowing once-daily administration. Plasma concentration monitoring is not usually necessary, but may help optimise therapy. Unlike vancomycin, teicoplanin can be given by intramuscular as well as by intravenous injection; it is not given by mouth.

**Vancomycin**

**Cautions** avoid rapid infusion (risk of anaphylactoid reactions, see Side-effects); rotate infusion sites; avoid if history of deafness; all patients require plasma-vancomycin measurement (after 3 or 4 doses if renal function normal, earlier if renal impairment), blood counts, urinalysis, and renal function tests; monitor auditory function in renal impairment; teicoplanin toxicity; systemic absorption may follow oral administration especially in inflammatory bowel disorders or following multiple doses; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (vancomycin)

**Renal impairment** reduce dose—monitor plasma-vancomycin concentration and renal function regularly; see also Cautions above

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—plasma-vancomycin concentration monitoring essential to reduce risk of fetal toxicity

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—significant absorption following oral administration unlikely
Side-effects after parenteral administration: nephrotoxicity including renal failure and interstitial nephritis; ototoxicity (discontinue if tinnitus occurs); blood disorders including neutropenia (usually after 1 week or high cumulative dose), rarely agranulocytosis and thrombocytopenia; nausea, chills, fever, eosinophilia, anaphylaxis, rashes (including exfoliative dermatitis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, and vasculitis); phlebitis (irritant to tissue); on rapid infusion, severe hypotension (including shock and cardiac arrest), wheezing, dyspnoea, urticaria, pruritus, flushing of the upper body (‘red man’ syndrome), pain and muscle spasm of back and chest.

Pharmacokinetics: plasma concentration monitoring required; pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be 10–15 mg/litre (15–20 mg/litre for less sensitive strains of meticillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus).

Licensed use: not licensed for intraventricular use.

Indication and dose:

Infections due to Gram-positive bacteria including osteomyelitis, septicaemia and soft-tissue infections see notes above.

- By intravenous infusion:
  - Neonate less than 29 weeks postmenstrual age: 15 mg/kg every 24 hours, adjusted according to plasma concentration.
  - Neonate 29–35 weeks postmenstrual age: 15 mg/kg every 12 hours, adjusted according to plasma concentration.
  - Neonate over 35 weeks postmenstrual age: 15 mg/kg every 8 hours, adjusted according to plasma concentration.

- By mouth:
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 15 mg/kg every 8 hours (maximum daily dose 2 g), adjusted according to plasma concentration.

- Clostridium difficile infection (see also notes above):
  - By mouth:
    - Child 1 month–5 years: 5 mg/kg 4 times daily for 10–14 days (increased up to 10 mg/kg 4 times daily if infection fails to respond or is life-threatening).
    - Child 5–12 years: 62.5 mg 4 times daily for 10–14 days (increased up to 250 mg 4 times daily if infection fails to respond or is life-threatening).
    - Child 12–18 years: 125 mg 4 times daily for 10–14 days (increased up to 500 mg 4 times daily if infection fails to respond or is life-threatening).

- CNS infection e.g. ventriculitis:
  - By intraventricular administration, seek specialist advice.

  - Neonate: 10 mg once every 24 hours.

  - Child 1 month–18 years: 10 mg once every 24 hours. Note for all children reduce to 5 mg daily if ventricular size reduced or increase to 15–20 mg once daily if ventricular size increased. Adjust dose according to CSF concentration after 3–4 days, aim for pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration less than 10 mg/litre. If CSF not draining freely reduce dose frequency to once every 2–3 days.

Peritonitis associated with peritoneal dialysis:

Add to each bag of dialysis fluid to achieve a concentration of 20–25 mg/litre.

Note: Vancomycin doses in BNF for Children may differ from those in product literature.

Administration:

Displacement value may be significant, consult product literature and local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, the reconstituted preparation should be further diluted in sodium chloride 0.9% to achieve a concentration of up to 5 mg/mL; give over at least 60 minutes (rate not to exceed 10 mg/minute for doses over 500 mg); use continuous infusion only if intermittent not available (limited evidence); 10 mg/mL can be used if infused via a central venous line over at least 1 hour.

Injection may be given orally; flavouring syrups may be added to the solution at the time of administration.

Safe Practice:

For intraventricular administration, seek specialist advice.

Vancomycin (Non-proprietary)


Injection, powder for reconstitution, vancomycin (as hydrochloride): for use as an infusion, net price 500-mg vial = £7.25; 1-g vial = £14.50.

Note: Can be used to prepare solution for oral administration.

Vancocin® (Flynn)


Injection, powder for reconstitution, vancomycin (as hydrochloride): for use as an infusion, net price 500-mg vial = £8.05; 1-g vial = £16.11.

Note: Can be used to prepare solution for oral administration.

TEICOPOLANIN

Cautions: vancomycin sensitivity; blood counts and liver and kidney function tests required—monitor renal and auditory function on prolonged administration during renal impairment or if other nephrotoxic or neurotoxic drugs given; monitor plasma-teicoplanin concentration if severe sepsis or burns, deep-seated staphylococcal infection (including bone and joint infection), endocarditis, renal impairment, and in intravenous drug abusers; interactions: Appendix 1 (teicoplanin).

Renal impairment:

Reduce dose on day 4: use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 40–60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; use one-third normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 40 mL/minute/1.73 m²; see also Cautions above.

Pregnancy:

Manufacturer advises use only if benefit outweighs risk.

Breast-feeding:

No information available.

Side-effects:

Rash, pruritus; less commonly nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, bronchospasm, dizziness, headache, fever, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, eosinophilia, tinnitus, mild hearing loss, vestibular disorders, thrombophlebitis; also reported renal failure, exfoliative dermatitis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis.

Pharmacokinetics:

Plasma-teicoplanin concentration is not measured routinely because there is no
clear relationship between plasma-teicoplanin concentration and toxicity. However, the plasma-teicoplanin concentration can be used to optimise treatment in some patients (see Cautions). Pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be greater than 10 mg/litre (greater than 15–20 mg/litre in endocarditis) but less than 60 mg/litre.

### Indication and dose

**Potentially serious Gram-positive infections including endocarditis, and serious infections due to Staphylococcus aureus**

- **By intravenous injection or intravenous infusion over 30 minutes**

**Neonate** initially 16 mg/kg for one dose followed 24 hours later by 8 mg/kg once daily (intravenous infusion only)

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 10 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) every 12 hours for 3 doses, then 5 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) once daily; in severe infections (including burns, septicemia, septic arthritis and osteomyelitis) initially 10 mg/kg every 12 hours for 3 doses then 10 mg/kg once daily; after first 3 doses, subsequent doses can be given by intramuscular injection if necessary although intravenous route preferable for children.

### Administration

For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in sodium chloride 0.9% or glucose 5%; give over 30 minutes. Intermittent intravenous infusion preferred in neonates.

**Targocid** (Sanofi-Aventis) 

**Injection, powder for reconstitution, teicoplanin, net price 200-mg vial (with diluent) = £3.57; 400-mg vial (with diluent) = £6.10**

**Electrolytes Na⁺ < 0.5 mmol/200- and 400-mg vial**

### Linezolid

Linezolid, an oxazolidinone antibacterial, is active against Gram-positive bacteria including meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), and glycopeptide-resistant enterococci. Resistance to linezolid can develop with prolonged treatment or if the dose is less than that recommended. Linezolid should be reserved for infections caused by Gram-positive bacteria when the organisms are resistant to other antibacterials or when patients cannot tolerate other antibacterials. Linezolid is not active against common Gram-negative organisms; it must be given in combination with other antibacterials for mixed infections that also involve Gram-negative organisms. There is limited information on use in children and expert advice should be sought. A higher incidence of blood disorders and optic neuropathy have been reported in patients receiving linezolid for more than the maximum recommended duration of 28 days.

### Cautions

- **monitor full blood count (including platelet count) weekly (see also Blood Disorders below);**
- **unless close observation and blood-pressure monitoring possible, avoid in uncontrolled hypertension,**
- **phaeochromocytoma, carcinoid tumour; thyrotoxicosis,**
- **bipolar depression, schizophrenia, or acute confusional states;**

**Interactions:** Appendix 1 (MAOIs)

### Blood disorders

Haematopoietic disorders (including thrombocytopenia, anaemia, leucopenia, and pancytopenia) have been reported in patients receiving linezolid. It is recommended that full blood counts are monitored weekly. Close monitoring is recommended in patients who:

- receive treatment for more than 10–14 days;
- have pre-existing myelosuppression;
- are receiving drugs that may have adverse effects on haemoglobin, blood counts, or platelet function;
- have severe renal impairment.

If significant myelosuppression occurs, treatment should be stopped unless it is considered essential, in which case intensive monitoring of blood counts and appropriate management should be implemented.

### Monoamine oxidase inhibition

Linezolid is a reversible, non-selective monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI). Patients should avoid consuming large amounts of tyramine-rich foods (such as mature cheese, yeast extracts, undistilled alcoholic beverages, and fermented soya bean products). In addition, linezolid should not be given with another MAOI or within 2 weeks of stopping another MAOI. Unless close observation and blood-pressure monitoring is possible, avoid in those receiving SSRIs, 5HT, agonists (‘triptans’), tricyclic antidepressants, sympathomimetics, dopamineergics, buspirone, pethidine and possibly other opioid analgesics. For other interactions see Appendix 1 (MAOIs).

### Contra-indications

See Monoamine Oxidase Inhibition above

**Hepatic impairment** no dose adjustment necessary but in severe hepatic impairment use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Renal impairment** no dose adjustment necessary but metabolites may accumulate if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; see also Blood Disorders above

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies

**Side-effects** diarrhoea (antibiotic-associated colitis reported), nausea, vomiting, taste disturbances, headache; less commonly thirst, dry mouth, glossitis, stomatitis, tongue discoloration, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, gastritis, constipation, pancreatitis, hypertension, fever, fatigue, dizziness, insomnia, hypoesthesia, paraesthesia, tinnitus, polyuria, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, eosinophilia, electrolyte disturbances, blurred vision, rash, pruritus, diaphoresis, injection-site reactions; rarely tachycardia, transient ischaemic attacks, renal failure; also reported tooth discoloration, convulsions, lactic acidosis, pancytopenia, anaemia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis; peripheral and optic neuropathy reported on prolonged therapy (see also CHM Advice above)
Licensed use  not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Pneumonia, complicated skin and soft-tissue infections caused by Gram-positive bacteria (initiated under expert supervision)
- By mouth or by intravenous infusion over 30–120 minutes

Neonate under 7 days 10 mg/kg every 12 hours, increase to every 8 hours if poor response

Neonate over 7 days 10 mg/kg every 8 hours

Child 1 month–12 years 10 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) every 8 hours

Child 12–18 years 600 mg every 12 hours

Polymyxins

The polyoxyn antibiotic, colistimethate sodium (colistin sulphomethate sodium), is active against Gram-negative organisms including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. It is not absorbed by mouth and is given by injection for a systemic effect. Intravenous administration of colistimethate sodium should be reserved for Gram-negative infections resistant to other antibacterials; its major adverse effects are dose-related neurotoxicity and nephrotoxicity.

Colistimethate sodium is also given by inhalation of a nebulised solution as an adjunct to standard antibiotic therapy in patients with cystic fibrosis.

Both colistimethate sodium and polyoxyn B are included in some preparations for topical application.

Breast-feeding  present in milk but poorly absorbed from gut; manufacturers advise avoid (or use only if potential benefit outweighs risk)

Side-effects

Specific side-effects for parenteral treatment neurotoxicity reported especially with excessive doses (including aprosia, parestia, and peripheral paresis, vertigo, head-ache, muscle weakness; rarely vasomotor instability, slurred speech, confusion, psychosis, visual disturbances), nephrotoxicity; rash

Specific side-effects for inhaled treatment sore throat, sore mouth, cough, bronchospasm

Pharmacokinetics  see notes above; plasma concentration monitoring required in renal impairment; recommended ‘peak’ plasma-colistimethate sodium concentration (approx. 30 minutes after intravenous injection or infusion) 10–15 mg/litre (125–200 units/mL)

Indication and dose

**Pseudomonas aeruginosa** infection in cystic fibrosis
- By slow intravenous injection into a totally implantable venous access device, or by intravenous infusion (but see notes above)

Child 1 month–18 years
- Body-weight under 60 kg 25 000 units/kg every 8 hours
- Body-weight over 60 kg 2 million units every 8 hours

- By inhalation of nebulised solution
  - Child 1 month–2 years 0.5–1 million units twice daily; increased to 1 million units 3 times daily for subsequent respiratory isolates of *Ps. aeruginosa*
  - Child 2–18 years 1–2 million units twice daily; increased to 2 million units 3 times daily for subsequent respiratory isolates of *Ps. aeruginosa*

Administration  For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 40 000 units/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30 minutes

For slow intravenous injection into a totally implantable venous access device, dilute to a concentration of 90 000 units/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% for child under 12 years (200 000 units/mL for child over 12 years)

For nebulisation administer required dose in 2–4 mL of sodium chloride 0.9% (or water for injections). Colistimethate sodium must not be mixed with tobramycin as they are chemically unstable together; it may be mixed with gentamicin if used immediately

Colistimethate sodium  (Non-proprietary)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, colistimethate sodium, net price 1 million-unit vial = £1.68

**Colomycin**  (Forest)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, colistimethate sodium, net price 1 million-unit vial = £1.68; 2 million-unit vial = £3.09

Electrolytes  (before reconstitution) Na+: 0.5 mmol/1 million-unit and 2 mmol/2 million-unit vial

Note  *Colomycin* Injection (dissolved in physiological saline) may be used for nebulisation

**Promixin**  (Profile)

Powder for nebuliser solution, colistimethate sodium, net price 1 million-unit vial = £2.30

Injection, powder for reconstitution, colistimethate sodium, net price 1 million-unit vial = £4.60.
5.1.8 Sulfonamides and trimethoprim

The importance of the sulfonamides has decreased as a result of increasing bacterial resistance and their replacement by antibacterials which are generally more active and less toxic. Sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim are used in combination (as co-trimoxazole) because of their synergistic activity. However, co-trimoxazole is associated with rare but serious side-effects e.g. Stevens-Johnson syndrome and blood dyscrasias, notably bone marrow depression and agranulocytosis (see CSM recommendations below). Co-trimoxazole should be avoided in children less than 6 weeks of age (except for treatment and prophylaxis of pneumocystis pneumonia) because of the risk of kernicterus. There is a risk of haemolytic anaemia if used in children with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency (section 9.1.5).

Restrictions on the use of co-trimoxazole

Co-trimoxazole should be limited to the role of drug of choice in Pneumocystis jirovecii (Pneumocystis carinii) pneumonia; it is also indicated for toxoplasmosis and nocardiosis. It should now only be considered for use in acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis and infections of the urinary tract when there is good bacteriological evidence of sensitivity to co-trimoxazole and good reason to prefer this combination to a single antibacterial; similarly it should only be used in acute otitis media in children when there is good reason to prefer it.

Trimethoprim can be used alone for urinary- and respiratory-tract infections and for shigellosis and invasive salmonella infections. Trimethoprim has side-effects similar to co-trimoxazole but they are less severe and occur less frequently.

For topical preparations of sulfonamides used in the treatment of burns see section 13.10.1.1.

CO-TRIMOXAZOLE

A mixture of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole (sulfapenemethoxazole) in the proportions of 1 part to 5 parts

Cautions maintain adequate fluid intake; avoid in blood disorders (unless under specialist supervision); monitor blood counts on prolonged treatment; discontinue immediately if blood disorders or rash develop; predisposition to folate deficiency; asthma; G6PD deficiency (section 9.1.5); avoid in infants under 6 weeks (except for treatment or prophylaxis of pneumocystis pneumonia); interactions: Appendix 1 (trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole)

Contra-indications acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises avoid in severe liver disease

Renal impairment use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 15–30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m² and if plasma-sulfamethoxazole concentration cannot be monitored

Pregnancy teratogenic risk in first trimester (trimethoprim a folate antagonist). Neonatal haemolysis and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester; fear of increased risk of kernicterus in neonates appears to be unfounded

Breast-feeding small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants (due to sulfamethoxazole)

Side-effects nausea, diarrhoea; headache, hyperkalaemia; rash (very rarely including Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, photosensitivity)—discontinue immediately; less commonly vomiting; very rarely glossitis, stomatitis, liver damage (including jaundice and hepatic necrosis), pancreatitis, antibiotic-associated colitis, myocarditis, cough and shortness of breath, pulmonary infiltrates, aseptic meningitis, depression, convulsions, peripheral neuropathy, ataxia, tinnitus, vertigo, hallucinations, hypoglycaemia, blood disorders (including leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, megaloblastic anaemia, eosinophilia), hyponatraemia, renal disorders including interstitial nephritis, arthralgia, myalgia, vasculitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and uveitis; rhabdomyolysis reported in HIV-infected patients

Pharmacokinetics plasma concentration monitoring may be required with high doses or during moderate to severe renal impairment; seek expert advice

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 6 weeks

Indication and dose

Treatment of susceptible infections (but see notes above) dose expressed as co-trimoxazole

• By mouth
  Child 6 weeks–12 years 24 mg/kg twice daily
  or
  Child 6 weeks–6 months 120 mg twice daily
  Child 6 months–6 years 240 mg twice daily
  Child 6–12 years 480 mg twice daily
  Child 12–18 years 960 mg twice daily

• By intravenous infusion
  Child 6 weeks–18 years 18 mg/kg every 12 hours; increased in severe infection to 27 mg/kg (max. 1.44 g) every 12 hours

Treatment of Pneumocystis jirovecii (P. carinii) infections (undertaken where facilities for appropriate monitoring available—consult microbiologist and product literature)

• By mouth or by intravenous infusion
  Child 1 month–18 years 60 mg/kg every 12 hours for 14–21 days; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses
  Note oral route preferred

Prophylaxis of Pneumocystis jirovecii (P. carinii) infections

• By mouth
  Child 1 month–18 years 450 mg/m² (max 960 mg) twice daily for three days of the week (either consecutively or on alternate days)
  Note dose regimens may vary, consult local guidelines

Note 480 mg of co-trimoxazole consists of sulfamethoxazole 400 mg and trimethoprim 80 mg

Administration for intermittent intravenous infusion may be further diluted in glucose 5% and 10% or sodium chloride 0.9%. Dilute contents of
290  5.1.9 Antituberculosis drugs

BNFC 2011–2012

1 ampoule (5 mL) to 125 mL, 2 ampoules (10 mL) to 250 mL or 3 ampoules (15 mL) to 500 mL; suggested duration of infusion 60–90 minutes (but may be adjusted according to fluid requirements); if fluid restriction necessary, 1 ampoule (5 mL) may be diluted with 75 mL glucose 5% and the required dose infused over max. 60 minutes; check container for haze or precipitant during administration. In severe fluid restriction may be given undiluted via a central venous line

Co-trimoxazole  (Non-proprietary)  

| Tablets | co-trimoxazole 480 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £18.99; 960 mg, 100 = £33.46. Label: 9 |
| Tablets include Fortem®, Foctrim®, Forte |
| Paediatric oral suspension | co-trimoxazole 240 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £1.12. Label: 9 |
| Oral suspension | co-trimoxazole 480 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £4.41. Label: 9 |
| Septin®  (Aspen)  

| Tablets | co-trimoxazole 480 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £15.52. Label: 9 |
| Tablets include Fectrim®, Foctrim®, Forte |
| Paediatric oral suspension | co-trimoxazole 960 mg, net price 100 mL = £3.36. Label: 9 |
| Adult suspension | co-trimoxazole 480 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (vanilla-flavoured) = £4.41. Label: 9 |
| Paediatric suspension | sugar-free, co-trimoxazole 240 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (banana- and vanilla-flavoured) = £2.45. Label: 9 |
| Intravenous infusion | co-trimoxazole 96 mg/mL. To be diluted before use. Net price 5-mL amp = £1.78 |
| Electrolytes | Na+ 1.7 mmol/5 mL |
| Excipients | include alcohol 13.2%, propylene glycol, sulphites |

Intravenous infusion, co-trimoxazole 96 mg/mL. To be diluted before use. Net price 5-mL amp = £1.78

TRIMETHOPRIM

Cautions predisposition to folate deficiency; manufacturer recommends blood counts on long-term therapy (but evidence of practical value unsatisfactory); neonates (specialist supervision required); acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (trimethoprim)

Blood disorders On long-term treatment, patients and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood disorders and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, sore throat, rash, mouth ulcers, purpura, bruising or bleeding develop

Contra-indications blood dyscrasias

Renal impairment use half normal dose after 3 days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 15–30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m² (monitor plasma-trimethoprim concentration if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²)

Pregnancy teratogenic risk in first trimester (folate antagonist); manufacturers advise avoid

Breast-feeding present in milk—short-term use not known to be harmful

Side-effects gastrointestinal disturbances including nausea and vomiting, pruritus, rashes, hyperkalaemia, depression of haematopoiesis; rarely erythema multiforme, toxic epidermal necrolysis, photosensitivity and other allergic reactions including angioedema and anaphylaxis; aseptic meningitis reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 6 weeks

Indication and dose

| Urinary-tract infections; respiratory-tract infections |
| • By mouth |
| Neonate initially 3 mg/kg as a single dose then 1–2 mg/kg twice daily |
| Child 1 month–12 years 4 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) twice daily |
| or |
| Child 6 weeks–6 months 25 mg twice daily |
| Child 6 months–6 years 50 mg twice daily |
| Child 6–12 years 100 mg twice daily |
| Child 12–18 years 200 mg twice daily |

Prophylaxis of urinary-tract infection

| Table 2, section 5.1 |

Pneumocystis pneumonia see p. 342

Trimethoprim  (Non-proprietary)  

| Tablets | trimethoprim 100 mg, net price 28 = 94p; 200 mg, 14-tab pack = 91p. Label: 9 |
| Tablets include Trimopan* |
| Suspension | trimethoprim 50 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £2.37. Label: 9 |

5.1.9 Antituberculosis drugs

Tuberculosis is treated in two phases—an initial phase using 4 drugs and a continuation phase using two drugs in fully sensitive cases. Treatment requires specialised knowledge, particularly where the disease involves resistant organisms or non-respiratory organs.

The regimens given below are recommended for the treatment of tuberculosis in the UK; variations occur in other countries. Either the unsupervised regimen or the supervised regimen described below should be used; the two regimens should not be used concurrently. Compliance with therapy is a major determinant of its success. Treatment needs to be carefully monitored in families in whom concordance may be problematic.

Initial phase The concurrent use of 4 drugs during the initial phase is designed to reduce the bacterial population as rapidly as possible and to prevent the emergence of drug-resistant bacteria. The drugs are best given as combination preparations, provided the respective dose of each drug is appropriate, unless the child is unable to swallow the tablets or one of the components cannot be given because of resistance or intolerance. The treatment of choice for the initial phase is the daily use of isoniazid, rifampicin, pyrazinamide and ethambutol. However, care is needed in young children receiving ethambutol because of the difficulty in testing eyesight and in obtaining reports of visual symptoms (see below).

Treatment should be started without waiting for culture results if clinical features or histology results are consistent with tuberculosis; treatment should be continued even if initial culture results are negative. The initial phase drugs should be continued for 2 months. Where a positive culture for M. tuberculosis has been obtained, but susceptibility results are not available after 2 months, treatment with rifampicin, isoniazid, pyrazin-
amide and ethambutol should be continued until full susceptibility is confirmed, even if this is for longer than 2 months.

Streptomycin is rarely used in the UK although it may be used in the initial phase of treatment if resistance to isoniazid has been established before therapy is commenced and ethambutol is contra-indicated.

**Continuation phase** After the initial phase, treatment is continued for a further 4 months with isoniazid and rifampicin (preferably given as a combination preparation). Longer treatment is necessary for meningitis, direct spinal cord involvement, and for resistant organisms which may also require modification of the regimen.

**Unsupervised treatment** The following regimen should be used for those who are likely to take antituberculous drugs reliably **without supervision**. Children and families who are unlikely to comply with daily administration of antituberculous drugs should be treated with the regimen described under Supervised Treatment.

**Recommended dosage for standard unsupervised 6-month treatment**

**Isoniazid** (for 2-month initial and 4-month continuation phases)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 10 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) once daily

**Rifampicin** (for 2-month initial and 4-month continuation phase)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 10 mg/kg once daily (max. 450 mg daily if body-weight under 50 kg, max. 600 mg daily if body-weight 50 kg and over)

**Pyrazinamide** (for 2-month initial phase only)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 35 mg/kg once daily (max. 1.5 g daily if body-weight under 50 kg, max. 2 g daily if body-weight 50 kg and over)

**Ethambutol** (for 2-month initial phase only)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 15 mg/kg once daily

**Note** In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. The exception is ethambutol due to the risk of toxicity. Doses may also need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children.

The fixed-dose combination preparations (Rifater®, Rifinah®) are unlicensed for use in children. Consideration may be given to use of these preparations in older children, provided the respective dose of each drug is appropriate for the weight of the child.

**Pregnancy** The standard regimen (above) may be used during pregnancy. Streptomycin should not be given in pregnancy.

**Breast-feeding** The standard regimen (above) may be used during breast-feeding.

**Neonates** Congenital tuberculosis is acquired from maternal extrapulmonary sites at birth, particularly the genital tract; if infection is suspected, the baby will require treatment with isoniazid 10 mg/kg once daily, rifampicin 10 mg/kg once daily, pyrazinamide 35 mg/kg once daily, and ethambutol 15 mg/kg once daily. Isoniazid, rifampicin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol are used for 2 months during the initial phase of treatment. After the initial phase, treatment is continued for a further 4 months with isoniazid and rifampicin.

**Supervised treatment** Drug administration needs to be **fully supervised** (directly observed therapy, DOT) in children or families who cannot comply reliably with the treatment regimen. These patients are given isoniazid, rifampicin, pyrazinamide and ethambutol (or streptomycin) 3 times a week under supervision for the first 2 months followed by isoniazid and rifampicin 3 times a week for a further 4 months.

**Recommended dosage for intermittent supervised 6-month treatment**

**Isoniazid** (for 2-month initial and 4-month continuation phases)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 15 mg/kg (max. 900 mg) 3 times a week

**Rifampicin** (for 2-month initial and 4-month continuation phases)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 15 mg/kg (max. 900 mg) 3 times a week

**Pyrazinamide** (for 2-month initial phase only)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 50 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. 2 g 3 times a week if body-weight under 50 kg, max. 2.5 g 3 times a week if body-weight 50 kg and over)

**Ethambutol** (for 2-month initial phase only)

- Child 1 month–18 years, 30 mg/kg 3 times a week

**Note** In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. The exception is ethambutol due to the risk of toxicity. Doses may also need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children.

The fixed-dose combination preparations (Rifater®, Rifinah®) are unlicensed for use in children. Consideration may be given to use of these preparations in older children, provided the respective dose of each drug is appropriate for the weight of the child.

**Immunocompromised patients** Multi-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* may be present in immunocompromised children. The organism should always be cultured to confirm its type and drug sensitivity. Confirmed *M. tuberculosis* infection sensitive to first-line drugs should be treated with a standard 6-month regimen; after completing treatment, children should be closely monitored. The regimen may need to be modified if infection is caused by resistant organisms, and specialist advice is needed.

Specialist advice should be sought about tuberculous treatment or chemoprophylaxis in a HIV-positive individual; care is required in choosing the regimen and in avoiding potentially serious interactions. Starting antiretroviral treatment in the first 2 months of tuberculosis treatment increases the risk of immune reconstitution syndrome.

Infection may also be caused by other mycobacteria e.g. *M. avium* complex in which case specialist advice on management is needed.

**Corticosteroids** A corticosteroid should be given (in addition to antituberculosis therapy) for meningeal or pericardial tuberculosis.

**Prevention of tuberculosis** Chemoprophylaxis may be required in children who are close contacts of a case of smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis and who are severely immunosuppressed (including congenital immunodeficiencies, cytotoxic or immunosuppressive therapy) and in those who have evidence of latent tuberculosis and require treatment with immunosuppressants; expert advice should be sought.

Chemoprophylaxis involves use of either isoniazid alone for 6 months or of isoniazid and rifampicin for 3 months (see Table 2, section 5.1).
5.1.9 Antituberculosis drugs

For prevention of tuberculosis in susceptible close contacts or those who have become tuberculin-positive, see Table 2, section 5.1. For advice on immunisation against tuberculosis and tuberculin testing, see section 14.4.

**Monitoring** Since isoniazid, rifampicin and pyrazinamide are associated with liver toxicity, hepatic function should be checked before treatment with these drugs. Those with pre-existing liver disease should have frequent checks particularly in the first 2 months. If there is no evidence of liver disease (and pre-treatment liver function is normal), further checks are only necessary if the patient develops fever, malaise, vomiting, jaundice or unexplained deterioration during treatment. In view of the need to comply fully with antituberculous treatment on the one hand and to guard against serious liver damage on the other, children and their carers should be informed carefully how to recognise signs of liver disorders and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention should symptoms of liver disease occur.

**Renal function** should be checked before treatment with antituberculous drugs and appropriate dosage adjustments made. Streptomycin or ethambutol should preferably be avoided in patients with renal impairment, but if used, the dose should be reduced and the drug concentration monitored.

**Visual acuity** should be tested before ethambutol is used (see below).

Major causes of treatment failure are incorrect prescribing by the physician and inadequate compliance by the child or their carer. Monthly tablet counts and urine examination (rifampicin imparts an orange-red coloration) may be useful indicators of compliance with treatment. Avoid both excessive and inadequate dosage. Treatment should be supervised by a specialist paediatrician.

Isoniazid is cheap and highly effective. Like rifampicin it should always be included in any antituberculous regimen unless there is a specific contra-indication. Its only common side-effect is peripheral neuropathy which is more likely to occur where there are pre-existing risk factors such as diabetes, chronic renal failure, malnutrition and HIV infection. In these circumstances, and in breast-fed infants treated with isoniazid, pyridoxine (section 9.6.2) should be given prophylactically from the start of treatment. Other side-effects such as hepatitis (important: see Monitoring above) and psychosis are rare.

Rifampicin, a rifamycin, is a key component of any antituberculous regimen. Like isoniazid it should always be included unless there is a specific contra-indication. During the first two months (‘initial phase’) of rifampicin administration transient disturbance of liver function with elevated serum transaminases is common but generally does not require interruption of treatment. Occasionally more serious liver toxicity requires a change of treatment particularly in those with pre-existing liver disease (important: see Monitoring above).

On intermittent treatment six toxicity syndromes have been recognised—influenza-like, abdominal, and respiratory symptoms, shock, renal failure, and thrombocytopenic purpura—and can occur in 20 to 30% of patients.

Rifampicin induces hepatic enzymes which accelerate the metabolism of several drugs including oestrogens, corticosteroids, phenytoin, sulfonylureas, and anticoagulants; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (rifamycins). **Important**: the effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives is reduced and alternative family planning advice should be offered (section 7.3.1).

Rifabutin is indicated in adults for prophylaxis against M. avium complex infections in patients with a low CD4 count; it is also licensed in adults for the treatment of non-tuberculous mycobacterial disease and pulmonary tuberculosis. There is limited experience in children. As with rifampicin it induces hepatic enzymes and the effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives is reduced requiring alternative family planning methods.

Pyrazinamide is a bactericidal drug only active against intracellular dividing forms of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; it exerts its main effect only in the first two or three months. It is particularly useful in tuberculous meningitis because of good meningeal penetration. It is not active against *M. bovis*. Serious liver toxicity may occasionally occur (important: see Monitoring above).

Ethambutol is included in a treatment regimen if isoniazid resistance is suspected; it can be omitted if the risk of resistance is low.

Side-effects of ethambutol are largely confined to visual disturbances in the form of loss of acuity, colour blindness, and restriction of visual fields. These toxic effects are more common where excessive dosage is used or if the child’s renal function is impaired. The earliest features of ocular toxicity are subjective and children and their carers should be advised to discontinue therapy immediately if deterioration in vision develops and promptly seek further advice. Early discontinuation of the drug is almost always followed by recovery of eyesight. Those who cannot understand warnings about visual side-effects should, if possible, be given an alternative drug. In particular, ethambutol should be used with caution in children until they are at least 5 years old and capable of reporting symptomatic visual changes accurately.

Where possible visual acuity should be tested by Snellen chart before treatment with ethambutol.

Streptomycin is now rarely used in the UK except for resistant organisms. Plasma-drug concentration should be measured in patients with impaired renal function in whom streptomycin must be used with great care. Side-effects increase after a cumulative dose of 100 g, which should only be exceeded in exceptional circumstances. Drug-resistant tuberculosis should be treated by a specialist paediatrician with experience in such cases, and where appropriate facilities for infection-control exist. Second-line drugs available for infections caused by resistant organisms, or when first-line drugs cause unacceptable side-effects, include amikacin, capreomycin, cycloserine, newer macrolides (e.g. azithromycin and clarithromycin), quinolones (e.g. moxifloxacin) and protonamide (prothionamide; no longer on UK market).

Cycloserine is indicated in adults for prophylaxis against *M. avium* complex infections in patients with a low CD4 count; it is also licensed in adults for the treatment of non-tuberculous mycobacterial disease and pulmonary tuberculosis. There is limited experience in children. As with rifampicin it induces hepatic enzymes and the effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives is reduced requiring alternative family planning methods.

**Cautions** monitor haematological, renal, and hepatic function; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (cycloserine)
Contra-indications: epilepsy, depression, severe anxiety, psychiatric states, alcohol dependence, acute porphyria (section 9.8.2).

Renal impairment: reduce dose and monitor blood-cycloserine concentration; avoid in severe impairment.

Pregnancy: manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—crosses the placenta.

Breast-feeding: present in milk—amount too small to be harmful; see notes above.

BNFC 2011–2012 5.1.9 Antituberculosis drugs 293

Licensed use: licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

Indication and dose:

Cycloserine (King)

Capsules, red/grey cycloserine 250 mg, net price 100-cap pack = £33.80. Label: 2, 8.

ETHAMBUTOL HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions: test visual acuity before treatment and warn patients to report visual changes—see notes above; young children (see notes above)—routine ophthalmological monitoring recommended.

Contra-indications: optic neuritis, poor vision.

Renal impairment: reduce dose; if creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m², monitor plasma-ethambutol concentration; risk of optic nerve damage.

Pregnancy: not known to be harmful; see also p. 291.

Breast-feeding: amount too small to be harmful; see also p. 291.

Side-effects: optic neuritis, red/green colour blindness, peripheral neuritis, rarely rash, pruritus, urticaria, thrombocytopenia.

Pharmacokinetics: ‘peak’ concentration (2–2.5 hours after dose) should be 2–6 mg/litre (7–22 micromol/litre); ‘trough’ (pre-dose) concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre (4 micromol/litre); for advice on laboratory assay of ethambutol contact the Poisons Unit at New Cross Hospital (Tel (020) 7771 5360).

Injection: ethambutol hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £12.00; 400 mg, 56-tab pack = £44.18. Label: 8.

Ethambutol (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, ethambutol hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £12.00; 400 mg, 56-tab pack = £44.18. Label: 8.

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

ISONIAZID

Cautions: see Monitoring in notes above; also slow acetylator status (increased risk of side-effects); epilepsy; history of psychosis; alcohol dependence; malnutrition, diabetes mellitus, HIV infection (risk of peripheral neuritis); acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (isoniazid).

Hepatic disorders: Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

Contra-indications: drug-induced liver disease.

Hepatic impairment: use with caution; monitor liver function regularly and particularly frequently in the first 2 months; see also Hepatic Disorders above.

Renal impairment: reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²; risk of peripheral neuropathy.

Pregnancy: not known to be harmful; see notes above.

Breast-feeding: monitor infant for possible toxicity; see notes above.

Side-effects: nausea, vomiting, constipation, dry mouth; peripheral neuritis with high doses (pyridoxine prophylaxis, see notes above), optic neuritis, convulsions, psychotic episodes, vertigo; hypersensitivity reactions including fever, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, purpura; blood disorders including agranulocytosis, haemolytic anaemia, aplastic anaemia; hepatitis; pancreatitis; interstitial pneumonitis; systemic lupus erythematosus-like syndrome, pellagra, hyperreflexia, difficulty with micturition, hyperglycaemia, and gynaecomastia reported; hearing loss and tinnitus (in children with end-stage renal impairment); when used with tyramine or histamine rich foods, tachycardia, palpitation, hypotension, flushing, headache, dizziness, and sweating also reported.

Indication and dose:

Isoniazid (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, isoniazid 50 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £11.10; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £11.30. Label: 8, 22.

Injection, isoniazid 25 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £11.04.

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6.

PYRAZINAMIDE

Cautions: see Monitoring in notes above; also diabetes; interactions: Appendix 1 (pyrazinamide).

Hepatic disorders: Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

Indication and dose:
Contra-indications: acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)
Hepatic impairment: monitor hepatic function—idio-synchrnatic hepatotoxicity more common; avoid in severe hepatic impairment; see also Hepatic Disorders above
Pregnancy: manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; see also notes above
Breast-feeding: amount too small to be harmful; see also p. 291
Side-effects: hepatotoxicity including fever, anorexia, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, jaundice, liver failure; nausea, vomiting, dysuria, arthralgia, sideroblastic anaemia, thrombocytopenia, rash and occasionally photosensitivity
Licensed use: not licensed

Tuberculosis in combination with other drugs

Pyrazinamide (Non-proprietary)
Tablets, scored, pyrazinamide 500 mg. Label: 8
Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

RIFABUTIN
Cautions: see under Rifampicin; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)
Hepatic impairment: reduce dose in severe impairment
Renal impairment: use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²
Pregnancy: manufacturer advises avoid—no information available
Breast-feeding: manufacturer advises avoid—no information available
Side-effects: nausea, vomiting; leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, rash and occasionally photosensitivity
Licensed use: not licensed for use in children

Prophylaxis of Mycobacterium avium complex infections in immunosuppressed patients with low CD4 count (see product literature) Also see notes above

• By mouth
Child 1–12 years 5 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) once daily
Child 12–18 years 300 mg once daily

Treatment of non-tuberculous mycobacterial disease, in combination with other drugs
• By mouth
Child 1month–12 years 5 mg/kg once daily for up to 6 months after cultures negative
Child 12–18 years 450–600 mg once daily for up to 6 months after cultures negative

Treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 150–450 mg once daily for at least 6 months

Mycobutin® (Pharmacia)
Capsules, red-brown, rifabutin 150 mg. Net price 30-cap pack = £90.38. Label: 8, 14, counselling, lenses, see under Rifampicin
Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

RIFAMPICIN
Cautions: see Monitoring in notes above; also liver function tests and blood counts in hepatic disorders, and on prolonged therapy, see also below; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); important: effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives is reduced and alternative family planning advice should be offered (see also section 7.3.1); discolours soft contact lenses; see also notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (rifamycins)

Note: If treatment interrupted re-introduce with low dosage and increase gradually. Discontinue permanently if serious side-effects develop

Hepatic disorders: Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop

Contra-indications: jaundice

Hepatic impairment: impaired elimination; monitor liver function; avoid or do not exceed 8 mg/kg daily; see also Cautions above
Renal impairment: use with caution if dose above 10 mg/kg daily
Pregnancy: manufacturers advise very high doses teratogenic in animal studies in first trimester; risk of neonatal bleeding may be increased in third trimester; see also notes above
Breast-feeding: amount too small to be harmful; see also p. 291

Side-effects: gastrointestinal symptoms including anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea (antibiotic-associated colitis reported); headache, drowsiness; those occurring mainly on intermittent therapy include influenza-like symptoms (with chills, fever, dizziness, bone pain); respiratory symptoms (including shortness of breath), collapse and shock, haemolytic anaemia, disseminated intravascular coagulation and acute renal failure, thrombocytopenic purpura; alterations of liver function, jaundice; flushing, urticaria, and rash; other side-effects reported include oedema, psychoses, adrenal insufficiency, muscular weakness and myopathy, exfoliative dermatitis, toxic epidermal necrolysis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, pemphigoid reactions, leucopenia, eosinophilia, menstrual disturbances; urine, saliva, and other body
secr etions coloured orange-red; thrombophlebitis reported if infusion used for prolonged period

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for pruritus due to cholestasis

Indication and dose

Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs see notes above

Prophylaxis of meningococcal meningitis and Haemophilus influenzae (type b) infection Table 2, section 5.1

Brucellosis, legionnaires disease, serious staphylococcal infections, in combination with other antibacterials

- By mouth or by intravenous infusion

Neonates 5–10 mg/kg twice daily

Child 1 month–1 year 5–10 mg/kg twice daily

Child 1–18 years 10 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) twice daily

Pruritus due to cholestasis

- By mouth

Child 1 month–18 years 5–10 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) once daily

Administration Displacement value may be significant, consult local reconstitution guidelines; reconstitute with solvent provided. May be further diluted with glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9% to a final concentration of 1.2 mg/mL. Infuse over 2–3 hours.

Rifampicin (Non-proprietary) (Rx)

Capsules, rifampicin 150 mg, net price 100 = £20.82; 300 mg, 100 = £46.21. Label: 8, 14, 22, counselling, see contact lenses above

Rifadin® (Sanofi-Aventis) (Rx)

Capsules, rifampicin 150 mg (blue/red), net price 100-cap pack = £18.32; 300 mg (red), 100-cap pack = £36.63. Label: 8, 14, 22, counselling, see contact lenses above

Syrup, red, rifampicin 100 mg/5 mL (raspberry-flavoured). Net price 120 mL = £3.56. Label: 8, 14, 22, counselling, see contact lenses above

Excipients include sucrose

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, rifampicin. Net price 600-mg vial (with solvent) = £7.67

Electrolytes Na+ < 0.5 mmol/vial

Rimactane® (Sandoz) (Rx)

Capsules, rifampicin 150 mg (red), net price 60-cap pack = £21.95. Label: 8, 14, 22, counselling, see contact lenses above

- Combined preparations

See notes above

Rifater® (Sanofi-Aventis) (Rx)

Tablets, pink, s/c, rifampicin 120 mg, isoniazid 50 mg, pyrazinamide 300 mg. Net price 100-tab pack = £15.91. Label: 8, 14, 22, counselling, see contact lenses above

STREPTOMYCIN

Cautions see under Aminoglycosides, section 5.1.4; measure plasma-concentration in renal impairment; interactions: Appendix 1 (aminoglycosides)

Contra-indications see under Aminoglycosides, section 5.1.4

Renal impairment see under Aminoglycosides, section 5.1.4

Pregnancy see under Aminoglycosides, section 5.1.4

Side-effects see under Aminoglycosides, section 5.1.4; also hypersensitivity reactions, paraesthesia of mouth

Pharmacokinetics one-hour (‘peak’) concentration should be 15–40 mg/litre; pre-dose (‘trough’) concentration should be less than 5 mg/litre (less than 1 mg/litre in renal impairment)

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Tuberculosis, resistant to other treatment, in combination with other drugs

- By deep intramuscular injection

Child 1 month–18 years 15 mg/kg (max. 1 g) once daily

Adjunct to doxycycline in brucellosis, expert advice essential

- By deep intramuscular injection

Child 1 month–18 years 5–10 mg/kg every 6 hours; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses

Streptomycin Sulphate (Non-proprietary) (Rx)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, streptomycin (as sulphate), net price 1-g vial = £8.25

Available as an unlicensed preparation from UCB Pharma

5.1.11 Metronidazole

Antileprotic drugs

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

5.1.10 Metronidazole

Metronidazole is an antimicrobial drug with high activity against anaerobic bacteria and protozoa. It is also used for surgical and gynaecological sepsis in which its activity against colonic anaerobes, especially Bacteroides fragilis, is important. Metronidazole by mouth is effective for the treatment of Clostridium difficile infection (see also section 1.5); it can also be given by intravenous infusion if oral treatment is inappropriate.
Metronidazole is well absorbed orally and the intravenous route is normally reserved for severe infections. Metronidazole by the rectal route is an effective alternative to the intravenous route when oral administration is not possible. Intravenous metronidazole is used for the treatment of established cases of tetanus; diazepam (section 10.2.2) and tetanus immunoglobulin (section 14.5.2) are also used. Topical metronidazole (section 13.10.1.2) reduces the odour produced by anaerobic bacteria in fungating tumours; it is also used in the management of rosacea (section 13.6).

Oral infections Metronidazole is an alternative to a penicillin for the treatment of many oral infections where the patient is allergic to penicillin or the infection is due to beta-lactamase-producing anaerobes (Table 1, section 5.1). It is the drug of first choice for the treatment of acute necrotising ulcerative gingivitis (Vincent’s infection) and pericoronitis; suitable alternatives are amoxicillin (section 5.1.1.3) and erythromycin (section 5.1.5). For these purposes treatment with metronidazole for 3 days is sufficient, but the duration of treatment may need to be longer in pericoronitis. Tinidazole is licensed for the treatment of acute ulcerative gingivitis.

**Cautions**
- disulfiram-like reaction with alcohol, clinical and laboratory monitoring advised if treatment exceeds 10 days; interactions: Appendix 1 (metronidazole)
- Hepatic impairment in severe liver disease reduce total daily dose to one-third, and give once daily; use with caution in hepatic encephalopathy
- Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoidance of high-dose regimens; use only if potential benefit outweighs risk
- Breast-feeding significant amount in milk; manufacturer advises avoid large single doses though otherwise compatible; may give milk a bitter taste
- Side-effects gastro-intestinal disturbances (including nausea and vomiting), taste disturbances, furred tongue, oral mucositis, anorexia; very rarely hepatitis, jaundice, pancreatitis, drowsiness, dizziness, headache, arachia, psychotic disorders, darkening of urine, thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia, myalgia, arthralgia, visual disturbances, rash, pruritus, and erythema multiforme; on prolonged or intensive therapy peripheral neuropathy, transient epileptiform seizures, and leucopenia

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protozoal infections section 5.4.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anaerobic infections (usually treated for 7 days and for 10–14 days in <em>Clostridium difficile</em> infection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1–2 months 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 2 months–12 years 7.5 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) every 8 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years 400 mg every 8 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Helicobacter pylori eradication** section 1.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surgical prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years 30 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) 2 hours before the procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years 400–500 mg 2 hours before the procedure; up to 3 further doses of 400–500 mg may be given every 8 hours for high-risk procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By intravenous infusion</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate under 40 weeks postmenstrual age 10 mg/kg up to 30 minutes before the procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate over 40 weeks postmenstrual age 20–30 mg/kg up to 30 minutes before the procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years 30 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) up to 30 minutes before the procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years 500 mg up to 30 minutes before the procedure; up to 3 further doses of 500 mg may be given every 8 hours for high-risk procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By rectum</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 5–10 years 500 mg 2 hours before surgery; up to 3 further doses of 500 mg may be given every 8 hours for high-risk procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 10–18 years 1 g 2 hours before surgery; up to 3 further doses of 1 g may be given every 8 hours for high-risk procedures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Metronidazole (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, metronidazole 200 mg, net price 21-tab pack = £1.36; 400 mg, 21-tab pack = £1.35. Label: 4, 9, 21, 25, 27

Brands include Vaginyl®

Dental prescribing on NHS Metronidazole Tablets may be prescribed

Tablets, metronidazole 500 mg, net price 21-tab pack = £29.84. Label: 4, 9, 21, 25, 27

Dental prescribing on NHS Metronidazole Tablets may be prescribed

Suspension, metronidazole (as benzoate) 200 mg/5 mL. Net price 100 mL = £11.43. Label: 4, 9

Brands include Norazol®

Dental prescribing on NHS Metronidazole Oral Suspension may be prescribed

Intravenous infusion, metronidazole 5 mg/mL. Net price 20-mL amp = £1.56; 100-mL container = £3.41

Flagyl® (Winthrop)®

Tablets, both f/c, ivory, metronidazole 200 mg, net price 21-tab pack = £4.49; 400 mg, 14-tab pack = £6.34. Label: 4, 9, 21, 25, 27

Suppositories, metronidazole 500 mg, net price 10 = £15.18; 1 g, 10 = £23.06. Label: 4, 9

Flagyl® S® (Winthrop)®

Suspension, orange- and lemon-flavoured, metronidazole (as benzoate) 200 mg/5 mL. Net price 100 mL = £11.18. Label: 4, 9

Metrolyl® (Sandoz)®

Intravenous infusion, metronidazole 5 mg/mL, net price 100-mL Steriflex® bag = £1.22

Electrolytes Na⁺14.53 mmol/100-mL bag

Suppositories, metronidazole 500 mg, net price 10 = £12.34; 1 g, 10 = £18.34. Label: 4, 9

5.1.12 Quinolones

Ciprofloxacin is active against both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria. It is particularly active against Gram-negative bacteria, including salmonella, shigella, campylobacter, neisseria, and pseudomonas. Ciprofloxacin has only moderate activity against Gram-positive bacteria such as Streptococcus pneumoniae and Enterococcus faecalis; it should not be used for pneumococcal pneumonia. It is active against chlamydia and some mycobacteria. Most anaerobic organisms are not susceptible. Ciprofloxacin is licensed in children over 1 year of age for pseudomonal infections in cystic fibrosis, for complicated urinary-tract infections, and for treatment and prophylaxis of inhalation anthrax. When the benefits of treatment outweigh the risks, ciprofloxacin is licensed in children over 1 year of age for severe infections of the respiratory tract and of the gastro-intestinal system (including typhoid fever). It is also used in the treatment of septicaemia caused by multi-resistant organisms (usually hospital acquired) and gonorrhoea (although resistance is increasing). Ciprofloxacin is also used in the prophylaxis of meningococcal disease.

Nalidixic acid may be used in uncomplicated urinary-tract infections that are resistant to other antibiotics. Many staphylococci are resistant to quinolones and their use should be avoided in MRSA infections.

Ofloxacin eye drops are used in ophthalmic infections (section 11.3.1).

There is much less experience of the other quinolones in children; expert advice should be sought.

Anthrax Inhalation or gastro-intestinal anthrax should be treated initially with either ciprofloxacin or, in children over 12 years, doxycycline [unlicensed indication] (section 5.1.3) combined with one or two other antibacterials (such as amoxicillin, benzylpenicillin, chloramphenicol, clarithromycin, clindamycin, imipenem with cilastatin, rifampicin [unlicensed indication], and vancomycin). When the condition improves and the sensitivity of the Bacillus anthracis strain is known, treatment may be switched to a single antibacterial. Treatment should continue for 60 days because germination may be delayed.

Cutaneous anthrax should be treated with either ciprofloxacin [unlicensed indication] or doxycycline [unlicensed indication] (section 5.1.3) for 7 days. Treatment may be switched to amoxicillin (section 5.1.1.3) if the infecting strain is susceptible. Treatment may need to be extended to 60 days if exposure is due to aerosol. A combination of antibacterials for 14 days is recommended for cutaneous anthrax with systemic features, extensive oedema, or lesions of the head or neck.

Ciprofloxacin or doxycycline may be given for post-exposure prophylaxis. If exposure is confirmed, antibacterial prophylaxis should continue for 60 days. Antibacterial prophylaxis may be switched to amoxicillin after 10–14 days if the strain of B anthracis is susceptible. Vaccination against anthrax (section 14.4) may allow the duration of antibacterial prophylaxis to be shortened.

Cautions Quinolones should be used with caution in children with a history of epilepsy or conditions that predispose to seizures, in G6PD deficiency (section 9.1.5), myasthenia gravis (risk of exacerbation). Exposure to excessive sunlight should be avoided (discontinue if photosensitivity occurs). The CSM has warned that quinolones may induce convulsions in patients with or without a history of convulsions; taking NSAIDs at the same time may also induce them. Other interactions: Appendix 1 (quinolones).

Quinolones cause arthropathy in the weight-bearing joints of immature animals and are therefore generally not recommended in children and growing adolescents. However, the significance of this effect in humans is uncertain and in some specific circumstances short-term use of a quinolone in children is justified. Nalidixic acid is used for resistant urinary-tract infections in children over 3 months of age.

Tendon damage Tendon damage (including rupture) has been reported rarely in patients receiving quinolones. Tendon rupture may occur within 48 hours of starting treatment; cases have also been reported several months after stopping a quinolone. Healthcare professionals are reminded that:

- quinolones are contra-indicated in patients with a history of tendon disorders related to quinolone use;
- the risk of tendon damage is increased by the concomitant use of corticosteroids;
- if tendinitis is suspected, the quinolone should be discontinued immediately.
5.1.12 Quinolones

Contra-indications Quinolone hypersensitivity. Pregnancy Quinolones should be avoided in pregnancy because they have been shown to cause arthropathy in animal studies; safer alternatives are available.

Side-effects Side-effects of the quinolones include nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, rash (very rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis). Less frequent side-effects include anorexia, sleep disturbances, anxiety, depression, hallucinations, tremor, blood disorders (including eosinophilia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia), arthralgia, myalgia, disturbances in vision and taste. Other side-effects reported rarely or very rarely include hepatic dysfunction (including jaundice and hepatitis), hypotension, vasculitis, dyspnoea, convulsions, psychoses, paraesthesia, renal failure, interstitial nephritis, tendon inflammation and damage (see Tendon Damage above), photosensitivity, disturbances in hearing and smell. The drug should be discontinued if psychiatric, neurological or hypersensitivity reactions (including severe rash) occur.

**CIPROFLOXACIN**

Cautions see notes above; avoid excessive alkalinity of urine and ensure adequate fluid intake (risk of crystalluria); interactions: Appendix 1 (quinolones) Skilled tasks May impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)

Contra-indications see notes above Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²—consult product literature Pregnancy see notes above Breast-feeding amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid Side-effects see notes above; also flatulence, pain and erythema nodosum; rarely dysphagia, pancreatitis, chest pain, tachycardia, syncope, oedema, hot flushes, abnormal dreams, sweating, hyperglycaemia, and erythema nodosum; very rarely movement disorders, tinnitus, vasculitis, and tenosynovitis

Licensed use licensed for use in children over 1 year for complicated urinary-tract infections, for pseudomonal lower respiratory-tract infections in cystic fibrosis, for prophylaxis and treatment of inhalational anthrax; licensed for use in children over 1 year for other infections where the benefit is considered to outweigh the potential risks; not licensed for use in children for gastro-intestinal anthrax; not licensed for use in children for inhalational anthrax; not licensed for use in children for prophylaxis of meningococcal meningitis; not licensed for use in children under 1 year of age

Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complicated urinary-tract infections</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>10 mg/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>10 mg/kg twice daily; dose doubled in severe infection (max. 750 mg twice daily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By intravenous infusion over 60 minutes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>6 mg/kg every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severe respiratory-tract infections, gastrointestinal infections; see notes above</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>15 mg/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>20 mg/kg (max. 750 mg) twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By intravenous infusion over 60 minutes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>10 mg/kg every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>10 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) every 8 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pseudomonal lower respiratory-tract infection in cystic fibrosis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>20 mg/kg (max. 750 mg) twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By intravenous infusion over 60 minutes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>10 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) every 8 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anthrax (treatment and post-exposure prophylaxis, see notes above)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>15 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By intravenous infusion over 60 minutes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>10 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eye infections section 11.3.1</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prophylaxis of meningococcal meningitis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Ciprofloxacin (Non-proprietary)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablets</td>
<td>ciprofloxacin (as hydrochloride) 100 mg, net price 6-tab pack = £1.42; 250 mg, 10-tab pack = £2.00, 20-tab pack = £3.85; 500 mg, 10-tab pack = £5.99, 20-tab pack = £11.05, 50-tab pack = £22.00. Label: 7, 9, 25, counselling, driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intravenous infusion</td>
<td>ciprofloxacin (as lactate) 2 mg/mL, net price 50-mL bottle = £8.00, 100-mL bottle = £15.00, 200-mL bottle = £22.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension</td>
<td>ciprofloxacin (as hydrochloride) 250 mg (scored), net price 6-tab pack = £6.59; 500 mg (scored), 10-tab pack = £12.49, 750 mg, 10-tab pack = £19.78. Label: 7, 9, 25, counselling, driving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ciproxin® (Bayer Schering)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablets</td>
<td>all f/c, ciprofloxacin (as hydrochloride) 250 mg (scored), net price 10-tab pack = £6.59; 500 mg (scored), 10-tab pack = £12.49, 750 mg, 10-tab pack = £19.78. Label: 7, 9, 25, counselling, driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension</td>
<td>ciprofloxacin for reconstitution with diluent provided, 250 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £16.83. Label: 7, 9, 25, counselling, driving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Urinary-tract infections

Urinary-tract infection is more common in adolescent girls than in boys; when it occurs in adolescent boys there is frequently an underlying abnormality of the renal tract. Recurrent episodes of infection are an indication for radiological investigation especially in children under 3 months of age. Penicillins and cephalosporins are suitable for treating urinary-tract infection during pregnancy. Nitrofurantoin may be considered for children with recurrent infection, significant urinary-tract anomalies, or significant kidney damage. Nitrofurantoin is contraindicated in children under 3 months of age because of the theoretical possibility of haemolytic anaemia.

Pregnancy Urinary-tract infection in pregnancy may be asymptomatic and requires prompt treatment to prevent progression to acute pyelonephritis. Penicillins and cephalosporins are suitable for treating urinary-tract infection during pregnancy. Nitrofurantoin may also be used but it should be avoided at term. Sulfonamides, quinolones, and tetracyclines should be avoided during pregnancy; trimethoprim should also preferably be avoided particularly in the first trimester.

Renal impairment In renal failure antibacterials normally excreted by the kidney accumulate with resultant toxicity unless the dose is reduced. This applies especially to the aminoglycosides which should be used

Urinary-tract infections in children require prompt antibacterial treatment to minimise the risk of renal scarring. Uncomplicated ‘lower’ urinary-tract infections in children over 3 months of age can be treated with trimethoprim, nitrofurantoin, a first generation cephalosporin, or amoxicillin for 3 days; children should be reassessed if they continue to be unwell 24–48 hours after the initial assessment.

Acute pyelonephritis in children over 3 months of age can be treated with a first generation cephalosporin or co-amoxiclav; gentamicin is an alternative. Children under 3 months of age should be transferred to hospital and treated initially with intravenous injection of a broad-spectrum antibacterial such as cefotaxime or co-amoxiclav; gentamicin is an alternative.

Antibacterials are then given for a further period.

Resistant infections Widespread bacterial resistance to ampicillin, amoxicillin, and trimethoprim has been reported. Alternatives for resistant organisms include co-amoxiclav (amoxicillin with clavulanic acid), an oral cephalosporin, pivmecillinam, or a quinolone.

Antibacterial prophylaxis Recurrent episodes of infection are an indication for imaging tests. Antibacterial prophylaxis with low doses of trimethoprim or nitrofurantoin may be considered for children with recurrent infection, significant urinary-tract anomalies, or significant kidney damage. Nitrofurantoin is contraindicated in children under 3 months of age because of the theoretical possibility of haemolytic anaemia.

A specimen of urine should be collected for culture and sensitivity testing before starting antibacterial therapy:

- in children under 3 years of age;
- in children with suspected upper urinary-tract infection, complicated infection, or recurrent infection;
- if resistant organisms are suspected;
- if urine dipstick testing gives a single positive result for leucocyte esterase or nitrite;
- if clinical symptoms are not consistent with results of dipstick testing;
- in pregnant women.

Treatment should not be delayed while waiting for results. The antibacterial chosen should reflect current local bacterial sensitivity to antibacterials.

Nalidixic acid (Rosenmont) Suspension, pink, nalidixic acid 300 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL (raspberry- and strawberry-flavoured) = £12.50. Label: 9, 11 Excipients include sucrose 450 mg/5 mL.

BNFC 2011–2012

Intravenous infusion, ciprofloxacin (as lactate) 2 mg/mL, in sodium chloride 0.9%, net price 50-mL bottle = £7.61, 100-mL bottle = £15.02, 200-mL bottle = £22.85

Electrolytes Na⁺ 15.4 mmol/100-mL bottle

Nalidixic acid

Cautions see notes above; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); false positive urinary glucose if tested for reducing substances; monitor blood counts, renal and liver function if treatment exceeds 2 weeks; interactions: Appendix 1 (quinolones)

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises caution in liver disease

Renal impairment use with caution; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding risk to infant very small but one case reported. Alternatives for resistant organisms include co-amoxiclav (amoxicillin with clavulanic acid), an oral cephalosporin, pivmecillinam, or a quinolone.

5.1.13 Urinary-tract infections

Infections
300 5.2 Antifungal drugs

with great caution; tetracyclines, methamine, and nitrofurantoin should be avoided altogether.

**NITROFURANTOIN**

Cautions anaemia; diabetes mellitus; electrolyte imbalance; vitamin B and folate deficiency; pulmonary disease; on long-term therapy, monitor liver function and monitor for pulmonary symptoms (discontinue if deterioration in lung function); susceptibility to peripheral neuropathy; false positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances); urine may be coloured yellow or brown; interactions: Appendix 1 (nitrofurantoin)

Contra-indications infants less than 3 months old, G6PD deficiency (section 9.1.5), acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment use with caution; cholestatic jaundice and chronic active hepatitis reported

Renal impairment avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; risk of peripheral neuropathy; ineffective because of inadequate urine concentrations

Pregnancy avoid at term—may produce neonatal haemolysis

Breast-feeding avoid; only small amounts in milk but enough to produce haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants (section 9.1.5)

Side-effects anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhoea; acute and chronic pulmonary reactions (pulmonary fibrosis reported; possible association with lupus erythematosus-like syndrome); peripheral neuropathy; also reported, hypersensitivity reactions (including angioedema, anaphylaxis, sialadenitis, urticaria, rash and pruritus); rarely, cholestatic jaundice, hepatitis, exfoliative dermatitis, erythema multiforme, pancreatitis, arthralgia, blood disorders (including agranulocytosis, thrombocytopenia, and aplastic anaemia), benign intracranial hypertension, and transient alopecia

Indication and dose

Acute uncomplicated urinary-tract infection

- By mouth
  - Child 3 months–12 years 750 micrograms/kg 4 times daily for 3–7 days
  - Child 12–18 years 50 mg 4 times daily for 3–7 days; increased to 100 mg 4 times daily in severe chronic recurrent infections

Prophylaxis of urinary-tract infection (but see Cautions above)

Table 2, section 5.1

By mouth

- Child 3 months–12 years 500 mg 4 times daily for 3–7 days
- Child 12–18 years 1 capsule twice daily on day of procedure and for 3 days after

Nitrofurantoin (Non-proprietary) (Goldshield)

Tablets, nitrofurantoin 50 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.84; 100 mg, 28-tab pack = £4.43; 280-tab pack = £21.74

Oral suspension, nitrofurantoin 25 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £99.05

Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription

Furadantin® (Goldshield) (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, nitrofurantoin 50 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £9.79; 100 mg, 100-tab pack = £18.11

Macrodantin® (Goldshield) (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, yellow/white, nitrofurantoin 50 mg (as macrocrystals), net price 30-cap pack = £2.49; 100 mg (yellow/white), 30-cap pack = £4.81

Modified release

Macrubid® (Goldshield) (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, m/r, blue/yellow, nitrofurantoin 100 mg (as nitrofurantoin macrocrystals and nitrofurantoin monohydrate). Net price 14-cap pack = £4.89

Dose

Uncomplicated urinary-tract infection

Child 12–18 years 1 capsule twice daily with food

Genito-urinary surgical prophylaxis

Child 12–18 years 1 capsule twice daily on day of procedure

Treatment of fungal infections

The systemic treatment of common fungal infections is outlined below; specialist treatment is required in most forms of systemic or disseminated fungal infections. For local treatment of fungal infections, see section 7.2.2 (genital), section 7.4.4 (bladder), section 11.3.2 (eye), section 12.1.1 (ear), section 12.3.2 (oropharynx), and section 13.10.2 (skin).

Aspergillosis Aspergillosis most commonly affects the respiratory tract but in severely immunocompromised patients, invasive forms can affect the heart, brain, and skin. Voriconazole (section 5.2.1) is the treatment of choice for aspergillosis; liposomal amphotericin (section 5.2.3) is an alternative first-line treatment when voriconazole cannot be used. Caspofungin (section 5.2.4) or itraconazole (section 5.2.1) can be used in patients who are refractory to, or intolerant of voriconazole and liposomal amphotericin. Itraconazole is also used for the treatment of chronic pulmonary aspergillosis or as an adjunct in the treatment of allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis.

Candidiasis Many superficial candidal infections, including infections of the skin (section 13.10.2), are treated locally. Systemic antifungal treatment is required in widespread or intractable infection. Vaginal candidiasis can be treated with locally acting antifungals (section 7.2.2); alternatively, fluconazole (section 5.2.1) can be given by mouth. Oropharyngeal candidiasis generally responds to topical therapy (section 12.3.2). Fluconazole is given by mouth for unresponsive infections; it is reliably absorbed and is effective. Itraconazole (section 5.2.1) can be used for fluconazole-resistant infections. Topical therapy may not be adequate in immunocompromised children and an oral triazole antifungal is preferred.

For invasive or disseminated candidiasis, either amphotericin (section 5.2.3) by intravenous infusion or an echinocandin (section 5.2.4) can be used. Flu-
conazole (section 5.2.1) is an alternative for Candida albicans infection in clinically stable children who have not received an azole antifungal recently. Amphotericin should be considered for the initial treatment of CNS candidiasis. Voriconazole (section 5.2.1) can be used for infections caused by fluconazole-resistant Candida spp. when oral therapy is required, or in children intolerant of amphotericin or an echinocandin. In refractory cases, flucytosine (section 5.2.5) can be used with intravenous amphotericin.

Cryptococcosis Cryptococcosis is uncommon but infection in the immunosuppressed, especially HIV-positive children, can be life-threatening; cryptococcal meningitis is the most common form of fungal meningitis. The treatment of choice in cryptococcal meningitis is amphotericin (section 5.2.3) by intravenous infusion with flucytosine (section 5.2.5) by intravenous infusion for 2 weeks, followed by fluconazole (section 5.2.1) by mouth for 8 weeks or until cultures are negative. In cryptococcosis, fluconazole is sometimes given alone as an alternative in HIV-positive children with mild localised infection or in those who cannot tolerate amphotericin. Following successful treatment, fluconazole can be used for prophylaxis against relapse until immunity recovers.

Histoplasmosis Histoplasmosis is rare in temperate climates; it can be life-threatening, particularly in HIV-infected children. Itraconazole (section 5.2.1) can be used for the treatment of immunocompetent children with indolent non-meningeal infection, including chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis. Amphotericin (section 5.2.3) by intravenous infusion is preferred in children with fulminant or severe infections. Following successful treatment, itraconazole can be used for prophylaxis against relapse until immunity recovers.

Skin and nail infections Mild localised fungal infections of the skin (including tinea corporis, tinea cruris, and tinea pedis) respond to topical therapy (section 13.10.2). Systemic therapy is appropriate if topical therapy fails, if many areas are affected, or if the site of infection is difficult to treat such as in infections of the nails (onychomycosis) and of the scalp (tinea capitis).

Oral imidazole or triazole antifungals (particularly itraconazole) and terbinafine are used more frequently than griseofulvin because they have a broader spectrum of activity and require a shorter duration of treatment. Tinea capitis is treated systemically; additional topical application of an antifungal (section 13.10.2) may reduce transmission. Griseofulvin (section 5.2.5) is used for tinea capitis; it is effective against infections caused by Trichophyton tonsurans and Microsporum spp. Terbinafine (section 5.2.5) is used for tinea capitis caused by T. tonsurans [unlicensed indication]; the role of terbinafine in the management of Microsporum infections is uncertain. Fluconazole (section 5.2.1) or itraconazole (section 5.2.1) are alternatives in the treatment of tinea capitis caused by T. tonsurans or Microsporum spp. [both unlicensed indications].

Pityriasis versicolor (section 13.10.2) may be treated with itraconazole (section 5.2.1) by mouth if topical therapy is ineffective; fluconazole (section 5.2.1) by mouth is an alternative. Oral terbinafine is not effective for pityriasis versicolor.

Antifungal treatment may not be necessary in asymptomatic children with tinea infection of the nails. If treatment is necessary, a systemic antifungal is more effective than topical therapy. Terbinafine (section 5.2.5) and itraconazole (section 5.2.1) have largely replaced griseofulvin for the systemic treatment of onychomycosis, particularly of the toenail; they should be used under specialist advice. Although terbinafine is not licensed for use in children, it is considered to be the drug of choice for onychomycosis. Itraconazole can be administered as intermittent ‘pulse’ therapy. For the role of topical antifungals in the treatment of onychomycosis, see section 13.10.2.

Immunocompromised children Immunocompromised children are at particular risk of fungal infections and may receive antifungal drugs prophylactically; oral triazole antifungals are the drugs of choice for prophylaxis. Fluconazole (section 5.2.1) is more reliably absorbed than itraconazole (section 5.2.1), but fluconazole is not effective against Aspergillus spp. Itraconazole is preferred in patients at risk of invasive aspergillosis. Micafungin (section 5.2.4) can be used for prophylaxis of candidiasis in patients undergoing haematopoietic stem cell transplantation when fluconazole or itraconazole cannot be used.

Amphotericin (section 5.2.3) by intravenous infusion or caspofungin (section 5.2.4) is used for the empirical treatment of serious fungal infections in immunocompromised children; caspofungin is not effective against fungal infections of the CNS.

5.2.1 Triazole antifungals

For the role of triazole antifungal drugs in the prevention and systemic treatment of fungal infections, see p. 300. Fluconazole is very well absorbed after oral administration. It also achieves good penetration into the cerebrospinal fluid to treat fungal meningitis. Fluconazole is excreted largely unchanged in the urine and can be used to treat candiduria.

Itraconazole is active against a wide range of dermatophytes. There is limited information available on use in children. Itraconazole capsules require an acid environment in the stomach for optimal absorption. Itraconazole has been associated with liver damage and should be avoided or used with caution in children with liver disease; fluconazole is less frequently associated with hepatotoxicity.

Voriconazole is a broad-spectrum antifungal drug which is licensed in adults for the treatment of life-threatening infections.

FLUCONAZOLE

Cautions concomitant use with hepatotoxic drugs, monitor liver function with high doses or extended courses—discontinue if signs or symptoms of hepatic disease (risk of hepatic necrosis); susceptibility to QT interval prolongation; interactions: Appendix 1 (antifungals, triazole)

Contra-indications acute porphyria (section 9.8.2) Hepatic impairment toxicity with related drugs Renal impairment usual initial dose then halve subsequent doses if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73m²
5 Infections

Indication and dose

**Not licensed for tinea infections in children, or for vaginal candidiasis in girls under 16 years, or for prevention of relapse of cryptococcal meningitis after completion of primary therapy in children with AIDS**

**Mucosal candidiasis (except genital)**

- **By mouth or by intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate under 2 weeks** 3–6 mg/kg on first day then 3 mg/kg every 72 hours
  - **Neonate 2–4 weeks** 3–6 mg/kg on first day then 3 mg/kg every 48 hours
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 3–6 mg/kg on first day then 3 mg/kg every 14 days
  - **Child 12–18 years** 50 mg daily (100 mg daily in unusually difficult infections) given for 7–14 days in oropharyngeal candidiasis (max. 14 days except in severely immunocompromised patients); for 14–30 days in other mucosal infections (e.g. oesophagitis, candiduria, non-invasive bronchopulmonary infections)
  - **Child 12–18 years** 50 mg daily (100 mg daily in unusually difficult infections) given for 7–14 days in oropharyngeal candidiasis (max. 14 days except in severely immunocompromised patients); for 14–30 days in other mucosal infections (e.g. oesophagitis, candiduria, non-invasive bronchopulmonary infections)

**Vaginal candidiasis (see also Recurrent Vulvovaginal Candidiasis, section 7.2.2)**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child under 16 years (post-puberty)** a single dose of 150 mg
  - **Child 16–18 years** a single dose of 150 mg

**Candidal balanitis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 16–18 years** a single dose of 150 mg

**Tinea pedis, corporis, cruris, pityriasis versicolor, and dermal candidiasis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 3 mg/kg (max. 50 mg) daily for 2–4 weeks (for up to 6 weeks in tinea pedis); max. duration of treatment 6 weeks

**Tinea capitis**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1–18 years** 6 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) daily for 2–4 weeks

---

**Invasive candidal infections (including candidaemia and disseminated candidiasis) and cryptococcal infections (including meningitis)**

- **By mouth or by intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate under 2 weeks** 6–12 mg/kg every 72 hours, treatment continued according to response (at least 8 weeks for cryptococcal meningitis)
  - **Neonate 2–4 weeks** 6–12 mg/kg every 48 hours, treatment continued according to response (at least 8 weeks for cryptococcal meningitis)
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 6–12 mg/kg (max. 800 mg) daily, treatment continued according to response (at least 8 weeks for cryptococcal meningitis)

**Prevention of relapse of cryptococcal meningitis in HIV-infected patients after completion of primary therapy**

- **By mouth or by intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 6 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) daily

**Prevention of fungal infections in immunocompromised patients**

- **By mouth or by intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate under 2 weeks** according to extent and duration of neutropenia, 3–12 mg/kg every 72 hours
  - **Neonate 2–4 weeks** according to extent and duration of neutropenia, 3–12 mg/kg every 48 hours
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** according to extent and duration of neutropenia, 3–12 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) daily; 12 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) daily if high risk of systemic infections e.g. following bone-marrow transplantation; commence treatment before anticipated onset of neutropenia and continue for 7 days after neutrophil count in desirable range

**Administration** For intravenous infusion, give over 10–30 minutes; do not exceed an infusion rate of 5–10 mL/minute

**Fluconazole** (Non-proprietary)

1 **Capsules**, fluconazole 50 mg, net price 7-cap pack = £1.14; 150 mg, single-capsule pack = 98p; 200 mg, 7-cap pack = £5.84. Label: 9, (50 and 200 mg)

**Dental prescribing on NHS** Fluconazole Capsules 50 mg may be prescribed

**Intravenous infusion**, fluconazole 2 mg/mL, net price 25-mL bottle = £7.31; 100-mL bottle = £29.27; 100-mL infusion bag = £3.89; 50-mL infusion bag = £2.70

**Diflucan** (Pfizer)

1 **Capsules**, fluconazole 50 mg (blue/white), net price 7-cap pack = £16.61; 150 mg (blue), single-capsule pack = £7.12; 200 mg (purple/white), 7-cap pack = £86.42. Label: 9, (50 and 200 mg)

**Oral suspension**, orange-flavoured, fluconazole for reconstitution with water, 50 mg/5 mL, net price

---

1. Capsules can be sold to the public for vaginal candidiasis and associated candidal balanitis in those aged 16–18 years, in a container or packaging containing not more than 150 mg and labelled to show a max. dose of 150 mg
intravenous injection hypertension and hyperglycaemia

Licensed use Sporanox® capsules and Sporanox® Pulse are not licensed for use in children under 12 years; Sporanox® liquid and Sporanox® infusion are not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oropharyngeal candidiasis</td>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years 3–5 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>once daily; max. 100 mg daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in AIDS or neutropenia for 15 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 12–18 years 100 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(200 mg once daily in AIDS or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>neutropenia) for 15 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pityriasis versicolor</td>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years 3–5 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(max. 200 mg) once daily for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 12–18 years 200 mg once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>daily for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinea corporis and tinea cruris</td>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years 3–5 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(max. 100 mg) once daily for 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>days or 200 mg once daily for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinea pedis and tinea manum</td>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 1 month–12 years 3–5 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(max. 100 mg) once daily for 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>days or 200 mg twice daily for 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinea capitis</td>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child 1–18 years 3–5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) daily for 2–6 weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Onychomycosis  

**By mouth**

| Child 1–12 years course (‘pulse’) of 5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) daily for 7 days; subsequent courses repeated after 21 day intervals; fingernails 2 courses, toenails 3 courses |
| Child 12–18 years either 200 mg once daily for 3 months or course (‘pulse’) of 200 mg twice daily for 7 days, subsequent courses repeated after 21-day intervals; fingernails 2 courses, toenails 3 courses |

Systemic aspergillosis, candidiasis and cryptococcosis including cryptococcal meningitis where other antifungal drugs inappropriate or ineffective (limited information available)  

**By mouth**

| Child 1 month–18 years 5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) once daily; increased in invasive or disseminated disease and in cryptococcal meningitis to 5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) twice daily |

5.2.1 Triazole antifungals

35 mL = £16.61; 200 mg/5 mL, 35 mL = £66.42.  
Label: 9

**Dental prescribing on NHS** May be prescribed as Fluconazole Oral Suspension 50 mg/5 mL.

**Intravenous infusion**, fluconazole 2 mg/mL in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%, net price 25-mL bottle = £7.32; 100-mL bottle = £29.28

**Electrolytes**

Na+ 15 mmol/100-mL bottle  
K+ 30 mmol/100-mL bottle  
Mg2+ 1 mmol/100-mL bottle  
Ca2+ 1 mmol/100-mL bottle  
Cl− 105 mmol/100-mL bottle  

**BNFC 2011–2012 5.2.1 Triazole antifungals 303**

**ITRACONAZOLE**

Cautions absorption reduced in AIDS and neutropenia (monitor plasma-triazole concentration and increase dose if necessary); susceptibility to congestive heart failure (see also Heart Failure, below).  

**Contra-indications** acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)  

**Hepatotoxicity** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported very rarely—discontinue if signs of hepatitis develop. Avoid or use with caution if history of hepatotoxicity with other drugs or in active liver disease. Monitor liver function if treatment continues for longer than one month, if receiving other hepatotoxic drugs, if history of hepatotoxicity with other drugs, or in hepatic impairment.  

Counselling Children or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder and advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, abdominal pain or dark urine develop.

Heart failure  

Following reports of heart failure, caution is advised when prescribing itraconazole to patients at high risk of heart failure. Those at risk include:

- patients receiving high doses and longer treatment courses;
- those with cardiac disease;
- patients receiving treatment with negative inotropic drugs, e.g. calcium channel blockers.

Itraconazole should be avoided in patients with ventricular dysfunction or a history of heart failure unless the risk of hepatotoxicity (see Hepatotoxicity above) outweighs risk of hepatotoxicity (see Hepatotoxicity above); dose reduction may be necessary.

**Renal impairment** risk of congestive heart failure; bioavailability of oral formulations possibly reduced; use intravenous infusion with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–80 mL/minute/1.73 m² (monitor renal function); avoid intravenous infusion if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only in life-threatening situations (toxicity at high doses in animal studies); ensure effective contraception during treatment and until the next menstrual period following end of treatment

**Breast-feeding** small amounts present in milk—may accumulate; manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects** nausea, abdominal pain, rash; less commonly vomiting, dyspepsia, taste disturbances, fluulence, diarrhoea, constipation, oedema, headache, dizziness, paraesthesia (discontinue treatment if neuropathy), menstrual disorder, and alopecia; rarely pancreatitis, hypoaesthesia, urinary frequency, leucopenia, visual disturbances, and tinnitus; also reported, heart failure (see Cautions above), hypertriglyceridaemia, hepatitis (see Hepatotoxicity above), erectile dysfunction, thrombocytopenia, hypokalaemia, myalgia, arthralgia, photosensitivity, toxic epidermal necrolysis, and Stevens-Johnson Syndrome; with

35 mL = £16.61; 200 mg/5 mL, 35 mL = £66.42.  
Label: 9

**Dental prescribing on NHS** May be prescribed as Fluconazole Oral Suspension 50 mg/5 mL.

**Intravenous infusion**, fluconazole 2 mg/mL in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%, net price 25-mL bottle = £7.32; 100-mL bottle = £29.28

**Electrolytes**

Na+ 15 mmol/100-mL bottle  
K+ 30 mmol/100-mL bottle  
Mg2+ 1 mmol/100-mL bottle  
Ca2+ 1 mmol/100-mL bottle  
Cl− 105 mmol/100-mL bottle  

**BNFC 2011–2012 5.2.1 Triazole antifungals 303**
Infections

5.2.1 Triazole antifungals

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 2.5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) every 12 hours for 2 days, then 2.5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) once daily for max. 12 days

**Histoplasmosis**
- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) 1–2 times daily

**Maintenance in HIV-infected patients to prevent relapse of underlying fungal infection and prophylaxis in neutropenia when standard therapy inappropriate**
- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) once daily, increased to 5 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) twice daily if low plasma-itraconazole concentration (see Cautions)

**Prophylaxis of deep fungal infections (when standard therapy inappropriate) in patients with haematological malignancy or undergoing bone-marrow transplantation who are expected to become neutropenic**
- **By mouth (liquid preparation only)**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 2.5 mg/kg twice daily starting before transplantation or before chemotherapy (taking care to avoid interaction with cytotoxic drugs) and continued until neutrophil count recovers

**Administration**
- For **intravenous infusion**, dilute 250 mg with 50 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give requisite dose through an in-line filter (0.2 micron) over 60 minutes

**Itraconazole** (Non-proprietary)
- Capsules, enclosing coated beads, itraconazole 100 mg, net price 15-cap pack = £7.21. Label: 5, 9, 21, 25, counselling, hepatotoxicity

**Sporanox**® (Janssen)
- Capsules, blue/pink, enclosing coated beads, itraconazole 100 mg, net price 4-cap pack = £3.77; 15-cap pack = £13.77; 28-cap pack (Sporanox®-Pulse) = £25.72; 60-cap pack = £55.10. Label: 5, 9, 21, 25, counselling, hepatotoxicity

**Oral liquid**
- Sugar-free, cherry-flavoured, itraconazole 10 mg/mL, net price 150 mL (with 10-mL measuring cup) = £45.80. Label: 9, 23, counselling, administration, hepatotoxicity

**Counselling**
- Do not take with food; swish around mouth and swallow, do not rinse afterwards

**Concentrate for intravenous infusion**, itraconazole 10 mg/mL. For dilution before use. Net price 25-mL amp (with infusion bag and filter) = £62.58. Excipients include propylene glycol

**VORICONAZOLE**

**Cautions**
- Electrolyte disturbances, cardiomyopathy, bradycardia, symptomatic arrhythmias, history of QT interval prolongation, concomitant use with other drugs that prolong QT interval; avoid exposure to sunlight; patients at risk of pancreatitis; monitor liver function before treatment and during treatment; haematological malignancy (increased risk of hepatic reactions); monitor renal function; interactions: Appendix 1 (antifungals, triazole)

**Contra-indications**
- Acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment**
- In mild to moderate hepatic cirrhosis use usual initial dose then halve subsequent doses; no information available for severe hepatic cirrhosis—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Renal impairment**
- Intravenous vehicle may accumulate if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m²—use intravenous infusion only if potential benefit outweighs risk, and monitor renal function; alternatively, use tablets or oral suspension (no dose adjustment required)

**Pregnancy**
- Toxicity in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk; effective contraception required during treatment

**Breast-feeding**
- Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects**
- Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, jaundice, oedema, hypotension, chest pain, respiratory distress syndrome, sinusitis, headache, dizziness, asthenia, anxiety, depression, confusion, agitation, hallucinations, paraesthesia, tremor, influenza-like symptoms, hypoglycaemia, haematuria, blood disorders (including anaemia, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, pancytopenia), acute renal failure, hypokalaemia, visual disturbances, (including altered perception, blurred vision, and photophobia), rash, pruritus, photosensitivity, alopecia, chelitis, injection-site reactions; less commonly dyspepsia, duodenitis, cholecystitis, pancreatitis, hepatitis, constipation, arrhythmias (including QT interval prolongation), syncope, raised serum cholesterol, hypersensitivity reactions (including flushing), ataxia, nyctagmus, hypoaesthesia, adrenocortical insufficiency, arthritis, blepharitis, optic neuritis, scleritis, glossitis, gingivitis, psoriasis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome; rarely pseudomembranous colitis, taste disturbances (more common with oral suspension), convulsions, insomnia, tinnitus, hearing disturbances, extrapyramidal effects, hypertension, hypothroidism, hyperthyroidism, disoid lupus erythematosus, toxic epidermal necrolysis, pseudoporphyria, retinal haemorrhage, optic atrophy; also reported squamous cell carcinoma of skin (particularly in presence of phototoxicity)

**Indication and dose**

**Invasive aspergillosis; serious infections caused by Scedosporium spp., Fusarium spp., or invasive fluconazole-resistant Candida spp. (including C. krusei)**
- **By mouth**
  - Child 2–12 years (oral suspension recommended) 200 mg every 12 hours
  - Child 12–18 years, body-weight under 40 kg 200 mg every 12 hours for 2 doses then 100 mg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 150 mg every 12 hours
  - Child 12–18 years, body-weight over 40 kg 400 mg every 12 hours for 2 doses then 200 mg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 300 mg every 12 hours

BNFC 2011–2012
5.2.2 Imidazole antifungals

The imidazole antifungals include clotrimazole, econazole, ketoconazole, and miconazole. They are used for the local treatment of vaginal candidiasis (section 7.2.2) and for dermatophyte infections (section 13.10.2).

Ketoconazole is better absorbed by mouth than other imidazoles. However, its use is restricted because it is associated with fatal hepatotoxicity (see below).

Miconazole (section 12.3.2) can be used locally for oral infections; it is also effective in intestinal infections. Systemic absorption may follow use of miconazole oral gel and may result in significant drug interactions.

5.2.3 Polyene antifungals

The polyene antifungals include amphotericin and nystatin; neither drug is absorbed when given by mouth. Nystatin is used for oral, oropharyngeal, and perioral infections by local application in the mouth (section 13.10.2). Nystatin is also used for chronic mucocutaneous, cutaneous, and oropharyngeal candidiasis either resistant to fluconazole or itraconazole or in patients intolerant of these antifungals; chronic mucocutaneous, cutaneous, and oropharyngeal candidiasis either resistant to fluconazole or itraconazole or in patients intolerant of these antifungals.

Side-effects
- nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain; pruritus; less commonly diarrhea, headache, dizziness, drowsiness, and rash; also reported fatal liver damage (see Hepatotoxicity above), dyspnea, raised intracranial pressure, paraesthesia, adrenocortical insufficiency, erectile dysfunction, menstrual disorders, azospermia (with high doses), gynaecomastia, thrombocytopenia, photophobia, photosensitivity, and alopecia

Indication and dose

Dermatophytes and Malassezia folliculitis either resistant to fluconazole, terbinafine, or itraconazole or in patients intolerant of these antifungals; chronic mucocutaneous, cutaneous, and oropharyngeal candidiasis either resistant to fluconazole or itraconazole or in patients intolerant of these antifungals.

By mouth
- Child body-weight 15–30 kg 100 mg once daily
- Child body-weight over 30 kg 200 mg once daily, increased if response inadequate to 400 mg once daily

Note: Treatment continued until symptoms have cleared and cultures negative, but see Cautions (max. duration of treatment 4 weeks for Malassezia infection)


Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6
306 5.2.4 Echinocandin antifungals

control reactions); avoid rapid infusion (risk of arrhythmias); interactions: Appendix 1 (amphotericin)

Anaphylaxis Anaphylaxis occurs rarely with any intravenous amphotericin product and a test dose is advisable before the first infusion in children under 1 month of age, the patient should be carefully observed for at least 30 minutes after the test dose. Prophylactic antipyretics or hydrocortisone should only be used in patients who have previously experienced acute adverse reactions (in whom continued treatment with amphotericin is essential)

Renal impairment use only if no alternative; nephrotoxicity may be reduced with use of lipid formulation

Pregnancy not known to be harmful, but manufacturers advise avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding no information available

Side-effects when given parenterally, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, diarrhoea, epigastric pain; febrile reactions, headache, muscle and joint pain; anaemia; disturbances in renal function (including hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia) and renal toxicity; also cardiovascular toxicity (including arrhythmias, blood pressure changes), blood disorders, neurological disorders (including hearing loss, diplopia, convulsions, peripheral neuropathy, encephalopathy), abnormal liver function (discontinuation in febrile neutropenic patients unresponsive to conventional amphotericin, including invasive aspergillosis, cryptococcal meningitis and disseminated cryptococcosis in children with HIV

Licensed use intravenous conventional formulation amphotericin (Fungizone®) is licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); Ambisome® not licensed for use in children under 1 month

Indication and dose

Systemic fungal infections

- By intravenous infusion

Note Different preparations of intravenous amphotericin vary in their pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, dosage, and administration; these preparations should not be considered interchangeable. To avoid confusion, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed.

Fungizone® (Squibb) (pN)

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, amphotericin (as sodium deoxycholate complex), net price 50-mg vial = £3.88
Electrolytes Na+ < 0.5 mmol/vial

Dose

Systemic fungal infection

- By intravenous infusion

| Neonate | 1 mg/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 1.5 mg/kg daily; after 7 days, may be reduced to 1-1.5 mg/kg on alternate days |
| Child 1 month–18 years | initial test dose of 100 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) included as part of first dose of 250 micrograms/kg daily; increased over 2–4 days, if tolerated, to 1 mg/kg daily, in severe infection max. 1.5 mg/kg/day or on alternate days |
| Note | prolonged treatment usually necessary; if interrupted for longer than 7 days, recommence at 250 micrograms/kg daily and increase gradually |

Administration For intravenous infusion, reconstitute each vial with 10 mL. Water for Injections and shake immediately to produce a 5 mg/mL colloidal solution, dilute further in Glucose 5% to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL (in fluid-restricted children, up to 400 micrograms/mL, given via a central line); pH of glucose solution must not be below 4.2 (check each container—consult product literature for details of buffer); infuse over 4–6 hours, or if tolerated over a minimum of 2 hours (initial test dose given over 20–30 minutes); begin infusion immediately after dilution and protect from light; incompatible with Sodium Chloride solutions—flush existing intravenous line with Glucose 5% or use separate line; an in-line filter (pore size no less than 1 micron) may be used

Lipid formulations

Abelcet® (Cephalon) (pN)

Intravenous infusion, amphotericin 5 mg/mL as lipid complex with 1→3-dimyristoylphosphatidylcholine and 1→2-dimyristoylphosphatidylglycerol, net price 20-mL vial = £77.43 (hosp. only)
Electrolytes Na+ 3.12 mmol/vial

Dose

Severe invasive candidiasis; severe systemic fungal infections in children not responding to conventional amphotericin or to other antifungal drugs or where toxicity or renal impairment precludes conventional amphotericin, including invasive aspergillosis, cryptococcal meningitis and disseminated cryptococcosis in children with HIV

- By intravenous infusion

Child 1 month–18 years initial test dose of 100 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) then 5 mg/kg once daily

Administration for intravenous infusion, allow suspension to reach room temperature, shake gently to ensure no yellow settlement, withdraw requisite dose (using 17–19 gauge needle) into one or more 20-mL syringes, replace needle on syringe with a 5–micron filter needle provided (fresh needle for each syringe) and dilute in Glucose 5% to a concentration of 2 mg/mL preferably give via an infusion pump at a rate of 2.5 mg/kg/hour (initial test dose given over 15 minutes); an in-line filter (pore size no less than 15 micron) may be used, do not use sodium chloride or other electrolyte solutions—flush existing intravenous line with Glucose 5% or use separate line

Ambisome® (Gilead) (pN)

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, amphotericin 50 mg encapsulated in liposomes, net price 50-mg vial = £96.69
Electrolytes Na+ < 0.5 mmol/vial
Excipients include sucrose 900 mg/vial

Dose

Severe systemic or deep mycoses where toxicity (particularly nephrotoxicity) precludes use of conventional amphotericin; suspected or proven infection in febrile neutropenic patients unresponsive to broad-spectrum antibacterials

- By intravenous infusion

Neonate 1 mg/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily, max. 5 mg/kg once daily

Child 1 month–18 years initial test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) then 3 mg/kg once daily; max. 5 mg/kg once daily

Visceral leishmaniasis see section 5.4.5 and product literature

Administration for intravenous infusion, reconstitute each vial with 12 mL. Water for Injections and shake vigorously to produce a preparation containing 4 mg/mL; withdraw requisite dose from vial and introduce into Glucose 5% or 10% through the 5-micron filter provided, to produce a final concentration of 0.2–2 mg/mL, infuse over 30–60 minutes, or if non-anaphylactic infusion-related reactions occur infuse over 2 hours (initial test dose given over 10 minutes); an in-line filter (pore size no less than 1 micron) may be used; incompatible with sodium chloride solutions—flush existing intravenous line with Glucose 5% or 10%, or use separate line

5.2.4 Echinocandin antifungals

The echinocandin antifungals include caspofungin and micafungin. They are only active against Aspergillus spp. and Candida spp; however micafungin is not used for the treatment of aspergillosis. Echinocandins are not...
Caspofungin

Cautions interactions: Appendix 1 (caspofungin)

Hepatic impairment usual initial dose, then use 70% of normal maintenance dose in moderate impairment; no information available for severe impairment

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies

Breast-feeding present in milk in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects nausea, diarrhoea, vomiting; tachycardia, hypotension, flushing; dyspnoea; headache; hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia; arthralgia; rash, pruritus, sweating, injection-site reactions; less commonly abdominal pain, dyspepsia, dry mouth, taste disturbances, anorexia, constipation, flatulence, cholestasis, hepatic dysfunction, ascites, palpitation, arrhythmia, chest pain, heart failure, thrombophlebitis, hypertension, bronchospasm, cough, dizziness, fatigue, paraesthesia, hypoaesthesia, sleep disturbances, tremor, anxiety, disorientation, hyperglycaemia, renal failure, hypocalcaemia, metabolic acidosis, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, myalgia, muscular weakness, blurred vision, and erythema multiforme; also reported, acute respiratory distress syndrome, anaphylaxis, and hypercalcaemia

Indication and dose

Invasive aspergillosis (see notes above); invasive candidiasis (see notes above); empirical treatment of systemic fungal infections in patients with neutropenia

- By intravenous infusion

Neonate 25 mg/m² once daily

Child 1 month–3 months 25 mg/m² once daily

Child 3 months–1 year 50 mg/m² once daily

Child 1–18 years 70 mg/m² (max. 70 mg) on first day then 50 mg/m² (max. 70 mg) once daily; increased to 70 mg/m² (max. 70 mg) daily if lower dose tolerated but inadequate response

Administration for intravenous infusion, allow vial to reach room temperature; initially reconstitute 50 mg with 10.5 mL Water for Injections to produce a 5.2 mg/mL solution, or reconstitute 70 mg with 10.5 mL Water for Injections to produce a 7.2 mg/mL solution; mix gently to dissolve; dilute requisite dose to a final concentration not exceeding 500 micrograms/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%, give over 60 minutes; incompatible with glucose solutions

Cancidas® (MSD) ™

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, caspofungin (as acetate), net price 50-mg vial = £327.67; 70-mg vial = £416.78

Mycafungin

Cautions monitor renal function; interactions: Appendix 1 (micafungin)

Hepatotoxicity Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported. Monitor liver function—discontinue if significant and persistent abnormalities in liver function tests develop. Use with caution in hepatic impairment (avoid if severe) or if receiving other hepatotoxic drugs. Risk of hepatic side-effects greater in children under 1 year of age

Hepatic impairment use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment; see also Hepatotoxicity above

Renal impairment use with caution; deterioration in renal function

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, hepatomegaly; blood pressure changes, tachycardia; headache, fever; hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypocalcaemia, leucopenia, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, renal failure; rash, phlebitis; less commonly dyspepsia, constipation, hepatitis and cholestasis (see also Hepatotoxicity above), taste disturbances, anorexia, palpitation, Bradycardia; flushing, dyspnoea, sleep disturbances, anxiety, confusion, dizziness, tremor, pancytopenia, eosinophilia, hyponatraemia, hyperkalaemia, hyperphosphataemia, hyperhidrosis, and pruritus; rarely haemolytic anaemia

Indication and dose

Invasive candidiasis

- By intravenous infusion

Neonate 2 mg/kg once daily (increased to 4 mg/kg daily if inadequate response) for at least 14 days

Child 1 month–18 years, body-weight under 40 kg 2 mg/kg once daily (increased to 4 mg/kg daily if inadequate response) for at least 14 days

Child 1 month–18 years, body-weight over 40 kg 100 mg once daily (increased to 200 mg daily if inadequate response) for at least 14 days

Oesophageal candidiasis

- By intravenous infusion

Child 16–18 years, body-weight under 40 kg 3 mg/kg once daily

Child 16–18 years, body-weight over 40 kg 150 mg once daily

Prophylaxis of candidiasis in children undergoing bone-marrow transplantation or who are expected to become neutropenic for over 10 days

- By intravenous infusion

Neonate 1 mg/kg once daily; continue for at least 7 days after neutrophil count in desirable range

Child 1 month–18 years, body-weight under 40 kg 1 mg/kg once daily; continue for at least 7 days after neutrophil count in desirable range

Child 1 month–18 years, body-weight over 40 kg 50 mg once daily; continue for at least 7 days after neutrophil count in desirable range

Administration for intravenous infusion reconstitute each vial with 5 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, gently rotate vial, without shaking, to dissolve; dilute requisite dose to a concentration of 0.5–2 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; protect infusion from light; give over 60 minutes

BNFC 2011–2012 effective against fungal infections of the CNS. For the role of echinocandin antifungals in the prevention and systemic treatment of fungal infections, see p. 300.

5.2.4 Echinocandin antifungals 307

Receiving other hepatotoxic drugs. Risk of hepatic side-effects greater in children under 1 year of age

Hepatic impairment use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment; see also Hepatotoxicity above

Renal impairment use with caution; deterioration in renal function

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, hepatomegaly; blood pressure changes, tachycardia; headache, fever; hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypocalcaemia, leucopenia, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, renal failure; rash, phlebitis; less commonly dyspepsia, constipation, hepatitis and cholestasis (see also Hepatotoxicity above), taste disturbances, anorexia, palpitation, Bradycardia; flushing, dyspnoea, sleep disturbances, anxiety, confusion, dizziness, tremor, pancytopenia, eosinophilia, hyponatraemia, hyperkalaemia, hyperphosphataemia, hyperhidrosis, and pruritus; rarely haemolytic anaemia
**5.2.5 Other antifungals**

**Mycamine**® (Astellas) ▼ (Tablet) **Intravenous infusion** powder for reconstitution, micafungin (as sodium), net price 50-mg vial = £196.08; 100-mg vial = £341.00

---

**FLUCYTOSINE**

**Caution**s blood disorders; liver- and kidney-function tests and blood counts required (weekly in blood disorders); **Interactions**: Appendix 1 (flucytosine)

**Renal impairment** liver- and kidney-function tests and blood counts required weekly; use normal dose every 12 hours if creatinine clearance 20–40 mL/minute; use normal dose every 24 hours if creatinine clearance 10–20 mL/minute; use initial normal dose if creatinine clearance less than 10 mL/minute and then adjust dose according to plasma-flucytosine concentration

**Pregnancy** teratogenic in animal studies; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, rash; less frequently cardiotoxicity, confusion, hallucinations, convulsions, headache, sedation, vertigo, alterations in liver function tests (hepatitis and hepatic necrosis reported), and toxic epidermal necrolysis; blood disorders including thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, and aplastic anaemia reported

**Pharmacokinetics** for plasma-concentration monitoring blood should be taken shortly before starting the next infusion. Plasma concentration for optimum response 25–50 mg/litre (200–400 micromol/litre)—should not be allowed to exceed 80 mg/litre (620 micromol/litre)

**Licensed use** tablets not licensed

**Indication and dose** Systemic yeast and fungal infections, adjunct to amphotericin in severe systemic candidiasis and in other severe or long-standing infections

- **Neonate** 50 mg/kg every 12 hours

**FLUCYTOSINE**

**Indication and dose**

- **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 mg/kg every 6 hours; extremely sensitive organisms, 25–37.5 mg/kg every 6 hours may be sufficient; treatment continued usually for not more than 7 days

**Cryptococcal meningitis** (adjunct to amphotericin, see Cryptococcosis, p. 301) • By intravenous infusion or by mouth

- **Neonate** 50 mg/kg every 12 hours

**Child 1 month–18 years** 25 mg/kg every 6 hours for 2 weeks

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, give over 20–40 minutes

**Flucytosine tablets** may be available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Extemporaneous formulations** available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

---

**GRISEOFULVIN**

**Caution**s interactions: Appendix 1 (griseofulvin)

**Skilled tasks** May impair performance of skilled tasks; effects of alcohol enhanced

**Contra-indications** systemic lupus erythematosus (risk of exacerbation); acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe liver disease

**Pregnancy** avoid (fetotoxicity and teratogenicity in animals); effective contraception required during and for at least 1 month after administration to women (important: effectiveness of oral contraceptives may be reduced, additional contraceptive precautions e.g. barrier method, required); also males should avoid fathering a child during and for at least 6 months after treatment

**Breast-feeding** avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, headache; also reported, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, hepatotoxicity, glossitis, taste disturbances, sleep disturbances, dizziness, fatigue, confusion, agitation, depression, impaired co-ordination and hearing, peripheral neuropathy, menstrual disturbances, renal failure, leucopenia, systemic lupus erythematosus, rash (including rarely erythema multiforme, toxic epidermal necrolysis), and photosensitivity

**Licensed use** tablets licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); suspension not licensed

**Indication and dose**

**Dermatophyte infections where topical therapy has failed or is inappropriate**

- **By mouth**

  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 10 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) once daily or in divided doses; in severe infection dose may be doubled, reducing when response occurs

  - **Child 12–18 years** 500 mg once daily or in divided doses; in severe infection dose may be doubled, reducing when response occurs
Tinea capitis caused by Trichophyton tonsurans

• By mouth
  Child 1 month–12 years 15–20 mg/kg (max. 1 g) once daily or in divided doses
  Child 12–18 years 1 g once daily or in divided doses

Griseofulvin (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, griseofulvin 125 mg, net price 100 = £34.86; 500 mg, 100 = £90.34. Label: 9, 21, counselling, skilled tasks

Fulsovin® (Kappin)

Oral suspension, griseofulvin 125 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (peppermint-flavoured) = £59.90. Label: 9, 21, counselling, skilled tasks

TERBINAFINE

Cautions psoriasis (risk of exacerbation), autoimmune disease (risk of lupus-erythematosus-like effect) interactions: Appendix 1 (terbinafine)

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises avoid—elimination reduced

Renal impairment use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m² and no suitable alternative available

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if benefit outweighs risk—no information available

Breast-feeding avoid—present in milk

Side-effects abdominal discomfort, anorexia, nausea, diarrhoea; headache; rash and urticaria occasionally with arthralgia or myalgia; less commonly taste disturbance; rarely liver toxicity (including jaundice, cholestasis and hepatitis)—discontinue treatment, angioedema, dizziness, malaise, paraesthesia, hypoaesthesia, photosensitivity, serious skin reactions (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis)—discontinue treatment if progressive skin rash; very rarely psychiatric disturbances, blood disorders (including incidence of leucopenia higher and thrombocytopenia), lupus erythematous-like effect, and exacerbation of psoriasis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Dermatophyte infections of the nails, ringworm infections (including tinea pedis, cruris, corporis, and capitis) where oral therapy appropriate (due to site, severity or extent)

• By mouth
  Child over 1 year; body-weight 10–20 kg 62.5 mg once daily
  Child body-weight 20–40 kg 125 mg once daily
  Child body-weight over 40 kg 250 mg once daily

Note treatment usually for 4 weeks in tinea capitis, 2–4 weeks in tinea cruris, 4 weeks in tinea corporis, 6 weeks–3 months in nail infections (occasionally longer in toenail infections)

Fungal skin infections section 13.10.2

Terbinfine (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, terbinfine (as hydrochloride) 250 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £2.33, 28-tab pack = £3.02. Label: 9

Lamisil® (Novartis)

Tablets, off-white, scored, terbinfine (as hydrochloride) 250 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £21.30, 28-tab pack = £41.09. Label: 9

5.3 Antiviral drugs

5.3.1 HIV infection

There is no cure for infection caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) but a number of drugs slow or halt disease progression. Drugs for HIV infection (antiretrovirals) may be associated with serious side-effects. Although antiretrovirals increase life expectancy considerably and decrease the risk of complications associated with premature ageing, mortality and morbidity remain slightly higher than in uninfected individuals.

The natural progression of HIV disease is different in children compared to adults; drug treatment should only be undertaken by specialists within a formal paediatric HIV clinical network. Guidelines and dose regimens are under constant review and for this reason some dose recommendations have not been included in BNF for Children.

Further information on the management of children with HIV can be obtained from the Children’s HIV Association (CHIVA) www.chiva.org.uk; and further information on antiretroviral use and toxicity can be obtained from the Paediatric European Network for Treatment of AIDS (PENTA) website www.pentatials.org.

Principles of treatment Treatment is aimed at suppressing viral replication for as long as possible; it should be started before the immune system is irreversibly damaged. The need for early drug treatment should, however, be balanced against the risk of toxicity. Commitment to treatment and strict adherence over many years are required; the regimen chosen should take into account convenience and the child’s tolerance of treatment. The development of drug resistance is reduced by using a combination of drugs; such combinations should have synergistic or additive activity while ensuring that their toxicity is not additive. It is recommended that viral sensitivity to antiretroviral drugs is...
established before starting treatment or before switching drugs if the infection is not responding.

**Initiation of treatment** Treatment is started in all HIV infected children under 1 year of age regardless of clinical and immunological parameters. In children over 1 year of age, treatment is based on the child’s age, CD4 cell count, viral load, and symptoms. The choice of antiviral treatment for children should take into account the method and frequency of administration, risk of side-effects, compatibility of drugs with food, palatability, and the appropriateness of the formulation. Initiating treatment with a combination of drugs (‘highly active antiretroviral therapy’ which includes 2 nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors with either a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor or a boosted protease inhibitor) is recommended. Abacavir and lamivudine are the nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors of choice for initial therapy; however, zidovudine and lamivudine are used in children who are positive for the HLA-B*5701 allele. Nevirapine is the preferred non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor in children under 3 years of age, but efavirenz is preferred in older children. Lopinavir with ritonavir is the preferred boosted protease inhibitor for initial therapy. The metabolism of many antiretrovirals varies in young children; it may therefore be necessary to adjust the dose according to the plasma-drug concentration. Children who require treatment for both HIV and chronic hepatitis B should receive antivirals that are active against both diseases (section 5.5.3).

**Switching therapy** Deterioration of the condition (including clinical, virological changes, and CD4 cell changes) may require a complete change of therapy. The choice of an alternative regimen depends on factors such as the response to previous treatment, tolerance, and the possibility of cross-resistance.

**Pregnancy** Treatment of HIV infection in pregnancy aims to reduce the risk of toxicity to the fetus (although the teratogenic potential of most antiretroviral drugs is unknown), to minimise the viral load and disease progression in the mother, and to prevent transmission of infection to the neonate. **All treatment options require careful assessment by a specialist.** Zidovudine monotherapy reduces transmission of infection to the neonate. However, combination antiretroviral therapy maximises the chance of preventing transmission and represents optimal therapy for the mother. Combination antiretroviral therapy may be associated with a greater risk of preterm delivery. Local protocols and national guidelines ([www.bhiva.org](http://www.bhiva.org)) should be consulted for recommendations on treatment during pregnancy and the perinatal period.

**Breast-feeding** Breast-feeding by HIV-positive mothers may cause HIV infection in the infant and should be avoided.

**Post-exposure prophylaxis** Children exposed to HIV infection through needlestick injury or by another route should be sent immediately to an accident and emergency department for post-exposure prophylaxis [unlicensed indication]. Antiretrovirals for prophylaxis are chosen on the basis of efficacy and potential toxicity. Recommendations have been developed by the Children’s HIV Association, [www.chiva.org.uk](http://www.chiva.org.uk).

**Drugs used for HIV infection** Zidovudine, a nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (or ‘nucleoside analogue’), was the first anti-HIV drug to be introduced. Other nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors include abacavir, didanosine, emtricitabine, lamivudine, stavudine, and tenofovir. There are concerns about renal toxicity and effects on bone mineralisation when tenofovir is used in prepubertal children.

The protease inhibitors include atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir (a pro-drug of amprenavir), indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir, and tipranavir. Indinavir is no longer recommended because it is associated with nephrolithiasis. Ritonavir in low doses boosts the activity of atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir, and tipranavir increasing the persistence of plasma concentrations of these drugs; at such a low dose, ritonavir has no intrinsic antiviral activity. A combination of lopinavir with low-dose ritonavir is available for use in children. The protease inhibitors are metabolised by cytochrome P450 enzyme systems and therefore have a significant potential for drug interactions. Protease inhibitors are associated with lipodystrophy and metabolic effects (see below).

The non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors efavirenz, etravirine, and nevirapine are active against the subtype HIV-1 but not HIV-2, a subtype that is rare in the UK. These drugs may interact with a number of drugs metabolised in the liver. Nevirapine is associated with a high incidence of rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome) and rarely fatal hepatitis. Rash is also associated with efavirenz and etravirine but it is usually milder. Psychiatric or CNS disturbances are common with efavirenz. CNS disturbances are often self-limiting and can be reduced by taking the dose at bedtime (especially in the first 2–4 weeks of treatment). Efavirenz has also been associated with an increased plasma cholesterol concentration. Etravirine is used in regimens containing a boosted protease inhibitor for HIV infection resistant to other non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors and protease inhibitors.

Enfuvirtide, which inhibits the fusion of HIV to the host cell, is licensed for managing infection that has failed to respond to a regimen of other antiretroviral drugs. Enfuvirtide should be combined with other potentially active antiretroviral drugs; it is given by subcutaneous injection.

Maraviroc is an antagonist of the CCR5 chemokine receptor. It is used in patients exclusively infected with CCR5–tropic HIV.

Raltegravir is an inhibitor of HIV integrase. It is used for the treatment of HIV infection resistant to multiple antiretrovirals.

**Immune reconstitution syndrome** Improvement in immune function as a result of antiretroviral treatment may provoke a marked inflammatory reaction against residual opportunistic organisms.

**Lipodystrophy syndrome** Metabolic effects associated with antiretroviral treatment include fat redistribution, insulin resistance, and dyslipidaemia; collectively these have been termed lipodystrophy syndrome. Children should be encouraged to lead a healthy lifestyle that reduces their long-term cardiovascular risk. Plasma lipids and blood glucose should be measured before starting antiretroviral therapy, after 3–6 months of treatment, and then at least annually. Insu-
lin resistance and hyperglycaemia occur only rarely in children.

Fat redistribution (with loss of subcutaneous fat, increased abdominal fat, ‘buffalo hump’ and breast enlargement) is associated with regimens containing protease inhibitors and nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. Stavudine, and to a lesser extent zidovudine, are associated with a higher risk of lipatrophy and should be used only if alternative regimens are not suitable.

Dyslipidaemia is associated with antiretroviral treatment, particularly with protease inhibitors; in children, hypercholesterolaemia appears to be more common than hypertriglyceridaemia. Protease inhibitors and some nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors are associated with insulin resistance and hyperglycaemia, but they occur rarely in children. Of the protease inhibitors, atazanavir and darunavir are less likely to cause dyslipidaemia, while saquinavir and atazanavir are less likely to impair glucose tolerance.

Osteonecrosis Osteonecrosis has been reported in children with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

---

**Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors**

**Cautions**

**Lactic acidosis** Life-threatening lactic acidosis associated with hepatomegaly and hepatic steatosis has been reported with nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. They should be used with caution in children with hepatomegaly, hepatitis (especially hepatitis C treated with interferon alfa and ribavirin), liver-enzyme abnormalities and with other risk factors for liver disease and hepatic steatosis. Treatment with the nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor should be discontinued in case of symptomatic hyperlactataemia, lactic acidosis, progressive hepatomegaly or rapid deterioration of liver function. Stavudine, especially with didanosine, is associated with a higher risk of lactic acidosis and should be used only if alternative regimens are not suitable.

**Hepatic impairment** Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors should be used with caution in children with hepatic impairment (greater risk of hepatic side-effects, see also Lactic Acidosis above). However, some nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors are used in children who also have chronic hepatitis B.

**Pregnancy** See p. 310

**Breast-feeding** See p. 310

**Side-effects** Side-effects of the nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors include gastro-intestinal disturbances (such as nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, flatulence and diarrhoea), anorexia, pancreatitis, liver damage (see also Lactic Acidosis, above), dyspnoea, cough, headache, insomnia, dizziness, fatigue, blood disorders (including anaemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia), myalgia, arthralgia, rash, urticaria, and fever. See notes above for Lipodystrophy Syndrome (p. 310) and Osteonecrosis (above).

---

**ABACAVIR**

**Cautions** see notes above; also test for HLA-B*5701 allele before treatment (or if re-starting treatment and HLA-B*5701 status not known)—increased risk of hypersensitivity reaction in presence of HLA-B*5701 allele; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (abacavir)

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Life-threatening hypersensitivity reactions reported—characterised by fever or rash and possibly nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, dyspnoea, cough, lethargy, malaise, headache, and myalgia; less frequently mouth ulceration, oedema, hypotension, sore throat, acute respiratory distress syndrome, acaphlysis, paraesthesia, arthralgia, conjunctivitis, lymphadenopathy, lymphocytopenia and renal failure; rarely myolysis; laboratory abnormalities may include raised liver function tests (see Lactic Acidosis above) and creatine kinase; symptoms usually appear in the first 6 weeks, but may occur at any time; monitor for symptoms every 2 weeks for 2 months; discontinue immediately if any symptom of hypersensitivity develops and do not rechallenge (risk of more severe hypersensitivity reaction); discontinue if hypersensitivity cannot be ruled out, even when other diagnoses possible—if rechallenge necessary it must be carried out in hospital setting; if abacavir is stopped for any reason other than hypersensitivity, exclude hypersensitivity reaction as the cause and rechallenge only if medical assistance is readily available; care needed with concomitant use of drugs which cause skin toxicity.

**Counselling** Children and carers should be told the importance of regular dosing (interruption therapy may increase the risk of sensitisation), how to recognise signs of hypersensitivity, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms develop or before re-starting treatment. Children or their carers should be advised to keep Alert Card with them at all times.

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also avoid in moderate impairment unless essential; avoid in severe impairment.

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises avoid in end-stage renal disease; avoid Kivexa® or Trizivir® if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m².

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid (toxicity in animal studies); see also Pregnancy, p. 310

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** see notes above; also hypersensitivity reactions (see above); very rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis; rash and gastro-intestinal disturbances more common in children.

**Licensed use** Trizivir® not licensed for use in children.

**Indication and dose**

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 3 months–12 years** 8 mg/kg (max. 300 mg) twice daily or 16 mg/kg (max. 600 mg) once daily
  - **Body-weight 14–21 kg** 150 mg twice daily or 300 mg once daily
  - **Body-weight 21–30 kg** 150 mg in the morning and 300 mg in the evening or 450 mg once daily
  - **Body-weight over 30 kg** 300 mg twice daily or 600 mg once daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** 300 mg twice daily or 600 mg once daily

See notes above for Lipodystrophy Syndrome (p. 310) and Osteonecrosis (above).
312 5.3.1 HIV infection

Ziagen® (ViiV) Tablets, yellow, f/c, scored, abacavir (as sulphate) 300 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £208.95. Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

Oral solution, sugar-free, banana and strawberry flavoured, abacavir (as sulphate) 20 mg/mL, net price 240-mL = £55.72. Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

Excipients include propylene glycol

With lamivudine

For cautions, contra-indications and side-effects see under individual drugs

Kivexa® (ViiV) Tablets, orange, f/c, abacavir (as sulphate) 600 mg, lamivudine 300 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £352.25. Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

Dose

HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

• By mouth

Child 12–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg: 1 tablet once daily

With lamivudine and zidovudine

Note use only if child is stabilised (for 6–8 weeks) on the individual components in the same proportions. For cautions, contra-indications and side-effects see under individual drugs

Trizivir® (ViiV) Tablets, blue-green, f/c, abacavir (as sulphate) 300 mg, lamivudine 150 mg, zidovudine 300 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £509.06. Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

Dose

HIV infection

• By mouth

Child 12–18 years and body-weight over 40 kg: 1 tablet once daily

Child body-weight over 30 kg: 1 tablet twice daily

DIDANOSINE (ddI, DDI)

Cautions see notes above; also history of pancreatitis (preferably avoid, otherwise extreme caution, see also below); peripheral neuropathy or hyperuricaemia (see under Side-effects); ophthalmological examination (including visual acuity, colour vision, and dilated fundus examination) recommended annually or if visual changes occur; interactions: Appendix 1 (didanosine)

Pancreatitis If symptoms of pancreatitis develop or if serum lipase is raised and pancreatitis is confirmed, discontinue treatment. Whenever possible avoid concomitant treatment with other drugs known to cause pancreatic toxicity (e.g. intravenous pentamidine isethionate), monitor closely if concomitant therapy unavoidable. Since significant elevations of triglycerides cause pancreatitis monitor closely if triglycerides elevated

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding see p. 310

Side-effects see notes above; also pancreatitis (less common in children, see also under Cautions), liver failure, anaphylactic reactions, peripheral neuropathy (switch to another antiretroviral if peripheral neuropathy develops), diabetes mellitus, hypoglycaemia, acute renal failure, rhabdomyolysis, dry eyes, retinal and optic nerve changes, dry mouth, parotid gland enlargement, sialadenitis, alopecia, hyperuricaemia (suspend if raised significantly)

Licensed use tablets not licensed for use in children under 3 months; EC capsules not licensed for use in children under 6 years

Indication and dose

HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

• By mouth

Neonate 14–28 days 50–100 mg/m² twice daily

Child 1–8 months 50–100 mg/m² twice daily

Child 8 months–18 years 180–240 mg/m² once daily; usual dose 200 mg/m² once daily; max. 400 mg daily

Videx® (Bristol-Myers Squibb) Tablets, with calcium and magnesium antacids, didanosine 25 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £25.06. Label: 23, counselling, administration, see below

Excipients include aspartame equivalent to phenylalanine 36.5 mg per tablet (section 9.4.1)

Note Antacids in formulation may affect absorption of other drugs—see interactions: Appendix 1 (antacids)

Administration to ensure sufficient antacid, each dose to be taken as at least 2 tablets (child under 1 year 1 tablet) chewed thoroughly, crushed or dispersed in water, clear apple juice may be added for flavouring; tablets to be taken 2 hours after lopinavir with ritonavir capsules and oral solution or atazanavir with ritonavir

Videx® EC capsules, enclosing e/c granules, didanosine 125 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £48.18; 200 mg, 30-cap pack = £77.09; 250 mg, 30-cap pack = £96.37; 400 mg, 30-cap pack = £154.19. Label: 25, counselling, administration, see below

Administration capsules should be swallowed whole and taken at least 2 hours before or 2 hours after food

DIDANOSINE (ddI, DDI)

Cautions see notes above; also history of pancreatitis (preferably avoid, otherwise extreme caution, see also below); peripheral neuropathy or hyperuricaemia (see under Side-effects); ophthalmological examination (including visual acuity, colour vision, and dilated fundus examination) recommended annually or if visual changes occur; interactions: Appendix 1 (didanosine)

Pancreatitis If symptoms of pancreatitis develop or if serum lipase is raised and pancreatitis is confirmed, discontinue treatment. Whenever possible avoid concomitant treatment with other drugs known to cause pancreatic toxicity (e.g. intravenous pentamidine isethionate), monitor closely if concomitant therapy unavoidable. Since significant elevations of triglycerides cause pancreatitis monitor closely if triglycerides elevated

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if essential—no information available

Breast-feeding see p. 310

Side-effects see notes above; also abnormal dreams, pruritus, and hyperpigmentation

Indication and dose

See preparations

EMTRICITABINE (FTC)

Cautions see notes above; also on discontinuation, monitor patients with hepatitis B (risk of exacerbation of hepatitis); interactions: Appendix 1 (emtricitabine)

Hepatic impairment see notes above and Cautions above

Renal impairment reduce dose or increase dosage interval if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if essential—no information available

Breast-feeding see p. 310

Side-effects see notes above; also abnormal dreams, pruritus, and hyperpigmentation

Indication and dose

See preparations
**Emtriva** (Gilead) 
Capsules, white/blue, emtricitabine 200 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £163.50

**Dose**
HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs
- By mouth
  - Child body-weight over 33 kg 200 mg once daily

**Oral solution**, orange, emtricitabine 10 mg/mL, net price 170-mL pack (candy-flavoured) = £46.50

**Electrolytes Na+ 460 micromol/mL**

**Dose**
HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs
- By mouth
  - Child 4 months–18 years Body-weight under 33 kg 6 mg/kg once daily
  - Body-weight over 33 kg 240 mg once daily
  - Child 12–18 years 150 mg twice daily or 300 mg once daily

**Note** 240 mg oral solution = 200 mg capsule; where appropriate the capsule may be used instead of the oral solution

**With tenofovir**
See under Tenofovir

**With efavirenz and tenofovir**
See under Tenofovir

---

**LAMIVUDINE** (3TC)

**Cautions** see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (lamivudine)

**Chronic hepatitis B** Recurrent hepatitis in patients with chronic hepatitis B may occur on discontinuation of lamivudine. When treating chronic hepatitis B with lamivudine, monitor liver function tests every 3 months, and viral and serological markers of hepatitis B every 3–6 months, more frequently in patients with advanced liver disease or following transplantation (monitoring to continue for at least 1 year after discontinuation)

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above and Cautions above

**Renal impairment** reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

**Pregnancy** see p. 310

**Breast-feeding** can be used with caution in women infected with chronic hepatitis B alone, providing adequate measures are taken to prevent hepatitis B infection in infants; for women infected with HIV, see p. 310

**Side-effects** see notes above; also peripheral neuropathy, muscle disorders including rhabdomyolysis, nasal symptoms, alopecia

**Licensed use** Emtriva® not licensed for use in children under 3 months; Zeffix® not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**
See preparations

**Emtriva®** (Gilead) 
Tablets, f/c, lamivudine 150 mg (scored, white), net price 60-tab pack = £143.32; 300 mg (grey), 30-tab pack = £157.51

**Zeffix®** (ViiV) 
Tablets, brown, f/c, lamivudine 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £78.09

**Dose**
HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs
- By mouth
  - Child 2–12 years 3 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) once daily
  - Child 12–18 years 100 mg once daily

**Note** Children receiving lamivudine for concomitant HIV infection should continue to receive lamivudine in a dose appropriate for HIV infection

**With abacavir**
See under Abacavir

**With zidovudine**
See under Zidovudine

**With abacavir and zidovudine**
See under Abacavir

---

**STAVUDINE** (d4T)

**Cautions** see notes above; also history of peripheral neuropathy, excessive alcohol intake, concomitant use of isoniazid—risk of peripheral neuropathy (see under Side-effects); history of pancreatitis or concomitant use with other drugs associated with pancreatitis; interactions: Appendix 1 (stavudine)

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** risk of peripheral neuropathy; reduce dose to 50% if estimated glomerular filtration rate 25–50 mL/minute/1.73 m²; reduce dose to 25% if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 25 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310
Side-effects see notes above; also peripheral neuropathy (switch to another antiretroviral if peripheral neuropathy develops), abnormal dreams, cognitive dysfunction, drowsiness, depression, pruritus; less commonly anxiety, gynaecomastia

Licensed use capsules not licensed for use in children under 3 months

Indication and dose

HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs when no suitable alternative available and when prescribed for shortest period possible

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–18 years
    - Body-weight under 30 kg 1 mg/kg twice daily, preferably at least 1 hour before food
    - Body-weight 30–60 kg 30 mg twice daily, preferably at least 1 hour before food
    - Body-weight over 60 kg 40 mg twice daily, preferably at least 1 hour before food
  - Body-weight over 60 kg
    - Adult 40 mg twice daily, preferably at least 1 hour before food

Viread® (Gilead) Tablets, f/c, blue, tenofovir disoproxil (as fumarate) 245 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £255.00. Label: 21, counselling, administration

Counselling Children with swallowing difficulties may disperse tablet in half a glass of water, orange juice, or grape juice (but bitter taste)

With emtricitabine

For cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects see under individual drugs

Truvada® (Gilead) Tablets, blue, f/c, tenofovir disoproxil (as fumarate) 245 mg, emtricitabine 200 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £418.50. Label: 21, Counselling, administration

Children with swallowing difficulties may disperse tablet in half a glass of water, orange juice, or grape juice (but bitter taste)

With efavirenz and emtricitabine

For cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects see under individual drugs

Atripla® (Gilead) Tablets, pink, f/c, efavirenz 600 mg, emtricitabine 200 mg, tenofovir disoproxil (as fumarate) 245 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £526.90. Label: 23, 25

ZIDOVUDINE

(Azidothymidine, AZT)

Note The abbreviation AZT which is sometimes used for zidovudine has also been used for another drug

Cautions see notes above; also haematological toxicity particularly with high dose and advanced disease—monitor full blood count after 4 weeks of treatment, then every 3 months; vitamin B12 deficiency (increased risk of neutropenia); if anaemia or myelosuppression occur, reduce dose or interrupt treatment according to product literature, or consider other treatment; interactions: Appendix 1 (zidovudine)

Contra-Indications abnormally low neutrophil count or haemoglobin concentration (consult product literature); neonates with hyperbilirubinaemia requiring treatment other than phototherapy, or with raised transaminase (consult product literature); acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

Hepatic impairment see notes above; also accumulation may occur

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

Pregnancy limited information available; manufacturer advises use only if clearly indicated; see also p. 310

Breast-feeding see p. 310

Side-effects see notes above; also anaemia (may require transfusion), taste disturbance, chest pain, influenza-like symptoms, paraesthesia, neuropathy, convulsions, dizziness, drowsiness, anxiety, depression, loss of mental acuity, myopathy, gynaecomastia, urinary frequency, sweating, pruritus, pigmentation of nails, skin and oral mucosa
Indication and dose

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 180 mg/m² (max. 300 mg) twice daily
  - Body-weight 4–9 kg: 12 mg/kg twice daily
  - Body-weight 9–30 kg: 9 mg/kg twice daily
  - Body-weight over 30 kg: 250–300 mg twice daily
  - Body-weight 8–14 kg: 100 mg twice daily
  - Body-weight 14–21 kg: 100 mg in the morning and 200 mg in the evening
  - Body-weight 21–28 kg: 200 mg twice daily
  - Body-weight 28–30 kg: 200–250 mg twice daily

- **By intravenous infusion** over 1 hour in children temporarily unable to take zidovudine by mouth
  - Child 3 months–12 years: 60–80 mg/m² every 6 hours (approximating to 9–12 mg/kg twice daily by mouth) usually for not more than 2 weeks
  - Child 12–18 years: 0.8–1 mg/kg every 4 hours (approximating to 1.2–1.5 mg/kg every 4 hours by mouth) usually for not more than 2 weeks

Prevention of maternal-fetal HIV transmission seek specialist advice (combination therapy preferred)

Administration for intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 2 mg/mL or 4 mg/mL with Glucose 5% and give over 1 hour.

For administration by mouth, Combivir® tablets may be crushed and mixed with semi-solid food or liquid just before administration

Zidovudine (Non-proprietary)

- **Capsules**, zidovudine 100 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £50.17; 250 mg, 60-cap pack = £125.44
- **Retrovir® (ViiV)**
  - **Capsules**, zidovudine 100 mg (white/blue band), net price 100-cap pack = £104.54; 250 mg (blue/white/dark blue band), 40-cap pack = £104.54
  - **Oral solution**, sugar-free, strawberry-flavoured, zidovudine 50 mg/5 mL, net price 200-mL pack with 10-mL oral syringe = £20.91
  - **Injection**, zidovudine 10 mg/mL. For dilution and use as an intravenous infusion. Net price 20-mL vial = £10.50

With lamivudine For cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects see under individual drugs

Combivir® (ViiV)

- **Tablets**, f/c, zidovudine 300 mg, lamivudine 150 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £300.12

With abacavir and lamivudine

See under Abacavir

**Protease inhibitors**

**Cautions** Protease inhibitors should be used with caution in diabetes (see also Lipodystrophy Syndrome, p. 310). Caution is also needed in children with haemophilia who may be at increased risk of bleeding.

**Contra-indications** Protease inhibitors should not be given to patients with acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2).

**Hepatic impairment** Protease inhibitors should be used with caution in children with chronic hepatitis B or C (increased risk of hepatic side-effects).

**Pregnancy** See p. 310

**Breast-feeding** See p. 310

**Side-effects** Side-effects of the protease inhibitors include gastro-intestinal disturbances (including diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, flatulence), anorexia, hepatic dysfunction, pancreatitis; blood disorders including anaemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia; sleep disturbances, fatigue, headache, dizziness, paraesthesia, myalgia, myositis, rhabdomyolysis; taste disturbances; rash, pruritus, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, hypersensitivity reactions including anaphylaxis; see also Lipodystrophy Syndrome (p. 310) and Osteonecrosis (p. 311).

**ATAZANAVIR**

**Cautions** see notes above; concomitant use with drugs that prolong PR interval; cardiac conduction disorders; predisposition to QT interval prolongation (including electrolyte disturbances, concomitant use of drugs that prolong QT interval); interactions: Appendix 1 (atazanavir)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also use with caution in mild impairment; avoid in moderate to severe impairment

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; theoretical risk of hyperbilirubinaemia in neonate if used at term

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** see notes above; also AV block; less commonly mouth ulcers, dry mouth, hypertension, syncope, chest pain, dyspnoea, peripheral neuropathy; abnormal dreams, amnesia, disorientation, depression, anxiety, weight changes, increased appetite, gynaecomastia, nephrolithiasis, urinaiy frequency, haematuria, proteinuria, arthralgia, and alopecia; rarely hepatosplenomegaly, oedema, palpitation, and abnormal gait; also reported cholelithiasis, cholecystitis, and torsade de pointes

**BNFC 2011–2012**

5.3.1 HIV infection 315


**Indication and dose**

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

- **By mouth**
  - With low-dose ritonavir

  - **Child 6–18 years**
    - **Body-weight 15–20 kg** 150 mg once daily
    - **Body-weight 20–40 kg** 200 mg once daily
    - **Body-weight over 40 kg** 300 mg once daily

  - **Body-weight 25–39 kg** 18 mg/kg (max. 700 mg) twice daily

  - **Body-weight over 39 kg** 700 mg twice daily

**Note** 700 mg fosamprenavir is equivalent to approx. 600 mg amprenavir.

**FOSAMPRENAVIR**

**Cautions** see notes above; also haematemesis, breast-feeding see p. 310

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** see notes above; also reported, rash including rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome (see also rash above)

**Indication and dose**

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

- **By mouth**
  - With low-dose ritonavir

  - **Child 6–18 years**
    - **Body-weight 20–30 kg** 375 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight 30–40 kg** 450 mg twice daily
    - **Body-weight over 40 kg** 600 mg twice daily

**Telzir** (ViiV) Tablets, f/c, pink, fosamprenavir (as calcium) 700 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £258.97

**Oral suspension**, fosamprenavir (as calcium) 50 mg/mL, net price 225-mL pack (grape-bubblegum-and peppermint-flavoured) (with 10-mL oral syringe) = £89.06. Counselling, administration Excipients include propylene glycol

**Administration** In children, oral suspension should be taken with food

**Lopinavir with ritonavir**

**Cautions** see notes above; concomitant use with drugs that prolong QT or PR interval; cardiac conduction disorders, structural heart disease; pancreatitis (see below); interactions: Appendix 1 (lopinavir, ritonavir)

**Pancreatitis** Signs and symptoms suggestive of pancreatitis (including raised serum lipase) should be evaluated—discontinue if pancreatitis diagnosed

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also avoid oral solution high propylene glycol content; manufacturer advises use tablets only if potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in animal studies)

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**317 5.3.1 HIV infection**

**Side-effects** see notes and Cautions above; also electrolyte disturbances; less commonly dysphagia, appetite changes, weight changes, cholecystitis, hypotension, myocardial infarction, palpitation, thrombophlebitis, vasculitis, chest pain, oedema, dyspnoea, cough, agitation, anxiety, amnesia, ataxia, hypertonia, confusion, depression, abnormal dreams, extrapyramidal effects, neuropathy, influenza-like syndrome, Cushing’s syndrome, hypothyroidism, menorrhagia, amenorrhoea, sexual dysfunction, breast enlargement, dehydration, nephritis, hypercalciumia, lactic acidosis, arthralgia, hyperuricaemia, abnormal vision, otitis media, tinnitus, dry mouth, salivaditenitis, mouth ulceration, periodontitis, acne, alopecia, dry skin, sweating, skin discoloration, nail disorders; rarely prolonged PR interval

**Indication and dose**

**See preparations**

**Kalera® (Abbott)**

| Tablets, pale yellow, f/c, lopinavir 100 mg, ritonavir 25 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £76.85. Label: 25 |

| HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs |
| By mouth |
| Child 2–18 years with body-weight under 40 kg |
| Body surface area 0.5–0.9 m² = 2 tablets twice daily |
| Body surface area 0.9–1.4 m² = 3 tablets twice daily |

| Tablets, yellow, f/c, lopinavir 200 mg, ritonavir 50 mg, net price 120-tab pack = £307.39. Label: 25 |

| HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs |
| By mouth |
| Child 2–18 years with body surface area greater than 1.4 m² or body-weight 40 kg and over 2 tablets twice daily |

**Oral solution** lopinavir 400 mg, ritonavir 100 mg/5 mL, net price 5 × 60-mL packs = £307.39. Label: 21

| Excipients include propylene glycol 153 mg/mL (see Excipients, p. 2), alcohol 42% |

| HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs |
| By mouth |
| Child 2–18 years 2.9 mL/m² (max. 5 mL) twice daily with food |

**Counselling** Oral solution tastes bitter

---

**NELFINAVIR**

**Cautions** see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (nelfinavir)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also manufacturer advises caution

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** see notes above; also reported, fever

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 3 years

---

**Indication and dose**

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

For dose, consult Guidelines (see notes above)

**Viracept® (Roche)**

| Tablets, blue, f/c, nelfinavir (as mesilate) 250 mg, net price 300-tab pack = £257.32. Label: 21 |

**RITONAVIR**

**Cautions** see notes above; concomitant use with drugs that prolong PR interval; cardiac conduction disorders, structural heart disease; pancreatitis (see below);

**interactions**: Appendix 1 (ritonavir)

**Pancreatitis** Signs and symptoms suggestive of pancreatitis (including raised serum lipase) should be evaluated—discontinue if pancreatitis diagnosed

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also avoid in decompensated liver disease; in severe impairment without decoumpensation, use ‘booster’ doses with caution (avoid treatment doses)

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** see notes and Cautions above; also diarrhoea (may impair absorption—close monitoring required), vasodilatation, cough, throat irritation, anxiety, perioral and peripheral paraesthesia, hyperaesthesia, fever, decreased blood-thyroxine concentration, electrolyte disturbances, raised uric acid, dry mouth, mouth ulcers, and sweating; less commonly increased prothrombin time and dehydration; syncope, postural hypotension, seizures, menorrhagia, and renal failure also reported

**Indication and dose**

**Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of atazanavir**

| By mouth |
| Child 6–18 years |
| Body-weight 15–20 kg 80–100 mg once daily |
| Body-weight over 20 kg 100 mg once daily |

**Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of darunavir**

| By mouth |
| Child 6–18 years |
| Body-weight 20–30 kg 50 mg twice daily |
| Body-weight 30–40 kg 60 mg twice daily |
| Body-weight over 40 kg 100 mg twice daily |

**Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of fosamprenavir**

| By mouth |
| Child 6–18 years |
| Body-weight 25–33 kg 3 mg/kg twice daily |
| Body-weight over 33 kg 100 mg twice daily |

**Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of saquinavir**

| By mouth |
| Child 16–18 years 100 mg twice daily |
5.3.1 HIV infection

**Norvir®** (Abbott)  
**Tablets**, f/c, ritonavir 100 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £19.44. Label: 21, 25  
**Oral solution**, sugar-free, ritonavir 400 mg/5 mL, net price 5 × 90-mL packs (with measuring cup) = £403.20. Label: 21, counselling, administration  
**Excipients** include alcohol, propylene glycol  
Counselling: Oral solution contains 43% alcohol; bitter taste can be masked by mixing with chocolate milk; do not mix with water, measuring cup must be dry  
Administration: Monitor ECG before start-  

**SAQUINAVIR**  
**Cautions** see notes above; monitor ECG before starting treatment and then on day 3 or 4 of treatment—discontinue if QT interval over 480 milliseconds, or QT interval more than 20 milliseconds above baseline, or if prolongation of PR interval; concomitant use of garlic (avoid garlic capsules—reduces plasma-saquinavir concentration); interactions: Appendix 1 (saquinavir)  
Counselling: Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of arrhythmia and advised to seek medical attention if symptoms such as palpitation or syncope develop  
**Contra-indications** see notes above; predisposition to cardiac arrhythmias (including congenital QT prolongation, bradycardia, history of symptomatic arrhythmias, heart failure with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction, electrolyte disturbances, concomitant use of drugs that prolong QT or PR interval); concomitant use of drugs that increase plasma-saquinavir concentration (avoid unless no alternative treatment available)  
**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also manufacturer advises caution in moderate impairment; avoid in decompensated liver disease  
**Renal impairment** use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²  
**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk  
**Breast-feeding** see p. 310  
**Side-effects** see notes above; also dyspnoea, ana-  

**TIPRANAVIR**  
**Cautions** see notes above; also patients at risk of increased bleeding from trauma, surgery, or other pathological conditions; concomitant use of drugs that increase risk of bleeding; interactions: Appendix 1 (tipranavir)  
**Hepatotoxicity** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported; monitor liver function before treatment then every 2 weeks for 1 month, then every 3 months. Discontinue if signs or symptoms of hepatitis develop or if liver-function abnormality develops (consult product literature)  
**Contra-indications** see notes above  
**Hepatic impairment** see notes above; also manufacturer advises caution in mild impairment; avoid in moderate or severe impairment—no information available  
**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in animal studies  
**Breast-feeding** see p. 310  
**Side-effects** see notes above; also dyspnoea, ana-  

**HIV infection in combination with other anti-retroviral drugs in children not previously treated with antiretroviral therapy**  
By mouth  
**Child 2–12 years** 150 mg/m² (max. 200 mg) twice daily  
**Child 12–18 years** 200 mg twice daily  

**HIV infection in combination with other anti-retroviral drugs in children not previously treated with antiretroviral therapy**  
By mouth  
**Child 16–18 years** 500 mg twice daily for 7 days then 1 g twice daily  

**Invirase®** (Roche)  
**Capsules**, brown/green, saquinavir (as mesilate) 200 mg, net price 270-cap pack = £226.14. Label: 21  
**Tablets**, orange, f/c, saquinavir (as mesilate) 500 mg, net price 120-tab pack = £251.26. Label: 21  

**Aptivus®** (Boehringer Ingelheim)  
**Capsules**, pink, tipranavir 250 mg, net price 120-cap pack = £441.00. Label: 5, 21  
**Excipients** include ethanol 100 mg per capsule  

**Dose**  
**With low-dose ritonavir**  
By mouth  
**Child 12–18 years** 500 mg twice daily  

**Dose**  
**With low-dose ritonavir**  
By mouth  
**Child 2–12 years** 375 mg/m² (max. 500 mg) twice daily  

**Note** The bioavailability of Aptivus® oral solution is higher than that of the capsules; the oral solution is not interchangeable with the capsules on a milligram-for-milligram basis  
Counselling: Children and carers should be told to observe the oral solution for crystallisation; the bottle should be replaced if more than a thin layer of crystals form (doses should continue to be taken at the normal time until the bottle is replaced)
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors

**EFAVIRENZ**

**Cautions** history of mental illness or seizures; monitor liver function if receiving other hepatotoxic drugs; interactions: Appendix 1 (efavirenz)

**Rash** Rash, usually in the first 2 weeks, is the most common side-effect; discontinue if severe rash with blistering, desquamation, mucosal involvement or fever; if rash mild or moderate, may continue without interruption—usually resolves within 1 month

**Psychiatric disorders** Children or their carers should be advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as severe depression, psychosis or suicidal ideation occur

**Contra-indications** acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment** in mild to moderate liver disease, monitor for dose-related side-effects (e.g. CNS effects) and liver function; avoid in severe impairment; greater risk of hepatic side-effects in chronic hepatitis B or C

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution in severe renal failure—no information available

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid (effective)

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** rash including Stevens-Johnson syndrome (see Rash above); abdominal pain, diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting; anxiety, depression, sleep disturbances, abnormal dreams, dizziness, headache, fatigue, impaired concentration (administration at bedtime especially in first 2–4 weeks reduces CNS effects); pruritus; less commonly pancreatitis, hepatitis, flushing, psychosis, mania, suicidal ideation, amnesia, ataxia, tremor, convulsions, gynaecomasia, blurred vision, tinnitus; rarely hepatic failure, photosensitivity; also reported raised serum cholesterol (see Lipodystrophy syndrome, p. 310); see also Osteonecrosis, p. 311

**Indication and dose**

See preparations

**Sustiva** (Bristol-Myers Squibb) 5

Capsules, efavirenz 50 mg (yellow/white), net price 30-cap pack = £16.73; 100 mg (white), 30-cap pack = £33.41; 200 mg (yellow), 90-cap pack = £200.27. Label: 23

**Dose**

- HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 3–18 years
      - Body-weight 13–15 kg 200 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 15–20 kg 250 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 20–25 kg 300 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 25–32.5 kg 350 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 32.5–60 kg 400 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 40 kg and over 600 mg once daily

**Note** The bioavailability of Sustiva® oral solution is lower than that of the capsules and tablets; the oral solution is not interchangeable with either capsules or tablets on a milligram-for-milligram basis

**With emtricitabine and tenofovir**

See under Tenofovir

**ETRAVIRINE**

**Cautions** interactions: Appendix 1 (etravirine)

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Rash, usually in the second week, is the most common side-effect and appears more frequently in females. Life-threatening hypersensitivity reactions reported usually during week 3–6 of treatment and characterised by rash, eosinophilia, and systemic symptoms (including fever, general malaise, myalgia, arthralgia, blurring of vision, tinnitus; rarely hepatic failure, photosensitivity; also reported raised serum cholesterol (see Lipodystrophy syndrome, p. 310); see also Osteonecrosis, p. 311

**Indication and dose**

See preparations

**Etravirine** (Bristol-Myers Squibb) 22

Tablets, f/c, yellow, efavirenz 600 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £200.27. Label: 23

**Dose**

- HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs
  - **By mouth**
    - Child body-weight over 40 kg 600 mg once daily

**Oral solution**, sugar-free, strawberry and mint flavour, efavirenz 30 mg/mL, net price 180-mL pack = £53.84

**Dose**

- HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 3–18 years
      - Body-weight 13–15 kg 360 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 15–20 kg 390 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 20–25 kg 450 mg once daily
      - Body-weight 25–32.5 kg 510 mg once daily
      - Child 3–18 years
        - Body-weight 13–15 kg 270 mg once daily
        - Body-weight 15–20 kg 300 mg once daily
        - Body-weight 20–25 kg 360 mg once daily
        - Body-weight 25–32.5 kg 450 mg once daily
        - Body-weight 32.5–40 kg 510 mg once daily
        - Body-weight 40 kg and over 720 mg once daily

**Note** The bioavailability of Sustiva® oral solution is lower than that of the capsules and tablets; the oral solution is not interchangeable with either capsules or tablets on a milligram-for-milligram basis

**With emtricitabine and tenofovir**

See under Tenofovir
Infections

5 Infections

- Rash including Stevens-Johnson
- Breast-feeding: see p. 310

Hepatic impairment

Manufacturer advises caution in

Contra-indications

- Acute porphyria (but see section
  on administration for children with swallowing difficulties)
- Avoid in severe impairment;
- No information available; chronic hepatitis B or C

Side-effects

Tablets
- Etravirine 100 mg, net price 120-tab pack = £301.27. Label: 21
  - Counselling, rash, and hypersensitivity reactions
- Dispense in original container (contains desiccant)

Note

Licensed use

- Not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

In combination with other antiretroviral drugs (including a boosted protease inhibitor) for HIV infection resistant to other non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors and protease inhibitors

For dose, consult Guidelines (see notes above)

Administration

- For children with swallowing difficulties, tablets may be dispersed in a glass of water just before administration

Intolerance

- Tablets, etravirine 100 mg, net price 120-tab pack = £301.27. Label: 21
  - Counselling, rash, and hypersensitivity reactions

Note

Licensed use

- Tablets, not licensed for use in children weighing less than 50 kg or with body surface area less than 1.25 m²

Indication and dose

HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

- By mouth

| Child 1 month–18 years | 150–200 mg/m² (max. 200 mg) once daily for first 14 days, then (if no rash present) 150–200 mg/m² (max. 200 mg) twice daily or 300–400 mg/m² (max. 400 mg) once daily |

Note

- Initial dose titration should not exceed 28 days. If rash not resolved within 28 days, alternative treatment should be sought. If treatment interrupted for more than 7 days, restart using the lower dose for the first 14 days as for new treatment

Viramune® (Boehringer Ingelheim) 50W

- Tablets, nevirapine 200 mg, net price 14-tab pack = £39.67, 60-tab pack = £170.00. Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

Suspension, nevirapine 50 mg/5 mL, net price 240-mL pack = £50.40. Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

Other antiretrovirals

- ENFUVIRIDE

Cautions

- Chronic hepatitis B or C, high CD4 cell count, and females (all at greater risk of hepatic side-effects)

Interactions

- Appendix 1 (nevirapine)

Hepatic disease

Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity including fatal fulminant hepatitis reported usually in first 6 weeks; dose monitoring required during first 18 weeks; monitor liver function before treatment then every 2 weeks for 2 months then after 1 month and then regularly. Discontinue permanently if abnormalities in liver function tests accompanied by hypersensitivity reaction (rash, fever, arthralgia, myalgia, lymphadenopathy, hepatitis, renal impairment, eosinophilia, granulocytopenia); suspend if severe abnormalities in liver function tests but no hypersensitivity reaction—discontinue permanently if significant liver function abnormalities recur; monitor patient closely if mild to moderate abnormalities in liver function tests with no hypersensitivity reaction

Rash

- Rash, usually in first 6 weeks, is most common side-effect; incidence reduced if introduced at low dose and dose increased gradually; monitor closely for skin reactions during first 18 weeks; discontinue permanently if severe rash or if rash accompanied by blistering, oral lesions, conjunctivitis, facial oedema, general malaise or hypersensitivity reactions; if rash mild or moderate may continue without interruption but dose should not be increased until rash resolves

Counselling

- Children and carers should be told how to recognise hypersensitivity reactions and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if severe skin reaction, hypersensitivity reactions or symptoms of hepatitis develop

Contra-indications

- Acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2); post-exposure prophylaxis

Hepatic impairment

- Manufacture advises caution in moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment; see also Hepatic Disease, above

Pregnancy

- Although manufacturer advises caution, may be appropriate to use if clearly indicated; see also p. 310

Breast-feeding

- See p. 310

Side-effects

- Rash including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and rarely, toxic epidermal necrolysis (see also Cautions above); nausea, hepatitis (see also Hepatic Disease above); headache; less commonly vomiting, abdominal pain, fatigue, fever, and myalgia; rarely diarrhoea, angioedema, anaphylaxis, hypersensitivity reactions (may involve hepatic reactions and rash, see Hepatic Disease above), arthralgia, anaemia, and granulocytopenia; very rarely neuro- psychiatric reactions; see also Osteonecrosis, p. 311

Licensed use

- Tablets, not licensed for use in children weighing less than 50 kg or with body surface area less than 1.25 m²

Indication and dose

HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

- By mouth

| Neonate 14–28 days | 150–200 mg/m² once daily for first 14 days, then (if no rash present) 150–200 mg/m² twice daily |

Note

- Initial dose titration should not exceed 28 days. If rash not resolved within 28 days, alternative treatment should be sought. If treatment interrupted for more than 7 days, restart using the lower dose for the first 14 days as for new treatment
5.3.2 Herpesvirus infections

321

**Indication and dose**

HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs for resistant infection or for children intolerant to other antiretroviral regimens

- By subcutaneous injection
  - Child 6–16 years 2 mg/kg (max. 90 mg) twice daily
  - Child 16–18 years 90 mg twice daily

**Administration** for subcutaneous injection, reconstitute with 1.1 mL Water for Injections and allow to stand (for up to 45 minutes) to dissolve; do not shake or invert vial

**Fuzeon**® (Roche) SW

Injection, powder for reconstitution, enfuvirtide 108 mg (= enfuvirtide 90 mg/mL when reconstituted with 1.1 mL Water for Injections), net price 108-mg vial = £18.93 (with solvent, syringe, and alcohol swabs). Counselling, hypersensitivity reactions

**MARAVIROC**

Cautions cardiovascular disease; chronic hepatitis B or C; interactions: Appendix 1 (maraviroc)

**Hepatic Impairment** use with caution

**Renal impairment** if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 80 mL/minute/1.73 m², consult product literature

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, constipation, diarrhoea; cough; dizziness, paraesthesia, asthenia, sleep disturbances, headache, weight loss; muscle spasms, back pain; taste disturbances; rash, pruritus; less commonly pancreatitis, hepatic cirrhosis, rectal bleeding, myocardial infarction, myocardial ischaemia, brachycardia, seizures, hallucinations, loss of consciousness, polyneuropathy, pancytopenia, neutropenia, lymphadenopathy, renal failure, polyuria, and myositis; see also Osteonecrosis, p. 311

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

CCRS–tropic HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in children previously treated with antiretrovirals

For dose, consult Guidelines (see notes above)

**Celsentri**® (MIV) ▼ THB

Tablets, blue, f/c, maraviroc 150 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £519.14

**RALTEGRAVIR**

Cautions risk factors for myopathy or rhabdomyolysis; interactions: Appendix 1 (raltegravir)

**Hepatic impairment** chronic hepatitis B or C (greater risk of hepatic side-effects); use with caution in severe impairment—no information available

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** see p. 310

**Side-effects** diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, flatulence, hypertriglyceridaemia, dizziness, headache, insomnia, abnormal dreams, asthenia, rash

Herpesvirus infections

5.3.2.1 Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infection

5.3.2.2 Cytomegalovirus infection

5.3.2.1 Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infection

The two most important herpesvirus pathogens are herpes simplex virus (herpesvirus hominis) and varicella–zoster virus.

**Herpes simplex infections** Herpes infection of the mouth and lips and in the eye is generally associated with herpes simplex virus serotype 1 (HSV-1); other areas of the skin may also be infected, especially in immunodeficiency. Genital infection is most often associated with HSV-2 and also HSV-1. Treatment of herpes simplex infection should start as early as possible and usually within 5 days of the appearance of the infection.

In individuals with good immune function, mild infection of the eye (ocular herpes, section 11.3.3) and of the lips (herpes labialis or cold sores, section 13.10.3) is usually within 5 days of the appearance of the infection.

In individuals with good immune function, mild infection of the eye (ocular herpes, section 11.3.3) and of the lips (herpes labialis or cold sores, section 13.10.3) is usually within 5 days of the appearance of the infection.

In individuals with good immune function, mild infection of the eye (ocular herpes, section 11.3.3) and of the lips (herpes labialis or cold sores, section 13.10.3) is usually within 5 days of the appearance of the infection.
Specialist advice should be sought for systemic treatment of herpes simplex infection in pregnancy.

**Varicella–zoster infections** Regardless of immune function and the use of any immunoglobulins, neonates with chickenpox should be treated with a parenteral antiviral to reduce the risk of severe disease. Oral therapy is not recommended as absorption is variable. Chickenpox in otherwise healthy children between 1 month and 12 years is usually mild and antiviral treatment is not usually required. Chickenpox is more severe in adolescents than in children; antiviral treatment started within 24 hours of the onset of rash may reduce the duration and severity of symptoms in otherwise healthy adolescents. Antiviral treatment is generally recommended in immunocompromised patients and those at special risk (e.g. because of severe cardiovascular or respiratory disease or chronic skin disorder); in such cases, an antiviral is given for 10 days with at least 7 days of parenteral treatment.

In pregnancy severe chickenpox may cause complications, especially varicella pneumonia. Specialist advice should be sought for the treatment of chickenpox during pregnancy.

Neonates and children who have been exposed to chickenpox and are at special risk of complications may require prophylaxis with varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (see under Disease-specific Immunoglobulins, section 14.5.2). Prophylactic intravenous aciclovir should be considered for neonates whose mothers develop chickenpox 4 days before to 2 days after delivery.

In herpes zoster (shingles) systemic antiviral treatment can reduce the severity and duration of pain, reduce complications, and reduce viral shedding. Treatment with the antiviral should be started within 72 hours of the onset of rash and is usually continued for 7–10 days. Immunocompromised patients at high risk of disseminated or severe infection should be treated with a parenteral antiviral drug. Chronic pain which persists after the rash has healed (postherpetic neuralgia) requires specific management (section 4.7.3).

**Choice** Aciclovir is active against herpesviruses but does not eradicate them. Uses of aciclovir include systemic treatment of varicella–zoster and the systemic and topical treatment of herpes simplex infections of the skin (section 13.10.3) and mucous membranes (section 7.2.2). It is used by mouth for severe herpetic stomatitis (see also p. 545). Aciclovir eye ointment (section 11.3.3) is used for herpes simplex infections of the eye; it is combined with systemic treatment for ophthalmic zoster.

Famciclovir, a prodrug of penciclovir, is similar to aciclovir and is licensed in adults for use in herpes zoster and genital herpes; there is limited information available on use in children. Penciclovir itself is used as a cream for herpes simplex labialis (section 13.10.3).

Valaciclovir is an ester of aciclovir, licensed in adults for herpes zoster and herpes simplex infections of the skin and mucous membranes (including genital herpes); it is also licensed in children over 12 years for preventing cytomegalovirus disease following solid organ transplantation. Valaciclovir may be used for the treatment of mild herpes zoster in immunocompromised children over 12 years; treatment should be initiated under specialist supervision.

**Indication and dose**

**Herpes simplex treatment**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 100 mg 5 times daily, usually for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete); dose doubled if immunocompromised or if absorption impaired
  - **Child 2–18 years** 200 mg 5 times daily, usually for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete); dose doubled if immunocompromised or if absorption impaired

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 20 mg/kg every 8 hours for 14 days (21 days if CNS involvement)
  - **Child 1–3 months** 20 mg/kg every 8 hours for 14 days (21 days if CNS involvement)
  - **Child 3 months–12 years** 250 mg/m² every 8 hours usually for 5 days, doubled to 500 mg/m² every 8 hours if CNS involvement (given for up to 21 days) or if immunocompromised
Herpesvirus eye infections

Herpesvirus skin infections

By mouth

Immunoglobulin not indicated

Attenuation of chickenpox if varicella–zoster immunoglobulin not indicated

By mouth

Child 1 month–2 years 10–200 mg 4 times daily for 5 days, doubled to 10 mg/kg every 8 hours if CNS involvement (given for up to 21 days) or if immunocompromised

Note To avoid excessive dose in obese patients par- enteral dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Chickenpox and herpes zoster infection

By mouth

Child 1 month–2 years 200 mg 4 times daily for 5 days
Child 2–6 years 400 mg 4 times daily for 5 days
Child 6–12 years 800 mg 4 times daily for 5 days
Child 12–18 years 800 mg 5 times daily for 7 days

By intravenous infusion

Neonate 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours for at least 7 days
Child 1–3 months 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours for at least 7 days
Child 3 months–12 years 250 mg/m² every 8 hours usually for 5 days, dose doubled if immunocompromised
Child 12–18 years 5 mg/kg every 8 hours usually for 5 days, dose doubled if immunocompromised

Note To avoid excessive dose in obese patients par- enteral dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Prophylaxis of chickenpox after delivery (see notes above)

By intravenous infusion

Neonate 10 mg/kg every 8 hours; continued until serological tests confirm absence of virus

Attenuation of chickenpox if varicella–zoster immunoglobulin not indicated

By mouth

Child 1 month–18 years 10 mg/kg 4 times daily for 7 days starting 1 week after exposure

Herpesvirus skin infections section 13.10.3

Herpesvirus eye infections section 11.3.3

Administration for intravenous infusion, reconstitute to 25 mg/mL with Water for Injections or Sodium Chloride 0.9% then dilute to concentration of 5 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose and give over 1 hour; alternatively, may be administered in a concentration of 25 mg/mL using a suitable infusion pump and central venous access and given over 1 hour

Aciclovir (Non-proprietary) £4.45; 400 mg, 56-tab pack = £8.10; 800 mg, 35-tab pack = £10.21. Label: 9

Brands include Virovir®

Dental prescribing on NHS Aciclovir Tablets 200 mg or 800 mg may be prescribed

Dispersible tablets, aciclovir 200 mg, net price 25-tab pack = £2.05; 400 mg, 56-tab pack = £7.24; 800 mg, 35-tab pack = £7.02. Label: 9

Suspension, aciclovir 200 mg/5 mL, net price 125 mL = £38.22; 400 mg/5 mL, 100 mL = £41.55. Label: 9

Dental prescribing on NHS Aciclovir Oral Suspension 200 mg/5 mL may be prescribed

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, aciclovir (as sodium salt), net price 250-mg vial = £9.13; 500-mg vial = £20.22

Electrolytes Na⁺ 1.1 mmol/250-mg vial

Intravenous infusion, aciclovir (as sodium salt), 25 mg/mL, net price 10-mL (250-mg) vial = £10.37; 20-mL (500-mg) vial = £19.21; 40-mL (1-g) vial = £40.44

Electrolytes Na⁺ 1.16 mmol/250-mg vial

Zovirax® (GSK)

Tablets, all dispersible, t/c, aciclovir 200 mg, net price 25-tab pack = £17.71; 800 mg (scored, Shingles Treatment Pack), 35-tab pack = £65.80. Label: 9

Suspension, both off-white, sugar-free, aciclovir 200 mg/5 mL (banana-flavoured), net price 125 mL = £29.53; 400 mg/5 mL (Double Strength Suspension, orange-flavoured). 100 mL = £33.01. Label: 9

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, aciclovir (as sodium salt), net price 250-mg vial = £9.96; 500-mg vial = £17.72

Electrolytes Na⁺ 1.1 mmol/250-mg vial

VALACICLOVIR

Note Valaciclovir is a pro-drug of aciclovir

Cautions see under Aciclovir

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises caution with high doses used for preventing cytomegalovirus disease—no information available in children

Renal impairment maintain adequate hydration; for herpes zoster, 1 g every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m² (1 g every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; 500 mg every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²); for treatment of herpes simplex, 500 mg (1 g in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children) every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; for treatment of herpes labialis, if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m², initially 1 g, then 1 g 12 hours after initial dose (if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m², initially 500 mg, then 500 mg 12 hours after initial
5 Infections

Valtrex (Non-proprietary) Valaciclovir (GSK)

Indication and dose

Not licensed for treatment of herpes
Licensed use

Side-effects

Breast-feeding see under Aciclovir
Side-effects see under Aciclovir but neurological reactions more frequent with high doses
Licensed use not licensed for treatment of herpes zoster in children; not licensed for treatment or suppression of herpes simplex infection in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children

Indication and dose

Herpes zoster in immunocompromised

- By mouth
  
  Child 12–18 years 1 g 3 times daily for at least 7 days (continue for 2 days after crusting of lesions)

Treatment of herpes simplex

- By mouth
  
  Child 12–18 years first episode, 500 mg twice daily for 5 days, longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete (1 g twice daily for 10 days in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children); recurrent infection, 500 mg twice daily for 3–5 days (1 g twice daily for 5–10 days in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children)

Suppression of herpes simplex

- By mouth
  
  Child 12–18 years 500 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses (in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children, 500 mg twice daily); therapy interrupted every 6–12 months to reassess recurrence frequency—consider restarting after two or more recurrences

Prevention of cytomegalovirus infection

- By mouth
  
  Child 12–18 years 2 g 4 times daily usually for 90 days

Valaciclovir (Non-proprietary) Tablets, valaciclovir 500 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £19.43, 42 tab-pack = £79.04. Label: 9

Valtrex (GSK) Tablets, f/c, valaciclovir (as hydrochloride) 250 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £123.28, 500 mg, 10-tab pack = £20.59, 42-tab pack = £86.30. Label: 9

5.3.2.2 Cytomegalovirus infection

Recommendations for the optimum maintenance therapy of cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections and the duration of treatment are subject to rapid change.

Ganciclovir is related to aciclovir but it is more active against cytomegalovirus; it is also much more toxic than aciclovir and should therefore be prescribed under specialist supervision and only when the potential benefit outweighs the risks. Ganciclovir is administered by intravenous infusion for the initial treatment of CMV infection. The use of ganciclovir may also be considered for symptomatic congenital CMV infection. Ganciclovir causes profound myelosuppression when given with zidovudine; the two should not normally be given together particularly during initial ganciclovir therapy. The likelihood of ganciclovir resistance increases in patients with a high viral load or in those who receive the drug over a long duration; cross-resistance to cidofovir is common.

Valaciclovir (section 5.3.2.1) is licensed for use in children over 12 years for prevention of cytomegalovirus disease following renal transplantation.

Foscarnet is also active against cytomegalovirus; it is toxic and can cause renal impairment.

Cidofovir is given in combination with probenecid for CMV retinitis in AIDS patients when ganciclovir and foscarnet are contra-indicated. Cidofovir is nephrotoxic. There is limited information on its use in children.

For local treatment of CMV retinitis, see section 11.3.3.

GANCICLOVIR

Cautions close monitoring of full blood count (severe deterioration may require correction and possibly treatment interruption); history of cytopenia; potential carcinogen and teratogen; radiotherapy; ensure adequate hydration during intravenous administration; vesicant—infuse into vein with adequate flow preferably using plastic cannula; possible risk of long-term carcinogenic or reproductive toxicity; interactions: Appendix 1 (ganciclovir)

Contra-indications hypersensitivity to valganciclovir, ganciclovir, aciclovir, or valaciclovir; abnormally low haemoglobin, neutrophil, or platelet counts (consult product literature)

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 70 mL/minute/1.73 m²; consult product literature

Pregnancy avoid—teratogenic risk; ensure effective contraception during treatment and barrier contraception for males during and for at least 90 days after treatment

Breast-feeding avoid—no information available

Side-effects diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, constipation, flatulence, dysphagia, taste disturbance, hepatic dysfunction; dyspepsia, chest pain, cough; headache, insomnia, convulsions, dizziness, peripheral neuropathy, depression, anxiety, confusion, abnormal thinking, fatigue, weight loss, anorexia; infection, pyrexia, night sweats; anaemia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia, renal impairment; myalgia, arthralgia, macular oedema, retinal detachment, vitreous floats, eye pain; ear pain; dermatitis, pruritus; injection-site reactions; less commonly mouth ulcers, pancreatitis, arthralgias,
hypotension, anaphylactic reactions, psychosis, tremor, male infertility, haematuria, disturbances in hearing and vision, and alopecia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Life-threatening or sight-threatening cytomegalovirus infections in immunocompromised patients only; prevention of cytomegalovirus disease during immunosuppressive therapy following organ transplantation

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially (induction) 5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 14–21 days for treatment or for 7–14 days for prevention; maintenance (for patients at risk of relapse of retinitis), 6 mg/kg daily on 5 days per week or 5 mg/kg daily until adequate recovery of immunity; if retinitis progresses initial induction treatment may be repeated

**Cautions**

- monitor electrolytes, particularly calcium
- decrease haemoglobin concentration, leucopenia, granulocytopenia, thrombocytopenia; thrombophlebitis if given undiluted by peripheral vein; genital irritation and ulceration (due to high concentrations excreted in urine); isolated reports of pancreatitis

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**CMV disease**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** induction 60 mg/kg every 8 hours for 2–3 weeks then maintenance 60 mg/kg daily, increased to 90–120 mg/kg if tolerated; if disease progresses on maintenance dose, repeat induction regimen

**Mucocutaneous herpes simplex infection**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 40 mg/kg every 8 hours for 2–3 weeks or until lesions heal

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, give undiluted solution via a central venous catheter; alternatively dilute to a concentration of 12 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% for administration via a peripheral vein; give over at least 1 hour (give doses greater than 60 mg/kg over 2 hours)

**Foscavir** (Clinigen) £55.49

Intravenous infusion, foscarnet sodium hexahydrate 24 mg/mL, net price 250-mL bottle = £34.49

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**

**5.3.3 Viral hepatitis**

Treatment for viral hepatitis should be initiated by a specialist in hepatology or infectious diseases. The management of uncomplicated acute viral hepatitis is largely symptomatic. Hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses are major causes of chronic hepatitis. For details on immunisation against hepatitis A and B infections, see section 14.4 (active immunisation) and section 14.5 (passive immunisation).

**Chronic hepatitis B** Interferon alfa (section 8.2.4), peginterferon alfa-2a, lamivudine (section 5.3.1), adefovir dipivoxil, entecavir, and tenofovir disoproxil have a role in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B in adults, but their role in children has not been well established. Specialist supervision is required for the management of chronic hepatitis B.

Tenofovir, or a combination of tenofovir with either emtricitabine or lamivudine, may be used with other antiretrovirals, as part of ‘highly active antiretroviral therapy’ (section 5.3.1) in children who require treatment for both HIV and chronic hepatitis B. If children infected with both HIV and chronic hepatitis B only require treatment for chronic hepatitis B, they should receive antivirals that are not active against HIV. Management of these children should be co-ordinated between HIV and hepatology specialists.

**Chronic hepatitis C** Treatment should be considered for children with moderate or severe liver disease. Specialist supervision is required and the regimen is chosen according to the genotype of the infecting virus...
and the viral load. A combination of ribavirin (section 5.3.5) with either interferon alfa (section 8.2.4) or peginterferon alfa-2b is licensed for use in children over 3 years with chronic hepatitis C. A combination of peginterferon alfa (BNF Section 8.2.4) and ribavirin is preferred.

5.3.4 Influenza

For advice on immunisation against influenza, see section 14.4.

Oseltamivir and zanamivir reduce replication of influenza A and B viruses by inhibiting viral neuraminidase. They are most effective for the treatment of influenza if started within a few hours of the onset of symptoms; oseltamivir is licensed for use within 48 hours of the first symptoms while zanamivir is licensed for use within 36 hours of the first symptoms. In otherwise healthy individuals they reduce the duration of symptoms by about 1–1.5 days. For further information on the treatment of influenza, see NICE guidance, below.

Oseltamivir and zanamivir are licensed for post-exposure prophylaxis of influenza when influenza is circulating in the community. Oseltamivir should be given within 48 hours of exposure to influenza while zanamivir should be given within 36 hours of exposure to influenza (see also NICE guidance, below). Oseltamivir and zanamivir are also licensed for use in exceptional circumstances (e.g. when vaccination does not cover the infecting strain) to prevent influenza in an epidemic.

There is evidence that some strains of influenza A virus have reduced susceptibility to oseltamivir, but may retain susceptibility to zanamivir. Resistance to oseltamivir may be greater in severely immunocompromised children.

Oseltamivir in children under 1 year of age Data on the use of oseltamivir in children under 1 year of age is limited. Furthermore, oseltamivir may be ineffective in neonates because they may not be able to metabolise oseltamivir to its active form. However, oseltamivir can be used (under specialist supervision) for the treatment or post-exposure prophylaxis of influenza in children under 1 year of age. The Department of Health has advised (May 2009) that during a pandemic, treatment with oseltamivir can be overseen by healthcare professionals experienced in assessing children.

Amantadine is licensed for prophylaxis and treatment of influenza A in children over 10 years of age, but it is no longer recommended (see NICE guidance, below). Information on pandemic influenza, avian influenza, and swine influenza can be found at www.hpa.org.uk.

Pregnancy and breast-feeding Although safety data are limited, either oseltamivir or zanamivir can be used in women who are pregnant or breast-feeding when the potential benefit outweighs the risk (e.g. during a pandemic). Zanamivir is the preferred drug during pregnancy; however, oseltamivir is recommended during severe infection or when zanamivir cannot be used. Oseltamivir is the preferred drug in women who are breast-feeding.

NICE guidance Oseltamivir, zanamivir, and amantadine for prophylaxis and treatment of influenza (September 2008 and February 2009)

The drugs described here are not a substitute for vaccination, which remains the most effective way of preventing illness from influenza.

- Amantadine is not recommended for prophylaxis or treatment of influenza.
- Oseltamivir or zanamivir are not recommended for seasonal prophylaxis against influenza.
- When influenza is circulating in the community, either oseltamivir or zanamivir is recommended (in accordance with UK licensing) for the treatment or post-exposure prophylaxis in at-risk patients who are not effectively protected by influenza vaccine, and who have been in close contact with someone suffering from influenza-like illness in the same household or residential setting. Oseltamivir should be given within 48 hours of exposure to influenza while zanamivir should be given within 36 hours of exposure to influenza.
- When influenza is circulating in the community, oseltamivir or zanamivir is recommended (in accordance with UK licensing) for the treatment of influenza in at-risk patients who can start treatment within 48 hours (within 36 hours for zanamivir) of the onset of symptoms.
- During local outbreaks of influenza-like illness, when there is a high level of certainty that influenza is present, either oseltamivir or zanamivir may be used for post-exposure prophylaxis or treatment in at-risk patients (regardless of influenza vaccination) living in long-term residential or nursing homes.

At-risk patients are those who have one or more of the following conditions:

- chronic respiratory disease (including asthma);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic neurological disease;
- immunosuppression;
- diabetes mellitus.

This guidance does not cover the circumstances of a pandemic, an impending pandemic, or a widespread epidemic of a new strain of influenza to which there is little or no immunity in the community.

Oseltamivir Renal impairment reduce dose by 50% if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (e.g. during a pandemic); see also above

1. National surveillance schemes, including those run by the Health Protection Agency, should be used to indicate when influenza is circulating in the community
2. The Department of Health in England has advised (November 2010) that ‘at risk patients’ also includes females who are pregnant.

OSELTAMIVIR
**Administration**

if suspension not available, capsules can be opened and the contents mixed with a small amount of sweetened food, such as sugar water or chocolate syrup, just before administration.

1. Tamiflu® (Roche)

Capsules, oseltamivir (as phosphate) 30 mg (yellow), net price 10-cap pack = £7.71; 45 mg (grey), 10-cap pack = £15.41; 75 mg (grey-yellow), 10-cap pack = £15.41. Label: 9

Oral suspension, sugar-free, tutti-frutti-flavoured, oseltamivir (as phosphate) for reconstitution with water, 60 mg/5 mL, net price 75 mL = £15.41. Label: 9

**Breast-feeding** amount probably too small to be harmful; use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (e.g. during a pandemic); see also p. 326

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea; headache; conjunctivitis; less commonly eczema; also reported hepatitis, gastro-intestinal bleeding, arrhythmias, neuropsychiatric disorders, thrombocytopenia, visual disturbances, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 1 year unless there is a pandemic

**Indication and dose**

**Prevention of influenza**

- **By mouth**
  - Child under 1 month (see notes above) 2 mg/kg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis
  - Child 1–3 months (see notes above) 2.5 mg/kg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis
  - Child 3 months–1 year (see notes above) 3 mg/kg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis
  - Child 1–13 years
    - Body-weight under 15 kg 30 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
    - Body-weight 15–23 kg 45 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
    - Body-weight 23–40 kg 60 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
    - Body-weight over 40 kg 75 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
  - Child 13–18 years 75 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic

**Post-exposure prophylaxis of influenza**

- **By inhalation of powder**
  - Child 5–18 years 10 mg once daily for 10 days

**Treatment of influenza**

- **By mouth**
  - Child under 1 month (see notes above) 2 mg/kg twice daily for 5 days
  - Child 1–3 months (see notes above) 2.5 mg/kg twice daily for 5 days
  - Child 3 months–1 year (see notes above) 3 mg/kg twice daily for 5 days
  - Child 1–13 years
    - Body-weight under 15 kg 30 mg twice daily for 5 days
    - Body-weight 15–23 kg 45 mg twice daily for 5 days
    - Body-weight 23–40 kg 60 mg twice daily for 5 days
    - Body-weight over 40 kg 75 mg twice daily for 5 days
  - Child 13–18 years 75 mg twice daily for 5 days

**Administration** if suspension not available, capsules can be opened and the contents mixed with a small amount of sweetened food, such as sugar water or chocolate syrup, just before administration.

1. Relenza® (GSK)

Dry powder for inhalation disks containing 4 blisters of zanamivir 5 mg/blister, net price 5 disks with Diskhaler® device = £16.36

1. **Tamiflu** except for the treatment and prophylaxis of influenza as indicated in the notes above and NICE guidance; endorse prescription ‘SLS’

1. **Tamiflu** except for the treatment and prophylaxis of influenza as indicated in the notes above and NICE guidance; endorse prescription ‘SLS’

**5.3.5 Respiratory syncytial virus**

Ribavirin inhibits a wide range of DNA and RNA viruses. It is licensed for administration by inhalation for the treatment of severe bronchiolitis caused by the...
5.3.5 Respiratory syncytial virus

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) in infants, especially when they have other serious diseases. However, there is no evidence that ribavirin produces clinically relevant benefit in RSV bronchiolitis. Ribavirin is given by mouth with peginterferon alfa or interferon alfa for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C infection (see Viral Hepatitis, section 5.3.3). Ribavirin is also effective in Lassa fever and has also been used parenterally in the treatment of life-threatening RSV, para-influenza virus, and adenovirus infections in immunocompromised children (unlicensed indications).

**Palivizumab** is a monoclonal antibody licensed for preventing serious lower respiratory-tract disease caused by respiratory syncytial virus in children at high risk of the disease; it should be prescribed under specialist supervision and on the basis of the likelihood of hospitalisation.

Palivizumab is recommended for:
- children under 9 months of age with chronic lung disease (defined as requiring oxygen for at least 28 days from birth) and who were born preterm; children under 6 months of age with haemodynamically significant, acyanotic congenital heart disease who were born preterm;
- children under 2 years of age with severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome;
- children under 1 year of age who require long-term ventilation;
- children 1–2 years of age who require long-term ventilation and have an additional co-morbidity (including cardiac disease or pulmonary hypertension).

### PALIVIZUMAB

**Cautions** moderate to severe acute infection or fever, injection-site reactions, nervousness; less commonly diarrhoea, vomiting, constipation, haemorrhage, rhinitis, cough, wheeze, pain, drowsiness, asthenia, hyperkinesia, leucopenia, and rash; also reported, apnoea, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis), convulsions and thrombocytopenia.

**Licensed use** not licensed in children with congenital immunodeficiency or in children born at ≥35 weeks gestation or less and older than 6 months (licensed in children under 6 months).

**Indication and dose** Prevention of serious disease caused by respiratory syncytial virus infection (see notes above).

- By intramuscular injection (preferably in anterolateral thigh)

**Neonate** 15 mg/kg once a month during season of RSV risk

**Child 1 month–2 years** 15 mg/kg once a month during season of RSV risk (child undergoing cardiac bypass surgery, 15 mg/kg as soon as stable after surgery, then once a month during season of risk); injection volume over 1 mL should be divided between 2 or more sites.

**Symptoms**

- Injection, powder for reconstitution, palivizumab, net price 50-mg vial = £360.40; 100-mg vial = £663.11

### RIBAVIRIN

(Tribavirin)

**Cautions** Specific cautions for inhaled treatment

- Maintain standard supportive respiratory and fluid management therapy;
- Monitor electrolytes closely; monitor equipment for precipitation;
- Pregnancy: (ribavirin excreted in semen); cardiac disease (assessment including ECG recommended before and during treatment—discontinue if deterioration); determine full blood count, platelets, electrolytes, serum creatinine, liver function tests and uric acid before starting treatment and then on weeks 2 and 4 of treatment, then as indicated clinically—adjust dose if adverse reactions or laboratory abnormalities develop (consult product literature);
- Eye examination recommended before oral treatment; eye examination also recommended during oral treatment if pre-existing ophthalmological disorder or if decrease in vision reported—discontinue treatment if ophthalmological disorder deteriorates or if new ophthalmological disorder develops; test thyroid function before treatment and then every 3 months; risk of growth retardation, the reversibility of which is uncertain—if possible, consider starting treatment after pubertal growth spurt.

**Interactions** Appendix 1 (ribavirin)

**Contra-indications** Specific contra-indications for systemic treatment

- Severe, uncontrolled cardiac disease in children with chronic hepatitis C, haemoglobinopathies; severe debilitating medical conditions; severe hepatic dysfunction or decompensated cirrhosis; autoimmune disease (including autoimmune hepatitis); history of severe psychiatric condition.

**Hepatic impairment** no dosage adjustment required; use oral ribavirin with caution in severe hepatic dysfunction or decompensated cirrhosis.

**Renal impairment** plasma-ribavirin concentration increased; manufacturer advises avoid oral ribavirin if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m²; manufacturer advises use intravenous preparation with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m².

**Pregnancy** avoid; teratogenicity in animal studies; see also Cautions above.

**Breast-feeding** avoid—no information available.

**Side-effects**

Specific side-effects for inhaled treatment

- Worsening respiration, bacterial pneumonia, and pneumothorax reported; rarely non-specific anaemia and haemolysis

**Specific side-effects for oral treatment** Haemolytic anaemia (anaemia may be improved by epoetin), also in combination with peginterferon alfa or interferon alfa (nurse, vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, flatulence, constipation, diarrhoea, colitis, chest pain, palpitation, tachycardia, peripheral oedema, changes in blood pressure, syncope, flushing, pallor, cough, dyspnoea, tachypnoea, headache, dizziness, hyperkinesia, asthenia, impaired concentration, and memory, sleep disturbances, abnormal dreams, anxiety, depression, suicidal ideation, psychoses, dysphagia, weight loss, dysphonia, paraesthesia, hypoesthesia, ataxia, psychoses, anxietty, influenza-like symptoms, growth retardation (includ-
ing decrease in height and weight), thyroid disorders, hyperglycaemia, menstrual disturbances, virilism, breast pain, testicular pain, sexual dysfunction, micturition disorders, mouth ulcers, stomatitis, glossitis, tooth disorder, gingivitis, alopecia, pruritus, dry skin, skin discoloration, rash (including very rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis), increased sweating, psoriasis, photosensitivity, and acne; less commonly pancreatitis, gastrointestinal bleeding, and hypertriglyceridaemia; rarely peptic ulcer, arrhythmias, cardiomyopathy, myocardial infarction, pericarditis, stroke, interstitial pneumonitis, pulmonary embolism, seizures, renal failure, vasculitis, rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, sarcoidosis, optic neuropathy, and retinal haemorrhage; very rarely aplastic anaemia and peripheral ischaemia.

Licensed use Inhalation licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); intravenous preparation not licensed.

Indication and dose

**Bronchiolitis**
- By aerosol inhalation or nebulisation (via small particle aerosol generator)
  - Child 1 month–2 years: inhale solution containing 20 mg/mL for 12–18 hours for at least 3 days; max. 7 days

**Life-threatening RSV, parainfluenza virus, and adenovirus infection in immunocompromised children (seek expert advice)**
- By intravenous infusion over 15 minutes
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 33 mg/kg as a single dose, then 16 mg/kg every 6 hours for 4 days, then 8 mg/kg every 8 hours for 3 days

**Chronic hepatitis C (in combination with interferon alfa or peginterferon alfa) in previously untreated children without liver decompensation**
- By mouth
  - Child over 3 years; body-weight under 47 kg: 15 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses
  - Child body-weight 47–50 kg: 200 mg in the morning and 400 mg in the evening
  - Child body-weight 50–65 kg: 400 mg twice daily
  - Child body-weight 65–86 kg: 400 mg in the morning and 600 mg in the evening
  - Child body-weight 86–105 kg: 600 mg twice daily
  - Child body-weight over 105 kg: 600 mg in the morning and 800 mg in the evening

Rebetol® (Schering-Plough) Capsules, ribavirin 200 mg, net price 84-cap pack = £160.90, 140-cap pack = £267.81, 168-cap pack = £321.38. Label: 21

Oral solution, ribavirin 200 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL (bubble-gum-flavoured) = £67.08. Label: 21

Virazole® (Meda) Inhalation, ribavirin 6 g for reconstitution with 300 mL water for injections. Net price 3 x 6-g vials = £349.00

Intravenous infusion, 100 mg/mL, 10-mL amp Available on a named-patient basis from Valeant

### 5.4 Antiprotozoal drugs

#### 5.4.1 Antimalarials

Recommendations on the prophylaxis and treatment of malaria reflect guidelines agreed by UK malaria specialists. Choice will depend on the age of the child (see below).

The centres listed above should be consulted for advice on special problems.

**Treatment of malaria**

If the infective species is not known, or if the infection is mixed, initial treatment should be as for *falciparum*
malaria with quinine, Malarone® (proguanil with atovaquone), or Riamet® (artemether with lumefantrine). Falciparum malaria can progress rapidly in unprotected children and antimalarial treatment should be considered in those with features of severe malaria and possible exposure, even if the initial blood tests for the organism are negative.

Falciparum malaria (treatment)

Falciparum malaria (malignant malaria) is caused by Plasmodium falciparum. In most parts of the world P. falciparum is now resistant to chloroquine which should not therefore be given for treatment.

Quinine, Malarone® (proguanil with atovaquone), or Riamet® (artemether with lumefantrine) can be given by mouth if the child can swallow and retain tablets and there are no serious manifestations (e.g. impaired consciousness); quinine should be given by intravenous infusion (see below) if the child is seriously ill or unable to take tablets. Mefloquine is now rarely used for treatment because of concerns about resistance.

Oral. Quinine is well tolerated by children although the salts are bitter.

The dosage regimen for quinine by mouth is:
- 10 mg/kg (of quinine salt\(^1\)); max. 600 mg) every 8 hours for 7 days
- together with or followed by either clindamycin 7–13 mg/kg (max. 450 mg) every 8 hours for 7 days [unlicensed indication]
- or, in children over 12 years, doxycycline 200 mg once daily for 7 days

If the parasite is likely to be sensitive, pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine as a single dose [unlicensed] may be given (instead of either clindamycin or doxycycline) together with, or after, a course of quinine.

The dose regimen for pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine by mouth is:
- Child up to 4 years and body-weight over 5 kg pyrimethamine 12.5 mg with sulfadoxine 250 mg as a single dose
- Child 5–6 years pyrimethamine 25 mg with sulfadoxine 500 mg as a single dose
- Child 7–9 years pyrimethamine 37.5 mg with sulfadoxine 750 mg as a single dose
- Child 10–14 years pyrimethamine 50 mg with sulfadoxine 1 g as a single dose
- Child 14–18 years pyrimethamine 75 mg with sulfadoxine 1.5 g as a single dose

Alternatively, Malarone®, or Riamet® may be given instead of quinine. It is not necessary to give clindamycin, doxycycline, or pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine after Malarone® or Riamet® treatment.

The dose regimen for Malarone® by mouth is:
- Child body-weight 5–8 kg, 2 ‘paediatric’ tablets once daily for 3 days
- Child body-weight 9–10 kg, 3 ‘paediatric’ tablets once daily for 3 days
- Child body-weight 11–20 kg, 1 ‘standard’ tablet once daily for 3 days
- Child body-weight 21–30 kg, 2 ‘standard’ tablets once daily for 3 days

Child body-weight 31–40 kg, 3 ‘standard’ tablets once daily for 3 days
Child body-weight over 40 kg, 4 ‘standard’ tablets once daily for 3 days

The dose regimen for Riamet® by mouth is:
- Child body-weight 5–15 kg 1 tablet initially, followed by 5 further doses of 1 tablet each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 6 tablets over 60 hours)
- Child body-weight 15–25 kg 2 tablets initially, followed by 5 further doses of 2 tablets each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 12 tablets over 60 hours)
- Child body-weight 25–35 kg 3 tablets initially, followed by 5 further doses of 3 tablets each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 18 tablets over 60 hours)
- Child 12–18 years and body-weight over 35 kg, 4 tablets initially followed by 5 further doses of 4 tablets each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 24 tablets over 60 hours)

Parenteral. If the child is seriously ill or unable to swallow tablets, quinine should be given by intravenous infusion. The dose regimen for quinine by intravenous infusion is calculated on a mg/kg basis:

Neonates and children, loading dose\(^1\) of 20 mg/kg (up to maximum 1.4 g) of quinine salt\(^2\) infused over 4 hours then 8 hours after the start of the loading dose, maintenance dose of 10 mg/kg\(^3\) (up to maximum 700 mg) of quinine salt\(^2\) infused over 4 hours every 8 hours (until child can swallow tablets to complete the 7-day course together with or followed by either clindamycin or doxycycline as above).

Specialist advice should be sought in difficult cases (e.g. very high parasite count, deterioration on optimal doses of quinine, infection acquired in quinine-resistant areas of south-east Asia) because intravenous artesunate may be available for ‘named-patient’ use.

Pregnancy Falciparum malaria is particularly dangerous in pregnancy, especially in the last trimester. The treatment doses of oral and intravenous quinine given above (including the loading dose) can safely be given in pregnancy. Clindamycin [unlicensed indication] should be given for 7 days with or after quinine. Doxycycline should be avoided in pregnancy (affects teeth and skeletal development in fetus); pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine, Malarone®, and Riamet® are also best avoided until more information is available. Specialist advice should be sought in difficult cases (e.g. very high parasite count, deterioration on optimal doses of quinine, infection acquired in quinine-resistant areas of south east Asia) because intravenous artesunate may be available for ‘named patient’ use.

2. In intensive care units the loading dose can alternatively be given as quinine salt\(^1\) 7 mg/kg infused over 30 minutes followed immediately by 10 mg/kg over 4 hours then (after 8 hours) maintenance dose as described
3. Important: the loading dose of 20 mg/kg should not be used if the patient has received quinine or mefloquine during the previous 12 hours
4. Maintenance dose should be reduced to 5–7 mg/kg of quinine salt\(^1\) in children with severe renal impairment, severe hepatic impairment, or if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours.
Benign malarial treatment

Benign malaria is usually caused by Plasmodium vivax and less commonly by P. ovale and P. malariae. Chloroquine is the drug of choice for the treatment of benign malaria (but chloroquine-resistant P. vivax infection has been reported from Indonesia, New Guinea and some adjacent islands).

Chloroquine alone is adequate for P. malariae infections, but in the case of P. vivax and P. ovale, a radical cure (to destroy parasites in the liver and thus prevent relapses) is required. This is achieved with primaquine given after the chloroquine.

The dosage regimen of chloroquine by mouth for benign malaria in children is:

- initial dose of 10 mg/kg of base (max. 620 mg) then
- a single dose of 5 mg/kg of base (max. 310 mg) after 6–8 hours

Then a single dose of 5 mg/kg of base (max. 310 mg) daily for 2 days

For a radical cure, primaquine [unlicensed] is then given to children over 6 months of age; specialist advice should be sought for children under 6 months of age. Primaquine is given in a dose of 250 micrograms/kg (max. 15 mg) daily for 14 days in P. ovale infection or 500 micrograms/kg (max. 30 mg) daily for 14 days in P. vivax infection.

Parenteral If the child is unable to take oral therapy, quinine can be given by intravenous infusion. The dose is 10 mg/kg (max. 700 mg) of quinine salt infused over 4 hours every 8 hours, changed to oral chloroquine as soon as the child’s condition permits.

Pregnancy Treatment doses of chloroquine can be given for benign malaria. In the case of P. vivax or P. ovale, however, the radical cure with primaquine should be postponed until the pregnancy is over; instead chloroquine should be continued at a dose of 10 mg/kg (max. 310 mg) each week during the pregnancy.

Prophylaxis against malaria

The recommendations on prophylaxis reflect guidelines agreed by UK malaria specialists; the advice is aimed at residents of the UK who travel to endemic areas. The choice of drug for a particular child should take into account:

- risk of exposure to malaria;
- extent of drug resistance;
- efficacy of the recommended drugs;
- side-effects of the drugs;
- patient-related factors (e.g. age, pregnancy, renal or hepatic impairment, compliance with prophylactic regimen).

Prophylactic doses are based on guidelines agreed by UK malaria experts and may differ from advice in product literature. Weight is a better guide than age. If in doubt obtain advice from specialist centre, see p. 329.

Protection against bites Prophylaxis is not absolutely, and breakthrough infection can occur with any of the drugs recommended. Personal protection against biting is very important. Mosquito nets impregnated with permethrin provide the most effective barrier protection against insects (infants should sleep with a mosquito net stretched over the cot or baby carrier); mats and vaporised insecticides are also useful. Diethyltoluamide (DEET) 20–50% in lotions, sprays, or roll-on formulations is safe and effective when applied to the skin of adults and children over 2 months of age. It can also be used during pregnancy and breast-feeding. The duration of protection varies according to the concentration of DEET and is longest for DEET 50%. Long sleeves and trousers worn after dusk also provide protection.

Length of prophylaxis In order to determine tolerance and to establish habit, prophylaxis should generally be started one week (preferably 2–3 weeks in the case of mefloquine) before travel into an endemic area (or if not possible at earliest opportunity up to 1 or 2 days before travel); Malarone or doxycycline prophylaxis should be started 1–2 days before travel. Prophylaxis should be continued for 4 weeks after leaving (except for Malarone prophylaxis which should be stopped 1 week after leaving).

In those requiring long-term prophylaxis, chloroquine and proguanil may be used for periods of over 5 years. Mefloquine is licensed for use up to 1 year (although it has been used for up to 3 years without undue problems). Doxycycline can be used for up to 2 years. Malarone is licensed for use for up to 28 days but can be used for up to 1 year (and possibly longer) with caution. Specialist advice should be sought for long-term prophylaxis.

Return from malarial region It is important to be aware that any illness that occurs within 1 year and especially within 3 months of return might be malaria even if all recommended precautions against malaria were taken. Travellers and carers of children should be warned of this and told that if they develop any illness particularly within 3 months of their return they should go immediately to a doctor and specifically mention their exposure to malaria.

Epilepsy Both chloroquine and mefloquine are unsuitable for malaria prophylaxis in children with a history of epilepsy. In areas without chloroquine resistance, proguanil alone is recommended; in areas with chloroquine resistance, doxycycline or Malarone may be considered. The metabolism of doxycycline may be influenced by antiepileptics (see interactions: Appendix 1 (tetracyclines)).
332 5.4.1 Antimalarials

**Asplenia** Asplenic children (or those with severe splenic dysfunction) are at particular risk of severe malaria. If travel to malarious areas is unavoidable, rigorous precautions are required against contracting the disease.

**Renal impairment** Avoidance (or dosage reduction) of proguanil is recommended since it is excreted by the kidneys. Malarone® should not be used for prophylaxis in children with estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m². Chloroquine is only partially excreted by the kidneys and reduction of the dose for prophylaxis is not required except in severe impairment. Mefloquine is considered to be appropriate to use in renal impairment and does not require dosage reduction. Doxycycline is also considered to be appropriate.

**Pregnancy** Travel to malarious areas should be avoided during pregnancy; if travel is unavoidable, effective prophylaxis must be used. Chloroquine and proguanil can be given in the usual doses during pregnancy, but these drugs are not appropriate for most areas because their effectiveness has declined, particularly in sub-saharan Africa; in the case of proguanil, folic acid 5 mg daily should be given. The centres listed on p. 329 should be consulted for advice on prophylaxis in chloroquine-resistant areas. Although the manufacturer advises that mefloquine should not be used during pregnancy, particularly in the first trimester, unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk, studies of mefloquine in pregnancy (including use in the first trimester) indicate that it can be considered for travel to chloroquine-resistant areas. Doxycycline is contra-indicated during pregnancy. Malarone® should be avoided during pregnancy unless there is no suitable alternative.

**Breast-feeding** Prophylaxis is required in breast-fed infants; although antimalarials are present in milk, the amounts are too variable to give reliable protection.

### Specific recommendations

Where a journey requires two regimens, the regimen for the higher risk area should be used for the whole journey. Those travelling to remote or little-visited areas may require expert advice.

**Risk may vary in different parts of a country—check under all risk levels**

**Important** Settled immigrants and their carers (or long-term visitors) to the UK may be unaware that they will have lost some of their immunity and also that the areas where they previously lived may now be malarious

**North Africa, the Middle East, and Central Asia**

**Very low risk** Risk very low in Algeria, Egypt (but low risk in El Faiyum, see below), Georgia (south-east, July–October), Kyrgyzstan (but low risk in south-west, see below), Libya, most tourist areas of Turkey (but low risk in Adana and border with Syria, see below), Uzbekistan (extreme south-east only):

- chemoprophylaxis not recommended but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever presents

**Low risk** Risk low in Armenia (June–October), Azerbaijan (southern border areas, June–September), Egypt (El Faiyum only, June–October), Iran (northern border with Azerbaijan, May–October; variable risk in rural south-east provinces; see below), rural north Iraq (May–November), Kyrgyzstan (south-west, May–October), north border of Syria (May–October), Turkey (plain around Adana and east of there, border with Syria, March–November):

- preferably chloroquine or (if chloroquine not appropriate) proguanil hydrochloride

**Variable risk** Risk variable and chloroquine resistance present in Afghanistan (below 2000 m, May–November), Iran (rural south-east provinces, March–November, see also Low Risk above), Oman (remote rural areas only), Saudi Arabia (south-west and rural areas of western region; no risk in Mecca, Medina, Jeddah, or high-altitude areas of Asir Province), Tajikistan (June–October), Yemen (no risk in Sana’a):

- chloroquine + proguanil hydrochloride or (if chloroquine + proguanil not appropriate and child over 12 years) doxycycline

**Sub-Saharan Africa**

*No chemoprophylaxis recommended for Cape Verde (some risk on São Tiago) and Mauritius (but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever presents)*

**Very high risk** Risk very high (or locally very high) and chloroquine resistance very widespread in Angola, Benin, Botswana (northern half, November–June), Burkina Faso, Burundi, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Comoros, Congo, Democratic Republic of the Congo (formerly Zaire), Djibouti, Equatorial Guinea, Eritrea, Ethiopia (below 2000 m; no risk in Addis Ababa), Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Liberia, Madagascar, Malawi, Mali, Mauritania (all year in south; July–October in north), Mozambique, Namibia (all year along Kavango and Kunene rivers; November–June in northern third), Niger, Nigeria, Principe, Rwanda, São Tomé, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Somalia, South Africa (low-altitude areas of Mpumalanga and Limpopo Provinces, Kruger National Park, and north-east KwaZulu-Natal as far south as Jozini), Sudan, Swaziland, Tanzania, Togo, Uganda, Zambia, Zimbabwe (all year in Zambezi valley;
South Asia

**Low risk** Risk low in Bangladesh (but high risk in Chittagong Hill Tracts, see below), India (Kerala [southern states], Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Southern Andhra Pradesh [including Hyderabad], Mumbai, Rajasthan [including Jaipur], Uttar Pradesh [including Agra], Harayana, Uttaranchal, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu, Kashmir, Punjab, Delhi; variable risk in other areas, see below; high risk in Assam), Sri Lanka (but variable risk north of Vavuniya, see below):

- chloroquine + proguanil hydrochloride or (if chloroquine + proguanil not appropriate) mefloquine or doxycycline or Malarone®

**Variable risk** Risk variable and chloroquine resistance usually moderate in southern districts of Bhutan, India (low risk in some areas, see above; high risk in Assam, see below), Nepal (below 1500 m, especially Terai districts; no risk in Kathmandu), Pakistan (below 2000 m), Sri Lanka (north of Vavuniya; low risk in other areas, see above):

- chloroquine + proguanil hydrochloride or (if chloroquine + proguanil not appropriate) mefloquine or doxycycline or Malarone®

**High risk** Risk high and chloroquine resistance high in Bangladesh (only in Chittagong Hill Tracts; low risk in other areas, see above), India (Assam only; see also Low Risk and Variable Risk above):

- mefloquine or doxycycline (if child over 12) or Malarone® or (if mefloquine, doxycycline, or Malarone® not appropriate) chloroquine + proguanil hydrochloride

South-East Asia

**Very low risk** Risk very low in Bali, Brunei, Cambodia (Angkor Wat and Siem Reap; but no risk in Phnom Penh; substantial risk in other areas, see below; great risk in western provinces, see below), main tourist areas of China (but substantial risk in Yunnan and Hainan, see below; chloroquine prophylaxis appropriate for other remote areas), Hong Kong, Korea (both North and South), Malaysia (both East and West including Cameron Highlands, but substantial risk in Sabah [except Kota Kinabalu], and variable risk in deep forests, see below), Singapore, Thailand (important: regional risk exists, see under Great Risk, below), Vietnam (cities, coast between Ho Chi Minh and Hanoi, and Mekong River until close to Cambodian border; substantial risk in other areas, see below):

- chemoprophylaxis not recommended but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever present

**Variable risk** Risk variable and some chloroquine resistance in Indonesia (very low risk in Bali, and cities but substantial risk in Irian Jaya [West Papua] and Lombok, see below), rural Philippines below 600 m (no risk in cities, Cebu, Bohol, and Catanduanes), deep forests of peninsular Malaysia and Sarawak (but substantial risk in Sabah, see below):

- chloroquine + proguanil hydrochloride or (if chloroquine + proguanil not appropriate) mefloquine or doxycycline or Malarone®

**Substantial risk** Risk substantial and drug resistance common in Cambodia (no risk or very low risk in some areas, see above; great risk in western provinces, see below), China (Yunnan and Hainan; chloroquine prophylaxis appropriate for other remote areas; see also Very Low Risk above), East Timor, Irian Jaya [West Papua], Laos (no risk in Vientiane), Lombok, Malaysia (Sabah; see also Very Low Risk and Variable Risk above), Myanmar (formerly Burma; see also Great Risk below), Vietnam (very low risk in some areas, see above):

- mefloquine or doxycycline (if child over 12) or Malarone®

Oceania

**Risk** Risk high and chloroquine resistance high in Papua New Guinea (below 1800 m), Solomon Islands, Vanuatu:

- doxycycline (if child over 12) or mefloquine or Malarone®
Central and South America and the Caribbean

**Very low risk** Risk very low in Jamaica:

- Chemoprophylaxis not recommended but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever presents.

**Variable to low risk** Risk variable to low in Argentina (rural areas along northern borders only), rural Belize (except Belize district), Costa Rica (Limon Province except Puerto Limon and northern canton of Pococci), Dominican Republic, El Salvador (Santa Ana province in west), Guatemala (below 1500 m), Haiti, Honduras, Mexico (states of Oaxaca and Chiapas), Nicaragua, Panama (west of Panama Canal but variable to high risk east of Panama Canal, see below), rural Paraguay.

- Chloroquine or (if chloroquine not appropriate) proguanil hydrochloride.

**Variable to high risk** Risk variable to high and chloroquine resistance present in rural areas of Bolivia (below 2500 m; see also variable to high risk above), Brazil (throughout ‘Legal Amazon’ area high risk of recrudescence); avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (artemether; animal studies with artemether; see p. 331).

- Chloroquine + proguanil not appropriate mefloquine or doxycycline (if child over 12) or Malarone®.

**High risk** Risk high and marked chloroquine resistance in Bolivia (Amazon basin area; see also variable to high risk above), Brazil (throughout ‘Legal Amazon’ area which includes the Amazon basin area, Mato Grosso and Maranhao only; elsewhere very low risk—no chemoprophylaxis); Colombia (most areas below 800 m); Ecuador (Esmeraldas Province; variable to high risk in other areas, see above), French Guiana, all interior regions of Guyana, Peru (Amazon basin area; see also variable to high risk above), Suriname (except Paramaribo and coast), Venezuela (Amazon basin area, areas south of and including Orinoco river, see also variable to high risk above):

- Mefloquine or doxycycline (if child over 12) or Malarone®.

Standby treatment [unlicensed]

Children and their carers visiting remote, malarious areas for prolonged periods should carry standby treatment if they are likely to be more than 24 hours away from medical care. Self-medication should be avoided if medical help is accessible. In order to avoid excessive self-medication, the traveller should be provided with written instructions that urgent medical attention should be sought if fever (38 °C or more) develops 7 days (or more) after arriving in a malarious area and that self-treatment is indicated if medical help is not available within 24 hours of fever onset. In view of the continuing emergence of resistant strains and of the different regimens required for different areas expert advice should be sought on the best treatment course for an individual traveller. A drug used for chemoprophylaxis should not be considered for standby treatment for the same traveller.

**Artemether with lumefantrine**

Artemether with lumefantrine is licensed for the treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria.

**ARTEMETHER WITH Lumefantrine**

**Cautions** Electrolyte disturbances, concomitant use with other drugs known to cause QT-interval prolongation; monitor patients unable to take food (greater risk of recrudescence); avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (artemether with lumefantrine).

**Skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks.

**Contra-indications** History of arrhythmias, of clinically relevant bradycardia, and of congestive heart failure accompanied by reduced left ventricular ejection fraction; family history of sudden death or of congenital QT interval prolongation.

**Hepatic impairment** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—monitor ECG and plasma potassium concentration.

**Renal impairment** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—monitor ECG and plasma potassium concentration.

**Pregnancy** Toxicity in animal studies with artether, manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

**Breast-feeding** Manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding for at least 1 week after last dose; present in milk in animal studies.

**Side-effects** Abdominal pain, anorexia, diarrhoea, vomiting, nausea; palpitation, prolonged QT interval; cough, headache, dizziness, sleep disturbances, asthenia, paraesthesia; arthralgia, myalgia; pruritus, rash; less commonly ataxia, hypoaesthesia, clonus.

**Indication and dose**

- Treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria see p. 330
- Treatment of benign malaria see p. 331
Chloroquine

Chloroquine is used for the prophylaxis of malaria in areas of the world where the risk of chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria is still low. It is also used with proguanil when chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria is present but this regimen may not give optimal protection (see specific recommendations by country, p. 332).

Chloroquine is no longer recommended for the treatment of falciparum malaria owing to widespread resistance, nor is it recommended if the infective species is not known or if the infection is mixed; in these cases treatment should be with quinine, Malarone®, or Riamet® (for details, see p. 329). It is still recommended for the treatment of benign malarial malaria (for details, see p. 331).

**CHLOROQUINE**

**Cautions** may exacerbate psoriasis, neurological disorders (avoid for prophylaxis if history of epilepsy; see notes above), may aggravate myasthenia gravis, severe gastro-intestinal disorders, G6PD deficiency (see section 9.1.5); ophthalmic examination with long-term therapy; avoid concurrent therapy with hepatotoxic drugs—other interactions: Appendix 1 (chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine)

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution in moderate to severe impairment

**Renal impairment** manufacturers advise caution; see also Prophylaxis Against Malaria, p. 332

**Pregnancy** benefit of prophylaxis and treatment in malaria outweighs risk; see also Benign Malaria (treatment), p. 331 and Prophylaxis Against Malaria, p. 332

**Breast-feeding** amount in milk probably too small to be harmful, see also Prophylaxis Against Malaria, p. 332

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances, headache; also hypotension, convulsions, visual disturbances, depigmentation or loss of hair, skin reactions (rashes, pruritus); rarely, bone-marrow suppression, hypersensitivity reactions such as urticaria and angioedema; other side-effects (not usually associated with malaria prophylaxis or treatment), see under Anti-malarials, section 10.1.3; very toxic in overdosage—immediate advice from poisons centres essential (see also p. 29)

**Indication and dose**

**Prophylaxis of malaria**

- **By mouth**
  - Dose (expressed as chloroquine base) preferably started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving (see notes above)
  - Child up to 12 weeks, body-weight under 6 kg 37.5 mg once weekly
  - Child 12 weeks–1 year, body-weight 6–10 kg 75 mg once weekly
  - Child 1–4 years, body-weight 10–16 kg 112.5 mg once weekly
  - Child 4–8 years, body-weight 16–25 kg 150 mg once weekly (or 155 mg once weekly if tablets used)
  - Child 8–13 years, body-weight 25–45 kg 225 mg once weekly (or 232.5 mg once weekly if tablets used)
  - Child over 13 years, body-weight over 45 kg 310 mg once weekly

**Counselling** Warn travellers about importance of avoiding mosquito bites. importance of taking prophylaxis regularly, and importance of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and especially within 3 months of return. For details, see notes above

**Note** Chloroquine doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature

1. Avloclor® (AstraZeneca) Tablets, scored, chloroquine phosphate 250 mg (± chloroquine base 155 mg). Net price 20-tab pack = £1.22. Label: 5, counselling, prophylaxis, see above

2. Malarivon® (Wallace Mfg) Syrup, chloroquine phosphate 80 mg/5 mL (± chloroquine base 50 mg/5 mL), net price 75 mL = £2.75. Label: 5, counselling, prophylaxis, see above

3. Nivaquine® (Sanofi-Aventis) Syrup, golden, chloroquine sulphate 68 mg/5 mL (± chloroquine base 50 mg/5 mL), net price 100 mL = £4.80. Label: 5, counselling, prophylaxis, see above

**With proguanil** For cautions and side-effects of proguanil see Proguanil; for dose see Chloroquine and Proguanil

1. Paludrine/Avloclor® (AstraZeneca) Tablets, travel pack of 14 tablets of chloroquine phosphate 250 mg (± chloroquine base 155 mg) and 98 tablets of proguanil hydrochloride 100 mg, net price 112-tab pack = £8.79. Label: 5, 21, counselling, prophylaxis, see above

**Mefloquine**

Mefloquine is used for the prophylaxis of malaria in areas of the world where there is a high risk of chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria (for details, see specific recommendations by country, p. 332).

Mefloquine is now rarely used for the treatment of falciparum malaria because of increased resistance. It is rarely used for the treatment of benign malaria because better tolerated alternatives are available. Mefloquine should not be used for treatment if it has been used for prophylaxis.

---

1. Can be sold to the public provided it is licensed and labelled for the prophylaxis of malaria. Drugs for malaria prophylaxis not prescribable on the NHS; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials are prescribed.
Mefloquine

**Cautions**
- cardiac conduction disorders; epilepsy
- (avoid for prophylaxis); not recommended in infants under 3 months (5 kg); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (mefloquine)

**Skilled tasks**
- Dizziness or a disturbed sense of balance may affect performance of skilled tasks; effects may persist for up to 3 weeks

**Contra-indications**
- hypersensitivity to quinine; avoid for prophylaxis if history of psychiatric disorders (including depression) or convulsions

**Hepatic impairment**
- avoid for chemoprophylaxis in severe liver disease

**Pregnancy**
- manufacturer advises adequate contraception during prophylaxis and for 3 months after stopping (teratogenicity in animal studies), but see also p. 332

**Breast-feeding**
- present in milk but risk to infant minimal; see also; p. 332

**Side-effects**
- nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, diarrhoea; headache, dizziness, sleep disturbances; less frequently anorexia, bradycardia, fatigue, abnormal dreams, fever, tinnitus, and neuropsychiatric reactions (including sensory and motor neuropathies, tremor, ataxia, anxiety, depression, panic attacks, agitation, hallucinations, psychosis, convulsions); rarely suicidal ideation; very rarely pneumonitis; also reported, circulatory disorders (including hypotension and hypertension), chest pain, tachycardia, palpitation, cardiac conduction disorders, oedema, dyspnoea, encephalopathy, leucopenia, leucocytosis, thrombocytopenia, muscle weakness, myalgia, arthralgia, visual disturbances, vestibular disorders, rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome), pruritus, and alopecia

**Licensed use**
- not licensed for use in children under 5 kg body-weight and under 3 months

**Indication and dose**

**Prophylaxis of malaria**
- preferably started 2½ weeks before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving (see notes above)
  - **By mouth**
    - Child body-weight 5–16 kg 62.5 mg once weekly
    - Child body-weight 16–25 kg 125 mg once weekly
    - Child body-weight 25–45 kg 187.5 mg once weekly
    - Child body-weight over 45 kg 250 mg once weekly

**Long-term chemoprophylaxis**
- Mefloquine prophylaxis can be taken for up to 1 year

**Counselling**
- inform travellers and carers of children travelling about adverse reactions of mefloquine and, if they occur, to seek medical advice on alternative anti-malarials before the next dose is due. Also warn travellers and carers of children travelling about **importance** of avoiding mosquito bites, **importance** of taking prophylaxis regularly, and **importance** of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and especially within 3 months of return. For details, see notes above

**Note**
- Mefloquine doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature

**Administration**
- Tablet may be crushed and mixed with food such as jam or honey just before administration

**Primaquine**
- Primaquine is used to eliminate the liver stages of *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* following chloroquine treatment (for details, see p. 331).

**Proguanil**
- (Non-proprietary)
- Tablets, primaquine (as phosphate) 7.5 mg or 15 mg
- Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Proguelan**
- Proguanil is used (usually with chloroquine, but occasionally alone) for the prophylaxis of malaria, (for details, see specific recommendations by country, p. 332).

**Malanone**
- is also used as an alternative to mefloquine or doxycycline. Malanone® is particularly suitable for short trips to highly chloroquine-resistant areas because it needs to be taken only for 7 days after leaving an endemic area.

**PROGUANIL HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions**
- **interactions:** Appendix 1 (proguanil)

**Renal impairment**
- (see notes under Prophylaxis against malaria). Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–60 mL/minute/1.73 m². Use one-quarter normal dose on alternate days if...
estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–20 mL/minute/1.73 m². Use one-quarter normal dose once weekly if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m²; increased risk of haematological toxicity.

**Pregnancy** benefit of prophylaxis in malaria outweighs risk; adequate folate supplements should be given to mother; see also p. 332

**Breast-feeding** amount in milk probably too small to be harmful when used for malaria prophylaxis; see also p. 332

**Side-effects** mild gastric intolerance, diarrhoea, and constipation; occasionally mouth ulcers and stomatitis; very rarely cholestasis, vasculitis, skin reactions and hair loss

### Indication and dose

**Prophylaxis of malaria** preferably started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child up to 12 weeks, body-weight under 6 kg
    - 25 mg once daily
  - Child 12 weeks–1 year, body-weight 6–10 kg
    - 50 mg once daily
  - Child 1–4 years, body-weight 10–16 kg
    - 75 mg once daily
  - Child 4–8 years, body-weight 16–25 kg
    - 100 mg once daily
  - Child 8–13 years, body-weight 25–45 kg
    - 150 mg once daily
  - Child over 13 years, body-weight over 45 kg
    - 300 mg once daily

  **Counselling** Warn travellers about importance of avoiding mosquito bites, importance of taking prophylaxis regularly, and importance of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and especially within 3 months of return. For details, see notes above

**Note** Proguanil doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature

**Administration** Tablets may be crushed and mixed with food such as milk, jam or honey just before administration

**Paediatric tablets**

- Child body-weight 11 kg and over
  - 25 mg, atovaquone 62.5 mg, net price 12-tab pack = £25.21. Label: 21, counselling, prophylaxis, see above

- Child body-weight 10 kg and under
  - 2 tablets once daily for 3 days
  - 1 tablet daily

**With chloroquine** See under Chloroquine

**PROGUANIL HYDROCHLORIDE WITH ATOVAQUONE**

**Cautions** diarrhoea or vomiting (reduced absorption of atovaquone), efficacy not evaluated in cerebral or complicated malaria (including hyperparasitaemia, pulmonary oedema or renal failure); interactions: see Appendix 1 (proguanil, atovaquone)

**Renal impairment** avoid for malaria prophylaxis and, if possible, for treatment if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

1. Can be sold to the public provided it is licensed and labelled for the prophylaxis of malaria. Drugs for malaria prophylaxis not prescribable on the NHS; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials are prescribed

2. Drugs for malaria prophylaxis not prescribable on the NHS; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials prescribed
Pyrimethamine

Pyrimethamine should not be used alone, but is used with sulfadoxine.

Pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine is not recommended for the prophylaxis of malaria, but can be used in the treatment of falciparum malaria with (or following) quinine.

### PYRIMETHAMINE WITH SULFADOXINE

**Indication and dose**

Adjunct to quinine in treatment of *Plasmodium falciparum malaria* see p. 330

**Prophylaxis**

not recommended by UK malaria experts

**Pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine**

(Non-proprietary)

Tablets, scored, pyrimethamine 25 mg, sulfadoxine 500 mg, net price 3-tab pack = 74p

**Note**

Also known as Fansidar®

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Contra-indications**

haemoglobinuria, myasthenia gravis, optic neuritis, tinnitus

**Hepatic impairment**

for treatment of malaria in severe impairment, reduce parenteral maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg of quinine salt

**Renal impairment**

for treatment of malaria in severe impairment, reduce parenteral maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg of quinine salt

**Pregnancy**

risk of teratogenesis with high doses in *first trimester*, but in malaria benefit of treatment outweighs risk, see also p. 330

**Breast-feeding**

present in milk but not known to be harmful

**Side-effects**

cinchonism, including tinnitus, hearing impairment, vertigo, headache, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, visual disturbances (including temporary blindness), confusion; cardiovascular effects (see Cautions); dyspnoea; hypersensitivity reactions including angioedema, rashes, hot and flushed skin; hypoglycaemia (especially after parenteral administration); blood disorders (including thrombocytopenia and intravascular coagulation); acute renal failure; muscle weakness; photosensitivity; very toxic in *overdosage*—immediate advice from poisons centres essential (see also p. 29)

**Licensed use**

injection not licensed

**Treatment of malaria**

see p. 330

**Note**

Quinine (anhydrous base) 100 mg = quinine bisulphate 169 mg = quinine dihydrochloride 122 mg = quinine hydrochloride 125 mg = quinine sulphate 121 mg. Quinine bisulphate 300-mg tablets are available but provide less quinine than 300 mg of the dihydrochloride, hydrochloride, or sulphate

**Administration**

for *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 2 mg/mL (max. 30 mg/mL in fluid restriction) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 4 hours

**Quinine Sulphate**

(Non-proprietary)

Tablets, coated, quinine sulphate 200 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £2.20; 300 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.12

**Quinine Dihydrochloride**

(Non-proprietary)

Injection, quinine dihydrochloride 300 mg/mL. For dilution and use as an infusion, 1- and 2-ml amps

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Note**

Intravenous injection of quinine is so hazardous that it has been superseded by infusion

### Quinine

Quinine is not suitable for the prophylaxis of malaria.

Quinine is used for the treatment of *falciparum malaria* or if the infective species is *not known* or if the infection is mixed (for details see p. 329).

**Cautions**

cardiac disease (including atrial fibrillation, conduction defects, heart block)—monitor ECG during parenteral treatment; monitor blood glucose and electrolyte concentration during parenteral treatment; G6PD deficiency (see section 9.1.5): **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (quinine)

### Tetracyclines

Doxycycline (section 5.1.3) is used in children over 12 years for the prophylaxis of malaria in areas of widespread mefloquine or chloroquine resistance. Doxycycline is also used as an alternative to mefloquine or Malarone® (for details, see specific recommendations by country, p. 332).

Doxycycline is also used as an adjunct to quinine in the treatment of *falciparum malaria* (for details see p. 330).
5.4.2 Ameobicides

Metronidazole is the drug of choice for acute invasive amoebic dysentery since it is very effective against vegetative forms of Entamoeba histolytica which can cause ulceration of the large intestine. Tinidazole is also effective. Metronidazole and tinidazole are also active against amoebae which may have migrated to the liver. Treatment with metronidazole (or tinidazole) is followed by a 10-day course of diloxanide furoate.

Diloxanide furoate is the drug of choice for asymptomatic patients with E. histolytica cysts in the faeces; metronidazole and tinidazole are relatively ineffective. Diloxanide furoate is relatively free from toxic effects and the usual course is of 10 days, given alone for chronic infections or following metronidazole or tinidazole treatment.

For amoebic abscesses of the liver metronidazole is effective; tinidazole is an alternative. Aspiration of the abscess is indicated where it is suspected that it may rupture or where there is no improvement after 72 hours of metronidazole; the aspiration may need to be repeated. Aspiration aids penetration of metronidazole and, for abscesses with large volume of pus, if carried out in conjunction with drug therapy, may reduce the period of disability.

Diloxanide furoate is not effective against hepatic amoebiasis, but a 10-day course should be given at the completion of metronidazole or tinidazole treatment to destroy any amoebae in the gut.

5.4.2 Amoebicides

Indication and dose
Chronic amoebiasis and as adjunct to metronidazole or tinidazole in acute amoebiasis
- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years 6.6 mg/kg 3 times daily for 10 days
  - Child 12–18 years 500 mg 3 times daily for 10 days

Diloxanide (Sovereign) Tablets, diloxanide furoate 500 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £93.50. Label: 9

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Cautions
Hepatic impairment
Pregnancy
Breast-feeding
Side-effects

Anaerobic infections section 5.1.11

Invasive intestinal amoebiasis, extra-intestinal amoebiasis (including liver abscess)
- By mouth
  - Child 1–3 years 200 mg 3 times daily for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)
  - Child 3–7 years 200 mg 4 times daily for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)
  - Child 7–10 years 400 mg 3 times daily for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)
  - Child 10–18 years 800 mg 3 times daily for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)

Urogenital trichomoniases
- By mouth
  - Child 1–3 years 50 mg 3 times daily for 7 days
  - Child 3–7 years 100 mg twice daily for 7 days
  - Child 7–10 years 100 mg 3 times daily for 7 days
  - Child 10–18 years 200 mg 3 times daily for 7 days or 400–500 mg twice daily for 5–7 days, or 2 g as a single dose

Giardiasis
- By mouth
  - Child 1–3 years 500 mg once daily for 3 days
  - Child 3–7 years 600–800 mg once daily for 3 days
  - Child 7–10 years 1 g once daily for 3 days
  - Child 10–18 years 2 g once daily for 3 days or 400 mg 3 times daily for 5 days or 500 mg twice daily for 7–10 days

Preparations
Section 5.1.11
Infections

5.4.2 Antimicrobial agents

5.4.2.1 Azoles

Metronidazole (section 5.4.2) may be tried. Simultaneously, if metronidazole is ineffective, tinidazole is the treatment of choice. Metronidazole (section 5.4.2) is the treatment of choice for Trichomonas vaginalis infection. Contact tracing is recommended and sexual contacts should be treated simultaneously but if skin lesions are extensive or unsightly, treatment is indicated, as it is in visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar). Leishmaniasis should be treated under specialist supervision.

Sodium stibogluconate, an organic pentavalent antimony compound, is the treatment of choice for visceral leishmaniasis. The dose is 20 mg/kg daily (max. 850 mg) for at least 20 days by intramuscular or intravenous injection; the dosage varies with different geographical regions and expert advice should be obtained. Skin lesions can also be treated with sodium stibogluconate.

Amphotericin is used with or after an antimony compound for visceral leishmaniasis unresponsive to the antimonial alone; side-effects may be reduced by using liposomal amphotericin (AmBisome—section 5.2) at a dose of 1–3 mg/kg daily for 10–21 days to a cumulative dose of 21–30 mg/kg or at a dose of 3 mg/kg for 5 consecutive days followed by a single dose of 3 mg/kg 6 days later. Abelcet®, a lipid formulation of amphotericin is also likely to be effective but less information is available.

Pentamidine isetionate (pentamidine isethionate) (section 5.4.8) has been used in antimony-resistant visceral leishmaniasis; but although the initial response is often good, the relapse rate is high; it is associated with serious side-effects. Other treatments include paromomycin (unlicensed), available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

5.4.3 Trichomonacides

TINIDAZOLE

Cautions see under Metronidazole (section 5.1.11); avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); Interactions: Appendix 1 (tinidazole)

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid in first trimester

Breast-feeding present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding during and for 3 days after stopping treatment

Side-effects see under Metronidazole (section 5.1.11)

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Intestinal amoebiasis

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years 50–60 mg/kg (max. 2 g) once daily for 5 days
  - Child 12–18 years 2 g once daily for 2–3 days

Amoebic involvement of liver

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years 50–60 mg/kg (max. 2 g) once daily for 5 days
  - Child 12–18 years 1.5–2 g once daily for 3–6 days

Urogenital trichomoniasis and giardiasis

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years single dose of 50–75 mg/kg (max. 2 g) (repeated once if necessary)
  - Child 12–18 years single dose of 2 g (repeated once if necessary)

Fasigyn® (Pfizer) Tablets, f/c, tinidazole 500 mg, net price 16-tab pack = £11.04. Label: 4, 9, 21, 25

5.4.4 Antigiardial drugs

Metronidazole (section 5.4.2) is the treatment of choice for Giardia lamblia infections. Tinidazole (section 5.4.2) may be used as an alternative to metronidazole.

5.4.5 Leishmaniacides

Cutaneous leishmaniasis frequently heals spontaneously but if skin lesions are extensive or unsightly, treatment is indicated, as it is in visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar). Leishmaniasis should be treated under specialist supervision.

Sodium stibogluconate, an organic pentavalent antimony compound, is the treatment of choice for visceral leishmaniasis. The dose is 20 mg/kg daily (max. 850 mg) for at least 20 days by intramuscular or intravenous injection; the dosage varies with different geographical regions and expert advice should be obtained. Skin lesions can also be treated with sodium stibogluconate.

Amphotericin is used with or after an antimony compound for visceral leishmaniasis unresponsive to the antimonial alone; side-effects may be reduced by using liposomal amphotericin (AmBisome—section 5.2) at a dose of 1–3 mg/kg daily for 10–21 days to a cumulative dose of 21–30 mg/kg or at a dose of 3 mg/kg for 5 consecutive days followed by a single dose of 3 mg/kg 6 days later. Abelcet®, a lipid formulation of amphotericin is also likely to be effective but less information is available.

Pentamidine isetionate (pentamidine isethionate) (section 5.4.8) has been used in antimony-resistant visceral leishmaniasis; but although the initial response is often good, the relapse rate is high; it is associated with serious side-effects. Other treatments include paromomycin (unlicensed), available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

SODIUM STIBOGLUCONATE

Cautions intravenous injections must be given slowly over 5 minutes (to reduce risk of local thrombosis) and stopped if coughing or substernal pain; mucocutaneous disease (see below); monitor ECG before and during treatment; heart disease (withdraw if conduction disturbances occur); treat intercurrent infection (e.g. pneumonia)

Mucocutaneous disease Successful treatment of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis may induce severe inflammation around the lesions (may be life-threatening if pharyngeal or tracheal involvement)—may require corticosteroid

Hepatic impairment use with caution

Renal impairment avoid in significant impairment

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding amount probably too small to be harmful

Side-effects anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain; ECG changes; coughing (see Cautions); headache, lethargy, arthralgia, myalgia; rarely jaundice, flushing, bleeding from nose or gum; substernal pain (see Cautions), vertigo, fever, sweating, and rash; also reported pancreatitis and anaphylaxis; pain and thrombosis on intravenous administration, intramuscular injection also painful

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Leishmaniasis for dose, see notes above

Administration injection should be filtered immediately before administration using a filter of 5 microns or less; see also Cautions above

Pentostam® (GSK) Injection, sodium stibogluconate equivalent to pentavalent antimony 100 mg/mL. Net price 100-mL bottle = £66.43
5.4.6 Trypanocides

The prophylaxis and treatment of trypanosomiasis is difficult and differs according to the strain of organism. Expert advice should therefore be obtained.

5.4.7 Drugs for toxoplasmosis

Most infections caused by Toxoplasma gondii are self-limiting, and treatment is not necessary. Exceptions are children with eye involvement (toxoplasma chorioretinitis), and those who are immunosuppressed. Toxoplasmic encephalitis is a common complication of AIDS. The treatment of choice is a combination of pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine, given for several weeks (expert advice essential). Pyrimethamine is a folate antagonist, and adverse reactions to this combination are relatively common (folic acid supplements (see p. 418) and weekly blood counts needed). Alternative regimens use combinations of pyrimethamine with clindamycin or clarithromycin or azithromycin. Long-term secondary prophylaxis is required after treatment of toxoplasmosis in immunocompromised patients; prophylaxis should continue until immunity recovers.

If toxoplasmosis is acquired in pregnancy, transplacental infection may lead to severe disease in the fetus; specialist advice should be sought on management. Spiramycin may reduce the risk of transmission of maternal infection to the fetus. When there is evidence of placental or fetal infection, pyrimethamine may be given with sulfadiazine and folinic acid after the first trimester.

In neonates without signs of toxoplasmosis, but born to mothers known to have become infected, spiramycin is given while awaiting laboratory results. If toxoplasmosis may be unfounded

5.4.6 Trypanocides 341

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Congenital toxoplasmosis (in combination with sulfadiazine and folinic acid (section 8.1)),</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 mg/kg twice daily for 2 days, then 1 mg/kg once daily for 6 months, then 1 mg/kg 3 times a week for 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malaria</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no dose stated because not recommended alone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spiramycin (Non-proprietary)
Tablets, spiramycin 25 mg. Net price 30-tab pack = £2.60
Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

SULFADIAZINE

(Sulfadiazine)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>see under Co-trimoxazole, section 5.1.8; interactions: Appendix 1 (sulfonamides)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contra-indications</td>
<td>see under Co-trimoxazole, section 5.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic impairment</td>
<td>use with caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal impairment</td>
<td>use with caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td>risk of neonatal haemolytic and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester; fear of increased risk of kernicterus in neonates appears to be unfounded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast-feeding</td>
<td>small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolyis in G6PD-deficient infants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PYRIMETHAMINE

Cautions blood counts required with prolonged treatment; history of seizures—avoid large loading doses; interactions: Appendix 1 (pyrimethamine)
Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises caution
Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution
Pregnancy theoretical teratogenic risk in first trimester (folate antagonist); adequate folate supplement should be given to mother
Breast-feeding present in milk—avoid breast-feeding during toxoplasmosis treatment; avoid other folate antagonists
Side-effects depression of haematopoiesis with high doses, rashes, insomnia
Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 5 years
Indication and dose Toxoplasmosis in pregnancy (in combination with sulfadiazine and folinic acid (section 8.1)), see notes above
• By mouth
Child 12–18 years 50 mg once daily until delivery

SULFADIAZINE

(Sulfadiazine)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>see under Co-trimoxazole, section 5.1.8; interactions: Appendix 1 (sulfonamides)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contra-indications</td>
<td>see under Co-trimoxazole, section 5.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic impairment</td>
<td>use with caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal impairment</td>
<td>use with caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td>risk of neonatal haemolytic and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester; fear of increased risk of kernicterus in neonates appears to be unfounded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast-feeding</td>
<td>small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolyis in G6PD-deficient infants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Side-effects see under Co-trimoxazole, section 5.1.8; also hypothyroidism, benign intracranial hypertension, optic neuropathy

Licensed use not licensed for use in toxoplasmosis

Indication and dose

Toxoplasmosis in pregnancy (in combination with pyrimethamine and folic acid (section 8.1)), see notes above
- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 g 3 times daily until delivery

Congenital toxoplasmosis (in combination with pyrimethamine and folic acid (section 8.1))
- By mouth
  - Neonate 50 mg/kg twice daily for 12 months

Sulfadiazine (non-proprietary) Tablets, sulfadiazine 500 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £37.50. Label: 9, 27

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

5.4.8 Drugs for pneumocystis pneumonia

Pneumonia caused by *Pneumocystis jiroveci* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) occurs in immunosuppressed children; it is a common cause of pneumonia in AIDS. Pneumocystis pneumonia should generally be treated by those experienced in its management. Blood gas measurement is used to assess disease severity.

Treatment

The recommended duration of treatment is generally 14–21 days.

Mild to moderate disease Co-trimoxazole (section 5.1.8) in high dosage is the drug of choice for the treatment of mild to moderate pneumocystis pneumonia.

Atovaquone or a combination of dapsone with trimethoprim 5 mg/kg every 6–8 hours (section 5.1.8) is given by mouth for the treatment of mild to moderate disease [unlicensed indication] in children who cannot tolerate co-trimoxazole.

A combination of clindamycin (section 5.1.6) and primaquine (section 5.4.1) may be used in the treatment of mild to moderate disease [unlicensed indication]; this combination is associated with considerable toxicity.

Severe disease Co-trimoxazole (section 5.1.8) in high dosage, given by mouth or by intravenous infusion, is the drug of choice for the treatment of severe pneumocystis pneumonia. Pentamidine isetionate given by intravenous infusion is an alternative for children who cannot tolerate co-trimoxazole, or who have not responded to it. Pentamidine isetinate is a potentially toxic drug that can cause severe hypotension during or immediately after infusion. If there is clinical improvement after 7–10 days of intravenous therapy with pentamidine isetinate, patients can be switched to oral treatment (e.g. atovaquone) to complete 21 days treatment.

Corticosteroid treatment can be lifesaving in those with severe pneumocystis pneumonia (see Adjunctive Therapy below).

Adjunctive therapy In moderate to severe pneumocystis infections associated with HIV infection, prednisolone (section 6.3.2) is given by mouth in a dose of 2 mg/kg (max. 80 mg daily) for 5 days (alternatively, hydrocortisone may be given parenterally); the dose is then reduced over the next 16 days and then stopped. Corticosteroid treatment should ideally be started at the same time as the anti-pneumocystis therapy and certainly no later than 24–72 hours afterwards. The corticosteroid should be withdrawn before anti-pneumocystis treatment is complete.

Prophylaxis

Prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia should be given to all children with a history of this infection, and to all HIV-infected infants aged 1 month–1 year. Prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia should also be considered for severely immunocompromised children. Prophylaxis should continue until immunity recovers sufficiently. It should not be discontinued if the child has oral candidiasis, continues to lose weight, or is receiving cytotoxic therapy or long-term immunosuppressant therapy.

Co-trimoxazole (section 5.1.8) by mouth is the drug of choice for prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia. Co-trimoxazole may be used in infants born to mothers with a high risk of transmission of infection. Inhaled pentamidine isetinate is better tolerated than parenteral pentamidine. Intermittent inhalation of pentamidine isetinate is used for prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia in children unable to tolerate co-trimoxazole. It is effective but children may be prone to extrapulmonary infection. Alternatively, dapsone can be used.

ATOVAQUONE

Cautions initial diarrhoea and difficulty in taking with food may reduce absorption (and require alternative therapy); other causes of pulmonary disease should be sought and treated; interactions: Appendix 1 (atovaquone)

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises caution—monitor more closely

Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution—monitor more closely

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects nausea, diarrhoea, vomiting, headache, insomnia, fever, anaemia, neutropenia, hyponatraemia, rash, pruritus; also reported, Stevens-Johnson syndrome

Licensed use not licensed for use in children
Indication and dose

**Treatment of Pneumocystis jirovecii (P. carinii) pneumonia in children intolerant of co-trimoxazole**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1–3 months: 15–20 mg/kg twice daily with food (particularly high fat) for 14–21 days
  - Child 3 months–2 years: 22.5 mg/kg twice daily with food (particularly high fat) for 14–21 days
  - Child 2–18 years: 15–20 mg/kg (max. 750 mg) twice daily with food (particularly high fat) for 14–21 days

**Wellvone® (GSK)**

Suspension, sugar-free, atovaquone 750 mg/5 mL, net price 226 mL (tutti-frutti-flavoured) = £405.31. Label: 21

- **With proganil hydrochloride**
  - See section 5.4.1

**Dapsone (Non-proprietary)**

Tablets, dapsone 50 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £32.53; 100 mg 28-tab pack = £47.44. Label: 8

**PENTAMIDINE ISETIONATE**

**Cautions** risk of severe hypotension following administration (monitor blood pressure before starting treatment, during administration, and at regular intervals until treatment concluded; child should be lying down when receiving drug parenterally); hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, coronary heart disease, bradycardia, history of ventricular arrhythmias, concomitant use with other drugs known to prolong Q-T interval; hypertension or hypotension; hyperglycaemia or hypoglycaemia; leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, or anaemia; carry out laboratory monitoring according to product literature; care required to protect personnel during handling and administration; interactions: Appendix 1 (pentamidine isetionate)

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution

**Renal impairment** reduce intravenous dose for pneumocystis pneumonia if creatinine clearance less than 10 mL/minute: in life-threatening infection, use 4 mg/kg once daily for 7–10 days, then 4 mg/kg on alternate days to complete course of at least 14 doses; in less severe infection, use 4 mg/kg on alternate days for at least 14 doses

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available

**Side-effects** severe reactions, sometimes fatal, due to hypotension, hypoglycaemia, pancreatitis, and arrhythmias; also leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, acute renal failure, hypocalcaemia; also reported: azotemia, abnormal liver-function tests, anaemia, hyperkalaemia, nausea and vomiting, dizziness, syncope, flushing, hyperglycaemia, rash, and taste disturbances; Stevens-Johnson syndrome reported; on inhalation, bronchoconstriction (may be prevented by prior use of bronchodilators), cough and shortness of breath; discomfort, pain, induration, abscess formation, and muscle necrosis at injection site

**Licensed use nebuliser solution not licensed for primary prevention of pneumocystis pneumonia**

**Indication and dose**

**Treatment of Pneumocystis jirovecii (P. carinii) pneumonia**

- By intravenous infusion
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 4 mg/kg once daily

**Prophylaxis of Pneumocystis jirovecii (P. carinii) pneumonia**

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 2 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) once daily

**Proaimine**

Tablets, proaimine 50 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £5.32. Label: 5

**Pneumocystis jirovecii (P. carinii) pneumonia**

- By inhalation of nebulised solution (using suitable equipment—consult product literature)
  - Child 5–18 years: 300 mg every 4 weeks or 150 mg every 2 weeks

**Visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar, section 5.4.5)**

- By deep intramuscular injection
  - Child 1–18 years: 3–4 mg/kg on alternate days to max. total of 10 injections; course may be repeated if necessary
Cutaneous leishmaniasis
By deep intramuscular injection
Child 1–18 years 3–4 mg/kg once or twice weekly until condition resolves (but see also section 5.4.5)

Trypanosomiasis
By deep intramuscular injection or intravenous infusion
Child 1–18 years 4 mg/kg daily or on alternate days to total of 7–10 injections

Administration
Direct intravenous injection should be avoided whenever possible and never given rapidly; intramuscular injections should be deep and preferably given into the buttock.

For intravenous infusion, reconstitute 300 mg with 3–5 mL Water for Injections (displacement value may be significant), then dilute required dose with 50–250 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 60 minutes

Pentacarinat® (Sanofi-Aventis)
Injection, powder for reconstitution, pentamidine isetionate, net price 300-mg vial = £30.45
Caution in handling
Pentamidine isetionate is toxic and personnel should be adequately protected during handling and administration—consult product literature

Note
Pentacarinat® Injection (dissolved in water for injection) may be used for nebulisation

5.5 Anthelmintics

5.5.1 Drugs for threadworms (pinworms, Enterobius vermicularis)

Anthelmintics are effective in threadworm infections, but their use needs to be combined with hygienic measures to break the cycle of auto-infection. All members of the family require treatment.

Adult threadworms do not live for longer than 6 weeks and for development of fresh worms, ova must be swallowed and exposed to the action of digestive juices in the upper intestinal tract. Direct multiplication of worms does not take place in the large bowel. Adult female worms lay ova on the perianal skin which causes pruritus; scratching the area then leads to ova being transmitted on fingers to the mouth, often via food eaten with unwashed hands. Washing hands and scrubbing nails before each meal and after each visit to the toilet is essential. A bath taken immediately after rising will remove ova laid during the night.

Mebendazole is the drug of choice for treating threadworm infection in children over 6 months. It is given as a single dose; as reinfection is very common, a second dose may be given after 2 weeks.

Piperazine is available in combination with sennosides as a single-dose preparation.

MEBENDAZOLE

Cautions interactions: Appendix 1 (mebendazole)

Note
The patient information leaflet in the Vermox® pack includes the statement that it is not suitable for women known to be pregnant or for children under 2 years

Pregnancy
manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies

Breast-feeding
amount present in milk too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects
abdominal pain; less commonly diarrhoea, flatulence, rash; very rarely hepatitis, convulsions, neutropenia, urticaria, alopecia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis

Licensed use
not licensed for use in children under 2 years

Indication and dose

Threadworms
• By mouth
Child 6 months—18 years 100 mg as a single dose; if reinfection occurs second dose may be needed after 2 weeks

Whipworms, hookworms (section 5.5.4)
• By mouth
Child 1–18 years 100 mg twice daily for 3 days

Roundworms (section 5.5.2)
• By mouth
Child 1—2 years 100 mg twice daily for 3 days
Child 2—18 years 100 mg twice daily for 3 days or 500 mg as a single dose
Mebendazole (section 5.5.1) is effective against *Ascaris lumbricoides* and is generally considered to be the drug of choice.

**LEVAMISOLE**

Cautions  
epilepsy; juvenile idiopathic arthritis; Sjögren’s syndrome

**Contra-indications**  
blood disorders

Hepatic impairment  
use with caution—dose adjustment may be necessary

Pregnancy  
embryotoxic in animal studies, avoid if possible

Breast-feeding  
no information available

**Side-effects**  
nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea; dizziness, headache; on prolonged treatment/taste disturbances, insomnia, convulsions, influenza-like syndrome, blood disorders, vasculitis, arthralgia, myalgia, rash

Licensed use  
not licensed

**Indication and dose**

**Roundworm (Ascaris lumbricoides)**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 2.5–3 mg/kg (max. 150 mg) as a single dose

**Hookworm**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 2.5 mg/kg (max. 150 mg) as a single dose repeated after 7 days if severe

**Nephrotic syndrome (specialist supervision section 6.3.2)**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 2.5 mg/kg (max. 150 mg) on alternate days

Levamisole (Non-proprietary)  
Tablets, levamisole (as hydrochloride) 50 mg Label: 4

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**5.5.3 Drugs for tapeworm infections**

**Taenicides**

**Niclosamide** [unlicensed] (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is the most widely used drug for tapeworm infections and side-effects are limited to occasional
gastro-intestinal upset, lightheadedness, and pruritus; it is not effective against larval worms. Fears of developing cystercerosis in Taenia solium infections have proved unfounded. All the same, an antiemetic can be given before treatment and a laxative can be given 2 hours after niclosamide.

**Praziquantel** [unlicensed] is available from Merck Serono (Cysticide®); it is as effective as niclosamide and is given to children over 4 years of age as a single dose of 5–10 mg/kg after a light breakfast (or as a single dose of 25 mg/kg for Hymenolepis nana).

**Hydatid disease**

Cysts caused by Echinococcus granulosus grow slowly and asymptomatic children do not always require treatment. Surgical treatment remains the method of choice in many situations. **Albendazole** [unlicensed] (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is used in conjunction with surgery to reduce the risk of recurrence or as primary treatment in inoperable cases. Albendazole is given to children over 2 years of age in a dose of 7.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. 400 mg twice daily) for 28 days followed by a 14-day break and then repeated for up to 2–3 cycles. Alveolar echinococcosis due to E. multilocularis is usually fatal if untreated. Surgical removal with albendazole cover is the treatment of choice, but where effective surgery is impossible, repeated cycles of albendazole (for a year or more) may help. Careful monitoring of liver function is particularly important during drug treatment.

**Drugs for hookworms**

(ancylostomiasis, necatoriasis)

Hookworms live in the upper small intestine and draw blood from the point of their attachment to their host. An iron-deficiency anaemia may occur and, if present, effective treatment of the infection requires not only expulsion of the worms but treatment of the anaemia.

**Mebendazole** (section 5.5.1) has a useful broad-spectrum activity, and is effective against hookworms. **Albendazole** [unlicensed] (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) given as a single dose of 400 mg in children over 2 years, is an alternative. **Levamisole** is also effective (section 5.5.2).

**Schistosomicides**

(bilharziasis)

Adult Schistosoma haematobium worms live in the genito-urinary veins and adult S. mansoni in those of the colon and mesentery. S. japonicum is more widely distributed in veins of the alimentary tract and portal system.

**Praziquantel** [unlicensed] is available from Merck Serono (Cysticide®) and is effective against all human schistosomes. In children over 4 years the dose is 20 mg/kg followed after 4–6 hours by a further dose of 20 mg/kg (20 mg/kg 3 times daily for one day for S. japonicum infections). No serious adverse effects have been reported. Of all the available schistosomicides, it has the most attractive combination of effectiveness, broad-spectrum activity, and low toxicity.

**Diethylcarbamazine** [unlicensed] (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is effective against microfilariae and adult worms of Loa loa, Wuchereria bancrofti, and Brugia malayi. To minimise reactions, treatment in children over 1 month is commenced with a dose of diethylcarbamazine citrate 1 mg/kg in divided doses on the first day and increased gradually over 3 days to 6 mg/kg daily (3 mg/kg daily if child under 10 years) in divided doses; length of treatment varies according to infection type, and usually gives a radical cure for these infections. Close medical supervision is necessary particularly in the early phase of treatment. In heavy infections there may be a febrile reaction, and in heavy Loa loa infection there is a small risk of encephalopathy. In such cases specialist advice should be sought, and treatment must be given under careful in-patient supervision and stopped at the first sign of cerebral involvement.

**Ivermectin** [unlicensed] (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) is very effective in onchocerciasis and it is now the drug of choice. In children over 5 years, a single dose of 150 micrograms/kg by mouth produces a prolonged reduction in microfilarial levels. Retreatment at intervals of 6 to 12 months depending on symptoms must be given until the adult worms die out. Reactions are usually slight and most commonly take the form of temporary aggravation of itching and rash. Diethylcarbamazine or suramin should no longer be used for onchocerciasis because of their toxicity.

**Drugs for cutaneous larva migrans**

(creeping eruption)

Dog and cat hookworm larvae may enter human skin where they produce slowly extending itching tracks usually on the foot. Single tracks can be treated with topical thiabendazole (no commercial preparation available). Multiple infections respond to **ivermectin**, **albendazole** or **tiabendazole** (thiabendazole) by mouth (all unlicensed and available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809).
5.5.8 Drugs for strongyloidiasis

Adult forms of *Strongyloides stercoralis* live in the gut and produce larvae which penetrate the gut wall and invade the tissues, setting up a cycle of auto-infection. **Ivermectin** [unlicensed] in a dose of 200 micrograms/kg daily for 2 days is the treatment of choice for chronic *Strongyloides* infection in children over 5 years. **Albendazole** [unlicensed] is an alternative in children over 2 years given in a dose of 400 mg twice daily for 3 days, repeated after 3 weeks if necessary.

Both of these drugs are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809.
6 Endocrine system

6.1 Drugs used in diabetes

6.1.1 Insulins

6.1.1.1 Short-acting insulins

6.1.1.2 Intermediate- and long-acting insulins

6.1.1.3 Hypodermic equipment

6.1.2 Antidiabetic drugs

6.1.2.1 Sulfonylureas

6.1.2.2 Biguanides

6.1.2.3 Other antidiabetic drugs

6.1.3 Diabetic ketoacidosis

6.1.4 Treatment of hypoglycaemia

6.1.5 Treatment of diabetic nephropathy and neuropathy

6.1.6 Diagnostic and monitoring devices for diabetes mellitus

6.2 Thyroid and antithyroid drugs

6.2.1 Thyroid hormones

6.2.2 Antithyroid drugs

6.3 Corticosteroids

6.3.1 Replacement therapy

6.3.2 Glucocorticoid therapy

6.4 Sex hormones

6.4.1 Female sex hormones

6.4.1.1 Oestrogens

6.4.1.2 Progestogens

6.4.2 Male sex hormones and antagonists

6.4.3 Anabolic steroids

6.5 Hypothalamic and pituitary hormones

6.5.1 Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormones including growth hormone

6.5.2 Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists

6.6 Drugs affecting bone metabolism

6.6.1 Calcitonin

6.6.2 Bisphosphonates

6.7 Other endocrine drugs

6.7.1 Bromocriptine and other dopaminergic drugs

6.7.2 Drugs affecting gonadotrophins

6.7.3 Metyrapone

6.7.4 Somatomedins

6.8 Genomic and epigenetic effects of endocrine disruptors

6.9 Endocrinology of obstructive sleep apnoea

For hormonal contraception, see section 7.3.

This chapter includes advice on the drug management of the following:
- Adrenal suppression during illness, trauma or surgery, p. 371
- Serious infections in patients taking corticosteroids, p. 371
- Nephrotic syndrome, p. 371
- Delayed puberty, p. 377
- Precocious puberty, p. 380
- Diabetes insipidus, p. 385

6.1 Drugs used in diabetes

6.1.1 Insulins

6.1.2 Antidiabetic drugs

6.1.3 Diabetic ketoacidosis

6.1.4 Treatment of hypoglycaemia

6.1.5 Treatment of diabetic nephropathy and neuropathy

6.1.6 Diagnostic and monitoring devices for diabetes mellitus

Diabetes mellitus occurs because of a lack of insulin or resistance to its action. It is diagnosed by measuring fasting or random blood-glucose concentration (and occasionally by oral glucose tolerance test). Although there are many subtypes, the two principle classes of diabetes are type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes.

Type 1 diabetes, (formerly referred to as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM)), is due to a deficiency of insulin following autoimmune destruction of pancreatic beta cells and is the most common form of diabetes in children. Children with type 1 diabetes require administration of insulin.

Type 2 diabetes, (formerly referred to as non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM)), is rare in children but the incidence is increasing, particularly in adolescents, as obesity increases. It results from reduced secretion of insulin or from peripheral resistance to the action of insulin, or from a combination of both. Although children may be controlled on diet alone, many require oral antidiabetic drugs or insulin to maintain satisfactory control. There is limited information available on the use of oral anti-diabetic drugs in children (see section 6.1.2). In overweight individuals, type 2 diabetes may be prevented by losing weight and increasing physical activity.

Genetic defects of beta-cell function (formerly referred to as maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY)), describes a number of rare disease states, characterised by onset of mild hyperglycaemia, generally before 25 years of age. A sulphonylurea, such as gliclazide (p. 359), may be effective in these patients.
Treatment of diabetes
Treatment should be aimed at
alleviating symptoms and minimising the risk of long-
term complications (see below).

Diabetes is a strong risk factor for cardiovascular dis-
ease later in life. Other risk factors for cardiovascular
disease (smoking, hypertension, obesity and hyperlipid-
aemia) should be addressed. The use of an ACE inhibitor
(section 2.5.5.1) and of a lipid-regulating drug (section
2.12) can be beneficial in children with diabetes and a
high cardiovascular disease risk. For reference to the use
of an ACE inhibitor in the management of diabetic
nephropathy, see section 6.1.5.

Prevention of diabetic complications
Although rare, retinopathy, neuropathy and nephropathy
can occur in children with diabetes. Screening for complica-
tions should begin 5 years after diagnosis of diabetes or
from 12 years of age. Optimal glycaemic control in both
type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes reduces, in the long
term, the risk of microvascular complications including
retinopathy, development of proteinuria and to some extent
neuropathy.

A measure of the total glycosylated (or glycated) haem-
globin (HbA) or a specific fraction (HbA1c) provides a
good indication of long-term glycemic control. Over-
all it is ideal to aim for an HbA1c concentration of 48–
59 mmol/mol or less (reference range 20–42 mmol/
mol), but this cannot always be achieved and for those
using insulin there is a significantly increased risk of
disabling hypoglycaemia.

Measurement of HbA1c
HbA1c values were previously aligned to the assay
used in the Diabetes Control and Complications
Trial (DCCT) and expressed as a percentage. A
new standard, specific for HbA1c, has been created
by the International Federation of Clinical Chemis-
try and Laboratory Medicine (IFCC), which
expresses HbA1c values in mmol of glycosylated
haemoglobin per mol of haemoglobin. From 1 June
2011 UK laboratories will only express results
in IFCC-standardised units (mmol/mol).

Equivalent values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IFCC-HbA1c (mmol/mol)</th>
<th>DCCT-HbA1c (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Laboratory measurement of serum-fructosamine con-
centration is technically simpler and cheaper than the
measurement of HbA1c, and can be used to assess
control over short periods of time, particularly when
HbA1c monitoring is invalid (e.g. disturbed erythrocyte
turnover or abnormal haemoglobin type).

 Tight control of blood pressure in hypertensive children
with type 2 diabetes may reduce mortality significantly
and protects visual acuity (by reducing considerably the
risks of maculopathy and retinal photocoagulation) (see
also section 2.5).

Driving
Information on the requirements for driving
vehicles by individuals receiving treatment for diabetes
is available in the BNF (section 6.1) or from the DVLA at

6.1.1 Insulins
Insulin is a polypeptide hormone that plays a key role in
the regulation of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metab-
olism. There are differences in the amino-acid sequence
of animal insulins, human insulins, and the human insu-
lin analogues. Human sequence insulin may be produced
semisynthetically by enzymatic modification of porcine insulin (emp) or biosynthetically by recombi-
nant DNA technology using bacteria (crb, prb) or yeast
(pyr).

Immuneological resistance to insulin action is uncom-
mon. Preparations of human sequence insulin should
theoretically be less immunogenic than other insulin
preparations, but no real advantage has been shown in
trials.

Insulin is inactivated by gastro-intestinal enzymes, and
must therefore be given by injection; the subcutaneous
route is ideal in most circumstances. Insulin is usually
injected into the thighs, buttocks, or abdomen; absorp-
tion from a limb site can be increased if the limb is used
in strenuous exercise after the injection. Generally, sub-
cutaneous insulin injections cause few problems; lipo-
dystrophy may occur and is a factor in poor glycemic
control. Lipodystrophy can be minimised by using dif-
ferent injection sites in rotation. Local allergic reactions
are rare.

Insulin should be given to all children with type 1
diabetes; it may also be needed to treat type 2 diabetes
either when other methods cannot control the condition
or during periods of acute illness or peri-operatively.
Insulin is required in all instances of ketoacidosis (sec-
tion 6.1.3), which can develop rapidly in children.

6.1.1.1 Insulin preparations
Insulin preparations can be divided into 3 types:
- those of short duration which have a relatively
  rapid onset of action, namely soluble insulin and
  the rapid-acting insulin analogues, insulin aspart,
  insulin glulisine, and insulin lispro (section 6.1.1.1);
- those with an intermediate action, e.g. isophane
  insulin (section 6.1.1.2); and
- those whose action is slower in onset and lasts for
  long periods, e.g. protamine zinc insulin, l; insulin
detemir, and insulin glargine (section 6.1.1.2).
The duration of action of a particular type of insulin can vary from one child to another, and needs to be assessed individually.

Mixtures of insulin preparations may be required and appropriate combinations have to be determined for the individual child. Treatment should be started with several doses of short-acting insulin (soluble insulin or a rapid-acting insulin analogue) given throughout the day with a longer-acting insulin given once or twice daily. Alternatively, for those who have difficulty with, or prefer not to use, multiple daily injection regimens or in whom such regimens fail to achieve adequate glycaemic control, a mixture of premixed short- and intermediate-acting insulins (most commonly in a proportion of 30% soluble insulin and 70% isophane insulin) can be given twice daily. The dose of short-acting or rapid-acting insulin (or the proportion of the short-acting soluble insulin component in premixed insulin) can be increased in those with excessive postprandial hyperglycaemia. The dose of insulin is increased gradually according to the child’s individual requirements, taking care to avoid troublesome hypoglycaemia.

Initiation of insulin may be followed by a partial remission phase or ‘honeymoon period’ when lower doses of insulin are required than are subsequently necessary to maintain glycaemic control.

**Examples of insulin regimens**
- Multiple injection regimen: short-acting insulin or rapid-acting insulin analogue, before meals
  - With intermediate-acting or long-acting insulin, once or twice daily;
- Short-acting insulin or rapid-acting insulin analogue mixed with intermediate-acting insulin, twice daily (before breakfast and the main evening meal);
- Short-acting insulin or rapid-acting insulin analogue mixed with intermediate-acting insulin, before breakfast
  - With short-acting or rapid-acting insulin analogue alone, before afternoon snack or the main evening meal, and intermediate-acting insulin or long-acting insulin, at bedtime;
- Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (see below).

**Insulin requirements** Most prepubertal children require around 0.6–0.8 units/kg/day of insulin after the initial temporary remission phase. Unless the child has a very sedentary life-style, a requirement for higher doses may indicate poor compliance, poor absorption of insulin from the injection site (e.g. because of lipohypertrophic sites), or the beginning of puberty. During puberty up to 1.5–2 units/kg/day of insulin may be required, especially during growth spurts. Around 1 year after menarche or after the growth spurt in boys, the dose may need to be adjusted to avoid excessive weight gain. Insulin requirements can be increased by infection, stress, and accidental or surgical trauma. Insulin requirements can be reduced in very active individuals, in those with certain endocrine disorders (e.g. Addison’s disease, hyperpituitarism), or in coeliac disease. Insulin requirements should be assessed frequently in all these circumstances.

**Hepatic impairment** Insulin requirements may be decreased in patients with hepatic impairment.

**Renal impairment** Insulin requirements may fall in patients with renal impairment and therefore dose reduction may be necessary. The compensatory response to hypoglycaemia is impaired in renal impairment.

**Pregnancy and breast-feeding** During pregnancy and breast-feeding, insulin requirements may alter and doses should be assessed frequently by an experienced diabetes physician. The dose of insulin generally needs to be increased in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy. The short-acting insulin analogues, insulin aspart and insulin lispro, are not known to be harmful, and may be used during pregnancy and breast-feeding. The safety of long-acting insulin analogues in pregnancy has not been established, therefore isophane insulin is recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed.

**Insulin administration** Insulin is generally given by subcutaneous injection; the injection site should be rotated to prevent lipohypertrophy. Injection devices (‘pens’) (section 6.1.1.3), which hold the insulin in a cartridge and meter the required dose, are convenient to use. Insulin syringes (for use with needles) are less popular with children and carers, but may be required for insulins not available in cartridge form.

For intensive insulin regimens multiple subcutaneous injections (3 or more times daily) are usually recommended.

Short-acting insulins (soluble insulin, insulin aspart, insulin glulisine, and insulin lispro) can also be given by continuous subcutaneous infusion using a portable infusion pump. This device delivers a continuous basal insulin infusion and patient-activated bolus doses at meal times. This technique can be useful for children who suffer recurrent hypoglycaemia or marked morning rise in blood-glucose concentration despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (see also NICE guidance below). Children on subcutaneous insulin infusion must be highly motivated, able to monitor their blood-glucose concentration or have it monitored by a carer, and have expert training, advice, and supervision from an experienced healthcare team.

**NICE guidance**

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion for the treatment of diabetes mellitus (type 1) (July 2008)

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is recommended as an option in children under 12 years with type 1 diabetes:
- who suffer repeated or unpredictable hypoglycaemia, whilst attempting to achieve optimal glycaemic control with multiple-injection regimens, or
- whose glycaemic control remains inadequate (HbA1c over 8.5% [69 mmol/mol]) despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (including the use of long-acting insulin analogues where appropriate).

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is also recommended as an option for children under 12 years with type 1 diabetes for whom multiple-injection regimens are considered impractical or inappropriate. Children on insulin pumps should undergo a trial of multiple-injection therapy between the ages of 12 and 18 years.
Soluble insulin by the *intravenous route* is reserved for urgent treatment e.g. in diabetic ketoacidosis, and for fine control in serious illness and in the peri-operative period (see under Diabetes and Surgery, below).

**Monitoring** All carers and children need to be trained to monitor blood-glucose concentrations (section 6.1.6). Since blood-glucose concentration varies substantially throughout the day, ‘normoglycaemia’ cannot always be achieved throughout a 24-hour period without causing damaging hypoglycaemia. It is therefore best to recommend that children should maintain a blood-glucose concentration of between 4 and 10 mmol/litre for most of the time (4–8 mmol/litre before meals and less than 10 mmol/litre after meals), while accepting that on occasions, for brief periods, it will be above these values; efforts should be made to prevent the blood-glucose concentration from falling below 4 mmol/litre. Children using multiple injection regimens should understand how to adjust their insulin dose according to their carbohydrate intake. With fixed-dose insulin regimens, the carbohydrate intake needs to be regulated, and should be distributed throughout the day to match the insulin regimen. The intake of energy and of simple and complex carbohydrates should be adequate to allow normal growth and development but obesity must be avoided.

**Hypoglycaemia** Hypoglycaemia is a potential problem for all children using insulin, and they and their carers should be given careful instruction on how to avoid it.

Very tight control of diabetes lowers the blood-glucose concentration needed to trigger hypoglycaemic symptoms; an increase in the frequency of hypoglycaemic episodes may reduce the warning symptoms experienced by the child. Loss of warning of hypoglycaemia among insulin-treated children can be a serious hazard, especially for cyclists and drivers.

To restore the warning signs, episodes of hypoglycaemia must be minimised; this involves appropriate adjustment of insulin type, dose, and frequency, together with suitable timing and quantity of meals and snacks.

**Diabetes and surgery** Children with type 1 diabetes should undergo surgery in centres with facilities for, and expertise in, the care of children with diabetes. Detailed local protocols should be available to all healthcare professionals involved in the treatment of these children.

Children with type 1 diabetes who require surgery:
- should be admitted to hospital for general anaesthesia;
- should receive insulin, even if they are fasting, to avoid ketoacidosis;
- should receive glucose infusion when fasting before an anaesthetic to prevent hypoglycaemia;
- should have careful monitoring of blood-glucose concentration because surgery may cause hyperglycaemia.

**Elective surgery** Surgery in children with diabetes is best scheduled early on the list, preferably in the morning. If glycaemic control is poor it is advisable to admit the child well in advance of surgery. On the evening before surgery, blood-glucose should be measured frequently, especially before meals and snacks and at bedtime; urine should be tested for ketones. The usual evening or bedtime insulin and bedtime snack should be given. Ketosis or severe hypoglycaemia require correction, preferably by overnight intravenous infusion (section 6.1.3 and section 6.1.4), and the surgery may need to be postponed.

For minor procedures that require fasting, a slight modification of the usual regimen may be all that is necessary e.g. for early morning procedures delay insulin and food until immediately after the procedure.

For other types of elective surgery, consult local treatment protocols.

**Emergency surgery** Intravenous fluids and an insulin infusion should be started immediately (see Fluids and Continuous Insulin Infusion, below). If ketoacidosis is present the recommendations for diabetic ketoacidosis should be followed (section 6.1.3).

**Intravenous fluids and continuous insulin infusion** Blood-glucose and plasma-electrolyte concentrations must be measured frequently in a child receiving intravenous support. Intravenous infusion should be continued until after the child starts to eat and drink. The following infusions should be used and adjusted according to the child’s fluid and electrolyte requirements:
- Constant infusion of sodium chloride 0.45% and glucose 5% intravenous infusion together with potassium chloride 20 mmol/litre (provided that plasma-potassium concentration is not raised) at a rate determined by factors such as volume depletion and age; the amount of potassium chloride infused is adjusted according to plasma electrolyte measurements;
- Constant infusion of soluble insulin 1 unit/mL in sodium chloride 0.9% intravenous infusion initially at a rate of 0.025 units/kg/hour (up to 0.05 units/kg/hour if the child is unwell), then adjusted according to blood-glucose concentration (frequent monitoring necessary) in line with locally agreed protocols and the child’s volume depletion and age;
- Blood-glucose concentration should be maintained between 5 and 10 mmol/litre. If the glucose concentration falls below 5 mmol/litre, glucose 10% intravenous infusion may be required; conversely, if the glucose concentration persistently exceeds 14 mmol/litre, sodium chloride 0.9% intravenous infusion should be substituted;
- The insulin infusion may be stopped temporarily for 10–15 minutes if blood-glucose concentration falls below 4 mmol/litre.

The usual subcutaneous insulin regimen should be started before the first meal (but the dose may need to be 10–20% higher than usual if the child is still bed-bound or unwell) and the intravenous insulin infusion stopped 1 hour later. If glycaemic control is not adequately achieved, additional insulin can be given in the following ways:
- additional doses of soluble insulin at any of the 4 injection times (before meals or bedtime) or
- temporary addition of intravenous insulin infusion to subcutaneous regimen or
- complete reversion to intravenous insulin infusion (particularly if the child is unwell).

**Neonatal hyperglycaemia** Newborn babies are relatively intolerant of glucose, especially in the first week of
life and if premature. If intravenous glucose is necessary e.g. for total parenteral nutrition, infuse at a lower rate for 6–12 hours and the glucose intolerance should resolve. Insulin is not needed for such transient glucose intolerance, but may be needed if blood-glucose concentration is persistently high.

**Neonatal diabetes** Neonatal diabetes is a rare condition that presents with acidosis, dehydration, hyperglycaemia, and rarely ketosis; it responds to continuous insulin infusion. When the neonate is stable, treatment can be switched to subcutaneous insulin given once or twice a day. Treatment is normally required for 4–6 weeks in transient forms, but may be required permanently in some cases.

### 6.1.1 Short-acting insulins

**Soluble insulin** is a short-acting form of insulin. For maintenance regimens it is usual to inject it 15 to 30 minutes before meals.

Soluble insulin is the most appropriate form of insulin for use in diabetic emergencies and at the time of surgery. It can be given intravenously and intramuscularly, as well as subcutaneously.

When injected subcutaneously, soluble insulin has a rapid onset of action (30 to 60 minutes), a peak action between 2 and 4 hours, and a duration of action of up to 8 hours.

When injected intravenously, soluble insulin has a very short half-life of only about 5 minutes and its effect disappears within 30 minutes.

The rapid-acting human insulin analogues, **insulin aspart**, **insulin glulisine**, and **insulin lispro**, have a faster onset (10–20 minutes) and shorter duration of action (2–5 hours) than soluble insulin; as a result, compared with soluble insulin, fasting and preprandial blood-glucose concentrations are a little higher, postprandial blood-glucose concentrations are a little lower, and hypoglycaemia occurs slightly less frequently. These rapid-acting insulins are ideal for prandial dosing in a multiple injection regimen in combination with a long-acting insulin once or twice daily. Insulin aspart, insulin glulisine, and insulin lispro can be administered by subcutaneous infusion (see Insulin Administration, above). Insulin aspart and insulin lispro can also be administered intravenously and can be used as alternatives to soluble insulin for diabetic emergencies and at the time of surgery.

**INSULIN** (Insulin Injection; Neutral Insulin; Soluble Insulin)

A sterile solution of insulin (i.e. bovine or porcine) or of human insulin; pH 6.6–8.0

- **Cautions** section 6.1.1
- **Interactions**: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)
- **Hepatic impairment** section 6.1.1
- **Renal impairment** section 6.1.1
- **Pregnancy** section 6.1.1
- **Breast-feeding** section 6.1.1
- **Side-effects** see notes above; transient oedema; local reactions and fat hypertrophy at injection site; rarely hypersensitivity reactions including urticaria, rash; overdose causes hypoglycaemia

### Indication and dose

**Hyperglycaemia during illness, neonatal diabetes, neonatal hyperglycaemia**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Neonate: 0.02–0.125 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to blood-glucose concentration, see also notes above
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 0.025–0.1 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to blood-glucose concentration, see also notes above

**Diabetes mellitus**

- **By subcutaneous injection**
  - According to requirements (see notes above)
  - Note: Rotate injection site to reduce local reactions and fat hypertrophy

**Diabetic ketoacidosis** section 6.1.3

**Surgery in children with diabetes** section 6.1.1

**Administration** For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 1 unit/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; insulin may be adsorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin.

**Neonatal intensive care**, dilute 5 units to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/kg/hour provides a dose of 0.01 units/kg/hour

- **Highly purified animal**
  - **Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed
  - **Hypurin® Bovine Neutral** (Wockhardt)
    - **Injection**, soluble insulin (bovine, highly purified) 100 units/mL. Net price 10-mL vial = £18.48; cartridges (for Autopen® Classic) 5 × 3 mL = £27.72
  - **Hypurin® Porcine Neutral** (Wockhardt)
    - **Injection**, soluble insulin (porcine, highly purified) 100 units/mL. Net price 10-mL vial = £16.80; cartridges (for Autopen® Classic) 5 × 3 mL = £25.20

- **Human sequence**
  - **Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed
  - **Actrapid®** (Novo Nordisk)
    - **Injection**, soluble insulin (human, ppr) 100 units/mL. Net price 10-mL vial = £7.48
    - **Note** Not recommended for use in subcutaneous insulin infusion pumps—may precipitate in catheter or needle
  - **Humulin S®** (Lilly)
    - **Injection**, soluble insulin (human, prb) 100 units/mL. Net price 10-mL vial = £15.68; 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for Autopen® Classic or HumaPen®) = £19.08
  - **Insuman® Rapid** (Sanofi-Aventis)
    - **Injection**, soluble insulin (human, crb) 100 units/mL. Net price 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for ClikSTAR® and OptiPen® Pro 1, and Autopen® 24) = £17.50; 5 × 3-mL Insuman® Rapid OptiSet® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 2–40 units, allowing 2-unit dosage adjustment) = £17.50
    - **Note** Not recommended for use in subcutaneous insulin infusion pumps

- **Mixed preparations**
  - See Biphasic Isophane Insulin (section 6.1.1.2)
6.1.1 Insulins

**INSULIN ASPART**
(Recombinant human insulin analogue)

**Cautions** section 6.1.1; interactions: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

**Hepatic impairment** section 6.1.1

**Renal impairment** section 6.1.1

**Pregnancy** section 6.1.1

**Breast-feeding** section 6.1.1

**Side-effects** see under Insulin

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 2 years

**Indication and dose**

**Diabetes mellitus**

- By subcutaneous injection
  - Immediately before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements
- By subcutaneous infusion, or intravenous injection, or intravenous infusion
  - According to requirements

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 0.05–1 unit/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; insulin may be adsorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin.

**NovoRapid®** (Novo Nordisk) \(\text{[p. 3]}\)

Injection, insulin aspart (recombinant human insulin analogue) 100 units/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £16.28; Penfil® cartridge (for Innovo® and NovoPen® devices) 5 × 3-mL = £28.84; 5 × 3-mL FlexPen® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–60 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £32.00

Counselling Show container to patient and confirm that the expected version is dispensed

**INSULIN GLULISINE**
(Recombinant human insulin analogue)

**Cautions** section 6.1.1; interactions: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

**Hepatic impairment** section 6.1.1

**Renal impairment** section 6.1.1

**Pregnancy** section 6.1.1

**Breast-feeding** section 6.1.1

**Side-effects** see under Insulin

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 6 years

**Indication and dose**

**Diabetes mellitus**

- By subcutaneous injection
  - Immediately before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements
- By subcutaneous infusion or intravenous infusion
  - According to requirements

**Apida®** (Sanofi-Aventis) \(\text{[p. 3]}\)

Injection, insulin glulisine (recombinant human insulin analogue) 100 units/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £16.61; 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for Autopen® Classic or HumPen®) = £28.31; 5 × 3-mL Humalog® KwikPen prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–60 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £29.46

Counselling Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed

**Humalog®** (Lilly) \(\text{[p. 3]}\)

Injection, insulin lispro (recombinant human insulin analogue) 100 units/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £16.61; 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for Autopen® Classic or HumPen®) = £28.31; 5 × 3-mL Humalog® KwikPen prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–60 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £29.46

Counselling Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed

**INSULIN LISPRO**
(Recombinant human insulin analogue)

**Cautions** section 6.1.1; children under 12 years (use only if benefit likely compared to soluble insulin); interactions: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

**Hepatic impairment** section 6.1.1

**Renal impairment** section 6.1.1

**Pregnancy** section 6.1.1

**Breast-feeding** section 6.1.1

**Side-effects** see under Insulin

**Indication and dose**

**Diabetes mellitus**

- By subcutaneous injection
  - Shortly before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements
- By subcutaneous infusion, or intravenous injection, or intravenous infusion
  - According to requirements

**Administration** For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 0.1–1 unit/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; insulin may be adsorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin.

**6.1.1.2 Intermediate- and long-acting insulins**

When given by subcutaneous injection, intermediate- and long-acting insulins have an onset of action of approximately 1–2 hours, a maximal effect at 4–12 hours, and a duration of 16–35 hours. Some are given twice daily in conjunction with short-acting (soluble) insulin, and others are given once daily. Soluble insulin can be mixed with intermediate and long-acting insulins (except insulin detemir and insulin glargine), essentially retaining the properties of the two components, although there may be some blunting of the initial effect of the soluble insulin component (especially on mixing with protamine zinc insulin, see below).

Close monitoring of blood glucose is essential when introducing a change to the insulin regimen; the total daily dose as well as any concomitant treatment may need to be adjusted.
**INSULIN DETEMIR**
(Recombinant human insulin analogue—long-acting)

**Cautions** section 6.1.1; interactions: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

**Hepatic impairment** section 6.1.1

**Renal impairment** section 6.1.1

**Pregnancy** section 6.1.1

**Breast-feeding** section 6.1.1

**Side-effects** see under Insulin (section 6.1.1.1)

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 6 years

**Indication and dose**

- **Diabetes mellitus**
  - By subcutaneous injection

  **Child over 6 years** according to requirements

**Levemir**
(Novo Nordisk)

Injection, insulin detemir (recombinant human insulin analogue) 100 units/mL, net price £26.00; 5 x 3-mL cartridge (for FlexPen®), OptiPen® Pro 1, and Autopen® 24) = £39.00; 5 x 3-mL OptiClick® cartridge (for OptiClick® Pen) = £40.36; 5 x 3-mL Lantus® OptiSet® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 2-40 units, allowing 2-unit dosage adjustment) = £39.00; 5 x 3-mL Lantus® SoloStar® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1-80 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £40.36

**Note** The Scottish Medicines Consortium (p. 3) has advised (October 2002) that insulin glargine is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of type 1 diabetes:

- in those who are at risk of or experience unacceptable frequency or severity of nocturnal hypoglycaemia on attempting to achieve better hypoglycaemic control during treatment with other insulins
- as a once daily insulin therapy for patients who require a carer to administer their insulin

It is not recommended for routine use in patients with type 2 diabetes unless they suffer from recurrent episodes of hypoglycaemia or require assistance with their insulin injections.

**Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed.
Highly purified animal

Hypurin® Bovine Lente (Wockhardt) Injection, insulin zinc suspension (bovine, highly purified) 100 units/mL. Net price 10-mL vial = £27.72 Counselling Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed

ISOPHANE INSULIN

(Isophane Insulin Injection; Isophane Protamine Zinc Insulin Injection; Isophane Insulin (NPH)—intermediate acting)

A sterile suspension of bovine or porcine insulin or of human insulin in the form of a complex obtained by the addition of protamine sulphate or another suitable protamine

Cautions section 6.1.1; interactions: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

Hepatic impairment section 6.1.1

Renal impairment section 6.1.1

Pregnancy section 6.1.1

Breast-feeding section 6.1.1

Side-effects see under Insulin (section 6.1.1.1); protamine may cause allergic reactions

Indication and dose

Diabetes mellitus

• By subcutaneous injection

According to requirements

Biphasics

Biphasic insulins are pre-mixed insulin preparations containing various combinations of short-acting (soluble) or rapid-acting (analogue) insulin and an intermediate-acting insulin. The percentage of short-acting insulin varies from 10% to 50%. These preparations should be administered by subcutaneous injection up to 15 minutes before or soon after a meal.

BIPHASIC INSULIN ASPART

(Intermediate-acting insulin)

Diabetes mellitus

• By subcutaneous injection

Up to 10 minutes before or soon after a meal, according to requirements

NovoMix® 30 (Novo Nordisk) Injection, biphasic insulin aspart (recombiant human insulin analogue), 30% insulin aspart, 70% insulin aspart protamine, 100 units/mL, net price 3-mL Penfill® cartridges (for NovoMix® and NovoPen® devices) = £28.84; 5 x 3-mL FlexPen® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–60 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £32.00 Counselling Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed; the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries)
Humalog® Mix25 (Lilly)\(^1\)

**Injection, biphasic insulin lispro (recombinant human insulin analogue), 25% insulin lispro, 75% insulin lispro protamine, 100 units/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £16.61; 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for Autopen® Classic or HumaPen®) = £29.46; 5 × 3-mL Humalog® Mix25 KwikPen prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–60 units allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £30.98**

**Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed; the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries)

Humalog® Mix50 (Lilly)\(^1\)

**Injection, biphasic insulin lispro (recombinant human insulin analogue), 50% insulin lispro, 50% insulin lispro protamine, 100 units/mL, net price 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for Autopen® Classic or HumaPen®) = £29.46; 5 × 3-mL Humalog® Mix50 KwikPen prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–60 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £30.98**

**Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed; the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries)

**BIHASIC ISOPHANE INSULIN**

(Biphasic Isophane Insulin Injection—intermediate acting)

A sterile buffered suspension of either porcine or human insulin complexed with protamine sulphate (or another suitable protamine) in a solution of insulin of the same species

**Cautions** section 6.1.1; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

**Hepatic impairment** section 6.1.1

**Renal impairment** section 6.1.1

**Breast-feeding** section 6.1.1

**Pregnancy** section 6.1.1

**Side-effects** see under Insulin (section 6.1.1.1); protamine may cause allergic reactions

**Indication and dose**

**Diabetes mellitus**

- By subcutaneous injection
- According to requirements

**HIGHLY PURIFIED ANIMAL**

**Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed; the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries)

**Hypurin® Porcine 30/70 Mix (Wockhardt)**

**Injection, biphasic isophane insulin (porcine, highly purified), 30% soluble, 70% isophane, 100 units/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £16.80; cartridges (for Autopen® Classic) 5 × 3 mL = £25.20**

**HUMAN SEQUENCE**

**Counselling** Show container to child or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed; the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries)

Humulin M3® (Lilly)\(^1\)

**Injection, biphasic isophane insulin (human, prb), 15% soluble, 85% isophane, 100 units/mL, net price 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for ClikSTAR®, Optipen® Pro 1 and Autopen® 24) = £17.50; 5 × 3-mL Humulin M3 KwikPen prefilled disposable injection devices (range 2–40 units, allowing 2-unit dosage adjustment) = £17.50**

**Insuoman® Comb 15 (Sanofi-Aventis)**

**Injection, biphasic isophane insulin (human, crb), 25% soluble, 75% isophane, 100 units/mL, net price 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for ClikSTAR®, Optipen® Pro 1 and Autopen® 24) = £17.50; 5 × 3-mL Insuoman® Comb 15 OptiSet® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 2–40 units, allowing 2-unit dosage adjustment) = £17.50**

**Insuoman® Comb 25 (Sanofi-Aventis)**

**Injection, biphasic isophane insulin (human, crb), 25% soluble, 75% isophane, 100 units/mL, net price 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for ClikSTAR®, Optipen® Pro 1 and Autopen® 24) = £17.50; 5 × 3-mL Insuoman® Comb 25 OptiSet® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 2–40 units, allowing 2-unit dosage adjustment) = £17.50; 5 × 3-mL Insuoman® Comb 25 SoloStar prefilled disposable injection devices (range 1–80 units, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment) = £19.80**

**Insuoman® Comb 50 (Sanofi-Aventis)**

**Injection, biphasic isophane insulin (human, crb), 50% soluble, 50% isophane, 100 units/mL, net price; 5 × 3-mL cartridge (for ClikSTAR®, Optipen® Pro 1, and Autopen® 24) = £17.50; 5 × 3-mL Insuoman® Comb 50 OptiSer® prefilled disposable injection devices (range 2–40 units, allowing 2-unit dosage adjustment) = £17.50**

**Hypodermic equipment**

Carers and children should be advised on the safe disposal of lancets, single-use syringes, and needles. Suitable arrangements for the safe disposal of contaminated waste must be made before these products are prescribed for patients who are carriers of infectious diseases.
Injection devices

**Autopen®** (Owen Mumford)

Injection device; **Autopen® 24** (for use with Sanofi-Aventis 3-mL insulin cartridges), allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 21 units (single-use version) or 2-unit dosage adjustment, max. 42 units (2-unit version), net price (both) = £15.73; **Autopen® Classic** (for use with Lilly and Wockhardt 3-mL insulin cartridges), allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 21 units (single-use version) or 2-unit dosage adjustment, max. 42 units (2-unit version), net price (all) = £15.97

**Lancets—sterile, single use**

- **Cleanlet Fine** (for use with Sanofi-Aventis insulin cartridges; allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 35 units, net price = £24.79; **OptiClick** (for use with Sanofi-Aventis insulin cartridges; allowing 0.5-unit dosage adjustment, max. 35 units, net price = £25.21; **Insuman** 3-mL insulin cartridges), allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 60 units, net price = £26.36

- **NovoPen**, **Humulin**, and **Humalog®** 3-mL cartridges; allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 60 units, net price = £26.36

- **MPD Ultra Thin** = £3.28; £6.24, 200 = £12.20; **Microlet** 2, 200 = £7.02; £2.94, 200 = £5.49; £15.73; **SaniClix** 2, 200 = £7.22; £4.10, 200 = £8.22; **Softclix** 2, 200 = £8.52; £15.97; **Vitrex Soft** 2, 200 = £8.52

- **Autolet Impression** = £3.67, 200 = £6.96; 50 = £1.85; **Unilet Eco** 100 = £3.00, 200 = £6.50; **Cleanlet Fine** 204 = £9.27; **Clinipak** 2, 200 = £8.52

- **Microlance**, **Monoject** Ultra, and **OptiClick** Single Patient-Use Disposables for use with U100 insulin. Net price 0.5 mL and 1 mL = £9.22

- **Lancets—sterile, single use**

**BD Micro-Fine®** = 100 = £3.19, 200 = £6.37; 21-gauge, 100 = £6.24, 200 = £12.20; **Unilet General Purpose Superlite** 100 = £3.61; **NovoFine Autocover**, **Clinipak**, **Insaupak**, **Monoject** Ultra, **Omniskin**, and **Platipak**

- **Needles**

**Hypodermic Needle, Sterile single use** (Drug Tariff)

For use with reusable glass syringe, sizes 0.5 mm (25G), 0.45 mm (26G), 0.4 mm (27G). Net price 100-needle pack = £2.74

**Brands include** Microline®, Monoject®

**Needles for Prefilled and Reusable Pen Injectors** (Drug Tariff)

**Screw on**, needle length 6.1 mm or less, net price 100-needle pack = £12.53; £6.2–9.9 mm, 100-needle pack = £8.89, 10 mm or more, 100-needle pack = £8.89

**Brands include** BD Micro-Fine®, Comfort Point®, NovoFine®, Novofine Autocover®, NovoTwist®, UniTouch®, Pentips

**Snap on**, needle length 6.1 mm or less, net price 100-needle pack = £12.02; £6.2–9.9 mm, 100-needle pack = £8.52, 10 mm or more, 100-needle pack = £8.52

**Brands include** Penfine®

- **Syringes**

**Hypodermic Syringe** (Drug Tariff)

Calibrated glass with Luer taper conical fitting, for use with U100 insulin. Net price 0.5 mL and 1 mL = £9.22

**Brands include** Abcor®

**U100 Insulin Syringe with Needle** (Drug Tariff)

Disposable with fixed or separate needle for single use or single patient-use, colour coded orange. Needle length 8 mm, diameters 0.33 mm (29G), 0.3 mm (30G), net price 10 (with needle), 0.3 mL = £1.39, 0.5 mL = £1.35; needle length 12 mm, diameters 0.45 mm (26G), 0.4 mm (27G), 0.36 mm (28G), 0.33 mm (29G), net price 10 (with needle), 0.3 mL = £1.45, 0.5 mL = £1.43; 1 mL = £1.44

**Brands include** BD Micro-Fine®, Clinipak®, Insaupak®, Monoject® Ultra, Omniskin®, Platipak®

- **Accessories**

**Needle Clipping (Chopping) Device** (Drug Tariff)

Consisting of a clipper to remove needle from its hub and container from which cut-off needles cannot be retrieved, designed to hold 1200 needles, not suitable for use with lancets. Net price = £1.35

**Brands include** BD Safe-Clip®

**Sharpsguard** (Drug Tariff)

Net price 1-litre sharpsbin = 85p

6.1.2 Antidiabetic drugs

6.1.2.1 Sulfonylureas

6.1.2.2 Biguanides

6.1.2.3 Other antidiabetic drugs

Oral antidiabetic drugs are used for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. They should be prescribed only if the child fails to respond adequately to restriction of energy and carbohydrate intake and an increase in physical activity. They should be used to augment the effect of diet and exercise, and not to replace them.

In children, type 2 diabetes does not usually occur until adolescence and information on the use of oral antidiabetic drugs is limited. Treatment with oral antidiabetic drugs should be initiated under specialist supervision only; the initial dose should be at the lower
6.1.2 Antidiabetic drugs

End of the adult dose range and then adjusted according to response.

Metformin (section 6.1.2.2) is the oral antidiabetic drug of choice because there is most experience with this drug in children. If dietary changes and metformin do not control the diabetes adequately, either a sulfonylurea (section 6.1.2.1) or insulin (section 6.1.1) can be added.

Alternatively, oral therapy may be substituted with insulin.

When insulin is added to oral therapy, it is generally given at bedtime as isophane or long-acting insulin, and when insulin replaces an oral regimen it may be given as twice-daily injections of a biphasic insulin (or isophane insulin mixed with soluble insulin), or a multiple injection regimen. Weight gain and hypoglycaemia may be complications of insulin therapy but weight gain can be reduced if the insulin is given in combination with metformin.

Pregnancy and breast-feeding During pregnancy, women with pre-existing diabetes can be treated with metformin [unlicensed use], either alone or in combination with insulin (section 6.1.1). Metformin can be continued, or glibenclamide resumed, during breast-feeding for those with pre-existing diabetes. Women with gestational diabetes may be treated, with or without concomitant insulin (section 6.1.1), with glibenclamide from 11 weeks gestation (after organogenesis) [unlicensed use] or with metformin [unlicensed use]. Women with gestational diabetes should discontinue hypoglycaemic treatment after giving birth.

Other oral hypoglycaemic drugs are contra-indicated in pregnancy and breast-feeding.

6.1.2.1 Sulfonylureas

The sulfonylureas are not the first choice oral antidiabetics in children. They act mainly by augmenting insulin secretion and consequently are effective only when some residual pancreatic beta-cell activity is present; during long-term administration they also have an extrapancreatic action. All can cause hypoglycaemia but this is uncommon and usually indicates excessive dosage. Sulfonylureas-induced hypoglycaemia can persist for many hours and must always be treated in hospital.

Sulfonylureas are considered for children in whom metformin is contra-indicated or not tolerated. Several sulfonylureas are available but experience in children is limited; choice is determined by side-effects and the duration of action as well as the child’s age and renal function. Glibenclamide, a long-acting sulfonylurea, is associated with a greater risk of hypoglycaemia and for this reason is generally avoided in children. Shorter-acting alternatives, such as tolbutamide, may be preferred.

Insulin therapy should be instituted temporarily during intermittent illness (such as coca, infection, and trauma). Sulfonylureas should be omitted on the morning of surgery; insulin is often required because of the ensuing hyperglycaemia in these circumstances.

Sulfonylureas can be useful in the management of certain forms of diabetes that result from genetic defects of beta-cell function; there is most experience with gliclazide.

Cautions Sulfonylureas encourage weight gain and should be prescribed only if poor control and symptoms persist despite adequate attempts at dieting; metformin (section 6.1.2.2) is considered the drug of choice in children.

Contra-indications Sulfonylureas should be avoided where possible in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2). Sulfonylureas are contra-indicated in the presence of ketoacidosis.

Hepatic impairment Sulfonylureas should be avoided or a reduced dose should be used in severe hepatic impairment, because there is an increased risk of hypoglycaemia. Jaundice may occur.

Renal impairment Sulfonylureas should be used with care in those with mild to moderate renal impairment, because of the hazard of hypoglycaemia; they should be avoided where possible in severe renal impairment. If necessary, the short-acting drug tolbutamide can be used in renal impairment, as can gliclazide which is principally metabolised in the liver, but careful monitoring of blood-glucose concentration is essential; care is required to use the lowest dose that adequately controls blood glucose.

Pregnancy The use of sulfonylureas in pregnancy should generally be avoided because of the risk of neonatal hypoglycaemia; however, glibenclamide can be used during the second and third trimesters of pregnancy in women with gestational diabetes, see section 6.1.2.

Breast-feeding The use of sulfonylureas (except glibenclamide [unlicensed use], see section 6.1.2) in breast-feeding should be avoided because there is a theoretical possibility of hypoglycaemia in the infant.

Side-effects Side-effects of sulfonylureas are generally mild and infrequent and include gastro-intestinal disturbances such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea and constipation.

Sulfonylureas can occasionally cause a disturbance in liver function, which rarely leads to cholestatic jaundice, hepatitis, and hepatic failure. Hypersensitivity reactions can occur, usually in the first 6–8 weeks of therapy. They consist mainly of allergic skin reactions which progress to erythema multiforme or exfoliative dermatitis, fever, and jaundice; photosensitivity has rarely been reported with glipizide. Blood disorders are also rare but include leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, agranulocytosis, pancytopenia, haemolytic anaemia, and aplastic anaemia.

GLIBENCLAMIDE

Cautions see notes above; Interactions: Appendix 1 (antidiabetics)

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above
BNFC 2011–2012

6.1.2 Antidiabetic drugs

Tolbutamide (Non-proprietary) [SV]
Tablets, tolbutamide 500 mg. Net price 28-tab pack = £1.74
Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Glibenclamide (Non-proprietary) [CH]
Tablets, glibenclamide 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = 95p; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.07

Gliclazide (Non-proprietary) [CH]
Tablets, gliclazide 40 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £3.36; 80 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.10, 60-tab pack = £1.52

Diamicron® (Servier) [CH]
Tablets, scored, gliclazide 80 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £4.38

Tolbutamide (Non-proprietary) [CH]
Tablets, tolbutamide 500 mg. Net price 28-tab pack = £1.74
Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

6.1.2.2 Biguanides

Metformin, the only available biguanide, has a different mode of action from the sulfonylureas, and is not interchangeable with them. It exerts its effect mainly by decreasing gluconeogenesis and by increasing peripheral utilisation of glucose; since it acts only in the presence of endogenous insulin it is effective only if there are some residual functioning pancreatic islet cells.

Metformin is the drug of first choice in children with type 2 diabetes, in whom strict dieting has failed to control diabetes. When the combination of strict diet and metformin treatment fails, other options to be considered under specialist management only, include:

- combining with insulin (section 6.1.1) but weight gain and hypoglycaemia can be problems (weight gain minimised if insulin given at night);
- combining with a sulfonylurea (section 6.1.2.1) (reports of increased hazard with this combination remain unconfirmed).

Insulin treatment is almost always required in medical and surgical emergencies; insulin should also be substituted before elective surgery (omit metformin on the morning of surgery and give insulin if required).

Hypoglycaemia does not usually occur with metformin; other advantages are the lower incidence of weight gain and lower plasma-insulin concentration. It does not exert a hypoglycaemic action in non-diabetic subjects unless given in overdose.

Gastro-intestinal side-effects are initially common with metformin, and may persist in some children, particularly when high doses are given. A slow increase in dose may improve tolerability.

Very rarely, metformin can provoke lactic acidosis which is most likely to occur in children with renal impairment, see Lactic Acidosis below.

LACTIC ACIDOSIS

Insulin treatment is almost always required in medical and surgical emergencies; insulin should also be substituted before elective surgery (omit metformin on the morning of surgery and give insulin if required).

Hypoglycaemia does not usually occur with metformin; other advantages are the lower incidence of weight gain and lower plasma-insulin concentration. It does not exert a hypoglycaemic action in non-diabetic subjects unless given in overdose.

Gastro-intestinal side-effects are initially common with metformin, and may persist in some children, particularly when high doses are given. A slow increase in dose may improve tolerability.

Very rarely, metformin can provoke lactic acidosis which is most likely to occur in children with renal impairment, see Lactic Acidosis below.

LACTIC ACIDOSIS

Insulin treatment is almost always required in medical and surgical emergencies; insulin should also be substituted before elective surgery (omit metformin on the morning of surgery and give insulin if required).

Hypoglycaemia does not usually occur with metformin; other advantages are the lower incidence of weight gain and lower plasma-insulin concentration. It does not exert a hypoglycaemic action in non-diabetic subjects unless given in overdose.

Gastro-intestinal side-effects are initially common with metformin, and may persist in some children, particularly when high doses are given. A slow increase in dose may improve tolerability.

Very rarely, metformin can provoke lactic acidosis which is most likely to occur in children with renal impairment, see Lactic Acidosis below.
6.1.3 Diabetic ketoacidosis

The management of diabetic ketoacidosis involves the replacement of fluid and electrolytes and the administration of insulin. Guidelines for the Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis, published by the British Society of Paediatric Endocrinology and Diabetes, should be followed. Clinically well children with mild ketoacidosis who are dehydrated up to 5% usually respond to oral rehydration and subcutaneous insulin. For those who do not respond, or are clinically unwell, or are dehydrated by more than 5%, insulin and replacement fluids are best given by intravenous infusion.

- To restore circulating volume for children in shock, give 10 mL/kg sodium chloride 0.9% as a rapid infusion, repeat as necessary up to a maximum of 30 mL/kg.
- Further fluid should be given by intravenous infusion at a rate that replaces deficit and provides maintenance over 48 hours; initially use sodium chloride 0.9%, changing to sodium chloride 0.45% and glucose 5% after 12 hours if response is adequate and plasma-sodium concentration is stable.
- Include potassium chloride in the fluids unless anaemia is suspected, adjust according to plasma-potassium concentration.
- Insulin infusion is necessary to switch off ketogenesis and reverse acidosis; it should not be started until at least 1 hour after the start of intravenous rehydration fluids.
- Soluble insulin should be diluted (and mixed thoroughly) with sodium chloride 0.9% intravenous infusion to a concentration of 1 unit/mL and infused at a rate of 0.1 units/kg/hour.
- Sodium bicarbonate infusion (1.26% or 2.74%) is rarely necessary and is used only in cases of extreme acidosis (blood pH less than 6.9) and shock, since the acid-base disturbance is normally corrected by treatment with insulin.
- Once blood glucose falls to 14 mmol/litre, glucose intravenous infusion 5% or 10% should be added to the fluids.
- The insulin infusion rate can be reduced to no less than 0.05 units/kg/hour when blood-glucose concentration has fallen to 14 mmol/litre and blood pH is greater than 7.3 and a glucose infusion has been started (see above); it is continued until the child is ready to take food by mouth. Subcutaneous insulin can then be started.
- The insulin infusion should not be stopped until 1 hour after starting subcutaneous soluble or long-acting insulin, or 10 minutes after starting subcutaneous insulin aspart, or insulin glulisine, or insulin lispro. Hydroosmolar hyperglycaemic state or hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic nonketotic coma occurs rarely in children. Treatment is similar to that of diabetic ketoacidosis, although lower rates of insulin infusion and slower rehydration may be required.

1 Available at www.bsped.org.uk
1. Proprietary products of quick-acting carbohydrate (e.g. GlucoGen®, Dextroges®, Hypo-Fit®) are available on prescription for the patient to keep to hand in case of hypoglycaemia.

**GLUCAGON**

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypoglycaemia associated with diabetes</th>
<th>By subcutaneous, intramuscular, or intravenous injection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>20 micrograms/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–2 years</td>
<td>500 micrograms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 2–18 years, body-weight less than 25 kg</td>
<td>500 micrograms; body-weight over 25 kg 1 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Endogenous hyperinsulinism**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>By intramuscular or intravenous injection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Diagnosis of growth hormone secretion specialist centre only (section 6.5.1)**

**Beta-blocker poisoning, see p. 29**

Note 1 unit of glucagon = 1 mg of glucagon

1. Proprietary products of quick-acting carbohydrate (e.g. GlucoGen®, Dextroges®, Hypo-Fit®) are available on prescription for the patient to keep to hand in case of hypoglycaemia.

**6.1.4 Treatment of hypoglycaemia**

Prompt treatment of hypoglycaemia in children from any cause is essential as severe hypoglycaemia may cause subsequent neurological damage. Hyperinsulinism, fatty acid oxidation disorders and glycogen storage disease are less common causes of acute hypoglycaemia in children.

Initially glucose 10–20 g is given by mouth either in liquid form or as granulated sugar or sugar lumps. Approximately 10 g of glucose is available from non-diet versions of Lucozade® Energy Original 55 mL, Coca-Cola® 100 mL, and Ribena® Blackcurrant 19 mL (to be diluted), 2 teaspoons of sugar, and also from 3 sugar lumps1. If necessary this can be repeated in 10–15 minutes. After initial treatment, a snack providing sustained availability of carbohydrate (e.g. a sandwich, fruit, milk, or biscuits) or the next meal, if it is due, can prevent blood-glucose concentration from falling again.

Hypoglycaemia which causes unconsciousness or seizures is an emergency. Glucagon, a polypeptide hormone produced by the alpha cells of the islets of Langerhans, increases blood-glucose concentration by mobilising glycogen stored in the liver. In hypoglycaemia, if sugar cannot be given by mouth, glucagon can be given by injection. Carbohydrates should be given as soon as possible to restore liver glycogen; glucagon is not appropriate for chronic hypoglycaemia. Glucagon can be issued to parents or carers of insulin-treated children for emergency use in hypoglycaemic attacks. It is often advisable to prescribe it on an ‘if necessary’ basis for hospitalised insulin-treated children, so that it can be given rapidly by the nurses during a hypoglycaemic emergency. If not effective in 10 minutes intravenous glucose should be given.

Alternatively, 5 mL/kg of glucose intravenous infusion 10% (500 mg/g of glucose) (section 9.2.2) can be given intravenously into a large vein through a large-gauge needle; care is required since this concentration is irritant especially if extravasation occurs. Glucose intravenous infusion 50% is not recommended, as it is very viscous and hypertonic. Close monitoring is necessary, particularly in the case of an overdose with a long-acting insulin because further administration of glucose may be required. Children whose hypoglycaemia is caused by an oral antidiabetic drug should be transferred to hospital because the hypoglycaemic effects of these drugs can persist for many hours.

Glucagon is not effective in the treatment of hypoglycaemia due to fatty acid oxidation or glycogen storage disorders.

**Neonatal hypoglycaemia**

Neonatal hypoglycaemia at birth is treated with glucose intravenous infusion 10% given at a rate of 5 mL/kg/hour. An initial dose of 2.5 mL/kg over 5 minutes may be required if hypoglycaemia is severe enough to cause loss of consciousness or seizures. Mild asymptomatic persistent hypoglycaemia may respond to a single dose of glucagon. Glucagon has also been used in the short-term management of endogenous hyperinsulinism.

**Cautions** see notes above, insulinoma, glucagonoma; ineffective in chronic hypoglycaemia, starvation, and adrenal insufficiency; delayed hypoglycaemia when used as a diagnostic test—deaths reported (ensure a meal is eaten before discharge)

**Contra-indications** phaeochromocytoma

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, hypokalaemia, rarely hypersensitivity reactions

**Licensed use** unlicensed for growth hormone test and hyperinsulinism

**Chronic hypoglycaemia**

Diazoxide is useful in the management of chronic hypoglycaemia due to excessive insulin secretion, either from a tumour involving the islets of Langerhans or from persisting hyperinsulinaemic hyperglycaemia of infancy (neuroblastoma, see also glucagon above). Diazoxide has no place in the management of acute hypoglycaemia. Chlorothiazide 3–5 mg/kg twice daily (section 6.4.11.3)
2.2.1) reduces diazoxide-induced sodium and water retention and has the added benefit of potentiating the glycaemic effect of diazoxide.

If diazoxide and chlorothiazide fail to suppress excessive glucose requirements in chronic hyperglycaemia then octreotide or nifedipine (section 2.6.2) can be added. Octreotide suppresses secretions of growth hormone, but growth is unlikely to be affected in the long term.

**DIAZOXIDE**

Cautions ischaemic heart disease; monitor blood pressure, during prolonged use monitor white cell and platelet count, and regularly assess growth, bone, and psychological development; avoid the intravenous route if possible; extravasation can cause tissue necrosis and single doses of 300 mg have been associated with angina and cerebral and myocardial infarctions; interactions: Appendix 1 (diazoxide)

Renal impairment increased secretion to hypotensive and hyperglycaemic effect; dose reduction may be required

Pregnancy prolonged use in second or third trimesters may produce alopecia and impaired glucose tolerance in neonate; inhibits uterine activity

Side-effects anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, bloating, flatulence, diarrhoea, constipation, and steatorrhoea (administer between meals or at bedtime to reduce gastro-intestinal side-effects); bradycardia, dyspnoea, headache, dizziness; postprandial glycaemia tolerance may be impaired, rarely persistent hyperglycaemia with chronic administration; hypoglycaemia has also been reported; reduced gall bladder motility and bile flow; gallstones reported after long-term treatment; abrupt withdrawal of subcutaneous octreotide is associated with biliary colic and pancreatitis; rash, alopecia; pain and irritation at injection site—sites should be rotated; rarely pancreatitis shortly after administration; hepatitis also reported

Licensed use not licensed in children

**Indication and dose**

**Chronic intractable hyperglycaemia**

- **By mouth or by intravenous injection**

  **Neonate** initially 5 mg/kg twice daily to establish response, adjust dose according to response; usual maintenance dose 1.5–3 mg/kg 2–3 times daily; up to 7 mg/kg 3 times daily may be required in some cases, higher doses unlikely to be beneficial

  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1.7 mg/kg 3 times daily then adjusted according to response; usual maintenance dose 1.5–3 mg/kg 2–3 times daily; up to 5 mg/kg 3 times daily may be required in some cases, higher doses unlikely to be beneficial

  **Hypertensive emergencies and resistant hypertension** section 2.5.1.1

- **OCTREOTIDE**

  Cautions avoid abrupt withdrawal of short-acting octreotide—see Side-effects below; in insulinoma (risk of increased depth and duration of hypoglycaemia—monitor closely when initiating treatment and changing doses); diabetes mellitus (anti-diabetic requirements may be reduced); monitor thyroid function on long-term therapy; interactions: Appendix 1 (octreotide)

  **Pregnancy** possible effect on fetal growth, avoid unless benefit outweighs risk; effective contraception required during treatment

  **Breast-feeding** avoid unless essential—present in milk in animal studies

  **Side-effects** anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, bloating, flatulence, diarrhoea, constipation, and steatorrhoea (administer between meals or at bedtime to reduce gastro-intestinal side-effects); bradycardia, dyspnoea, headache, dizziness; postprandial glycaemia tolerance may be impaired, rarely persistent hyperglycaemia with chronic administration; hypoglycaemia has also been reported; reduced gall bladder motility and bile flow; gallstones reported after long-term treatment; abrupt withdrawal of subcutaneous octreotide is associated with biliary colic and pancreatitis; rash, alopecia; pain and irritation at injection site—sites should be rotated; rarely pancreatitis shortly after administration; hepatitis also reported

- **Licensed use** not licensed in children

**Indication and dose**

**Persistent hyperinsulinaemic hyperglycaemia unresponsive to diazoxide and glucose**

- **By subcutaneous injection**

  **Neonate** initially 2–5 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response; up to 7 micrograms/kg every 4 hours may rarely be required

  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1–2 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours, dose adjusted according to response; up to 7 micrograms/kg every 4 hours may rarely be required

  **Bleeding from oesophageal or gastric varices**

- **By continuous intravenous infusion**

  **Child 1 month–18 years** 1 microgram/kg/hour, higher doses may be required initially; when no active bleeding reduce dose over 24 hours; usual max. 50 micrograms/hour

  **Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 10–50%

- **Sandostatin® (Novartis)**

  **Injection**, octreotide (as acetate) 50 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £2.98; 100 micrograms/mL, 1-mL amp = £5.60; 200 micrograms/mL, 5-mL vial = £69.66; 500 micrograms/mL, 1-mL amp = £27.10

**6.1.5 Treatment of diabetic nephropathy and neuropathy**

**Diabetic nephropathy**

Regular review of diabetic children over 12 years of age should include an annual test for microalbuminuria (the earliest sign of nephropathy). If reagent strip tests (Micral-Test II or Microbumintest®) are used...
and prove positive, the result should be confirmed by laboratory analysis of a urine sample. Microalbuminuria can occur transiently during puberty; if it persists (at least 3 positive tests) treatment with an ACE inhibitor (section 2.5.5.1) or an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist (section 2.5.5.2) under specialist guidance should be considered; to minimise the risk of renal deterioration, blood pressure should be carefully controlled (section 2.5).

ACE inhibitors can potentiate the hypoglycaemic effect of insulin and oral antidiabetic drugs; this effect is more likely during the first weeks of combined treatment and in children with renal impairment.

For the treatment of hypertension in diabetes, see section 2.5.

## Diabetic neuropathy

Clinical neuropathy is rare in children whose diabetes is well controlled.

### 6.1.6 Diagnostic and monitoring devices for diabetes mellitus

#### Blood monitoring

Blood glucose monitoring using a meter gives a direct measure of the glucose concentration at the time of the test and can detect hypoglycaemia as well as hyperglycaemia. Carers and children should be properly trained in the use of blood glucose monitoring systems and the appropriate action to take on the results obtained. Inadequate understanding of the normal fluctuations in blood glucose can lead to confusion and inappropriate action.

Children using multiple injection regimens should understand how to adjust their insulin dose according to their carbohydrate intake. With fixed-dose insulin regimens, the carbohydrate intake needs to be regulated, and should be distributed throughout the day to match the insulin regimen.

**Note** In the UK blood-glucose concentration is expressed in mmol/litre and Diabetes UK advises that these units should be used for self-monitoring of blood glucose. In other European countries units of mg/100 mL (or mg/dL) are commonly used. It is advisable to check that the meter is pre-set in the correct units.

If the blood glucose level is high or if the child is unwell, blood ketones should be measured according to local guidelines in order to detect diabetic ketoacidosis (section 6.1.3). Children and their carers should be trained in the use of blood ketone monitoring systems and to take appropriate action on the results obtained, including when to seek medical attention.

### Urinalysis

Tests for glucose range from reagent strips specific to glucose to reagent tablets which detect all reducing sugars. Clinistix® is rarely used now; Clinistix® is suitable for screening purposes only. It is rarely necessary for children to test themselves for ketones unless they become unwell—see also Blood Monitoring, above.

Microalbuminuria can be detected with Micral-Test 11th® but this should be followed by confirmation in the laboratory, since false positive results are common.

| **Glucose** |  
| Clinistix® (Bayer Diabetes Care) | Reagent strips, for detection of glucose in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £3.27  
| Clinistix® (Bayer Diabetes Care) | Reagent tablets, for detection of glucose and other reducing substances in urine. Net price 36-tab pack = £2.00  
| Diabur-Test 5000® (Roche Diagnostics) | Reagent strips, for detection of glucose in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £8.87  
| Diastix® (Bayer Diabetes Care) | Reagent strips, for detection of glucose in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £2.76  
| Medi-Test® Glucose (BHR) | Reagent strips, for detection of glucose in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £2.33  
| Mission® Glucose (Spirit) | Reagent strips, for detection of glucose in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £2.29  

| **Ketones** |  
| Ketostix® (Bayer Diabetes Care) | Reagent strips, for detection of ketones in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £2.95  
| Ketur Test® (Roche Diagnostics) | Reagent strips, for detection of ketones in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £2.76  
| Mission® Ketone (Spirit) | Reagent strips, for detection of ketones in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £2.50  

| **Protein** |  
| Albustix® (Siemens) | Reagent strips, for detection of protein in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £4.10  
| Medi-Test® Protein 2 (BHR) | Reagent strips, for detection of protein in urine. Net price 50-strip pack = £3.27  

<p>| <strong>Other reagent strips available for urinalysis</strong> |<br />
| Combur-3 Test® (glucose and protein—Roche Diagnostics), Clinitest Microalbumin® (albumin and creatinine—Siemens), Ketodiasis® (glucose and ketones—Bayer Diagnostics), Medi-Test Combi 2® (glucose and protein—BHR), Micral-Test 11th® (albumin—Roche Diagnostics), Microalbumin® (albumin and creatinine—Siemens), Uristix® (glucose and protein—Siemens) |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meter (all)</th>
<th>Type of monitoring</th>
<th>Meter retail price</th>
<th>Compatible test strips</th>
<th>Test strip net price</th>
<th>Sensitivity range (mmol/litre)</th>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accu-Chek® Active¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Active*</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £15.16</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accu-Chek® Advantage¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Advantage Plus*</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £15.17</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accu-Chek® Aviva</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Aviva*</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £16.89</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accu-Chek® Compact</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Compact*</td>
<td>3 × 17-strip pack = £15.29</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accu-Chek® Compact Plus</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Compact*</td>
<td>3 × 17-strip pack = £15.29</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accu-Chek® Mobile</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Mobile*</td>
<td>100 tests = £30.12</td>
<td>0.3–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accutrend¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>BM-Accutest*</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.31</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascensia Breeze³</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Ascensia® Autodisc</td>
<td>5 × 10-disc pack = £14.62</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Bayer Diabetes Care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascensia Esprit²</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Ascensia® Autodisc</td>
<td>5 × 10-disc pack = £14.62</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Bayer Diabetes Care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breeze ²</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Breeze ²</td>
<td>5 × 10-disc pack = £14.34</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Bayer Diabetes Care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CareSens N²</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>CareSens N®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £12.75</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Spirit Healthcare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contour®</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Contour® Formerly Ascensia® Microfill</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.74</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Bayer Diabetes Care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeStyle¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>FreeStyle®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.90</td>
<td>1.1–27.8</td>
<td>Abbott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeStyle Freedom¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>FreeStyle®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.90</td>
<td>1.1–27.8</td>
<td>Abbott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeStyle Freedom Lite²</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>FreeStyle Lite®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.90</td>
<td>1.1–27.8</td>
<td>Abbott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeStyle Lite</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>FreeStyle Lite®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.90</td>
<td>1.1–27.8</td>
<td>Abbott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreeStyle Mini¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>FreeStyle®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.90</td>
<td>1.1–27.8</td>
<td>Abbott</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlucoMen® Glyco¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>GlucoMen®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £13.67</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Menarini Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlucoMen® GM</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>GlucoMen® GM</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.67</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Menarini Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlucoMen® LX</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>GlucoMen® LX</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.65</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Menarini Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlucoMen® LX PLUS</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>GlucoMen® LX</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.65</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Menarini Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlucoMen® PC¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>GlucoMen®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £13.67</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Menarini Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlucoMen® Visio</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>GlucoMen® Visio Sensor</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.53</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>Menarini Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucotrend¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>Active*</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.76</td>
<td>0.6–33.3</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Touch® II¹</td>
<td>Blood glucose</td>
<td>One Touch®</td>
<td>50-strip pack = £14.59</td>
<td>1.1–33.3</td>
<td>LifeScan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Meter no longer available
2. Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals
The oral glucose tolerance test is used mainly for diagnosis of impaired glucose tolerance; it is not recommended or necessary for routine diagnostic use when severe symptoms of hyperglycaemia are present. However, it is used for the investigation of insulin resistance, glycogen storage disease, and excessive growth hormone secretion. In children who have less severe symptoms and blood-glucose concentrations that do not establish or exclude diabetes (e.g. impaired fasting glycaemia), an oral glucose tolerance test may be required. A dose of 1.75 g/kg (max. 75 g) of anhydrous glucose is used. It is also used to establish the presence of gestational diabetes; this generally involves giving anhydrous glucose 75 g (equivalent to Glucose BP 82.5 g) by mouth to the fasting patient, and measuring blood-glucose concentration at intervals. The appropriate amount of glucose should be given with 200–300 mL fluid. Alternatively anhydrous glucose 75 g can be given as 113 mL Polycal® (Nutricia Clinical) with extra fluid to administer a total volume of 200–300 mL.

### 6.2 Thyroid and antithyroid drugs

#### 6.2.1 Thyroid hormones

Thyroid hormones are used in hypothyroidism (juvenile myxoedema), and also in diffuse non-toxic goitre, congenital or neonatal hypothyroidism, and Hashimoto’s

---

**Oral glucose tolerance test**

The oral glucose tolerance test is used mainly for diagnosis of impaired glucose tolerance; it is not recommended or necessary for routine diagnostic use when severe symptoms of hyperglycaemia are present. However, it is used for the investigation of insulin resistance, glycogen storage disease, and excessive growth hormone secretion. In children who have less severe symptoms and blood-glucose concentrations that do not establish or exclude diabetes (e.g. impaired fasting glycaemia), an oral glucose tolerance test may be required. A dose of 1.75 g/kg (max. 75 g) of anhydrous glucose is used. It is also used to establish the presence of gestational diabetes; this generally involves giving anhydrous glucose 75 g (equivalent to Glucose BP 82.5 g) by mouth to the fasting patient, and measuring blood-glucose concentration at intervals. The appropriate amount of glucose should be given with 200–300 mL fluid. Alternatively anhydrous glucose 75 g can be given as 113 mL Polycal® (Nutricia Clinical) with extra fluid to administer a total volume of 200–300 mL.
thyroiditis (lymphadenoid goitre). Neonatal hypothyroidism requires prompt treatment to facilitate normal development.

**Levothyroxine sodium** (thyroxine sodium) is the treatment of choice for maintenance therapy.

Doses for congenital hypothyroidism and juvenile myxöedema should be titrated according to clinical response, growth assessment, and measurement of plasma thyroxine and thyroid-stimulating hormone concentrations. In congenital hypothyroidism higher initial doses may normalise metabolism more quickly, with associated beneficial effects on mental development.

**Liothyronine sodium** has a similar action to levothyroxine but is more rapidly metabolised and has a more rapid effect; 20–25 micrograms is equivalent to approximately 100 micrograms of levothyroxine. Its effects develop after a few hours and disappear within 24 to 48 hours of discontinuing treatment. It may be used in severe hypothyroid states when a rapid response is desired.

Liothyronine by intravenous injection is the treatment of choice in hypothroid coma. Adjunctive therapy includes intravenous fluids, hydrocortisone, and treatment of infection; assisted ventilation is often required.

### LEVOTHYROIDINE SODIUM

**Thyroxine sodium**

**Cautions** panhypopituitarism or predisposition to adrenal insufficiency (initiate corticosteroid therapy before starting levothyroxine); cardiac disorders (monitor ECG; start at low dose and carefully titrate); long-standing hypothyroidism, diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus (dose of antidiabetic drugs including insulin may need to be increased); interactions: Appendix 1 (thyroid hormones)

**Pregnancy** monitor maternal serum-thyrotrophin concentration—levothyroxine may cross the placenta and excessive maternal concentration can be detrimental to fetus

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to affect tests for neonatal hypothyroidism

**Side-effects** usually at excessive dosage include diarrhoea, vomiting; anginal pain, arrhythmias, palpitation, tachycardia, benign intracranial hypertension; tremor, restlessness, excitation, insomnia, headache, flushing, sweating, fever, heat intolerance, weight loss, nervousness; craniostenosis and premature closure of epiphyses; menstrual irregularities; eosinophilia, liver dysfunction; muscle cramps, muscular weakness; transient hair loss; hypersensitivity reactions including rash, pruritus and oedema also reported

**Indication and dose**

**Hypothyroidism**

Note Levothyroxine equivalent to 100 micrograms/m²/day can be used as a guide to the requirements in children

- **By mouth**

  **Neonate** initially 10–15 micrograms/kg once daily (max. 50 micrograms daily), adjusted in steps of 5 micrograms/kg every 2 weeks or as necessary; usual maintenance dose 20–50 micrograms daily

  **Child 1 month–2 years** initially 5 micrograms/kg once daily (max. 50 micrograms daily) adjusted in steps of 10–25 micrograms daily every 2–4 weeks until metabolism normalised; usual maintenance dose 25–75 micrograms daily

  **Child 2–12 years** initially 50 micrograms once daily adjusted in steps of 25 micrograms daily every 2–4 weeks until metabolism normalised; usual maintenance dose 75–100 micrograms daily

  **Child 12–18 years** initially 50 micrograms once daily adjusted in steps of 25–50 micrograms daily every 3–4 weeks until metabolism normalised; usual maintenance dose 100–200 micrograms daily

**Levothyroxine (Non-proprietary) tablets, levothyroxine sodium 25 micrograms, net price 28-tab pack £2.22; 50 micrograms, 28-tab pack £1.09**

**Brands include** Eltroxin

**Oral solution**, levothyroxine sodium 25 micrograms/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £42.75; 50 micrograms/5 mL, 100 mL = £44.90; 100 micrograms/5 mL, 100 mL = £52.75

**Brands include** Evotrox® (sugar-free)

**Note** All strengths of levothyroxine oral solution by Almus and branded as Evotrox®, have been reformulated (August 2010) leading to an increase in potency of approximately 10%; the manufacturer advises that the recommended dose has not changed, but recommends increased monitoring of patients on these preparations as dose adjustments may be necessary

### LIOTHYRONINE SODIUM

(-Tri-iodothyronine sodium)

**Cautions** severe and prolonged hypothyroidism (initiate corticosteroid therapy in adrenal insufficiency); cardiac disorders (monitor ECG; start at low dose and carefully titrate); diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus (dose of antidiabetic drugs including insulin may need to be increased); interactions: Appendix 1 (thyroid hormones)

**Pregnancy** does not cross the placenta in significant amounts; monitor maternal thyroid function tests—dosage adjustment may be necessary

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to affect tests for neonatal hypothyroidism

**Side-effects** usually at excessive dosage include diarrhoea; anginal pain, arrhythmias, palpitation, tachycardia; restlessness, excitation, insomnia, headache, flushing, sweating, fever, heat intolerance, weight loss, nervousness; craniosynostosis and premature closure of epiphyses; menstrual irregularities; eosinophilia, liver dysfunction; muscle cramps, muscular weakness; transient hair loss; hypersensitivity reactions including rash, pruritus and oedema also reported

**Licensed use** unlicensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Hypothyroidism**

- **By mouth**

  **Child 12–18 years** initially 10–20 micrograms daily gradually increased to 60 micrograms daily in 2–3 divided doses

- **By slow intravenous injection** (replacement for oral levothyroxine)

  Convert daily levothyroxine dose to liothyronine (see notes above for approximate equivalence) and give in 2–3 divided doses, adjusted according to response
6.2.2 Antithyroid drugs

Antithyroid drugs are used for hyperthyroidism either to prepare children for thyroidectomy or for long-term management. In the UK carbimazole is the most commonly used drug. Propylthiouracil should be reserved for children who are intolerant of, or who experience sensitivity reactions to, carbimazole (sensitivity is not necessarily displayed to both drugs), and for whom other treatments are inappropriate. Both drugs act primarily by interfering with the synthesis of thyroid hormones.

Treatment in children should be undertaken by a specialist.

Neutropenia and agranulocytosis

Doctors are reminded of the importance of recognising bone marrow suppression induced by carbimazole and the need to stop treatment promptly.

1. Children and their carers should be asked to report symptoms and signs suggestive of infection, especially sore throat.
2. A white blood cell count should be performed if there is any clinical evidence of infection.
3. Carbimazole should be stopped promptly if there is clinical or laboratory evidence of neutropenia.

Carbamazole or propylthiouracil are initially given in large doses to block thyroid function. This dose is continued until the child becomes euthyroid, usually after 4 to 8 weeks, and is then gradually reduced to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose. Alternatively high-dose treatment is continued in combination with levothyroxine replacement (blocking-replacement regimen); this is particularly useful when dose adjustment proves difficult. Treatment is usually continued for 12 to 24 months. The blocking-replacement regimen is not suitable during pregnancy. Hypothyroidism should be avoided particularly during pregnancy as it can cause fetal goitre.

When substituting, carbimazole 1 mg is considered equivalent to propylthiouracil 10 mg but the dose may need adjusting according to response.

Rashes and pruritus are common with carbimazole but they can be treated with antihistamines without discontinuing therapy; alternatively propylthiouracil can be substituted. If a child on carbimazole develops a sore throat it should be reported immediately because of the rare complication of agranulocytosis (see Neutropenia and Agranulocytosis, above).

Iodine has been used as an adjunct to antithyroid drugs for 10 to 14 days before partial thyroidectomy; however, there is little evidence of a beneficial effect. Iodine should not be used for long-term treatment because its antithyroid action tends to diminish.

Radioactive sodium iodide ($^{131}$I) solution is used increasingly for the treatment of thyrotoxicosis at all ages, particularly where medical therapy or compliance is a problem, in patients with cardiac disease, and in patients who relapse after thyroidectomy.

Propranolol (section 2.4) is useful for rapid relief of thyrotoxic symptoms and can be used in conjunction with antithyroid drugs or as an adjunct to radioactive iodine. Beta-blockers are also useful in neonatal thyrotoxicosis and in supraventricular arrhythmias due to hyperthyroidism. Propranolol has been used in conjunction with iodine to prepare mildly thyrotoxic patients for surgery but it is preferable to make the patient euthyroid with carbimazole. Laboratory tests of thyroid function are not altered by beta-blockers. Most experience in treating thyrotoxicosis has been gained with propranolol but atenolol (section 2.4) is also used.

Thyrotoxic crisis (‘thyroid storm’) requires emergency treatment with intravenous administration of fluids, propranolol and hydrocortisone as sodium succinate, as well as oral iodine solution and carbimazole or propylthiouracil which may need to be administered by nasogastric tube.

Neonatal hyperthyroidism is treated with carbimazole or propylthiouracil, usually for 8 to 12 weeks. In severe symptomatic disease iodine may be needed to block the thyroid and propranolol required to treat peripheral symptoms.

Pregnancy

Radioactive iodine therapy is contra-indicated during pregnancy. Propylthiouracil and carbimazole can be given but the blocking-replacement regimen (see above) is not suitable. Rarely, carbimazole has been associated with congenital defects, including aplasia cutis of the neonate—use carbimazole in pregnancy only if propylthiouracil is not suitable. Both propylthiouracil and carbimazole cross the placenta and in high doses can cause fetal goitre and hypothyroidism—the lowest dose that will control the hyperthyroid state should be used (requirements in Graves’ disease tend to fall during pregnancy).

Breast-feeding

Carbamazole and propylthiouracil are present in breast milk but this does not preclude breast-feeding as long as neonatal development is closely monitored and the lowest effective dose is used.

CARBIMAZOLE

Hepatic impairment use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe hepatic impairment

Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding  amount in milk may be sufficient to affect neonatal thyroid function, therefore lowest effective dose should be used; see notes above

Side-effects  nausea, mild gastro-intestinal disturbances, taste disturbance, hepatic disorders (including hepatitis and jaundice), headache, fever, malaise, rash, pruritus, arthralgia, rarely myopathy, alopecia, bone marrow suppression (including pancytopenia and agranulocytosis, see Neutropenia and Agranulocytosis above), hypersensitivity reactions

Indication and dose

Hyperthyroidism (including Graves’ disease)
- By mouth

Neonate  initially 750 micrograms/kg daily in single or divided doses until euthyroid then adjusted as necessary (see notes above); higher initial doses (up to 1 mg/kg daily) are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

Child 1 month–12 years  initially 750 micrograms/kg (max. 30 mg) daily in single or divided doses until euthyroid then adjusted as necessary (see notes above); higher initial doses occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

Child 12–18 years  initially 30 mg daily in single or divided doses until euthyroid then adjusted as necessary (see notes above); higher initial doses occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

Counselling  Warn child and carers to tell doctor immediately if sore throat, mouth ulcers, bruising, fever, malaise, or non-specific illness develops

Aqueous Iodine Oral Solution

Oral solution, iodine 5%, potassium iodide 10% in purified water, freshly boiled and cooled, total iodine 130 mg/mL, net price 500 mL = £6.24. Label: 27

Dose

Neonatal thyrotoxicosis
- By mouth

Neonate 0.05–0.1 mL 3 times daily

Thyrotoxicosis (pre-operative)
- By mouth

Neonate 0.1–0.3 mL 3 times daily

Child 1 month–18 years 0.1–0.3 mL 3 times daily

Thyrotoxic crisis
- By mouth

Child 1 month–1 year 0.2–0.3 mL 3 times daily

Administration  Dilute well with milk or water

Propylthiouracil

Cautions  monitor for hepatotoxicity

Hepatotoxicity  Severe hepatic reactions have been reported, including fatal cases and cases requiring liver transplant—discontinue if significant liver-enzyme abnormalities develop

Counselling  Patients should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder and advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, abdominal pain, jaundice, dark urine, or pruritus develop

Hepatic impairment  reduce dose (see also Hepatotoxicity above)

Renal impairment  estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–50 mL/minute/1.73 m², use 75% of normal dose; estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m², use 50% of normal dose

Pregnancy  see notes above

Breast-feeding  monitor infant’s thyroid status but amount in milk probably too small to affect infant; high doses may affect neonatal thyroid function; see also notes above

Side-effects  see under Carbimazole; leucopenia; rarely cutaneous vasculitis, thrombocytopenia, aplastic anaemia, hypoprotrombinaemia, hepatic disorders (including hepatitis, hepatic failure, encephalopathy, hepatic necrosis; see also Hepatotoxicity above), nephritis, lupus erythematosus-like syndromes

Licensed use  not licensed for use in children under 6 years of age

Indication and dose

Hyperthyroidism (including Graves’ disease)
- By mouth

Neonate initially 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily until euthyroid then adjusted as necessary (see notes above); higher doses occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

Child 1 month–1 year initially 2.5 mg/kg 3 times daily until euthyroid then adjusted as necessary (see notes above); higher doses occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

Child 1–5 years initially 25 mg 3 times daily until euthyroid then adjusted as necessary (see notes above); higher doses occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis
The adrenal cortex normally secretes hydrocortisone (cortisol) which has glucocorticoid activity and weak mineralocorticoid activity. It also secretes the mineralocorticoid aldosterone.

In deficiency states, physiological replacement is best achieved with a combination of hydrocortisone and fludrocortisone; hydrocortisone alone does not usually provide sufficient mineralocorticoid activity for complete replacement.

In Addison’s disease or following adrenalectomy, hydrocortisone by mouth is usually required. This is given in 2–3 divided doses, the larger in the morning and smaller in the evening, mimicking the normal diurnal rhythm of cortisol secretion. The optimum daily dose is determined on the basis of clinical response. Glucocorticoid therapy is supplemented by fludrocortisone.

In acute adrenocortical insufficiency, hydrocortisone is given intravenously (preferably as sodium succinate) every 6 to 8 hours in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%.

In hypopituitarism, glucocorticoids should be given as in adrenocortical insufficiency, but since production of aldosterone is also regulated by the renin-angiotensin system a mineralocorticoid is not usually required. Additional replacement therapy with levothyroxine (section 6.2.1) and sex hormones (section 6.4) should be given as indicated by the pattern of hormone deficiency.

In congenital adrenal hyperplasia, the pituitary gland increases production of corticotropin to compensate for reduced formation of cortisol; this results in excessive adrenal androgen production. Treatment is aimed at suppressing corticotropin using hydrocortisone (section 6.3.2). Careful and continual dose titration is required to avoid growth retardation and toxicity; for this reason potent, synthetic glucocorticoids such as dexamethasone are usually reserved for use in adolescents. The dose is adjusted according to clinical response and measurement of adrenal androgens and 17-hydroxyprogesterone. Salt-losing forms of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (where there is a lack of aldosterone production) also require mineralocorticoid replacement and salt supplementation (particularly in early life). The dose of mineralocorticoid is adjusted according to electrolyte concentration and plasma-renin activity.

**Fludrocortisone Acetate**

**Cautions** section 6.3.2; **Interactions**: Appendix 1 (corticosteroids)

**Contra-indications** section 6.3.2

**Hepatic impairment** see section 6.3.2

**Renal impairment** see section 6.3.2

**Pregnancy** see section 6.3.2

**Breast-feeding** see section 6.3.2

**Side-effects** section 6.3.2

### Indication and dose

**Mineralocorticoid replacement in adrenocortical insufficiency**

- **Neonate** initially 50 micrograms once daily, adjusted according to response; usual range 50–200 micrograms daily; higher doses may be required

- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–100 micrograms once daily; maintenance 50–300 micrograms once daily, adjusted according to response

**Note** Dose adjustment may be required if salt supplements are administered
Endocrine system

The relatively high mineralocorticoid activity of cortisone and hydrocortisone, and the resulting fluid retention, make them unsuitable for disease suppression on a long-term basis. However, they can be used for adrenal replacement therapy (section 6.3.1); hydrocortisone is preferred because cortisone requires conversion in the liver to hydrocortisone. Hydrocortisone is used on a short-term basis by intravenous injection for the emergency management of some conditions. The relatively moderate anti-inflammatory potency of hydrocortisone also makes it a useful topical corticosteroid for the management of inflammatory skin conditions because side-effects (both topical and systemic) are less marked (section 13.4); cortisone is not active topically.

Prednisolone has predominantly glucocorticoid activity and is the corticosteroid most commonly used by mouth for long-term disease suppression.

Betamethasone and dexamethasone have very high glucocorticoid activity in conjunction with insignificant mineralocorticoid activity. This makes them particularly suitable for high-dose therapy in conditions where fluid retention would be a disadvantage.

Betamethasone and dexamethasone also have a long duration of action and this, coupled with their lack of mineralocorticoid activity, makes them particularly suitable for conditions which require suppression of corticotropin (corticotrophin) secretion. Some esters of betamethasone and of beclometasone (beclomethasone) exert a considerably more marked topical effect (e.g. on the skin or the lungs) than when given by mouth; use is made of this to obtain topical effects whilst minimising systemic side-effects (e.g. for skin applications and asthma inhalations).

Deflazacort has a high glucocorticoid activity; it is derived from prednisolone.

Use of corticosteroids

Dosages of corticosteroids vary widely in different diseases and in different children. If the use of a corticosteroid can save or prolong life, as in exudative dermatitis, pemphigus, acute leukaemia or acute transplant rejection, high doses may need to be given, because the complications of therapy are likely to be less serious than the effects of the disease itself.

When long-term corticosteroid therapy is used in some chronic diseases, the adverse effects of treatment may become greater than the disabilities caused by the disease. To minimise side-effects the maintenance dose should be kept as low as possible.

When potentially less harmful measures are ineffective corticosteroids are used topically for the treatment of inflammatory conditions of the skin (section 13.4). Corticosteroids should be avoided or used only under specialist supervision in psoriasis (section 13.5).

Corticosteroids are used both topically (by rectum) and systemically (by mouth or intravenously) in the management of ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease (section 1.5 and section 1.7.2).

Use can be made of the mineralocorticoid activity of fludrocortisone to treat postural hypotension in autonomic neuropathy.

High-dose corticosteroids should be avoided for the management of septic shock. However, low-dose hydrocortisone can be used in septic shock (section 2.7.1) that is resistant to volume expansion and catecholamines, and is accompanied by suspected or proven adrenal insufficiency.

The suppressive action of glucocorticoids on the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis is greatest and most prolonged when they are given at night. In most adults a single dose of 1 mg of dexamethasone at night is sufficient to inhibit corticotropin secretion for 24 hours. This is the basis of the ‘overnight dexamethasone suppression test’ for diagnosing Cushing’s syndrome.

Betamethasone and dexamethasone are also appropriate for conditions where water retention would be a disadvantage.

A corticosteroid can be used in the management of raised intracranial pressure or cerebral oedema that occurs as a result of malignancy (see also p. 19); high doses of betamethasone or dexamethasone are generally used. However, a corticosteroid should not be used for the management of head injury or stroke because it is unlikely to be of benefit and may even be harmful.

6.3.2 Glucocorticoid therapy

In comparing the relative potencies of corticosteroids in terms of their anti-inflammatory (glucocorticoid) effects it should be borne in mind that high glucocorticoid activity in itself is of no advantage unless it is accompanied by relatively low mineralocorticoid activity (see Disadvantages of Corticosteroids below). The mineralocorticoid activity in itself is of no advantage unless it is accompanied by relatively low mineralocorticoid activity (see section 1.7.2). The mineralocorticoid activity of fludrocortisone (section 6.3.1) is so high that its anti-inflammatory activity is of no clinical relevance. The table below shows equivalent anti-inflammatory doses.

### Equivalent anti-inflammatory doses of corticosteroids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equivalent anti-inflammatory doses of corticosteroids</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prednisolone 1 mg = Betamethasone 150 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cortisone acetate 5 mg = Deflazacort 1.2 mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexamethasone 150 micrograms = Hydrocortisone 4 mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylprednisolone 800 micrograms = Triamcinolone 800 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The relatively high mineralocorticoid activity of cortisone and hydrocortisone, and the resulting fluid retention would be a disadvantage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flornine® (Squibb) Tablets, scored, fludrocortisone acetate 100 micrograms. Net price 100-tab pack = £5.05. Label: 10, steroid card</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note Bioavailability uncertain, tablets may result in more reliable absorption and may be dispersed in water.

Flornine® (Squibb) Tablets, scored, fludrocortisone acetate 100 micrograms. Net price 100-tab pack = £5.05. Label: 10, steroid card
In acute hypersensitivity reactions, such as angioedema of the upper respiratory tract and anaphylaxis, corticosteroids are indicated as an adjunct to emergency treatment with adrenaline (epinephrine) (section 3.4.3). In such cases hydrocortisone (as sodium succinate) by intravenous injection may be required.

In the management of asthma, corticosteroids are preferentially used by inhalation (section 3.2) but systemic therapy along with bronchodilators is required for the emergency treatment of severe acute asthma (section 3.1.1).

Betamethasone is used in women at risk of preterm delivery to reduce the incidence of neonatal respiratory distress syndrome [unlicensed use].

Dexamethasone should not be used routinely for the prophylaxis and treatment of chronic lung disease in neonates because of an association with adverse neurological effects.

Corticosteroids may be useful in conditions such as autoimmune hepatitis, rheumatoid arthritis, and sarcoidosis; they may also lead to remissions of acquired haemolytic anaemia (section 9.1.3) and thrombocytopenic purpura (section 9.1.4).

High doses of a corticosteroid (usually prednisolone) are used in the treatment of glomerular kidney disease, including nephrotic syndrome. The condition frequently recurs; a corticosteroid given in high doses and for prolonged periods may delay relapse but the higher incidence of adverse effects limits the overall benefit. Those who suffer frequent relapses may be treated with prednisolone given in a low dose (daily or on alternate days) for 3–6 months; the dose should be adjusted to minimise effects on growth and development. Other drugs used in the treatment of glomerular kidney disease include levamisole (section 5.5.2), cyclophosphamide and chlorambucil (section 8.1.1), and ciclosporin (section 8.2.2). Congenital nephrotic syndrome may be resistant to corticosteroids and immunosuppressants; indomethacin (section 10.1.1) and an ACE inhibitor such as captopril (section 2.5.5.1) have been used.

Corticosteroids can improve the prognosis of serious conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus and polyarteritis nodosa; the effects of the disease process may be suppressed and symptoms relieved, but the underlying condition is not cured, although it may ultimately remit. It is usual to begin therapy in these conditions at a high dose and then to reduce the dose to the lowest commensurate with disease control.

For other references to the use of corticosteroids see Prescribing in Palliative Care (p. 18), section 8.2.2 (immunosuppression), section 10.1.2 (rheumatic diseases), section 11.4 (eye), section 12.1.1 (otitis externa), section 12.2.1 (allergic rhinitis), and section 12.3.1 (aphthous ulcers).

Administration

Whenever possible local treatment with creams, intra-articular injections, inhalations, eye-drops, or enemas should be used in preference to systemic treatment. The suppressive action of a corticosteroid on cortisol secretion is least when it is given as a single dose in the morning. In an attempt to reduce pituitary-adrenal suppression further, the total dose for two days can sometimes be taken as a single dose on alternate days; alternate-day administration has not been very successful in the management of asthma (section 3.2). Pituitary-adrenal suppression can also be reduced by means of intermittent therapy with short courses. In some conditions it may be possible to reduce the dose of corticosteroid by adding a small dose of an immuno-suppressive drug (section 8.2.1).

### Cautions and contra-indications of corticosteroids

#### Adrenal suppression

During prolonged therapy with corticosteroids, adrenal atrophy develops and can persist for years after stopping. Abrupt withdrawal after a prolonged period can lead to acute adrenal insufficiency, hypotension, or death (see Withdrawal of Corticosteroids, below). Withdrawal can also be associated with fever, myalgia, arthralgia, rhinitis, conjunctivitis, painful itchy skin nodules, and weight loss.

To compensate for a diminished adrenocortical response caused by prolonged corticosteroid treatment, any significant intercurrent illness, trauma, or surgical procedure requires a temporary increase in corticosteroid dose, or if already stopped, a temporary reintroduction of corticosteroid treatment. To avoid a precipitous fall in blood pressure during anaesthesia or in the immediate postoperative period, anaesthetists must know whether a patient is taking or has been taking a corticosteroid. A regimen for corticosteroid replacement may be necessary before and after surgery.

Children on long-term corticosteroid treatment should carry a Steroid Treatment Card (see p. 373) which gives guidance on minimising risk and provides details of prescriber, drug, dosage and duration of treatment.

#### Infections

Prolonged courses of corticosteroids increase susceptibility to infections and severity of infections; clinical presentation of infections may also be atypical. Serious infections, e.g. sepsicaemia and tuberculosis, may reach an advanced stage before being recognised, and amoebiasis or strongyloidiasis may be activated or exacerbated (exclude before initiating a corticosteroid in those at risk or with suggestive symptoms). Fungal or viral ocular infections may also be exacerbated (see also section 11.4.1).

#### Chickenpox

Unless they have had chickenpox, children receiving oral or parenteral corticosteroids for purposes other than replacement should be regarded as being at risk of severe chickenpox (see Steroid Treatment Card). Manifestations of fulminant illness include pneumonia, hepatitis and disseminated intravascular coagulation; rash is not necessarily a prominent feature. Passive immunisation with varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (section 14.5.2) is needed for exposed non-immune children receiving systemic corticosteroids or for those who have used them within the previous 3 months. Confirmed chickenpox warrants specialist care and urgent treatment (section 5.3.2.1). Corticosteroids should not be stopped and dosage may need to be increased.
Topical, inhaled or rectal corticosteroids are less likely to be associated with an increased risk of severe chickenpox.

**Measles** Children taking corticosteroids, and their carers, should be advised to take particular care to avoid exposure to measles and to seek urgent medical advice if exposure occurs. Prophylaxis with intramuscular normal immunoglobulin (section 14.5.1) may be needed.

**Withdrawal of corticosteroids**

The magnitude and speed of dose reduction in corticosteroid withdrawal should be determined on a case-by-case basis, taking into consideration the underlying condition that is being treated, and individual patient factors such as the likelihood of relapse and the duration of corticosteroid treatment. **Gradual withdrawal of systemic corticosteroids** should be considered in those whose disease is unlikely to relapse and have:

- received more than 40 mg prednisolone (or equivalent) daily for more than 1 week or 2 mg/kg daily for 1 week or 1 mg/kg daily for 1 month;
- been given repeat doses in the evening;
- received more than 3 weeks’ treatment;
- recently received repeated courses (particularly if taken for longer than 3 weeks);
- taken a short course within 1 year of stopping long-term therapy;
- other possible causes of adrenal suppression.

Systemic corticosteroids may be stopped abruptly in those whose disease is unlikely to relapse and who have received treatment for 3 weeks or less and who are not included in the patient groups described above.

During corticosteroid withdrawal the dose may be reduced rapidly down to physiological doses (equivalent to prednisolone 2–2.5 mg/m² daily) and then reduced more slowly. Assessment of the disease may be needed during withdrawal to ensure that relapse does not occur.

**Psychiatric reactions**

Systemic corticosteroids, particularly in high doses, are linked to psychiatric reactions including euphoria, nightmares, insomnia, irritability, mood lability, suicidal thoughts, psychotic reactions, and behavioural disturbances. A serious paranoid state or depression with risk of suicide can be induced, particularly in children with a history of mental disorder. These reactions frequently subside on reducing the dose or discontinuing the corticosteroid but they may also require specific management. Children and their carers should be advised to seek medical advice if psychiatric symptoms (especially depression and suicidal thoughts) occur and they should also be alerted to the rare possibility of such reactions during withdrawal of corticosteroid treatment.

Systemic corticosteroids should be prescribed with care in those predisposed to psychiatric reactions, including those who have previously suffered corticosteroid-induced psychosis, or who have a personal or family history of psychiatric disorders.
tuberculosis (or X-ray changes), hypertension, congestive heart failure, diabetes mellitus including family history, osteoporosis, susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma (including family history), ocular herpes simplex—risk of corneal perforation, severe affective disorders (particularly if history of steroid-induced psychosis—see also Psychiatric Reactions above), epilepsy, peptic ulcer, hypothyroidism, history of steroid myopathy, ulcerative colitis, diverticulitis, recent intestinal anastomoses, thromboembolic disorders, myasthenia gravis; interactions: Appendix 1 (corticosteroids)

Other contra-indications include: systemic infection (unless specific therapy given); avoid live virus vaccines in those receiving immunosuppressive doses (serum antibody response diminished)

Hepatic impairment
When corticosteroids are administered orally or parenterally, the plasma-drug concentration may be increased in children with hepatic impairment. Corticosteroids should be used with caution in hepatic impairment and the child should be monitored closely.

Renal impairment
Oral and parenteral preparations of corticosteroids should be used with caution in children with renal impairment.

Pregnancy and breast-feeding
The benefit of treatment with corticosteroids during pregnancy and breast-feeding outweighs the risk; pregnant women with fluid retention should be monitored closely. Corticosteroid cover will be required during labour.

Following a review of the data on the safety of systemic corticosteroids used in pregnancy and breast-feeding the CSM (May 1998) concluded:

- corticosteroids vary in their ability to cross the placenta: betamethasone and dexamethasone cross the placenta readily while 88% of prednisolone is inactivated as it crosses the placenta;
- there is no convincing evidence that systemic corticosteroids increase the incidence of congenital abnormalities such as cleft palate or lip;
- when administration is prolonged or repeated during pregnancy, systemic corticosteroids increase the risk of intra-uterine growth restriction; there is no evidence of intra-uterine growth restriction following short-term treatment (e.g. prophylactic treatment for neonatal respiratory distress syndrome);
- any adrenal suppression in the neonate following prenatal exposure usually resolves spontaneously after birth and is rarely clinically important;
- prednisolone appears in small amounts in breast milk but maternal doses of up to 40 mg daily are unlikely to cause systemic effects in the infant; infants should be monitored for adrenal suppression if the mothers are taking a higher dose.

Side-effects of corticosteroids
Overdosage or prolonged use can exaggerate some of the normal physiological actions of corticosteroids leading to mineralocorticoid and glucocorticoid side-effects.

Corticosteroids suppress growth and can affect the development of puberty. It is important to use the lowest effective dose; alternate-day regimens may be appropriate and limit growth reduction. For the effect of corticosteroids given in pregnancy, see Pregnancy and Breast-feeding, above.

Mineralocorticoid side-effects include hypertension, sodium and water retention, and potassium, and calcium loss. They are most marked with fludrocortisone, but are significant with cortisone, hydrocortisone, corticotropin, and tetraacosactide (tetracosactrin). Mineralocorticoid actions are negligible with the high potency glucocorticoids, betamethasone and dexamethasone, and occur only slightly with methylprednisolone, prednisolone, and triamcinolone.

### Steroid Treatment Card

I am a patient on Steroid treatment which must not be stopped suddenly

- If you have been taking this medicine for more than three weeks, the dose should be reduced gradually when you stop taking steroids unless your doctor says otherwise.
- Read the patient information leaflet given with the medicine.
- Always carry this card with you and show it to anyone who treats you (for example a doctor, nurse, pharmacist or dentist). For one year after you stop the treatment, you must mention that you have taken steroids.
- If you become ill, or if you come into contact with anyone who has an infectious disease, consult your doctor promptly. If you have never had chickenpox, you should avoid close contact with people who have chickenpox or shingles. If you do come into contact with chickenpox, see your doctor urgently.
- Make sure that the information on the card is kept up to date.
Glucocorticoid side-effects include diabetes and osteoporosis (section 6.6); in addition high doses are associated with avascular necrosis of the femoral head. Muscle wasting (proximal myopathy) can also occur. Corticosteroid therapy is also weakly linked with peptic ulceration; there is no conclusive evidence that the use of enteric-coated preparations of prednisolone reduces the risk of peptic ulceration. See also Psychiatric Reactions, p. 372.

High doses of corticosteroids can cause Cushing's syndrome, with moon face, striae, and acne; it is usually reversible on withdrawal of treatment, but this must always be gradually tapered to avoid symptoms of acute adrenal insufficiency (important: see also Adrenal Suppression, p. 371).

Side-effects can be minimised by using the lowest effective dose for the minimum period possible. Other side effects include: gastro-intestinal effects: dyspepsia, abdominal distension, acute pancreatitis, oesophageal ulceration and candidiasis; musculoskeletal effects: muscle weakness, vertebral and long bone fractures, tendon rupture; endocrine effects: menstrual irregularities and amenorrhoea, hirsutism, weight gain, negative nitrogen and calcium balance, increased appetite, increased susceptibility to and severity of infection, reactivation of dormant tuberculosis; neuropsychiatric effects: psychological dependence, insomnia, increased intracranial pressure with papilloedema (usually after withdrawal), aggravation of schizophrenia, aggravation of epilepsy; ophthalmic effects: papilloedema, posterior subcapsular cataracts, corneal or scleral thinning and exacerbation of ophthalmic viral or fungal disease, increased intra-ocular pressure, exophthalmos, very rarely angle-closure glaucoma; also impaired healing, petechiae, ecchymoses, facial erythema, suppression of skin test reactions, urticaria, hyperhidrosis, skin atrophy, bruising, telangiectasia, myocardial rupture following recent myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, leucocytosis, hyperglycaemia, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis), thromboembolism, nausea, malaise, hiccupts, headache, vertigo.

For other references to the side-effects of corticosteroids see section 1.5 (gastro-intestinal system), section 3.2 (asthma), section 11.4 (eye) and section 13.4 (skin).

### BETAMETHASONE

**Cautions** see notes above  
**Contra-indications** see notes above  
**Hepatic impairment** see notes above  
**Renal impairment** see notes above  
**Pregnancy** see notes above  
**Breast-feeding** see notes above  
**Side-effects** see notes above  
**Licensed use** Betnesol tablets not licensed for use as mouthwash

**Indication and dose**

**Suppression of inflammatory and allergic disorders; congenital adrenal hyperplasia; see also notes above**

- **By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion**
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** initially 1 mg repeated up to 4 times in 24 hours according to response

### DEFLAZACORT

**Cautions** see notes above  
**Contra-indications** see notes above  
**Hepatic impairment** see notes above  
**Renal impairment** see notes above  
**Pregnancy** see notes above  
**Breast-feeding** see notes above  
**Side-effects** see notes above  
**Indication and dose**

**Inflammatory and allergic disorders**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 0.25–1.5 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days; up to 2.4 mg/kg (max. 120 mg) daily has been used in emergency situations
  - **Child 12–18 years** 3–18 mg once daily or on alternate days; up to 2.4 mg/kg (max. 120 mg) daily has been used in emergency situations

**Nephrotic syndrome**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1.5 mg/kg once daily (max. 120 mg) reduced to lowest effective dose for maintenance

### DEXAMETHASONE

**Cautions** see notes above  
**Contra-indications** see notes above  
**Hepatic impairment** see notes above  
**Renal impairment** see notes above  
**Pregnancy** see notes above  
**Breast-feeding** see notes above  
**Side-effects** see notes above  
**Licensed use** consult product literature; not licensed for use in bacterial meningitis

**Eye** section 11.4.1  
**Ear** section 12.1.1  
**Nose** section 12.2.1  
**Mouth** section 12.3.1

### Administration

For intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

Betnesol® (UCB Pharma)  
Injection, betamethasone 4 mg (as sodium phosphate)/mL. Net price 1-mL amp = £1.17. Label: 10, steroid card

**DEFLAZACORT**

Cautions see notes above  
Contra-indications see notes above  
Hepatic impairment see notes above  
Renal impairment see notes above  
Pregnancy see notes above  
Breast-feeding see notes above  
Side-effects see notes above  
Indication and dose

**Inflammatory and allergic disorders**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 0.25–1.5 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days; up to 2.4 mg/kg (max. 120 mg) daily has been used in emergency situations
  - **Child 12–18 years** 3–18 mg once daily or on alternate days; up to 2.4 mg/kg (max. 120 mg) daily has been used in emergency situations

**Nephrotic syndrome**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1.5 mg/kg once daily (max. 120 mg) reduced to lowest effective dose for maintenance

Calcort® (Sanofi-Aventis)  
Tablets, deflazacort 6 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £15.82. Label: 5, 10, steroid card

**DEXAMETHASONE**

Cautions see notes above  
Contra-indications see notes above  
Hepatic impairment see notes above  
Renal impairment see notes above  
Pregnancy see notes above  
Breast-feeding see notes above  
Side-effects see notes above  
Licensed use consult product literature; not licensed for use in bacterial meningitis
Indication and dose

**Inflammatory and allergic disorders**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 10–100 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, adjusted according to response; up to 300 micrograms/kg daily may be required in emergency situations.
  - By intramuscular injection or slow intravenous injection or infusion
    - Child 1 month–12 years: 83–333 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; max. 20 mg daily
    - Child 12–18 years: initially 0.4–20 mg daily

- **Child 1 month–12 years**
  - Life-threatening cerebral oedema
    - By intravenous injection
      - Child under 35 kg body-weight: initially 16.7 mg, then 3.3 mg every 3 hours for 3 days, then 3.3 mg every 6 hours for 1 day, then 1.7 mg every 6 hours for 4 days, then decrease by 0.8 mg daily
      - Child over 35 kg body-weight: initially 20.8 mg, then 3.3 mg every 2 hours for 3 days, then 3.3 mg every 4 hours for 1 day, then 3.3 mg every 6 hours for 4 days, then decrease by 1.7 mg daily

- **Child 1 month–18 years**
  - Bacterial meningitis (see section 5.1)
    - By slow intravenous injection
      - Child 3 months–18 years: 150 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) every 6 hours for 4 days starting before or with first dose of antibacterial

- **Physiological replacement**
  - By mouth or by slow intravenous injection
    - Child 1 month–18 years: 250–500 micrograms/m² every 12 hours, adjusted according to response

- **Croup** section 3.1

- **Nausea and vomiting with chemotherapy** section 8.1

- **Rheumatic disease** section 10.1.2

- **Eye** section 11.4.1

**Administration** for administration **by mouth** tablets may be dispersed in water or injection solution given by mouth.

For **intravenous infusion** dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15–20 minutes.

**Dexamethasone** (Non-proprietary)

- Tablets, dexamethasone 500 micrograms, net price 28-tab pack = £38.00; 2 mg, 50-tab pack = £7.46; 100-tab pack = £13.85. Label: 10, steroid card, 21
- Oral solution, sugar-free, dexamethasone (as sodium phosphate) 2 mg/5 mL, net price 150-mL = £42.30. Label: 10, steroid card, 21
- Injection, dexamethasone (as sodium phosphate) 3.3 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 83p. Label: 10, steroid card
- Injection, dexamethasone (as sodium phosphate) 4 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 85p, 2-mL vial = £1.27. Label: 10, steroid card
Hypotension resistant to inotropic treatment and volume replacement (limited evidence)  
- By intravenous injection

- Neonate initially 2.5 mg/kg repeated if necessary after 4 hours, then 2.5 mg/kg every 6 hours for 48 hours or until blood pressure recovers, then dose reduced gradually over at least 48 hours

Child 1 month–18 years 1 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) every 6 hours

Severe acute asthma p. 134

Eye section 11.4.1

Haemorrhoids section 1.7.2

Rheumatic disease section 10.1.2

Shock section 2.7.1

Skin section 13.4

Administration for intravenous administration, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; for intermittent infusion give over 20–30 minutes.

For administration by mouth, injection solution may be swallowed [unlicensed use] but consider phosphate content; alternatively Corlan® pellets (section 12.3.1) may be swallowed [unlicensed use]—pellets should not be cut as may not provide appropriate dose

Hydrocortisone® (Non-proprietary) Tablets, scored, hydrocortisone 10 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £44.25; 20 mg, 30-tab pack = £47.17. Label: 10, steroid card, 21

Efortesol® (Sovereign) Injection, hydrocortisone 100 mg (as sodium phosphate)/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.08, 5-mL amp = £4.89. Label: 10, steroid card

Note: Paraesthesia and pain (particularly in the perineal region) may follow intravenous injection of the phosphate ester

1. restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency

Solu-Cortef® (Pharmacia) Tablets, scored, methylprednisolone 2 mg (pink), net price 30-tab pack = £3.88; 4 mg, 30-tab pack = £6.19; 16 mg, 30-tab pack = £17.17; 100 mg (blue), 20-tab pack = £48.32. Label: 10, steroid card, 21

Solu-Medrone® (Pharmacia) Injection, powder for reconstitution, methylprednisolone (as sodium succinate) (all with solvent). Net price 40-mg vial = £1.58; 125-mg vial = £4.75; 500-mg vial = £9.60; 1-g vial = £17.30; 2-g vial = £32.86. Label: 10, steroid card

Intramuscular depot

Depo-Medrone® (Pharmacia) Injection (aqueous suspension), methylprednisolone acetate 40 mg/mL. Net price 1-mL vial = £2.87; 2-mL vial = £5.15; 3-mL vial = £7.47. Label: 10, steroid card

Dose
- By deep intramuscular injection into gluteal muscle seek specialist advice

PREDNISOLONE

Cautions see notes above; also Duchenne’s muscular dystrophy (possible transient rhabdomyolysis and myoglobinuria following strenuous physical activity)

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment see notes above

Renal impairment see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding see notes above
Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Autoimmune inflammatory disorders (including juvenile idiopathic arthritis, connective tissue disorders and systemic lupus erythematosus)

- By mouth
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 1–2 mg/kg once daily (usual max. 60 mg daily), then reduced after a few days if appropriate

Autoimmune hepatitis

- By mouth
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 2 mg/kg once daily (max. 40 mg daily) then reduced to minimum effective dose

Corticosteroid replacement therapy

- By mouth
  Child 12–18 years 2–2.5 mg/m² daily in 1–2 divided doses adjusted according to response

Infantile spasms

- By mouth
  Child 1 month–2 years initially 10 mg 4 times daily for 14 days (if seizures not controlled after 7 days increase to 20 mg 3 times daily for 7 days); reduce dose gradually over 15 days until stopped (patients taking 40 mg daily, reduce dose in steps of 10 mg every 5 days, then stop; patients taking 60 mg daily, reduce dose to 40 mg daily for 5 days, then 20 mg daily for 5 days, then 10 mg daily for 5 days, then stop)

Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura

- By mouth
  Child 1–10 years 1–2 mg/kg daily for max. 14 days or 4 mg/kg daily for max. 4 days

Nephrotic syndrome

- By mouth
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 60 mg/m² once daily (max. 80 mg daily) for 4–6 weeks until proteinuria ceases then 40 mg/m² on alternate days for 4–6 weeks, then withdraw by reducing dose gradually; prevention of relapse 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days for 3–6 months

Asthma see p. 146

Ear section 12.1.1

Eye section 11.4.1

Immunosuppression section 8.2.2

Inflammatory bowel disease section 1.5.2

Pneumocystis pneumonia section 5.4.8

Rheumatic disease section 10.1.2

Prednisolone (Non-proprietary) Pred

Tablets, prednisolone 1 mg, net price 28-tab pack = 93p; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.03; 25 mg, 56-tab pack = £30.00. Label: 10, steroid card, 21

Tablets, both e/c, prednisolone 2.5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £4.65, 100-tab pack = £30.79; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £4.73, 100-tab pack = £31.04. Label: 5, 10, steroid card, 25

Brands include Deltacortril

Soluble tablets, prednisolone 5 mg (as sodium phosphate), net price 30-tab pack = £8.95. Label: 10, steroid card, 13, 21

6.4 Sex hormones

6.4.1 Female sex hormones

6.4.2 Male sex hormones and antagonists

6.4.3 Anabolic steroids

Sex hormone replacement therapy is indicated in children for the treatment of gonadotrophin deficiency, gonadal disorders, or delayed puberty that interferes with quality of life. Indications include constitutional delay in puberty, congenital or acquired hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (Turner’s syndrome, Klinefelter’s syndrome), endocrine disorders (Cushing’s syndrome or hyperprolactinaemia), and chronic illnesses, such as cystic fibrosis or sickle-cell disease, that may affect the onset of puberty.

Replacement therapy is generally started at the appropriate age for the development of puberty and should be managed by a paediatric endocrinologist. Patients with constitutional delay, chronic illness, or eating disorders may need only small doses of hormone supplements for 4 to 6 months to induce puberty and endogenous sex hormone production, which is then sustained. Patients with organic causes of hormone deficiency will require life-long replacement, adjusted to allow normal development.

Inadequate treatment may lead to poor bone mineralisation, resulting in fractures and osteoporosis.

6.4.1 Female sex hormones

6.4.1.1 Oestrogens

6.4.1.2 Progestogens

Oestrogens are necessary for the development of female secondary sexual characteristics. If onset of puberty is delayed because of organic pathology, puberty can be induced with ethinylestradiol in increasing doses, guided by breast staging and uterine scans. Cyclical progestogen replacement is added after 12–18 months of oestrogen treatment (see section 6.4.1.2). Once the adult dosage of oestrogen has been reached (20 micrograms ethinylestradiol daily), it may be more convenient to provide replacement either as a low-dose oestrogen containing oral contraceptive formulation.
Topical oestrogen creams are used in the treatment of labial adhesions (see section 7.2.1). Side-effects include rhagic telangiectasia (but evidence of benefit is limited), supervision is sometimes a problem. Topical oestrogen creams are used in the treatment of labial adhesions (see section 7.2.1).

**NORETHISTERONE**

(Co-ethinyl oestradiol)

Cautions conditions that may worsen with fluid retention e.g. epilepsy, hypertension, migraine, asthma, cardiac dysfunction; susceptibility to thromboembolism (particular caution with high dose); history of depression; diabetes (monitor closely); interactions: Appendix 1 (progestogens)

Contra-indications history of liver tumours, severe liver impairment; severe arterial disease, undiagnosed vaginal bleeding; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); history during pregnancy of idiopathic jaundice, severe pruritus, or pemphigoid gestations

Hepatic impairment caution; avoid if severe

Renal impairment use with caution

Pregnancy avoid

Breast-feeding higher doses may suppress lactation and alter milk composition; use lowest effective dose

Side-effects menstrual disturbances, premenstrual-like syndrome (including bloating, fluid retention, breast tenderness), weight gain, nausea, headache, dizziness, insomnia, drowsiness, depression; skin reactions (including urticaria, pruritus, rash, and acne), hirsutism and alopecia; jaundice and anaphylactoid reactions also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Induction and dose**

See notes above

**Maintenance of sexual maturation in girls**

- By mouth
  - 20 micrograms daily with cyclical progestogen for 7 days of each 28-day cycle

**Prevention of tall stature in girls**

- By mouth
  - Girls 2–12 years 20–50 micrograms daily

**Pituitary priming before growth hormone secretion test in girls**

- By mouth
  - Girls with bone age above 10 years 100 micrograms daily for 3 days before test

**Induction and maintenance of sexual maturation in females (combined with an oestrogen after 12–24 months oestrogen therapy)**

- By mouth
  - 5 mg once daily for the last 7 days of a 28-day cycle
Postponement of menstruation

- By mouth
  5 mg 3 times daily, starting 3 days before expected onset of menstruation

Norethisterone (Non-proprietary) [Bf]
Tablets, norethisterone 5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £2.18

Primolut N® (Bayer Schering) [Ph]
Tablets, norethisterone 5 mg. Net price 30-tab pack = £1.89

Utovlan® (Pharmacia) [Ph]
Tablets, norethisterone 5 mg. Net price 30-tab pack = £1.40, 90-tab pack = £4.21

6.4.2 Male sex hormones and antagonists

Androgens cause masculinisation; they are used as replacement therapy in androgen deficiency, in delayed puberty, and in those who are hypogonadal due to either pituitary or testicular disease.

When given to patients with hypopituitarism androgens can lead to normal sexual development and potency but not to fertility. If fertility is desired, the usual treatment is with gonadotrophins or pulsatile gonadotrophin-releasing hormone (section 6.5.1) which stimulates spermatogenesis as well as androgen production.

Intramuscular depot preparations of testosterone esters are preferred for replacement therapy. Testosterone enantate or propionate or alternatively Sustanon®, which consists of a mixture of testosterone esters and has a longer duration of action, can be used. For induction of puberty, depot testosterone injections are given monthly and the doses increased every 6 to 12 months according to response. Single ester testosterone injections may need to be given more frequently. Implants of testosterone can be used for hypogonadism; the implants are replaced every 4 to 5 months.

Oral testosterone undecanoate is used for induction of puberty. An alternative approach that promotes growth rather than sexual maturation uses oral oxandrolone (section 6.4.3).

Chorionic gonadotrophin (section 6.5.1) has also been used in delayed puberty in the male to stimulate endogenous testosterone production, but has little advantage over testosterone.

Caution should be used when androgens or chorionic gonadotrophin are used in treating boys with delayed puberty since the fusion of epiphyses is hastened and growth of cartilage plate begins prematurely.

Testosterone patches and topical gel are also available but experience of their use in children under 15 years is limited. Topical testosterone is applied to the penis in the treatment of microphallus; an extemporaneously prepared cream should be used because the alcohol in proprietary gel formulations causes irritation.

TESTOSTERONE AND ESTERS

Cautions: cardiac impairment, hypertension, epilepsy, migraine, diabetes mellitus, skeletal metastases (risk of hypercalcaemia); Interactions: Appendix 1 (testosterone)

Contra-indications: history of primary liver tumours, hypercalcaemia, nephrosis

Hepatic impairment: avoid if possible—fluid retention and dose-related toxicity

Renal impairment: use with caution—potential for fluid retention

Pregnancy: avoid; causes masculinisation of female fetus

Breast-feeding: avoid; may cause masculinisation in the female infant or precocious development in the male infant; high doses suppress lactation

Side-effects: headache, depression, gastrointestinal bleeding, nausea, cholestatic jaundice, changes in libido, gynaecomastia, polycythaemia, anxiety, asthena, paraesthesia, hypertension, electrolyte disturbances including sodium retention with oedema and hypercalcaemia, weight gain; increased bone growth; androgenic effects such as hirsutism, male-pattern baldness, seborrhoea, acne, pruritus; excessive frequency and duration of penile erection, precocious sexual development and premature closure of epiphyses in pre-pubertal males, suppression of spermatogenesis in males and virilism in females; rarely liver tumours; sleep apnoea also reported; with patches and gel, local irritation and allergic reactions

Licensed use: Sustanon 250® and testosterone enantate not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

See also under preparations; specialist use only

Induction and maintenance of sexual maturation in males

- By mouth (as testosterone undecanoate)
  Child over 12 years: 40 mg on alternate days increasing according to response up to 120 mg daily

- By deep intramuscular injection (as testosterone enantate)
  Child over 12 years: 25–50 mg/m² every month increasing dose every 6–12 months according to response

Treatment of microphallus

- Topically
  Apply 3 times daily for 3 weeks

Note: Use only specially manufactured preparation (see notes above)

Oral

Restandol® Testocaps (Organon) [E2]
Capsules, orange, testosterone undecanoate 40 mg in oily solution, net price 30-cap pack = £8.55; 60-cap pack = £17.10. Label: 21, 25

Intramuscular

Testosterone Enantate (Non-proprietary) [E1]
Injection (oily), testosterone enantate 250 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £13.33

Sustanon 250® (Organon) [E2]
Injection (oily), testosterone propionate 30 mg, testosterone phenylpropionate 60 mg, testosterone isocaproate 60 mg, and testosterone decanoate 100 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £2.45

Exipients include: arachis (peanut) oil, benzyl alcohol (see Exipients p. 2)
High blood concentration of sex hormones may activate androgen receptor blocking properties. Spironolactone (section 2.2.3) is sometimes used in androgen-secreting tumours, and ovarian and testicular disorders.

Familial male precocious puberty (testotoxicosis), hormone-dependent precocious puberty, resulting from McCune-Albright syndrome, severe diabetes (with vascular complications, e.g. driving), and depression, history of thromboembolic disorders.

Hepatic impairment: monitor hepatic function regularly—dose-related toxicity, see Side-effects below.

Side-effects: fatigue and lassitude, breathlessness, weight changes, reduced sebum production (may clear acne), changes in hair pattern, gynaecomastia (rarely leading to galactorrhoea and benign breast nodules); rarely hypersensitivity reactions, rash and osteoporosis; inhibition of spermatogenesis (see notes above); hepatotoxicity reported (including jaundice, hepatitis and hepatic failure).

Hepatotoxicity: Direct hepatic toxicity including jaundice, hepatitis and hepatic failure have been reported (usually after several months) with cyproterone acetate 200–300 mg daily. Liver function tests should be performed before treatment and whenever symptoms suggestive of hepatotoxicity occur—if confirmed cyproterone should normally be withdrawn unless the hepatotoxicity can be explained by another cause such as metastatic disease (in which case cyproterone should be continued only if the perceived benefit exceeds the risk).

Licensed use: unlicensed for use in children.

Indication and dose: Gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty (specialist use only; see also notes above).

Cyproterone Acetate (Non-proprietary) Tablets, cyproterone acetate 50 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £31.54. Label: 21, counselling, driving.

Note: 10 mg tablets available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist-importing companies, see p. 809.

Androcur® (Bayer Schering) Tablets, scored, cyproterone acetate 50 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £244.81. Label: 21, counselling, driving.

TESTOLACTONE

Cautions: interactions: Appendix 1 (testolactone).

Pregnancy: avoid.

Breast-feeding: no information available.

Side-effects: nausea, vomiting, anorexia, diarrhoea; hypertension; peripheral neuropathy; weight changes; changes in hair pattern; rarely hypersensitivity reactions, rash.

Indication and dose: Gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty (specialist use only; see also notes above).

Testolactone Tablets 50 mg Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist-importing companies, see p. 809.

CYPROTERONE ACETATE

Cautions: blood counts initially and throughout treatment; monitor adrenocortical function regularly; diabetes mellitus (see also Contra-indications).

Skilled tasks: Fatigue and lassitude may impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

Contra-indications: severe diabetes (with vascular changes), sickle-cell anaemia, liver disease including Dubin-Johnson and Rotor syndromes, previous or existing liver tumours, malignant or wasting diseases, meningioma or history of meningioma, severe depression, history of thromboembolic disorders.

Hepatic impairment: monitor hepatic function regularly—dose-related toxicity, see Side-effects below.

Side-effects: fatigue and lassitude, breathlessness, weight changes, reduced sebum production (may clear acne), changes in hair pattern, gynaecomastia (rarely leading to galactorrhoea and benign breast nodules); rarely hypersensitivity reactions, rash and osteoporosis; inhibition of spermatogenesis (see notes above); hepatotoxicity reported (including jaundice, hepatitis and hepatic failure).

Hepatotoxicity: Direct hepatic toxicity including jaundice, hepatitis and hepatic failure have been reported (usually after several months) with cyproterone acetate 200–300 mg daily. Liver function tests should be performed before treatment and whenever symptoms suggestive of hepatotoxicity occur—if confirmed cyproterone should normally be withdrawn unless the hepatotoxicity can be explained by another cause such as metastatic disease (in which case cyproterone should be continued only if the perceived benefit exceeds the risk).

Licensed use: unlicensed for use in children.

Indication and dose: Gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty (specialist use only; see also notes above).

Testolactone (Organon) Implant, testosterone 100 mg, net price = £7.40; 200 mg = £13.79.

Dose: Maintenance of sexual maturation in males Child over 16 years 100–600 mg; 600 mg usually maintains plasma-testosterone concentration within the normal range for 4–5 months.

Anti-androgens and precocious puberty: The gonadorelin stimulation test (section 6.5.1) is used to distinguish between gonadotrophin-dependent (central) precocious puberty and gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty. Treatment requires specialist management.

Gonadorelin analogues, used in the management of gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty, delay development of secondary sexual characteristics and growth velocity.

Testolactone and cyproterone are used in the management of gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty, resulting from McCune-Albright syndrome, familial male precocious puberty (testotoxicosis), hormone-secreting tumours, and ovarian and testicular disorders. Testolactone inhibits the aromatisation of testosterone, the rate limiting step in oestrogen synthesis. Cyproterone is a progestogen with anti-androgen properties.

Spironolactone (section 2.2.3) is sometimes used in combination with testolactone because it has some androgen receptor blocking properties.

High blood concentration of sex hormones may activate release of gonadotrophin releasing hormone, leading to development of secondary, central gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty. This may require the addition of gonadorelin analogues to prevent progression of pubertal development and skeletal maturation.

Viormone® (Nordic) Injection, testosterone propionate 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £4.50.

Dose: Delayed puberty in males
- By intramuscular injection
  50 mg once weekly.

Implant: Testosterone (Organon) Implant, testosterone 100 mg, net price = £7.40; 200 mg = £13.79.

Dose: Maintenance of sexual maturation in males Child over 16 years 100–600 mg; 600 mg usually maintains plasma-testosterone concentration within the normal range for 4–5 months.
and anaphylaxis; changes in scalp and body hair, weight changes, withdrawal bleeding, ovarian cysts (may require withdrawal), breast swelling and tenderness (males and females), visual disturbances, paraesthesia, local reactions at injection site

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty**

*See notes above; for doses, see under preparations below*

**Administration** Rotate injection site to prevent atrophy and nodule formation

#### Novgos © (Genus) 

- **Implant**, goserelin (as acetate) 3.6 mg in prefilled syringe, net price = £58.50

**Dose**
- **Implant**, by subcutaneous injection into anterior abdominal wall
  - 3.6 mg every 28 days

#### Zoladex © (AstraZeneca) 

- **Implant**, goserelin (as acetate) 3.6 mg in Safe-System syringe applicator, net price each = £65.00

**Dose**
- **Implant**, by subcutaneous injection into anterior abdominal wall
  - 3.6 mg every 28 days

#### Zoladex LA © (AstraZeneca) 

- **Implant**, goserelin (as acetate) 10.8 mg in Safe-System syringe applicator, net price each = £235.00

**Dose**
- **Implant**, by subcutaneous injection into anterior abdominal wall
  - 10.8 mg every 12 weeks

### LEUPRORELIN ACETATE

**Cautions** see Goserelin

**Contra-indications** see Goserelin

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Breast-feeding** avoid

**Side-effects** see Goserelin; also gastro-intestinal disturbances; asthenia; arthralgia

### Indication and dose

**Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty**

*See notes above; for doses, see under preparations below*

**Administration** rotate injection site to prevent atrophy and nodule formation

#### Prostap ® 3 (Wyeth) 

- **Injection** (microsphere powder for reconstitution), leuprorelin acetate, net price 11.25-mg vial with 2-mL vehicle-filled syringe = £225.72

**Dose**
- **By subcutaneous or by intramuscular injection**
  - 11.25 mg every 12 weeks

#### TRIPTORELIN

**Cautions** see Goserelin

**Contra-indications** see Goserelin

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Breast-feeding** avoid

**Side-effects** see Goserelin; also gastro-intestinal disturbances; asthenia; arthralgia

### Indication and dose

**Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty**

*See notes above; for doses, see under preparations below*

**Administration** rotate injection site to prevent atrophy and nodule formation

#### Decapeptyl ® SR (Ipsen) 

- **Injection**, (powder for suspension), m/r, triptorelin (as acetate), net price 11.25-mg vial (with diluent) = £207.00

**Dose**
- **By intramuscular injection**
  - 11.25 mg every 3 months

**Note** Each vial includes an overage to allow accurate administration of 11.25 mg dose

#### Gonapeptyl ® Depot (Ferring) 

- **Injection** (powder for suspension), triptorelin (as acetate), net price 3.75-mg prefilled syringe (with prefilled syringe of vehicle) = £81.69

**Dose**
- **By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection**
  - Body-weight under 20 kg
    - initially 1.875 mg on days 0, 14, and 28, then 1.875 mg every 4 weeks
  - Body-weight 20–30 kg
    - initially 2.5 mg on days 0, 14, and 28, then 2.5 mg every 4 weeks
  - Body-weight over 30 kg
    - initially 3.75 mg on days 0, 14, and 28, then 3.75 mg every 4 weeks; discontinue when bone maturation consistent with age over 12 years in girls and over 13 years in boys

**Note** May be given every 3 weeks if necessary

### 6.4.3 Anabolic steroids

Anabolic steroids have some androgenic activity but in girls they cause less virilisation than androgens. They are used in the treatment of some aplastic anaemias (section 9.1.3). Oxandrolone is used to stimulate late pre-pubertal growth prior to induction of sexual maturation in boys with short stature and in girls with Turner’s syndrome; specialist management is required.

#### OXANDROLONE

**Cautions** see Testosterone (section 6.4.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (oxandrolone)

**Contra-indications** see Testosterone (section 6.4.2)

**Hepatic impairment** see Testosterone (section 6.4.2)
Renal impairment see Testosterone (section 6.4.2)
Pregnancy see Testosterone (section 6.4.2)
Breast-feeding see Testosterone (section 6.4.2)
Side-effects see Testosterone (section 6.4.2)

Indication and dose

Stimulation of late pre-pubertal growth in boys with short stature

- By mouth
  - Boys 10–18 years (or appropriate age) 1.25–2.5 mg daily for 3–6 months

Stimulation of late pre-pubertal growth in girls with Turner’s syndrome

- By mouth
  - Girls in combination with growth hormone 0.625–2.5 mg daily

Oxandrolone

Tablets, oxandrolone 2.5 mg

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

6.5 Hypothalamic and pituitary hormones

6.5.1 Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormones including growth hormone

6.5.2 Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists

Use of preparations in these sections requires detailed prior investigation of the patient and should be reserved for specialist centres.

Anterior pituitary hormones

Corticotrophins

Tetracosactide (tetracosactrin), an analogue of corticotropin (adrenocorticotropic hormone, ACTH), is used to test adrenocortical function; failure of plasma-cortisol concentration to rise after administration of tetracosactide indicates adrenocortical insufficiency. A low-dose test is considered by some clinicians to be more sensitive when used to confirm established, partial adrenal suppression.

Tetracosactide should be used with caution in patients with allergic disorders e.g. asthma and should be given only if no other ACTH preparations have been given previously. Tetracosactide depot injection (Synacthen Depot®) is also used in the treatment of infantile spasms (see Infantile spasms, section 4.8.1) but it is contra-indicated in neonates because of the presence of benzyl alcohol in the injection. Corticotropin-releasing factor, corticolin, (also known as corticotropin-releasing hormone, CRH) is used to test anterior pituitary function and secretion of corticotropin.

TETRACOSACTIDE

(Tetracosactrin)

Cautions as for corticosteroids, section 6.3.2; important: risk of anaphylaxis (medical supervision; consult product literature); interactions: Appendix 1 (corticosteroids)

Contra-indications as for corticosteroids, section 6.3.2; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see under preparations)

Hepatic impairment see section 6.3.2
Renal impairment see section 6.3.2

Pregnancy avoid (but may be used diagnostically if essential)
Breast-feeding avoid (but may be used diagnostically if essential)

Side-effects as for corticosteroids, section 6.3.2

Licensed use not licensed for low-dose test for adrenocortical insufficiency or treatment of infantile spasms

Indication and dose

See notes above and under preparations below

Synacthen® (Alliance) FL

Injection, tetracosactide 250 micrograms (as acetate)/mL. Net price 1-mL amp = £2.70

Dose

Diagnosis of adrenocortical insufficiency (30-minute test)

- By intramuscular or intravenous injection

  Standard-dose test 145 micrograms/m² (max. 250 micrograms) as a single dose

  Low-dose test 300 nanograms/m² as a single dose

  Administration may be diluted in sodium chloride 0.9% to 250 nanograms/mL

Synacthen Depot® (Alliance) FL

Injection (aqueous suspension), tetracosactide acetate 1 mg/mL, with zinc phosphate complex. Net price 1-mL amp = £3.87

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients p. 2)

Dose

Infantile spasms

- By intramuscular injection

  Child 1 month–2 years initially 500 micrograms on alternate days, adjusted according to response

CORTICORELIN

(Corticotrophin-releasing hormone, CRH)

Pregnancy avoid
Breast-feeding avoid

Side-effects flushing of face, neck and upper body, hypotension, mild sensation of taste or smell

Licensed use not licensed
Indication and dose

**Test of anterior pituitary function**
- By intravenous injection over 30 seconds
  - Child 1 month–18 years 1 microgram/kg (max. 100 micrograms) as a single dose

**CRH Ferrin® (Shire)**
Injection, corticorelin 100 micrograms

**Gonadotrophins**

Gonadotrophins are occasionally used in the treatment of hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism and associated oligospermia. There is no justification for their use in primary gonadal failure.

Chorionic gonadotrophin is used in the investigation of testicular function in suspected primary hypogonadism and incomplete masculinisation. It has also been used in delayed puberty in boys to stimulate endogenous testosterone production, but it has little advantage over testosterone (section 6.4.2).

**CHORIONIC GONADOTROPHIN**
(Human Chorionic Gonadotrophin, hCG)
A preparation of a glycoprotein fraction secreted by the placenta and obtained from the urine of pregnant women having the action of the pituitary luteinising hormone

**Cautions**
cardiac impairment, asthma, epilepsy, migraine; prepubertal boys (risk of premature epiphyseal closure or precocious puberty)

**Contra-indications**
androgen-dependent tumours

**Renal impairment**
use with caution

**Side-effects**
oedema (reduce dose), headache, tiredness, mood changes, gynaecomastia, local reactions

**Licensed use**
unlicensed in children for test of testicular function

**Test of testicular function**
- By intramuscular injection
  - Short stimulation test:
    - Child 1 month–18 years 1500–2000 units once daily for 3 days
    - Prolonged stimulation test:
      - Child 1 month–18 years 1500–2000 units twice weekly for 3 weeks

**Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism**
- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 1000–2000 units twice weekly, adjusted to response

**Undescended testes**
- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 7–18 years initially 500 units 3 times weekly (1000 units twice weekly if over 17 years); adjusted to response; up to 4000 units 3 times weekly may be required; continue for 1–2 months after testicular descent

**Choragon® (Ferring)**
Injection, powder for reconstitution, chorionic gonadotrophin. Net price 5000-unit amp (with solvent) = £3.26. For intramuscular injection

**Pregnyl® (Organon)**
Injection, powder for reconstitution, chorionic gonadotrophin. Net price 1500-unit amp = £2.12; 5000-unit amp = £3.15 (both with solvent). For subcutaneous or intramuscular injection

**Growth hormone**

Growth hormone is used to treat proven deficiency of the hormone, Prader-Willi syndrome, Turner’s syndrome, growth disturbance in children born small for gestational age, chronic renal insufficiency, and short stature homeobox-containing gene (SHOX) deficiency (see NICE guidance below). Growth hormone is also used in Noonan syndrome and idiopathic short stature [unlicensed indications] under specialist management.

Treatment should be initiated and monitored by a paediatrician with expertise in managing growth-hormone disorders; treatment can be continued under a shared-care protocol by a general practitioner.

Growth hormone of human origin (HGH; somatotrophin) has been replaced by a growth hormone of human sequence, somatropin, produced using recombinant DNA technology.

**NICE guidance**

Somatropin for the treatment of growth failure in children (May 2010)

Somatropin is recommended for children with growth failure who:
- have growth-hormone deficiency;
- have Turner’s syndrome;
- have Prader-Willi syndrome;
- have chronic renal insufficiency;
- are born small for gestational age with subsequent growth failure at 4 years of age or later;
- have short stature homeobox-containing gene (SHOX) deficiency.

Treatment should be discontinued if growth velocity increases by less than 50% from baseline in the first year of treatment.

Mecasermin, a human insulin-like growth factor-I (rhIGF-I), is licensed to treat growth failure in children with severe primary insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency (section 6.7.4).

**SOMATROPIN**
(Recombinant Human Growth Hormone)

**Cautions**
diabetes mellitus (adjustment of antidiabetic therapy may be necessary), papilloedema (see under Side-effects), relative deficiencies of other pituitary hormones (notably hypothyroidism—manufacturers recommend periodic thyroid function tests but limited evidence of clinical value), history of malignant disease, disorders of the epiphysis of the hip (monitor for limping), resolved intracranial hypertension (monitor closely), initiation of treatment close to puberty not recommended in child born small for gestational age; Silver-Russell syndrome; rotate subcutaneous injection sites to prevent lipodystrophy; interactions: Appendix 1 (somatropin)

**Contra-indications**
evidence of tumour activity (complete antitumour therapy and ensure intracranial lesions inactive before starting); not to be used after renal transplantation or for growth promotion in children with closed epiphyses (or near closure in
Endocrine system

6.5.1 Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormones  BNFC 2011–2012

Prader-Willi syndrome); severe obesity or severe respiratory syndrome in Prader-Willi syndrome

Pregnancy  interrupt treatment if pregnancy occurs

Breast-feeding  absorption from milk unlikely

Side-effects  headache, fundoscopy for papilloedema

recommended if severe or recurrent headache, visual problems, nausea and vomiting occur—if papilloedema confirmed consider benign intracranial hypertension (rare cases reported); fluid retention (peripheral oedema), arthralgia, myalgia, carpal tunnel syndrome, paraesthesia, antibody formation, hypothyroidism, insulin resistance, hyperglycaemia, hypoglycaemia, reactions at injection site; leukaemia in children with growth hormone deficiency also reported

Licensed use  not licensed for use in Noonan syndrome

Indication and dose

Genotropin® (Pharmacia)  (rbe) and diluent, net price 0.2-mg (0.6-unit) syringe = £4.64; 0.4-mg (1.2-unit) syringe = £9.27; 0.6-mg (1.8-unit) syringe = £13.91; 0.8-mg (2.4-unit) syringe = £18.55; 1-mg (3-unit) syringe = £23.18; 1.2-mg (3.6-unit) syringe = £27.82; 1.4-mg (4.2-unit) syringe = £32.46; 1.6-mg (4.8-unit) syringe = £37.09; 1.8-mg (5.4-unit) syringe = £41.73; 2-mg (6-unit) syringe = £46.37. For subcutaneous injection

Humatrope® (Lilly)  (Novo Nordisk)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, somatropin (rbe), net price 6-mg (18-unit) cartridge = £108.00; 12-mg (36-unit) cartridge = £216.00; 24-mg (72-unit) cartridge = £432.00; all supplied with diluent. For subcutaneous or intramuscular injection; cartridges for subcutaneous injection

Norditropin®  (Novo Nordisk)

SimpleXx® injection, somatropin (epr) 3.3 mg (10 units)/mL, net price 1.5-mg (5, 15-unit) cartridge = £106.35; 6.7 mg (20 units)/mL, 1.5-mL (10-mg, 30-unit) cartridge = £212.70; 10 mg (30 units)/mL, 1.5-mL (15-mg, 45-unit) cartridge = £319.05. For use with appropriate NordiPen® needle-free device (available free of charge from clinics). For subcutaneous injection

NutropinAQ® (Ipsen)  (Eisai)

Injection, somatropin (epr) 3.3 mg (10 units)/mL, net price 1.5-mg (5, 15-unit) cartridge = £86.77; 6.7 mg (20 units)/mL, 1.5-mL (10-mg, 30-unit) cartridge = £173.50. For use with NutropinAQ® Pen needle-free device (available free of charge from clinics). For subcutaneous injection

Omnitrope®  (Sandoz)  (lilly)

Injection, somatropin (rbe) 3.3 mg (10 units)/mL, net price 1.5-mg (5, 15-unit) cartridge = £86.77; 6.7 mg (20 units)/mL, 1.5-mL (10-mg, 30-unit) cartridge = £173.50. For use with Omnitrope Pen® needle-free device and Omnitrope Pen 10th devices respectively (available free of charge from clinics). For subcutaneous injection

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in 5-mg cartridge) (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2)

Note  Biosimilar medicine, see p. 2

Saizen®  (Merck Serono)  (Pharmacia)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, somatropin (rmc), net price 1.33-mg (4-unit) vial (with diluent) = £29.28; 3.33-mg (10-unit) vial (with diluent) = £73.20. For subcutaneous or intramuscular injection

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2)

Injection, somatropin (rmc), 5.83 mg (17.5 units)/mL, net price 1.03-mL (6-mg, 18-unit) cartridge = £139.08; 8 mg (24 units)/mL, 1.5-mL (12-mg, 36-unit) cartridge = £278.16; 2.5-mL (20-mg, 60-unit) cartridge = £463.60. For use with cool.click® needle-free device (available free of charge from clinics). For subcutaneous injection

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in 3.3 mg vial) (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2)

Note  Biosimilar medicine, see p. 2

Saizen®  (3-mg vial) may be reconstituted with sodium chloride intravenous infusion or water for injections for immediate use when administering to children under 3 years of age

Pen

c

D

c

device

Note

autoinjector device

or cool.click® needle-free device (both available free of charge from clinics). For subcutaneous injection

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in diluent for 3.3 mg vial) (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2)

Note  Biosimilar medicine, see p. 2
6.5.2 Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists

**Zomacton®** (Ferring) (£83)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, somatropin (rbe), net price 4-mg (12-unit) vial (with diluent) = £79.69. For use with ZomaJet 2 Vision® needle-free device (available free of charge from clinics) or with needles and syringes; 10-mg (30-unit) vial (with diluent) = £199.23, for use with ZomaJet Vision® needle-free device (available free of charge from clinics) or with needles and syringes. For subcutaneous injection Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in 4-mg vial) (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2).

---

**GONADORELIN**

(Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone; GnRH; LH–RH)

**Cautions** pituitary adenoma

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Breast-feeding** avoid

**Side-effects** rarely nausea, headache, abdominal pain, increased menstrual bleeding; rarely, hypersensitivity reaction on repeated administration of large doses; irritation at injection site

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 1 year

**Indication and dose**

Assessment of anterior pituitary function; assessment of delayed puberty

- By subcutaneous or intravenous injection

  **Child 1–18 years** 2.5 micrograms/kg (max. 100 micrograms) as a single dose

**HRF®** (Intrapharm) (£90)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, gonadorelin. Net price 100-microgram vial (with diluent) = £13.72 (hosp. only).

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2).

---

**DESMOPRESSIN**

**Cautions** see under Vasopressin; less pressor activity, but still considerable caution in cardiovascular disease and in hypertension (not indicated for nocturnal enuresis or nocturia in these circumstances); also considerable caution in cystic fibrosis; in nocturia and nocturnal enuresis limit fluid intake from 1 hour before dose until 8 hours afterwards; in nocturia periodic blood pressure and weight checks needed to monitor for fluid overload; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (desmopressin)

For cautions specifically relating to the use of desmopressin in nocturnal enuresis see section 7.4.2. Vasopressin infusion is used to control variceal bleeding in portal hypertension, before introducing more definitive treatment. Terlipressin, a derivative of vasopressin, and octreotide are used similarly but experience in children is limited.

---

**Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists**

**Diabetes insipidus** Diabetes insipidus is caused by either a deficiency of antidiuretic hormone (ADH, vasopressin) secretion (cranial, neurogenic, or pituitary diabetes insipidus) or by failure of the renal tubules to react to secreted antidiuretic hormone (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus).

**Vasopressin** (anti-diuretic hormone, ADH) is used in the treatment of pituitary diabetes insipidus as is its analogue desmopressin. Dosage is tailored to produce a regular diuresis every 24 hours to avoid water intoxication. Treatment may be required permanently or for a limited period only in diabetes insipidus following trauma or pituitary surgery.

Desmopressin is more potent and has a longer duration of action than vasopressin; unlike vasopressin it has no vasoconstrictor effect. It is given by mouth or intranasally for maintenance therapy, and by injection in the postoperative period or in unconscious patients. Desmopressin is also used in the differential diagnosis of diabetes insipidus; following an intramuscular or intranasal dose, restoration of the ability to concentrate urine after water deprivation confirms a diagnosis of pituitary diabetes insipidus. Failure to respond suggests nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. Fluid input must be managed carefully to avoid hyponatraemia; this test is not usually recommended in young children.

In nephrogenic and partial pituitary diabetes insipidus benefit may be gained from the paradoxical antidiuretic effect of thiazides (section 2.2.1) e.g. chlorothiazide 10–20 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily.

**Other uses** Desmopressin is also used to boost factor VIII concentration in mild to moderate haemophilia and in von Willebrand’s disease; it is also used to test fibrinolytic response. For a comment on use of desmopressin in nocturnal enuresis see section 7.4.2.

Vasopressin infusion is used to control variceal bleeding in portal hypertension, before introducing more definitive treatment. Terlipressin, a derivative of vasopressin, and octreotide are used similarly but experience in children is limited.

---

**Posterior pituitary hormones**

**Diabetes insipidus** Diabetes insipidus is caused by either a deficiency of antidiuretic hormone (ADH, vasopressin) secretion (cranial, neurogenic, or pituitary diabetes insipidus) or by failure of the renal tubules to react to secreted antidiuretic hormone (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus).

**Vasopressin** (anti-diuretic hormone, ADH) is used in the treatment of pituitary diabetes insipidus as is its analogue desmopressin. Dosage is tailored to produce a regular diuresis every 24 hours to avoid water intoxication. Treatment may be required permanently or for a limited period only in diabetes insipidus following trauma or pituitary surgery.

Desmopressin is more potent and has a longer duration of action than vasopressin; unlike vasopressin it has no vasoconstrictor effect. It is given by mouth or intranasally for maintenance therapy, and by injection in the postoperative period or in unconscious patients. Desmopressin is also used in the differential diagnosis of diabetes insipidus; following an intramuscular or intranasal dose, restoration of the ability to concentrate urine after water deprivation confirms a diagnosis of pituitary diabetes insipidus. Failure to respond suggests nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. Fluid input must be managed carefully to avoid hyponatraemia; this test is not usually recommended in young children.

In nephrogenic and partial pituitary diabetes insipidus benefit may be gained from the paradoxical antidiuretic effect of thiazides (section 2.2.1) e.g. chlorothiazide 10–20 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily.

**Other uses** Desmopressin is also used to boost factor VIII concentration in mild to moderate haemophilia and in von Willebrand’s disease; it is also used to test fibrinolytic response. For a comment on use of desmopressin in nocturnal enuresis see section 7.4.2.

Vasopressin infusion is used to control variceal bleeding in portal hypertension, before introducing more definitive treatment. Terlipressin, a derivative of vasopressin, and octreotide are used similarly but experience in children is limited.

---

**Hypothalamic hormones**

Gonadorelin when injected intravenously in post-pubertal girls leads to a rapid rise in plasma concentrations of both luteinising hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). It has not proved to be very helpful, however, in distinguishing hypothalamic from pituitary lesions. It is used in the assessment of delayed or precocious puberty.

Other growth hormone stimulation tests involve the use of insulin, glucagon, arginine, and clonidine [all unlicensed uses]. The tests should be carried out in specialist centres.

---

**Hyponatraemic injection**

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (in 4-mg vial) (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2).

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**

6.5.2 Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists 385
Pregnancy  small oxytocic effect in third trimester; increased risk of pre-eclampsia

Breast-feeding  amount too small to be harmful

Side-effects  fluid retention, and hyponatraemia (in more serious cases with convulsions) on administration without restricting fluid intake; stomach pain, headache, nausea, vomiting, allergic reactions, and emotional disturbance in children also reported; epistaxis, nasal congestion, rhinitis with nasal spray

Licensed use  consult product literature for individual preparations; not licensed for assessment of antidiuretic hormone secretion

Indication and dose

Assessment of antidiuretic hormone secretion (congenital deficiency suspected) (specialist use only)
- **Intranasally**
  
  Child 1 month–2 years initially 100–500 nanograms as a single dose

Test for suspected diabetes insipidus (water deprivation test)

- **Intranasally**
  
  Neonate not recommended, use trial of treatment
  
  Child 1 month–2 years 1–5 micrograms as a single dose

Primary nocturnal enuresis
- **By mouth**
  
  (as desmopressin acetate)
  
  Child 5–18 years 200 micrograms at bedtime, increased to 400 micrograms at bedtime only if lower dose not effective (important: see also Cautions), reassess after 3 months by withdrawing treatment for at least 1 week

Fibrinolytic response testing
- **By intravenous injection over 20 minutes or by subcutaneous injection**
  
  Child 2–18 years 300 nanograms/kg as a single dose; blood sampled after 20 minutes for fibrinolytic activity

Mild to moderate haemophilia and von Willbrand’s disease
- **By intravenous infusion over 20 minutes or by subcutaneous injection**
  
  Child 1 month–18 years 300 nanograms/kg as a single dose immediately before surgery or after trauma; may be repeated at intervals of 12 hours if no tachycardia
Desmopressin acetate (Non-proprietary) 

- **Intranasally**
  - **Child 1–18 years** 4 micrograms/kg as a single dose, for pre-operative use give 2 hours before procedure

- **Intramuscularly**
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** 10 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 50% at next 2 feeds to avoid fluid overload)
  - **Child 1–15 years** 20 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload)
  - **Child 15–18 years** 40 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload)

- **By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection**
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** 400 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 50% at next 2 feeds to avoid fluid overload)
  - **Child 1–18 years** 2 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload)

- **Renal function testing**

  **Intranasally**
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** 10 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload)
  - **Child 1–15 years** 20 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload)
  - **Child 15–18 years** 40 micrograms (empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload)

Desmopressin acetate

- **Tablets**
  - Tablets, desmopressin acetate 100 micrograms, net price 90-tab pack = £50.57; 200 micrograms, 30-tab pack = £24.36, 90-tab pack = £69.82. Counselling, fluid intake, see above
  - Tablets, desmopressin acetate 100 micrograms, net price 100-tab pack = £44.12; 200 micrograms, 90-tab pack = £88.23. Counselling, fluid intake, see above
  - Tablets may be crushed

- **Nasal spray**
  - Desmopressin acetate 10 micrograms/metered spray, net price 6-mL unit (60 metered sprays) = £18.74. Counselling, fluid intake, see above
  - Brains include: Precise®
  - Note: Children requiring dose of less than 10 micrograms should be given DDAVP® intranasal solution

### DDAVP® (Ferring) (TM)

- Tablets, both scored, desmopressin acetate 100 micrograms, net price 90-tab pack = £44.12; 200 micrograms, 90-tab pack = £88.23. Counselling, fluid intake, see above
  - Note: Tablets may be crushed

- Oral lyophiliates, DDAVP® Melt, desmopressin (as acetate) 60 micrograms, net price 100-tab pack = £50.53; 120 micrograms, 100-tab pack = £101.07; 240 micrograms, 100-tab pack = £202.14. Label: 26. Counselling, fluid intake, see above. For sublingual administration

- Intranasal solution, desmopressin acetate 100 micrograms/mL. Net price 2.5-mL dropper bottle and catheter = £9.72. Counselling, fluid intake, see above

  **Administration**
  - May be diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 10 micrograms/mL

- Injection, desmopressin acetate 4 micrograms/mL. Net price 1-mL amp = £1.10

  **Administration**
  - May be administered orally [unlicensed]; for intravenous infusion, higher doses used in mild to moderate haemophilia and von Willebrand’s disease may be diluted with 30–50 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% intravenous infusion

### Desmotabs® (Ferring) (TM)

- Tablets, scored, desmopressin acetate 200 micrograms, net price 30-tab pack = £29.43. Counselling, fluid intake, see above

  **Note** tablets may be crushed

### Desmomelt® (Ferring) (TM)

- Oral lyophiliates, desmopressin (as acetate) 120 micrograms, net price 30-tab pack = £30.34; 240 micrograms, 30-tab pack = £60.68. Label: 26. Counselling, fluid intake, see above. For sublingual administration

### Desmospray® (Ferring) (TM)

- Nasal spray, desmopressin acetate 10 micrograms/metered spray, net price 6-mL unit (60 metered sprays) = £25.02. Counselling, fluid intake, see above

  **Note**: Children requiring dose of less than 10 micrograms should be given DDAVP® intranasal solution

### Low dose Desmospray® (Ferring) (TM)

- Nasal spray, desmopressin acetate 2.5 micrograms/metered spray

  Available from Ferring on a named-patient basis

### Octlim® (Ferring) (TM)

- Nasal spray, desmopressin acetate 150 micrograms/metered spray, net price 2.5-mL unit (25 metered sprays) = £576.60. Counselling, fluid intake, see above

  **Injection**, desmopressin acetate 15 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £19.22

  **Administration** for intravenous infusion dilute with 50 mL of Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 20 minutes

### TERLIPRESSIN ACETATE

#### Cautions
- see under Vasopressin

#### Contra-indications
- see under Vasopressin

#### Pregnancy
- avoid

#### Breast-feeding
- no information available

#### Side-effects
- see under Vasopressin, but effects milder

#### Licensed use
- unlicensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

- Adjunct in acute massive haemorrhage of gastro-intestinal tract or oesophageal varices (specialist use only)

  - **By intravenous injection**
    - **Child 12–18 years** initially 2 mg then 1–2 mg every 4–6 hours until bleeding is controlled; max. duration of treatment 72 hours

### Glypressin® (Ferring) (TM)

- Injection, powder for reconstitution, terlipressin acetate, net price 1-mg vial with 5 mL diluent = £18.47

  **Injection**, solution for injection, terlipressin acetate, 0.12 mg/mL, net price 1-mg (8.5 mL) vial = £19.39

### Variquel® (IS Pharmaceuticals) (TM)

- Injection, powder for reconstitution, terlipressin acetate, net price 1-mg vial with 5 mL diluent = £17.90

### VASOPRESSIN

#### Cautions
- heart failure, hypertension, asthma, epilepsy, migraine or other conditions which might be aggravated by water retention; avoid fluid overload

#### Contra-indications
- vascular disease (especially dis ease of coronary arteries) unless extreme caution,
chronic nephritis (until reasonable blood nitrogen concentrations attained)

Renal impairment see Contra-indications

Pregnancy oxytocic effect in third trimester

Breast-feeding not known to be harmful

Side-effects fluid retention, pallor, tremor, sweating, vertigo, headache, nausea, vomiting, belching, abdominal cramps, desire to defaecate, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis), constriction of coronary arteries (may cause anginal attacks and myocardial ischaemia), peripheral ischaemia and rarely gangrene

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Adjunct in acute massive haemorrhage of gastro-intestinal tract or oesophageal varices (specialist use only)

- By continuous intravenous infusion (may also be infused directly into the superior mesenteric artery)

  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 0.3 units/kg (max. 20 units) over 20–30 minutes then 0.3 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to response (max. 1 unit/kg/hour); if bleeding stops, continue at same dose for 12 hours, then withdraw gradually over 24–48 hours; max. duration of treatment 72 hours

Administration for intravenous infusion dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 0.2–1 unit/mL

**Synthetic vasopressin**

Pitressin® (Goldshield) Injection, argipressin (synthetic vasopressin) 20 units/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £17.14 (hosp. only)

---

### 6.6 Drugs affecting bone metabolism

#### 6.6.1 Calcitonin

Calcitonin is involved with parathyroid hormone in the regulation of bone turnover and hence in the maintenance of calcium balance and homeostasis. Calcitonin (salmon) (salcatonin, synthetic or recombinant salmon calcitonin) is used to lower the plasma-calcium concentration in some patients with hypercalcaemia (notably when associated with malignant disease).

**Cautions** history of allergy (skin test advised); heart failure; children—use for short periods only and monitor bone growth

**Contra-indications** hypocalcaemia

**Renal impairment** use with caution

**Pregnancy** avoid unless essential, toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** avoid unless essential, may inhibit lactation

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, flushing, dizziness, headache, taste disturbances; musculoskeletal pain; with nasal spray nose and throat irritation, rhinitis, sinusitis and epistaxis; less commonly diuresis, oedema, cough, visual disturbances, injection-site reactions, rash, hypersensitivity reactions including pruritus

**Licensed use** not licensed in children

**Indication and dose**

**Hypercalcaemia (experience limited in children)** (specialist use only)

- By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection

  **Child 1 month–18 years** 2.5–5 units/kg every 12 hours, max. 400 units every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response (no additional benefit with over 8 units/kg every 6 hours)

- By slow intravenous infusion

  **Child 1 month–18 years** 5–10 units/kg over at least 6 hours

**Osteoporosis** (specialist use only)

Refer for specialist advice, experience very limited

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, dilute injection solution (e.g. 400 units in 500 mL) with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over at least 6 hours; glass or hard plastic containers should not be used; some loss of potency on dilution and administration—use diluted solution without delay

**Miacalcic®** (Novartis) **Nasal spray** T, calcitonin (salmon) 200 units/metered spray, net price 2-mL unit (approx. 14 metered sprays) = £16.79

**Injection**, calcitonin (salmon) 50 units/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £3.42; 100 units/mL, 1-mL amp = £6.65; 200 units/mL, 2-mL vial = £30.75

---

#### 6.6.2 Bisphosphonates

Bisphosphonates are adsorbed on to hydroxyapatite crystals in bone, slowing both their rate of growth and...
dissolution, and therefore reducing the rate of bone turnover.

A bisphosphonate such as disodium pamidronate is used in the management of severe forms of osteogenesis imperfecta and other causes of osteoporosis in children to reduce the number of fractures; the long-term effects of bisphosphonates in children have not been established. Single doses of bisphosphonates are also used to manage hypercalcaemia (section 9.5.1.2). Treatment should be initiated under specialist advice only.

### MHRA/CHM advice (October 2007 and November 2009)

The risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw is substantially greater for patients receiving intravenous bisphosphonates in the treatment of cancer than for patients receiving oral bisphosphonates for osteoporosis or Paget’s disease.

Risk factors for developing osteonecrosis of the jaw that should be considered are: potency of bisphosphonate (highest for zoledronate), route of administration, cumulative dose, duration and type of malignant disease, concomitant treatment, smoking, comorbid conditions, and history of dental disease.

All patients receiving bisphosphonates for cancer should have a dental check-up (and any necessary remedial work should be performed) before bisphosphonate treatment. However, urgent bisphosphonate treatment should not be delayed, and a dental check-up should be carried out as soon as possible in these patients. All other patients who are prescribed bisphosphonates should have a dental examination only if they have poor dental health.

During bisphosphonate treatment patients should maintain good oral hygiene, receive routine dental check-ups, and report any oral symptoms.

### ALENDRONIC ACID

**Cautions** upper gastro-intestinal disorders (dysphagia, symptomatic oesophageal disease, gastritis, duodenitis, or ulcers)—see also under Contra-indications and Side-effects; history (within 1 year) of ulcers, active gastro-intestinal bleeding, or surgery of the upper gastro-intestinal tract; correct disturbances of calcium and mineral metabolism (e.g. vitamin-D deficiency, hypocalcaemia) before starting and monitor serum-calcium concentration during treatment; consider dental check-up before initiating bisphosphonate (risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw; see MHRA/CHM advice, above); exclude other causes of osteoporosis; atypical stress fractures reported (discontinue unless benefits of continued treatment clearly outweigh risks); interactions: Appendix 1 (bisphosphonates)

**Contra-indications** abnormalities of oesophagus and other factors which delay emptying (e.g. stricture or achalasia), hypocalcaemia,

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 35 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Breast-feeding** no information available

**Side-effects** oesophageal reactions (see below), abdominal pain and distension, dyspepsia, regurgitation, melena, diarrhoea or constipation, flatulence, musculoskeletal pain, headache; rarely rash, pruritus, erythema, photosensitivity, urtisitis, scuritis, transient decrease in serum phosphorus; nausea, vomiting, gastritis, peptic ulceration, hypersensitivity reactions (including urticaria and angioedema), and atypical stress fractures with long term use also reported; myalgia, malaise, and fever at initiation of treatment; very rarely severe skin reactions (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome), osteonecrosis of the jaw (see MHRA/CHM advice, above)

**Oesophageal reactions** Severe oesophageal reactions (oesophagitis, oesophageal ulcers, oesophageal stricture and oesophageal erosions) have been reported; patients should be advised to stop taking the tablets and to seek medical attention if they develop symptoms of oesophageal irritation such as dysphagia, new or worsening heartburn, pain on swallowing or retrosternal pain.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose** See notes above, specialist use only

- **Counselling** Swallow the tablets whole with a full glass of water on an empty stomach at least 30 minutes before breakfast (and any other oral medication); stand or sit upright for at least 30 minutes and do not lie down until after eating breakfast. Do not take the tablets at bedtime or before rising.

- **Fosamax®** Tablets, alendronic acid (as sodium alendronate) 10 mg, 28-tab pack = £33.12. Counselling, administration

- **Fosamax® Once Weekly** Tablets, alendronic acid (as sodium alendronate) 70 mg, net price 4-tab pack = £22.80. Counselling, administration

### DISODIUM PAMIDRONATE

Disodium pamidronate was formerly called aminohydroxypropylidenephosphonate disodium (APD)

**Cautions** cardiac disease; previous thyroid surgery (risk of hypocalcaemia); monitor serum electrolytes, calcium, and phosphate—possibility of convulsions due to electrolyte changes; ensure adequate hydration; avoid concurrent use with other bisphosphonates; consider dental check-up before initiating bisphosphonate (risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw, see MHRA/CHM advice, above); interactions: Appendix 1 (bisphosphonates)

**Skilled tasks** Patients should be warned against driving, cycling, or performing skilled tasks immediately after treatment (somnolence or dizziness can occur)

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution in severe impairment—no information available

**Renal impairment** monitor renal function in renal disease or predisposition to renal impairment (e.g. in tumour-induced hypercalcaemia)

**Pregnancy** avoid—toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** avoid

**Side-effects** hypophosphataemia, transient rise in body temperature, fever and influenza-like symptoms (sometimes accompanied by malaise, rigors, fatigue, and flushes); arthralgia, myalgia, bone pain, nausea, vomiting, headache, lymphocytopenia, hypomagnesaemia; rarely muscle cramps, anorexia, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, constipation, dyspepsia, agitation, confusion, dizziness, insomnia, somnolence, lethargy, anaemia, leucopenia, hypotension or hypertension, rash, pruritus, symptomatic hypocalcaemia (parasthesia, tetany), hyperkalaemia or hypokalaemia,
hypernatraemia; osteonecrosis of the jaw (see MHRA/CHM advice, p. 389); isolated cases of seizures, hallucinations, thrombocytopenia, haematuria, acute renal failure, deterioration of renal disease, conjunctivitis and other ocular symptoms; atrial fibrillation, and reactivation of herpes simplex and zoster also reported; also local reactions at injection site.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Disodium pamidronate (Non-proprietary) [35]**

Concentrate for intravenous infusion, disodium pamidronate 3 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £27.50; 10-mL vial = £55.00; 6 mg/mL, 10-mL vial = £95.00; 9 mg/mL, 10-mL vial = £165.00; 15 mg/mL, 1-mL vial = £29.83; 2-mL vial = £59.66; 4-mL vial = £119.32; 6-mL vial £170.46.

**Aredia Dry Powder** (Novartis) [36]

Injection, powder for reconstitution, disodium pamidronate, for use as an infusion. Net price 15-mg vial = £29.83; 30-mg vial = £59.66; 90-mg vial = £170.45 (all with diluent).

**Risedronate Sodium (Non-proprietary) [36]**

Tablets, risedronate sodium 5 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £17.99; 30 mg, 28-tab pack = £143.95; 35 mg, 4-tab pack = £19.12. Counselling, administration, food, and calcium (see above).

**Actonel** (Roche) [37]

Tablets, 150 mg, risedronate sodium 5 mg (yellow), net price 28-tab pack = £17.99; 30 mg (white), 28-tab pack = £143.95. Counselling, administration, food, and calcium (see above).

**Actonel Once a Week** (Warner Chilcott) [37]

Tablets, f/c, orange, risedronate sodium 35 mg, net price 4-tab pack = £19.12. Counselling, administration, food and calcium (see above).

### Indication and dose

#### DOXIRONATE SODIUM

Cautions

- oesophageal abnormalities and other factors which delay transit or emptying (e.g. stricture or achalasia—see also under Side-effects); correct hypocalcaemia before starting, correct other disturbances of bone and mineral metabolism (e.g. Vitamin-D deficiency) at onset of treatment; consider dental check-up before initiating bisphosphonate (risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw, see MHRA/CHM advice, p. 389); interactions: Appendix 1 (bisphosphonates)

**Contra-indications** hypocalcaemia (see Cautions above)

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Breast-feeding** avoid

**Side-effects** abdominal pain, dyspepsia, nausea, diarrhoea, constipation, headache, musculoskeletal pain, less commonly oesohagitis, oesophageal ulcer, dysphagia, gastritis, duodenitis, uveitis; rarely glossitis; oesophageal stricture; also reported gastrointestinal ulceration, hepatic disorders, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, hair loss, cutaneous vasculitis, osteonecrosis of the jaw (see MHRA/CHM advice, p. 389); interactions: Appendix 1 (bisphosphonates)

**Oesophageal reactions** Children and their carers should be advised to stop taking the tablets and seek medical attention if they develop symptoms of oesophageal irritation such as dysphagia, pain on swallowing, retrosternal pain, or heartburn.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

**Counselling** Swallow tablets whole with full glass of water; on rising, take on an empty stomach at least 30 minutes before first food or drink of the day or, if taking at any other time of the day, avoid food and drink for at least 2 hours before or after risedronate (particularly avoid calcium containing products e.g. milk; also avoid iron and mineral supplements and antacids); stand or sit upright for at least 30 minutes; do not take tablets at bedtime or before rising.

**Bonefos** (Bayer Schering) [37]

Capsules, yellow, sodium clodronate 400 mg. Net price 120-cap pack = £139.83. Counselling, food and calcium

**Tablets, f/c, scored, sodium clodronate 800 mg. Net price 60-tab pack = £146.43. Counselling, food and calcium

**Clasteon** (Beacon) [37]

Capsules, blue/white, sodium clodronate 400 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £34.96, 120-cap pack = £139.83. Counselling, food and calcium

**Loron 520** tablets, f/c, scored, sodium clodronate 520 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £152.59. Label: 10, patient information leaflet, counselling, food and calcium
6.7 Other endocrine drugs

6.7.1 Bromocriptine and other dopaminergic drugs

Classification not used in BNF for Children.

6.7.2 Drugs affecting gonadotrophins

Classification not used in BNF for Children. See section 6.4.2 for use in precocious puberty.

6.7.3 Metyrapone

Metyrapone is a competitive inhibitor of 11β-hydroxylation in the adrenal cortex; the resulting inhibition of cortisol (and to a lesser extent aldosterone) production leads to an increase in ACTH production which, in turn, leads to increased synthesis and release of cortisol precursors. It is used as a test of anterior pituitary function.

Most types of Cushing’s syndrome are treated surgically. Metyrapone may be useful to control the symptoms of the disease or to prepare the child for surgery. The dosages used are either low, and tailored to cortisol production, or high, in which case corticosteroid replacement therapy is also needed.

Ketoconazole (section 5.2.2) is also used by specialists for the management of Cushing’s syndrome [unlicensed indication].

**Cautions**
- gross hypopituitarism (risk of precipitating acute adrenal failure); hypertension on long-term administration; hypothyroidism (delayed response); many drugs interfere with diagnostic estimation of steroids; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)
- Skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)
- Contra-indications adrenocortical insufficiency (see Cautions)
- Hepatic impairment use with caution (delayed response)
- Pregnancy avoid (may impair biosynthesis of fetal-placental steroids)
- Breast-feeding avoid—no information available
- Side-effects occasional nausea, vomiting, dizziness, headache, hypotension, sedation; rarely abdominal pain, allergic skin reactions, hypoadrenalism, hirsutism

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Differential diagnosis of ACTH-dependent Cushing’s syndrome**
- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years 15 mg/kg (or 300 mg/m²) every 4 hours for 6 doses; minimum dose 250 mg every 4 hours, max. 750 mg every 4 hours

**Management of Cushing’s syndrome**
- **By mouth**
  - Range 250 mg–6 g daily, adjusted according to cortisol production; see notes above

**Metopirone** (Alliance)  Capsules, ivory, metyrapone 250 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £38.88. Label: 21, counselling, driving

6.7.4 Somatomedins

Somatomedins are a group of polypeptide hormones structurally related to insulin and commonly known as insulin-like growth factors (IGFs). Mecasermin, a human insulin-like growth factor-I (rhIGF-I), is the principal mediator of the somatotropic effects of human growth hormone and is used to treat growth failure in children with severe primary insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency.

**MECASERMIN** (Recombinant human insulin-like growth factor-I; rhIGF-I)

**Cautions**
- correct hypothyroidism before initiating treatment; diabetes mellitus (adjustment of antidiabetic therapy may be necessary), monitor ECG before and on termination of treatment (and during treatment if ECG abnormal), papilloedema (see under Side-effects), monitor for disorders of the epiphysis of the hip (monitor for limping), monitor for signs of tonsillar hypertrophy (snoring, sleep apnoea, and chronic middle ear effusions)
- Contra-indications evidence of tumour activity (discontinue treatment)
- Pregnancy avoid unless essential; contraception advised in women of child-bearing potential
- Breast-feeding avoid

**Side-effects**
- headache, funduscopic changes in the retina, visual problems, nausea and vomiting—occasionally papilloedema (see under Side-effects), monitor for disorders of the epiphysis of the hip (monitor for limping), monitor for signs of tonsillar hypertrophy (snoring, sleep apnoea, and chronic middle ear effusions)
- **Antibody formation**
- **Injection-site reactions** (rotate site)
**Indication and dose**

**Growth failure in children with severe primary insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency**

- **By subcutaneous injection**

  **Child 2–18 years** initially 40 micrograms/kg twice daily for 1 week, if tolerated increase dose in steps of 40 micrograms/kg to max. 120 micrograms/kg twice daily; discontinue if no response within 1 year.

**Counselling** Dose should be administered just before or after food; do not increase dose if a dose is missed.

**Note** Reduce dose if hypoglycaemia occurs despite adequate food intake; withhold injection if patient unable to eat.

**Increlex** (Ipsen)®

**Injection**, mecasermin 10 mg/mL, net price 4-mL vial = £605.00. Counselling, administration.

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2).
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

7.1 Drugs used in obstetrics

7.2 Treatment of vaginal and vulval conditions

7.2.1 Preparations for vaginal and vulval changes

7.2.2 Vaginal and vulval infections

7.3 Contraceptives

7.3.1 Combined hormonal contraceptives

7.3.2 Progestogen-only contraceptives

7.3.2.1 Oral progestogen-only contraceptives

7.3.2.2 Parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives

7.3.2.3 Intra-uterine progestogen-only device

7.3.3 Spermicidal contraceptives

7.3.4 Contraceptive devices

7.3.5 Emergency contraception

7.4 Drugs for genito-urinary disorders

7.4.1 Drugs for urinary retention

7.4.2 Drugs for urinary frequency, enuresis, and incontinence

7.4.3 Drugs used in urological pain

7.4.4 Bladder instillations and urological surgery

7.4.5 Drugs for erectile dysfunction

7.1 Drugs used in obstetrics

This section is not included in BNF for Children. See BNF for management of obstetrics.

For the management of ductus arteriosus, see section 2.14.

7.2 Treatment of vaginal and vulval conditions

7.2.1 Preparations for vaginal and vulval changes

Topical oestrogen creams containing estriol 0.01% (Gynest®) are used in the treatment of labial adhesions (for details of preparation, see BNF section 7.2.1); treatment is usually restricted to symptomatic cases. Estriol cream should be applied to the adhesions once or twice daily for 2–6 weeks; adhesions may recur following treatment.

Pre-pubertal girls may be particularly susceptible to vulvovaginitis. Barrier preparations (section 13.2.2) applied after cleansing can be useful when the symptoms are due to non-specific irritation, but systemic drugs are required in the treatment of bacterial infection (section 5.1) or threadworm infestation (section 5.5.1). Intravaginal preparations, particularly those that require the use of an applicator, are not generally suitable for young girls; topical preparations may be useful in some adolescent girls.

In older girls symptoms are often restricted to the vulva, but infections almost invariably involve the vagina, which should also be treated; treatment should be as for adults, see BNF section 7.2.2.
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

Vulvovaginal candidiasis is common during pregnancy and can be treated with vaginal application of an imidazole (such as clotrimazole), and a topical imidazole cream for vulvitis. Pregnant women need a longer duration of treatment, usually about 7 days, to clear the infection. There is limited absorption of imidazoles from the skin and vagina. Oral antifungal treatment should be avoided during pregnancy.

Fungal infections

Vaginal fungal infections are not normally a problem in younger girls but can occur in adolescents. *Candidal vulvitis* can be treated locally with cream, but is almost invariably associated with vaginal infection which should also be treated. *Vaginal candidiasis*, rare in girls before puberty, can be treated with antifungal pessaries or cream inserted high into the vagina (including during menstruation), however, these are not recommended for pre-pubertal girls and treatment with an external cream may be more appropriate. Single-dose intravaginal preparations offer an advantage when compliance is a problem. Local irritation can occur on application of vaginal antifungal products.

*Imidazole* drugs (clotrimazole, econazole, miconazole, and econazole) are effective against candida in short courses of 1 to 3 days according to the preparation used; treatment can be repeated if initial course fails to control symptoms or if symptoms recur. Vaginal applications may be supplemented with antifungal cream for vulvitis and to treat other superficial sites of infection.

Oral treatment of vaginal infection with fluconazole (section 5.2.1) may be considered for girls post-puberty. Oral antifungal treatment should be avoided in younger girls but can occur in adolescents. *Candidal vulvitis* can be treated locally with cream, but is almost invariably associated with vaginal infection which should also be treated. *Vaginal candidiasis*, rare in girls before puberty, can be treated with antifungal pessaries or cream inserted high into the vagina (including during menstruation), however, these are not recommended for pre-pubertal girls and treatment with an external cream may be more appropriate. Single-dose intravaginal preparations offer an advantage when compliance is a problem. Local irritation can occur on application of vaginal antifungal products.

*Imidazole* drugs (clotrimazole, econazole, miconazole, and econazole) are effective against candida in short courses of 1 to 3 days according to the preparation used; treatment can be repeated if initial course fails to control symptoms or if symptoms recur. Vaginal applications may be supplemented with antifungal cream for vulvitis and to treat other superficial sites of infection.

Oral treatment of vaginal infection with fluconazole (section 5.2.1) may be considered for girls post-puberty.

**Vaginal and vulval infections**

Effective specific treatments are available for the common vaginal infections.

**Fungal infections**

Vaginal fungal infections are not normally a problem in younger girls but can occur in adolescents. *Candidal vulvitis* can be treated locally with cream, but is almost invariably associated with vaginal infection which should also be treated. *Vaginal candidiasis*, rare in girls before puberty, can be treated with antifungal pessaries or cream inserted high into the vagina (including during menstruation), however, these are not recommended for pre-pubertal girls and treatment with an external cream may be more appropriate. Single-dose intravaginal preparations offer an advantage when compliance is a problem. Local irritation can occur on application of vaginal antifungal products.

*Imidazole* drugs (clotrimazole, econazole, miconazole, and econazole) are effective against candida in short courses of 1 to 3 days according to the preparation used; treatment can be repeated if initial course fails to control symptoms or if symptoms recur. Vaginal applications may be supplemented with antifungal cream for vulvitis and to treat other superficial sites of infection.

Oral treatment of vaginal infection with fluconazole (section 5.2.1) may be considered for girls post-puberty. Oral antifungal treatment should be avoided during pregnancy.

**Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis**

Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis is very rare in children, but can occur if there are predisposing factors such as antibiotic therapy, pregnancy, diabetes mellitus, and possibly oral contraceptive use. Reservoirs of infection can also lead to recontamination and should be treated; these include other skin sites such as the digits, nail beds, and umbilicus, as well as the gastro-intestinal tract and the bladder. The sexual partner may also be the source of re-infection and, if symptomatic, should be treated with a topical imidazole cream at the same time.

Treatment against candida may need to be extended for 6 months in recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Some recommended regimens suitable for older children [all unlicensed] include:

- initially, clotrimazole (section 5.2.1) 150 mg by mouth every 72 hours for 3 doses, then 150 mg once every week for 6 months;
- initially, intravaginal application of a topical imidazole for 10–14 days, then clotrimazole 500-mg pessary once every week for 6 months.

**PREPARATIONS FOR VAGINAL AND VULVAL CANDIDIASIS**

**Cautions** avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** occasional local irritation

**Licensed use** consult product literature for individual preparations

**Indication and dose**

See notes above and under preparations below

**Clotrimazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Cream** (topical), clotrimazole 1%, net price 20 g = £1.52, 50 g = £4.12

**Condoms** effect on latex condoms and diaphragms not yet known

**Dose**

- **Apply to anogenital area 2–3 times daily**

**Pessary**, clotrimazole 500 mg, net price 1 pessary with applicator = £3.13

**Dose**

- **Insert 1 pessary at night as a single dose; can be repeated once if necessary**

**Canesten® (Bayer Consumer Care)**

**Cream** (topical), clotrimazole 1%, net price 20 g = £2.14, 50 g = £3.50

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol, polysorbates

**Condoms** damages latex condoms and diaphragms

**Dose**

- **Apply to anogenital area 2–3 times daily**

**Thrush Cream** (topical), clotrimazole 2%, net price 20 g = £3.99

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol, polysorbates

**Condoms** damages latex condoms and diaphragms

**Dose**

- **Apply to anogenital area 2–3 times daily**

**Intravaginal cream (10% VC*)** (H), clotrimazole 10%, net price 5-g applicator pack = £4.50

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol, polysorbates

**Condoms** damages latex condoms and diaphragms

**Dose**

- **Insert 5 g at night as a single dose; may be repeated once if necessary**

**Note** Brands for sale to the public include Canesten®

**Internal Cream**

**Cream Combi**, clotrimazole 10% vaginal cream and 2% topical cream, net price 5-g vaginal cream (with applicator) and 10-g topical cream = £6.81

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol, polysorbates

**Condoms** damages latex condoms and diaphragms

**Dose**

- **See under individual components**

**Pessaries**, clotrimazole 200 mg, 3 pessaries with applicator = £3.63

**Condoms** damages latex condoms and diaphragms

**Dose**

- **Insert 200 mg for 3 nights; course may be repeated once if necessary**
BNFC 2011–2012

Pessary, clotrimazole 500 mg, net price 1 pessary with applicator = £2.00
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3
Condoms damages latex condoms and diaphragms

Dose
Insert 1 pessary at night as a single dose; may be repeated once if necessary

Combi, clotrimazole 500-mg pessary and cream (topical) 2%, net price 1 pessary and 10-g cream = £5.21
Condoms damages latex condoms and diaphragms

Dose
See under individual components

Gyno-Daktarin® (Janssen)

Dose
Insert 1 vaginal capsule at night as a single dose; can be repeated once if necessary

Gyno-Pevaryl® (Janssen)
Pessaries, econazole nitrate 150 mg, net price 3 pessaries = £2.78
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3
Condoms damages latex condoms and diaphragms

Dose
Insert 1 pessary for 3 nights; course can be repeated once if necessary

Pessary (Gyno-Pevaryl®), econazole nitrate 150 mg, formulated for single-dose therapy, net price 1 pessary with applicator = £2.95
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3
Condoms damages latex condoms and diaphragms

Dose
Insert 1 pessary at night as a single dose; can be repeated once if necessary

Gynoxin® (Recordati)

Dose
Insert 5-g applicatorful intravaginally twice daily for 3 days

Vaginal capsule, fencinconazole nitrate 200 mg, net price 3 vaginal capsules = £2.42
Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens)
Condoms damages latex condoms and diaphragms

Dose
Insert 1 vaginal capsule at night for 3 nights

Vaginal capsule, fencinconazole nitrate 600 mg, net price 1 vaginal capsule = £2.62
Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens)
Condoms damages latex condoms and diaphragms

Dose
Insert 1 vaginal capsule at night as a single dose

Nizoral® (Janssen)

Dose
Apply to anogenital area once or twice daily

Other infections

Trichomonal infections commonly involve the lower urinary tract as well as the genital system and need systemic treatment with metronidazole (section 5.1.11) or tinidazole (section 5.4.2).

Bacterial infections with Gram-negative organisms are particularly common in association with gynaecological operations and trauma. Metronidazole is effective against certain Gram-negative organisms, especially Bacteroides spp. and can be used prophylactically in gynaecological surgery.

Clindamycin cream and metronidazole gel are indicated for bacterial vaginosis.

The antiviral drugs aciclovir, famciclovir, and valaciclovir can be used in the treatment of genital infection due to herpes simplex virus, the HSV type 2 being a major cause of genital ulceration. They have a beneficial effect on virus shedding and healing, generally giving relief from pain and other symptoms. See section 5.3 for systemic preparations, and section 13.10.3 for topical preparations.
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

[21x284]7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders
[30x463](available at www.fsrh.org) is published by the Faculty of
UK Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use
scribing contraception for women under 16 years. The
micide motivated couples if used in conjunction with a
caps) are less effective but can be reliable for well-
spective of parity but are less appropriate for those with
effects. They may be used in women of all ages irre-
contraception but may produce undesirable local side-
effects, especially for certain groups of women. Hormo-
nal contraception is the most effective method of
fertility control, but can have major and minor side-
effects, especially for certain groups of women. Hormo-
nal contraception should only be used by adolescents
menarche.

**Intra-uterine devices** are a highly effective method of
contraception but may produce undesirable local side-
effects. They may be used in women of all ages irres-
pective of parity but are less appropriate for those with
an increased risk of pelvic inflammatory disease.

**Barrier methods** alone (condoms, diaphragms, and
caps) are less effective but can be reliable for well-
motivated couples if used in conjunction with a sper-
micide. Occasionally sensitivity reactions occur. A
female condom (Femidom®) is also available; it is
prelubricated but does not contain a spermicide.

### 7.3 Contraceptives

The Fraser Guidelines\(^1\) should be followed when pre-
scribing contraception for women under 16 years. The
UK Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use
(available at www.fsrh.org) is published by the Faculty of
Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare; it categorises the
risks of using contraceptive methods with pre-existing
medical conditions.

**Hormonal contraception** is the most effective method of
contraception and can have major and minor side-
effects, especially for certain groups of women. Hormo-
nal contraception should only be used by adolescents
menarche.

**Intra-uterine devices** are a highly effective method of
contraception but may produce undesirable local side-
effects. They may be used in women of all ages irres-
pective of parity but are less appropriate for those with
an increased risk of pelvic inflammatory disease.

**Barrier methods** alone (condoms, diaphragms, and
caps) are less effective but can be reliable for well-
motivated couples if used in conjunction with a sper-
micide. Occasionally sensitivity reactions occur. A
female condom (Femidom®) is also available; it is
prelubricated but does not contain a spermicide.

#### 7.3.1 Combined hormonal contraceptives

Oral contraceptives containing an oestrogen and a
progestogen (‘combined oral contraceptives’) are effec-
tive preparations for general use. Advantages of com-
bined oral contraceptives include:

- reliable and reversible;
- reduced dysmenorrhea and menorrhagia;
- reduced incidence of premenstrual tension;
- reduced risk of symptomatic fibroids and functional
  ovarian cysts;
- less benign breast disease;
- reduced risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer;
- reduced risk of pelvic inflammatory disease.

Combined oral contraceptives containing a fixed
amount of an oestrogen and a progestogen in each
active tablet are termed ‘monophasic’; those with vary-
ing amounts of the two hormones are termed ‘phasic’. A
transdermal patch and a vaginal ring, both containing an
oestrogen with a progestogen, are also available.

**Choice** The majority of combined oral contraceptives
contain ethinylestradiol as the oestrogen component;
mestranol and estradiol valerate are also used. The
ethinylestradiol content of combined oral contra-
ceptives ranges from 20 to 40 micrograms. Generally a
preparation with the lowest oestrogen and progestogen
content which gives good cycle control and minimal
side-effects in the individual woman is chosen.

- **Low strength preparations** (containing ethinylestra-
diol 20 micrograms) are particularly appropriate for
  women with risk factors for circulatory disease,
  provided a combined oral contraceptive is other-
  wise suitable.

- **Standard strength preparations** (containing ethinyl-
estradiol 30 or 35 micrograms or in 30–40 micro-
gram phased preparations) are appropriate for
  standard use—but see Risk of Venous Thromboem-
bolism below. Phased preparations are generally
reserved for women who either do not have with-
drawal bleeding or who have breakthrough bleeding
with monophasic products.

The progestogens desogestrel, drospirenone, and gesto-
dene (in combination with ethinylestradiol) may be
considered for women who have side-effects (such as
acne, headache, depression, weight gain, breast symp-
toms, and breakthrough bleeding) with other progesto-
gens. However, women should be advised that
desogestrel and gestodene have also been associated
with an increased risk of venous thromboembolism.

Drospirenone, a derivative of spironolactone, has anti-
androgenic and anti-mineralocorticoid activity; it should
be used with care if an increased plasma-potassium
concentration might be hazardous.

The progestogen norelgestromin is combined with ethi-
ylestradiol in a transdermal patch (Evra®).

The vaginal contraceptive ring contains the progestogen
etonogestrel combined with ethinylestradiol
(NuvaRing®).

**Risk of venous thromboembolism** There is an
increased risk of venous thromboembolic disease (par-
ticularly during the first year) in users of oral contra-
ceptives, but this risk is considerably smaller than that
associated with pregnancy (about 60 cases of venous
thromboembolic disease per 100,000 pregnancies). In
all cases the risk of venous thromboembolism increases
with age and in the presence of other risk factors for
venous thromboembolism, such as obesity.

The incidence of venous thromboembolism in healthy,
non-pregnant women who are not taking an oral contra-
ceptive is about 5–10 cases per 100 000 women per
year. For those using combined oral contraceptives
containing second-generation progestogens, such as
levonorgestrel, this incidence is about 15 per 100 000
women per year of use. The risk of venous thromboem-
bolism with transdermal patches may be slightly
increased compared with combined oral contraceptives
that contain levonorgestrel. Some studies have reported
a greater risk of venous thromboembolism in women
using combined oral contraceptives containing the
third-generation progestogens desogestrel and gesto-
dene; the incidence in these women is about 25 per
100 000 women per year of use. The absolute risk of
venous thromboembolism in women using combined
oral contraceptives containing these third-generation

---

1. See Department of Health Guidance (July 2004): Best
   practice guidance for doctors and other health profes-
   sionals on the provision of advice and treatment to young
   people under 16 on contraception, sexual and reproductive
   health. Available at www.dh.gov.uk
progestogens is very small and well below the risk associated with pregnancy. The risk of venous thromboembolism in women using a combined oral contraceptive containing drospirenone may be between that associated with combined oral contraceptives containing second-generation progestogens and combined oral contraceptives containing third-generation progestogens. The risk of venous thromboembolism associated with vaginal ring use compared to the risk with other combined hormonal contraceptives is unknown.

Provided that women are informed of the relative risks of venous thromboembolism and accept them, the choice of oral contraceptive is for the woman together with the prescriber jointly to make in light of her individual medical history and any contra-indications.

**Travel** Women taking oral contraceptives or using the patch or vaginal ring are at an increased risk of deep-vein thrombosis during travel involving long periods of immobility (over 5 hours). The risk may be reduced by appropriate exercise during the journey and possibly by wearing graduated compression hosiery.

**Missed pill** The critical time for loss of contraceptive protection is when a pill is omitted at the beginning or end of a cycle (which lengthens the pill-free interval).

If a woman forgets to take a pill, it should be taken as soon as she remembers, and the next one taken at the normal time (even if this means taking 3 pills together). A missed pill is one that is 24 or more hours late; for women taking **Qlaira**, see below. If a woman misses only one pill, she should take an active pill as soon as she remembers and then resume normal pill-taking. No additional precautions are necessary.

If a woman misses 2 or more pills (especially from the first 7 in a packet), she may not be protected. She should take an active pill as soon as she remembers and then resume normal pill-taking. In addition, she must either abstain from sex or use an additional method of contraception such as a condom for the next 7 days. If these 7 days run beyond the end of the packet, the next packet should be started at once, omitting the pill-free interval (or, in the case of everyday (ED) pills, omitting the 7 inactive tablets).

A missed pill for a woman taking **Qlaira** is one that is 12 hours or more late; for information on how to manage missed pills in women taking **Qlaira**, refer to product literature.

Emergency contraception (section 7.3.5) is recommended if 2 or more combined oral contraceptive tablets are missed from the first 7 tablets in a packet and unprotected intercourse has occurred since finishing the last packet.

**Delayed application or detached patch** If a patch is partly detached for less than 24 hours, reapply to the same site or replace with a new patch immediately; no additional contraception is needed and the next patch should be applied on the usual ‘change day’. If a patch remains detached for more than 24 hours or if the user is not aware when the patch became detached, then stop the current contraceptive cycle and start a new cycle by applying a new patch, giving a new ‘Day 1’; an additional non-hormonal contraceptive must be used concurrently for the first 7 days of the new cycle.

If application of a new patch at the start of a new cycle is delayed, contraceptive protection is lost. A new patch should be applied as soon as remembered giving a new ‘Day 1’; additional non-hormonal methods of contraception should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle. If intercourse has occurred during this extended patch-free interval, a possibility of fertilisation should be considered. If application of a patch in the middle of the cycle is delayed (i.e. the patch is not changed on day 8 or day 15):

- for up to 48 hours, apply a new patch immediately; next patch ‘change day’ remains the same and no additional contraception is required;
- for more than 48 hours, contraceptive protection may have been lost. Stop the current cycle and start a new 4-week cycle immediately by applying a new patch giving a new ‘Day 1’; additional non-hormonal contraception should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle.

If the patch is not removed at the end of the cycle (day 22), remove it as soon as possible and start the next cycle on the usual ‘change day’, the day after day 28; no additional contraception is required.

**Expulsion, delayed insertion or removal, or broken vaginal ring** If the vaginal ring is expelled for less than 3 hours, rinse the ring with cool water and reinsert immediately; no additional contraception is needed.

If the ring remains outside the vagina for more than 3 hours or if the user does not know when the ring was expelled, contraceptive protection may be reduced:

- if ring expelled during week 1 or 2 of cycle, rinse ring with cool water and reinsert; use additional precautions (barrier methods) for next 7 days;
- if ring expelled during week 3 of cycle, either insert a new ring to start a new cycle or allow a withdrawal bleed and insert a new ring no later than 7 days after ring was expelled; latter option only available if ring was used continuously for at least 7 days before expulsion.

If insertion of a new ring at the start of a new cycle is delayed, contraceptive protection is lost. A new ring should be inserted as soon as possible; additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle. If intercourse occurred during the extended ring-free interval, pregnancy should be considered.

No additional contraception is required if the removal of the ring is delayed by up to 1 week (4 weeks of continuous use). The 7-day ring-free interval should be observed and subsequently a new ring should be inserted. Contraceptive protection may be reduced with continuous use of the ring for more than 4 weeks—pregnancy should be ruled out before inserting a new ring.

If the ring breaks during use, remove it and insert a new ring immediately; additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle.

**Diarrhoea and vomiting** Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of combined oral contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking a combined oral contraceptive another pill should be taken as soon as possible. In cases of
persistent vomiting or severe diarrhoea lasting more than 24 hours, additional precautions should be used during and for 7 days (9 days for 
Qlaira®) after recovery (see also under Missed pill, above). If the vomiting and diarrhoea occurs during the last 7 tablets, the next pill-
free interval should be omitted (in the case of ED tablets the inactive ones should be omitted).

Interactions The effectiveness of combined oral contraceptives, progestogen-only oral contraceptives (section 7.3.2.1), contraceptive patches, and vaginal rings can be considerably reduced by interaction with drugs that induce hepatic enzyme activity (e.g. carbama-
zepine, modafinil, nelfinavir, nevirapine, oxcarba-
zepine, phenoxytoin, phenobarbital, primidone, ritona-
vir, St John’s Wort, topiramate, and, above all, rifabutin and rifampicin). A condom together with a long-acting method, such as an injectable contraceptive, may be more suitable for patients with HIV infection or at risk of HIV infection; advice on the possibility of interaction with antiretroviral drugs should be sought from HIV specialists.

Women taking combined hormonal contraceptives who require enzyme-inducing drugs should be advised to change to a contraceptive method that is unaffected by enzyme-inducers (e.g. some parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives (p. 404), intra-uterine devices) for the duration of treatment and for 4 weeks after stopping. If a change in contraceptive method is undesirable or inappropriate the following options should be discussed:

- For a short course (2 months or less) of an enzyme-inducing drug (except rifampicin or rifabutin—see below), continue with a combined oral contraceptive providing ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms daily and use a ‘tricycling’ regimen (i.e. taking 3 packets of monophasic tablets without a break followed by a shortened tablet-free interval of 4 days [unlicensed use]). Additional contraceptive precautions should also be used whilst taking the enzyme-inducing drug and for 4 weeks after stopping. Another option is to follow the advice for long-term courses below. For women using combined hormonal contraceptive patches or vaginal rings, additional contraceptive precautions are also required whilst taking the enzyme-inducing drug and for 4 weeks after stopping. If concomitant administration runs beyond the 3 weeks of patch or vaginal ring use, a new treatment cycle should be started immediately, without a patch-free or ring-free break.

- For a long-term course (over 2 months) of an enzyme-inducing drug (except rifampicin or rifabutin—see below), adjust the dose of combined oral contraceptive to provide at least ethinylestradiol 50 micrograms daily [unlicensed use] and use a ‘tricycling’ regimen (as above); continue for the duration of treatment with the enzyme-inducing drug and for 4 weeks after stopping. If concomitant administration runs beyond the 3 weeks of patch or vaginal ring use, a new treatment cycle should be started immediately, without a patch-free or ring-free break.

- For any course of rifampicin or rifabutin, an alternative method of contraception (such as an IUD) is always recommended because they are such potent enzyme-inducing drugs. Since enzyme activity does not return to normal for several weeks after stopping an enzyme-inducing drug, appropriate contraceptive measures are required for 4 to 8 weeks after stopping. Latest recommendations are that no additional contraceptive precautions are required when combined oral contraceptives are used with antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes (e.g. ampicillin, doxycycline), unless diarrhoea or vomiting occur (see above)

It is also recommended that no additional contraceptive precautions are required when contraceptive patches or vaginal rings are used with antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes. There have been concerns that some antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes reduce the efficacy of combined oral contraceptives by impairing the bacterial flora responsible for recycling ethinylestradiol from the large bowel; however, there is a lack of evidence to support this interaction.

For information on interactions of oral progestogen-only contraceptives, see also p. 403; for information on interactions of parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives, see also p. 404; for information on interactions of the intra-uterine progestogen-only device, see also p. 405; for information on interactions of hormonal emergency contraception, see also p. 408.

Surgery Oestrogen-containing contraceptives should preferably be discontinued (and adequate alternative contraceptive arrangements made) 4 weeks before major elective surgery and all surgery to the legs or surgery which involves prolonged immobilisation of a lower limb; they should normally be recommenced at the first menses occurring at least 2 weeks after full mobilisation. A progestogen-only contraceptive may be offered as an alternative and the oestrogen-containing contraceptive restarted after mobilisation, as above. When discontinuation of an oestrogen-containing contraceptive is not possible, e.g. after trauma or if a patient admitted for an elective procedure is still on an oestro-
gen-containing contraceptive, thromboprophylaxis (with unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin and graduated compression hosiery) is advised. These recommendations do not apply to minor surgery with short duration of anaesthesia, e.g. laparoscopic sterilisation or tooth extraction, or to women using oestrogen-free hormonal contraceptives.

Reason to stop immediately Combined hormonal contraceptives should be stopped (pending investigation and treatment), if any of the following occur:

- sudden severe chest pain (even if not radiating to left arm);
- sudden breathlessness (or cough with blood-stained sputum);
- unexplained swelling or severe pain in calf of one leg;
- severe stomach pain;
- serious neurological effects including unusual severe, prolonged headache especially if first time or getting progressively worse or sudden partial or complete loss of vision or sudden disturbance of hearing or other perceptual disorders or dysphoria or bad fanning attack or collapse or first unexplained epileptic seizure or
COMBINED HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

Cautions see notes above; also risk factors for venous thromboembolism (see below and also notes above), arterial disease and migraine, see below; personal or family history of hypertriglyceridaemia (increased risk of pancreatitis); hyperprolactinaemia (seek specialist advice); history of severe depression especially if induced by hormonal contraceptive; undiagnosed breast mass; gene mutations associated with breast cancer (e.g. BRCA 1); sickle-cell disease; inflammatory bowel disease including Crohn’s disease; reduced efficacy of contraceptive patch in women with body-weight ≥ 90 kg; active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma- gonadotrophin concentration) —seek specialist advice; interactions: see above and Appendix 1 (oestrogens, progestogens)

Risk factors for venous thromboembolism See also notes above. Use with caution if any of following factors present but avoid if two or more factors present:

- family history of venous thromboembolism in first-degree relative aged under 45 years (avoid contraceptive containing desogestrel or gestodene, or avoid if known prothrombotic coagulation abnormality e.g. factor V Leiden or antiphospholipid antibodies (including lupus anticoagulant));
- obesity—caution if obese according to BMI (adjusted for age and gender); in those who are markedly obese, avoid unless no suitable alternative;
- long-term immobilisation e.g. in a wheelchair (avoid if confined to bed or leg in plaster cast);
- history of superficial thrombophlebitis;
- smoking.

Risk factors for arterial disease Use with caution if any of following factors present but avoid if two or more factors present:

- family history of arterial disease in first degree relative aged under 45 years (avoid if atherogenic lipid profile);
- diabetes mellitus (avoid if diabetes complications present);
- hypertension (avoid if blood pressure very high);
- smoking (avoid if smoking 40 or more cigarettes daily);
- obesity—caution if obese according to BMI (adjusted for age and gender); in those who are markedly obese, avoid unless no suitable alternative;
- migraine without aura (avoid if migraine with aura (focal symptoms), or severe migraine frequently lasting over 72 hours despite treatment, or migraine treated with ergot derivatives).

Migraine Women should report any increase in headache frequency or onset of focal symptoms (discontinue immediately and refer urgently to neurology expert if focal neurological symptoms not typical of aura persist for more than 1 hour—see also Reason to stop immediately in notes above) Contra-indications see notes above; also personal history of venous or arterial thrombosis, severe or multiple risk factors for arterial disease or for venous thromboembolism (see above), heart disease associated with pulmonary hypertension or risk of embo-

lithus; sclerosing treatment for varicose veins; migraine with aura (see also above); transient cerebral ischaemic attacks without headaches; systemic lupus erythematosus; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); gallstones; history of haemolytic uraemic syndrome or history during pregnancy of pruritus, cholestatic jaundice, chorea, pempigoid gestationis; history of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal methods unacceptable; undiagnosed vaginal bleeding

Hepatic impairment avoid in active liver disease including disorders of hepatic excretion (e.g. Dubin-Johnson or Rotor syndromes), infective hepatitis (until liver function returns to normal), and liver tumours

Pregnancy not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding avoid until weaning or for 6 months after birth (adverse effects on lactation)

Side-effects see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, changes in body-weight, liver impairment, hepatic tumours; fluid retention, thrombosis (more common when factor V Leiden present or in blood groups A, B, and AB; see also notes above), hypertension, changes in lipid metabolism; headache, depression, chorea, nervousness, irritability; changes in libido, breast tenderness, enlargement, and secretion; reduced menstrual loss, ‘spotting’ in early cycles, absence of withdrawal bleeding, amenorrhoea after discontinuation, changes in vaginal discharge, cervical erosion; contact lens may irritate, visual disturbances; leg cramps; skin reactions, chloasma, photosensitivity; rarely gallstones and systemic lupus erythematosus

Breast cancer There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women taking the combined oral contraceptive pill; this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis. In users of combined oral contraceptive pills the cancers are more likely to be localised to the breast. The most important factor for diagnosing breast cancer appears to be the age at which the contraceptive is stopped rather than the duration of use; any increase in the rate of diagnosis diminishes gradually during the 10 years after stopping and disappears by 10 years.

Cervical cancer Use of combined oral contraceptives for 5 years or longer is associated with a small increased risk of cervical cancer; the risk diminishes after stopping and disappears by about 10 years. The risk of cervical cancer with transdermal patches and vaginal rings is not yet known.

Note The possible small increase in the risk of breast cancer and cervical cancer should be weighed against the protective effect against cancers of the ovary and endometrium

Licensed use consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations

Indication and dose

Contraception, menstrual symptoms (section 6.4.1.2)

By mouth Each tablet should be taken at approximately same time each day; if delayed contraceptive protection may be lost (see Missed Pill, above) 21-day combined (monophasic) preparations, 1 tablet daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after a 7-day interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); first course usually started on day 1 of cycle—if starting on day 4 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days

Every day (ED) combined (monophasic) preparations, 1 active tablet starting on day 1 of cycle (see also under preparations below)—if starting on

BNFC 2011–2012

7.3.1 Combined hormonal contraceptives 399
day 4 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days; withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken; subsequent courses repeated without interval

**Phasic preparations**, see under individual preparations below

**Changing to combined preparation containing different progestogen**

- 21-day combined preparations: continue current pack until last tablet and start first tablet of new brand the next day. If a 7-day break is taken before starting new brand, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used during first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®) of taking the new brand
- *Every Day (ED) combined preparations*: start the new brand (first tablet of a 21-day preparation or the first active tablet of an *ED preparation*) the day after taking the last active tablet of previous brand (omitting the inactive tablets)

**Changing from progestogen-only tablet**

- Start on day 1 of menstruation or any day if amennorhoea present and pregnancy has been excluded
- Secondary amennorhoea (exclude pregnancy) Start any day, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®)

**After childbirth (not breast-feeding)**

- Start 3 weeks after birth (increased risk of thrombosis if started earlier); later than 3 weeks postpartum additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary for first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®)

**After abortion or miscarriage**

- Start same day
  - **By transdermal application**
    - Apply first patch on day 1 of cycle, change patch on days 8 and 15; remove third patch on day 22 and apply new patch after 7-day patch-free interval to start subsequent contraceptive cycle
    - **Note** If first patch applied later than day 1, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for the next 7 days

**Changing from combined oral contraception**

- Apply first patch on the day of withdrawal bleeding; if no withdrawal bleeding within 5 days of taking last active tablet, rule out pregnancy before applying first patch.
- Unless patch is applied on first day of withdrawal bleeding, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days

**Changing from progestogen-only method**

- From an implant, apply first patch on the day implant removed; from an injection, apply first patch when next injection due; from oral preparation, first ring may be inserted on any day after stopping pill. For all methods additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days

**After first trimester abortion**

- Start immediately
  - **After childbirth (not breast-feeding) or second trimester abortion**
    - Start 4 weeks after birth or abortion; if started later than 4 weeks after birth or abortion additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for first 7 days

**Oral (low and standard strength)**

For information on these preparations, see Combined Oral Contraceptives table, p. 401

**Transdermal (standard strength)**

- **Ethinylestradiol with Norelgestromin**
  - See Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (in notes above) before prescribing
  - **Eva**® (Janssen) 
    - Patches, self-adhesive (releasing ethinylestradiol approx. 33.9 micrograms/24 hours and norelgestromin approx. 203 micrograms/24 hours); net price 9-patch pack = £16.70. Counselling, administration
  - **Dose**
    - 1 patch to be applied once weekly for three weeks, followed by a 7-day patch-free interval; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day patch-free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); for starting routines see under Dose above
  - **Note** Adhesives or bandages should not be used to hold patch in place. If patch no longer sticky do not reapply but use a new patch.
  - The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (September 2003) that Eva® patches should be restricted for use in women who are likely to comply poorly with combined oral contraceptives

**Vaginal (low strength)**

- **Ethinylestradiol with Etonogestrel**
  - See Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (in notes above) before prescribing
  - **NuvaRing**® (Organon) 
    - **Vaginal ring**, releasing ethinylestradiol approx. 15 micrograms/24 hours and etonogestrel approx. 120 micrograms/24 hours, net price 3-ring pack = £27.00. Counselling, administration
  - **Dose**
    - 1 ring to be inserted into the vagina for 3 weeks, removed on day 22; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day ring-free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); for starting routines see under Dose above
  - **Counselling** The presence of the ring should be checked regularly. In case of expulsion see Expulsion, Delayed Insertion or Removal, or Broken Vaginal Ring, p. 397

---

**day 4 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days; withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken; subsequent courses repeated without interval**

**Phasic preparations**, see under individual preparations below

**Changing to combined preparation containing different progestogen 21-day combined preparations: continue current pack until last tablet and start first tablet of new brand the next day. If a 7-day break is taken before starting new brand, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used during first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®) of taking the new brand**

**Changing from progestogen-only tablet**

- Start on day 1 of menstruation or any day if amennorhoea present and pregnancy has been excluded
- Secondary amennorhoea (exclude pregnancy) Start any day, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®)

**After childbirth (not breast-feeding)**

- Start 3 weeks after birth (increased risk of thrombosis if started earlier); later than 3 weeks postpartum additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary for first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®)

**After abortion or miscarriage**

- Start same day
  - **By transdermal application**
    - Apply first patch on day 1 of cycle, change patch on days 8 and 15; remove third patch on day 22 and apply new patch after 7-day patch-free interval to start subsequent contraceptive cycle
    - **Note** If first patch applied later than day 1, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for the next 7 days

**Changing from combined oral contraception**

- Apply first patch on the day of withdrawal bleeding; if no withdrawal bleeding within 5 days of taking last active tablet, rule out pregnancy before applying first patch.
- Unless patch is applied on first day of withdrawal bleeding, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days

**Changing from progestogen-only method**

- From an implant, apply first patch on the day implant removed; from an injection, apply first patch when next injection due; from oral preparation, first ring may be started on any day after stopping pill. For all methods additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days

**After abortion or miscarriage**

- Start immediately
  - **After childbirth (not breast-feeding) or second trimester abortion**
    - Start 4 weeks after birth or abortion; if started later than 4 weeks after birth or abortion additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for first 7 days

**Oral (low and standard strength)**

For information on these preparations, see Combined Oral Contraceptives table, p. 401

**Transdermal (standard strength)**

- **Ethinylestradiol with Norelgestromin**
  - See Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (in notes above) before prescribing
  - **Eva**® (Janssen) 
    - Patches, self-adhesive (releasing ethinylestradiol approx. 33.9 micrograms/24 hours and norelgestromin approx. 203 micrograms/24 hours); net price 9-patch pack = £16.70. Counselling, administration
  - **Dose**
    - 1 patch to be applied once weekly for three weeks, followed by a 7-day patch-free interval; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day patch-free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); for starting routines see under Dose above
  - **Note** Adhesives or bandages should not be used to hold patch in place. If patch no longer sticky do not reapply but use a new patch.
  - The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (September 2003) that Eva® patches should be restricted for use in women who are likely to comply poorly with combined oral contraceptives

**Vaginal (low strength)**

- **Ethinylestradiol with Etonogestrel**
  - See Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (in notes above) before prescribing
  - **NuvaRing**® (Organon) 
    - **Vaginal ring**, releasing ethinylestradiol approx. 15 micrograms/24 hours and etonogestrel approx. 120 micrograms/24 hours, net price 3-ring pack = £27.00. Counselling, administration
  - **Dose**
    - 1 ring to be inserted into the vagina for 3 weeks, removed on day 22; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day ring-free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); for starting routines see under Dose above
  - **Counselling** The presence of the ring should be checked regularly. In case of expulsion see Expulsion, Delayed Insertion or Removal, or Broken Vaginal Ring, p. 397
### Combined Oral Contraceptives

#### See Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (in notes above) before prescribing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of preparation</th>
<th>Oestrogen content</th>
<th>Progestogen content</th>
<th>Tablets per cycle</th>
<th>Brand</th>
<th>Price, 3-cycle pack (unless stated)</th>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Monophasic low strength (21-day preparations)</td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms</td>
<td>Desogestrel 150 micrograms</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Gedarel® 20/150</td>
<td>£5.98</td>
<td>Consilient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mercilon®</td>
<td>£7.97</td>
<td>Organon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gestodene 75 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Femodette®</td>
<td>£8.85</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Millinette® 20/75</td>
<td>£6.37</td>
<td>Consilient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sunya 20/75</td>
<td>£6.62</td>
<td>Stagen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Norethisterone acetate 1 mg</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Loestrin 20®</td>
<td>£2.75</td>
<td>Galen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Monophasic standard strength (21-day preparations)</td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Desogestrel 150 micrograms</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Gedarel® 30/150</td>
<td>£4.93</td>
<td>Consilient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marvelon®</td>
<td>£6.45</td>
<td>Organon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drosipreneone 3 mg</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Yasmin®</td>
<td>£14.70</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gestodene 75 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Femodene®</td>
<td>£6.73</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Katya 30/75®</td>
<td>£5.03</td>
<td>Stagen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Millinette® 30/75</td>
<td>£4.85</td>
<td>Consilient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Levest®</td>
<td>£2.55</td>
<td>Morningside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Microgynon 30®</td>
<td>£2.82</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ovranette®</td>
<td>£2.20</td>
<td>Wyeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rigevidon®</td>
<td>£1.89</td>
<td>Consilient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Norethisterone acetate 1.5 mg</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Loestrin 30®</td>
<td>£3.95</td>
<td>Galen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norgestimate 250 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Cilest®</td>
<td>3-cycle pack = £2.87; 6-cycle pack = £5.74</td>
<td>Janssen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Norethisterone 500 micrograms</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Brevinor®</td>
<td>£1.99</td>
<td>Pharmacia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Norethisterone 1 mg</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Norinyl®</td>
<td>£2.28</td>
<td>Pharmacia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mestranol 50 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 1 mg</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Norinyl-1®</td>
<td>£2.19</td>
<td>Pharmacia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Monophasic standard strength (28-day ‘Every day’ preparations)</td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Gestodene 75 micrograms</td>
<td>21 active 7 inactive</td>
<td>Femodene® ED</td>
<td>£6.73</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms</td>
<td>21 active 7 inactive</td>
<td>Microgynon 30 ED®</td>
<td>£2.54</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. **Dose** 1 tablet daily for 21 days starting on day 1 of cycle; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day tablet-free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); for starting routines see under Dose above

2. **Caution** use with care if increased plasma-potassium concentration might be hazardous; renal impairment avoid if eGFR less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

3. **Dose** 1 tablet daily for 28 days, starting on day 1 of cycle with first active tablet (withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken); subsequent courses repeated without interval; for starting routines see under Dose above
### Combined Oral Contraceptives (continued)

See Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (in notes above) before prescribing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of preparation</th>
<th>Oestrogen content</th>
<th>Progestogen content</th>
<th>Tablets per cycle</th>
<th>Brand</th>
<th>Price, 3-cycle pack (unless stated)</th>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Phasic standard strength (21-day preparations)</strong></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Gestodene 50 micrograms</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Triadene®</td>
<td>£8.99</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms</td>
<td>Gestodene 70 micrograms</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Gestodene 100 micrograms</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 50 micrograms</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Logynon®</td>
<td>£3.96</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 75 micrograms</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 125 micrograms</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>TriRegol®</td>
<td>£2.87</td>
<td>Consilient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 500 micrograms</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Binovum®</td>
<td>£1.96</td>
<td>Janssen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 1 mg</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 500 micrograms</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Synphase®</td>
<td>1-cycle pack = £1.20</td>
<td>Pharmacia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 1 mg</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 500 micrograms</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 1 mg</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Trinovum®</td>
<td>£2.72</td>
<td>Janssen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 500 micrograms</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms</td>
<td>Norethisterone 1 mg</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Phasic standard strength (28-day ‘Every day’ preparation)</strong></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 50 micrograms</td>
<td>6 active</td>
<td>Logynon ED®</td>
<td>£3.82</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 75 micrograms</td>
<td>5 active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms</td>
<td>Levonorgestrel 125 micrograms</td>
<td>10 active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estradiol valerate 3 mg</td>
<td>Dienogest 2 mg</td>
<td>2 active</td>
<td>Qlaira® ▼</td>
<td>£25.18</td>
<td>Bayer Schering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estradiol valerate 2 mg</td>
<td>Dienogest 3 mg</td>
<td>5 active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estradiol valerate 2 mg</td>
<td>Dienogest 5 mg</td>
<td>17 active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estradiol valerate 1 mg</td>
<td>Dienogest 1 mg</td>
<td>2 active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estradiol valerate 1 mg</td>
<td>Dienogest 2 mg</td>
<td>2 inactive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Dose 1 tablet daily for 21 days starting on day 1 of cycle; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day tablet-free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); for starting routines see under Dose above
2. Dose 1 tablet daily for 28 days, starting on day 1 of cycle with first active tablet (withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken); subsequent courses repeated without interval; for starting routines see under Dose above
7.3.2 Progestogen-only contraceptives

7.3.2.1 Oral progestogen-only contraceptives

Oral progestogen-only preparations may offer a suitable alternative when oestrogens are contra-indicated (including those patients with venous thrombosis or a past history or predisposition to venous thrombosis), but have a higher failure rate than combined preparations. They are suitable for heavy smokers, and for those with hypertension, valvular heart disease, diabetes mellitus, and migraine. Menstrual irregularities (oligomenorrhoea, menorrhagia) are more common but tend to resolve on long-term treatment.

Interactions Effective oral progestogen-only preparations is not affected by antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes. The efficacy of oral progestogen-only preparations is, however, reduced by enzyme-inducing drugs and an alternative contraceptive method, unaffected by the interacting drug, is recommended during treatment with an enzyme-inducing drug and for at least 4 weeks afterwards—see p. 398 and Appendix 1 (progestogens). For a short course of an enzyme-inducing drug, if a change in contraceptive method is undesirable or inappropriate, the progestogen-only oral method may be continued in combination with additional contraceptive precautions (e.g. condom) for the duration of treatment with the enzyme-inducing drug and for 4 weeks after stopping.

Surgery All progestogen-only contraceptives (including those given by injection) are suitable for use as an alternative to combined oral contraceptives before major elective surgery, before all surgery to the legs, or before surgery which involves prolonged immobilisation of a lower limb.

Starting routine One tablet daily, on a continuous basis, starting on day 1 of cycle and taken at the same time each day (if delayed by longer than 3 hours (12 hours for Cerazette*) contraceptive protection may be lost). Additional contraceptive precautions are not necessary when initiating treatment.

Changing from a combined oral contraceptive Start on the day following completion of the combined oral contraceptive course without a break (or in the case of ED tablets omitting the inactive ones).

After childbirth Start any time after 3 weeks postpartum (increased risk of breakthrough bleeding if started earlier).

Missed pill The following advice is now recommended by family planning organisations: ‘If you forget a pill, take it as soon as you remember and carry on with the next pill at the right time. If the pill was more than 3 hours (12 hours for Cerazette*) overdue you are not protected. Continue normal pill-taking but you must also use another method, such as the condom, for the next 2 days’.

Diarrhoea and vomiting Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of oral progestogen-only contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking an oral progestogen-only contraceptive, another pill should be taken as soon as possible. If a replacement pill is not taken within 3 hours (12 hours for Cerazette*) of the normal time for taking the progestogen-only pill, or in cases of persistent vomiting or very severe diarrhoea, additional precautions should be used during illness and for 2 days after recovery (see also under Missed pill above).

Diarrhoea and vomiting Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of oral progestogen-only contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking an oral progestogen-only contraceptive, another pill should be taken as soon as possible. If a replacement pill is not taken within 3 hours (12 hours for Cerazette*) of the normal time for taking the progestogen-only pill, or in cases of persistent vomiting or very severe diarrhoea, additional precautions should be used during illness and for 2 days after recovery (see also under Missed pill above).

ORAL PROGESTOGEN-ONLY CONTRACEPTIVES (Progestogen-only pill, ‘POP’)

Cautions arterial disease; sex-steroid dependent cancer; past ectopic pregnancy; malabsorption syndromes; active tuberculosis (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice; systemic lupus erythematosus with positive (or unknown) anti-phospholipid antibodies; functional ovarian cysts; history of jaundice in pregnancy; interactions: see notes above and Appendix 1 (progestogens)

Other conditions The product literature advises caution in patients with history of thromboembolism, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and migraine; evidence for caution in these conditions is unsatisfactory

Contra-indications undiagnosed vaginal bleeding; severe arterial disease; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); history of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable

Hepatic impairment caution in active liver disease; and recurrent cholestatic jaundice, avoid in liver tumour

Pregnancy not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation; see also After Childbirth above

Side-effects menstrual irregularities (see also notes above); nausea, vomiting, headache, dizziness, breast discomfort, depression, skin disorders, disturbance of appetite, weight changes, changes in libido

Breast cancer There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women using, or who have recently used, a progestogen-only contraceptive pill, this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis. The most important risk factor appears to be the age at which the contraceptive is stopped rather than the duration of use; the risk disappears gradually during the 10 years after stopping and there is no excess risk by 10 years. A possible small increase in the risk of breast cancer should be weighed against the benefits

Licensed use consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

Indication and dose

Contraception

• By mouth

1 tablet daily at same time each day, starting on day 1 of cycle then continuously; if administration delayed for 3 hours (12 hours for Cerazette®) or more it should be regarded as a ‘missed pill’, see notes above

Cerazette® (Organon) [58]
Tablets, f/c, desogestrel 75 micrograms, net price 3 x 28-tab pack = £8.68
The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (September 2003) that Cerazette® should be restricted for use in women who cannot tolerate oestrogen-containing contraceptives or in whom such preparations are contra-indicated

Femulen® (Pharmacia) [58]
Tablets, etynodiol diacetate 500 micrograms, net price 3 x 28-tab pack = £3.31

Micronor® (Janssen) [58]
Tablets, norethisterone 350 micrograms, net price 3 x 28-tab pack = £1.66

Norgeston® (Bayer Schering) [58]
Tablets, s/c, levonorgestrel 30 micrograms, net price 35-tab pack = 92p

Noriday® (Pharmacia) [58]
Tablets, norethisterone 350 micrograms, net price 3 x 28-tab pack = £2.10

7.3.2.2 Parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives

Medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera®) is a long-acting progestogen given by intramuscular injection; it is as effective as the combined oral preparations but because of its prolonged action it should never be given without full counselling backed by the patient information leaflet. It may be used as a short-term or long-term contraceptive for women who have been counselled about the likelihood of menstrual disturbance and the potential for a delay in return to full fertility. Delayed return of fertility and irregular cycles may occur after discontinuation of treatment but there is no evidence of permanent infertility. Heavy bleeding has been reported in patients given medroxyprogesterone acetate in the immediate puerperium; delaying the first injection until 6 weeks after the birth may minimise bleeding problems. If the woman is not breast-feeding, the first injection may be given within 5 days postpartum (she should be warned that the risk of heavy or prolonged bleeding may be increased). The manufacturer advises that in women who are breast-feeding, the first dose should be delayed until 6 weeks after the birth; however, evidence suggests no harmful effect to infant if given earlier. The benefits of using medroxyprogesterone acetate in breast-feeding women outweigh any risks.

Reduction in bone mineral density and, rarely, osteoporosis and osteoporotic fractures have also been reported with medroxyprogesterone acetate. The reduction in bone mineral density occurs in the first 2–3 years of use and then stabilises. See also below.

• In adolescents, medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera®) should be used only when other methods of contraception are inappropriate;
• in all women, the benefits of using medroxyprogesterone acetate beyond 2 years should be evaluated against the risks;
• in women with risk factors for osteoporosis, a method of contraception other than medroxyprogesterone acetate should be considered.

Norethisterone enantate (Noristerat®) is a long-acting progestogen given as an oily injection which provides contraception for 8 weeks; it is used as short-term interim contraception e.g. before vasectomy becomes effective.

An etonogestrel-releasing implant (Nexplanon®) is also available. It is a highly effective long-acting contraceptive, consisting of a single flexible rod that is inserted subdermally into the lower surface of the upper arm and provides contraception for up to 3 years. The manufacturer advises that in heavier women, blood-etonogestrel concentrations are lower and therefore the implant may not provide effective contraception during the third year; they advise that earlier replacement may be considered in such patients; however, evidence to support this recommendation is lacking. Local reactions such as bruising and itching can occur at the insertion site. The contraceptive effect of etonogestrel is rapidly reversed on removal of the implant. The doctor or nurse administering (or removing) the system should be fully trained in the technique and should provide full counselling reinforced by the patient information leaflet.

Implanon®, also an etonogestrel-releasing implant, has been discontinued (October 2010), but some women may have the implant in place until 2013. The cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects of oral progestogen-only contraceptives apply to parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives, except that parenteral preparations reliably inhibit ovulation and therefore protect against ectopic pregnancy and functional ovarian cysts.

Interactions Effectiveness of parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives is not affected by antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes. The effectiveness of norethisterone and medroxyprogesterone acetate intramuscular injections is not affected by enzyme-inducing drugs and they may be continued as normal during courses of these drugs. However, effectiveness of the etonogestrel-releasing implant may be reduced by enzyme-inducing drugs and an alternative contraceptive method, unaffected by the interacting drug, is recommended during treatment with the enzyme-inducing drug and for at least 4 weeks after stopping. For a short course of an enzyme-inducing drug, if a change in contraceptive method is undesirable or inappropriate, the implant may be continued in combination with additional contraceptive precautions (e.g. condom) for the duration of treatment with the enzyme-inducing drug and for 4 weeks after stopping it.
**PARENTERAL PROGESTOGEN-ONLY CONTRACEPTIVES**

**Cautions** see notes above and under preparations; possible risk of breast cancer, see oral progestogen-only contraceptives (section 7.3.2.1); history during pregnancy of pruritus or of deterioration of oto-sclerosis, disturbances of lipid metabolism; **interactions:** see notes above and Appendix 1 (progestogens)

**Contra-indications** see notes above; history of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable

**Hepatic impairment** see Oral Progestogen-only Contraceptives, section 7.3.2.1

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful; for Implanon® or Nexplanon® if pregnancy occurs remove implant

**Breast-feeding** progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation; see also notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; injection-site reactions

**Cervical cancer** Use of injectable progestogen-only contraceptives is associated with a small increased risk of cervical cancer, this increased risk may be similar to that seen with combined oral contraceptives, see p. 399. The risk of cervical cancer with other progestogen-only contraceptives is not yet known.

**Licensed use** consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations

**Indication and dose**

**Contraception** see also notes above and under preparations (roles vary according to preparation)

For dose see under preparations

### Injectables preparations

**Depo-Provera®** (Pfizer)

**Injection** (aqueous suspension), medroxyprogesterone acetate 150 mg/mL, net price 1-mL prefilled syringe = £6.01, 1-mL vial = £8.01. Counselling, see patient information leaflet

**Dose**

- **By deep intramuscular injection**
  
  150 mg within first 5 days of cycle or within first 5 days after parturition (delay until 6 weeks after parturition if breast-feeding); for long-term contraception, repeated every 12 weeks (if interval greater than 12 weeks and 5 days, rule out pregnancy before next injection and advise patient to use additional contraceptive measures (e.g. barrier) for 14 days after the injection)

**Noristerat®** (Bayer Schering)

**Injection** (oily), norethisterone enantate 200 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £3.38. Counselling, see patient information leaflet

**Dose**

- **By deep intramuscular injection**
  
  Given very slowly intogluteal muscle, short-term contraception, 200 mg within first 5 days of cycle or immediately after parturition (duration 8 weeks); may be repeated once after 8 weeks (without breast-feeding for neonates with severe or persistent jaundice requiring medical treatment)

### Implants

**Nexplanon®** (Organon)

Implant, containing etonogestrel 68 mg in radiopaque flexible rod, net price = £79.46. Counselling, see patient information leaflet

**Dose**

- **By subdermal implantation**
  
  No hormonal contraceptive use in previous month, 1 implant inserted during first 5 days of cycle; postpartum, 1 implant inserted 21–28 days after delivery; in breast-feeding mothers, 1 implant inserted after 28 days post-partum; abortion or miscarriage in the second trimester, 1 implant inserted 21–28 days after abortion or miscarriage; abortion or miscarriage in first trimester, 1 implant inserted within 5 days; changing from other hormonal contraceptive, consult product literature; remove implant within 3 years of insertion

### Intra-uterine progestogen-only device

The progestogen-only intra-uterine system, Mirena®, releases levonorgestrel directly into the uterine cavity. It is used as a contraceptive, for the treatment of primary menorrhagia and for the prevention of endometrial hyperplasia during oestrogen replacement therapy. This may therefore be a contraceptive method of choice for women who have excessively heavy menses.

The effects of the progestogen-only intra-uterine system are mainly local and hormonal including prevention of endometrial proliferation, thickening of cervical mucus, and suppression of ovulation in some women (in some cycles). In addition to the progestogenic activity, the intra-uterine system itself may contribute slightly to the contraceptive effect. Return of fertility after removal is rapid and appears to be complete.

Advantages of the progestogen-only intra-uterine system over copper intra-uterine devices are that there may be an improvement in any dysmenorrhea and a reduction in blood loss; there is also evidence that the frequency of pelvic inflammatory disease may be reduced (particularly in the youngest age groups who are most at risk).

In primary menorrhagia, menstrual bleeding is reduced significantly within 3–6 months of inserting the progestogen-only intra-uterine system, probably because it prevents endometrial proliferation. Another treatment should be considered if menorrhagia does not improve within this time (section 6.4.1.2).

**Cautions and contra-indications for the progestogen-only intra-uterine system**

Generally the cautions and contra-indications for the progestogen-only intra-uterine system are as for standard intra-uterine devices (section 7.3.4). Although the progestogen-only intra-uterine system produces little systemic progestogenic activity, it is usually avoided for 5 years after any evidence of breast cancer. However, the system can be considered for a woman in long-term remission from breast cancer who has menorrhagia and requires effective contraception. Since levonorgestrel is released close to the site of the main contraceptive action (on cervical mucus and endometrium) progestogenic side-effects and interactions are less likely; in particular, enzyme-inducing drugs are unlikely to significantly reduce the contraceptive effect of the progestogen-only intra-uterine system and additional contraceptive precautions are not required.
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

7.3.3 Spermicidal contraceptives

Spermicidal contraceptives are useful additional safeguards but do not give adequate protection if used alone unless fertility is already significantly diminished. They have two components: a spermicide and a vehicle which itself may have some inhibiting effect on sperm activity. They are suitable for use with barrier methods, such as diaphragms or caps; however, spermicidal contraceptives are not generally recommended for use with condoms, as there is no evidence of any additional protection compared with non-spermicidal lubricants. Spermicidal contraceptives are not suitable for use in those with or at high risk of sexually transmitted infections (including HIV); high frequency use of the spermicide nonoxinol '9' has been associated with genital lesions, which may increase the risk of acquiring these infections.

Products such as petroleum jelly (\textit{Vaseline®}), baby oil and oil-based vaginal and rectal preparations are likely to damage condoms and contraceptive diaphragms made from latex rubber, and may render them less effective as a barrier method of contraception and as a protection from sexually transmitted infections (including HIV).

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Gygel® (Marlborough)} \\
\textit{Gel}, nonoxinol '9' 2%, net price 30 g = £4.25 \\
\textbf{Excipients} include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol, sorbic acid \\
\textbf{Condoms} No evidence of harm to latex condoms and diaphragms \\
\textbf{Pregnancy} toxicity in animal studies \\
\textbf{Breast-feeding} present in milk in animal studies \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

7.3.4 Contraceptive devices

Intra-uterine devices

The intra-uterine device (IUD) is a suitable contraceptive for women of all ages irrespective of parity; however, it is less appropriate for those with an increased risk of pelvic inflammatory disease e.g. women under 25 years of age (see below). The most effective intra-uterine devices have at least 380 mm² of copper and have banded copper on the arms. Smaller devices have been introduced to minimise side-effects; these consist of a plastic carrier wound with copper wire or fitted with copper bands; some also have a central core of silver to prevent fragmentation of the copper.

A frameless, copper-bearing intra-uterine device (\textit{CyneFix®}) is also available. It consists of a knotted, polypropylene thread with 6 copper sleeves; the device is anchored in the uterus by inserting the knot into the uterine fundus. The intra-uterine devices \textit{Multiload® Cu250} and \textit{Multiload® Cu250 Short (Organon)} have been discontinued, but some women may have the devices in place until 2011.

The timing and technique of fitting an intra-uterine device are critical for its subsequent performance. The healthcare professional inserting (or removing) the device should be fully trained in the technique and

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Note} When system is removed (and not immediately replaced) and pregnancy is not desired, remove during first 7 days of menstruation, otherwise additional contraceptive measures required for at least 7 days before removal \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
should provide full counselling, backed, where available, by the patient information leaflet. Devices should not be fitted during the heavy days of the period; they are best fitted after the end of menstruation and before the calculated time of implantation. The main excess risk of infection occurs in the first 20 days after insertion and is believed to be related to existing carriage of a sexually transmitted infection. Women under 25 years at a higher risk of sexually transmitted infections, and pre-insertion screening (for chlamydia, and depending on sexual history and local prevalence of disease, Neisseria gonorrhoeae) should be performed. If results are unavailable at the time of fitting an intra-uterine device for emergency contraception, appropriate prophylactic antibacterial cover should be given. The woman should be advised to attend an emergency if she experiences sustained pain during the next 20 days.

An intra-uterine device should not be removed in mid-cycle unless an additional contraceptive was used for the previous 7 days. If removal is essential post-coital contraception should be considered.

If an intra-uterine device fails and the woman wishes to continue to full-term the device should be removed in the first trimester if possible.

### INTRA-UTERINE CONTRACEPTIVE DEVICES

**Cautions** see notes above; also anaemia, menorrhagia (progestogen intra-uterine system might be preferable, section 7.3.2.3), endometriosis, severe primary dysmenorrhoea, history of pelvic inflammatory disease, diabetes, fertility problems, nulliparity and young age, severely scarred uterus (including after endometrial resection) or severe cervical stenosis; drug- or disease-induced immunosuppression (risk of infection—avoid if marked immunosuppression); epilepsy (risk of seizure at time of insertion); increased risk of expulsion if inserted before uterine involution; gynaecological examination before insertion, 6–8 weeks after then annually but counsel women to see doctor promptly in case of significant symptoms, especially pain; anticoagulant therapy (avoid if possible).

**Contra-indications** severe anaemia, recent sexually transmitted infection (if not fully investigated and treated), unexplained uterine bleeding, distorted or small uterine cavity, genital malignancy, active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration), pelvic inflammatory disease, established or marked immunosuppression; **copper devices**: copper allergy, Wilson's disease, medical diathery

**Pregnancy** remove device; if pregnancy occurs, increased likelihood that it may be ectopic

**Breast-feeding** not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** uterine or cervical perforation, displacement, expulsion; pelvic infection may be exacerbated, menorrhagia, dysmenorrhoea, allergy; **on insertion**: pain (alleviated by NSAID such as ibuprofen 30 minutes before insertion) and bleeding, occasionally epileptic seizure and vasovagal attack

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

7.3.4 Contraceptive devices

**Cu-Safe® T300 (Williams)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 300 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, monofilament thread attached to base of vertical stem; preloaded in inserter, net price = £9.11

For uterine length over 5 cm, replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**Flexi-T 300® (Durbin)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 300 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, monofilament thread attached to base of vertical stem; preloaded in inserter, net price = £9.47

For uterine length over 5 cm, replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**Flexi-T® + 380 (Durbin)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier with copper sleeve on each arm, total surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, monofilament thread attached to base of vertical stem; preloaded in inserter, net price = £10.06

For uterine length over 6 cm, replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**GyneFix® (Williams)**

*Intra-uterine device*, 6 copper sleeves with surface area of 330 mm² on polypropylene thread, net price = £26.64

Suitable for all uterine sizes; replacement every 5 years

**Load® 375 (Durbin)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of U-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 375 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, monofilament thread attached to base of vertical stem; preloaded in inserter, net price = £8.52

For uterine length over 7 cm, replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**Mini TT 380® Slimline (Durbin)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier with copper sleeves fitted flush on to distal portion of each horizontal arm, total surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, thread attached to base of vertical stem, easy-loading system, no capsule, net price = £12.46

For minimum uterine length 5 cm; replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**Multiload® Cu375 (Organon)**

*Intra-uterine device*, as Load® 375, with copper surface area approx. 375 mm² and vertical stem length 3.5 cm, net price = £9.24

For uterine length 6–9 cm; replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**Multi-Safe® 375 (Williams)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of U-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 375 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, monofilament thread attached to base of vertical stem; preloaded in inserter, net price = £8.80

For uterine length 6–9 cm, replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**MultiSafe® 375 Short Stem (Williams)**

*Intra-uterine device*, copper wire, wound on vertical stem of U-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 375 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, monofilament thread attached to base of vertical stem; preloaded in inserter, net price = £8.80

For uterine length 5–7 cm, replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

**Type C Contraceptive Pessary**

**Type B Contraceptive Pessary**

**Other contraceptive devices**

- **Ultraflex**
  - Copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, threads attached to base of vertical stem, net price = £12.80
  - For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

- **Nova-T® 380 (Bayer Schering)**
  - Copper wire with silver core, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, threads attached to base of vertical stem, net price = £12.97
  - For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

- **T-Safe® 380A Quickload (Williams)**
  - Copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier with copper collar on the distal portion of each arm, total surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, threads attached to base of vertical stem, net price = £10.29
  - For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 10 years (see also notes above)

- **TT 380® Slimline (Durbin)**
  - Copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, with copper sleeves fitted flush on to distal portion of each horizontal arm, total surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, thread attached to base of vertical stem; easy-loading system, no capsule, net price = £10.46
  - For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 10 years (see also notes above)

- **UT 380 Short® (Durbin)**
  - Copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, thread attached to base of vertical stem, net price = £11.22
  - For uterine length 5–7 cm; replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

- **UT 380 Standard® (Durbin)**
  - Copper wire, wound on vertical stem of T-shaped plastic carrier, surface area approx. 380 mm², impregnated with barium sulphate for radio-opacity, thread attached to base of vertical stem, net price = £11.22
  - For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years (see also notes above)

**Other contraceptive devices**

- **Rubber contraceptive caps**
  - **Type A Contraceptive Pessary**
    - Opaque rubber, sizes 1 (50 mm), 2 (55 mm), 3 (60 mm), 4 (65 mm), 5 (75 mm), net price = £6.85
  - **Type B Contraceptive Pessary**
    - Opaque rubber, sizes 22 to 31 mm (rising in steps of 3 mm), net price = £8.46
  - **Type C Contraceptive Pessary**
    - Opaque rubber, sizes 1 to 3 (42, 48, and 54 mm), net price = £7.26

- **Silicone contraceptive caps**

**Silicone Contraceptive Pessary**

- Silicone, sizes 22, 26, and 30 mm, net price = £15.00
  - Brands include FemCap©, Milex Arcing Style®, Ortho All-Flex®

**Hormonal methods**

Hormonal emergency contraceptives include levonorgestrel and ulipristal, either drug should be taken as soon as possible after unprotected intercourse to increase efficacy.

Levonorgestrel is effective if taken within 72 hours (3 days) of unprotected intercourse and may also be used between 72 and 120 hours after unprotected intercourse [unlicensed use], but efficacy decreases with time. Ulipristal, a progesterone receptor modulator, is effective if taken within 120 hours (5 days) of unprotected intercourse.

Levonorgestrel is less effective than insertion of an intra-uterine device (see below). Ulipristal is as effective as levonorgestrel but it’s efficacy compared to an intra-uterine device is not yet known.

If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking levonorgestrel or within 3 hours of taking ulipristal, a replacement dose should be given. If an anti-emetic is required domperidone is preferred.

When prescribing hormonal emergency contraception the doctor should explain:

- that the next period may be early or late;
- that a barrier method of contraception needs to be used until the next period;
- the need to return promptly if any lower abdominal pain occurs because this could signify an ectopic pregnancy (and also in 3 to 4 weeks if the subsequent menstrual bleed is abnormally light, heavy or brief, or is absent, or if she is otherwise concerned).

**Interactions** The effectiveness of levonorgestrel, and possibly ulipristal is reduced in women taking enzyme-inducing drugs (and possibly for 4 weeks after stopping); a copper intra-uterine device can be offered instead or the dose of levonorgestrel should be increased to a total of 3 mg taken as a single dose [unlicensed dose—advise
women accordingly). There is no need to increase the dose for emergency contraception if the patient is taking antibiotics that are not enzyme inducers.

**LEVONORGESTREL**

**Cautions** see notes above; past ectopic pregnancy; severe malabsorption syndromes; active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice; **interactions:** see notes above and Appendix 1 (progestogens)

**Contra-indications** acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Breast-feeding** progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation

**Side-effects** menstrual irregularities (see also notes above), nausea, low abdominal pain, fatigue, headache, dizziness, breast tenderness, vomiting

**Licensed use** consult product literature

**Indication and dose**

**Emergency contraception**

- **By mouth**
  - 1.5 mg as a single dose as soon as possible after coitus (preferably within 12 hours but no later than after 72 hours)

1. **Levonelle® One Step** (Bayer Schering)
   - Tablets, levonorgestrel 1.5 mg, net price 1-tab pack = £13.83

1. Can be sold to women over 16 years; when supplying emergency contraception to the public, pharmacists should refer to guidance issued by the Royal Pharmaceutical Society

**Levonelle® 1500** (Bayer Schering)
   - Tablets, levonorgestrel 1.5 mg, net price 1-tab pack = £5.20

**ULIPRISTAL ACETATE**

**Cautions** see notes above; uncontrolled severe asthma; effectiveness of combined hormonal and progestogen-only contraceptives may be reduced—additional precautions (barrier methods) required; repeated use within a menstrual cycle; **interactions:** see notes above and Appendix 1 (ulipristal)

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment—no information available

**Pregnancy** limited information available

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid for at least 36 hours—no information available

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances (including nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, and abdominal pain); dizziness, fatigue, headache; menstrual irregularities (see notes above); back pain, muscle spasm; less commonly tremor, hot flushes, uterine spasm, breast tenderness, dry mouth, blurred vision, pruritus, and rash

**Indication and dose**

**Emergency contraception**

- **By mouth**
  - 30 mg as a single dose as soon as possible after coitus, but no later than after 120 hours

1. **ellaOne®** (HRA Pharma)

   - Tablets, ulipristal acetate 30 mg, net price 1-tab pack = £16.95

**Intra-uterine device**

Insertion of an intra-uterine device is more effective than oral levonorgestrel for emergency contraception, see also notes above. A copper intra-uterine contraceptive device (section 7.3.4) can be inserted up to 120 hours (5 days) after unprotected intercourse; sexually transmitted infections should be tested for and insertion of the device should usually be covered by antibacterial prophylaxis (e.g. azithromycin 1 g as a single dose). If intercourse has occurred more than 5 days previously, the device can still be inserted up to 5 days after the earliest likely calculated ovulation (i.e. within the minimum period before implantation), regardless of the number of episodes of unprotected intercourse earlier in the cycle.

**7.4 Drugs for genito-urinary disorders**

**7.4.1 Drugs for urinary retention**

**Acute retention** is painful and is treated by catheterisation.

**Chronic retention** is painless and often long-standing. Clean intermittent catheterisation may be considered. After the cause has been established and treated, drugs may be required to increase detrusor muscle tone.

**Alpha-blockers** such as doxazosin and tamsulosin can be used in some cases of dysfunctional voiding.

**DOXAZOSIN**

**Cautions** see under Doxazosin (section 2.5.4)

**Contra-indications** see under Doxazosin (section 2.5.4)

**Hepatic impairment** see under Doxazosin (section 2.5.4)

**Pregnancy** see under Doxazosin (section 2.5.4)
Breast-feeding see under Doxazosin (section 2.5.4)
Side-effects see under Doxazosin (section 2.5.4)
Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Dysfunctional voiding** (see notes above)

- By mouth
  - Child 4–12 years initially 0.5 mg daily increased at monthly intervals according to response; maximum 2 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years initially 1 mg daily; dose may be doubled at intervals of 1 month according to response; usual maintenance 2–4 mg daily; max. 8 mg daily

**Hypertension** section 2.5.4

### OXYBUTYNYL HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** care with initial dose (postural hypotension); cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome); **interactions**: Appendix 1 (alpha-blockers)

**Driving** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving

**Contra-indications** history of postural hypotension

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m^2

**Side-effects** dizziness, headache, asthenia; abnormal ejaculation; less commonly nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhoea, palpitation, postural hypotension, syncope, rhinitis, rash, pruritus, and urticaria; very rarely angioedema and priapism; also drowsiness, blurred vision, dry mouth, and oedema; also reported intra-operative floppy iris syndrome

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Dysfunctional voiding** (see notes above)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 400 micrograms once daily

Tamsulosin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary) (w)

- Capsules, m/r, tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 micrograms, net price 30-cap pack = £4.62. Label: 25, counselling, driving
- **Brands include** Bazetam® MR, Contifo® XL, Diffindox® XL, Pincos® FR, Stronax® MR, Tabhyphen® MR

Flomaxtra® XL (Actellas) (w)

- Tablets, m/r, tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 micrograms, net price 30-tab pack = £10.47. Label: 25, counselling, driving

### TAMSULOSIN HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** care with initial dose (postural hypotension); cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome); **interactions**: Appendix 1 (alpha-blockers)

**Driving** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving

**Contra-indications** history of postural hypotension

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m^2

**Side-effects** dizziness, headache, asthenia; abnormal ejaculation; less commonly nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhoea, palpitation, postural hypotension, syncope, rhinitis, rash, pruritus, and urticaria; very rarely angioedema and priapism; also drowsiness, blurred vision, dry mouth, and oedema; also reported intra-operative floppy iris syndrome

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Dysfunctional voiding** (see notes above)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 400 micrograms once daily

**Side-effects** dizziness, headache, asthenia; abnormal ejaculation; less commonly nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhoea, palpitation, postural hypotension, syncope, rhinitis, rash, pruritus, and urticaria; very rarely angioedema and priapism; also drowsiness, blurred vision, dry mouth, and oedema; also reported intra-operative floppy iris syndrome

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Dysfunctional voiding** (see notes above)

- By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 400 micrograms once daily

Tamsulosin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary) (w)

- Capsules, m/r, tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 micrograms, net price 30-cap pack = £4.62. Label: 25, counselling, driving
- **Brands include** Bazetam® MR, Contifo® XL, Diffindox® XL, Pincos® FR, Stronax® MR, Tabhyphen® MR

Flomaxtra® XL (Actellas) (w)

- Tablets, m/r, tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 micrograms, net price 30-tab pack = £10.47. Label: 25, counselling, driving

### OXYBUTYNYL HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** see notes above; acute porphyria (section 9.6.2)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies

**Side-effects** see notes above; also dizziness; less commonly anorexia, facial flushing; rarely night terrors

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 5 years; intravesical instillation not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Urinary frequency, enuresis, and incontinence**

**Urinary incontinence**

- Antimuscarinic drugs reduce symptoms of urgency and urge incontinence and increase bladder capacity; oxybutynin also has a direct relaxant effect on urinary smooth muscle. Oxybutynin can be considered first for children under 12 years. Side-effects limit the use of oxybutynin, but they may be reduced by starting at a lower dose and then slowly titrating upwards; alternatively oxybutynin can be given by intravesical instillation. Tolterodine is also effective for urinary incontinence; it can be considered for children over 12 years, or for younger children who have failed to respond to oxybutynin. Modified-release preparations of oxybutynin and tolterodine are available; they may have fewer side-effects. Antimuscarinic treatment should be reviewed soon after it is commenced, and then at regular intervals; a response generally occurs within 6 months but occasionally may take longer. Children with nocturnal enuresis may require specific additional measures if night-time symptoms also need to be controlled (see p. 411).

**Cautions** Antimuscarinic drugs should be used with caution in autonomic neuropathy and in children susceptible to angle-closure glaucoma. Antimuscarinics can worsen hyperthyroidism, congestive heart failure, arrhythmias, and tachycardia. For **interactions**, see Appendix 1 (antimuscarinics).

**Contra-indications** Antimuscarinic drugs should be avoided in myasthenia gravis, significant bladder outflow obstruction or urinary retention, severe ulcerative colitis, toxic megacolon, and in gastro-intestinal obstruction or intestinal atony.

**Side-effects** Side-effects of antimuscarinic drugs include dry mouth, gastrointestinal disturbances including constipation, blurred vision, dry eyes, drowsiness, difficulty in micturition (less common urinary retention), palpitation, and skin reactions (including dry skin, rash, and photosensitivity); also headache, diarrhoea, angioedema, arrhythmias, and tachycardia. Central nervous system stimulation, such as restlessness, disorientation, hallucination, and convulsions may occur. Antimuscarinic drugs may reduce sweating leading to heat sensations and fainting in hot environments or in patients with fever, and very rarely may precipitate angle-closure glaucoma.
Oxybutynin Hydrochloride (Non-proprietary) *(A)* Tablets, oxybutynin hydrochloride 2.5 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £6.58; 3 mg, 56-tab pack = £9.15; 5 mg, 56-tab pack = £5.53, 84-tab pack = £12.50. Label: 3

Intravesical instillation, oxybutynin (as hydrochloride) 5 mg/30 mL. Available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 819

Cystrin® *(Winthrop)* *(A)* Tablets, oxybutynin hydrochloride 5 mg (scored), net price 84-tab pack = £21.99. Label: 3

 Ditropan® *(Sanofi-Aventis)* *(A)* Tablets, both blue, scored, oxybutynin hydrochloride 2.5 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £6.59; 5 mg, 84-tab pack = £12.82. Label: 3

Modified release

Lyrinel® XL *(Janssen)* *(A)* Tablets, m/r, oxybutynin hydrochloride 5 mg (yellow), net price 30-tab pack = £10.81; 10 mg (pink), 30-tab pack = £21.62. Label: 3, 25

Dose Neurogenic bladder instability

- By mouth
  - Child 6–18 years initially 5 mg once daily adjusted according to response in steps of 5 mg at weekly intervals, max. 15 mg once daily

Note: Children taking immediate-release oxybutynin may be transferred to the nearest equivalent daily dose of Lyrinel® XL

BNFC 2011–2012 7.4.2 Drugs for urinary frequency, enuresis, and incontinence 411

Nocturnal enuresis associated with overactive bladder

- By mouth
  - Child 5–18 years 2.5–3 mg twice daily increased to 5 mg 2–3 times daily (last dose before bedtime)

Detrusitol® *(Pharmacia)* *(A)* Tablets, f/c, tolterodine tartrate 1 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £29.03; 2 mg, 56-tab pack = £30.56

Modified release

Detrusitol® XL *(Pharmacia)* *(A)* Capsules, blue, m/r, tolterodine tartrate 4 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £25.78. Label: 25

Note: Children stabilised on immediate-release tolterodine 2 mg twice daily may be transferred to Detrusitol® XL 4 mg once daily

Nocturnal enuresis

Nocturnal enuresis is common in young children, but persists in a small proportion by 10 years of age. For children under 5 years, reassurance and advice on the management of nocturnal enuresis can be useful for some families. Treatment may be considered in children over 5 years depending on their maturity and motivation, the frequency of nocturnal enuresis, and the needs of the child and their family.

Initially, advice should be given on fluid intake, diet, toileting behaviour, and reward systems; for children who do not respond to this advice, further treatment may be necessary. An enuresis alarm should be first-line treatment for motivated, well-supported children; alarms have a lower relapse rate than drug treatment when discontinued. Treatment should be reviewed after 4 weeks, and, if there are early signs of response, continued until a minimum of 2 weeks’ uninterrupted dry nights have been achieved. If complete dryness is not achieved after 3 months, only continue if the condition is still improving and the child remains motivated to use the alarm. If initial alarm treatment is unsuccessful, consider combination treatment with desmopressin (see below), or desmopressin alone if the alarm is no longer appropriate or desirable.

Desmopressin *(section 6.5.2)*, an analogue of vasopressin, is given by oral or by sublingual administration; it should not be given intranasally for nocturnal enuresis due to an increased incidence of side-effects. Desmopressin alone can be offered to children over 5 years of age if an alarm is inappropriate or undesirable, or when rapid or short-term results are the priority (for example to cover periods away from home); desmopressin alone can also be used if there has been a partial response to a combination of desmopressin and an alarm following initial treatment with an alarm. Treatment should be assessed after 4 weeks and continued for 3 months if there are signs of response. Desmopressin should be withdrawn at regular intervals (for 1 week every 3 months) for full reassessment. Particular care is needed to avoid fluid overload by restricting fluid intake from

TOLTERODINE TARTRATE

Caution see notes above, history of QT-interval prolongation, concomitant use with other drugs known to prolong QT interval

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment reduce dose; avoid Detrusitol® XL

Renal impairment reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid Detrusitol® XL if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects see notes above; also chest pain, peripheral oedema; sinusitis, bronchitis; paraesthesia, fatigue, vertigo, weight gain; flushing also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children
7 Obstetrics, gynaecology, and urinary-tract disorders

When stopping treatment with desmopressin, gradual withdrawal should be considered.

Nocturnal enuresis associated with daytime symptoms (overactive bladder) can be managed with antimuscarinic drugs (see Urinary incontinence, p. 410) in combination with desmopressin. Treatment should be prescribed only after specialist assessment and should be continued for 3 months; the course can be repeated if necessary.

The tricyclic antidepressant imipramine (section 4.3.1) may be considered for children who have not responded to all other treatments and have undergone specialist assessment, however, behavioural disturbances can occur and relapse is common after withdrawal. Treatment should not normally exceed 3 months unless a reassessment, however, is made and the child is fully reassessed; toxicity following overdosage with tricyclics is of particular concern.

7.4.3 Drugs used in urological pain

Lidocaine gel is a useful topical application in urethral pain or to relieve the discomfort of catheterisation (section 15.2).

Alkalisation of urine

Alkalisation of urine can be undertaken with potassium citrate. The alkalinising action may relieve the discomfort of cystitis caused by lower urinary tract infections.

### POTASSIUM CITRATE

**Cautions** cardiac disease; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (potassium salts)

**Renal impairment** close monitoring required—high risk of hyperkalaemia; avoid in severe impairment

**Side-effects** hyperkalaemia on prolonged high dosage, mild diuresis

**Indication and dose**

Relief of discomfort in mild urinary-tract infections, alkalinisation of urine for dose see preparations below

### Potassium Citrate Mixture BP

**Oral solution**, potassium citrate 30%, citric acid monohydrate 5% in a suitable vehicle with a lemon flavour. Extemporaneous preparations should be recently prepared according to the following formula: potassium citrate 3 g, citric acid monohydrate 500 mg, syrup 2.5 mL, quillaia tincture 0.1 mL, lemon spirit 0.05 mL, double-strength chloroform water 3 mL, water to 10 mL. Contains about 28 mmol K+/10 mL. Label: 27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
<th><em>By mouth</em></th>
<th>Child 1–6 years 5 mL 3 times daily well diluted with water</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Note Proprietary brands of potassium citrate are on sale to the public for the relief of discomfort in mild urinary-tract infections

### 7.4.4 Bladder instillations and urological surgery

#### Bladder infection

Various solutions are available as irrigations or washouts.

Aqueous chlorhexidine (section 13.11.2) can be used in the management of common infections of the bladder but it is ineffective against most *Pseudomonas* spp. Solutions containing chlorhexidine 1 in 5000 (0.02%) are used, but they may irritate the mucosa and cause burning and haematuria (in which case they should be discontinued); sterile sodium chloride solution 0.9% (physiological saline) is usually adequate and is preferred as a mechanical irritant.

#### Dissolution of blood clots

Clot retention is usually treated by irrigation with sterile sodium chloride solution 0.9% but sterile sodium citrate solution for bladder irrigation 3% may also be helpful.

#### Maintenance of indwelling urinary catheters

The deposition which occurs in catheterised patients is usually chiefly composed of phosphate and to minimise this the catheter (if latex) should be changed at least as often as every 6 weeks. If the catheter is to be left for longer periods a silicone catheter should be used together with the appropriate use of catheter maintenance solutions. Repeated blockage usually indicates that the catheter needs to be changed.

### CATHETER PATENCY SOLUTIONS

#### Chlorhexidine 0.02%

Brands include Uro-Tainer Chlorhexidine®, 100-mL sachet = £2.60

#### Sodium chloride 0.9%

Brands include OptiFlo 5%, 50- and 100-mL sachets = £3.20; Uriflex S®, 100-mL sachet = £2.40; Uriflex SP®, with integral drug additive port, 100-mL sachet = £2.40; Uro-Tainer Sodium Chloride®, 50- and 100-mL sachets = £3.25; Uro-Tainer M®, with integral drug additive port, 50- and 100-mL sachets = £2.90

#### Solution G

Citic acid 3.23%, magnesium oxide 0.38%, sodium bicarbonate 0.7%, disodium edetate 0.01%. Brands include OptiFlo C®, 50- and 100-mL sachets = £3.40; Uriflex G®, 100-mL sachet = £2.40; Uro-Tainer® Twin Suby G, 2 × 30-mL = £4.46

#### Solution R

Citic acid 6%, gluconolactone 0.6%, magnesium carbonate 2.8%, disodium edetate 0.01%. Brands include OptiFlo R®, 50- and 100-mL sachets = £3.40; Uriflex R®, 100-mL sachet = £2.40; Uro-Tainer® Twin Soluto R, 2 × 30-mL = £4.46
This section is not included in *BNF for Children*. Adolescents presenting with erectile dysfunction should be referred to a specialist.
The management of childhood cancer is complex and is generally confined to specialist regional centres and some associated shared-care units. Cytotoxic drugs have both anti-cancer activity and the potential for damage to normal tissue. In children, chemotherapy is almost always started with curative intent, but may be continued as palliation if the disease is refractory.

Chemotherapy with a combination of two or more cytotoxic drugs aims to reduce the development of resistance and to improve cytotoxic effect. Treatment protocols generally incorporate a series of treatment courses at defined intervals with clear criteria for starting each course, such as adequate bone-marrow recovery and renal or cardiac function. The principal component of treatment for leukaemias in children is cytotoxic therapy, whereas solid tumours may be managed with surgery or radiotherapy in addition to chemotherapy.

Guidelines for handling cytotoxic drugs

- Trained personnel should reconstitute cytotoxics;
- Reconstitution should be carried out in designated pharmacy areas;
- Protective clothing (including gloves, gowns, and masks) should be worn;
- The eyes should be protected and means of first aid should be specified;
- Pregnant staff should avoid exposure to cytotoxic drugs (all females of child-bearing age should be informed of the reproductive hazard);
- Use local procedures for dealing with spillages and safe disposal of waste material, including syringes, containers, and absorbent material;
- Staff exposure to cytotoxic drugs should be monitored.

Only medical or nursing staff who have received appropriate training should administer parenteral cytotoxics. In most instances central venous access will be required for the intravenous administration of parenteral cytotoxics. Care is required to avoid the risk of extravasation (see Side-effects of Cytotoxic Drugs and their Management).
Oral cytotoxic medicines should be dispensed with.

Injectable cytotoxic drugs should only be dispensed.

Cytotoxic drugs should be prescribed, dispensed.

Cytotoxic drugs for the treatment of cancer should

Safe system requirements for cytotoxic medicines:
- Cytotoxic drugs for the treatment of cancer should be given as part of a wider pathway of care that is co-ordinated by a multi-disciplinary team;
- Cytotoxic drugs should be prescribed, dispensed and administered only in the context of a written protocol or treatment plan;
- Injectable cytotoxic drugs should only be dispensed if they are prepared for administration;
- Oral cytotoxic medicines should be dispensed with clear directions for use.

Risks of incorrect dosing of oral anti-cancer medicines
The National Patient Safety Agency has advised (January 2008) that the prescribing and use of oral cytotoxic medicines should be carried out to the same standard as parenteral cytotoxic therapy. Standards to be followed to achieve this include:
- non-specialists who prescribe or administer oral cytotoxic medication should have access to written protocols and treatment plans, including guidance on the monitoring and treatment of toxicity;
- staff dispensing oral cytotoxic medicines should confirm that the prescribed dose is appropriate for the patient. Patients and their carers should have written information that includes details of the intended oral anti-cancer regimen, the treatment plan, and arrangements for monitoring, taken from the original protocol from the initiating hospital. Staff dispensing oral cytotoxic medicines should also have access to this information, and to advice from an experienced cancer pharmacist in the initiating hospital;

Doses
Doses of cytotoxic drugs are determined using a variety of different methods including age, body-surface area, or body-weight. Alternatively, doses may be fixed. Doses may be further adjusted following consideration of a patient’s neutrophil count, renal and hepatic function, and history of previous adverse effects to the cytotoxic drug. Doses may also differ depending on whether a drug is used alone or in combination. Because of the complexity of dosage regimens in the treatment of malignant disease, dose statements have been omitted from many of the drug entries in this chapter.

Side-effects of cytotoxic drugs and their management
Side-effects common to most cytotoxic drugs are discussed below whilst side-effects characteristic of a particular drug or class of drugs (e.g. neurotoxicity with vinca alkaloids) are mentioned in the appropriate sections. Manufacturers’ product literature, hospital-trust protocols, and treatment protocols should be consulted for full details of side-effects of individual drugs.

Side-effects of cytotoxic drugs often do not occur at the time of administration, but days or weeks later. It is therefore important that children, their carers, and healthcare professionals can identify symptoms that cause concern and can contact an expert for advice. Toxicities should be accurately recorded using a recognised scoring system such as the Common Toxicity Criteria for Adverse Events (CTCAE) developed by the National Cancer institute.

Extravasation of intravenous drugs A number of cytotoxic drugs will cause severe local tissue irritation and necrosis if leakage into the extravascular compartment occurs. For information on the prevention and management of extravasation injury, see section 10.3.

Gastro-intestinal effects Management of gastro-intestinal effects of cytotoxic drugs includes the use of antacids, H₂-receptor antagonists, and proton pump inhibitors to protect the gastric mucosa, laxatives to treat constipation, and enteral and parenteral nutritional support.

Oral mucositis Good oral hygiene keeps the mouth clean and moist and helps to prevent mucositis; prevention is more effective than treatment of the complication. Good oral hygiene measures for children over 6 months include brushing teeth with a soft small brush with fluoride toothpaste 2–3 times daily, and rinsing the mouth frequently. Daily fluoride supplements (section 9.5.3) can be used on the advice of the child’s dental team. For children under 6 months or when it is not possible to brush teeth, carers should be instructed how to clean the mouth using an oral sponge moistened with water or with an antimicrobial solution such as diluted chlorhexidine. Mucositis related to chemotherapy can be extremely painful and may, in some circumstances, require opioid analgesia (section 4.7.2). Secondary infection with candida is frequent; treatment with a systemically absorbed antifungal, such as fluconazole (section 5.2), is effective.

Nausea and vomiting Nausea and vomiting cause considerable distress to many children who receive chemotherapy, and to a lesser extent abdominal radiotherapy, and may lead to refusal of further treatment; prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting is therefore extremely important. Symptoms may be acute (occurring within 24 hours of treatment), delayed (first occurring more than 24 hours after treatment), or anticipatory (occurring prior to subsequent doses). Delayed and anticipatory symptoms are more difficult to control than acute symptoms and require different management.

Susceptibility to nausea and vomiting may increase with repeated exposure to the cytotoxic drug. Drugs may be divided according to their emetogenic potential and some examples are given below, but the
Malignant disease and immunosuppression

8 Malignant disease and immunosuppression

symptoms vary according to the dose, to other drugs administered, and to the individual’s susceptibility to emetogenic stimuli.

Mildly emetogenic treatment—fluorouracil, etoposide, low doses of methotrexate, the vinca alkaloids, and abdominal radiotherapy.

Moderately emetogenic treatment—carboplatin, doxorubicin, intermediate and low doses of cyclophosphamide, mitoxantrone, and high doses of methotrexate.

Highly emetogenic treatment—cisplatin, dactinavir, and high doses of alkylating drugs.

Anti-emetic drugs, when given regularly, help prevent or ameliorate emesis associated with chemotherapy in children.

Prevention of acute symptoms For patients at low risk of emesis, pretreatment with metoclopramide (or less commonly domperidone) continued for up to 24 hours after chemotherapy, is often effective (section 4.6); a 5HT3-receptor antagonist (section 4.6) may also be of benefit.

For patients at high risk of emesis or when other treatment is inadequate, a SHT3-receptor antagonist (section 4.6) is often highly effective. The addition of dexamethasone and other anti-emetics may also be required.

Prevention of delayed symptoms Dexamethasone, given by mouth, is the drug of choice for preventing delayed symptoms; it is used alone or with metoclopramide. The SHT3-receptor antagonists may have a role in preventing uncontrolled symptoms.

Prevention of anticipatory symptoms Good symptom control is the best way to prevent anticipatory symptoms. Lorazepam can be helpful for its amnesiac, sedative, and anxiolytic effects.

Bone-marrow suppression All cytotoxic drugs except vincristine and bleomycin cause bone-marrow depression. This commonly occurs 7 to 10 days after administration, but is delayed for certain drugs, such as melphalan. Peripheral blood counts must be checked before each treatment. The duration and severity of neutropenia can be reduced by the use of granulocyte-colony stimulating factors (section 9.1.6); their use should be reserved for children who have previously experienced severe neutropenia.

Infection in a child with neutropenia requires immediate broad-spectrum antibacterial treatment that covers all likely pathogens (Table 1, section 5.1). Appropriate bacteriological investigations should be conducted as soon as possible. All children should be investigated and treated under the supervision of an appropriate oncologist or haematology specialist. Antifungal treatment (section 5.2) may be required in a child with prolonged neutropenia or fever lasting longer than 4–5 days. Chickenpox and measles can be particularly hazardous in immunocompromised children. Varicella–zoster immunoglobulin (section 14.5.2) is indicated if the child does not have immunity against varicella and has had close contact with infectious chickenpox or herpes zoster. Antiviral prophylaxis (section 5.3.2.1) can be considered in addition to varicella–zoster immunoglobulin or as an alternative if varicella–zoster immunoglobulin is inappropriate. If an immunocompromised child has come into close contact with an infectious individual with measles, normal immunoglobulin (section 14.5.1) should be given.

For advice on the use of live vaccines in individuals with impaired immune response, see section 14.1.

Alopecia Reversible hair loss is a common complication, although it varies in degree between drugs and individual patients.

Pregnancy and reproductive function Most cytotoxic drugs are teratogenic and should not be administered during pregnancy, especially during the first trimester. Considerable caution is necessary if a pregnant woman presents with cancer requiring chemotherapy, and specialist advice should always be sought.

Contraceptive advice should be given to men and women before cytotoxic therapy begins (and should cover the duration of contraception required after therapy has ended).

Regimens that do not contain an alkylating drug may have less effect on fertility, but those with an alkylating drug carry the risk of causing permanent male sterility (there is no effect on potency). Pretreatment counselling and consideration of sperm storage may be appropriate. Women are less severely affected, though the span of reproductive life may be shortened by the onset of a premature menopause. No increase in fetal abnormalities or abortion rate has been recorded in patients who remain fertile after cytotoxic chemotherapy.

Long-term and delayed toxicity Cytotoxic drugs may produce specific organ-related toxicity in children (e.g. cardiotoxicity with doxorubicin or nephrotoxicity with cisplatin and ifosfamide). Manifestations of such toxicity may not appear for several months or even years after cancer treatment. Careful follow-up of survivors of childhood cancer is therefore vital; national and local guidelines have been developed to facilitate this.

Thromboembolism Venous thromboembolism can be a complication of cancer itself, but chemotherapy increases the risk.

Tumour lysis syndrome Tumour lysis syndrome occurs secondary to spontaneous or treatment related rapid destruction of malignant cells. Patients at risk of tumour lysis syndrome include those with non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma (especially if high grade and bulky disease), Burkitt’s lymphoma, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and acute myeloid leukaemia (particularly if high white blood cell counts or bulky disease), and occasionally those with solid tumours. Pre-existing hyperuricaemia, dehydration and renal impairment are also predisposing factors. Features, include hyperkalaemia, hyperuricaemia, and hyperphosphataemia with hypercalcaemia; renal damage and arrhythmias can follow. Early recognition of patients at risk, and initiation of prophylaxis or therapy for tumour lysis syndrome, is essential.

Drugs for cytotoxic-induced side-effects

Anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity The anthracycline cytotoxic drugs are associated with dose-related, cumulative, and potentially life-threatening cardiotoxic side-effects.
Dexrazoxane, an iron chelator, is licensed in adults for the prevention of chronic cumulative cardiotoxicity caused by doxorubicin or epirubicin treatment in advanced or metastatic cancer patients who have previously received anthracycline therapy. In practice, dexrazoxane is used for any patient receiving anthracycline therapy with evidence of subclinical cardiotoxicity thought to be secondary to anthracycline therapy, or for those children at risk of anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity. Children receiving dexrazoxane should continue to be monitored for cardiac toxicity. The myelo-suppressive effects of dexrazoxane may be additive to those of chemotherapy.

DEXRAZOXANE

Cautions see notes above; monitor full blood count

Hepatic impairment monitor liver function

Renal impairment use with caution—risk of accumulation; manufacturer of Cardioxane® advises reduce dose by 50% if creatinine clearance less than 40 mL/minute/1.73 m²

Pregnancy avoid unless essential (toxicity in animal studies); ensure effective contraception during and for 3 months after treatment in men and women

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, stomatitis, dry mouth, anorexia; dyspnoea; dizziness, syncope, asthenia, paraesthesia, tremor, fatigue, drowsiness; pyrexia; vaginal haemorrhage; myalgia; blood disorders (including anaemia, leucopenia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia); alopecia, pruritus; peripheral oedema, injection-site reactions including phlebitis; also reported secondary malignancies

Indication and dose Prevention of anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (see notes above)

- By intravenous infusion, 30 minutes prior to anthracycline administration

10–20 times the doxorubicin-equivalent dose (depending on treatment protocol) or 10 times the epirubicin-equivalent dose

Administration for intravenous infusion reconstitute each vial with 25 mL Water for Injections then dilute contents of each vial with 25–100 mL Compound Sodium Lactate; give over 15 minutes

Cardioxane® (Novartis) intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, dexrazoxane (as hydrochloride), net price 500-mg vial = £156.57

Hyperuricaemia

Hyperuricaemia, which may be present in high-grade lymphoma and leukaemia, can be markedly worsened by chemotherapy and is associated with acute renal failure. Allopurinol is used routinely in children at low to moderate risk of hyperuricaemia. It should be started 24 hours before treatment; patients should be adequately hydrated (consideration should be given to omitting phosphate and potassium from hydration fluids). The dose of mercaptopurine or azathioprine should be reduced if allopurinol is given concomitantly (see Appendix 1).

Rasburicase is a recombinant urate oxidase used in children who are at high-risk of developing hyperuricaemia. It rapidly reduces plasma uric acid and may be of particular value in preventing complications following treatment of leukaemias or bulky lymphomas.

ALLOPURINOL

Cautions ensure adequate fluid intake; for hyperuricaemia associated with cancer therapy, allopurinol treatment should be started before cancer therapy; interactions: Appendix 1 (allopurinol)

Hepatic impairment reduce dose, monitor hepatic function

Renal impairment manufacturer advises reduce dose or increase dose interval in severe impairment; adjust dose to maintain plasma-oxipurinol concentration below 100 micromol/litre

Pregnancy toxicity not reported; manufacturer advises use only if no safer alternative and disease carries risk for mother or child

Breast-feeding present in milk—not known to be harmful

Side-effects rashes (withdraw therapy; if rash mild re-introduce cautiously but discontinue immediately if recurrence—hypersensitivity reactions occur rarely and include exfoliation, fever, lymphadenopathy, arthralgia, and eosinophilia resembling Stevens-Johnson or toxic epidermal necrolysis, vasculitis, hepatitis, renal impairment, and very rarely seizures); gastro-intestinal disorders; rarely malaise, headache, vertigo, drowsiness, visual and taste disturbances, hypertension, alopecia, hepatotoxicity, paraesthesia and neuropathy, blood disorders (including leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anaemia and aplastic anaemia)

Indication and dose Prophylaxis of hyperuricaemia associated with cancer chemotherapy, prophylaxis of hyperuricaemic nephropathy, enzyme disorders causing increased serum urate e.g. Lesch-Nyhan syndrome

- By mouth

Child 1 month–15 years 10–20 mg/kg daily (max. 400 mg daily), preferably after food

Child 15–18 years initially 100 mg daily, increased according to response; max. 900 mg daily (doses over 300 mg daily given in divided doses); preferably after food

Allopurinol (Non-proprietary) Tablets, allopurinol 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £1.18; 300 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.32. Label: 8, 21, 27. Brands include Caplenal®, Cosuric®, Rimapurin®

Zyloprim® (Aspen) Tablets, allopurinol 100 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £10.19; 300 mg, 28-tab pack = £7.31. Label: 8, 21, 27. Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

RASBURICASE

Cautions monitor closely for hypersensitivity; atopic allergies; may interfere with test for uric acid—consult product literature

Contra-indications G6PD deficiency (section 9.1.5)
Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid—no information available
Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available
Side-effects fever; nausea, vomiting; less frequently diarrhoea, headache, hypersensitivity reactions (including rash, bronchospasm and anaphylaxis); haemolytic anaemia, methaemoglobinemia
Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose
Prophylaxis and treatment of acute hyperuricaemia with initial chemotherapy for haematologic malignancy
• By intravenous infusion
Consult local treatment protocol for details

Fasturtec® (Sanofi-Aventis) (™)
Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, rasburicase, net price 1.5-mg vial (with solvent) = £57.88; 7.5-mg vial (with solvent) = £241.20

Methotrexate-induced mucositis and myelosuppression
Folinic acid (given as calcium folinate) is used to counteract the folate-antagonist action of methotrexate and thus speed recovery from methotrexate-induced mucositis or myelosuppression (‘folic acid rescue’).
The calcium salt of levofolinic acid, a single isomer of folic acid, is also used following methotrexate administration. The dose of calcium levofolinate is generally half that of calcium folinate.
The disodium salts of folic acid and levofolinic acid are also used for rescue therapy following methotrexate administration.
The efficacy of high dose methotrexate is enhanced by delaying initiation of folic acid for at least 24 hours, local protocols define the correct time. Folinic acid is normally continued until the plasma-methotrexate concentration falls to 45–90 nanograms/mL (100–200 nanomol/litre).
In the treatment of methotrexate overdose, folinate should be administered immediately; other measures to enhance the elimination of methotrexate are also necessary.

FOLINIC ACID
Cautions avoid simultaneous administration of methotrexate; not indicated for pernicious anaemia or other megaloblastic anaemias due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency; interactions: Appendix 1 (folates)

Safe Practice Intrathecal injection contra-indicated

Pregnancy not known to be harmful; benefit outweighs risk
Breast-feeding presence in milk unknown but benefit outweighs risk
Side-effects rarely pyrexia after parenteral use; gastro-intestinal disturbances, insomnia, agitation, and depression after high doses
Licensed use consult product literature for licensing status of individual preparations

Indication and dose
See under preparation

Calcium Folate (Non-proprietary) (™)
Tablets, scored, folic acid (as calcium salt) 15 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £39.20, 30-tab pack = £85.74
Brands include Refolinon®
Note Not all strengths and pack sizes are available from all manufacturers
Injection, folic acid (as calcium salt) 3 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £4.00, 10-mL amp = £4.62; 7.5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £7.60; 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £19.41, 10-mL vial = £35.09, 30-mL vial = £94.69, 35-mL vial = £90.98
Brands include Refolinon®
Note Not all strengths and pack sizes are available from all manufacturers
Injection, powder for reconstitution, folic acid (as calcium salt), net price 15-mg vial = £4.46, 30-mg vial = £9.36

Dose
Reduction of methotrexate-induced toxicity
• By mouth, by intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
See notes above. Consult local treatment protocol for details

Methotrexate overdose
• By intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
See notes above. Consult local treatment protocol for details

Megaloblastic anaemia due to folic acid deficiency
• By mouth
Child up to 12 years 250 microgram/kg once daily
Child 12–18 years 15 mg once daily

Metabolic disorders leading to folate deficiency
• By mouth or by intravenous infusion
Child up to 18 years 15 mg once daily; larger doses may be required in older children

Prevention of megaloblastic anaemia associated with pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine treatment of congenital toxoplasmosis
• By mouth
Neonate 5 mg 3 times a week (increased up to 20 mg 3 times a week if neutropenic)
Child 1 month–1 year 10 mg 3 times a week

Disodium Folate
Sodiofolin® (Medac) (™)
Injection, folic acid (as disodium salt) 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL vial = £35.09, 8-mL vial = £126.25, 18-mL vial = £284.07

Dose
Antidote to methotrexate
• By intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
Consult local treatment protocols for details
**LEVOFOLINIC ACID**

*Note: Levofolinic acid is an isomer of folic acid.*

**Cautions** see Folinic acid

**Contraindications**

- Intrathecal injection contra-indicated

**Pregnancy** see Folinic acid

**Breast-feeding** see Folinic acid

**Side-effects** see Folinic acid

**Indication and dose**

- **Reduction of methotrexate-induced toxicity**
  - By intramuscular injection or by intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
  - See notes above. Consult local treatment protocol for details

- **Methotrexate overdose**
  - By intramuscular injection or by intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
  - See notes above. Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Calcium levofolinate**

(Disodium levoleucovorin)

**Calcium Levofolinate (Non-proprietary)**

*Injection*, levofolinate acid (as calcium salt) 10 mg/mL, net price 17.5-mL vial = £84.63

**Isovorin** (Wyeth) *(®)*

*Injection*, levofolinate acid (as calcium salt) 10 mg/mL, net price 2.5-mL vial = £11.62, 17.5-mL vial = £81.33

**Disodium levofolinate**

**Levofoinic Acid (Non-proprietary)** *(®)*

*Injection*, levofolinate acid (as disodium salt) 50 mg/mL, net price 1-mL vial = £24.70, 4-mL vial = £80.40

**Urothelial toxicity**

Haemorrhagic cystitis is a common manifestation of urothelial toxicity which occurs with the oxazaphosphorines, cyclophosphamide and ifosfamide; it is caused by the metabolite acrolein. Adequate hydration is essential to reduce the risk of urothelial toxicity. **Mesna** reacts specifically with acrolein in the urinary tract, preventing toxicity. Mesna is given for the same duration as cyclophosphamide or ifosfamide. It is generally given intravenously; the dose of mesna is equal to or greater than that of the oxazaphosphorine. For the role of nebulised mesna as a mucolytic in cystic fibrosis, see section 3.7.

**MESNA**

**Contra-indications** hypersensitivity to thiol-containing compounds

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, colic, diarrhoea, fatigue, headache, limb and joint pains, depression, irritability, rash, hypotension and tachycardia; rarely hypersensitivity reactions (more common in patients with auto-immune disorders)

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

---

**8.1.1 Alkylating drugs**

**Indication and dose**

- **Urothelial toxicity following oxazaphosphorine therapy**
  - By intravenous injection or by continuous intravenous infusion
  - See notes above. Consult local treatment protocol for details

- **Mucolytic in cystic fibrosis** section 3.7

**Mesna** (Non-proprietary) *(®)*

*Tablets*, f/c, mesna 400 mg, net price 10-tab pack = £42.90; 600 mg, 10-tab pack = £61.10

*Injection*, mesna 100 mg/mL, net price 4-mL amp = £3.95; 10-mL amp = £9.77

**Note** For oral administration contents of ampoule are taken in a flavoured drink such as orange juice or cola which may be stored in a refrigerator for up to 24 hours in a sealed container

**8.1.1 Alkylating drugs**

Extensive experience is available with these drugs, which are among the most widely used in cancer chemotherapy. They act by damaging DNA, thus interfering with cell replication. In addition to the side-effects common to many cytotoxic drugs (section 8.1), problems associated specifically with alkylating drugs include:

- an adverse effect on gametogenesis which may be reversible, particularly in females; amenorrhoea may also occur, which also may be reversible;
- a marked increase in the incidence of secondary tumours and leukaemia, particularly when alkylating drugs are combined with extensive irradiation;
- fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyperbilirubinaemia, jaundice, and fibrosis;
- cardiac tamponade in thalassaemia; pneumonia, skin hyperpigmentation; rarely progressive pulmonary haemorrhage.

**BUSULFAN**

(Busulphan)

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above; monitor full blood count regularly throughout treatment; monitor liver function; previous mediastinal or pulmonary radiation therapy; avoid in acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (Busulphan)

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises monitor hepatic function—no information available

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic in animals); manufacturers advise effective contraception during and for 6 months after treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1 and notes above; also hepatotoxicity (including hepatic veno-occlusive disease, hyperbilirubinaemia, jaundice, and fibrosis); cardiac tamponade in thalassaemia; pneumonia, skin hyperpigmentation; rarely progressive pulmonary haemorrhage.
**CHLORAMBUCIL**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above; monitor full blood count regularly throughout treatment; increased seizure risk in children with nephrotic syndrome or history of epilepsy; avoid in acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2)

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises consider dose reduction in severe impairment—limited information available

**Pregnancy** avoid; manufacturer advises effective contraception during treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding during and for 36 hours after stopping treatment

**Side-effects** see section 8.1 and notes above; also anorexia; pancreatitis; cardiotoxicity at high doses; interstitial pulmonary fibrosis; inappropriate secretion of anti-diuretic hormone, disturbances of carbohydrate metabolism; urothelial toxicity; pigmentation of palms, nails and soles; rarely hepatotoxicity and renal dysfunction

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Hodgkin’s disease**
- By mouth
  - Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma**
- By mouth
  - Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Relapsing steroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome; initiated in specialist centres** (see also section 6.3.2, p. 371)
- By mouth
  - Child 3 months–18 years 200 micrograms/kg once daily for 8 weeks

**Leukeran® (GSK)**

Tablets, f/c, brown, chlorambucil 2 mg, net price 25-tab pack = £8.36

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**Cyclophosphamide**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above; previous or concurrent mediastinal irradiation—risk of cardiotoxicity; diabetes mellitus; avoid in acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (cyclophosphamide)

**Contra-indications** haemorrhagic cystitis

**Hepatic impairment** reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details

**Renal impairment** reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details

**Pregnancy** avoid; manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 3 months after treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding during and for 36 hours after stopping treatment

**Side-effects** see section 8.1 and notes above; also anorexia; pancreatitis; cardiotoxicity at high doses; interstitial pulmonary fibrosis; inappropriate secretion of anti-diuretic hormone, disturbances of carbohydrate metabolism; urothelial toxicity; pigmentation of palms, nails and soles; rarely hepatotoxicity and renal dysfunction

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, retinoblastoma, neuroblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, soft-tissue sarcomas, Ewing tumour, neuroectodermal tumours (including medulloblastoma), infant brain tumours, ependymoma, high-dose conditioning for bone marrow transplantation, lupus nephritis**
- By mouth or by intravenous infusion
  - Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Steroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome** see also section 6.3.2, p. 371
- By mouth
  - Child 3 months–18 years 2–3 mg/kg once daily for 8 weeks
- By intravenous infusion
  - Child 3 months–18 years 500 mg/m² once a month for 6 months

**Administration** Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Cyclophosphamide** (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, s/c, cyclophosphamide (anhydrous) 50 mg, net price 100 = £20.20. Label: 25, 27

Injection, powder for reconstitution, cyclophosphamide, net price 500-mg vial = £5.66; 1-g vial = £10.66

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6
**IFOSFAMIDE**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above; ensure satisfactory electrolyte balance and renal function before each course (risk of tubular dysfunction, Fanconi’s syndrome, or diabetes insipidus if renal toxicity not treated promptly); avoid in acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (ifosfamide)

**Contra-indications** urinary tract obstruction; acute infection (including urinary-tract infection); urothelial damage

**Hepatic impairment** avoid

**Renal impairment** avoid

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic and carcinogenic in animals); manufacturer advises adequate contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1 and notes above; also drowsiness, confusion, disorientation, restlessness, psychosis; urothelial toxicity causing haemorrhagic cystitis and dysuria, renal toxicity (see Cautions above); less commonly severe encephalopathy; rarely diarrhoea, constipation, convulsions, anorexia; very rarely jaundice, thrombophlebitis, syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion

**Indication and dose**

Rhabdomyosarcoma, soft-tissue sarcomas, Ewing tumour, germ cell tumour, osteogenic sarcoma

- By intravenous infusion
  
  Consult local treatment protocol for details

**MELPHALAN**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above; monitor full blood count before and throughout treatment; for high-dose intravenous administration establish adequate hydration (see notes above), use of prophylactic anti-infective agents; haematopoietic stem cell transplantation essential for high dose treatment (consult local treatment protocol for details); avoid in acute porphyria (but see section 9.8.2); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (melphalan)

**Contra-indications** acute pulmonary infection or significant reduced lung function

**Renal impairment** reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details

**Pregnancy** avoid; manufacturer advises adequate contraception during treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1, less bone marrow suppression, anorexia; pulmonary toxicity e.g. pulmonary fibrosis (usually dose-related and delayed); fever (directly following administration), fatigue; dermatological and mucous membrane toxicity, localised skin hyperpigmentation; rarely cardiorespiratory collapse and hypepyrexia

**Licensed use** childhood neuroblastoma

**Indication and dose**

- High intravenous dose with haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in the treatment of childhood neuroblastoma and some other advanced embryonal tumours

  - **Intravenous infusion**
    
    Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Alkeran® (GSK)**

**Injection,** powder for reconstitution, melphalan 50 mg (as hydrochloride). Net price 50-mg vial (with solvent-diluent) = £33.13

**8.1.2 Cytotoxic antibiotics**

Cytotoxic antibiotics are widely used. Many act as radiomimetics and simultaneous use of radiotherapy should be avoided because it may markedly increase toxicity.

Daunorubicin, doxorubicin, and epirubicin are anthracycline antibiotics. Mitoxantrone (mitozantrone) is an anthracycline derivative.

All anthracycline antibiotics have been associated with varying degrees of cardiac toxicity—this may be idiosyncratic and reversible, but is commonly related to total cumulative dose and is irreversible. Cardiac function should be monitored before and at regular intervals throughout treatment and afterwards. Caution is necessary with comitant use of cardiotoxic drugs, or drugs that reduce cardiac contractility. Anthracycline antibiotics should not normally be used in children with left ventricular dysfunction. Epirubicin and mitoxantrone are considered less toxic, and may be suitable for children who have received high cumulative doses of other anthracyclines. Dexrazoxane can be used to prevent chronic cumulative cardiotoxicity, see section 8.1.

**BLEOMYCIN**

**Cautions** see section 8.1; ensure monitoring of pulmonary function—investigate any shortness of breath before initiation; caution in handling—irritant to tissues

**Contra-indications** acute pulmonary infection or significantly reduced lung function

**Renal impairment** reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic and carcinogenic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1, less bone marrow suppression, anorexia; pulmonary toxicity e.g. pulmonary fibrosis (usually dose-related and delayed); fever (directly following administration), fatigue; dermatological and mucous membrane toxicity, localised skin hyperpigmentation; rarely cardiorespiratory collapse and hypepyrexia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Some germ cell tumours, Hodgkin’s lymphoma

- By intravenous infusion
  
  Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Bleomycin** (Non-proprietary)

**Injection,** powder for reconstitution, bleomycin (as sulphate), net price 15 000-unit vial = £15.55

Note To conform to the European Pharmacopoeia vials previously labelled as containing ‘15 units’ of bleomycin are now labelled as containing 15 000 units. The amount of bleomycin in the vial has not changed.

Brands include Bleo-Kyowa®
Malignant disease and immunosuppression

DACTINOMYCIN
(Actinomycin D)

Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; caution in handling—irritant to tissues

Hepatic impairment consider dose reduction if raised serum bilirubin or biliary obstruction; consult local treatment protocols

Pregnancy avoid (teratogenic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; less commonly cheilitis, dysphagia; fever, malaise, lethargy; anaemia, hypoglycaemia, myalgia; acne; rarely hepatotoxicity (possibly dose-related)

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

Wilm’s tumour, childhood rhabdomyosarcoma and other soft tissue sarcomas, Ewing’s sarcoma

By intravenous injection

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Cosmegen Lyovac® (Ovation)
Injection, powder for reconstitution, dactinomycin, net price 500-microgram vial = £6.75

DOXORUBICIN
(Doxorubicin hydrochloride)

Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; caution in handling—irritant to tissues

Contra-indications severe myocardial insufficiency, recent myocardial infarction, severe arrhythmia; previous treatment with maximum cumulative doses of doxorubicin or other anthracyclines

Hepatic impairment reduce dose according to bilirubin concentration—consult local treatment protocol for details; avoid in severe impairment

Renal impairment reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details; avoid in severe impairment

Pregnancy avoid (teratogenic and carcinogenic in animal studies), see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; red urine discoloration; thrombophlebitis over injection site; less commonly bronchospasm, fever, amenorrhoea, and skin rash

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Paediatric malignancies including Ewing’s sarcoma, osteogenic sarcoma, Wilm’s tumour, neuroblastoma, retinoblastoma, some liver tumours, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, Hodgkin’s lymphoma, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma

By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Doxorubicin (Non-proprietary)
Injection, powder for reconstitution, doxorubicin hydrochloride, net price 10-mg vial = £18.72; 50-mg vial = £96.86

Injection, doxorubicin hydrochloride 2 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £20.60, 25-mL vial = £103.00, 100-mL vial = £275.00

EPIRUBICIN
(Epirubicin hydrochloride)

Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; caution in handling—irritant to tissues

Contra-indications severe myocardial insufficiency, recent myocardial infarction, severe arrhythmia, unstable angina, myocardioopathy; previous treatment with maximum cumulative doses of epirubicin or other anthracycline

Hepatic impairment reduce dose according to bilirubin concentration—consult local treatment protocol for details; avoid in severe impairment

Renal impairment dose reduction may be necessary in severe impairment

Pregnancy avoid (carcinogenic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; red urine discoloration; anaphylaxis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Recurrent acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, rhabdomyosarcoma, other soft tissue tumours of childhood

By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Lipid formulation

DaunoXome® (Gilead)
Concentrate for intravenous infusion, daunorubicin encapsulated in liposomes. For dilution before use, net price 50-mg vial = £137.67
Cytarabine inhibits the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase, essential for the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines. It is given by mouth, intravenously, intramuscularly, or intrathecally. Methotrexate causes myelosuppression, mucositis, and rarely pneumonitis. It is contra-indicated in significant renal impairment because it is excreted primarily by the kidney. It is also contra-indicated in patients with severe hepatic impairment. It should also be avoided in the presence of significant pleural effusion or ascites because it can accumulate in these fluids, and its subsequent return to the circulation may cause myelosuppression. Systemic toxicity may follow intrathecal administration and blood counts should be carefully monitored. Folinic acid (section 8.1) following methotrexate administration helps to prevent methotrexate-induced mucositis and myelosuppression.

Cytarabine acts by interfering with pyrimidine synthesis. It is given subcutaneously, intravenously, or intrathecally. It is a potent myelosuppressant and requires careful haematological monitoring. A liposomal formulation of cytarabine for intrathecal use is available for lymphomatous meningitis.

Fludarabine is generally well tolerated but does cause myelosuppression, which may be cumulative.

Fludarabine has a potent and prolonged immuno-suppressive effect. Children treated with fludarabine are more prone to serious bacterial, opportunistic fungal, and viral infections, and prophylactic therapy is recommended in children at risk. To prevent potentially fatal transfusion-related graft-versus-host reaction, only irradiated blood products should be administered. Prescribers should consult specialist literature when using highly immunosuppressive drugs.

Clofarabine is licensed for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in children who have relapsed or are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimes. It is given by intravenous infusion.

Nelarabine is licensed for the treatment of T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma in children who have relapsed or who are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimes. It is given by intravenous infusion. Neurotoxicity is common with nelarabine, and close monitoring for neurological events is strongly recommended—discontinue treatment if neurotoxicity occurs.

Mercaptopurine is used as maintenance therapy for acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and in the management of ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease (section 1.5). Azathioprine, which is metabolised to mercaptopurine, is generally used as an immunosuppressant (section 8.2.1 and section 10.1.3). The dose of both drugs should be reduced if the child is receiving allopurinol since it interferes with their metabolism. For the role of thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) in the metabolism of azathioprine see section 8.2.1.

Tioguanine (thioguanine) is given by mouth for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia; it is given at various stages of treatment in short-term cycles. Tioguanine has a lower incidence of gastro-intestinal side-effects than mercaptopurine. Long-term therapy with tioguanine is no longer recommended because of the high risk of liver toxicity.

## Antimetabolites

Antimetabolites are incorporated into new cellular material or they combine irreversibly with cellular enzymes and prevent normal cellular division.

Cytarabine, fludarabine, mercaptopurine, methotretax, and tioguanine are commonly used in paediatric chemotherapy.

Methotrexate inhibits the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase, essential for the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines. It is given by mouth, intravenously, intramuscularly, or intrathecally. Methotrexate causes myelosuppression, mucositis, and rarely pneumonitis. It is contra-indicated in significant renal impairment because it is excreted primarily by the kidney. It is also contra-indicated in patients with severe hepatic impairment. It should also be avoided in the presence of significant pleural effusion or ascites because it can accumulate in these fluids, and its subsequent return to the circulation may cause myelosuppression. Systemic toxicity may follow intrathecal administration and blood counts should be carefully monitored. Folinic acid (section 8.1) following methotrexate administration helps to prevent methotrexate-induced mucositis and myelosuppression.

Cytarabine acts by interfering with pyrimidine synthesis. It is given subcutaneously, intravenously, or intrathecally. It is a potent myelosuppressant and requires careful haematological monitoring. A liposomal formulation of cytarabine for intrathecal use is available for lymphomatous meningitis.

Fludarabine is generally well tolerated but does cause myelosuppression, which may be cumulative.

Fludarabine has a potent and prolonged immuno-suppressive effect. Children treated with fludarabine are more prone to serious bacterial, opportunistic fungal, and viral infections, and prophylactic therapy is recommended in children at risk. To prevent potentially fatal transfusion-related graft-versus-host reaction, only irradiated blood products should be administered. Prescribers should consult specialist literature when using highly immunosuppressive drugs.

Clofarabine is licensed for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in children who have relapsed or are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimes. It is given by intravenous infusion.

Nelarabine is licensed for the treatment of T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma in children who have relapsed or who are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimes. It is given by intravenous infusion. Neurotoxicity is common with nelarabine, and close monitoring for neurological events is strongly recommended—discontinue treatment if neurotoxicity occurs.

Mercaptopurine is used as maintenance therapy for acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and in the management of ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease (section 1.5). Azathioprine, which is metabolised to mercaptopurine, is generally used as an immunosuppressant (section 8.2.1 and section 10.1.3). The dose of both drugs should be reduced if the child is receiving allopurinol since it interferes with their metabolism. For the role of thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) in the metabolism of azathioprine see section 8.2.1.

Tioguanine (thioguanine) is given by mouth for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia; it is given at various stages of treatment in short-term cycles. Tioguanine has a lower incidence of gastro-intestinal side-effects than mercaptopurine. Long-term therapy with tioguanine is no longer recommended because of the high risk of liver toxicity.

## CLOFARABINE

Cytarabine, fludarabine, mercaptopurine, methotretax, and tioguanine are commonly used in paediatric chemotherapy.

Methotrexate inhibits the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase, essential for the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines. It is given by mouth, intravenously, intramuscularly, or intrathecally. Methotrexate causes myelosuppression, mucositis, and rarely pneumonitis. It is contra-indicated in significant renal impairment because it is excreted primarily by the kidney. It is also contra-indicated in patients with severe hepatic impairment. It should also be avoided in the presence of significant pleural effusion or ascites because it can accumulate in these fluids, and its subsequent return to the circulation may cause myelosuppression. Systemic toxicity may follow intrathecal administration and blood counts should be carefully monitored. Folinic acid (section 8.1) following methotrexate administration helps to prevent methotrexate-induced mucositis and myelosuppression.

Cytarabine acts by interfering with pyrimidine synthesis. It is given subcutaneously, intravenously, or intrathecally. It is a potent myelosuppressant and requires careful haematological monitoring. A liposomal formulation of cytarabine for intrathecal use is available for lymphomatous meningitis.

Fludarabine is generally well tolerated but does cause myelosuppression, which may be cumulative.

Fludarabine has a potent and prolonged immuno-suppressive effect. Children treated with fludarabine are more prone to serious bacterial, opportunistic fungal, and viral infections, and prophylactic therapy is recommended in children at risk. To prevent potentially fatal transfusion-related graft-versus-host reaction, only irradiated blood products should be administered. Prescribers should consult specialist literature when using highly immunosuppressive drugs.

Clofarabine is licensed for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in children who have relapsed or are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimes. It is given by intravenous infusion.

Nelarabine is licensed for the treatment of T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma in children who have relapsed or who are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimes. It is given by intravenous infusion. Neurotoxicity is common with nelarabine, and close monitoring for neurological events is strongly recommended—discontinue treatment if neurotoxicity occurs.

Mercaptopurine is used as maintenance therapy for acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and in the management of ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease (section 1.5). Azathioprine, which is metabolised to mercaptopurine, is generally used as an immunosuppressant (section 8.2.1 and section 10.1.3). The dose of both drugs should be reduced if the child is receiving allopurinol since it interferes with their metabolism. For the role of thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) in the metabolism of azathioprine see section 8.2.1.

Tioguanine (thioguanine) is given by mouth for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia; it is given at various stages of treatment in short-term cycles. Tioguanine has a lower incidence of gastro-intestinal side-effects than mercaptopurine. Long-term therapy with tioguanine is no longer recommended because of the high risk of liver toxicity.
Side-effects see section 8.1; also diarrhea, abdominal pain, jaundice; tachycardia, flushing, hypotension, pericardial effusion, oedema, haematoma; dyspnoea, cough; anxiety, agitation, dizziness, drowsiness, headache, paraesthesia, peripheral neuropathy, restlessness; haematuria; arthralgia, myalgia, rash, pruritus, hand-foot (desquamative) syndrome, increased sweating; pancreatitis also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose
- By intravenous infusion
 Consult local treatment protocol for details

Evoltra® (Genzyme) ▼
Concentrate for intravenous infusion, clofarabine 1 mg/mL, net price 20-mL vial = £1153.20
Electrolytes Na+ 3.08 mmol/vial

CYTARABINE
Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (cytarabine)
Hepatic impairment reduce dose
Renal impairment consult local treatment protocols
Pregnancy avoid (teratogenic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416
Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; ‘cytarabine syndrome’—6–12 hours after intravenous administration—characterised by fever and malaise, myalgia, bone pain, maculopapular rash, and occasionally chest pain; less commonly conjunctivitis (consider prophylactic corticosteroid eye drops), neurotoxicity, renal and hepatic dysfunction, jaundice; rarely severe spinal cord toxicity following intrathecal administration

Licensed use DepoCyte® intrathecal injection not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose
- By intrathecal injection
 Consult local treatment protocol for details

Meningeal leukaemia, meningeal neoplasms
- By intrathecal injection
 Consult local treatment protocol for details

Note Based on weight or body-surface area, children may tolerate higher doses of cytarabine than adults

Cytarabine (Non-proprietary)
Injection (for intravenous, subcutaneous or intrathecal use), cytarabine 20 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £4.00
Injection (for intravenous or subcutaneous use), cytarabine 20 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.90, 25-mL vial = £19.50
Injection (for intravenous or subcutaneous use), cytarabine 100 mg/mL, net price 1-mL vial = £4.00, 5-mL vial = £20.00, 10-mL vial = £39.00, 20-mL vial = £77.50

Lipid formulation for intrathecal use
DepoCyte® (Napp) Intrathecal injection, cytarabine encapsulated in liposomes, net price 50-mg vial = £1223.75

FLUDARABINE PHOSPHATE
Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; monitor for signs of haemolysis; monitor for neurological toxicity; worsening of existing and increased susceptibility to skin cancer; interactions: Appendix 1 (fludarabine)
Contra-indications haemolytic anaemia
Renal impairment reduce dose by up to 50% if creatinine clearance 30–70 mL/minute/1.73 m²; avoid if creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²
Pregnancy avoid (embryotoxic and teratogenic in animal studies); manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416
Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; also diarrhea, anorexia; oedema; pneumonia, cough; peripheral neuropathy, visual disturbances; chills, fever, malaise, weakness; rash; less commonly gastrointestinal haemorrhage, pulmonary toxicity (including pulmonary infiltrates, pneumonitis, and fibrosis), and confusion; rarely heart failure, arrhythmia, coma, seizures, agitation, myelodysplastic syndrome, acute myeloid leukaemia, optic neuropathy, blindness, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, skin cancer, and haemorrhagic cystitis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose
- By mouth, by intravenous injection, or by intravenous infusion
 Consult local treatment protocol for details

Fludarabine phosphate (Non-proprietary)
Injection, powder for reconstitution, fludarabine phosphate, net price 50-mg vial = £140.40
Fludara® (Genzyme) Tablets, f/c, pink, fludarabine phosphate 10 mg, net price 15-tab pack = £268.12, 20-tab pack = £350.70
Injection, powder for reconstitution, fludarabine phosphate, net price 50-mg vial = £147.07

MERCAPTOPURINE
6-Mercaptopurine
Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; thiopurine methyltransferase status (see section 8.2.1); monitor liver function—discontinue if jaundice develops; interactions: Appendix 1 (mercaptopurine)
Hepatic impairment may need dose reduction
Renal impairment manufacturer advises consider reducing dose
Pregnancy avoid (teratogenic); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416
Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; gastrointestinal effects less common; hepatotoxicity (more frequent at higher doses); rarely intestinal ulceration,
8.1.3 Antimetabolites

**METHOTREXATE**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and section 10.1.3; monitor renal and hepatic function; peptic ulceration, ulcerative colitis, diarrhoea, and ulcerative stomatitis; porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment—consult local treatment protocol for details

**Renal impairment** reduce dose—risk of nephrotoxicity at high doses; avoid in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic; fertility may be reduced

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding—present in milk

**Side-effects** see section 8.1; also anorexia, abdominal discomfort, dyspepsia, gastro-intestinal ulceration and bleeding, diarrhoea, toxic megacolon, hepatotoxicity (see Cautions above); hypotension, pericarditis, pericardial tamponade, thrombosis; pulmonary oedema, pleuritic pain, pulmonary fibrosis, interstitial pneumonitis (see also Pulmonary Toxicity, p. 509); anaphylactic reactions, urticaria; dizziness, fatigue, chills, fever, drowsiness, malaise, headache, mood changes, abnormal cranial sensations, neurotoxicity, confusion, psychosis, paraesthesia, cerebral oedema; precipitation of diabetes; menstrual disturbances, vaginitis, cystitis, reduced libido, impotence; haematuria, dysuria, renal failure; osteoporosis, arthralgia, myalgia, vasculitis; conjunctivitis, blepharitis, visual disturbances; rash, pruritus, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, photosensitivity; changes in nail and skin pigmentation, telangiectasia, acne, furunculosis, ecchymosis; injection-site reactions

**Indication and dose**

Maintenance and remission of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, lymphoblastic lymphoma

• By mouth

Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease** section 1.5.3

**Puri-Nethol** (GSK)

Tablets, yellow, scored, mercaptopurine 50 mg, net price 25-tab pack = £22.54

**Mercaptopurine**

Capsules, mercaptopurine 10 mg

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, p. 809

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**NERLABINE**

**Indication and dose**

Treatment of early stage Burkitt’s lymphoma, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, osteogenic sarcoma, some CNS tumours including infant brain tumours, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia

• By intravenous injection or infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Meningeal leukaemia, treatment and prevention of CNS involvement of leukaemia

• By intrathecal injection

Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Severe Crohn’s disease** section 1.5.3

**Rheumatic disease** section 10.1.3

**Psoriasis** section 13.5.3

**Methotrexate** (Non-proprietary)

Injection, methotrexate (as sodium salt) 2.5 mg/mL, net price 2-mL vial = £1.68

Injection, methotrexate (as sodium salt) 25 mg/mL, net price 2-mL vial = £3.00, 20-mL vial = £30.00

Injection, methotrexate 100 mg/mL (not for intrathecal use), net price 10-mL vial = £78.33, 50-mL vial = £380.07

**Oral preparations**

Section 10.1.3

**TIOGUANINE** (Thioguanine)

**Indication and dose**

T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma

• By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Atriance** (GSK)

Intravenous infusion, nelarabine 5 mg/mL, net price 50-mL vial = £222.00

Electrolytes Na⁺ 3.75 mmol/vial

**Indication and dose**

Maintenance and remission of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, lymphoblastic lymphoma

• By mouth

Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease** section 1.5.3

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Hepatic impairment** avoid in severe impairment—consult local treatment protocol for details

**Renal impairment** reduce dose—risk of nephrotoxicity at high doses; avoid in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic; fertility may be reduced during therapy but this may be reversible); manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 3 months after treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding—present in milk

**Side-effects** see section 8.1; also anorexia, abdominal discomfort, dyspepsia, gastro-intestinal ulceration and bleeding, diarrhoea, toxic megacolon, hepatotoxicity (see Cautions above); hypotension, pericarditis, pericardial tamponade, thrombosis; pulmonary oedema, pleuritic pain, pulmonary fibrosis, interstitial pneumonitis (see also Pulmonary Toxicity, p. 509); anaphylactic reactions, urticaria; dizziness, fatigue, chills, fever, drowsiness, malaise, headache, mood changes, abnormal cranial sensations, neurotoxicity, confusion, psychosis, paraesthesia, cerebral oedema; precipitation of diabetes; menstrual disturbances, vaginitis, cystitis, reduced libido, impotence; haematuria, dysuria, renal failure; osteoporosis, arthralgia, myalgia, vasculitis; conjunctivitis, blepharitis, visual disturbances; rash, pruritus, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, photosensitivity; changes in nail and skin pigmentation, telangiectasia, acne, furunculosis, ecchymosis; injection-site reactions

**Indication and dose**

Maintenance and remission of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, lymphoblastic lymphoma

• By mouth

Consult local treatment protocol for details
8 Malignant disease and immunosuppression

liver function weekly—discontinue if liver toxicity develops; interactions: Appendix 1 (tioguanine)

Hepatic impairment reduce dose

Renal impairment reduce dose

Pregnancy avoid (teratogenicity reported when men receiving tioguanine have fathered children); ensure effective contraception during treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1; also stomatitis and hepatotoxicity; rarely intestinal necrosis and perforation

Indication and dose

Infant acute lymphoblastic leukaemia

• By mouth Consult local treatment protocol for details

Lanvis® (GSK) Tablets, yellow, scored, tioguanine 40 mg, net price 25-tab pack = £54.49

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

8.1.4 Vinca alkaloids and etoposide

The vinca alkaloids, vinblastine and vincristine are used to treat a variety of cancers including leukaemias, lymphomas, and some solid tumours. Neurotoxicity, usually as peripheral or autonomic neuropathy, occurs with all vinca alkaloids and is a limiting side-effect of vincristine; it occurs less often with vinblastine. Children with neurotoxicity commonly have peripheral paraesthesia, loss of deep tendon reflexes, abdominal pain, and constipation; ototoxicity has been reported. If symptoms of neurotoxicity are severe, doses should be reduced, but children generally tolerate vincristine better than adults. Motor weakness can also occur and dose reduction or discontinuation of therapy may be appropriate if motor weakness increases. Recovery from neurotoxic effects is usually slow but complete.

Myelosuppression is the dose-limiting side-effect of vinblastine; vincristine causes negligible myelosuppression. The vinca alkaloids may cause reversible alopecia. They cause severe local irritation and care must be taken to avoid extravasation. Constipation is common with vinblastine and vincristine; prophylactic use of laxatives may be considered.

Safe Practice

Vinblastine and vincristine are for intravenous administration only. Inadvertent intrathecal administration can cause severe neurotoxicity, which is usually fatal.

The National Patient Safety Agency has advised (August 2008) that teenage patients treated in an adolescent unit should receive their vinca alkaloid dose in a 50 mL minibag. Teenagers and children treated in a child unit may receive their vinca alkaloid dose in a syringe.

Etoposide, usually given by slow intravenous infusion, is used to treat acute leukaemias, lymphomas, and some solid tumours. Etoposide may also be given by mouth but it is unpredictably absorbed.

ETOPOSIDE

Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (etoposide)

Hepatic impairment avoid in severe impairment

Renal impairment consider dose reduction—consult local treatment protocol for details

Pregnancy avoid (teratogenic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1, dose limiting myelosuppression, mucositis more common if given with doxorubicin; anaphylaxis associated with concentrated infusions; hypotension associated with rapid infusion; irritant to tissues if extravasated

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Stage 4 neuroblastoma, germ-cell tumours, intracranial germ-cell tumours, rhabdomyosarcoma, soft-tissue sarcomas, neuroectodermal tumours (including medulloblastoma), relapsed Hodgkin’s disease, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, Ewing tumour, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, acute myeloid leukaemia

• By mouth or by intravenous infusion Consult local treatment protocol for details

Etoposide (Non-proprietary) Concentrate for intravenous infusion, etoposide 20 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £12.15, 10-mL vial = £28.00, 25-mL vial = £60.75

Brands include Etopos

Etopophos® (Bristol-Myers Squibb) Injection, powder for reconstitution, etoposide (as phosphate), net price 100-mg vial = £26.17 ( hosp only)

Vepesid® (Bristol-Myers Squibb) Capsules, both pink, etoposide 50 mg, net price 10 = £99.82, 100 mg, 10-cap pack = £97.23 ( hosp only).

Label: 23

VINBLASTINE SULPHATE

Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; caution in handling; interactions: Appendix 1 (vinblastine)

Contra-indications see notes above

Safe Practice

Intrathecal injection contra-indicated

Hepatic impairment dose reduction may be necessary—consult local treatment protocol for details

Pregnancy avoid (limited experience suggests fetal harm; teratogenic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; abdominal pain, constipation, leucopenia, muscle pain; less commonly peripheral neuropathy; rarely paralytic ileus; irritant to tissues if extravasated

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)
Indication and dose

**Hodgkin’s disease and other lymphomas**

- *By intravenous injection*
  Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Vinblastine (Non-proprietary) (Vinblastine)**

*Injection*, vinblastine sulphate 1 mg/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £13.09

**Velbe® (Genus) (Velbe)**

*Injection*, powder for reconstitution, vinblastine sulphate, net price 10-mg amp = £14.15

---

8.1.5 Other antineoplastic drugs

**AMSACRINE**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above; consider monitoring cardiac function; monitor electrolytes (fatal arrhythmias possible if hypokalaemia); previous treatment with anthracyclines; also caution in handling—irritant to skin and tissues

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises reduce initial dose by 20–30%

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises reduce initial dose by 20–30%

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic and toxic in animal studies); may reduce fertility; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1; mucositis, phlebitis; less commonly diarrhoea, cardiotoxicity, haematuria, renal impairment, hepatotoxicity, skin rash; rarely acute renal failure, grand mal seizures

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Acute myeloid leukaemia

- *By intravenous infusion*
  Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Amsidine® (Goldshield) (Amsidine)**

Concentrate for intravenous infusion, amsacrine 5 mg (as lactate)/mL, when reconstituted by mixing two solutions. Net price 1.5-mL (75-mg) amp with 13.5-mL diluent vial = £54.08 (hosp. only)

---

**Asparaginase**

Asparaginase is used almost exclusively in the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Hypersensitivity reactions may occur and facilities for the management of anaphylaxis should be available. A number of different preparations of asparaginase exist and only the product specified in the treatment protocol should be used.

**Crisantaspase** is the enzyme asparaginase produced by *Erwinia chrysanthemi*. Preparations of asparaginase derived from *Escherichia coli* are also available. Children who are hypersensitive to asparaginase derived from one organism may tolerate asparaginase derived from another organism but cross-sensitivity occurs in about 20–30% of individuals.

---

**CRISANTASPASE**

**Cautions** see section 8.1 and notes above

**Contra-indications** history of pancreatitis related to asparaginase therapy

**Pregnancy** avoid; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1; also liver dysfunction, pancreatitis, diarrhoea; coagulation disorders; lethargy, drowsiness, confusion, dizziness, neurotoxicity, convulsions, headache; less commonly changes in blood lipids, anaphylaxis, hyperglycaemia; rarely CNS depression; very rarely myalgia; abdominal pain and hypertension also reported

---

**Amsacrine**

Amsacrine has an action and toxic effects similar to those of doxorubicin (section 8.1.2) and is given intravenously. It is occasionally used in acute myeloid leukaemia.
### Malignant disease and immunosuppression

**Indication and dose**

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, acute myeloid leukaemia, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma**

- **By intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous injection**
  
  Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Erwinase**

- **(EUSA Pharma)**
  
  Injection, powder for reconstitution, crisantaspase, net price 10 000-unit vial = £301.70

**Preparations**

Preparations of asparaginase derived from *Escherichia coli* are available but they are not licensed; they include: *Medac* asparaginase, *Elspar* asparaginase, and *Oncaspar* pegaspargase.

### Dacarbazine and temozolomide

**Dacarbazine** is a component of a commonly used combination for Hodgkin’s disease (ABVD—doxorubicin, bleomycin, vinblastine, and dacarbazine). It is given intravenously.

**Temozolomide** is structurally related to dacarbazine and is used in children for second-line treatment of malignant glioma.

#### DACARBAZINE

**Cautions** see section 8.1; caution in handling

**Hepatic impairment** dose reduction may be required in combined hepatic and renal impairment; avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** dose reduction may be required in combined renal and hepatic impairment; avoid in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid (carcinogenic and teratogenic in animal studies); ensure effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1

**Indication and dose**

**Hodgkin’s disease, paediatric solid tumours**

- By intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
  
  Consult local treatment protocol for details

**Dacarbazine** *(Non-proprietary)*

- **Injection**
  
  Powder for reconstitution, dacarbazine (as citrate), net price 100-mg vial = £5.05; 200-mg vial = £7.16; 500-mg vial = £16.50; 600-mg vial = £22.50; 1-g vial = £31.80

**Temozolomide** *(Non-proprietary)*

- **Capsules**
  
  Temozolomide 5 mg, net price 5-cap pack = £13.58; 20 mg, 5-cap pack = £54.30; 100 mg, 5-cap pack = £271.52; 140 mg, 5-cap pack = £380.18; 180 mg, 5-cap pack = £488.74; 250 mg, 5-cap pack = £578.80. Label: 23, 25

**Brands** include *Temodar*

**Temozol** *(Schering-Plough)*

- **Capsules**
  
  Temozolomide 5 mg (green/white), net price 5-cap pack = £16.29; 20 mg (yellow/white), 5-cap pack = £65.16; 100 mg (pink/white), 5-cap pack = £325.80; 140 mg (blue/white), 5-cap pack = £456.12; 180 mg (orange/white), 5-cap pack = £586.44; 250 mg (white), 5-cap pack = £614.50. Label: 23, 25

### Imatinib

Imatinib, a tyrosine kinase inhibitor, has recently been licensed in children for the treatment of newly diagnosed Philadelphia-chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukaemia when bone marrow transplantation is not considered first line treatment, and for Philadelphia-chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukaemia in chronic phase after failure of interferon alfa, or in accelerated phase, or in blast crisis.

**Indication and dose**

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Pregnancy** avoid (teratogenic and embryotoxic in animal studies); manufacturer advises adequate contraception during treatment; men should avoid fathering a child during and for at least 6 months after treatment; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding

**Side-effects** see section 8.1

**Imatinib** *(Non-proprietary)*

- **Capsules**
  
  Imatinib 100 mg, 5-cap pack = £678.80. Label: 23, 25

**Brands** include *Tasigna*

**IMATINIB** *(Schering-Plough)*

- **Capsules**
  
  Imatinib 100 mg, 5-cap pack = £678.80. Label: 23, 25

**Cautions** see section 8.1; cardiac disease; monitor for fluid retention; monitor liver function (see also Hepatic Impairment, below); interactions: Appendix 1 (imatinib)

**Hepatic impairment** start with minimum recommended dose; reduce dose further if not tolerated; consult local treatment protocol

**Renal impairment** start with minimum recommended dose; reduce dose further if not tolerated; consult local treatment protocol

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk; effective contraception required during treatment; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

**Breast-feeding** discontinue breast-feeding
BNFC 2011–2012

taxis; dry skin, sweating, rash, pruritus, photosensitivity; less commonly gastric ulceration, pancreatitis, hepatic dysfunction (rarely hepatic failure, hepatic necrosis), dysphagia, heart failure, tachycardia, palpitation, syncope, hypertension, hypotension, cold extremities, cough, acute respiratory failure, depression, drowsiness, anxiety, peripheral neuropathy, tremor, migraine, impaired memory, vertigo, gynaecomastia, menorrhagia, irregular menstruation, sexual dysfunction, electrolyte disturbances, renal failure, urinary frequency, gout, tinnitus, hearing loss; skin hyperpigmentation; rarely intestinal obstruction, gastro-intestinal perforation, inflammatory bowel disease, arrhythmia, atrial fibrillation, myocardial infarction, angina, pulmonary fibrosis, pulmonary hypertension, increased intracranial pressure, convulsions, confusion, haemolytic anaemia, rhabdomyolysis, myopathy, aseptic necrosis of bone, cataract, glaucoma, angioedema, exfoliative dermatitis, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome

Indication and dose
Chronic phase and advanced phase chronic myeloid leukaemia
• By mouth
Consult local treatment protocol for details

Glivec® (Novartis) ▼ (c)
Tablets, f/c, imatinib (as mesilate) 100 mg (yellow-brown, scored), net price 60-tab pack = £802.04; 400 mg (yellow), 30-tab pack = £1604.08. Label: 21, 27 Counselling Tablets may be dispersed in water or apple juice

Mitotane
Mitotane is used in children for the symptomatic treatment of advanced or inoperable adrenocortical carcinoma. It selectively inhibits the activity of the adrenal cortex, necessitating corticosteroid replacement therapy (section 6.3.1); the dose of glucocorticoid should be increased in case of shock, trauma, or infection. Neuro-psychological impairment can occur, possibly secondary to hypothyroidism, and growth retardation has also been reported in children treated with mitotane.

Malignant disease and immunosuppression 429

8.1.5 Other antineoplastic drugs

during and after treatment; see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416
Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding
Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; also gastro-intestinal disturbances (including nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, epigastric discomfort), anorexia, liver disorders; hypercholesterolaemia, hyperglycaemia; ataxia, confusion, asthenia, myasthenia, paraesthesia, drowsiness, neuropathy, cognitive impairment, movement disorder, dizziness, headache; gynaecomastia; prolonged bleeding time, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, anaemia; rash; rarely hypersalivation, hypertension, postural hypotension, flushing, pyrexia, haematuria, proteinuria, haemorrhagic cystitis, hypouricaemia, visual disturbances and ocular disorders
Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose
Symptomatic treatment of advanced or inoperable adrenocortical carcinoma
• By mouth
Consult local treatment protocol for details

Lysodren® (HRA Pharma) ▼ (c)
Tablets, scored, mitotane 500 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £590.97. Label: 2, 10, 21, counselling, skilled tasks, adrenal suppression

Platinum compounds
Carboplatin is used in the treatment of a variety of paediatric malignancies; it is given by intravenous infusion. Carboplatin can be given in an outpatient setting and is better tolerated than cisplatin; nausea and vomiting are less severe and nephrotoxicity, neurotoxicity, and ototoxicity are much less of a problem. Carboplatin is, however, more myelosuppressive than cisplatin.

Cisplatin is of value in children with a variety of malignancies; it is given by intravenous infusion. Cisplatin requires intensive intravenous hydration; routine use of intravenous fluids containing potassium or magnesium may also be required to help control hypo-kalaemia and hypomagnesaemia. Treatment may be complicated by severe nausea and vomiting; delayed vomiting may occur and is difficult to control. Cisplatin has dose-related and potentially cumulative side-effects including nephrotoxicity, neurotoxicity, and ototoxicity. Baseline testing of renal function and hearing is required; for children with pre-existing renal or hearing impairment or marked bone-marrow suppression, consideration should be given to withholding treatment or using another drug.

CARBOPLATIN
Cautions see section 8.1 and notes above; consider therapeutic drug monitoring; interactions: Appendix 1 (platinum compounds)
Renal impairment reduce dose and monitor haematological parameters and renal function; avoid if creatinine clearance less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m²
Pregnancy avoid (teratogenic and embryotoxic in animal studies); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416
Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding
Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above
Licensed use not licensed for use in children
Indication and dose

Stage 4 neuroblastoma, germ cell tumours, low-grade gliomas (including astrocytomas), neuroectodermal tumours (including medulloblastoma), rhabdomyosarcoma (metastatic and non-metastatic disease), soft-tissue sarcomas, retinoblastoma, high risk Wilms’ tumour, some liver tumours

• By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Cisplatin

Caution

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; also peripheral neuropathy; hypophosphataemia, hypocalcaemia, hyperuricaemia also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Osteogenic sarcoma, stage 4 neuroblastoma, some liver tumours, infant brain tumours, intracranial germ-cell tumours

• By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Procarbazine

Procarbazine is most often used in Hodgkin’s disease. It is given by mouth. It is a weak monoamine-oxidase inhibitor and dietary restriction is rarely considered necessary. Alcohol ingestion may cause a disulfiram-like reaction.

Side-effects see section 8.1 and notes above; hyper-sensitivity rash (discontinue treatment)

Indication and dose

Hodgkin’s lymphoma, gliomas

• By mouth

Consult local treatment protocol for details

Procarbazine (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, ivory, procarbazine (as hydrochloride) 50 mg, net price 50-cap pack = £199.60. Label: 4

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Tretinoin

Tretinoin is licensed for the induction of remission in acute promyelocytic leukaemia. It is used in previously untreated children as well as in those who have relapsed after standard chemotherapy or who are refractory to it.

Note Tretinoin is the acid form of vitamin A

Cautions exclude pregnancy before starting treatment, see also Pregnancy below; monitor full blood count, renal function, audiology, and plasma electrolytes; interactions: Appendix 1 (retinoids)

Hepatic impairment reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details

Renal impairment reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details

Pregnancy teratogenic; effective contraception must be used for at least 1 month before oral treatment, during treatment and for at least 1 month after stopping (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective); see also Pregnancy and Reproductive Function, p. 416

Breast-feeding discontinue breast-feeding

Side-effects retinoic acid syndrome (fever, dyspnoea, acute respiratory distress, pulmonary infiltrates, pleural effusion, hyperleucocytosis, hypotenison, oedema, weight gain, hepatic, renal and multi-organ failure) requires immediate treatment—consult product literature; gastro-intestinal disturbances, pancreatitis; arrhythmias, flushing, oedema, headache, benign intracranial hypertension (children particularly susceptible—consider dose reduction if intractable headache), shivering, dizziness, confusion, anxiety, depression, insomnia, paraesthesia, visual and hearing disturbances (children particularly susceptible to nervous system effects); raised liver enzymes, serum creatinine and lipids; bone and chest pain, alopecia, erythema, rash, pruritus, sweating, dry skin and mucous membranes, cheilitis; thromboembolism, hypercalcaemia, and genital ulceration reported

Indication and dose

Acute promyelocytic leukaemia

• By mouth

Consult treatment protocol for details

Vesanoid® (Roche)

Capsules, yellow/brown, tretinoin 10 mg, net price 100-cap pack = £160.63. Label: 21
8.2 Drugs affecting the immune response

8.2.1 Antiproliferative immunosuppressants

Azathioprine is widely used for transplant recipients and it is also used to treat a number of auto-immune conditions (see section 10.1.3), usually when corticosteroid therapy alone provides inadequate control. It is metabolised to mercaptopurine, and doses should be reduced to one quarter of the original dose when allopurinol is given concurrently. Blood tests and monitoring for signs of myelosuppression are essential in long-term treatment with azathioprine.

Thiopurine methyltransferase

The enzyme thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) metabolises thiopurine drugs (azathioprine, mercaptopurine, tioguanine); the risk of myelosuppression is increased in patients with reduced activity of the enzyme, particularly for the few individuals in whom TPMT activity is undetectable. Consider measuring TPMT activity before starting azathioprine, mercaptopurine, or tioguanine therapy. Patients with absent TPMT activity should not receive thiopurine drugs; those with reduced TPMT activity may be treated under specialist supervision.

Mycophenolate mofetil is metabolised to mycophenolic acid which has a more selective mode of action than azathioprine. It is used in combination with a corticosteroid and either ciclosporin or tacrolimus for the prophylaxis of acute rejection in transplant recipients. Compared with similar regimens incorporating azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil may reduce the risk of acute rejection episodes; the risk of opportunistic infections (particularly due to tissue-invasive cytomegalovirus) and the occurrence of blood disorders such as leucopenia may be higher. Children may suffer intestinal effects, calling for temporary reduction in dose or interruption of treatment. Cases of pure red cell aplasia have been reported with mycophenolate mofetil; dose reduction or discontinuation of mycophenolate mofetil should be considered under specialist supervision.

NICE guidance (immunosuppressive therapy for renal transplantation in children and adolescents)

See p. 433

Cyclophosphamide (section 8.1.1) is less commonly prescribed as an immunosuppressant.

AZATHIOPRINE

Cautions thiopurine methyltransferase status (see notes above); monitor for toxicity throughout treatment; monitor full blood count weekly (more frequently with higher doses or if severe hepatic or renal impairment) for first 4 weeks (manufacturer advises weekly monitoring for 8 weeks but evidence of practical value unsatisfactory), thereafter reduce frequency of monitoring to at least every 3 months; interactions: Appendix 1 (azathioprine)

Bone marrow suppression Children and their carers should be warned to report immediately any signs or symptoms of

Impaired immune responsiveness Infections in the immunocompromised child can be severe and show atypical features. Specific local protocols should be followed for the management of infection. Corticosteroids may suppress clinical signs of infection and allow diseases such as septicaemia or tuberculosis to reach an advanced stage before being recognised. Children should be up-to-date with their childhood vaccinations before initiation of immunosuppressant therapy (e.g. before transplantation); vaccination with varicella-zoster vaccine (section 14.4) is also necessary during this period—important: for advice on measles exposure, see section 14.5.1, and chickenpox (varicella) exposure, see section 14.5.2. For advice on the use of live vaccines in individuals with impaired immune response, see section 14.1. For general comments and warnings relating to corticosteroids and immunosuppressants, see section 6.3.2.

Pregnancy Transplant patients immunosuppressed with azathioprine should not discontinue it on becoming pregnant. However, there have been reports of prematurity and low birth-weight following exposure to azathioprine, particularly in combination with corticosteroids. Spontaneous abortion has been reported following maternal or paternal exposure. Azathioprine is teratogenic in animal studies.

There is less experience of ciclosporin in pregnancy but it does not appear to be any more harmful than azathioprine. The use of these drugs during pregnancy needs to be supervised in specialist units.
bone marrow suppression e.g. inexplicable bruising or bleeding

Contra-indications hypersensitivity to mercaptopurine
Hepatic impairment reduce dose; monitor liver function; see also Cautions
Renal impairment reduce dose; see also Cautions

pregnancy see section 8.2; treatment should not normally be initiated during pregnancy
Breast-feeding present in milk in low concentration; no evidence of harm in small studies—use if potential benefit outweighs risk

Side-effects hypersensitivity reactions (including malaise, dizziness, vomiting, diarrhoea, fever, rigors, myalgia, arthralgia, rash, hypotension and interstitial nephritis—calling for immediate withdrawal); dose-related bone marrow suppression (see also Cautions); liver jaundice, cholestasis, hair loss and increased susceptibility to infections and colitis in patients also receiving corticosteroids; nausea; rarely pancreatitis, pneumonitis, hepatic veno-occlusive disease, lymphoma

Indication and dose

Suppression of transplant rejection
• By mouth, or (if oral route not possible) by intravenous infusion (see also note below)
Consult local treatment protocol for details
Child 1 month–18 years maintenance, 1–3 mg/kg once daily, adjusted according to response; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2 divided doses

Severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease section 1.5.3

Systemic lupus erythematosus, vasculitis, auto-immune conditions when corticosteroid therapy alone has proved inadequate section 10.1.3

Administration Consult local treatment protocol for details
For intravenous injection, reconstitute 50 mg with 5–15 mL Water for Injections; give over at least 1 minute
For intravenous infusion, reconstitute 50 mg with 5–15 mL Water for Injections; dilute requisite dose to a concentration of 0.25–2.5 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Note Intravenous injection is alkaline and very irritating. Intravenous route should therefore be used only if oral route not feasible and discontinued as soon as oral route can be tolerated. To reduce irritation infusion fluid with infusion fluid

azathioprine (Non-proprietary) SW
Tablets, azathioprine 25 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £6.67; 50 mg, 56-tab pack = £5.56. Label: 21
Brands include Azumune®

imuran® (Apen®) SW
Tablets, both f/c, azathioprine 25 mg (orange), net price 100-tab pack = £10.99; 50 mg (yellow), 100-tab pack = £7.99. Label: 21
Injection, powder for reconstitution, azathioprine (as sodium salt), net price 50-mg vial = £15.38

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6
Ciclosporin also has a role in steroid-sensitive and steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome. It may be given with prednisolone (section 6.3).

Myoglobinurea is a potent immunosuppressant which is virtually non-myelo-toxic but markedly nephrotoxic. It may be used in organ and tissue transplantation, for prevention of graft rejection following bone marrow, kidney, liver, pancreas, heart, lung, and heart-lung transplantation, and for prophylaxis and treatment of graft-versus-host disease. Ciclosporin also has a role in steroid-sensitive and steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome; in corticosteroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome it may be given with prednisolone (section 6.3).

Tacrolimus is also a calcineurin inhibitor. Although not chemically related to ciclosporin it has a similar mode of action and side-effects.

Sirolimus is a non-calcineurin inhibiting immunosuppressant.

Basiliximab is a monoclonal antibody that prevents T-lymphocyte proliferation; it is used for prophylaxis of acute rejection in allogeneic renal transplantation. It is given with ciclosporin and corticosteroid immunosuppression regimens; its use should be confined to specialist centres.

Antithymocyte immunoglobulin (rabbit) is used for the prophylaxis of organ rejection in renal and heart allograft recipients and for the treatment of corticosteroid-resistant allograft rejection in renal transplantation. Tolerability is increased by pretreatment with an intravenous corticosteroid and antihistamine; an antipyretic drug such as paracetamol may also be beneficial.

Nicotinamide is not recommended as part of an immunosuppressive regimen for renal transplantation in children or adolescents.

Mycophenolic acid is not recommended as part of an immunosuppressive regimen only if:

- the calcineurin inhibitor is not tolerated, particularly if nephrotoxicity endangers the transplanted kidney; or
- there is very high risk of nephrotoxicity from the calcineurin inhibitor, requiring a reduction in the dose of the calcineurin inhibitor or its avoidance.

Mycophenolic acid is not recommended as part of an immunosuppressive regimen for renal transplantation in children or adolescents.

Sirolimus [not licensed for use in children] is recommended as part of an immunosuppressive regimen only if intolerance necessitates the withdrawal of a calcineurin inhibitor. These recommendations may not be consistent with the marketing authorisation of some of the products.

### 8.2.2 Corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants

The corticosteroids prednisolone and dexamethasone are widely used in paediatric oncology; they have a marked antitumour effect. Dexamethasone is preferred for acute lymphoblastic leukaemia whilst prednisolone may be used for Hodgkin’s disease, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, and B-cell lymphoma and leukaemia.

Dexamethasone is the corticosteroid of choice in paediatric supportive and palliative care. For children who are not receiving a corticosteroid as a component of their chemotherapy, dexamethasone may be used to reduce raised intracranial pressure (see p. 19), or to help control emesis when combined with an appropriate anti-emetic (see p. 19). For more information on glucocorticoid therapy, including the disadvantages of treatment, see section 6.3.2.

The corticosteroids are also powerful immunosuppressants. They are used to prevent organ transplant rejection, and in high dose to treat rejection episodes.

Ciclosporin (cyclosporin), a calcineurin inhibitor, is a potent immunosuppressant which is virtually non-myelo-toxic but markedly nephrotoxic. It may be used in organ and tissue transplantation, for prevention of graft rejection following bone marrow, kidney, liver, pancreas, heart, lung, and heart-lung transplantation, and for prophylaxis and treatment of graft-versus-host disease. Ciclosporin also has a role in steroid-sensitive and steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome; in corticosteroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome it may be given with prednisolone (section 6.3).

### Antithymocyte Immunoglobulin (rabbit)

**Cautions** see notes above; monitor blood count

**Contra-indications** infection

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, dysphagia, diarrhoea; hypotension; infusion-related reactions (including cytokine release syndrome and anaphylaxis, see notes above), serum sickness; fever, shivering, increased susceptibility to infection; increased susceptibility to malignancy; lymphopenia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia; myalgia; pruritus, rash
Indication and dose

Heart transplantation
- By intravenous infusion over at least 6 hours

Child 1 month–18 years 1–2.5 mg/kg daily for 3–5 days starting the day of transplantation

Note To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, calculate dose on the basis of ideal body weight

Renal transplantation
- By intravenous infusion over at least 6 hours

Child 1–18 years 1.5–2 mg/kg daily for 3–9 days starting the day of transplantation

Note To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, calculate dose on the basis of ideal body weight

Corticosteroid-resistant renal graft rejection
- By intravenous infusion over at least 6 hours

Child 1–18 years 1.5 mg/kg daily for 7–14 days

Note To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, calculate dose on the basis of ideal body weight

Administration

For continuous intravenous infusion
reconstitute each vial with 5 mL water for injections to produce a solution of 5 mg/mL; gently rotate to dissolve. Dilute requisite dose with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to an approximate concentration of 0.5 mg/mL; begin infusion immediately after dilution; give through an in-line filter (pore size 0.22 micron); incompatible with unfractionated heparin and hydrocortisone in glucose infusion—precipitation reported

Thymoglobuline® (Genzyme)

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, rabbit anti-human thymocyte immunoglobulin, net price 25-mg vial = £158.77

Simulect® (Novartis)
Injection, powder for reconstitution, basiliximab, net price 10-mg vial = £758.69, 20-mg vial = £842.38 (both with water for injections). For intravenous infusion

CICLOSPORIN
(Cyclosporin)

Cautions monitor kidney function—dose dependent increase in serum creatinine and urea during first few weeks may necessitate discontinuation (exclude rejection of kidney transplant); monitor liver function (see also Hepatic Impairment below); monitor blood pressure—discontinue if hypertension develops that cannot be controlled by antihypertensives; hyperuricaemia; monitor serum potassium especially in renal dysfunction (risk of hyperkalaemia); monitor serum magnesium; measure blood lipids before treatment and thereafter as appropriate; monitor whole blood ciclosporin concentration (trough level dependent on indication—consult local treatment protocol for details); use with tacrolimus specifically contra-indicated; for patients other than transplant recipients, preferably avoid other immunosuppressants (increased risk of infection and malignancies, including lymphoma and skin cancer); avoid excessive exposure to UV light, including sunlight; interactions: Appendix 1 (ciclosporin)

Additional cautions in nephrotic syndrome

Contraindicated in uncontrolled hypertension; uncontrolled infections, and malignancy; in long-term management, perform renal biopsies every 1–2 years

Additional cautions

Atopic Dermatitis and Psoriasis, section 13.5.3; Rheumatoid Arthritis, section 10.1.3

Hepatic impairment dosage adjustment based on bilirubin and liver enzymes may be needed

Renal impairment dose as in normal renal function but see Cautions above; in nephrotic syndrome reduce dose by 25–50% if serum creatinine more than 30% above baseline on more than one measurement

Pregnancy crosses placenta; see Immunosuppressant Therapy, p. 431

Breast-feeding present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, gingival hyperplasia, hepatic dysfunction, hypertension, tremor, headache, paraesthesia, fatigue, renal dysfunction (renal structural changes on long-term administration; see also under Cautions), hyperuricaemia, hyperkalaemia, hypermagnesaemia, hyperlipidaemia, hypercholesterolaemia, muscle cramps, myalgia, hypertrichosis; less commonly oedema, weight gain, signs of encephalopathy, anaemia, thrombocytopenia; rarely pancreatitis, motor polyneuropathy, menstrual disturbances, gynaecomastia, micro-angiopathic haemolytic anaemia, haemolytic uraemic syndrome, hyperglycaemia, muscle weakness, myopathy, visual disturbances secondary to benign intracranial hypertension (discontinue); also reported with infusion anaphylaxis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 3 months
Indication and dose

**Prevention of graft rejection following bone-marrow, kidney, liver, pancreas, heart, lung, and heart–lung transplantation, prophylaxis and treatment of graft-versus-host disease**
- By mouth or by intravenous infusion
  - Consult local treatment protocols for details

**Nephrotic syndrome** see also section 6.3.2, p. 371
- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–18 years 3 mg/kg twice daily, increase if necessary in corticosteroid-resistant disease; for maintenance reduce to lowest effective dose according to whole blood-ciclosporin concentrations, proteinuria, and renal function

**Refractory ulcerative colitis** section 1.5.3

**Severe psoriasis, severe eczema** section 13.5.3

### Important
Patients should be stabilised on a particular brand of oral ciclosporin because switching between formulations without close monitoring may lead to clinically important changes in blood-ciclosporin concentration. Prescribing and dispensing of ciclosporin should be by brand name to avoid inadvertent switching. If it is necessary to switch a patient to a different brand of ciclosporin, the patient should be monitored closely for changes in blood-ciclosporin concentration, serum-creatinine, blood pressure, and transplant function.

### Capsimune® (Mylan) [M]
- **Capsules**, ciclosporin 25 mg (grey), net price 30-cap pack = £13.80; 50 mg (white), 30-cap pack = £27.00; 100 mg (grey), 30-cap pack = £51.50. Counselling, administration
  - Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)
  - Note Contains ethanol
  - Counselling Total daily dose should be taken in 2 divided doses

### Deximune® (Desceco) [M]
- **Capsules**, grey, ciclosporin 25 mg, net price 30-cap pack = £13.94; 50 mg, 30-cap pack = £27.31; 100 mg 30-cap pack = £51.83. Counselling, administration
  - Note Contains ethyl lactate which is metabolised to ethanol
  - Counselling Total daily dose should be taken in 2 divided doses

### Neoral® (Novartis) [M]
- **Capsules**, ciclosporin 10 mg (yellow/white), net price 60-cap pack = £18.48; 25 mg (blue/grey), 30-cap pack = £18.39; 50 mg (yellow/white), 30-cap pack = £36.41; 100 mg (blue/grey), 30-cap pack = £69.11. Counselling, administration
  - Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)
  - Note Contains ethanol
  - Counselling Total daily dose should be taken in 2 divided doses

### Sandimun® (Novartis) [M]
- **Concentrate for intravenous infusion** (oily), ciclosporin 50 mg/mL. To be diluted before use, net price 1-mL amp = £1.94; 5-mL amp = £9.17
  - Excipients include polyoxyethylene castor oil (risk of anaphylaxis, see Excipients, p. 2)
  - Note Contains ethanol
  - Administration For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 0.5–2.5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, give over 2–6 hours; not to be used with PVC equipment; observe patient for signs of anaphylaxis for at least 30 minutes after starting infusion and at frequent intervals thereafter

### SIROLIMUS

#### Cautions
- monitor renal function when given with ciclosporin; monitor whole blood-sirolimus trough concentration (Afro-Caribbean patients may require higher doses); hyperlipidaemia (monitor lipids); monitor urine proteins; increased susceptibility to infection (especially urinary-tract infection); increased susceptibility to lymphoma and other malignancies, particularly of the skin (limit exposure to UV light); interactions: Appendix 1 (sirolimus)

#### Hepatic impairment
- monitor blood-sirolimus trough concentration; dose reduction may be necessary, consult local treatment protocol for details

#### Pregnancy
- avoid unless essential—**toxicity in animal studies**; effective contraception must be used during treatment and for 12 weeks after stopping

#### Breast-feeding
- discontinue breast-feeding

#### Side-effects
- abdominal pain, constipation, nausea, diarrhoea, ascites, stomatitis, oedema, tachycardia, hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia, hypertriglyceridaemia, venous thromboembolism, pleural effusion, pneumonitis, headache, pyrexia, proteinuria, haemolytic uraemic syndrome, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, leucopenia, neutropenia, hypokalaemia, hyperphosphataemia, hyperglycaemia, lymphocele, arthralgia, osteonecrosis, epistaxis, acne, rash, impaired healing, less commonly pancreatitis, pulmonary embolism, pulmonary haemorrhage, pericardial effusion, nephrotic syndrome, pancytopenia; rarely interstitial lung disease, alveolar proteinosis, hepatic necrosis, lymphoedema, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylactic reactions, angiodema, exfoliative dermatitis, hypersensitivity vasculitis); also reported focal segmental glomerulosclerosis, reversible impairment of male fertility

#### Licensed use
- not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose

#### See NICE guidance, p. 433
- \* By mouth
  - Consult local treatment protocols for details

### Rapamune® (Wyeth) [M]
- **Tablets**, coated, sirolimus 0.5 mg (tan), net price 30-tab pack = £69.00; 1 mg (white), 30-tab pack = £86.49; 2 mg (yellow), 30-tab pack = £172.98. Counselling, administration
  - Important The 0.5-mg tablet is not bioequivalent to the 1-mg, 2-mg, and 5-mg tablets. Multiples of 0.5-mg tablets should not be used as a substitute for other tablet strengths
  - Oral solution, sirolimus 1 mg/mL, net price 60 mL = £162.41. Counselling, administration
  - Administration food may affect absorption (give at the same time with respect to food). Mix solution with at least 60 mL water or orange juice in a glass or plastic container immediately before taking; refill container with at least 120 mL of water or orange juice and drink immediately (to ensure total dose). Do not mix with any other liquids
**TACROLIMUS**

**Cautions** monitor blood pressure, ECG (important: see cardiomyopathy below), fasting blood-glucose concentration, haematological and neurological (including visual) parameters, electrolytes, hepatic and renal function; monitor whole blood-tacrolimus trough concentration (especially during episodes of diarrhoea)—consult local treatment protocol for details; QT-interval prolongation; neurotoxicity; increased risk of infections, malignancies, and lymphoproliferative disorders; avoid excessive exposure to UV light (including sunligh); pregnancy (exclude before starting); interactions: Appendix 1 (tacrolimus)

**Skilled tasks** May affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)

**Contra-indications** hypersensitivity to macrolides; avoid concurrent administration with ciclosporin (care if patient has previously received ciclosporin)

**Hepatic impairment** dose reduction may be necessary in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—risk of premature delivery, intra-uterine growth restriction, and hyperkalaemia; toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** avoid—present in milk

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, constipation, dyspepsia, flatulence, bloating, weight changes, anorexia, gastro-intestinal inflammation, ulceration, and perforation, hepatic dysfunction, jaundice, cholestatis, ascites, bile-duct abnormalities, oedema, tachycardia, hypertension, haemorrhage, thromboembolic and ischaemic events, dyspnoea, pleural effusion, parenchymal lung disorders, sleep disturbance, tremor, headache, peripheral neuropathy, mood changes, depression, confusion, anxiety, psychosis, seizures, paraesthesia, dizziness, renal impairment, renal failure, renal tubular necrosis, urinary abnormalities, hyperglycaemia, electrolyte disturbances (including hyperkalaemia, hypokalaemia, and hyperuricaemia), blood disorders (including anaemia, leucopenia, pancytopenia, and thrombocytopenia), arthralgia, muscle cramp, visceral disturbances, photosensitivity, tinnitus, impaired hearing, alopecia, sweating, acne; *less commonly* paralytic ileus, gastro-intestinal reflux disease, peritonitis, pancreatitis, heart failure, arrhythmia, cardiac arrest, cerebrovascular accident, cardiomyopathy (important: see Cardiomyopathy below), palpitation, respiratory failure, coma, speech disorder, amnesia, paralysis, influenza-like symptoms, encephalopathy, coagulation disorders, cataract, photosensitivity, hypoglycaemia, dysmenorrhea, hypertonia, dermatitis; *rarely* pericardial effusion, respiratory distress syndrome, posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome, dehydration, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, blindness, toxic epidermal necrolysis, hirsutism; *very rarely* myasthenia, haemorrhagic cystitis, Stevens Johnson syndrome Cardiomyopathy Cardiomyopathy has been reported in children. Children should be monitored by echocardiography for hyper trophy changes—consider dose reduction or discontinuation if these occur

**Licensed use** Advagraf® not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

See under preparations and consult local treatment protocols

---

**Important**

**Adoport®, Prograf®, Modigraf®, Vivadex®, and Advagraf®** (tacrolimus): serious medication errors

There are 3 different oral formulations of tacrolimus:

- **Adoport**, **Prograf**, and **Vivadex** are immediate-release capsules taken twice daily, once in the morning and once in the evening;
- **Modigraf** granules are used to prepare an immediate-release oral suspension which is taken twice daily, once in the morning and once in the evening;
- **Advagraf** is a prolonged-release capsule that is taken once daily in the morning.

Switching between different oral formulations of tacrolimus requires careful therapeutic monitoring. Changes to oral tacrolimus therapy should be made only under the close supervision of a transplant specialist.

**Administration** For continuous intravenous infusion over 24 hours, dilute to a concentration of 4–100 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, to a total volume between 20–500 mL. Tacrolimus is incompatible with PVC

**Adoport®** (Sandoz)

Capsules, tacrolimus (as monohydrate) 500 micrograms (white/orange), net price 50-cap pack = £50.50; 1 mg (white/brown), 50-cap pack = £65.52, 100-cap pack = £131.02; 5 mg (white/orange), 50-cap pack = £242.05. Label: 23, counselling, skilled tasks

**Dose**

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

- **By mouth**
  - Neonate initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

- **By mouth**
  - Neonate initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Note** A lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high ‘trough’ concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction**, starting within 12 hours of transplantation

- **By mouth**
  - Neonate initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

---

**Atopic eczema (topical use)** section 13.5.3

---

**8.2.2 Corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants**

BNFC 2011–2012

---
Prograf® (Astellas) (Astellas)

**Capsules**, tacrolimus (as monohydrate) 500 micrograms (yellow), net price 50-cap pack = £61.88; 1 mg (white), 50-cap pack = £80.28; 100-cap pack = £160.54; 5 mg (greyish-red), 50-cap pack = £296.58. Label: 23, counselling, skilled tasks

Concentrate for intravenous infusion, tacrolimus 5 mg/mL. To be diluted before use. Net price 1-mL amp = £5.46

**Excipients** include polysorbate 80, aspartame, sorbitol base, lactose anhydrous, sodium chloride, sodium benzoate, sodium saccharin, citric acid, sodium lactate, magnesium stearate, sodium hydroxide, citric acid anhydrous, maize starch, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, magnesium oxide, simethicone, titanium dioxide (E172), polysorbate 80 (A), and sorbitol (E420).

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation, starting within 5 days of transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Note** A lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high ‘trough’ concentrations

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation

- **By continuous intravenous infusion** (only if oral route inappropriate)
- **Neonate** 50 micrograms/kg over 24 hours for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** 50 micrograms/kg over 24 hours for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation

- **By continuous intravenous infusion** (only if oral route inappropriate)
- **Neonate** 75–100 micrograms/kg over 24 hours for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** 75–100 micrograms/kg over 24 hours for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuing intravenous infusion), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction starting within 5 days of transplantation

- **By mouth**
- **Neonate** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration
- **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy Consult local treatment protocol

### Malignant disease and immunosuppression
8 Malignant disease and immunosuppression

8.2.3 Rituximab and alemtuzumab

**Vivadex** (Dexcel) (c)

Capsules, m/r, tacrolimus (as monohydrate) 500 micrograms (yellow/orange), net price 50-cap pack = £46.41; 1 mg (white/orange), 50-cap pack = £60.21; 100-cap pack = £120.41; 5 mg (red/orange), 50-cap pack = £222.44. Label: 23, counselling, skilled tasks

Modified release

*Advgrafl* is not licensed for use in children

*Advgraf* (Astellas) (c)

Capsules, m/r, tacrolimus (as monohydrate) 500 micrograms (yellow/orange), net price 50-cap pack = £35.79; 1 mg (white/orange), 50-cap pack = £71.59; 100-cap pack = £143.17; 3 mg (red/orange), 50-cap pack = £214.76; 5 mg (red/orange), 50-cap pack = £266.92. Label: 23, 25, counselling, skilled tasks

Extemporaneous formulations available see

Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation

**Neonate** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy** Consult local treatment protocol

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation

**Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation

**Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction

**Neonate** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion), adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation

**Neonate** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to whole-blood concentration

### Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy Consult local treatment protocol

**Rituximab**, a monoclonal antibody which causes lysis of B lymphocytes, has been used as a component of the treatment of post-transplantation lymphoproliferative disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, Hodgkin's lymphoma, and severe cases of resistant immune modulated disease including idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura, haemolytic anaemia, and systemic lupus erythematosus. Full resuscitation facilities should be at hand and as with other cytotoxics, treatment should be undertaken under the close supervision of a specialist.

Rituximab should be used with caution in children receiving cardiotoxic chemotherapy or with a history of cardiovascular disease; in adults exacerbation of angina, arrhythmia, and heart failure have been reported. Transient hypotension occurs frequently during infusion and antihypertensives may need to be withheld for 12 hours before infusion. Progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy (which is usually fatal or causes severe disability) has been reported in association with rituximab; children treated with rituximab should be monitored for cognitive, neurological, or psychiatric signs and symptoms. If progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy is suspected, suspend treatment until it has been excluded.

Infusion-related side-effects (including cytokine release syndrome) are reported commonly with rituximab and occur predominantly during the first infusion; they include fever and chills, nausea and vomiting, allergic reactions (such as rash, pruritus, angioedema, bronchospasm and dyspnoea), flushing and tumour pain. Children should be given paracetamol and an antihistamine before each dose of rituximab to reduce these effects. Premedication with a corticosteroid should also be considered. The infusion may have to be stopped temporarily and the infusion-related effects treated—consult product literature or local treatment protocol for appropriate management. Evidence of pulmonary infiltration and features of tumour lysis syndrome should be sought if infusion-related effects occur.

Fatalities following severe cytokine release syndrome (characterised by severe dyspnoea) and associated with features of tumour lysis syndrome have occurred 1–2 hours after infusion of rituximab. Children with a high tumour burden as well as those with pulmonary insufficiency or infiltration are at increased risk and should be monitored very closely (and a slower rate of infusion considered).

---

8.2.3 Rituximab and alemtuzumab

Rituximab should be used with caution in children receiving cardiotoxic chemotherapy or with a history of cardiovascular disease; in adults exacerbation of angina, arrhythmia, and heart failure have been reported. Transient hypotension occurs frequently during infusion and antihypertensives may need to be withheld for 12 hours before infusion. Progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy (which is usually fatal or causes severe disability) has been reported in association with rituximab; children treated with rituximab should be monitored for cognitive, neurological, or psychiatric signs and symptoms. If progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy is suspected, suspend treatment until it has been excluded.

Infusion-related side-effects (including cytokine release syndrome) are reported commonly with rituximab and occur predominantly during the first infusion; they include fever and chills, nausea and vomiting, allergic reactions (such as rash, pruritus, angioedema, bronchospasm and dyspnoea), flushing and tumour pain. Children should be given paracetamol and an antihistamine before each dose of rituximab to reduce these effects. Premedication with a corticosteroid should also be considered. The infusion may have to be stopped temporarily and the infusion-related effects treated—consult product literature or local treatment protocol for appropriate management. Evidence of pulmonary infiltration and features of tumour lysis syndrome should be sought if infusion-related effects occur.

Fatalities following severe cytokine release syndrome (characterised by severe dyspnoea) and associated with features of tumour lysis syndrome have occurred 1–2 hours after infusion of rituximab. Children with a high tumour burden as well as those with pulmonary insufficiency or infiltration are at increased risk and should be monitored very closely (and a slower rate of infusion considered).
Alemtuzumab, another monoclonal antibody that causes lysis of B and T lymphocytes, has been used in children for conditioning therapy before allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. In common with rituximab, it causes infusion-related side-effects including cytokine release syndrome (see above) and premedication with paracetamol, an antihistamine, and a corticosteroid is recommended.

### ALEMTUZUMAB

**Cautions** see notes above—for full details (including monitoring) consult product literature or local treatment protocol

**Contra-indications** for full details consult product literature

**Pregnancy** avoid; manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for 6 months after treatment in men or women

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding during treatment and for at least 4 weeks after treatment

**Side-effects** see notes above—for full details (including monitoring and management of side-effects) consult product literature

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 17 years

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

- By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

---

### INTERFERON ALFA

**Cautions** consult product literature and local treatment protocol for details; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (interferons)

**Contra-indications** consult product literature and local treatment protocol for details; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see under preparations below)

**Hepatic impairment** close monitoring in mild to moderate impairment; avoid if severe

**Renal impairment** close monitoring required in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in animal studies); effective contraception required during treatment—consult product literature

**Breast-feeding** unlikely to be harmful

**Side-effects** see notes above, consult product literature and local treatment protocols for details

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children for chronic active hepatitis B; **Roferon-A** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Induction of early regression of life-threatening corticosteroid-resistant haemangiomas of infancy

- By subcutaneous injection

Consult local treatment protocol for details

---

### RITUXIMAB

**Cautions** see notes above—but for full details (including monitoring) consult product literature or local treatment protocol

**Pregnancy** avoid unless potential benefit to mother outweighs risk of B-lymphocyte depletion in fetus—effective contraception (in both sexes) required during and for 12 months after treatment

**Breast-feeding** avoid breast-feeding during and for 12 months after treatment

**Side-effects** see notes above—but for full details (including monitoring and management of side-effects) consult product literature

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

- By intravenous infusion

Consult local treatment protocol for details

---

### MabThera® (Roche)

**Concentrate for intravenous infusion, rituximab** 10 mg/mL, net price 10-mL vial = £174.63, 50-mL vial = £873.15

**Indication and dose**

Induction of early regression of life-threatening corticosteroid resistant haemangiomas of infancy

- By subcutaneous injection

Consult local treatment protocol for details

---

### MabCampath® (Genzyme)

**Concentrate for intravenous infusion, alemtuzumab** 30 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £264.11

**Indication and dose**

Consult local treatment protocol for details

---

### Interferon alfa

Interferon alfa has shown some antitumour effect and may have a role in inducing early regression of life-threatening corticosteroid-resistant haemangiomas of infancy. Interferon alfa preparations are also used in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B, and chronic hepatitis C ideally in combination with ribavirin (section 5.3.3). Interferon alfa should always be used under the close supervision of a specialist. Side-effects are dose-related, but commonly include anorexia, nausea, influenza-like symptoms, and lethargy. Ocular side-effects and depression (including suicidal behaviour) have also been reported. Myelosuppression may occur, particularly affecting granulocyte counts. Cardiovascular problems (hypotension, hypertension, and arrhythmias), nephrotoxicity and hepatotoxicity have been reported and monitoring of hepatic function is recommended. Hypertriglyceridaemia, sometimes severe, has been observed; monitoring of lipid concentration is recommended. Other side-effects include hypersensitivity reactions, thyroid abnormalities, hyperglycaemia, alopecia, psoriasiform rash, confusion, coma and seizures, and reversible motor problems in young children. Rarely pulmonary infiltrates, pneumonitis, and pneumonia have occurred; respiratory symptoms should be investigated and if pulmonary infiltrates are suspected or lung function is impaired the discontinuation of interferon alfa should be considered.
8.2.4 Other immunomodulating drugs

**Chronic active hepatitis C infection** see under preparations below

**IntronA** (Scherer-Plough) 
Injection, interferon alfa-2b (rbe) 10 million units/mL, net price 1-mL vial = £42.35, 2.5-mL vial = £105.95. For subcutaneous injection or intravenous infusion. **Injection pen**, interferon alfa-2b (rbe), net price 15 million units/mL, 1.5-mL cartridge = £76.28; 25 million units/mL, 1.5-mL cartridge = £127.14; 50 million units/mL, 1.5-mL cartridge = £254.28. For subcutaneous injection. **Note** Each 1.5-mL multidose cartridge delivers 6 doses of 0.2 mL i.e. a total of 1.2 mL.

**Dose**
- **Chronic active hepatitis B**
  - By subcutaneous injection
    - Child 2–18 years 5–10 million units/m² 3 times weekly
- **Chronic active hepatitis C** (in combination with oral ribavirin, see p. 328)
  - By subcutaneous injection
    - Child 3–18 years 3 million units/m² 3 times weekly

**Roferon-A** (Roche)
Injection, interferon alfa-2a (rbe). Net price 6 million units/mL, 0.5-mL (3 million-unit) prefilled syringe = £14.20; 9 million units/mL, 0.5-mL (4.5 million-unit) prefilled syringe = £21.29; 12 million units/mL, 0.5-mL (6 million-unit) prefilled syringe = £28.37; 18 million units/mL, 0.5-mL (9 million-unit) prefilled syringe = £42.57; 30 million units/mL, 0.6-mL (18 million-unit) cartridge = £85.15, for use with Roferon pen device. For subcutaneous injection (cartridges, vials, and prefilled syringes) and intramuscular injection (cartridges and vials).

**Excipients** include benzy alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2).

**Dose**
- **Chronic active hepatitis B**
  - By subcutaneous injection
    - Child 2–18 years 2.5–5 million units/m² 3 times weekly; up to 10 million units/m² has been used 3 times weekly

**Interferon gamma**
Interferon gamma-1b is used to reduce the frequency of serious infection in chronic granulomatous disease and in severe malignant osteopetrosis.

### INTERFERON GAMMA-1b (Immune interferon)

**Cautions** seizure disorders (including seizures associated with fever); cardiac disease (including ischaemia, congestive heart failure, and arrhythmias); monitor before and during treatment: haematological tests (including full blood count, differential white cell count, and platelet count); blood chemistry tests (including renal and liver function tests) and urinalysis; avoid simultaneous administration of foreign proteins including immunological products (risk of exaggerated immune response); interactions: Appendix 1 (interferons)

**Driving** May impair ability to perform skilled tasks; effects may be enhanced by alcohol

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—risk of accumulation

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—risk of accumulation

**Pregnancy** manufacturers advise avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in animal studies); effective contraception required during treatment—consult product literature

**Breastfeeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting; headache, fatigue, fever; myalgia, arthralgia; rash; injection-site reactions; rarely confusion and systemic lupus erythematosus; also reported, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and raised liver enzymes

**Indication and dose**
- See notes above and under Preparations below

**Immukin** (Boehringer Ingelheim)
Injection, recombinant human interferon gamma-1b 200 micrograms/mL, net price 0.5-mL vial = £66.67

**Dose**
- By subcutaneous injection
  - Body surface area 0.5 m² or less 1.5 micrograms/kg 3 times a week
  - Body surface area greater than 0.5 m² 50 micrograms/m² 3 times a week
  - Not recommended for infant under 6 months with chronic granulomatous disease

**Canakinumab**
Canakinumab is a recombinant human monoclonal antibody that selectively inhibits interleukin-1beta receptor binding. It is licensed for the treatment of cryopyrin-associated periodic syndromes, including severe forms of familial cold auto-inflammatory syndrome (or familial cold urticaria), Muckle-Wells syndrome, and neonatal-onset multisystem inflammatory disease (also known as chronic infantile neurological cutaneous and articular syndrome). These are rare inherited auto-inflammatory disorders.

**Cautions** history of recurrent infection or predisposition to infection; monitor neutrophil count before starting treatment, 1–2 months after starting treatment, and periodically thereafter; children should receive all recommended vaccinations (including pneumococcal and inactivated influenza vaccine) before starting treatment; avoid live vaccines unless potential benefit outweighs risk—consult product literature for further information and section 14.1, p. 599

**Tuberculosis** Children should be evaluated for latent and active tuberculosis before starting treatment and monitored for signs and symptoms of tuberculosis during and after treatment

**Contra-indications** severe active infection (see also Cautions); neutropenia; concomitant use with tumour necrosis factor inhibitors (possible increased risk of infections)

**Hepatic impairment** no information available

**Renal impairment** limited information available but manufacturer advises no dose adjustment required

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk; effective contraception
required during treatment and for up to 3 months after last dose

**Breast-feeding** consider if benefit outweighs risk—
not known if present in human milk

**Side-effects** vertigo, increased susceptibility to infection, injection-site reactions

**Indication and dose**

**Cryopyrin-associated periodic syndromes**

- By subcutaneous injection
  - **Child 4–18 years**
    - Body-weight 15–40 kg: 2 mg/kg every 8 weeks. If clinical response not achieved 7 days after starting treatment, a repeat dose of 2 mg/kg can be considered; if a full response is then achieved, subsequent dosing should be 4 mg/kg every 8 weeks
  - **Body-weight over 40 kg**
    - 150 mg every 8 weeks. If clinical response not achieved 7 days after starting treatment, a repeat dose of 150 mg can be considered; if a full response is then achieved, subsequent dosing should be 300 mg every 8 weeks

**Ilaris®** *(Novartis)*

Injection, powder for reconstitution, canakinumab, net price 150-mg vial = £9927.80

**Mepact®** *(Takeda)*

Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, mifamurtide, net price 4-mg vial = £2375.00

**Mifamurtide**

Mifamurtide is licensed in children and adolescents for the treatment of high-grade, resectable, non-metastatic osteosarcoma after complete surgical resection. It is used in combination with chemotherapy.

**MIFAMURTIDE**

**Cautions** asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease—consider prophylactic bronchodilator therapy; history of autoimmune, inflammatory, or collagen disease; monitor renal function, hepatic function and clotting parameters; monitor patients with history of venous thrombosis, vasculitis, or unstable cardiovascular disorders for persistent or worsening symptoms during administration—consult product literature

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution—no information available

**Renal impairment** use with caution—no information available

**Pregnancy** avoid; effective contraception required

**Breast-feeding** avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances (including anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, constipation, abdominal pain, dyspepsia); tachycardia, hypertension, palpitations, hypotension, phlebitis; oedema, respiratory disorders (including dyspnoea, epistaxis, cough, tachypnoea, haemoptysis, pleural effusion); confusion, depression, insomnia, headache, dizziness, paraesthesia, hypoaesthesia, tremor, drowsiness, anxiety; hypokalaemia, anaemia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, granulocytopenia; haematuria, dysuria, polakiuria; muscularkeletal pain; blurred vision, vertigo, tinnitus, hearing loss, sweating, alopecia, rash, dry skin, flushing
Before initiating treatment for anaemia it is essential to determine which type is present. Iron salts may be harmful and result in iron overload if given alone to patients with anaemias other than those due to iron deficiency.

9.1 Anaemias and some other blood disorders

9.1.1 Iron-deficiency anaemias

9.1.1.1 Oral iron

9.1.1.2 Parenteral iron

9.1.2 Drugs used in megaloblastic anaemias

9.1.3 Drugs used in hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias

9.2 Fluids and electrolytes

9.2.1 Oral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance

9.2.1.1 Oral potassium

9.2.1.2 Oral sodium and water

9.2.1.3 Oral bicarbonate

9.2.2 Parenteral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance

9.2.2.1 Electrolytes and water

9.2.2.2 Plasma and plasma substitutes

9.3 Intravenous nutrition

9.4 Oral nutrition

9.4.1 Foods for special diets

9.4.2 Enteral nutrition

9.5 Minerals

9.5.1 Calcium and magnesium

9.5.1.1 Calcium supplements

9.5.1.2 Hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria

9.5.1.3 Magnesium

9.5.2 Phosphorus

9.5.2.1 Phosphate supplements

9.5.2.2 Phosphate-binding agents

9.5.3 Fluoride

9.5.4 Zinc

9.6 Vitamins

9.6.1 Vitamin A

9.6.2 Vitamin B group

9.6.3 Vitamin C

9.6.4 Vitamin D

9.6.5 Vitamin E

9.6.6 Vitamin K

9.6.7 Multivitamin preparations

9.7 Bitters and tonics

9.8 Metabolic disorders

9.8.1 Drugs used in metabolic disorders

9.8.2 Acute porphyrias

9.1 Anaemias and some other blood disorders

9.1.1 Iron-deficiency anaemias

Treatment with an iron preparation is justified only in the presence of a demonstrable iron-deficiency state. Before starting treatment, it is important to exclude any serious underlying cause of the anaemia (e.g. gastrointestinal bleeding). The possibility of thalassaemia should be considered in children of Mediterranean or Indian subcontinent descent.

Prophylaxis with an iron preparation may be appropriate in those with a poor diet, malabsorption, menorrhagia, pregnancy, in haemodialysis patients, and in the management of low birth-weight infants such as preterm neonates.

9.1.1.1 Oral iron

Iron salts should be given by mouth unless there are good reasons for using another route. Ferrous salts show only marginal differences between one another in efficiency of absorption of iron. Haemoglobin regeneration rate is little affected by the type of salt used provided sufficient iron is given, and in most patients the speed of response is not critical. Choice of preparation is thus usually decided by formulation, palatability, incidence of side-effects, and cost.
Treatment of iron-deficiency anaemia

The oral dose of elemental iron to treat deficiency is 3–6 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) daily given in 2–3 divided doses. Iron supplementation may also be required to produce an optimum response to erythropoietins in iron-deficient children with chronic renal failure or in preterm neonates. (See also Prophylaxis of iron deficiency, below.)

Prescribing

Express the dose in terms of elemental iron and iron salt and select the most appropriate preparation; specify both the iron salt and formulation on the prescription. The iron content of artificial formula feeds should also be considered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Iron salt</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Content of ferrous iron</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous fumarate</td>
<td>200 mg</td>
<td>65 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous gluconate</td>
<td>300 mg</td>
<td>35 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous sulphate</td>
<td>300 mg</td>
<td>60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous sulphate, dried</td>
<td>200 mg</td>
<td>65 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium feredetate</td>
<td>190 mg</td>
<td>27.5 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Therapeutic response

The haemoglobin concentration should rise by about 100–200 mg/100 mL (1–2 g/litre) per day or 2 g/100 mL (20 g/litre) over 3–4 weeks. When the haemoglobin is in the normal range, treatment should be continued for a further 3 months to replenish the iron stores. Epithelial tissue changes such as atrophic glossitis and koilonychia are usually improved, but the response is often slow. The most common reason for lack of response in children is poor compliance; poor absorption is rare in children.

Prophylaxis of iron deficiency

In neonates, haemoglobin and haematocrit concentrations change rapidly. These changes are not due to iron deficiency and cannot be corrected by iron supplementation. Similarly, neonatal anaemia resulting from repeated blood sampling does not respond to iron therapy.

All babies, including preterm neonates, are born with substantial iron stores but these stores can become depleted unless dietary intake is adequate. All babies require an iron intake of 400–700 nanograms daily to maintain body stores. Iron in breast milk is well absorbed but that in artificial feeds or in cow’s milk is less so. Most artificial formula feeds are sufficiently absorbed on an empty stomach, they can be taken after food to reduce gastro-intestinal side-effects; they can exacerbate diarrhoea in patients with inflammatory bowel disease.

Dose

Prophylactic iron supplementation (elemental iron 5 mg daily) may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established.

Infants with a poor diet may become anaemic in the second year of life, particularly if cow’s milk, rather than fortified formula feed, is a major part of the diet.

Compound preparations

Some oral preparations contain ascorbic acid to aid absorption of the iron, but the therapeutic advantage of such preparations is minimal and cost may be increased.

There is no justification for the inclusion of other ingredients, such as the B group of vitamins, except folic acid for pregnant women, see p. 446.

Side-effects

Gastro-intestinal irritation can occur with iron salts. Nausea and epigastric pain are dose-related, but the relationship between dose and altered bowel habit (constipation or diarrhoea) is less clear. Oral iron can exacerbate diarrhoea in patients with inflammatory bowel disease.

Iron preparations taken orally can be constipating and occasionally lead to faecal impaction. If side-effects occur, the dose may be reduced; alternatively, another iron salt may be used, but an improvement in tolerance may simply be a result of a lower content of elemental iron. The incidence of side-effects due to ferrous sulphate is no greater than with other iron salts when compared on the basis of equivalent amounts of elemental iron.

Iron preparations are an important cause of accidental overdose in children and as little as 20 mg/kg of elemental iron can lead to symptoms of toxicity. For the treatment of iron overdose, see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 30.

Counselling

Although iron preparations are best absorbed on an empty stomach, they can be taken after food to reduce gastro-intestinal side-effects; they may discolor stools.

FERROUS SULPHATE

Cautions

interactions: Appendix 1 (iron)

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Iron-deficiency anaemia, prophylaxis of iron deficiency see notes above and preparations

Ferrous Sulphate (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, coated, dried ferrous sulphate 200 mg (65 mg iron), net price 28-tab pack = £1.15

Dose

Child 6–18 years prophylactic, 1 tablet daily; therapeutic, 1 tablet 2–3 times daily, see notes above

Ironorm® Drops (Wallace Mfg)

Oral drops, ferrous sulphate 125 mg (25 mg iron)/mL, net price 15 mL = £4.95

Dose

Child 1 month–6 years prophylactic 0.3 mL daily, but see notes above

Child 6–18 years prophylactic 0.6 mL daily

FERROUS FUMARATE

Cautions

interactions: Appendix 1 (iron)

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Iron-deficiency anaemia, prophylaxis of iron deficiency see notes above and preparations

Fersaday® (Goldshield)

Tablets, brown, f/c, ferrous fumarate 322 mg (100 mg iron). Net price 28-tab pack = 79p

Dose

Child 12–18 years prophylactic, 1 tablet daily; therapeutic, 1 tablet twice daily

BNFC 2011–2012

9.1.1 Iron-deficiency anaemias

443
9.1.1 Iron-deficiency anaemias

**Fersamal®** (Goldshield)

- **Tablets**, brown, ferrous fumarate 210 mg (68 mg iron), net price 100 = £1.44

**Indication and dose**
- See notes above

**Side-effects**
- See notes above

**Cautions**
- See notes above and preparation

**Interactions**
- See notes above

**Dose**
- **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 1 tablet 1–2 times daily; therapeutic, 1 tablet 2–3 times daily

**Syrup**, brown, ferrous fumarate approx. 140 mg (45 mg iron)/5 mL. Net price 200 mL = £3.11

- **Dose**
  - **Preterm neonate** see notes above
  - **Neonate** see notes above
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** see notes above
  - **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 5 mL twice daily; therapeutic, 10 mL twice daily

**Galfer®** (Thomson & Ross)

- **Capsules**, red/green, ferrous fumarate 305 mg (100 mg iron), net price 100 = £2.00

**Indication and dose**
- See notes above and preparation

**Side-effects**
- See notes above

**Cautions**
- See notes above and preparation

**Interactions**
- See notes above

**Dose**
- **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 1 capsule daily; therapeutic, 1 capsule twice daily

**Syrup**, brown, sugar-free ferrous fumarate 140 mg (45 mg iron)/5 mL. Net price 300 mL = £5.33

- **Dose**
  - **Preterm neonate and body-weight up to 3 kg** prophylactic, 0.5 mL daily, see notes above
  - **Neonate** prophylactic and therapeutic, 0.25 mL/kg twice daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), see notes above
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** prophylactic and therapeutic, 0.25 mL/kg twice daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses); max 20 mL daily, see notes above
  - **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 10 mL once daily; therapeutic, 10 mL 1–2 times daily

**SODIUM FEREDETATE**

- **(Sodium ironedetate)**

**Indication and dose**
- Iron-deficiency anaemia, prophylaxis of iron deficiency see notes above and preparation

**Sytron®** (Archimedes)

- **Elixir**, sugar-free, sodium feredetate 190 mg equivalent to 27.5 mg of iron/5 mL. Net price 100 mL = £1.07

**Indication and dose**
- **Child 1–5 years** prophylactic, 1 mL daily; therapeutic, 2.5 mL daily
- **Child 6–12 years** therapeutic, 5 mL daily
- **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 2.5 mL daily; therapeutic, 5 mL 1–2 times daily

**FERSOUS GLUCONATE**

- **(Non-proprietary)**

**Indication and dose**
- **Iron-deficiency anaemia** see notes above and preparation

**Side-effects**
- See notes above

**Cautions**
- Interactions: Appendix 1 (iron)

**Ironous Gluconate**

- **Tablets**, red, coated, ferrous gluconate 300 mg (35 mg iron), net price 28 = £2.95

**Indication and dose**
- **Child 6–12 years** prophylactic and therapeutic, 1–3 tablets daily
- **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 2 tablets daily; therapeutic, 4–6 tablets daily in divided doses

**POLYSACCHARIDE-IRON COMPLEX**

- **Niferex®** (Tillomed)

**Indication and dose**
- **Iron-deficiency anaemia** see notes above and preparation

**Side-effects**
- See notes above

**Cautions**
- Interactions: Appendix 1 (iron)

**Dose**
- **Neonate (from dropper bottle)** 1 drop (approx. 500 micrograms iron) per 450 g body-weight 3 times daily, see notes above
- **Child 1 month–2 years** (from dropper bottle) 1 drop (approx. 500 micrograms iron) per 450 g body-weight 3 times daily, see notes above
- **Child 2–6 years** therapeutic, 2.5 mL daily
- **Child 6–12 years** therapeutic, 5 mL daily
- **Child 12–18 years** prophylactic, 2.5 mL daily; therapeutic, 5 mL 1–2 times daily (5 mL once daily if required during second and third trimester of pregnancy)

1. except 30 mL paediatric dropper bottle for prophylaxis and treatment of iron deficiency in infants born prematurely; endorse prescription ‘SLS’

**9.1.1.2 Parenteral iron**

Iron can be administered parenterally as iron dextran, iron sucrose, or ferric carboxymaltose. Parenteral iron is generally reserved for use when oral therapy is unsuccessful because the child cannot tolerate oral iron, or does not take it reliably, or if there is continuing blood loss, or in malabsorption.

Many children with chronic renal failure who are receiving haemodialysis (and some who are receiving peritoneal dialysis) also require iron by the intravenous route on a regular basis (see also Erythropoietins, section 9.1.3).

With the exception of children with severe renal failure receiving haemodialysis, parenteral iron does not produce a faster haemoglobin response than oral iron provided that the oral iron preparation is taken reliably and is absorbed adequately.
Anaphylactic reactions can occur with parenteral iron complexes; facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available. Depending on the preparation, a small test dose may be required. If children complain of acute symptoms particularly nausea, back pain, breathlessness, or develop hypotension, the infusion should be stopped.

**FERRIC CARBOXYMALTOSE**

A ferric carboxymaltose complex containing 5% (50 mg/mL) of iron

**Cautions** hypersensitivity can occur with parenteral iron and facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available; oral iron should not be given concomitantly; allergic disorders including asthma and eczema; infection (discontinue if ongoing bacteremia)

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; avoid in conditions where iron overload increases risk of impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid in first trimester; crosses the placenta in animal studies; may influence skeletal development

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances; headache, dizziness; rash; injection-site reactions; less commonly hypotension, flushing, chest pain, peripheral oedema, hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis), fatigue, paraesthesia, malaise, pyrexia, rashes, myalgias, arthralgia, back pain, pruritus, and urticaria; rarely dyspnoea

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 14 years

**Indication and dose**

Iron-deficiency anaemia see notes above

- By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
  - Calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit, consult product literature

**Cosmofer** (Vitaline) ▼

Injection, iron (as iron dextran) 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £7.97; 10-mL amp = £39.85

**IRON SUCCROSE**

A complex of ferric hydroxide with sucrose containing 2% (20 mg/mL) of iron

**Cautions** oral iron therapy should not be given until 5 days after last injection; injection (discontinue if ongoing bacteremia)

**Anaphylaxis** Anaphylactic reactions can occur with parenteral iron and a test dose is recommended before the first dose; the patient should be carefully observed for 15 minutes. Facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available

**Contra-indications** history of allergic disorders including asthma, eczema, and anaphylaxis

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; avoid in conditions where iron overload increases risk of impairment

**Pregnancy** avoid in first trimester

**Side-effects** taste disturbances; less commonly nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, hypotension, tachycardia, flushing, palpitation, chest pain, bronchospasm, dyspnoea, headache, dizziness, fever, myalgia, pruritus, rash, and injection-site reactions; rarely peripheral oedema, anaphylactic reactions (see Anaphylaxis above), fatigue, asthenia, and paraesthesia; confusion, arthralgia, and increased sweating also reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Iron-deficiency anaemia see notes above

- By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion
  - Calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit, consult product literature

**Venofer** (Vifor) ▼

Injection, iron (as iron sucrose) 20 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £9.35

9.1.2 Drugs used in megaloblastic anaemias

Megaloblastic anaemias are rare in children; they may result from a lack of either vitamin B₁₂, or folate, and it is essential to establish in every case which deficiency is present and the underlying cause. In emergencies, when delay might be dangerous, it is sometimes necessary to
administer both substances after the bone marrow test while plasma assay results are awaited. Normally, however, appropriate treatment should not be instituted until the results of tests are available. Vitamin B₁₂ is used in the treatment of megaloblastosis caused by prolonged nitrous oxide anaesthesia, which inactivates the vitamin, and in the rare disorders of congenital transcobalamin II deficiency, methylmalonic acidemia and homocystinuria (see section 9.8.1). Vitamin B₁₂ should be given prophylactically after total ileal resection.

Apart from dietary deficiency, all other causes of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency are attributable to malabsorption. There is little place for the use of low-dose vitamin B₁₂ orally and none for vitamin B₁₂ intrinsic factor complexes given by mouth. Vitamin B₁₂ in large oral doses [unlicensed] may be effective.

Hydroxocobalamin has completely replaced cyanocobalamin as the form of vitamin B₁₂ of choice for therapy; it is retained in the body longer than cyanocobalamin and thus for maintenance therapy can be given at intervals of up to 3 months. Treatment is generally initiated with frequent administration of intramuscular injections to replenish the depleted body stores. Thereafter, maintenance treatment, which is usually for life, can be instituted. There is no evidence that doses larger than those recommended provide any additional benefit in vitamin B₁₂ neuropathy.

Folic acid has few indications for long-term therapy since most causes of folate deficiency are self-limiting or will yield to a short course of treatment. It should not be since most causes of folate deficiency are self-limiting or

For prophylaxis in chronic haemolytic states, malabsorption or in renal dialysis, folic acid is given daily or sometimes weekly, depending on the diet and the rate of haemolysis. Folic acid is also used for the prevention of methotrexate-induced side-effects in juvenile idiopathic arthritis (see also section 10.1.3, p. 508), severe Crohn’s disease (see section 1.5.3, p. 54), and severe psoriasis (see section 13.5.3, p. 571).

For prophylaxis in pregnancy, see Prevention of Neural Tube Defects below.

Folic acid is actively excreted in breast milk and is well absorbed by the infant. It is also present in milk but not known to be harmful. Serum and red cell folate concentrations fall after delivery and urinary losses are high, particularly in low birth-weight neonates. Although symptomatic deficiency is rare in the absence of malabsorption or prolonged diarrhoea, it is common for neonatal units to give supplements of folic acid to all preterm neonates from 2 weeks of age until full-term corrected age is reached, particularly if heated breast milk is used without an artificial formula fortifier.

Prevention of neural tube defects Folic acid supplements taken before and during pregnancy can reduce the occurrence of neural tube defects. The risk of a neural tube defect occurring in a child should be assessed and folic acid given as follows:

Women at a low risk of conceiving a child with a neural tube defect should be advised to take folic acid as a medicinal or food supplement at a dose of 400 micrograms daily before conception and until week 12 of pregnancy. Women who have not been taking folic acid and who suspect they are pregnant should start at once and continue until week 12 of pregnancy.

Couples are at a high risk of conceiving a child with a neural tube defect if either partner has a neural tube defect (or either partner has a family history of neural tube defects), if they have had a previous pregnancy affected by a neural tube defect, or if the woman has coeliac disease (or other malabsorption state), diabetes mellitus, sickle-cell anaemia, or is taking antiepileptic medicines (see also section 4.8.1).

There is no justification for prescribing multiple-ingredient vitamin preparations containing vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid.

**HYDROXOCOBALAMIN**

**Cautions** should not be given before diagnosis fully established but see also notes above; **interactions** Appendix 1 (hydroxocobalamin)

**Breast-feeding** present in milk but not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** nausea, headache, dizziness; fever,
hypersensitivity reactions (including rash and pruritus); injection-site reactions; hypokalaemia and thrombocytosis during initial treatment; chromaturia

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age not specified by manufacturers); not licensed for use in inborn errors of metabolism

**Indication and dose**

Macrocystic anaemia without neurological involvement

- By intramuscular injection

**Child 1 month–18 years** initially 250 micrograms–1 mg 3 times a week for 2 weeks then 250 micrograms once weekly until blood count normal, then 1 mg every 3 months
Macrocytic anaemia with neurological involvement
• By intramuscular injection
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 1 mg on alternate days until no further improvement, then 1 mg every 2 months

Prophylaxis of macrocytic anaemias associated with vitamin B₁₂ deficiency
• By intramuscular injection
  Child 1 month–18 years 1 mg every 2–3 months

Leber’s optic atrophy
• By intramuscular injection
  Initially 1 mg daily for 2 weeks, then 1 mg twice weekly until no further improvement, thereafter 1 mg every 1–3 months

Congenital transcobalamin II deficiency
• By intramuscular injection
  Neonate 1 mg 3 times a week, reduce after 1 year to 1 mg once weekly or as appropriate
  Child 1 month–18 years 1 mg 3 times a week, reduce after 1 year to 1 mg once weekly or as appropriate

Methylmalonic acidaemia and homocystinuria
• By intramuscular injection
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 1 mg daily for 5–7 days, reduce according to response to maintenance dose of up to 1 mg once or twice weekly

Methylmalonic acidaemia, maintenance once intramuscular response established
• By mouth
  Child 1 month–18 years 5–10 mg once daily or twice weekly
  Note Some children do not respond to the oral route

Cyanide poisoning
See Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 32

Indication and dose
Folate supplementation in neonates (see notes above)
• By mouth
  Neonate 50 micrograms once daily or 500 micrograms once weekly

Megaloblastic anaemia due to folate deficiency (see notes above)
• By mouth
  Neonate initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily for up to 4 months
  Child 1 month–1 year initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. 5 mg) for up to 4 months; up to 10 mg daily may be required in malabsorption states
  Child 1–18 years 5 mg daily for 4 months (until term in pregnant women); up to 15 mg daily may be required in malabsorption states

Haemolytic anaemia; metabolic disorders
• By mouth
  Child 1 month–12 years 2.5–5 mg once daily
  Child 12–18 years 5–10 mg once daily

Prophylaxis of folate deficiency in dialysis
• By mouth
  Child 1 month–12 years 250 microgram/kg (max. 10 mg) once daily
  Child 12–18 years 5–10 mg once daily

Prevention of methotrexate side-effects in juvenile idiopathic arthritis
• By mouth
  Child 2–18 years 1 mg daily or 5 mg once weekly, adjusted according to local guidelines

Prevention of methotrexate side-effects in severe Crohn’s disease or severe psoriasis
• By mouth
  See section 1.5.3 and section 13.5.3

Prevention of neural tube defects
• By mouth
  See notes above

Hydroxocobalamin (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, hydroxocobalamin 1 mg/mL. Net price 1-mL amp = 74p
Brands include Cobalin-H®, Neo-Cytamen®
Injection, hydroxocobalamin 2.5 mg/mL, 2 mL
Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
Administration For administration by mouth, injection solution may be given orally, it will not have prolonged effect via this route
Note The BP directs that when Vitamin B₁₂ injection is prescribed or demanded hydroxocobalamin injection shall be dispensed or supplied
Powder available from specialist importing companies

Folic Acid (Non-proprietary) 
Tablets, folic acid 400 micrograms, net price 90-tab pack = £2.37; 5 mg, 28-tab pack = £1.00
Syrup, folic acid 2.5 mg/5 mL, net price 150 mL = £9.16; 400 micrograms/5 mL, 150 mL = £1.40
Brands include Folicare®, Lexpec® (sugar-free)
1. Can be sold to the public provided daily doses do not exceed 500 micrograms

FOLIC ACID
Cautions should never be given alone for vitamin B₁₂ deficiency states (may precipitate subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord); interactions: Appendix 1 (folates)
Side-effects rarely gastrointestinal disturbances
Licensed use unlicensed for limiting methotrexate toxicity

9.1.3 Drugs used in hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias
Anabolic steroids (see BNF section 6.4.3), pyridoxine, antilymphocyte immunoglobulin, and various corticos-
Erythropoietins—haemoglobin concentration
In chronic kidney disease, the use of erythropoietins can be considered in a child with anaemia. The aim of treatment is to relieve symptoms of anaemia and to avoid the need for blood transfusion. The optimum haemoglobin concentration is dependent on the child’s age and factors such as symptoms, co-morbidities, and patient preferences. The haemoglobin concentration should not be increased beyond that which provides adequate control of symptoms of anaemia. In adults, overcorrection of haemoglobin concentration with erythropoietins in those with chronic kidney disease may increase the risk of serious cardiovascular events and death; haemoglobin concentrations higher than 12 g/100 mL should be avoided in children.

For MHRA/CHM advice relating to adults, see BNF section 9.1.3.

Pure red cell aplasia
There have been very rare reports of pure red cell aplasia in patients treated with erythropoietins. In patients who develop a lack of efficacy with erythropoietin therapy and with a diagnosis of pure red cell aplasia, treatment with erythropoietins must be discontinued and testing for erythropoietin antibodies considered. Patients who develop pure red cell aplasia should not be switched to another form of erythropoietin.

**Erythropoietins**

Epoetins (recombinant human erythropoietins) are used to treat the anaemia associated with erythropoietin deficiency in chronic renal failure, see below.

Epoetin beta is also used for the prevention of anaemia in preterm neonates of low birth-weight, a therapeutic response may take several weeks. Only unpreserved formulations should be used as other preparations may contain benzyl alcohol (see Excipients, p. 2).

There is insufficient information to support the use of erythropoietins in children with leukaemia or in those receiving cancer chemotherapy.

Darbepoetin is a glycosylated derivative of epoetin; it persists longer in the body and can be administered less frequently than epoetin.

Other factors, such as iron or folate deficiency, that contribute to the anaemia of chronic renal failure should be corrected before treatment and monitored during therapy. Supplementation of iron may improve the response in resistant patients and in preterm neonates (see section 9.1.1.1). Aluminium toxicity, concurrent infection, or other inflammatory disease can impair the response to erythropoietin.

**Antilymphocyte immunoglobulin** given intravenously through a central line over 12–18 hours each day for 5 days produces a response in about 50% of cases of acquired aplastic anaemia; the response rate may be increased when ciclosporin is given as well. Severe reactions are common in the first 2 days and profound immunosuppression can occur; antilymphocyte immunoglobulin should be given under specialist supervision with appropriate resuscitation facilities. Alternatively, oxymetholone tablets (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809) may be used in aplastic anaemia at a dose of 1–5 mg/kg daily for 3 to 6 months.

It is unlikely that dietary deficit of pyridoxine (section 9.6.2) produces clinically relevant haematological effects. However, certain forms of sideroblastic anaemia respond to pharmacological doses, possibly reflecting its role as a co-enzyme during haemoglobin synthesis. Pyridoxine is indicated in both idiopathic acquired and hereditary sideroblastic anaemias. Although complete cures have not been reported, some increase in haemoglobin can occur with high doses. Reversible sideroblastic anaemias respond to treatment of the underlying cause but pyridoxine is indicated in pregnancy, haemolytic anaemias, or during isoniazid treatment.

Corticosteroids (section 6.3) have an important place in the management of haematological disorders including autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, idiopathic thrombocytopenias (section 9.1.4) and neutropenias, and major transfusion reactions. They are also used in chemotherapy schedules for many types of lymphoma, lymphoid leukaemias, and paraproteinaemias, including multiple myeloma.
BNFC 2011–2012 9.1.3 Drugs used in hypoplastic, haemolytic, renal anaemias 449

*Note* Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 15 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose. When changing route give same dose then adjust according to weekly or fortnightly haemoglobin measurements. Adjust doses not more frequently than every 2 weeks during maintenance treatment.

**Aranesp** (Amgen) [HN]

**Injection**, prefilled syringe, darbepoetin alfa, 25 micrograms/mL, net price 0.4 mL (10 micrograms) = £14.68; 40 micrograms/mL, 0.375 mL (15 micrograms) = £22.03; 0.5 mL (20 micrograms) = £29.37; 100 micrograms/mL, 0.3 mL (30 micrograms) = £44.05, 0.4 mL (40 micrograms) = £58.73, 0.5 mL (50 micrograms) = £73.41; 200 micrograms/mL, 0.3 mL (60 micrograms) = £88.09, 0.5 mL (100 micrograms) = £146.81, 0.65 mL (130 micrograms) = £199.86; 500 micrograms/mL, 0.3 mL (150 micrograms) = £220.22, 0.6 mL (300 micrograms) = £440.43, 1 mL (500 micrograms) = £734.05

**Injection** (Aranesp® SureClick), prefilled disposable injection device, darbepoetin alfa, 40 micrograms/mL, net price 0.5 mL (20 micrograms) = £29.36; 100 micrograms/mL, net price 0.4 mL (40 micrograms) = £58.72; 200 micrograms/mL, net price 0.3 mL (60 micrograms) = £88.09, 0.4 mL (80 micrograms) = £117.45, 0.5 mL (100 micrograms) = £146.81; 500 micrograms/mL, net price 0.3 mL (150 micrograms) = £220.22, 0.6 mL (300 micrograms) = £440.43, 1 mL (500 micrograms) = £734.05

**Epoetin alfa**

**Binocrit** (Sandoz) [HN]

**Injection**, prefilled syringe, epoetin alfa, net price 1000 units = £5.09; 2000 units = £10.18; 3000 units = £15.27; 4000 units = £20.36; 5000 units = £25.46; 6000 units = £30.55; 8000 units = £40.73; 10 000 units = £50.91

**Note** Biosimilar Medicine, p. 2

**Dose**

Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in children on haemodialysis (see also notes above)

- By intravenous injection over 1–5 minutes
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 50 units/kg 3 times weekly at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance dose, body-weight under 10 kg usually 75–150 units/kg 3 times weekly, body-weight 10–30 kg usually 60–150 units/kg 3 times weekly, body-weight over 30 kg usually 30–100 units/kg 3 times weekly

**Note** Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 15 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

**Eprex** (Janssen) [HN]

**Injection**, prefilled syringe, epoetin alfa, net price 1000 units = £5.53; 2000 units = £11.07; 3000 units = £16.60; 4000 units = £22.13; 5000 units = £27.66; 6000 units = £33.19; 8000 units = £44.25; 10 000 units = £55.31; 20 000 units = £110.62; 30 000 units = £199.11; 40 000 units = £265.48. An auto-injector device is available for use with prefilled syringes

**Dose**

Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in children on haemodialysis (see also notes above)

- By intravenous injection over 1–5 minutes
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 50 units/kg 3 times weekly adjusted according to response in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times weekly at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance dose, body-weight under 10 kg usually 75–150 units/kg 3 times weekly, body-weight 10–30 kg usually 60–150 units/kg 3 times weekly, body-weight over 30 kg usually 30–100 units/kg 3 times weekly

**Nutrition and blood**
9.1.3 Drugs used in hypoplastic, haemolytic, renal anaemias

**NeoRecormon**

Injection, prefilled syringe, epoetin beta, net price
500 units = £3.75; 2000 units = £14.98; 3000 units = £22.47; 4000 units = £29.96; 5000 units = £37.47; 6000 units = £44.94; 10 000 units = £70.14; 20 000 units = £140.28; 30 000 units = £224.69

Excipients include phenylalanine up to 5 mg/vial (section 9.4.1), benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients p. 2)

**NeoRecormon** (Roche) injection, prefilled syringe, epoetin beta, net price
500 units = £3.75; 2000 units = £14.98; 3000 units = £22.47; 4000 units = £29.96; 5000 units = £37.47; 6000 units = £44.94; 10 000 units = £70.14; 20 000 units = £140.28; 30 000 units = £224.69

Excipients include phenylalanine up to 300 micrograms/vial (section 9.4.1)

**Dose**

**Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure (see also notes above)**

- **By subcutaneous injection**
  
  **Neonate** initially 20 units/kg/3 times weekly for 4 weeks, increased according to response at intervals of 4 weeks in steps of 20 units/kg/3 times weekly; total weekly dose may be divided into daily doses; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks; total weekly maintenance dose may be given as a single dose or in 3 or 7 divided doses; max. 720 units/kg/weekly

- **By intravenous injection over 2 minutes**
  
  **Neonate** initially 40 units/kg/3 times weekly for 4 weeks, increased according to response to 80 units/kg/3 times weekly; total weekly dose may be divided into daily doses; maintenance dose, if needed adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks; total weekly maintenance dose may be given as a single dose or in 3 or 7 divided doses; max. 720 units/kg/weekly

**Note**

Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration approaches or exceeds 12 g/100 mL. If haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose.

**Prevention of anaemias of prematurity in neonates with birth-weight of 0.75–1.5 kg and gestational age under 34 weeks**

- **By subcutaneous injection (of single-dose, unpre-
virmed injection)**
  
  **Neonate** 250 units/kg/3 times weekly preferably starting within 3 days of birth and continued for 6 weeks

**Multidose injection**

Powder for reconstitution, epoetin beta, net price 50 000-unit vial = £374.48 (with solvent)

Excipients include phenylalanine up to 5 mg/vial (section 9.4.1), benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients p. 2)

**Note** Avoid contact of reconstituted injection with glass; use only plastic materials

**Dose**

**Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure (see also notes above)**

- **By subcutaneous injection**
  
  **Child 3–18 years** initially 20 units/kg/3 times weekly for 4 weeks, increased according to response at intervals of 4 weeks in steps of 20 units/kg/3 times weekly; total weekly dose may be divided into daily doses; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks; total weekly maintenance dose may be given as a single dose or in 3 or 7 divided doses; max. 720 units/kg/weekly

- **By intravenous injection over 2 minutes**
  
  **Child 3–18 years** initially 40 units/kg/3 times weekly for 4 weeks, increased according to response to 80 units/kg/3 times weekly after 4 weeks, with further increases if needed at intervals of 4 weeks in steps of 20 units/kg/3 times weekly; total weekly dose may be divided into daily doses; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks; max. 720 units/kg/weekly

**Note**

Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration approaches or exceeds 12 g/100 mL. If haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose.

**Epoetin zeta**

Retacrit® (Hospira) injection, prefilled syringe, epoetin zeta, net price
1000 units = £5.66; 2000 units = £11.31; 3000 units = £16.97; 4000 units = £22.63; 5000 units = £28.28; 6000 units = £33.94; 8000 units = £45.25; 10 000 units = £56.57; 20 000 units = £203.64; 30 000 units = £305.46; 40 000 units = £407.27

Excipients include phenylalanine up to 500 micrograms/vial (section 9.4.1)

**BioSimilar Medicine, p. 2**

**Dose**

**Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in children on haemodialysis (see also notes above)**

- **By intravenous injection over 1–5 minutes**
  
  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 50 units/kg/3 times weekly adjusted according to response in steps of 25 units/kg/3 times weekly at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance dose, body-weight under 10 kg usually 75–150 units/kg/3 times weekly, body-weight 10–30 kg usually 60–150 units/kg/3 times weekly, body-weight over 30 kg usually 30–100 units/kg/3 times weekly

**Note** Avoid increasing haemoglobin concentration at a rate exceeding 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks

**Sickle-cell disease**

Sickle-cell disease is caused by a structural abnormality of haemoglobin resulting in deformed, less flexible red blood cells. Acute complications in the more severe forms include sickle-cell crisis, where infarction of the microvasculature and blood supply to organs results in severe pain. Sickle-cell crisis requires hospitalisation, intravenous fluids, analgesia (section 4.7), and treatment of any concurrent infection. Chronic complica-
Iron overload

Severe acute iron overload can occur in aplastic and other refractory anaemias, mainly as the result of repeated blood transfusions. It is a particular problem in refractory anaemias with hypoplastic bone marrow, especially thalassaemia major, where excessive iron absorption from the gut and inappropriate iron therapy can add to the tissue siderosis.

Iron overload associated with haemochromatosis can be treated with repeated venesection. Venesection may also be used for patients who have received multiple transfusions and whose bone marrow has recovered. Where venesection is contra-indicated, and in thalassaemia, the long-term administration of the iron chelating compound deferiprone (section 8.1) is useful. Subcutaneous infusions of deferiprone are given over 8–12 hours, 3–7 times a week; the dose should reflect the degree of iron overload. The initial dose should not exceed 30 mg/kg. For established overload the dose is usually between 20 and 50 mg/kg daily. Deferiprone (up to 2 g per unit of blood) may also be given at the time of blood transfusion, provided that the deferiprone is not added to the blood and is not given through the same line as the blood (but the two may be given through the same cannula).

Iron excretion induced by deferiprone is enhanced by ascorbic acid (vitamin C, section 9.6.3) 100–200 mg daily by mouth; it should be given separately from food since it also enhances iron absorption. Ascorbic acid should not be given to children with cardiac dysfunction; in children with normal cardiac function ascorbic acid should be introduced 1 month after starting deferiprone.

Deferiprone infusion can be used to treat aluminium overload in dialysis patients; theoretically 100 mg of deferiprone binds with 4.1 mg of aluminium.

Deferasirox, an oral iron chelator, is licensed for the treatment of chronic iron overload in children over 6 years with thalassaemia major who receive frequent blood transfusions (more than 7 mL/kg/month of packed red blood cells). It is also licensed for chronic iron overload when deferiprone is contra-indicated or inadequate in children with thalassaemia major who receive infrequent blood transfusions (less than 7 mL/kg/month of packed red blood cells), in children with other anaemias, and in children aged 2 to 5 years.

The Scottish Medicines Consortium (p. 3) has advised (January 2007) that deferasirox is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of chronic iron overload associated with the treatment of rare acquired or inherited anaemias requiring recurrent blood transfusions. It is not recommended for patients with myelodysplastic syndromes.

Deferiprone, an oral iron chelator, is licensed for the treatment of iron overload in children over 6 years of age with thalassaemia major in whom deferiprone is contra-indicated or is inadequate. Blood dyscrasias, particularly agranulocytosis, have been reported with deferiprone.
monthly; risk of gastro-intestinal ulceration and haemorrhage; platelet count less than 50 × 10^9/litre; consider treatment interruption if unexplained cytopenia occurs; not recommended in conditions which may reduce life expectancy (e.g. high-risk myelodysplastic syndromes); history of liver cirrhosis; test liver function before treatment, then every 2 weeks during the first month, and then monthly; measure baseline serum-creatinine and monitor renal function weekly during the first month of treatment and monthly thereafter; test for proteinuria monthly. **interactions:** Appendix 1 (deferasirox)

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available; avoid in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** reduce dose by 10 mg/kg if serum-creatinine increased above age-appropriate limits or estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 90 mL/minute/1.73 m² on 2 consecutive occasions—interrupt treatment if deterioration in renal function persists after dose reduction; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances (including ulceration and fatal haemorrhage); headache; proteinuria; pruritus, rash; ulceration and fatal haemorrhage; platelet count less than 50 x 10^9/litre; pyrexia, pharyngitis, glucosuria, renal tubulopathy, disturbances of hearing and vision (including lens opacity and maculopathy), and skin pigmentation; hepatic failure, acute renal failure, blood disorders (including agranulocytosis, neutropenia, pancytopenia, and thrombocytopenia), hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis and angioedema), and alopecia also reported

**Contra-indications** history of agranulocytosis or recurrent neutropenia

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises monitor liver function—interrupt treatment if persistent elevation in serum alanine aminotransferase

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid before intended conception and during pregnancy—teratogenic and embryotoxic in animal studies; contraception advised in girls of child-bearing potential

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances (reducing dose and increasing gradually may improve tolerance), increased appetite; headache; red-brown urine discoloration; neutropenia, agranulocytosis; zinc deficiency; arthropathy

**Licensed use** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

**Iron overload in thalassaemia major**

**By mouth**

**Child 6–18 years** 25 mg/kg 3 times daily (max. 100 mg/kg daily)

**Exjade® (Novartis) ✽**

**Dispersible tablets**, deferasirox 125 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £117.60; 250 mg, 28-tab pack = £235.20; 500 mg, 28-tab pack = £470.40. Label: 13, 22, counselling, administration

**Counselling** Tablets should be dispersed in water, orange juice, or apple juice; if necessary, resuspend residue and swallow

**DEFERIPRONE**

**Cautions** monitor neutrophil count weekly and discontinue treatment if neutropenia develops

**Blood disorders** Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of neutropenia and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever or sore throat develop

**Contra-indications** history of agranulocytosis or recurrent neutropenia

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises monitor liver function—interrupt treatment if persistent elevation in serum alanine aminotransferase

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid before intended conception and during pregnancy—teratogenic and embryotoxic in animal studies; contraception advised in girls of child-bearing potential

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, headache, pyrexia, growth retardation and bone disorders (see Cautions), arthralgia, myalgia, hearing disturbances, injection-site reactions; rarely diarrhoea, hepatic impairment, hypotension (especially when given too rapidly by intravenous injection), anaphylaxis, Yersinia and mucormycosis infections, blood dyscrasias (including thrombocytopenia and leucopenia), leg cramps, bone pain, visual disturbances (including lens opacity and retinopathy), rash; very rarely acute respiratory distress, neurological disturbances (including dizziness, neuropathy, con-
vulsions, and paraesthesia), renal impairment; muscle spasms also reported

**Indication and dose**

**Chronic iron overload** see notes above

**Aluminium overload in dialysis patients**
- By intravenous infusion
  - Child 1 month–18 years 5 mg/kg once weekly

**Iron poisoning**
See Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 30

**Administration** For *intravenous or subcutaneous infusion*, reconstitute powder with Water for Injection to a concentration of 100 mg/mL; dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. In *haemodialysis* or *haemofiltration* administer over the last hour of dialysis (may be given via the dialysis fistula). *Intraperitoneal*: may be added to dialysis fluid. In CAPD give prior to the last exchange of the day.

**Note** For full details and warnings relating to administration, consult product literature

**Desferrioxamine mesilate** (Non-proprietary) (Novartis) Injection, powder for reconstitution, desferrioxamine mesilate, net price 500-mg vial = £4.26; 2-g vial = £17.05

**Desferal®** (Novartis) Injection, powder for reconstitution, desferrioxamine mesilate, net price 500-mg vial = £4.67, 2-g vial = £18.66

### 9.1.4 Drugs used in platelet disorders

**Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura** Acute idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura is usually self-limiting in children. A corticosteroid, such as prednisolone (p. 376), is sometimes used if idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura does not resolve spontaneously or if it is associated with severe cutaneous symptoms or mucous membrane bleeding; corticosteroid treatment should not be continued longer than 14 days regardless of the response.

**Immunoglobulin** preparations (section 14.5) may be used in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura or where a temporary rapid rise in platelets is needed, as in pregnancy or pre-operatively; they are often used in preference to a corticosteroid. Anti-D immunoglobulin is licensed for the management of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.

Other therapy that has been tried under specialist supervision in refractory idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura includes azathioprine (section 8.2.1), cyclophosphamide (section 8.1.1), vincristine (section 8.1.4), and ciclosporin (section 8.2.2). Rituximab is also used in specialist centres but experience of its use in children is limited. For patients with chronic severe thrombocytopenia refractory to other therapy, tranexamic acid (section 2.11) may be given to reduce the severity of haemorrhage.

**Splenectomy** is considered in chronic thrombocytopenic purpura if a satisfactory platelet count is not achieved with regular immunoglobulin infusions, if there is a relapse on withdrawing or reducing the dose of corticosteroid, and if other therapies are considered inappropriate.

**Essential thrombocythaemia** Anagrelide reduces platelets in essential thrombocythaemia in patients at risk of thrombo-haemorrhagic events who have not responded adequately to other drugs or who cannot tolerate other drugs.

---

**ANAGRELIDE**

**Cautions** cardiovascular disease—assess cardiac function before and during treatment; concomitant aspirin in patients at risk of haemorrhage; monitor full blood count (monitor platelet count every 2 days for 1 week, then weekly until maintenance dose established), liver function, serum creatinine, and urea; interactions: Appendix 1 (anagrelide)

**Skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution in mild impairment; avoid in moderate to severe impairment

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid (toxicity in animal studies)

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** gastro-intestinal disturbances; palpitation, tachycardia, fluid retention; headache, dizziness, fatigue; anaemia; rash; less commonly pancreatitis, gastro-intestinal haemorrhage, congestive heart failure, hypertension, arhythmias, syncope, chest pain, dyspnoea, sleep disturbances, paraesthesia, hypoesthesia, depression, nervousness, confusion, amnesia, fever, weight changes, impotence, blood disorders, myalgia, arthralgia, epistaxis, dry mouth, alopecia, skin discoloration, and pruritus; rarely gas-tritis, colitis, postural hypotension, angina, myocardial infarction, vasodilatation, pulmonary infiltrates, migraine, drowsiness, impaired coordination, dysarthria, asthenia, tinnitus, renal failure, nocturia, visual disturbances, and gingival bleeding; allergic alveolitis and hepatitis also reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Essential thrombocythaemia in at-risk children** who have not responded adequately to other therapy or who are intolerant of it (initiated under specialist supervision)
- **By mouth**
  - Child 7–18 years initially 500 micrograms daily adjusted according to response in steps of 500 micrograms daily at weekly intervals to max. 10 mg daily (max. single dose 2.5 mg); usual dose range 1–3 mg daily in divided doses

**Xagrid®** (Shire) ▼ (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, anagrelide (as hydrochloride), 500 micrograms, net price 100–cap pack = £337.14. Counselling, skilled tasks, see above
9.1.5 G6PD deficiency

Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency is highly prevalent in individuals originating from most parts of Africa, from most parts of Asia, from Oceania, and from Southern Europe; it can also occur, rarely, in any other individuals. G6PD deficiency is more common in males than it is in females.

Individuals with G6PD deficiency are susceptible to developing acute haemolytic anaemia when they take a number of common drugs. They are also susceptible to developing acute haemolytic anaemia when they eat fava beans (broad beans, *Vicia faba*); this is termed favism and can be more severe in children or when the fresh fava beans are eaten raw.

When prescribing drugs for children with G6PD deficiency, the following three points should be kept in mind:

- G6PD deficiency is genetically heterogeneous; susceptibility to the haemolytic risk from drugs varies; thus, a drug found to be safe in some G6PD-deficient individuals may not be equally safe in others;
- manufacturers do not routinely test drugs for their effects in G6PD-deficient individuals;
- the risk and severity of haemolysis is almost always dose-related.

The lists below should be read with these points in mind. Ideally, information about G6PD deficiency should be available before prescribing a drug listed below. However, in the absence of this information, the possibility of haemolysis should be considered, especially if the child belongs to a group in which G6PD deficiency is common.

A very few G6PD-deficient individuals with chronic non-spherocytic haemolytic anaemia have haemolysis even in the absence of an exogenous trigger. These children must be regarded as being at high risk of severe exacerbation of haemolysis following administration of any of the drugs listed below.

### Drugs with possible risk of haemolysis in some G6PD-deficient individuals

- **Aspirin** (acceptable up to a dose of at least 1 g daily in most G6PD-deficient individuals)
- **Chloroquine** (acceptable in acute malaria and malaria chemoprophylaxis)
- **Menadione**, water-soluble derivatives (e.g. menadiol sodium phosphate)
- **Probenecid** [not on UK market]
- **Quinidine** (acceptable in acute malaria) [not on UK market]
- **Quinine** (acceptable in acute malaria)

*Note* Naphthalene in mothballs also causes haemolysis in individuals with G6PD-deficiency.

### Drugs used in neutropenia

Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (rhG-CSF) stimulates the production of neutrophils and may reduce the duration of chemotherapy-induced neutropenia and thereby reduce the incidence of associated sepsis; there is as yet no evidence that it improves overall survival. **Filgrastim** (unglycosylated rhG-CSF) and **lenograstim** (glycosylated rhG-CSF) have similar effects; both have been used in a variety of clinical settings, including cytotoxic-induced neutropenia, and neutropenia following bone marrow transplantation, but they do not have any clear-cut routine indications. In congenital neutropenia filgrastim usually increases the neutrophil count with an appropriate clinical response. Prolonged use may be associated with an increased risk of myeloid malignancy.

Treatment with granulocyte-colony stimulating factors should only be prescribed by those experienced in their use.

#### Neonatal neutropenia

Filgrastim has been used to treat sepsis-induced neutropenia in preterm neonates. There is no clear evidence that granulocyte-colony stimulating factors improve survival or long-term outcomes.

#### Cautions

Granulocyte-colony stimulating factors should be used with caution in patients with pre-malignant or malignant myeloid conditions. Full blood counts (including differential white cell count and platelet count) should be monitored. Treatment should be withdrawn in patients who develop signs of pulmonary infiltration. There have been reports of pulmonary infiltrates leading to acute respiratory distress syndrome—patients with a history of pulmonary infiltrates or pneumonia may be at higher risk. Granulocyte-colony stimulating factors should be used with caution in children with sickle-cell disease. Spleen size should be monitored during treatment as there is a risk of splenomegaly and rupture.
BNFC 2011–2012

Pregnancy There have been reports of toxicity in animal studies and manufacturers advise not to use granulocyte-colony stimulating factors during pregnancy unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk.

Breast-feeding There is no evidence for the use of granulocyte-colony stimulating factors during breast-feeding and manufacturers advise avoiding use.

Side-effects Side-effects of granulocyte-colony stimulating factors include gastro-intestinal disturbances, anorexia, headache, asthenia, fever, musculoskeletal pain, bone pain, rash, alopecia, injection-site reactions, thrombocytopenia, and leucocytosis. Less commonly interstitial pneumonia (see Cautions above), cutaneous vasculitis, and acute febrile neutrophilic dermatosis have rarely been reported.

FILGRASITIM (Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor, G-CSF)

Cautions see notes above; also regular morphological and cytogenetic bone-marrow examinations recommended in severe congenital neutropenia (possible risk of myelodysplastic syndromes or leukaemia); secondary acute myeloid leukaemia; osteoporotic bone disease (monitor bone density if given for more than 6 months); interactions: Appendix 1 (filgrastim)

Contra-indications severe congenital neutropenia (Kostman’s syndrome) with abnormal cytogenetics

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also mucositis, splenic enlargement, hepatomegaly, transient hypotension, epistaxis, urinary abnormalities (including dysuria, proteinuria, and haematuria), osteoporosis, exacerbation of rheumatoid arthritis, anaemia, transient decrease in blood glucose, pseudogout, and raised uric acid; very rarely splenic rupture

Licensed use not licensed for treatment of glycoprotein storage disease or neonatal neutropenia

Indication and dose

Cytotoxic-induced neutropenia
- Preferably by subcutaneous injection or by intravenous infusion (over 30 minutes)
- Child 1 month–18 years 5 micrograms/kg daily started not less than 24 hours after cytotoxic chemotherapy, continued until neutrophil count in normal range, usually for up to 14 days (up to 38 days in acute myeloid leukaemia)

Myeloablative therapy followed by bone-marrow transplantation
- By intravenous infusion over 30 minutes or over 24 hours or by subcutaneous infusion over 24 hours
- Child 1 month–18 years 10 micrograms/kg daily started not less than 24 hours following cytotoxic chemotherapy (and within 24 hours of bone-marrow infusion), then adjusted according to absolute neutrophil count (consult product literature and local protocol)

BNFC 2011–2012

9.1.6 Drugs used in neutropenia

9.1.6.1 Granulocyte-colony stimulating factors

Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells for autologous infusion, used alone
- By subcutaneous injection or by subcutaneous infusion over 24 hours
- Child 1 month–18 years 10 micrograms/kg daily for 5–7 days

Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells for autologous infusion following adjunctive myelosuppressive chemotherapy (to improve yield)
- By subcutaneous injection
- Child 1 month–18 years 5 micrograms/kg daily, started the day after completion of chemotherapy and continued until neutrophil count in normal range; for timing of leucopheresis consult product literature

Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells in normal donors for allogeneic infusion
- By subcutaneous injection
- Child over 16 years 10 micrograms/kg daily for 4–5 days; for timing of leucopheresis consult product literature

Severe chronic neutropenia
- By subcutaneous injection
- Child 1 month–18 years in severe congenital neutropenia, initially 12 micrograms/kg daily in single or divided doses (initially 5 micrograms/kg daily in idiopathic or cyclic neutropenia), adjusted according to response (consult product literature and local protocol)

Persistent neutropenia in HIV infection
- By subcutaneous injection
- Child 1 month–18 years initially 1 microgram/kg daily, increased as necessary until absolute neutrophil count in normal range (usual max. 4 micrograms/kg daily), then adjusted to maintain absolute neutrophil count in normal range (consult product literature)

Neonatal neutropenia
- By subcutaneous injection

Neonate 10 micrograms/kg daily, discontinue if white cell count exceeds 50 x 10⁹/litre

Glycogen storage disease type 1b
- By subcutaneous injection
- 5 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted as necessary

Administration For subcutaneous or intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% to a concentration of not less than 15 micrograms/mL; to dilute to a concentration of 2–15 micrograms/mL, add albumin solution (human albumin solution) to produce a final albumin solution of 2–15 micrograms/mL; not compatible with Sodium Chloride solutions

Neupogen® (Amgen) injection, filgrastim 30 million units (300 micrograms)/mL, net price 1-mL vial = £58.56

Injection (Singleject®), filgrastim 60 million units (600 micrograms)/mL, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £58.56; 96 million units (960 micrograms)/mL, 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £93.40
Nivestim® (Hospira) \(\text{\textregistered}\) Injection, prefilled syringe, filgrastim, net price 12 million-units (120 micrograms)/0.2 mL = £36.00; 30 million-units (300 micrograms)/0.5 mL = £58.00; 48 million-units (480 micrograms)/0.5 mL = £93.00

Note Biosimilar medicine, p. 2

Ratiograstim® (Ratiopharm UK) \(\text{\textregistered}\) Injection, prefilled syringe, filgrastim, net price 30 million-units (300 micrograms)/0.5 mL = £62.26; 48 million-units (480 micrograms)/0.8 mL = £99.29

Note Biosimilar medicine, p. 2

Tevagrastim® (TEVA UK) \(\text{\textregistered}\) Injection, prefilled syringe, filgrastim, net price 30 million-units (300 micrograms)/0.5 mL = £62.25; 48 million-units (480 micrograms)/0.8 mL = £99.29

Note Biosimilar medicine, p. 2

Zarzio® (Sandoz) \(\text{\textregistered}\) Injection, prefilled syringe, filgrastim, net price 30 million-units (300 micrograms)/0.5 mL = £59.00; 48 million-units (480 micrograms)/0.5 mL = £94.00

Note Biosimilar medicine, p. 2

LENOGRASTIM
(Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor, rHuG-CSF)

Cautions see notes above

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; also splenic rupture and toxic epidermal necrolysis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for cytotoxic-induced neutropenia, mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells (monotherapy or adjunctive therapy), or following peripheral stem cells transplantation

Indication and dose

Following peripheral stem cells or bone-marrow transplantation

- By intravenous infusion over 30 minutes or by subcutaneous injection
  Child 2–18 years 150 micrograms/m\(^2\) daily started the day after transplantation, continued until neutrophil count stable in acceptable range (max. 28 days)

Cytotoxic-induced neutropenia

- By subcutaneous injection
  Child 2–18 years 150 micrograms/m\(^2\) daily started the day after completion of chemotherapy, continued until neutrophil count stable in acceptable range (max. 28 days)

Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells, used alone

- By subcutaneous injection
  Child 2–18 years 10 micrograms/kg daily for 4–6 days (5–6 days in healthy donors)

Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells following adjunctive myelo-suppressive chemotherapy (to improve yield)

- By subcutaneous injection
  Child 2–18 years 150 micrograms/m\(^2\) daily, started 1–5 days after completion of chemotherapy and continued until neutrophil count in acceptable range; for timing of leukopheresis consult product literature

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of not less than 2 micrograms/mL (Granocyte-13) or 2.5 micrograms/mL (Granocyte-34) with Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Granocyte® (Chugai) \(\text{\textregistered}\) Injection, powder for reconstitution, lenograstim, net price 13.4 million-unit (105-microgram) vial = £40.11; 33.6 million-unit (263-microgram) vial = £62.54 (both with 1-mL prefilled syringe for injections)

Excipients include phenylalanine (section 9.4.1)

9.2 Fluids and electrolytes

The following tables give a selection of useful electrolyte values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrolyte concentrations—intravenous fluids</th>
<th>Millimoles per litre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intravenous infusion</td>
<td>Na(^+) K(^+) HCO(_3) (-) Cl(^-) Ca(^{2+})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal plasma values</td>
<td>142 4.5 26 103 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Chloride 0.9%</td>
<td>150 — — 150 —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Sodium Lactate (Hartmann’s)</td>
<td>131 5 29 111 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Chloride 0.45% and Glucose 5%</td>
<td>75 — — 75 —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium Chloride 0.15% and Sodium Chloride 0.9%</td>
<td>— 20 — 20 —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium Chloride 0.15% and Glucose 5%</td>
<td>150 20 — 170 —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium Chloride 0.3% and Glucose 5%</td>
<td>— 40 — 40 —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium Chloride 0.3% and Sodium Chloride 0.9%</td>
<td>150 40 — 190 —</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To correct metabolic acidosis

| Sodium Bicarbonate 1.26% | 150 — 150 — |
| Sodium Bicarbonate 8.4% for cardiac arrest | 1000 — 1000 — |
| Sodium Lactate (m/6) | 167 — 167 — |
Electrolyte content—gastro-intestinal secretions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of fluid</th>
<th>Millimoles per litre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H+</td>
<td>Na+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric</td>
<td>40–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary</td>
<td>120–140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatic</td>
<td>120–140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small bowel</td>
<td>120–140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Faeces, vomit, or aspiration should be saved and analysed where possible if abnormal losses are suspected; where this is impracticable the approximations above may be helpful in planning replacement therapy.

9.2.1 Oral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance

9.2.1.1 Oral potassium

Compensation for potassium loss is especially necessary:
- in children in whom secondary hyperaldosteronism occurs, e.g. renal artery stenosis, renal tubule disorder, the nephrotic syndrome, and severe heart failure;
- in children with excessive losses of potassium in the faeces, e.g. chronic diarrhoea associated with intestinal malabsorption or laxative abuse;
- in those taking digoxin or anti-arrhythmic drugs, where potassium depletion may induce arrhythmias.

Measures to compensate for potassium loss may be required during long-term administration of drugs known to induce potassium loss (e.g. corticosteroids). Potassium supplements are seldom required with the small doses of diuretics given to treat hypertension; potassium-sparing diuretics (rather than potassium supplements) are recommended for prevention of hypokalaemia due to diuretics such as furosemide or the thiazides when these are given to eliminate oedema.

Dosage If potassium salts are used for the prevention of hypokalaemia, then doses of potassium chloride 1–2 mmol/kg (usual max. 50 mmol potassium) daily by mouth are suitable in patients taking a normal diet. Smaller doses must be used if there is renal insufficiency to reduce the risk of hyperkalaemia. Potassium salts cause nausea and vomiting and poor compliance is a major limitation to their effectiveness (small divided doses may minimise gastric irritation); when appropriate, potassium-sparing diuretics are preferable (see also above). Regular monitoring of plasma-potassium concentration is essential in those taking potassium supplements. When there is established potassium depletion larger doses may be necessary, the quantity depending on the severity of any continuing potassium loss (monitoring of plasma-potassium concentration and specialist advice would be required). Potassium depletion is frequently associated with chloride deficiency and with metabolic alkalosis, and these disorders require correction.

Administration Potassium salts are preferably given as a liquid (or effervescent) preparation, rather than modified-release tablets; they should be given as the chloride (the use of effervescent potassium tablets BPC 1968 should be restricted to hyperchloraemic states, section 9.2.1.3). Potassium chloride solutions suitable for use by mouth in neonates are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809; they should be used with care because they are hypertonic and can damage the gastric mucosa.

Salt substitutes A number of salt substitutes which contain significant amounts of potassium chloride are readily available as health food products (e.g. LoSalt® and Ruthmol®). These should not be used by patients with renal failure as potassium intoxication may result.

POTASSIUM CHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above; cardiac disease; with modified-release preparations, intestinal stricture, history of peptic ulcer, hiatus hernia; interactions: Appendix 1 (potassium salts)

Contra-indications plasma-potassium concentration above 5 mmol/litre

Renal impairment close monitoring required—risk of hyperkalaemia; avoid in severe impairment

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, flatulence; with modified-release preparations, gastro-intestinal obstruction, ulceration, and bleeding also reported

Indication and dose

Potassium depletion
- By mouth

| Neonate 0.5–1 mmol/kg K+ twice daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), adjusted according to plasma-potassium concentration |
| Child 1 month–18 years 0.5–1 mmol/kg K+ twice daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), adjusted according to plasma-potassium concentration |

Note Do not confuse Effervescent Potassium Tablets BPC 1968 (section 9.2.1.3) with effervescent potassium chloride tablets. Effervescent Potassium Tablets BPC 1968 do not contain chloride ions and their use should be restricted to hyperchloraemic states (section 9.2.1.3).

Kay-Cee-L® (Geistlich) Syrup, sugar-free, red, potassium chloride 7.5% (1 mmol/mL each of K+ and Cl−); net price 500 mL = £4.07. Label: 21
9 Nutrition and blood

Polystyrene sulphonate resins

Cautions
- Impaction of resin with excessive dosage or inadequate dilution; monitor for electrolyte disturbances (stop if plasma-potassium concentration below 5 mmol/litre); sodium-containing resin in congestive heart failure, hypertension, and oedema; interactions: Appendix 1 (polystyrene sulphonate resins)

Contra-indications
- Obstructive bowel disease; neonates with reduced gut motility; calcium-containing resin in hyperparathyroidism, multiple myeloma, sarcoidosis, or metastatic carcinoma

Renal impairment
- Use sodium-containing resin with caution

Pregnancy
- Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

Brezoffing
- Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

Side-effects
- Faecal impaction following rectal administration, gastro-intestinal concretions following oral administration, intestinal necrosis reported with concomitant use of sorbitol, gastric irritation, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, constipation (discontinue treatment—avoid magnesium-containing laxatives), diarrhoea, hypomagnesaemia; gastro-intestinal obstruction, ulceration, necrosis, and ischaemic colitis also reported; with calcium-containing resin, hypercalcaemia (including in dialysed patients and occasionally those with renal impairment); with sodium-containing resin, sodium retention, hypocalcaemia

Indication and dose

Hyperkalaemia associated with anuria or severe oliguria, and in dialysis patients
- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–18 years 125–250 mg/kg (max. 15 g) 3–4 times daily
- By rectum
  - Neonate 125–250 mg/kg repeated as necessary every 6–8 hours. Irrigate colon to remove resin after 6–12 hours
  - Child 1 month–18 years 125–250 mg/kg repeated as necessary every 6–8 hours. Irrigate colon to remove resin after 6–12 hours

Administration
- By mouth: administer in water or as a paste—do not give with fruit squash, which has a high potassium content.
- By rectum: mix 1 g of resin with 5–10 mL of a methylcellulose solution. Water may be used but retention is more difficult.

Calcium Resonium® (Sanofi-Aventis)
- Powder, buff, calcium polystyrene sulphonate, net price 300 g = £68.47. Label: 13

Resonium A® (Sanofi-Aventis)
- Powder, buff, sodium polystyrene sulphonate, net price 454 g = £67.50. Label: 13

Sodium chloride

Indication and dose
- See also section 9.2.2

Sodium chloride is indicated in states of sodium depletion. In preterm neonates in the first few weeks of life and in chronic conditions associated with mild or moderate degrees of sodium depletion, e.g. in salt-losing bowel or renal disease, oral supplements of sodium chloride (section 9.2.1.3) may be sufficient. Sodium chloride solutions suitable for use by mouth in neonates are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809; they should be used with care because they are hypertonic. Supplementation with sodium chloride may be required to replace losses in children with cystic fibrosis particularly in warm weather.
Oral rehydration therapy (ORT)

Diarrhoea in children is usually self-limiting, however, in children under 6 months of age, and more particularly in those under 3 months, symptoms of dehydration may be less obvious and there is a risk of rapid and severe deterioration. Intestinal absorption of sodium and water is enhanced by glucose (and other carbohydrates). Replacement of fluid and electrolytes lost through diarrhoea can therefore be achieved by giving solutions containing sodium, potassium, and glucose or another carbohydrate such as rice starch.

Oral rehydration solutions should:

- enhance the absorption of water and electrolytes;
- replace the electrolyte deficit adequately and safely;
- contain an alkalinising agent to counter acidosis;
- be slightly hypo-osmolar (about 250 mmol/litre) to prevent the possible induction of osmotic diarrhoea;
- be simple to use in hospital and at home;
- be palatable and acceptable, especially to children;
- be readily available.

It is the policy of the World Health Organization (WHO) to promote a single oral rehydration solution but to use it flexibly (e.g. by giving extra water between drinks of oral rehydration solution to moderately dehydrated infants).

Oral rehydration solutions used in the UK are lower in sodium (50–60 mmol/litre) than the WHO formulation since, in general, patients suffer less severe sodium loss. Rehydration should be rapid over 3 to 4 hours (except in hypernatraemic dehydration in which case rehydration should occur more slowly over 12 hours). The patient should be reassessed after initial rehydration and if still dehydrated rapid fluid replacement should continue.

Once rehydration is complete further dehydration is prevented by encouraging the patient to drink normal volumes of an appropriate fluid and by replacing continuing losses with an oral rehydration solution; in infants, breast-feeding or formula feeds should be offered between oral rehydration drinks.

For intravenous rehydration see section 9.2.2.
Nutrition and blood

Where drugs orally.

Sodium bicarbonate may affect the stability or absorption of other drugs if administered at the same time. If possible, allow 1–2 hours before administering other drugs orally.

Where hyperchloraemic acidosis is associated with potassium deficiency, as in some renal tubular and gastro-intestinal disorders it may be appropriate to give oral potassium bicarbonate, although acute or severe deficiency should be managed by intravenous therapy.

**SODIUM BICARBONATE**

**Cautions** see notes above; avoid in respiratory acidosis; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (antacids)

**Indication and dose**

- **Renal acidosis** (see also notes above)
  - *By mouth*
    - Neonate initially 1–2 mmol/kg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to response
    - Child 1 month–18 years initially 1–2 mmol/kg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to response
  - **Metabolic acidosis** section 9.2.2.1
  - **Renal hyperkalaemia** section 9.2.2.1

**Sodium Bicarbonate** (Non-proprietary)

- **Capsules**, sodium bicarbonate 500 mg (approx. 6 mmol each of Na⁺ and HCO₃⁻), net price 56-cap pack = £5.16
- **Tablets**, sodium bicarbonate 600 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £2.48

**Important** Oral solutions of sodium bicarbonate are required occasionally; these need to be obtained from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809, and the strength of sodium bicarbonate should be stated on the prescription.

**POTASSIUM BICARBONATE**

**Cautions** cardiac disease; interactions: Appendix 1 (potassium salts)

**Contra-indications** hypochloraemia; plasma-potassium concentration above 5 mmol/litre

**Renal impairment** close monitoring required—high risk of hyperkalaemia; avoid in severe impairment

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, and flatulence

Potassium Tablets, Effervescent (Non-proprietary)

Effervescent tablets, potassium bicarbonate 500 mg, potassium acid tartrate 300 mg, each tablet providing 6.5 mmol of K⁺. To be dissolved in water before administration. Net price 56 = £33.38. Label: 13, 21

**Note** These tablets do not contain chloride; for effervescent tablets containing potassium and chloride, see under Potassium Chloride, section 9.2.1.1

**9.2.2 Parenteral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance**

**9.2.2.1 Electrolytes and water**

Solutions of electrolytes are given intravenously, to meet normal fluid and electrolyte requirements or to replenish substantial deficits or continuing losses when it is not possible or desirable to use the oral route. When intravenous administration is not possible, fluid (as sodium chloride 0.9% or glucose 5%) can also be given subcutaneously by hypodermoclysis.

In an individual patient the nature and severity of the electrolyte imbalance must be assessed from the history and clinical and biochemical examination. Sodium, potassium, chloride, magnesium, phosphate, and water depletion can occur singly and in combination with or without disturbances of acid-base balance; for reference to the use of magnesium and phosphates, see section 9.5.

Isotonic solutions may be infused safely into a peripheral vein. Solutions more concentrated than plasma, for example 15% glucose, are best given through an indwelling catheter positioned in a large vein.

**Maintenance fluid requirements** in children are usually derived from the relationship that exists between body-weight and metabolic rate; the figures in the table below may be used as a guide outside the neonatal period. The glucose requirement is that needed to minimise gluconeogenesis from amino acids obtained as substrate from muscle breakdown. Maintenance fluids are intended only to provide hydration for a short period until enteral or parenteral nutrition can be established.

It is usual to meet these requirements by using a standard solution of sodium chloride and glucose. Solutions containing 20 mmol/litre of potassium chloride meet usual potassium requirements when given in the suggested volumes; adjustments may be needed if there is an inability to excrete fluids or electrolytes, excessive renal loss or continuing extra-renal losses. The exact requirements depend upon the nature of the clinical situation and types of losses incurred; see Caution on dilutional hyponatraemia below.
Fluid requirements for children over 1 month:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body-weight</th>
<th>24-hour fluid requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Under 10 kg</td>
<td>100 mL/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10–20 kg</td>
<td>100 mL/kg for the first 10 kg + 50 mL/kg for each 1 kg body-weight over 10 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 20 kg</td>
<td>100 mL/kg for the first 10 kg + 50 mL/kg for each 1 kg body-weight between 10–20 kg + 20 mL/kg for each 1 kg body-weight over 20 kg (max. 2 litres in females, 2.5 litres in males)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Important: The baseline fluid requirements shown in the table above should be adjusted to take account of factors that reduce water loss (e.g. increased antidiuretic hormone, renal failure, hyperthermia, and high ambient humidity) or increase water loss (e.g. pyrexia or burns).

Caution: During parenteral hydration, fluids and electrolytes should be monitored closely and any disturbance corrected by slow infusion of an appropriate solution. The volume of fluid infused should take into account the possibility of reduced fluid loss owing to increased antidiuretic hormone and factors such as renal failure, hyperthermia, and high humidity.

Dilutional hyponatraemia is a rare but potentially fatal risk of parenteral hydration. It may be caused by inappropriate use of hypotonic fluids such as sodium chloride 0.18% and glucose 4% intravenous infusion, especially in the postoperative period when antidiuretic hormone secretion is increased. Dilutional hyponatraemia is characterized by a rapid fall in plasma-sodium concentration leading to cerebral oedema and seizures; any child with severe hyponatraemia or rapidly changing plasma-sodium concentration should be referred urgently to a paediatric high dependency facility.

Safe practice: Sodium chloride 0.18% and glucose 4% intravenous infusion fluid should not generally be used for fluid replacement in children because of the risk of hyponatraemia; availability of this infusion should be restricted to critical care and specialist wards, such as renal, liver, and cardiac units. Local guidelines on intravenous fluids should be consulted.

Replacement therapy: initial intravenous replacement fluid is generally required if the child is over 10% dehydrated, or if 5–10% dehydrated and oral or enteral rehydration is not tolerated or possible. Oral rehydration is adequate, if tolerated, in the majority of those less than 10% dehydrated. Subsequent fluid and electrolyte requirements are determined by clinical assessment of fluid balance.

Neonates: Neonates lose water through the skin and nose, particularly if preterm or if the skin is damaged. The basic fluid requirement for a term baby in average ambient humidity is 40–60 mL/kg/day plus urinary losses. Preterm babies have very high transepidermal losses particularly in the first few days of life; they may need more fluid replacement than full term babies and up to 180 mL/kg/day may be required. Local guidelines for fluid management in the neonatal period should be consulted.

Intravenous sodium

Intravenous sodium chloride in isotonic (0.9%) solution provides the most important extracellular ions in near physiological concentrations and is indicated in sodium depletion. It may be given for initial treatment of acute fluid loss and to replace ongoing gastro-intestinal losses from the upper gastro-intestinal tract. Intravenous sodium chloride is commonly given as a component of maintenance and replacement therapy, usually in combination with other electrolytes and glucose, see notes above. Sodium chloride solutions should be used cautiously in renal insufficiency, cardiac failure, cardio-respiratory diseases, hepatic cirrhosis and in children receiving glucocorticoids. Hyponatraemia with serious consequences may occur if maintenance and replacement fluids do not meet sodium requirements (see Caution, dilutional hyponatraemia, above).

Chronic hyponatraemia should ideally be corrected by fluid restriction. However, if sodium chloride is required, the deficit should be corrected slowly to avoid the risk of osmotic demyelination syndrome; the rise in plasma-sodium concentration should be no more than 10 mmol/litre in 24 hours.

Sodium chloride and glucose solutions are indicated when there is combined water and sodium depletion. A 1:1 mixture of isotonic sodium chloride and 5% glucose allows some of the water (free of sodium) to enter body cells which suffer most from dehydration while the sodium salt with a volume of water determined by the normal plasma Na⁺ remains extracellular. Maintenance fluid should accurately reflect daily requirements and close monitoring is required to avoid fluid and electrolyte imbalance. Illness or injury increase the secretion of anti-diuretic hormone and therefore the ability to excrete excess water may be impaired. Injudicious use of hypotonic solutions such as sodium chloride 0.18% and glucose 4% may also cause dilutional hyponatraemia especially in children (see Caution on dilutional hyponatraemia, above); if necessary, guidance should be sought from a clinician experienced in the management of fluid and electrolytes.

Combined sodium, potassium, chloride, and water depletion may occur, for example, with severe diarrhoea or persistent vomiting; replacement is carried out with sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9% and glucose intravenous infusion 5% with potassium as appropriate.

Compound sodium lactate (Hartmann's solution) can be used instead of isotonic sodium chloride solution during or after surgery, or in the initial management of the injured or wounded.

Neonates: The sodium requirement for most healthy neonates is 3 mmol/kg daily. Preterm neonates, particularly below 30 weeks gestation, may require up to 6 mmol/kg daily. Hyponatraemia may be caused by excessive renal loss of sodium; it may also be dilutional and restriction of fluid intake may be appropriate. Sodium supplementation is likely to be required if the serum sodium concentration is significantly reduced.

Hypernatraemia may also occur, most often due to dehydration (e.g. breast milk insufficiency). Severe
9.2.2 Parenteral preparations for fluid & electrolyte imbalance  BNFC 2011–2012

Hyponatraemia and hypernatraemia can cause fits and rarely brain damage. Sodium in drug preparations, delivered via continuous infusions, or in infusions to maintain the patency of intravascular or umbilical lines, can result in significant amounts of sodium being delivered, e.g. 1 mL/hour of 0.9% sodium chloride infused over 24 hours is equivalent to 3.6 mmol/day of sodium).

**SODIUM CHLORIDE**

**Cautions** restrict intake in impaired renal function, cardiac failure, hypertension, peripheral and pulmonary oedema, toxoaemia of pregnancy; see also notes above

**Side-effects** administration of large doses may give rise to sodium accumulation and oedema

**Indication and dose**

**Electrolyte imbalance** see notes above, also section 9.2.1.2

**Sodium Chloride** (Non-proprietary) (£1.04; 50-mL amp = £3.63

**Intravenous infusion**, usual strength sodium chloride 0.9% (9 g, 150 mmol each of Na⁺ and Cl⁻ /litre), this strength being supplied when normal saline for injection is requested. Net price 2-mL amp = 32p; 5-mL amp = 38p; 10-mL amp = 52p; 20-mL amp = £1.04; 50-mL amp = £3.63

In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes, are available

**Note** The term ‘normal saline’ should not be used to describe sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%; the term ‘physiological saline’ is acceptable but it is preferable to give the composition (i.e. sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%).

---

**With other ingredients**

**Note** See above for warning on hyponatraemia

**Sodium Chloride and Glucose** (Non-proprietary) (£1.50

**Intravenous infusion**, usual strength sodium chloride 0.18% (Na⁺ and Cl⁻ each 30 mmol/litre), glucose 4% in 500-mL packs and sometimes other sizes are available

**Intravenous infusion**, sodium chloride 0.45% (Na⁺ and Cl⁻ each 75 mmol/litre), glucose 5% in 500-mL packs and sometimes other sizes are available

**Intravenous infusion**, sodium chloride 0.9% (Na⁺ and Cl⁻ each 150 mmol/litre), glucose 5% in 500- and 1000-mL packs and sometimes other sizes are available

**Ringer’s Solution** (Non-proprietary) (£3.63

Calcium chloride (dihydrate) 322 micrograms, potassium chloride 300 micrograms, sodium chloride 8.6 mg/mL, providing the following ions (in mmol/litre), Ca²⁺ 2.2, K⁺ 4, Na⁺ 147, Cl⁻ 156

In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes, are available

**Sodium Lactate, Compound** (Non-proprietary) (£1.04

**Hartmann’s Solution; Ringer-Lactate Solution**

**Intravenous infusion**, sodium chloride 0.6%, sodium lactate 0.32%, potassium chloride 0.04%, calcium chloride 0.027% (containing Na⁺ 131 mmol, K⁺ 5 mmol, Ca²⁺ 2 mmol, HCO₃⁻ (as lactate) 29 mmol, Cl⁻ 111 mmol/litre)

In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes, are available

---

**Intravenous glucose**

Glucose solutions are used mainly to replace water deficit and should not be given alone except when there is no significant loss of electrolytes; prolonged administration of glucose solutions without electrolytes can lead to hyponatraemia and other electrolyte disturbances. Water depletion (dehydration) tends to occur when losses are not matched by a comparable intake, as may occur in coma or dysphagia.

Water loss rarely exceeds electrolyte losses but this can occur in fevers, hyperthyroidism, and in uncommon water-losing renal states such as diabetes insipidus or hypercalcaemia. The volume of glucose solution needed to replace deficits varies with the severity of the disorder; the rate of infusion should be adjusted to return the plasma-sodium concentration to normal over 48 hours.

Glucose solutions are also used to correct and prevent hypoglycaemia and to provide a source of energy in those too ill to be fed adequately by mouth; glucose solutions are a key component of parenteral nutrition (section 9.3).

Glucose solutions are given with insulin for the emergency management of hyperkalaemia (see p. 458). They are also given, after correction of hyperglycaemia, during treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis, when they must be accompanied by continuous insulin infusion (section 6.1.3).

Injections containing more than 10% glucose can be irritant and should be given into a central venous line; however, solutions containing up to 12.5% can be administered for a short period into a peripheral line.

---

**GLUCOSE**

(Dextrose Monohydrate)

**Note** Glucose BP is the monohydrate but Glucose Intravenous Infusion BP is a sterile solution of anhydrous glucose or glucose monohydrate, potency being expressed in terms of anhydrous glucose

**Side-effects** glucose injections especially if hypertonic may have a low pH and may cause venous irritation and thrombophlebitis

**Indication and dose**

**Fluid replacement** see notes above

**Provision of energy** section 9.3

**Hypoglycaemia** section 6.1.4

**Glucose** (Non-proprietary) (£1.50

**Intravenous infusion**, glucose or anhydrous glucose (potency expressed in terms of anhydrous glucose), usual strengths 5% (50 mg/mL), 10% (100 mg/mL), and 20% (200 mg/mL); 20% solution, net price 20-mL amp = £2.04; 50% solution¹, 20-mL amp = 95 p, 50-mL vial = £2.13

In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes and strengths, are available; also available Minijet® Glucose, 50% in 50-mL disposable syringe²

¹. The restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency

². This preparation is not recommended for infants
**Potassium Chloride**

**Cautions** for peripheral intravenous infusion the concentration of solution should not usually exceed 3 g/litre (potassium salts); contraindications: Appendix 1

**Renal impairment** close monitoring required—high risk of hyperkalaemia; avoid in severe impairment

**Side-effects** fast infusion toxic to heart

**Indication and dose**

**Electrolyte imbalance** see also oral potassium supplements, section 9.2.1.1

- By slow intravenous infusion
  - Depending on the deficit or the daily maintenance requirements, see also notes above

**Neonate** 1–2 mmol/kg daily

**Child** 1 month–18 years 1–2 mmol/kg daily

**Administration** see notes above

**Potassium Chloride and Glucose (Non-proprietary)**

Intravenous infusion, usual strength potassium chloride 0.15% (1.5 g/litre) with sodium chloride 0.9% (9 g/litre), containing K+ 20 mmol, Na+ 150 mmol, and Cl− 170 mmol/litre

In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes, are available

**Potassium Chloride, Sodium Chloride, and Glucose (Non-proprietary)**

Intravenous infusion, sodium chloride 0.45% (4.5 g, Na+ 75 mmol/litre) with 5% of anhydrous glucose and usually sufficient potassium chloride to provide K+ 10–40 mmol/litre (to be specified by the prescriber)

In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes are available

**Potassium Chloride (Non-proprietary)**

Sterile concentrate, potassium chloride 15% (150 mg, approximately 2 mmol each of K+ and Cl−/mL). Net price 10-mL amp = 48p

Solutions containing 10 and 20% of potassium chloride are also available in both 5- and 10-mL ampoules

**Important** Must be diluted with not less than 50 times its volume of Sodium Chloride 0.9% or other suitable diluent and mixed well; see Safe Practice, above

**Bicarbonate and trometamol**

Sodium bicarbonate is used to control severe metabolic acidosis (pH < 7.1) particularly that caused by loss of bicarbonate (as in renal tubular acidosis or from excessive gastro-intestinal losses). Mild metabolic acidosis associated with volume depletion should first be managed by appropriate fluid replacement because acidosis usually resolves as tissue and renal perfusion are restored. In more severe metabolic acidosis or when the acidosis remains unresponsive to correction of anoxia or hypovolaemia, sodium bicarbonate (1.26%) can be infused over 3–4 hours with plasma-pH and electrolyte monitoring. In severe shock (section 2.7.1), for example in cardiac arrest, metabolic acidosis can develop without sodium depletion; in these circumstances sodium bicarbonate is best given intravenously as a small volume of hypertonic solution, such as 8.4%; plasma pH and electrolytes should be monitored. For chronic acidotic states, sodium bicarbonate can be given by mouth (section 9.2.1.3).

Trometamol (tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, THAM), an organic buffer, corrects metabolic acidosis by causing an increase in urinary pH and an osmotic diuresis. It is indicated when sodium bicarbonate is unsuitable as in carbon dioxide retention, hypernatraemia, or renal impairment. Respiratory support may be required because trometamol induces respiratory depression. It is also used during cardiac bypass surgery and, very rarely, in cardiac arrest.
Renal hyperkalaemia
- By slow intravenous injection
  - Neonate 1 mmol/kg daily
  - Child 1 month–18 years 1 mmol/kg daily

Renal acidosis section 9.2.1.3

Sodium Bicarbonate (Tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, THAM)
- Intravenous infusion, usual strength sodium bicarbonate 1.26% (12.6 g, 150 mmol each of Na+ and HCO3⁻ /litre); various other strengths available
- In hospitals, 500- and 1000-mL packs, and sometimes other sizes, are available
- Administration: For peripheral infusion dilute 8.4% solution at least 1 in 10; for central line infusion dilute 1 in 5 with Glucose 5% or 10% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Extravasation can cause severe tissue damage

Minijet® Sodium Bicarbonate (UCB Pharma) (Tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, THAM)
- Intravenous injection, sodium bicarbonate in disposable syringe, net price 4.2%, 10 mL = £11.03; 8.4%, 10 mL = £11.10, 50 mL = £12.15

TROMETAMOL (containing 3.5–5% protein) or concentrated (containing 15–25% protein).
- Cautions: history of cardiac or circulatory disease (administer slowly to avoid rapid rise in blood pressure and cardiac failure, and monitor cardiovascular and respiratory function); increased capillary permeability; correct dehydration when administering concentrated solution
- Contra-indications: cardiac failure; severe anaemia
- Side-effects: hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis) with nausea, vomiting, increased salivation, fever, tachycardia, hypotension and chills reported

Indication and dose
- See notes above and under preparations, below

Isotonic solutions
- Indications: acute or sub-acute loss of plasma volume e.g. in burns, pancreatitis, trauma, and complications of surgery; plasma exchange
- Available as: Human Albumin Solution 4.5% (50-, 100-, 250- and 400-mL bottles—Baxter); Human Albumin Solution 5% (250- and 500-mL bottles—Baxter); Albunorm® 5% (100-, 250-, and 500-mL bottles—Octapharma); Octalbin® 5% (100- and 250-mL bottles—Octapharma); Zenalb® 4.5% (50-, 100-, 250-, and 500-mL bottles—BPL)

Concentrated solutions (20%)
- Indications: severe hypoalbuminaemia associated with low plasma volume and generalised oedema where salt and water restriction with plasma volume expansion are required; adjunct in the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia by exchange transfusion in the newborn; paracentesis of large volume ascites associated with portal hypertension
- Available as: Human Albumin Solution 20% (50- and 100-mL vials—Baxter; Albunorm® 20% (50- and 100-mL bottles—Octapharma); Flexbumin® 20% (50- and 100-mL bags—Baxter; Octalbin® 20% (50- and 100-mL bottles—Octapharma); Zenalb® 20% (50- and 100-mL bottles—BPL)

ALBUMIN SOLUTION (Human Albumin Solution)
A solution containing protein derived from plasma, serum, or normal placentas; at least 95% of the protein is albumin. The solution may be isotonic (containing 3.5–5% protein) or concentrated (containing 15–25% protein).

Cautions: history of cardiac or circulatory disease (administer slowly to avoid rapid rise in blood pressure and cardiac failure, and monitor cardiovascular and respiratory function); increased capillary permeability; correct dehydration when administering concentrated solution

Contra-indications: cardiac failure; severe anaemia

Side-effects: hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis) with nausea, vomiting, increased salivation, fever, tachycardia, hypotension and chills reported

Indication and dose
- See notes above and under preparations, below

Preparations
- Available as: ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Water
- For Injections: Net price 1-mL amp = 18p; 2-mL amp = 20p; 5-mL amp = 36p; 10-mL amp = 37p; 10-mL vial = £1.40; 20-mL amp = 92p; 50-mL amp = £1.91; 100-mL vial = £2.01

Plasma and plasma substitutes
- Albumin solutions, prepared from whole blood, contain soluble proteins and electrolytes but no clotting factors; blood group antibodies, or plasma cholester- terases; they may be given without regard to the recipient’s blood group.
- Albumin is usually used after the acute phase of illness to correct a plasma-volume deficit; hypoalbuminaemia itself is not an appropriate indication. The use of albumin solutions in acute plasma or blood loss may be wasteful; plasma substitutes are more appropriate. Concentrated albumin solutions may also be used to obtain a diuresis in hypoalbuminaemic patients (e.g. in nephrotic syndrome).
- Recent evidence does not support the previous view that the use of albumin increases mortality.

Plasma and plasma substitutes are often used in very ill children whose condition is unstable. Therefore, close monitoring is required and fluid and electrolyte therapy should be adjusted according to the child’s condition at all times.
Plasma substitutes

Gelatin and the etherified starches (pentastarch and tetrastarch) are macromolecular substances which are metabolised slowly; they may be used at the outset to expand and maintain blood volume in shock arising from conditions such as burns or septicemia. Plasma substitutes may be used as an immediate short-term measure to treat haemorrhage until blood is available. They are rarely needed when shock is due to sodium and water depletion because, in these circumstances, the shock responds to water and electrolyte repletion; see also section 2.7.1 for the management of shock.

Plasma substitutes should not be used to maintain plasma volume in conditions such as burns or peritonitis where there is loss of plasma protein, water, and electrolytes over periods of several days or weeks. In these situations, plasma or plasma protein fractions containing large amounts of albumin should be given.

Large volumes of some plasma substitutes can increase the risk of bleeding through depletion of coagulation factors.

Plasma and plasma substitutes are often used in very ill children whose condition is unstable. Therefore, close monitoring is required and fluid and electrolyte therapy should be adjusted according to the child’s condition at all times.

The use of plasma substitutes in children requires specialist supervision due to the risk of fluid overload; use is best restricted to an intensive care setting.

Cautions Plasma substitutes should be used with caution in cardiac disease, liver disease, or renal impairment; urine output should be monitored. Care should be taken to avoid haematocrit concentration from falling below 25–30% and the child should be monitored for hypersensitivity reactions.

Side-effects Hypersensitivity reactions may occur including, rarely, severe anaphylactic reactions. Transient increase in bleeding time may occur.

Geloplasma® (Fresenius Kabi) Intravenous infusion, partially hydrolysed and succinylated gelatin (modified liquid gelatin) (as anhydrous gelatin) 30 g (3%), Na+ 150 mmol, K+ 5 mmol, Mg2+ 1.5 mmol, Cl− 100 mmol, lactate 30 mmol/litre, net price 500-mL bag = £5.05

Isoplex® (Beacon) Intravenous infusion, succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 30 000) 40 g (4%), Na+ 145 mmol, K+ 4 mmol, Mg2+ 0.9 mmol, Cl− 105 mmol, lactate 25 mmol/litre, net price 500-mL bag = £7.53; 1-litre bag = £14.54

Voloplex® (Beacon) Intravenous infusion, succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 30 000) 40 g (4%), Na+ 154 mmol, Cl− 125 mmol/litre, net price 500-mL bag = £4.70; 1-litre bag = £9.09

Etherified starch

A starch composed of more than 90% of amylopectin that has been etherified with hydroxyethyl groups; the terms tetrastarch and pentastarch reflect the degree of etherification.

Cautions see notes above

Renal impairment use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment

Side-effects see notes above; also pruritus, raised serum amylase

Indication and dose

Low blood volume

• By intravenous infusion

According to the child’s condition (see notes above)

Pentastarch

HAES-steril® (Fresenius Kabi) Intravenous infusion, pentastarch (weight average molecular weight 200 000) 10% in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%, net price, 500 mL = £16.50

Hemohes® (Braun) Intravenous infusion, pentastarch (weight average molecular weight 200 000), net price (both in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%) 6%, 500 mL = £12.50; 10%, 500 mL = £16.50

Tetrastarch

Tetraspan® (Braun) Intravenous infusion, hydroxyethyl starch (weight average molecular weight 130 000) 6% in sodium chloride 0.625%, containing Na+ 140 mmol, K+ 4 mmol, Mg2+ 1 mmol, Cl− 118 mmol, Ca2+ 2.5 mmol, acetate 24 mmol, malate 5 mmol/litre, net price 500-mL bag = £13.50

Volulyte® (Fresenius Kabi) Intravenous infusion, hydroxyethyl starch (weight average molecular weight 130 000) 6% in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.8%, containing Na+ 137 mmol, K+ 4 mmol, Mg2+ 1.5 mmol, Cl− 110 mmol, acetate 34 mmol/litre, net price 500-mL bag = £13.50

Gelofusine® (Braun) Intravenous infusion, succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 30 000) 40 g (4%), Na+ 154 mmol, Cl− 124 mmol/litre, net price 500-mL Ecobag® = £5.15; 1-litre Ecobag® = £9.67

Contains traces of calcium

Note The gelatin is partially degraded

Cautions see notes above

Pregnancy manufacturer of Geloplasma® advises avoid at the end of pregnancy

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Low blood volume in hypovolaemic shock, burns and cardiopulmonary bypass

• By intravenous infusion

Initially 10–20 mL/Kg of a 3.5–4% solution (see notes above)

Gelatin

Note The gelatin is partially degraded

Cautions see notes above

Pregnancy manufacturer of Geloplasma® advises avoid at the end of pregnancy

Side-effects see notes above

Nutrition and blood
9.3 Intravenous nutrition

When adequate feeding through the alimentary tract is not possible, nutrients may be given by intravenous infusion. This may be in addition to oral or enteral tube feeding—supplemental parenteral nutrition, or may be the sole source of nutrition—total parenteral nutrition (TPN). Complete enteral starvation is undesirable and total parenteral nutrition is a last resort.

Indications for parenteral nutrition include prematurity; severe or prolonged disorders of the gastro-intestinal tract; preparation of undernourished patients for surgery, chemotherapy, or radiation therapy; major surgery, trauma, or burns; prolonged coma or inability to eat; and some patients with renal or hepatic failure. The composition of proprietary preparations used in children is given in the table Proprietary Infusion Fluids for Parenteral Feeding, p. 467.

Parenteral nutrition requires the use of a solution containing amino acids, glucose, lipids, electrolytes, trace elements, and vitamins. This is now commonly provided by the pharmacy in the form of an amino-acid, glucose, electrolyte bag, and a separate lipid infusion or, in older children a single ‘all-in-one’ bag. If the patient is able to take small amounts by mouth, vitamins may be given orally.

The nutrition solution is infused through a central venous catheter inserted under full surgical precautions. Alternatively, infusion through a peripheral vein may be used for supplementary as well as total parenteral nutrition, depending on the availability of peripheral veins; factors prolonging cannula life and preventing thrombophlebitis include the use of soft polyurethane paediatric canulas and use of nutritional solutions of low osmolality and neutral pH. Nutritional fluids should be given by a dedicated intravenous line; if not possible, compatibility with any drugs or fluids should be checked as precipitation of components may occur. Extravasation of parenteral nutrition solution can cause severe tissue damage and injury; the infusion site should be regularly monitored.

Before starting intravenous nutrition the patient should be clinically stable and renal function and acid-base status should be assessed. Appropriate biochemical tests should have been carried out beforehand and serious deficits corrected. Nutritional and electrolyte status must be monitored throughout treatment. The nutritional components of parenteral nutrition regimens are usually increased gradually over a number of days to prevent metabolic complications and to allow metabolic adaptation to the infused nutrients. The solutions are usually infused over 24 hours but this may be gradually reduced if long-term nutrition is required. Home parenteral nutrition is usually infused over 12 hours overnight.

Complications of long-term parenteral nutrition include gall bladder sludging, gall stones, cholestasis and abnormal liver function tests. For details of the prevention and management of parenteral nutrition complications, specialist literature should be consulted.

Protein (nitrogen) is given as mixtures of essential and non-essential synthetic l-amino acids. Ideally, all essential amino acids should be included with a wide variety of non-essential ones to provide sufficient nitrogen together with electrolytes (see also section 9.2.2). Solutions vary in their composition of amino acids; they often contain an energy source (usually glucose) and electrolytes. Solutions for use in neonates and children under 1 year of age are based on the amino acid profile of umbilical cord blood (Primene®) or breast milk (Vaminolact®) and contain amino acids that are essential in this age group; these amino acids may not be present in sufficient quantities in preparations designed for older children and adults.

Energy requirements must be met if amino acids are to be utilised for tissue maintenance. An appropriate energy to protein ratio is essential and requirements will vary depending on the child’s age and condition. A mixture of carbohydrate and fat energy sources (usually 30–50% as fat) gives better utilisation of amino acids than glucose alone.

Glucose is the preferred source of carbohydrate, but frequent monitoring of blood glucose is required particularly during initiation and build-up of the regimen; insulin may be necessary. Glucose above a concentration of 12.5% must be infused through a central venous catheter to avoid thrombosis; the maximum concentration of glucose that should normally be infused in fluid restricted children is 20–25%.

In parenteral nutrition regimens, it is necessary to provide adequate phosphate in order to allow phosphorylation of glucose and to prevent hypophosphataemia. Neonates, particularly preterm neonates, and young children also require phosphorus and calcium to ensure adequate bone mineralisation. The compatibility and solubility of calcium and phosphorus salts is complex and unpredictable; precipitation is a risk and specialist pharmacy advice should be sought.

Fat (lipid) emulsions have the advantages of a high energy to fluid volume ratio, neutral pH, and iso-osmolarity with plasma, and provide essential fatty acids. Several days of adaptation may be required to attain maximal utilisation. Reactions include occasional febrile episodes (usually only with 20% emulsions) and rare anaphylactic responses. Interference with biochemical measurements such as those for blood gases and calcium may occur if samples are taken before fat has been cleared. Regular monitoring of plasma cholesterol and triglyceride is necessary to ensure clearance from the plasma, particularly in conditions where fat metabolism may be disturbed e.g. infection. Emulsions containing 20% or 30% fat should be used in neonates as they are cleared more efficiently. Additives should not be mixed with fat emulsions unless compatibility is known.
Electrolytes are usually provided as the chloride salts of potassium and sodium. Acetate salts can be used to reduce the amount of chloride infused; hyperchloraemic acidosis or hypochloraemic alkalosis can occur in preterm neonates or children with renal impairment.

**Administration.** Because of the complex requirements relating to parenteral nutrition full details relating to administration have been omitted. In all cases specialist pharmacy advice, product literature and other specialist literature should be consulted.

---

**Supplementary preparations**

Compatibility with the infusion solution must be ascertained before adding supplementary preparations.

**Addiphos® (Fresenius Kabi)**

Solution, sterile, phosphate 40 mmol, K⁺ 30 mmol, Na⁺ 30 mmol/20 mL. For addition to Vamin® solutions and glucose intravenous infusions. Net price 20-mL vial = £1.53

---

**Proprietary Infusion Fluids for Parenteral Feeding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation</th>
<th>Nitrogen g/litre</th>
<th>Energy kJ/litre</th>
<th>Electrolytes mmol/litre</th>
<th>Other components/litre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClinOleic 20% (Baxter)</td>
<td></td>
<td>8360</td>
<td>K⁺ 30, Mg²⁺ 20, Na⁺ 20</td>
<td>purified olive and soya oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>200 g, glycerol 22.5 g, egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>phosphatides 12 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamin (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>22.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intragrip 10% (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>4600</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intragrip 20% (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>8400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intragrip 30% (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>12600</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipofundin MCT/LCT 10% (Braun)</td>
<td></td>
<td>4430</td>
<td></td>
<td>soya oil 100 g, glycerol 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>g, purified egg phospholipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12 g, phosphate 15 mmol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipofundin MCT/LCT 20% (Braun)</td>
<td></td>
<td>8000</td>
<td></td>
<td>soya oil 100 g, medium chain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>triglycerides 100 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Primene 10% (Baxter)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthamin 9 (Baxter)</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>acid phosphate 30 mmol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthamin 9 EF (electrolyte-free) (Baxter)</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vamin 9 Glucose (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Ca²⁺ 2.5 mmol, anhydrous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>glucose 100 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaminolact (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Note. 1000 kcal = 4200 kJ; 1000 kJ = 238.8 kcal. All entries are (mm)
2. Excludes protein- or amino acid-derived energy
3. For use in neonates and children only

---

**Electrolytes** are usually provided as the chloride salts of potassium and sodium. Acetate salts can be used to reduce the amount of chloride infused; hyperchloraemic acidosis or hypochloraemic alkalosis can occur in preterm neonates or children with renal impairment.
Additrace® (Fresenius Kabi) Solution, trace elements for addition to Vamin® solutions and glucose intravenous infusions, traces of Fe³⁺, Zn²⁺, Mn²⁺, Cu²⁺, Cr³⁺, Se⁴⁺, Mo⁶⁺, F⁻, I⁻. For children over 40 kg. Net price 10-mL amp = £2.31

Cernevit® (Baxter) Solution, dl-alpha tocopherol 11.2 units, ascorbic acid 125 mg, biotin 69 micrograms, colecaciferol 20 units, cyanocobalamin 6 micrograms, folic acid 414 micrograms, glycine 250 mg, nicotinamide 46 mg, pantothanic acid (as dexpanthenol) 3500 units, riboflavin (as dihydrated sodium phosphate) 4.14 mg, thiamine (as cocarboxylase tetrahydride) 3.51 mg. Dissolve in 5 mL water for injections. Net price per vial = £4.64

Decan® (Baxter) Solution, trace elements for addition to infusion solutions, Fe³⁺, Zn²⁺, Cu²⁺, Mn²⁺, F⁻, Co²⁺ I⁻, Se⁴⁺, Mo⁶⁺, Cr³⁺. For children over 40 kg. Net price 40-mL vial = £2.00

Dipeptiven® (Fresenius Kabi) Solution, N(2)-L-alanyl-L-glutamine 200 mg/mL (providing L-alanine 82 mg, L-glutamine 134.6 mg). For addition to infusion solutions containing amino acids. Net price 50 mL = £16.40, 100 mL = £30.50

Glycophos® Sterile Concentrate (Fresenius Kabi) Solution, sterile, phosphate 20 mmol, Na⁺ 40 mmol/20 mL. For addition to Vamin® and Vaminolact® solutions, and glucose intravenous infusions. Net price 20-mL vial = £4.80

Peditrace® (Fresenius Kabi) Solution, trace elements for addition to Vaminolact®, Vamin® 14 Electrolyte-Free solutions and glucose intravenous infusions, traces of Zn²⁺, Cu²⁺, Mn²⁺, Se⁴⁺, F⁻, I⁻. For use in neonates (when kidney function established, usually second day of life), infants, and children. Net price 10-mL vial = £4.18

Solvito N® (Fresenius Kabi) Solution, powder for reconstitution, biotin 60 micrograms, cyanocobalamin 5 micrograms, folic acid 400 micrograms, glycine 300 mg, nicotinamide 40 mg, pyridoxine hydrochloride 4.9 mg, riboflavin sodium phosphate 4.9 mg, sodium ascorbate 113 mg, sodium pantethenate 16.5 mg, thiamine mononitrate 3.1 mg. Dissolve in water for injections or glucose intravenous infusion for adding to glucose intravenous infusion or Intralipid®/for addition in Vitlipid® N® or Intralipid® for adding to Intralipid® only. Net price per vial = £2.32

Vittlipid N® (Fresenius Kabi) Emulsion, adult A 330 units, ergocalciferol 20 units, dl-alpha tocopherol 1 unit, phytomenadione 15 micrograms/mL. For addition to Intralipid®. For adults and children over 11 years. Net price 10-mL amp = £2.32

Emulsion, infant, vitamin A 230 units, ergocalciferol 40 units, dl-alpha tocopherol 0.7 unit, phytomenadione 20 micrograms/mL. For addition to Intralipid®. Net price 10-mL amp = £2.32

Vitlipid N® (Fresenius Kabi) Emulsion, adult A 330 units, ergocalciferol 20 units, dl-alpha tocopherol 1 unit, phytomenadione 15 micrograms/mL. For addition to Intralipid®. For adults and children over 11 years. Net price 10-mL amp = £2.32

Emulsion, infant, vitamin A 230 units, ergocalciferol 40 units, dl-alpha tocopherol 0.7 unit, phytomenadione 20 micrograms/mL. For addition to Intralipid®. Net price 10-mL amp = £2.32

9.4 Oral nutrition

9.4.1 Foods for special diets

9.4.2 Enteral nutrition

These are preparations that have been modified to eliminate a particular constituent from a food or that are nutrient mixtures formulated as food substitutes for children who either cannot tolerate or cannot metabolise certain common constituents of food.

Coeliac disease Intolerance to gluten in coeliac disease is managed by completely eliminating gluten from the diet. A range of gluten-free products is available for prescription—see Appendix 2 (p. 777).

Phenylketonuria Phenylketonuria (hyperphenylalaninaemia, PKU), which results from the inability to metabolise phenylalanine, is managed by restricting dietary intake of phenylalanine to a small amount sufficient for tissue building and repair.

Aspartame (used as a sweetener in some foods and medicines) contributes to the phenylalanine intake and may affect control of phenylketonuria. If alternatives are unavailable, children with phenylketonuria should not be denied access to appropriate medication; the amount of aspartame consumed can be taken in to account in the management of the condition. Where the presence of aspartame in a preparation is specified in the product literature, aspartame is listed as an excipient in the relevant product entry in BNF for Children; the child or carer should be informed of this.

For further information on special dietary products used in the management of metabolic diseases, see Appendix 2.
### TETRAHYDROBIOPTERIN

**Renal impairment** use with caution—accumulation of metabolites.

**Pregnancy** crosses the placenta; use only if benefit outweighs risk.

**Breast-feeding** present in milk; effects unknown.

**Side-effects** diarrhoea, urinary frequency, disturbed sleep.

**Licensed use** not licensed.

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monotherapy in tetrahydrobiopterin-sensitive phenylketonuria (specialist use only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 1 month–18 years</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In combination with neurotransmitter precursors for tetrahydrobiopterin-sensitive phenylketonuria (specialist use only)

| **By mouth** |
| **Child 1 month–2 years** | initially 250–750 micrograms/kg 4 times daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), adjusted according to response; max. 7 mg/kg daily |
| **Child 2–18 years** | initially 250–750 micrograms/kg 4 times daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), adjusted according to response; usual max. 10 mg/kg daily |

### SAPROPTERIN DIHYDROCHLORIDE

**Note** Sapropterin is a synthetic form of tetrahydrobiopterin.

**Cautions** monitor blood-phenylalanine concentration before and after first week of treatment—if unsatisfactory response increase dose at weekly intervals to max. dose and monitor blood-phenylalanine concentration weekly; discontinue treatment if unsatisfactory response after 1 month; monitor blood-phenylalanine and tyrosine concentrations 1–2 weeks after dose adjustment and during treatment; history of convulsions.

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises caution—consider only if strict dietary management inadequate.

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

**Side-effects** diarrhoea, vomiting, abdominal pain; nasal congestion, cough, pharyngolaryngeal pain; headache.

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phenylketonuria (specialist use only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>By mouth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child 4–18 years</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tetrahydrobiopterin deficiency (specialist use only)

| **By mouth** |
| **Neonate** | initially 2–5 mg/kg once daily, preferably in the morning, adjusted according to response; max. 20 mg/kg daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses |
| **Child 1 month–18 years** | initially 2–5 mg/kg once daily, preferably in the morning, adjusted according to response; max. 20 mg/kg daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses |

**Kuvan** (Merck Serono) **Dispersible tablets**, sapropterin dihydrochloride 100 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £597.22, 120-tab pack = £2388.88. Label: 13, 21, counselling, tablets should be dissolved in water and taken within 20 minutes.

### 9.4.2 Enteral nutrition

Children have higher nutrient requirements per kg body-weight, different metabolic rates, and physiological responses compared to adults. They have low nutritional stores and are particularly vulnerable to growth and nutritional problems during critical periods of development. Major illness, operations, or trauma impose increased metabolic demands and can rapidly exhaust nutritional reserves.

Every effort should be made to optimise oral food intake before beginning enteral tube feeding; this may include change of posture, special seating, feeding equipment, oral desensitisation, food texture changes, thickening of liquids, increasing energy density of food, treatment of reflux or oesophagitis, as well as using age-specific nutritional supplements.

Enteral tube feeding has a role in both short-term rehabilitation and long-term nutritional management in paediatrics. It can be used as supportive therapy, in which the enteral feed supplies a proportion of the required nutrients, or as primary therapy, in which the enteral feed delivers all the necessary nutrients. Most children receiving tube feeds should also be encouraged to take oral food and drink. Tube feeding should be considered in the following situations:

- unsafe swallowing and risk of aspiration;
- inability to consume at least 60% of energy needs by mouth;
- total feeding time of more than 4 hours per day;
- weight loss or no weight gain for a period of 3 months (less for younger children and infants);
- weight for height (or length) less than 2nd percentile for age and sex.

Most feeds for enteral use (Appendix 2) contain protein derived from cows’ milk or soya. Elemental feeds containing protein hydrolysates or free amino acids can be used for children who have diminished ability to break down protein, for example in inflammatory bowel disease or pancreatic insufficiency.
Even when nutritionally complete feeds are given, water and electrolyte balance should be monitored. Haematological and biochemical parameters should also be monitored, particularly in the clinically unstable child. Extra minerals (e.g., magnesium and zinc) may be needed in patients where gastro-intestinal secretions are being lost. Additional vitamins may also be needed. Feeds containing vitamin K may affect the INR in children receiving warfarin—see interactions: Appendix 1 (vitamins).

Choosing the best formula for children depends on several factors including: nutritional requirements, gastro-intestinal function, underlying disease, nutrient restrictions, age, and feed characteristics (nutritional composition, viscosity, osmolality, availability and cost). Children have specific dietary requirements and in many situations liquid feeds prepared for adults are totally unsuitable and should not be given. Expert advice from a dietician should be sought before prescribing enteral feeds for a child.

Infant formula feeds Child 0–12 months. Term infants with normal gastro-intestinal function are given either breast milk or normal infant formula during the first year of life. The average intake is between 150 mL and 200 mL/kg/day. Infant milk formulas are based on whey- or casein-dominant protein, lactose with or without maltodextrin, amylase, vegetable oil and milk fat. The composition of all normal and soya infant formulas have to meet The Infant Formula and Follow-on Formula Regulations (England and Wales) 2007, which enact the European Community Regulations 2006/141/EC; the composition of other enteral and specialist feeds has to meet the Commission Directive (1999/21/EC) on Dietary Foods for Special Medical Purposes.

A high-energy feed (Appendix 2, p. 750), which contains 9–11% of energy derived from protein can be used for infants who fail to grow adequately. Alternatively, energy supplements (Appendix 2, p. 771) may be added to normal infant formula to achieve a higher energy content (but this will reduce the protein to energy ratio) or the normal infant formula concentration may be increased slightly. Care should be taken not to present an osmotic load of more than 500 milliosmols/kg water to the normal functioning gut, otherwise osmotic diarrhoea will result. Concentrating or supplementing feeds should not be attempted without the advice of a paediatric dietician.

Enteral feeds Child 1–6 years (body-weight 8–20 kg). Ready-to-use feeds (Appendix 2, p. 750) based on caseinates, maltodextrin and vegetable oils (with or without added medium chain triglyceride (MCT) oil or fibre) are well tolerated and effective in improving nutritional status in this age group. Although originally designed for children 1–6 years (body-weight 8–20 kg), some products have ACBS approval for use in children weighing up to 30 kg (approx. 10 years of age). Enteral feeds formulated for children 1–6 years are low in sodium and potassium; electrolyte intake and biochemical status should be monitored. Older children in this age range taking small feed volumes may need to be given additional micronutrients. Fibre-enriched feeds may be helpful for children with chronic constipation or diarrhoea.

Child 7–12 years (body-weight 21–45 kg). Depending on age, weight, clinical condition and nutritional requirements, ready-to-use feeds (Appendix 2, p. 750) formulated for 7–12 year olds may be given at appropriate rates.

Child over 12 years (body-weight over 45 kg). As there are no standard enteral feeds formulated for this age group, adult formulations are used. The intake of protein, electrolytes, vitamins, and trace minerals should be carefully assessed and monitored. Note Adult feeds containing more than 6 g/100 mL protein or 2 g/100 mL fibre should be used with caution and expert advice.

Specialised formula It is essential that any infant who is intolerant of breast milk or normal infant formula, or whose condition requires nutrient-specific adaptation, is prescribed an adequate volume of a nutritionally complete replacement formula (see Appendix 2, p. 763). In the first 4 months of life, a volume of 150–200 mL/kg/day is recommended. After 6 months, the formula still be required, a volume of 600 mL/day should be maintained, in addition to solid food.

Products for cow’s milk protein intolerance or lactose intolerance. There are a number of infant formulas formulated for cow’s milk protein intolerance or lactose intolerance; these feeds may contain a residual amount of lactose (less than 1 g/100 mL formula)—sometimes described as clinically lactose-free or ‘lactose-free’ by manufacturers. If the total daily intake of these formulas is low, it may be necessary to supplement with calcium, and a vitamin and mineral supplement.

Soya-based infant formulas have a high phytoestrogen content and this may be a long-term reproductive health risk. The Chief Medical Officer has advised that soya-based infant formulas should not be used as the first choice for the management of infants with proven cow’s milk sensitivity, lactose intolerance, galactokinase deficiency and galactosaemia. Most UK paediatricians with expertise in inherited metabolic disease still advocate soya-based formulations for infants with galactosaemia as there are concerns about the residual lactose content of low lactose formulas and protein hydrolysates based on cow’s milk protein.

Low lactose infant formulations, based on whole cow’s milk protein, are unsuitable for children with cow’s milk protein intolerance. Liquid soya milks purchased from supermarkets and health food stores are not nutritionally complete and should never be used for infants under 1 year of age.

Protein hydrolysate formulas. Non-milk, peptide-based feeds containing hydrolysates of casein, whey, meat and soya protein, are suitable for infants with disaccharide or whole protein intolerance. The total daily intake of electrolytes, vitamins and minerals should be carefully assessed and modified to meet the child’s nutritional requirements; these feeds have a high osmolality when given at recommended dilution and need gradual and careful introduction.

Elemental (amino acid based formula). Specially formulated elemental feeds containing essential and non-essential amino acids are available for use in infants and children under 6 years with proven whole protein intolerance. Adult elemental formula may be used for chil-
the product names are similar; to prevent metabolic diseases, vitamin and other nutrients may be necessary. Many of these formulas are nutritionally incomplete and supplementation with specific metabolic acid-based supplements available for use in children with metabolic diseases (see under specific metabolic disease. Appendix 2, p. 781). Some of these formulas are designed to meet the specific requirements in various clinical conditions such as renal and liver diseases. When using these formulas, both the biochemical status of the child and their growth parameters need to be monitored.

**Modular feeds.** Modular feeds (see Specialised Formulas for Specific Clinical Conditions, p. 768) are based on individual protein, fat, carbohydrate, vitamin and mineral components or modules which can be combined to meet the specific needs of a child. Modular feeds are used when nutritionally complete specialised formula are not tolerated, or if the fluid and nutrient requirements change e.g. in gastro-intestinal, renal or liver disease. The main advantage of modular feeds is their flexibility; disadvantages include their complexity and preparation difficulties. Modular feeds should not be used without the supervision of a paediatric dietician.

**Specialised formula.** Highly specialised formulas are designed to meet the specific requirements in various clinical conditions such as renal and liver diseases. When using these formulas, both the biochemical status of the child and their growth parameters need to be monitored.

**Feed thickeners.** Carob based thickeners (Appendix 2, p. 777) may be used to thicken feeds for infants under 1 year with significant gastro-oesophageal reflux. Breast-fed infants can be given the thickener mixed to a paste with water or breast-milk prior to feeds.

**Pre-thickened formula.** Milk-protein- or casein-dominant infant formula, which contains small quantities of pre-gelatinized starch, is recommended primarily for infants with mild gastro-oesophageal reflux. Pre-thickened formula is prepared in the same way as normal infant formula and flows through a standard teat. The feeds do not thicken on standing but thicken in the stomach when exposed to acid pH.

**Starched based thickeners** can be used to thicken liquids and feeds for children over 1 year of age with dysphagia.

**Dietary supplements for oral use.** (Appendix 2, p. 756) Three types of prescribable fortified dietary supplements are available: fortified milk and non-milk tasting (juice-style) drinks, and fortified milk-based semi-solid preparations. The recommended daily quantity is age-dependent. The following is a useful guide: 1–2 years, 200 kcal (840 kJ); 3–5 years, 400 kcal (1680 kJ); 6–11 years, 600 kcal (2520 kJ); and over 12 years, 800 kcal (3360 kJ). Supplements containing 1.5 kcal/mL are high in protein and should not be used for children under 3 years of age. Many supplements are high in sugar or maltodextrin; care should be taken to prevent prolonged contact with teeth. Ideally supplements should be administered after meals or at bedtime so as not to affect appetite.

**Products for metabolic diseases.** There is a large range of disease-specific infant formulas and amino acid-based supplements available for use in children with metabolic diseases (see under specific metabolic diseases, Appendix 2, p. 781). Some of these formulas are nutritionally incomplete and supplementation with vitamins and other nutrients may be necessary. Many of the product names are similar; to prevent metabolic complications in children who cannot tolerate specific amino acids it is important to ensure the correct supplement is supplied.

**Preparations (Borderline substances).** See Appendix 2.

---

### 9.5 Minerals

#### 9.5.1 Calcium and magnesium

- **9.5.1.1 Calcium supplements**
- **9.5.1.2 Hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria**
- **9.5.1.3 Magnesium**

### 9.5.2 Phosphorus

### 9.5.3 Fluoride

### 9.5.4 Zinc

See section 9.1.1 for iron salts.

#### 9.5.1 Calcium and magnesium

**Calcium supplements** are usually only required where dietary calcium intake is deficient. This dietary requirement varies with age and is relatively greater in childhood, pregnancy, and lactation, due to an increased demand. Hypocalcaemia may be caused by vitamin D deficiency (section 9.6.4), impaired metabolism, a failure of secretion (hypoparathyroidism), or resistance to parathyroid hormone (pseudo-hypoparathyroidism).

**Mild asymptomatic hypocalcaemia** may be managed with oral calcium supplements. **Severe symptomatic hypocalcaemia** requires an intravenous infusion of calcium gluconate 10% over 5 to 10 minutes, repeating the dose if symptoms persist; in exceptional cases it may be necessary to maintain a continuous calcium infusion over a day or more. Calcium chloride injection is also available, but is more irritant; care should be taken to prevent extravasation.

For the role of calcium gluconate in temporarily reducing the toxic effects of hyperkalaemia, see p. 458.

Persistent hypocalcaemia requires oral calcium supplements and either a vitamin D analogue (alfacalcidol or calcitriol) for hypoparathyroidism and pseudohypoparathyroidism or natural vitamin D (calciferol) if due to vitamin D deficiency (section 9.6.4). It is important to monitor plasma and urinary calcium during long-term maintenance therapy.

**Neonates** Hypocalcaemia is common in the first few days of life, particularly following birth asphyxia or respiratory distress. Late onset at 4–10 days after birth may be secondary to vitamin D deficiency, hypoparathyroidism or hypomagnesaemia and may be associated with seizures.
CALCIUM SALTS

Cautions see notes above; sarcoidosis; history of nephrolithiasis; avoid calcium chloride in respiratory acidosis or respiratory failure; Interactions: Appendix 1 (antacids, calcium salts)

Contra-indications conditions associated with hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria (e.g. some forms of malignant disease); see also Calcium Gluconate injection, below

Renal impairment use with caution; risk of hypercalcaemia and renal calculi

Side-effects gastro-intestinal disturbances, constipation; bradycardia, arrhythmias; with injection, peripheral vasodilatation, fall in blood pressure, injection-site reactions, severe tissue damage with extravasation

Indication and dose

See notes above; calcium deficiency

- By mouth

  Neonate 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted to response
  Child 1 month–4 years 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted to response
  Child 5–12 years 0.2 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted to response
  Child 12–18 years 10 mmol 4 times a day, adjusted to response

Acute hypocalcaemia, urgent correction; hyperkalaemia (prevention of arrhythmias)

- By slow intravenous injection over 5–10 minutes

  Neonate 0.11 mmol/kg (0.5 mL/kg calcium gluconate 10%) as a single dose. [Some units use a dose of 0.46 mmol/kg (2 mL/kg calcium gluconate 10%) for hypocalcaemia in line with US practice]

  Child 1 month–18 years 0.11 mmol/kg (0.5 mL/kg calcium gluconate 10%), max 4.5 mmol (20 mL calcium gluconate 10%)

Acute hypocalcaemia, maintenance

- By continuous intravenous infusion

  Neonate 0.5 mmol/kg daily over 24 hours, adjusted to response, use oral route as soon as possible due to risk of extravasation

  Child 1 month–2 years 1 mmol/kg daily (usual max 8.8 mmol) over 24 hours, use oral route as soon as possible due to risk of extravasation

  Child 2–18 years 8.8 mmol over 24 hours, use oral route as soon as possible due to risk of extravasation

Oral preparations

Calcium Gluconate (Non-proprietary)

- Effervescent tablets, calcium gluconate 1 g (calcium 89 mg or Ca²⁺ 2.23 mmol), net price 29-tab pack = £14.83. Label: 13

  Note Each tablet usually contains 4.46 mmol Na⁺

  Injection, calcium gluconate 10% (calcium 8.4 mg or Ca²⁺ 226 micromol)/mL. Net price 10-mL amp = 60p

  Administration For intravenous infusion dilute to at least 45 micromol/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Maximum administration rate 45 micromol/kg/hour (or in neonates max. 32 micromol/kg/hour). May be given more concentrated via a central venous catheter. May be used undiluted (10% calcium gluconate) in emergencies. Avoid extravasation, should not be given by intramuscular injection. Incompatible with sodium bicarbonate and phosphate solutions.

  Note The MHRA has advised that repeated or prolonged administration of calcium gluconate injection packaged in 10 mL glass containers is contra-indicated in children under 18 years and in patients with renal impairment owing to the risk of aluminium accumulation; in these patients the use of calcium gluconate injection packaged in plastic containers is recommended

Calcium Chloride (Non-proprietary)

- Injection, calcium chloride dihydrate 10% (calcium 27.3 mg or Ca²⁺ 680 micromol/mL), net price 10-mL disposable syringe = £5.10

  Brands include Minwrap Calcium Chloride 10%
### 9.5.1 Calcium and magnesium

#### 9.5.1.3 Magnesium

Magnesium is an essential constituent of many enzyme systems, particularly those involved in energy generation; the largest stores are in the skeleton.

Magnesium salts are not well absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, which explains the use of magnesium sulphate (section 6.6.1) as a cathartic. Oral administration of a bisphosphonate may be useful. Parathyroidectomy may be indicated for hyperparathyroidism.

Hypercalciuria

Hypercalciuria should be investigated for an underlying cause, which should be treated. Reducing dietary calcium intake may be beneficial but severe restriction of calcium intake has not proved beneficial and may even be harmful.

### 9.5.1.2 Hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria

**Severe hypercalcaemia** Severe hypercalcaemia calls for urgent treatment before detailed investigation of the cause. Dehydration should be corrected first with intravenous infusion of sodium chloride 0.9%. Drugs (such as thiazides and vitamin D compounds) which promote hypercalcaemia, should be discontinued and dietary calcium should be restricted.

If **severe hypercalcaemia persists** drugs which inhibit mobilisation of calcium from the skeleton may be required. The **bisphosphonates** are useful and disodium pamidronate (section 6.6.2) is probably the most effective.

**Corticosteroids** (section 6.3) are widely given, but may only be useful where hypercalcaemia is due to sarcoidosis or vitamin D intoxication; they often take several days to achieve the desired effect.

Calcitonin (section 6.6.1) is relatively non-toxic, but its effect can wear off after a few days despite continued use; it is rarely effective where bisphosphonates have failed to reduce serum calcium adequately.

After treatment of severe hypercalcaemia the underlying cause must be established. **Further treatment** is governed by the same principles as for initial therapy. Salt and water depletion and drugs promoting hypercalcaemia should be avoided; oral administration of a bisphosphonate may be useful. Parathyroidectomy may be indicated for hyperparathyroidism.

**Hypercalciuria** Hypercalciuria should be investigated for an underlying cause, which should be treated. Reducing dietary calcium intake may be beneficial but severe restriction of calcium intake has not proved beneficial and may even be harmful.

### Magnesium sulphate

**Indication and dose**

**Neonatal hypocalcaemia**

- By deep intramuscular injection or intravenous infusion

| Neonate | 0.4 mmol/kg Mg²⁺ (100 mg/kg magnesium sulphate) 12 hourly for 2–3 doses |

**Hypomagnesaemia**

- By intravenous injection over at least 10 minutes

| Neonate | 0.4 mmol/kg Mg²⁺ (100 mg/kg magnesium sulphate) 6–12 hourly as necessary |

**Contraindications**

- Avoid or reduce dose; increased risk of toxicity
- Pregnancy: sufficient may cross the placenta in mothers treated with high doses e.g. in pre-eclampsia, causing hypotonia and respiratory depression in newborns

**Side-effects** generally associated with hypomagnesaemia, nausea, vomiting, thirst, flushing of skin, hypotension, arrhythmias, coma, respiratory depression, drowsiness, confusion, loss of tendon reflexes, muscle weakness

**Cautions**

- See notes above; in severe hypomagnesaemia administer initially via controlled infusion device (preferably syringe pump); monitor blood pressure, respiratory rate, urinary output and for signs of overdosage (loss of patellar reflexes, weakness, nausea, sensation of warmth, flushing, drowsiness, double vision, and slurred speech); **interactions**: Appendix 1 (magnesium, parenteral)
- **Hepatic impairment** avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure
- **Renal impairment** avoid or reduce dose; increased risk of toxicity

**Neonatal hypocalcaemia** Since magnesium is secreted in large amounts in the gastro-intestinal fluid, excessive losses in diarrhoea, stoma or fistula are the most common causes of hypomagnesaemia; deficiency may also occur as a result of treatment with certain drugs. Hypomagnesaemia often causes secondary hypocalcaemia (with which it may be confused), particularly in neonates, and also hypokalaemia and hyponatraemia.

Symptomatic hypomagnesaemia is associated with a deficit of 0.5–1 mmol/kg. Magnesium is given initially by intravenous infusion or by intramuscular injection of magnesium sulphate; the intramuscular injection is painful. Plasma magnesium concentration should be measured to determine the rate and duration of infusion and the dose should be reduced in renal impairment. To prevent recurrence of the deficit, magnesium may be given by mouth in divided doses. For maintenance (e.g. in intravenous nutrition), parenteral doses of magnesium are of the order of 0.2–0.4 mmol/kg (usual max. 20 mmol) Mg²⁺ daily.

**Arrhythmias** Magnesium sulphate has also been recommended for the emergency treatment of serious arrhythmias, especially in the presence of hypokalaemia (when hypomagnesaemia may also be present) and when salvos of rapid ventricular tachycardia show the characteristic twisting wave front known as torsade de pointes (see also section 2.3.1).

**Magnesium**

Magnesium salts are used in the treatment of magnesium deficiency, to correct the deficit of 0.2–0.4 mmol/kg (usual max. 20 mmol) Mg²⁺ daily. Magnesium is given initially by intravenous infusion or by intramuscular injection of magnesium sulphate, but the intramuscular injection is painful. Plasma magnesium concentration should be measured to determine the rate and duration of infusion and the dose should be reduced in renal impairment. To prevent recurrence of the deficit, magnesium may be given by mouth in divided doses. For maintenance (e.g. in intravenous nutrition), parenteral doses of magnesium are of the order of 0.2–0.4 mmol/kg (usual max. 20 mmol) Mg²⁺ daily.

**Indications and dose**

**Neonatal hypocalcaemia**

- By deep intramuscular injection or intravenous infusion

| Neonate | 0.4 mmol/kg Mg²⁺ (100 mg/kg magnesium sulphate) 12 hourly for 2–3 doses |

**Hypomagnesaemia**

- By intravenous injection over at least 10 minutes

| Neonate | 0.4 mmol/kg Mg²⁺ (100 mg/kg magnesium sulphate) 6–12 hourly as necessary |

**Contraindications**

- Avoid or reduce dose; increased risk of toxicity
- Pregnancy: sufficient may cross the placenta in mothers treated with high doses e.g. in pre-eclampsia, causing hypotonia and respiratory depression in newborns

**Side-effects** generally associated with hypomagnesaemia, nausea, vomiting, thirst, flushing of skin, hypotension, arrhythmias, coma, respiratory depression, drowsiness, confusion, loss of tendon reflexes, muscle weakness

**Cautions**

- See notes above; in severe hypomagnesaemia administer initially via controlled infusion device (preferably syringe pump); monitor blood pressure, respiratory rate, urinary output and for signs of overdosage (loss of patellar reflexes, weakness, nausea, sensation of warmth, flushing, drowsiness, double vision, and slurred speech); **interactions**: Appendix 1 (magnesium, parenteral)
- **Hepatic impairment** avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure
- **Renal impairment** avoid or reduce dose; increased risk of toxicity

**Neonatal hypocalcaemia** Since magnesium is secreted in large amounts in the gastro-intestinal fluid, excessive losses in diarrhoea, stoma or fistula are the most common causes of hypomagnesaemia; deficiency may also occur as a result of treatment with certain drugs. Hypomagnesaemia often causes secondary hypocalcaemia (with which it may be confused), particularly in neonates, and also hypokalaemia and hyponatraemia.

Symptomatic hypomagnesaemia is associated with a deficit of 0.5–1 mmol/kg. Magnesium is given initially by intravenous infusion or by intramuscular injection of magnesium sulphate; the intramuscular injection is painful. Plasma magnesium concentration should be measured to determine the rate and duration of infusion and the dose should be reduced in renal impairment. To prevent recurrence of the deficit, magnesium may be given by mouth in divided doses. For maintenance (e.g. in intravenous nutrition), parenteral doses of magnesium are of the order of 0.2–0.4 mmol/kg (usual max. 20 mmol) Mg²⁺ daily.

**Arrhythmias** Magnesium sulphate has also been recommended for the emergency treatment of serious arrhythmias, especially in the presence of hypokalaemia (when hypomagnesaemia may also be present) and when salvos of rapid ventricular tachycardia show the characteristic twisting wave front known as torsade de pointes (see also section 2.3.1).
Child 1 month–12 years 0.2 mmol/kg Mg\(^{2+}\) (50 mg/kg magnesium sulphate) 12 hourly as necessary

Child 12–18 years 4 mmol Mg\(^{2+}\) (1 g magnesium sulphate) 12 hourly as necessary

Torsade de pointes (consult local guidelines)
- By intravenous injection over 10–15 minutes

Child 1 month–18 years 0.1–0.2 mmol/kg (25–50 mg/kg magnesium sulphate); max. 8 mmol (2 g magnesium sulphate); dose repeated once if necessary

Persistent pulmonary hypertension section 2.5.1

Severe acute asthma section 3.1

Administration
Dilute to 10% (100 mg in 1 mL) with Glucose 5 or 10%, Sodium Chloride 0.45 or 0.9% or Glucose and Sodium Chloride combinations. Up to 20% solution may be given in fluid restriction. Rate of administration should not exceed 10 mg/kg/minute of magnesium sulphate

Note
Magnesium sulphate 1 g equivalent to Mg\(^{2+}\) approx. 4 mmol

Magnesium Sulphate (Non-proprietary) (US)
Injection, magnesium sulphate 20% (Mg\(^{2+}\) approx. 0.8 mmol/mL), net price 20-mL (4-g) amp = £2.75; 50% (Mg\(^{2+}\) approx. 2 mmol/mL), 2-mL (1-g) amp = £2.39, 4-mL (2-g) prefilled syringe = £7.39, 5-mL (2.5-g) amp = £3.60, 10-mL (5-g) amp = 69p; 10-mL (5-g) prefilled syringe = £4.95
Brands include Minijet Magnesium Sulphate 50%

Magnesium-L-Aspartate

Cautions see under Magnesium Sulphate
Renal impairment avoid or reduce dose; increased risk of toxicity
Side-effects see under Magnesium Sulphate; also diarrhoea
Licensed use classified as a Food for Special Medical Purposes for use in children over 2 years

Hypomagnesaemia
- By mouth
Child 1 month–12 years initially 0.2 mmol/kg Mg\(^{2+}\) 3 times daily, dose adjusted as required
Child 12–18 years initially 4–8 mmol Mg\(^{2+}\) 3 times daily, dose adjusted as required

Administration tablets may be dispersed in water

Magnesium Glycerophosphate (Non-proprietary) Tablets, magnesium glycerophosphate 1 g (approximately magnesium 97 mg or Mg\(^{2+}\) 4 mmol) Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
Liquid, magnesium glycerophosphate 250 mg/mL (approximately magnesium 24.25 mg or Mg\(^{2+}\) 1 mmol/mL) Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Hydromagnesiaemia

Oral phosphate supplements may be required in addition to vitamin D in children with hypophosphataemic vitamin D-resistant rickets (section 9.6.4). Diarrhoea is a common side-effect and should prompt a reduction in dosage.

Phosphate infusion is occasionally needed in phosphate deficiency arising from use of parenteral nutrition deficient in phosphate supplements; phosphate depletion also occurs in severe diabetic ketoacidosis. It is difficult to provide detailed guidelines for the treatment of severe hypophosphatemia because the extent of total body deficits and response to therapy are difficult to predict. High doses of phosphate may result in a transient serum elevation followed by redistribution into intracellular compartments or bone tissue; excessive doses may cause hypocalcaemia and metastatic calcification. It is essential to monitor plasma concentrations of calcium, phosphate, potassium and other electrolytes. It is recommended that severe hypophosphatemia be treated intravenously as large doses of oral phosphate may cause diarrhoea; intestinal absorption may be unreliable and dose adjustment may be necessary.
Phosphate is not the first choice for the treatment of hypercalcaemia because of the risk of precipitation of calcium phosphate in the kidney and other tissues. If used, the child should be well hydrated and electrolytes monitored.

**Neonates** Phosphate deficiency may occur in very low-birthweight infants and may compromise bone growth if not corrected. Parenterally fed infants may be at risk of phosphate deficiency due to the limited solubility of phosphate. Some units routinely supplement expressed breast milk with phosphate, although the effect on the osmolality of the milk should be considered.

### PHOSPHATE

**Indication and dose**

- **Side-effects**
  - Renal impairment: reduce dose; monitor closely

**Cautions** see notes above, also cardiac disease, diabetes mellitus, dehydration; avoid extravasation with parenteral forms, severe tissue necrosis; sodium and potassium concentrations of preparations

**Renal impairment** reduce dose; monitor closely

**Side-effects**
- nausea, diarrhoea; hypotension, oedema;

**Phosphate-Sandoz®** (HK Pharma)

**Oral**

**Phosphate-Sandoz®** (HK Pharma)

- **Tablets**
  - effervescent, anhydrous sodium acid phosphate 1.936 g, sodium bicarbonate 350 mg, potassium bicarbonate 315 mg, equivalent to phosphorus 500 mg (phosphate 16.1 mmol), sodium 468.8 mg (Na⁺ 20.4 mmol), potassium 123 mg (K⁺ 3.1 mmol). Net price 20 = £3.29. Label: 13

**Injection**

- **Phosphates** (Fresenius Kabi)
  - Intravenous infusion, phosphates (providing phosphate 100 mmol/litre, potassium 19 mmol/litre, sodium 162 mmol/litre), net price 500 mL (Polyfusor®) = £3.75.

**Potassium acid phosphate** (Non-proprietary)

- Injection, 13.6% (1 mmol/mL phosphate, 1 mmol/mL potassium) 10 mL ampoule
  - Note: See also Important, above

**Dipotassium hydrogen phosphate** (Non-proprietary)

- Injection, 17.42% (0.6 mmol/mL phosphate and 2 mmol/mL potassium) 10 mL ampoule
  - Note: See also Important, above

**Disodium hydrogen phosphate** (Non-proprietary)

- Injection, 17.42% (0.6 mmol/mL phosphate and 1.2 mmol/mL sodium) 10 mL ampoule

### 9.5.2.2 Phosphate-binding agents

Calcium-containing preparations are used as phosphate-binding agents in the management of hyperphosphataemia complicating renal failure. Aluminium-containing preparations are rarely used as phosphate-binding agents and can cause aluminium accumulation.

**Sevelamer hydrochloride** is licensed for the treatment of hyperphosphataemia in adults on haemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis. Although experience is limited in children sevelamer may be useful when hypercalcaemia prevents the use of calcium carbonate.

### 9.5.2.3 Aluminium hydroxide

**Cautions** see notes above; **Side-effects:** Appendix 1 (antacids)

**Alu-Cap®** (Meda)

**Capsules**
- green/red, dried aluminium hydroxide 475 mg (low Na⁺), net price 120-cap pack = £3.75

**Dose**

**Hyperphosphataemia**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 5–12 years 1–2 capsules 3–4 times daily, adjusted as necessary
  - Child 12–18 years 1–5 capsules 3–4 times daily, adjusted as necessary

**Important**

- Some phosphate injection preparations also contain potassium. For peripheral intravenous administration the concentration of potassium should not usually exceed 40 mmol/litre. The infusion solution should be thoroughly mixed. Local policies on avoiding inadvertent use of potassium concentrate should be followed. The potassium content of some phosphate preparations may also limit the rate at which they may be administered, see section 9.2.2.1.
**CALCIUM SALTS**

**Cautions** interactions: Appendix 1 (antacids, calcium salts)

**Contra-indications** hypercalcaemia, hypercalciuria

**Side-effects** hypercalcaemia

**Indication and dose**

Phosphate binding in renal failure and hyperphosphataemia

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–1 year 120 mg calcium carbonate 3–4 times daily with feeds, adjusted as necessary
  - Child 1–6 years 300 mg calcium carbonate 3–4 times daily prior to or with meals, adjusted as necessary
  - Child 6–12 years 600 mg calcium carbonate 3–4 times daily prior to or with meals, adjusted as necessary
  - Child 12–18 years 1.25 g calcium carbonate 3–4 times daily prior to or with meals, adjusted as necessary

Adcal® Section 9.5.1.1

Calcichew® Section 9.5.1.1

Calcium-500 Section 9.5.1.1

Phosex® (Vitaline)

**Tablets**, yellow, scored, calcium acetate 1 g (calcium 250 mg or Ca2+ 6.2 mmol), net price 180-tab pack = £19.79. Counselling, do not chew, with meals

**Dose**

Phosphate-binding agent (with meals) in renal failure, according to the requirements of the patient

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**SEVELAMER HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** gastro-intestinal disorders; interactions: Appendix 1 (sevelamer)

**Contra-indications** bowel obstruction

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, constipation, diarrhoea, dyspepsia, flatulence; very rarely intestinal obstruction; also reported intestinal perforation, ileus, diverticulitis, pruritus, and rash

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 18 years

**Indication and dose**

Hyperphosphataemia in patients on haemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis

- **By mouth**
  - Child 12–18 years initially 0.8–1.6 g 3 times daily with meals, then adjusted according to plasma-phosphate concentration

**Fluorides**

**Note** Sodium fluoride 2.2 mg provides approx. 1 mg fluoride ion

**Contra-indications** not for areas where drinking water is fluoridated

**Side-effects** occasional white flecks on teeth with recommended doses; rarely yellowish-brown discoloration if recommended doses are exceeded

**Indication and dose**

Prophylaxis of dental caries—see notes above

**Note** Dose expressed as fluoride ion (F–):

- Water content less than F– 300 micrograms/litre (0.3 parts per million)
- **By mouth**
  - Child 6 months–3 years F– 250 micrograms daily

**Renagel®** (Genzyme) [H1I]

Tablets, f/c, sevelamer hydrochloride 800 mg, net price 180-tab pack = £117.97. Label: 25, counselling, with meals

Exipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)
Note These doses reflect the recommendations of the British Dental Association, the British Society of Paediatric Dentistry and the British Association for the Study of Community Dentistry (Br Dent J 1997; 182: 6–7)
Zinc supplements should not be given unless there is good evidence of deficiency (hypoproteinaemia spurious lowers plasma-zinc concentration) or in zinc-losing conditions. Zinc deficiency can occur as a result of inadequate diet or malabsorption; excessive loss of zinc can occur in trauma, burns, and protein-losing conditions. A zinc supplement is given until clinical improvement occurs, but it may need to be continued in severe malabsorption, metabolic disease, or in zinc-losing states. Zinc is used in the treatment of Wilson’s disease (section 9.6.1) and acrodernatitis enteropathica, a rare inherited abnormality of zinc absorption.

Parenteral nutrition regimens usually include trace amounts of zinc (section 9.5). If necessary, further zinc can be added to some intravenous feeding regimens.

**ZINC SULPHATE**

**Cautions** interactions: Appendix I (zinc) Renal impairment accumulation may occur in acute renal failure

Pregnancy crosses placenta; risk theoretically minimal, but no information available

Breast-feeding present in milk; risk theoretically minimal, but no information available

**Side-effects** abdominal pain, dyspepsia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, gastric irritation, gastritis; irritability, headache, lethargy

Licensed use Solvazinc® not licensed for use in acrodernatitis enteropathica

Solvazinc® (Galen) Effervescent tablets, zinc sulphate monohydrate 125 mg (45 mg zinc), net price 30 = £4.32. Label: 13, 21

**Dose**

Zinc deficiency (see notes above)

- By mouth

**Neonate** 1 mg/kg elemental zinc daily

**Child under 10 kg** half a tablet daily in water after food, adjusted as necessary

**Child 10–30 kg** half a tablet 1–3 times daily in water after food, adjusted as necessary

**Child over 30 kg** 1 tablet 1–3 times daily in water after food, adjusted as necessary

**Acrodernatitis enteropathica**

- By mouth

**Neonate** 0.5–1 mg/kg elemental zinc twice daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), adjusted as necessary

**Child 1 month–18 years** 0.5–1 mg/kg elemental zinc twice daily (total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses), adjusted as necessary

**Vitamins**

Vitamins are used for the prevention and treatment of specific deficiency states or where the diet is known to be inadequate; they may be prescribed in the NHS to prevent or treat deficiency but not as dietary supplements. Except for iron-deficiency anaemia, a primary vitamin or mineral deficiency due to simple dietary inadequacy is rare in the developed world. Some children may be at risk of developing deficiencies because of an inadequate intake, impaired vitamin synthesis or malabsorption in disease states such as cystic fibrosis and Crohn’s disease.

The use of vitamins as general ‘pick-me-ups’ is of unproven value and the ‘fad’ for mega-vitamin therapy with water-soluble vitamins, such as ascorbic acid and pyridoxine, is unscientific and can be harmful. Many vitamin supplements are described as ‘multivitamin’ but few contain the whole range of essential vitamins and many contain relatively high amounts of vitamins A and D. Care should be taken to ensure the correct dose is not exceeded.


**Dental patients** It is unjustifiable to treat stomatitis or glossitis with mixtures of vitamin preparations; this delays diagnosis and correct treatment.

Most patients who develop a nutritional deficiency despite an adequate intake of vitamins may have malabsorption and if this is suspected the patient should be referred to a medical practitioner.

**9.6.1 Vitamin A**

Deficiency of vitamin A (retinol) is associated with ocular defects (particularly xerophthalmia) and an increased susceptibility to infections, but deficiency is rare in the UK (even in disorders of fat absorption).

Vitamin A supplementation may be required in children with liver disease, particularly cholestatic liver disease, due to the malabsorption of fat-soluble vitamins. In those with complete biliary obstruction an intramuscular dose once a month may be appropriate.

Treatment is sometimes initiated with very high doses of vitamin A and the child should be monitored closely; very high doses are associated with acute toxicity.
BNFC 2011–2012

Preterm neonates have low plasma concentrations of vitamin A and are usually given vitamin A supplements, often as part of an oral multivitamin preparation (section 9.6.7) once enteral feeding has been established. Massive overdose can cause rough skin, dry hair, an enlarged liver, and a raised erythrocyte sedimentation rate and raised serum calcium and serum alkaline phosphatase concentrations.

**Pregnancy** In view of evidence suggesting that high levels of vitamin A may cause birth defects, women who are (or may become) pregnant are advised not to take vitamin A supplements (including tablets and fish-liver oil drops), except on the advice of a doctor or an antenatal clinic; nor should they eat liver or products such as liver pate or liver sausage.

**Indication and dose**

**VITAMIN A** (Retinol)

**Cautions** see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (vitamins)

**Pregnancy** excessive doses can be teratogenic; see also notes above

**Breast-feeding** toxicity likely if mother taking high doses

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** preparations containing only vitamin A are not licensed

**Indication and dose**

Vitamin A deficiency

• By mouth

Neonate 5000 units daily

Child 1 month–1 year 5000 units daily with or after food

Child 1–18 years 10 000 units daily with or after food

Note Higher doses may be used initially for treatment of severe deficiency

**Prevention of deficiency in complete biliary obstruction**

• By intramuscular injection

Neonate 50 000 units once a month

Child 1 month–1 year 50 000 units once a month

**Arovit** (Non-proprietary)

**Oral solution**, vitamin A 150 000 units/mL

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Aquasol-A** (Non-proprietary)

**Injection**, vitamin A (as palmitate) 50 000 units/mL, 2-ml amp

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**VITAMINS A and D**

**Cautions** see notes above and section 9.6.4; prolonged excessive ingestion of vitamins A and D can lead to hypervitaminosis; interactions: Appendix 1 (vitamins)

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above and section 9.6.4

**Licensed use** not licensed in children under 6 months of age

**Indication and dose**

See notes above and section 9.6.4

**Prevention of vitamin A and D deficiency** see individual preparations for dose information

**9.6.2 Vitamin B group**

Deficiency of the B vitamins, other than vitamin B12 (section 9.1.2), is rare in the UK and is usually treated by preparations containing thiamine (B1), and riboflavin (B2). Other members (or substances traditionally classified as members) of the vitamin B complex such as aminobenzoic acid, biotin, choline, inositol, and pantothenic acid or panthenol may be included in vitamin B preparations, but there is no evidence of their value as supplements; however, they can be used in the management of certain metabolic disorders (section 9.8.1). Anaphylaxis has been reported with parenteral B vitamins (see MHRA/CHM advice, below).

As with other vitamins of the B group, pyridoxine (B6) deficiency is rare, but it may occur during isoniazid therapy (section 5.1.9) or penicillamine treatment in Wilson’s disease (section 9.8.1) and is characterised by peripheral neuritis. High doses of pyridoxine are given in some metabolic disorders, such as hyperoxaluria, cystathioninuria and homocystinuria; folic acid supplementation may also be beneficial in these disorders
Pyridoxine is also used in sideroblastic anaemia (section 9.1.3). Rarely, seizures in the neonatal period or during infancy respond to pyridoxine treatment; pyridoxine should be tried in all cases of early-onset intractable seizures and status epilepticus. Pyridoxine has been tried for a wide variety of other disorders, but there is little sound evidence to support the claims of efficacy, and overdosage induces toxic effects.

A number of mitochondrial disorders may respond to treatment with certain B vitamins but these disorders require specialist management. Thiamine is used in the treatment of maple syrup urine disease, mitochondrial respiratory chain defects and, together with riboflavin, in the treatment of congenital lactic acidosis; riboflavin is also used in glutaric acidemias and cytochrome oxidase deficiencies; biotin (section 9.8.1) is used in carboxylase defects.

Folic acid and vitamin B12 are used in the treatment of megaloblastic anaemia (section 9.1.2). Folinic acid (available as calcium folinate) is used in association with cytotoxic therapy (section 8.1).

**RIBOFLAVIN**

(Riboflavin, vitamin B2)

**Cautions** see notes above

**Pregnancy** crosses the placenta but no adverse effects reported, information at high doses limited

**Breast-feeding** present in breast milk but no adverse effects reported, information at high doses limited

**Side-effects** bright yellow urine

**Licensed use** not licensed in children

**Indication and dose**

See also notes above

- **Metabolic diseases**
  - **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 50 mg 1–2 times daily, adjusted according to response
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 50–100 mg 1–2 times daily, adjusted according to response, up to 400 mg daily has been used

**Riboflavin** (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, 10 mg, 50 mg and 100 mg
Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Oral vitamin B complex preparations**

See below

**Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6**

**THIAMINE**

(Vitamin B1)

**Cautions** anaphylactic shock may occasionally follow injection (see MHRA/CHM advice below)

**MHRA/CHM advice (September 2007)**

Although potentially serious allergic adverse reactions may rarely occur during, or shortly after, parenteral administration, the CHM has recommended that:

1. This should not preclude the use of parenteral thiamine in patients where this route of administration is required, particularly in patients at risk of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome where treatment with thiamine is essential;
2. Intravenous administration should be by infusion over 30 minutes;
3. Facilities for treating anaphylaxis (including resuscitation facilities) should be available when parenteral thiamine is administered.

**Breast-feeding** severely thiamine-deficient mothers should avoid breast-feeding as toxic methyl-glyoxal present in milk

**Side-effects** hypersensitivity reactions to injection

**Licensed use** not licensed in children

**Indication and dose**

See also notes above

- **Maple syrup urine disease**
  - **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 5 mg/kg daily, adjusted as necessary
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 5 mg/kg daily, adjusted as necessary

- **Metabolic disorders including congenital lactic acidosis**
  - **By mouth or by intravenous infusion over 30 minutes**
  - **Neonate** 50–200 mg once daily (total dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses), adjusted as necessary
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 100–300 mg once daily (total dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses), adjusted as necessary; up to 2 g daily may be necessary

**Thiamine** (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, thiamine hydrochloride 50 mg, net price 100 = £5.19; 100 mg, 100 = £8.04
Brands include **Benerva**

Injection, 50 mg/mL, 2-mL vial; 100 mg/mL, 2-mL vial

Injection (intramuscular), 100 mg/mL, 5-mL vial
Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Note** Some preparations may contain phenol as a preservative

**Oral vitamin B complex preparations**

See below

**PYRIDOXINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

(Vitamin B6)

**Cautions** see notes above; risk of cardiovascular collapse with intravenous injection—resuscitation facilities must be available, monitor closely; **Interactions**: Appendix 1 (vitamins)

**Side-effects** sensory neuropathy reported with high doses given for extended periods

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

MHRA/CHM advice (September 2007)

Although potentially serious allergic adverse reactions may rarely occur during, or shortly after, parenteral administration, the CHM has recommended that:

1. This should not preclude the use of parenteral thiamine in patients where this route of administration is required, particularly in patients at risk of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome where treatment with thiamine is essential;
2. Intravenous administration should be by infusion over 30 minutes;
3. Facilities for treating anaphylaxis (including resuscitation facilities) should be available when parenteral thiamine is administered.
### Indication and dose

See also notes above

#### Metabolic diseases including cystathioninuria and homocystinuria

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate**: 50–100 mg 1–2 times daily
  - **Child 1 month–18 years**: 50–250 mg 1–2 times daily

#### Treatment of isoniazid-induced neuropathy

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate**: 5–10 mg daily
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**: 10–20 mg 2–3 times daily
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 30–50 mg 2–3 times daily

#### Prevention of isoniazid-induced neuropathy

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate**: 5 mg daily
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**: 5–10 mg daily
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 10 mg daily

#### Prevention of penicillamine-induced neuropathy in Wilson’s disease (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1–12 years**: 5–10 mg daily
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 10 mg daily

#### Pyridoxine-dependent seizures

- **By intravenous injection or by mouth**
  - **Neonate**: initial test dose 50–100 mg by intravenous injection, may be repeated; if responsive followed by an oral maintenance dose of 50–100 mg once daily, adjusted as necessary
  - **Child 1 month–12 years**: initial test dose 50–100 mg daily; if responsive followed by an oral dose of 20–50 mg 1–2 times daily, adjusted as necessary; doses up to 30 mg/kg or 1 g daily have been used

#### Pyridoxine (Non-proprietary)

- **Tablets**, pyridoxine hydrochloride 10 mg, net price 500 = £8.53; 20 mg, 500 = £8.53; 50 mg, 28 = £1.52
- **Injection**, 25 mg/mL, 2 mL vial

*Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6*

### Vitamin C (Ascorbic acid)

Vitamin C therapy is essential in scurvy, but less florid manifestations of vitamin C deficiency have been reported. Vitamin C is used to enhance the excretion of iron one month after starting desferrioxamine therapy (section 9.1.3); it is given separately from food as it also enhances iron absorption. Vitamin C is also used in the treatment of some inherited metabolic disorders, particularly mitochondrial disorders; specialist management of these conditions is required.

Severe scurvy causes gingival swelling and bleeding margins as well as petechiae on the skin. This is, however, exceedingly rare and a child with these signs is more likely to have leukaemia. Investigation should not be delayed by a trial period of vitamin treatment.

Claims that vitamin C ameliorates colds or promotes wound healing have not been proved.

#### ASCORBIC ACID (Vitamin C)

- **Cautions** interactions: Appendix 1 (vitamins)
- **Contra-indications** hyperoxaluria
- **Side-effects** nausea, diarrhoea; headache, fatigue; hyperoxaluria

License use not licensed for metabolic disorders

### Indication and dose

#### Treatment of scurvy

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–4 years**: 125–250 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
  - **Child 4–12 years**: 250–500 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 500 mg–1 g daily in 1–2 divided doses

#### Adjunct to desferrioxamine (see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years**: 100–200 mg daily 1 hour before food
Nutrition and blood

Nutritional vitamin-D deficiency rickets

- By mouth

**Child 1–6 months** 3000 units daily, adjusted as necessary

**Child 6 months–12 years** 6000 units daily, adjusted as necessary

**Child 12–18 years** 10 000 units daily, adjusted as necessary

### Metabolic disorders (tyrosinaemia type III; transient tyrosinaemia of the newborn; glutathione synthase deficiency; Hawskinsinuria)

- By mouth

**Neonate** 50–200 mg daily, adjusted as necessary

**Child 1 month–18 years** 200–400 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, adjusted as necessary; up to 1 g daily may be required

### Ascorbic Acid (Non-proprietary)

**Tablets**, ascorbic acid 50 mg, net price 28 = £1.79; 100 mg, 28 = £1.42; 200 mg, 28 = £1.42; 500 mg (label: 24), 28 = £2.34

Excipients may include aspartame

Brands include Redoxon®

**Injection**, ascorbic acid 100 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £4.39

Excipients include metabisulphite

### 9.6.4 Vitamin D

Note The term Vitamin D is used for a range of compounds including ergocalciferol (calciferol, vitamin D2), colecalciferol (vitamin D3), dihydrotachysterol, alfacalcidol (1α-calciferol, vitamin D2) or calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxycolecalciferol).

Asymptomatic vitamin D deficiency is common in the United Kingdom; symptomatic deficiency may occur in certain ethnic groups, particularly as rickets or hypocalcaemia, and rarely in association with malabsorption. The amount of vitamin D required in infancy is related to sunlight. The amount of vitamin D in breast milk varies and some breast-fed babies, particularly if premature or born to vitamin D deficient mothers, may become deficient. Most formula milk and supplement feeds contain adequate vitamin D to prevent deficiency.

Simple, nutritional vitamin D deficiency can be prevented by oral supplementation of 400 units of ergocalciferol (calciferol, vitamin D2), colecalciferol (vitamin D3), dihydrotachysterol, alfacalcidol (1α-hydroxycolecalciferol), and calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxycolecalciferol). Preparations containing ergocalciferol or colecalciferol. Preparations containing calcium and colecalciferol are also occasionally used in children where there is evidence of combined calcium and vitamin D deficiency. Vitamin D deficiency caused by intestinal malabsorption or chronic liver disease usually requires vitamin D in pharmacological doses, such as ergocalciferol in doses of up to 40 000 units daily; the hypocalcaemia of hypoparathyroidism often requires higher doses in order to achieve normocalcaemia and alfacalcidol is generally preferred.

Vitamin D supplementation is often given in combination with calcium supplements for persistent hypocalcaemia in neonates, and in chronic renal disease.

Vitamin D requires hydroxylation, by the kidney and liver, to its active form therefore the hydroxylated derivatives alfacalcidol or calcitriol should be prescribed if patients with severe liver or renal impairment require vitamin D therapy. Alfacalcidol is generally preferred in children as there is more experience of its use and appropriate formulations are available. Calcitriol is unlicensed for use in children and is generally reserved for those with severe liver disease.

Important. All patients receiving pharmacological doses of vitamin D or its analogues should have their plasma-calcium concentration checked at intervals (initially once or twice weekly) and whenever nausea or vomiting occur.

### ERGOCALCIFEROL

(Calciferol, Vitamin D2)

Cautions see notes above; monitor plasma-calcium concentration in patients receiving high doses and in renal impairment; interactions Appendix 1 (vitamins)

Contra-indications hypercalcaemia; metastatic calcification

Pregnancy high doses teratogenic in animals but therapeutic doses unlikely to be harmful

Breast-feeding caution with high doses as may cause hypercalcaemia in infant—monitor serum-calcium concentration

Side-effects symptoms of overdosage include anorexia, lassitude, nausea and vomiting, diarrhoea, constipation, weight loss, polyuria, sweating, headache, thirst, vertigo, and raised concentrations of calcium and phosphate in plasma and urine

Licensed use Calcium and Ergocalciferol tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years

Indication and dose

See also notes above

**Nutritional vitamin-D deficiency rickets**

- By mouth

**Child 1–6 months** 3000 units daily, adjusted as necessary

**Child 6 months–12 years** 6000 units daily, adjusted as necessary

**Child 12–18 years** 10 000 units daily, adjusted as necessary
9.6.4 Vitamin D 483

Calcium and Ergocalciferol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>Neutritional or physiological supplement; prevention of rickets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• By mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutrate 400 units daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>400–600 units daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pharmacological strengths

The BP directs that when calciferol is prescribed or demanded, colecalciferol or ergocalciferol should be dispensed or supplied in the form of the preferred preparation according to the prescriber’s request. When the strength of the tablets ordered or prescribed is not clear, the intention of the prescriber or purchaser with respect to the strength (expressed in micrograms or milligrams per tablet) should be ascertained.

Daily supplements

There is no plain vitamin D tablet available for treating simple deficiency (see notes above). Alternatives include vitamin A and D preparations (section 9.6.1), and calcium and ergocalciferol tablets (see below).

For prescribing information on calcium, see section 9.5.1

Calcium and Ergocalciferol

(Calcium and Vitamin D)

Tablets, calcium lactate 300 mg, calcium phosphate 150 mg (calcium 97 mg or Ca++ 2.4 mmol), ergocalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units). Net price 28-tab pack = £7.10. Counselling, crush before administration or may be chewed

Ergocalciferol (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, ergocalciferol 250 micrograms (10 000 units), net price 100 = £21.99; 1.25 mg (50 000 units), 100 = £30.34

Important When the strength of the tablets ordered or prescribed is not clear, the intention of the prescriber or purchaser with respect to the strength (expressed in micrograms or milligrams per tablet) should be ascertained.

Injection, ergocalciferol, 7.5 mg (300 000 units)/mL in oil, net price 1-mL amp = £8.50, 2-mL amp = £9.85

Note Other formulations of ergocalciferol are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Diurnal doses

Note There is no plain vitamin D tablet available for treating simple deficiency (see notes above). Alternatives include vitamin A and D preparations (section 9.6.1), and calcium and ergocalciferol tablets (see below).

If prescribing information on calcium, see section 9.5.1

Calcium and Ergocalciferol (Non-proprietary)

(Calcium and Vitamin D)

Tablets, calcium lactate 300 mg, calcium phosphate 150 mg (calcium 97 mg or Ca++ 2.4 mmol), ergocalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units). Net price 28-tab pack = £7.10. Counselling, crush before administration or may be chewed

Alfacalcidol (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, alfacalcidol 250 nanograms, net price 30-cap pack = £5.94; 500 nanograms 30-cap pack = £11.64; 1 microgram 30-cap pack = £15.91

One-Alpha® (LEO)

Capsules, alfacalcidol 250 nanograms (white), net price 30-cap pack = £3.37; 500 nanograms (red), 30-cap pack = £5.27; 1 microgram (brown), 30-cap pack = £8.75

Excipients include sesame oil

Oral drops, sugar-free, alfacalcidol 2 micrograms/mL (1 drop contains approx. 100 nanograms), net price 10 mL = £22.49

Excipients include alcohol

Note The concentration of alfacalcidol in One-Alpha® drops is 10 times greater than that of the former preparation One-Alpha® solution.

Injection, alfacalcidol 2 micrograms/mL, net price 0.5-mL amp = £2.16, 1-mL amp = £4.11

Excipients include alcohol, propylene glycol (caution in neonates, see, p. 2)

Note Shake ampoule for at least 5 seconds before use

CALCITRIOL

(1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol)

Cautions see under Ergocalciferol; monitor plasma calcium, phosphate, and creatinine during dosage titration

Contra-indications see under Ergocalciferol

Pregnancy see under Ergocalciferol

Breast-feeding see under Ergocalciferol

Side-effects see under Ergocalciferol

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

See also notes above
**COLECALCIFEROL**

(Cholecalciferol, vitamin D₃)

Cautions see under Ergocalciferol

Contra-indications see under Ergocalciferol

Pregnancy see under Ergocalciferol

Breast-feeding see under Ergocalciferol

Side-effects see under Ergocalciferol

Licensed use Sandocal® + D 600 not licensed for use in children under 2 years; Adcal-D3®, Calceos®, and Sandocal® + D 1200 not licensed for use in children under 12 years; Cacit® D3, Calcichew-D3®, Forte, Calcichew-D3®, 500 mg/400 unit, and Kalcipos-D® not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers); Calfovit D3® and Natecal D3® not licensed for use in children under 18 years

Indication and dose

See under Ergocalciferol and notes above—alternatively to Ergocalciferol, see also Pharmacological Strengths

Colecalciferol

Various formulations available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

With calcium

For prescribing information on calcium, see section 9.5.1

Adcal-D3®, (ProStrakan)

Tablets (chewable), lemon or tutti-frutti flavoured, calcium carbonate 1.5 g (calcium 600 mg or Ca²⁺ 15 mmol), colecalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units), net price 56-tab pack = £3.89, 112-tab pack = £7.78. Label: 24

Dissolve (effervescent tablets), lemon flavour, calcium carbonate 1.5 g (calcium 600 mg or Ca²⁺ 15 mmol), colecalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units), net price 56-tab pack = £4.99. Label: 13

Calcichew-D3®, (Warner Chilcott)

Granules, effervescent, lemon flavour, calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca²⁺ 12.5 mmol), colecalciferol 11 micrograms (440 units)/sachet, net price 30-sachet pack = £4.06. Label: 13

Calceos®, (Galen)

Tablets (chewable), lemon flavour, calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca²⁺ 12.5 mmol), colecalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units), net price 60-tab pack = £5.62. Label: 24

Calcichew-D3®, (Shire)

Calcichew-D3®, tablets (chewable), orange flavour, calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca²⁺ 12.5 mmol), colecalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units), net price 100-tab pack = £7.68. Label: 24

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Calcichew-D3®, Forte tablets (chewable), lemon flavour, calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca²⁺ 12.5 mmol), colecalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units), net price 100-tab pack = £7.21. Label: 24

Excipients include aspartame (section 9.4.1)

Calcichew-D3®, 500 mg/400 unit caplets, f/c, lemon flavour, calcium carbonate providing calcium 500 mg (Ca²⁺ 12.5 mmol), colecalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units), net price 100-tab pack = £7.57

Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients p.2)

Calfovit D3®, (Menarini)

Powder, lemon flavour, calcium phosphate 3.1 g (calcium 1.2 g or Ca²⁺ 30 mmol), colecalciferol 20 micrograms (800 units), net price 30-sachet pack = £4.32. Label: 13, 21

Kalcipos-D®, (Meda)

Tablets (chewable), calcium carbonate providing calcium 500 mg (Ca²⁺ 12.5 mmol), colecalciferol 20 micrograms (800 units), net price 30-sachet pack = £4.21. Label: 24

Natecal D3®, (Chiesi)

Tablets (chewable), (aniseed, peppermint, and molasses flavour), calcium carbonate 1.05 g, providing calcium 600 mg (Ca²⁺...
### 9.6.5 Vitamin E (Tocopherols)

The daily requirement of vitamin E has not been well defined. Vitamin E supplements are given to children with fat malabsorption such as in cystic fibrosis and cholestatic liver disease. In children with abetalipoproteinaemia abnormally low vitamin E concentrations may occur in association with neuromuscular problems; this usually responds to high doses of vitamin E. Some neonatal units still administer a single intramuscular dose of vitamin E at birth to preterm neonates to reduce the risk of complications; no trials of long-term outcome have been carried out. The intramuscular route should also be considered in children with severe liver disease when response to oral therapy is inadequate.

Vitamin E has been tried for various other conditions but there is little scientific evidence of its value.

#### ALPHA TOCOPHERYL ACETATE

**Cautions** predisposition to thrombosis; increased risk of necrotising enterocolitis in preterm neonates (see administration); **interactions:** Appendix 1 (vitamins)

**Pregnancy** no evidence of safety of high doses

**Breast-feeding** excreted in milk, minimal risk although caution with large doses

**Side-effects** diarrhoea and abdominal pain, particularly with high doses

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin E deficiency</th>
<th>By mouth</th>
<th>Neonate 10 mg/kg once daily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>2–10 mg/kg daily, up to 20 mg/kg has been used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Malabsorption in cystic fibrosis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>By mouth (with food and pancreatic enzymes)</th>
<th>Child 1 month–1 year</th>
<th>50 mg once daily, adjusted as necessary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 1–12 years</td>
<td>100 mg once daily, adjusted as necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>200–300 mg once daily, adjusted as necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vitamin E deficiency in cholestasis and severe liver disease**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>By mouth</th>
<th>Neonate 10 mg/kg daily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### ALPHA TOCOPHEROL

**Cautions** predisposition to thrombosis; **interactions:** Appendix 1 (vitamins)

**Contra-indications** preterm neonates

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution and monitor closely—no information available

**Renal impairment** manufacturer advises caution and monitor closely; risk of renal toxicity due to polyethylene glycol content

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises caution; no evidence of harm in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Side-effects** diarrhoea; less commonly asthenia, headache, pruritus, disturbances in serum-potassium and serum-sodium concentrations, alopecia, and rash

**Vedrop** (Orphan Europe) ▼ ▼

**Oral solution,** yellow, d-alpha tocopherol (as tocofersolan) 50 mg/mL, net price 20 mL = £54.55, 60 mL = £163.65 (all with oral syringe)

**Note** Tocofersolan is a water-soluble form of d-alpha tocopherol

**Dose** vitamin E deficiency because of malabsorption in congenital or hereditary chronic cholestasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>By mouth</th>
<th>Neonate 17 mg/kg daily, adjusted as necessary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>17 mg/kg daily, adjusted as necessary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.6.6 Vitamin K

Vitamin K is necessary for the production of blood clotting factors and proteins necessary for the normal calcification of bone.

Because vitamin K is fat soluble, children with fat malabsorption, especially in biliary obstruction or hepatic disease, may become deficient. For oral administration to prevent vitamin K deficiency in malabsorption syndromes, a water-soluble synthetic vitamin K derivative, menadione sodium phosphate (see Contra-indications below) can be used if supplementation with phytonadione by mouth has been insufficient.

Oral coumarin anticoagulants act by interfering with vitamin K metabolism in the hepatic cells and their effects can be antagonised by giving vitamin K; for advice on the use of vitamin K in haemorrhage, see section 2.8.2.

Vitamin K deficiency bleeding Neonates are relatively deficient in vitamin K and those who do not receive supplements are at risk of serious bleeding, including intracranial bleeding. The Chief Medical Officer and the Chief Nursing Officer have recommended that all newborn babies should receive vitamin K to prevent vitamin K deficiency bleeding (previously termed haemorrhagic disease of the newborn). Local protocols may vary and an appropriate regimen should be selected after discussion with parents in the antenatal period.

Vitamin K (as phytonadione) 1 mg may be given by a single intramuscular injection at birth; this prevents vitamin K deficiency bleeding in virtually all babies; preterm neonates may be given 400 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg). The intravenous route may be used in preterm neonates of very low birth-weight if intramuscular injection is not possible; however, it may not provide the prolonged protection of the intramuscular injection; any babies receiving intravenous vitamin K should be given subsequent oral doses.

Alternatively, in healthy babies who are not at particular risk of bleeding disorders, vitamin K may be given by mouth, and arrangements must be in place to ensure the appropriate regimen is followed. Two doses of a colloidal (mixed micelle) preparation of phytonadione 2 mg should be given in the first week, the first dose being given at birth and the second at 4–7 days. For exclusively breast-fed babies, a third dose of phytonadione 1 mg is given at 1 month of age; the third dose is omitted in formula-fed babies because formula feeds contain adequate vitamin K. An alternative regimen is to give one dose of phytonadione 1 mg by mouth at birth (using the contents of a phytonadione capsule, see preparation below) to protect from the risk of vitamin K deficiency bleeding in the first week; for exclusively breast-fed babies, further doses of phytonadione 1 mg are given by mouth (using the contents of a phytonadione capsule) at weekly intervals for 12 weeks.

For the treatment of vitamin K deficiency bleeding, intravenous phytonadione is used, see Phytonadione below.

### MENADIOL SODIUM PHOSPHATE

**Indication and dose**

- **Supplementation in vitamin K malabsorption**
  - By mouth
    - Child 1–12 years 5–10 mg daily, adjusted as necessary
    - Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg daily, adjusted as necessary

**Menadiol Phosphate** (Non-proprietary)

**Tablets**, menadiol sodium phosphate equivalent to 10 mg of menadiol phosphate, net price 100-tab pack = £58.39

---

**Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6**

### PHYTOMENADIONE

**(Vitamin K₁)**

**Indication and dose**

- **Neonatal prophylaxis of vitamin-K deficiency bleeding** see notes above

- **Neonatal hypoprothrombinaemia or vitamin-K deficiency bleeding**
  - By intravenous injection

- **Neonatal biliary atresia and liver disease**
  - By mouth

- **Reversal of coumarin anticoagulation when continued anticoagulation required or if no significant bleeding** (see also section 2.8.2)—seek specialist advice
  - By intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 15–30 micrograms/kg (max. 1 mg) as a single dose, repeated as necessary

- **Reversal of coumarin anticoagulation when anticoagulation not required or if significant bleeding; treatment of haemorrhage associated with vitamin-K deficiency** (see also section 2.8.2)—seek specialist advice
  - By intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 250–300 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg) as a single dose
**9.6.7 Multivitamin preparations**

Multivitamin supplements are used in children with vitamin deficiencies and also in malabsorption conditions such as cystic fibrosis or liver disease. To avoid potential toxicity, the content of all vitamin preparations, particularly vitamin A, should be considered when used together with other supplements. Supplementation is not required if nutrient enriched feeds are used; consult a dietician for further advice.

### MULTIVITAMIN PREPARATIONS

**Cautions** see individual vitamins; vitamin A concentration of preparations varies

**Contra-indications** see individual vitamins

**Side-effects** see individual vitamins

**Licensed use** Dalivit® not licensed for use in children under 6 weeks

**Indication and dose** See under preparations below

### Vitamins

**Capsules**
- ascorbic acid 15 mg, nicotinamide 7.5 mg, riboflavin 500 micrograms, thiamine hydrochloride 1 mg, vitamin A 2500 units, vitamin D 300 units, net price 28-cap pack = £1.50

**Dose**

- Prevention of deficiency
  - By mouth
  - Child 1–12 years 1 capsule daily
  - Child 12–18 years 2 capsules daily

### Cystic fibrosis: prevention of deficiency

- By mouth
  - Child 1–18 years 2–3 capsules daily

### Abidec® (Chefaro UK)

**Drops** vitamins A, B group, C, and D. Net price 25 mL (with dropper) = £2.20

**Note** Contains 1333 units of vitamin A (as palmitate) per 0.6 mL dose

**Excipients** include arachis (peanut) oil and sucrose

**Dose**

- Prevention of deficiency
  - By mouth
  - Preterm neonate 0.6 mL daily
  - Neonate 0.3 mL daily
  - Child 1 month–1 year 0.3 mL daily
  - Child 1–18 years 0.6 mL daily

### Cystic fibrosis: prevention of deficiency

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–1 year 0.6 mL daily
  - Child 1–18 years 1.2 mL daily

### Dalivit® (LPC)

**Oral drops** vitamins A, B group, C, and D. Net price 25 mL = £2.98, 50 mL = £4.85

**Note** Contains 5000 units of vitamin A (as palmitate) per 0.6 mL dose

**Excipients** include sucrose

**Dose**

- Prevention of deficiency
  - By mouth
  - Neonate (including preterm) 0.3 mL daily
  - Child 1 month–1 year 0.3 mL daily
  - Child 1–18 years 0.6 mL daily

### Vitamin and mineral supplements and adjuncts to synthetic diets

**Forceval® (Alliance)**

**Capsules** brown/red, vitamins (ascorbic acid 60 mg, biotin 100 micrograms, cyanocobalamin 3 micrograms, folic acid 400 micrograms, nicotinamide 18 mg, pantothenic acid 4 mg, pyridoxine 2 mg, riboflavin 1.6 mg, thiamine 1.2 mg, vitamin A 2500 units, vitamin D, 400 units, vitamin E 10 mg, minerals and trace elements (calcium 100 mg, chromium 200 micrograms, copper 2 mg, iodine 140 micrograms, iron 12 mg, magnesium 30 mg, manganese 3 mg, molybdenum 250 micrograms, phosphorus 77 mg, potassium 4 mg, selenium 50 micrograms, zinc 15 mg), net price 15-cap pack = £2.83, 30-cap pack = £5.19, 90-cap pack = £12.53. Label: 25

**Dose**

- Vitamin and mineral deficiency and as adjunct in synthetic diets
  - Child 12–18 years 1 capsule daily one hour after a meal

**Junior capsules** brown, vitamins (ascorbic acid 25 mg, biotin 50 micrograms, cyanocobalamin...
2 micrograms, folic acid 100 micrograms, niacinamide 7.5 mg, pantothenic acid 2 mg, pyridoxine 1 mg, riboflavin 1 mg, thiamine 1.5 mg, vitamin A 1250 units, vitamin D 200 units, vitamin E 5 mg, vitamin K 25 micrograms), minerals and trace elements (chromium 50 micrograms, copper 1 mg, iodine 75 micrograms, iron 5 mg, magnesium 1 mg, manganese 1.25 mg, molybdenum 50 micrograms, selenium 25 micrograms, zinc 5 mg), net price 30-cap pack = £3.52, 60-cap pack = £6.69

**Dose**

**Vitamin and mineral deficiency and as adjunct in synthetic diets**

**Child 5–12 years**

2 junior capsules daily

**Ketovite c** (Paines & Byrne)

Tablets yellow, ascorbic acid 16.6 mg, riboflavin 1 mg, thiamine hydrochloride 1 mg, pyridoxine hydrochloride 330 micrograms, nicotinamide 3.3 mg, calcium pantothenate 1.16 mg, alpha tocopheryl acetate 5 mg, inositol 50 mg, biotin 170 micrograms, folic acid 250 micrograms, acetomenaphthone 500 micrograms, net price 100-tab pack = £4.17

**Dose**

**Prevention of vitamin deficiency in disorders of carbohydrate or amino-acid metabolism and adjunct in restricted, specialised, or synthetic diets**

**Child 1 month—18 years**

1 tablet 3 times daily; dose adjusted according to condition, diet, or age; use with Ketovite c **Liquid** for complete vitamin supplementation

**Administration** may be crushed immediately before use

**Liquid**, pink, sugar-free, vitamin A 2500 units, ergocalciferol 400 units, choline chloride 150 mg, cyano-cobalamin 12.5 micrograms/5 mL, net price 150-mL pack = £2.70

**Dose**

**Prevention of vitamin deficiency in disorders of carbohydrate or amino-acid metabolism and adjunct in restricted, specialised, or synthetic diets**

**Child 1 month—18 years**

5 mL daily; dose adjusted according to condition, diet, or age; use with Ketovite c **Tablets** for complete vitamin supplementation

**Administration** may be mixed with milk, cereal, or fruit juice

### 9.7 Bitters and tonics

Classification not included in **BNF for Children**.

### 9.8 Metabolic disorders

#### 9.8.1 Drugs used in metabolic disorders

#### 9.8.2 Acute porphyrias

This section covers drugs used in metabolic disorders and not readily classified elsewhere.

---

**Wilson’s disease**

Penicillamine is used in Wilson’s disease (hepatolenticular degeneration) to aid the elimination of copper ions; it is also used for cystinuria. Children who are hypersensitive to penicillin may react rarely to penicillamine.

Trientine is used for the treatment of Wilson’s disease only, in patients intolerant of penicillamine; it is not an alternative to penicillamine in other diseases such as cystinuria. Penicillamine-induced systemic lupus erythematosus may not resolve on transfer to trientine.

Zinc prevents the absorption of copper in Wilson’s disease. Symptomatic patients should be treated initially with a chelating agent because zinc has a slow onset of action. When transferring from chelating treatment to zinc maintenance therapy, chelating treatment should be co-administered for 2–3 weeks until zinc produces its maximal effect.

---

**PENICILLAMINE**

**Cautions** concomitant nephrotoxic drugs (increased risk of toxicity); monitor urine for proteinuria; monitor blood and platelet count regularly (see below); neurological involvement in Wilson’s disease; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (penicillamine)

**Blood counts and urine tests** Consider withdrawal if platelet count falls below 120 000/mm3 or white blood cells below 2500/mm3 or if 3 successive falls within reference range (can restart at reduced dose when counts return to within reference range but permanent withdrawal necessary if recurrence of leucopenia or thrombocytopenia)

**Counselling** Warn child and carer to tell doctor immediately if sore throat, fever, infection, non-specific illness, unexplained bleeding and bruising, purpura, mouth ulcers, or rashes develop

**Contra-indications** lupus erythematosus

**Renal impairment** reduce dose and monitor renal function or avoid—consult product literature

**Pregnancy** fetal abnormalities reported rarely; avoid if possible

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available
Side-effects initially nausea, anorexia, fever, and skin reactions; taste loss (mineral supplements not recommended); blood disorders including thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, agranulocytosis and aplastic anaemia; proteinuria, rarely haematuria (withdraw immediately and seek specialist advice); haemolytic anaemia, pancreatitis, cholestatic jaundice, nephrotic syndrome, lupus erythematosus-like syndrome, myasthenia gravis-like syndrome, neuropathy (especially if neurological involvement in Wilson’s disease—prophylactic pyridoxine recommended, see section 9.6.2, polymyositis (rarely with cardiac involvement), dermatomyositis, mouth ulcers, stomatitis, alopecia, bronchiolitis and pneumonitis, periphalgia, Goodpasture’s syndrome, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome also reported; male and female breast enlargement reported; in non-rheumatoid conditions rheumatoid arthritis-like syndrome also reported; late enlargement reported; in non-rheumatoid conditions; Wilson’s disease in patients intolerant of penicillamine.

Indication and dose

Wilson's disease

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years 2.5 mg/kg twice daily before food, increased at 1–2 week intervals to 10 mg/kg twice daily
  - Child 12–18 years 0.75–1 g twice daily before food, max. 2 g daily for 1 year; usual maintenance dose 0.75–1 g daily

Cystinuria

- By mouth
  - Child 1 month–12 years 5–10 mg/kg twice daily before food, adjusted to maintain urinary cystine below 200 mg/litre; maintain adequate fluid intake
  - Child 12–18 years 0.5–1.5 g twice daily before food, adjusted to maintain urinary cystine below 200 mg/litre; maintain adequate fluid intake

Penicillamine (Non-proprietary) (A)

Tablets, penicillamine 125 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £16.66; 250 mg, 56-tab pack = £25.00. Label: 6, 22, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see above)

Distamine® (Alliance) (B)

Tablets, all f/c, penicillamine 125 mg, net price 100 = £10.34; 250 mg, 100 = £17.78. Label: 6, 22, counselling, blood disorder symptoms (see above)

TRIENTINE DIHYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (trientine)

Pregnancy teratogenic in animal studies—use only if benefit outweighs risk; monitor maternal and neonatal serum-copper concentrations

Side-effects nausea, rash; very rarely anaemia; duodenitis and colitis also reported

Indication and dose

Wilson’s disease in patients intolerant of penicillamine

- By mouth
  - Child 2–12 years 0.6–1.5 g daily in 2–4 divided doses before food, adjusted according to response; reduce dose and increase frequency if nausea is a problem

Child 12–18 years 1.2–2.4 g daily in 2–4 divided doses before food, adjusted according to response; reduce dose and increase frequency if nausea is a problem

Trientine Dihydrochloride (Univar) (A)

Capsules, trientine dihydrochloride 300 mg. Label: 6, 22

ZINC ACETATE

Cautions portal hypertension (risk of hepatic decompensation when switching from chelating agent); monitor full blood count and serum cholesterol; interactions: Appendix 1 (zinc)

Pregnancy usual dose 25 mg 3 times daily adjusted according to plasma-copper concentration and urinary copper excretion

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid; present in milk—may cause zinc-induced copper deficiency in infant

Side-effects gastric irritation (usually transient; may be reduced if first dose taken mid-morning or with a little protein). less commonly sideroblastic anaemia and leucopenia

Indication and dose

Wilson’s disease

- Note dose expressed as elemental zinc
  - By mouth
    - Child 1–6 years 25 mg twice daily
    - Child 6–16 years body-weight under 57 kg, 25 mg 3 times daily; body-weight 57 kg or over, 50 mg 3 times daily
    - Child 16–18 years 50 mg 3 times daily

Wizin® (Orphan Europe) (B)

Capsules, zinc (as acetate) 25 mg (blue), net price 250-cap pack = £132.00; 50 mg (orange), 250-cap pack = £242.00. Label: 23

Administration capsules may be opened and the contents mixed with water

Carnitine deficiency

Carnitine is available for the management of primary carnitine deficiency due to inborn errors of metabolism, or of secondary deficiency in haemodialysis patients. Carnitine is also used in the treatment of some organic acidemias; however, use in fatty acid oxidation is controversial.

CARNITINE

Cautions diabetes mellitus; monitoring of free and acyl carnitine in blood and urine recommended

Renal impairment accumulation of metabolites may occur with chronic oral administration in severe impairment

Pregnancy appropriate to use; no evidence of teratogenicity in animal studies

Side-effects nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, fishy body odour; side-effects may be dose-related—monitor tolerance during first week and after any dose increase
Licensed use not licensed for use by intravenous infusion; tablets, chewable tablets, and oral liquid (10%) not licensed in children under 12 years; paediatric oral solution (30%) not licensed in children over 12 years; not licensed for use in organic acidaemias

Indication and dose

Primary deficiency and organic acidaemias
- By mouth
  - Neonate 50 mg/kg twice daily, higher doses up to 200 mg/kg daily occasionally required
  - Child 1 month–18 years 50 mg/kg twice daily, higher doses up to 200 mg/kg daily occasionally required; usual max. 3 g daily
- By intravenous infusion
  - Neonate initially 100 mg/kg over 30 minutes followed by a continuous infusion of 4 mg/kg/hour
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 100 mg/kg over 30 minutes followed by a continuous infusion of 4 mg/kg/hour
- By slow intravenous injection over 2–3 minutes
  - Neonate up to 100 mg/kg/daily in 2–4 divided doses
  - Child 1 month–18 years up to 100 mg/kg/daily in 2–4 divided doses

Secondary deficiency in dialysis patients
- By slow intravenous injection over 2–3 minutes
  - Child 1 year–18 years 20 mg/kg after each dialysis session, adjusted according to plasma-carnitine concentration
- By mouth
  - (maintenance therapy if benefit gained from first intravenous course)
  - Child 1 month–18 years 1 g daily

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute injection with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5% or 10%.

Carnitor® (Sigma-Tau) Tablets, L-carnitine 330 mg, net price 90-tab pack = £103.95
Chewable tablets, L-carnitine 1 g, net price 10-tab pack = £55.00
Oral liquid, L-carnitine 100 mg/mL (10%), net price 10 × 10-mL (1-g) single-dose bottle = £35.00
Paediatric oral solution, L-carnitine 300 mg/mL (30%), net price 20 mL = £21.00
Injection, L-carnitine 200 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £11.90

Fabry’s disease

Agalsidase alfa and agalsidase beta, enzymes produced by recombinant DNA technology, are licensed for long-term enzyme replacement therapy in Fabry’s disease (a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of alpha-galactosidase A).

AGALSIDASE ALFA and BETA

Cautions interactions: Appendix 1 (agalsidase alfa and beta)

Infusion-related reactions Infusion-related reactions very common, manage by slowing the infusion rate or interrupting the infusion, or minimise by pre-treatment with an antihistamine, antipyretic, or corticosteroid—consult product literature

Pregnancy use with caution

Breast-feeding use with caution—no information available

Side-effects gastro-intestinal disturbances, taste disturbances; tachycardia, bradycardia, palpitation, hypertension, hypotension, chest pain, oedema, flushing; dyspnoea, cough, rhinorrhoea; headache; fatigue, dizziness, asthenia, paraesthesia, syncope, neuropathic pain, tremor, sleep disturbances; influenza-like symptoms, nasopharyngitis; muscle spasms, myalgia, arthralgia; eye irritation; tinnitus; hyper-sensitivity reactions, angioedema, pruritus, urticaria, rash, acne; less commonly cold extremities, parosmia, ear pain and swelling, skin discoloration, and injection-site reactions

Indication and dose

Fabry’s disease (specialist use only)

see under preparations

Fabrazyme® (Genzyme) Intravenous infusion, powder for reconstitution, agalsidase beta, net price 5-mg vial = £315.08; 35-mg vial = £2196.59

Dose

Fabry’s disease (specialist use only)
- By intravenous infusion
  - Child 8–18 years 1 mg/kg every 2 weeks

Administration for intravenous infusion, reconstitute initially with Water for Injections (5 mg in 1.1 mL, 35 mg in 7.2 mL) to produce a solution containing 5 mg/mL; dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% (for doses less than 35 mg dilute with at least 50 mL; doses 35–70 mg dilute with at least 100 mL; doses 70–100 mg dilute with at least 250 mL; doses greater than 100 mg dilute with 500 mL) and give through an in-line low protein-binding 0.2 micron filter at an initial rate of no more than 15 mg/hour; for subsequent infusions, infusion rate may be increased gradually once tolerance has been established

Replagal® (Shire HGT) Concentrate for intravenous infusion, agalsidase alfa 1 mg/mL, net price 1-mL vial = £356.85; 3.5-mL vial = £1068.64

Dose

Fabry’s disease (specialist use only)
- By intravenous infusion
  - Child 7–18 years 200 micrograms/kg every 2 weeks

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute requisite dose with 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 40 minutes using an in-line filter; use within 3 hours of dilution

Gaucher’s disease

Imiglucerase, an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology, is administered as enzyme replacement therapy in Gaucher’s disease, a familial disorder affecting principally the liver, spleen, bone marrow, and lymph nodes.

Velaglucerase alfa, an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology, is administered as enzyme replacement therapy for the treatment of type 1 Gaucher’s disease.
Miglustat, an inhibitor of glucosylceramide synthase, is licensed in adults for the treatment of mild to moderate type 1 Gaucher’s disease in patients for whom imiglucerase is unsuitable; it is given by mouth.

**IMIGLUCERASE**

**Cautions** monitor for imiglucerase antibodies; when stabilised, monitor all parameters and response to treatment at intervals of 6–12 months

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use with caution—limited information available

**Breast-feeding** no information available

**Side-effects** hypersensitivity reactions (including urticaria, angioedema, cyanosis, hypotension, flushing, tachycardia, paraesthesia, backache); less commonly nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal cramps, fatigue, headache, dizziness, fever, arthralgia, injection-site reactions

**Indication and dose**

**Gaucher’s disease type I** (specialist use only)

- By intravenous infusion
  
  **Neonate** initially 60 units/kg once every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response; doses as low as 30 units/kg once every 2 weeks may be appropriate
  
  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 60 units/kg once every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response; doses as low as 30 units/kg once every 2 weeks may be appropriate

**Gaucher’s disease type III** (specialist use only)

- By intravenous infusion
  
  **Neonate** 60–120 units/kg once every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response
  
  **Child 1 month–18 years** 60–120 units/kg once every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, initially reconstitute with Water for Injections (200 units in 5.1 mL, 400 units in 10.2 mL) to a concentration of 40 units/mL; dilute requisite dose with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a final volume of 100–200 mL; give initial dose at a rate not exceeding 0.5 units/kg/minute, subsequent doses to be given at a rate not exceeding 1 unit/kg/minute; administer within 3 hours of reconstitution

**Cerezyme®** (Genzyme) *(Tm)*

- **Intravenous infusion**, powder for reconstitution, imiglucerase, net price 200-unit vial = £535.65; 400-unit vial = £1071.29
  
  **Electrolytes Na+ 0.62 mmol/200-unit vial, 1.24 mmol/400-unit vial**

**VELAGLUCERASE ALFA**

**Cautions** monitor immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibody concentration in severe infusion-related reactions or if there is a lack or loss of effect with velaglucerase alfa

**Infusion-related reactions** infusion-related reactions very common, manage by slowing the infusion rate, or interrupting the infusion, or minimise by pre-treatment with an antihistamine, antipyretic, or corticosteroid—consult product literature

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises use with caution—limited information available

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises use with caution—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea, abdominal pain, tachycardia, hypertension, hypotension, flushing, headache, dizziness, malaise, pyrexia, arthralgia, bone pain, back pain, hypersensitivity reactions, rash, urticaria

**Indication and dose**

**Gaucher’s disease type I** (specialist use only)

- By intravenous infusion
  
  **Child 4–18 years** 60 units/kg once every 2 weeks; adjusted according to response to 15–60 units/kg once every 2 weeks

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, reconstitute each 400-unit vial with 4.3 mL water for injections; dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 60 minutes through a 0.22 micron filter; start infusion within 24 hours of reconstitution

**VPRIV®** (Shire HGT) *(Tm)*

- **Intravenous infusion**, powder for reconstitution, velaglucerase alfa, net price 400-unit vial = £1410.20
  
  **Electrolytes Na+ 0.53 mmol/400-unit vial**

**Mucopolysaccharidosis**

**Laronidase** an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology, is licensed for long-term replacement therapy in the treatment of non-neurological manifestations of mucopolysaccharidosis I, a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of alpha-L-iduronidase.

**Idursulfase** an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology, is licensed for long-term replacement therapy in mucopolysaccharidosis II (Hunter syndrome), a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of iduronate-2-sulfatase.

**Galsulfase** a recombinant form of human N-acetylgalactosamine-4-sulfatase, is licensed for long-term replacement therapy in mucopolysaccharidosis VI (Maroteaux-Lamy syndrome).

**Infusion-related reactions** Infusion-related reactions often occur with administration of laronidase, idursulfase, and galsulfase; they can be managed by slowing the infusion rate or interrupting the infusion, and can be minimised by pre-treatment with an antihistamine and an antipyretic. Recurrent infusion-related reactions may require pre-treatment with a corticosteroid—consult product literature for details.

**GALSULFASE**

**Cautions** respiratory disease; acute febrile or respiratory illness (consider delaying treatment)

**Infusion-related reactions** See notes above

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** abdominal pain, umbilical hernia, gastroenteritis; chest pain, hypertension; dyspnoea, anphoena, nasal congestion; rigors, malaise, arreflexia; pharyngitis; conjunctivitis, corneal opacity; ear pain; facial oedema
Nephropathic cystinosis

Mercaptamine is available for the treatment of nephropathic cystinosis. The oral dose is increased over several weeks to avoid intolerance. Mercaptamine has a very unpleasant taste and smell, which can affect compliance.

All patients receiving mercaptamine should be registered (contact local specialist centre for details).

Mercaptamine eye drops are used in the management of ocular symptoms arising from the deposition of cystine crystals in the eye.

Safe Practice
Mercaptamine has been confused with mercaptopurine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

MERCAPTAMINE
(Cysteamine)

Cautions
leucocyte-cystine concentration and haematological monitoring required—consult product literature; dose of phosphate supplement may need to be adjusted if transferring from phosphocysteamine to mercaptamine

Contra-indications
hypersensitivity to penicillamine

Pregnancy
avoid—teratogenic and toxic in animal studies

Breast-feeding
avoid

Side-effects
breath and body odour, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, anorexia, abdominal pain, gastro-enteritis, dyspepsia, encephalopathy, headache, malaise, fever, rash; less commonly gastro-intestinal ulcer, seizures, hallucinations, nervousness, leucopenia, nephrotic syndrome

Licensed use
eye drops not licensed

Indication and dose

Nephropathic cystinosis (specialist use only)
• By mouth

Neonate
initially one-sixth to one-quarter of the expected maintenance dose, increased gradually over 4–6 weeks; maintenance, 1.3 g/m² (approx. 50 mg/kg) daily in 4 divided doses
Pompe disease

Alglucosidase alfa, an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology, is licensed for long-term replacement therapy in Pompe disease, a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of acid alpha-glucosidase.

### ALGLUCOSIDASE ALFA

**Cautions** cardiac and respiratory dysfunction—monitor closely; monitor immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibody concentration

**Infusion-related reactions** Infusion-related reactions very common, calling for use of antihistamine, antipyretic, or corticosteroid; consult product literature for details

**Pregnancy** toxicity in animal studies, but treatment should not be withheld

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea; flushing, tachycardia; blood pressure changes, cold extremities, cyanosis, facial oedema, chest discomfort; cough, tachypnoea, bronchospasm; headache, agitation, tremor; irritability, restlessness, paraesthesia, dizziness, fatigue; pyrexia; antibody formation; myalgia, muscle spasms; sweating, rash, pruritus, urticaria, injection-site reactions; hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylaxis); severe skin reactions (including ulcerative and necrotising skin lesions) also reported

### Indication and dose

**Pompe disease** (specialist use only)

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** 20 mg/kg every 2 weeks
  - **Child 1 month –18 years** 20 mg/kg every 2 weeks

**Administration** For intravenous infusion, reconstitute 50 mg with 10.3 mL Water for Injections to produce a 5 mg/mL solution; gently rotate vial without shaking; dilute requisite dose with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to give a final concentration of 0.5–4 mg/mL; give through a low protein-binding in-line filter (0.2 micron) at an initial rate of 1 mg/kg/hour increased by 2 mg/kg/hour every 30 minutes to max. 7 mg/kg/hour

- **Myozyme®** (Genzyme) ▼ (Orphan Europe)
  - **Intravenous infusion**, powder for reconstitution, alglucosidase alfa, net price 50-mg vial = £356.06

**Cystagon** (Orphan Europe) ◄

Capsules, mercaptamine (as bitartrate) 50 mg, net price 100-cap pack = £70.00; 150 mg, 100-cap pack = £190.00. Label: 21

**Note** For child under 6 years at risk of aspiration, capsules can be opened and contents sprinkled on food (at a temperature suitable for eating); avoid adding to acidic drinks (e.g. orange juice)

- **Eye drops**
  - **Mercaptamine** (Non-proprietary)
    - **Eye drops**, mercaptamine 0.11%, 10 mL
    - Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 889

Urea cycle disorders

Sodium benzoate and sodium phenylbutyrate are used in the management of urea cycle disorders. Both, either singly or in combination, are indicated as adjunctive therapy in all patients with neonatal-onset disease and in those with late-onset disease who have a history of hyperammonaemic encephalopathy. Sodium benzoate is also used in non-ketotic hyperglycaemia.

Gastro-intestinal side-effects of sodium benzoate or sodium phenylbutyrate may be reduced by giving smaller doses more frequently. The preparations contain significant amounts of sodium; therefore, they should be used with caution in children with congestive heart failure, renal insufficiency and clinical conditions involving sodium retention with oedema.

The long-term management of urea cycle disorders includes oral maintenance treatment with sodium benzoate and sodium phenylbutyrate combined with a low protein diet and other drugs such as arginine or citruline, depending on the specific disorder.

Carglumic acid is licensed for the treatment of hyperammonaemia due to N-acetylglutamate synthase deficiency.

**ARGININE**

**Cautions** monitor plasma pH and chloride

**Contra-indications** not to be used in the treatment of arginine deficiency

**Pregnancy** no information available

**Breast-feeding** no information available

**Side-effects** intravenous injection only: nausea, vomiting; flushing, hypotension; headache, numbness; hyperchloroaemic metabolic acidosis; irritation at injection-site

**Licensed use** injection and tablets not licensed in children; powder licensed for urea cycle disorders in children

### Indication and dose

**Acute hyperammonaemia in carbamylphosphate synthetase deficiency, ornithine carbamyl transferase deficiency (specialist use only)**

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - **Neonate** initially 200 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 8 mg/kg/hour
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 200 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 8 mg/kg/hour

**BNFC 2011–2012**
Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia in carbamylphosphate synthetase deficiency, ornithine carbamyl transferase deficiency (specialist use only)

- By mouth
  - Neonate 100 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses
  - Child 1 month–18 years 100 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses

Acute hyperammonaemia in citrullinaemia, argininosuccinic aciduria (specialist use only)

- By intravenous infusion
  - Neonate initially 600 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 25 mg/kg/hour
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 600 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 25 mg/kg/hour

Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia in citrullinaemia, argininosuccinic aciduria (specialist use only)

- By mouth
  - Neonate 100–175 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1 month–18 years 100–175 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response

L-Arginine (Non-proprietary)

- Tablets, L-arginine (as hydrochloride) 500 mg
- Oral solution, L-arginine 100 mg/mL
- Powder, L-arginine (as hydrochloride), net price 100 g = £12.27

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Note: Other strengths may be available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Administration: Dilute to a concentration of 20 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or 0.45%, or Glucose 5% or 10%; max concentration 100 mg/mL, may be given orally

CARGLUMIC ACID

Pregnancy: Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available

Breast-feeding: Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects: Sweating

Indication and dose

Hyperammonaemia due to N-acetyl glutamate synthase deficiency (initiated under specialist supervision)

- By mouth
  - Neonate initially 50–125 mg/kg twice daily immediately before feeds, adjusted according to plasma-ammonia concentration; maintenance 5–50 mg/kg twice daily
  - Child 1 month–18 years 50–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response

Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders; non-ketotic hyperglycaemia (specialist use only)

- By mouth
  - Neonate 50–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1 month–18 years 50–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response

50 mg/kg twice daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

Child 1 month–18 years initially 50–125 mg/kg twice daily immediately before food, adjusted according to plasma-ammonia concentration; maintenance 5–50 mg/kg twice daily; total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

Carbaglu® (Orphan Europe)

Dispersible tablets, carglumic acid 200 mg, net price 5-tab pack = £299.00, 60-tab pack = £3499.00. Label: 13

CITRULLINE

Pregnancy: No information available

Breast-feeding: No information available

Indication and dose

Carbamyl phosphate synthetase deficiency, ornithine carbamyl transferase deficiency

- By mouth
  - Neonate 150 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1 month–18 years 150 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response

Citrulline Powder (Non-proprietary)

- Powder, L-citrulline 100 g
  - Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Administration: May be mixed with drinks or taken as a paste

SODIUM BENZOATE

Cautions: See notes above; neonates (risk of kernicterus and increased side-effects); interactions: Appendix 1 (sodium benzoate)

Renal impairment: See notes above

Pregnancy: No information available

Breast-feeding: No information available

Side-effects: Nausea, vomiting, anorexia; irritability, lethargy, coma

Licensed use: Not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Acute hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders (specialist use only)

- By intravenous infusion
  - Neonate initially 250 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 20 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 250 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 20 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders; non-ketotic hyperglycaemia (specialist use only)

- By mouth
  - Neonate 50–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response
  - Child 1 month–18 years 50–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food, adjusted according to response

494 9.8.1 Drugs used in metabolic disorders BNFC 2011–2012
SODIUM PHENYL BUTYRATE

Cautions see notes above; congestive heart failure; interactions: Appendix 1 (sodium phenylbutyrate)

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises use with caution

Renal impairment manufacturer advises use with caution; see also notes above

Pregnancy avoid—toxicity in animal studies; manufacturer advises adequate contraception in women of child-bearing potential

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Side-effects amnorrhea and irregular menstrual cycles, decreased appetite, body odour, taste disturbances; less commonly nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, peptic ulcer, pancreatitis, rectal bleeding, arrhythmia, oedema, syncope, depression, headache, rash, weight gain, renal tubular acidosis, aplastic anaemia, ecchymoses

Licensed use injection not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Acute hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders (specialist use only)
- By continuous intravenous infusion
  - Neonate initially 250 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 20 mg/kg/hour adjusted according to response
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 250 mg/kg over 90 minutes followed by 20 mg/kg/hour adjusted according to response

Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders (specialist use only)
- By mouth
  - Neonate 75–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food
  - Child 1 month–18 years 75–150 mg/kg 3–4 times daily, with food (max. 20 g daily)

Administration Oral dose may be mixed with fruit drinks, milk, or feeds

Sodium Phenylbutyrate (Non-proprietary)  
Injection, sodium phenylbutyrate 200 mg/mL, 5-mL amp

Note Contains Na+ 1.1 mmol /mL

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Administration for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 20 mg/mL (max. 50 mg/mL) with Glucose 5% or 10%

Ammonaps® (Swedish Orphan)  
Tablets, sodium phenylbutyrate 500 mg. Contains Na+ 2.7 mmol/tablet. Net price 250-tab pack = £493.00

Granules, sodium phenylbutyrate 940 mg/g. Contains Na+ 5.4 mmol/g. Net price 266-g pack = £860.00

Note Granules should be mixed with food before taking

Other metabolic disorders

Other metabolic disorders and the drugs used in their management include:

Amino acid disorders: maple syrup urine disease (thiamine section 9.6.2); tyrosinaemia type III, hawkinsinuria (Vitamin C, section 9.6.3); tyrosinaemia type I (nitisinone).

Mitochondrial disorders: isolated carboxylase defects, defects of biotin metabolism (biotin, see below); mitochondrial myopathies (ubidecarenone); congenital lactic acidosis (riboflavin and thiamine, section 9.6.2); respiratory chain defects (thiamine, section 9.6.2); pyruvate dehydrogenase defects (sodium dichloroacetate)

Neimann-Pick type C disease: miglustat is available for the treatment of progressive neurological manifestations of Neimann-Pick type C disease, a neurodegenerative disorder characterised by impaired intracellular lipid trafficking.

Homocystinuria and defects in cobalamin metabolism: betaine, pyridoxine (section 9.6.2), hydroxocobalamin (section 9.1.2)

Tetrhydrofolate reductase deficiency: betaine, folic acid (section 9.1.2)

The Scottish Medicines Consortium (p. 3) has advised (July 2010) that betaine anhydrous (Cystadane®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the adjunctive treatment of homocystinuria involving deficiencies or defects in cystathionine beta-synthase, 5,10-methylene-tetrahydrofolate reductase, or cobalamin cofactor metabolism in patients who are not responsive to pyridoxine treatment.

BETAINCE

Cautions monitor plasma-methionine concentration before and during treatment—interrupt treatment if symptoms of cerebral oedema occur

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—limited information available

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises caution—no information available

Side-effects less commonly gastro-intestinal disorders, anorexia, reversible cerebral oedema (see Cautions), agitation, depression, personality disorder, sleep disturbances, urinary incontinence, alopecia, and urticaria
**Indication and dose**

**Adjunctive treatment of homocystinuria (specialist use only)**

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 50 mg/kg twice daily, dose and frequency adjusted according to response; max. 75 mg/kg twice daily
  - **Child 1 month–10 years** 50 mg/kg twice daily, dose and frequency adjusted according to response; max. 75 mg/kg twice daily
  - **Child 10–18 years** 3 g twice daily, adjusted according to response; max. 10 g twice daily

**Administration**

Powder should be mixed with water, juice, milk, formula, or food until completely dissolved and taken immediately; measuring spoons are provided to measure 1 g, 150 mg, and 100 mg of Cystadane® powder.

**Betaine** (Non-proprietary) 500 mg/mL when reconstituted.

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Tablets**

Betaine anhydrous 500 mg

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Cystadane®** (Orphan Europe)

Powder, betaine (anhydrous), net price 180 g = £347.00

**Biotin** (Vitamin H)

**Pregnancy** no information available

**Breast-feeding** no information available

**Indication and dose**

**Isolated carboxylase defects**

- **By mouth or by slow intravenous injection**
  - **Neonate** 5 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; usual maintenance 10–50 mg daily, higher doses may be required
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; usual maintenance 5–20 mg daily but up to 100 mg daily may be required

**Defects of biotin metabolism**

- **By mouth or by slow intravenous injection**
  - **Neonate** 10 mg once daily adjusted according to response; usual maintenance 5–20 mg daily but higher doses may be required
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 10 mg once daily adjusted according to response; usual maintenance 5–20 mg daily but higher doses may be required

**Administration**

For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed and mixed with food or drink.

**Zavesca®** (Actelion) 100 mg, net price 84-cap pack = £3934.17 (hospital only)

**Nitisinone** (NTBC)

**Cautions** slit-lamp examination of eyes recommended before treatment; monitor liver function regularly; monitor platelet and white blood cell count every 6 months

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—effective contraception must be used during treatment; also men should avoid fathering a child during and for 3 months after treatment

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** diarrhea, flatulence, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, constipation, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, weight changes; tremor, dizziness, headache, peripheral neuropathy, ataxia, hypoesthesia, paraesthesia, insomnia, fatigue, asthenia; decreased libido; thrombocytopenia; muscle spasm

**Indication and dose**

**Neimann-Pick type C disease** (specialist supervision only)

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 4–12 years**
    - Body surface area less than 0.47 m$^2$: 100 mg once daily
    - Body surface area 0.47–0.73 m$^2$: 100 mg twice daily
    - Body surface area 0.73–0.88 m$^2$: 200 mg twice daily
    - Body surface area 0.88–1.25 m$^2$: 200 mg three times daily
    - Body surface area greater than 1.25 m$^2$: 200 mg three times daily

**Biotin** (Non-proprietary) 5 mg, 20-tab pack

**Injection**, biotin 5 mg/mL

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**Administration** For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed and mixed with food or drink.
BNFC 2011–2012

9.8.2 Acute porphyrias

The acute porphyrias (acute intermittent porphyria, variegate porphyria, hereditary coproporphyrina, and 5-aminolaevulinic acid dehydratase deficiency porphyria) are hereditary disorders of haem biosynthesis; they have a prevalence of about 1 in 10,000 of the population.

Great care must be taken when prescribing for patients with acute porphyria, since certain drugs can induce acute porphyric crises. Since acute porphyrias are hereditary, relatives of affected individuals should be screened and advised about the potential danger of certain drugs. Acute attacks of porphyria are exceptionally rare before puberty. When acute porphyria is suspected in a child, support from an expert porphyria service should be sought.

Treatment of serious or life-threatening conditions should not be withheld from patients with acute porphyria. When there is no safe alternative, treatment should be started and urinary porphobilinogen excretion should be measured regularly; if it increases or symptoms occur, the drug can be withdrawn and the acute attack treated. If an acute attack of porphyria occurs during pregnancy, contact an expert porphyria service for further advice.

Haem arginate is administered by short intravenous infusion as haem replacement in moderate, severe, or unremitting acute porphyria crises. Supplies of haem arginate may be obtained in an emergency outside office hours from the on-call pharmacist at:

St Thomas’ Hospital
London
Tel: (020) 7188 7188

9.8.2 Acute porphyrias

SODIUM DICHLOROACETATE

Indication and dose

Hereditary tyrosinaemia type I (in combination with dietary restriction of tyrosine and phenylalanine)

- By mouth

Neonate initially 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response; max. 2 mg/kg daily

Child 1 month–18 years initially 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response; max. 2 mg/kg daily

Administration capsules can be opened and the contents suspended in a small amount of water or formula diet and taken immediately

Orfadin® (Swedish Orphan) C

Capsules, nitisinone 2 mg, net price 60-cap pack = £564.00; 5 mg, 60-cap pack = £1127.00; 10 mg, 60-cap pack = £2062.00

HAEM ARGINATE

(Orphan Europe) ▼

Concentrate for intravenous infusion; haem arginate 25 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £434.25

Administration administer over at least 30 minutes; dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% in glass bottle; administer within 1 hour after dilution; max. concentration 2.5 mg/mL.

UBIDECARENONE

(Ubiquinone, Co-enzyme Q10)

Cautions may reduce insulin requirement in diabetes mellitus; interactions: Appendix 1 (ubidecarenone)

Hepatic impairment reduce dose in moderate and severe impairment

Side-effects nausea, diarrhoea, heartburn; rarely headache, irritability, agitation, dizziness

Licensed use not licensed

Indication and dose

Mitochondrial disorders

- By mouth

Neonate initially 5 mg once or twice daily with food; adjusted according to response, up to 200 mg daily may be required

Child 1 month–18 years initially 5 mg once or twice daily with food, adjusted according to response, up to 300 mg daily may be required

Ubidecarenone (Non-proprietary) ▲

Oral solution, ubidecarenone 50 mg/10 mL

Tablets, ubidecarenone 10 mg

HAEM ARGINATE

(Orphan Europe) ▼ ▲

Concentrate for intravenous infusion; haem arginate 25 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £434.25

Administration administer over at least 30 minutes; dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% in glass bottle; administer within 1 hour after dilution; max. concentration 2.5 mg/mL.
Drugs unsafe for use in acute porphyrias

The following list contains drugs on the UK market that have been classified as ‘unsafe’ in porphyria because they have been shown to be porphyrinogenic in animals or in vitro, or have been associated with acute attacks in patients. Absence of a drug from the following lists does not necessarily imply that the drug is safe. For many drugs no information about porphyria is available.

An up-to-date list of drugs considered safe in acute porphyrias is available at www.wmicanes.nhs.uk/po

Unsafe drugs (check groups first)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Akylation drugs</th>
<th>Calcium channel blockers</th>
<th>Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors</th>
<th>Sulfonylureas</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amfetamines</td>
<td>Contraceptives, hormonal</td>
<td>Progestogens</td>
<td>Taxanes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anabolic steroids</td>
<td>Ergot derivatives</td>
<td>Protease inhibitors</td>
<td>Thiazolidinediones</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antidepressants</td>
<td>Gold salts</td>
<td>Statins</td>
<td>Triazol antifungals</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihistamines</td>
<td>Hormone replacement therapy</td>
<td>Seratant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td>Imidazole antifungals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unsafe drugs (groups above first)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acelofenac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminophylline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anomidolone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antermethe with lumefantrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bexarotene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosantan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromocriptine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busipiron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabergoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbazapine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloral hydrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloromycenlicil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colistimethal sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cylcoserine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danazol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dapson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexfenfluramine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diazepam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diclofenac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disopyramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disulfiram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etamsylate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etomidate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenfluramine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoxetine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluminate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fosphenytoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Griseofulvin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halothane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydralazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indapamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isohexepetine mucus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isonzolant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketorolac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lidocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mephenamic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mebeverine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meprobamate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylodopa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metamizol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metyrapone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mifepristone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minoxidil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitotane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nalidixic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrazepam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrofurantoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitroglycerine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxcarbazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxybutynin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxycodone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxphenacetin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percotylamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenoxybenzamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenotoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenyteal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimecillinam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piroperid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium canrenoate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probenecid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrazinamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raloxifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifatubin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifampcin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfapyrazone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamoxifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telithromycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temropofin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theophylline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thigabine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topiramate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toprifilin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triptane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zidovudine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuclopenthikol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further information may be obtained from www.porphyria-europe.org and also from:

Welsh Medicines Information Centre
University Hospital of Wales
Cardiff, CF14 4XW
Tel: (029) 2074 2979/3877

Note: Quite modest changes in chemical structure can lead to changes in porphyrinogenicity but where possible general statements have been made about groups of drugs; these should be checked first.

1. Contact Welsh Medicines Information Centre for further advice.
2. Includes tricyclic (and related) antidepressants and MAOIs; fluoxetine, mianserin, and venlafaxine thought to be safe.
3. Anomida, chlorphenamine, desloratadine, fexofenadine, ketotifen, loratadine, and promethazine thought to be safe.
4. Includes primidon and thiopental.
5. Amlodipine, felodipine, and nifedipine may be used with caution.
6. Progestogens may be used with caution if safer alternative not available.
7. Small amounts in medicines probably safe.
8. Absence of a drug from the following lists does not necessarily imply that the drug is safe. For many drugs no information about porphyria is available.
9. An up-to-date list of drugs considered safe in acute porphyrias is available at www.wmicanes.nhs.uk/po

10. Includes co-trimoxazole and sulfasalazine.
11. Includes ergometrine (oxytocin probably safe) and pergolide.
12. Applies to oral and intravenous use; topical antifungals are thought to be safe due to low systemic exposure.
13. Rosuvostatin thought to be safe.
15. Glipizide is thought to be safe.
16. Alimemazine, chlorphenamine, desloratadine, fexofenadine, ketotifen, loratadine, and promethazine thought to be safe.
17. Status epilepticus has been treated successfully with intravenous diazepam.
18. Alomide, clozapine, flunitrazepam, haloperidol, methadone, morphone, pethidine, and tramadol are thought to be safe.
19. Rifamycins have been used in a few patients without evidence of harm—use with caution if safer alternative not available.
10 Musculoskeletal and joint diseases

10.1 Drugs used in rheumatic diseases

10.1.1 Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

10.1.2 Corticosteroids

10.1.3 Drugs that suppress the rheumatic disease process

10.1.4 Gout and cytotoxic-induced hyperuricaemia

10.1.5 Other drugs for rheumatic diseases

10.2 Drugs used in neuromuscular disorders

10.2.1 Drugs that enhance neuromuscular transmission

10.2.2 Skeletal muscle relaxants

10.3 Drugs for the relief of soft-tissue inflammation and topical pain relief

10.3.1 Enzymes

10.3.2 Rubefacients, topical NSAIDs, capsaicin, and poultices

This chapter also includes advice on the drug management of the following:
dental and orofacial pain, p. 500
extravasation, p. 516
myasthenia gravis, p. 512
soft-tissue and other musculoskeletal disorders, below
juvenile idiopathic arthritis and other inflammatory disorders, below

For treatment of septic arthritis see Table 1, section 5.1.

10.1.1 Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

In single doses non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) have analgesic activity comparable to that of paracetamol (section 4.7.1), but paracetamol is preferred.

In regular full dosage NSAIDs have both a lasting analgesic and an anti-inflammatory effect which makes them particularly useful for the treatment of continuous or regular pain associated with inflammation.
Choice

Differences in anti-inflammatory activity between NSAIDs are small, but there is considerable variation in individual response and tolerance to these drugs. A large proportion of children will respond to any NSAID; of the others, those who do not respond to one may well respond to another. Pain relief starts soon after taking the first dose and a full analgesic effect should normally be obtained within a week, whereas an anti-inflammatory effect may not be achieved (or may not be clinically assessable) for up to 3 weeks. However, in juvenile idiopathic arthritis NSAIDs may take 4–12 weeks to be effective. If appropriate responses are not obtained within these times, another NSAID should be tried. The availability of appropriate formulations needs to be considered when prescribing NSAIDs for children. NSAIDs reduce the production of prostaglandins by inhibiting the enzyme cyclo-oxygenase; selective inhibition of cyclo-oxygenase-2 is associated with less gastro-intestinal intolerance. However, in children gastro-intestinal symptoms are rare in those taking NSAIDs for short periods. The role of selective inhibitors of cyclo-oxygenase in children, see section 2.9.

Ibuprofen and naproxen are propionic acid derivatives used in children:

Ibuprofen combines anti-inflammatory, analgesic, and antipyretic properties. It has fewer side-effects than other NSAIDs but its anti-inflammatory properties are weaker.

Naproxen combines good efficacy with a low incidence of side-effects.

Diclofenac, indometacin, mefenamic acid, and piroxicam have properties similar to those of propionic acid derivatives:

Diclofenac has actions and side-effects similar to those of naproxen.

Indometacin has an action equal to or superior to that of naproxen, but with a high incidence of side-effects including headache, dizziness, and gastro-intestinal disturbances. It is rarely used in children and should be reserved for when other NSAIDs have been unsuccessful.

Mefenamic acid has minor anti-inflammatory properties. It has occasionally been associated with diarrhoea and haemolytic anaemia which require discontinuation of treatment.

Piroxicam is as effective as naproxen and has a long duration of action which permits once-daily administration. However, it has more gastro-intestinal side-effects than most other NSAIDs, and is associated with more frequent serious skin reactions (important: see CHMP advice, p. 505).

Meloxicam is a selective inhibitor of cyclo-oxygenase-2. Its use may be considered in adolescents intolerant to other NSAIDs.

Etoricoxib, a selective inhibitor of cyclo-oxygenase-2, is licensed for the relief of pain in osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, and acute gout in children aged 16 years and over. For the role of aspirin in children, see section 2.9.

Dental and orofacial pain

Most mild to moderate dental pain and inflammation is effectively relieved by ibuprofen or diclofenac. In an appraisal of the relative safety in adults of 7 non-selective NSAIDs, the CSM assessed ibuprofen to have the lowest risk of serious gastro-intestinal side-effects (see below). For further information on the management of dental and orofacial pain, see p. 199.

Cautions and contra-indications

NSAIDs should be used with caution in children with a history of hypersensitivity to any NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by any NSAID. NSAIDs should also be used with caution in coagulation defects. Caution may also be required in children with allergic disorders, and also in children with connective-tissue disorders, see Side-effects below.

In children with cardiac impairment, caution is required since NSAIDs may impair renal function (see also Side-effects below). All NSAIDs are contra-indicated in severe heart failure. Non-selective NSAIDs should be used with caution in uncontrolled hypertension, heart failure, ischaemic heart disease, peripheral arterial disease, cerebrovascular disease, and when used long term in children with risk factors for cardiovascular events. The selective inhibitor of cyclo-oxygenase-2, etoricoxib, is contra-indicated in ischaemic heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral arterial disease, and mild to severe heart failure. Etoricoxib should be used with caution in children with a history of cardiac failure, left ventricular dysfunction, hypertension, in children with oedema for any other reason, and in children with risk factors for cardiovascular events.

NSAIDs and cardiovascular events

The risk of cardiovascular events secondary to NSAID use is undetermined in children. In adults, all NSAID use can, to varying degrees, be associated with a small increased risk of thrombotic events (e.g. myocardial infarction and stroke) independent of baseline cardiovascular risk factors or duration of NSAID use; however, the greatest risk may be in those patients receiving high doses long term. A small increased thrombotic risk cannot be excluded in children.

In adults, diclofenac (150 mg daily) and ibuprofen (2.4 g daily) are associated with an increased risk of thrombotic events. The increased risk for diclofenac is similar to that of etoricoxib. Naproxen (in adults, 1 g daily) is associated with a lower thrombotic risk, and lower doses of ibuprofen (in adults, 1.2 g daily or less) have not been associated with an increased risk of myocardial infarction.

The lowest effective dose of NSAID should be prescribed for the shortest period of time to control symptoms, and the need for long-term treatment should be reviewed periodically.

NSAIDs are generally contra-indicated if there is active or previous gastro-intestinal ulceration or bleeding; however, some children may require NSAIDs for effective relief of pain and stiffness. For advice on the prophylaxis and treatment of NSAID-associated gastro-intestinal ulcers, see section 1.3.

For interactions of NSAIDs, see Appendix 1 (NSAIDs).
Hepatic impairment NSAIDs should be used with caution in children with hepatic impairment; there is an increased risk of gastrointestinal bleeding and fluid retention. NSAIDs should be avoided in severe liver disease; see also individual drugs.

Renal impairment NSAIDs should be avoided if possible or used with caution in children with renal impairment; the lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration, and renal function should be monitored. Sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure; deterioration in renal function has also been reported after topical use; see also individual drugs.

Pregnancy Most manufacturers advise avoiding NSAIDs during pregnancy or avoiding them unless the potential benefit outweighs risk. NSAIDs should be avoided during the third trimester because use is associated with a risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus in utero and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. In addition, the onset of labour may be delayed and the duration may be increased.

Breast-feeding NSAIDs should be used with caution during breast-feeding; see also individual drugs.

Side-effects The side-effects of NSAIDs vary in severity and frequency. Gastro-intestinal disturbances including discomfort, nausea, diarrhoea, and occasionally bleeding and ulceration may occur (see also notes below and Cautions above).

Gastro-intestinal side-effects All NSAIDs are associated with gastro-intestinal toxicity. In adults, evidence on the relative safety of NSAIDs indicates differences in the risks of serious upper gastro-intestinal side-effects. ibuprofen is associated with the lowest risk; piroxicam, indomethacin, naproxen, and diclofenac are associated with intermediate risks (possibly higher in the case of piroxicam, see also CHMP advice, p. 505). Selective inhibitors of cyclo-oxygenase-2 are associated with a lower risk of serious upper gastro-intestinal side-effects than non-selective NSAIDs. Children appear to tolerate NSAIDs better than adults and gastro-intestinal side-effects are less common; use of gastro-protective drugs may not be necessary (see also section 1.3).

Other side-effects include hypersensitivity reactions (particularly rashes, angioedema, and bronchospasm), headache, dizziness, nervousness, depression, drowsiness, insomnia, vertigo, hearing disturbances such as tinnitus, photosensitivity, and haematuria. Blood disorders have also occurred. Fluid retention may occur (rarely precipitating congestive heart failure); blood pressure may be raised.

Asthma All NSAIDs have the potential to worsen asthma, either acutely or as a gradual worsening of symptoms; consider both prescribed NSAIDs and those that are purchased over the counter.

Renal failure may be provoked by NSAIDs, especially in patients with pre-existing renal impairment (important, see Renal impairment above). Rarely, papillary necrosis or interstitial fibrosis associated with NSAIDs can lead to renal failure. Hepatic damage, alveolitis, pulmonary eosinophilia, pancreatitis, visual disturbances, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis are other rare side-effects. Induction of or exacerbation of colitis or Crohn’s disease has been reported. Aseptic meningitis has been reported rarely with NSAIDs—children with connective tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible.

Side-effects see notes above; suppositories may cause rectal irritation; injection site reactions

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 1 year; suppositories not licensed for use in children under 6 years except for use in children over 1 year for juvenile idiopathic arthritis; solid dose forms containing more than 25 mg not licensed for use in children; injection not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

**Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease including juvenile idiopathic arthritis**
- By mouth
- Child 6 months–18 years 0.3–1 mg/kg (max. 50 mg) 3 times daily

**Diclofenac Sodium** (Non-proprietary) 

**Tablets,** both e/c, diclofenac sodium 25 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £1.14; 50 mg, 84-tab pack = £1.31. Label: 5, 25

Brands include Defensa®, Dicloflex®, Diclokap®, Fenactol®, Flamaflex®

Dispersible tablets, sugar-free, diclofenac sodium 10 mg
Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p 809

Suppositories, diclofenac sodium 100 mg, net price 10 = £3.97
Brands include Econac®

**Voltarol** (Novartis)

**Tablets,** e/c, diclofenac sodium 25 mg (yellow), net price 84-tab pack = £2.94; 50 mg (brown), 84-tab pack = £4.57. Label: 5, 25

Dispersible tablets, sugar-free, pink, diclofenac, equivalent to diclofenac sodium 50 mg, net price 21-tab pack = £6.19. Label: 13, 21

Injection, diclofenac sodium 25 mg/mL, net price 3-mL amp = 83p
Excipients include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 2), propylene glycol

Suppositories, diclofenac sodium 12.5 mg, net price 10 = £0.80; 25 mg, 10 = £1.03; 50 mg, 10 = £1.70; 100 mg, 10 = £3.03

**Modified release**

**Diclomax SR** (Galen)

**Capsules,** m/r, yellow, diclofenac sodium 75 mg, net price 56-cap pack = £11.40. Label: 21, 25

Dose
- Pain and inflammation
  - By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 capsule 1–2 times daily

**Diclomax Retard** (Galen)

**Capsules,** m/r, diclofenac sodium 100 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £8.20. Label: 21, 25

Dose
- Pain and inflammation
  - By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 capsule once daily

**Motifene** 75 mg (Daichi Sankyo)

**Capsules,** e/c, m/r, diclofenac sodium 75 mg (enclosing e/c pellets containing diclofenac sodium 25 mg and m/r pellets containing diclofenac sodium 50 mg), net price 56-cap pack = £8.00. Label: 25

Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

Dose
- Pain and inflammation
  - By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 capsule 1–2 times daily

**Voltarol** 75 mg SR (Novartis)

**Tablets,** m/r, pink, diclofenac sodium 75 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £6.46; 56-tab pack = £12.92. Label: 21, 25

Dose
- Pain and inflammation
  - By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 tablet 1–2 times daily

Note Other brands of modified-release tablets containing diclofenac sodium 75 mg include Defensa®, SR, Dexomon®, 75 SR, Dicloflex® 75 SR, Fenactol®, 75 mg SR, Flamatac®, 75 MR, Flamase® SR, Flexotard® MR 75, Rheumatac® Retard 75, Rhumalgan® CR, Slofenac® SR, Volosad® Retard 75

**Voltarol** Retard (Novartis)

**Tablets,** m/r, red, diclofenac sodium 100 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £9.47. Label: 21, 25

Dose
- Pain and inflammation
  - By mouth
  - Child 12–18 years 1 tablet once daily

Note Other brands of modified-release tablets containing diclofenac sodium 100 mg include Defensa®, Retard, Dexomon®, Retard 100, Dicloflex® Retard, Fenactol®, Retard 100 mg, Flamatac®, 100 MR, Slofenac® SR, Volosad® Retard 100

**ETORICOXIB**

Cautions see notes above; also dehydration; monitor blood pressure before treatment, 2 weeks after initiation and periodically during treatment

Contra-indications see notes above; inflammatory bowel disease; uncontrolled hypertension (persistently above 140/90 mmHg)

Hepatic impairment max. 60 mg daily in mild impairment; max. 60 mg on alternate days or 30 mg once daily in moderate impairment; see also notes above
Renal impairment  avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; see also notes above

Pregnancy  manufacturer advises avoid (teratogenic in animal studies); see also notes above

Breast-feeding  manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies; see also notes above

Side-effects  see notes above; also palpitation, fatigue, influenza-like symptoms, ecchymosis; less commonly dry mouth, taste disturbance, mouth ulcer, appetite and weight change, atrial fibrillation, transient ischaemic attack, chest pain, flushing, cough, dyspnoea, epistaxis, anxiety, mental acuity impaired, paraesthesia, electrolyte disturbance, myalgia and arthralgia; very rarely confusion and hallucinations

Indication and dose

Osteoarthritis
  • By mouth
    Child 16–18 years  30 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 60 mg once daily

Rheumatoid arthritis and ankylosing spondylitis
  • By mouth
    Child 16–18 years  90 mg once daily

Acute gout
  • By mouth
    Child 16–18 years  120 mg once daily for max. 8 days

Arcoxia® (MSD) ▼ [Rx]
Tablets, f/c, etoricoxib 30 mg (blue-green), net price 28-tab pack = £13.99; 60 mg (dark green), 28-tab pack = £20.11; 90 mg (white), 28-tab pack = £22.96; 120 mg (pale green), 7-tab pack = £6.03, 28-tab pack = £24.11

1 Ibuprofen (Non-proprietary) [Rx]
Tablets, coated, ibuprofen 200 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £1.62; 400 mg, 84-tab pack = £1.72; 600 mg, 84-tab pack = £4.06. Label: 21
Brands include Arthrobifen®, Ebudifen®, Rimafen®

Dental prescribing on NHS Ibuprofen Tablets may be prescribed

Oral suspension, ibuprofen 100 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £1.48, 150 mL = £2.71, 500 mL = £8.88. Label: 21

Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription

Brands include Calprofen®, Feverfen®, Nurofen® for Children, Orthifen® for Children

Dental prescribing on NHS Ibuprofen Oral Suspension Sugar-free may be prescribed

1 Can be sold to the public under certain circumstances; for exemptions see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition)

Brufen® (Abbott) [Rx]
Tablets, f/f, ibuprofen 200 mg, net price 100-tab pack = £3.92; 400 mg, 100-tab pack = £8.16; 600 mg, 100-tab pack = £12.24. Label: 21

Syrup, orange, ibuprofen 100 mg/5 mL, net price 500 mL (orange-flavoured) = £8.88. Label: 21

Granules, effervescent, ibuprofen 600 mg/sachet, net price 20–sachet pack = £6.53. Label: 13, 21

Contains sodium approx. 9 mmol/sachet

Modified release

Brufen Retard® (Abbott) [Rx]
Tablets, m/r, ibuprofen 800 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £6.48. Label: 25, 27

Dose

Pain and inflammation
  • By mouth
    Child 12–18 years  2 tablets daily as a single dose, preferably in the early evening, increased in severe cases to 3 tablets daily in 2 divided doses

BNFC 2011–2012  10.1.1 Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
**Fenbid** (Goldshield)

**Spansule** (= capsule m/r), maroon/pink, enclosing off-white pellets, ibuprofen 300 mg, net price 120-cap pack = £9.64. Label: 25

**Dose**

- **Pain and inflammation**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years initially 2 capsules twice daily, increased in severe cases to 3 capsules twice daily; then 1–2 capsules twice daily

**INDOMETACIN** (Indomethacin)

**Cautions** see notes above; also epilepsy, psychiatric disturbances; during prolonged therapy ophthalmic and blood examinations particularly advisable; avoid rectal administration in proctitis and haemorrhoids

**Skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid in severe impairment; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid; see also notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also diarrhoea or rashes (withdraw treatment), stomatitis; less commonly paraesthesia and fatigue; rarely hypotension, palpitation, glucose intolerance, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anaemia (positive Coombs’ test), and aplastic anaemia

**Indication and dose**

- **Acute pain including dysmenorrhoea, menorrhagia**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years 500 mg 3 times daily

**MEFENAMIC ACID**

**Cautions** see notes above; epilepsy; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Contra-indications** see notes above; inflammatory bowel disease

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid in severe impairment; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid; see also notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above; also diarrhoea or rashes (withdraw treatment), stomatitis; less commonly paraesthesia and fatigue; rarely hypotension, palpitation, glucose intolerance, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anaemia (positive Coombs’ test), and aplastic anaemia

**Indication and dose**

- **Acute pain including dysmenorrhoea, menorrhagia**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years 500 mg 3 times daily

**MELOXICAM**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 25 mL/minute/1.73 m²; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in milk in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid; see also notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 16 years

**Indication and dose**

- **Relief of pain and inflammation in juvenile idiopathic arthritis and other musculoskeletal disorders in children intolerant to other NSAIDs**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years and body-weight under 50 kg 7.5 mg once daily
    - Child 12–18 years and body-weight over 50 kg 15 mg once daily

**Closure of patent ductus arteriosus in premature babies** section 2.14

**Indomethacin** (Non-proprietary)

**Capsules**, indomethacin 25 mg, net price 28-cap pack = £2.33; 50 mg, 28-cap pack = £2.29. Label: 21, counselling, driving, see above

**Brands include** Rimacin®

**Suppositories**, indomethacin 100 mg, net price 10 = £20.07. Counselling, driving, see above

**Suspension**, indomethacin 5 mg/mL Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

**MELOXICAM**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** see notes above

**Renal impairment** avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 25 mL/minute/1.73 m²; see also notes above

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** present in milk in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid; see also notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 16 years

**Indication and dose**

- **Relief of pain and inflammation in juvenile idiopathic arthritis and other musculoskeletal disorders in children intolerant to other NSAIDs**
  - **By mouth**
    - Child 12–18 years and body-weight under 50 kg 7.5 mg once daily
    - Child 12–18 years and body-weight over 50 kg 15 mg once daily

**Administration** Mobic® tablets may be dispersed in water
Meloxicam (Non-proprietary) (A)
Tablets, meloxicam 7.5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £1.36; 15 mg, 30-tab pack = £1.62

Mobic® (Boehringer Ingelheim) (E)
Tablets, yellow, scored, meloxicam 7.5 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £9.30; 15 mg, 30-tab pack = £12.93. Label: 21

NAPROXEN

Cautions see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (NSAIDs)
Contra-indications see notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Renal impairment avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²; see also notes above
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding amount too small to be harmful; see notes above
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Pain and inflammation in musculoskeletal disorders, dysmenorrhoea

• By mouth
  Child 1 month–18 years 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. 1 g daily)

Juvénile idiopathic arthritis

• By mouth
  Child 2–18 years 5–7.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. 1 g daily)

PIROXICAM

Cautions see notes above and CHMP advice below
Contra-indications inflammatory bowel disease; see also notes above
Hepatic impairment see notes above
Renal impairment see notes above
Pregnancy see notes above
Breast-feeding amount too small to be harmful; see also notes above
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Relief of pain and inflammation in juvenile idiopathic arthritis

• By mouth
  Child 6–18 years and body-weight under 15 kg 5 mg daily
  Child 6–18 years and body-weight 15–25 kg 10 mg daily
  Child 6–18 years and body-weight 26–45 kg 15 mg daily
  Child 6–18 years and body-weight over 46 kg 20 mg daily

CHMP advice
Piroxicam (June 2007)
The CHMP has recommended restrictions on the use of piroxicam because of the increased risk of gastrointestinal side effects and serious skin reactions. The CHMP has advised that:
• piroxicam should be initiated only by physicians experienced in treating inflammatory or degenerative rheumatic diseases
• piroxicam should not be used as first-line treatment
• in adults, use of piroxicam should be limited to the symptomatic relief of osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, and ankylosing spondylitis
• piroxicam dose should not exceed 20 mg daily
• piroxicam should no longer be used for the treatment of acute painful and inflammatory conditions
• treatment should be reviewed 2 weeks after initiating piroxicam, and periodically thereafter
• concomitant administration of a gastro-protective agent (section 1.3) should be considered

Note: Topical preparations containing piroxicam are not affected by these restrictions

Piroxicam (Non-proprietary) (A)
Capsules, piroxicam 10 mg, net price 56-cap pack = £16.62; 20 mg, 28-cap pack = £22.45. Label: 21
Dispersible tablets, piroxicam 10 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £9.96; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £13.41. Label: 13, 21

Breixidol® (Chiesi) (E)
Tablets, yellow, scored, piroxicam (as betadex) 20 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £13.82. Label: 21

Feldene® (Pfizer) (E)
Capsules, piroxicam 10 mg (red/blue), net price 30-cap pack = £3.86; 20 mg (white), 30-cap pack = £7.71. Label: 21
10 Musculoskeletal and joint diseases

10.1.2 Corticosteroids

10.1.2.1 Systemic corticosteroids

The general actions, uses, and cautions of corticosteroids are described in section 6.3. In children with rheumatic diseases corticosteroids should be reserved for specific indications (e.g. when other anti-inflammatory drugs are unsuccessful) and should be used only under the supervision of a specialist.

Systemic corticosteroids may be considered for the management of juvenile idiopathic arthritis in systemic disease or when several joints are affected. Systemic corticosteroids may also be considered in severe, possibly life-threatening conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus, systemic vasculitis, juvenile dermatomyositis, Behçet’s disease, and polyarticular joint disease.

In severe conditions, short courses (‘pulses’) of high-dose intravenous methylprednisolone or a pulsed oral corticosteroid may be particularly effective for providing rapid relief, and has fewer long-term adverse effects than continuous treatment.

Corticosteroid doses should be reduced with care because of the possibility of relapse if the reduction is too rapid. If complete discontinuation of corticosteroids is not possible, consideration should be given to alternate-day (or alternate high-dose, low-dose) administration, or on days when no corticosteroid is given, or a lower dose is given, an additional dose of a NSAID may be helpful. In some conditions, alternative treatment using an antimarial or concomitant use of an immunosuppressant drug, such as azathioprine, methotrexate or cyclophosphamide may prove useful; in less severe conditions treatment with a NSAID alone may be adequate.

Administration of corticosteroids may result in suppression of growth and may affect the development of puberty. The risk of corticosteroid-induced osteoporosis should be considered for those on long-term corticosteroid treatment (section 6.6); corticosteroids may also increase the risk of osteopenia in those unable to exercise. For the disadvantages of corticosteroid treatment see section 6.3.2.

10.1.2.2 Local corticosteroid injections

Corticosteroids are injected locally for an anti-inflammatory effect. In inflammatory conditions of the joints, including juvenile idiopathic arthritis, they are given by intra-articular injection as monotherapy, or as an adjunct to long-term therapy to reduce swelling and deformity in one or a few joints. Aspecific precautions (e.g. a no-touch technique) are essential, as a clinician skilled in the technique; infected areas should be avoided and general anaesthesia, or conscious sedation should be used. Occasionally an acute inflammatory reaction develops after an intra-articular or soft-tissue injection of a corticosteroid. This may be a reaction to the microcrystalline suspension of the corticosteroid used, but must be distinguished from sepsis introduced into the injection site. Triamcinolone hexacetonide [unlicensed] is preferred for intra-articular injection because it is almost insoluble and has a long-acting (depot) effect. Triamcinolone acetonide and methylprednisolone may also be considered for intra-articular injection into larger joints, whilst hydrocortisone acetate should be reserved for smaller joints or for soft-tissue injections. Intra-articular corticosteroid injections can cause flushing and, in adults, may affect the hyaline cartilage. Each joint should usually be treated no more than 3–4 times in one year.

A smaller amount of corticosteroid may also be injected directly into soft tissues for the relief of inflammation in conditions such as tennis or golfer’s elbow or compression neuropathies, which occur rarely in children. In tendinitis, injections should be made into the tendon sheath and not directly into the tendon (due to the absence of a true tendon sheath and a high risk of rupture, the Achilles tendon should not be injected).

Corticosteroid injections are also injected into soft tissues for the treatment of skin lesions (see section 13.4).
Kine modulators in penicillamine are no longer used. For the role of cyclosporine is an alternative but should be avoided in the elderly. Methotrexate is effective in juvenile idiopathic arthritis; sulfasalazine, used to suppress the disease process, is sometimes required 3–6 months of treatment for a full therapeutic response. Retinopathy (see below) rarely occurs provided that the recommended doses are not exceeded.

Some children with juvenile idiopathic arthritis do not respond to disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs. Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs can improve not only the symptoms of inflammatory joint disease but also extra-articular manifestations such as vasculitis. They reduce the erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C-reactive protein.

### Antimalarials

The antimalarial hydroxychloroquine is rarely used to treat juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Hydroxychloroquine can also be useful for systemic or discoid lupus erythematosus, particularly involving the skin and joints, and in sarcoidosis. Retinopathy (see below) rarely occurs provided that the recommended doses are not exceeded.

### Pregnancy

It is not necessary to withdraw an antimalarial drug during pregnancy if the rheumatic disease is well controlled; however, the manufacturer of hydroxychloroquine advises avoiding use.

### Breast-feeding

Hydroxychloroquine is present in breast milk leading to a risk of toxicity in infants—breast-feeding should be avoided when it is used to treat rheumatic disease.

### Screening for ocular toxicity

Hydroxychloroquine is rarely associated with ocular toxicity. The British Society for Paediatric and Adolescent Rheumatology recommends that children should have their vision tested before long-term treatment with hydroxychloroquine and have an annual review of visual acuity. Children should be referred to an ophthalmologist if there is visual impairment, changes in visual acuity, or blurred vision. The Royal College of Ophthalmologists has recommended that a locally agreed protocol between the prescribing doctor and ophthalmologist be established to monitor the vision of these children.

### Important

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, the dose of hydroxychloroquine should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight; ocular toxicity is unlikely with doses under 5–6.5 mg/kg or max. 400 mg daily.

### Side-effects

The side-effects of hydroxychloroquine include gastro-intestinal disturbances, headache, and skin reactions (rashes, pruritus); those occurring less frequently include ECG changes, convulsions, visual changes, retinal damage (see above), keratopathy, oto-
toxicity, hair depigmentation, hair loss, and discoloration of skin, nails, and mucous membranes. Side-effects that occur rarely include blood disorders (including thrombocytopenia, agranulocytosis, and aplastic anemia), mental changes (including emotional disturbances and psychosis), myopathy (including cardiomyopathy and neuromyopathy), acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis, exfoliative dermatitis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, photosensitivity, and hepatic damage; angioedema and bronchospasm have also been reported. Important: very toxic in overdose—immediate advice from poisons centres essential (see also p. 29).

HYDROXYCHLOROQUINE SULPHATE

Cautions see notes above

Hepatic impairment use with caution in moderate to severe impairment

Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution and monitoring of plasma-hydroxychloroquine concentration in severe impairment

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Juvenile idiopathic arthritis, systemic and discoid lupus erythematosus, dermatological conditions caused or aggravated by sunlight

• By mouth

Child 1 month–18 years based on ideal body weight, 5–6.5 mg/kg (max. 400 mg) once daily

Hydroxychloroquine (Non-proprietary) (TM)

Tablets, hydroxychloroquine sulphate 200 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £5.10. Label: 21, counselling, antacids (see below)

Brands include Quinoric®

Counselling Avoid antacids for at least 4 hours before or after hydroxychloroquine to reduce possible interference with hydroxychloroquine absorption

Plaquenil® (Sanofi-Aventis) (TM)

Tablets, 1/c, hydroxychloroquine sulphate 200 mg, net price 60-tab pack = £5.25. Label: 21, counselling, antacids (see below)

Counselling Avoid antacids for at least 4 hours before or after hydroxychloroquine to reduce possible interference with hydroxychloroquine absorption

Extemporaneous formulations available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

Drugs affecting the immune response

Methotrexate, given as a once weekly dose, is the disease-modifying antirheumatic drug of choice in the treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis and also has a role in juvenile dermatomyositis, vasculitis, uveitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, localised scleroderma, and sarcoidosis; for these indications it is given by the subcutaneous, oral, or rarely, the intramuscular route. Absorption from intramuscular or subcutaneous routes may be more predictable than from the oral route; if the oral route is ineffective subcutaneous administration is generally preferred. Regular full blood counts (including differential white cell count and platelet count), renal and liver function tests are required. Folic acid may reduce mucosal or gastro-intestinal side-effects of methotrexate. The dosage regimen for folic acid has not been established—in children over 2 years a dose of 5 mg weekly [unlicensed indication], may be given on a different day from the methotrexate.

Azathioprine may be used in children for vasculitis which has failed to respond to other treatments, for the management of severe cases of systemic lupus erythematosus and other connective tissue disorders, in conjunction with corticosteroids for patients with severe or progressive renal disease, and in cases of polymyositis which are resistant to corticosteroids. Azathioprine has a corticosteroid-sparing effect in patients whose corticosteroid requirements are excessive.

Ciclosporin is rarely used in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, connective tissue diseases, vasculitis, and uveitis; it may be considered if the condition has failed to respond to other treatments.

AZATHIOPRINE

Cautions section 8.2.1

Contra-indications section 8.2.1

Hepatic impairment section 8.2.1

Renal impairment section 8.2.1

Pregnancy section 8.2.1

Breast-feeding section 8.2.1

Side-effects section 8.2.1

Indication and dose

Systemic lupus erythematosus, vasculitis, auto-immune conditions usually when corticosteroid therapy alone has proved inadequate see also notes above

• By mouth

Child 1 month–18 years initially 1 mg/kg daily, adjusted according to response to max. 3 mg/kg daily (consider withdrawal if no improvement within 3 months)

Inflammatory bowel disease section 1.5.3

Transplantation rejection section 8.2.1

Preparations Section 8.2.1

METHOTREXATE

Cautions section 8.1.3; see advice below (blood count, gastro-intestinal, liver, and pulmonary toxicity); extreme caution in blood disorders (avoid if severe); risk of accumulation in pleural effusion or ascites—drain before treatment; full blood count and liver function tests before starting treatment repeated fortnightly for at least the first 4 weeks and at this frequency after any change in dose until therapy stabilised, thereafter monthly; renal function tests before starting treatment and then regularly during treatment; children or their carers should report all symptoms and signs suggestive of infection, especially sore throat; treatment with folic acid (as calcium folinate, section 8.1) may be required in acute toxicity; check immunity to varicella-zoster and consider vaccination (section 14.4) before initiating therapy; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: see below and Appendix 1 (methotrexate)

Blood count Bone marrow suppression can occur abruptly; factors likely to increase toxicity include renal impairment and concomitant use with another anti-folate drug. A clini-
Methotrexate 

**Cautions**

- **Contra-indications**: see Cautions above; also active infe

- **Hepatic impairment**: avoid—dose-related toxicity; see also Cautions above

- **Renal impairment**: section 8.1.3

- **Breast-feeding**: section 8.1.3

- **Parenteral preparations**: See also section 8.1.3

- **Contra-indications**: see Cautions above; also active in

- **Methotrexate (Non-proprietary)** (Ham)

- **Metoject** (Medac) (Ham)

- **Cytokine modulators**: Cytokine modulators should be used under specialist supervision.

- **Adalimumab**, **etanercept**, and **infliximab** inhibit the activity of tumour necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α). Adalimumab and etanercept can be used for the management of active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Infliximab has been used in refractory polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (unlicensed indication) when other treatments, such as etanercept, have failed.

- **Suspension**, various strengths available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

- **Safe Practice**: Note that the above dose is a weekly dose. To avoid error with low-dose methotrexate, it is recommended that:

  - the child or their carer is carefully advised of the dose and frequency and the reason for taking methotrexate and any other prescribed medicine (e.g. folic acid);
  - only one strength of methotrexate tablet (usually 2.5 mg) is prescribed and dispensed;
  - the prescription and the dispensing label clearly show the dose and frequency of methotrexate administration;
  - the child or their carer is warned to report immediately the onset of any feature of blood disorders (e.g. sore throat, bruising, and mouth ulcers), liver toxicity (e.g. nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, and dark urine), and respiratory effects (e.g. shortness of breath).

- **Severely**

- **Crohn’s disease** section 1.5.3

- **Malignant disease** section 8.1.3

- **Psoriasis** section 13.5.3

- **Side-effects** Adalimumab, etanercept, and infliximab have been associated with infections, sometimes severe, including tuberculosis, sepsis, and hepatitis B reactivation. Other side-effects include nausea, abdominal pain, worsening heart failure, hypersensitivity reactions, fever, headache, depression, antibody formation (including lupus erythematosus-like syndrome), pruritus, injection-site reactions, and blood disorders (including anaemia, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia, aplastic anaemia).

- **Abatacept** prevents the full activation of T-lymphocytes; it can be used for the management of active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Abatacept is not recommended for use in combination with TNF inhibitors.
**ABATACEPT**

**Cautions** predisposition to infection (screen for latent tuberculosis and viral hepatitis); do not initiate until active infections are controlled; children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule (section 14.1) before initiating therapy; progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy—discontinue treatment if neurological symptoms present; interactions: Appendix 1 (abatacept)

**Contra-indications** severe infection (see also Cautions)

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—effective contraception required during treatment and for 14 weeks after last dose

**Breast-feeding** present in milk in animal studies—manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding during treatment and for 14 weeks after last dose

**Side-effects** abdominal pain, diarrhoea, dyspepsia, nausea, flushing, hypertension; cough, dizziness, fatigue, headache; infection, rhinitis; rash; less commonly gastritis, stomatitis, tachycardia, bradycardia, palpitation, hypotension, dyspnoea, paraesthesia, weight gain, depression, anxiety, amenorrhoea, basal cell carcinoma, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, arthralgia, pain in extremities, conjunctivitis, visual disturbance, vertigo, bruising, alopecia, and dry skin

**Indication and dose** Moderate to severe active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (in combination with methotrexate) in children who have not responded adequately to other disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drugs (including at least one tumour necrosis factor (TNF) inhibitor)

- **By intravenous infusion**
  - Child 6–17 years
  - Body-weight less than 75 kg 10 mg/kg, repeated 2 weeks and 4 weeks after initial infusion, then every 4 weeks
  - Body-weight 75–100 kg 750 mg, repeated 2 weeks and 4 weeks after initial infusion, then every 4 weeks
  - Body-weight over 100 kg 1 g, repeated 2 weeks and 4 weeks after initial infusion, then every 4 weeks

**Note** Review treatment if no response within 6 months

**Administration** for intravenous infusion, reconstitute each vial with 10 mL water for injections using the silicone-free syringe provided; dilute requisite dose in Sodium Chloride 0.9% to 100 mL (using the same silicone-free syringe); give over 30 minutes through a low protein-binding filter (pore size 0.2–1.2 micron)

**Orencia®** (Bristol-Myers Squibb) [TS]

**intravenous infusion** powder for reconstitution, abatacept, net price 250-mg vial £242.17

**Electrolytes** Na⁺ <0.5 mmol/vial

**ADALIMUMAB**

**Cautions** predisposition to infection; monitor for infections before, during, and for 5 months after treatment (see also Tuberculosis below); do not initiate until active infections are controlled; discontinue if new serious infection develops; hepatitis B virus—monitor for active infection; children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule (section 14.1) before initiating therapy; mild heart failure (discontinue if symptoms develop or worsen—avoid in moderate or severe heart failure); demyelinating CNS disorders (risk of exacerbation); history or development of malignancy; monitor for non-melanoma skin cancer before and during treatment, especially in children with history of PUVA treatment for psoriasis or extensive immunosuppressant therapy; interactions: Appendix 1 (adalimumab)

**Tuberculosis** Children should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment. Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment (section 5.1.9) for at least 2 months before starting adalimumab. Children who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start adalimumab but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In those without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemophrophylaxis can be given concurrently with adalimumab. Children and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop

**Contra-indications** severe infection (see also Cautions)

**Pregnancy** avoid; manufacturer advises effective contraception required during treatment and for at least 5 months after last dose

**Breast-feeding** avoid; manufacturer advises avoid for at least 5 months after last dose

**Side-effects** see under Cytokine Modulators, p. 509 and Cautions above; also vomiting, dyspepsia, gastrointestinal haemorrhage; dizziness, hyperlipidaemia, hypertension, oedema, flushing, chest pain, tachycardia; cough, dyspnoea; mood changes, sleep disturbances, anxiety, paraesthesia; haematuria, renal impairment; benign tumours, skin cancer, electrolyte disturbances, hyperuricaemia; musculoskeletal pain; eye disorders; rash, dermatitis, onycholysis, impaired healing; less commonly dysphagia, pancreatitis, cholesterolithiasis, hepatic steatosis, cholecystitis, arrhythmias, interstitial lung disease, pneumonitis, tremor, erectile dysfunction, nocturia, malignancy (including solid tumours and lymphoma), rhabdomyolysis, hearing loss, tinnitus, rarely vascular occlusion, myocardial infarction, demyelinating disorders; also reported pulmonary embolism, pleural effusion, sarcoidosis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, cutaneous vasculitis, new onset or worsening psoriasis

**Indication and dose** Active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (in combination with methotrexate or alone if methotrexate inappropriate) in children who have not responded adequately to one or more disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drug

- **By subcutaneous injection**
  - Child 13–17 years 40 mg on alternate weeks; review treatment if no response within 12 weeks

**Humira®** (Abbott) [TS]

**Injection**, adalimumab, net price 40-mg prefilled pen or prefilled syringe = £357.50. Counselling, tuberculosis

**ETANERCEPT**

**Cautions** predisposition to infection (avoid if predisposition to septicema); significant exposure to herpes zoster virus—interrupt treatment and consider varicella–zoster immunoglobulin; hepatitis B virus—monitor for active infection; monitor for worsening
hepatitis C infection; children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule (section 14.1) before initiating therapy; heart failure (risk of exacerbation); history or increased risk of demyelinating disorders; history or development of malignancy; monitor for skin cancer before and during treatment particularly in those at risk (including children with psoriasis or a history of PUVA treatment); history of blood disorders; diabetes mellitus; interaction: Appendix 1 (etanercept)

Tuberculosis Children should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment. Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment (section 5.1.9) for at least 2 months before starting etanercept. Children who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start etanercept but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In those without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting etanercept. In children at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with etanercept. Children and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop

Blood disorders Children and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of blood disorders (such as fever, sore throat, bruising, or bleeding) develop

Contra-indications active infection; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates (see preparations below)

Hepatic impairment use with caution in moderate to severe alcoholic hepatitis

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects see under Cytokine Modulators, p. 509; also less commonly interstitial lung disease, skin cancer, uveitis, rash, new onset or worsening psoriasis; rarely demyelinating disorders, seizures, lymphoma, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, vasculitis; very rarely toxic epidermal necrolysis; also reported appendicitis, gastritis, oesophagitis, inflammatory bowel disease, vomiting, diabetes mellitus, malignancy (including solid tumours and leukaemia), macrophage activation syndrome, and cutaneous ulcer

Contra-indications active infection; avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates

Sulfasalazine

Sulfasalazine has a beneficial effect in suppressing the inflammatory activity associated with some forms of juvenile idiopathic arthritis; it is generally not used in systemic-onset disease. Sulfasalazine may cause haematological abnormalities including leucopenia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia and close monitoring of full blood counts (including differential white cell count and platelet count) is necessary initially, and at monthly intervals during the first 3 months (liver-function tests also being performed at monthly intervals for the first 3 months). Although the manufacturer recommends renal function tests, evidence of practical value is unsatisfactory. For use of sulfasalazine also see section 1.5.1, aminosalicylates.

SULFASALAZINE (Sulphasalazine)

Cautions see section 1.5.1 and notes above

Contra-indications see section 1.5.1

Hepatic impairment section 1.5.1

Renal impairment section 1.5.1

Pregnancy section 1.5.1

Breast-feeding section 1.5.1

Side-effects see section 1.5.1 and notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for juvenile idiopathic arthritis

Indication and dose Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (see also notes above)

• By mouth
  Child 2–18 years initially 5 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week; then 10 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week; then 20 mg/kg/week daily for 1 week, maintenance dose 20–25 mg/kg twice daily; Child 2–12 years max. 2 g daily, Child 12–18 years max. 3 g daily

Preparations Section 1.5.1

Enbrel® (Wyeth) ▼

Injection, powder for reconstitution, etanercept, net price 25-mg vial (with solvent) = £89.38. Label: 10, alert card, counselling, tuberculosis and blood disorders

Excipients include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates, see Excipients, p. 1)

Injection, etanercept, net price 25-mg prefilled syringe = £89.38; 50-mg prefilled pen or prefilled syringe = £178.75. Label: 10, alert card, counselling, tuberculosis and blood disorders

This section is not included in BNF for Children. For the role of allopurinol and rasburicase in the prophylaxis of hyperuricaemia associated with cancer chemotherapy and in enzyme disorders causing increased serum urate, see section 8.1. The management of gout in adolescents requires specialist supervision.
Anticholinesterases are used as first-line treatment in ocular myasthenia gravis and as an adjunct to immunosuppressant therapy for generalised myasthenia gravis.

Corticosteroids are used when anticholinesterases do not control symptoms completely. A second-line immunosuppressant such as azathioprine is frequently used to reduce the dose of corticosteroid.

Plasmapheresis or infusion of intravenous immunoglobulin [unlicensed indication] may induce temporary remission in severe relapses, particularly where bulbar function is compromised or before thyrotyroidectomy.

Anticholinesterases are used as first-line treatment in ocular myasthenia gravis and as an adjunct to immunosuppressant therapy for generalised myasthenia gravis.

Corticosteroids are used when anticholinesterases do not control symptoms completely. A second-line immunosuppressant such as azathioprine is frequently used to reduce the dose of corticosteroid.

Anticholinesterases are used as first-line treatment in ocular myasthenia gravis and as an adjunct to immunosuppressant therapy for generalised myasthenia gravis. They prolong the action of acetylcholine by inhibiting the action of the enzyme acetylcholinesterase. Excessive dosage of these drugs can impair neuromuscular transmission and precipitate cholinergic crises by causing a depolarising block. This may be difficult to distinguish from a worsening myasthenic state.

Muscarinic side-effects of anticholinesterases include increased sweating, increased salivary and gastric secretions, increased gastro-intestinal and uterine motility, and bradycardia. These parasympathomimetic effects are antagonised by atropine.

Neostigmine and edrophonium are also used to reverse the actions of the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs (section 15.1.6).

Anticholinesterases enhance neuromuscular transmission in voluntary and involuntary muscle in myasthenia gravis. They prolong the action of acetylcholine by inhibiting the action of the enzyme acetylcholinesterase. Excessive dosage of these drugs can impair neuromuscular transmission and precipitate cholinergic crises by causing a depolarising block. This may be difficult to distinguish from a worsening myasthenic state.

Muscarinic side-effects of anticholinesterases include increased sweating, increased salivary and gastric secretions, increased gastro-intestinal and uterine motility, and bradycardia. These parasympathomimetic effects are antagonised by atropine.

Edrophonium has a very brief action and it is therefore used mainly for the diagnosis of myasthenia gravis. However, such testing should be performed only by those experienced in its use; other means of establishing the diagnosis are available. A single test-dose usually causes substantial improvement in muscle power (lasting about 5 minutes) in patients with the disease (if respiration already impaired, only in conjunction with someone skilled at intubation).

Edrophonium can also be used to determine whether a patient with myasthenia is receiving inadequate or excessive treatment with cholinergic drugs. If treatment is excessive an injection of edrophonium will either have no effect or will intensify symptoms (if respiration already impaired, give only in conjunction with someone skilled at intubation). Conversely, transient improvement may be seen if the patient is being inadequately treated. The test is best performed just before the next dose of anticholinesterase.

Neostigmine produces a therapeutic effect for up to 4 hours. Its pronounced muscarinic action is a disadvantage, and simultaneous administration of an antimuscarinic drug such as atropine or propantheline may be required to prevent colic, excessive salivation, or diarrhoea. In severe disease neostigmine can be given every 2 hours. In infants, neostigmine by either subcutaneous or intramuscular injection is preferred for the short-term management of myasthenia.

Pyridostigmine is less powerful and slower in action than neostigmine but it has a longer duration of action. It is preferable to neostigmine because of its smoother action and the need for less frequent dosage. It is particularly preferred in patients whose muscles are weak on waking. It has a comparatively mild gastrointestinal effect but an antimuscarinic drug may still be required. It is inadvisable to use excessive doses because acetylcholine receptor down regulation may occur. Immunosuppressant therapy may be considered if high doses of pyridostigmine are needed. Neostigmine and pyridostigmine should be given to neonates 30 minutes before feeds to improve suckling.

Neostigmine and edrophonium are also used to reverse the actions of the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs (section 15.1.6).

**NEOSTIGMINE**

**Cautions**
- Asthma (*extreme caution*), bradycardia, arrhythmias, recent myocardial infarction, epilepsy, hypotension, parkinsonism, vagotonia, peptic ulceration, hyperthyroidism; atropine or other antidote to muscarinic effects may be necessary (particularly when neostigmine is given by injection), but not given routinely because it may mask signs of overdosage; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (parasympathomimetics)
- **Contra-indications**: intestinal or urinary obstruction
- **Renal impairment** may need dose reduction
- **Pregnancy**: manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

**Breast-feeding**: amount probably too small to be harmful

**Side-effects**: nausea, vomiting, increased salivation, diarrhoea, abdominal cramps (more marked with higher doses); signs of overdosage include bronchoconstriction, increased bronchial secretions, lacrimation, excessive sweating, involuntary defaecation and micturition, miosis, nystagmus, bradycardia, heart block, arrhythmias, hypotension, agitation, excessive dreaming, and weakness eventually leading to fasciculation and paralysis

**Indication and dose**

**Treatment of myasthenia gravis**

- **By mouth (as neostigmine bromide)**
  - **Neonate** initially 1–2 mg, then 1–5 mg every 4 hours, give 30 minutes before feeds

**Classification not used in BNF for Children.**
Child up to 6 years initially 7.5 mg repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day, total daily dose 15–90 mg
Child 6–12 years initially 15 mg repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day, total daily dose 15–90 mg
Child 12–18 years initially 15–30 mg repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day, total daily dose 75–300 mg (but max. most can tolerate is 180 mg daily)

By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection (as neostigmine methylsulphate)

Neonate 150 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, 30 minutes before feeds, increased to max. 300 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, if necessary [uncensored]

Child 1 month–12 years 200–500 micrograms repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day
Child 12–18 years 1–2.5 mg repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day

Neostigmine (Non-proprietary) Tablets, scored, neostigmine bromide 15 mg, net price 140 = £56.10

Section 15.1.6

EDROPHONIUM CHLORIDE

Cautions see under Neostigmine; have resuscitation facilities; extreme caution in respiratory distress (see notes above) and in asthma

Note Severe cholinergic reactions can be counteracted by injection of atropine sulphate (which should always be available)

Contra-indications see under Neostigmine

Pregnancy see under Neostigmine

Breast-feeding see under Neostigmine

Side-effects see under Neostigmine

Indication and dose

Diagnostic test for myasthenia gravis

By intravenous injection

Child 1 month–12 years 20 micrograms/kg followed after 30 seconds (if no adverse reaction has occurred) by 80 micrograms/kg
Child 12–18 years 2 mg followed after 30 seconds (if no adverse reaction has occurred) by 8 mg

Detection of overdosage or underdosage of cholinergic drugs

By intravenous injection

Child 1 month–12 years 20 micrograms/kg (preferably just before next dose of anticholinesterase, see notes above)
Child 12–18 years 2 mg (preferably just before next dose of anticholinesterase, see notes above)

Edrophonium (Non-proprietary) Injection, edrophonium chloride 10 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £19.50

Immunosuppressant therapy

A course of corticosteroids (section 6.3) is an established treatment in severe cases of myasthenia gravis and may be particularly useful when antibodies to the acetylcholine receptor are present in high titre. Short courses of high-dose (‘pulsed’) methylprednisolone followed by maintenance therapy with oral corticosteroids may also be useful.

Corticosteroid treatment is usually initiated under specialist supervision. For disadvantages of corticosteroid treatment, see section 6.3.2. Transient but very serious worsening of symptoms can occur in the first 2–3 weeks, especially if the corticosteroid is started at a high dose. Once remission has occurred (usually after 2–6 months), the dose of prednisolone should be reduced slowly to the minimum effective dose.

10.2.2 Skeletal muscle relaxants

The drugs described below are used for the relief of chronic muscle spasm or spasticity associated with neurological damage; they are not indicated for spasm associated with minor injuries. They act principally on the central nervous system with the exception of dantrolene, which has a peripheral site of action. They differ in action from the muscle relaxants used in anaesthesia (section 15.1.5), which block transmission at the neuromuscular junction.

The underlying cause of spasticity should be treated and any aggravating factors (e.g. pressure sores, infection)
remedied. Skeletal muscle relaxants are effective in most forms of spasticity except the rare alpha variety. The major disadvantage of treatment with these drugs is that reduction in muscle tone can cause a loss of splinting action of the spastic leg and trunk muscles and sometimes lead to an increase in disability.

Dantrolene acts directly on skeletal muscle and produces fewer central adverse effects. It is generally used in resistant cases. The dose should be increased slowly.

Baclofen inhibits transmission at spinal level and also depresses the central nervous system. The dose should be increased slowly to avoid the major side-effects of sedation and muscular hypotonia (other adverse events are uncommon).

Diazepam has undoubted efficacy in some children. Sedation and occasionally extensor hypotonia are disadvantages. Other benzodiazepines also have muscle-relaxant properties.

BACLOFEN

Cautions psychiatric illness; respiratory impairment; epilepsy; history of peptic ulcer (avoid oral route in active peptic ulceration); diabetes; hypertonic bladder sphincter; avoid abrupt withdrawal (risk of hyperactive state, may exacerbate spasticity, and precipitate autonomic dysfunction including hyperthermia, psychiatric reactions and convulsions, see also under Withdrawal below); interactions: Appendix 1 (muscle relaxants)

Withdrawal CSM has advised that serious side-effects can occur on abrupt withdrawal; to minimise risk, discontinue by gradual dose reduction over at least 1–2 weeks (longer if symptoms occur)

Skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises use by mouth with caution

Renal impairment risk of toxicity—use smaller oral doses and if necessary increase dosage interval; if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73m² use by mouth only if potential benefit outweighs risk; excreted by kidney

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in animal studies)

Breast-feeding present in milk—amount probably too small to be harmful

Side-effects gastro-intestinal disturbances, dry mouth; hypotension, respiratory or cardiovascular depression; sedation, drowsiness, confusion, dizziness, ataxia, hallucinations, nightmares, headache, euphoria, insomnia, depression, anxiety, agitation, tremor; seizure; urinary disturbances; myalgia; visual disorders; rash; hyperhidrosis; rarely taste disturbances, abdominal pain, changes in hepatic function, paraesthesia, erectile dysfunction, dysarthria; very rarely hypothermia

Indication and dose

Chronic severe spasticity of voluntary muscle

By mouth

Child 1–2 years initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 4 divided doses, increased gradually to usual maintenance dose of 0.75–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) daily in divided doses; review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks

Child 2–6 years initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 4 divided doses, increased gradually to usual maintenance dose of 0.75–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) daily in divided doses; review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks

Child 6–8 years initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 4 divided doses, increased gradually to usual maintenance dose of 0.75–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) daily in divided doses; review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks

Child 8–10 years initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 4 divided doses, increased gradually to usual maintenance dose of 0.75–2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) daily in divided doses; review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks

Child 10–18 years initially 5 mg 3 times daily increased gradually; usual maintenance dose up to 60 mg daily in divided doses (max. 100 mg daily); review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks

Severe chronic spasticity of cerebral origin unresponsive to oral antispastic drugs (or oral therapy not tolerated), as alternative to ablative neurological procedures—specialist use only

By intrathecal injection

Child 4–18 years initial test dose 25 micrograms over at least 1 minute via catheter or lumbar puncture, increased in 25-microgram steps (not more often than every 24 hours) to max. 100 micrograms to determine appropriate dose then dose-titration phase, most often using infusion pump (implanted into chest wall or abdominal wall tissues) to establish maintenance dose (ranging from 24 micrograms to 1.2 mg daily in children under 12 years or 1.4 mg daily for those over 12 years) retaining some spasticity to avoid sensation of paralysis

Safe Practice

Consult intrathecal injection product literature for details on dose testing and titration—important to monitor patients closely in appropriately equipped and staffed environment during screening and immediately after pump implantation. Resuscitation equipment must be available for immediate use

Baclofen (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, baclofen 10 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £1.58. Label: 2, 8, 21

Oral solution, baclofen 5 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £0.26. Label: 2, 8, 21

Brands include Lyflex® (sugar-free)

Lioresal® (Novartis)

Tablets, scored, baclofen 10 mg, net price 84-tab pack = £8.67. Label: 2, 8, 21

Excipients include gluten

Liquid, sugar-free, raspberry–flavoured, baclofen 5 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £7.16. Label: 2, 8, 21

By intrathecal injection

Lioresal® (Novartis)

Intrathecal injection, baclofen, 50 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp (for test dose) = £2.19; 500 micrograms/mL, 20-mL amp (for use with implantable pump) = £48.62; 2 mg/mL, 5-mL amp (for use with implantable pump) = £48.62
**DANTROLENE SODIUM**

**Cautions** impaired cardiac and pulmonary function; therapeutic effect may take a few weeks to develop—discontinue if no response within 45 days; interactions: Appendix 1 (muscle relaxants)

**Hepatotoxicity** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported, usually if doses greater than 400 mg daily used, in females, if history of liver disorders, or concomitant use of hepatotoxic drugs; test liver function before and at intervals during therapy—discontinue if abnormal liver function tests or symptoms of liver disorder (counselling, see below); reintroduce only if complete reversal of hepatotoxicity

**Counselling** Children and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder and advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, abdominal pain, dark urine, or pruritus develop

**Contra-indications** acute muscle spasm; avoid when spasticity is useful, for example, locomotion

**Hepatic impairment** avoid—may cause severe liver damage; injection may be used in an emergency for malignant hyperthermia

**Pregnancy** avoid use in chronic spasticity—embryotoxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid use in chronic spasticity

**Side-effects** diarrhoea (withdraw if severe, discontinue if treatment if recurs on re-introduction), nausea, vomiting, anorexia, hepatotoxicity (see above), abdominal pain; pericarditis; pleural effusion, respiratory depression; headache, drowsiness, dizziness, asthenia, fatigue, seizures, fever, chills; speech and visual disturbances; rash; less commonly dysphagia, constipation, exacerbation of cardiac insufficiency, tachycardia, erratic blood pressure, dyspnoea, depression, confusion, nervousness, insomnia, increased urinary frequency, urinary incontinence or retention, haematuria, crystalluria, and increased sweating

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Chronic severe spasticity of voluntary muscle**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 5–12 years** initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily; after 7 days increase to 500 micrograms/kg/dose 3 times daily; every 7 days increase by further 500 micrograms/kg/dose until satisfactory response; max. 2 mg/kg 3–4 times daily (max. total daily dose 400 mg)
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 25 mg once daily; increase to 3 times daily after 7 days; every 7 days increase by further 500 micrograms/kg/dose until satisfactory response; max. 2 mg/kg 3–4 times daily (max. total daily dose 400 mg)

**Malignant hyperthermia** section 15.1.8

**DIAZEPAM**

**Cautions** section 4.8.2

**Contra-indications** section 4.8.2

**Hepatic impairment** section 4.8.2

**Renal impairment** section 4.8.2

**Pregnancy** section 4.8.2

**Breast-feeding** section 4.8.2

**Side-effects** section 4.8.2; also hypotonia

**Indication and dose**

**Muscle spasm in cerebral spasticity or in postoperative skeletal muscle spasm**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1–12 months** initially 250 microgram/kg twice daily
  - **Child 1–5 years** initially 2.5 mg twice daily
  - **Child 5–12 years** initially 5 mg twice daily
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 10 mg twice daily; max. total daily dose 40 mg

**Tetanus**

- **By intravenous injection**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 100–300 micrograms/kg repeated every 1–4 hours
  - **By intravenous infusion (or by nasoduodenal tube)**
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** 3–10 mg/kg over 24 hours, adjusted according to response

**Status epilepticus** section 4.8.2

**Febrile convulsions** section 4.8.3

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion of diazepam emulsion, dilute to a concentration of max. 400 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or 10%; max. 6 hours between addition and completion of infusion; diazepam adsorbed by plastics of infusion bags and giving sets

For continuous intravenous infusion of diazepam solution, dilute to a concentration of max. 50 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; diazepam adsorbed by plastics of infusion bags and giving sets

**Diazepam (Non-proprietary)***

- **Tablets**, diazepam 2 mg, net price 28 = 89p; 5 mg, 28 = 90p; 10 mg, 28 = 92p. Label: 2 or 19
- **Brands include** *Rimapam<sup>®</sup>, Tensium<sup>®</sup>*

**Dental prescribing on NHS** Diazepam Tablets may be prescribed

**Oral solution**, diazepam 2 mg/5 mL, net price 100 mL = £6.08. Label: 2 or 19

**Brands include** *Dialar<sup>®</sup>*, *Dialar<sup>®</sup>*

**Strong oral solution**, diazepam 5 mg/5 mL, net price 100-mL pack = £6.38. Label: 2 or 19

**Parenteral preparations** Section 4.8.2
10.3 Drugs for the relief of soft-tissue inflammation and topical pain relief

10.3.1 Enzymes

10.3.2 Rubefacients, topical NSAIDs, capsaicin, and poultices

Extravasation

Extravasation injury follows leakage of drugs or intravenous fluids from the veins or inadvertent administration into the subcutaneous or subdermal tissue. It must be dealt with promptly to prevent tissue necrosis.

Acidic or alkaline preparations and those with an osmolality greater than that of plasma can cause extravasation injury; excipients including alcohol and polyethylene glycol have also been implicated. Cytotoxic drugs commonly cause extravasation injury. Very young children are at increased risk. Those receiving anticoagulants are more likely to lose blood into surrounding tissues if extravasation occurs, while those receiving sedatives or analgesics may not notice the early signs or symptoms of extravasation.

Prevention of extravasation Precautions should be taken to avoid extravasation; ideally, drugs likely to cause extravasation injury should be given through a central line and children receiving repeated doses of hazardous drugs peripherally should have the cannula resited at regular intervals. Attention should be paid to the manufacturers’ recommendations for administration. Placing a glyceryl trinitrate patch or using glyceryl trinitrate ointment distal to the cannula may improve the patency of the vessel in children with small veins or in those whose veins are prone to collapse.

Children or their carers should be asked to report any pain or burning at the site of injection immediately.

Management of extravasation If extravasation is suspected the infusion should be stopped immediately but the cannula should not be removed until after an attempt has been made to aspirate the area (through the cannula) in order to remove as much of the drug as possible. Aspiration is sometimes possible if the extravasation presents with a raised bleb or blister at the injection site and is surrounded by hardened tissue, but it is often unsuccessful if the tissue is soft or soggy. Corticosteroids are usually given to treat inflammation, although there is little evidence to support their use in extravasation. Hydrocortisone or dexamethasone (section 6.3.2) can be given either locally by subcutaneous injection or intravenously at a site distant from the injury. Antihistamines (section 3.4.1) and analgesics (section 4.7) may be required for symptom relief.

The first method may be appropriate following extravasation of vesicant drugs and involves administration of an antidote (if available) and the application of cold compresses 3–4 times a day (consult specialist literature for details of specific antidotes). Spreading and diluting the offending substance involves infiltrating the area with physiological saline, applying warm compresses, elevating the affected limb, and administering hyaluronidase (section 10.3.1). A saline flush-out technique (involving flushing the subcutaneous tissue with physiological saline) may be effective but requires specialist advice. Hyaluronidase should not be administered following extravasation of vesicant drugs (unless it is either specifically indicated or used in the saline flush-out technique).

10.3.1 Enzymes

Hyaluronidase is used for the management of extravasation. For preparations, see BNF section 10.3.1.

10.3.2 Rubefacients, topical NSAIDs, capsaicin, and poultices

Classification not used in BNF for Children.
11.1 Administration of drugs to the eye

Drugs are most commonly administered to the eye by topical application as eye drops or eye ointments. When a higher drug concentration is required within the eye, a local injection may be necessary.

Eye-drop dispenser devices are available to aid the instillation of eye drops from plastic bottles; they are particularly useful for children in whom normal application is difficult, for the visually impaired, or otherwise physically limited patients.

Eye drops and eye ointments

Eye drops are generally instilled into the pocket formed by gently pulling down the lower eyelid and keeping the eye closed for as long as possible after application; in neonates and infants it may be more appropriate to administer the drop in the inner angle of the open eye. One drop is all that is needed; instillation of more than one drop at a time should be discouraged because it may increase systemic side-effects. A small amount of eye ointment is applied similarly; the ointment melts rapidly and blinking helps to spread it.

When two different eye-drop preparations are used at the same time of day, dilution and overflow may occur when one immediately follows the other. The carer or child should therefore leave an interval of at least 5 minutes between the two. Eye ointment should be applied after drops. Both drops and ointment may cause transient blurred vision; children should be warned, where appropriate, not to perform skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving) until vision is clear.

Systemic effects may arise from absorption of drugs into the general circulation from conjunctival vessels or from the nasal mucosa after the excess preparation has drained down through the tear ducts. The extent of systemic absorption following ocular administration is highly variable; nasal drainage of drugs is associated with eye drops much more often than with eye ointments. Pressure on the lacrimal punctum for at least a minute after applying eye drops reduces nasolacrimal drainage and therefore decreases systemic absorption from the nasal mucosa.

For warnings relating to eye drops and contact lenses, see section 11.9.

Eye lotions

These are solutions for the irrigation of the conjunctival sac. They act mechanically to flush out irritants or foreign bodies as a first-aid treatment. Sterile sodium chloride 0.9% solution (section 11.8.1) is usually used. Clean water will suffice in an emergency.

Other preparations

Subconjunctival injection may be used to administer anti-infective drugs, mydriatics, or...
Preservatives and sensitisers Information on preservatives and on substances identified as skin sensitisers (section 13.1.3) is provided under preparation entries.

11.2 Control of microbial contamination

Preparations for the eye should be sterile when issued. Eye drops in multiple-application containers include a preservative but care should nevertheless be taken to avoid contamination of the contents during use.

Eye drops in multiple-application containers for home use should not be used for more than 4 weeks after first opening (unless otherwise stated). Individual containers should be provided for each child, and for each eye if there are special concerns about contamination. Containers used before an operation should be discarded at the time of the operation and fresh containers supplied. A fresh supply should also be provided upon discharge from hospital; in specialist ophthalmology units it may be acceptable to issue eye-drop bottles that have been dispensed to the patient on the day of discharge.

In out-patient departments single-application packs should preferably be used; if multiple-application packs are used, they should be discarded at the end of each day. In clinics for eye diseases and in accident and emergency departments, where the dangers of infection are high, single-application packs should be used; if a multiple-application pack is used, it should be discarded after single use. Diagnostic dyes (section 11.8.2) should be used only from single-application packs.

In eye surgery single-application containers should be used if possible; if a multiple-application pack is used, it should be discarded after single use. Preparations used during intra-ocular procedures and others that may penetrate into the anterior chamber must be isotonic and without preservatives and buffered if necessary to a neutral pH. Specially formulated fluids should be used for intra-ocular surgery; large volume intravenous infusion preparations are not suitable for this purpose. For all surgical procedures, a previously unopened container is used for each patient.

11.3 Anti-infective eye preparations

11.3.1 Antibacterials

Eye infections Most acute superficial eye infections can be treated topically. Blepharitis and conjunctivitis are often caused by staphylococci; keratitis and endophthalmitis may be bacterial, viral, or fungal.

Bacterial blepharitis is treated by lid hygiene and application of antibacterial eye drops to the conjunctival sac or to the lid margins. Systemic treatment may be required and may be necessary for 3 months or longer.

Most cases of acute bacterial conjunctivitis are self-limiting; where treatment is appropriate, antibacterial eye drops or an eye ointment are used. A poor response might indicate viral or allergic conjunctivitis or antibiotic resistance.

Corneal ulcer and keratitis require specialist treatment, usually under inpatient care, and may call for intensive topical, subconjunctival, or systemic administration of antimicrobials.

Endophthalmitis is a medical emergency which also calls for specialist management and often requires par enteral, subconjunctival, or intra-ocular administration of antimicrobials.

For reference to the treatment of crab lice of the eyelashes, see section 13.10.4

11.3.2 Antifungals

11.3.3 Antivirals

Bacterial eye infections are generally treated topically with eye drops and eye ointments; systemic treatment is sometimes appropriate in blepharitis.

Chloramphenicol has a broad spectrum of activity and is the drug of choice for superficial eye infections. Chloramphenicol eye drops are well tolerated and the recommendation that chloramphenicol eye drops should be avoided because of an increased risk of aplastic anaemia is not well founded.

Other antibacterials with a broad spectrum of activity include the quinolones, ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, and ofloxacin; the aminoglycosides, gentamicin, neomycin, and tobramycin are also active against a wide variety of bacteria. Gentamicin, tobramycin, quinolones (except moxifloxacin), and polymyxin B are effective for infections caused by Pseudomonas aeruginosa.

Ciprofloxacin eye drops are licensed for corneal ulcers; intensive application (especially in the first 2 days) is required throughout the day and night.

Trachoma, which results from chronic infection with Chlamydia trachomatis, can be treated with azithromycin by mouth [unlicensed indication].

Fusidic acid is useful for staphylococcal infections.

Propamidine isetionate is of little value in bacterial infections but is used by specialists to treat the rare but potentially sight-threatening condition of acanthamoeba keratitis (see also section 11.9).
Other antibacterial eye drops may be prepared aseptically in a specialist manufacturing unit from material supplied for injection, see section 11.8.

Neonates Antimicrobial eye drops are used to treat acute bacterial conjunctivitis in neonates (ophthalmia neonatorum); where possible the causative microorganism should be identified. Chloramphenicol or neomycin eye drops are used to treat mild conjunctivitis; more serious infections also require a systemic antibacterial. Failure to respond to initial treatment requires further investigation; chlamydial infection is one of the most frequent causes of neonatal conjunctivitis and should be considered.

Gonococcal eye infections are treated with a single-dose of parenteral cefotaxime or ceftiraxone. Chlamydial eye infections should be managed with oral erythromycin. Gentamicin eye drops together with appropriate systemic antibiotics are used in the treatment of pseudomonal eye infections; high-strength gentamicin eye drops (1.5%) [unlicensed] are available for severe infections.

With corticosteroids Many antibacterial preparations also incorporate a corticosteroid but such mixtures should not be used unless a patient is under close specialist supervision. In particular they should not be prescribed for undiagnosed ‘red eye’ which is sometimes caused by the herpes simplex virus and may be difficult to diagnose (section 11.4).

Administration Frequency of application depends on the severity of the infection and the potential for irreversible ocular damage; antibiotic eye preparations are usually administered as follows.

Eye drops. Apply 1 drop at least every 2 hours in severe infection then reduce frequency as infection is controlled and continue for 48 hours after healing. For less severe infection 3–4 times daily is generally sufficient.

Eye ointment. Apply either at night (if eye drops used during the day) or 3–4 times daily (if eye ointment used alone).

CHLORAMPHENICOL

Side-effects transient stinging; see also notes above

Indication and dose See notes above

Chloramphenicol (Non-proprietary) £2.05

Eye drops, chloramphenicol 0.5%. Net price 10 mL = £2.05

Eye ointment, chloramphenicol 1%. Net price 4 g = £2.04

Note Chloramphenicol 0.5% eye drops (max. pack size 10 mL) and 1% eye ointment (max. pack size 4 g) can be sold to the public for treatment of acute bacterial conjunctivitis in children over 2 years; max. duration of treatment 5 days

Chloramphenicol (Goldshield) £2.13

Redidrops (= eye drops), chloramphenicol 0.5%. Net price 5 mL = £1.65; 10 mL = 90p

Ophthalmic ointment (= eye ointment), chloramphenicol 1%. Net price 4 g = £1.08

CIPROFLOXACIN

Cautions not recommended for children under 1 year

Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises caution

Side-effects local burning and itching; lid margin crusting; hyperaemia; taste disturbances; corneal staining, keratitis, lid oedema, lacrimation, photophobia, corneal infiltrates; nausea and visual disturbances reported

Licensed use eye ointment not licensed for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose

Superficial bacterial infections

See notes above

Fusidic Acid

Indication and dose See notes above and under preparation below

Fucithalmic (Bausch & Lomb) £2.04

Eye drops, m/t, fusidic acid 1% in gel basis (liquifies on contact with eye). Net price 5 g = £1.96

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

Dose Apply twice daily

GENTAMICIN

Indication and dose See notes above

Gentamicin (Non-proprietary) £2.13

Eye drops, gentamicin 1.5%, 10 mL, available as a manufactured special from Moorfields Eye Hospital, see also ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, p. 809
LEVOFLOXACIN

Pregnancy  manufacturer advises avoid—systemic quinolones have caused arthropathy in animal studies
Breast-feeding  manufacturer advises avoid
Side-effects  transient ocular irritation, visual disturbances, lid margin crustung, lid or conjunctival oedema, hyperaemia, conjunctival follicles, photophobia, headache, rhinitis
Licensed use  not licensed for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose
See notes above

Oftaquix® (Kestrel Ophthalmics) ▼ (FR)
Eye drops, levofloxacin 0.5%, net price 5 mL = £6.95

MOXIFLOXACIN

Cautions  not recommended for neonates
Side-effects  taste disturbances, ocular discomfort (including pain, irritation and dryness), hyperaemia; less commonly vomiting, headache, paraesthesia, cornal disorders (including keratitis, erosion, and staining), conjunctival haemorrhage, eyelid erythema, visual disturbances, nasal discomfort, pharyngolaryngeal pain; also reported nausea, palpitation, dyspnoea, dizziness, raised intra-ocular pressure, photophobia, rash, pruritus

Indication and dose
Local treatment of infections (see also notes above)
Child 1 month–18 years apply 3 times daily (continue treatment for 2–3 days after infection improves; review if no improvement within 5 days)

Moxivig® (Alcon) ▼ (FR)
Eye drops, moxifloxacin (as hydrochloride) 0.5%. Net price 5 mL = £9.80

NEOMYCIN SULPHATE

Indication and dose
See notes above

Neomycin (Non-proprietary) ▼ (FR)
Eye drops, neomycin sulphate 0.5% (3500 units/mL). Net price 10 mL = £3.11

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

Eye ointment, neomycin sulphate 0.5% (3500 units/g). Net price 3 g = £2.44

Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

OFLOXACIN

Cautions  not to be used for more than 10 days
Pregnancy  manufacturer advises use only if benefit outweighs risk; systemic quinolones have caused arthropathy in animal studies
Breast-feeding  manufacturer advises avoid
Side-effects  local irritation including photophobia; dizziness, numbness, nausea and headache reported
Licensed use  not licensed for use in neonates

Indication and dose
Local treatment of infections (see also notes above)
Child 1–18 years apply twice daily for 6–8 days; in severe infection, apply 4 times daily on the first day, then twice daily for 5–7 days

Tobravisc® (Alcon) ▼ (FR)
Eye drops, tobramycin 0.3%, net price 5 mL = £4.74
Excipients include benzoxydencium bromide

TOBRAMYCIN

Indication and dose
Local treatment of infections (see also notes above)
Child 1–18 years apply twice daily for 6–8 days; in severe infection, apply 4 times daily on the first day, then twice daily for 5–7 days

Tobrificant® (Alcon) ▼ (FR)
Eye drops, ofloxacin 0.3% (as hydrochloride). Net price 5 mL = £2.17

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

POLYMYXIN B SULPHATE

Indication and dose
See notes above

With other antibacterials

Polyfax® (TEVA UK) ▼ (FR)
Eye ointment, polymyxin B sulphate 10 000 units, bacitracin zinc 500 units/g. Net price 4 g = £3.26

PROPAMIDINE ISETIONATE

Indication and dose
See under preparations below

Brolene® (Sanofi-Aventis)
Eye drops, propamidine isetionate 0.1%. Net price 10 mL = £2.80
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

Dose
Local treatment of infections (but see notes above)
Apply 4 times daily
Note Eye drops containing propamidine isetionate 0.1% also available from Typharm (Golden Eye Drops)

Eye ointment, dibrompropamidine isetionate 0.15%. Net price 5 g = £2.92

Dose
Local treatment of infections (but see notes above)
Apply 1–2 times daily
Note Eye ointment containing dibrompropamidine isetionate 0.15% also available from Typharm (Golden Eye Ointment)

TOBRAMYCIN

Indication and dose
Local treatment of infections (see also notes above)
Child 1–18 years apply twice daily for 6–8 days; in severe infection, apply 4 times daily on the first day, then twice daily for 5–7 days

Tobravisc® (Alcon) ▼ (FR)
Eye drops, tobramycin 0.3%, net price 5 mL = £4.74
Excipients include benzoxydencium bromide

11.3.2 Antifungals

Fungal infections of the cornea are rare. Orbital mycosis is rarer, and when it occurs it is usually because of direct spread of infection from the paranasal sinuses. Debility or immunosuppression can encourage fungal proliferation. The spread of infection through blood occasionally produces metastatic endophthalmitis.
Many different fungi are capable of producing ocular infection; they can be identified by appropriate laboratory procedures.

Antifungal preparations for the eye are not generally available. Treatment is normally carried out at specialist centres, but requests for information about supplies of preparations not available commercially should be addressed to the Strategic Health Authority (or equivalent in Scotland or Northern Ireland), or to Moorfields Eye Hospital, 162 City Road, London EC1V 2PD (tel. (020) 7253 3411) or www.moorfields.nhs.uk

### Antivirals

Herpes simplex infections producing, for example, dendritic corneal ulcers can be treated with aciclovir. Aciclovir eye ointment is used in combination with systemic treatment for ophthalmic zoster (section 5.3.2.1).

For systemic treatment of CMV retinitis, see section 5.3.2.2.

#### ACICLOVIR

**Side-effects**
- Local irritation and inflammation, superficial punctate keratopathy; rarely blepharitis; very rarely hypersensitivity reactions including angioedema

**Indication and dose**

- **Local treatment of herpes simplex infections**
  - Apply 5 times daily (continue for at least 3 days after complete healing)

- **Herpes simplex skin infections** section 13.10.3

- **Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infections** section 5.3.2.1

**Zovirax**

Eye ointment, aciclovir 3%. Net price 4.5 g = £9.34

#### BETAMETHASONE

**Cautions** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

- **Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)**
  - Apply eye drops every 1–2 hours until controlled then reduce frequency; eye ointment 2–4 times daily or at night when used with eye drops

**Betnesol**

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 10 mL = £2.23

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Eye ointment**, betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 3 g = £1.36

**Vistamethasone**

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 5 mL = £1.02; 10 mL = £1.16

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride

**With neomycin**

**Betnesol-N**

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), see section 12.1.1

#### DEXAMETHASONE

**Cautions** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

- **Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)**
  - Apply eye drops 4–6 times daily; severe conditions every 30–60 minutes until controlled then reduce frequency

**Maxidex**

Eye drops, dexamethasone 0.1%, hypromellose 0.5%. Net price 5 mL = £1.42; 10 mL = £2.80

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80

### Corticosteroids and Other Anti-inflammatory Preparations

#### Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids administered locally to the eye or given by mouth are effective for treating anterior segment inflammation in uveitis (section 11.5) and following surgery.

- **A ‘red eye’, when the diagnosis is unconfirmed, may be due to herpes simplex virus, and a corticosteroid may aggravate the condition, leading to corneal ulceration, with possible damage to vision and even loss of the eye. Bacterial, fungal, and amoebic infections pose a similar hazard.**
- ‘Steroid glaucoma’ may follow the use of corticosteroid eye preparations in susceptible individuals;
- ‘A ‘steroid cataract’ may follow prolonged use.

Other side-effects of ocular corticosteroids include thinning of the cornea and sclera. Prolonged use in neonates and infants can cause adrenal suppression.

Products combining a corticosteroid with an antimicrobial are used after ocular surgery to reduce inflammation and prevent infection: use of combination products is otherwise rarely justified.

Systemic corticosteroids (section 6.3.2) may be useful for ocular conditions. The risk of producing a ‘steroid cataract’ increases with the dose and duration of corticosteroid use.

**ACICLOVIR**

**Side-effects**
- local irritation and inflammation, superficial punctate keratopathy; rarely blepharitis; very rarely hypersensitivity reactions including angioedema

**Indication and dose**

- **Local treatment of herpes simplex infections**
  - Apply 5 times daily (continue for at least 3 days after complete healing)

- **Herpes simplex skin infections** section 13.10.3

- **Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infections** section 5.3.2.1

**Zovirax**

Eye ointment, aciclovir 3%. Net price 4.5 g = £9.34

**BETAMETHASONE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

- **Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)**
  - Apply eye drops every 1–2 hours until controlled then reduce frequency; eye ointment 2–4 times daily or at night when used with eye drops

**Betnesol**

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 10 mL = £2.23

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Eye ointment**, betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 3 g = £1.36

**Vistamethasone**

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 5 mL = £1.02; 10 mL = £1.16

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride

**With neomycin**

**Betnesol-N**

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), see section 12.1.1

**DEXAMETHASONE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

- **Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)**
  - Apply eye drops 4–6 times daily; severe conditions every 30–60 minutes until controlled then reduce frequency

**Maxidex**

Eye drops, dexamethasone 0.1%, hypromellose 0.5%. Net price 5 mL = £1.42; 10 mL = £2.80

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80

### Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids administered locally to the eye or given by mouth are effective for treating anterior segment inflammation in uveitis (section 11.5) and following surgery.
11.4.2 Other anti-inflammatory preparations

**Single use**

Minims® Dexamethasone (Bausch & Lomb)  
Eye drops, dexamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 20 x 0.5 mL = £9.38  
Excipients include disodium edetate

**With antibacterials**

Maxitrol® (Alcon)  
Eye drops, dexamethasone 0.1%, neomycin 0.35% (as sulphate), polymyxin B sulphate 6000 units/mL. Net price 5 mL = £1.68  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, polysorbate 20

Eye ointment, dexamethasone 0.1%, neomycin 0.35% (as sulphate), polymyxin B sulphate 6000 units/g. Net price 3.5 g = £1.44  
Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat

**With neomycin**

Predsol® (UCB Pharma)  
Drops (for ear or eye), prednisolone sodium phosphate 0.5%. Net price 10 mL = £1.92  
Excipients include benzenzimium chloride, disodium edetate

Minims® Prednisolone Sodium Phosphate (Bausch & Lomb)  
Eye drops, prednisolone sodium phosphate 0.5%. Net price 20 x 0.5 mL = £10.08  
Excipients include disodium edetate

**With neomycin**

Predsol-N® (UCB Pharma)  
Drops (for ear or eye), see section 12.1.1

---

**FLUOROMETHOLONE**

Cautions see notes above  
Side-effects see notes above  
Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 2 years

**Indication and dose**

Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)  
Apply 2–4 times daily (initially every hour for 24–48 hours then reduce frequency)

**HYDROCORTISONE ACETATE**

Cautions see notes above  
Side-effects see notes above

**Indication and dose**

Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)  
Apply eye drops 4 times daily; apply eye ointment twice daily or at night

Fire Eye drops, hydrocortisone acetate 1%. Net price 10 mL = £1.71; 10 mL = £2.95  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80

**PREDNISOLONE**

Cautions see notes above  
Side-effects see notes above

**Indication and dose**

Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)  
Apply every 1–2 hours until controlled then reduce frequency

Pred Forte® (Allergan)  
Eye drops, prednisolone acetate 1%. Net price 5 mL = £1.52; 10 mL = £3.05  
Excipients include benzenzimium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80

---

522 11.4.2 Other anti-inflammatory preparations BNFC 2011–2012
**Optilast** (Meda)  
Eye drops, azelastine hydrochloride 0.05%. Net price 8 mL = £6.40  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**EMEDASTINE**  
Side-effects transient burning or stinging; blurred vision, local oedema, keratitis, irritation, dry eye, lacrimation, corneal infiltrates (discontinue) and staining; photophobia; headache, and rhinitis occasionally reported

**Indication and dose**  
Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis  
Child 3–18 years apply twice daily

**Emadine** (Alcon)  
Eye drops, emedastine 0.05% (as difumarate), net price 5 mL = £7.31  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

**EPINASTINE HYDROCHLORIDE**  
Side-effects burning; less commonly dry mouth, taste disturbance; nasal irritation, rhinitis; headache, blepharoptosis, conjunctival oedema and hyperaemia, dry eye, local irritation, photophobia, visual disturbance; pruritus

**Indication and dose**  
Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis  
Child 12–18 years apply twice daily; max. duration of treatment 8 weeks

**Relestat** (Allergan)  
Eye drops, epinastine hydrochloride 500 micrograms/mL, net price 5 mL = £9.90  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**KETOTIFEN**  
Side-effects transient burning or stinging, punctate corneal epithelial erosion; less commonly dry eye, subconjunctival haemorrhage, photophobia, headache, drowsiness, skin reactions, and dry mouth also reported

**Indication and dose**  
Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis  
Child 3–18 years apply twice daily

**Zaditen** (Novartis)  
Eye drops, ketotifen (as fumarate) 250 micrograms/mL, net price 5 mL = £7.80  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

**LODOXAMIDE**  
Side-effects burning, stinging, itching, blurred vision, tear production disturbance, and ocular discomfort; less commonly, flushing, nasal dryness, dizziness, drowsiness, headache, blepharitis, and keratitis

**Indication and dose**  
Allergic conjunctivitis  
Child 4–18 years apply 4 times daily  
Note Improvement of symptoms may sometimes require treatment for up to 4 weeks
Mydriatics and cycloplegics

Antimuscarinics dilate the pupil and paralyse the ciliary muscle; they vary in potency and duration of action. Short-acting, relatively weak mydriatics, such as tropicamide 0.5% (action lasts for 4–6 hours), facilitate the examination of the fundus of the eye. Cycloplegolate 1% (action up to 24 hours) or atropine (action up to 7 days) are preferable for producing cycloplegia for refraction in young children; tropicamide may be preferred in neonates. Phenylephrine 2.5% is used for mydriasis in diagnostic or therapeutic procedures; mydriasis occurs within 60–90 minutes and lasts up to 5–7 hours. Phenylephrine 10% drops are contra-indicated in children owing to the risk of systemic effects.

Mydraxis and cycloplegics are used in the treatment of anterior uveitis, usually as an adjunct to corticosteroids (section 11.4.1). Atropine is used in anterior uveitis mainly to prevent posterior synechiae and to relieve ciliary spasm; cycloplegolate or homatropine (action up to 3 days) can also be used and may be preferred because they have a shorter duration of action.

Cautions and contra-indications Darkly pigmented irides are more resistant to pupillary dilatation and caution should be exercised to avoid overdosage. Mydraxis can precipitate acute angle-closure glaucoma in the very few children who are predisposed to the condition because of a shallow anterior chamber. Atropine, cycloplegolate, and homatropine should be used with caution in children under 3 months owing to the possible association between cycloplegia and the development of amblyopia; also, neonates are at increased risk of systemic toxicity.

Skilled tasks Children may not be able to undertake skilled tasks until vision clears after mydriasis.

Side-effects Ocular side-effects of mydriatics and cycloplegics include transient stinging and raised intra-ocular pressure; on prolonged administration, local irritation, hyperaemia, oedema, and conjunctivitis can occur. Contact dermatitis can occur with the antimuscarinic mydriatic drugs, especially atropine.

Toxic systemic reactions to atropine and cycloplegolate can occur in neonates and children; see section 1.2 for systemic side-effects of antimuscarinic drugs.

Antimuscarinics

**ATROPINE SULPHATE**

Cautions risk of systemic effects with eye drops in infants under 3 months, see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for uveitis

Indication and dose

**Cycloplegia**

Child 3 months–18 years apply drops or ointment twice daily for 3 days before procedure

**Anterior uveitis**

Child 2–18 years 1 drop up to 4 times daily

**ATROPINE SULPHATE**

Cautions risk of systemic effects with eye drops in infants under 3 months, see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children for uveitis

Indication and dose

**Cycloplegia**

Child 3 months–18 years apply drops or ointment twice daily for 3 days before procedure

**Anterior uveitis**

Child 2–18 years 1 drop up to 4 times daily

**Minims® Atropine Sulfate** (Bausch & Lomb)

Eye drops, atropine sulphate 0.5%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL = £12.71

**Single use**

Minims® Atropine Sulfate (Bausch & Lomb)

Eye drops, atropine sulphate 1%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL = £12.71

**CYCLOPENTOLATE HYDROCHLORIDE**

Cautions see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

**Cycloplegia**

Child 3 months–12 years 1 drop of 1% eye drops 30–60 minutes before examination

Child 12–18 years 1 drop of 0.5% eye drops 30–60 minutes before examination

**Uveitis**

Child 3 months–18 years 1 drop of 0.5% eye drops (1% for deeply pigmented eyes) 2–4 times daily

**Mydrilate®** (Intrapharm)

Eye drops, cyclopentolate hydrochloride 0.5%, net price 5 mL = £6.73; 1%, 5 mL = £6.73

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

**Single use**

Minims® Cycloplegolate Hydrochloride (Bausch & Lomb)

Eye drops, cyclopentolate hydrochloride 0.5% and 1%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL (both) = £9.64

**HOMATROPINE HYDROBROMIDE**

Cautions see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 3 months

Indication and dose

**Child 3 months–2 years** (0.5% only) 1 drop daily or on alternate days adjusted according to response

**Child 2–18 years** 1 drop twice daily adjusted according to response

**Homatropine** (Non-proprietary)

Eye drops, homatropine hydrobromide 1%, net price 10 mL = £25.72; 2%, 10 mL = £2.71

Available without preservatives as manufactured specials from Moorfields Eye Hospital

Eye drops, homatropine 0.125% and 0.5%, 10 mL, available as a manufactured special from Moorfields Eye Hospital, see also ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, p. 809

Excipients include chlorhexidine

**TROPICAMIDE**

Cautions see notes above

Side-effects see notes above
Glaucma describes a group of disorders characterised by a loss of visual field associated with cupping of the optic disc and optic nerve damage and is generally associated with raised intra-ocular pressure.

Glaucma is rare in children and should always be managed by a specialist. Primary congenital glaucoma is the most common form of glaucoma in children, followed by secondary glaucomas, such as following hereditary anterior segment malformations; juvenile open-angle glaucoma is less common and usually occurs in older children. Primary angle closure glaucoma (acute closed-angle glaucoma, narrow angle glaucoma) is very rare in children; it results from blockage of aqueous humour flow into the anterior chamber and is a medical emergency that requires urgent reduction of intra-ocular pressure, see below.

Treatment of glaucoma is determined by the pathophysiology and usually involves controlling raised intra-ocular pressure with surgery and drug therapy. Drugs that reduce intra-ocular pressure by different mechanisms are available for managing glaucoma. A topical beta-blocker or a prostaglandin analogue can be used. It may be necessary to combine these drugs or add others, such as miotics, sympathomimetics, or carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, to control intra-ocular pressure.

For urgent reduction of intra-ocular pressure and before surgery, mannitol 20% (up to 500 mL) is given by slow intravenous infusion until the intra-ocular pressure has been satisfactorily reduced (see section 2.2.5). Acetazolamide by intravenous injection can also be used for the emergency management of raised intra-ocular pressure.

Standard antiglaucoma therapy is used if supplementary treatment is required after iridotomy, iridectomy, or a drainage operation in either primary open-angle or acute closed-angle glaucoma.

**Betaxolol**

Topical application of a beta-blocker to the eye reduces intra-ocular pressure effectively in primary open-angle glaucoma, probably by reducing the rate of production of aqueous humour. Administration by mouth also reduces intra-ocular pressure but this route is not used since side-effects may be troublesome.

**Interactions** Since systemic absorption may follow topical application to the eye; therefore, eye drops containing a beta-blocker are contra-indicated in bradycardia, heart block, or uncontrolled heart failure. Important: for a warning to avoid in asthma, see below. Consider also other cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects of beta-blockers (p. 87). Local side-effects of eye drops include ocular stinging, burning, pain, itching, erythema, dry eyes and allergic reactions including anaphylaxis and blepharoconjunctivitis; occasionally corneal disorders have been reported.

**BETAXOLOL**

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

Apply twice daily

Betaxolol (Non-proprietary)

Eye drops, solution, betaxolol (as hydrochloride) 0.5%, net price 5 mL = £1.90

Excipients may include benzaquinon chloride, disodium edetate
526 11.6 Treatment of glaucoma

Betoptic® (Alcon®) (Non-proprietary)

Ophthalmic solution (= eye drops), betaxolol (as maleate) 0.5%, net price 5 mL = £1.90
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, sodium metabisulphite.

Ophthalmic suspension (= eye drops), betaxolol (as maleate) 0.25%, net price 5 mL = £2.66
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

Unit dose eye drop suspension, betaxolol (as maleate) 0.25%, net price 50 × 0.25 mL = £13.77

Timoptic® (Spectrum Thea®) (Non-proprietary)

Eye drops, carteolol hydrochloride 1%, net price 5 mL = £7.60; 2%, 5 mL = £8.40
Excipients may include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, sodium metabisulphite.

LEVOBUNOLOL HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; anterior uveitis occasionally reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

See notes above

Apply twice daily

Teoptic® (Spectrum Thea®) (Non-proprietary)

Eye drops, carteolol hydrochloride 1%, net price 5 mL = £7.60; 2%, 5 mL = £8.40
Excipients may include benzalkonium chloride.

LEVOBUNOLOL HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above; anterior uveitis occasionally reported

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

See notes above

Apply twice daily

Levobunolol (Non-proprietary) (A)

Eye drops, levobunolol hydrochloride 0.5%. Net price 5 mL = £3.05
Excipients may include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, sodium metabisulphite.

Betagan® (Allergan®) (Non-proprietary)

Eye drops, levobunolol hydrochloride 0.5%, polyvinyl alcohol (Liquifilm®) 1.4%. Net price 5 mL = £1.85
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, sodium metabisulphite.

Unit dose eye drops, levobunolol hydrochloride 0.5%, polyvinyl alcohol (Liquifilm®) 1.4%. Net price 30 × 0.4 mL = £9.98
Excipients include disodium edetate.

TIMOLOL MALEATE

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

See notes above

Apply twice daily; long-acting preparations, see under preparations below

Timolol (Non-proprietary) (A)

Eye drops, timolol (as maleate) 0.25%, net price 5 mL = £1.56; 0.5%, 5 mL = £1.56

CARTEOLOL HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

See notes above

Apply twice daily

Timoptol® (MSD) (A)

Eye drops, in Ocumeter® metered-dose unit, timolol (as maleate) 0.25%, net price 5 mL = £3.12; 0.5%, 5 mL = £3.12
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride.

Unit dose eye drops, timolol (as maleate) 0.25%, net price 30 × 0.2 mL = £8.45; 0.5%, 30 × 0.2 mL = £9.65

Once-daily preparations

Nyogel® (Novartis®) (A)

Eye gel (= eye drops), timolol (as maleate) 0.1%, net price 5 g = £2.85
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride.

Dose

Child 12–18 years apply once daily in the morning

Timoptol®-LA (MSD) (A)

Ophthalmic gel-forming solution (= eye drops), timolol (as maleate) 0.25%, net price 2.5 mL = £3.12; 0.5%, 2.5 mL = £3.12
Excipients include benzododecinium bromide

Dose

Apply eye drops once daily

With dorzolamide

See under Dorzolamide

Prostaglandin analogues

The prostaglandin analogues latanoprost, and travoprost, and the synthetic prostamide, bimatoprost, increase uveoscleral outflow and subsequently reduce intra-ocular pressure. They are used to reduce intra-ocular pressure. Only latanoprost is licensed for use in children; for prescribing information, see BNF section 11.6. Children receiving prostaglandin analogues should be managed by a specialist and monitored for any changes to eye coloration since an increase in the brown pigment in the iris can occur; particular care is required in those with mixed coloured irides and those receiving treatment to one eye only.

Sympathomimetetics

Apraclonidine (section 11.8.2) is an alpha,-adrenoceptor agonist. Eye drops containing apraclonidine 0.5% are used for a short period to delay laser treatment or surgery for glaucoma in patients not adequately controlled by another drug; eye drops containing 1% are used for control of intra-ocular pressure after anterior segment laser surgery.

Brimonidine is an alpha,-adrenoceptor agonist that reduces intra-ocular pressure; it is contra-indicated in neonates and children under 2 years (risk of severe systemic side-effects), and should be used with caution in children 2–12 years (increased risk of drowsiness).

Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors and systemic drugs

The carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, acetazolamide, brinzolamide, and dorzolamide, reduce intra-ocular pressure by reducing aqueous humour production. Systemic use of acetazolamide also produces weak diuresis.
Acetazolamide is given by mouth or, rarely in children, by intravenous injection (intramuscular injections are painful because of the alkaline pH of the solution). It is used as an adjunct to other treatment for reducing intraocular pressure. Acetazolamide is a sulfonamide derivative; blood disorders, rashes, and other sulfonamide-related side-effects occur occasionally; children and their carers should be told to report any unusual skin rash. It is not generally recommended for long-term use; electrolyte disturbances and metabolic acidosis that occur can be corrected by administering potassium bicarbonate (as effervescent potassium tablets, section 9.2.1.3).

Dorzolamide and brinzolamide are topical carbonic anhydrase inhibitors. They are unlicensed in children but are used in those resistant to beta-blockers or those in whom beta-blockers are contra-indicated. They are used alone or as an adjunct to a topical beta-blocker. Systemic absorption can rarely cause sulfonamide-like side-effects and may require discontinuation if severe.

The osmotic diuretics, intravenous hypertonic mannitol (section 2.2.5) or glycerol by mouth, are useful short-term ocular hypotensive drugs.

## ACETAZOLAMIDE

### Cautions
Not generally recommended for prolonged use; if given monitor blood count and plasma electrolyte concentration; pulmonary obstruction and impaired alveolar ventilation (risk of acidosis); diabetes mellitus; renal calculi; avoid extravasation at injection site (risk of necrosis); interactions: Appendix 1 (diuretics)

### Contra-indications
hypokalaemia, hyponatraemia, hyperchloraemic acidosis; adrenal cortical insufficiency; long-term administration in chronic angle-closure glaucoma; sulfonamide hypersensitivity

### Hepatic impairment
manufacturer advises avoid

### Renal impairment
avoid; metabolic acidosis

### Pregnancy
manufacturer advises avoid, especially in first trimester (toxicity in animal studies)

### Breast-feeding
amount too small to be harmful

### Side-effects
see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, taste disturbance, loss of appetite, paraesthesia, flushing, headache, dizziness, fatigue, irritability, excitement, ataxia, depression, thirst, polyuria; less commonly melaena, drowsiness, confusion, hearing disturbances, fever, glycosuria, metabolic acidosis and electrolyte disturbances on long-term therapy, haematuria, crystalluria, renal and ureteral colic, renal lesions or calculi, renal failure, blood disorders, bone marrow suppression, rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis); rarely fulminant hepatic necrosis, hepatitis, cholestatic jaundice, flaccid paralysis, convulsions, photosensitivity; also reported transient myopia

### Licensed use
not licensed for use in children for treatment of glaucoma

### Indication and dose
Reduction of intra-ocular pressure in open-angle glaucoma, secondary glaucoma, peri-operatively in angle-closure glaucoma

- By mouth or by intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–12 years 5 mg/kg 2–4 times daily, adjusted according to response, max. 750 mg daily
  - Child 12–18 years 250 mg 2–4 times daily

## BRINZOLAMIDE

### Cautions
systemic absorption follows topical application; neonates and infants with immature renal tubules—risk of metabolic acidosis; interactions: Appendix 1 (brinzolamide)

### Contra-indications
hyperchloraemic acidosis

### Hepatic impairment
manufacturer advises avoid

### Renal impairment
see Cautions above; also avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

### Pregnancy
manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies

### Breast-feeding
manufacturer advises avoid

### Side-effects
local irritation, taste disturbance; less commonly nausea, dyspepsia, dry mouth, chest pain, epistaxis, haemoptysis, dyspnoea, rhinitis, pharyngitis, bronchitis, paraesthesia, depression, dizziness, headache, dermatitis, alopecia, corneal erosion

### Licensed use
not licensed for use in children

### Indication and dose
Adjunct to beta-blockers or used alone in raised intra-ocular pressure in ocular hypertension and in open-angle glaucoma if beta-blocker alone inadequate or inappropriate

Apply twice daily increased to 3 times daily if necessary

### Azopt® (Alcon)

Eye drops, brinzolamide 10 mg/mL, net price 5 mL = £6.56

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate
**DORZOLAMIDE**

**Cautions** systemic absorption follows topical application; history of renal calculi; neonates and infants with immature renal tubules—risk of metabolic acidosis; chronic corneal defects, history of intra-ocular surgery; interactions: Appendix 1 (dorzolamide)

**Contra-indications** hyperchloraemic acidosis

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Renal impairment** see Cautions above; also avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid—no toxicity in animal studies

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in infant

**Side-effects** nausea, bitter taste; headache, asthenia; ocular irritation, blurred vision, lacrimation, conjunctivitis, superficial punctuate keratitis, eyelid inflammation; less commonly iridocyclitis; rarely hypersensitivity reactions (including urticaria, angio-oedema, bronchospasm), dizziness, paraesthesia, urorithiasis, eyelid crusting, transient myopia, corneal oedema, epistaxis, dry mouth, throat irritation; also reported metabolic acidosis

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

**Raised intra-ocular pressure in ocular hypertension, open-angle glaucoma, pseudo-exfoliative glaucoma either as adjunct to beta-blocker or used alone in patients unresponsive to beta-blockers or if beta-blockers contra-indicated**

Used alone, apply 3 times daily; with topical beta-blocker, apply twice daily

**With timolol**

For prescribing information on timolol, see section 11.6, Beta-blockers

**Dorzolamide with Timolol**

**Eye drops,** dorzolamide (as hydrochloride) 2%, net price 5 mL = £5.61

**Excipients** may include benzalkonium chloride

**Brands** include Dorzant

**Trusopt** (MSD)

**Ophthalmic solution** (= eye drops), in Ocumeter®

**Plus** metered-dose unit, dorzolamide (as hydrochloride) 2%, net price 5 mL = £6.33

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride

**Unit dose eye drops,** dorzolamide (as hydrochloride) 2%, net price 60 × 0.2 mL = £24.18

**↓ With timolol**

For prescribing information on timolol, see section 11.6, Beta-blockers

**Cosopt** (MSD)

**Ophthalmic solution** (= eye drops), in Ocumeter®

**Plus** metered-dose unit, dorzolamide (as hydrochloride) 2%, timolol (as maleate) 0.5%, net price 5 mL = £10.05

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride

**PILOCARPINE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Miotics**

Pilocarpine is a miotic used in the management of raised intra-ocular pressure. The small pupil is an unwanted effect of these drugs (except when pilocarpine is used temporarily before an operation for angle-closure glaucoma). Miotics act by opening up the inefficient drainage channels in the trabecular meshwork.

**Cautions** A darkly pigmented iris may require a higher concentration of the miotic or more frequent administration and care should be taken to avoid over-dosage. Retinal detachment has occurred in susceptible individuals and those with retinal disease; therefore fundus examination is advised before starting treatment with a miotic. Care is also required in conjunctival or corneal damage. Intra-ocular pressure and visual fields should be monitored in those with chronic simple glaucoma and those receiving long-term treatment with a miotic. Miotics should be used with caution in patients with peptic ulceration, gastro-intestinal spasm, cardiac disease, hypertension, hypotension, asthma, epilepsy, hyperthyroidism, and urinary-tract obstruction.

**Counselling** Blurred vision may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving) particularly at night or in reduced lighting.

**Contra-indications** Miotics are contra-indicated in conditions where pupillary constriction is undesirable such as acute iritis, anterior uveitis and some forms of secondary glaucoma. They should be avoided in acute inflammatory disease of the anterior segment.

**Pregnancy** Miotics should be avoided unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk—limited information available.

**Breast-feeding** Miotics should be avoided unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk—no information available.

**Side-effects** Ciliary spasm leads to headache and browache which may be more severe in the initial 2–4 weeks of treatment. Ocular side-effects include burning, itching, smarting, blurred vision, conjunctival vascular congestion, myopia, lens changes with chronic use, vitreous haemorrhage, and pupillary block. Systemic side-effects are rare following application to the eye.
**Indication and dose**

See also notes above

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Child 1 month–2 years</th>
<th>Child 2–18 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Raised intra-ocular pressure in ocular hypertension and open-angle glaucoma</td>
<td>1 drop of 0.5% or 1% solution 3 times daily</td>
<td>1 drop 4 times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pre-operatively in goniotomy and trabeculotomy

| Child 1 month–18 years | apply 1% or 2% solution once daily |

**Pilocarpine Hydrochloride** *(Non-proprietary)*

Eye drops, pilocarpine hydrochloride 1%, 10 mL = £3.00; 2%, 10 mL = £2.87; 4%, 10 mL = £3.83

Excipients may include benzalkonium chloride

**Single use**

Minims® Pilocarpine Nitrate *(Bausch & Lomb)*

Eye drops, pilocarpine nitrate 2%, net price 20 × 0.5 mL = £10.04

**11.7 Local anaesthetics**

Oxybuprocaine and tetracaine are widely used topical local anaesthetics. Proxymetacaine causes less initial stinging and is particularly useful for children. Oxybuprocaine or a combined preparation of lidocaine and fluorescein is used for tonometry. Tetracaine produces more profound anaesthesia and is suitable for use before minor surgical procedures, such as the removal of corneal sutures. It has a temporary disruptive effect on the corneal epithelium. Lidocaine, with or without adrenaline (epinephrine), is injected into the eyelids for minor surgery, while retrobulbar or peribulbar injections are used for surgery of the globe itself, see section 15.2, p. 649. Local anaesthetics should never be used for the management of ocular symptoms.

**Caution**

Local anaesthetic eye drops should be avoided in preterm neonates because of the immaturity of the metabolising enzyme system.

**LIDOCAINE HYDROCHLORIDE** *(Lignocaine hydrochloride)*

**Contra-indications** avoid in preterm neonates

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local anaesthetic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use as required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Minims® Lidocaine and Fluorocaine *(Bausch & Lomb)*

Eye drops, lidocaine hydrochloride 4%, fluorescein sodium 0.25%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL = £10.61

**TETRACAINE HYDROCHLORIDE** *(Amethocaine hydrochloride)*

**Contra-indications** avoid in preterm neonates

**Indication and dose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local anaesthetic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use as required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Minims® Tetracaine Hydrochloride *(Bausch & Lomb)*

Eye drops, tetracaine hydrochloride 0.5% and 1%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL (both) = £8.93

**11.8 Miscellaneous ophthalmic preparations**

Certain eye drops, e.g. amphotericin, ceftazidime, cefuroxime, colistimethate sodium, desferrioxamine, dexamethasone, gentamicin, and vancomycin, can be prepared aseptically in a specialist manufacturing unit from material supplied for injection.

Preparations may also be available from Moorfields Eye Hospital as manufactured specials, see also ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, p. 809.

**11.8.1 Tear deficiency, ocular lubricants, and astringents**

Chronic soreness of the eyes associated with reduced or abnormal tear secretion often responds to tear replacement therapy. The severity of the condition and the child’s preference will often guide the choice of preparation.

Hypermellose is the traditional choice of treatment for tear deficiency. It may need to be instilled frequently
(e.g. hourly) for adequate relief. Ocular surface mucin is often abnormal in tear deficiency and the combination of hypermellose with a mucolytic such as acetylcysteine can be helpful.

The ability of carbomers to cling to the eye surface may help reduce frequency of application to 4 times daily. Polyvinyl alcohol increases the persistence of the tear film and is useful when the ocular surface mucin is reduced. Sodium hyaluronate eye drops are also used in the management of tear deficiency.

Sodium chloride 0.9% drops are sometimes useful in tear deficiency, and can be used as ‘comfort drops’ by contact lens wearers, and to facilitate lens removal. Special presentations of sodium chloride 0.9% and other irrigation solutions are used routinely for intraocular surgery and in first-aid for removal of harmful substances.

Eye ointments containing a paraffin can be used to lubricate the eye surface, especially in cases of recurrent corneal epithelial erosion. They may cause temporary visual disturbance and are best suited for application before sleep. Ointments should not be used during contact lens wear.

**ACETYLICYSTEINE**

**Indication and dose**

Tear deficiency, impaired or abnormal mucus production

Apply 3–4 times daily

**Ilupe® (Moorfields)**

Eye drops, acetylcysteine 5%, hypromellose 0.35%. Net price 10 mL = £10.09

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**CARMELLOSE SODIUM**

**Indication and dose**

Dry eye conditions

Apply as required

**Optive® (Allergan)**

Eye drops, carmellose sodium 0.5%, glycerol, net price 10 mL = £7.49

**Single use**

Carmellose (Non-proprietary)

Eye drops, carmellose sodium 0.5%, net price 30 × 0.4 mL = £5.75

Note: Each unit is resealable for up to 12 hours

**Celluvise® (Allergan)**

Eye drops, carmellose sodium 0.5%, net price 30 × 0.4 mL = £5.75, 90 × 0.4 mL = £15.53; 1%, 30 × 0.4 mL = £3.00, 60 × 0.4 mL = £6.00

**HYDROXYETHYLCELLULOSE**

**Indication and dose**

Tear deficiency

Apply as required

**Minims® Artificial Tears (Bausch & Lomb)**

Eye drops, hydroxyethylcellulose 0.44%, sodium chloride 0.35%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL = £8.21

**HYDROXYPROPYL GUAR**

**Indication and dose**

Dry eye conditions

Apply as required

**Systane® (Alcon)**

Eye drops, hydroxypropyl guar, net price 10 mL = £4.66

**Single use**

Systane® (Alcon)

Eye drops, hydroxypropyl guar, net price 28 × 0.8 mL = £4.66

**HYPROMELLOSE**

**Indication and dose**

Tear deficiency

Apply as required

Note: The Royal Pharmaceutical Society has stated that where it is not possible to ascertain the strength of hypromellose prescribed, the prescriber should be contacted to clarify the strength intended.

**Hypromellose (Non-proprietary)**

Eye drops, hypromellose 0.3%, net price 10 mL = £1.61

Excipients may include benzalkonium chloride

Brands include Lumecare® Hypromellose
Artelac® (Pharma-Global)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.32%, net price 10 mL = £4.99  
Excipients include cetrimide, disodium edetate

Isopto Alkaline® (Alcon)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 1%, net price 10 mL = 94p  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

Isopto Plain® (Alcon)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.5%, net price 10 mL = 81p  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride

Tears Naturale® (Alcon)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.3%, dextran ‘70’ 0.1%, net price 15 mL = £1.60  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

Single use  
Artelac® SDU (Pharma-Global)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.32%, net price 30 x 0.5 mL = £16.95

Hydromoor® (Moorfields)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.3%, net price 30 x 0.4 mL = £5.75

Lumecare® Preservative Free Tear Drops (Medicom)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.3%, net price 30 x 0.5 mL = £5.72

Tears Naturale® Single Dose (Alcon)  
Eye drops, hypromellose 0.3%, dextran ‘70’ 0.1%, net price 28 x 0.4 mL = £13.26

LIQUID PARAFFIN  
Indication and dose  
Dry eye conditions  
Apply as required

Lacri-Lube® (Allergan)  
Eye ointment, white soft paraffin 57.3%, liquid paraffin 42.5%, wool alcohols 0.2%. Net price 3.5 g = £2.51, 5 g = £3.32

PARAFFIN, YELLOW, SOFT  
Indication and dose  
See notes above  
Apply 2 hourly as required

Simple Eye Ointment  
Ointment, liquid paraffin 10%, wool fat 10%, in yellow soft paraffin. Net price 4 g = £3.06

POLYVINYL ALCOHOL  
Indication and dose  
Tear deficiency  
Apply as required

Liquifilm Tears® (Allergan)  
Ophthalmic solution (= eye drops), polyvinyl alcohol 1.4%. Net price 15 mL = £1.93  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

Ophthalmic solution (= eye drops), polyvinyl alcohol 1.4%, povidone 0.6%. Net price 30 x 0.4 mL = £5.35

Sno Tears® (Bausch & Lomb)  
Eye drops, polyvinyl alcohol 1.4%. Net price 10 mL = £1.06  
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

SODIUM CHLORIDE  
Indication and dose  
Irrigation, including first-aid removal of harmful substances  
Use as required

Sodium Chloride 0.9% Solutions  
See section 13.11.1

Balanced Salt Solution  
Solution (sterile), sodium chloride 0.64%, sodium acetate 0.39%, sodium citrate 0.17%, calcium chloride 0.048%, magnesium chloride 0.03%, potassium chloride 0.075%  
For intra-ocular or topical irrigation during surgical procedures  
Brands include Iocare®

Single use  
Minims® Saline (Bausch & Lomb)  
Eye drops, sodium chloride 0.9%. Net price 20 x 0.5 mL = £6.59

SODIUM HYALURONATE  
Indication and dose  
Dry eye conditions  
Apply as required

Hyabak® (Spectrum Thea)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.15%, net price 10 mL = £7.99

Hylo-Care® (Scope Ophthalmics)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.1%, dexamethasone 2%, net price 10 mL = £10.30

Hylo-Forte® (Scope Ophthalmics)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.2%, net price 10 mL = £10.80

Hylo-Tear® (Scope Ophthalmics)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.1%, net price 10 mL = £9.80

Lumecare® Sodium Hyaluronate (Medicom)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.15%, net price 10 mL = £3.97

Oxyal® (Kestrel Ophthalmics)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.1%, net price 10 mL = £4.15

Vismed® Multi (TRB Chemedica)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.18%, net price 10 mL = £6.81

Note  
Each unit is resealable for up to 12 hours

Ocusan® (Agepha)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.2%, net price 20 x 0.5 mL = £5.70

Vismed® Gel (TRB Chemedica)  
Eye drops, sodium hyaluronate 0.3%, net price 20 x 0.45 mL = £5.98
11.8.2 Ocular diagnostic and peri-operative preparations

Ocular diagnostic preparations

Fluorescein sodium is used in diagnostic procedures and for locating damaged areas of the cornea due to injury or disease.

**FLUORESCIN SODIUM**

**Indication and dose**

**Detection of lesions and foreign bodies**

Sufficient to stain damaged areas

**Minims® Fluorescein Sodium** (Bausch & Lomb)

Eye drops, fluorescein sodium 1% or 2%. Net price 20 × 0.5 mL (both) = £7.53

**With local anaesthetic**

Section 11.7

Ocular peri-operative drugs

Drugs used to prepare the eye for surgery and drugs that are injected into the anterior chamber at the time of surgery are included here.

Sodium hyaluronate is used during surgical procedures on the eye.

Apraclonidine, an alpha-2-adrenoceptor agonist, reduces intra-ocular pressure possibly by reducing the production of aqueous humour. It is used for short-term treatment only.

Balanced Salt Solution is used routinely in intra-ocular surgery (section 11.8.1).

**ACETYLCHOLINE CHLORIDE**

**Cautions** gastroduodenal spasm, peptic ulcer; heart failure; asthma; hyperthyroidism; urinary-tract obstruction

**Pregnancy** avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Breast-feeding** avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Cataract surgery, penetrating keratoplasty, iridectomy, other anterior segment surgery requiring rapid complete miosis

Consult product literature

**Miocin** (Novartis) (Phc)

Intra-ocular irrigation, powder for reconstitution, acetylcholine chloride 10 mg/mL (1%) when reconstituted, net price 20-mg vial (with solvent) = £7.28

**Miphtel** (SD Healthcare) (Phc)

Intra-ocular irrigation, powder for reconstitution, acetylcholine chloride 10 mg/mL (1%) when reconstituted, net price 20-mg vial (with solvent) = £7.28

**APRACLONIDINE**

Note Apraclonidine is a derivative of clonidine

**Cautions** history of angina, severe coronary insufficiency, recent myocardial infarction, heart failure, cerebrovascular disease, vasovagal attack, chronic renal failure; depression; pregnancy and breast-feeding; monitor intra-ocular pressure and visual fields; loss of effect may occur over time; suspend treatment if reduction in vision occurs in end-stage glaucoma; monitor for excessive reduction in intra-ocular pressure following peri-operative use; interactions: Appendix 1 (alpha,-adrenoceptor stimulants)

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving)

**Contra-indications** history of severe or unstable and uncontrolled cardiovascular disease

**Side-effects** dry mouth, taste disturbance; hyperaemia, ocular pruritus, discomfort and lacrimation (withdraw if ocular intolerance including oedema of lids and conjunctiva); headache, asthenia, dry nose; lid retraction, conjunctival blanching and mydriasis reported after peri-operative use; since absorption may follow topical application systemic effects (see Clonidine, section 2.5.2) may occur

**Licensed use** 0.5% drops not licensed for use in children under 12 years; 1% drops not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

See preparations below

**Iopidine®** (Alcon)

Ophthalmic solution (= eye drops), apraclonidine 1% (as hydrochloride). Net price 12 × 2 single use 0.25-mL units = £77.81

**Dose**

Control or prevention of postoperative elevation of intra-ocular pressure after anterior segment laser surgery

Apply 1 drop 1 hour before laser procedure then 1 drop immediately after completion of procedure

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride

**DICLOFENAC SODIUM**

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

Inhibition of intra-operative miosis during cataract surgery (but does not possess intrinsic mydriatic properties), postoperative inflammation in cataract surgery, strabismus surgery, argon laser trabeculoplasty

Consult product literature
11.9 Contact lenses

Some children and adolescents prefer to wear contact lenses rather than spectacles for both cosmetic and medical reasons. Visual defects are corrected by either rigid (‘hard’ or gas permeable) lenses or soft (hydrogel) lenses; soft lenses are the most popular type, because they are initially the most comfortable, but they may not give the best vision. Lenses should usually be worn for a specified number of hours each day and removed for sleeping. The risk of infectious and non-infectious keratitis is increased with extended continuous contact lens wear in children, and it is not recommended except where medically indicated.

Contact lenses require meticulous care. Poor compliance with directions for use, and with daily cleaning and disinfection, can result in complications including ulcerative keratitis or conjunctivitis. One-day disposable lenses, which are worn only once and therefore require no disinfection or cleaning, are becoming increasingly popular.

Acanthamoeba keratitis, a painful and sight-threatening condition, is associated with ineffective lens cleaning and disinfection, the use of contaminated lens cases, or tap water coming into contact with the lenses. The condition is especially associated with the use of soft lenses (including frequently replaced lenses) and should be treated by specialists.

Contact lenses and drug treatment
Special care is required in prescribing eye preparations for contact lens users. Some drugs and preservatives in eye preparations can accumulate in hydrogel lenses and can cause adverse reactions. Therefore, unless medically indicated, the lenses should be removed before instillation of the eye preparation, and not worn during the period of treatment. Alternatively, unpreserved drops can be used. Eye drops may, however, be instilled while patients are wearing rigid corneal contact lenses. Ointment preparations should never be used in conjunction with contact lens wear; oily eye drops should also be avoided.

Many drugs given systemically can also have adverse effects on contact lens wear. These include oral contraceptives (particularly those with a higher oestrogen content), drugs which reduce blink rate (e.g. anxiolytics, hypnotics, antihistamines, and muscle relaxants), drugs which reduce lacrimation (e.g. antihistamines, antimuscarinics, phenothiazines and related drugs, some beta-blockers, diuretics, and tricyclic antidepressants), and drugs which increase lacrimation (including epinephrine and hyaluronate). Other drugs that can affect contact lens wear are isotretinoin (can cause conjunctival inflammation), aspirin (salicylic acid appears in tears and can be absorbed by contact lenses—leading to irritation), and rifampicin and sulfasalazine (can discolor lenses).

Voltarol® Ophtha Multidose (Novartis)
Eye drops, diclofenac sodium 0.1%. Net price 5 mL = £6.68
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, propylene glycol

Single use
Voltarol® Ophtha (Novartis)
Eye drops, diclofenac sodium 0.1%. Net price pack of 5 single-dose units = £4.00, 40 single-dose units = £32.00

FLURBIPROFEN SODIUM
Licensed use not licensed for use in children
Inhibition of intra-operative miosis (but does not possess intrinsic mydriatic properties), control of postoperative and post-laser trabeculoplasty inflammation (if corticosteroids contra-indicated)
consult product literature

Ocufen® (Allergan)
Ophthalmic solution (= eye drops), flurbiprofen sodium 0.03%, polyvinyl alcohol (Liquifilm®) 1.4%. Net price 40 × 0.4 mL = £37.15

KETOROLAC TROMETAMOL
Licensed use not licensed for use in children
Prophylaxis and reduction of inflammation and associated symptoms following ocular surgery
consult product literature

Acular® (Allergan)
Eye drops, ketorolac trometamol 0.5%. Net price 5 mL = £3.00
Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate
12 Ear, nose, and oropharynx

12.1 Drugs acting on the ear

12.1.1 Otitis externa

Otitis externa is an inflammatory reaction of the lining of the ear canal usually associated with an underlying seborrhoeic dermatitis or eczema; it is important to exclude an underlying chronic otitis media before treatment is commenced. Many cases recover after thorough cleansing of the external ear canal by suction or dry mopping.

Secondary infection in otitis externa may be of bacterial, fungal, or viral origin. If infection is present, a topical anti-infective which is not used systemically (such as neomycin or clioquinol) may be used, but for only about a week because excessive use may result in fungal infections that are difficult to treat. Sensitivity to the anti-infective or solvent may occur and resistance to antibacterials is a possibility with prolonged use. Aluminium acetate ear drops are also effective against bacterial infection and inflammation of the ear. Chloramphenicol may be used, but the ear drops contain propylene glycol and cause hypersensitivity reactions in about 10% of patients. Solutions containing an anti-infective and a corticosteroid (such as Locorten-Vioform®) are used for treating children when infection is present with inflammation and eczema. Clotrimazole 1% solution is used topically to treat fungal infection in otitis externa.

Secondary infection in otitis externa may be of bacterial, fungal, or viral origin. If infection is present, a topical anti-infective which is not used systemically (such as neomycin or clioquinol) may be used, but for only about a week because excessive use may result in fungal infections that are difficult to treat. Sensitivity to the anti-infective or solvent may occur and resistance to antibacterials is a possibility with prolonged use. Aluminium acetate ear drops are also effective against bacterial infection and inflammation of the ear. Chloramphenicol may be used, but the ear drops contain propylene glycol and cause hypersensitivity reactions in about 10% of patients. Solutions containing an anti-infective and a corticosteroid (such as Locorten-Vioform®) are used for treating children when infection is present with inflammation and eczema. Clotrimazole 1% solution is used topically to treat fungal infection in otitis externa.

In view of reports of ototoxicity in patients with a perforated tympanic membrane (eardrum), manufacturers contra-indicate treatment with a topical aminoglycoside antibiotic in those with a tympanic perforation. However, many specialists do use these drops cautiously in the presence of a perforation in children with otitis media (section 12.1.2) and when other measures have failed for otitis externa.

A solution of acetic acid 2% acts as an antifungal and antibacterial in the external ear canal and may be used to treat mild otitis externa. More severe cases require treatment with an anti-inflammatory preparation with
or without an anti-infective drug. A proprietary preparation containing acetic acid 2% (EarCalm® spray) is on sale to the public for children over 12 years.

For severe pain associated with otitis externa, a simple analgesic, such as paracetamol (section 4.7.1) or ibuprofen (section 10.1.1), can be used. A systemic antibacterial (Table 1, section 5.1) can be used if there is spreading cellulitis or if the child is systemically unwell. When a resistant staphylococcal infection (a boil) is present in the external auditory canal, oral flucloxacin (section 5.1.1.2) or a systemic aminoglycoside may be needed for pseudomonal infections, particularly in children with diabetes or compromised immunity.

The skin of the pinna adjacent to the ear canal is often affected by eczema. A topical corticosteroid (section 13.4) cream or ointment is then required, but prolonged use should be avoided.

### Administration
To administer ear drops, lay the child down with the head turned to one side; for an infant pull the earlobe back and down, for an older child pull the earlobe back and up.

### Astringent preparations

#### ALUMINIUM ACETATE

**Licensed use** not licensed

**Indication and dose**

*Inflammation in otitis externa* (see notes above)

Insert into meatus or apply on a ribbon gauze dressing or sponge wick which should be kept saturated with the ear drops

**Aluminium Acetate** (Non-proprietary)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ear drops 13%, aluminium sulphate 2.25 g, calcium carbonate 1 g, tartaric acid 450 mg, acetic acid (33%) 2.5 mL, purified water 7.5 mL</td>
<td>Available as manufactured special</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ear drops 8%**, dilute 8 parts aluminium acetate ear drops (13%) with 5 parts purified water. Must be freshly prepared

### Anti-inflammatory preparations

#### Corticosteroids

Topical corticosteroids are used to treat inflammation and eczema in otitis externa.

**Cautions** Prolonged use of topical corticosteroid ear preparations should be avoided.

**Contra-indications** Corticosteroid ear preparations should be avoided in the presence of an untreated ear infection. If infection is present, the corticosteroid should be used in combination with a suitable anti-infective (see notes above).

**Side-effects** Local sensitivity reactions may occur.

#### BETAMETHASONE SODIUM PHOSPHATE

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers)

**Indication and dose**

- Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa (see notes above); for dose, see under preparations
- Eye section 11.4.1
- Nose section 12.2.1 and section 12.2.3

**Betnesol®** (UCB Pharma)

**Drops** (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 10 mL = £2.23

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Dose**

- *ear*, instil 2–3 drops every 2–3 hours; reduce frequency when relief obtained

**Vistamethasone®** (Martindale)

**Drops** (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 5 mL = £1.02; 10 mL = £1.16

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Dose**

- *ear*, instil 2–3 drops every 3–4 hours; reduce frequency when relief obtained

#### DEXAMETHASONE

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** Sofradex® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers)

**Indication and dose**

- Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa (see notes above); for dose, see under preparations

**With antibacterial**

**Otomize®** (GSK Consumer Healthcare)

**Ear spray**, dexamethasone 0.1%, neomycin sulphate 0.5%. Net price 5 mL pump-action aerosol unit = £3.71

**Excipients** include hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

**Dose**

- *Child 2–18 years ear*, apply 1 metered spray 3 times daily
**536 12.1.1 Otitis externa**

**Sofradex®** (Sanofi-Aventis)

**Drops** (for ear or eye), dexamethasone (as sodium metasulphobenzoate) 0.05%, framycetin sulphate 0.5%, gramicidin 0.005%. Net price 10 mL = £6.25

**Excipients** include polysorbate 80

**Dose**
- ear, instil 2–3 drops 3–4 times daily, eye, section 11.4.1

**FLUMETASONE PIVALATE**

(Flumethasone Pivalate)

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa (see notes above); for dose, see under preparations

**With antibacterial**

**Locorten-Vioform®** (Amdipharm)

**Ear drops**, flumetasone pivalate 0.02%, clioquinol 1%. Net price 7.5 mL = £1.76

**Contra-indications** iodine sensitivity

**Dose**
- Child 2–18 years instil 2–3 drops into the ear twice daily for 7–10 days

**Note** Clioquinol stains skin and clothing

**HYDROCORTISONE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** Otosporin® not licensed for use in children under 3 years; other preparations licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers)

**Indication and dose**

Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa (see notes above); for dose, see under preparations

**With antibacterial**

**Gentisone® HC** (Amdipharm)

**Ear drops**, hydrocortisone acetate 1%, gentamicin 0.3% (as sulphate). Net price 10 mL = £3.92

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Dose**
- ear, instil 2–4 drops 3–4 times daily and at night

**Otiosporin®** (GSK)

**Ear drops**, hydrocortisone acetate 1%, neomycin sulphate 3400 units, polymyxin B sulphate 10 000 units/mL. Net price 5 mL = £2.00; 10 mL = £4.00

**Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbate 20

**Dose**
- Child 3–18 years instil 3 drops into the ear 3–4 times daily

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers)

**Indication and dose**

Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa (see notes above); for dose, see under preparations

**Eye section 11.4.1**

**Predsol®** (UCB Pharma)

**Drops** (for ear or eye), prednisolone sodium phosphate 0.5%. Net price 10 mL = £1.92

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Dose**
- ear, instil 2–3 drops every 2–3 hours; reduce frequency when relief obtained

**With antibacterial**

**Predsol-N®** (UCB Pharma)

**Drops** (for ear or eye), prednisolone sodium phosphate 0.5%, neomycin sulphate 0.5%. Net price 10 mL = £2.27

**Excipients** include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Dose**
- ear, instil 2–3 drops 3–4 times daily

**Anti-infective preparations**

**CHLORAMPHENICOL**

**Cautions** avoid prolonged use (see notes above)

**Side-effects** high incidence of sensitivity reactions to vehicle

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers)

**Indication and dose**

Bacterial infection in otitis externa (but see notes above); for dose, see under preparation

**Chloramphenicol** (Non-proprietary)

**Ear drops**, chloramphenicol in propylene glycol, net price 5%, 10 mL = £6.22; 10%, 10 mL = £5.62

**Excipients** include propylene glycol

**Dose**
- ear, instil 2–3 drops 2–3 times daily

**CLOTRIMAZOLE**

**Side-effects** occasional local irritation or sensitivity

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**

Fungal infection in otitis externa (see notes above); for dose, see under preparation

**Canesten®** (Bayer Consumer Care)

**Solution**, clotrimazole 1% in polyethylene glycol 400 (macrogol 400). Net price 20 mL = £2.43

**Dose**
- ear, apply 2–3 times daily continuing for at least 14 days after disappearance of infection
many infections, especially those accompanying coryza, should not be prescribed antibacterials routinely as infections. Children diagnosed with acute otitis media may occur with even minor upper respiratory tract monest cause of severe aural pain in young children and Acute otitis media

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>Bacterial infection in otitis externa (see notes above)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Eye** section 11.3.1

With corticosteroid

**Predsol-N** see Betamethasone, p. 535

**Otomez** see Dexamethasone, p. 535

**Otosporin** see Hydrocortisone, p. 536

**Predsol-N** see Prednisolone, p. 536

resolve without antibacterial treatment and a simple analgesic, such as paracetamol, may be sufficient. In children without systemic features, a systemic antibacterial (Table 1, section 5.1) may be started after 72 hours if there is no improvement, or earlier if there is deterioration, if the child is systemically unwell, or if the child is at high risk of serious complications (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis), if mastoiditis is present, or in children under 2 years of age with bilateral otitis media. Perforation of the tympanic membrane in children with acute otitis media usually heals spontaneously without treatment; if there is no improvement, e.g. pain or discharge persists, a systemic antibacterial (Table 1, section 5.1) can be given. Topical antibacterial treatment of acute otitis media is ineffective and there is no place for ear drops containing a local anaesthetic.

**Otitis media with effusion** Otitis media with effusion (‘glue ear’) occurs in about 10% of children and in 90% of children with cleft palates. Antimicrobials, corticosteroids, decongestants, and antihistamines have little place in the routine management of otitis media with effusion. If ‘glue ear’ persists for more than a month or two, the child should be referred for assessment and follow up because of the risk of long-term hearing impairment which can delay language development. Untreated or resistant glue ear may be responsible for some types of chronic otitis media.

**Chronic otitis media** Opportunistic organisms are often present in the debris, keratin, and necrotic bone of the middle ear and mastoid in children with chronic otitis media. The mainstay of treatment is thorough cleansing with aural microsuction, which may completely resolve long-standing infection. Cleansing may be followed by topical treatment as for otitis externa (section 12.1.1); this is particularly beneficial for discharging ears or infections of the mastoid cavity. Acute exacerbations of chronic infection may require treatment with an oral antibacterial (Table 1, section 5.1); a swab should be taken to identify infecting organisms and antibacterial sensitivity. Parenteral antibacterial treatment is required if *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* or *Proteus spp.* are present.

Manufacturers contra-indicate topical treatment with ototoxic antibacterials in the presence of a perforation (section 12.1.1). However, many specialists use ear drops containing aminoglycosides (e.g. neomycin) or polymyxins if the otitis media has failed to settle with systemic antibacterials; it is considered that the pus in the middle ear associated with otitis media carries a higher risk of ototoxicity than the drops themselves. **Ciprofloxacin** or **ofloxacin** ear drops [both unlicensed; available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809] or eye drops used in the ear [unlicensed indication] are an effective alternative to aminoglycoside ear drops for chronic otitis media in patients with perforation of the tympanic membrane.

**12.1.2 Otitis media**

Acute otitis media Acute otitis media is the commonest cause of severe aural pain in young children and may occur with even minor upper respiratory tract infections. Children diagnosed with acute otitis media should not be prescribed antibacterials routinely as many infections, especially those accompanying coryza, are caused by viruses. Most uncomplicated cases

---

**12.1.3 Removal of ear wax**

Ear wax (cerumen) is a normal bodily secretion which provides a protective film on the meatal skin and need only be removed if it causes hearing loss or interferes with a proper view of the ear drum.
Ear wax causing discomfort or impaired hearing may be softened with simple remedies such as olive oil ear drops or almond oil ear drops; sodium bicarbonate ear drops are also effective, but may cause dryness of the ear canal. If the wax is hard and impacted, the drops can be used twice daily for several days and this may reduce the need for mechanical removal of the wax. The child should lie with the affected ear uppermost for 5 to 10 minutes after a generous amount of the softening remedy has been introduced into the ear. Proprietary preparations containing organic solvents can irritate the meatal skin, and in most cases the simple remedies indicated above are just as effective and less likely to cause irritation. Docusate sodium or urea hydrogen peroxide are ingredients in a number of proprietary preparations for softening ear wax.

If necessary, wax may be removed by irrigation with water (warmed to body temperature). Ear irrigation is generally best avoided in young children, in children unable to co-operate with the procedure, in children who have had otitis media in the last 6 weeks, in otitis externa, in children with cleft palate, a history of ear drum perforation, or previous ear surgery. A child who has hearing in one ear only should not have that ear irrigated because even a very slight risk of damage is unacceptable in this situation.

For administration of ear drops, see p. 535.

### Almond Oil (Non-proprietary)
Ear drops, almond oil in a suitable container
Allow to warm to room temperature before use

### Olive Oil (Non-proprietary)
Ear drops, olive oil in a suitable container
Allow to warm to room temperature before use

### Sodium Bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)
Ear drops, sodium bicarbonate 5%, net price 10 mL = £1.25
Cerumol® (Thornton & Ross)
Ear drops, chlorobutanol 5%, arachis (peanut) oil 57.5%. Net price 11 mL = £1.76
Exterol® (Dermal)
Ear drops, urea–hydrogen peroxide complex 5% in glycerol. Net price 8 mL = £1.75
Molcer® (Wallace Mfg)
Ear drops, docusate sodium 5%. Net price 15 mL = £5.60
Excipients include propylene glycol
Otex® (DDD)
Ear drops, urea–hydrogen peroxide 5%. Net price 8 mL = £2.64
Waxsol® (Norgine)
Ear drops, docusate sodium 0.5%. Net price 10 mL = £1.21

## 12.2 Drugs acting on the nose

### 12.2.1 Drugs used in nasal allergy

Mild allergic rhinitis is controlled by antihistamines (see also section 3.4.1) or topical nasal corticosteroids; systemic nasal decongestants (section 3.10) are not recommended for use in children. Topical nasal decongestants can be used for a short period to relieve congestion and allow penetration of a topical nasal corticosteroid.

More persistent symptoms can be relieved by topical nasal corticosteroids; cromoglicate is an alternative, but may be less effective. The topical antihistamine, azelastine, is useful for controlling breakthrough symptoms in allergic rhinitis. Azelastine is less effective than nasal corticosteroids, but probably more effective than sodium cromoglicate. In seasonal allergic rhinitis (e.g. hay fever), treatment should begin 2 to 3 weeks before the season commences and may have to be continued for several months; continuous long-term treatment may be required in perennial rhinitis.

Montelukast (section 3.3.2) is less effective than topical nasal corticosteroids; montelukast can be used in children with seasonal allergic rhinitis (unresponsive to other treatments) and concomitant asthma.

Children with disabling symptoms of seasonal rhinitis (e.g. students taking important examinations), may be treated with oral corticosteroids (section 6.3.2) for short periods. Oral corticosteroids may also be used at the beginning of a course of treatment with a corticosteroid spray to relieve severe mucosal oedema and allow the spray to penetrate the nasal mucosa.

Sometimes allergic rhinitis is accompanied by vaso-motor rhinitis. In this situation, the addition of topical nasal ipratropium bromide (section 12.2.2) can reduce watery rhinorrhea.

### 12.2.2 Topical nasal decongestants

### 12.2.3 Nasal preparations for infection

Rhinitis is often self-limiting but bacterial sinusitis may require treatment with antibacterials (Table 1, section 5.1). Many nasal preparations contain sympathomimetic drugs (section 12.2.2) which can give rise to rebound congestion (rhinitis medicamentosa) and may damage the nasal cilia. Sodium chloride 0.9% solution may be used as a douche or ‘sniff’ following endonasal surgery.

### Administration

To administer nasal drops, lay the child face-upward with the neck extended, instil the drops, then sit the child up and tilt the head forward.

### Nasal polyps

Short-term use of corticosteroid nasal drops helps to shrink nasal polyps; to be effective, the drops must be administered with the child in the ‘head down’ position. A short course of a systemic corticosteroid (section 6.3.2) may be required initially to shrink large polyps. A corticosteroid nasal spray can be used to maintain the reduction in swelling and also for the initial treatment of small polyps.

## 12.2.1 Drugs used in nasal allergy

Mild allergic rhinitis is controlled by antihistamines (see also section 3.4.1) or topical nasal corticosteroids; systemic nasal decongestants (section 3.10) are not recommended for use in children. Topical nasal decongestants can be used for a short period to relieve congestion and allow penetration of a topical nasal corticosteroid.

More persistent symptoms can be relieved by topical nasal corticosteroids; cromoglicate is an alternative, but may be less effective. The topical antihistamine, azelastine, is useful for controlling breakthrough symptoms in allergic rhinitis. Azelastine is less effective than nasal corticosteroids, but probably more effective than sodium cromoglicate. In seasonal allergic rhinitis (e.g. hay fever), treatment should begin 2 to 3 weeks before the season commences and may have to be continued for several months; continuous long-term treatment may be required in perennial rhinitis.

Montelukast (section 3.3.2) is less effective than topical nasal corticosteroids; montelukast can be used in children with seasonal allergic rhinitis (unresponsive to other treatments) and concomitant asthma.

Children with disabling symptoms of seasonal rhinitis (e.g. students taking important examinations), may be treated with oral corticosteroids (section 6.3.2) for short periods. Oral corticosteroids may also be used at the beginning of a course of treatment with a corticosteroid spray to relieve severe mucosal oedema and allow the spray to penetrate the nasal mucosa.

Sometimes allergic rhinitis is accompanied by vaso-motor rhinitis. In this situation, the addition of topical nasal ipratropium bromide (section 12.2.2) can reduce watery rhinorrhea.

### Pregnancy

If a pregnant woman cannot tolerate the symptoms of allergic rhinitis, treatment with nasal beclometasone, budesonide, fluticasone propionate, or sodium cromoglicate may be considered.
Antihistamines

AZELASTINE HYDROCHLORIDE

Side-effects Irritation of nasal mucosa; bitter taste (if applied incorrectly)

Indication and dose Treatment of allergic rhinitis for dose, see under preparation

Rhinolast® (Meda) Nasal spray, azelastine hydrochloride 140 micrograms (0.14 mL)/metered spray. Net price 22 mL (157-spray unit with metered pump) = £10.45

Dose
Child 5–18 years apply 140 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril twice daily

Note Preparations of azelastine hydrochloride can be sold to the public for nasal administration in aqueous form (other than by aerosol) for the treatment of seasonal allergic rhinitis or perennial allergic rhinitis in children over 5 years, subject to max. single dose of 140 micrograms per nostril, max. daily dose of 280 micrograms per nostril, and a pack size limit of 36 doses

Corticosteroids

Nasal preparations containing corticosteroids have a useful role in the prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis (see notes above). They are also used for the symptomatic treatment of adenoidal hypertrophy.

Cautions Corticosteroid nasal preparations should be avoided in the presence of untreated nasal infections, and also after nasal surgery (until healing has occurred); they should also be avoided in pulmonary tuberculosis. Systemic absorption may follow nasal administration particularly if high doses are used or if treatment is prolonged; for cautions and side-effects of systemic corticosteroids, see section 6.3.2. The risk of systemic effects may be greater with nasal drops than with nasal sprays; drops are administered incorrectly more often than sprays. The height of children receiving prolonged treatment with nasal corticosteroids should be monitored; if growth is slowed, referral to a paediatrician should be considered.

Side-effects Local side-effects include dryness, irritation of nose and throat, and epistaxis. Nasal ulceration has been reported, and occurs commonly with nasal preparations containing fluticasone furoate or mometasone furoate. Nasal septal perforation (usually following nasal surgery) occurs very rarely. Raised intra-ocular pressure or glaucoma may occur rarely. Headache, smell and taste disturbances may also occur. Hyperactivity, sleep disturbances, anxiety, depression, and aggression have been reported. Hypersensitivity reactions, including bronchospasm, have also been reported.

BETAMETHASONE SODIUM PHOSPHATE

Cautions see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose
Eye section 11.4.1
Ear section 12.1.1

Betnesol® (UCB Pharma) Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%, net price 10 mL = £2.23

Vistamethasone® (Martindale) Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%. Net price 5 mL = £1.02, 10 mL = £1.16

Dose
nose, instil 2–3 drops into each nostril 2–3 times daily

BUDESONIDE

Cautions see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (corticosteroids)

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose See under preparations
12.2.1 Drugs used in nasal allergy

**Budesonide** (Non-proprietary) [IVAX]

**Nasal spray**, budesonide 100 micrograms/metered spray, net price 100-spray unit = £5.90

**Dose**

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic and vasomotor rhinitis**

Child 12–18 years apply 200 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily in the morning or 100 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril twice daily, when control achieved reduce to 100 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily

**Side-effects**

see notes above

**Cautions**

see notes above

---

**Rhinocort Aqua** [AstraZeneca] [TA]

**Nasal spray**, budesonide 64 micrograms/metered spray, net price 120-spray unit = £2.49

**Excipients**

include disodium edetate, polysorbate 80, potassium sorbate

**Dose**

**Rhinitis**

Child 12–18 years 128 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved reduce to 64 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily; max. duration of treatment 3 months

**Nasal polyps**

Child 12–18 years apply 100 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril twice daily for up to 3 months

---

**Flixonase** ([A&H]) [TA]

**Aqueous nasal spray**, fluticasone propionate 50 micrograms/metered spray. Net price 150-spray unit with applicator = £11.01

**Excipients**

include benzalkonium chloride, polysorbate 80

**Dose**

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

Child 6–12 years 27.5 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved reduce to 15.5 micrograms (3/4 spray) into each nostril daily; max. duration of treatment 3 months

Child 12–18 years 55 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved reduce to 27.5 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril daily

**Nasal polyps**

Child 12–18 years apply 100 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril twice daily for up to 3 months

---

**Flunisolide**

**Cautions**

see notes above

**Side-effects**

see notes above

**Indication and dose**

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

Child 5–14 years initially 25 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril up to 3 times daily then reduced for maintenance

Child 14–18 years 50 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril twice daily, increased if necessary to max. 3 times daily then reduced for maintenance

**Syntaris** [IVAX] [TA]

**Aqueous nasal spray**, flunisolide 25 micrograms/metered spray. Net price 240-spray unit with pump and applicator = £5.05

**Excipients**

include benzalkonium chloride, butylated hydroxytoluene, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80, propylene glycol

---

**Fluticasone furoate**

**Avamys** [GSK] [TA]

**Nasal spray**, fluticasone furoate 27.5 micrograms/metered spray, net price 120-spray unit = £6.44

**Excipients**

include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80

**Dose**

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

Child 6–12 years 27.5 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily; increased if necessary to 55 micrometers (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved reduce to 27.5 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril daily

Child 12–18 years 55 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved reduce to minimum effective dose, 27.5 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily may be sufficient

---

**Mometasone furoate**

**Nasonex** [Scherin-Plough] [TA]

**Nasal spray**, mometasone furoate 50 micrograms/metered spray. Net price 140-spray unit = £7.68

**Excipients**

include benzalkonium chloride, polysorbate 80

**Dose**

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

Child 6–12 years 50 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily

Child 12–18 years 100 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily, increased if necessary to max. 200 micrograms (4 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved reduce to 50 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily

---

**Triamcinolone acetonide**

**Cautions**

see notes above

**Side-effects**

see notes above

**Licensed use**

not licensed for use in children under 6 years
BNFC 2011–2012

Indication and dose

**Treatment of allergic rhinitis**

Child 2–6 years 55 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily; max. duration of treatment 3 months

Child 6–12 years 55 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily; increased if necessary to 110 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved, reduce to 55 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily; max. duration of treatment 3 months

Child 12–18 years 110 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril once daily; when control achieved, reduce to 55 micrograms (1 spray) into each nostril once daily

**Nasacort® (Sanofi-Aventis)**

Aqueous nasal spray, triamcinolone acetonide 55 micrograms/metered spray. Net price 120-spray unit = £7.39

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbate 80

**Cromoglicate**

**SYDNIUM CROMOGLICATE**

(Sodium Cromoglycate)

**Side-effects**

local irritation; rarely transient bronchospasm

**Licensed use**

licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers)

**Indication and dose**

Prophylaxis of allergic rhinitis for dose, see under preparations

**Rynacrom® (Sanofi-Aventis)**

4% aqueous nasal spray, sodium cromoglicate 4% (5.2 mg/spray). Net price 22 mL (150-spray unit with pump) = £17.07

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**Dose**

Nasal spray, 1 spray into each nostril 2–4 times daily

**Vividrin® (Pharma-Global)**

Nasal spray, sodium cromoglicate 2%. Net price 15 mL (approx. 110-spray unit) = £11.60

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, edetic acid, polysorbate 80

**Dose**

Nasal spray, 1 spray into each nostril 4–6 times daily

**12.2.2 Topical nasal decongestants**

**Sodium chloride** 0.9% given as nasal drops or spray may relieve nasal congestion by helping to liquefy mucus secretions in children with rhinitis. In infants, 1–2 drops of sodium chloride 0.9% solution in each nostril before feeds will help relieve congestion and allow more effective suckling.

Inhalation of warm moist air is useful in the treatment of symptoms of acute nasal congestion in infants and children, but the use of boiling water for steam inhalation is dangerous for children and should not be recommended. Volatile substances (section 3.8) such as menthol and eucalyptus may encourage inhalation of warm moist air.

Topical nasal decongestants containing sympathomimetics can cause rebound congestion (*rhinitis medicamentosa*) following prolonged use (more than 7 days), and are therefore of limited value in the treatment of nasal congestion.

Ephedrine nasal drops is the least likely of the sympathomimetic nasal decongestants to cause rebound congestion and can provide relief for several hours. The more potent sympathomimetic drugs oxymetazoline and xylometazoline are more likely to cause a rebound effect.

The CHM/MHRA has stated that non-prescription cough and cold medicines containing ephedrine, oxymetazoline, or xylometazoline can be considered for up to 5 days’ treatment in children aged 6–12 years after basic principles of best care have been tried; these medicines should not be used in children under 6 years of age (section 3.9.1).

Non-allergic watery rhinorrhoea often responds well to treatment with the antimuscarinic ipratropium bromide.

Recurrent, persistent bleeding may respond to the use of a sympathomimetic nasal spray; if infection is present, chlorhexidine and neomycin (*Naseptin®*) cream (section 12.2.3) may be effective.

Systemic nasal decongestants—see section 3.10.

**Sinusitis and oral pain** Sinusitis affecting the maxillary antrum can cause pain in the upper jaw. Where this is associated with blockage of the opening from the sinus into the nasal cavity, it may be helpful to relieve the congestion with inhalation of warm moist air (section 3.8) or with ephedrine nasal drops (see above).

For antibacterial treatment of sinusitis, see Table 1, section 5.1.

**Sympathomimetics**

**EPHEDRINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions**

see notes above; also avoid excessive or prolonged use; hyperthyroidism; diabetes mellitus; cardiovascular disease (including hypertension); interactions: Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics)

**Pregnancy**

avoid

**Breast-feeding**

avoid

**Side-effects**

local irritation, nausea, headache; after excessive use tolerance with diminished effect, rebound congestion; cardiovascular effects also reported

**Licensed use**

not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Indication and dose**

Nasal congestion (see notes above)

Child 12–18 years instil 1–2 drops (0.5% strength) into each nostril up to 3 or 4 times daily when required; max. duration 7 days
12 Ear, nose, and oropharynx

Indication and dose

Side-effects

Cautions

see section 3.1.2; avoid spraying near eyes

Antimuscarinic

Dose

(Drug name)

Xyloметазолин

Nasal drops, xylometazoline hydrochloride 0.1%, net price

10 mL = £1.91

Note The BP directs that if no strength is specified 0.5% drops should be supplied

Dental prescribing on NHS Xylometazoline nasal drops may be prescribed

1. Can be sold to the public provided no more than 180 mg of ephedrine base (or salts) are supplied at one time, and pseudoephedrine salts are not supplied at the same time, for conditions that apply to supplies made at the request of a patient, see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition)

**XYLOMETAZOLINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see under Ephedrine Hydrochloride and notes above; also avoid excessive or prolonged use

**Pregnancy** avoid

**Side-effects** see under Ephedrine Hydrochloride and notes above; in small children, also restlessness, sleep disturbances, and hallucinations (discontinue treatment)

**Indication and dose**

Nasal congestion for dose, see under preparations

Xylometazoline (Non-proprietary)

**Nasal drops**, xylometazoline hydrochloride 0.1%, net price 10 mL = £1.91

**Dose**

Child 12–18 years instil 2–3 drops into each nostril 2–3 times daily when required, max. duration 7 days

Brands include Otradrops®, Otravit®, Otravet®, Otravit®-S, Otradrops

Paediatric nasal drops, xylometazoline hydrochloride 0.05%, net price 10 mL = £1.59

**Dose**

Child 6–12 years instil 1–2 drops into each nostril 1–2 times daily when required, max. duration 3 days

Brands include Otradrops®, Otravit®, Otravet®, Otravit®-S, Otradrops

Nasal spray, xylometazoline hydrochloride 0.1%, net price 10 mL = £1.91

**Dose**

Child 12–18 years apply 1 spray into each nostril 1–3 times daily when required, max. duration 7 days

Brands include Otravit®, Otravit®-S

Antimuscarinic

**IPRATROPIUM BROMIDE**

Cautions see section 3.1.2; avoid spraying near eyes

**Side-effects** epistaxis, nasal dryness, and irritation; less frequently nausea, headache, and pharyngitis; very rarely antimuscarinic effects such as gastrointestinal motility disturbances, palpitations, and urinary retention

**Indication and dose**

Rhinorrhoea associated with allergic and non-allergic rhinitis

Child 12–18 years apply 42 micrograms (2 sprays) into each nostril 2–3 times daily

Asthma and reversible airways obstruction section 3.1.2

**12.2.3 Nasal preparations for infection**

**There is no** evidence that topical anti-infective nasal preparations have any therapeutic value in rhinitis or sinusitis; for elimination of nasal staphylococci, see below. Acute complications such as periorbital cellulitis require hospital treatment. For systemic treatment of sinusitis, see Table 1, section 5.1.

**Betnesol-N®** (UCB Pharma)

Drops (for ear, eye, or nose), betamethasone sodium phosphate 0.1%, neomycin sulphate 0.5%. Net price 10 mL = £2.30

Excipients include benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**12.2.3 Nasal preparations for infection**

**Nasal staphylococci**

Elimination of organisms such as staphylococci from the nasal vestibule can be achieved by the use of a cream containing chlorhexidine and neomycin (Naseptin®), but re-colonisation frequently occurs. Coagulase-positive staphylococci are present in the noses of 40% of the population. A nasal ointment containing mupirocin is also available; it should probably be held in reserve for resistant infections. In hospitals or in care establishments, mupirocin nasal ointment should be reserved for the eradication (in both patients and staff) of nasal carriage of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). The ointment should be applied 3 times daily for 5 days and a sample taken 2 days after treatment to confirm eradication. The course may be repeated if the sample is positive (and the throat is not colonised). To avoid the development of resistance, the treatment course should not exceed 7 days and the course should not be repeated on more than one occasion. If the MRSA strain is mupirocin-resistant or does not respond after 2 courses, consider alternative products such as chlorhexidine and neomycin cream. For eradication of MRSA also consult local infection control policy. See section 13.10.1 for treatment of MRSA-infected open wounds. See section 5.1.1.2 for treatment of children with MRSA-positive throat swabs or systemic MRSA infection.

**Bactroban Nasal** (GSK)

Nasal ointment, mupirocin 2% (as calcium salt) in white soft paraffin basis. Net price 3 g = £5.80

**Dose**

For eradication of nasal carriage of staphylococci, including meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

Apply 2–3 times daily to the inner surface of each nostril (see notes above)
Ulceration of the oral mucosa may be caused by trauma (physical or chemical), recurrent aphthous ulcers, infections, carcinoma, dermatological disorders, nutritional deficiencies, gastro-intestinal disease, haematopoietic disorders, and drug therapy. It is important to establish the diagnosis in each case as the majority of these lesions require specific management in addition to local treatment. Local treatment aims to protect the ulcerated area, to relieve pain, to reduce inflammation, or to control secondary infection. Children with an unexplained mouth ulcer of more than 3 weeks’ duration require urgent referral to hospital to exclude secondary causes such as leukaemia.

Simple mouthwashes A saline mouthwash (section 12.3.4.4) may relieve the pain of traumatic ulceration. The mouthwash is made up with warm water and used at frequent intervals until the discomfort and swelling subsides.

Antiseptic mouthwashes Secondary bacterial infection may be a feature of any mucosal ulceration; it can increase discomfort and delay healing. Use of chlorhexidine mouthwash (section 12.3.4) is often beneficial and may accelerate healing of recurrent aphthous ulcers.

Corticosteroids Topical corticosteroid therapy may be used for some forms of oral ulceration; for aphthous ulcers it is most effective if applied in the ‘prodromal’ phase. Thrush or other types of candidiasis are recognised complications of corticosteroid treatment. Hydrocortisone oromucosal tablets are useful in recurrent aphthous ulcers and erosive lichenoid lesions.

Beclometasone dipropionate inhaler (p. 147) 50–100 micrograms sprayed twice daily on the oral mucosa is used to manage oral ulceration [unlicensed indication]. Alternatively, betamethasone soluble tablets dissolved in water, can be used as a mouthwash to treat oral ulceration. Systemic corticosteroid therapy (section 6.3.2) is reserved for severe conditions such as pemphigus vulgaris.

Local analgesics Local analgesics have a limited role in the management of oral ulceration. When applied topically their action is of a relatively short duration and analgesia cannot be maintained continuously throughout the day. When local anaesthetics are used in the mouth, care must be taken not to produce anaesthesia of the pharynx before meals as this might lead to choking.

Benzydamine mouthwash or spray may be useful in reducing the discomfort associated with a variety of ulcerative conditions. It has also been found to be effective in reducing the discomfort of tonsillectomy and post-irradiation mucositis. Some children find the full-strength mouthwash causes some stinging and, for them, it should be diluted with an equal volume of water.

Flurbiprofen lozenges are licensed for the relief of sore throat in adolescents.

Choline salicylate dental gel has some analgesic action and may provide relief for recurrent aphthous ulcers in children over 16 years of age.

Periodontitis Low-dose doxycycline (Periostat®) is licensed as an adjunct to scaling and root planing for the treatment of periodontitis in children over 12 years; a low dose of doxycycline reduces collagenase activity without inhibiting bacteria associated with periodontitis. For anti-infectives used in the treatment of destructive (re refractory) forms of periodontal disease, see section 12.3.2 and Table 1, section 5.1. For mouthwashes used for oral hygiene and plaque inhibition, see section 12.3.4.

BENZYMADINE HYDROCHLORIDE

Side-effects occasional numbness or stinging; rarely hypersensitivity reactions

Licensed use Difflam® Spray licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose Painful inflammatory conditions of oropharynx for dose, see under preparations

Difflam® (3M)

Oral rinse, green, benzydamine hydrochloride 0.15%, net price 200 mL (Difflam® Sore Throat Rinse) = £2.50; 300 mL = £4.01

Dose Child 12–18 years rinse or gargle, using 15 mL (dilute with an equal volume of water if stinging occurs) every 1½–3 hours as required, usually for not more than 7 days
### 12.3.1 Drugs for oral ulceration and inflammation

**Spray**, benzylamine hydrochloride 0.15%. Net price 30-mL unit = £3.17

**Dose**
- **Child under 6 years**: 1 puff per 4 kg body-weight to max. 4 puffs onto affected area every 1½–3 hours
- **Child 6–12 years**: 4 puffs onto affected area every 1½–3 hours
- **Child 12–18 years**: 4–8 puffs onto affected area every 1½–3 hours

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Benzylamine Oromucosal Spray 0.15%

### CORTICOSTEROIDS

**Contra-indications**: untreated oral infection

**Side-effects**: occasional exacerbation of local infection; thrush or other candidal infections

**Licensed use**: Hydrocortisone mucoadhesive buccal tablets licensed for use in children (under 12 years—on medical advice only)

**Indication and dose**
- Oral and perioral lesions for dose, see under preparations

**Hydrocortisone** (Non-proprietary)

*Mucoadhesive buccal tablets* (= oromucosal tablets), hydrocortisone 2.5 mg (as sodium succinate). Net price 20 = £2.03

**Dose**
- 1 lozenge 4 times daily, allowed to dissolve slowly in the mouth in contact with the ulcer

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Hydrocortisone Oromucosal Tablets

**Betnesol** (UCB Pharma)

*Soluble tablets*, pink, scored, betamethasone 500 micrograms (as sodium phosphate), net price 100-tab pack = £4.97. Label: 10, steroid card, 13, 21

**Dose**
- **Oral ulceration**
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 500 micrograms dissolved in 20 mL water and rinsed around the mouth 4 times daily; not to be swallowed

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Betamethasone Soluble Tablets 500 micrograms

### DOXYCYCLINE

**Cautions**: section 5.1.3; monitor for superficial fungal infection, particularly if predisposition to oral candidiasis

**Contra-indications**: section 5.1.3

**Hepatic impairment**: section 5.1.3

**Renal impairment**: section 5.1.3

**Pregnancy**: section 5.1.3

**Breast-feeding**: section 5.1.3

**Side-effects**: section 5.1.3; fungal superinfection

**Indication and dose**
- **Oral herpes** section 12.3.2

**Other indications** section 5.1.3

**Periostat** (Alliance) (®)

*Tablets*, f/c, doxycycline (as hyclate) 20 mg, net price 56-tab pack = £16.50. Label: 6, 11, 27, counselling, posture

**Dose**
- **Periodontitis (as an adjunct to gingival scaling and root planing)**
  - **Child 12–18 years**: 20 mg twice daily for 3 months

Counselling Tablets should be swallowed whole with plenty of fluid, while sitting or standing

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Doxycycline Tablets 20 mg

### FLURBIPROFEN

**Cautions**: section 10.1.1

**Contra-indications**: section 10.1.1

**Hepatic impairment**: section 10.1.1

**Renal impairment**: section 10.1.1

**Pregnancy**: section 10.1.1

**Breast-feeding**: section 10.1.1

**Side-effects**: taste disturbance, mouth ulcers (move lozenge around mouth); see also section 10.1.1

**Indication and dose**
- **Relief of sore throat** for dose, see under preparation

**Strefen** (Reckitt Benckiser)

*Lozenges*, flurbiprofen 8.75 mg, net price 16 = £2.24

**Dose**
- **Child 12–18 years**: allow 1 lozenge to dissolve slowly in the mouth every 3–6 hours, max. 5 lozenges in 24 hours, for max. 3 days

### SALICYLATES

**Cautions**: frequent application, especially in children, may give rise to salicylate poisoning

**Contra-indications**: children under 16 years

**Reye’s syndrome**: The CHM has advised that topical oral pain relief products containing salicylate salts should not be used in children under 16 years, as a cautionary measure due to the theoretical risk of Reye’s syndrome

**Indication and dose**
- **Mild oral and perioral lesions** for dose, see under preparations

**Choline salicylate**

**Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP**

*Oral gel*, choline salicylate 8.7% in a flavoured gel basis, net price 15 g = £1.89

Brands include *Bonjela* (sugar-free)

**Dose**
- **Child 16–18 years**: apply ½-inch of gel with gentle massage not more often than every 3 hours

Dental prescribing on NHS Choline Salicylate Dental Gel may be prescribed
Acute ulcerative gingivitis (Vincent’s infection) requires treatment with oral anti-infective drugs. Adequate analgesia may be all that is required. Systemic antibiotics (Table 1, section 5.1) should only be used in severe cases where there is concern for the child’s overall clinical condition.

Chlorhexidine mouthwash or gel (section 12.3.4) will help to control plaque accumulation if toothbrushing is painful or impaired and will also help to control secondary infection in the mouth with water (or cleaning a child’s teeth) after tonsillectomy or the use of a nasogastric tube.

Sore throat is usually a self-limiting condition often caused by viral infection which does not benefit from anti-infective treatment. Adequate analgesia may be all that is required. Systemic antibiotics (Table 1, section 5.1) should only be used in severe cases where there is concern for the child’s overall clinical condition. Acute ulcerative gingivitis (Vincent’s infection) requires treatment with oral metronidazole (section 5.1.11).

Benzydamine (section 12.3.1) may be beneficial in relieving pain and dysphagia in children, especially after tonsillectomy or the use of a nasogastric tube.

Oropharyngeal viral infections

Children with varicella-zoster infection often develop painful lesions in the mouth and throat. Benzydamine (section 12.3.1) may be used to provide local analgesia. Chlorhexidine mouthwash or gel (section 12.3.4) will control plaque accumulation if toothbrushing is painful and will also help to control secondary infection in general.

In severe herpetic stomatitis systemic aciclovir or valaciclovir (section 5.3.2.1) may be used for oral lesions associated with herpes zoster. Aciclovir and valaciclovir are also used to prevent frequently recurring herpes simplex lesions of the mouth particularly when associated with the initiation of erythema multiforme. For the treatment of labial herpes simplex infections, see section 13.10.3.

Herpes infections of the mouth in children aged over 12 years may also respond to rinsing the mouth with doxycycline (section 12.3.1).

Oropharyngeal fungal infections

Fungal infections of the mouth are usually caused by Candida spp. (candidiasis or candidosis). Different types of oropharyngeal candidiasis are managed as follows:

Thrush Acute pseudomembranous candidiasis (thrush), is usually an acute infection but it may persist for months in patients receiving inhaled corticosteroids, cytotoxics, or broad-spectrum antibacterials. Thrush also occurs in patients with serious systemic disease associated with reduced immunity such as leukaemia, other malignancies, and HIV infection. Any predisposing condition should be managed appropriately. When thrush is associated with corticosteroid inhalers, rinsing the mouth with water (or cleaning a child’s teeth) immediately after using the inhaler may avoid the problem. Treatment with nystatin or miconazole may be needed. Fluconazole (section 5.2.1) is effective for unresponsive infections or if a topical antifungal drug cannot be used. Topical therapy may not be adequate in immunocompromised children and an oral triazole antifungal is preferred (section 5.2.1).

Acute erythematous candidiasis Acute erythematous (atrophic) candidiasis is a relatively uncommon condition associated with corticosteroid and broad-spectrum antibacterial use and with HIV disease. It is usually treated with fluconazole (section 5.2.1).

Angular cheilitis Angular cheilitis (angular stomatitis) is characterised by soreness, erythema and fissuring at the angles of the mouth. It may represent a nutritional deficiency or it may be related to orofacial granulomatosis or HIV infection. Both yeasts (Candida spp.) and bacteria (Staphylococcus aureus and beta-haemolytic streptococci) are commonly involved as interacting, infective factors. While the underlying cause is being identified and treated, it is often helpful to apply miconazole cream (p. 588) or sodium fusidate ointment (p. 587); if the angular cheilitis is unresponsive to treatment, miconazole and hydrocortisone cream or ointment (p. 559) can be used.

Immunocompromised patients For advice on prevention of fungal infections in immunocompromised children see p. 301.

For the role of antisepctic mouthwashes in the prevention of oral candidiasis in immunocompromised children, see section 12.3.4.

Drugs used in oropharyngeal candidiasis Nystatin is not absorbed from the gastro-intestinal tract and is applied locally (as a suspension) to the mouth for treating local fungal infections. Miconazole is used by local application (as an oral gel) in the mouth but it is also absorbed to the extent that potential interactions need to be considered. Miconazole also has some activity against Gram-positive bacteria including streptococci and staphylococci. In neonates, nystatin oral suspension or miconazole oral gel is used for the treatment of oropharyngeal candidiasis; to prevent re-infection it is important to ensure that the mother’s breast nipples and the teats of feeding bottles are cleaned adequately.

Fluconazole (section 5.2.1) given by mouth is reliably absorbed; it is used for infections that do not respond to topical therapy or when topical therapy cannot be used. Itraconazole (section 5.2.1) can be used for fluconazole-resistant infections. If candidal infection fails to respond after 1 to 2 weeks of treatment with antifungal drugs the child should be sent for investigation to eliminate the possibility of underlying disease. Persistent infection may also be caused by re-infection from the genito-urinary or gastro-intestinal tract.

MICONAZOLE

Cautions avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (antifungals, imidazole)

Contra-indications impaired swallowing reflex

Hepatic impairment avoid

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid if possible— toxicity at high doses in animal studies
546 12.3.3 Lozenges and sprays

BNFC 2011–2012

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises caution—no information available

**Side-effects** nausea and vomiting, very rarely diarrhoea (usually on long-term treatment), hepatitis, rash, toxic epidermal necrolysis, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 4 months of age or during first 5–6 months of life of an infant born pre-term

### Indication and dose

**Prevention and treatment of oral and intestinal fungal infections**

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** (oral fungal infections only) 1 mL 2–4 times daily smeared around the mouth after feeds
  - **Child 1 month–2 years** 2.5 mL twice daily smeared around the mouth after food
  - **Child 2–6 years** 5 mL twice daily after food; retain near lesions before swallowing
  - **Child 6–12 years** 5 mL 4 times daily after food; retain near lesions before swallowing
  - **Child 12–18 years** 5–10 mL 4 times daily after food; retain near lesions before swallowing
  - **Note** Treatment should be continued for 48 hours after lesions have healed

**Localised lesions**

- **Child 2–18 years** smear small amount on affected area with clean finger 4 times daily for 5–7 days (orthodontic appliances should be removed at night and brushed with gel); continue treatment for 48 hours after lesions have healed

**Note**

- **Daktarin** (Janssen) Oral gel, sugar-free, orange-flavoured, miconazole 24 mg/mL (20 mg/g). Net price 15-g tube = £2.85, 80-g tube = £4.38. Label: 9, counselling, hold in mouth, after food
- **Dental prescribing on NHS** May be prescribed as Miconazole Oromucosal Gel 1.15-g tube can be sold to the public

### NYSTATIN

**Side-effects** oral irritation and sensitisation, nausea reported

**Licensed use** suspension not licensed for use in neonates for the treatment of candidiasis

### Indication and dose

**Oral and perioral fungal infections**

- **Neonate** 100 000 units 4 times daily after feeds
- **Child 1 month–18 years** 100 000 units 4 times daily after food

**Note** Treatment is usually given for 7 days, and continued for 48 hours after lesions have healed

**Skin infections** section 13.10.2

**Nystan** (Squibb)

- **Oral suspension**, yellow, nystatin 100 000 units/mL. Net price 30 mL with pipette = £1.91. Label: 9, counselling, use of pipette, hold in mouth, after food
- **Dental prescribing on NHS** May be prescribed as Nystatin Oral Suspension

### 12.3.4 Mouthwashes and gargles

There is no convincing evidence that antiseptic lozenges and sprays have a beneficial action and they sometimes irritate and cause sore tongue and sore lips. Some preparations also contain local anaesthetics which relieve pain but may cause sensitisation.

Superficial infections of the mouth are often helped by warm mouthwashes which have a mechanical cleansing effect and cause some local hyperaemia. However, to be effective, they must be used frequently and vigorously. Mouthwashes may not be suitable for children under 7 years (risk of the solution being swallowed); the mouthwash or dental gel may be applied using a cotton bud.

A warm saline mouthwash is ideal for its cleansing effect and can be prepared either by dissolving half a teaspoonful of salt in a glassful of warm water or by diluting compound sodium chloride mouthwash with an equal volume of warm water. Mouthwash solution-tablets containing thymol are used to remove unpleasant tastes.

Mouthwashes containing an oxidising agent, such as hydrogen peroxide, may be useful in the treatment of acute ulcerative gingivitis (Vincent’s infection). Hydrogen peroxide solution has also a mechanical cleansing effect arising from frothing when in contact with oral debris, but in concentrations greater than 1.5% may cause ulceration and tissue damage.

Chlorhexidine is an effective antiseptic which has the advantage of inhibiting plaque formation on the teeth. It does not, however, completely control plaque deposition and is not a substitute for effective toothbrushing. Moreover, chlorhexidine preparations do not penetrate significantly into stagnation areas and are therefore of little value in the control of dental caries or of periodontal disease once pocketing has developed. Chlorhexidine preparations are of little value in the control of acute nectrotising ulcerative gingivitis. With prolonged use, chlorhexidine causes reversible brown staining of teeth and tongue. Chlorhexidine may be incompatible with some ingredients in toothpaste, causing an unpleasant taste in the mouth; allow at least 30 minutes between using the mouthwash and toothpaste.

Chlorhexidine can be used as a mouthwash, spray or gel for secondary infection in mucosal ulceration and for controlling gingivitis, as an adjunct to other oral hygiene measures. These preparations may also be used instead of toothbrushing where there is a painful periodontal condition (e.g. primary herpetic stomatitis) or if the child has a haemorrhagic disorder, or is disabled. Chlorhexidine mouthwash is used in the prevention of oral candidiasis in immunocompromised patients. Chlorhexidine mouthwash reduces the incidence of alveolar osteitis following tooth extraction. Chlorhexidine mouthwash should not be used for the prevention of endocarditis in children undergoing dental procedures.
CHLORHEXIDINE GLUCONATE

Side-effects
- mucosal irritation (if desquamation occurs, discontinue treatment or dilute mouthwash with an equal volume of water); taste disturbance; reversible brown staining of teeth, and of silicate or composite restorations; tongue discoloration; parotid gland swelling reported

Note: Chlorhexidine gluconate may be incompatible with some ingredients in toothpaste; leave an interval of at least 30 minutes between using mouthwash and toothpaste.

Licensed use: licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); Corsodyl® not licensed for use in children under 12 years (unless on the advice of a healthcare professional).

Indication and dose
See under preparations below.

Chlorhexidine (Non-proprietary)
Mouthwash, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2%, net price 300 mL = £2.51

Dose
- Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition, oral candidiasis, gingivitis, and management of aphthous ulcers
- Rinse mouth with 10 mL for about 1 minute twice daily

Dental prescribing on NHS Chlorhexidine Mouthwash may be prescribed.

Corsodyl® (GSK Consumer Healthcare)
Dental gel, chlorhexidine gluconate 1%. Net price 50 g = £1.21

Dose
- Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition and gingivitis
- Brush on the teeth once or twice daily

- Oral candidiasis and management of aphthous ulcers
- Apply to affected areas once or twice daily

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Chlorhexidine Gluconate Gel.

Mouthwash, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2%. Net price 300 mL (original or mint) = £2.18, 600 mL (mint) = £3.85

Dose
- Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition, oral candidiasis, gingivitis, and management of aphthous ulcers
- Rinse mouth with 10 mL for about 1 minute twice daily

- Oral spray, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% (mint-flavoured). Net price 60 mL = £4.10

Dose
- Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition, oral candidiasis, gingivitis, and management of aphthous ulcers
- Apply as required to tooth, gingival, or ulcer surfaces using up to 12 actuations (approx. 0.14 mL/actuation) twice daily

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Chlorhexidine Oral Spray.

Periogard® (Colgate-Palmolive)
Oromucosal solution, alcohol-free, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2%, net price 300 mL = £1.96

Dose
- Short-term treatment of inflammation of gingival and oral mucosa
- Child 6–18 years rinse mouth with 10 mL for about 1 minute twice daily

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Chlorhexidine Oromucosal Solution, Alcohol-Free, 0.2%.

With chlorobutanol
Eludril® (Fabre)
Mouthwash or gargle, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.1%, chlorobutanol 0.5% (mint-flavoured), net price 90 mL = £1.36, 250 mL = £2.83, 500 mL = £5.06

Dose
- Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition
- Use 10–15 mL (diluted with warm water in measuring cup provided) 2–3 times daily

Hexetidine

Side-effects
- local irritation; very rarely taste disturbance and transient anaesthesia

Indication and dose
Oral hygiene for dose, see preparation below.

Oraldene® (McNeil)
Mouthwash or gargle, red or blue-green (mint-flavoured), hexetidine 0.1%. Net price 100 mL = £1.31; 200 mL = £2.02

Dose
- Child 6–18 years use 15 mL (undiluted) 2–3 times daily

Hydrogen Peroxide

Side-effects
- hypertrophy of papillae of tongue on prolonged use

Indication and dose
- Oral hygiene (see notes above); for dose, see under preparations.

Hydrogen Peroxide Mouthwash, BP
Mouthwash, consists of Hydrogen Peroxide Solution 6% (= approx. 20 volume) BP

Dose
- Rinse the mouth for 2–3 minutes with 15 mL diluted in half a tumblerful of warm water 2–3 times daily (see notes above)

Dental prescribing on NHS Hydrogen Peroxide Mouthwash may be prescribed.

Peroxyl® (Colgate-Palmolive)
Mouthwash, hydrogen peroxide 1.5%, net price 300 mL = £2.54

Dose
- Child 6–18 years, rinse the mouth with 10 mL for about 1 minute 3 times daily (after meals and at bedtime) for max. 7 days.
12.3.5 Treatment of dry mouth

**SODIUM CHLORIDE**

**Indication and dose**

Oral hygiene (see notes above); for dose, see under preparation

**Sodium Chloride Mouthwash, Compound, BP**

**Mouthwash**, sodium bicarbonate 1%, sodium chloride 1.5% in a suitable vehicle with a peppermint flavour

**Dose**

Extemporaneous preparations should be prepared according to the following formula: sodium chloride 1.5 g, sodium bicarbonate 1 g, concentrated peppermint emulsion 2.5 mL, double-strength chloroform water 50 mL, water to 100 mL.

To be diluted with an equal volume of warm water

**Dental prescribing on NHS** Compound Sodium Chloride Mouthwash may be prescribed

**THYMOL**

**Indication and dose**

Oral hygiene (see notes above); for dose, see under preparation

**Mouthwash Solution-tablets**

Consist of tablets which may contain antimicrobial, colouring, and flavouring agents in a suitable soluble effervescent basis to make a mouthwash suitable for dental purposes. Net price 100-tab pack = £15.09

**Dose**

Dissolve 1 tablet in a tumblerful of warm water

**Note** Mouthwash Solution-tablets may contain ingredients such as thymol

**Dental prescribing on NHS** Mouthwash Solution-tablets may be prescribed

**12.3.5 Treatment of dry mouth**

Dry mouth (xerostomia) may be caused by drugs with antimuscarinic (anticholinergic) side-effects (e.g. antispasmodics and sedating antihistamines), by irradiation of the head and neck region or by damage to or disease of the salivary glands. Children with a persistently dry mouth may develop a burning or scalded sensation and mouth may develop a burning or scalded sensation and may be inappropriate.

Artificial saliva products with **ACBS approval** may be prescribed for children with dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy, or sicca syndrome. SST tablets may also be prescribed on the NHS.

**AS Saliva Orthana® (AS Pharma)**

Oral spray, gastric mucin (porcine) 3.5%, xylitol 2%, sodium fluoride 4.2 mg/litre, with preservatives and flavouring agents, pH neutral, net price 50-mL bottle = £4.92; 500-mL refill = £34.27

**Dose**

(ACBS) spray 2–3 times onto oral and pharyngeal mucosa, when required

**Note** AS Saliva Orthana® lozenges do not contain fluoride

**Dental prescribing on NHS AS Saliva Orthana® Lozenges may be prescribed**

**Biotène Oralbalance® (GSK)**

Saliva replacement gel, lactoperoxidase, lactoferrin, lysozyme, glucose oxidase, xylitol in a gel basis, net price 50-g tube = £4.10; 24 x 12.4 mL tube = £30.40 (for hospital use)

**Dose**

Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth

Apply to gums and tongue as required

**Note** Avoid use with toothpastes containing detergents (including foaming agents)

**Dental prescribing on NHS Biotène Oralbalance® Saliva Replacement Gel may be prescribed**

**BioXtra® (RIS Products)**

Gel, lactoperoxidase, lactoferrin, lysozyme, whey colostrum, xylitol and other ingredients, net price 40-mL tube = £3.94, 50-mL spray = £3.94

**Dose**

(ACBS) apply to oral mucosa as required

**Dental prescribing on NHS BioXtra® Gel may be prescribed**

**Glandosane® (Fresenius Kabi)**

Aerosol spray, carmellose sodium 500 mg, sorbitol 1.5 g, potassium chloride 60 mg, sodium chloride 42.2 mg, magnesium chloride 2.6 mg, calcium chloride 7.3 mg, and dipotassium hydrogen phosphate 17.1 mg/50 g, pH 5.75, net price 50-mL unit (neutral, lemon or peppermint flavoured) = £4.82

**Dose**

(ACBS) spray onto oral and pharyngeal mucosa as required

**Dental prescribing on NHS Glandosane® Aerosol Spray may be prescribed**

**Saliveze® (Wyvern)**

Oral spray, carmellose sodium (sodium carboxymethylcellulose), calcium chloride, magnesium chloride, potassium chloride, sodium chloride, and dibasic sodium phosphate, pH neutral, net price 50-mL bottle (mint-flavoured) = £3.50

**Dose**

(ACBS) 1 spray onto oral mucosa as required

**Dental prescribing on NHS Saliveze® Oral Spray may be prescribed**
Salivix® (Galen)
Pastilles, sugar-free, reddish-amber, acacia, malic acid and other ingredients. Net price 50-pastille pack = £3.50

Dose
(ACBS) suck 1 pastille when required

Dental prescribing on NHS Salivix® Pastilles may be prescribed

SST (Medac)
Tablets, sugar-free, citric acid, malic acid and other ingredients in a sorbitol base, net price 100-tab pack = £4.86

Dose
Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth in patients with impaired salivary gland function and patent salivary ducts
Allow 1 tablet to dissolve slowly in the mouth when required

Dental prescribing on NHS SST Tablets may be prescribed as Saliva Stimulating Tablets

Xerotin® (SpePharm)
Oral spray, sugar-free, water, sorbitol, carmellose (carboxymethylcellulose), potassium chloride, sodium chloride, potassium phosphate, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride and other ingredients, pH neutral. Net price 100-mL unit = £6.86

Dose
Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth
Spray as required

Dental prescribing on NHS Xerotin® Oral Spray may be prescribed as Artificial Saliva Oral Spray
13 Skin

13.1 Management of skin conditions

13.1.1 Vehicles
13.1.2 Suitable quantities for prescribing
13.1.3 Excipients and sensitisation

13.2 Emollient and barrier preparations

13.2.1 Emollients
13.2.1.1 Emollient bath additives and shower preparations
13.2.2 Barrier preparations

13.3 Topical antipruritics

13.4 Topical corticosteroids

13.5 Preparations for eczema and psoriasis

13.5.1 Preparations for eczema
13.5.2 Preparations for psoriasis
13.5.3 Drugs affecting the immune response

13.6 Acne and rosacea

13.6.1 Topical preparations for acne
13.6.2 Oral preparations for acne

13.7 Preparations for warts and calluses

13.8 Sunscreens and camouflagers

13.8.1 Sunscreen preparations
13.8.2 Camouflagers

13.9 Shampoos and other preparations for scalp conditions

13.10 Anti-infective skin preparations

13.10.1 Antibacterial preparations
13.10.1.1 Antibacterial preparations only used topically
13.10.1.2 Antibacterial preparations also used systemically
13.10.2 Antifungal preparations
13.10.3 Antiviral preparations
13.10.4 Parasiticidal preparations
13.10.5 Preparations for minor cuts and abrasions

13.11 Skin cleansers, antiseptics, and preparations for promotion of wound healing

13.12 Antiperspirants

13.13 Topical circulatory preparations

This chapter also includes advice on the management of the following:
- candidiasis, p. 588
- dermatophytoses, p. 588
- head lice, p. 592
- nappy rash, p. 556
- pityriasis versicolor, p. 588
- scabies, p. 592

For information on wound management products and elasticated garments, see the relevant BNF appendix.

The British Association of Dermatologists’ list of preferred unlicensed dermatological preparations (specials) is available at www.bad.org.uk/site/495/default.aspx.

13.1 Management of skin conditions

When prescribing topical preparations for the treatment of skin conditions in children, the site of application, the condition being treated, and the child’s (and carer’s) preference for a particular vehicle all need to be taken into consideration.

Neonates Caution is required when prescribing topical preparations for neonates—their large body surface area in relation to body mass increases susceptibility to toxicity from systemic absorption of substances applied to the skin. Topical preparations containing potentially sensitising substances such as corticosteroids, aminoglycosides, iodine, and parasiticidal drugs should be avoided. Preparations containing alcohol should be avoided because they can dehydrate the skin, cause pain if applied to raw areas, and the alcohol can cause necrosis.

In preterm neonates, the skin is more fragile and offers a poor barrier, especially in the first fortnight after birth. Preterm infants, especially if below 32 weeks post-
menstrual age, may also require special measures to maintain skin hydration.

### 13.1.1 Vehicles

The vehicle in topical preparations for the skin affects the degree of hydration, has a mild anti-inflammatory effect, and aids the penetration of the active drug. Therefore, the vehicle, as well as the active drug, should be chosen on the basis of their suitability for the child’s skin condition.

**Applications** are usually viscous solutions, emulsions, or suspensions for application to the skin (including the scalp) or nails.

**Collodions** are painted on the skin and allowed to dry to leave a flexible film over the site of application.

**Creams** are emulsions of oil and water and are generally well absorbed into the skin. They may contain an antimicrobial preservative unless the active ingredient or basis is intrinsically bactericidal and fungicidal. Generally, creams are cosmetically more acceptable than ointments because they are less greasy and easier to apply.

**Gels** consist of active ingredients in suitable hydrophilic or hydrophobic bases; they generally have a high water content. Gels are particularly suitable for application to the face and scalp.

**Lotions** have a cooling effect and may be preferred to ointments or creams for application over a hairy area. Lotions in alcoholic basis can sting if used on broken skin. **Shake lotions** (such as calamine lotion) contain insoluble powders which leave a deposit on the skin surface.

**Ointments** are greasy preparations which are normally anhydrous and insoluble in water, and are more occlusive than creams. They are particularly suitable for chronic, dry lesions. The most commonly used ointment bases consist of soft paraffin or a combination of soft, liquid and hard paraffin. Some ointment bases have both hydrophilic and lipophilic properties; they may have occlusive properties on the skin surface, encourage hydration, and also be miscible with water; they often have a mild anti-inflammatory effect. **Water-soluble ointments** contain macrogols which are freely soluble in water and are therefore readily washed off; they have a limited but useful role where ready removal is desirable.

**Pastes** are stiff preparations containing a high proportion of finely powdered solids such as zinc oxide and starch suspended in an ointment. They are used for circumscribed lesions such as those which occur in lichen simplex, chronic eczema, or psoriasis. They are less occlusive than ointments and can be used to protect inflamed, lichenified, or excoriated skin.

**Dusting powders** are used only rarely. They reduce friction between opposing skin surfaces. Dusting powders should not be applied to moist areas because they can cake and abrade the skin. Talc is a lubricant but it does not absorb moisture; it can cause respiratory irritation. Starch is less lubricant but absorbs water.

**Dilution** The BP directs that creams and ointments should not normally be diluted but that should dilution be necessary care should be taken, in particular, to prevent microbial contamination. The appropriate diluent should be used and heating should be avoided during mixing; excessive dilution may affect the stability of some creams. Diluted creams should normally be used within 2 weeks of their preparation.

### 13.1.2 Suitable quantities for prescribing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of the body</th>
<th>Creams and Ointments</th>
<th>Lotions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Face</td>
<td>15–30 g</td>
<td>100 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both hands</td>
<td>25–50 g</td>
<td>200 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scalp</td>
<td>50–100 g</td>
<td>200 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both arms or both legs</td>
<td>100–200 g</td>
<td>200 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk</td>
<td>400 g</td>
<td>500 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groins and genitalia</td>
<td>15–25 g</td>
<td>100 mL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The amounts shown above are usually suitable for children 12–18 years for twice daily application for 1 week; smaller quantities will be required for children under 12 years. These recommendations do not apply to corticosteroid preparations.

### 13.1.3 Excipients and sensitisation

Excipients in topical products rarely cause problems. If a patch test indicates allergy to an excipient, then products containing the substance should be avoided (see also Anaphylaxis, p. 159). The following excipients in topical preparations may rarely be associated with sensitisation; the presence of these excipients is indicated in the entries for topical products. See also Excipients, under General Guidance, p. 2.

- **Beeswax**
- **Benzyl alcohol**
- **Butylated hydroxyanisole**
- **Butylated hydroxytoluene**
- **Cetostearyl alcohol** (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)
- **Chlorocresol**
- **Edetic acid (EDTA)**
- **Ethylenediamine**
- **Fragrances**
- **Hydroxybenzoates (para-bens)**
- **Imidurea**
- **Isopropyl palmitate**
- **N-(3-Chloroallyl)hexamethylene chloride (quaternium 15)**
- **Polysorbates**
- **Propylene glycol**
- **Sodium metabisulphite**
- **Sorbic acid**
- **Wool fat and related substances including lanolin**

1. Purified versions of wool fat have reduced the problem
13.2 Emollient and barrier preparations

13.2.1 Emollients

Emollients hydrate the skin, soften the skin, act as barrier to water and external irritants, and are indicated for all dry or scaling disorders. Their effects are short-lived and they should be applied frequently even after improvement occurs. They are useful in dry and eczematous disorders, and to a lesser extent in psoriasis (section 13.5.2); they should be applied in the direction of hair growth immediately after washing or bathing to maximise the effect of skin hydration. The choice of an appropriate emollient will depend on the severity of the condition, the child’s (or carer’s) preference, and the site of application. Ointments may exacerbate acne and folliculitis. Some ingredients rarely cause sensitisation (section 13.1.3) and this should be suspected if an eczematous reaction occurs. The use of aqueous cream as a leave-on emollient may increase the risk of skin reactions, particularly in eczema.

Fire hazard with paraffin-based emollients

Emulsifying ointment or 50% Liquid Paraffin and 50% White Soft Paraffin Ointment in contact with dressings and clothing is easily ignited by a naked flame. The risk is greater when these preparations are applied to large areas of the body, and clothing or dressings become soiled with the ointment. Children and their carers should be told to keep away from fire or flames and not to smoke when using these preparations. The risk of fire should be considered when using large quantities of any paraffin-based emollient.

Preparations such as aqueous cream and emulsifying ointment can be used as soap substitutes; the preparation is rubbed on the skin before rinsing off completely. The addition of a bath oil (section 13.2.1.1) may also be helpful.

In the neonate, a preservative-free paraffin-based emollient hydrates the skin without affecting the normal skin flora; substances such as olive oil are also used. The development of blisters (epidermolysis bullosa) or ichthyosis may be alleviated by applying liquid and white soft paraffin ointment while awaiting dermatological investigation.

Preparations containing an antibacterial (section 13.10.1) should be avoided unless infection is present or is a frequent complication of the dry skin condition.

Urea is a keratin softener and hydrating agent used in the treatment of dry, scaling conditions (including ichthyosis). It is occasionally used with other topical agents such as corticosteroids to enhance penetration of the skin.

Non-proprietary emollient preparations

Aqueous Cream, BP

Cream, emulsifying ointment 30%, phenoxethanol 1% in freshly boiled and cooled purified water, net price 100 g = £1.51, 500 g = £1.86

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol

1. The BP permits use of alternative antimicrobials provided their identity and concentration are stated on the label

Emulsifying Ointment, BP

Ointment, emulsifying wax 30%, white soft paraffin 50%, liquid paraffin 20%, net price 500 g = £2.22

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol

Hydrous Ointment, BP

Ointment, (oily cream), dried magnesium sulphate 0.5%, phenoxethanol 1%, wool alcohols ointment 50%, in freshly boiled and cooled purified water, net price 500 g = £2.92

Liquid and White Soft Paraffin Ointment, NPF

Ointment, liquid paraffin 50%, white soft paraffin 50%, net price 500 g = £6.09

Paraffin, White Soft, BP

White petroleum jelly, net price 100 g = 51p

Paraffin, Yellow Soft, BP

Yellow petroleum jelly, net price 100 g = 49p

Proprietary emollient preparations

Aquamol® (Thornton & Ross)

Cream, containing liquid paraffin, white soft paraffin, net price 50 g = £1.22, 500-g pump pack = £6.40

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, chlorocresol

Aveeno® (J&J)

Cream, colloidal oatmeal in emollient basis, net price 100 mL = £3.78, 300-mL pump pack = £6.80

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, isopropyl palmitate

ACBS: For endogenous and exogenous eczema, xeroderma, and ichthyosis

Lotion, colloidal oatmeal in emollient basis, net price 400 mL = £6.42

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, isopropyl palmitate

ACBS: as for Aveeno® Cream

Cetraben® (Genus)

Emollient cream, white soft paraffin 13.2%, light liquid paraffin 10.5%, net price 50-g pump pack = £1.40, 150-g pump pack = £3.98, 500-g pump pack = £5.99, 1.05-kg pump pack = £11.62

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Dermamist® (Alliance)

Spray application, white soft paraffin 10% in a basis containing liquid paraffin, fractionated coconut oil, net price 250-mL pressurised aerosol unit = £5.97

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Note Flammable

Diprobase® (Schering-Plough)

Cream, cetomacrogol 2.25%, cetostearyl alcohol 7.2%, liquid paraffin 6%, white soft paraffin 15%, water-miscible basis used for Diproson® cream, net price 50 g = £1.28, 500-g pump pack = £6.32

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, chlorocresol

Ointment, liquid paraffin 5%, white soft paraffin 95%, basis used for Diproson® ointment, net price 50 g = £1.28, 500 g = £5.99

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Borderline substances

The preparations marked ‘ACBS’ are regarded as drugs when prescribed in accordance with the advice of the Advisory Committee on Borderline Substances for the clinical conditions listed.

Prescriptions issued in accordance with this advice and endorsed ‘ACBS’ will normally not be investigated. See Appendix 2 for listing by clinical condition.
### Emollients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emollient</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Doublebase® (Dermal)</strong></td>
<td>Gel, isopropyl myristate 15%, liquid paraffin 15%, net price 100 g = £2.65, 500 g = £8.82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E45®</strong> (Reckitt Benckiser)</td>
<td>Cream, light liquid paraffin 12.6%, white soft paraffin 14.5%, hydroalcoholic anhydrous wool fat (hydroalcoholic lanolin) 1% in self-emulsifying monostearin, net price 50 g = £1.40, 125 g = £2.55, 350 g = £4.46, 500-g pump pack = £4.89</td>
<td>£3.00, 500-g pump pack = £6.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lipobase</strong></td>
<td>Lotion, light liquid paraffin 4%, cetomacrogol, white soft paraffin 50%, hydroalcoholic anhydrous wool fat (hydroalcoholic lanolin) 1% in glyceryl monostearate, net price 200 mL = £2.40, 500-mL pump pack = £4.50</td>
<td>£1.60, 500-mL pump pack = £4.99, 1.05-litre pump pack = £9.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hydromol</strong> (Alliance)</td>
<td>Cream, sodium pidolate 2.5%, liquid paraffin 13.8%, net price 50 g = £2.04, 100 g = £3.80, 500-g pump pack = £6.55</td>
<td>£3.00, 500-g pump pack = £4.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epaderm® (Mölnlycke)</strong></td>
<td>Cream, light yellow soft paraffin 15%, liquid paraffin 10%, emulsifying wax 5%, net price 50-g pump pack = £1.60, 500-g pump pack = £6.55</td>
<td>£5.70, 500-g pump pack = £27.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ointment, emulsifying wax 30%</strong>, yellow soft paraffin 30%, liquid paraffin 40%, net price 125 g = £3.72, 500 g = £6.30, 1 kg = £11.61</td>
<td>£1.60, 500-g pump pack = £6.55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liposoft</strong> (Crawford)</td>
<td>Cream, glycerol 10%, light liquid paraffin 10%, white soft paraffin 5%, net price 100 g = £1.95, 500 g = £5.60</td>
<td>£3.00, 500-g pump pack = £4.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ointment</strong></td>
<td>Liquid paraffin 14%, white soft paraffin 14%, hydroalcoholic anhydrous wool fat (hydroalcoholic lanolin) 1% in glyceryl monostearate, net price 200 mL = £2.40, 500-mL pump pack = £4.50</td>
<td>£1.60, 500-mL pump pack = £4.99, 1.05-litre pump pack = £9.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liposomal Cream</strong></td>
<td>Cream, liquid paraffin 11%, net price 50 g = £1.04, 500-g pump pack = £5.26</td>
<td>£5.70, 500-g pump pack = £27.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zeroflame®</strong> (Thorton &amp; Ross)</td>
<td>Cream, liquid paraffin 12.6%, white soft paraffin 14.5%, liquid paraffin 50 g = £1.17, 500-g pump pack = £4.08</td>
<td>£5.70, 500-g pump pack = £27.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zerobase®</strong> (Thorton &amp; Ross)</td>
<td>Cream, liquid paraffin 12.6%, white soft paraffin 14.5%, liquid paraffin 50 g = £1.17, 500-g pump pack = £4.08</td>
<td>£5.70, 500-g pump pack = £27.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zerocream®</strong> (Thorton &amp; Ross)</td>
<td>Cream, light liquid paraffin 8%, white soft paraffin 4%, refined soya bean oil 5%, net price 100 g = £2.33, 500 g = £7.07</td>
<td>£5.70, 500-g pump pack = £27.42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**: Can be diluted with aqueous cream (life of diluted cream 14 days).
Emollient bath additives

Emollient bath additives should be added to bath water; some can be applied to wet skin undiluted and rinsed off. Hydration can be improved by soaking in the bath for 10–20 minutes. In dry skin conditions soap should be avoided (see section 13.2.1 for soap substitutes).

The quantities of bath additives recommended for older children are suitable for an adult-size bath. Proportionately less should be used for a child-size bath or a washbasin; recommended bath additive quantities for younger children reflect this.

### 13.2.1.1 Emollient bath additives and shower preparations

**E45® Itch Relief Cream** (Reckitt Benckiser)

- **Cream**, urea 5%, macrogol lauryl ether 3%, net price 50 g = £2.55, 100 g = £3.47, 500-g pump pack = £14.99
- **Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, polysorbates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply twice daily</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Eucerin® Intensive** (Beiersdorf)

- **Cream**, urea 10%, net price 100 mL = £7.59
- **Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, isopropyl palmitate, wool fat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply thinly and rub into area twice daily</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dermol® Cream** (Galderma)

- **Cream**, urea 10%, net price 100 g = £4.37
- **Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply 2–3 times daily</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nutraplus®** (Galderma)

- **Cream**, urea 10%, net price 100 g = £4.37
- **Excipients** include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply thinly twice daily</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hydromol® Intensive** (Alliance)

- **Cream**, urea 10%, net price 30 g = £1.64, 100 g = £4.37
- **Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply sparingly and rub into area twice daily</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**With antimicrobials**

**Dermol® (Dermal)**

- **Cream**, benzalkonium chloride 0.1%, chlorhexidine hydrochloride 0.1%, isopropyl myristate 10%, liquid paraffin 10%, net price 100-g tube = £2.86, 500-g pump pack = £6.63
- **Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply to skin or use as soap substitute</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dermol® 500 Lotion**

- **Lotion**, benzalkonium chloride 0.1%, chlorhexidine hydrochloride 0.1%, liquid paraffin 2.5%, isopropyl myristate 2.5%, net price 500-mL pump pack = £6.03
- **Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply to skin or use as soap substitute</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Eczmol® (Genus)**

- **Cream**, chlorhexidine gluconate 1% in emollient basis, net price 250 mL = £3.70
- **Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply to skin or use as soap substitute</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Balneum® (Almirall)**

- **Balneum® bath oil**, soya oil 84.75%, net price 200 mL = £2.48, 500 mL = £5.38, 1 litre = £10.39
- **Excipients** include butylated hydroxytoluene, propylene glycol, fragrance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply 2–3 times daily</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Balneum Plus® bath oil**

- **Bath oil**, soya oil 82.95%, mixed lauromacrogols 15%, net price 500 mL = £6.66
- **Excipients** include butylated hydroxytoluene, propylene glycol, fragrance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply 50 g to bath water</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aveeno®**

- **Aveeno® Baby Bath Additive**, oatmeal, white oat fraction in emollient basis, net price 250 mL = £4.28
- **Excipients** include beeswax, fragrance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply to skin or use as soap substitute</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| BNFC 2011–2012 |

**Emollient bath additive and shower preparations**

These preparations make skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing a child.

**Aveeno®**

- **Aveeno® Baby Bath Additive**, oatmeal, white oat fraction in emollient basis, net price 250 mL = £4.28
- **Excipients** include beeswax, fragrance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply to skin or use as soap substitute</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Balneum®**

- **Balneum** bath oil, soya oil 84.75%, net price 200 mL = £2.48, 500 mL = £5.38, 1 litre = £10.39
- **Excipients** include butylated hydroxytoluene, propylene glycol, fragrance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply to skin or use as soap substitute</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Eczmol®**

- **Bath emollient**, acetylated wool alcohols 5%, liquid paraffin 65%, net price 500 mL = £3.44
- **Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apply 5 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 13.2.1 Emollients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Diprobath<sup>c</sup> (Schering-Plough) | Bath additive, isopropyl myristate 39%, light liquid paraffin 46%, net price 500 mL = £6.71 | **Neonate** add 5 mL to bath water; do not use undiluted  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add 10 mL to bath water; do not use undiluted  
**Child 12–18 years** add 25–50 mL to bath water; do not use undiluted |
| Doublebase<sup>c</sup> (Dermal) | Emollient bath additive, liquid paraffin 65%, net price 500 mL = £5.45 | **Neonate** add 5–10 mL to bath water; do not use undiluted  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add 10 mL to bath water; do not use undiluted  
**Child 12–18 years** add 15–20 mL to bath water |
| E45<sup>c</sup> (Reckitt Benckiser) | Emollient bath oil, cetyl dimeticone 5%, liquid paraffin 91%, net price 250 mL = £3.19, 500 mL = £5.11 | **Neonate** add 5 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add 5–10 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 12–18 years** add 15 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse |
| Oilatum<sup>c</sup> (Stiefel) | Emollient bath additive (emulsion), light liquid paraffin 63.4%, net price 250 mL = £2.75, 500 mL = £4.57 | **Neonate** add ½ capful to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add ¼–2 capfuls to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 12–18 years** add 1–3 capfuls to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse |
| Junior bath additive, light liquid paraffin 63.4%, net price 150 mL = £2.82, 250 mL = £3.25, 300 mL = £5.10, 600 mL = £5.89 | [Note: Also available as Doublebase<sup>c</sup> Emollient Wash Gel] |
| E65<sup>c</sup> (Reckitt Benckiser) | Emollient bath oil, cetyl dimeticone 5%, liquid paraffin 91%, net price 250 mL = £3.19, 500 mL = £5.11 | **Neonate** add 5 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add 5–10 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 12–18 years** add 15 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse |
| E45<sup>c</sup> (Reckitt Benckiser) | Emollient wash cream, zinc oxide 5% in an emollient basis, net price 250-mL pump pack = £3.19 | **Neonate** add ½ capful to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add ½–2 capfuls to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 12–18 years** add 1–3 capfuls to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse |
| QV<sup>c</sup> (Crawford) | Bath oil, light liquid paraffin 85.09%, net price 200 mL = £2.20, 500 mL = £4.50 | **Neonate** add 5 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 1 month–1 year** add 4 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 1–12 years** add 7 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Child 12–18 years** add 10 mL to bath water or apply to wet skin and rinse  
**Wash** | Use as a soap substitute |
| Zerolatum<sup>c</sup> (Thornton & Ross) | Emollient bath oil, refined soya bean oil 83.35%, net price 500 mL = £4.48 | **Neonate** add 5 mL to bath water  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add 5–10 mL to bath water  
**Child 12–18 years** add 15–20 mL to bath water |
| Zeroneum<sup>c</sup> (Thornton & Ross) | Bath oil, refined soya bean oil 83.35%, net price 500 mL = £4.79 | **Neonate** add 5 mL to bath water  
**Child 1 month–12 years** add 5–10 mL to bath water  
**Child 12–18 years** add 15–20 mL to bath water |

**Emollients 555**

---

BNFC 2011–2012
Barrier preparations

Barrier preparations often contain water-repellent substances such as dimethicone, natural oils, and paraffins, to help protect the skin from abrasion and irritation; they are used to protect intact skin around stomas and pressure sores, and as a barrier against nappy rash. In neonates, barrier preparations which do not contain potentially sensitising excipients (section 13.1.3) are preferred. Where the skin has broken down, barrier preparations have a limited role in protecting adjacent skin. Zinc ointments or barrier creams with zinc oxide or titanium salts, are used to aid healing of uninfected, excoriated skin.

Nappy rash (Dermatitis) The first line of treatment is to ensure that nappies are changed frequently and that tightly fitting water-proof pants are avoided. The rash may clear when left exposed to the air and a barrier preparation, applied with each nappy change, can be helpful. A mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 0.5% or 1% (section 13.4) can be used. If the rash is associated with candidal infection, a topical antifungal such as clotrimazole cream (section 13.10.2) can be used.

Non-proprietary barrier preparations

Zinc Cream, BP
Cream, zinc oxide 32%, arachis (peanut) oil 32%, calcium hydroxide 0.045%, oleic acid 0.5%, wool fat 8%, in freshly boiled and cooled purified water, net price 50 g = 75p

Zinc Ointment, BP
Ointment, zinc oxide 15%, in Simple Ointment BP 1988 (which contains wool fat 5%, hard paraffin 5%, cetostearyl alcohol 5%, white soft paraffin 85%), net price 25 g = 30p

Zinc and Castor Oil Ointment, BP
Ointment, zinc oxide 7.5%, castor oil 50%, arachis (peanut) oil 30.5%, white beeswax 10%, cetostearyl alcohol 2%, net price 500 g = £2.93

Proprietary barrier preparations

Conotrane® (Astellas)
Cream, benzalkonium chloride 0.1%, dimethicone 22%, net price 100 g = 68p, 500 g = £3.51

With tar

Section 13.5.2
13.3 Topical antipruritics

Pruritus may be caused by systemic disease (such as obstructive jaundice, endocrine disease, chronic renal disease, iron deficiency, and certain malignant diseases), skin disease (such as eczema, psoriasis, urticaria, and scabies), drug hypersensitivity, or as a side-effect of opioid analgesics. Where possible, the underlying cause should be treated. For the treatment of pruritus in palliative care, see Prescribing in Palliative Care, p. 19. Pruritus caused by cholestasis generally requires a bile acid sequestrant (section 1.9.2).

An emollient (section 13.2.1) may be of value where the pruritus is associated with dry skin. Preparations containing calamine or crotamiton are sometimes used but are of uncertain value.

A topical preparation containing doxepin 5% is licensed for the relief of pruritus in eczema in children over 12 years; it can cause drowsiness and there may be a risk of sensitisation.

Topical antihistamines and local anaesthetics (section 15.2) are only marginally effective and occasionally cause sensitisation. For insect stings and insect bites, a short course of a topical corticosteroid is appropriate.

Short-term treatment with a sedating antihistamine (section 3.4.1) may help in insect stings and in intractable pruritus where sedation is desirable. Calamine preparations are of little value for the treatment of insect stings or bites.

In pruritus ani, the underlying cause such as faecal soiling, eczema, psoriasis, or helminth infection should be treated; for preparations used to relieve pruritus ani, see section 1.7.

### CALAMINE

**Indication and dose**

**Pruritus but see notes above**

**Calamine (Non-proprietary)**

Aqueous cream, calamine 4%, zinc oxide 3%, liquid paraffin 20%, self-emulsifying glyceryl monostearate 5%, cetomacrogol emulsifying wax 5%, phenoxethanol 0.5%, freshly boiled and cooled purified water 62.5%, net price 100 mL = £84

Lotion (= cutaneous suspension), calamine 15%, zinc oxide 5%, glycerol 5%, bentonite 3%, sodium citrate 0.5%, liquefied phenol 0.5%, in freshly boiled and cooled purified water, net price 200 mL = £63

Oily lotion (BP 1980), calamine 5%, arachis (peanut) oil 50%, oleic acid 0.5%, wool fat 1%, in calcium hydroxide solution, net price 200 mL = £1.57

### CROTAMITON

**Cautions** avoid use near eyes and broken skin; use on doctor’s advice for children under 3 years

**Contra-indications** acute exudative dermatoses

**Indication and dose**

**Pruritus (including pruritus after scabies—section 13.10.4) see notes above**

Apply 2–3 times daily (for pruritus after scabies in children under 3 years apply once daily only)

**Eurax®** (Novartis Consumer Health)

Cream, crotamiton 10%, net price 30 g = £2.38, 100 g = £4.15

Excipients include cetyl alcohol, fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), stearyl alcohol

Lotion, crotamiton 10%, net price 100 mL = £3.14

Excipients include cetyl alcohol, fragrance, propylene glycol, sorbic acid, stearyl alcohol

### DOXEPIN HYDROCHLORIDE

**Cautions** susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma; urinary retention; mania; cardiac arrhythmias; severe heart disease; avoid application to large areas; interactions: Appendix 1 (antidepressants, tricyclic)

**Skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced

**Hepatic impairment** manufacturer advises caution in severe liver disease

---

**Drapolene®** (Chefaro UK)

Cream, benzalkonium chloride 0.01%, cetrimide 0.2% in a basis containing white soft paraffin, cetyl alcohol and wool fat, net price 100 g = £1.54, 200 g = £2.50, 350 g = £3.75

Excipients include cetyl alcohol, chlorocresol, wool fat

**Medicaid®** (IPC)

Cream, cetrimide 0.5% in a basis containing light liquid paraffin, white soft paraffin, cetostearyl alcohol, glyceryl monostearate, net price 50 g = £1.69

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat

**Metanium®** (Thornton & Ross)

Ointment, titanium dioxide 20%, titanium dioxide 5%, titanium silicate 5% in a basis containing dimeticone, light liquid paraffin, white soft paraffin, and benzoin tincture, net price 50 g = £2.01

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

**Morhulin®** (Actavis)

Ointment, cod-liver oil 11.4%, zinc oxide 38%, in a basis containing liquid paraffin and yellow soft paraffin, net price 50 g = £1.91

Excipients include wool fat derivative

**Siopel®** (Derma UK)

Barrier cream, dimeticone ‘1000’ 10%, cetrimide 0.3%, arachis (peanut) oil, net price 50 g = £2.15

Excipients include butylated hydroxytoluene, cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

**Sprilon®** (Ayrton Saunders)

Spray application, dimeticone 1.04%, zinc oxide 12.5%, in a basis containing wool alcohols, cetostearyl alcohol, dextran, white soft paraffin, liquid paraffin, propellants, net price 115-g pressurised aerosol unit = £3.54

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat

**Sudocrem®** (Forest)

Cream, benzyl alcohol 0.39%, benzyl benzoate 1.01%, benzyl cinnamate 0.15%, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat 0.3%, arachis (peanut) oil, net price 50 g = £1.91

Excipients include wool fat derivative

**Vasogen®** (Forest)

Barrier cream, dimeticone 20%, calamine 1.5%, zinc oxide 7.5%, net price 100 g = £2.72

Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat

---

BNFC 2011–2012
Topical corticosteroids are used for the treatment of inflammatory conditions of the skin (other than those arising from an infection), particularly eczema (section 13.5.1), contact dermatitis, insect stings (p. 34), and eczema of scabies (section 13.10.4). Corticosteroids suppress the inflammatory reaction during use; they are not curative and on discontinuation a rebound exacerbation of the condition may occur. They are generally used to relieve symptoms and suppress signs of the disorder when other measures such as emollients are ineffective.

Children, especially infants, are particularly susceptible to side-effects. However, concern about the safety of topical corticosteroids in children should not result in the child being undertreated. The aim is to control the condition as well as possible; inadequate treatment will perpetuate the condition. Carers of young children should be advised that treatment should not necessarily be reserved to ‘treat only the worst areas’ and they may need to be advised that patient information leaflets may contain inappropriate advice for the child’s condition.

In an acute flare-up of atopic eczema, it may be appropriate to use more potent formulations of topical corticosteroids for a short period (2–4 weeks) for flexural and facial psoriasis, and to use a more potent corticosteroid such as betamethasone or fluocinonide for psoriasis of the scalp, palms, or soles (see below for cautions in psoriasis).

In general, the most potent topical corticosteroids should be reserved for recalcitrant dermatoses such as chronic discoid lupus erythematosus, lichen simplex chronicus, hypertrophic lichen planus, and palmoplantar pusulosis. Potent corticosteroids should generally be avoided on the face and skin flexures, but specialists occasionally prescribe them for use on these areas in certain circumstances.

When topical treatment has failed, intralesional corticosteroid injections (section 10.1.2.2) may be used. These are more effective than the very potent topical corticosteroid preparations and should be reserved for severe cases where there are localised lesions such as keloid scars, hypertrophic lichen planus, or localised alopecia areata.

**Choice** Water-miscible corticosteroid creams are suitable for moist or weeping lesions whereas ointments are generally chosen for dry, lichenified or scaly lesions or where a more occlusive effect is required. Lotions may be useful when minimal application to a large or hair-bearing area is required or for the treatment of exudative lesions. Occlusive polythene or hydrocolloid dressings increase absorption, but also increase the risk of side-effects; they are therefore used only under supervision on a short-term basis for areas of very thick skin (such as the palms and soles). Disposable nappies and tight fitting pants also increase the risk of side-effects by increasing absorption of the corticosteroid. The inclusion of urea or salicylic acid also increases the penetration of the corticosteroid.

‘Wet-wrap bandaging’ (section 13.5.1) increases absorption into the skin, but should be initiated only by a dermatologist and application supervised by a healthcare professional trained in the technique.

In the BNF for Children, topical corticosteroids for the skin are categorised as ‘mild’, ‘moderately potent’, ‘potent’ or ‘very potent’ (see p. 559); the least potent preparation which is effective should be chosen but dilution should be avoided whenever possible.

Topical hydrocortisone is usually used in children under 1 year of age. Moderately potent and potent topical corticosteroids should be used with great care in children and for short periods (1–2 weeks) only. A very potent corticosteroid should be initiated under the supervision of a specialist.

Appropriate topical corticosteroids for specific conditions are:

- **insect bites and stings**—mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 1% cream;
- **inflamed nappy rash causing discomfort in infant over 1 month** (section 13.2.2)—mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 0.5 or 1% for up to 7 days (combined with antimicrobial if infected);
- **mild to moderate eczema, flexural and facial eczema or psoriasis**—mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 1%,
severe eczema of the face and neck—moderately potent corticosteroid for 3–5 days only, if not controlled by a mild corticosteroid;

severe eczema on the trunk and limbs—moderately potent or potent corticosteroid for 1–2 weeks only, switching to a less potent preparation as the condition improves;

eczema affecting area with thickened skin (e.g. soles of feet)—potent topical corticosteroid in combination with urea or salicylic acid (to increase penetration of corticosteroid).

Perioral lesions Hydrocortisone cream 1% can be used for up to 7 days to treat uninfected inflammatory lesions on the lips. Hydrocortisone and miconazole cream or ointment is useful where infection by susceptible organisms and inflammation co-exist, particularly for initial treatment (up to 7 days) e.g. in angular cheilitis (see also p. 545). Organisms susceptible to miconazole include Candida spp. and many Gram-positive bacteria including streptococci and staphylococci.

Cautions Avoid prolonged use of a topical corticosteroid particularly on the face (and keep away from eyes). Use potent or very potent corticosteroids under specialist supervision; extreme caution is required in dermatoses of infancy including nappy rash—treatment should be limited to 5–7 days.

Psoriasis The use of potent or very potent corticosteroids in psoriasis can result in rebound relapse, development of generalised pustular psoriasis, and local and systemic toxicity, see notes above.

Contra-indications Topical corticosteroids are contra-indicated in untreated bacterial, fungal, or viral skin lesions, in acne, and in perioral dermatitis; potent corticosteroids are contra-indicated in widespread plaque psoriasis (see notes above).

Side-effects Mild and moderately potent topical corticosteroids are associated with few side-effects but particular care is required when treating neonates and infants, and in the use of potent and very potent corticosteroids. Absorption through the skin can rarely cause adrenal suppression and even Cushing’s syndrome (section 6.3.2), depending on the area of the body being treated and the duration of treatment. Absorption of corticosteroid is greatest from severely inflamed skin, thin skin (especially on the face or genital area), from flexural sites (e.g. axillae, groin), and in infants where skin surface area is higher in relation to body-weight; absorption is increased by occlusion. Local side-effects include:

- spread and worsening of untreated infection;
- thinning of the skin which may be restored over a period after stopping treatment but the original structure may never return;
- irreversible striae atrophicae and telangiectasia;
- contact dermatitis;
- perioral dermatitis;
- acne, or worsening of acne or rosacea;
- mild depigmentation which may be reversible;
- hypertrichosis also reported.

Children and their carers should be reassured that side effects such as skin thinning and systemic effects rarely occur when topical corticosteroids are used appropriately.

Safe Practice

In order to minimise the side-effects of a topical corticosteroid, it is important to apply it thinly to affected areas only, no more frequently than twice daily, and to use the least potent formulation which is fully effective.

Application Topical corticosteroid preparations should be applied no more frequently than twice daily; once daily is often sufficient.

Topical corticosteroids should be spread thinly on the skin but in sufficient quantity to cover the affected areas. The length of cream or ointment expelled from a tube may be used to specify the quantity to be applied to a given area of skin. This length can be measured in terms of a fingertip unit (the distance from the tip of the adult index finger to the first crease). One fingertip unit (approximately 500 mg) is sufficient to cover an area that is twice that of the flat adult palm.

If a child is using topical corticosteroids of different potencies, the child and their carers should be told when to use each corticosteroid. The potency of each topical corticosteroid (see Topical Corticosteroid Preparation Potencies, below) should be included on the label with the directions for use. The label should be attached to the container (for example, the tube) rather than the outer packaging.

Mixing topical preparations on the skin should be avoided where possible; several minutes should elapse between application of different preparations.

Compound preparations The advantages of including other substances (such as antibacterials or antifungals) with corticosteroids in topical preparations are uncertain, but such combinations may have a place where inflammatory skin conditions are associated with bacterial or fungal infection, such as infected eczema. In these cases the antimicrobial drug should be chosen according to the sensitivity of the infecting organism and used regularly for a short period (typically twice daily for 1 week). Longer use increases the likelihood of resistance and of sensitisation.

The keratolytic effect of salicylic acid facilitates the absorption of topical corticosteroids; however, excessive and prolonged use of topical preparations containing salicylic acid may cause salicylism.

Topical corticosteroid potencies

Potency of a topical corticosteroid preparation depends upon the formulation as well as the corticosteroid. Therefore, proprietary names are shown below.

Mild Hydrocortisone 0.1–2.5%, Dioderm, Mildison, Synalar 1 in 10 Dilution

Mild with antimicrobials Canesten HC, Daktacort, Econacort, Fucidin H, Nystaform-HC, Timodine

Mild with crotamiton Eurax-Hydrocortisone
Skin Hydrocortisone

Moderate
- Betnovate-RD, Eumovate, Haelan, Modralone, Synalar 1 in 4 Dilution, Ultraunion Plain

Moderate with antimicrobials
- Trimovate

Moderate with urea
- Alphaderm, Calmumid HC, Hydromol HC Intensive

Potent
- Beclometasone dipropionate 0.025%, Betamethasone valerate 0.1%, Betacap, Betnovate, Calmumid, Diprasone, Elocon, Hydrocortisone butyrate, Locoid, Locoid Creo, Metosyn, Nerisone, Synalar

Potent with antimicrobials
- Aureocort, Betnovate-C, Betnovate-N, Fucibet, Lotriderm, Synalar C, Synalar N

Potent with salicylic acid
- Diprosalic

Very potent
- Dermovate, Nerisone Forte
- Very potent with antimicrobials
- Dermodine, Nystadine

HYDROCORTISONE

Cautions
- see notes above

Contra-indications
- see notes above

Side-effects
- see notes above

Indication and dose

Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas (but for over-the-counter preparations, see below); nappy rash (see also section 13.2.2)

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily

Over-the-counter hydrocortisone preparations

Skincare and treatments containing hydrocortisone (alone or with other ingredients) can be sold to the public for the treatment of allergic contact dermatitis, irritant dermatitis, insect bite reactions and mild to moderate eczema in children over 10 years, to be applied sparingly over the affected area 1–2 times daily for max. 1 week. Over-the-counter corticosteroid preparations should not be sold without medical advice for children under 10 years or for pregnant women; they should be sold for application to the face, anogenital region, broken or infected skin (including cold sores, acne, and athlete’s foot); over-the-counter corticosteroid preparations containing clotrimazole or miconazole nitrate can be sold to the public for the treatment of athlete’s foot and candidal intertrigo.

Hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)

Cream, hydrocortisone 0.5%, net price, 15 g = £1.92, 30 g = £5.19; 1%, 15 g = £1.64, 30 g = £2.70, 50 g = £5.23. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Dental prescribing on NHS. Hydrocortisone Cream 1% may be prescribed.

Ointment, hydrocortisone 0.5%, net price 15 g = £3.05, 30 g = £5.23; 1%, 15 g = £3.34, 30 g = £2.70, 50 g = £6.87; 2.5%, 15 g = £23.78. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

When hydrocortisone cream or ointment is prescribed and no strength is stated, the 1% strength should be supplied.

Proprietary hydrocortisone preparations

Diorderm® (Dermal) 
- Cream, hydrocortisone 0.1%, net price 30 g = £2.39. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients: include cetostearyl alcohol, propylene glycol

Note: although this contains only 0.1% hydrocortisone, the formulation is designed to provide a clinical activity comparable to that of Hydrocortisone Cream 1% BP

Mildison® (Astellas) 
- Lipocream, hydrocortisone 1%, net price 30 g = £1.71. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients: include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Compound preparations

Compound preparations with coal tar see section 13.5.2

Alphaderm® (Alliance) 
- Cream, hydrocortisone 1%, urea 10%, net price 30 g = £2.38, 100 g = £7.03. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients: none as listed in section 13.1.2

Note: if stinging occurs, manufacturer advises dilute to half-strength with aqueous cream for 1 week then transfer to undiluted preparation (but see section 13.1.1 for advice to avoid dilution where possible).

1. Eurax-Hydrocortisone® (Novartis Consumer Health) 
- Cream, hydrocortisone 0.25%, crotamiton 10%, net price 30 g = £6.7p. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients: include fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol, stearyl alcohol

A. A 15-g tube is on sale to the public for treatment of contact dermatitis and insect bites in children 10–18 years.

Hydromol HC Intensive® (Alliance) 
- Cream, hydrocortisone 1%, urea 10%, net price 30 g = £2.38, 100 g = £7.03. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients: none as listed in section 13.1.2

With antimicrobials

Note: see notes above for comments on compound preparations

1. Canesten HC® (Bayer Consumer Care) 
- Cream, hydrocortisone 1%, clotrimazole 1%, net price 30 g = £2.42. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients: include benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol

A. A 15-g tube is on sale for the public to treat athlete’s foot and fungal infection of skin folds with associated inflammation in children 10–18 years.

Daktacort® (janssen) 
- Cream, hydrocortisone 1%, miconazole nitrate 2%, net price 30 g = £2.28. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients: include butylated hydroxyanisole, disodium edetate

Dental prescribing on NHS. May be prescribed as Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Cream for max. 7 days.

Note: A 15-g tube is on sale to the public for the treatment of athlete’s foot and candidal intertrigo in children 10–18 years.
Ointment, hydrocortisone 1%, miconazole nitrate 2%, net price 30 g = £2.28. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Ointment for max. 7 days

Fucidin H® (LEO)  
Cream, hydrocortisone acetate 1%, fusidic acid 2%, net price 30 g = £4.99, 100 g = £9.98. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, cetyl alcohol, polysorbate 60, potassium sorbate

Nystaform-HC® (Typharm)  
Cream, hydrocortisone 0.5%, nystatin 100 000 units/g, chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1%, net price 30 g = £2.66. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Note

For bland cream basis see Lipohaze®, section 13.2.1

Ointment, hydrocortisone 0.1%, net price 30 g = £1.60, 100 g = £4.93. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzenates (parabens)

Lipocream, hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1%, net price 30 g = £1.69, 100 g = £5.17. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzenates (parabens)

Note

For bland cream basis see Lipohaze®, section 13.2.1

Locoid® (Astellas)  
Cream, hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1%, net price 30 g = £1.60, 100 g = £4.93. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include cetoxytriacetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzenates (parabens)

Note

For bland cream basis see Lipohaze®, section 13.2.1

Ointment, hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1%, net price 30 g = £1.60, 100 g = £4.93. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Scalp lotion, hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1%, in an aqueous isopropyl alcohol basis, net price 100 mL = £6.83. Label: 15, 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Locoid Crelo® (Astellas)  
Lotion (topical emulsion), hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1% in a water-miscible basis, net price 100 g (with applicator nozzle) = £5.91. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, cetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzenates (parabens), propylene glycol

ALCLOMETASONE DIPROPIONATE  
Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily

Modrasone® (TEVA UK)  
Cream, alclometasone dipropionate 0.05%, net price 30 g = £2.68. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include cetoxytriacetyl alcohol, chorocresol, propylene glycol

Ointment, alclometasone dipropionate 0.05%, net price 30 g = £2.68. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, propylene glycol

BECLOMETASONE DIPROPIONATE  
(Beatrometasone dipropionate)

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose

Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids, psoriasis see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily

Beclometasone (Non-proprietary)  
Cream, beclometasone dipropionate 0.025%, net price 30 g = £8.60. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Ointment, beclometasone dipropionate 0.025%, net price 30 g = £8.60. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

BETAMETHASONE ESTERS  
Cautions see notes above, use of more than 100 g per week of 0.1% preparation likely to cause adrenal suppression

Contra-indications see notes above

Licensed use Betacap®, Betnovate®, Betnovate-C®, and Betnovate-RD® not licensed for use in children under 1 year; Bettamousse® and Fucibet®

Lipid Cream not licensed for use in children under 6 years; Betnovate-N® not licensed for use in children under 2 years; Lotiderm® not licensed for use in children under 12 years; all other preparations licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids, psoriasis see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily
562 13.4 Topical corticosteroids

Betamethasone Valerate (Non-proprietary)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, net price 30 g = £2.36, 100 g = £4.93. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, net price 30 g = £2.27, 100 g = £4.67. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betacap** (Derma)  
Scalp application, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% in a water-miscible basis containing coconut oil derivative, net price 100 mL = £3.75. Label: 15, 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate** (GSK)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% in a water-miscible basis, net price 30 g = £1.43, 100 g = £4.03. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% in a water-miscible basis, net price 30 g = £1.43, 100 g = £4.05. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate-RD** (GSK)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% in an anhydrous paraffin basis, net price 30 g = £1.43, 100 g = £4.03. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% in an anhydrous paraffin basis, net price 30 g = £1.43, 100 g = £4.05. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate-N** (Chemidex)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, clotrimazole 1%, net price 30 g = £1.76, 100 g = £4.11. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, clotrimazole 1%, net price 30 g = £1.76, 100 g = £4.11. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate-NN** (Chemidex)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, fusidic acid 2%, net price 30 g = £5.29, 60 g = £10.58. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, fusidic acid 2%, net price 30 g = £5.29. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate-C** (Chemidex)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, clioquinol 3%, net price 30 g = £1.76, 100 g = £4.88. **Lotion**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, clioquinol 3%, net price 30 g = £1.76. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate**-**C** (Chemidex)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, clioquinol 3%, net price 30 g = £1.76, 100 g = £4.88. **Lotion**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, clioquinol 3%, net price 30 g = £1.76. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate-N** (Chemidex)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, neomycin sulphate 0.5%, net price 30 g = £1.76, 100 g = £4.88. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, neomycin sulphate 0.5%, net price 30 g = £1.76, 100 g = £4.88. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Betnovate-RD** (GSK)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.025% in a water-miscible basis (1 in 4 dilution of **Betnovate** cream), net price 100 mL = £4.58. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.025% in an anhydrous paraffin basis (1 in 4 dilution of **Betnovate** ointment), net price 100 g = £3.15. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

**Bettamousse** (UCB Pharma)  
**Foam** (= scalp application), betamethasone valerate 0.12% (= betamethasone 0.1%), net price 100 g = £9.37. **Lotion**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, net price 30 mL = £2.73, 100 mL = £7.80. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Diprosone** (Schering-Plough)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as dipropionate) 0.05%, net price 30 g = £2.16, 100 g = £6.12. **Ointment**, betamethasone (as dipropionate) 0.05%, net price 30 g = £2.16, 100 g = £6.12. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Diprosalic** (Schering-Plough)  
**Ointment**, betamethasone (as dipropionate) 0.05%, salicylic acid 3%, net price 30 g = £3.18, 100 g = £9.14. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Lotriderm** (TEVA UK)  
**Cream**, betamethasone dipropionate 0.064% (= betamethasone 0.05%), clotrimazole 1%, net price 30 g = £6.34. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Fucibet** (LEO)  
**Cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, fusidic acid 2%, net price 30 g = £5.29, 60 g = £10.58. **Lipid cream**, betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1%, fusidic acid 2%, net price 30 g = £5.62. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

**Clobetasol Propionate**  
**Cautions** see notes above  
**Contra-indications** see notes above  
**Side-effects** see notes above  
**Licensed use** Dermovate® not licensed for use in children under 1 year; Dermovate-N® not licensed for use in children under 2 years  

With salicylic acid  
See notes above for comment on compound preparations  
For prescribing information on salicylic acid, see p. 571
13.4 Topical corticosteroids

Indication and dose

Short-term treatment only of severe resistant inflammatory skin disorders such as recalcitrant eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids, psoriasis see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily for up to 4 weeks

Dermovate® (GSK) (See notes above)
Cream, clobetasol propionate 0.05%, net price 30 g = £2.69, 100 g = £7.90. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: very potent
Excipients include beeswax or (beeswax substitute), cetylstearyl alcohol, chlorocresol, propylene glycol

Ointment, clobetasol propionate 0.05%, net price 30 g = £2.69, 100 g = £7.90. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: very potent
Excipients include propylene glycol

Scalp application, clobetasol propionate 0.05%, in a thickened alcoholic basis, net price 30 mL = £3.07, 100 mL = £10.42. Label: 15, 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: very potent
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Note

Stains clothing

DIFLUCORTOLONE VALERATE

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use N risone® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); N risone Forte® not licensed for use in children under 4 years

Indication and dose

Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids; high strength (0.3%), short-term treatment of severe exacerbations, psoriasis

see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 daily for up to 4 weeks (0.1% preparations) or 2 weeks (0.3% preparations), reducing strength as condition responds

N risone® (Meadow) (GSK)
Cream, diflucortolone valerate 0.1%, net price 30 g = £1.59. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent
Excipients include disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), stearyl alcohol

Oily cream, diflucortolone valerate 0.1%, net price 30 g = £2.56. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent
Excipients include beeswax

Ointment, diflucortolone valerate 0.1%, net price 30 g = £1.59. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

N risone Forte® (Meadow) (GSK)
Oily cream, diflucortolone valerate 0.3%, net price 15 g = £2.09. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: very potent
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

FLUDROXYCORTIDE (Flurandrenolone)

Cautions see notes above
Contra-indications see notes above
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily

Haelan® (Typharm) (GSK)
Cream, fludrocortisone 0.0125%, net price 60 g = £3.26. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate
Excipients include cetyl alcohol, propylene glycol

Ointment, fludrocortisone 0.0125%, net price 60 g = £3.26. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate
Excipients include beeswax, cetyl alcohol, polysorbate

Note

Stains clothing
Tape, polythene adhesive film impregnated with flu- 
droxy cortic 4 micrograms/cm², net price 7.5 cm × 50 cm = £9.27, 7.5 cm × 200 cm = £24.95

Dose

Chronic localised recalcitrant dermatoses (but not acute or weeping)

Cut tape to fit lesion, apply to clean, dry skin shorn of hair, usually for 12 hours daily

**FLUCINOLONE ACETONIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 1 year

**Indication and dose**

Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas, psoriasis see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily, reducing strength as condition responds

**Synalar®** (GP Pharma) (A)

**Cream**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.025%, net price 30 g = £3.76. 100 g = £10.68. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cетostearyl alcohol, polysorbates, propylene glycol

**Gel**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.025%, net price 30 g = £5.56. For use on scalp and other hairy areas. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

**Ointment**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.025%, net price 30 g = £3.76, 100 g = £10.68. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include propylene glycol, wool fat

**Synalar 1 in 4 Dilution** (GP Pharma) (A)

**Cream**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.00625%, net price 50 g = £4.40. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cетostearyl alcohol, polysorbates, propylene glycol

**Ointment**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.00625%, net price 50 g = £4.40. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include propylene glycol, wool fat

**Synalar 1 in 10 Dilution** (GP Pharma) (A)

**Cream**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.0025%, net price 50 g = £4.16. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: mild

Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cетostearyl alcohol, polysorbates, propylene glycol

**Ointment**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.0025%, net price 50 g = £4.16. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include propylene glycol, wool fat

With antibacterials

See notes above for comment on compound preparations

**Synalar C®** (GP Pharma) (A)

**Cream**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.025%, clioquinol 3%, net price 15 g = £2.42. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include cетostearyl alcohol, disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates, propylene glycol

**Ointment**, fluocinolone acetonide 0.025%, clioquinol 3%, net price 15 g = £2.42. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Note stains clothing

Excipients include propylene glycol, wool fat

**FLUCINONIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 1 year

**Indication and dose**

Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticos- teroids, psoriasis see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily

**Metosyn®** (GP Pharma) (A)

**FAPG Cream**, fluocinonide 0.05%, net price 25 g = £3.50. 100 g = £11.12. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include propylene glycol

**Ointment**, fluocinonide 0.05%, net price 25 g = £2.92, 100 g = £10.96. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent

Excipients include propylene glycol, wool fat

**FLUCORTOLONE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**

Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticos- teroids, psoriasis see notes above

Apply thinly 1–2 times daily

**Ultralanum Plain®** (Meadow) (A)

**Cream**, fluocortolone caproate 0.25%, fluocortolone pivalate 0.25%, net price 50 g = £2.95. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include disodium edetate, fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), stearyl alcohol

**Ointment**, fluocortolone 0.25%, fluocortolone caproate 0.25%, net price 50 g = £2.95. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: moderate

Excipients include wool fat, fragrance

**FLUTICASONE PROPIONATE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 3 months
### 13.5 Preparations for eczema and psoriasis

#### 13.5.1 Preparations for eczema

The main types of eczema (dermatitis) in children are atopic, irritant and allergic contact; different types may co-exist. *Atopic eczema* is the most common type and it usually involves dry skin as well as infection and lichenification caused by scratching and rubbing. *Seborrhoic dermatitis* (see below) is also common in infants. Management of eczema involves the removal or treatment of contributory factors; known or suspected irritants and contact allergens should be avoided. Rarely, ingredients in topical medicinal products may sensitise the skin (section 13.1.5); *BNF for Children* lists active ingredients together with excipients that have been associated with skin sensitisation.

Skin dryness and the consequent irritant eczema requires *emollients* (section 13.2.1) applied regularly and liberally to the affected area; this can be supplemented with bath or shower emollients. The use of emollients should continue even if the eczema improves or if other treatment is being used.

Topical corticosteroids (section 13.4) are also required in the management of eczema; the potency of the corticosteroid should be appropriate to the severity and site of the condition, and the age of the child. Mild corticosteroids are generally used on the face and on flexures; the more potent corticosteroids are generally required for use on lichenified areas of eczema or for severe eczema on the scalp, limbs, and trunk. Treatment should be reviewed regularly, especially if a potent corticosteroid is required. In children with frequent flares (2–3 per month), a topical corticosteroid can be applied on 2 consecutive days each week to prevent further flares.

Bandages (including those containing zinc and ichthammol) are sometimes applied over topical corticosteroids or emollients to treat eczema of the limbs. Wet elasticated viscose stockinette tubular bandages and garments, and silk clothing, see *BNF* section A8.8.3. For the role of topical pimecrolimus and tacrolimus in atopic eczema, see section 13.5.3.

### BNFC 2011–2012

#### 13.5.1 Preparations for eczema and psoriasis

| Indication and dose | \--- | \--- |
| Inflammatory skin disorders such as dermatitis and eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids, psoriasis | \--- | \--- |
| Apply thinly 1–2 times daily |

#### Cutivate® (GSK) (Ac) \---

| Indication and dose | \--- | \--- |
| Licensed use | \--- | \--- |
| Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer) |

#### MOMETASONE FURerate

| Indication and dose | \--- | \--- |
| Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids, psoriasis | \--- | \--- |
| Apply thinly once daily (to scalp in case of lotion) |

#### Elocon® (Schering-Plough) (Ac) \---

| Indication and dose | \--- | \--- |
| Licensed use | \--- | \--- |
| Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer) |

#### TRIAMCINOLONE ACETONIDE

| Indication and dose | \--- | \--- |
| Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids, psoriasis | \--- | \--- |
| Apply thinly 1–2 times daily |

### With antimicrobials

See notes above for comment on compound preparations

| Indication and dose | \--- | \--- |
| Aurescor® (Goldsheild) (Ac) | \--- | \--- |
| Ointment, triamcinolone acetonide 0.1%, chlortetracycline hydrochloride 3%, in an anhydrous greasy basis containing wool fat and white soft paraffin, net price 15 g = £2.70. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent |
| Excipients include wool fat, white soft paraffin, net price 15 g = £2.27, 30 g = £4.24. Label: 28, counselling, application, see p. 559. Potency: potent |
| Note: Stains clothing |

---

**Note:** See notes above for comment on compound preparations.
13.5.2 Preparations for psoriasis

Psoriasis is characterised by epidermal thickening and scaling. It commonly affects extensor surfaces and the scalp. For mild psoriasis, reassurance and treatment with an emollient may be all that is necessary. **Guttate psoriasis** is a distinctive form of psoriasis that characteristically occurs in children and young adults, often following a streptococcal throat infection or tonsillitis. Occasionally psoriasis is provoked or exacerbated by drugs such as lithium, chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine, beta-blockers, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, and ACE inhibitors. Psoriasis may not occur until the drug has been taken for weeks or months.

**Emollients** (section 13.2.1), in addition to their effects on dryness, scaling and cracking, may have an anti-proliferative effect in psoriasis. They are particularly useful in **inflammatory psoriasis** and in **chronic stable plaque psoriasis**.

For **chronic stable plaque psoriasis** on extensor surfaces of trunk and limbs preparations containing **coal tar** are moderately effective, but the smell is unacceptable to some children. **Vitamin D** and its analogues are effective and cosmetically acceptable alternatives to preparations containing coal tar or dithranol. **Dithranol** is the most effective topical antipsoriatic agent but it irritates and stains the skin and it should be used only under specialist supervision. Adverse effects of dithranol are minimised by using a ‘short-contact technique’ (see below) and by starting with low concentration preparations. **Tazarotene**, a topical retinoid for the treatment of mild to moderate plaque psoriasis, is not recommended for use in children under 18 years. These medications can irritate the skin particularly in the flexures and they are not suitable for the more inflammatory forms of psoriasis; their use should be suspended during an inflammatory phase of psoriasis. The efficacy and the irritancy of each substance varies between patients. If a substance irritates significantly, it should be combined with an antimicrobial such as clioquinol.

---

**Seborrhoeic dermatitis** is associated with species of the yeast Malassezia. **Infantile seborrhoeic dermatitis** affects particularly the body folds, nappy area and scalp; it is treated with emollients and mild topical corticosteroids with suitable antimicrobials. **Infantile seborrhoeic dermatitis** affecting the scalp (cradle cap) is treated by hydrating the scalp using natural oils and the use of mild shampoo (section 13.9). In older children, seborrhoeic dermatitis affects the scalp, paranasal areas, and eyebrows. Shampoos active against the yeast (including those containing ketoconazole and coal tar, section 13.9) and combinations of mild topical corticosteroids with suitable antimicrobials (section 13.4) are used to treat older children.
be stopped or the concentration reduced; if it is tolerated, its effects should be assessed after 4 to 6 weeks and treatment continued if it is effective.

Widespread unstable psoriasis of erythrodermic or generalised pustular type requires urgent specialist assessment. Initial topical treatment should be limited to using emollients frequently and generously. More localised acute or subacute inflammatory psoriasis with hot, spreading or itchy lesions, should be treated topically with emollients or with a corticosteroid of moderate potency.

Scalp psoriasis is usually scaly, and the scale may be thick and adherent. This requires softening with an emollient ointment, cream, or oil and usually combined with salicylic acid as a keratolytic.

Some preparations for psoriasis affecting the scalp combine salicylic acid with coal tar or sulphur. The preparation should be applied generously and left on for at least an hour, often more conveniently overnight, before washing it off. If a corticosteroid lotion or gel is required (e.g. for itch), it can be used in the morning.

Calcipotriol and tacalcitol are analogues of vitamin D that affect cell division and differentiation. Calcipotriol is an active form of vitamin D. Vitamin D and its analogues are used as first-line treatment for plaque psoriasis; they do not smell or stain and they may be more acceptable than tar or dithranol products. Of the vitamin D analogues, tacalcitol and calcipotriol are less likely to irritate.

Coal tar has anti-inflammatory properties that are useful in chronic plaque psoriasis; it also has antiscaling properties. Contact of coal tar products with normal skin is not normally harmful and preparations containing coal tar can be used for widespread small lesions; however, irritation, contact allergy, and sterile folliculitis can occur. Leave-on preparations that remain in contact with the skin, such as creams or ointments, containing up to 6% coal tar may be used on children 1 month to 2 years; leave-on preparations containing coal tar 10% may be used on children over 2 years with more severe psoriasis. Tar baths and tar shampoos (see section 13.9) may also be helpful.

Dithranol is effective for chronic plaque psoriasis. Its major disadvantages are irritation (for which individual susceptibility varies) and staining of skin and of clothing. It should be applied to chronic extensor plaques only, carefully avoiding normal skin. Dithranol is not generally suitable for widespread small lesions nor should it be used in the flexures or on the face. Treatment should be started with a low concentration such as dithranol 0.1%, and the strength increased gradually every few days up to 3%, according to tolerance. Proprietary preparations are more suitable for home use; they are usually washed off after 20–30 minutes (‘short contact’ technique). Specialist nurses may apply intensive treatment with dithranol paste which is covered by stockinette dressings and usually retained overnight. Dithranol should be discontinued if even a low concentration causes any inflammation; continued use can result in the psoriasis becoming unstable. When applying dithranol, hands should be protected by gloves or they should be washed thoroughly afterwards.

A topical corticosteroid (section 13.4) is not generally suitable as the sole treatment of extensive chronic plaque psoriasis; any early improvement is not usually maintained and there is a risk of the condition deteriorating or of precipitating an unstable form of psoriasis (e.g. erythrodermic psoriasis or generalised pustular psoriasis). However, it may be appropriate to treat psoriasis in specific sites such as the face and flexures usually with a mild corticosteroid, and psoriasis of the scalp, palms and soles with a potent corticosteroid.

Combining the use of a corticosteroid with another specific topical treatment may be beneficial in chronic plaque psoriasis; the drugs may be used separately at different times of the day or used together in a single formulation. Eczema co-existing with psoriasis may be treated with a corticosteroid, or coal tar, or both. Systemic or potent topical corticosteroids should be avoided or used only under specialist supervision; although corticosteroids may suppress psoriasis in the short term, relapse or vigorous rebound occurs on withdrawal.

**Phototherapy**

Phototherapy is available in specialist centres under the supervision of a dermatologist. Narrow band ultraviolet B (UVB) radiation is usually effective for chronic stable psoriasis and for guttate psoriasis. It can be considered for children with moderately severe psoriasis in whom topical treatment has failed, but it may irritate inflammatory psoriasis. The use of phototherapy and photochemotherapy in children is limited by concerns over carcinogenicity and premature ageing.

Photochemotherapy combining long-wave ultraviolet A radiation with a psoralen (PUVA) is available in specialist centres under the supervision of a dermatologist. The psoralsen, which enhances the effect of irradiation, is administered either by mouth or topically. PUVA is effective in most forms of psoriasis, including the localised palmoplantar pustular psoriasis. Early adverse effects include phototoxicity and purpura. Higher cumulative doses exaggerate skin ageing, increase the risk of dysplastic and neoplastic skin lesions especially squamous cancer, and pose a theoretical risk of cataracts.

Phototherapy combined with coal tar, dithranol, topical vitamin D or vitamin D analogues, or oral acitretin, allows reduction of the cumulative dose of phototherapy required to treat psoriasis.

**Systemic treatment**

Systemic treatment is required for severe, resistant, unstable or complicated forms of psoriasis, and it should be initiated only under specialist supervision. Systemic drugs for psoriasis include acitretin and drugs that affect the immune response (section 13.5.3).

Acitretin, a metabolite of etretinate, is a retinoid (vitamin A derivative); it is prescribed by specialists. The main indication of acitretin is severe psoriasis resistant to other forms of therapy. It is also used in disorders of keratinisation such as severe Darier’s disease (keratosis follicularis), and some forms of ichthyosis. Although a minority of cases of psoriasis respond well to acitretin alone, it is only moderately effective in many cases; adverse effects are a limiting factor. A therapeutic effect occurs after 2 to 4 weeks and the maximum benefit after 4 to 6 weeks or longer. Continuous treatment for longer than 6 months is not usually necessary in psoriasis. However, some patients, particularly those with severe ichthyosis, may benefit from longer treatment, provided that the lowest effective dose is used, patients are monitored carefully for adverse effects, and the need for treatment is reviewed regularly. Topical preparations containing keratolytics should normally be stopped before administration of acitretin. Liberal use of emol-
patients should be encouraged and topical corticosteroids can be continued if necessary.

Acitretin is teratogenic; in females of child-bearing age, the possibility of pregnancy must be excluded before treatment and effective contraception must be used during treatment and for at least 3 years afterwards (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective). Common side-effects derive from its widespread reversible effects on epithelial, such as dry and cracking lips, dry skin and mucosal surfaces, hair thinning, paronychia, and soft and sticky palms and soles.

Topical preparations for psoriasis

Vitamin D and analogues

Calcipotriol, calcitriol, and tacalcitol are used for the management of plaque psoriasis. They should be avoided by those with calcium metabolism disorders, as inadvertent transfer to other body areas. Aggravation of calciaemia). Local skin reactions (itching, erythema, burning, paraesthesia, dermatitis) are common. Hands should be washed thoroughly after application to avoid burning, paraesthesia, dermatitis) are common. Hands should be washed thoroughly after application to avoid inadvertent transfer to other body areas. Aggravation of psoriasis has also been reported.

CALCIPOTRIOL

Cautions see notes above; avoid use on face; avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps

Contra-indications see notes above

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless essential

Breast-feeding no information available

Side-effects see notes above; also photosensitivity, dry skin; rarely facial or perioral dermatitis

Licensed use Calcipotriol ointment and scalp solution, Dovobet®, and Xamiol® not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Plaque psoriasis

Child 6–18 years apply cream or ointment twice daily; 6–12 years max. 50 g weekly, over 12 years max. 75 g weekly (less with scalp solution, see below)

Note Patient information leaflets for Dovonex® cream and ointment advise liberal application (but note max. recommended weekly dose, above)

Scalp psoriasis (specialist use only)

Child 6–12 years apply scalp solution twice daily, max. 30 mL weekly (less when used with cream or ointment, see below)

Child 12–18 years apply scalp solution twice daily; max. 45 mL weekly (less when used with cream or ointment, see below)

Note When preparations used together max. total calcipotriol 2.5 mg in any one week for child 6–12 years (e.g. scalp solution 20 mL with cream or ointment 30 g), max. 3.75 mg in any one week for child 12–18 years (e.g. scalp solution 30 mL with cream or ointment 45 g)

Calcipotriol (Non-proprietary) (LEO)

Ointment, calcipotriol 50 micrograms/g, net price 120 g = £24.04

Scalp solution, calcipotriol 50 micrograms/mL, net price 60 mL = £12.53, 120 mL = £26.07

CALCITRIOL

(1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol)

Cautions see notes above

Contra-indications see notes above; do not apply under occlusion

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

Renal impairment manufacturer advises avoid—no information available
Pregnancy manufacturer advises use in restricted amounts only if clearly necessary and to monitor urine- and serum-calcium concentration

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Mild to moderate plaque psoriasis
Child 12–18 years apply twice daily; not more than 35% of body surface to be treated daily, max. 30 g daily

Silkis® (Galderma)  
Ointment, calcitriol 3 micrograms/g, net price 100 g = £13.87  
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

TACALCITOL

Cautions see notes above; avoid eyes; monitor serum-calcium concentration if risk of hypercalcaemia; if used in conjunction with UV treatment, UV radiation should be given in the morning and tacalcitol applied at bedtime

Contra-indications see notes above

Renal impairment monitor serum-calcium concentration

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless no safer alternative—no information available

Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid application to breast area; no information available on presence in milk

Side-effects see notes above

Indication and dose

Psoriasis
Child 12–18 years apply once daily preferably at bedtime; max. 10 g ointment or 10 mL lotion daily

Note When lotion and ointment used together, max. total tacalcitol 280 micrograms in any one week (e.g. lotion 30 mL with ointment 40 g)

Curatoderm® (Almirall)  
Lotion, tacalcitol (as monohydrate) 4 micrograms/g, net price 30 mL = £12.73  
Excipients include disodium edetate, propylene glycol

Ointment, tacalcitol (as monohydrate) 4 micrograms/g, net price 30 g = £13.40, 60 g = £23.14, 100 g = £30.86  
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Tars

Cautions application to face and skin flexures; use suitable chemical protection gloves for extemporaneous preparation

Contra-indications not for use in sore, acute, or pustular psoriasis or in presence of infection; avoid eyes, mucosa, genital or rectal areas; broken or inflamed skin

Side-effects skin irritation and acne-like eruptions, photosensitivity; stains skin, hair, and fabric

Indication and dose

Psoriasis and occasionally chronic atopic eczema
Apply 1–3 times daily starting with low-strength preparations; proprietary preparations, see individual entries below

Note For shampoo preparations see section 13.9

Non-proprietary preparations

May be difficult to obtain. Patients may find newer proprietary preparations more acceptable

Coal Tar Paste, BP
Paste, strong coal tar solution 7.5%, in compound zinc paste

Zinc and Coal Tar Paste, BP
Paste, zinc oxide 6%, coal tar 6%, emulsifying wax 5%, starch 38%, yellow soft paraffin 45%  
Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol

Proprietary preparations

Carbo-Dome® (Sandoz)  
Cream, coal tar solution 10%, in a water-miscible basis; net price 30 g = £4.77, 100 g = £16.38  
Excipients include beeswax, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Dose

Psoriasis
Apply to skin 2–3 times daily

Cocos® (UCB Pharma)  
Scalp ointment, coal tar solution 12%, salicylic acid 2%, precipitated sulphur 4%, in a coconut oil emollient basis, net price 40 g (with applicator nozzle) = £5.98, 100 g = £11.23  
Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol

Dose

Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, eczema, seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff
Child 6–12 years medical supervision required

Exorex® (Forest)  
Lotion, coal tar solution 5% in an emollient basis, net price 100 mL = £8.11, 250 mL = £16.24  
Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Dose

Psoriasis
Apply to skin or scalp 2–3 times daily; product can be diluted with a few drops of water before applying

Psoriderm® (Dermal)  
Cream, coal tar 6%, lecithin 0.4%, net price 225 mL = £9.42  
Excipients include isopropyl palmitate, propylene glycol

Dose

Psoriasis
Apply to skin or scalp 1–2 times daily

Scalp lotion—section 13.9

Sebco® (Derma UK)  
Scalp ointment, coal tar solution 12%, salicylic acid 2%, precipitated sulphur 4%, in a coconut oil emollient basis, net price 40 g = £4.54, 100 g = £8.52  
Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol

Dose

Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, eczema, seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff
Child 6–12 years medical supervision required

Child 12–18 years apply to scalp as necessary (if severe use daily for first 3–7 days), shampoo off after 1 hour

BNFC 2011–2012 13.5.2 Preparations for psoriasis 569

13 Skin
### Bath preparations

**Coal Tar Solution, BP**

**Solution**, coal tar 20%, polysorbate '80' 5%, in alcohol (96%), net price 500 mL = £8.16. Label: 15

**Excipients** include polysorbates

**Dose**

- Use 100 mL in an adult-size bath, and proportionally less for a child's bath

**Note** Strong Coal Tar Solution BP contains coal tar 40%

**Pinetarsol**

(Crawford)

**Bath oil**, tar 2.5% in a light liquid paraffin basis, net price 200 mL = £4.75, 500 mL = £7.95

**Excipients** include fragrance

**Dose**

- **Eczaema and psoriasis**
  - Use 15–30 mL in an adult-size bath or apply directly to wet skin and rinse after a few minutes; can be used as a soap substitute

**Polytar Emollient**

(Stiefel)

**Bath additive**, coal tar solution 2.5%, arachis (peanut) oil extract of coal tar 7.5%, cade oil 7.5%, liquid paraffin 35%, net price 500 mL = £5.78

**Excipients** include isopropyl palmitate

**Dose**

- **Psoriasis, eczema, atopic and pruritic dermatoses**
  - Use 2–4 capfuls (15–30 mL) in adult-size bath and proportionally less for a child’s bath; soak for 20 minutes

### Non-proprietary preparations

**1Dithranol Ointment, BP**

Ointment, dithranol, in yellow soft paraffin; usual strengths 0.1–2%. Part of basis may be replaced by hard paraffin if a stiffer preparation is required.

**Label**: 28

1. If dithranol content more than 1%, otherwise may be sold to the public

### Proprietary preparations

**Dithrocream**

(Dermal)

**Cream**, dithranol 0.1%, net price 50 g = £3.77; 0.25%, 50 g = £4.04; 0.5%, 50 g = £4.66; 1%, 50 g = £5.42; 2%, 50 g = £6.79. Label: 28

**Excipients** include ceteareth alcohol, chlorocresol

**Dose**

- For application to skin or scalp: 0.1–0.5% cream suitable for overnight treatment, 1–2% cream for max. 1 hour

**Micanol**

(GP Pharma)

**Cream**, dithranol 1% in a lipid-stabilised basis, net price 50 g = £13.48; 3%, 50 g = £16.79. Label: 28

**Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

**Dose**

- For application to skin or scalp, apply 1% cream for up to 30 minutes once daily, if necessary 3% cream can be used under medical supervision

**Note** At the end of contact time, use plenty of lukewarm (not hot) water to rinse off cream; soap may be used after the cream has been rinsed off, use shampoo before applying cream to scalp and if necessary after cream has been rinsed off

**Psorin**

(LPC)

**Ointment**, dithranol 0.11%, coal tar 1%, salicylic acid 1.6%, net price 50 g = £9.22, 100 g = £18.44. Label: 28

**Excipients** include beeswax, wool fat

**Dose**

- For application to skin up to twice daily
Salicylic acid

**SALICYLIC ACID**

For coal tar preparations containing salicylic acid, see under Tar p. 569; for dithranol preparations containing salicylic acid see under Dithranol, above

**Cautions** see notes above; avoid broken or inflamed skin

**Salicylate toxicity** Salicylate toxicity may occur particularly if applied on large areas of skin or on neonatal skin

**Side-effects** sensitivity, excessive drying, irritation, systemic effects after widespread use (see under Cautions)

**Indication and dose**

**Hyperkeratotic skin disorders** see under preparation

**Acne** section 13.6.1

**Warts and calluses** section 13.7

**Scalp conditions** section 13.9

**Fungal nail infections** section 13.10.2

**Zinc and Salicylic Acid Paste, BP**

Paste, (Lassar’s Paste), zinc oxide 24%, salicylic acid 2%, starch 24%, white soft paraffin 50%, net price 25 g = 17p

**Dose**

- Child 1 month–18 years apply twice daily

**Oral retinoids for psoriasis**

**ACITRETIN**

Note: Acitretin is a metabolite of etretinate

**Cautions** in children use only in exceptional circumstances (premature epiphyseal closure reported); in females of childbearing age, exclude pregnancy before starting (test for pregnancy within 2 weeks before treatment and monthly thereafter; start treatment on day 2 or 3 of menstrual cycle) — females of childbearing age should avoid pregnancy and use effective contraception for at least 1 month before, during, and for at least 3 years after treatment (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective); patients should avoid concomitant tetracyclines or methotrexate; high doses of vitamin A (more than 4000–5000 units daily) are used; use of keratolytics and systemic effects; avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and unsupervised use of sunlamps; interactions: Appendix 1 (retinoids)

**Contra-indications** hyperlipidaemia

**Hepatic impairment** avoid — risk of further impairment

**Renal impairment** avoid; increased risk of toxicity

**Pregnancy** avoid — teratogenic; effective contraception must be used — see Cautions above

**Breast-feeding** avoid

**Side-effects** dryness of mucous membranes (sometimes erosion), of skin (sometimes scaling, thinning, erythema especially of face, and pruritus), of conjunctiva, peripheral oedema, vulvovaginal candidiasis, paronychia, granulomatous lesions, bullous eruptions, reversible hair thinning and alopecia, myalgia and arthralgia, occasional nausea, headache, malaise, drowsiness, rhinitis, sweating, taste disturbance, stomatitis, cheilitis, and gingivitis; benign intracranial hypertension (discontinue if severe headache, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, and visual disturbance occur; avoid concomitant tetracyclines); photosensitivity, corneal ulceration, rarely jaundice and hepatitis (avoid concomitant methotrexate); raised serum-triglyceride or serum-cholesterol concentration; decreased night vision reported; skeletal hyperostosis and extraosseous calcification reported following long-term administration of etretinate (and premature epiphyseal closure in children, see Cautions above)

**Indication and dose**

**Harlequin ichthyosis** (under expert supervision only)

- **By mouth**
  - **Neonate** 500 micrograms/kg once daily with food or milk (occasionally up to 1 mg/kg daily) with careful monitoring of musculoskeletal development

**Severe extensive psoriasis resistant to other forms of therapy, palmoplantar pustular psoriasis, severe congenital ichthyosis, severe Darier’s disease (keratosis follicularis) (all under expert supervision only)**

- **By mouth**
  - **Child 1 month–12 years** 500 micrograms/kg once daily with food or milk (occasionally up to 1 mg/kg daily) to max. 35 mg daily with careful monitoring of musculoskeletal development (see also p. 567)
  - **Child 12–18 years** initially 25–30 mg daily (Darier’s disease 10 mg daily) for 2–4 weeks, then adjusted according to response, usual range 25–50 mg daily; up to 75 mg daily for short periods in psoriasis and ichthyosis (see also p. 567)
**13.5.3 Drugs affecting the immune response**

Drugs affecting the immune response are used for eczema or psoriasis.

*Pimecrolimus* by topical application is licensed for *mild to moderate atopic eczema*. *Tacrolimus* is licensed for topical use in *moderate to severe atopic eczema*. Both are drugs whose long-term safety is still being evaluated and should not usually be considered first-line treatment unless there is a specific reason to avoid or reduce the use of topical corticosteroids. Treatment with topical pimecrolimus or topical tacrolimus should be initiated only by prescribers experienced in treating atopic eczema.

**NICE guidance**

*Tacrolimus* and *pimecrolimus* for *atopic eczema* (August 2004)

Topical pimecrolimus and tacrolimus are options for atopic eczema not controlled by maximal topical corticosteroid treatment or if there is a risk of important corticosteroid side-effects (particularly skin atrophy).

Topical pimecrolimus is recommended for moderate atopic eczema on the face and neck of children aged 2–16 years and topical tacrolimus is recommended for moderate to severe atopic eczema in children over 2 years. Pimecrolimus and tacrolimus should be used within their licensed indications.

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* (p. 3) has advised (March 2010) that tacrolimus ointment (*Protopic*) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the prevention of flares in children aged over 2 years with moderate to severe atopic eczema in accordance with the licensed indication; it’s use is restricted to initiation by doctors (including general practitioners) with a specialist interest and experience in treating atopic eczema with immunomodulatory therapy.

For the role of topical corticosteroids in eczema, see section 13.5.1, and for comment on their limited role in psoriasis, see section 13.4. A systemic corticosteroid (section 6.3.2) such as prednisolone may be used in severe refractory eczema.

Systemic drugs acting on the immune system are generally used by *specialists* in a hospital setting.

*Ciclosporin* by mouth can be used for *severe psoriasis* and for *severe eczema*. *Azathioprine* (section 8.2.1) or *mycophenolate mofetil* (section 8.2.1) are also used for severe refractory eczema in children.

*Methotrexate* can be used for *severe resistant psoriasis*; the dose is given *once weekly* and adjusted according to severity of the condition and haematological and biochemical measurements. Folic acid (section 9.1.2) should be given to reduce the possibility of methotrexate toxicity. Folic acid can be given at a dose of 5mg once weekly [unlicensed indication]; alternative regimens may be used in some settings.

*Etanercept* (a cytokine modulator) is licensed in children over 8 years of age for the treatment of *severe plaque psoriasis* that is inadequately controlled by other systemic treatments and photochemotherapy, or when these other treatments cannot be used because of intolerance or contra-indications.

## Ciclosporin

*(Cyclosporin)*

**Cautions** section 8.2.2

Additional cautions in atopic dermatitis and psoriasis

*Contra-indicated* in abnormal renal function, uncontrolled hypertension (see also below), infections not under control, and malignancy (see also below). Dermatological and physical examination, including blood pressure and renal function measurements required at least twice before starting. During treatment, monitor serum creatinine every 2 weeks for first 3 months then every month, reduce dose by 25–50% if serum creatinine increases more than 30% above baseline (even if within normal range) and discontinue if reduction not successful within one month. Discontinue if hypertension develops that cannot be controlled by dose reduction or antihypertensive therapy. Avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and avoid use of UVB or PUVA. In *atopic dermatitis*, also allow herpes simplex infections to clear before starting (if they occur during treatment withdrawing if severe). *Staphylococcus aureus* skin infections not absolute contra-indication providing controlled (but avoid erythromycin unless no other alternative—see also interactions: *Appendix 1* (ciclosporin)); investigate lymphadenopathy that persists and treat patients with malignant or pre-malignant conditions of skin only after appropriate treatment (and if no other option); discontinue if lymphoproliferative disorder develops.

**Hepatic impairment** section 8.2.2

**Renal impairment** see Caution above

**Pregnancy** section 8.2.2

**Breast-feeding** section 8.2.2

**Side-effects** section 8.2.2

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 16 years for atopic eczema (dermatitis) or psoriasis

### Indication and dose

**Short-term treatment** (usually max. 8 weeks but may be used for longer under specialist supervision) of severe atopic dermatitis where conventional therapy ineffective or inappropriate

- *By mouth*, administered in accordance with expert advice

  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1.25 mg/kg twice daily, if good initial response not achieved within 2 weeks, increase rapidly to max. 2.5 mg/kg twice daily: initial dose of 2.5 mg/kg twice daily if very severe

  Important

  For preparations and counselling and for advice on conversion between the preparations, see section 8.2.2

### Severe psoriasis where conventional therapy ineffective or inappropriate

- *By mouth*, administered in accordance with expert advice

  **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 1.25 mg/kg twice daily, increased gradually to max. 2.5 mg/kg twice daily if no improvement within 1
**Pimecrolimus**

**Cautions** UV light (avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps), avoid other topical treatments except emollients at treatment site; alcohol consumption (risk of facial flushing and skin irritation)

**Contra-indications** contact with eyes and mucous membranes, application under occlusion, infection at treatment site; congenital epidermal barrier defects; generalised erythroderma; immunodeiciency; concomitant use with drugs that cause immunosuppression (may be prescribed in exceptional circumstances by specialists); application to malignant or potentially malignant skin lesions

**Side-effects** burning sensation, pruritus, erythema, skin infections (including folliculitis and less commonly impetigo, herpes simplex and zoster, molluscum contagiosum); rarely papilloma, skin discoloration, local reactions including pain, paraesthesia, peeling, dryness, oedema, and worsening of eczema; skin malignancy reported

**Indication and dose**

**Short-term treatment of mild to moderate atopic eczema (including flares)** when topical corticosteroids cannot be used; see also notes above

**Child 2–18 years** apply twice daily until symptoms resolve (stop treatment if eczema worsens or no response after 6 weeks)

**Elidel** (Novartis) (A), pimecrolimus 1%, net price 30 g = £19.69, 60 g = £37.41, 100 g = £50.07. **Label:** 4, 28

**Excipients** include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, propylene glycol, stearyl alcohol

---

**Tacrolimus**

**Cautions** infection at treatment site, UV light (avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps); alcohol consumption (risk of facial flushing and skin irritation)

**Contra-indications** hypersensitivity to macrolides; congenital epidermal barrier defects; generalised erythroderma; immunodeiciency; concomitant use with drugs that cause immunosuppression (may be prescribed in exceptional circumstances by specialists); application to malignant or potentially malignant skin lesions; application under occlusion; avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes

**Pregnancy** manufacturer advises avoid unless essential; toxicity in animal studies following systemic administration

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk following systemic administration

**Side-effects** application-site reactions including rash, irritation, pain, and paraesthesia; herpes simplex infection, Kaposi’s varicelliform eruption; application-site infections; less commonly acne; rosacea, and skin malignancy also reported

**Indication and dose**

**Short-term treatment of moderate to severe atopic eczema (including flares)** either unresponsive to, or in children intolerant of conventional therapy; see also notes above

**Child 2–16 years** initially apply 0.05% ointment thinly twice daily for up to 3 weeks (consider other treatment if eczema worsens or no improvement after 2 weeks) then reduce to once daily until lesion clears

**Child 16–18 years** initially apply 0.1% ointment thinly twice daily until lesion clears (consider other...
treatment if eczema worsens or if no improvement after 2 weeks; reduce to once daily or switch to 0.03% ointment if clinical condition allows.

Prevention of flares in children with moderate to severe atopic eczema and 4 or more flares a year, who have responded to initial treatment with topical tacrolimus

Child 2–16 years apply 0.03% ointment thinly twice weekly (with an interval of 2–3 days between applications); use short-term treatment regimen during an acute flare; interrupt preventative therapy after 1 year to reassess condition

Child 16–18 years apply 0.1% ointment thinly twice weekly (with an interval of 2–3 days between applications); use short-term treatment regimen during an acute flare; review need for preventative therapy after 1 year

Other indications section 8.2.2

Protopic® (Astellas) Ointment, tacrolimus (as monohydrate) 0.03%, net price 30 g = £19.44, 60 g = £35.46; 0.1%, 30 g = £21.60, 60 g = £39.40. Label: 4, 11, 28

Cytokine modulators

ETANERCEPT

Cautions section 10.1.3
Contra-indications section 10.1.3
Hepatic impairment section 10.1.3
Pregnancy section 10.1.3
Breast-feeding section 10.1.3
Side-effects section 10.1.3

Indication and dose

Severe plaque psoriasis

• By subcutaneous injection
Child 8–18 years 800 micrograms/kg (max. 50 mg) once weekly; max. treatment duration 24 weeks; discontinue if no response after 12 weeks

Polyarticular-course juvenile idiopathic arthritis

section 10.1.3

Preparations

Section 10.1.3

13.6 Acne and rosacea

13.6.1 Topical preparations for acne

13.6.2 Oral preparations for acne

Acne vulgaris Acne vulgaris commonly affects children around puberty and occasionally affects infants. Treatment of acne should be commenced early to prevent scarring; lesions may worsen before improving. The choice of treatment depends on age, severity, and whether the acne is predominantly inflammatory or comedonal.

Mild to moderate acne is generally treated with topical preparations, such as benzoyl peroxide, azelaic acid, and retinoids. (section 13.6.1).

For moderate to severe inflammatory acne or where topical preparations are not tolerated or are ineffective or where application to the site is difficult, systemic treatment (section 13.6.2) with oral antibacterials may be effective. Co-cyprindiol (cyproterone acetate with ethinyloestradiol) has anti-androgenic properties and may be useful in young women with acne refractory to other treatments.

Severe acne, acne unresponsive to prolonged courses of oral antibacterials, acne with scarring, or acne associated with psychological problems calls for early referral to a consultant dermatologist who may prescribe oral isotretinoin (section 13.6.2).

Neonatal and infantile acne Inflammatory papules, pustules, and occasionally comedones may develop at birth or within the first month; most neonates with acne do not require treatment. Acne developing at 3–6 months of age may be more severe and persistent; lesions are usually confined to the face. Topical preparations containing benzoyl peroxide (at the lowest strength possible to avoid irritation), adapalene, or tretinoin may be used if treatment for infantile acne is necessary. In infants with inflammatory acne, oral erythromycin (section 5.1.5) is used because topical preparations for acne are not well tolerated. In cases of erythromycin-resistant acne, oral isotretinoin (section 13.6.2) can be given on the advice of a consultant dermatologist.

Rosacea The adult form of rosacea rarely occurs in children. Persistent or repeated use of potent topical corticosteroids may cause periorificial rosacea (steroid acne). The pustules and papules of rosacea may be treated for at least 6 weeks with a topical metronidazole preparation (section 13.10.1.2), or a systemic antibacterial such as erythromycin (section 5.1.5), or for a child over 12 years, oxytetracycline (section 5.1.3). Tetracyclines are contra-indicated in children under 12 years of age.

13.6.1 Topical preparations for acne

In mild to moderate acne, comedones and inflamed lesions respond well to benzoyl peroxide (see below) or topical retinoids (see p. 576). Alternatively, topical application of an antibacterial such as erythromycin or clindamycin may be effective for inflammatory acne. However, topical antibacterials are probably no more effective than benzoyl peroxide and may promote the emergence of resistant organisms. If topical preparations prove inadequate oral preparations may be needed (section 13.6.2). The choice of product and formulation (gel, solution, lotion, or cream) is largely determined by skin type, patient preference, and previous usage of acne products.
Benzoyl peroxide and azelaic acid

Benzoyl peroxide is effective in mild to moderate acne. Both comedones and inflamed lesions respond well to benzoyl peroxide. The lower concentrations seem to be as effective as higher concentrations in reducing inflammation. It is usual to start with a lower strength and to increase the concentration of benzoyl peroxide gradually. Adverse effects include local skin irritation, particularly when therapy is initiated, but the scaling and redness often subside with a reduction in benzoyl peroxide concentration, frequency, and area of application. If the acne does not respond after 2 months then use of a topical antibacterial should be considered.

Azelaic acid has antimicrobial and anticomedonal properties. It may be used as an alternative to benzoyl peroxide or to a topical retinoid for treating mild to moderate acne, particularly of the face; azelaic acid is less likely to cause local irritation than benzoyl peroxide.

**BENZOYL PEROXIDE**

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes, mouth, and mucous membranes; may bleach fabrics and hair; avoid excessive exposure to sunlight

**Side-effects** skin irritation (reduce frequency or suspend use until irritation subsides and reintroduce at reduced frequency)

**Licensed use** Quinoderm® is licensed for use in children; all other preparations, not licensed for use in treatment of infantile acne

**Indication and dose**

**Acne vulgaris**

Child 12–18 years apply 1–2 times daily preferably after washing with soap and water, start treatment with lower-strength preparations

*Note* May bleach clothing

**Infantile acne**

Child 1 month–2 years apply 1–2 times daily; start treatment with lower-strength preparations

Acnecide® (Galderma)

Gel, benzoyl peroxide 5% in an aqueous gel basis, net price 60 g = £10.68

Exipients include propylene glycol

Brevoxyl® (GSK)

Cream, benzoyl peroxide 4% in an aqueous basis, net price 40 g = £3.30

Exipients include cetostearyl alcohol, fragrance, stearyl alcohol

PanOxyl® (Stiefel)

Aquagel (aqueous gel), benzoyl peroxide 2.5%, net price 40 g = £1.76; 5%, 40 g = £1.92; 10%, 40 g = £2.13

Exipients include propylene glycol

Cream, benzoyl peroxide 5% in a non-greasy basis, net price 40 g = £1.89

Exipients include isopropyl palmitate, propylene glycol

Gel, benzoyl peroxide 5% in an aqueous alcoholic basis, net price 40 g = £1.51; 10%, 40 g = £1.69

Exipients include fragrance

Wash, benzoyl peroxide 10% in a detergent basis, net price 150 mL = £4.00

Exipients include imidurea

**AZELAIC ACID**

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes, mouth, and mucous membranes

**Side-effects** local irritation (reduce frequency or discontinue temporarily); less commonly skin discoloration; very rarely photosensitisation

**Indication and dose**

See under preparations

Finacea® (Meda)

Gel, azelaic acid 15%, net price 30 g = £7.48

Exipients include disodium edetate, polysorbate 80, propylene glycol

Dose

Facial acne vulgaris

Child 12–18 years apply twice daily; discontinue if no improvement after 1 month

Skinoren® (Bayer Schering)

Cream, azelaic acid 20%, net price 30 g = £3.74

Exipients include propylene glycol

Dose

Acne vulgaris

Apply twice daily (sensitive skin, once daily for first week). Extended treatment may be required but manufacturer advises period of treatment should not exceed 6 months

**Topical antibacterials for acne**

In the treatment of mild to moderate inflammatory acne, topical antibacterials may be no more effective than topical benzoyl peroxide or tretinoin. Topical antibacterials are probably best reserved for children who wish to avoid oral antibacterials or who cannot tolerate them.

Topical preparations of erythromycin and clindamycin may be used to treat inflamed lesions in mild to moderate acne when topical benzoyl peroxide or tretinoin is ineffective or poorly tolerated. Topical antibacterials may be more effective than an antibacterial used alone. Topical antibacterials can produce mild irritation of the skin, and on rare occasions cause sensitisation.
Antibacterial resistance of *Propionibacterium acnes* is increasing; there is cross-resistance between erythromycin and clindamycin. To avoid development of resistance:

- when possible use non-antibiotic antimicrobials (such as benzoyl peroxide or azelaic acid);
- avoid concomitant treatment with different oral and topical antibacterials;
- if a particular antibacterial is effective, use it for repeat courses if needed (short intervening courses of benzoyl peroxide or azelaic acid may eliminate any resistant *propionibacteria*);
- do not continue treatment for longer than necessary (but treatment with a topical preparation should be continued for at least 6 months).

### ANTIBACTERIALS

#### Cautions

Some manufacturers advise preparations containing alcohol are not suitable for use with benzoyl peroxide.

### Indication and dose

#### Acne vulgaris

**for dose, see under preparations**

**Dalacin T®** *(Pharmacia)*

**Topical solution,** clindamycin 1% (as phosphate), in an aqueous alcoholic basis, net price (both with applicator) 30 mL = £4.34, 50 mL = £7.23

**Excipients** include propylene glycol

**Dose**

- Apply twice daily

**Lotion,** clindamycin 1% (as phosphate) in an aqueous basis, net price 30 mL = £5.08, 50 mL = £8.47

**Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

**Dose**

- Apply twice daily

**Stiemycin®** *(Stiefel)*

**Solution,** erythromycin 2% in an alcoholic basis, net price 50 mL = £7.69

**Excipients** include propylene glycol

**Dose**

- Apply twice daily

**Zindacin®** *(Crawford)*

**Gel,** clindamycin 1% (as phosphate), net price 30 g = £8.66

**Excipients** include propylene glycol

**Dose**

- Child 12–18 years apply once daily

**Zinverty®** *(Astellas)*

**Topical solution,** powder for reconstitution, erythromycin 40 mg, zinc acetate 12 mg/mL when reconstituted with solvent containing ethanol, net price per pack of powder and solvent to provide 30 mL = £7.71, 90 mL = £16.68

**Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

**Dose**

- Apply twice daily

### Topical retinoids and related preparations for acne

Topical tretinoin, its isomer isoretinoin, and adapalene (a retinoid-like drug), are useful for treating comedones and inflammatory lesions in mild to moderate acne. Patients should be warned that some redness and skin peeling can occur initially but settles with time. Several months of treatment may be needed to achieve an optimal response and the treatment should be continued until no new lesions develop.

Tretinoin can be used under specialist supervision to treat infantile acne; adapalene can also be used. See also Neonatal and Infantile Acne, p. 574.

#### Cautions

Topical retinoids should be avoided in severe acne involving large areas. Contact with eyes, nostrils, mouth and mucous membranes, eczematous, broken or sunburned skin should be avoided. Topical retinoids should be used with caution on sensitive areas such as the neck, and accumulation in angulas of the nose should be avoided. Exposure to UV light (including sunlight, solariums) should be avoided; if sun exposure is unavoidable, an appropriate sunscreen (section 13.8.1) or protective clothing should be used. Use of retinoids with abrasive cleaners, comedogenic or astringent cosmetics should be avoided. Allow peeling (resulting from other irritant treatments) to subside before using a topical retinoid; alternating a preparation that causes peeling with a topical retinoid may give rise to contact dermatitis (reduce frequency of retinoid application).

#### Pregnancy

Topical retinoids are contra-indicated in pregnancy; females of child-bearing age must use effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).

#### Side-effects

Local reactions include burning, erythema, stinging, pruritus, dry or peeling skin (discontinue if severe). Increased sensitivity to UVB light or sunlight occurs. Temporary changes of skin pigmentation with tretinoin have been reported. Eye irritation and oedema, and blistering or crusting of skin have been reported rarely.

### ADAPALENE

#### Cautions

See notes above

#### Pregnancy

See notes above

#### Breast-feeding

Amount of drug in milk probably too small to be harmful; ensure infant does not come in contact with treated areas

#### Side-effects

See notes above

#### Licensed use

Not licensed for use in infantile acne

### Indication and dose

**Infantile acne**

- **Child 1 month–2 years** apply thinly once daily at night

- **Child 12–18 years** apply thinly once daily in the evening; reduce frequency or suspend treatment if irritation occurs

**Differin®** *(Galderma)*

**Cream,** adapalene 0.1%, net price 45 g = £11.40.

**Label:** 11

**Excipients** include disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)
### 13.6.1 Topical preparations for acne

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>with benzoyl peroxide</th>
<th>Epiduo® (Galderma)</th>
<th>45 g = £17.91. Label: 11, Excipients include disodium edetate, polysorbate 80, propylene glycol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dose</td>
<td>Acne vulgaris</td>
<td>Child 12–18 years: apply thinly once daily in the evening, reduce frequency or suspend treatment if irritation occurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>May bleach clothing and hair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>with antibacterial</th>
<th>Aknemycin Plus® (Almirall)</th>
<th>25 mL = £7.05. Label: 11, Excipients: none as listed in section 13.1.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dose</td>
<td>Acne (all forms), particularly that associated with oily skin</td>
<td>Apply thinly 1–2 times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ISOTRETINOIN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>Isotretinoin is an isomer of tretinoin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Important</td>
<td>For prescribing information on isotretinoin when given by mouth, see p. 579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cautions (topical application only)</td>
<td>see notes above; also personal or familial history of non-melanoma skin cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra-indications (topical application only)</td>
<td>rosacea; perioral dermatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy (topical application only)</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast-feeding</td>
<td>avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side-effects (topical application only)</td>
<td>see notes above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>Acne vulgaris</th>
<th>Apply thinly 1–2 times daily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### NICOTINAMIDE

| Cautions | avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes (including nose and mouth); reduce frequency of application if excessive dryness, irritation or peeling |
| Side-effects | dryness of skin; also pruritus, erythema, burning and irritation |
| Licensed use | licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer) |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>Inflammatory acne vulgaris</th>
<th>see under preparations below</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### SALICYLIC ACID

| Cautions | risk of significant systemic absorption in neonates; avoid contact with mouth, eyes, mucous membranes; systemic effects after excessive use |
| Side-effects | Local irritation |
| Licensed use | licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer) |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>Acne vulgaris</th>
<th>see under preparation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

### Other topical preparations for acne

- **Salicylic acid** is available in various preparations for sale direct to the public for the treatment of mild acne. Other products are more suitable for acne; salicylic acid is used mainly for its keratolytic effect. A topical preparation of nicotinamide is available for inflammatory acne.

- **TRETINOIN**
  - Note: Tretinoin is the acid form of vitamin A
  - Cautions: see notes above
  - Contra-indications: personal or familial history of non-melanoma skin cancer; rosacea; perioral dermatitis
  - Pregnancy: see notes above
  - Breast-feeding: amount of drug in milk after topical application probably too small to be harmful; ensure infant does not come into contact with treated areas
  - Side-effects: see notes above
  - Licensed use: Retin-A® not licensed for use in infantile acne

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication and dose</th>
<th>Acne vulgaris</th>
<th>see under preparations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Nicam® (Dermal)**
  - Gel, nicotinamide 4%, net price 60 g = £7.10
  - Excipients: none as listed in section 13.1.3

| Dose | Apply twice daily; reduce to once daily or on alternate days if irritation occurs |

- **Retin-A® (Janssen)**
  - Gel, tretinoin 0.01%, net price 60 g = £5.28; 0.025%, 60 g = £5.28. Label: 11
  - Excipients: include butylated hydroxytoluene

| Dose | Infantile acne | Apply 0.01% gel thinly 1–2 times daily; increase to 0.025% gel if necessary |

---

### BNFC 2011–2012

| Acne vulgaris, particularly that associated with oily skin | Apply thinly 1–2 times daily |

| Acne (all forms), particularly that associated with oily skin | Apply thinly 1–2 times daily |

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acne vulgaris</th>
<th>see under preparation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psoriasis</td>
<td>section 13.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warts and calluses</td>
<td>section 13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungal nail infections</td>
<td>section 13.10.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.6.2 Oral preparations for acne

Oral antibiotics for acne

Oral antibacterials may be used in moderate to severe inflammatory acne when topical treatment is not adequately effective or is inappropriate. Concomitant antimicrobial treatment with topical benzoyl peroxide or azelaic acid may also be required (section 13.6.1).

Tetracyclines should not be given to children under 12 years. In children over 12 years, either minocycline or tetracycline (section 5.1.3) is usually given for acne in a dose of 500 mg twice daily. If there is no improvement after the first 3 months another oral antibacterial should be used. Maximum improvement usually occurs after 4 to 6 months but in more severe cases treatment may need to be continued for 2 years or longer.

Doxycycline and lymecycline (section 5.1.3) are alternatives to tetracycline in children over 12 years. Doxycycline can be used in a dose of 100 mg daily. Lymecycline is given in a dose of 400 mg daily.

Although minocycline is as effective as other tetracyclines for acne, it is associated with a greater risk of lupus erythematosus-like syndrome. Minocycline sometimes causes irreversible pigmentation; it is given in a dose of 100 mg once daily or 50 mg twice daily.

Erythromycin (section 5.1.5) in a dose of 500 mg twice daily for children over 12 years is an alternative for the management of moderate to severe acne with inflamed lesions, but propionibacteria strains resistant to erythromycin are becoming widespread and this may explain poor response. Infants with acne requiring oral treatment with erythromycin should be given 250 mg once daily or 125 mg twice daily; in cases of erythromycin-resistant P. acnes in infants, oral isotretinoin may be used on the advice of a consultant dermatologist.

Concomitant use of different topical and systemic antibacterials is undesirable owing to the increased likelihood of the development of bacterial resistance.

Hormone treatment for acne

Co-cyprindiol (cyproterone acetate and ethinylestradiol) contains an anti-androgen. It is no more effective than an oral broad-spectrum antibacterial but is useful in females of childbearing age who also wish to receive oral contraception.

Improvement of acne with co-cyprindiol probably occurs because of decreased sebum secretion which is under androgen control. Some females with moderately severe hirsutism may also benefit because hair growth is also androgen-dependent. Contra-indications of co-cyprindiol include pregnancy and a predisposition to thrombosis.

Venous thromboembolism occurs more frequently in women taking co-cyprindiol than those taking a low-dose combined oral contraceptive. Co-cyprindiol is licensed for use in women with severe acne that has not responded to oral antibacterials and for moderately severe hirsutism; it should not be used solely for contraception. It is contra-indicated in those with a personal or close family history of venous thromboembolism. Women with severe acne or hirsutism may have an inherently increased risk of cardiovascular disease.

CO-CYPRINDIOL
A mixture of cyproterone acetate and ethinylestradiol in the mass proportions 2000 parts to 35 parts, respectively

**Cautions** see under Combined Hormonal Contraceptives, section 7.3.1

**Contra-indications** see under Combined Hormonal Contraceptives, section 7.3.1

**Hepatic impairment** see under Combined Hormonal Contraceptives, section 7.3.1

**Pregnancy** avoid—risk of feminisation of male fetus with cyproterone

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid; possibility of anti-androgen effects in neonate with cyproterone

**Side-effects** see under Combined Hormonal Contraceptives, section 7.3.1

**Licensed use** licensed for use in females of childbearing age

**Indication and dose**
Severe acne in females of childbearing age refractory to prolonged oral antibacterial therapy (but see notes above), moderately severe hirsutism

- **By mouth**
  1 tablet daily for 21 days starting on day 1 of menstrual cycle and repeated after a 7-day interval, usually for several months; withdraw 3–4 months after acne or hirsutism completely resolved (repeat courses may be given if recurrence); long-term treatment may be necessary for severe symptoms

Co-cyprindiol (Non-proprietary)

Tablets, co-cyprindiol 2000/35 (cyproterone acetate 2 mg, ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms), net price 63-tab pack = £7.11

Dianette® (Bayer Schering)

Tablets, beige, s/c, co-cyprindiol 2000/35 (cyproterone acetate 2 mg, ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms), net price 63-tab pack = £7.70

Oral retinoid for acne

The retinoid isotretinoin reduces sebum secretion. It is used for the systemic treatment of nodulo-cystic and conglobate acne, severe acne, acne with scarring, or for acne which has not responded to an adequate course of a systemic antibacterial. Isotretinoin is used for the treatment of severe infantile acne resistant to erythromycin.

Isotretinoin is a toxic drug that should be prescribed only by, or under the supervision of, a consultant dermatologist.
dermatologist. It is given for at least 16 weeks; repeat courses are not normally required.

Side-effects of isotretinoin include severe dryness of the skin and mucous membranes, nose bleeds, and joint pains. The drug is teratogenic and must not be given to females of child-bearing age unless they practise effective contraception (oral progesterogen-only contraceptives not considered effective) and then only after detailed assessment and explanation by the physician. They must also be registered with a pregnancy prevention programme (see under Cautions below).

Although a causal link between isotretinoin use and psychiatric changes (including suicidal ideation) has not been established, the possibility should be considered before initiating treatment; if psychiatric changes occur during treatment, isotretinoin should be stopped, the prescriber informed, and specialist psychiatric advice should be sought.

ISOTRETINOIN

Note Isotretinoin is an isomer of tretinoin

Cautions see notes above; also avoid blood donation during treatment and for at least 1 month after treatment; history of depression; monitor all patients for depression; measure hepatic function and serum lipids before treatment, 1 month after starting and then every 3 months (reduce dose or discontinue if transaminase or serum lipids persistently raised); discontinue if uncontrolled hypertriglyceridaemia or pancreatitis; diabetes; dry eye syndrome (associated with risk of keratitis); avoid keratolytics; interactions: Appendix 1 (retinoids)

Pregnancy prevention In women of child-bearing potential, exclude pregnancy up to 3 days before treatment (start treatment on day 2 or 3 of menstrual cycle), every month during treatment (unless there are compelling reasons to indicate that there is no risk of pregnancy), and 5 weeks after stopping treatment—perform pregnancy test in the first 3 days of the menstrual cycle. Women must practise effective contraception for at least 1 month before starting treatment, during treatment, and for at least 1 month after stopping treatment. Women should be advised to use at least 1 method of contraception, but ideally they should use 2 methods of contraception. Oral progesterogen-only contraceptives are not considered effective. Barrier methods should not be used alone, but can be used in conjunction with other contraceptive methods. Each prescription for isotretinoin should be limited to a supply of up to 30 days’ treatment and dispensed within 7 days of the date stated on the prescription. Women should be advised to discontinue treatment and to seek prompt medical attention if they become pregnant during treatment or within 1 month of stopping treatment.

Counselling Warn patient to avoid wax epilation (risk of epidermal stripping), dermabrasion, and laser skin treatments (risk of scarring) during treatment and for at least 6 months after stopping; patient should avoid exposure to UV light (including sunlight) and use sunscreen and emollient (including lip balm) preparations from the start of treatment.

Contra-indications hypervitaminosis A, hyperlipidaemia

Hepatic impairment avoid—further impairment may occur

Renal impairment in severe impairment, reduce initial dose and increase gradually, if necessary, up to 1 mg/kg daily as tolerated

Pregnancy avoid—teratogenic; effective contraception must be used—see Pregnancy Prevention advice above

Breast-feeding avoid

Side-effects dryness of skin (with dermatitis, scaling, thinning, erythema, pruritus), epidermal fragility (trauma may cause blistering), dryness of lips (sometimes cheilitis), dryness of eyes (with blepharitis and conjunctivitis), dryness of pharyngeal mucosa (with hoarseness), dryness of nasal mucosa (with epistaxis), headache, myalgia and arthralgia, raised plasma triglyceride concentration (risk of pancreatitis if triglycerides above 9 mmol/litre), raised serum-cholesterol concentration (with reduced high-density lipoprotein concentration), raised blood-glucose concentration, raised serum-transaminase concentration, haematuria and proteinuria, thrombocytopenia, thrombocytosis, neutropenia and anaemia; rarely mood changes (depression, aggressive behaviour, anxiety, and very rarely psychosis and suicidal ideation)—expert referral required, skin reactions (including reports of Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis), alopecia; very rarely nausea, hepatitis, inflammatory bowel disease, gastrointestinal haemorrhage, haemorrhagic diarrhoea (discontinue treatment), benign intracranial hypertension (avoid concomitant tetracyclines), convulsions, malaise, drowsiness, dizziness, diabetes mellitus, lymphadenopathy, hyperuricaemia, glomerulonephritis, tendinitis, arthritis, raised serum-creatine kinase concentration, bone changes (including reduced bone density, early epiphysial closure, and skeletal hypertrophy) and calcification of tendons and ligaments following long-term administration, visual disturbances (papilloedema, corneal opacities, cataracts, decreased night vision, photophobia, blurred vision, colour blindness)—expert referral required and consider withdrawal, decreased tolerance to contact lenses, keratitis, impaired hearing, Gram-positive infections of skin and mucous membranes, exacerbation of acne, acne fulminans, allergic vasculitis and granulomatous lesions, paronychia, hirsutism, nail dystrophy, skin hypopigmentation, photosensitivity, increased sweating

Licensed use not licensed for use in infantile acne

Indication and dose

Acne vulgaris under supervision of consultant dermatologist, see notes above

• By mouth

Child 12–18 years 500 micrograms/kg daily (1–2 divided doses), increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg daily; for 16–24 weeks (repeat treatment course after a period of at least 6 weeks if failure or relapse after first course); max. cumulative dose 150 mg/kg per course

Severe infantile acne under supervision of a consultant dermatologist, see p. 574

• By mouth

Child 1 month–2 years 200 micrograms/kg daily (in 1–2 divided doses), increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg daily, for 16–24 weeks; max. cumulative dose 150 mg/kg per course

Isotretinoin (Non-proprietary)


Roaccutane® (Roche)

Capsules, isotretinoin 10 mg (brown-red), net price 30-cap pack = £14.54; 20 mg (brown-red/white), 30-
13.7 Preparations for warts and calluses

Warts (verruca vulgaris) are common, benign, self-limiting, and usually asymptomatic. They are caused by a human papillomavirus, which most frequently affects the hands, feet (plantar warts), and the anogenital region (see below); treatment usually relies on local tissue destruction and is required only if the warts are painful, unsightly, persistent, or cause distress. In immunocompromised children, warts may be more difficult to eradicate.

Preparations of salicylic acid, formaldehyde, glutaraldehyde or silver nitrate are used for the removal of warts on hands and feet. Salicylic acid is a useful keratolytic which may be considered first-line in the treatment of warts; it is also suitable for the removal of corns and calluses. Preparations of salicylic acid in a collodion basis are available but some children may develop an allergy to colophony in the formulation; collodion should be avoided in children allergic to elastic adhesive plaster. Cryotherapy causes pain, swelling, and blistering, and may be no more effective than topical salicylic acid in the treatment of warts.

**SALICYLIC ACID**

**Cautions** significant peripheral neuropathy, patients with diabetes at risk of neuropathic ulcers; protect surrounding skin and avoid broken skin; not suitable for application to face, anogenital region, or large areas

**Side-effects** skin irritation, see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 2 years

**Indication and dose**

**Warts on hands and feet (plantar)**

For dose see preparations; apply carefully to wart and protect surrounding skin (e.g. with soft paraffin or specially designed plaster); rub wart surface gently with file or pumice stone once weekly; treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

Psoriasis section 13.5.2

Acne section 13.6.1

Fungal nail infections section 13.10.2

Cuplex® (Crawford)

Gel, salicylic acid 11%, lactic acid 4%, in a collodion basis, net price 5 g = £2.23. Label: 15

Dose

Apply twice daily

Note Contains colophony (see notes above)

**Duofilm® (GSK)**

Paint, salicylic acid 16.7%, lactic acid 16.7%, in flexible collodion, net price 15 mL (with applicator) = £2.25. Label: 15

Dose

Apply daily

**Occlusal® (Alliance)**

Cutaneous solution, salicylic acid 26% in polyacrylic solution, net price 10 mL (with applicator) = £3.56. Label: 15

Dose

Apply daily

**Salactol® (Dermal)**

Paint, salicylic acid 16.7%, lactic acid 16.7%, in flexible collodion, net price 10 mL (with applicator) = £1.71. Label: 15

Dose

Apply daily

Note Contains colophony (see notes above)

**Salatac® (Dermal)**

Gel, salicylic acid 12%, lactic acid 4% in a collodion basis, net price 8 g (with applicator) = £2.98. Label: 15

Dose

Apply daily

**Salatac® (Dermal)**

Gel, salicylic acid 12%, lactic acid 4% in a collodion basis, net price 8 g (with applicator) = £2.98. Label: 15

Dose

Apply daily

**Veracur® (Typharm)**

Gel, formaldehyde 0.75% in a water-miscible gel basis, net price 15 g = £2.41.

Dose

Apply twice daily

**GLUTARALDEHYDE**

**Cautions** protect surrounding skin; not for application to face, mucosa, or anogenital areas

**Side-effects** rashes, skin irritation (discontinue if severe); stains skin brown

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**

**Warts, particularly plantar warts** for dose see preparation below

Veracur® (Typharm)

Gel, formaldehyde 0.75% in a water-miscible gel basis, net price 15 g = £2.41.

Dose

Apply twice daily

**FORMALDEHYDE**

**Cautions** see under Salicylic Acid

**Side-effects** see under Salicylic Acid

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**

**Warts, particularly plantar warts** for dose see preparation below

Veracur® (Typharm)

Gel, formaldehyde 0.75% in a water-miscible gel basis, net price 15 g = £2.41.

Dose

Apply twice daily

**GLUTARALDEHYDE**

**Cautions** protect surrounding skin; not for application to face, mucosa, or anogenital areas

**Side-effects** rashes, skin irritation (discontinue if severe); stains skin brown

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**

**Warts, particularly plantar warts**

Apply twice daily

**Glutarol® (Dermal)**

Solution (= application), glutaraldehyde 10%, net price 10 mL (with applicator) = £2.07

Dose

Apply twice daily
BNFC 2011–2012 13.7 Preparations for warts and calluses

**SILVER NITRATE**

*Caution* protect surrounding skin and avoid broken skin; not suitable for application to face, ano-genital region, or large areas

*Side-effects* chemical burns on surrounding skin; stains skin and fabric

*Licensed use* no age range specified by manufacturer

**Indication and dose**

**Common warts and verrucas**

Apply moistened caustic pencil tip for 1–2 minutes; repeat after 24 hours up to max. 3 applications for warts or max. 6 applications for verrucas

Instructions in proprietary packs generally incorporate advice to remove dead skin before use by gentle filing and to cover with adhesive dressing after application

**UMBILICAL GRANULOMAS**

Apply moistened caustic pencil tip (usually containing silver nitrate 40%) for 1–2 minutes while protecting surrounding skin with soft paraffin

**Silver nitrate (Non-proprietary)**

Caustic pencil, tip containing silver nitrate 40%, potassium nitrate 60%, net price = 93p

AVOCA® (Bray)

Caustic pencil, tip containing silver nitrate 95%, potassium nitrate 5%, net price, treatment pack (including emery file, 6 adhesive dressings and protector pads) = £1.94

**Podophyllotoxin**

The major active ingredient of podophyllin, or imiquimod are used to treat external ano-genital warts; these preparations can cause considerable irritation of the treated area and are therefore suitable only for children who are able to cooperate with the treatment

**IMIQUIMOD**

*Caution* avoid normal skin and open wounds; not suitable for internal genital warts; uncircumcised males (risk of phimosis or stricture of foreskin); autoimmune disease; immunosuppressed patients

*Pregnancy* no evidence of teratogenicity or toxicity in animal studies; manufacturer advises caution

*Breast-feeding* no information available

*Side-effects* local reactions (including itching, burning sensation, erythema, erosion, oedema, excoriation, and scabbing); headache; influenza-like symptoms; myalgia; less commonly local ulceration and alopecia; rarely Stevens-Johnson syndrome and cutaneous lupus erythematosus-like effect; very rarely dysuria in females; permanent hypopigmentation or hyperpigmentation reported

*Licensed use* not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

External genital and perianal warts (for use under specialist supervision only)

Apply thinly 3 times a week at night until lesions resolve (max. 16 weeks)

Important: Should be rubbed in and allowed to stay on the treated area for 6–10 hours then washed off with mild soap and water (uncircumcised males treating warts under foreskin should wash the area daily). The cream should be washed off before sexual contact

**Aldara® (Meda)**

Cream, imiquimod 5%, net price 12-sachet pack = £48.34. Label: 10, patient information leaflet

Excipients: include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbate 60, stearyl alcohol

Condoms may damage latex condoms and diaphragms

**Podophyllotoxin**

*Caution* see notes above; avoid normal skin and open wounds; keep away from face; very irrtant to eyes

*Pregnancy* avoid

*Breast-feeding* avoid

*Side-effects* local irritation

*Licensed use* not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**

See under preparations (for use under specialist supervision only)

**Warticon® (GSK)**

Cream, podophyllotoxin 0.15%, net price 5 g (with mirror) = £14.86

Excipients: include butylated hydroxyanisole, cetyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), sorbic acid, stearyl alcohol

Condoms may damage latex condoms and diaphragms

**Condylomata acuminata affecting the penis or the female external genitalia**

Child 2–18 years (see notes above) apply twice daily for 3 consecutive days; treatment may be repeated at weekly intervals if necessary for a total of five 3-day treatment courses; direct medical supervision for lesions in the female and for lesions greater than 4 cm² in the male; max. 50 single applications (‘loops’) per session (consult product literature)

**Solution**

Blue, podophyllotoxin 0.5% in alcoholic basis, net price 3.5 mL (with applicators) = £12.38. Label: 15

**Condyline® (Nycoderm)**

Solution, podophyllotoxin 0.5% in alcoholic basis, net price 3.5 mL (with applicators) = £14.49. Label: 15

**Dose**

**Condylomata acuminata affecting the penis or the female external genitalia**

Child 2–18 years (see notes above) apply twice daily for 3 consecutive days; treatment may be repeated at weekly intervals if necessary for a total of four 3-day treatment courses; direct medical supervision for lesions greater than 4 cm²

**Solution**

Blue, podophyllotoxin 0.5% in alcoholic basis, net price 3 mL (with applicators) = £12.38. Label: 15

**Dose**

**Condyline® (Nycoderm)**

Solution, podophyllotoxin 0.5% in alcoholic basis, net price 3.5 mL (with applicators) = £14.49. Label: 15

**Dose**

**Condylomata acuminata affecting the penis or the female external genitalia**

Child 2–18 years (see notes above) apply twice daily for 3 consecutive days; treatment may be repeated at weekly intervals if necessary for a total of four 3-day treatment courses; direct medical supervision for lesions greater than 4 cm²

**Solution**

Blue, podophyllotoxin 0.5% in alcoholic basis, net price 3 mL (with applicators) = £12.38. Label: 15

**Dose**
Solar ultraviolet irradiation can be harmful to the skin. It is responsible for disorders such as polymorphic light eruption, solar urticaria, and it provokes the various cutaneous porphyrias. It also provokes (or at least aggravates) skin lesions of lupus erythematosus and may aggravate some other dermatoses. Certain drugs, such as demeclocycline, phenothiazines, or amiodarone, can cause photosensitivity. All these conditions (as well as sunburn) may occur after relatively short periods of exposure to the sun. Solar ultraviolet irradiation may provoke attacks of recurrent herpes labialis (but it is not known whether the effect of sunlight exposure is local or systemic).

The effects of exposure over longer periods include ageing changes and more importantly the initiation of skin cancer.

Solar ultraviolet radiation is approximately 200–400 nm in wavelength. The medium wavelengths (320–400 nm, known as UVA) are responsible for many photosensitivity reactions and photodermatoses. Both UVA and UVB contribute to long-term photodamage and to the changes responsible for skin cancer and ageing.

Sunscreen preparations contain substances that protect the skin against UVA and UVB radiation, but they are no substitute for covering the skin and avoiding sunlight. Protective clothing and sun avoidance (rather than the use of sunscreen preparations) are recommended for children under 6 months of age.

The sun protection factor (SPF, usually indicated in the preparation title) provides guidance on the degree of protection offered against UVB; it indicates the multiples of protection provided against burning, compared with unprotected skin; for example, an SPF of 8 should enable a child to remain 8 times longer in the sun without burning. However, in practice users do not apply sufficient sunscreen product and the protection is lower than that found in experimental studies. Some manufacturers use a star rating system to indicate the protection against UVA relative to protection against UVB for sunscreen products. However, the usefulness of the star rating system remains controversial. The EU Commission (September 2006) has recommended that the UVA protection factor for a sunscreen should be at least one-third of the sun protection factor (SPF); products that achieve this requirement will be labelled with a UVA logo alongside the SPF classification. Preparations that also contain reflective substances, such as titanium dioxide, provide the most effective protection against UVA.

Sunscreen preparations may rarely cause allergic reactions.

For optimum photoprotection, sunscreen preparations should be applied thickly and frequently (approximately 2 hourly). In photodermatoses, they should be used from spring to autumn. As maximum protection from sunlight is desirable, preparations with the highest SPF should be prescribed.

### Ingredient nomenclature in sunscreen preparations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rINN</th>
<th>INCI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amiloxate</td>
<td>isoamyl p-methoxycinnamate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avobenzone</td>
<td>butyl methoxydibenzoylmethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bemotrizinol</td>
<td>bis-ethylhexyloxyphenyl methoxyphenyl triazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bisoctrizole</td>
<td>methylene bis-benzotriazolyl tetramethyl-butylenolphenol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ecamsule</td>
<td>terephthalidene dicamphor sulfonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ensulizole</td>
<td>phenylbenzimidazole sulfonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enzacamene</td>
<td>4-methylbenzylidene camphor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octinoxate</td>
<td>octyl (or ethylhexyl) methoxycinnamate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octocriene</td>
<td>octocrylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oxybenzone</td>
<td>benzenophene-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The European Commission Cosmetic Products Regulation (EC) 1223/2009 requires the use of INCI (International Nomenclature of Cosmetic Ingredients) for cosmetics and sunscreens. This table includes the rINN and the INCI synonym for the active ingredients of sunscreen preparations in BNFC.

**Borderline substances** The preparations marked ‘ACBS’ cannot be prescribed on the NHS except for skin protection against ultraviolet radiation in abnormal cutaneous photosensitivity resulting from genetic disorders or photodermatoses, including vitiligo and those resulting from radiotherapy; chronic or recurrent herpes simplex labialis. Preparations with SPF less than 30 should not normally be prescribed. See also Appendix 2.

**Anthelios® (L’Oréal Active)**
- XL SPF 50+ Melt-in cream (UVA and UVB protection; UVB-SPF 50+), avobenzone 3.5%, bemotrizinol 3%, drometrizole trisiloxane 0.5%, ecamsule 1%, octocriene 2.5%, titanium dioxide 4.2%, net price 50 mL = £3.63. ACBS. Exipients include disodium edetate, sodium lauryl alcohol.
  **Note** For INCI synonyms, see table above

**Delph® (Fenton)**
- Lotion (UVA and UVB protection; UVB-SPF 30), octinoxate 4.8%, oxybenzone 1.5%, titanium dioxide 2%, net price 200 mL = £3.57. ACBS. Exipients include cetostearyl alcohol, fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), imidarea.
  **Note** For INCI synonyms, see table above

**Sunsense® Ultra (Crawford)**
- Lotion (UVA and UVB protection; UVB-SPF 50+), avobenzone 2%, ensulizole 2%, enzacamene 4%, octinoxate 6%, oxybenzone 2%, titanium dioxide 3%; net price 50 mL bottle with roll-on applicator = £4.11, 125 mL = £6.86, 500-mL pump pack = £15.54. ACBS. Exipients include butylated hydroxytoluene, cetyl alcohol, fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol.
  **Note** For INCI synonyms, see table above
BETACAROTENE

Note Betacarotene is a precursor to vitamin A

Cautions monitor vitamin A intake; interactions: Appendix 1 (vitamins)

Hepatic impairment avoid

Renal impairment use with caution

Pregnancy partially converted to vitamin A, but does not give rise to abnormally high serum concentration; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding use with caution—present in milk

Side-effects loose stools; yellow discoloration of skin; rarely, bruising, arthralgia

Licensed use not licensed for use in UK

Indication and dose

Management of photosensitivity reactions in erythroplastic protoporphyria (specialist use only)

• By mouth
  Child 1–5 years 60–90 mg daily in single or divided doses
  Child 5–9 years 90–120 mg daily in single or divided doses
  Child 9–12 years 120–150 mg daily in single or divided doses
  Child 12–16 years 150–180 mg daily in single or divided doses
  Child 16–18 years 180–300 mg daily in single or divided doses

Note Protection not total—avoid strong sunlight and use sunscreen preparations, generally 2–6 weeks of treatment (resulting in yellow coloration of palms and soles) necessary before increasing exposure to sunlight; dose should be adjusted according to level of exposure to sunlight

Betacarotene (Non-proprietary)

Capsules, 15 mg, 25 mg are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809. Label: 21

13.8.2 Camouflagers

Disfigurement of the skin can be very distressing and may have a marked psychological effect, especially in children. Cosmetic preparations may be used to camou­flage unsightly scars, skin deformities, and pigment abnormalities, such as vitiligo and birthmarks.

Borderline substances The preparations marked ‘ACBS’ cannot be prescribed on the NHS for postoperative scars and other deformities except as adjunctive therapy in the relief of emotional disturbances due to disfiguring skin disease, such as vitiligo.

Covermark® (Derma UK)

Classic foundation (masking cream), net price 15 g (10 shades) = £11.32 ACBS
  Excipients include beeswax, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), fragrance
  Finishing powder, net price 25 g = £11.32 ACBS
  Excipients include beeswax, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), fragrance

Dermacolor® (Fox)

Camouflage creme, (100 shades), net price 25 mL = £9.96 ACBS
  Excipients include beeswax, butylated hydroxyanisole, fragrance, propylene glycol, lanolin, wool fat
  Fixing powder, (7 shades), net price 60 g = £8.45. ACBS
  Excipients include fragrance

Keromask® (Lornamead)

Masking cream, (9 shades), net price 15 mL = £5.68 ACBS
  Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat, propylene glycol
  Finishing powder, net price 20 g = £5.68. ACBS
  Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Veil® (Thomas Blake)

Cover cream (40 shades), net price 19 g = £20.63, 44 g = £30.68, 70 g = £38.74. ACBS
  Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), wool fat derivative
  Finishing powder, translucent, net price 35 g = £22.62. ACBS
  Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

13.9 Shampoos and other preparations for scalp conditions

The detergent action of shampoo removes grease (sebum) from hair. Prepubertal children produce very little grease and require shampoo less frequently than adults. Shampoos can be used as vehicles for medicinal products, but their usefulness is limited by the short time
the product is in contact with the scalp and by their irritant nature.

Oils and ointments are very useful for scaly, dry scalp conditions; if a greasy appearance is cosmetically unacceptable, the preparation may be applied at night and washed out in the morning. Alcohol-based lotions are rarely used in children; alcohol causes painful stinging on broken skin and the fumes may exacerbate asthma.

Itchy, inflammatory, eczematous scalp conditions may be relieved by a simple emollient oil such as olive oil or coconut oil (arachis oil (ground nut oil, peanut oil) is best avoided in children under 5 years). In more severe cases a topical corticosteroid (section 13.4) may be required. Preparations containing coal tar are used for the common scaly scalp conditions of childhood including seborrhoeic dermatitis, dandruff (a mild form of seborrhoeic dermatitis), and psoriasis (section 13.5.2); salicylic acid is used as a keratolytic in some scalp preparations.

Shampoos containing antimicrobials such as selenium sulphide or ketoconazole are used for seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff in which yeast infection has been implicated, and for tinea capitis (ringworm of the scalp, section 13.10.2). Bacterial infection affecting the scalp (usually secondary to eczema, head lice, or ringworm) may be treated with shampoos containing antimicrobials such as pyrithione zinc, cetrimide, or povidone-iodine.

In neonates and infants, cradle cap (which is also a form of seborrhoeic eczema) can be treated by massaging coconut oil or olive oil into the scalp, a bland emollient can be rubbed onto the affected area once or twice daily before bathing and a mild shampoo used.

Shampoos

Ketoconazole (Non-proprietary) [Foil]
Shampoo, ketoconazole 2%, net price 120 mL = £2.53
Excipients include isothiouronium
Brands include Dandrax® 2% Shampoo, Nizoral®

Seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff

Treatment, apply twice weekly for 2–4 weeks; prophylaxis, apply once every 1–2 weeks, leave preparation on for 3–5 minutes before rinsing

Pityriasis versicolor

Treatment, apply once daily for max. 5 days; prophylaxis, apply once daily for up to 3 days before sun exposure, leave preparation on for 3–5 minutes before rinsing

1. Can be sold to the public for the prevention and treatment of dandruff and seborrhoeic dermatitis of the scalp as a shampoo formulation containing ketoconazole max. 2%, in a pack containing max. 120 mL and labelled to show a max. frequency of application of once every 3 days.

Alphosyl 2 in 1® (GSK Consumer Healthcare)
Shampoo, alcoholic coal tar extract 5%, net price 125 mL = £1.81, 250 mL = £3.43
Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), fragrance

Dandruff

Use once or twice weekly as necessary

Psoriasis, seborrhoeic dermatitis, scaling and itching

Use every 2–3 days

Capasal® (Dermal)
Shampoo, coal tar 1%, coconut oil 1%, salicylic acid 0.5%, net price 250 mL = £4.69
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Dose

Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, seborrhoeic dermatitis, dandruff, and cradle cap

Apply daily as necessary

Ceanel Concentrate® (Ferndale)
Shampoo, cetrimide 10%, undecenoic acid 1%, net price 150 mL = £3.40, 500 mL = £9.80
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Dose

Scalp psoriasis, seborrhoeic dermatitis, dandruff

Apply 3 times in first week then twice weekly

Dermax® (Dermal)
Shampoo, benzalkonium chloride 0.5%, net price 250 mL = £5.69
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Dose

Seborrhoeic scalp conditions associated with dandruff and scaling

Apply as necessary

Meted® (Alliance)
Shampoo, salicylic acid 3%, sulphur 5%, net price 120 mL = £3.80
Excipients include fragrance

Note may be difficult to obtain

Dose

Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, seborrhoeic dermatitis, and dandruff

Apply at least twice weekly

Pentrax® (Alliance)
Shampoo, coal tar 4.3%, net price 120 mL = £3.80
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Note may be difficult to obtain

Dose

Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, seborrhoeic dermatitis, and dandruff

Apply at least twice weekly

Psoriderm® (Dermal)
Scalp lotion (= shampoo), coal tar 2.5%, lecithin 0.3%, net price 250 mL = £4.74
Excipients include disodium edetate

Dose

Scalp psoriasis

Use as necessary

Selsun® (Chattem UK)
Shampoo, selenium sulphide 2.5%, net price 50 mL = £1.44, 100 mL = £1.96, 150 mL = £2.75
Excipients include fragrance

Cautions

Avoid using 48 hours before or after applying hair colouring, straightening or waving preparations

Dose

Seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff

Child 5–18 years apply twice weekly for 2 weeks then once weekly for 2 weeks and then as necessary

Pityriasis versicolor [unlicensed indication]

Child 5–18 years apply to affected area and leave on for 10 minutes before rinsing off; apply once daily for 7 days; repeat course if necessary

Note

Diluting with a small amount of water prior to application can reduce irritation
Topical antibacterial preparations are used to treat localised bacterial skin infections caused by Gram-positive organisms (particularly by *Staphylococcus* or *Streptococcus*). Systemic antibacterial treatment (Table 1, section 5.1) is more appropriate for deep-seated skin infections.

Problems associated with the use of topical antibacterials include bacterial resistance, contact sensitisation, and superinfection. In order to minimise the development of resistance, antibacterials used systemically (e.g. fusidic acid) should not generally be chosen for topical use. Resistant organisms are more common in hospitals, and whenever possible swabs should be taken for bacteriological examination before beginning treatment.

### 13.10 Anti-infective skin preparations

#### 13.10.1 Antibacterial preparations

**T/Gel**

- **Shampoo**:
  - coal tar extract 2%, net price 125 mL = £3.18, 250 mL = £4.78
  - Excipients include fragrance, hydroxybenzoxates (parabens), imidurea, tetrasodium edetate
- **Dose**
  - Scalp psoriasis, seborrhoeic dermatitis, dandruff
  - Apply 2–3 times weekly

**Polytar Plus**

- **Liquid**:
  - arachis (peanut) oil extract of coal tar 0.3%, cade oil 0.3%, coal tar solution 0.1%, oleyl alcohol 1%, tar 0.3%, net price 250 mL = £2.23
  - Excipients include fragrance, imidurea, polysorbate 80
- **Dose**
  - Scalp disorders including psoriasis, seborrhoea, eczema, pruritus, and dandruff
  - Apply 1–2 times weekly

**Coocois**

- **Section** 13.5.2

**Polytar**

- **Liquid**:
  - ingredients as *Polytar* liquid with hydrolysed animal protein 3%, net price 500 mL = £3.91
  - Excipients include fragrance, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), imidurea, polysorbate 80
- **Dose**
  - Scalp disorders including psoriasis, seborrhoea, eczema, pruritus, and dandruff
  - Apply 1–2 times weekly

**BNFC 2011–2012**

Retapamulin can be used for impetigo and folliculitis. For extensive or long-standing impetigo, an oral antibacterial such as flucloxacillin (or clarithromycin in children with penicillin-allergy). Table 1, section 5.1, should be used. A mild antiseptic may help to soften crusts. Mild antiseptics may be useful in reducing the spread of infection, but there is little evidence to support the use of topical antiseptics alone in the treatment of impetigo.

**Cellulitis**, a rapidly spreading deeply seated inflammation of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, requires systemic antibacterial treatment (see Table 1, section 5.1). Lower leg infections or infections spreading around wounds are almost always cellulitis. *Erysipelas*, a superficial infection with clearly defined edges (and often affecting the face), is also treated with a systemic antibacterial (see Table 1, section 5.1).

**Staphylococcal scalded-skin syndrome** requires urgent treatment with a systemic antibacterial, such as flucloxacillin (see Table 1, section 5.1).

**Mupirocin** is not related to any other antibacterial in use; it is effective for skin infections, particularly those due to Gram-positive organisms but it is not indicated for pseudomonal infection. Although *Staphylococcus aureus* strains with low-level resistance to mupirocin are emerging, it is generally useful in infections resistant to other antibacterials. To avoid the development of resistance, mupirocin or fusidic acid should not be used for longer than 10 days and local microbiology advice should be sought before using it in hospital. In the presence of mupirocin-resistant MRSA infection, a topical antiseptic, such as povidone–iodine, chlorhexidine, or alcohol, can be used (section 13.11); their use should be discussed with the local microbiologist.

Mupirocin ointment contains macrogols; extensive absorption of macrogols through the mucous membranes or through application to thin or damaged skin may result in renal toxicity, especially in neonates. Mupirocin nasal ointment is formulated in a paraffin base and may be more suitable for the treatment of MRSA-infected open wound in neonates.

**Metronidazole** gel is used topically in children to reduce the odour associated with anaerobic infections and for the treatment of periorificial rosacea (section 13.6); oral metronidazole (section 5.1.11) is used to treat wounds infected with anaerobic bacteria.

Retapamulin can be used for impetigo and other superficial bacterial skin infections caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes* that are resistant to first-line topical antibacterials. However, it is not effective against MRSA. The Scottish Medicines Consortium...
13. Skin

13.10.1 Antibacterial preparations

(p. 3) has advised (March 2008) that retapamulin (Altargo®) is not recommended for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of superficial skin infections.

Silver sulfadiazine is licensed for the prevention and treatment of infection in burns but the use of appropriate dressings may be more effective. Systemic effects may occur following extensive application of silver sulfadiazine; its use is not recommended in neonates.

13.10.1.1 Antibacterial preparations only used topically

MUPIROCIN

Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution when Bactroban® ointment used in moderate or severe impairment because it contains macrogols (polyethylene glycols)

Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available

Breast-feeding no information available

Side-effects local reactions including urticaria, pruritus, burning sensation, rash

Licensed use Bactroban® ointment licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); Bactroban® cream not recommended for use in children under 1 year

Indication and dose

Bacterial skin infections (see also notes above)

Child 1 month–18 years apply up to 3 times daily for up to 10 days

Bactroban® (GSK) Cream, mupirocin (as mupirocin calcium) 2%, net price £4.38

Excipients include benzy alcohol, cetyl alcohol, stearyl alcohol

Ointment, mupirocin 2%, net price £4.38

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Nasal ointment—section 12.2.3

NEOMYCIN SULPHATE

Cautions large areas—if large areas of skin are being treated ototoxicity may be a hazard in children, particularly in those with renal impairment

Contra-indications neonates

Renal impairment see Cautions above

Side-effects sensitisation (see also notes above)

Licensed use Neomycin Cream BPC—no information available

Indication and dose

Bacterial skin infections see under preparation

Neomycin Cream BPC (TA) Cream, neomycin sulphate 0.5%, cetomacrogol emulsifying ointment 30%, chlororessol 0.1%, disodium edetate 0.01%, in freshly boiled and cooled purified water, net price £2.17

Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol, edetic acid (EIDA)

Dose Apply up to 3 times daily (short-term use)

POLYMYXINS

Cautions large areas—if large areas of skin are being treated nephrotoxicity and neurotoxicity may be a hazard, particularly in children with renal impairment

Renal impairment see Cautions above

Side-effects sensitisation (see also notes above)

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Bacterial skin infections see under preparation

Polyfax® (TEVA UK) TA Ointment, polymyxin B sulphate 10 000 units, bacitracin zinc 500 units/g, net price £3.26, 20 g = £4.62

Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

Dose Apply twice daily or more frequently if required

RETPAMULIN

Contra-indications contact with eyes and mucous membranes

Side-effects local reactions including irritation, erythema, pain, contact dermatitis, and pruritus

Indication and dose

Superficial bacterial skin infections (but see also notes above)

Child 9 months–18 years apply thinly twice daily for 5 days; max. area of skin treated 2% of body surface area; review treatment if no response within 2–3 days

Altargo® (GSK) TA Ointment, retapamulin 1%, net price £7.89.

Label: 28

Excipients include butylated hydroxytoluene

SILVER SULFADIAZINE

(Silver sulphasazine)

Cautions G6PD deficiency; may inactivate enzymatic debriding agents—concomitant use may be inappropriate; interactions: Appendix 1 (sulfonamides)

Large areas Plasma-sulfadiazine concentrations may approach therapeutic levels with side-effects and interactions as for sulfonamides (see section 5.1.8) if large areas of skin are treated. Owing to the association of sulfonamides with severe blood and skin disorders, treatment should be stopped immediately if blood disorders or rashes develop— but leucopenia developing 2–3 days after starting treatment of burns patients is reported usually to be self-limiting and silver sulfadiazine need not usually be discontinued provided blood counts are monitored carefully to ensure return to baseline within a few days. Argyria may also occur if large areas of skin are treated (or if application is prolonged).

Contra-indications sensitivity to sulfonamides; not recommended for neonates

Hepatic impairment manufacturer advises caution if significant impairment; see also Large areas, above

Renal impairment manufacturer advises caution if significant impairment; see also Large areas, above

Pregnancy risk of neonatal haemolyis and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester

Breast-feeding small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolysis in G6PD deficient infants

Side-effects allergic reactions including burning, itching and rashes; argyria reported following pro—
longed use; leucopenia reported (monitor blood count)

Licensed use no age range specified by manufacturer but see contra-indications, above

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis and treatment of infection in burn wounds, for conservative management of finger-tip injuries see under preparation below

Adjunct to short-term treatment of infection in pressure sores, adjunct to prophylaxis of infection in skin graft donor sites and extensive abrasions consult product literature for details

Flamazine® (S&N Hlth.) Cream, silver sulfadiazine 1%, net price 20 g = £2.91, 50 g = £3.85, 200 g = £10.32, 500 g = £18.27

Excipients include cetyl alcohol, polysorbates, propylene glycol

Dose

Burns

Child 1 month–18 years apply daily or more frequently if very exudative

Finger-tip injuries

Child 1 month–18 years apply every 2–3 days

Note apply with sterile applicator

13.10.1.2 Antibacterial preparations also used systemically

Sodium fusidate is a narrow-spectrum antibacterial used for staphylococcal infections. For the role of sodium fusidate in the treatment of impetigo see p. 585.

Metronidazole is used topically to treat rosacea and to reduce the odour associated with anaerobic infections; oral metronidazole (section 5.1.11) is used to treat wounds infected with anaerobic bacteria.

Angular cheilitis An ointment containing sodium fusidate is used in the fissures of angular cheilitis when associated with staphylococcal infection. For further information on angular cheilitis, see p. 545.

FUSIDIC ACID

Cautions see notes above; avoid contact with eyes

Side-effects rarely hypersensitivity reactions

Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

Indication and dose

Staphylococcal skin infections

Apply 3–4 times daily, usually for 7 days

Penicillin-resistant staphylococcal infections

section 5.1.7

Staphylococcal eye infections

section 11.3.1

Fucidin® (LEO) Cream, fusidic acid 2%, net price 15 g = £1.92, 30 g = £3.64

Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, cetyl alcohol

BNFC 2011–2012

13.10.1 Antibacterial preparations

Ointment, sodium fusidate 2%, net price 15 g = £2.23, 30 g = £3.79

Excipients include cetyl alcohol, wool fat

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Sodium Fusidate ointment

METRONIDAZOLE

Cautions avoid exposure to strong sunlight or UV light

Side-effects skin irritation

Licensed use Acea® and Anabact® not licensed for use in children under 12 years; Noritate® not licensed for use in children under 16 years; Metrogel®, Metroc® Rosacea, Rosex®, and Zyome® not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Malodorous tumours and wounds

For dose see preparations

Rosacea (see also section 13.6)

For dose see preparations

Helicobacter pylori eradication

section 1.3

Anaerobic infections

section 5.1.11 and section 7.2.2

Protozoal infections

section 5.4.2

Acea® (Ferndale) Gel, metronidazole 0.75%, net price 40 g = £9.95

Excipients include disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Dose

Acute inflammatory exacerbations of rosacea

Child 1–18 years apply thinly twice daily

Anabact® (CHS) Gel, metronidazole 0.75%, net price 15 g = £4.47, 30 g = £7.89

Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

Dose

Malodorous fungating tumours and skin ulcers

Apply to clean wound 1–2 times daily and cover with non-adherent dressing

Metrogel® (Galderma) Gel, metronidazole 0.75%, net price 40 g = £6.86

Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

Dose

Acute inflammatory exacerbations of rosacea

Child 1–18 years apply thinly twice daily

Malodorous fungating tumours

Apply to clean wound 1–2 times daily and cover with non-adherent dressing

Metroc® (Linderma) Gel, metronidazole 0.75%, net price 40 g = £19.90

Excipients include propylene glycol

Dose

Acute exacerbation of rosacea

Child 1–18 years apply thinly twice daily
white onychomycosis, or where there are contra-indications to systemic therapy. Chronic paronychia on the fingers (usually due to a candidal infection) should be treated with topical clotrimazole or nystatin, but these preparations should be used with caution in children who suck their fingers. Chronic paronychia of the toes (usually due to dermatophyte infection) can be treated with topical terbinafine.

**Pityriasis versicolor** Pityriasis (tinea) versicolor can be treated with ketoconazole shampoo or selenium sulphide shampoo (section 13.9). Topical imidazole antifungals such as clotrimazole, econazole, ketoconazole, and miconazole, or topical terbinafine are alternatives, but large quantities may be required.

If topical therapy fails, or if the infection is widespread, pityriasis versicolor is treated systemically with an azole antifungal (section 5.2). Relapse is common, especially in the immuno-compromised.

**Candidiasis** Candidal skin infections can be treated with topical imidazole antifungals clotrimazole, econazole, ketoconazole, or miconazole; topical terbinafine is an alternative. Topical application of nystatin is also effective for candidiasis but it is ineffective against dermatophytosis. Refractory candidiasis requires systemic treatment (section 5.2.1) generally with a triazole such as fluconazole; systemic treatment with griseofulvin or terbinafine is not appropriate for refractory candidiasis. For the treatment of oral candidiasis see section 12.3.2 and for the management of nappy rash see section 13.2.2.

**Angular cheilitis** Miconazole cream is used in the fissures of angular cheilitis when associated with Candida. For further information on angular cheilitis, see p. 545.

**Cautions** Contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided.

**Side-effects** Occasional local irritation and hypersensitivity reactions include mild burning sensation, erythema, and itching. Treatment should be discontinued if symptoms are severe.

**Compound topical preparations** Combination of an imidazole and a mild corticosteroid (such as hydrocor- sone 1%) (section 13.4) may be of value in the treatment of eczematous intertrigo and, in the first few days only, of a severely inflamed patch of ringworm. Combination of a mild corticosteroid with either an imidazole or nystatin may be of use in the treatment of intertriginous eczema associated with candida.

### AMOROLFINE

**Cautions** see notes above; also avoid contact with ears; use with caution in child likely to suck affected digits

**Pregnancy** systemic absorption very low, but manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Breast-feeding** manufacturer advises avoid—no information available

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 12 years
### Indication and dose

**Fungal nail infections**
Apply to infected nails 1–2 times weekly after filing and cleansing; allow to dry (approx. 3 minutes); treat finger nails for 6 months, toe nails for 9–12 months (review at intervals of 3 months); avoid nail varnish or artificial nails during treatment.

**Loceryl** (Galderma)
Nail lacquer, amorolfine (as hydrochloride) 5%, net price 5-mL pack (with nail files, spatulas, and cleansing swabs) = £18.17. Label: 10, patient information leaflet
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

### BENZOIC ACID

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**
- Ringworm (tinea) but see notes above; dose under preparation
- With salicylic acid
  - For prescribing information on salicylic acid, see p. 571

**Benzoic Acid Ointment, Compound, BP**
- (Whitfield’s ointment)
  - Ointment, benzoic acid 6%, salicylic acid 3%, in emulsifying ointment
  - Excipients include cetostearyl alcohol
- **Dose**
  - Child 1 month–18 years apply twice daily

### CLOTRIMAZOLE

**Cautions** see notes above
**Pregnancy** minimal absorption from skin; not known to be harmful
**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**
- **Fungal skin infections**
  - Apply 2–3 times daily
- **Vaginal candidiasis** section 7.2.2
- **Otitis externa** section 12.1.1

**Clotrimazole** (Non-proprietary)
- **Cream**, clotrimazole 1%, net price 20 g = £1.52
- **Canesten** (Bayer Consumer Care)
  - **Cream**, clotrimazole 1%, net price 20 g = £2.14, 50 g = £3.50
    - Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol, polysorbate 60
- **Solution**, clotrimazole 1% in macrocrol 400 (polyethylene glycol 400), net price 20 mL = £2.43. For hairy areas
  - Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3
- **Spray**, clotrimazole 1%, in 30% isopropyl alcohol, net price 40-mL atomiser = £4.99. Label: 15. For large or hairy areas
  - Excipients include propylene glycol

**Note**
A 15-g tube is available for sale to the public for the treatment of tinea pedis, tinea cruris, and candidal intertrigo

**1.** Except for seborrhoeic dermatitis and pityriasis versicolor and endorsed ‘SLS’

### ECONAZOLE NITRATE

**Cautions** see notes above
**Pregnancy** minimal absorption from skin; not known to be harmful
**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** Pevaryl®, no age range specified by manufacturer

**Indication and dose**
- **Fungal skin infections**
  - Apply twice daily
- **Fungal nail infections**
  - Apply once daily under occlusive dressing
- **Vaginal candidiasis** section 7.2.2

**Pevaryl** (Janssen)
- **Cream**, econazole nitrate 1%, net price 30 g = £2.65
  - Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole, fragrance

### KETOCONAZOLE

**Cautions** see notes above; do not use within 2 weeks of a potent topical corticosteroid for seborrhoeic dermatitis—risk of skin sensitisation

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** Pevaryl®, no age range specified by manufacturer

**Indication and dose**
- **Tinea pedis**
  - Apply twice daily
- **Other fungal infections**
  - Apply 1–2 times daily
- **Systemic or resistant fungal infections** section 5.2.2
- **Vulval candidiasis** section 7.2.2

**Nizoral** (Janssen)
- **Cream**, ketoconazole 2%, net price 30 g = £3.40
  - Excipients include cetyl alcohol, polysorbates, propylene glycol, stearyl alcohol

**Note**
A 15-g tube is available for sale to the public for the treatment of tinea pedis, tinea cruris, and candidal intertrigo

**Shampoo**—section 13.9

### MICONAZOLE NITRATE

**Cautions** see notes above
**Side-effects** see notes above

**Licensed use** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**
- **Fungal skin infections**
  - Neonate apply twice daily continuing for 10 days after lesions have healed
  - Child 1 month–18 years apply twice daily continuing for 10 days after lesions have healed
- **Fungal nail infections**
  - Apply 1–2 times daily
Oral and intestinal fungal infections section 12.3.2

Vaginal candidiasis section 7.2.2

Miconazole (Non-proprietary)
Cream, miconazole nitrate 2%, net price 20 g = £2.05, 45 g = £1.97
Dental prescribing on NHS Miconazole cream may be prescribed
Daktarin® (Janssen)
Cream, miconazole nitrate 2%, net price 30 g = £1.82
Excipients include butylated hydroxyanisole

NYSTATIN
Cautions see notes above
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)
Indication and dose
Skin infections due to Candida spp. for dose, see preparation
Oral fungal infections section 12.3.2

Nystaform® (Typharm)
Cream, nystatin 100 000 units/g, chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1%, net price 30 g = £2.62
Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, polysorbate 60
Dose Apply 2–3 times daily continuing for 7 days after lesions have healed.

SALICYLIC ACID
Cautions avoid broken or inflamed skin
Salicylate toxicity Salicylate toxicity can occur particularly if applied on large areas of skin
Side-effects see notes above
Indication and dose
Fungal nail infections, particularly tinea
Child 5–18 years apply twice daily and after washing
Note Use with caution in child likely to suck affected digits
Hyperkeratotic skin disorders section 13.5.2
Acne vulgaris section 13.6.1
Warts and calluses section 13.7
Phytex® (Wynlit)
Paint, salicylic acid 1.46% (total combined), tannic acid 4.89% and boracic acid 3.12% (as borotannic complex), in a vehicle containing alcohol and ethyl acetate, net price 25 mL (with brush) = £2.81
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3
Note Flammable

TERBINAFINE
Cautions avoid contact with eyes
Pregnancy manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—animal studies suggest no adverse effects
Breast-feeding manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk, but less than 5% of the dose is absorbed after topical application of terbinafine; avoid application to mother’s chest
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use not licensed for use in children
Indication and dose
Fungal skin infections
Apply thinly 1–2 times daily for up to 1 week in tinea pedis, 1–2 weeks in tinea corporis and tinea cruris, 2 weeks in cutaneous candidiasis and pityriasis versicolor; review after 2 weeks
Systemic therapy section 5.2.5

1 Terbinafine (Non-proprietary) Lamisil®
Cream, terbinafine hydrochloride 1%, net price 15 g = £5.10, 30 g = £2.69
1. Can be sold to the public for external use in children over 16 years for the treatment of tinea pedis and tinea cruris as a cream containing terbinafine hydrochloride max. 1% in a pack containing max. 15 g, also for the treatment of tinea pedis, tinea cruris, and tinea corporis as a spray containing terbinafine hydrochloride max. 1% in a pack containing max. 30 mL or as a gel containing terbinafine hydrochloride max. 1% in a pack containing max. 30 g
Lamisil® (Novartis Consumer Health) Lamisil®
Cream, terbinafine hydrochloride 1%, net price 15 g = £4.86, 30 g = £8.76
Excipients include benzyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, polysorbate 60, stearyl alcohol

TIOCONAZOLE
Cautions see notes above; also use with caution if child likely to suck affected digits
Pregnancy manufacturer advises avoid
Side-effects see notes above; also local oedema, dry skin, nail discoloration, periungual inflammation, nail pain, rash, exfoliation
Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)
Indication and dose
Fungal nail infections
Apply to nails and surrounding skin twice daily for up to 6 months (may be extended to 12 months)

Trosyl® (Pfizer)
Cutaneous solution, tioconazole 28%, net price 12 mL (with applicator brush) = £27.38
Excipients none as listed in section 13.1.3

UNDECENOATES
Side-effects see notes above
Licensed use Monphytol® not licensed for use in children under 12 years; Mycota® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)
Indication and dose
See under preparations
13.10.3 Antiviral preparations

See section 12.3.2 for drugs used in herpetic stomatitis, section 13.5.1 for eczema herpeticum, and section 11.3.3 for viral infections of the eye.

**Aciclovir** cream is used for the treatment of initial and recurrent labial, cutaneous, and genital herpes simplex infections in children; treatment should begin as early as possible. Systemic treatment is necessary for buccal or vaginal infections or if cold sores recur frequently (for details of systemic use see section 5.3.2.1).

**Herpes labialis** Aciclovir cream can be used for the treatment of initial and recurrent labial herpes simplex infections (cold sores). It is best applied at the earliest possible stage, usually when prodromal changes of sensation are felt in the lip and before vesicles appear.

Penciclovir cream is also licensed for the treatment of herpes labialis; it needs to be applied more frequently than aciclovir cream. These creams should not be used in the mouth.

### ACICLOVIR

(ACiclovir)

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful—manufacturers advise use only when potential benefit outweighs risk; limited absorption from topical aciclovir preparations

#### Side-effects

transient stinging or burning; occasionally erythema, itching or drying of the skin

#### Licensed use

licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

#### Indication and dose

**Herpes simplex infections**

Apply to lesions every 4 hours (5 times daily) for 5–10 days, starting at first sign of attack

**Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infections** section 5.3.2.1

**Eye infections** section 11.3.3

#### 1 Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)

Cream, aciclovir 5%, net price 2 g = £1.10, 10 g = £1.81

Exipients include propylene glycol

Brands include Zuvogen (excipients include cetyl alcohol, propylene glycol)

Dental prescribing on NHS Aciclovir Cream may be prescribed

1. A 2-g tube and a pump pack are on sale to the public for the treatment of cold sores

**Zovirax** (GSK)

Cream, aciclovir 5%, net price 2 g = £4.63, 10 g = £13.96

Exipients include cetostearyl alcohol, propylene glycol

Dose

**Herpes labialis** Apply to lesions every 2 hours during waking hours for 4 days, starting at first sign of attack

Dental prescribing on NHS May be prescribed as Penciclovir Cream

### PENCICLOVIR

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes

**Side-effects** transient stinging, burning, numbness; hypersensitivity reactions also reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 12 years

**Vectavir** (Novartis Consumer Health)

Cream, penciclovir 1%, net price 2 g = £4.20

Exipients include cetostearyl alcohol, propylene glycol

Dose

**Herpes labialis** Apply to lesions every 2 hours during waking hours for 4 days, starting at first sign of attack

#### 13.10.4 Parasiticidal preparations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suitable quantities of parasiticidal preparations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skin creams</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scalp (head lice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body (scabies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body (crab lice)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These amounts are usually suitable for a child 12–18 years for single application.
Scabies

Permethrin is used for the treatment of scabies (Sarcoptes scabiei); malathion can be used if permethrin is inappropriate.

Benzyl benzoate is an irritant and should be avoided in children; it is less effective than malathion and permethrin.

Ivermectin (available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809), is used in combination with topical drugs, for the treatment of hyperkeratotic (crusted or ‘Norwegian’) scabies that does not respond to topical treatment alone.

Application Although acaricides have traditionally been applied after a hot bath, this is not necessary and there is even evidence that a hot bath may increase absorption into the blood, removing them from their site of action on the skin.

All members of the affected household should be treated simultaneously. Treatment should be applied to the whole body including the scalp, neck, face, and ears. Particular attention should be paid to the webs of the fingers and toes and lotion brushed under the ends of nails. Malathion and permethrin should be applied twice, one week apart. It is important to warn users to reapply treatment to the hands if they are washed. Children with hyperkeratotic scabies may require 2 or 3 applications of acaricide on consecutive days to ensure that enough penetrates the skin crusts to kill all the mites.

Itching The itch and eczema of scabies persists for some weeks after the infestation has been eliminated and treatment for pruritus and eczema (section 13.5.1) may be required. Application of crotamiton can be used to control itching after treatment with more effective acaricides. A topical corticosteroid (section 13.4) may help to reduce itch and inflammation after scabies has been treated successfully; however, persistent symptoms suggest failure of scabies eradication. Oral administration of a sedating antihistamine (section 3.4.1) at night may also be useful.

Head lice

Dimeticone is effective against head lice (Pediculus humanus capitis) and acts on the surface of the organism. Malathion, an organophosphorous insecticide, is an alternative but resistance has been reported. Benzyl benzoate is licensed for the treatment of head lice but it is not recommended for use in children.

Head lice infestation (pediculosis) should be treated using lotion or liquid formulations only if live lice are present. Shampoos are diluted too much in use to be effective. A contact time of 8–12 hours or overnight treatment is recommended for lotions and liquids; a 2-hour treatment is not sufficient to kill eggs.

In general, a course of treatment for head lice should be 2 applications of a parasiticidal product 7 days apart to kill lice emerging from any eggs that survive the first application. All affected individuals in a household should be treated at the same time.

Wet combing methods Head lice can be mechanically removed by combing wet hair meticulously with a plastic detection comb (probably for at least 30 minutes each time) over the whole scalp at 4-day intervals for a minimum of 2 weeks and continued until no lice are found on 3 consecutive sessions; hair conditioner or vegetable oil can be used to facilitate the process. Several devices for the removal of head lice, such as combs and topical solutions, are available and some are prescribable on the NHS (consult Drug Tariff—see Appliances and Reagents, p. 797 for links to online Drug Tariffs).

Crab lice

Permethrin and malathion are used to eliminate crab lice (Pthirus pubis); permethrin is not licensed for treatment of crab lice in children under 18 years. An aqueous preparation should be applied, allowed to dry naturally and washed off after 12 hours; a second treatment is needed after 7 days to kill lice emerging from surviving eggs. All surfaces of the body should be treated, including the scalp, neck, and face (paying particular attention to the eyebrows and other facial hair). A different insecticide should be used if a course of treatment fails.

Parasiticidal preparations

Dimeticone coats head lice and interferes with water balance in lice by preventing excretion of water; it is less active against eggs and treatment should be repeated after 7 days.

Malathion is recommended for scabies, head lice and crab lice (see notes above). The risk of systemic effects associated with 1–2 applications of malathion is considered to be very low; however, except in the treatment of hyperkeratotic scabies (see notes above), applications of malathion liquid repeated at intervals of less than 1 week or application for more than 3 consecutive weeks should be avoided since the likelihood of eradication of lice is not increased.

Permethrin is effective for scabies. It is active against head lice but the formulation and licensed methods of application of the current products make them unsuitable for the treatment of head lice. Permethrin is also effective against crab lice but it is not licensed for this purpose in children under 18 years.

**DIMETICONE**

_Cautions_ avoid contact with eyes

_Side-effects_ skin irritation

_Licensed use_ not licensed for use in children under 6 months except under medical supervision

_Indication and dose_

**Head lice**

Rub into dry hair and scalp, allow to dry naturally, shampoo after 8 hours (or overnight); repeat application after 7 days

Hedrin® (Thornton & Ross)

_Lotion_ dimeticone 4%, net price 50 mL = £2.98, 120-mL spray pack = £7.13, 150 mL = £6.92

_Note_ Patients should be told to keep their hair away from fire and flames during treatment.
### MALATHION

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes; do not use on broken or secondarily infected skin; do not use lotion more than once a week for 3 consecutive weeks; alcoholic lotions not recommended for head lice in children with severe eczema or asthma, or for scabies or crab lice (see notes above)

**Side-effects** skin irritation and hypersensitivity reactions; chemical burns also reported

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 6 months except under medical supervision

**Indication and dose**

See notes above and under preparations

---

### PERMETHRIN

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes; do not use on broken or secondarily infected skin

**Side-effects** pruritus, erythema, and stinging; rarely rashes and oedema

**Licensed use** Dermal Cream (scabies), not licensed for use in children under 2 months; children aged 2 months–2 years, medical supervision required; not licensed for treatment of crab lice in children under 18 years; Creme Rinse (head lice) not licensed for use in children under 6 months except under medical supervision

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

---

### 13.10.5 Preparations for minor cuts and abrasions

**Permethrin** (Non-proprietary)

Cream, permethrin 5%, net price 30 g = £5.43

**Lyclear® Creme Rinse** (Chefaro UK)

Cream rinse, permethrin 1% in basis containing isopropyl alcohol 20%, net price 59 mL = £2.38, 2 x 59 mL pack = £4.32

**Excipients** include cetyl alcohol

**Note** Use not recommended, therefore no dose stated (product too diluted in use and insufficient contact time)

**Lyclear® Dermal Cream** (Chefaro UK)

Dermal cream, permethrin 5%, net price 30 g = £5.71.

Label: 10, patient information leaflet

**Excipients** include butylated hydroxytoluene, wool fat derivative

---

### 13.10.5 Preparations for minor cuts and abrasions

**Cetrimide** cream is used to treat minor cuts and abrasions. Proflavine cream may be used to treat infected wounds or burns, but has now been largely superseded by other antiseptics or suitable antibacterials.

**Cetrimide Cream, BP**

Cream, cetrimide 0.5% in a suitable water-miscible basis such as cetostearyl alcohol 5%, liquid paraffin 50% in freshly boiled and cooled purified water, net price 50 g = £1.11

**Proflavine Cream, BPC**

Cream, proflavine hemisulphate 0.1%, yellow beeswax 2.5%, chlorocresol 0.1%, liquid paraffin 67.3%, freshly boiled and cooled purified water 25%, wool fat 5%, net price 100 mL = £1.59

**Excipients** include beeswax, wool fat

**Note** Stains clothing

---

### Collodion

**Flexible collodion** may be used to seal minor cuts and wounds that have partially healed.

**Collodion, Flexible, BP**

Collodion, castor oil 2.5%, colophony 2.5% in a collodion basis, prepared by dissolving pyroxylin (10%) in a mixture of 3 volumes of ether and 1 volume of alcohol (90%), net price 10 mL = 38p. Label: 15

**Contra-indications** allergy to colophony in elastic adhesive preparations

---

### Skin tissue adhesive

Tissue adhesives are used for closure of minor skin wounds and for additional suture support. They should be applied by an appropriately trained healthcare professional. Skin tissue adhesives may cause skin sensitisation.

**Dermabond ProPen®** (Ethicon)

**Topical skin adhesive**, sterile, octyl 2-cyanoacrylate, net price 0.5 mL = £18.38

**Epiglu®** (Schuco)

**Tissue adhesive**, sterile, ethyl-2-cyanoacrylate 954.5 mg/g, polymethylmethacrylate, net price 4 x 3-g vials = £18.00 (with dispensing pipettes and pal- iete)
Soap or detergent is used with water to cleanse intact skin but they can irritate infantile skin; emollient preparations such as aqueous cream or emulsifying ointment (section 13.2.1) that do not irritate the skin are best used in place of soap or detergent for cleansing dry or irritated skin.

An antiseptic is used for skin that is infected or that is susceptible to recurrent infection. Detergent preparations containing chlorhexidine or povidone–iodine, which should be thoroughly rinsed off, are used. Emollients may also contain antiseptics (section 13.2.1). Antiseptics such as chlorhexidine or povidone–iodine are used on intact skin before surgical procedures; their antiseptic effect is enhanced by an alcoholic solvent. Antiseptic solutions containing cetrimide can be used if a detergent effect is also required.

Preparations containing alcohol and regular use of povidone iodine should be avoided on neonatal skin (see section 13.1). Hydrogen peroxide, an oxidising agent, is available as a cream and can be used for superficial bacterial skin infections.

For irrigating ulcers or wounds, lukewarm sterile sodium chloride 0.9% solution is used but tap water is often appropriate. Potassium permanganate solution 1 in 10 000, a mild antiseptic with astringent properties, can be used as a soak for exudative eczematous areas (section 13.5.1); treatment should be stopped when the skin becomes dry. Potassium permanganate can stain skin and nails especially with prolonged use.
Steripod Sodium Chloride (Medlock)
Solution (sterile), sodium chloride 0.9%, net price £7.57 per 20-mL sachet.

13.11.2 Chlorhexidine salts

**CHLORHEXIDINE**

**Cautions**
- Avoid contact with eyes, brain, meninges and middle ear;
- Not for use in body cavities;
- Alcoholic solutions not suitable before diathermy or for use on neonatal skin.

**Side-effects**
- Occasional sensitivity.

**Indication and dose**
- See under preparations.
- Bladder irrigation and catheter patency solutions (section 7.4.4).

Chlorhexidine 0.05% (Baxter)
2000 Solution (sterile), pink, chlorhexidine acetate 0.05%, net price 500 mL = 72p, 1000 mL = 77p.
- For cleansing and disinfecting wounds and burns.
- For use as skin wash in acne.

Lotion, blue, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.1%, net price 150 mL = £2.48.
- For skin disinfection in acne.

Chlorhexidine gluconate 2.5% (Ecolab)
Hydrex Solution, chlorhexidine gluconate solution 2.5% (= chlorhexidine gluconate 0.5%), in an alcoholic solution, net price 600 mL (clear) = £2.72; 600 mL (pink) = £2.72, 200-mL spray = £1.77, 500-mL spray = £3.01; 600 mL (blue) = £2.26.
- For pre-operative skin disinfection.

Surgical scrub, chlorhexidine gluconate 4% in a surfactant solution, net price 250 mL = £2.44, 500 mL = £2.58.
- For pre-operative hand and skin preparation and for general hand disinfection.

Unisept (Medlock)
Solution (sterile), pink, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.05%, net price 25 × 25-mL sachet = £5.40; 10 × 100-mL sachet = £6.67.
- For cleansing and disinfecting wounds and burns and swabbing in obstetrics.

**With cetrimide**

Tisept (Medlock)
Solution (sterile), yellow, chlorhexidine gluconate 0.015%, cetrimide 0.15%, net price 25 × 25-mL sachet = £5.20; 10 × 100-mL sachet = £6.68.
- To be used undiluted for general skin disinfection and wound cleansing.

Travasept 100 (Baxter)
Solution (sterile), yellow, chlorhexidine acetate 0.015%, cetrimide 0.15%, net price 500 mL = 72p, 1 litre = 77p.
- To be used undiluted in skin disinfection such as wound cleansing and obstetrics.

**Concentrates**

Hibitane Plus 5% Concentrate (Molnlycke)
Solution, red, chlorhexidine gluconate 5%, in a perfumed aqueous solution, net price 5 litres = £14.50.

**Dose**
- Pre-operative skin preparation: Dilute 1 in 10 (0.5%) with alcohol 70%.
- General skin disinfection: Dilute 1 in 100 (0.05%) with water.

**Note**
- Alcoholic solutions not suitable for use before diathermy (see Alcohol, p. 594) or on neonatal skin.

### 13.11.3 Cationic surfactants and soaps

**CETRIMIDE**

**Cautions**
- Avoid contact with eyes; avoid use in body cavities.

**Side-effects**
- Skin irritation and occasionally sensitisation.

**Indication and dose**
- Skin disinfection.

**Preparations**
- Ingredient of Tisept and Travasept 100, see above.
13.11.4 Iodine

POVIDONE–IODINE

Cautions
broken skin (see below)
Large open wounds The application of povidone–iodine to large wounds or severe burns may produce systemic adverse effects such as metabolic acidosis, hypernatraemia, and impairment of renal function
Contra-indications
preterm neonate gestational age under 32 weeks; infants body-weight under 1.5 kg; regular use in neonates; thyroid disorders; concomitant lithium treatment
Renal impairment avoid regular application to inflamed or broken skin or mucosa
Pregnancy sufficient iodine may be absorbed to affect the fetal thyroid in the second and third trimester
Breast-feeding avoid regular or excessive use
Side-effects rarely sensitivity; may interfere with thyroid function tests
Indication and dose
Skin disinfection see preparations
Betadine® (Mölnlycke)
Dry powder spray, povidone–iodine 2.5% in a pressurised aerosol unit, net price 150-g unit = £2.63
For skin disinfection, particularly minor wounds and infections; child under 2 years not recommended
Note Not for use in serous cavities
Savlon® Dry (Novartis Consumer Health)
Powder spray, povidone–iodine 1.14% in a pressurised aerosol unit, net price 50-mL unit = £2.39
For minor wounds
Videne® (Ecolab)
Alcoholic tincture, povidone–iodine 10%, net price 500 mL = £3.46
Dose
Apply undiluted in pre-operative skin disinfection
Note Flammable—caution in procedures involving hot wire cautery and diathermy; avoid use in neonates
Antiseptic solution, povidone–iodine 10% in aqueous solution, net price 500 mL = £3.46
Dose
Apply undiluted in pre-operative skin disinfection and general antisepsis
Surgical scrub, povidone–iodine 7.5% in aqueous solution, net price 500 mL = £3.46
Dose
Use as a pre-operative scrub for hand and skin disinfection

13.11.5 Phenolics

Triclosan has been used for disinfection of the hands and wounds, and for disinfection of the skin before surgery.

13.11.6 Oxidisers and dyes

HYDROGEN PEROXIDE

Cautions
large or deep wounds; avoid on healthy skin and eyes; bleaches fabric; incompatible with products containing iodine or potassium permanganate
Licensed use licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)
Indication and dose
Superficial bacterial skin infection see under preparation below
Crystacide® (GP Pharma)
Cream, hydrogen peroxide 1%, net price 25 g = £8.07, 40 g = £11.62
Dose
Superficial bacterial skin infection
Apply 2–3 times daily for up to 3 weeks
Excipients include edetic acid (EDTA), propylene glycol
POTASSIUM PERMANGANATE

Cautions
irritant to mucous membranes
Indication and dose
Cleansing and deodorising suppurring eczematous reactions (section 13.5.1) and wounds
For wet dressings or baths, use approx. 0.01% (1 in 10 000) solution
Note
Stains skin and clothing
Potassium Permanganate Solution
Solution, potassium permanganate 0.1% (1 in 1000) in water
Note to be diluted 1 in 10 to provide a 0.01% (1 in 10 000) solution
Permitabs® (Alliance)
Solution tablets, for preparation of topical solution, potassium permanganate 400 mg, net price 30-tab pack = £9.85
Note 1 tablet dissolved in 4 litres of water provides a 0.01% (1 in 10 000) solution

13.11.7 Preparations for promotion of wound healing

Desloughing agents Alginate, hydrogel, and hydrocolloid dressings (see BNF appendix on wound management) are effective in wound debridement. Sterile larvae (maggots) (LarvE®, Zoobiotic) are also used for managing sloughing wounds and are prescribable on the NHS.

Desloughing solutions and creams are of little clinical value. Substances applied to an open area are easily absorbed and perilesional skin is easily sensitised.

Growth factor A topical preparation of becaplermin (recombinant human platelet-derived growth factor) is used as an adjunct treatment of full-thickness, neuropathic, diabetic ulcers. It enhances the formulation of granulation tissue, thereby promoting wound healing.
For further information on wound management products and elastic hosiery, see the relevant BNF appendix.

**BECAPLERMIN**
(Recombinant human platelet-derived growth factor)

**Cautions** avoid on sites with infection or peripheral arteriopathy

**Contra-indications** malignant disease

**Side-effects** pain; infections including cellulitis and osteomyelitis, local reactions including erythema; rarely bullous eruption, oedema, and hypertrophic granulation

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children

**Indication and dose**
Full-thickness, neuropathic, diabetic ulcers (no larger than 5 cm²)
Apply thin layer daily and cover with gauze dressing moistened with physiological saline; max. duration of treatment 20 weeks (reassess if no healing after first 10 weeks)

**Regranex**
(Janssen)

A Gel, becaplermin (recombinant human platelet-derived growth factor) 0.01%, net price 15 g = £240.92

**Excipients** include hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

**ALUMINIUM SALTS**

**Cautions** avoid contact with eyes or mucous membranes; avoid use on broken or irritated skin; do not shave axillae or use depilatories within 12 hours of application; avoid contact with clothing

**Side-effects** skin irritation

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**
Hyperhidrosis affecting axillae, hands or feet
Apply liquid formulation at night to dry skin, wash off the following morning, initially apply daily then reduce frequency as condition improves—do not bathe immediately before use

**Anhydrol® Forte** (Dermal)

**Solution** (= application), aluminium chloride hexahydrate 20% in an alcoholic basis, net price 60-mL bottle with roll-on applicator = £2.51. Label: 15

**Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

**‘Driclor’** (Stiefel)

**Application**, aluminium chloride hexahydrate 20% in an alcoholic basis, net price 75-mL bottle with roll-on applicator = £2.01. Label: 15

**Excipients** none as listed in section 13.1.3

1. A 30-mL pack is on sale to the public

**Glycopyrronium Bromide**

**Cautions** see section 15.1.3 (but poorly absorbed and systemic effects unlikely)

**Contra-indications** see section 15.1.3 (but poorly absorbed and systemic effects unlikely), infections affecting the treatment site

**Side-effects** see section 15.1.3 (but poorly absorbed and systemic effects unlikely), tingling at administration site

**Licensed use** licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer)

**Indication and dose**
Iontophoretic treatment of hyperhidrosis
Consult product literature; only 1 site to be treated at a time, max. 2 sites treated in any 24 hours, treatment not to be repeated within 7 days

**Other indications** section 15.1.3

**Robinul**
(Goldshield)

**Powder**, glycopyrronium bromide, net price 3 g = £175.00

**13.12 Antiperspirants**

**Aluminium chloride** is a potent antiperspirant used in the treatment of axillary, palmar, and plantar hyperhidrosis. Aluminium salts are also incorporated in preparations used for minor fungal skin infections associated with hyperhidrosis.

In more severe cases specialists use tap water or glycopyrronium bromide (as a 0.05% solution) in the iontophoretic treatment of hyperhidrosis of palms and soles.

**Botox** contains botulinum toxin type A complex (section 4.9.3) and is available for use intradermally for severe hyperhidrosis of the axillae unresponsive to topical antiperspirant or other antihidrotic treatment; intradermal treatment is unlikely to be tolerated by most children and should be administered under hospital specialist supervision.

**13.13 Topical circulatory preparations**

These preparations are used to improve circulation in conditions such as bruising and superficial thrombophlebitis but are of little value. First aid measures such as rest, ice, compression, and elevation should be used. Topical preparations containing heparinoids should not be used on large areas of skin, broken or sensitive skin, or mucous membranes. Chilblains are best managed by avoidance of exposure to cold; neither systemic nor topical vasodilator therapy is established as being effective.
Hirudoid® (Genus) Cream, heparinoid 0.3% in a vanishing-cream basis, net price 50 g = £3.99

**Excipients** include cetostearyl alcohol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

**Dose**

- **Superficial thrombophlebitis, bruising, and haematoma**
  - **Child 5–18 years** apply up to 4 times daily

**Gel**, heparinoid 0.3%, net price 50 g = £3.99

**Excipients** include propylene glycol, fragrance

**Dose**

- **Superficial thrombophlebitis, bruising, and haematoma**
  - **Child 5–18 years** apply up to 4 times daily
Active immunity can be acquired by natural disease or by vaccination. Vaccines stimulate production of antibodies and other components of the immune mechanism; they consist of either:

1. a **live attenuated** form of a virus (e.g. measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine) or bacteria (e.g. BCG vaccine), or
2. **inactivated** preparations of a virus (e.g. influenza vaccine) or bacteria, or
3. **detoxified** exotoxins produced by a micro-organism (e.g. tetanus vaccine), or
4. **extracts** of a micro-organism, which may be derived from the organism (e.g. pneumococcal vaccine) or produced by recombinant DNA technology (e.g. hepatitis B vaccine).

**Live attenuated vaccines** usually produce durable immunity but not always as long-lasting as that resulting from natural infection.

**Inactivated vaccines** may require a primary series of injections of vaccine to produce an adequate antibody response, and in most cases booster (reinforcing) injections are required; the duration of immunity varies from months to many years. Some inactivated vaccines are adsorbed onto an adjuvant (such as aluminium hydroxide) to enhance the antibody response.

### 14.5 Immunoglobulins

#### 14.5.1 Normal Immunoglobulin

#### 14.5.2 Disease-specific immunoglobulins

- Anti-D (Rh0) immunoglobulin

#### 14.5.3 Anti-D (Rh0) immunoglobulin

### 14.6 International travel

**Active immunity**

Active immunity can be acquired by natural disease or by vaccination. Vaccines stimulate production of antibodies and other components of the immune mechanism; they consist of either:

1. a **live attenuated** form of a virus (e.g. measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine) or bacteria (e.g. BCG vaccine), or
2. **inactivated** preparations of a virus (e.g. influenza vaccine) or bacteria, or
3. **detoxified** exotoxins produced by a micro-organism (e.g. tetanus vaccine), or
4. **extracts** of a micro-organism, which may be derived from the organism (e.g. pneumococcal vaccine) or produced by recombinant DNA technology (e.g. hepatitis B vaccine).

**Live attenuated vaccines** usually produce durable immunity but not always as long-lasting as that resulting from natural infection.

**Inactivated vaccines** may require a primary series of injections of vaccine to produce an adequate antibody response, and in most cases booster (reinforcing) injections are required; the duration of immunity varies from months to many years. Some inactivated vaccines are adsorbed onto an adjuvant (such as aluminium hydroxide) to enhance the antibody response.

### Cautions

Most children can safely receive the majority of vaccines. Vaccination may be postponed if the child is suffering from an acute illness; however, it is not necessary to postpone immunisation in children with minor illnesses without fever or systemic upset. See also Pre-disposition to Neurological Problems, below. For individuals with bleeding disorders, see Route of Administration, below. If alcohol or disinfectant is used for cleansing the skin it should be allowed to evaporate before vaccination to prevent possible inactivation of live vaccines.

When 2 or more vaccines are required (and are not available as a combined preparation), they should be given simultaneously at different sites, preferably in a different limb; if more than one injection is to be given in the same limb, they should be administered at least 2.5 cm apart (but see also BCG Vaccines, p. 603). When 2 live vaccines cannot be given at the same time, they should be separated by an interval of at least 4 weeks. For interactions see Appendix I (vaccines).

**See also** Cautions under individual vaccines.

### Contra-indications

Vaccines are contra-indicated in children who have a confirmed anaphylactic reaction to a preceding dose of a vaccine containing the same antigens or vaccine component (such as antibacterials in viral vaccines). The presence of the following excipients in vaccines and immunological products has been noted under the relevant entries:

- Gelatin
- Neomycin
- Streptomycin
- Gentamicin
- Penicillins
- Neomycin
- Polymyxin B
- Thiomersal

**Hypersensitivity to egg** with evidence of previous anaphylactic reaction, contra-indicates influenza vaccine (prepared in hens’ eggs), tick-borne encephalitis vaccine, and yellow fever vaccine. See also Cautions under MMR vaccine.

See also Vaccines and HIV infection, below.

**Live vaccines may be contra-indicated temporarily in children who are:**

- immuno-suppressed (see Impaired Immune Response, below);
- pregnant (see Pregnancy and Breast-feeding, below).

**See also** Contra-indications under individual vaccines.

### Impaired immune response

Immune response to vaccines may be reduced in immunosuppressed children and there is also a risk of generalised infection with live vaccines. Severely immunosuppressed children should not be given live vaccines (including those with severe primary immunodeficiency). Specialist advice should be sought for children being treated with high doses of corticosteroids (dose equivalents of prednisolone: children, 2 mg/kg (or more than 40 mg) daily for at least 1 week or 1 mg/kg daily for 1 month), or other immuno-
14.1 Active immunity

suppressiv drugs\(^1\), and for children with malignant conditions undergoing chemotherapy or generalised radiotherapy\(^2\). For special reference to \textit{HIV infection}, see below.


\textbf{Predisposition to neurological problems}

When there is a personal or family history of \textit{febrile convulsions}, there is an increased risk of these occurring during fever from any cause including immunisation, but this is not a contra-indication to immunisation. In children who have had a seizure associated with fever without neurological deterioration, immunisation is recommended; advice on the management of fever (see Post-immunisation Pyrexia in Infants, below) should be given before immunisation. When a child has had a convulsion not associated with fever, and the neurological condition is not deteriorating, immunisation is recommended.

Children with stable neurological disorders (e.g. spina bifida, congenital brain abnormality, and peri-natal hypoxic-ischaemic encephalopathy) should be immunised according to the recommended schedule.

When there is a \textit{still evolving neurological problem}, including poorly controlled epilepsy, immunisation should be deferred and the child referred to a specialist. Immunisation is recommended if a cause for the neurological disorder is identified. If a cause is not identified, immunisation should be deferred until the condition is stable.

\textbf{Post-immunisation pyrexia in infants}

The parent should be advised that if pyrexia develops after childhood immunisation and the infant seems distressed, a dose of paracetamol can be given and, if necessary, a second dose can be given 6 hours later; ibuprofen may be used if paracetamol is unsuitable. The parent should be warned to seek medical advice if the pyrexia persists.

For post-immunisation pyrexia in an infant aged 2–3 months, the dose of paracetamol is 60 mg; the dose of ibuprofen is 50 mg (on a doctor’s advice). An oral syringe can be obtained from any pharmacy to give the small volume required.

Further information on adverse effects associated with specific vaccines can be found under individual vaccines.

\textbf{Vaccines and HIV infection}

\textit{HIV-positive} children with or without symptoms can receive the following live vaccines:

- \textit{MMR} (but avoid if immunity significantly impaired), varicella-zoster (but avoid if immunity significantly impaired—consult product literature);\(^3\)

and the following inactivated vaccines:


\textit{HIV-positive} children should not receive:

- \textit{BCG}, \textit{typhoid} (oral), \textit{yellow fever}\(^4\)

\textbf{Note}

\textit{The above advice differs from that for other immuno-compromised children. Immunisation of HIV-infected Children issued by Children’s HIV Association (CHIVA) are available at www.chiva.org.uk.}

\textbf{Breast-feeding}

Although there is a theoretical risk of live vaccine being present in breast milk, vaccination is not contra-indicated for women who are breast-feeding when there is significant risk of exposure to disease. There is no evidence of risk from vaccinating pregnant women with inactivated viral or bacterial vaccines or toxoids. For use of specific vaccines during pregnancy, see under individual vaccines.

\textbf{Side-effects}

Injection of a vaccine may be followed by local reactions such as pain, inflammation, redness, and lymphangitis. An induration or sterile abscess may develop at the injection site. Gastro-intestinal disturbances such as nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and cramps, and diarrhoea.

Disturbances such as fever, headache, irritability, loss of appetite, fatigue, myalgia, and malaise are among the most commonly reported side-effects. Other side-effects include fever, rash, and lymphadenopathy. Hypersensitivity reactions, such as bronchospasm, angioedema, urticaria, and anaphylaxis, are very rare but can be fatal (see section 3.4.3 for management of allergic emergencies).

\textbf{Oral} vaccines, such as cholera, live poliomyelitis, rotavirus, and live typhoid, can also cause gastro-intestinal disturbances such as nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and cramps, and diarrhoea.

See also Preterm Birth, p. 601.

\textit{Note}

1. Live vaccines should be postponed until at least 3 months after stopping high-dose systemic corticosteroids and at least 6 months after stopping other immunosuppressive drugs or generalised radiotherapy (at least 12 months after discontinuing immunosuppressants following bone-marrow transplantation).

2. Use of normal immunoglobulin should be considered after exposure to measles (see p 623) and varicella–zoster immunoglobulin considered after exposure to chickenpox or herpes zoster (see p 625).

3. Inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine is now used instead of oral poliomyelitis vaccine for routine immunisation of children.

4. If yellow fever virus is unavoidable, specialist advice should be sought.
**Immunisation schedule**

Vaccines for the childhood immunisation schedule should be obtained from local health organisations or from ImmForm (www.immform.dh.gov.uk)—not to be prescribed on FP10 (HS21 in Northern Ireland; GP10 in Scotland; WP10 in Wales).

**Preterm birth**

Babies born preterm should receive all routine immunisations based on their actual date of birth. The risk of apnoea following vaccination is increased in preterm babies, particularly in those born at or before 28 weeks postmenstrual age. If babies at risk of apnoea are in hospital at the time of their first immunisation, they should be monitored for 48 hours after immunisation. If a baby develops apnoea, bradycardia, or desaturation after the first immunisation, the second immunisation should also be given in hospital with similar monitoring. Seroconversion may be unreliable in babies born earlier than 28 weeks’ gestation or in babies treated with corticosteroids for chronic lung disease; consideration should be given to testing for antibodies against *Haemophilus influenzae* (type b), meningococcal C, and hepatitis B after primary immunisation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When to immunise (for pre-mature infants—see note above)</th>
<th>Vaccine given and dose schedule (for details of dose, see under individual vaccines)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonates at risk only</strong></td>
<td>Vaccines given and dose schedule (for details of dose, see under individual vaccines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BCG Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See section 14.4, BCG Vaccines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatitis B Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See section 14.4, Hepatitis B Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 months</td>
<td>Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component), Poliomyelitis (Inactivated), and Haemophilus Type b Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pneumococcal Polysaccharide Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component), Poliomyelitis (Inactivated), and Haemophilus Type b Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meningococcal Group C Conjugate Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 months</td>
<td>Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component), Poliomyelitis (Inactivated), and Haemophilus Type b Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meningococcal Group C Conjugate Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pneumococcal Polysaccharide Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 –13 months</td>
<td>Measles, Mumps and Rubella Vaccine, Live (MMR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pneumococcal Polysaccharide Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single booster dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haemophilus Type b Conjugate Vaccine and Meningococcal Group C Conjugate Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single booster dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between 3 years and 4 months, and 5 years</td>
<td>Adsorbed Diphtheria (low dose), Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component) and Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adsorbed Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component) and Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single booster dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: Preferably allow interval of at least 3 years after completing primary course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Measles, Mumps and Rubella Vaccine, Live (MMR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12–13 years (females only)</td>
<td>Human Papilloma Virus Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 doses; second dose 1–2 months, and third dose 6 months after first dose¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13–18 years</td>
<td>Adsorbed Diphtheria (low dose), Tetanus, and Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) Vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single booster dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During adult life, women of child-bearing age susceptible to rubella</td>
<td>Measles, Mumps and Rubella Vaccine, Live (MMR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Women of child-bearing age who have not received 2 doses of a rubella-containing vaccine or who do not have a positive antibody test for rubella should be offered rubella immunisation (using the MMR vaccine)—exclude pregnancy before immunisation, but see also section 14.4, Measles, Mumps and Rubella Vaccine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The two human papilloma virus vaccines are not interchangeable and one vaccine product should be used for the entire course; however, Department of Health (November 2008) states for individuals with previous incomplete vaccination with *Gardasil*®, who are eligible for HPV vaccination under the national programme, *Cervarix*® can be used to complete the vaccination course if necessary; the individual must be informed that *Cervarix*® does not protect against genital warts.
Vaccines and asplenia

The following vaccines are recommended for asplenic children or those with splenic dysfunction:

- Haemophilus influenzae type b
- Influenza
- Meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate
- Pneumococcal

For antibiotic prophylaxis in asplenia see p. 255.

Route of administration

Vaccines should not be given intravenously. Most vaccines are given by the intramuscular route; some vaccines are given by other routes—the intradermal route for BCG vaccine, deep subcutaneous route for Japanese encephalitis and variella vaccines, and the oral route for cholera, live poliovirus, rotavirus, and live typhoid vaccines. The intramuscular route should not be used in children with bleeding disorders such as haemophilia or thrombocytopenia; vaccines usually given by the intramuscular route should be given by deep subcutaneous injection instead.

Note

The Department of Health has advised against the use of jet guns for vaccination owing to the risk of transmitting blood-borne infections, such as HIV.

High-risk groups

For information on high-risk groups, see section 14.4 under individual vaccines

BCG Vaccines, p. 603
Hepatitis A Vaccine, p. 607
Hepatitis B Vaccine, p. 608
Influenza Vaccine, p. 611
Pneumococcal Vaccines, p. 616
Tetanus Vaccines, p. 619

Children with unknown or incomplete immunisation history

For children born in the UK who present with an inadequate or unknown immunisation history, investigation into immunisations received should be carried out. Outstanding doses should be administered where the routine childhood immunisation schedule has not been completed.

For advice on the immunisation of children coming to the UK, consult the handbook Immunisation against Infectious Disease (2006) (available at www.dh.gov.uk)

14.2 Passive immunity

Immunity with immediate protection against certain infectious diseases can be obtained by injecting preparations made from the plasma of immune individuals with adequate levels of antibody to the disease for which protection is sought (see under Immunoglobulins, section 14.5). The duration of this passive immunity varies according to the dose and the type of immunoglobulin. Passive immunity may last only a few weeks; when necessary, passive immunisation can be repeated.

Antibodies of human origin are usually termed immunoglobulins. The term antiserum is applied to material prepared in animals. Because of serum sickness and other allergic-type reactions that may follow injections of antisera, this therapy has been replaced whenever possible by the use of immunoglobulins. Reactions are theoretically possible after injection of human immunoglobulins, but reports of such reactions are very rare.

14.3 Storage and use

Care must be taken to store all vaccines and other immunological products under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. Refrigerated storage is usually necessary; many vaccines and immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Vaccines and immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Reconstituted vaccines and opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature. Unused vaccines should be disposed of by incineration at a registered disposal contractor.

Particular attention must be paid to instructions on the use of diluents. Vaccines which are liquid suspensions or are reconstituted before use should be adequately mixed to ensure uniformity of the material to be injected.

14.4 Vaccines and antisera

Availability

Anthrax and yellow fever vaccines, botulism antitoxin, diphtheria antitoxin, and snake and spider venom antitoxins are available from local designated holding centres.

For antivenom, see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 34.

Enquiries for vaccines not available commercially can also be made to:

- Immunisation Policy, Monitoring and Surveillance Department of Health
- Wellington House
- 133–155 Waterloo Road
- London, SE1 8UG
- vaccine.supply@dh.gsi.gov.uk

In Scotland information about availability of vaccines can be obtained from a Specialist in Pharmaceutical Public Health. In Wales enquiries for vaccines not commercially available should be directed to:

- Welsh Medicines Information Centre
- University Hospital of Wales
- Cardiff, CF14 4XW
- Tel: (029) 2074 2979
- and in Northern Ireland:
- Pharmacy and Medicines Management Centre
- Beech House
- Antrim Hospital Site
- Northern Health and Social Care Trust
- Bush Road
- Antrim, BT41 2RL
- rphps.admin@northerntrust.hscni.net

For further details of availability, see under individual vaccines.
Anthrax vaccine

Anthrax vaccine is rarely required for children. For further information see BNF section 14.4.

BCG vaccines

BCG (Bacillus Calmette-Guérin) is a live attenuated strain derived from Mycobacterium bovis which stimulates the development of hypersensitivity to M. tuberculosis. BCG vaccine should be given intradermally by operators skilled in the technique (see below).

The expected reaction to successful BCG vaccination is induration at the site of injection followed by a local lesion which starts as a papule 2 or more weeks after vaccination; the lesion may ulcerate then subside over several weeks or months, leaving a small flat scar. A dry dressing may be used if the ulcer discharges, but air should not be excluded.

All children of 6 years and over being considered for BCG immunisation must first be given a skin test for hypersensitivity to tuberculoprotein (see under Diagnostic agents, below). A skin test is not necessary for a child under 6 years, provided that the child has not stayed for longer than 3 months in a country with an incidence\(^1\) of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000, the child has not had contact with a person with tuberculosis, and there is no family history of tuberculosis within the last 5 years.

BCG is recommended for the following groups of children if BCG immunisation has not previously been carried out and they are negative for tuberculoprotein hypersensitivity:

- neonates with a family history of tuberculosis in the last 5 years;
- all neonates and infants (0–12 months) born in areas where the incidence\(^1\) of tuberculosis is greater than 40 per 100 000;
- neonates, infants, and children under 16 years with a parent or grandparent born in a country with an incidence\(^2\) of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000;
- new immigrants aged under 16 years who were born in, or lived for more than 3 months in a country with an incidence\(^1\) of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000;
- new immigrants aged 16–18 years from Sub-Saharan Africa or a country\(^2\) with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 500 per 100 000;
- contacts of those with active respiratory tuberculosis;
- children under 16 years intending to live with local people for more than 3 months in a country with an incidence\(^3\) of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000 (section 14.6).

BCG vaccine can be given simultaneously with another live vaccine (see also section 14.1), but if they are not given at the same time, an interval of 4 weeks should normally be allowed between them. When BCG is given to infants, there is no need to delay routine primary immunisations. No further vaccination should be given in the arm used for BCG vaccination for at least 3 months because of the risk of regional lymphadenitis.

For advice on chemoprophylaxis against tuberculosis, see section 5.1.9; for treatment of infection following vaccination, seek expert advice.

### BACILLUS CALMETTE-GUÉRIN VACCINE

#### BCG vaccine

**Cautions** see section 14.1; **Interactions:** Appendix 1 (vaccines)

**Contra-indications** see section 14.1; also neonate in household contact with known or suspected case of active tuberculosis; generalised septic skin conditions (for children with eczema, lesion-free site should be used);

**Pregnancy** see p. 600

**Breast-feeding** see p. 600

**Side-effects** see section 14.1 and notes above; also at the injection-site, subcutaneous abscess, prolonged ulceration; rarely disseminated complications such as osteitis or osteomyelitis

#### Indications and dose

**Immunisation against tuberculosis**

- **By intradermal injection**
  - **Neonate** 0.05 mL
  - **Child 1 month–1 year** 0.05 mL
  - **Child 1–18 years** 0.1 mL

**Intradermal injection technique** Skin is stretched between thumb and forefinger and needle (size 25G or 26G) inserted (bevel upwards) for about 3 mm into superficial layers of dermis (almost parallel with surface). Needle should be short with short bevel (can usually be seen through epidermis during insertion). Tense raised blanched bleb showing tips of hair follicles is sign of correct injection; 7 mm bleb = 0.1 mL injection; 3 mm bleb = 0.05 mL injection; if considerable resistance not felt, needle is too deep and should be removed and reinserted before giving more vaccine.

To be injected at insertion of deltoid muscle onto humerus (keloid formation more likely with sites higher on arm); tip of shoulder should be avoided.

**Intradermal Bacillus Calmette-Guérin Vaccine**

**BCG Vaccine, Dried/Tub/BCG**

**Injection,** (powder for suspension), freeze-dried preparation of live bacteria of a strain derived from the bacillus of Calmette and Guérin

Available from health organisations or from ImmForm (SSI brand, multidose vial with diluent)

### Diagnostic agents

**The Mantoux test** is recommended for tuberculin skin testing, but no licensed preparation is currently available. Guidance for healthcare professionals is available at www.dh.gov.uk/immunisation.

In the Mantoux test, the diagnostic dose is administered by intradermal injection of Tuberculin Purified Protein Derivative (PPD).

**The Heaf test** (involving the use of multiple-puncture apparatus) is no longer available.

Note Response to tuberculin may be suppressed by live viral vaccines, viral infection, sarcoidosis, corticosteroid therapy, or immunosuppression due to disease or treatment. Tuberculin testing should not be carried out within 4 weeks of receiving a live viral vaccine.

---

1. List of countries or primary care trusts where the incidence of tuberculosis is greater than 40 cases per 100 000 is available at www.hpa.org.uk
Two interferon gamma release assay (IGRA) tests are also available as an aid in the diagnosis of tuberculosis infection: QuantiFERON®-TB Gold and T-SPOT®.TB. Both tests measure T-cell mediated immune response to synthetic antigens. For further information on the use of interferon gamma release assay tests for tuberculosis, see www.hpa.org.uk.

**Botulism antitoxin**

A polyvalent botulism antitoxin is available for the post-exposure prophylaxis of botulism and for the treatment of children thought to be suffering from botulism. It specifically neutralises the toxins produced by *Clostridium botulinum* types A, B, and E. It is not effective against infantile botulism as the toxin (type A) is seldom, if ever, found in the blood in this type of infection. Hypersensitivity reactions are a problem. It is essential to read the contra-indications, warnings, and details of sensitivity tests on the package insert. Prior to treatment checks should be made regarding previous administration of any antitoxin and history of any allergic condition, e.g. asthma, hay fever, etc. All children should be tested for sensitivity (diluting the antitoxin if necessary) and is no longer available in the UK.

**Dose**

**Mantoux test**
- By intradermal injection
  - 2 units (0.1 mL of 20 units/mL strength) for routine Mantoux test; if first test is negative and a further test is considered appropriate 10 units (0.1 mL of 100 units/mL strength)

Available from ImmForm (SSI brand)

Important The strength of tuberculin PPD in this product may be different to the strengths of products used previously for the Mantoux test, care is required to select the correct strength

**Diphtheria vaccines**

Diphtheria vaccines are prepared from the toxin of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and adsorption on aluminium hydroxide or aluminium phosphate improves antigenicity. The vaccine stimulates the production of the protective antitoxin. The quantity of diphtheria antitoxin produced in Inaba strains of *V. cholerae*, serotype O1.

**Injectable cholera vaccine** provides unreliable protection and is no longer available in the UK.

**CHOLERA VACCINE**

**Cautions** see section 14.1 and notes above

**Contra-indications** see section 14.1; also acute gastrointestinal illness

**Pregnancy** see p. 600

**Breast-feeding** see p. 600

**Side-effects** see section 14.1; also rarely respiratory symptoms such as rhinitis and cough; very rarely sore throat, insomnia

**Indication and dose**

See notes above

**By mouth**
- Child 2–6 years 3 doses each separated by an interval of 1–6 weeks
- Child 6–18 years 2 doses separated by an interval of 1–6 weeks

**Note** If more than 6 weeks have elapsed between doses, the primary course should be restarted

A single booster dose can be given 2 years after primary course for children 6–18 years, and 6 months after primary course for children 2–6 years. If more than 2 years have elapsed since the last vaccination, the primary course should be repeated

**Administration** Dissolve effervescent sodium bicarbonate granules in a glassful of water (approximately 150 mL). For child over 6 years, add vaccine suspension to make one dose. Drink within 2 hours. Food, drink and other oral medicines should be avoided for 1 hour before and after vaccination

**Dukoral® (Crucell)**

**Oral suspension**, for dilution with solution of effervescent sodium bicarbonate granules, heat- and formaldehyde-inactivated Inaba (including El-Tor biotype) and Ogawa strains of *Vibrio cholerae* bacteria and recombinant cholera toxin B-subunit produced in *V. cholerae*, net price 2-dose pack = £23.42. For supplies inside working hours apply to other designated centres or to the duty doctor at the Health Protection Agency (Tel (020) 8200 6868). For major incidents, obtain supplies from the local blood bank

**Diphtheria vaccines**

Diphtheria vaccines are prepared from the toxin of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and adsorption on aluminium hydroxide or aluminium phosphate improves antigenicity. The vaccine stimulates the production of the protective antitoxin. The quantity of diphtheria antitoxin produced in Inaba strains of *V. cholerae*, serotype O1.
toxoid in a preparation determines whether the vaccine is defined as ‘high dose’ or ‘low dose’. Vaccines containing the higher dose of diphtheria toxoid are used for primary immunisation of children under 10 years of age. Vaccines containing the lower dose of diphtheria toxoid are used for primary immunisation in children over 10 years. Single-antigen diphtheria vaccine is not available and adsorbed diphtheria vaccine is given as a combination product containing other vaccines.

For primary immunisation of children aged between 2 months and 10 years vaccination is recommended usually in the form of 3 doses (separated by 1-month intervals) of diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (acellular component), poliomyelitis (inactivated) and haemophilus type b conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1). In unimmunised children aged over 10 years the primary course comprises of 3 doses of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine. A booster dose should be given 3 years after the primary course (this interval can be reduced to a minimum of 1 year if the primary course was delayed). Children under 10 years should receive either adsorbed diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component) and poliomyelitis (inactivated vaccine) or adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component) and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine. Children aged over 10 years should receive adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus, and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine. A second booster dose, of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated vaccine), should be given 10 years after the previous booster dose (this interval can be reduced to a minimum of 3 years if previous doses were delayed). For children who have been vaccinated following a tetanus-prone wound, see Tetanus vaccines, p. 619.

Travel Children travelling to areas with a risk of diphtheria infection should be fully immunised according to the UK schedule (see also section 14.6). If more than 10 years have lapsed since completion of the UK schedule, a dose of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated vaccine) should be administered.

Contacts Advice on the management of cases of diphtheria, carriers, contacts and outbreaks must be sought from health protection units. The immunisation history of infected children and their contacts should be determined; those who have been incompletely immunised should complete their immunisation and fully immunised individuals should receive a reinforcing dose. For advice on antibiotic treatment to prevent a secondary case of diphtheria in a non-immune child, see Table 2, section 5.1.

14.4 Vaccines and antisera 605

Licensed use

Infanrix-IPV + Hib® not licensed for use in children over 36 months; Pediacell® not licensed in children over 4 years but Department of Health recommends that these be used for children up to 10 years

Indication and dose

See notes above and under preparations

Diphtheria-containing vaccines for children under 10 years

Important Not recommended for children aged 10 years or over (see Diphtheria vaccines for children over 10)

Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular Component), Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) and Haemophilus Type b Conjugate Vaccine (Adsorbed)

Injection, suspension of diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, acellular pertussis, inactivated poliomyelitis and Haemophilus influenzae type b (conjugated to tetanus protein), net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £19.94

Excipients may include neomycin, polymyxin B and streptomycin

Dose

Primary immunisation

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 2 months–10 years 3 doses each of 0.5-mL, separated by intervals of 1 month; see also notes on booster doses, above

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule, from health organisations or ImmForm

Brands include Infanrix-IPV®

Adsorbed Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component) and Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) Vaccine

Injection, suspension of diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, acellular pertussis and inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine components adsorbed on a mineral carrier, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £17.56

Excipients may include neomycin and polymyxin B

Dose

First booster dose

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 3–10 years 0.5 mL 3 years after primary immunisation, see also notes on booster doses, above

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule, from health organisations or ImmForm

Brands include Infanrix-IPV®

Adsorbed Diphtheria [low dose], Tetanus, Pertussis (Acellular, Component) and Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) Vaccine

Injection, suspension of diphtheria toxoid [low dose], tetanus toxoid, acellular pertussis and inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine components adsorbed on a mineral carrier, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £11.98

Excipients may include neomycin, polymyxin B and streptomycin

Dose

First booster dose

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 3–10 years 0.5 mL 3 years after primary immunisation, see also notes on booster doses, above

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule, from health organisations or ImmForm

Brands include Bipex®
Immunological products and vaccines

14.4 Vaccines and antisera

Diphtheria-containing vaccines for children over 10 years

A low dose of diphtheria toxoid is sufficient to recall immunity in older children previously immunised against diphtheria but whose immunity may have diminished with time; it is insufficient to cause serious reactions in a child who is already immune. Preparations containing low dose diphtheria should be used for children over 10 years, both for primary immunisation and booster doses.

Adsorbed Diphtheria [low dose], Tetanus and Poliomyelitis (Inactivated) Vaccine (DTP)

Injection, suspension of diphtheria toxoid [low dose], tetanus toxoid and inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine components adsorbed on a mineral carrier, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £6.35

Excipients may include neomycin, polymyxin B and streptomycin.

Dose

- Primary immunisation
  - Child 10–18 years: 3 doses each of 0.5 mL separated by intervals of 1 month; second booster dose, 0.5 mL given 10 years after first booster dose (may also be used as first booster dose in those over 10 years who have received only 3 previous doses of a diphtheria-containing vaccine); see also notes on booster doses, above.

Availability: Available as part of childhood schedule, from health organisations or InnForm.

Brands include: Revax®

Diphtheria antitoxin

Diphtheria antitoxin is used for passive immunisation in suspected cases of diphtheria only (without waiting for bacteriological confirmation); tests for hypersensitivity should be first carried out. It is derived from horse serum, and reactions are common after administration; resuscitation facilities should be available immediately.

It is no longer used for prophylaxis because of the risk of hypersensitivity; unimmunised contacts should be promptly investigated and given antibacterial prophylaxis (Table 2, section 5.1) and vaccine (see Contacts above, p. 605).

Diphtheria Antitoxin (DTP)

Dose

Prophylaxis

Not recommended therefore no dose stated (see notes above)

Treatment

Consult product literature

Available from Centre for Infections (Tel (020) 8200 6868) or in Northern Ireland from Public Health Laboratory, Belfast City Hospital (Tel (028) 9032 9241).

Haemophilus type B conjugate vaccine

Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) vaccine is made from capsular polysaccharide: it is conjugated with a protein such as tetanus toxoid to increase immunogenicity, especially in young children. Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine is given in combination with diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component) and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine, (see under Diphtheria-containing Vaccines) as a component of the primary course of childhood immunisation (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1). For infants under 1 year, the course consists of 3 doses of a vaccine containing haemophilus influenzae type b component, with an interval of 1 month between doses. A booster dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine) should be given at around 12–13 months of age.

Children 1–10 years who have not been immunised against Haemophilus influenzae type b need to receive only 1 dose of the vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine). However, if a primary course of immunisation has not been completed, these children should be given 3 doses of diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component), poliomyelitis (inactivated) and haemophilus type b conjugate vaccine (adsorbed). The risk of infection falls sharply in older children and the vaccine is not normally required for children over 10 years.

Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine may be given to those over 10 years who are considered to be at increased risk of invasive H. influenzae type b disease (such as those with sickle-cell disease or complement deficiency, or those receiving treatment for malignancy).

For use of rifampicin in the prevention of secondary cases of Haemophilus influenza type b disease, see Table 2, section 5.1

Asplenia, splenic dysfunction, or complement deficiency

Children diagnosed with asplenia, splenic dysfunction, or complement deficiency at:

- under 2 years of age should be vaccinated according to the Immunisation Schedule (section 14.1). The booster dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine), given at 12–13 months of age, should be followed at least 1 month later by one dose of meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine. An additional dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine) should be given after the second birthday;

- over 2 years of age should receive one dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine), followed 1 month later by one dose of meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine.

Haemophilus Type B Conjugate Vaccine

Cautions

see section 14.1

Contra-indications

see section 14.1

Pregnancy

see p. 600

Breast-feeding

see p. 600

Side-effects

see section 14.1; also, atopic dermatitis, hypotonia

Licensed use

Menitorix® is not licensed for use in children over 2 years.

Indication and dose

See notes above and under preparation

Primary immunisation

see under Diphtheria-containing vaccines
A vaccine for close contacts (of confirmed cases of hepatitis A) who have chronic liver disease or HIV infection, or who are immunosuppressed.

**Hepatitis A Vaccine**

**Injection**, powder for reconstitution, capsular polysaccharide of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b and capsular polysaccharide of *Neisseria meningitidis* group C (both conjugated to tetanus protein), net price single dose vial (with syringe containing 0.5 mL diluent) = £39.87

**Dose**
- By intramuscular injection
  - CHILD 1–10 year 0.5 mL
  - CHILD over 1 year with asplenia or splenic dysfunction (see notes above), 0.5 mL

Available as part of the childhood immunisation schedule from ImmForm

**Combined vaccines**
See also Diphtheria-containing vaccines

**Hepatitis A vaccine** is prepared from formaldehyde-inactivated hepatitis A virus grown in human diploid cells.

Immunisation is recommended for:
- residents of homes for those with severe learning difficulties;
- children with haemophilia or other conditions treated with plasma-derived clotting factors;
- children with severe liver disease;
- children travelling to high-risk areas (see p. 626);
- adolescents who are at risk due to their sexual behaviour;
- parental drug abusers.

Immunisation should be considered for:
- children with chronic liver disease including chronic hepatitis B or chronic hepatitis C;
- prevention of secondary cases in close contacts of confirmed cases of hepatitis A, within 14 days of exposure to the primary case (within 8 weeks of exposure to the primary case where there is more than 1 contact in the household).

A booster dose of hepatitis A vaccine is usually given 6–12 months after the initial dose. A second booster dose can be given 20 years after the previous booster dose to those who continue to be at risk. Specialist advice should be sought on re-immunisation of immunocompromised individuals.

Post-exposure prophylaxis is not required for healthy children under 1 year of age, so long as all those involved in nappy changing are vaccinated against hepatitis A. However, children 2–12 months of age can be given a dose of hepatitis A vaccine if it is not possible to vaccinate their carers, or if the child becomes a source of infection to others [unlicensed use]; in these cases, if the child goes on to require long-term protection against hepatitis A after the first birthday, the full course of 2 doses should be given.

In children under 16 years, a single dose of the combined vaccine Ambirix® can be used to provide rapid protection against hepatitis A.

Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin (section 14.5.1) is recommended for use in addition to Hepatitis A vaccine for close contacts (of confirmed cases of hepatitis A) who have chronic liver disease or HIV infection, or who are immunosuppressed.

**Menitorix® (GSK)**

Injection, powder for reconstitution, capsular polysaccharide of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b and capsular polysaccharide of *Neisseria meningitidis* group C (both conjugated to tetanus protein), net price single dose vial (with syringe containing 0.5 mL diluent) = £39.87

**Dose**
- By intramuscular injection
  - CHILD 1–10 year 0.5 mL
  - CHILD over 1 year with asplenia or splenic dysfunction (see notes above), 0.5 mL

*Note:* Immunisation should be considered for:
- children with chronic liver disease including chronic hepatitis B or chronic hepatitis C;
- prevention of secondary cases in close contacts of confirmed cases of hepatitis A, within 14 days of exposure to the primary case (within 8 weeks of exposure to the primary case where there is more than 1 contact in the household).

A booster dose of hepatitis A vaccine is usually given 6–12 months after the initial dose. A second booster dose can be given 20 years after the previous booster dose to those who continue to be at risk. Specialist advice should be sought on re-immunisation of immunocompromised individuals.

Post-exposure prophylaxis is not required for healthy children under 1 year of age, so long as all those involved in nappy changing are vaccinated against hepatitis A. However, children 2–12 months of age can be given a dose of hepatitis A vaccine if it is not possible to vaccinate their carers, or if the child becomes a source of infection to others [unlicensed use]; in these cases, if the child goes on to require long-term protection against hepatitis A after the first birthday, the full course of 2 doses should be given.

In children under 16 years, a single dose of the combined vaccine Ambirix® can be used to provide rapid protection against hepatitis A.

**Menitorix® (GSK)**

Injection, powder for reconstitution, capsular polysaccharide of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b and capsular polysaccharide of *Neisseria meningitidis* group C (both conjugated to tetanus protein), net price single dose vial (with syringe containing 0.5 mL diluent) = £39.87

**Dose**
- By intramuscular injection
  - CHILD 1–10 year 0.5 mL
  - CHILD over 1 year with asplenia or splenic dysfunction (see notes above), 0.5 mL

*Note:* Immunisation should be considered for:
- children with chronic liver disease including chronic hepatitis B or chronic hepatitis C;
- prevention of secondary cases in close contacts of confirmed cases of hepatitis A, within 14 days of exposure to the primary case (within 8 weeks of exposure to the primary case where there is more than 1 contact in the household).

A booster dose of hepatitis A vaccine is usually given 6–12 months after the initial dose. A second booster dose can be given 20 years after the previous booster dose to those who continue to be at risk. Specialist advice should be sought on re-immunisation of immunocompromised individuals.

Post-exposure prophylaxis is not required for healthy children under 1 year of age, so long as all those involved in nappy changing are vaccinated against hepatitis A. However, children 2–12 months of age can be given a dose of hepatitis A vaccine if it is not possible to vaccinate their carers, or if the child becomes a source of infection to others [unlicensed use]; in these cases, if the child goes on to require long-term protection against hepatitis A after the first birthday, the full course of 2 doses should be given.

In children under 16 years, a single dose of the combined vaccine Ambirix® can be used to provide rapid protection against hepatitis A.
### 14.4 Vaccines and antisera

**Ambirix** (Sanofi Pasteur) — injection, suspension of formaldehyde-inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 720 ELISA units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxypolysaccharide (Hepatitis A virus surface antigen adsorbed on to aluminium hydroxide adjuvant). It is made biosynthetically and under polysaccharide typhoid vaccine, p. 620.

**ViATIM** (Sanofi Pasteur) — injection, suspension of inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 1440 ELISA units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, combined with typhoid vaccine containing 25 micrograms/mL virulence polysaccharide antigen of *Salmonella typhi*, net price 1-mL prefilled syringe = £32.08

**Hepatyrix** (GSK) — injection, suspension of inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 1440 ELISA units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, combined with typhoid vaccine containing 25 micrograms/mL virulence polysaccharide antigen of *Salmonella typhi*, net price 1-mL prefilled syringe = £32.08

**Note:** Primary course should be completed with **Twinrix** (single component vaccines given at appropriate intervals may be used for booster dose); the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for children with bleeding disorders.

**Important:** **Twinrix** not recommended for post-exposure prophylaxis following percutaneous (needle-stick), ocular or mucous membrane exposure to hepatitis B virus.

---

### With typhoid vaccine

**Twinrix** (GSK) — injection, suspension of inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 20 micrograms/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, and recombinant (DNA) hepatitis B surface antigen (grown in yeast cells); 20 micrograms/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide and aluminium phosphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £14.74

**Excipients** include neomycin.

**Dose:**
- By intramuscular injection (see note below)

**Child 16–18 years** 1 mL as a single dose; booster dose 0.5 mL 6–18 months after initial dose

**Note:** Booster dose may be delayed by up to 3 years if not given after recommended interval following primary dose with **Havrix Monodose**. The deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for children with bleeding disorders.

---

**Vaqtá® Paediatric** (Sanofi Pasteur) — injection, suspension of formaldehyde-inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 50 antigen units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxypolysaccharide sulphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £14.74

**Excipients** include neomycin.

**Dose:**
- By intramuscular injection (see note below)

**Child 1–18 years** 0.5 mL as a single dose; booster dose 0.5 mL 6–18 months after initial dose

**Note:** The deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for children with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced).

---

**With hepatitis B vaccine**

**Ambirix** (GSK) — injection, suspension of inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 720 ELISA units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, and recombinant (DNA) hepatitis B surface antigen (grown in yeast cells); 20 micrograms/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide and aluminium phosphate, net price 1-mL prefilled syringe = £31.18

**Excipients** include neomycin.

**Dose:**
- By intramuscular injection (see note below)

**Child 1–5 years** primary course, 2 doses of 1 mL, the second 6–12 months after initial dose

**Note:** Primary course should be completed with **Ambirix** (single component vaccines given at appropriate intervals may be used for booster dose); the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is the preferred site in infants; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced); subcutaneous route used for children with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced).

**Important:** **Ambirix** not recommended for post-exposure prophylaxis following percutaneous (needle-stick), ocular or mucous membrane exposure to hepatitis B virus.

---

**Hepatyrix** (GSK) — injection, suspension of inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 1440 ELISA units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, combined with typhoid vaccine containing 25 micrograms/mL virulence polysaccharide antigen of *Salmonella typhi*, net price 1-mL prefilled syringe = £32.08

**Excipients** include neomycin.

**Dose:**
- By intramuscular injection (see note below)

**Child 15–18 years** 1 mL as a single dose; booster doses, see under single component hepatitis A vaccine (above) and under polysaccharide typhoid vaccine, p. 620

**Note:** The deltoid region is the preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced). The subcutaneous route may be used for children with bleeding disorders.

---

**ViATIM** (Sanofi Pasteur) — injection, suspension of inactivated hepatitis A virus (grown in human diploid cells); 1440 ELISA units/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, combined with typhoid vaccine containing 25 micrograms/mL virulence polysaccharide antigen of *Salmonella typhi*, net price 1-mL prefilled syringe = £29.80

**Excipients** include neomycin.

**Dose:**
- By intramuscular injection (see note below)

**Child 16–18 years** 1 mL as a single dose; booster doses, see under single component hepatitis A vaccine (above) and under polysaccharide typhoid vaccine, p. 620

**Note:** The deltoid region is the preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced). The subcutaneous route may be used for children with bleeding disorders.

---

**Hepatitis B vaccine**

Hepatitis B vaccine contains inactivated hepatitis B virus surface antigen (HBsAg) adsorbed on to aluminium hydroxide adjuvant. It is made biosynthetically using recombinant DNA technology. The vaccine is used in individuals at high risk of contracting hepatitis B.

In the UK, high-risk groups include:
- parenteral drug misusers, their sexual partners, and household contacts; other drug misusers who are likely to ‘progress’ to injecting;
- adolescents who are at risk from their sexual behaviour;
close family contacts of an individual with chronic hepatitis B infection;

- babies whose mothers have had acute hepatitis B during pregnancy or are positive for hepatitis B surface antigen (regardless of e-antigen markers); hepatitis B vaccination is started immediately on delivery and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (see p. 624) given at the same time (but at a different site). Babies whose mothers are positive for hepatitis B surface antigen and for e-antigen antibody should receive the vaccine only (but babies weighing 1.5 kg or less should also receive the immunoglobulin regardless of the mother’s e-antigen antibody status);

- children with haemophilia, those receiving regular blood transfusions or blood products, and carers responsible for the administration of such products;

- children with chronic renal failure including those on haemodialysis. Children receiving haemodialysis should be monitored for antibodies annually and re-immunised if necessary. Home carers (of dialysis patients) should be vaccinated;

- children with chronic liver disease;

- patients of day-care or residential accommodation for those with severe learning difficulties;

- children in custodial institutions;

- children travelling to areas of high or intermediate prevalence who are at increased risk or who plan to remain there for lengthy periods (see p. 626);

- families adopting children from countries with a high or intermediate prevalence of hepatitis B;

- foster carers and their families.

Different immunisation schedules for hepatitis B vaccine are recommended for specific circumstances (see under individual preparations); an ‘accelerated schedule’ is recommended for pre-exposure prophylaxis in high-risk groups where rapid protection is required, and for post-exposure prophylaxis (see below). Generally, three or four doses are required for primary immunisation. Immunisation may take up to 6 months to confer adequate protection; the duration of immunity is not known precisely, but a single booster 5 years after the primary course may be sufficient to maintain immunity for those who continue to be at risk.

Immunisation does not eliminate the need for common-sense precautions for avoiding the risk of infection from known carriers by the routes of infection which have been clearly established, consult Guidance for Clinical Health Care Workers: Protection against Infection with Blood-borne Viruses (available at www.dh.gov.uk). Accidental inoculation of hepatitis B virus-infected blood into a wound, incision, needle-prick, or abrasion may lead to infection, whereas it is unlikely that indirect exposure to a carrier will do so.

Following significant exposure to hepatitis B, an accelerated schedule, with the second dose given 1 month, and the third dose 2 months after the initial dose, is recommended. For those at continued risk, a fourth dose should be given 12 months after the first dose. More detailed guidance is given in the Immunisation against Infectious Disease handbook, see p. 599

Specific hepatitis B immunoglobulin (‘HBIG’) is available for use with the vaccine in those accidentally inoculated and in neonates at special risk of infection (section 14.5.2).

A combined hepatitis A and hepatitis B vaccine is also available.

### Hepatitis B Vaccine

#### Cautions

- section 14.1

#### Contra-Indications

- section 14.1

#### Pregnancy

- see p. 600

#### Breast-feeding

- see p. 600

#### Side-effects

- section 14.1

#### Indication and dose

**Immunisation against hepatitis B infection**

For dose see under preparations

#### Single component

**Engerix B** (GSK)  
Injection, suspension of hepatitis B surface antigen (prepared from yeast cells by recombinant DNA technique) 20 micrograms/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide; net price 0.5-mL (pediatric) prefilled syringe = £9.67, 1-mL prefilled syringe = £12.34

#### Dose

- **Neonate** (except if born to hepatitis B surface antigen-positive mother, see below), 3 doses of 10 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose

- **Child 1 month–16 years** 3 doses of 10 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose

- **Child 16–18 years** 3 doses of 20 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose

- **Accelerated schedule** (all age groups), second dose 1 month after first dose, third dose 2 months after first dose and fourth dose 12 months after first dose

- **Alternative schedule for Child 11–15 years**, 2 doses of 20 micrograms, the second dose 6 months after the first dose (this schedule not suitable if high risk of infection between doses or if compliance with second dose uncertain)

- **Infant born to hepatitis B surface antigen-positive mother** (see also notes above)

- **By intramuscular injection**

- **Neonate** 4 doses of 10 micrograms, first dose at birth with hepatitis B immunoglobulin injection (separate site) the second 1 month, the third 2 months and the fourth 12 months after first dose

- **Renal insufficiency (including haemodialysis patients)**

- **By intramuscular injection**

- **Neonate** (except if born to hepatitis B surface antigen-positive mother, see above), 3 doses of 10 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose or accelerated schedule, 4 doses of 10 micrograms, second dose 1 month, third dose 2 months, and fourth dose 12 months after first dose; immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration

- **Child 1 month–16 years** 3 doses of 10 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose or accelerated schedule, 4 doses of 10 micrograms, second dose 1 month, third dose 2 months, and fourth dose 12 months after first dose; immunisation schedule
and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration

**Child 16–18 years**
- 4 doses of 40 micrograms, the second 1 month, the third 2 months and the fourth 6 months after the first dose; immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration

**Note**
- Deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates, infants and young children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

**Fendrix** (GSK)

**Injection**, suspension of hepatitis B surface antigen (prepared from yeast cells by recombinant DNA technique) 40 micrograms/mL adsorbed onto aluminium phosphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £38.10

Recipient includes traces of thiomersal

**Dose**
- Renal insufficiency patients (including pre-haemodialysis and haemodialysis patients)
  - **By intramuscular injection**
    - **Child 15–18 years**
      - 4 doses of 20 micrograms, the second 1 month, the third 2 months and the fourth 6 months after the first dose; immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration
    - **Note**
      - Deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection, not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

**HBvaxPRO** (Sanofi Pasteur)

**Injection**, suspension of hepatitis B surface antigen (prepared from yeast cells by recombinant DNA technique) 10 micrograms/mL adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxyphosphate sulphate, net price 0.5-mL (5-microgram) prefilled syringe = £28.95, 1-mL (10-microgram) prefilled syringe = £12.20, 40 micrograms/mL, 1-mL (40-microgram) vial = £27.60

**Dose**
- **By intramuscular injection**
  - **Neonate** (except if born to hepatitis B surface antigen-positive mother, see below), 3 doses of 5 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose
  - **Child 1 month–16 years**
    - 3 doses of 5 micrograms, second dose 1 month and third dose 6 months after first dose
    - Accelerated schedule (all age groups), second dose 1 month after first dose, third dose 2 months after first dose with fourth dose at 12 months
    - Booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration

**Infant born to hepatitis B surface antigen-positive mother** (see also notes above)
- **By intramuscular injection**

**Neonate**
- 5 micrograms, first dose at birth with hepatitis B immunoglobulin injection (separate site), the second 1 month, the third 2 months and the fourth 12 months after the first dose

**HUMAN PAPILLOMA VIRUS VACCINES**

**Cautions**
- See section 14.1

**Contra-indications**
- See section 14.1

**Pregnancy**
- Not known to be harmful, but vaccination should be postponed until completion of pregnancy

**Breast-feeding**
- See p. 600

**Side-effects**
- See section 14.1

**Human papilloma virus vaccines**

**Human papilloma virus vaccine** is available as a bivalent vaccine (Cervarix®) or a quadrivalent vaccine (Gardasil®). Cervarix® is licensed for use in females for the prevention of cervical cancer and other pre-cancerous lesions caused by human papilloma virus types 16 and 18. Gardasil® is licensed for use in females for the prevention of cervical cancer, genital warts and pre-cancerous lesions caused by human papilloma virus types 6, 11, 16 and 18. The vaccines may also provide limited protection against disease caused by other types of human papilloma virus. The two vaccines are not interchangeable and one vaccine product should be used for an entire course. However, the Department of Health (November 2008) states for individuals with previous incomplete vaccination with Gardasil®, who are eligible for HPV vaccination under the national programme, Cervarix® can be used to complete the vaccination course if necessary; the individual must be informed that Cervarix® does not protect against genital warts.

Human papilloma virus vaccine will be most effective if given before sexual activity starts. The first dose is given to females aged 12 to 13 years, the second and third doses are given 1–2 and 6 months after the first dose (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1); all 3 doses should be given within a 12-month period. If the course is interrupted, it should be resumed but not repeated, allowing the appropriate interval between the remaining doses. Where there are significant challenges in scheduling vaccination, or a high likelihood that the third dose will not be given, the third dose of Cervarix® can be given 3 months after the second dose; if this is not possible and the second dose was given late, in exceptional circumstances, the third dose can be given at least 1 month after the second dose. Under the national programme in England, females remain eligible to receive the vaccine up to the age of 18 years if they did not receive the vaccine when scheduled. Where appropriate, immunisation with human papillomavirus vaccine should be offered to females coming into the UK as they may not have been offered protection in their country of origin. The duration of protection has not been established, but current studies suggest that protection is maintained for at least 6 years after completion of the primary course.
BNFC 2011–2012

14.4 Vaccines and antisera

Indication and dose
See notes above and under preparations
Note To avoid confusion, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed

Cervarix® (GSK) injection, suspension of virus-like particles of human papilloma virus type 16 (40 micrograms/mL), type 18 (40 micrograms/mL) capsid protein (prepared by recombinant DNA technique using a Baculovirus expression system) in monophosphoryl lipid A adjuvant adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £80.50
Note To avoid confusion, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed

Dose
Prevention of pre-malignant genital lesions and cervical cancer (see notes above)
- By intramuscular injection into deltoid region
Child 10–18 years 3 doses of 0.5 mL, the second 1 month and the third 6 months after the first dose
Alternative schedule for Child 10–18 years, 3 doses of 0.5 mL, the second 1–2.5 months, and the third 5–12 months after the first dose

Gardasil® (Sanofi Pasteur) injection, suspension of virus-like particles of human papilloma virus type 6 (40 micrograms/mL), type 11 (80 micrograms/mL), type 16 (80 micrograms/mL), type 18 (40 micrograms/mL) capsid protein (prepared from yeast cells by recombinant DNA technique) adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxyphosphate sulphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £86.50
Note To avoid confusion, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed

Dose
Prevention of pre-malignant genital lesions, cervical cancer and genital warts (see notes above)
- By intramuscular injection preferably into deltoid region or higher anterolateral thigh
Child 9–18 years 3 doses of 0.5 mL, the second 2 months and the third 6 months after the first dose
Alternative schedule for Child 9–18 years, 3 doses of 0.5 mL, the second at least 1 month and the third at least 4 months after the first dose, schedule should be completed within 12 months

Influenza vaccine

While most viruses are antigenically stable, the influenza viruses A and B (especially A) are constantly altering their antigenic structure as indicated by changes in the haemagglutinins (H) and neuraminidases (N) on the surface of the viruses. It is essential that influenza vaccines in use contain the H and N components of the prevalent strain or strains recommended each year by the World Health Organization.

Seasonal influenza vaccines Seasonal influenza vaccines will not control epidemics — immunisation is recommended only for persons at high risk. Annual immunisation is strongly recommended for children (including infants that were preterm or low birth-weight) aged over 6 months with the following conditions:
- chronic respiratory disease (includes asthma treated with continuous or repeated use of inhaled or systemic corticosteroids or asthma with previous exacerbations requiring hospital admission);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic neurological disease;
- diabetes mellitus;
- immunosuppression because of disease (including asplenia or splenic dysfunction) or treatment (including prolonged corticosteroid treatment [for over 1 month at dose equivalents of prednisolone: 1 mg/kg or more daily or 20 mg or more daily] and chemotherapy);
- HIV infection (regardless of immune status).
Seasonal influenza vaccine is also recommended for all pregnant women, for children living in long-stay facilities, and for carers of children whose welfare may be at risk if the carer falls ill. Influenza immunisation should also be considered for household contacts of immunocompromised individuals.

Monovalent influenza A(H1N1)v vaccines Pandemrix® and Celvaphen® are monovalent vaccines licensed against the influenza A(H1N1)v (swine flu) strain.

Pandemrix® is recommended for children aged 6 months–5 years who have not received the monovalent vaccine previously and who are in the risk groups prioritised for seasonal influenza vaccine. Pandemrix® is also recommended for all immunocompromised patients over 6 months of age who have not received the monovalent vaccine previously. Seasonal influenza vaccine should continue to be offered as normal. Pandemrix® can be given at the same time as the first dose of seasonal influenza vaccine; however, Pandemrix® should be given 4 weeks before the seasonal influenza vaccine to immunocompromised patients who only require one dose of seasonal influenza vaccine.

Further information on pandemic influenza, avian influenza and swine influenza may be found at www.dh.gov.uk/pandemicflu and at www.hpa.org.uk.

INFLUENZA VACCINES

Cautions see section 14.1; interactions: Appendix 1 (vaccines)
Contra-indications see section 14.1; avoid Enzirin® or preparations marketed by Pfizer, Wyeth or CSL
Biotherapies in child under 5 years—increased risk of febrile convulsions
Pregnancy not known to be harmful
Breast-feeding not known to be harmful
Side-effects see section 14.1; also reported, febrile convulsions and transient thrombocytopenia
Licensed use Inactivated Influenza Vaccine (Surface Antigen) and Fluvirin® are not licensed for use in children under 4 years

Indication and dose
Annual immunisation against seasonal influenza
- By intramuscular injection
Child 6 months–3 years 0.25–0.5 mL (repeated after 4–6 weeks in children who have not received seasonal influenza vaccine previously)
14.4 Vaccines and antisera

**Immunological products and vaccines**

**Inactivated Influenza Vaccine (Split Virion)**

- **Influvac Sub-unit** (Abbott Healthcare)
- **cImuvac** (Novartis Vaccines)
- **cFluvirin** (GlaxoSmithKline)
- **Fluarix** (GlaxoSmithKline)
- **Enzira** (Pfizer)
- **Begrivac** (Novartis Vaccines)
- **Agrippal** (Novartis Vaccines)
- **Celvapan** (Baxter)
- **Viroflu** (Crucell)

**Inactivated Influenza Vaccine (Surface Antigen)**

- **Mastaflu** (MSTA) Injection, suspension of formaldehyde-inactivated influenza virus (surface antigen) grown in fertilised hens’ eggs, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £6.50
  - Excipients include gentamicin

- **Viroflu** (Crucell) Injection, suspension of inactivated influenza virus (surface antigen, virosome) grown in fertilised hens’ eggs, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £6.33
  - Excipients include neomycin and polymyxin B

**Monovalent influenza A(H1N1)v vaccines**

- **Celvapan** (Baxter) Injection, suspension of formaldehyde-inactivated influenza A(H1N1)v virus (whole virion, grown in vero cells), 15 micrograms/mL, 5-mL multidose vial contains 10 doses of 0.5 mL

**Seasonal influenza vaccines**

- **Inactivated Influenza Vaccine (Split Virion)**
  - **Flu** Injection, suspension of formaldehyde-inactivated influenza virus (split virion) grown in fertilised hens’ eggs, net price 0.25-mL prefilled syringe = £6.29, 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £6.29
  - Excipients may include neomycin and polymyxin B
  - Available from Sanofi Pasteur
  - **Contra-indications** avoid preparations marketed by Pfizer, Wyeth, or CSL Biotherapies in child under 5 years—increased risk of febrile convulsions

- **Inactivated Influenza Vaccine (Surface Antigen)**
  - **Flu or Flu(adj)** Injection, suspension of propiolactone-inactivated influenza virus (surface antigen) grown in fertilised hens’ eggs, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £4.15
  - Excipients may include kanamycin and neomycin

**Contra-indications**

- Avoid preparations marketed by Pfizer, Wyeth, or CSL Biotherapies in child under 5 years—increased risk of febrile convulsions

**Measles vaccine**

Measles vaccine has been replaced by a combined live measles, mumps and rubella vaccine (MMR vaccine). MMR vaccine may be used in the control of outbreaks of measles (see under MMR Vaccine).

**Single antigen vaccine**

No longer available in the UK

**Combined vaccines**

See MMR vaccine, below

**Measles, Mumps and Rubella (MMR) vaccine**

A combined live measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine (MMR vaccine) aims to eliminate measles, mumps and rubella (and congenital rubella syndrome). Every child should receive two doses of MMR vaccine by entry to primary school, unless there is a valid contra-indication (see section 14.1). MMR vaccine should be given irrespective of previous measles, mumps, or rubella infection or vaccination.

The first dose of MMR vaccine is given to children aged 12–13 months. A second dose is given before starting...
school at 3–5 years of age (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1).

When protection against measles is required urgently (e.g. during a measles outbreak), the second dose of MMR vaccine can be given 1 month after the first dose; if the second dose is given before 18 months of age, then children should still receive the routine dose before starting school at 3–5 years of age.

Children presenting for pre-school booster who have not received the first dose of MMR vaccine should be given a dose of MMR vaccine followed 3 months later by a second dose. At school-leaving age or at entry into further education, MMR immunisation should be offered to individuals of both sexes who have not received 2 doses during childhood. In a young adult who has received only a single dose of MMR in childhood, a second dose is recommended to achieve full protection. If 2 doses of MMR vaccine are required, the second dose should be given one month after the initial dose.

MMR vaccine should be used to protect against rubella in seronegative females of child-bearing age (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1). MMR vaccine may also be offered to previously unimmunised and seronegative post-partum mothers—vaccination a few days after delivery is important because about 60% of congenital abnormalities from rubella infection occur in babies of mothers who have borne more than one child. Immigrants arriving after the age of school immunisation are particularly likely to require immunisation.

Contacts MMR vaccine may also be used in the control of outbreaks of measles and should be offered to susceptible children including babies aged over 6 months who are contacts of a case, within 3 days of exposure to infection; these children should still receive routine MMR vaccinations at the recommended ages. Children aged under 9 months for whom avoidance of measles infection is particularly important (such as those with history of recent severe illness) can be given normal immunoglobulin (section 14.5, p. 622) after exposure to measles; routine MMR immunisation should then be given after at least 3 months at the appropriate age.

MMR vaccine is not suitable for prophylaxis following exposure to mumps or rubella since the antibody response to the mumps and rubella components is too slow for effective prophylaxis. Children with impaired immune response should not receive live vaccines (for advice on HIV see section 14.1). If they have been exposed to measles infection they should be given normal immunoglobulin (section 14.5).

Travel Unimmunised children over 6 months of age travelling to areas where measles is endemic or epidemic should receive MMR vaccine. Children immunised before 12 months of age should still receive two doses of MMR at the recommended ages. If one dose of MMR has already been given to a child, then the second dose should be brought forward to at least one month after the first, to ensure complete protection. If the child is under 18 months of age and the second dose is given within 3 months of the first, then the routine dose, before starting school at 3–5 years, should still be given.

Side-effects See section 14.1. Also malaise, fever, or a rash can occur after the first dose of MMR vaccine, most commonly about a week after vaccination and lasting about 2 to 3 days. Leaflets are available for parents on advice for reducing fever (including the use of paracetamol). Febrile seizures occur rarely 6 to 11 days after MMR vaccination; the incidence of febrile seizures is lower than that following measles infection. Parotid swelling occurs occasionally, usually in the third week, and rarely, arthropy 2 to 3 weeks after immunisation. Adverse reactions are considerably less frequent after the second dose of MMR vaccine than after the first dose.

Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura has occurred rarely following MMR vaccination, usually within 6 weeks of the first dose. The risk of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura after MMR vaccine is much less than the risk after infection with wild measles or rubella virus. Children who develop idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura within 6 weeks of the first dose of MMR should undergo serological testing before the second dose is due; if the results suggest incomplete immunity against measles, mumps or rubella then a second dose of MMR is recommended. The Specialist and Reference Microbiology Division, Health Protection Agency offers free serological testing for children who develop idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura within 6 weeks of the first dose of MMR.

Post-vaccination aseptic meningitis was reported (rarely and with complete recovery) following vaccination with MMR vaccine containing Urabe mumps vaccine, which has now been discontinued; no cases have been confirmed in association with the currently used Jeryl Lynn mumps vaccine. Children with post-vaccination symptoms are not infectious.
14.4 Vaccines and antisera

**Side-effects** see section 14.1 and notes above; also less commonly sleep disturbance, unusual crying in infants, also reported peripheral and optic neuritis.

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 9 months

### Indication and dose

**Immunisation against measles, mumps, and rubella**

- By intramuscular or deep subcutaneous injection

**CHILD 6 months–18 years primary immunisation, 2 doses of each of 0.5 mL, see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1, p. 601; see also notes above for use in outbreaks, for contacts of cases, and for travel

#### Combined vaccines

**MMRvaxPro** (Sanofi Pasteur)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, live attenuated, measles virus (Enders’ Edmonston strain) and mumps virus (Jeryl Lynn [Level B] strain) prepared in chick embryo cells, and rubella virus (Wistar RA 27/3 strain); single-dose vial (with syringe containing solvent)

- Excipients: gelatin and neomycin

Only available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from health organisations or ImmForm

**Priorix** (GSK)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, live attenuated, measles virus (Schwarz strain) and mumps virus (RIT 4385 strain) prepared in chick embryo cells, and rubella virus (Wistar RA 27/3 strain), net price single-dose vial (with syringe containing solvent) = £6.37

- Excipients: include neomycin

Also available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from health organisations or ImmForm

### Meningococcal vaccines

Almost all childhood meningococcal disease in the UK is caused by *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroups B and C. Meningococcal Group C conjugate vaccine protects only against infection by serogroup C. The risk of meningococcal disease declines with age—immunisation is not generally recommended after the age of 25 years.

Tetravalent meningococcal vaccines that cover serotypes A, C, W135, and Y are available. Although the duration of protection has not been established, the meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine is likely to provide longer-lasting protection than the unconjugated meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine. The antibody response to serotype C in unconjugated meningococcal polysaccharide vaccines in young children may be suboptimal.

**Childhood Immunisation** Meningococcal Group C conjugate vaccine provides long-term protection against infection by serogroup C of *Neisseria meningitidis*. Immunisation consists of 2 doses given at 3 months and 4 months of age; a booster dose should be given at 12–13 months of age, usually combined with haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (see Immunisation Schedule, section 14.1, p. 601).

It is recommended that meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine be given to anyone aged under 25 years who has not been vaccinated previously with this vaccine; those over 1 year receive a single dose. Children with confirmed serogroup C disease, who have previously been immunised with meningococcal group C vaccine, should be offered meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine before discharge from hospital.

**Asplenia, splenic dysfunction, or complement deficiency** See p. 606.

**Travel** Individuals travelling to countries of risk (see below) should be immunised with meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine, even if they have previously received meningitis C conjugate vaccine. If an individual has recently received meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine, an interval of at least 4 weeks should be allowed before administration of the tetravalent (A, C, W135, and Y) vaccine.

Vaccination is particularly important for those living with local people or visiting an area of risk during outbreaks.

Immunisation recommendations and requirements for visa entry for individual countries should be checked before travelling, particularly to countries in Sub-Saharan Africa, Asia, and the Indian sub-continent where outbreaks and epidemics of meningococcal infection are reported. Country-by-country information is available from the National Travel Health Network and Centre (www.nathnac.org).

Proof of vaccination with the tetravalent (A, C, W135 and Y) meningococcal vaccine is required for those travelling to Saudi Arabia during the Haj and Umrah pilgrimages (where outbreaks of the W135 strain have occurred).

**Contacts** For advice on the immunisation of laboratory workers and close contacts of cases of meningococcal disease in the UK at www.hpa.org.uk. See Table 2, section 5.1 for antibacterial prophylaxis for prevention of secondary cases of meningococcal meningitis.

#### Meningococcal Vaccines

**Cautions** see section 14.1

**Contra-indications** see section 14.1

**Pregnancy** see p. 600

**Breast-feeding** see p. 600

**Side-effects** see section 14.1; also rarely symptoms of meningitis reported (but no evidence that vaccine causes meningococcal C meningitis)

**Licensed use** Menveo® not licensed for use in children under 11 years

### Indication and dose

**Immunisation against Neisseria meningitidis** for dose, see under preparations

#### Meningococcal Group C conjugate vaccine

**Meningitec** (Wyeth)

Injection, suspension of capsular polysaccharide antigen of *Neisseria meningitidis* group C (conjugated to Corynebacterium diphtheriae protein), adsorbed
ont to aluminium phosphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £7.50

Dose

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 2 months–1 year for routine immunisation, 0.5 mL, see notes above and Immunisation schedule, section 14.1
  - Child 1–18 years 0.5 mL as a single dose
  
  Note: Subcutaneous route used for children with bleeding disorders

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from ImmForm

Menjugate Kit® (Sanofi Pasteur) 

Injection, powder for reconstitution, capsular polysaccharide antigen of Neisseria meningitidis group C (conjugated to Corynebacterium diphtheriae protein), adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, single-dose vials

Dose

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 2 months–1 year for routine immunisation, 0.5 mL, see notes above and Immunisation schedule, section 14.1
  - Child 1–18 years 0.5 mL as a single dose
  
  Note: Subcutaneous route used for children with bleeding disorders

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from ImmForm

NeisVac-C® (Baxter) 

Injection, suspension of polysaccharide antigen of Neisseria meningitidis group C (conjugated to tetanus toxoid protein), adsorbed onto aluminium hydroxide, 0.5-mL prefilled syringe

Dose

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child 2 months–1 year for routine immunisation, 0.5 mL, see notes above and Immunisation schedule, section 14.1
  - Child 1–18 years 0.5 mL as a single dose

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from ImmForm

Meningococcal Group C conjugate vaccine with Haemophilus Influenzae type B vaccine

See Haemophilus Influenzae type B vaccine

Meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine

Menveo® (Novartis Vaccines) 

Injection, powder for reconstitution, capsular oligosaccharide antigens of Neisseria meningitidis groups A, C, W135, and Y (conjugated to Corynebacterium diphtheriae protein), net price single-dose vial (with syringe containing diluent) = £40.01

Dose

- By intramuscular injection preferably into deltoid region
  - Child 3 months–1 year 2 doses of 0.5 mL separated by an interval of 1 month
  - Child 1–18 years 0.5 mL as a single dose

Mumps vaccine

- Single antigen vaccine
  - No longer available in the UK

- Combined vaccines
  - See MMR Vaccine, p. 612

Pertussis vaccine

Pertussis vaccine is given as a combination preparation containing other vaccines (see Diphtheria Vaccines). Acellular vaccines are derived from highly purified components of Bordetella pertussis. Primary immunisation against pertussis (whooping cough) requires 3 doses of an acellular pertussis-containing vaccine (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1, p. 601), given at intervals of 1 month from the age of 2 months.

All children up to the age of 10 years should receive primary immunisation with diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component), poliomyelitis (inactivated) and haemophilus type b conjugate vaccine (adsorbed).

A booster dose of an acellular pertussis-containing vaccine should ideally be given 3 years after the primary course, although, the interval can be reduced to 1 year if the primary course was delayed.

Children aged 1–10 years who have not received a pertussis-containing vaccine as part of their primary immunisation schedule should be offered 1 dose of a suitable pertussis-containing vaccine; after an interval of at least 1 year, a booster dose of a suitable pertussis-containing vaccine should be given. Immunisation against pertussis is not routinely recommended in individuals over 10 years of age.

Contacts Vaccination against pertussis should be considered for close contacts of cases with pertussis who have been offered antibiotic prophylaxis (Table 2, section 5.1). Unimmunised or partially immunised contacts under 10 years of age should complete their vaccination against pertussis. A booster dose of an acellular pertussis-containing vaccine is recommended for contacts aged 10–18 years who have not received a pertussis-containing vaccine in the last 10 years and who have not received adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus, and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine in the last month.

Cautions Section 14.1

Contra-indications Section 14.1

Pregnancy see p. 600

Breast-feeding see p. 600
Synflorix from either 10 capsular types (conjugate vaccine contains purified polysaccharide from 23 capsular types of pneumococci, coccine contain polysaccharide from capsular pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccines (Pneumovax). Prevenar 13 (Sanofi Pasteur) is a 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (adsorbed) contains polysaccharide from each of 13 capsular types (Synflorax®) with the polysaccharide being conjugated to protein.

The 13-valent conjugate vaccine is used for childhood immunisation. The recommended schedule consists of 3 doses, the first at 2 months of age, the second at 4 months, and the third at 12–13 months (see Immunisation Schedule, section 14.1). Pneumococcal vaccination is recommended for individuals at increased risk of pneumococcal infection as follows:

- Child 2–18 years
  
  0.5 mL; revaccination, see notes above

- Adult
  
  Children over 5 years who are at increased risk of pneumococcal infection (Table 2, section 5.1, p. 255) should not be stopped after immunisation. A patient card and information leaflet for patients with asplenia are available from the Department of Health or in Scotland from the Scottish Executive, Public Health Division 1 (Tel (0131) 244 2501).

**Choice of vaccine** Children under 2 years at increased risk of pneumococcal infection (see list above) should receive the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) at the recommended ages, followed by a single dose of the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine after their second birthday (see below). Children at increased risk of pneumococcal infection presenting late for vaccination should receive 2 doses (separated by at least 1 month) of the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) before the age of 12 months, and a third dose at 12–13 months. Children over 12 months and under 5 years who have not been vaccinated or not completed the primary course should receive a single dose of 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) (2 doses separated by an interval of 2 months in the immunocompromised or those with asplenia or splenic dysfunction). All children under 5 years at increased risk of pneumococcal infection should receive a single dose of the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine after their second birthday and at least 2 months after the final dose of the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed).

Children over 5 years who are at increased risk of pneumococcal disease should receive a single dose of the 23-valent unconjugated pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine.

**Revaccination** In individuals with higher concentrations of antibodies to pneumococcal polysaccharides, revaccination with the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine more commonly produces adverse reactions. Revaccination is therefore not recommended, except every 5 years in individuals in whom the antibody concentration is likely to decline rapidly (e.g. asplenia, splenic dysfunction and nephrotic syndrome). If there is doubt, the need for revaccination should be discussed with a haematologist, immunologist, or microbiologist.

**PNEUMOCOCCAL VACCINES**

**Cautions** see section 14.1

**Contra-indications** see section 14.1

**Pregnancy** see p. 600

**Breast-feeding** see p. 600

**Side-effects** see section 14.1; also Revaccination, above

**Indication and dose**

**Immunisation against pneumococcal infection**

For dose see under preparations

**Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccines**

**Pneumovax** II (Sanofi Pasteur) 25 µg

Injection, polysaccharide from each of 23 capsular types of pneumococcus, net price 0.5-mL vial = £8.32

**Dose**

- By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection

**Child 2–18 years 0.5 mL; revaccination, see notes above**
Pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed)

Prevenar 13® (Wyeth) ▼ (B)
Injection, polysaccharide from each of 13 capsular types of pneumococcus (conjugated to carrier protein) adsorbed onto aluminium phosphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £49.10

Dose
- By intramuscular injection
  Child 2 months−5 years 0.5 mL (see notes above and Immunisation schedule, section 14.1)

Note Deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in young children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants

The dose in BNFC for Children may differ from that in product literature

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from ImmunForm

Synflorix® (GSK) ▼ (B)
Injection, polysaccharide from each of 10 capsular types of pneumococcus (conjugated to carrier proteins) adsorbed onto aluminium phosphate, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £27.60

Dose
- By intramuscular injection
  Child 6 weeks−2 years consult product literature

Note Deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in young children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants

Poliomyelitis vaccines

Two types of poliomyelitis vaccine (containing strains of poliovirus types 1, 2, and 3) are available, inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine (for injection) and live (oral) poliomyelitis vaccine. Inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine, only available in combined preparation (see under Diphtheria vaccines, combined), is recommended for routine immunisation; it is given by injection and contains inactivated strains of human poliovirus types 1, 2 and 3. A course of primary immunisation consists of 3 doses of a combined preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine starting at 2 months of age with intervals of 1 month between doses (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1). A course of 3 doses should also be given to all unimmunised children; no child should remain unimmunised against poliomyelitis.

Two booster doses of a preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine are recommended, the first before school entry and the second before leaving school (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1). Further booster doses should be given every 10 years only to individuals at special risk.

Preparations containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine can be used to complete an immunisation course initiated with the live (oral) poliomyelitis vaccine. Live (oral) poliomyelitis vaccine is available only for use during outbreaks. The live (oral) vaccine poses a very rare risk of vaccine-associated paralytic polio because the attenuated strain of the virus can revert to a virulent form. For this reason the live (oral) vaccine must not be used for immunosuppressed individuals or their household contacts. The use of inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine removes the risk of vaccine-associated paralytic polio altogether.

Travel
Unimmunised travellers to areas with a high incidence of poliomyelitis should receive a full 3−dose course of a preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine. Those who have not been vaccinated in the last 10 years should receive a booster dose of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine. Information about countries with a high incidence of poliomyelitis can be obtained from www.travax.nhs.uk or from the National Travel Health Network and Centre, p. 627 (www.nathnac.org).

Inactivated (Salk) Vaccine
See under Diphtheria-containing Vaccines

Live (oral) (Sabin) vaccine
Poliomyelitis Vaccine, Live (Oral) (GSK) ▼ (B)
OPV
A suspension of suitable live attenuated strains of poliomyelitis virus, types 1, 2, and 3. Available in single-dose and 10-dose containers
Excipients include neomycin and polymyxin B

Dose
Control of outbreaks
- By mouth
  Child 1 month−18 years 3 drops; may be given on a lump of sugar; not to be given with foods which contain preservatives

Note Live poliomyelitis vaccine loses potency once the container has been opened—any vaccine remaining at the end of an immunisation session should be discarded; whenever possible sessions should be arranged to avoid undue wastage.

Rabies vaccine
Rabies vaccine contains inactivated rabies virus cultivated in either human diploid cells or purified chick embryo cells; vaccines are used for pre- and post-exposure prophylaxis.

Pre-exposure prophylaxis Immunisation should be offered to children at high risk of exposure to rabies—where there is limited access to prompt medical care for those living in areas where rabies is enzootic, for those travelling to such areas for longer than 1 month, and for those on shorter visits who may be exposed to unusual risk. Transmission of rabies by humans has not been recorded but it is advised that those caring for children with the disease should be vaccinated.

Immunisation against rabies is indicated during pregnancy if there is substantial risk of exposure to
Immunisation against rabies requires 3 doses of rabies vaccine, with further booster doses for those who remain at continued risk.

Post-exposure management Following potential exposure to rabies, the wound or site of exposure (e.g. mucous membrane) should be cleansed under running water and washed for several minutes with soapy water as soon as possible after exposure. Disinfectant and a simple dressing can be applied, but suturing should be delayed because it may increase the risk of introducing rabies virus into the nerves. Post-exposure prophylaxis against rabies depends on the level of risk in the country, the nature of exposure, and the individual’s immunity. In each case, expert risk assessment and advice on appropriate management should be obtained from the Health Protection Agency Virus Reference Department, Colindale, London (tel. (020) 8200 4400) or the Centre for Infections (tel. (020) 8200 6868), in Scotland from Health Protection Scotland (tel. (0141) 300 1100), in Northern Ireland from the Public Health Laboratory, Belfast City Hospital (tel. (028) 9032 9241).

There are no specific contra-indications to the use of rabies vaccine for post-exposure prophylaxis and its use should be considered whenever a child has been attacked by an animal in a country where rabies is enzootic, even if there is no direct evidence of rabies in the attacking animal. Because of the potential consequences of untreated rabies exposure and because rabies vaccination has not associated with fetal abnormalities, pregnancy is not considered a contra-indication to post-exposure prophylaxis.

For post-exposure prophylaxis of fully immunised individuals (who have previously received pre-exposure or post-exposure prophylaxis with cell-derived rabies vaccine), 2 doses of cell-derived vaccine, given on day 0 and day 3, are likely to be sufficient. Rabies immunoglobulin is not necessary in such cases.

Post-exposure treatment for unimmunised individuals (or those whose prophylaxis is possibly incomplete) comprises 5 doses of rabies vaccine given over 1 month (on days 0, 3, 7, 14, and 30); also, depending on the level of risk (determined by factors such as the nature of the bite and the country where it was sustained), rabies immunoglobulin (section 14.5.2) is given on day 0. The immunisation course can be discontinued if it is proved that the child was not at risk.

### Indication and dose

#### Pre-exposure immunisation against rabies

- By intramuscular injection in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants

**Child 1 month–18 years** 1 mL on days 0, 7, and 21 or 28; for those at continued risk give a single reinforcing dose 1 year after the primary course is completed and booster doses every 3–5 years; for those at intermittent risk give booster doses every 2–5 years

#### Post-exposure immunisation against rabies

- By intramuscular injection in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants

**Child 1 month–18 years** 1 mL (see notes above)

### Rotavirus vaccine

Rotavirus vaccine is a live, oral vaccine licensed for immunisation of infants over 6 weeks of age for protection against gastro-enteritis caused by rotavirus infection. The vaccine is not included in the childhood immunisation schedule.

The rotavirus vaccine virus is excreted in the stool and may be transmitted to close contacts; the vaccine should be used with caution in those with immunosuppressed close contacts. Carers of a recently vaccinated baby should be advised of the need to wash their hands after changing the baby’s nappies.

### ROTAVIRUS VACCINE

#### Cautions

See section 14.1; also diarrhoea or vomiting (postpone vaccination); immunosuppressed close contacts (see notes above); interactions: Appendix 1 (vaccines)

#### Contra-indications

See section 14.1; also predisposition to, or history of, intussusception

#### Side-effects

See section 14.1

### Indication and dose

Immunisation against gastro-enteritis caused by rotavirus infection

- By mouth

**Child over 6 weeks** 2 doses of 1.5 mL, separated by an interval of at least 4 weeks; course should be completed before 24 weeks of age (preferably before 16 weeks)

### RABIES VACCINE

#### Cautions

See section 14.1

#### Contra-indications

See section 14.1; but see also Post-exposure Management in notes above

#### Pregnancy

See p. 600

#### Breast-feeding

See p. 600

#### Side-effects

See section 14.1; also reported paresis

Rotarix® (GSK) Oral suspension, live attenuated rotavirus (RIX4414 strain), net price 1.5 mL prefilled oral syringe = £41.38
Rubella vaccine
A combined measles, mumps and rubella vaccine (MMR vaccine) aims to eliminate rubella (German measles) and congenital rubella syndrome. MMR vaccine is used for childhood vaccination as well as for vaccinating adults (including women of child-bearing age) who do not have immunity against rubella the combined live measles, mumps and rubella vaccine is a suitable alternative.

▶ Single antigen vaccine
No longer available in the UK; see MMR vaccine, p. 612

▶ Combined vaccines
see MMR vaccine

Smallpox vaccine
Limited supplies of smallpox vaccine are held at the Specialist and Reference Microbiology Division, Health Protection Agency (Tel. (020) 8200 4400) for the exclusive use of workers in laboratories where pox viruses (such as vaccinia) are handled.

If a wider use of the vaccine is being considered, Guidelines for smallpox response and management in the post-eradication era should be consulted at www.dh.gov.uk

Tetanus vaccines
Tetanus vaccine contains a cell-free purified toxin of Clostridium tetani adsorbed on aluminium hydroxide or aluminium phosphate to improve antigenicity.

Primary immunisation for children under 10 years consists of 3 doses of a combined preparation containing adsorbed tetanus vaccine (see Diphtheria-containing Vaccines), with an interval of 1 month between doses. Following routine childhood vaccination, 2 booster doses of a preparation containing adsorbed tetanus vaccine are recommended, the first before school entry and the second before leaving school. (see Immunisation schedule, section 14.1).

The recommended schedule of tetanus vaccination not only gives protection against tetanus in childhood but also gives the basic immunity for subsequent booster doses. In most circumstances, a total number of 5 doses of tetanus vaccine is considered sufficient for long-term protection.

For primary immunisation of children over 10 years previously unimmunised against tetanus, 3 doses of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine are given with an interval of 1 month between doses (see Diphtheria-containing Vaccines).

Cautions See also Section 14.1. When a child presents for a booster dose but has been vaccinated following a tetanus-prone wound, the vaccine preparation administered at the time of injury should be determined. If this is not possible, the booster should still be given to ensure adequate protection against all antigens in the booster vaccine.

Very rarely, tetanus has developed after abdominal surgery; carers of children awaiting elective surgery should be asked about the child’s tetanus immunisation status and the child should be immunised if necessary.

Parenteral drug abuse is also associated with tetanus; those abusing drugs by injection should be vaccinated if unimmunised—booster doses should be given if there is any doubt about their immunisation status.

Travel recommendations see section 14.6.

Contra-indications See section 14.1
Pregnancy see p. 600
Breast-feeding see p. 600

Side-effects See section 14.1

Wounds Wounds are considered to be tetanus-prone if they are sustained more than 6 hours before surgical treatment or at any interval after injury and are puncture-type (particularly if contaminated with soil or manure) or show much devitalised tissue or are septic or are compound fractures or contain foreign bodies. All wounds should receive thorough cleansing.

- For clean wounds: fully immunised individuals (those who have received a total of 5 doses of a tetanus-containing vaccine at appropriate intervals) and those whose primary immunisation is complete (with boosters up to date), do not require tetanus vaccine; individuals whose primary immunisation is incomplete or whose boosters are not up to date require a reinforcing dose of a tetanus-containing vaccine (followed by further doses as required to complete the schedule), non-immunised individuals (or those whose immunisation status is not known or who have been fully immunised but are now immunocompromised) should be given a dose of the appropriate tetanus-containing vaccine immediately (followed by completion of the full course of the vaccine if records confirm the need).

- For tetanus-prone wounds: management is as for clean wounds with the addition of a dose of tetanus immunoglobulin (section 14.5.2) given at a different site; in fully immunised individuals who were incompletely immunised (with boosters up to date) the immunoglobulin is needed only if the risk of infection is especially high (e.g. contamination with manure). Antibacterial prophylaxis (with benzylpenicillin, co-amoxiclav, or metronidazole) may also be required for tetanus-prone wounds.

▶ Combined vaccines
See Diphtheria-containing Vaccines

Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine
Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine contains inactivated tick-borne encephalitis virus cultivated in chick embryo cells. It is recommended for immunisation of those living in or visiting high-risk areas (see International Travel, section 14.6). Children walking or camping in warm forested areas of Central and Eastern Europe, Scandinavia, Northern and Eastern China, and some parts of Japan, particularly from April to November when ticks are most prevalent, are at greatest risk of
tick-borne encephalitis. For full protection, 3 doses of the vaccine are required; booster doses are required every 3–5 years for those still at risk. Ideally, immunisation should be completed at least one month before travel.

### TYPHOID VACCINE

**Cautions** see section 14.1

**Contra-indications** see section 14.1

**Pregnancy** see p. 600

**Breast-feeding** see p. 600

**Side-effects** see section 14.1

**Indication and dose**

**Immunisation against tick-borne encephalitis**

- By intramuscular injection in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants
  - Child 1–16 years initial immunisation, 3 doses of 0.25 mL, second dose after 1–3 months and third dose after a further 5–12 months
  - Child 16–18 years 3 doses each of 0.5 mL, second dose after 1–3 months and third dose after further 5–12 months
  - Immunocompromised (including those receiving immunosuppressants), antibody concentration may be measured 4 weeks after second dose and dose repeated if protective levels not achieved
  - Note To achieve more rapid protection, second dose may be given 14 days after first dose. Booster doses, give first dose within 3 years after initial course, then every 3–5 years

**Vaccines and antisera BNFC 2011–2012**

**TicoVac® (MASTA)**

Injection, suspension, formaldehyde-inactivated Neudorf tick-borne encephalitis virus strain, (cultivated in chick embryo cells) adsorbed onto hydrated aluminium hydroxide, net price 0.25-mL prefilled syringe (TicoVac Junior®) = £28.00, 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £32.00

**Excipients** include gentamicin and neomycin

**Typhoid vaccines**

Typhoid vaccine is available as Vi capsular polysaccharide vaccine (from Salmonella typhi) for injection; and as live attenuated *Salmonella typhi* vaccine for oral use.

Typhoid immunisation is advised for children travelling to:

- areas where typhoid is endemic, especially if staying with or visiting local people
- endemic areas where frequent or prolonged exposure to poor sanitation and poor food hygiene is likely

Typhoid vaccination is not a substitute for scrupulous personal hygiene (see p. 627).

Capsular polysaccharide typhoid vaccine is usually given by intramuscular injection. Children under 2 years may respond suboptimally to the vaccine, but children aged between 1–2 years should be immunised if the risk of typhoid fever is considered high (immunisation is not recommended for infants under 12 months). Booster doses are needed every 3 years on continued exposure.

**Oral typhoid vaccine** is a live attenuated vaccine contained in an enteric-coated capsule. One capsule taken on alternate days for a total of 3 doses, provides protection 7–10 days after the last dose. Protection may persist for up to 3 years in those constantly (or repeatedly) exposed to *Salmonella typhi*, but occasional travellers require further courses at intervals of 1 year.

**Interactions** Oral typhoid vaccine is inactivated by concomitant administration of antibacterials or antimalarials:

- Antibacterials should be avoided for 3 days before and after oral typhoid vaccination;
- Mefloquine should be avoided for at least 12 hours before or after oral typhoid;
- For other antimalarials, vaccination with oral typhoid vaccine should be completed at least 3 days before the first dose of the antimalarial (except proguanil hydrochloride with atovaquone, which may be given concomitantly).

**Typhoid polysaccharide vaccine for injection**

**Typhrix® (GSK)**

Injection, Vi capsular polysaccharide typhoid vaccine, 50 micrograms/mL virulence polysaccharide antigen of *Salmonella typhi*, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £9.93

**Dose**

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child under 2 years [unlicensed use], 0.5 mL, at least 2 weeks before potential exposure to typhoid infection; response may be suboptimal (see notes above)
  - Child 2–18 years 0.5 mL, at least 2 weeks before potential exposure to typhoid infection

**Typhim VI® (Sanofi Pasteur)**

Injection, Vi capsular polysaccharide typhoid vaccine, 50 micrograms/mL virulence polysaccharide antigen of formaldehyde-inactivated *Salmonella typhi*, net price 0.5-mL prefilled syringe = £9.00

**Dose**

- By intramuscular injection
  - Child under 2 years [unlicensed use], 0.5 mL, at least 2 weeks before potential exposure to typhoid infection; response may be suboptimal (see notes above)
  - Child 2–18 years 0.5 mL, at least 2 weeks before potential exposure to typhoid infection

**Polysaccharide vaccine with hepatitis A vaccine**

See Hepatitis A Vaccine
VARICELLA–ZOSTER VACCINES

Varicella–zoster vaccine (live) is licensed for immunisation against varicella in seronegative individuals. It is not recommended for routine use in children but can be given to seronegative healthy children over 1 year who come into close contact with individuals at high risk of severe varicella infections.

Rarely, the varicella–zoster virus has been transmitted from the vaccinated individual to close contacts. Therefore, contact with the following should be avoided if a vaccine-related cutaneous rash develops within 4–6 weeks of the first or second dose:

- varicella-susceptible pregnant females;
- individuals at high risk of severe varicella, including those with immunodeficiency or those receiving immunosuppressive therapy.

Varicella–zoster immunoglobulin is used to protect susceptible children at increased risk of varicella infection, see p. 625.

**Cautions** see section 14.1; also post-vaccination close-contact with susceptible individuals (see notes above);

**Contra-indications** see section 14.1

**Pregnancy** avoid pregnancy for 3 months after vaccination; see also p. 600

**Breast-feeding** see p. 600

**Side-effects** see section 14.1; also varicella-like rash; rarely thrombocytopenia

**Indication and dose**

Immunisation against varicella infection (see notes above)

For dose, see under preparations

**Varilrix®** (GSK)

**Injection** powder for reconstitution, live attenuated varicella–zoster virus (Oka/Merck strain) propagated in human diploid cells, net price 0.5-mL vial (with diluent) = £30.28

**Excipients** include gelatin and neomycin

**Dose**

- By subcutaneous injection preferably into deltoid region

  **Child 1–18 years** (see notes above), 2 doses of 0.5 mL separated by an interval of at least 6 weeks (minimum 4 weeks)

**Yellow fever vaccine**

Live yellow fever vaccine is indicated for those travelling to or living in areas where infection is endemic (see p. 626). Infants under 6 months of age should not be vaccinated because there is a small risk of encephalitis; infants aged 6–9 months should be vaccinated only if the risk of yellow fever is high and unavoidable (seek expert advice). The immunity which probably lasts for life is officially accepted for 10 years starting from 10 days after primary immunisation and for a further 10 years immediately after revaccination.

Very rarely vaccine-associated adverse effects have been reported, such as viscerotropic disease (yellow fever vaccine-associated viscerotropic disease, YEL-AVD), a syndrome which may include metabolic acidosis, muscle and liver cytolysis, and multi-organ failure. Neurological disorders (yellow fever vaccine-associated neurotropic disease, YEL-AND) such as encephalitis have also been reported. These very rare adverse effects have usually occurred after the first dose of yellow fever vaccine in those with no previous immunity.

**Pregnancy** Live yellow fever vaccine should not be given during pregnancy, but if a significant risk of exposure cannot be avoided then vaccination should be delayed to the third trimester if possible (but the need for immunisation usually outweighs the risk to the fetus).

**Breast-feeding** Vaccination should be considered in breast-feeding women when there is a real risk to the mother from yellow fever disease.
14.5 Immunoglobulins

Human normal immunoglobulin (‘HNIG’) is prepared from pools of at least 1000 donations of human plasma; it contains immunoglobulin G (IgG) and antibodies to hepatitis A, measles, mumps, rubella, varicella, and other viruses that are currently prevalent in the general population.

Normal immunoglobulin may interfere with the immune response to live virus vaccines which should therefore only be given at least 3 weeks before or 3 months after an injection of normal immunoglobulin (this does not apply to yellow fever vaccine since normal immunoglobulin does not contain antibody to this virus).

Uses Normal immunoglobulin (containing 10–18% protein) is administered by intramuscular injection for the protection of susceptible contacts against hepatitis A virus (infectious hepatitis), measles and, to a lesser extent, rubella. Injection of immunoglobulin produces immediate protection lasting for several weeks.

Normal immunoglobulin (containing 3–12% protein) for intravenous administration is used as replacement therapy for children with congenital agammaglobulinaemia and hypogammaglobulinaemia, and for the short-term treatment of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura and Kawasaki syndrome; it is also used for the prophylaxis of infection following bone-marrow transplantation and in children with symptomatic HIV infection who have recurrent bacterial infections. Normal immunoglobulin for replacement therapy may also be given intramuscularly or subcutaneously, but intravenous formulations are normally preferred. Intravenous immunoglobulin is also used in the treatment of Guillain-Barré syndrome as an alternative to plasma exchange.

The dose of normal immunoglobulin used as replacement therapy in patients with immunodeficiencies is not the same as the dose required for treatment of acute conditions. For Kawasaki syndrome a single dose of 2 g/kg by intravenous infusion should be given with concomitant aspirin (see section 2.9) within 10 days of onset of symptoms (but children with a delayed diagnosis may also benefit). For guidance on the use of intravenous normal immunoglobulins and alternative therapies for other conditions, consult Clinical Guidelines for Immunoglobulin Use (www.dh.gov.uk).

Hepatitis A Hepatitis A vaccine is preferred for children at risk of infection (see p. 607) including those visiting areas where the disease is highly endemic (all countries excluding Northern and Western Europe, North America, Japan, Australia, and New Zealand). In unimmunised children, transmission of hepatitis A is reduced by good hygiene. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin is no longer recommended for routine prophylaxis in travellers, but it may be indicated for immunocompromised patients if their antibody response to the vaccine is unlikely to be adequate. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin is recommended for prevention of infection in close contacts (of confirmed cases of hepatitis A) who have chronic liver disease or HIV infection, or who are immunosup-
For routine prophylaxis, see MMR vaccine (p. 612). Follow-up of recipients is essential. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin should be given as soon as possible after exposure. Serological tests are unacceptable to the pregnant individual—it should be used only if termination of pregnancy would be of benefit. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin has a minimal risk of deafness only, after 20 weeks there is no increased risk. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin should be used only if termination of pregnancy would be of benefit. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin is given at a separate injection site. A vaccine can be given at the same time, but it should be given at a separate injection site.

Measles Intravenous or subcutaneous normal immunoglobulin may be given to prevent or attenuate an attack of measles in children with compromised immunity. Children with compromised immunity who have come into contact with measles should receive intravenous or subcutaneous normal immunoglobulin as soon as possible after exposure. It is most effective if given within 72 hours but can be effective if given within 6 days. Subcutaneous or intramuscular normal immunoglobulin should also be considered for the following individuals if they have been in contact with a confirmed case of measles or with a person associated with a local outbreak:

- non-immune pregnant women
- infants under 9 months

Further advice should be sought from the Centre for Infections, Health Protection Agency (tel. 020) 8200 6868). Children with normal immunity who are not in the above categories and who have not been fully immunised against measles, can be given MMR vaccine (section 14.4) for prophylaxis following exposure to measles.

Rubella Intramuscular immunoglobulin after exposure to rubella does not prevent infection in non-immune contacts and is not recommended for protection of pregnant females exposed to rubella. It may, however, reduce the likelihood of a clinical attack which may possibly reduce the risk to the fetus. Risk of intrauterine transmission is greatest in the first 11 weeks of pregnancy, between 16 and 20 weeks there is a minimal risk of deafness only, after 20 weeks there is no increased risk. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin should be used only if termination of pregnancy would be unacceptable to the pregnant individual—it should be given as soon as possible after exposure. Serological follow-up of recipients is essential.

For routine prophylaxis, see MMR vaccine (p. 612).

**NORMAL IMMUNOGLOBULIN**

**Cautions** hypo- or agammaglobulinaemia with or without IgA deficiency; interference with live virus vaccines—see p. 622.

**Intravenous use** Thrombophilic disorders, or risk factors for arterial or venous thromboembolic events; obesity; ensure adequate hydration, renal insufficiency.

**Contra-indications** patients with selective IgA deficiency who have known antibody against IgA.

**Renal impairment** monitor for acute renal failure; consider discontinuation if renal function deteriorates. Intravenous preparations with added sucrose have been associated with cases of renal dysfunction and acute renal failure.

**Side-effects** nausea, diarrhoea, chills, fever, headache, dizziness, arthralgia, myalgia, muscle spasms, low back pain; rarely hypotension, anaphylaxis, cutaneous skin reactions, aseptic meningitis, acute renal failure; also reported with intravenous use, injection site reactions, abdominal pain and distension, blood pressure fluctuations, haemolytic anaemia, thromboembolic events including myocardial infarction, stroke, pulmonary embolism, and deep vein thrombosis.

**Note** Adverse reactions are more likely to occur in patients receiving normal immunoglobulin for the first time, or following a prolonged period between treatments, or when a different brand of normal immunoglobulin is administered.

**Indication and dose**

See under preparations.

**Note** Antibody titres can vary widely between normal immunoglobulin preparations from different manufacturers—formulations are not interchangeable; patients should be maintained on the same formulation throughout long-term treatment to avoid adverse effects.

**For intramuscular use**

**Normal Immunoglobulin**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To control outbreaks of hepatitis A (see notes above)</td>
<td>• By deep intramuscular injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child under 10 years</td>
<td>250 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 10–18 years</td>
<td>500 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rubella in pregnancy, prevention of clinical attack

• By deep intramuscular injection

750 mg

Available from the Centre for Infections and other regional Health Protection Agency offices (for contacts and control of outbreaks only, see above).

**For subcutaneous use**

**Note** Preparations for subcutaneous use may be administered by intramuscular injection if subcutaneous route not possible. Intramuscular route not recommended for patients with thrombocytopenia or other bleeding disorders.

**Gammanorm** (Octapharma) ¶

Normal immunoglobulin (protein 16.5%) injection, net price 10-mL vial = £113.85, 20-mL vial = £227.70

Electrolytes: Na⁺ 1.09 mmol/10-mL vial

**Dose**

**Antibody deficiency syndromes**

Consult product literature.

**Subcuvia** (Baxter) ¶

Normal immunoglobulin (protein 16%) injection, net price 5-mL vial = £32.56, 10-mL vial = £65.12

**Dose**

**Antibody deficiency syndromes**

Consult product literature (not licensed for use in children under 12 years).
14.5.2 Disease-specific immunoglobulins

Subgam® (BPL)  
Normal immunoglobulin (protein 14–18%) injection, net price 250-mg vial = £11.20, 750-mg vial = £28.50, 1.5-g vial = £57.00

**Dose**

**Antibody deficiency syndromes**
- By subcutaneous infusion
  - Consult product literature

**Hepatitis A prophylaxis** (see also notes above)
- By intramuscular injection
  - Child under 10 years 500 mg
  - Child 10–18 years 750 mg

**Rubella prophylaxis in pregnancy** (see also notes above)
- By intramuscular injection
  - 750 mg

**Note** *Subgam*® is not licensed for prophylactic use, but due to difficulty in obtaining suitable immunoglobulin products, the Health Protection Agency recommends intramuscular use for prophylaxis against Hepatitis A, or rubella

**Vivaglobin®** (CSL Behring)  
Normal immunoglobulin (protein 16%) injection, net price 3-mL vial £17.76, 10-mL vial = £59.20, 20-mL vial = £118.40

**Cautions** risk factors for arterial or venous thromboembolic events; ensure adequate hydration

**Side-effects** rarely thromboembolic events

**Dose**

**Antibody deficiency syndromes**
- By subcutaneous infusion
  - Consult product literature

For intravenous use
**Note** Dose recommendation for Kawasaki Syndrome. See section 14.5.1; other indications—consult product literature for dosage regimens

**Flebogamma® DIF** (Grifols)  
**Intravenous infusion**, human normal immunoglobulin (protein 5%), net price 0.5 g (10 mL) = £30.00, 2.5 g (50 mL) = £150.00, 5 g (100 mL) = £300.00, 10 g (200 mL) = £600.00, 20 g (400 mL) = £1200.00

**Note** Contains sorbitol 50 mg/mL, contra-indicated in patients with hereditary fructose intolerance

**Gammagard S/D®** (Baxter)  
**Intravenous infusion**, powder for reconstitution, human normal immunoglobulin (providing protein 5% or 10%), net price 0.5 g (with diluent) = £20.05, 2.5 g (with diluent) = £100.25, 5 g (with diluent) = £200.50, 10 g (with diluent) = £401.00

**Gammagard S/D®** (Biostat UK)  
**Intravenous infusion**, human normal immunoglobulin (protein 5%), net price 1 g (20 mL) = £45.00, 2.5 g (50 mL) = £112.50, 5 g (100 mL) = £225.00, 10 g (200 mL) = £450.00

**Note** Contains sorbitol 50 mg/mL, contra-indicated in patients with hereditary fructose intolerance

**Intratect®** (Biotest UK)  
**Intravenous infusion**, human normal immunoglobulin (protein 5%), net price 1 g (20 mL) = £49.00, 2.5 g (25 mL) = £122.50, 5 g (50 mL) = £245.00, 10 g (100 mL) = £490.00, 20 g (200 mL) = £980.00

**Note** Use Glucose 5% intravenous infusion, if dilution prior to administration is required

**Privigen®** (CSL Behring)  
**Intravenous infusion**, human normal immunoglobulin (protein 10%), net price 2.5 g (25 mL) = £135.00, 5 g (50 mL) = £270.00, 10 g (100 mL) = £540.00, 20 g (200 mL) = £1080.00

**Note** Contains L-proline; contra-indicated in patients with hyperprolinaemia

**Vigam®** (BPL)  
**Intravenous infusion**, human normal immunoglobulin (protein 5%), net price 2.5 g (50 mL) = £95.00, 5 g (100 mL) = £190.00, 10 g (200 mL) = £380.00

**Note** Contains sucrose (see Renal Impairment above)

**14.5.2 Disease-specific immunoglobulins**

Specific immunoglobulins are prepared by pooling the plasma of selected human donors with high levels of the specific antibody required. For further information, see Immunoglobulin Handbook (www.hpa.org.uk).

There are no specific immunoglobulins for hepatitis A, measles, or rubella—normal immunoglobulin, section 14.5.1 is used in certain circumstances. There is no specific immunoglobulin for mumps; neither normal immunoglobulin nor MMR vaccine is effective as post-exposure prophylaxis.

**Hepatitis B**

Disease-specific hepatitis B immunoglobulin (‘HBIG’) is available for use in association with hepatitis B vaccine for the prevention of infection in infants born to mothers who have become infected with this virus in pregnancy or who are high-risk carriers (see Hepatitis B Vaccine, p. 608). Hepatitis B immunoglobulin will not inhibit the antibody response when given at the same time as hepatitis B vaccine, but should be given at different sites.

An intravenous preparation of hepatitis B-specific immunoglobulin is licensed for the prevention of hepatitis B recurrence in HBV-DNA negative patients who have undergone liver transplantation for liver failure caused by the virus.

**HEPATITIS B IMMUNOGLOBULIN**

**Cautions** IgA deficiency; interference with live virus vaccines—see under Normal Immunoglobulin, p. 622

**Side-effects** injection site swelling and pain, arthralgia; rarely anaphylaxis chest tightness, dyspnoea; also reported tremor, dizziness, facial oedema, glositis, and buccal ulceration; for side-effects associated with intravenous immunoglobulins, see section 14.5.1

**Indication and dose**

See under preparations and see also notes above

**Hepatitis B Immunoglobulin**  
**Injection**, hepatitis B-specific immunoglobulin, 100 units/mL. Vials containing 200 units or 500 units, available from selected Health Protection Agency and
## Rabies Immunoglobulin

### (Antirabies Immunoglobulin Injection)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis against hepatitis B infection</td>
<td>By intramuscular injection (as soon as possible after exposure; ideally within 48 hours, but no later than 7 days after exposure):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–5 years</td>
<td>200 units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 5–10 years</td>
<td>300 units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 10–18 years</td>
<td>500 units</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prevention of transmitted infection at birth</th>
<th>By intramuscular injection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>200 units as soon as possible after birth; for full details consult Immunisation against Infectious Disease (<a href="http://www.dh.gov.uk">www.dh.gov.uk</a>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transplant Centres

Available from BPL (Antitetanus Immunoglobulin Injection)

### Post-exposure prophylaxis

- By intramuscular injection
  - 250 units, increased to 500 units if more than 24 hours have elapsed or there is risk of heavy contamination or following burns

### Treatment of tetanus infection

- By intramuscular injection
  - 150 units/kg (multiple sites)

### Varicella–zoster

Varicella–zoster immunoglobulin (VZIG) is recommended for individuals who are at increased risk of severe varicella and who have no antibodies to varicella–zoster virus and who have significant exposure to chickenpox or herpes zoster. Those at increased risk include:

- neonates whose mothers develop chickenpox in the period 7 days before to 7 days after delivery;
- susceptible neonates exposed in the first 7 days of life;
- susceptible neonates or infants exposed whilst requiring intensive or prolonged special care nursing;
- susceptible women exposed at any stage of pregnancy (but when supplies of VZIG are short, may only be issued to those exposed in the first 20 weeks’ gestation or to those near term) providing VZIG is given within 10 days of contact.
626 14.5.3 Anti-D (Rh0) immunoglobulin

- immunocompromised individuals including those who have received corticosteroids in the previous 3 months at the following dose equivalents of prednisolone: children 2 mg/kg daily (or more than 40 mg) for at least 1 week or 1 mg/kg daily for 1 month.

Important: for full details consult Immunisation against Infectious Disease. Varicella–zoster vaccine is available—see section 14.4.

For treatment of varicella–zoster infections and attenuation of infection if varicella–zoster immunoglobulin not indicated, see section 5.3.2.1

VARICELLA–ZOSTER IMMUNOGLOBULIN

Cautions IgA deficiency; interference with live virus vaccines—see p. 622 under Normal Immunoglobulins

Side-effects injection site swelling and pain; rarely anaphylaxis

Indication and dose

Prophylaxis against varicella infection (as soon as possible—not later than 10 days after exposure)

- By deep intramuscular injection

Note: No evidence that effective in treatment of severe disease.

Normal immunoglobulin for intravenous use (section 14.5.1) may be used in those unable to receive intramuscular injection.

Varicella–Zoster Immunoglobulin (Fieb) (Antivaricella–zoster immunoglobulin)

Available from selected Health Protection Agency and NHS laboratories (see section 14.5 under Availability) (also from BPL)

14.6 International travel

Note: For advice on malaria chemoprophylaxis, see section 5.4.1.

No special immunisation is required for travellers to the United States, Europe, Australia, or New Zealand although all travellers should have immunity to tetanus and poliomyelitis (and childhood immunisations should be up to date); see also Tick-borne Encephalitis, p. 619. Certain precautions are required in Non-European areas surrounding the Mediterranean, in Africa, the Middle East, Asia, and South America.

Travellers to areas that have a high incidence of poliomyelitis or tuberculosis should be immunised with the appropriate vaccine; in the case of poliomyelitis previously immunised adults may be given a booster dose of a preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine. BCG immunisation is recommended for travellers aged under 16 years proposing to stay for longer than 3 months (or in close contact with the local population) in countries with an incidence1 of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000; it should preferably be given three months or more before departure.

Monovalent influenza A(H1N1)v vaccine (see p. 612) can be offered to travellers visiting countries in the southern hemisphere during their influenza season.

Yellow fever immunisation is recommended for travel to the endemic zones of Africa and South America. Many countries require an International Certificate of Vaccination from individuals arriving from, or who have been travelling through, endemic areas, whilst other countries require a certificate from all entering travellers (consult the Department of Health handbook, Health Information for Overseas Travel, www.dh.gov.uk).

Immunisation against meningococcal meningitis is recommended for a number of areas of the world (for details, see p. 614).

Protection against hepatitis A is recommended for travellers to high-risk areas outside Northern and Western Europe, North America, Japan, Australia and New Zealand. Hepatitis A vaccine (see p. 607) is preferred and it is likely to be effective even if given shortly before departure; normal immunoglobulin is no longer given routinely but may be indicated in the immunocompromised (see p. 622). Special care must also be taken with food hygiene (see below).

Hepatitis B vaccine (see p. 608) is recommended for those travelling to areas of high prevalence who plan to remain there for lengthy periods and who may therefore be at increased risk of acquiring infection as the result of medical or dental procedures carried out in those countries. Short-term tourists are not generally at increased risk of infection but may place themselves at risk by their sexual behaviour when abroad.

Prophylactic immunisation against rabies (see p. 617) is recommended for travellers to enzootic areas on long journeys or to areas out of reach of immediate medical attention.

Travellers who have not had a tetanus booster in the last 10 years and are visiting areas where medical attention may not be accessible should receive a booster dose of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine (see p. 604), even if they have received 5 doses of a tetanus-containing vaccine previously.

Typhoid vaccine is indicated for travellers to countries where typhoid is endemic, but the vaccine is no substitute for personal precautions (see below).

There is no requirement for cholera vaccination as a condition for entry into any country, but oral cholera vaccine (see p. 604) should be considered for back-packers and those travelling to situations where

---

1. List of countries where the incidence of tuberculosis is greater than 40 cases per 100 000 is available at www.hpa.org.uk
risk is greatest (e.g. refugee camps). Regardless of vaccination, travellers to areas where cholera is endemic should take special care with food hygiene (see below).

Advice on diphtheria, on Japanese encephalitis (vaccine available on named-patient basis from MASTA) and on tick-borne encephalitis is included in Health Information for Overseas Travel, see below.

Food hygiene In areas where sanitation is poor, good food hygiene is important to help prevent hepatitis A, typhoid, cholera, and other diarrhoeal diseases (including travellers’ diarrhoea). Food should be freshly prepared and hot, and uncooked vegetables (including green salads) should be avoided; only fruits which can be peeled should be eaten. Only suitable bottled water, or tap water that has been boiled, or treated with sterilising tablets should be used for drinking.

Information on health advice for travellers

Health professionals and travellers can find the latest information on immunisation requirements and precautions for avoiding disease while travelling from:

www.nathnac.org

The handbook, Health Information for Overseas Travel (2010), which draws together essential information for healthcare professionals regarding health advice for travellers, can also be obtained here.

Immunisation requirements change from time to time, and information on the current requirements for any particular country may be obtained from the embassy or legation of the appropriate country or from:

National Travel Health Network and Centre
UCLH NHS Foundation trust
5th Floor West
250 Euston Road
London, NW1 2PG
Tel: 0845 602 6712
(9 a.m.–noon, 2–4.30 p.m. weekdays for healthcare professionals only)
www.nathnac.org

Travel Medicine Team
Health Protection Scotland
Clifton House
Clifton Place
Glasgow, G3 7LN
Tel: (0141) 300 1130
(2 p.m.–4 p.m. weekdays)
www.travax.nhs.uk (registration required. Annual fee may be payable for users outside NHS Scotland)

Welsh Assembly Government
Tel: (029) 2082 5397
(9 a.m.–5.30 p.m. weekdays)

Department of Health and Social Services
Castle Buildings
Stormont
Belfast, BT4 3FP
Tel: (028) 9052 2118
(weekdays)

---

1. Japanese encephalitis vaccine not prescribable on the NHS; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which vaccine prescribed
Several different types of drug are given together during general anaesthesia. Anaesthesia is induced with either a volatile drug given by inhalation (section 15.1.2) or with an intravenously administered drug (section 15.1.1); anaesthesia is maintained with an intravenous or inhalational anaesthetic. Analgesics (section 15.1.4), usually short-acting opioids, are also used. The use of neuromuscular blocking drugs (section 15.1.5) necessitates intermittent positive-pressure ventilation. Following surgery, anticholinesterases (section 15.1.6) can be given to reverse the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs; specific antagonists (section 15.1.7) can be used to reverse central and respiratory depression caused by some drugs used in surgery. A topical local anaesthetic (section 15.2) can be used to reduce pain at the injection site.

Individual requirements vary considerably and the recommended doses are only a guide. Smaller doses are indicated in ill, shocked, or debilitated children and in significant hepatic impairment, while robust individuals may require larger doses. The required dose of induction agent may be less if the patient has been premedicated with a sedative agent (section 15.1.4) or if an opioid analgesic has been used.

**Surgery and long-term medication** The risk of losing disease control on stopping long-term medication before surgery is often greater than the risk posed by continuing it during surgery. It is vital that the anaesthetist knows about all drugs that a child is (or has been) taking.

Children with adrenal atrophy resulting from long-term corticosteroid use (section 6.3.2) may suffer a precip-
Anaesthesia and skilled tasks  Children and their carers should be very carefully warned about the risk of undertaking skilled tasks after the use of sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures. For intravenous benzodiazepines and for a short general anaesthetic the risk extends to at least 24 hours after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take children home. The dangers of taking alcohol should also be emphasised.

Prophylaxis of acid aspiration  Regurgitation and aspiration of gastric contents (Mendelson’s syndrome) can be a complication of general anaesthesia, particularly in obstetrics and in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease; prophylaxis against acid aspiration is not routinely used in children but may be required in high-risk cases. An \( H_2 \)-receptor antagonist (section 1.3.1) or a proton pump inhibitor (section 1.3.5), such as omeprazole, can be used before surgery to increase the pH and reduce the volume of gastric fluid. They do not affect the pH of fluid already in the stomach and this limits their value in emergency procedures; oral \( H_2 \)-receptor antagonists can be given 1–2 hours before the procedure, but omeprazole must be given at least 12 hours earlier.

Total intravenous anaesthesia  This is a technique in which surgery is carried out with all drugs given intravenously. Respiration can be spontaneous, or controlled with oxygen-enriched air. Neuromuscular blocking drugs can be used to provide relaxation and prevent reflex muscle movements. The main problem to be overcome is the assessment of depth of anaesthesia. Target Controlled Infusion (TCI) systems can be used to titrate intravenous anaesthetic infusions to predicted plasma-drug concentrations; specific models with paediatric pharmacokinetic data should be used for children.

Anaesthesia and skilled tasks  See section 15.1.
Drugs used for intravenous anaesthesia | Propofol, the most widely used intravenous anaesthetic, can be used for induction or maintenance of anaesthesia in children, but it is not commonly used in neonates. Propofol is associated with rapid recovery and less hangover effect than other intravenous anaesthetics. It causes pain on intravenous injection which can be reduced by intravenous lidocaine. Significant extraneous muscle movements can occur. Rarely, convulsions, anaphylaxis, and delayed recovery from anaesthesia can occur after propofol administration; the onset of convulsions can be delayed. Propofol is associated with bradycardia, occasionally profound; intravenous administration of an antimuscarinic drug is used to treat this.

Propofol can be used for sedation during diagnostic procedures but is contra-indicated in children under 16 years receiving intensive care because of the risk of propofol infusion syndrome (potentially fatal effects, including metabolic acidosis, cardiac failure, rhabdomyolysis, hyperlipidaemia, and hepatomegaly).

Thiopental sodium is a barbiturate that is used for induction of anaesthesia, but it has no analgesic properties. Induction is generally smooth and rapid, but dose-related cardiorespiratory depression can occur. Awakening from a moderate dose of thiopental is rapid because the drug redistributes into other tissues, particularly fat. However, metabolism is slow and sedative effects can persist for 24 hours. Repeated doses have a cumulative effect particularly in neonates, and recovery is much slower.

Etomidate is an intravenous agent associated with rapid recovery without a hangover effect. Etomidate causes less hypotension than thiopental and propofol during induction. It produces a high incidence of extraneous muscle movements, which can be minimised by an opioid analgesic or a short-acting benzodiazepine. Induction of anaesthesia, but it has no analgesic properties. Induction is generally smooth and rapid, but dose-related cardiorespiratory depression can occur. Awakening from a moderate dose of thiopental is rapid because the drug redistributes into other tissues, particularly fat. However, metabolism is slow and sedative effects can persist for 24 hours. Repeated doses have a cumulative effect particularly in neonates, and recovery is much slower.

Ketamine causes less hypotension than thiopental and propofol during induction. It is sometimes used in children requiring repeat anaesthesia (such as for serial burns dressings), however recovery is relatively slow and there is a high incidence of extraneous muscle movements. Ketamine can cause hallucinations, nightmares, and other transient psychotic effects; these can be reduced by a benzodiazepine, such as diazepam or midazolam.

**ETOMIDATE**

Cautions see notes above; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

Contra-indications see notes above

Hepatic impairment reduce dose in liver cirrhosis

Pregnancy may depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery

Breast-feeding breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.

**Propofol**

Indication and dose

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 150–300 micrograms/kg; child under 10 years may need up to 400 micrograms/kg

Side-effects see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, hypotension, apnoea, hyperventilation, stridor, rash; less commonly hypersalivation, bradycardia, arrhythmias, hypertension, hiccups, cough, phlebitis; AV block, cardiac arrest, respiratory depression, seizures, shivering, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome also reported

Contra-indications see notes above; avoid for at least 12 hours after last dose

Breast-feeding breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

**Etomidate-Lipuro® (Braun)** Injection (emulsion), etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.53

**Etomidate-Lipuro® (Braun)** Injection, etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.38

Excipients include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Side-effects** see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, hypotension, apnoea, hyperventilation, stridor, rash; less commonly hypersalivation, bradycardia, arrhythmias, hypertension, hiccups, cough, phlebitis; AV block, cardiac arrest, respiratory depression, seizures, shivering, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome also reported

**Contra-indications** see notes above; avoid for at least 12 hours after last dose

Breast-feeding breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

**Hypnomidate® (Janssen)** Injection, etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.38

**Excipients** include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

Cautions see notes above; dehydration; hypertension; respiratory tract infection; increased cerebrospinal fluid pressure; predisposition to seizures, hallucinations, or nightmares; psychotic disorders; head injury or intracranial mass lesions; thyroid dysfunction; raised intracranial pressure; interactions: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

Contra-indications see notes above; hypertension, pre-eclampsia or eclampsia, severe cardiac disease, stroke; raised intracranial pressure; head trauma; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2)

**Side-effects** see notes above; also nausea, vomiting, tachycardia, hypertension, arrhythmias, hypotension, bradycardia, hypersalivation, laryngospasm, anxiety, insomnia, diplopia, nystagmus, raised intra-ocular pressure; rashes, apnoea, and respiratory depression also reported

Indication and dose

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 300 micrograms/kg (max. total dose 60 mg)

**Induction and maintenance of anaesthesia (short procedures)**

- By intravenous injection
  - Neonate 1–2 mg/kg produces 5–10 minutes of surgical anaesthesia, adjusted according to response

**Induction of anaesthesia**

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 300 micrograms/kg

**Hypnomidate® (Janssen)** Injection, etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.38

**Excipients** include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Induction of anaesthesia**

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 300 micrograms/kg (max. total dose 60 mg)

**Etomidate-Lipuro® (Braun)** Injection (emulsion), etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.53

**Etomidate-Lipuro® (Braun)** Injection, etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.38

**Excipients** include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Induction of anaesthesia**

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 300 micrograms/kg (max. total dose 60 mg)

**Hypnomidate® (Janssen)** Injection, etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.38

**Excipients** include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Induction of anaesthesia**

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 300 micrograms/kg (max. total dose 60 mg)

**Etomidate-Lipuro® (Braun)** Injection (emulsion), etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.53

**Etomidate-Lipuro® (Braun)** Injection, etomidate 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.38

**Excipients** include propylene glycol (see Excipients, p. 2)

**Induction of anaesthesia**

- By slow intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 300 micrograms/kg (max. total dose 60 mg)
15.1.1 Intravenous anaesthetics

sometimes fatal side-effects reported with prolonged infusion of doses exceeding 5 mg/kg/hour, including metabolic acidosis, rhabdomyolysis, hyperkalaemia, and cardiac failure, dystonia and dyskinesia also reported

**Indication and dose**

**Induction of anaesthesia using 0.5% or 1% injection**
- By slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion

**Induction of anaesthesia using 2% injection**
- By intravenous infusion

**Maintenance of anaesthesia using 1% injection**
- By continuous intravenous infusion

**Maintenance of anaesthesia using 2% injection**
- By continuous intravenous infusion

**Sedation of ventilated children in intensive care using 1% or 2% injection**
- By continuous intravenous infusion

**Induction of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 0.5% or 1% injection**
- By slow intravenous injection

**Maintenance of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 0.5% injection**
- By intravenous infusion

**BNFC 2011–2012**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Child 1 month–12 years</th>
<th>1–2 mg/kg produces 5–10 minutes of surgical anaesthesia, adjusted according to response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child 12–18 years</td>
<td>1–4.5 mg/kg adjusted according to response (2 mg/kg usually produces 5–10 minutes of surgical anaesthesia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neonate</strong></td>
<td>4 mg/kg usually produces 15 minutes of surgical anaesthesia, adjusted according to response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child 1 month–18 years</td>
<td>4–13 mg/kg (4 mg/kg sufficient for some diagnostic procedures), adjusted according to response; 10 mg/kg usually produces 12–25 minutes of surgical anaesthesia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Induction and maintenance of anaesthesia (longer procedures)**

- By intravenous administration
  - **Neonate** initially 0.5–2 mg/kg by intravenous injection, followed by a continuous intravenous infusion of 8 micrograms/kg/minute adjusted according to response; up to 30 micrograms/kg/minute may be used to produce deep anaesthesia
  - **Child 1 month–18 years** initially 0.5–2 mg/kg by intravenous injection followed by a continuous intravenous infusion of 10–45 micrograms/kg/minute adjusted according to response

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; use microdrip infusion for maintenance of anaesthesia

For intravenous injection, dilute 100 mg/mL strength to a concentration of not more than 50 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Ketalar® (Pfizer)**

**Injection**, ketamine (as hydrochloride) 10 mg/mL, net price 20-mL vial = £5.06; 50 mg/mL, 10-mL vial = £8.77; 100 mg/mL, 10-mL vial = £16.10

**Sedation of ventilated children in intensive care using 1% or 2% injection**
- By continuous intravenous infusion

**Child 16–18 years** 0.3–4 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

**Child 1 month–18 years** adjust dose according to age, body-weight, and response; usual dose in child 1 month–17 years 2.5–4 mg/kg; usual dose in child 17–18 years 1.5–2.5 mg/kg at a rate of 20–40 mg every 10 seconds until response

**Child 3–18 years** adjust dose according to age, body-weight, and response; usual dose in child 3–17 years 2.5–4 mg/kg; usual dose in child 17–18 years 1.5–2.5 mg/kg at a rate of 20–40 mg every 10 seconds until response

**Child 17–18 years** dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response; usual dose in child 1 month–17 years 1–2 mg/kg; usual dose in child 17–18 years 0.5–1 mg/kg over 1–5 minutes

**Child 17–18 years** dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response; usual dose 1.5–4.5 mg/kg/hour (additionally, if rapid increase in sedation required, by slow intravenous injection 10–20 mg)

**PROPOFOL**

**Cautions** see notes above; cardiac impairment; respiratory impairment; hypovolaemia; epilepsy; hypertension; raised intracranial pressure; monitor blood-lipid concentration if risk of fat overload or if sedation longer than 3 days; **interactions**: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

**Contra-indications** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution

**Renal impairment** use with caution

**Pregnancy** may depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery; max. dose for maintenance of anaesthesia, 6 mg/kg/hour

**Breast-feeding** breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

**Side-effects** see notes above; also hypotension, tachycardia, flushing; transient anopia, hyperventilation, coughing, and hiccup during induction; headache; less commonly thrombosis, phlebitis; rarely arrhythmia, headache, vertigo, shivering, euphoria; very rarely pancreatitis, pulmonary oedema, sexual disinhibition, and discoloration of urine; serious and
15.1.2 Inhalational anaesthetics

Maintenance of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 1% injection

- By intravenous infusion

Child 1 month–18 years dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response; usual dose in child 1 month–17 years 1.5–9 mg/kg/hour (additionally, if rapid increase in sedation required, by slow intravenous injection, max. 1 mg/kg); usual dose in child 17–18 years 1.5–4.5 mg/kg/hour (additionally, if rapid increase in sedation required, by slow intravenous injection, 10–20 mg)

Administration for continuous intravenous infusion; microbiological filter not recommended; 0.5% or 1% emulsion may be infused undiluted using a suitable infusion pump; may also be administered via a Y-piece close to injection site co-administered with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; alternatively dilute to a concentration not less than 2 mg/mL (1 mg/mL for 0.5% injection) with Glucose 5% (or Sodium Chloride 0.9%) for Propofol-Lipuro®, Propoven®, Braun, and Fresenius Kabi brands; use glass or PVC containers (if PVC bag used, it should be full—withdraw volume of infusion fluid equal to that of propofol to be added); give within 6 hours of preparation

2% emulsion do not dilute; may be administered via a Y-piece close to injection site co-administered with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Propofol (Non-proprietary) (£1)

0.5% injection (emulsion), propofol 5 mg/mL, net price 20-ml amp = £3.46
Brands include Propofol-Lipuro®, Propoven®

1% injection (emulsion), propofol 10 mg/mL, net price 20-ml amp = £4.18, 50-ml bottle = £10.10, 100-ml bottle = £19.40
Brands include Propofol-Lipuro®, Propoven®

2% injection (emulsion), propofol 20 mg/mL, net price 50-ml vial = £21.30
Brands include Propofol-Lipuro®, Propoven®

Diprivan® (AstraZeneca) (£1)

1% injection (emulsion), propofol 10 mg/mL, net price 20-ml amp = £1.07, 50-ml prefilled syringe (for use with Diprivan® TCI system) = £4.72

2% injection (emulsion), propofol 20 mg/mL, net price 50-ml prefilled syringe (for use with Diprivan® TCI system) = £5.27

Indication and dose

Induction of anaesthesia

- By slow intravenous injection

Neonate initially up to 2 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg repeated as necessary (max. total dose 4 mg/kg)

Child 1 month–18 years initially up to 4 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg repeated as necessary (max. total dose 7 mg/kg)

Prolonged status epilepticus

- By slow intravenous injection and intravenous infusion

Neonate initially up to 2 mg/kg by intravenous injection, then up to 8 mg/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion, adjusted according to response

Child 1 month–18 years initially up to 4 mg/kg by intravenous injection, then up to 8 mg/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion, adjusted according to response

Administration For intravenous injection, dilute to a concentration of 25 mg/mL with Water for Injections, and give over at least 10–15 seconds; for intravenous infusion dilute to a concentration of 2.5 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Thiopental (Archimedes) (£1)

Injection, powder for reconstitution, thiopental sodium, net price 500-mg vial = £3.68

Important

The drugs in this section should be used by experienced personnel only and when resuscitation equipment is available.

Inhalational anaesthetics include gases and volatile liquids. Gaseous anaesthetics require suitable equipment for administration. Volatile liquid anaesthetics are administered using calibrated vapourisers, using air, oxygen, or nitrous oxide-oxygen mixtures as the carrier

Cautions see notes above; cardiovascular disease; reconstituted solution is highly alkaline—administration causes tissue necrosis and severe pain; avoid intra-arterial injection; interactions: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

Contra-indications see notes above; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); myotonic dystrophy

Hepatic impairment use with caution—reduce dose

Renal impairment caution in severe impairment

Pregnancy may depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery; dose should not exceed 250 mg

Breast-feeding breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

Side-effects hypotension, arrhythmias, myocardial depression, laryngeal spasm, cough, headache, sneezing, hypersensitivity reactions, rash

Licensed use not licensed for use in status epilepticus; not licensed for use by intravenous infusion
Volatile liquid anaesthetics

Volatile liquid anaesthetics can be used for induction and maintenance of anaesthesia, and following induction with an intravenous anaesthetic (section 15.1.1).

Volatile liquid anaesthetics can trigger malignant hyperthermia (section 15.1.8) and are contra-indicated in those susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. They can increase cerebrospinal pressure and should be used with caution in those with raised intracranial pressure. They can also cause hepatotoxicity in those who are sensitised to halogenated anaesthetics; halothane has been associated with severe hepatotoxicity (important: see below). In children with neuromuscular disease, inhalational anaesthetics are very rarely associated with hyperkalaemia, resulting in cardiac arrhythmias and death. Cardiorespiratory depression, hypertension, and arrhythmias are common side-effects of volatile liquid anaesthetics.

Isoflurane is a volatile liquid anaesthetic. Heart rhythm is generally stable during isoflurane anaesthesia, but heart-rate can rise. Systemic arterial pressure and cardiac output can fall, owing to a decrease in systemic vascular resistance. Muscle relaxation occurs and the effects of muscle relaxant drugs are potentiated. Isoflurane can irritate mucous membranes, causing cough, breath-holding, and laryngospasm. Isoflurane is the preferred inhalational anaesthetic for use in obstetrics.

Desflurane is a rapid-acting volatile liquid anaesthetic; it is reported to have about one-fifth the potency of isoflurane. Emergence and recovery from anaesthesia are particularly rapid because of its low solubility. Desflurane is not recommended for induction of anaesthesia as it is irritable to the upper respiratory tract; cough, breath-holding, apnoea, laryngospasm, and increased secretions can occur.

Sevoflurane is a rapid-acting volatile liquid anaesthetic and is more potent than desflurane and is therefore used for inhalational induction of anaesthesia. Sevoflurane can interact with carbon dioxide absorbents to form compound A, a potentially nephrotoxic vinyl ether. However, in spite of extensive use, no cases of sevoflurane-induced permanent renal injury have been reported and the carbon dioxide absorbents used in the UK produce very low concentrations of compound A, even in low-flow anaesthetic systems.

Halothane is a volatile liquid anaesthetic that has largely been superseded by newer agents, but is used occasionally by very specialised paediatric anaesthetists to manage difficult airways (with careful monitoring for cardiopulmonary depression and arrhythmias). Its advantages are that it is potent, induction is smooth, and the vapour is non-irritant and seldom induces coughing or breath-holding.

Halothane hepatotoxicity

Severe hepatotoxicity can follow halothane anaesthesia. It occurs more frequently after repeated exposure to halothane and has a high mortality. The risk of severe hepatotoxicity appears to be increased by repeated exposures within a short time interval, but even after a long interval (sometimes of several years), susceptible patients have been reported to develop jaundice. Since there is no reliable way of identifying patients at risk, the following precautions are recommended before the use of halothane:

- a careful anaesthetic history should be taken to determine previous exposure and previous reactions to halothane;
- repeated exposure to halothane within a period of at least 3 months should be avoided unless there are overriding clinical circumstances;
- a history of unexplained jaundice or pyrexia in a patient following exposure to halothane is an absolute contra-indication to its future use in that patient.

BNFC 2011-2012
Breast-feeding  breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

Side-effects  see notes above

Indication and dose

Induction of anaesthesia
- By inhalation through specifically calibrated vaporiser

Child 1 month–18 years  initially 0.5% then increased gradually according to response to 2–5% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen

Maintenance of anaesthesia
- By inhalation through specifically calibrated vaporiser

Child 1 month–18 years  0.5–2% in oxygen, or oxygen-air, or nitrous oxide-oxygen

ISOFLURANE

Cautions  see notes above; interactions: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

Contra-indications  see notes above

Pregnancy  may depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery

Breast-feeding  breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

Side-effects  see notes above

Indication and dose

Induction of anaesthesia
- By inhalation through specifically calibrated vaporiser

Neonate increased gradually according to response from 0.5–3% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen

Child 1 month–18 years  increased gradually according to response from 0.5–3% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen

Maintainance of anaesthesia
- By inhalation through specifically calibrated vaporiser

Neonate 1–2.5% in nitrous oxide-oxygen; additional 0.5–1% may be required if given with oxygen alone

Child 1 month–18 years  1–2.5% in nitrous oxide-oxygen; additional 0.5–1% may be required if given with oxygen alone; caesarean section, 0.5–0.75% in nitrous oxide-oxygen

SEVOFLURANE

Cautions  see notes above; susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation; interactions: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

Contra-indications  see notes above

Renal impairment  use with caution

Pregnancy  may depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery

Breast-feeding  breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

Side-effects  see notes above; also urinary retention, leucopenia, agitation; cardiac arrest, torsade de points, dystonia, and seizures also reported

Indication and dose

Induction of anaesthesia
- By inhalation through specifically calibrated vaporiser

Neonate up to 4% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen, according to response

Child 1 month–18 years  initially 0.5–1% then increased gradually up to 8% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen, according to response

Maintenance of anaesthesia
- By inhalation through specifically calibrated vaporiser

Neonate 0.5–2% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen, according to response

Child 1 month–18 years  0.5–3% in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen, according to response

Nitrous oxide

Nitrous oxide is used for maintenance of anaesthesia and, in sub-anaesthetic concentrations, for analgesia. For anaesthesia it is commonly used in a concentration of 50 to 66% in oxygen as part of a balanced technique in association with other inhalational or intravenous agents. Nitrous oxide is unsatisfactory as a sole anaesthetic owing to lack of potency, but is useful as part of a combination of drugs since it allows a significant reduction in dosage.

For analgesia (without loss of consciousness) a mixture of nitrous oxide and oxygen containing 50% of each gas (Entonox®, Equanox®) is used. Self-administration using a demand valve may be used in children who are able to self-regulate their intake (usually over 5 years of age) for painful dressing changes, as an aid to postoperative physiotherapy, for wound debridement and in emergency ambulances.

Nitrous oxide may have a deleterious effect if used in children with an air-containing closed space since nitrous oxide diffuses into such a space with a resulting increase in pressure. This effect may be dangerous in the presence of a pneumothorax, which may enlarge to compromise respiration, or in the presence of intracranial air after head injury. Hypoxia can occur immediately following the administration of nitrous oxide; additional oxygen should always be given for several minutes after stopping the flow of nitrous oxide.

Exposure of children to nitrous oxide for prolonged periods, either by continuous or by intermittent administration, may result in megaloblastic anaemia owing to interference with the action of vitamin B₁₂; neurological toxic effects can occur without preceding overt haematological changes. For the same reason, exposure of theatre staff to nitrous oxide should be minimised. Depression of white cell formation may also occur.

Assessment of plasma-vitamin B₁₂ concentration should be considered before nitrous oxide anaesthesia in children at risk of deficiency, including children who have a poor or vegetarian diet and children with a history of anaemia. Nitrous oxide should not be given continuously for longer than 24 hours or more frequently than every 4 days without close supervision and haematological monitoring.
Nitrous Oxide

Cautions  see notes above;  interactions: Appendix 1 (anaesthetics, general)

Pregnancy  may depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery

Breast-feeding  breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia

Side-effects  see notes above

Indication and dose

Maintenance of anaesthesia in conjunction with other anaesthetic agents

- By inhalation using suitable anaesthetic apparatus

Neonate  50–66% in oxygen

Child 1 month–18 years  50–66% in oxygen

Analgesia

- By inhalation using suitable anaesthetic apparatus

(see also notes above)

Neonate  up to 50% in oxygen, according to the child’s needs

Child 1 month–18 years  up to 50% in oxygen, according to the child’s needs

15.1.3 Antimuscarinic drugs

Important  The drugs in this section should be used by experienced personnel only.

Antimuscarinic drugs are used (less commonly nowadays) as premedicants to dry bronchial and salivary secretions which are increased by intubation, upper airway surgery, or some inhalational anaesthetics, but they should not be used for this indication in children with cystic fibrosis. Antimuscarinics are also used before or with neostigmine (section 15.1.6) to prevent bradycardia, excessive salivation, and other muscarinic actions of neostigmine. They also prevent bradycardia and hypotension associated with drugs such as halothane, propofol, and suxamethonium.

Atropine sulphate  is now rarely used for premedication but still has an emergency role in the treatment of vagotonic side-effects. For its role in cardiopulmonary resuscitation, see section 2.7.3.

Hyoscine hydrobromide  reduces secretions and also provides a degree of amnesia, sedation and anti-emesis. Unlike atropine it may produce bradycardia rather than tachycardia. In some children hyoscine may cause the central anticholinergic syndrome (excitement, ataxia, hallucinations, behavioural abnormalities, and drowsiness).

Glycopyrronium bromide  reduces salivary secretions. When given intravenously it produces less tachycardia than atropine. It is widely used with neostigmine for reversal of non-depolarising muscle relaxants (section 15.1.5).

Glycopyrronium or hyoscine hydrobromide are also used to control excessive secretions in upper airways or hypersalivation in palliative care and in children unable to control posture or with abnormal swallowing reflex; effective dose varies and tolerance may develop. The intramuscular route should be avoided if possible. Hyoscine transdermal patches may also be used (section 4.6).

Atropine Sulphate

Cautions  see notes in section 1.2

Duration of action  Since atropine has a shorter duration of action than neostigmine, late unopposed bradycardia may result; close monitoring of the patient is necessary

Contra-indications  see notes in section 1.2

Pregnancy  not known to be harmful; use with caution

Breast-feeding  small amount present in milk—use with caution

Side-effects  see notes in section 1.2

Licensed use  not licensed for use by oral route; not licensed for use in children under 12 years for intra-operative bradycardia; not licensed for use in children under 12 years by intravenous route for premedication; not licensed for the control of muscarinic side-effects of edrophonium in reversal of competitive neuromuscular block

Indication and dose

Premedication

- By mouth 1–2 hours before induction of anaesthesia

Neonate  20–40 micrograms/kg

Child 1 month–18 years  20–40 micrograms/kg (max. 900 micrograms)

- By intravenous injection immediately before induction of anaesthesia

Neonate  10 micrograms/kg

Child 1 month–12 years  20 micrograms/kg (minimum 100 micrograms, max. 600 micrograms)

Child 12–18 years  300–600 micrograms

- By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection 30–60 minutes before induction of anaesthesia

Neonate  10 micrograms/kg

Child 1 month–12 years  10–30 micrograms/kg (minimum 100 micrograms, max. 600 micrograms)

Child 12–18 years  300–600 micrograms

Intra-operative bradycardia

- By intravenous injection

Neonate  10–20 micrograms/kg

Child 1 month–12 years  10–20 micrograms/kg

Child 12–18 years  300–600 micrograms (larger doses in emergencies)

Control of muscarinic side-effects of neostigmine  50 micrograms/kg in reversal of competitive neuromuscular block

- By intravenous injection

Neonate  20 micrograms/kg

Child 1 month–12 years  20 micrograms/kg (max. 1.2 mg)

Child 12–18 years  0.6–1.2 mg
Control of muscarinic side-effects of edrophonium in reversal of competitive neuromuscular block

- By intravenous injection
  - Child 1 month–18 years 7 micrograms/kg (max. 600 micrograms)

Cycloplegia, anterior uveitis (section 11.5)

Administration for administration by mouth, injection solution may be given orally

- Atropine (Non-proprietary)

  Injection, atropine sulphate 600 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 62p

  Note Other strengths also available

  Injection, prefilled disposable syringe, atropine sulphate 200 micrograms/mL, net price 5 mL = £5.91; 300 micrograms/mL, 10 mL = £5.91; 600 micrograms/mL, 1 mL = £5.91

  Oral solution, atropine sulphate 100 micrograms/mL available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809

  Tablets, atropine sulphate 600 micrograms, net price 28-tab pack = £17.59

  1. Restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency

- Minijet® Atropine (UCB Pharma)

  Injection, atropine sulphate 100 micrograms/mL, net price 5 mL = £5.04, 10 mL = £5.93, 30 mL = £9.85

  1. Restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency

GLYCOPRYYRONIUM BROMIDE
(Glycopyrrolate)

Cautions section 1.2
Contra-indications section 1.2
Side-effects section 1.2
Licensed use not licensed for use in control of upper airways secretion and hypersalivation

Indication and dose

Premedication at induction
- By intravenous or intramuscular injection

  Neonate 5 micrograms/kg

  Child 1 month–12 years 4–8 micrograms/kg (max. 200 micrograms)

  Child 12–18 years 200–400 micrograms or 4–5 micrograms/kg (max. 400 micrograms)

Intra-operative bradycardia
- By intravenous injection

  Neonate 10 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary

  Child 1 month–18 years 4–8 micrograms/kg (max. 200 micrograms), repeated if necessary

Control of muscarinic side-effects of neostigmine in reversal of competitive neuromuscular block
- By intravenous injection

  Neonate 10 micrograms/kg

Control of upper airways secretion and hypersalivation
- By mouth

  Child 1 month–18 years 40–100 micrograms/kg (max. 2 mg) 3–4 times daily, adjusted according to response

- By subcutaneous infusion

  Child 1 month–12 years 12–40 micrograms/kg/24 hours (max. 1.2 mg)

  Child 12–18 years 0.6–1.2 mg/24 hours

- By subcutaneous injection or intramuscular injection or intravenous injection (but see notes above)

  Child 1 month–12 years 4–10 micrograms/kg (max. 200 micrograms) 4 times a day when required

  Child 12–18 years 200 micrograms every 4 hours when required

Administration for administration by mouth, injection solution may be given or crushed tablets suspended in water

Glycopyrronium bromide (Non-proprietary)

Injection, glycopyrronium bromide 200 micrograms/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 54p, 3-mL amp = 91p

Tablets, glycopyrronium bromide 1 mg and 2 mg Available on a named-patient basis from specialist importing companies, p. 809

With neostigmine metilsulphate
Section 15.1.6

HYOSCINE HYDROBROMIDE
(Scopolamine hydrobromide)

Cautions see notes in section 1.2 and notes above; also epilepsy
Contra-indications see notes in section 1.2
Hepatic impairment see Hyoscine Hydrobromide, section 4.6
Renal impairment see Hyoscine Hydrobromide, section 4.6
Pregnancy see Hyoscine Hydrobromide, section 4.6
Breast-feeding see Hyoscine Hydrobromide, section 4.6

Side-effects see notes in section 1.2
Indication and dose

Premedication
- By subcutaneous or intramuscular injection 30–60 minutes before induction

  Child 1–12 years 15 micrograms/kg (max. 600 micrograms)

  Child 12–18 years 200–600 micrograms

Note Same dose may be given by intravenous injection immediately before induction
Preparations
For transdermal and oral preparations see section 4.6

15.1.4 Sedative and analgesic peri-operative drugs

15.1.4.1 Anxiolytics
15.1.4.2 Non-opioid analgesics
15.1.4.3 Opioid analgesics

Important
The drugs in this section should be used by experienced personnel only.

Premedication
Fear and anxiety before a procedure (including the night before) can be minimised by using a sedative drug, usually a benzodiazepine. Premedication may also augment the action of anaesthetics and provide some degree of pre-operative amnesia. The choice of drug depends on the individual child, the nature of the procedure, the anaesthetic to be used, and other prevailing circumstances such as outpatients, obstetrics, and recovery facilities. The choice also varies between elective and emergency procedures. Oral administration is preferred if possible; the rectal route should only be used in exceptional circumstances. Sedative premedication should be avoided in children with a compromised airway, CNS depression, or a history of sleep apnoea.

Premedics can be given the night before major surgery; a further, smaller dose may be required the following morning if any delay in starting surgery is anticipated. Alternatively, the first dose may be given on the day of procedure. Oral midazolam is the most common premedicant for children; temazepam may be used in older children. The antihistamine alimemazine (section 3.4.1) is occasionally used orally, but when given alone it may cause restlessness in some children. Midazolam is not recommended for prolonged sedation in neonates; drug accumulation including relief of anxiety, sedation, and amnesia; short-acting benzodiazepines taken by mouth are the most common premedicants. Benzodiazepines are also used for sedation prior to clinical procedures and for sedation in intensive care.

Benzodiazepines may occasionally cause marked respiratory depression and facilities for its treatment are essential; flumazenil (section 15.1.7) is used to antagonise the effects of benzodiazepines.

Midazolam, a water-soluble benzodiazepine, is the preferred benzodiazepine for premedication and for sedation for clinical procedures in children. It has a fast onset of action, and recovery is faster than for other benzodiazepines. Recovery may be longer in children with a low cardiac output, or after repeated dosing. Midazolam can be given by mouth [unlicensed], but its bitter acidic taste may need to be disguised. It can also be given buccally [unlicensed] or intranasally [unlicensed]. Midazolam is associated with profound sedation when high doses are given or when it is used with certain other drugs. It can cause severe disinhibition and restlessness in some children. Midazolam is not recommended for prolonged sedation in neonates; drug accumulation is likely to occur.

Overdosage with midazolam
There have been reports of overdosage in adults when high strength midazolam injection has been used for conscious sedation. The use of high strength midazolam (5 mg/mL in 2 mL and 10 mL ampoules, or 2 mg/mL in 5 mL ampoules) should be restricted to general anaesthesia, intensive care, palliative care, or other situations where the risk has been assessed. It is advised that flumazenil (section 15.1.7) is available where midazolam is used, to reverse the effects if necessary.

Temazepam is given by mouth for premedication in older children and has a short duration of action. Anxio-
lytic and sedative effects last about 90 minutes, although there may be residual drowsiness. Temazepam is rarely used for dental procedures in children.

Lorazepam produces more prolonged sedation than temazepam and it has marked amnesic effects.

Peri-operative use of diazepam is not recommended in children; onset and magnitude of response are unreliable, and paradoxical effects may occur. Diazepam is not used for dental procedures in children.

**LORAZEPAM**

**Cautions** see notes above and section 4.8.2; interactions: Appendix 1 (anxiolytics and hypnotics)

**Contra-indications** see Diazepam, section 4.8.2

**Hepatic impairment** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Renal impairment** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.2

**Pregnancy** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Breast-feeding** see Benzodiazepines, section 4.8.1

**Side-effects** see notes above and Diazepam, section 4.8.2; concomitant use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter); interactions: Appendix 1 (anxiolytics and hypnotics)

**Contra-indications** marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including unstable myasthenia gravis; severe respiratory depression; acute pulmonary insufficiency

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; can precipitate coma

**Renal impairment** start with small doses in severe impairment; increased cerebral sensitivity

**Pregnancy** avoid regular use (risk of neonatal withdrawal symptoms); use only if clear indication such as seizure control (high doses during late pregnancy or labour may cause neonatal hypothermia, hypotonia, and respiratory depression)

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours after administration

**Side-effects** see notes above; gastro-intestinal disturbances, increased appetite, jaundice; hypotension, cardiac arrest, heart rate changes, anaphylaxis, thrombosis; laryngospasm, bronchospasm, respiratory depression and respiratory arrest (particularly with high doses or on rapid injection); drowsiness, confusion, ataxia, amnesia, headache, euphoria, hallucinations, convulsions (more common in neonates), fatigue, dizziness, vertigo, involuntary movements, paradoxical excitement and aggression, dysarthria; urinary retention, incontinence; blood disorders; muscle weakness; visual disturbances; salivation changes; skin reactions; injection-site reactions; with intranasal administration burning sensation, lacrimation, and severe irritation of nasal mucosa

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 5 years by mouth; not licensed for use in children under 12 years by intravenous injection

**Indication and dose**

**Premedication**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–12 years 50–100 micrograms/kg (max. 4 mg) at least 1 hour before procedure
  - Child 12–18 years 1–4 mg at least 1 hour before procedure
  - **Note** Same dose may be given the night before procedure in addition to, or to replace, dose before procedure

- **By intravenous injection**
  - Child 1 month–18 years 50–100 micrograms/kg (max. 4 mg)
  - **Note** Give intravenous injection 30–45 minutes before procedure

**Status epilepticus** section 4.8.2

**Administration** for intravenous injection, dilute injection solution with an equal volume of Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 3–5 minutes; max. rate 50 micrograms/kg over 3 minutes

**Lorazepam (Non-proprietary)** (£8.1)

- **Tablets** lorazepam 1 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £5.42; 2.5 mg, 28-tab pack = £7.11. Label: 2 or 19
  - **Injection** lorazepam 4 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 35p
    - **Excipients** include benzyl alcohol (avoid in neonates unless there is no safer alternative available; see Excipients, p. 2); propylene glycol.
    - **Brands** include Ativan®

**Extemporaneous formulations** available see Extemporaneous Preparations, p. 6

**MIDAZOLAM**

**Cautions** see notes above; cardiac disease; respiratory disease; myasthenia gravis; neonates; history of drug or alcohol abuse; reduce dose if debilitated; risk of severe hypotension in children with hypovolaemia, vasoconstriction, hypothermia; avoid prolonged use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter); interactions: Appendix 1 (anxiolytics and hypnotics)

**Contra-indications** marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness including unstable myasthenia gravis; severe respiratory depression; acute pulmonary insufficiency

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; can precipitate coma

**Renal impairment** start with small doses in severe impairment; increased cerebral sensitivity

**Pregnancy** avoid regular use (risk of neonatal withdrawal symptoms); use only if clear indication such as seizure control (high doses during late pregnancy or labour may cause neonatal hypothermia, hypotonia, and respiratory depression)

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours after administration

**Side-effects** see notes above; gastro-intestinal disturbances, increased appetite, jaundice; hypotension, cardiac arrest, heart rate changes, anaphylaxis, thrombosis; laryngospasm, bronchospasm, respiratory depression and respiratory arrest (particularly with high doses or on rapid injection); drowsiness, confusion, ataxia, amnesia, headache, euphoria, hallucinations, convulsions (more common in neonates), fatigue, dizziness, vertigo, involuntary movements, paradoxical excitement and aggression, dysarthria; urinary retention, incontinence; blood disorders; muscle weakness; visual disturbances; salivation changes; skin reactions; injection-site reactions; with intranasal administration burning sensation, lacrimation, and severe irritation of nasal mucosa

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 6 months for premedication and conscious sedation; not licensed for use by mouth, or by buccal administration

**Indication and dose**

**Conscious sedation for procedures** (but see notes above)

- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years 500 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) 30–60 minutes before procedure

- **By buccal administration**
  - Child 6 months–10 years 200–300 micrograms/kg (max. 5 mg)
  - Child 10–18 years 6–7 mg (max. 8 mg if 70 kg or over)

- **By rectum**
  - Child 6 months–12 years 300–500 micrograms/kg 15–30 minutes before procedure

- **By intravenous injection over 2–3 minutes** 5–10 minutes before procedure
  - Child 1 month–6 years initially 25–50 micrograms/kg, increased if necessary in small steps (max. total dose 6 mg)
  - Child 6–12 years initially 25–50 micrograms/kg, increased if necessary in small steps (max. total dose 10 mg)
  - Child 12–18 years initially 25–50 micrograms/kg, increased if necessary in small steps (max. total dose 7.5 mg)
15.1.4 Sedative and analgesic peri-operative drugs

**Premedication** (but see notes above)
- **By mouth**
  - Child 1 month–18 years 500 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) 15–30 minutes before the procedure
  - By rectum
  - Child 6 months–12 years 300–500 micrograms/kg 15–30 minutes before induction

**Induction of anaesthesia** (but rarely used)
- **By slow intravenous injection**
  - Child 7–18 years initially 150 micrograms/kg (max. 7.5 mg) given in steps of 30 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) over 2–5 minutes; wait for 2–5 minutes then give additional doses of 50 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) every 2 minutes if necessary; max. total dose 500 micrograms/kg (not exceeding 25 mg)

**Sedation in intensive care**
- **By intravenous injection and continuous intravenous infusion**
  - Neonate less than 32 weeks gestational age 60 micrograms/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion, reduced after 24 hours to 30 micrograms/kg/hour; adjusted according to response; max. treatment duration 4 days
  - Neonate over 32 weeks gestational age 60 micrograms/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion adjusted according to response; max. treatment duration 4 days

- **Child 1–6 months** 60 micrograms/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion adjusted according to response
- **Child 6 months–12 years** initially 50–200 micrograms/kg by slow intravenous injection over at least 3 minutes followed by 30–120 micrograms/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion adjusted according to response
- **Child 12–18 years** initially 30–300 micrograms/kg by slow intravenous injection given in steps of 1–2.5 mg every 2 minutes followed by 30–200 micrograms/kg/hour by continuous intravenous infusion adjusted according to response

**Status epilepticus** section 4.8.2

**Administration** for administration by mouth, injection solution may be diluted with apple or black currant juice, chocolate sauce, or cola
- For buccal administration, administer half of the dose between the upper lip and gum on each side of the mouth using an oral syringe; retain in the mouth for at least 5 minutes then swallow
- For continuous intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%
- Neonatal intensive care, dilute 15 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 30 micrograms/kg/hour
- For rectal administration of the injection solution, attach a plastic applicator onto the end of a syringe; if the volume to be given rectally is too small, dilute with Water for Injections

**Midazolam** (Non-proprietary) (£)
- Oral liquid, midazolam 2.5 mg/mL, 100 mL
  - Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
- **Buccal liquid**, midazolam 5 mg/mL, 0.5 mL (2.5 mg) pre-filled syringe, 1-mL (5 mg) pre-filled syringe, 1.5-mL (7.5 mg) pre-filled syringe, 2-mL (10 mg) pre-filled syringe; 10 mg/mL, 5-mL pack and 25-mL pack
  - Available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies, see p. 809
- **Injection**, midazolam (as hydrochloride) 1 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 50p, 5-mL amp = 60p, 50-mL vial = £7.87; 2 mg/mL, 5-mL amp = 65p; 5 mg/mL, 2-mL amp = 58p, 10-mL amp = £2.50
- **Hypnovel** (Roche) (®)
  - Injection, midazolam (as hydrochloride) 2 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = 85p; 5 mg/mL, 2-mL amp = 72p

**Temazepam** (Non-proprietary) (£)
- Tablets, temazepam 10 mg, net price 28-tab pack = £3.42; 20 mg, 28-tab pack = £2.24. Label: 19
- Dental prescribing on NHS Temazepam Tablets may be prescribed
- Oral solution, temazepam 10 mg/5 mL, net price 300 mL = £33.44. Label: 19
- Note Sugar-free versions are available and can be ordered by specifying ‘sugar-free’ on the prescription
- **Dental prescribing on NHS** Temazepam Oral Solution may be prescribed
- Note See p. 9 for prescribing requirements of controlled drugs

**Non-opioid analgesics**

Since non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) do not depress respiration, do not impair gastro-intestinal motility, and do not cause dependence, they may be useful alternatives or adjuncts to opioids for the relief of postoperative pain. NSAIDs may be inadequate for the relief of severe pain.
Diclofenac, ibuprofen (section 4.7.1), and ketorolac are used to relieve postoperative pain in children; diclofenac and paracetamol can be given parenterally and rectally as well as by mouth. Ketorolac is given by mouth or by intravenous injection.

**KETOROLAC TROMETAMOL**

**Cautions** section 10.1.1; avoid in acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (NSAIDs)

**Contra-indications** section 10.1.1; also complete or partial syndrome of nasal polyps; haemorrhagic diatheses (including coagulation disorders) and following operations with high risk of haemorrhage or incomplete haemostasis; confirmed or suspected cerebrovascular bleeding; hypovolaemia or dehydration

**Hepatic impairment** section 10.1.1

**Renal impairment** max. 60 mg daily by intravenous injection; avoid if serum creatinine greater than 160 micromol/litre; see also section 10.1.1

**Pregnancy** section 10.1.1

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects** section 10.1.1; also gastro-intestinal disturbances, taste disturbances, dry mouth; flushing, bradycardia, palpitation, chest pain, hypertension, pallor; dyspnoea, asthma; malaise, euphoria, psychose, paralysis, convulsions, abnormal dreams, hyperkinesia, confusion, hallucinations, urinary frequency, thirst, sweating; hyponatraemia, hyperkalaemia, anuria, myalgia; visual disturbances (including optic neuritis); purpura, pain at injection site

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children under 16 years

**Indication and dose**

**Short-term management of moderate to severe acute postoperative pain only**

- **By mouth**
  - Child 16–18 years 10 mg every 4–6 hours as required; max. 40 mg daily; max. duration of treatment 7 days
  - By intravenous injection over at least 15 seconds
  - Child 6 months–16 years initially 0.5–1 mg/kg (max. 15 mg), then 500 micrograms/kg (max. 15 mg) every 6 hours as required; max. 60 mg daily; max. duration of treatment 2 days
  - By intravenous injection over at least 15 seconds
  - Child 16–18 years initially 10 mg, then 10–30 mg every 4–6 hours as required (up to every 2 hours during initial postoperative period); max. 90 mg daily (children weighing less than 50 kg max. 60 mg daily); max. duration of treatment 2 days

  **Note** When converting from parenteral to oral administration, total combined dose on the day of converting should not exceed 90 mg (60 mg in children weighing less than 50 kg) of which the oral component should not exceed 40 mg

**Ketorolac** (Non-proprietary) A

**Injection** ketorolac trometamol 30 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £1.10

**Toradol** (Roche) A

**Tablets** ivory, f/c, ketorolac trometamol 10 mg, net price 20-tab pack = £5.45. Label: 17, 21

**Injection** ketorolac trometamol 10 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = 89p; 30 mg/mL, 1-mL amp = £1.08

**15.1.4 Opioid analgesics**

Opioid analgesics are now rarely used as premedicants; they are more likely to be administered at induction. Pre-operative use of opioid analgesics is generally limited to children who require control of existing pain. The main side-effects of opioid analgesics are respiratory depression, cardiovascular depression, nausea, and vomiting; for general notes on opioid analgesics and their use in postoperative pain, see section 4.7.2.

For the management of opioid-induced respiratory depression, see section 15.1.7.

**Intra-operative analgesia** Opioid analgesics given in small doses before or with induction reduce the dose requirement of some drugs used during anaesthesia. Alfentanil, fentanyl, and remifentanil are particularly useful because they act within 1–2 minutes and have short durations of action. The initial doses of alfentanil or fentanyl are followed either by successive intravenous injections or by an intravenous infusion; prolonged infusions increase the duration of effect. Repeated intra-operative doses of alfentanil or fentanyl should be given with care since the resulting respiratory depression can persist postoperatively and occasionally it may become apparent for the first time postoperatively when monitoring of the child might be less intensive. Alfentanil, fentanyl, and remifentanil can cause muscle rigidity, particularly of the chest wall muscle or jaw muscle, which can be managed by the use of neuromuscular blocking drugs.

In contrast to other opioids which are metabolised in the liver, remifentanil undergoes rapid metabolism by non-specific blood and tissue esterases; its short duration of action allows prolonged administration at high dosage, without accumulation, and with little risk of residual postoperative respiratory depression. Remifentanil should not be given by intravenous injection intraoperatively, but it is well suited to continuous infusion; a supplementary analgesic is given before stopping the infusion of remifentanil.

**Neonates** The half-life of fentanyl and alfentanil is prolonged in neonates and accumulation is likely with prolonged use.

**ALFENTANIL**

**Cautions** section 4.7.2 and notes above

**Contra-indications** section 4.7.2

**Hepatic impairment** section 4.7.2

**Renal impairment** section 4.7.2

**Pregnancy** section 4.7.2

**Breast-feeding** present in milk—withhold breast-feeding for 24 hours
Side-effects  section 4.7.2 and notes above; also hypertension, myoclonic movements; less commonly arrhythmias, hiccup, laryngospasm; rarely epistaxis; also reported cardiac arrest, cough, convulsions, and pyrexia

Indication and dose

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose may need to be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Analgesia especially during short procedures; enhancement of anaesthesia

- By intravenous injection over 30 seconds (with assisted ventilation)
  Neonate initially 5–20 micrograms/kg; supplemental doses up to 10 micrograms/kg
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 10–20 micrograms/kg; supplemental doses up to 10 micrograms/kg
- By intravenous infusion (with assisted ventilation)
  Neonate initially 10–50 micrograms/kg over 10 minutes followed by 0.5–1 micrograms/kg/minute
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 50–100 micrograms/kg over 10 minutes followed by 0.5–1 micrograms/kg/minute

Administration  for continuous or intermittent intravenous infusion dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Alfentanil  (Non-proprietary) Syn
Injection, alfentanil (as hydrochloride) 500 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 70p, 10-mL amp = £3.20
Intensive care injection, alfentanil (as hydrochloride) 5 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £2.50
Note  To be diluted before use

Rapifen® (Janssen) Syn
Injection, alfentanil (as hydrochloride) 500 micrograms/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 64p, 10-mL amp = £2.90
Intensive care injection, alfentanil (as hydrochloride) 5 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £2.32
Note  To be diluted before use

FENTANYL

Cautions  see Fentanyl, section 4.7.2 and notes above
Contra-indications  see notes in section 4.7.2
Hepatic impairment  see notes in section 4.7.2
Renal impairment  see notes in section 4.7.2
Pregnancy  see notes in section 4.7.2
Breast-feeding  see Fentanyl, section 4.7.2

Breast-feeding  avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours after administration—present in milk in animal studies

Side-effects  section 4.7.2 and notes above; also hypertension; less commonly hypoxia; rarely asystole; AV block and convulsions also reported
Neuromuscular blocking drugs

Neuromuscular blocking drugs used in anaesthesia are also known as muscle relaxants. By specific blockade of the neuromuscular junction they enable light anaesthesia to be used with adequate relaxation of the muscles of the abdomen and diaphragm. They also relax the vocal cords and allow the passage of a tracheal tube. Their action differs from the muscle relaxants used in musculoskeletal disorders (section 10.2.2) that act on the spinal cord or brain.

Children who have received a neuromuscular blocking drug should always have their respiration assisted or controlled until the drug has been inactivated or antagonised (section 15.1.6). They should also receive sufficient concomitant inhalational or intravenous anaesthetic or sedative drugs to prevent awareness.

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs (also known as competitive muscle relaxants) compete with acetylcholine for receptor sites at the neuromuscular junction and their action can be reversed with anticholinesterases, such as neostigmine (section 15.1.6). Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs can be divided into the aminosteroid group, comprising pancuronium, rocuronium, and vecuronium, and the benzylisoquinolinium group, which includes atracurium, cisatracurium, and mivacurium.

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs have a slower onset of action than suxamethonium. These drugs can be classified by their duration of action as short-acting (15–30 minutes), intermediate-acting (30–40 minutes), and long-acting (60–120 minutes), although duration of action is dose-dependent. Drugs with a shorter or intermediate duration of action, such as atracurium and vecuronium, are more widely used than those with a longer duration of action, such as pancuronium.

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs have no sedative or analgesic effects and are not considered to trigger malignant hyperthermia.

For children receiving intensive care and who require tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation, a non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drug is chosen according to its onset of effect, duration of action, and side-effects. Rocuronium, with a rapid onset of effect, may facilitate intubation. Atracurium or cisatracurium may be suitable for long-term neuromuscular blockade since their duration of action is not dependent on elimination by the liver or the kidneys.

Cautions Allergic cross-reactivity between neuromuscular blocking drugs has been reported; caution is advised in cases of hypersensitivity to these drugs. Their activity is prolonged in children with myasthenia gravis and in hypothermia, therefore lower doses are required. Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs should be used with great care in those with other neuromuscular disorders and those with fluid and electrolyte disturbances, as response in these children is unpredictable. Resistance may develop in children with burns who may require increased doses; low plasma cholinesterase activity in these children requires dose titration for mivacurium. The rate of administration of neuromuscular blocking drugs should be reduced in children with cardiovascular disease. Interactions: Appendix 1 (muscle relaxants).

Pregnancy Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs are highly ionised at physiological pH and are therefore unlikely to cross the placenta in significant amounts.

Breast-feeding Because they are ionised at physiological pH, non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs are unlikely to be present in milk in significant amounts. Breast-feeding may be resumed once the mother has recovered from neuromuscular block.
Atracurium, a mixture of 10 isomers, is a benzylisoquinolinium neuromuscular blocking drug with an intermediate duration of action. It undergoes non-enzymatic metabolism which is independent of liver and kidney function, thus allowing its use in children with hepatic or renal impairment. Cardiovascular effects are associated with significant histamine release. Neonates may be more sensitive to the effects of atracurium and lower doses may be required. Cisatracurium is a single isomer of atracurium. It is more potent and has a slightly longer duration of action than atracurium and provides greater cardiovascular stability because cisatracurium lacks histamine-releasing effects. In children aged 1 month to 12 years, cisatracurium has a shorter duration of action and produces faster spontaneous recovery. Mivacurium, a benzylisoquinolinium neuromuscular blocking drug, has a short duration of action. It is metabolised by plasma cholinesterase and muscle paralysing is prolonged in individuals deficient in this enzyme. It is not associated with vagolytic activity or ganglionic blockade although histamine release can occur, particularly with rapid injection. In children under 12 years mivacurium has a faster onset, shorter duration of action, and produces more rapid spontaneous recovery.

Pancuronium, an aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drug, has a long duration of action and is often used in children receiving long-term mechanical ventilation in intensive care units. It lacks a histamine-releasing effect, but vagolytic and sympathomimetic effects can cause tachycardia and hypertension. The half-life of pancuronium is prolonged in neonates; neonates should receive postoperative intermittent positive pressure ventilation.

Rocuronium exerts an effect within 2 minutes and has the most rapid onset of any of the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs. It is an aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drug with an intermediate duration of action. It is reported to have minimal cardiovascular effects; high doses produce mild vagolytic activity. In children under 12 years, rocuronium has a faster onset and shorter duration of action.

Vecuronium, an aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drug, has an intermediate duration of action. It does not generally produce histamine release and lacks cardiovascular effects. In neonates and infants, vecuronium has a faster onset and a longer duration of action; recovery is longer in these children. Unexpected sustained neuromuscular blockade may occur in neonates.
15.1.5 Neuromuscular blocking drugs

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height.

**Neuromuscular blockade (intermediate duration) during surgery**

- **By intravenous injection**
  - Child 1 month–2 years initially 150 micrograms/kg, then 30 micrograms/kg repeated approx. every 20 minutes as necessary
  - Child 2–12 years initially 150 micrograms/kg (80–100 micrograms/kg if not for intubation), then 20 micrograms/kg repeated approx. every 10 minutes as necessary
  - Child 12–18 years initially 150 micrograms/kg, then 30 micrograms/kg repeated approx. every 20 minutes as necessary

- **By intravenous administration**
  - Child 2–18 years initially 150 micrograms/kg by **intravenous injection**, then by **intravenous infusion** 180 micrograms/kg/hour, reduced to 60–120 micrograms/kg/hour according to response

**Administration** for **continuous intravenous infusion**, dilute to a concentration of 0.1–2 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; solutions of 2 mg/mL and 5 mg/mL may be infused undiluted

**Nimbex** (GSK) for **intravenous injection**, cisatracurium (as besilate) 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £7.55

Forte injection, cisatracurium (as besilate) 5 mg/mL, net price 30-mL vial = £31.09

**MIVACURIUM**

**Cautions** see notes above; low plasma cholinesterase activity

**Hepatic impairment** reduce dose in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** clinical effect prolonged in renal failure—reduce dose according to response

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height.

**Neuromuscular blockade (short duration) during surgery**

- **By intravenous administration**
  - Child 2–6 months by **intravenous injection** initially 150 micrograms/kg, then **either by intravenous injection** 100 micrograms/kg/repeat dose 100 micrograms/kg/repeat dose every 6–9 minutes as necessary or by **intravenous infusion**, 8–10 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted if necessary every 3 minutes by 1 microgram/kg/minute to usual dose 11–14 micrograms/kg/minute
  - Child 6 months–12 years by **intravenous injection** initially 200 micrograms/kg, then **either by intravenous injection** 100 micrograms/kg/repeat dose 150 micrograms/kg/repeat dose every 6–9 minutes as necessary or by **intravenous infusion**, 8–10 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted if necessary every 3 minutes by 1 microgram/kg/minute to usual dose 6–7 micrograms/kg/minute

**Child 12–18 years by intravenous injection** initially 70–250 micrograms/kg, then **either by intravenous injection** 100 micrograms/kg/repeat dose every 15 minutes as necessary or by **intravenous infusion**, 8–10 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted if necessary every 3 minutes by 1 microgram/kg/minute to usual dose of 6–7 micrograms/kg/minute

**Administration** for **intravenous injection**, give undiluted or dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Doses up to 150 micrograms/kg may be given over 5–15 seconds, higher doses should be given over 30 seconds. In asthma, cardiovascular disease or in those sensitive to reduced arterial blood pressure, give over 60 seconds.

**Mivacron** (GSK) for **intravenous injection**, mivacurium (as chloride) 2 mg/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £2.79; 10-mL amp = £4.51

**PANCRURONIUM BROMIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** possibly slower onset, higher dose requirement, and prolonged recovery time

**Renal impairment** use with caution; prolonged duration of block

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above

**Side-effects** see notes above

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height.

**Neuromuscular blockade (long duration) during surgery**

- **By intravenous injection**
  - Neonate initially 100 micrograms/kg, then 50 micrograms/kg/repeat dose as necessary
  - Child 1 month–18 years initially 100 micrograms/kg, then 20 micrograms/kg/repeat dose as necessary

**Administration** for **intravenous injection**, give undiluted or dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Pancuronium (Non-proprietary)** for **intravenous injection**, pancuronium bromide 2 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £1.20

**ROCURONIUM BROMIDE**

**Cautions** see notes above

**Hepatic impairment** reduce dose

**Renal impairment** reduce maintenance dose; prolonged paralysis

**Pregnancy** see notes above

**Breast-feeding** see notes above
15.1.5 Neuromuscular blocking drugs

**Assisted ventilation in intensive care**
- **By intravenous injection**
  - **Neonate** initially 80 micrograms/kg, then 30–50 micrograms/kg adjusted according to response

- **By intravenous administration**
  - **Neonate** by intravenous injection 80 micrograms/kg, then by intravenous infusion, 0.8–1.4 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response (risk of accumulation—consider interruption of infusion)

**Child 1 month–18 years initially by intravenous injection 80–100 micrograms/kg (optional), then by intravenous infusion 0.8–1.4 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response; up to 3 micrograms/kg/minute may be required

**Administration** reconstitute each vial with 5 mL. For Water for Injections to give 2 mg/mL solution; alternatively reconstitute with up to 10 mL. Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Water for Injections—unsuitable for further dilution if not reconstituted with Water for Injections.

For continuous intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration up to 40 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; reconstituted solution can also be given via drip tubing.

**Neonatal intensive care**, reconstitute each vial with 5 mL. For Water for Injections to give 2 mg/mL solution. Dilute 5 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.5 mL/hour provides a dose of 50 micrograms/kg/hour; minimum concentration of 40 micrograms/mL.

**Norcuron** (Organon) 
Injection, powder for reconstitution, vecuronium bromide, net price 10-mg vial = £3.38 (with water for injections)

**Depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs**

Suxamethonium has the most rapid onset of action of any of the neuromuscular blocking drugs and is ideal if fast onset and brief duration of action are required e.g. with tracheal intubation. Neonates and young children are less sensitive to suxamethonium and a higher dose may be required.

Suxamethonium acts by mimicking acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction but hydrolysis is much slower than for acetylcholine; depolarisation is therefore prolonged, resulting in neuromuscular blockade. Unlike the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs, its action cannot be reversed and recovery is spontaneous; anticholinesterases such as neostigmine potentiate the neuromuscular block.

Suxamethonium should be given after anaesthetic induction because paralysis is usually preceded by painful muscle fasciculations. Bradycardia may occur; premedication with atropine (section 15.1.3) reduces bradycardia as well as the excessive salivation associated with suxamethonium use.

Prolonged paralysis may occur in dual block, which occurs with high or repeated doses of suxamethonium.

**Vecuronium** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Rocuronium** (Non-proprietary)
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon)
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79

**VECIRONIUM BROMIDE**

Cautions see notes above

Hepatic impairment caution in significant impairment

Renal impairment caution in renal failure

Pregnancy see notes above

Breast-feeding see notes above

Side-effects see notes above

Licensed use not licensed for assisted ventilation in intensive care

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

**Neuromuscular blockade (intermediate duration) during surgery**
- **By intravenous administration**
  - **Neonate** by intravenous injection initially 80 micrograms/kg, then 30–50 micrograms/kg adjusted according to response

- **Child 1 month–18 years** by intravenous injection initially 80–100 micrograms/kg, then either by intravenous injection, 0.8–1.4 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Rocuronium** (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Rocuronium** (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Rocuronium** (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Rocuronium** (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79

**Administration** for continuous intravenous infusion or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

**Rocuronium** (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £3.00, 10-mL vial = £6.00

**Esmeron** (Organon) 
Injection, rocuronium bromide 10 mg/mL, net price 5-mL vial = £2.90, 10-mL vial = £5.79
and is caused by the development of a non-depolarising block following the initial depolarising block; edrophonium (section 15.1.6) may be used to confirm the diagnosis of dual block. Children with myasthenia gravis are resistant to suxamethonium but can develop dual block resulting in delayed recovery. Prolonged paralysis may also occur in those with low or atypical plasma cholinesterase. Assisted ventilation should be continued until muscle function is restored.

## SUXAMETHONIUM CHLORIDE
(Succinylcholine chloride)

### Cautions
see notes above; hypersensitivity to other neuromuscular blocking drugs; patients with cardiac, respiratory or neuromuscular disease; raised intraocular pressure (avoid in penetrating eye injury); severe sepsis (risk of hyperkalaemia); interactions:

Appendix 1 (muscle relaxants)

### Contra-indications
family history of malignant hyperthermia, hyperkalaemia; major trauma, severe burns, neurological disease involving acute wasting of major muscle, prolonged immobilisation—risk of hyperkalaemia; personal or family history of congenital myotonic disease, Duchenne muscular dystrophy; low plasma-cholinesterase activity (including severe liver disease, see below)

### Hepatic impairment
prolonged apnoea may occur in severe liver disease because of reduced hepatic synthesis of pseudocholinesterase

### Pregnancy
mildly prolonged neuromuscular blockade may occur

### Breast-feeding
unlikely to be present in breast milk in significant amounts (ionised at physiological pH); breast-feeding may be resumed once the mother recovered from neuromuscular block

### Side-effects
see notes above; also increased gastric pressure; hyperkalaemia; postoperative muscle pain, myoglobinuria, myoglobinemia; increased intravascular pressure; flushing, rash; rarely arrhythmias, cardiac arrest; bronchospasm, apnoea, prolonged respiratory depression; limited jaw mobility; very rarely anaphylactic reactions, malignant hyperthermia; also reported hypotension, rhabdomyolysis

### Indication and dose
Neuromuscular blockade (short duration) during surgery

- By intravenous injection
  - Neonate: 2 mg/kg produces 5–10 minutes neuromuscular blockade
  - Child 1 month–1 year: 2 mg/kg
  - Child 1–18 years: 1 mg/kg

- By intramuscular injection (onset in 2–3 minutes)
  - Neonate: up to 4 mg/kg produces 10–30 minutes neuromuscular blockade
  - Child 1 month–1 year: up to 4–5 mg/kg
  - Child 1–12 years: up to 4 mg/kg; max. 150 mg

### Administration
for intravenous injection, give undiluted or dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Suxamethonium Chloride (Non-proprietary)

Injection, suxamethonium chloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £8.45

## 15.1.6 Drugs for reversal of neuromuscular blockade

### Anticholinesterases
Anticholinesterases reverse the effects of the non-depolarising (competitive) neuromuscular blocking drugs such as pancuronium, but they prolong the action of the depolarising neuromuscular blocking drug suxamethonium.

Edrophonium has a transient action and may be used in the diagnosis of suspected dual block due to suxamethonium. Atropine (section 15.1.3) is given before or with edrophonium to prevent muscarinic effects of edrophonium; it is also used in the diagnosis of myasthenia gravis (section 10.2.1).

Neostigmine has a longer duration of action than edrophonium and is used specifically for reversal of non-depolarising (competitive) blockade. It acts within one minute of intravenous injection and its effects last for 20 to 30 minutes; a second dose may then be necessary. Glycopyrronium or alternatively atropine (section 15.1.3), given before or with neostigmine, prevent bradycardia, excessive salivation, and other muscarinic effects of neostigmine.

### EDROPHONIUM CHLORIDE
(Neostigmine methylsulphate)

Cautions
section 10.2.1; atropine should also be given

Contra-indications
section 10.2.1

Pregnancy
section 10.2.1

Breast-feeding
section 10.2.1

Side-effects
section 10.2.1

Indication and dose

Brief reversal of non-depolarising neuromuscular blockade

- By intravenous injection over several minutes
  - Child 1 month–18 years: 500–700 micrograms/kg (after or with atropine)

### Myasthenia gravis
section 10.2.1

Edrophonium (Non-proprietary)

Injection, edrophonium chloride 10 mg/mL, net price 1-mL amp = £19.50

### NEOSTIGMINE METILSULFATE
(Anséctine® (GSK)

Injection, suxamethonium chloride 50 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = 71p

## 15.1.6 Drugs for reversal of neuromuscular blockade

Important
The drugs in this section should be used by experienced personnel only.
Sugammadex is used mainly for rapid reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium (section 15.1.5). In practice, it can be used for rapid reversal of neuromuscular blockade.

**Indication and dose**

**Reversal of non-depolarising muscle block**

- **By intravenous injection over 1 minute**
  
  **Neonate** 50 micrograms/kg, after or with glycopyrronium or atropine; a further dose of 25 micrograms/kg may be required

- **Child 1 month–12 years** 50 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) after or with glycopyrronium or atropine; a further dose of 25 micrograms/kg may be required

- **Child 12–18 years** 50 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) after or with glycopyrronium or atropine; a further dose of 25 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) may be required

**Side-effects**

- **Taste disturbances**

**Pregnancy**

- Use with caution—no information available.

**Cautions**

- Recurrence of neuromuscular blockade—monitor respiratory function until fully recovered; recovery may be delayed in cardiovascular disease; pre-existing coagulation disorders or use of anticoagulants (unrelated to surgery); wait 24 hours before re-administering rocuronium; interactions: Appendix 1 (sugammadex)

**Renal impairment**

- Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²

**Pregnancy**

- Use with caution—no information available

**Side-effects**

- Taste disturbances; less commonly allergic reactions; bronchospasm also reported

**Administration**

- For **intravenous injection** dose may be diluted to a concentration of 10 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bridion® (Schering-Plough)</th>
<th>Injection, sugammadex (as sodium salt) 100 mg/mL, net price 2-mL amp = £59.64, 5-mL amp = £149.10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Electrolytes</strong></td>
<td>Na⁺ 0.42 mmol/mL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Important**

The drugs in this section should be used by experienced personnel only.

Respiratory depression is a major concern with opioid analgesics and it may be treated by artificial ventilation or be reversed by an opioid antagonist. *Naloxone* given intravenously immediately reverses opioid-induced respiratory depression but the dose may have to be repeated because of its short duration of action. Intramuscular injection of naloxone produces a more gradual and prolonged effect but absorption may be erratic. Care is required in children requiring pain relief because naloxone also antagonises the analgesic effect of opioids.

**Neonates**

- Naloxone is used in newborn infants to reverse respiratory depression and sedation resulting from the use of opioids by the mother, usually for pain during labour. In neonates the effects of opioids may persist for up to 48 hours and in such cases naloxone is often given by intramuscular injection for its prolonged effect. In severe respiratory depression after birth, breathing should first be established (using artificial means if necessary) and naloxone administered only if use of opioids by the mother is thought to cause the respiratory depression; the infant should be monitored closely and further doses of naloxone administered as necessary.

**Flumazenil**

- Flumazenil is a benzodiazepine antagonist for the reversal of the central sedative effects of benzodiazepines after anaesthetic and similar procedures. Flumazenil has a shorter half-life and duration of action than diazepam and midazolam, so children may become re-sedated.

**SUGAMMADEX**

- **Cautions** recurrence of neuromuscular blockade—monitor respiratory function until fully recovered; recovery may be delayed in cardiovascular disease; pre-existing coagulation disorders or use of anticoagulants (unrelated to surgery); wait 24 hours before re-administering rocuronium; interactions: Appendix 1 (sugammadex)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Renal impairment</strong></th>
<th>Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pregnancy</strong></td>
<td>Use with caution—no information available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Side-effects** | Taste disturbances; less commonly allergic reactions; bronchospasm also reported |

**FLUMAZENIL**

- **Cautions** short-acting (repeat doses may be necessary)—benzodiazepine effects may persist for at least 24 hours; benzodiazepine dependence (may precipitate withdrawal symptoms); prolonged benzodiazepine therapy for epilepsy (risk of convulsions); history of panic disorders (risk of recurrence); ensure neuromuscular blockade cleared before giving; avoid rapid injection in high-risk or anxious children and following
major surgery; head injury (rapid reversal of benzodiazepine sedation may cause convulsions)

Contra-indications life-threatening condition (e.g. raised intracranial pressure, status epilepticus) controlled by benzodiazepines

Hepatic impairment carefully titrate dose

Pregnancy not known to be harmful

Breast-feeding avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours

Side-effects nausea and vomiting; less commonly palpitation, anxiety, fear; also reported transient hypertension, tachycardia, flushing, agitation, convulsions (particularly in those with epilepsy), dizziness, sensory disturbance, chills, sweating

Licensed use not licensed for use in children under 1 year; not licensed for use by intravenous infusion in children; not licensed for use in children in intensive care

Indication and dose Reversal of sedative effects of benzodiazepines.

By intravenous injection over 15 seconds

Neonate 10 micrograms/kg, repeat at 1-minute intervals if required

Child 1 month–18 years 10 micrograms/kg (max. 200 micrograms), repeated at 1-minute intervals if required; max. total dose of 50 micrograms/kg (1 mg) (2 mg in intensive care)

By intravenous infusion, if drowsiness recurs after injection

Neonate 2–10 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

Child 1 month–18 years 2–10 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response; max. 400 micrograms/hour

Overdosage with benzodiazepines see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning p. 30

Administration for continuous intravenous infusion, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%

Flumazenil (Non-proprietary) Injection, flumazenil 100 micrograms/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £14.49

Anexate® (Roche) Injection, flumazenil 100 micrograms/mL, net price 5-mL amp = £13.66

NALOXONE HYDROCHLORIDE

Cautions cardiovascular disease or those receiving cardiotoxic drugs (serious adverse cardiovascular effects reported); maternal physical dependence on opioids (may precipitate withdrawal in newborn); pain (see also under Titration of Dose, below); has short duration of action (see notes above)

Titration of dose In postoperative use, the dose should be titrated for each child in order to obtain sufficient respiratory response; however, naloxone antagonises analgesia

Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding not orally bioavailable

Side-effects tremor, sweating; very rarely seizures and erythema multiforme

Indication and dose Reversal of respiratory and CNS depression in neonate following maternal opioid use during labour

By intramuscular injection

Neonate 200 micrograms (60 micrograms/kg) as a single dose at birth

By intravenous or subcutaneous injection

Neonate 10 micrograms/kg, repeated every 2–3 minutes if required

Reversal of postoperative respiratory depression

By intravenous injection

Neonate 1 microgram/kg, repeated every 2–3 minutes if required

Child 1 month–12 years 1 microgram/kg, repeated every 2–3 minutes if required

Child 12–18 years 1.5–3 micrograms/kg; if response inadequate, give subsequent doses of 100 micrograms every 2 minutes

Overdosage with opioids see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 28

Preparation See Emergency Treatment of Poisoning, p. 29

15.1.8 Drugs for malignant hyperthermia BNFC 2011–2012

Malignant hyperthermia is a rare but potentially lethal complication of anaesthesia. It is characterised by a rapid rise in temperature, increased muscle rigidity, tachycardia, and acidosis. The most common triggers of malignant hyperthermia are the volatile anaesthetics. Suxamethonium has also been implicated, but malignant hyperthermia is more likely if it is given following a volatile anaesthetic. Volatile anaesthetics and suxamethonium should be avoided during anaesthesia in children at high risk of malignant hyperthermia.

Dantrolene is used in the treatment of malignant hyperthermia. It acts on skeletal muscle cells by interfering with calcium efflux, thereby stopping the contractile process.

DANTROLENE SODIUM

Cautions avoid extravasation (risk of tissue necrosis); interactions: Appendix 1 (muscle relaxants)

Pregnancy use only if potential benefit outweighs risk

Breast-feeding present in milk—use only if potential benefit outweighs risk
Side-effects hepatotoxicity, pulmonary oedema, dizziness, weakness, and injection-site reactions including erythema, rash, swelling, and thrombophlebitis

Licensed use not licensed for use in children

Indication and dose

Malignant hyperthermia
- By rapid intravenous injection
  Child 1 month–18 years initially 2–3 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg repeated as required (total max. dose 10 mg/kg)

Chronic severe spasticity of voluntary muscle see section 10.2.2

Dantrium Intravenous® (SpePharm)
Injection, powder for reconstitution, dantrolene sodium, net price 20-mg vial = £51.00 ( hosp. only)

15.2 Local anaesthesia

Important
- The drugs in section 15.2 should be used by experienced personnel only and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

The use of local anaesthetics by injection or by application to mucous membranes to produce local analgesia is discussed in this section.

See also section 1.7 (anus), section 11.7 (eye), section 12.3 (oropharynx), and section 13.3 (skin).

Use of local anaesthetics Local anaesthetic drugs act by causing a reversible block to conduction along nerve fibres. They vary widely in their potency, toxicity, duration of action, stability, solubility in water, and ability to penetrate mucous membranes. These factors determine their application, e.g. topical (surface), infiltration, peripheral nerve block, intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier’s block), plexus, epidural ( extradural), or spinal (intrathecal or subarachnoid) block. Local anaesthetics may also be used for postoperative pain relief, thereby reducing the need for analgesics such as opioids.

Administration The dose of local anaesthetic depends on the injection site and the procedure used. In determining the safe dosage, it is important to take account of the rate of absorption and excretion, and of the potency. The child’s age, weight, physique, and clinical condition, and the vascularity of the administration site and the duration of administration, must also be considered.

Uptake of local anaesthetics into the systemic circulation determines their duration of action and produces toxicity.

Great care must be taken to avoid accidental intravascular injection; local anaesthetic injections should be given slowly in order to detect inadvertent intravascular administration. When prolonged analgesia is required, a long-acting local anaesthetic is preferred to minimise the likelihood of cumulative systemic toxicity. Local anaesthesia around the oral cavity may impair swallowing and therefore increases the risk of aspiration.

Following most regional anaesthetic procedures, maximum arterial plasma concentration of anaesthetic develops within about 10 to 25 minutes, so careful surveillance for toxic effects (see Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650) is necessary during the first 30 minutes after injection.

Epidural anaesthesia is combined with general anaesthesia for certain surgical procedures in children.

Use of vasoconstrictors Local anaesthetics cause dilatation of blood vessels. The addition of a vasoconstrictor such as adrenaline (epinephrine) to the local anaesthetic preparation diminishes local blood flow, slowing the rate of absorption and thereby prolonging the anaesthetic effect. Great care should be taken to avoid inadvertent intravenous administration of a preparation containing adrenaline, and it is not advisable to give adrenaline with a local anaesthetic injection in digits or appendages because of the risk of ischaemic necrosis.

Adrenaline must be used in a low concentration when administered with a local anaesthetic (but see also Dental Anaesthesia, below). The total dose of adrenaline should not exceed 5 micrograms/kg (1 mL/kg of a 1 in 200,000 solution) and it is essential not to exceed a concentration of 1 in 200,000 (5 micrograms/mL) if more than 50 mL of the mixture is to be injected. Care must also be taken to calculate a safe maximum dose of local anaesthetic when using combination products. For prescribing information on adrenaline, see section 2.7.2. For drug interactions of adrenaline, see Appendix 1 (sympathomimetics).

In children with severe hypertension or unstable cardiac rhythm, the use of adrenaline with a local anaesthetic may be hazardous. For these children an anaesthetic without adrenaline should be used.

Dental anaesthesia Lidocaine is widely used in dental procedures; it is most often used in combination with adrenaline (epinephrine). Lidocaine 2% combined with adrenaline 1 in 80,000 (12.5 micrograms/mL) is a safe and effective preparation; there is no justification for using higher concentrations of adrenaline. See also Use of Vasoconstrictors, above.

The local anaesthetics articaine and mepivacaine are also used in dentistry; they are available in cartridges suitable for dental use. Mepivacaine is available with or without adrenaline, and articaine is available with adrenaline.

In children with severe hypertension or unstable cardiac rhythm, mepivacaine without adrenaline may be used. Alternatively, prilocaine with or without felypressin can be used but there is no evidence that it is any safer. Felypressin can cause coronary vasoconstriction when used at high doses; limit dose in children with coronary artery disease.

Cautions of local anaesthetics Local anaesthetics should be administered with caution in children, especially if debilitated (consider dose reduction) or those with impaired cardiac conduction, cardiovascular disease, hypovolaemia, shock, impaired respiratory function, epilepsy, or myasthenia gravis. See also Administration and Use of Vasoconstrictors, above.
Contra-indications of local anaesthetics  
Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. In such circumstances, increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH. See also Use of Vasoconstrictors, p. 649.

Local anaesthetic preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier’s block).

Local anaesthetics can cause ototoxicity and should not be applied to the middle ear. They are also contra-indicated in children with complete heart block.

Toxicity and side-effects  
A single application of a topical lidocaine preparation does not generally cause systemic side-effects. Toxic effects after administration of local anaesthetics are a result of excessively high plasma concentrations; severe toxicity usually results from inadvertent intravascular injection or too rapid injection.

The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. CNS effects include a feeling of inebriation and light-headedness followed by drowsiness, numbness of the tongue and perioral region, restlessness, paraesthesia (including sensations of hot and cold), dizziness, blurred vision, nausea and vomiting, muscle twitching, tremors, and convulsions. Transient excitation may also occur, followed by depression with drowsiness, respiratory failure, unconsciousness, and coma. Effects on the cardiovascular system include myocardial depression and peripheral vasodilatation resulting in hypotension and bradycardia; arrhythmias and cardiac arrest can occur.

Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

Articaine  
Articaine is an amide-type local anaesthetic used for dental anaesthesia (see Dental Anaesthesia, p. 649). It is available in a preparation that also contains adrenaline (see Use of Vasoconstrictors, p. 649).

Bupivacaine  
Bupivacaine has a longer duration of action than other local anaesthetics. It has a slow onset of action, taking up to 30 minutes for full effect. It is often used in lumbar epidural blockade and is particularly suitable for continuous epidural analgesia in labour, or for postoperative pain relief. It is the principal drug used for spinal anaesthesia. Hyperbaric solutions containing glucose may be used for spinal block.

Articaine hydrochloride with adrenaline  
Articaine hydrochloride with adrenaline  
Cautions  see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649; myocardial depression may be more severe and more resistant to treatment; cardiovascular disease; hypertension; hypotension; cerebral atheroma; interactions: Appendix 1 (bupivacaine)

Contra-indications  
Contra-indications see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics, above

Hepatic impairment  
Hepatic impairment use with caution

Renal impairment  
Renal impairment use with caution

Pregnancy  
Pregnancy large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after paracervical or epidural block; use lower doses for intrathecal use during late pregnancy

Breast-feeding  
Breast-feeding amount too small to be harmful

Side-effects  
Side-effects see Toxicity and Side-effects, above and Adrenaline, section 2.7.2; also methaemoglobinemia (see Prilocaine (p. 653) for treatment)

Indication and dose  
To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Infiltration anaesthesia in dentistry  
Child 4–18 years consult expert dental sources; important see also Administration, p. 649

Septanest® (Septodont) 
Injection, articaine hydrochloride 40 mg/mL, adrenaline 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL), net price 2.2-mL cartridge = 41p
Excipients include sulphites

Injection, articaine hydrochloride 40 mg/mL, adrenaline 1 in 100 000 (10 micrograms/mL), net price 2.2-mL cartridge = 41p
Excipients include sulphites

BUPIVACAINE HYDROCHLORIDE  
Cautions  see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649; myocardial depression may be more severe and more resistant to treatment; cardiovascular disease; hypertension; hypotension; cerebral atheroma; interactions: Appendix 1 (bupivacaine)

Contra-indications  
Contra-indications see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics, above

Hepatic impairment  
Hepatic impairment use with caution in severe impairment

Renal impairment  
Renal impairment use with caution in severe impairment

Pregnancy  
Pregnancy large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after paracervical or epidural block; use lower doses for intrathecal use during late pregnancy

Breast-feeding  
Breast-feeding amount too small to be harmful

Side-effects  
Side-effects see Toxicity and Side-effects, above

Indication and dose  
To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Adjusted according to child’s physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice—important: see also Administration, p. 649

Bupivacaine (Non-proprietary) 
Injection, anhydrous bupivacaine hydrochloride 2.5 mg/mL (0.25%), net price 10 mL = 82p; 5 mg/mL (0.5%), 10 mL = 94p
Levobupivacaine

Levobupivacaine, an isomer of bupivacaine, has anaesthetic and analgesic properties similar to bupivacaine but is thought to have fewer adverse effects.

**Note** Levobupivacaine is an isomer of bupivacaine

**Cautions** see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649; cardiovascular disease; interactions: Appendix 1 (levobupivacaine)

**Contra-indications** see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics (p. 650), and section 2.3.2

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution

**Pregnancy** large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after epidural block; avoid if possible in first trimester—toxicity in animal studies; may cause fetal distress syndrome; do not use for paracervical block in obstetrics; do not use 7.5 mg/mL strength in obstetrics

**Breast-feeding** amount too small to be harmful

**Side-effects** see Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650; also sweating, pyrexia, anaemia

**Licensed use** not licensed for use in children except for analgesia by ilioinguinal or iliohypogastric block

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Adjust according to child’s physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice—important: see also under Administration, p. 649

**BNFC 2011–2012**

Infusion, anhydrous bupivacaine hydrochloride

1 mg/mL (0.1%), net price 100 mL = £8.41, 250 mL = £10.59; 1.25 mg/mL (0.125%), 250 mL = £10.80

Marcain® (AstraZeneca) (CH) Injection, anhydrous bupivacaine hydrochloride 2.5 mg/mL (Marcain® 0.25%), net price 10-mL Polyamp® = £1.06; 5 mg/mL (Marcain® 0.5%), 10-mL Polyamp® = £1.21

Marcain Heavy® (AstraZeneca) (CH) Injection, anhydrous bupivacaine hydrochloride 5 mg/mL (0.5%), glucose 80 mg/mL, net price 4-mL amp = £1.21

> With adrenaline

For prescribing information on adrenaline, see section 2.7.2; see also Use of Vasocostrictors, p. 649

Bupivacaine and Adrenaline (Non-proprietary) (CH) Injection, anhydrous bupivacaine hydrochloride 2.5 mg/mL (0.25%), adrenaline 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL), net price 10-mL amp = £1.40

Injection, anhydrous bupivacaine hydrochloride 5 mg/mL (0.5%), adrenaline 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL), net price 10-mL amp = £1.50

**15.2 Local anaesthesia 651**

Chirocaine® (Abbott) (CH) injection, levobupivacaine (as hydrochloride) 2.5 mg/mL, net price 10-mL amp = £1.42; 5 mg/mL, 10-mL amp = £1.62; 7.5 mg/mL, 10-mL amp = £2.43

**Note** For 2.5 mg/mL concentration dilute standard solutions with sodium chloride 0.9%

Infusion, levobupivacaine (as hydrochloride) 625 micrograms/mL, net price 100 mL = £6.63, 200 mL = £10.37; 1.25 mg/mL, net price 100 mL = £7.26, 200 mL = £12.20

**Lidocaine**

Lidocaine is effectively absorbed from mucous membranes and is a useful surface anaesthetic in concentrations up to 10%. Except for surface anaesthesia and dental anaesthesia, solutions should not usually exceed 1% in strength. The duration of the block (with adrenaline) is about 90 minutes.

Application of a mixture of lidocaine and prilocaine (EMLA®) under an occlusive dressing provides surface anaesthesia for 1–2 hours. EMLA® does not appear to be effective in providing local anaesthesia for heel lancing in neonates.

**LIDOCAINE HYDROCHLORIDE** (Lignocaine hydrochloride)

**Cautions** see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649 and section 2.3.2; hypertension; topical preparations can damage plastic cuffs of endotracheal tubes

**Contra-indications** see notes above, Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics (p. 650), and section 2.3.2

**Hepatic impairment** section 2.3.2

**Renal impairment** section 2.3.2

**Pregnancy** large doses can cause fetal bradycardia; large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, or bradycardia after paracervical or epidural block

**Breast-feeding** section 2.3.2

**Side-effects** see Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650 and section 2.3.2; also methaemoglobinemia (see Prilocaine (p. 653) for treatment), nystagmus, rash; hypoglycaemia also reported following intrathecal or extradural administration

**Licensed use** EMLA® cream not licensed for use in children under 1 year

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Adjusted according to child’s physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice—important: see also under Administration, p. 649

**Infusion anaesthesia**

- By injection

(see also Administration, p. 649, and Important warning below)

**Neonate** according to nature of procedure, up to 3 mg/kg (0.3 mL/kg of 1% solution), repeated not more often than every 4 hours

**Child 1 month–12 years** according to nature of procedure, up to 3 mg/kg (0.3 mL/kg of 1% solution), repeated not more often than every 4 hours
Lidocaine hydrochloride injections

Lidocaine (Non-proprietary)
Injection, lidocaine hydrochloride 5 mg/mL (0.5%), net price 10-mL amp = 35p, 20-mL amp = 75p, 50-mL amp = £1.27; 2-mL prefilled syringe = £4.53, 20-mL amp = 75p; 10 mg/mL (1%), 2-mL amp = 32p, 5-mL amp = 31p
Excipients include sulphites

With adrenaline
For prescribing information on adrenaline see section 2.7.2; see also Use of Vasocostricators, p. 649.

Xylocaine® (AstraZeneca)
Injection, anhydrous lidocaine hydrochloride 10 mg/mL (1%), adrenaline 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL), net price 20-mL vial = 99p
Excipients include sulphites
Injection, anhydrous lidocaine hydrochloride 20 mg/mL (2%), adrenaline 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL), net price 20-mL vial = £1.04
Excipients include sulphites

Lidocaine injections for dental use
A variety of lidocaine injections with adrenaline are available in dental cartridges; brand names include Lignospan Special®, Rexocaine®, and Xylocaine®.

For prescribing information on adrenaline see section 2.7.2; see also Use of Vasocostricators, p. 649.

Note Consult expert dental sources for specific advice in relation to dose of lidocaine for dental anaesthesia

Lidocaine for surface anaesthesia

Instillagel® (CliniMed)
Gel, lidocaine hydrochloride 2%, chlorhexidine gluconate solution 0.25%, in a sterile lubricant basis in disposable syringe, net price 6-mL syringe = £1.41, 11-mL syringe = £1.58
Excipients include hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

Laryngojet® (UCB Pharma)
Solution, lidocaine hydrochloride 40 mg/mL (4%), net price per unit (4-mL vial and disposable sterile cannula with cover and vial injector) = £5.10

Dose
Anaesthesia of mucous membranes of oropharynx, trachea, and respiratory tract
Child up to 0.075 mL/kg (3 mg/kg) as a single dose sprayed, instilled (if a cavity) or applied with a swab;

reduce dose according to size, age, and condition of child, max. 5 mL (200 mg)

LMX 4® (Ferndale)
Cream, lidocaine 4%, net price 5-g tube = £2.98; 5-g tube with 10 occlusive dressings = £16.90
Excipients include benzyl alcohol and propylene glycol

Dose
Anaesthesia before venous cannulation or venepuncture
Child 1 month–18 years apply thick layer (1–2 g, child under 1 year max. 1 g) to small area (2.5 cm × 2.5 cm) of non-irritated skin at least 30 minutes before procedure; max. application time 5 hours (child 1–3 months, 60 minutes; child 3 months–1 year, 4 hours); remove cream with gauze and perform procedure after approximately 5 minutes

Xylocaine® (AstraZeneca)
Spray, lidocaine 10% (100 mg/g) supplying 10 mg lidocaine/dose; 500 spray doses per container, net price 50-mL bottle = £3.13

Dose
Bronchoscopy, laryngoscopy, oesophagoscopy, endotracheal intubation
Child up to 18 years up to 3 mg/kg

With prilocaine
For prescribing information on prilocaine, see p. 653.

EMLA® (AstraZeneca)
Cream, lidocaine 2.5%, prilocaine 2.5%, net price 5-g tube = £1.73; 30-g tube (surgical pack) = £10.25; 5-g tube with 12 occlusive dressings (premedication pack) = £9.75

Dose
Anaesthesia before minor skin procedures including venepuncture
Neonate apply max. 1 g under occlusive dressing for max. 1 hour before procedure; max. 1 dose in 24 hours
Child 1–3 months or body-weight less than 5 kg apply max. 1 g under occlusive dressing for max. 1 hour before procedure; max. 1 dose in 24 hours
Child 3 months–1 year and body-weight over 5 kg apply max. 2 g under occlusive dressing for max. 4 hours before procedure; max. 2 doses in 24 hours
Child 1–18 years apply thick layer under occlusive dressing 1–5 hours before procedure (2–5 hours before procedures on large areas e.g. split skin grafting); max. 2 doses in 24 hours for child 1–12 years

Note Shorter application time of 15–30 minutes is recommended for children with atopic dermatitis

Lidocaine for ear, nose, and oropharyngeal use

For prescribing information on phenylephrine, see section 2.7.2.

Lidocaine with Phenylephrine (Non-proprietary)
Topical solution, lidocaine hydrochloride 5%, phenylephrine hydrochloride 0.5%, net price 2.5 mL (with nasal applicator) = £9.98

Dose
Anaesthesia before nasal surgery, endoscopy, laryngoscopy, or removal of foreign bodies from the nose
Child 12–18 years up to max. 8 sprays
Mepivacaine

Mepivacaine is an amide-type local anaesthetic used for dental anaesthesia (see Dental Anaesthesia, p. 649).

**MEPIVACAINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649

**Contra-indications** see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics, p. 650

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; increased risk of side-effects in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** use with caution; increased risk of side-effects

**Pregnancy** use with caution

**Breast-feeding** present in milk but not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** see notes above and Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650; also hypertension

**Indication and dose**

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

**Infiltration anaesthesia and nerve block in dentistry**

**Child 3–18 years** consult expert dental sources

- **Scandonest 3% Plain** (Septodont)®
  - Injection, mepivacaine hydrochloride 30 mg/mL, net price 2.2-mL cartridge = 36p

- **Scandonest 2% Special** (Septodont)®
  - Injection, mepivacaine hydrochloride 20 mg/mL, adrenaline 1 in 100 000 (10 micrograms/mL), net price 2.2-mL cartridge = 36p

  **Excipients** include sulphites

**Prilocaine**

Prilocaine is a local anaesthetic of low toxicity which is similar to lidocaine. If used in high doses, methaemoglobinemia may occur which can be treated with an intravenous injection of methylthioninium chloride 1% using a dose of 1–2 mg/kg given over 5 minutes. The dose may be repeated after 30–60 minutes if necessary. Neonates and infants under 6 months are particularly susceptible to methaemoglobinemia.

**PRILOCAIN HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649; severe or untreated hypertension; concomitant drugs which cause methaemoglobinemia; acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (prilocaine)

**Contra-indications** see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics, p. 650; anaemia, or congenital or acquired methaemoglobinemia

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution; lower doses may be required for intrathecal anaesthesia

**Renal impairment** use with caution; lower doses may be required for intrathecal anaesthesia

**Pregnancy** large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after epidural block; avoid paracervical or pudendal block in obstetrics (neonatal methaemoglobinaemia reported); use lower doses for intrathecal use during late pregnancy

**Breast-feeding** not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** see Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650; also hypertension, pyrexia; less commonly syncpe and hypothermia

**Ropivacaine**

Ropivacaine is an amide-type local anaesthetic agent similar to bupivacaine. It is less cardiotoxic than bupivacaine, but also less potent.

**ROPIVACAINE HYDROCHLORIDE**

**Cautions** see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649; also acute porphyria (section 9.8.2); interactions: Appendix 1 (ropivacaine)

**Contra-indications** see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics, p. 650

**Hepatic impairment** use with caution in severe impairment

**Renal impairment** use with caution in severe impairment; increased risk of systemic toxicity in chronic renal failure

**Pregnancy** not known to be harmful; do not use for paracervical block in obstetrics

**Breast-feeding** not known to be harmful

**Side-effects** see Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650; also hypertension, pyrexia; less commonly syncpe and hypothermia
Licensed use 2 mg/mL strength not licensed for use in children under 12 years except for acute pain management by caudal epidural block and continuous epidural infusion; 7.5 mg/mL and 10 mg/mL strengths not licensed for use in children under 12 years

Indication and dose

To avoid excessive dosage in obese children, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height

Adjust according to child’s physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice—important: see also under Administration, p. 649

Ropivacaine (Non-proprietary) Infusion, ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg/mL, net price 200 mL = £14.45

Naropin® (AstraZeneca) Injection, ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg/mL, net price 10-mL Polyamp® = £1.78; 7.5 mg/mL, 10-mL Polyamp® = £2.65; 10 mg/mL, 10-mL Polyamp® = £3.20

Electrolytes Na+ < 0.5 mmol/mL

Infusion, ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg/mL, net price 200-mL Polybag® = £14.45

Electrolytes Na+ < 0.5 mmol/mL

TETRACAINE

(Amethocaine)

Cautions see Cautions of Local Anaesthetics, p. 649
Contra-indications see Contra-indications of Local Anaesthetics, p. 650
Breast-feeding not known to be harmful
Side-effects see Toxicity and Side-effects, p. 650
Important Rapid and extensive absorption may result in systemic side-effects (see also notes above)
Licensed use not licensed for use in neonates
Indication and dose

Anaesthesia before venepuncture or venous cannulation see preparation below

Eye section 11.7
Two or more drugs given at the same time may exert their effects independently or may interact. The interaction may be potentiation or antagonism of one drug by another, or occasionally some other effect. Adverse drug interactions should be reported to the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA), through the Yellow Card Scheme (see Adverse Reactions to Drugs, p. 12), as for other adverse drug reactions.

Drug interactions may be pharmacodynamic or pharmacokinetic.

Pharmacodynamic interactions
These are interactions between drugs which have similar or antagonistic pharmacological effects or side-effects. They may be due to competition at receptor sites, or occur between drugs acting on the same physiological system. They are usually predictable from a knowledge of the pharmacology of the interacting drugs; in general, those demonstrated with one drug are likely to occur with related drugs. They occur to a greater or lesser extent in most patients who receive the interacting drugs.

Pharmacokinetic interactions
These occur when one drug alters the absorption, distribution, metabolism, or excretion of another, thus increasing or reducing the amount of drug available to produce its pharmacological effects. They are not easily predicted and many of them affect only a small proportion of patients taking the combination of drugs. Pharmacokinetic interactions occurring with one drug cannot be assumed to occur with related drugs unless their pharmacokinetic properties are known to be similar.

Pharmacokinetic interactions are of several types:

Affecting absorption The rate of absorption or the total amount absorbed can both be altered by drug interactions. Delayed absorption is rarely of clinical importance unless high peak plasma concentrations are required (e.g. when giving an analgesic). Reduction in the total amount absorbed, however, may result in ineffective therapy.

Due to changes in protein binding To a variable extent most drugs are loosely bound to plasma proteins. Protein-binding sites are non-specific and one drug can displace another thereby increasing its proportion free to diffuse from plasma to its site of action. This only produces a detectable increase in effect if it is an extensively bound drug (more than 90%) that is not widely distributed throughout the body. Even so displacement rarely produces more than transient potentiation because this increased concentration of free drug results in an increased rate of elimination.

Displacement from protein binding plays a part in the potentiation of warfarin by sulfonamides, and tolbutamide but the importance of these interactions is due mainly to the fact that warfarin metabolism is also inhibited.

Affecting metabolism Many drugs are metabolised in the liver. Induction of the hepatic microsomal enzyme system by one drug can gradually increase the rate of metabolism of another, resulting in lower plasma concentrations and a reduced effect. On withdrawal of the inducer plasma concentrations increase and toxicity may occur. Barbiturates, griseofulvin, many antiepileptics, and rifampicin are the most important enzyme inducers. Drugs affected include warfarin and the oral contraceptives.

Conversely when one drug inhibits the metabolism of another higher plasma concentrations are produced, rapidly resulting in an increased effect with risk of toxicity. Some drugs which potentiate warfarin and phenytoin do so by this mechanism.

Isoenzymes of the hepatic cytochrome P450 system interact with a wide range of drugs. Drugs may be substrates, inducers or inhibitors of the different isoenzymes. A great deal of in-vitro information is available on the effect of drugs on the isoenzymes; however, since drugs are eliminated by a number of different metabolic routes as well as renal excretion, the clinical effects of interactions cannot be predicted accurately from laboratory data on the cytochrome P450 isoenzymes. Except where a combination of drugs is specifically contra-indicated, the BNF presents only interactions that have been reported in clinical practice. In all cases the possibility of an interaction must be considered if toxic effects occur or if the activity of a drug diminishes.

Affecting renal excretion Drugs are eliminated through the kidney both by glomerular filtration and by active tubular secretion. Competition occurs between those which share active transport mechanisms in the proximal tubule. For example, salicylates and some other NSAIDs delay the excretion of methotrexate; serious methotrexate toxicity is possible.

Relative importance of interactions
Many drug interactions are harmless and many of those which are potentially harmful only occur in a small proportion of patients; moreover, the severity of an interaction varies from one patient to another. Drugs with a small therapeutic ratio (e.g. phenytoin) and those which require careful control of dosage (e.g. anticoagulants, antihypertensives, and antidiabetics) are most often involved.

Patients at increased risk from drug interactions include those with impaired renal or liver function.

Serious interactions The symbol ● has been placed against interactions that are potentially serious and where combined administration of the drugs involved
should be avoided (or only undertaken with caution and appropriate monitoring).

Interactions that have no symbol do not usually have serious consequences.

**List of drug interactions**

The following is an alphabetical list of drugs and their interactions; to avoid excessive cross-referencing each drug or group is listed twice: in the alphabetical list and also against the drug or group with which it interacts. For explanation of symbol see above.

**Abacavir**
- Antileptics: abacavir possibly reduces plasma concentration of methadone
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of abacavir possibly reduced by rifampicin
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of abacavir possibly reduced by phenobarbital and phenytoin
- Antivirals: abacavir possibly reduces effects of efavirenz; plasma concentration of abacavir reduced by efavirenz

**Abatacept**
- Adalimumab: increased risk of side-effects when abatacept given with adalimumab
- Certolizumab pegol: avoid concurrent use of abatacept with certolizumab pegol
- Etanercept: avoid concomitant use of abatacept with etanercept
- Golimumab: avoid concomitant use of abatacept with golimumab
- Infliximab: avoid concomitant use of abatacept with infliximab
- Vaccines: avoid concomitant use of abatacept with live vaccines (see p. 599)

**Acarbose** see Antidiabetics

**ACE Inhibitors**
- Alcohol: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with alcohol
- Aldesleukin: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with aldesleukin
- Allopurinol: increased risk of leucopenia and hypersensitivity reactions when ACE inhibitors given with allopurinol especially in renal impairment
- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with alpha-blockers
- Analgesics: general: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with general anaesthetics
- Analgesics: increased risk of renal impairment when ACE inhibitors given with NSAIDs, also hypotensive effect antagonised by oestrogens
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Antacids: absorption of ACE inhibitors possibly reduced by antacids; absorption of captopril, enalapril and fosinopril reduced by antacids
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of active metabolite of imidapril reduced by rifampicin (reduced antihypertensive effect); quinapril tablets reduce absorption of tetracyclines (quinapril tablets contain magnesium carbonate); possible increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with trimethoprim
- Anticoagulants: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with heparins
- Antidepressants: enhanced hypotensive effect of ACE inhibitors possibly enhanced by MAOIs
- Antidiabetics: ACE inhibitors possibly enhance hypoglycaemic effect of insulin, metformin and sulfonylureas
- Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with antipsychotics
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
- Cardioglycosides: captopril possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin
- Ciclosporin: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with ciclosporin
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with clonidine; antihypertensive effect of captopril possibly delayed by previous treatment with clonidine
- Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of ACE inhibitors antagonised by corticosteroids
- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with diazoxide
- Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with diuretics; increased risk of severe hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists (monitor potassium concentration with low-dose spironolactone in heart failure)
- Dopaminergics: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with levodopa
- Gold: flushing and hypotenion reported when ACE inhibitors given with gold
- Lithium: ACE inhibitors reduce excretion of lithium (increased plasma concentration)
- Methylxylate: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with methylxylate
- Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with moxonidine
- Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with nitrates
- Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of ACE inhibitors antagonised by oestrogens
- Potassium Salts: increased risk of severe hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with potassium salts
- Probenecid: excretion of captopril reduced by probenecid
- Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with prostaglandins
- Vasodilators: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

**Acebutolol** see Beta-blockers

**Aceleofenac** see NSAIDs

**Acemetacin** see NSAIDs

**Acenocoumarol** see Coumarins

**Acerozolamide** see Diuretics

**Aclclovir**
- Note Interactions do not apply to topical aciclovir preparations
- Note Valaciclovir interactions as for aciclovir
- Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aciclovir given with ciclosporin
- Mycophenolate: plasma concentration of aciclovir increased by mycophenolate, also plasma concentration of inactive metabolite of mycophenolate increased
- Probenecid: excretion of aciclovir reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration)
- Tacrolimus: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aciclovir given with tacrolimus
- Theophylline: aciclovir possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline

**Actretin** see Retinoids

**ACE Inhibitors (continued)**
- Azathioprine: increased risk of anaemia or leucopenia when captopril given with azathioprine especially in renal impairment; increased risk of anaemia when enalapril given with azathioprine especially in renal impairment
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with beta-blockers
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with calcium-channel blockers
- Cardioglycosides: captopril possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin
- Ciclosporin: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with ciclosporin
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with clonidine; antihypertensive effect of captopril possibly delayed by previous treatment with clonidine
- Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of ACE inhibitors antagonised by corticosteroids
- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with diazoxide
- Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with diuretics; increased risk of severe hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists (monitor potassium concentration with low-dose spironolactone in heart failure)
- Dopaminergics: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with levodopa
- Gold: flushing and hypotenion reported when ACE inhibitors given with gold
- Lithium: ACE inhibitors reduce excretion of lithium (increased plasma concentration)
- Methylxylate: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with methylxylate
- Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with moxonidine
- Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with nitrates
- Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of ACE inhibitors antagonised by oestrogens
- Potassium Salts: increased risk of severe hyperkalaemia when ACE inhibitors given with potassium salts
- Probenecid: excretion of captopril reduced by probenecid
- Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with prostaglandins
- Vasodilators: enhanced hypotensive effect when ACE inhibitors given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
- Acebutolol see Beta-blockers
- Aceleofenac see NSAIDs
- Acemetacin see NSAIDs
- Acenocoumarol see Coumarins
- Acerozolamide see Diuretics
- Aclclovir
- Note Interactions do not apply to topical aciclovir preparations
- Note Valaciclovir interactions as for aciclovir
- Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aciclovir given with ciclosporin
- Mycophenolate: plasma concentration of aciclovir increased by mycophenolate, also plasma concentration of inactive metabolite of mycophenolate increased
- Probenecid: excretion of aciclovir reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration)
- Tacrolimus: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aciclovir given with tacrolimus
- Theophylline: aciclovir possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline
- Actretin see Retinoids
**Adrenergic Neurone Blockers (continued)**

Moxisylyte: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with moxisylyte

Moxonidine: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with moxonidine

Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with baclofen or tizanidine

Nitrates: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with nitrates

Oestrogens: hypnotic effect of adrenergic neurone blockers antagonised by oestrogens

Pizotifen: hypnotic effect of adrenergic neurone blockers antagonised by pizotifen

Prostaglandins: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with alprostadin

Sympathomimetics: hypnotic effect of guanethidine antagonised by dexamfetamine; hypnotic effect of adrenergic neurone blockers antagonised by ephedrine, isometheptene, metaraminol; methylphenidate, noradrenaline (norepinephrine), oxymetazoline, phenylephrine, pseudoephedrine and xylometazoline

Vasodilator Anti-hypertensives: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

AdSORBENTS see Kaolin

Agalsidase Alfa and Beta

Anti-arrhythmics: effects of agalsidase alfa and beta possibly inhibited by amiodarone (manufacturers of agalsidase alfa and beta advise avoid concomitant use)

Antibacterials: effects of agalsidase alfa and beta possibly inhibited by gentamicin (manufacturers of agalsidase alfa and beta advise avoid concomitant use)

Antimalarials: effects of agalsidase alfa and beta possibly inhibited by chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine (manufacturers of agalsidase alfa and beta advise avoid concomitant use)

Agomelatine

Antibacterials: manufacturer of agomelatine advises avoid concomitant use with ciprofloxacin

Antidepressants: metabolism of agomelatine inhibited by fluvoxamine (increased plasma concentration)

Antimalarials: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of arteether/lumezanefrine

Atomoxetine: possible increased risk of convulsions when antidepressants given with atomoxetine

Alcohol

ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypnotic effect when alcohol given with ACE inhibitors

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypnotic effect when alcohol given with adrenergic neurone blockers

Alpha-blockers: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with alpha-blockers

Analogesics: enhanced hypnotic and sedative effects when alcohol given with opioid analogesics

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypnotic effect when alcohol given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

Antidepressants: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with indoramrin; enhanced hypnotic effect when alcohol given with alpha-blockers

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypnotic effect when alcohol given with anxiolytics and hypnotics

Beta-blockers: increased hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with beta-blockers

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with calcium-channel blockers

Clonidine: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with clonidine

Corticosteroids: hypnotic effect of adrenergic neurone blockers antagonised by corticosteroids

Diazoxide: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with diazoxide

Diuretics: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with diuretics

Dopaminergicss: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with levodopa

Methylodopa: enhanced hypnotic effect when adrenergic neurone blockers given with methylodopa

Appendix 1: Interactions 657
Appendix 1: Interactions

Alcohol (continued)
Antidiabetics: alcohol enhances hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics; increased risk of lactic acidosis when alcohol given with metformin
Antiepileptics: alcohol possibly increases CNS side-effects of carbamazepine; increased sedative effect when alcohol given with phenobarbital; chronic heavy consumption of alcohol possibly reduces hepatic concentration of phenytoin
Antifungals: effects of alcohol possibly enhanced by griseofulin
Antihistamines: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with antihistamines (possibly less effect with non-sedating antihistamines)
Antimuscarinics: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with hyoscine
Antipsychotics: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with antipsychotics
Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with beta-blockers
Calcium-channel Blockers: increased hypotensive effect when alcohol given with calcium-channel blockers; plasma concentration of alcohol possibly increased by verapamil
Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with clonidine
Cytotoxics: diazifluram-like reaction when alcohol given with procarbazine
Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with diazoxide
Disulfiram: diazifluram reaction when alcohol given with diazoxide (see BNF section 4.10.1)
Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with diuretics
Dopaminergics: alcohol reduces tolerance to bromocriptine
Lefamisole: possibility of diazifluram-like reaction when alcohol given with lefamisole
Lofexidine: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with lofexidine
Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with methyldopa
Metoclopramide: absorption of alcohol possibly increased by metoclopramide
Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with moxonidine
Nicorandil: alcohol possibly enhances hypotensive effect of nicorandil
Nitrites: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with nitrates
Paraldehyde: increased sedative effect when alcohol given with paraldehyde
Pentazocine: presence of alcohol causes etretinate to be formed from omeprazolamine (increased risk of teratogenicity in women of child-bearing potential)
Symptomimetics: alcohol possibly enhances effects of methylphenidate
Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when alcohol given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
Aldesleukin (continued)
Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with calcium-channel blockers
Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with clonidine
Corticosteroids: manufacturer of aldesleukin advises avoid concomitant use with corticosteroids
Cytotoxics: manufacturer of aldesleukin advises avoid concomitant use with cisplatin, dacarbazine and vincristine
Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with diazoxide
Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with diuretics
Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with moxonidine
Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with moxonidine
Nitrites: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with nitrates
Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when aldesleukin given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
Alendronic Acid see Bisphosphonates
Alfentanil see Opioid Analgesics
Alfuzosin see Alpha-blockers
Alimemazine see Antihistamines
Aliskiren
Analgesics: hypotensive effect of aliskiren possibly antagonised by NSAIDs
Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: plasma concentration of aliskiren possibly reduced by irbesartan
Anticoagulants: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when aliskiren given with heparins
Antifungals: plasma concentration of aliskiren possibly increased by ketoconazole
Calcium-channel Blockers: manufacturer of aliskiren advises avoid concomitant use with verapamil
Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of aliskiren increased by ciclosporin—avoid concomitant use
Diuretics: aliskiren reduces plasma concentration of furosemide; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when aliskiren given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists
Potassium Salts: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when aliskiren given with potassium salts
Altiretinoin see Retinoids
Alkylating Drugs see Bendamustine, Busulfan, Carmustine, Cyclophosphamide, Estramustine, Ifosfamide, Lomustine, Melphalan, and Thiopeta
Allopurinol
ACE Inhibitors: increased risk of leucopenia and hypersensitivity reactions when allopurinol given with ACE inhibitors especially in renal impairment
Antibacterials: increased risk of rash when allopurinol given with amoxicillin or ampicillin
Anticoagulants: allopurinol possibly enhances anti-coagulant effect of coumarins
Antivirals: allopurinol increases plasma concentration of didanosine (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use
Azathioprine: allopurinol enhances effects and increases toxicity of azathioprine (reduce dose of azathioprine to one quarter of usual dose)
Ciclosporin: allopurinol possibly increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin (risk of nephrotoxicity)
Cytotoxics: allopurinol enhances effects and increases toxicity of mercaptopurine (reduce dose of mercaptopurine to one quarter of usual dose); avoidance of allopurinol advised by manufacturer of capecitabine
Diuretics: increased risk of hypersensitivity when allopurinol given with thiazides and related diuretics especially in renal impairment
Theophylline: allopurinol possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline
Almotriptan see SHT, Agonists

Appendix 1: Interactions
Alpha-adrenoceptor Stimulants see Apraclonidine, Brimonidine, Clonidin and Methyldopa

Alpha-blockers

ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with ACE inhibitors

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with adrenergic neurone blockers

Alcohol: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with alcohol; increased sedative effect when indomarin given with alcohol

Aldesleukin: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with aldesleukin

• Anaesthetics, General: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with general anaesthetics

• Analgesics: hypotensive effect of alpha-blockers antagonised by NSAIDs

• Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

• Antidepressants: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with MAOIs; manufacturer of indomarin advises avoid concomitant use with MAOIs

• Antifungals: plasma concentration of alfuzosin possibly increased by ketoconazole

• Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with antipsychotics

• Antivirals: plasma concentration of alfuzosin possibly increased by ritonavir—at avoid concomitant use

• Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypotensive and sedative effects when alpha-blockers given with anxiolytics and hypnotics

• Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with β-blockers, also increased risk of first-dose hypotension with post-synaptic alpha-blockers such as prazosin

• Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with calcium-channel blockers, also increased risk of first-dose hypotension with post-synaptic alpha-blockers such as prazosin

• Cardiac Glycosides: prazosin increases plasma concentration of digoxin

• Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with clonidine

• Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of alpha-blockers antagonised by corticosteroids

• Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with diazoxide

• Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with diuretics, also increased risk of first-dose hypotension with post-synaptic alpha-blockers such as prazosin

• Dopaminergics: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with levodopa

• Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with methyldopa

• Moxisylyte: possible severe postural hypotension when alpha-blockers given with moxisylyte

• Mexidol: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with mexidol

• Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with baclofen or tizanidine

• Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with nitrates

• Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of alpha-blockers antagonised by oestrogen

• Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with alprostadil

• Sildenafil: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with sildenafil (avoid alpha-blockers for 4 hours after sildenafil)—see also under Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5

• Sympathomimetics: avoid concomitant use of tolozoline with adrenalin (epinephrine) or dopamine

• Tadalafil: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with tadalafil—see also under Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5

Alpha-blockers

• Tadalafil (continued)

phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5; enhanced hypotensive effect when doxazosin given with tadalafil—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoid concomitant use

• Ulei-healing Drugs: effects of tolazoline antagonised by cimetidine and ranitidine

• Vardenafil: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers (excludes tamsulosin) given with vardenafil—separate doses by 6 hours—see also under Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5

• Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when alpha-blockers given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Alpha-blockers (post-synaptic) see Alpha-blockers

Alprazolam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

Alprostadil see Prostaglandins

Aluminium Hydroxide see Antacids

Aman tide

Antimalarials: plasma concentration of amantadine possibly increased by quinine

Antipsychotics: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when amantadine given with antipsychotics

Bupropion: increased risk of side-effects when amantadine given with bupropion

• Memantine: increased risk of CNS toxicity when amantadine given with memantine (manufacturer of memantine advises avoid concomitant use); effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by memantine

• Methylodopa: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when amantadine given with methylodopa; antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methylodopa

Tetrabenazine: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when amantadine given with tetrabenazine

Amikacin see Aminoglycosides

Amiloride see Diuretics

Aminoglycosides

Agalsidase Alfa and Beta: gentamicin possibly inhibits effects of agalsidase alfa and beta (manufacturers of agalsidase alfa and beta advise avoid concomitant use)

Analgesics: plasma concentration of amikacin and gentamicin in neonates possibly increased by indometacin

Antibacterials: neomycin reduces absorption of phenoxymethylpenicillin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aminoglycosides given with colistimethate sodium or polymyxins; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and otoxicity when aminoglycosides given with capreomycin or flucycymol; possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aminoglycosides given with cephalosporins

• Anticoagulants: experience in anticoagulant clinics suggests that INR possibly altered when neomycin (given for local action on gut) is given with coumarins or phenindione

• Antidiabetics: neomycin possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of acarbose, also severity of gastrointestinal effects increased

• Antifungals: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aminoglycosides given with amphotericin

• Bisphosphonates: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when aminoglycosides given with bisphosphonates

• Cardiac Glycosides: neomycin reduces absorption of digoxin; gentamicin possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin

• Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aminoglycosides given with ciclosporin

• Cytotoxics: neomycin possibly reduces absorption of methotrexate; neomycin reduces bioavailability of sorafenib; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and possibly of otoxicity when aminoglycosides given with platinum compounds

• Diuretics: increased risk of otoxicity when aminoglycosides given with loop diuretics
Appendix 1: Interactions

Aminoglycosides (continued)

- Muscle Relaxants: aminoglycosides enhance effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium
- Parasympathomimetics: aminoglycosides antagonise effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine

Tacrolimus: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when aminoglycosides given with tacrolimus

Vaccines: antibiotics inactive oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Vitamins: neomycin possibly reduces absorption of vitamin A

Aminophylline see Theophylline

Aminosaliclylates

Azathioprine: possible increased risk of leucopenia when aminosalicylates given with azathioprine

Cardiac Glycosides: aminosalicylate possibly reduces absorption of digoxin

Cytotoxics: possible increased risk of leucopenia when aminosalicylates given with mercaptopurine

Folates: sulfasalazine possibly reduces absorption of folic acid

Anticoagulants

Note: Amiodarone has a long half-life; there is a potential for drug interactions to occur for several weeks (even months) after treatment with it has been stopped

Agalsidase Alfa and Beta: amiodarone possibly inhibits effects of agalsidase alfa and beta (manufacturers of agalsidase alfa and beta advise avoid concomitant use)

Anaesthetics, Local: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine

Anti-arrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with other anti-arrhythmics; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with disopyramide or procainamide; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with parenteral erythromycin—avoid concomitant use; amiodarone decreases plasma concentration of flecainide (halve dose of flecainide)

Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with piperacillin

Anticholinergics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with disopyramide or procainamide; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim (as co-trimoxazole)—manufacturer of amiodarone advises avoid concomitant use of co-trimoxazole

Anticoagulants: amiodarone inhibits metabolism of coumarins and phenindione (enhanced anti-coagulant effect); amiodarone increases plasma concentration of dabigatran etexilate (reduce dose of dabigatran etexilate)

Antidepressants: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with tricyclics—avoid concomitant use

Antiepileptics: amiodarone inhibits metabolism of phenylindione (enhanced anti-coagulant effect); amiodarone increases plasma concentration of efedrine and cetirizine

Antimalarials: avoidance of amiodarone advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine, mefloquine or quinine—avoid concomitant use

Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with olanzapine

Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when anti-arrhythmics that prolong the QT interval given with antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval, increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with benperidol—manufacturer of benperidol advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with amisulpride, dioperidol, clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, risperidone, sertindole, ziprasidone

Amiodarone

- Antipsychotics (continued)
  - haloperidol, phenothiazines, pimozide or clozapine—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with sulpiride

- Antivirals: plasma concentration of amiodarone possibly increased by azidanavir; plasma concentration of amiodarone possibly increased by atazanavir (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use); plasma concentration of amiodarone possibly increased by indinavir—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with nefinnavir or saquinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of amiodarone increased by ritonavir (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use) in amiodarone given with atazanavir or saquinavir

- Atomoxetine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with atomoxetine

- Beta-blockers: increased risk of bradycardia, AV block and myocardial depression when amiodarone given with bimatoprost or piretanide

- Calcium-channel Blockers: increased risk of bradycardia, AV block and myocardial depression when amiodarone given with ditiazem or verapamil

- Cardiac Glycosides: amiodarone increases plasma concentration of digoxin (halve dose of digoxin)

- Ciclosporin: amiodarone possibly increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin

- Colchicine: amiodarone possibly increases risk of colchicine toxicity

- Cytotoxic: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with vincristine

- Diuretics: increased cardiac toxicity with amiodarone if hypokalaemia occurs with acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics; amiodarone increases plasma concentration of eplerenone (reduce dose of eplerenone)

- Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of amiodarone increased by grapefruit juice

- Ivalbradine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with iverapamide

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of myopathy when amiodarone given with simvasstatin

- Lithium: manufacturer of amiodarone advises avoid concomitant use with lithium (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

- Orlistat: plasma concentration of amiodarone possibly reduced by orlistat

- Pentamidine isetionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amiodarone given with pentamidine isetionate—avoid concomitant use

- Thyroid Hormones: for concomitant use of amiodarone and thyroid hormones see p. 83

- Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of amiodarone increased by omeprazole

Amitizlipride see Antipsychotics

Amritpyline see Antidepressants, Tricyclic

Amiodipine see Calcium-channel Blockers

Antimicrobial see Penicillins

Amphoterin
c

Note: Close monitoring required with concomitant administration of nephrotoxic drugs or cytotoxics

Antibacterials: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when amphotericin given with aminoglycosides or polymyxins; possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when amphotericin given with vancomycin

Antifungals: amphotericin reduces renal excretion and increases cellular uptake of flucytosine (toxicity possibly increased); effects of amphotericin possibly antagonised by imidazoles and triazoles; plasma concentration of amphotericin possibly increased by miconafin
Cytotoxics: hypokalaemia caused by amphotericin increases cardiac toxicity with cardiac glycosides.

Calcium-channel Blockers: increased risk of hypotension when amphotericin given with calcium channel blockers.

Corticosteroids: increased risk of hypokalaemia when amphotericin given with corticosteroids—will avoid concomitant use unless corticosteroids needed to control reactions.

Cytoxotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amphotericin given with vinca alkaloids.

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: increased hypotensive effect when amphotericin given with loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics.

Pentamidine isetionate: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when amphotericin given with pentamidine isetionate.

Tacrolimus: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when amphotericin given with tacrolimus.

Ampicillin: increased risk of convulsions when amphotericin given with ampicillin.

Ciclosporin: increased risk of arrhythmias when halothane given with ciclosporin.

Amphotericin: increased risk of hypokalaemia when amphotericin given with amphotericin B.

Calcium-channel Blockers: increased hypotensive effect when amphotericin given with dihydropyridines.

Diuretics: increased hypotensive effect when amphotericin given with loop diuretics or thiazides.

Pentamidine isetionate: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when amphotericin given with pentamidine isetionate.

Anabolic Steroids: anti-coagulant effect of warfarin and phenindione.

Antidiabetics: avoid concomitant use of anagrelide with antidiabetics.

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists.

Antibacterials: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Analgesics: see Pentazocine and related diuretics.

Antidepressants: see Noradrenaline.

Antipsychotics: increased risk of CNS toxicity when ketamine given with antipsychotics (manufacturer of memantine advises avoid concomitant use).

Methylprednisolone: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when propofol given with muscle relaxants.

Oxycodone: enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when volatile liquid general anaesthetics given with oxycodone.

Probenecid: effects of thiopental possibly enhanced by probenecid.

Symptomatikics: increased risk of convulsions when ketamine given with theophylline.

Penicillins: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when amphotericin given with penicillins.

Moxonidine: increased risk of hypokalaemia when general anaesthetics given with moxonidine.

Methylprednisolone: effects of thiopental enhanced by methylprednisolone.

Metoclopramide: effects of thiopental enhanced by metoclopramide.
## Appendix 1: Interactions

### Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists (continued)

- **Alpha-blockers**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with alpha-blockers
- **Anaesthetics, General**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with general anaesthetics
- **Analgesics**: increased risk of renal impairment when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with NSAIDs, also hypotensive effect antagonised
- **Antibacterials**: plasma concentration of losartan and its active metabolite reduced by rifampin; possible increased risk of hyperkalaemia when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with trimethoprim
- **Anticoagulants**: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with heparins
- **Antidepressants**: hypotensive effect of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists possibly enhanced by MAOIs
- **Antipsychotics**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with antipsychotics
- **Anxiolytics and Hypnotics**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
- **Beta-blockers**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with beta-blockers
- **Calcium-channel Blockers**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with calcium-channel blockers
- **Clonidine**: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with clonidine
- **Corticosteroids**: hypotensive effect of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists antagonised by corticosteroids
- **Diazoxide**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with diazoxide
- **Diuretics**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with diuretics; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists
- **Dopaminergics**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with levodopa
- **Lithium**: angiotensin-II receptor antagonists reduce excretion of lithium (increased plasma concentration)
- **Methyldopa**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with methyldopa
- **Moxisylyte**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with moxisylyte
- **Muscle Relaxants**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with baclofen or tizanidine
- **Nitrates**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with nitrates
- **Oestrogens**: hypotensive effect of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists antagonised by oestrogens
- **Potassium Salts**: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with potassium salts
- **Prostaglandins**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with alprostadil
- **Tacrolimus**: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with tacrolimus
- **Vasodilator Antihypertensives**: enhanced hypotensive effect when angiotensin-II receptor antagonists given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

### Antacids

**Note**: Antacids should preferably not be taken at the same time as other drugs since they may impair absorption of ACE inhibitors; antacids possibly reduce absorption of ACE inhibitors; antacids reduce absorption of captopril, enalapril and fosinopril

- **Analgesics**: alkaline urine due to some antacids increases excretion of aspirin
- **Antibacterials**: antacids reduce absorption of azithromycin, cefaclor, cefpodoxime, ciprofloxacin, isoniazid, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin, ofloxacin, rifampicin and tetracyclines; avoid concomitant use of antacids with methenamine; oral magnesium salts (as magnesium trisilicate) reduce absorption of nitrofurantoin
- **Antiepileptics**: antacids reduce absorption of gabapentin and phenytoin
- **Antifungals**: antacids reduce absorption of itraconazole and ketoconazole
- **Antihistamines**: antacids reduce absorption of fexofenadine
- **Antimalarials**: antacids reduce absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; oral magnesium salts (as magnesium trisilicate) reduce absorption of proguanil
- **Antipsychotics**: antacids reduce absorption of phenothiazines and sulpiride
- **Antivirals**: antacids possibly reduce plasma concentration of atazanavir; antacids reduce absorption of tipranavir
- **Bile Acids**: antacids possibly reduce absorption of bile acids
- **Bisphosphonates**: antacids reduce absorption of bisphosphonates
- **Cardiac Glycosides**: antacids possibly reduce absorption of digoxin
- **Corticosteroids**: antacids reduce absorption of deflazacort
- **Cytotoxics**: antacids possibly reduce plasma concentration of erlotinib—give antacids at least 4 hours before or 2 hours after erlotinib
- **Deferasirox**: antacids containing aluminium possibly reduce absorption of deferasirox (manufacturer of deferasirox advises avoid concomitant use)
- **Dipyridamole**: antacids possibly reduce absorption of dipyridamole
- **Etrolbopag**: antacids reduce absorption of eltorbopag (give at least 4 hours apart)
- **Iron**: oral magnesium salts (as magnesium trisilicate) reduce absorption of oral iron
- **Lipid-regulating Drugs**: antacids reduce absorption of rosuvastatin
- **Lithium**: sodium bicarbonate increases excretion of lithium (reduced plasma concentration)
- **Myophenolate**: antacids reduce absorption of myophenolate
- **Penicillamine**: antacids reduce absorption of penicillamine
- **Polystyrene Sulphonate Resins**: risk of intestinal obstruction when aluminium hydroxide given with polystyrene sulphonate resins; risk of metabolic alkalosis when oral magnesium salts given with polystyrene sulphonate resins
- **Thyroid Hormones**: antacids possibly reduce absorption of levothyroxine
- **Ulcerc-healing Drugs**: antacids possibly reduce absorption of lansoprazole
- **Ulipristal**: avoidance of antacids advised by manufacturer of ulipristal (plasma concentration of ulipristal possibly reduced)

### Antitoxins

**Anti-arrhythmics** see Adenosine, Amiodarone, Disopyramide, Dronedarone, Flecainide, Lidocaine, and Propafenone

### Antibacterials

**see** individual drugs

### Antibiotics (cytotoxic)

**see** Bleomycin, Doxorubicin, Epirubicin, Idarubicin, Mitomycin, and Mitoxantrone
Anticoagulants: see Coumarins, Dabigatran etexilate, Heparins, Phenindione, and Rivaroxaban

Antidepressants: see Agomelatine; Antidepressants, SSRI; Antidepressants, Tricyclic; Antidepressants, Tricyclic (related); Antidepressants, Tryptophan; Antidepressants, Venlafaxine

Antidepressants, Noradrenaline Re-uptake Inhibitors: see Reboxetine

Antidepressants, SSRI: Alcohol: sedative effects possibly increased when SSRIs given with alcohol

Anaesthetics, Local: fluvoxamine inhibits metabolism of ropivacaine—avoid prolonged administration of ropivacaine

Analgesics: increased risk of bleeding when SSRIs given with NSAIDs or aspirin; fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine and sertraline possibly increase plasma concentration of methadone; increased risk of CNS toxicity when SSRIs given with tramadol

Anti-arrhythmics: fluoxetine increases plasma concentration of flecainide; paroxetine possibly inhibits metabolism of propafenone (increased risk of toxicity)

Anticoagulants: SSRIs possibly enhance anticoagulant effect of coumarins

Antidepressants: avoidance of fluvoxamine advised by manufacturer of reboxetine; possible increased serotonergic effects when SSRIs given with duloxetine; fluvoxamine inhibits metabolism of duloxetine—avoid concomitant use; CNS effects of SSRIs increased by MAOIs (risk of serious toxicity); citalopram, escitalopram, fluvoxamine, paroxetine or sertraline should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, also MAOIs should not be started until at least 1 week after stopping citalopram, escitalopram, fluvoxamine, paroxetine or sertraline; fluoxetine should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, also MAOIs should not be started until at least 5 weeks after stopping fluoxetine; increased risk of CNS toxicity when escitalopram given with moclobemide, preferably avoid concomitant use; after stopping citalopram, fluvoxamine, paroxetine or sertraline, do not start moclobemide for at least 1 week; after stopping fluoxetine do not start moclobemide for 5 weeks; increased serotonergic effects when SSRIs given with St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use; fluvoxamine inhibits metabolism of agomelatine (increased plasma concentration); possible increased serotonergic effects when fluoxetine or fluvoxamine given with mirtazapine; SSRIs increase plasma concentration of some tricyclics; CNS toxicity reported when fluoxetine given with tryptophan; agitation and nausea may occur when SSRIs given with tryptophan

Antiepileptics: SSRIs antagonise anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics (convulsive threshold lowered); fluoxetine and fluvoxamine increase plasma concentration of carbamazepine; plasma concentration of phenytoin reduced by phenobarbital; fluoxetine reduces plasma concentration of phenytoin; plasma concentration of sertraline possibly reduced by phenytoin, also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased; fluoxetine and fluvoxamine increase plasma concentration of phenytoin

Antihistamines: antidepressant effect of SSRIs possibly antagonised by cyproheptadine

Antimalarials: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of quinine; fluoxetine or sertraline advised by manufacturers of droperidol (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); fluoxetine increases plasma concentration of clozapine; haloperidol and risperidone; fluoxetine possibly increases plasma concentration of haloperidol; paroxetine inhibits metabolism of phenperidine (reduce dose of phenperidine); fluoxetine and paroxetine

Antipsychotics (continued): possibly inhibit metabolism of aripiprazole (reduce dose of aripiprazole); citalopram possibly increases plasma concentration of clozapine (increased risk of toxicity); fluvoxamine, paroxetine and sertraline increase plasma concentration of clozapine; fluvoxamine increases plasma concentration of olanzapine; SSRIs possibly increase plasma concentration of risperidone (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use); paroxetine possibly increases plasma concentration of olanzapine (increased risk of toxicity)

Antivirals: plasma concentration of paroxetine and sertraline possibly reduced by darifenacin; plasma concentration of SSRIs possibly increased by entorolac; plasma concentration of paroxetine possibly reduced by risedronate

Anaesthetics, Local: fluvoxamine inhibits the metabolism of ropivacaine; increased plasma concentration of alaproclamol; fluvoxamine increases plasma concentration of some benzodiazepines; fluvoxamine increases plasma concentration of metoprolol (enhanced effect); fluvoxamine increases plasma concentration of propranolol

Bupropion: plasma concentration of citalopram possibly increased by bupropion

Calcium-channel Blockers: fluoxetine possibly inhibits metabolism of nefipidine (increased plasma concentration)

Clopipamol: fluoxetine and fluvoxamine possibly increase plasma concentration of nefipidine

Dopamineergics: caution with paroxetine advised by manufacturer of entacapone; fluoxetine should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping rasagiline; also rasagiline should not be started until at least 5 weeks after stopping fluoxetine; increased risk of CNS toxicity when SSRIs given with rasagiline; fluvoxamine should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping rasagiline; increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when fluvoxamine or sertraline given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 1 week after stopping fluvoxamine or sertraline, avoid fluvoxamine or sertraline for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline); increased risk of hyper tension and CNS excitation when paroxetine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping fluvoxamine or sertraline, avoid fluvoxamine or sertraline for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline); increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when fluoxetine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 5 weeks after stopping fluoxetine, avoid fluoxetine for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline); increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when fluoxetine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping fluvoxamine or sertraline, avoid fluvoxamine or sertraline for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline); reduced risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when fluoxetine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 5 weeks after stopping fluoxetine, avoid fluoxetine for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline); increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when fluoxetine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping fluvoxamine or sertraline, avoid fluvoxamine or sertraline for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline); increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when fluoxetine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 5 weeks after stopping fluoxetine, avoid fluoxetine for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline)

Hormone Antagonists: fluoxetine and paroxetine possibly inhibit metabolism of flutamide, bicalutamide (avoid concomitant use)

5HT, Agonists: fluvoxamine inhibits the metabolism of fioraviptan; CNS toxicity reported when sertraline given with sumatriptan; increased risk of CNS toxicity when citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine or paroxetine given with sumatriptan; fluvoxamine possibly inhibits metabolism of zolmitriptan (reduce dose of zolmitriptan)

Lithium: Increased risk of CNS effects when SSRIs given with lithium (lithium toxicity reported)
Antidepressants, SSRI (continued)

Metoclopramide: CNS toxicity reported when SSRIs given with metoclopramide

- Antiepileptics: fluvoxamine increases plasma concentration of tiagabine (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

- Parasympathomimetics: paroxetine increases plasma concentration of galantamine

- Ranolazine: paroxetine increases plasma concentration of ranolazine

- Roflumilast: fluvoxamine inhibits the metabolism of roflumilast

- Sympathomimetics: metabolism of SSRIs possibly inhibited by methylphenidate

- Theophylline: fluvoxamine increases plasma concentration of theophylline (concomitant use should usually be avoided, but where not possible halve theophylline dose and monitor plasma-theophylline concentration)

- Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of citalopram, escitalopram and sertraline increased by cimetidine; fluvoxamine possibly increases plasma concentration of lansoprazole; plasma concentration of esomeprazole increased by omeprazole

Antidepressants, SSRI (related) see Duloxetine and Venlafaxine

Antidepressants, Tricyclic

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: tricyclics antagonise hypotensive effect of adrenergic neurone blockers

- Alcohol: increased sedative effect when tricyclics given with alcohol

- Alpha2-adrenoceptor Stimulants: avoidance of tricyclics advised by manufacturer of apraclonidine and brimonidine

- Anaesthetics, General: increased risk of arrhythmias and hypotension when tricyclics given with general anaesthetics

- Analgesics: increased risk of CNS toxicity when tricyclics given with tramadol; side-effects possibly increased when tricyclics given with nefopam; sedative effects possibly increased when tricyclics given with opioid analgesics

- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tricyclics given with diisopropylamine or etacainide; avoidance of tricyclics advised by manufacturer of dronedarone (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); increased risk of arrhythmias when tricyclics given with epropanofone

- Antibacterials: increased risk of venlafaxine arrhythmias when tricyclics given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use

- Anticoagulants: tricyclics may enhance or reduce anticoagulant effect of coumarins

- Antidepressants: possible increased serotoninergic effects when amitriptyline or clomipramine given with duloxetine; increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when tricyclics given with MAOIs; tricyclics should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs (3 weeks if starting clomipramine or imipramine), also MAOIs should not be started for at least 1–2 weeks after stopping tricyclics (3 weeks in the case of clomipramine or imipramine); after stopping tricyclics do not start moclobemide for at least 1 week; plasma concentration of some tricyclics increased by SSRIs; plasma concentration of amitriptyline reduced by St John’s Wort

- Anti-epileptics: tricyclics antagonise convulsant effect of antiepileptics (convulsive threshold lowered); metabolism of tricyclics accelerated by carbamazepine (reduced plasma concentration and reduced effect); metabolism of tricyclics possibly accelerated by phenobarbital (reduced plasma concentration); plasma concentration of tricyclics possibly reduced by phenytoin

- Anti-infectials: plasma concentration of tricyclics possibly increased by terbinafine

Antidepressants, Tricyclic (continued)

Antihistamines: increased antimuscarinic and sedative effects when tricyclics given with antihistamines

- Antimalarials: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of artemetaine/lumefantrine

- Antimuscarinic side-effects when tricyclics given with antimuscarinics: increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when tricyclics given with antimuscarinics

- Antipsychotics: plasma concentration of tricyclics increased by antipsychotics—possibly increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias; avoidance of tricyclics advised by manufacturer of d ropipride (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); possible increased antimuscarinic side-effects when tricyclics given with clozapine; increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when tricyclics given with phenothiazines; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tricyclics given with piperoxine—avoid concomitant use

- Antivirals: plasma concentration of tricyclics possibly increased by ritonavir; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tricyclics given with saquinavir; avoidance concomitant use

- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when tricyclics given with anxiolytics and hypnotics

- Atropine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tricyclics given with atropine; possible increased risk of convulsions when antidepressants given with atropine

- Beta-blockers: plasma concentration of imipramine increased by labetalol and propranolol; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tricyclics given with propranolol

- Bupropion: plasma concentration of tricyclics possibly increased by bupropion (possible increased risk of convulsions)

- Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of imipramine increased by diltiazem and verapamil; plasma concentration of tricyclics possibly increased by diltiazem and verapamil

- Cannabis Extract: possible increased risk of hypertension and tachycardia when tricyclics given with cannabis extract

- Clonidine: tricyclics antagonise hypotensive effect of clonidine, also increased risk of hypertension on clonidine withdrawal

- Cytotoxics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amitriptyline or clomipramine given with arsenic trioxide

- Disulfiram: metabolism of tricyclics inhibited by disulfiram (increased plasma concentration); concentrated amitryptiline reported to increase disulfiram reaction with alcohol

- Diuretics: increased risk of postural hypotension when tricyclics given with diuretics

- Dopaminergics: caution with tricyclics advised by manufacturer of entacapone; increased risk of CNS toxicity when tricyclics given with erasagline; CNS toxicity reported when tricyclics given with selegiline

- Histamine: tricyclics theoretically antagonise effect of histamine—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use

- Lithium: risk of toxicity when tricyclics given with lithium

- Moxonidine: tricyclics possibly antagonise hypotensive effect of moxonidine (manufacturer of moxonidine advises avoid concomitant use)

- Muscle Relaxants: tricyclics enhance muscle relaxant effect of baclofen

- Nicorandil: tricyclics possibly enhance hypotensive effect of nicorandil

- Nitrates: tricyclics reduce effects of sublingual tablets of nitrates (failure to dissolve under tongue owing to dry mouth)

- Oestrogens: antidepressant effect of tricyclics antagonised by oestrogens (but side-effects of tricyclics possibly increased due to increased plasma concentration)
### Antidepressants, Tricyclic (continued)
- Pentamidine isethionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tricyclics given with pentamidine isethionate
- Sodium Oxybate: increased risk of side-effects when tricyclics given with sodium oxybate
- Sympathomimetics: increased risk of hypertension and arrhythmias when tricyclics given with adrenaline (epinephrine) (adrenaline appear to be safe); metabolism of tricyclics possibly inhibited by methylphenidate; increased risk of hypertension and arrhythmias when tricyclics given with noradrenaline (norepinephrine)
  - Thyroid Hormones: effects of tricyclics possibly enhanced by thyroid hormones; effects of amitriptyline and imipramine enhanced by thyroid hormones
- Ultra-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of tricyclics possibly increased by cimetidine; metabolism of amitriptyline, doxepin, imipramine and nortriptyline inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration)

### Antidepressants, Tricyclic (related)
- Alcohol: increased sedative effect when tricyclic-related antidepressants given with alcohol
  - Alpha-2-adrenoceptor Stimulants: avoidance of tricyclic-related antidepressants advised by manufacturer of apropclonidine and brimonidine
  - Antiemetics: trazodone may enhance or reduce anticoagulant effect of warfarin
  - Antidepressants: tricyclic-related antidepressants should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; also MAOIs should not be started until at least 1–2 weeks after stopping tricyclic-related antidepressants; after stopping tricyclic-related antidepressants do not start moclobemide for at least 1 week
  - Antiepileptics: tricyclic-related antidepressants possibly unstable anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics (convulsive threshold lowered); plasma concentration of mianserin reduced by phenobarbital (reduced plasma concentration)
  - Antihistaminics: possible increased antimuscarinic and sedative effects when tricyclic-related antidepressants given with antihistaminics
  - Antiemetics: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of metoclopramide and lumebrantrine
  - Antimuscarinics: possible increased antimuscarinic side-effects when tricyclic-related antidepressants given with antimuscarinics
  - Antivirals: plasma concentration of trazodone increased by ritonavir (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when trazodone given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use
  - Antihistaminics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when tricyclic-related antidepressants given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
  - Atropines and Hypnotics: reduced plasma concentration of anticholinergic drugs
  - Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when tricyclic-related antidepressants given with diazoxide
  - Nitrates: tricyclic-related antidepressants possibly reduce effects of sublingual tablets of nitrates (failure to dissolve under tongue owing to dry mouth)
- Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when tricyclic-related antidepressants given with hydralazine or sodium nitroprusside

### Antidiabetics (continued)
- Alcohol: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics enhanced by alcohol; increased risk of lactic acidosis when metformin given with alcohol
- Anabolic Steroids: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics possibly enhanced by anabolic steroids
  - Analgesics: effects of sulfonylureas possibly enhanced by NSAIDs
    - Anti-arhythmics: hypoglycaemic effect of glitazide, insulin and metformin possibly enhanced by disopyramide
    - Antibacterials: hypoglycaemic effect of acarbose possibly enhanced by neomycin, also severity of gastrointestinal effects increased; effects of repaglinide enhanced by clarithromycin; effects of glibenclamide possibly enhanced by norfloxacin; plasma concentration of nateglinide reduced by ritampicin; hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide possibly antagonised by rifampicin; effects of sulfonylureas enhanced by chloramphenicol; metabolism of tolbutamide accelerated by rifampicin (reduced effect); metabolism of sulfonylureas possibly accelerated by rifampicin (reduced effect); effects of sulfonylureas rarely enhanced by sulanamides and trimethoprim; hypoglycaemic effect of sulfonylureas possibly enhanced by tetracyclines; hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide possibly enhanced by trimethoprin—manufacturer advises avoid concomitant use
  - Anticoagulants: exenatide possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin; hypoglycaemic effect of sulfonylureas possibly enhanced by coumarins, also possible changes to anticoagulant effect
  - Antidepressants: hypoglycaemic effect of antidepressants possibly enhanced by MAOIs; hypoglycaemic effect of insulin, metformin and sulfonylureas enhanced by MAOIs
  - Antiepileptics: tolbutamide transiently increases plasma concentration of phenytoin (possibility of toxicity); plasma concentration of glibenclamide possibly reduced by topiramate; plasma concentration of metformin possibly increased by topiramate
  - Antifungal: plasma concentration of sulfonylureas increased by fluconazole and itraconazole; hypoglycaemic effect of gliclazide and glipizide enhanced by fluconazole; hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide possibly enhanced by itraconazole; hypoglycaemic effect of glipizide possibly enhanced by posaconazole; plasma concentration of sulfonylureas possibly increased by voriconazole
  - Antihistaminics: thrombocyte count depressed when metformin given with ketotifen (manufacturer of ketotifen advises avoid concomitant use)
  - Antipsychotics: hypoglycaemic effect of sulfonylureas possibly antagonised by phenothiazines
  - Antivirals: plasma concentration of tolbutamide possibly increased by ritonavir
  - Aprepitant: plasma concentration of tolbutamide reduced by aprepitant
  - Beta-blockers: warning signs of hypoglycaemia (such as tremor) with antidiabetics may be masked when given with beta-blockers; hypoglycaemic effect of insulin enhanced by beta-blockers
  - Bosentan: increased risk of hepatotoxicity when glibenclamide given with bosentan—avoid concomitant use
  - Calcium-channel Blockers: glucose tolerance occasionally impaired when insulin given with nifedipine
  - Cardiac Glycosides: acarbose possibly reduces plasma concentration of digoxin; sitagliptin increases plasma concentration of digoxin
  - Cisplatin: hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide possibly enhanced by cisplatin
  - Corticosteroids: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics antagonised by corticosteroids
  - Cytotoxics: avoidance of repaglinide advised by manufacturer of lipatin

### Captopril
- Note: Other oral drugs may be taken at least 1 hour before or 4 hours after exenatide injection, or taken with a meal when exenatide is not administered, to minimise possible interference with absorption
- ACE Inhibitors: hypoglycaemic effect of insulin, metformin and sulfonylureas possibly enhanced by ACE inhibitors
Antidiabetics (continued)

Deferasirox: plasma concentration of repaglinide increased by deferasirox
Diazoxide: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics antagonised by diazoxide
Diuretics: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics antagonised by loop diuretics and thiazides and related diuretics
Hormone Antagonists: requirements for insulin, metformin, repaglinide and sulfonylureas possibly reduced by lanreotide; requirements for insulin, metformin, repaglinide and sulfonylureas possibly reduced by octreotide
Leflunomide: hypoglycaemic effect of tolbutamide possibly enhanced by leflunomide

Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of glibenclamide reduced by colesevelam; hypoglycaemic effect of acarbose possibly enhanced by colestyramine; hypoglycaemic effect of nateglinide possibly enhanced by gemfibrozil; increased risk of severe hypoglycaemia when repaglinide given with gemfibrozil—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of glibenclamide possibly increased by fluvasatin; may be improved glucose tolerance and an additive effect when insulin or sulfonylureas given with fibrates

Oestrogens: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics antagonised by oestrogens
Orilistat: avoidance of acarbose advised by manufacturer of orlistat
Pancreatins: hypoglycaemic effect of acarbose antagonised by pancreatins
Sulfynpyrazone: effects of sulfonylureas enhanced by sulfynpyrazone
Testosterone: hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics possibly enhanced by testosterone
Ulcerc-healing Drugs: excretion of metformin reduced by metformin reduced by glibenclamide; hypoglycaemic effect of sulfonylureas possibly enhanced by glibenclamide; possibly increased by fluvasatin; may be improved glucose tolerance and an additive effect when insulin or sulfonylureas given with fibrates

Antihistamines see Carbamazeplin, Elicarcabzepine, Ethoxuximide, Gabapentin, Lacosamide, Lamotrigine, Levetiracetam, Oxcarbazepine, Phenobarbital, Phenytoin, Rufamidine, Stiripentol, Tiagabine, Topiramate, Valproinam, Vigabatin, and Zonisamide

Antifungals see Amphotericin; Antifungals, Imidazole; Antifungals, Triazole; Caspofungin; Flucytosine; Griseofulvin; Micafungin; Terbinafine

Antifungals, Imidazole

Aliskiren: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of aliskiren
Alpha-blockers: ketoconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of alfuzosin
Analgesics: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of buprenorphine (reduce dose of buprenorphine)
Antacids: absorption of ketoconazole reduced by antacids
Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ketoconazole given with disopyramide—avoid concomitant use; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of dronedaron—avoid concomitant use
Antiarrhythmics: metabolism of ketoconazole accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration), also plasma concentration of rifampicin may be reduced by ketoconazole; plasma concentration of ketoconazole possibly reduced by isoniazid; avoidance of concomitant ketoconazole in severe renal and hepatic impairment advised by manufacturer of edithromycin
Anticoagulants: ketoconazole enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin; miconazole enhances anti-coagulant effect of warfarin (miconazole oral gel and possibly vaginal formulations absorbed); ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of ambroxaban—avoid concomitant use
Antidepressants

Antidepressants (continued)

Bosentan: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of bosentan
Calcium-channel Blockers: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of diltipidine (increased plasma concentration); avoidance of ketoconazole advised by manufacturer of lercanidipine; ketoconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of diltiapridines (increased plasma concentration)
Ciclosporin: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of ciclosporin (increased plasma concentration); miconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of ciclosporin (increased plasma concentration)
Cilostazol: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of cilostazol (consider reducing dose of cilosta zol)
Cinacalcet: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of cinacalcet (increased plasma concentration)

Antifungals, Imidazole (continued)

Bosentan: avoid concomitant use; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of bosentan
Calcium-channel Blockers: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of diltiapidine (increased plasma concentration); avoidance of ketoconazole advised by manufacturer of lercanidipine; ketoconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of diltiapridines (increased plasma concentration)
Ciclosporin: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of ciclosporin (increased plasma concentration); miconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of ciclosporin (increased plasma concentration)
Cilostazol: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of cilostazol (consider reducing dose of cilostazol)
Cinacalcet: ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of cinacalcet (increased plasma concentration)
Antifungals, Imidazole (continued)

- Clopidogrel: ketoconazole possibly reduces antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel
- Colchicine: ketoconazole possibly increases risk of colchicine toxicity—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment)

Corticosteroids: ketoconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of corticosteroids; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of inhaled and oral budesonide; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of active metabolite of ciclesonide; ketoconazole inhibits the metabolism of methylprednisolone; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of inhaled mometasone

- Cytoxotics: ketoconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of dauninib; ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of erlotinib and sumitnib (increased plasma concentration); ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of evelerolimus, lapatinib and nilotinib—avoid concomitant use; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of bortezomib and imatinib; avoidance of ketoconazole advised by manufacturer of pazopanib; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of active metabolite of ensimsirolimus—avoid concomitant use; in vitro studies suggest a possible interaction between ketoconazole and docetaxel (consult docetaxel product literature); ketoconazole reduces plasma concentration of vinorelbine (but concentration of active metabolite of irinotecan increased)—avoid concomitant use; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of vinflunine—manufacturer of vinflunine advises avoid concomitant use

- Diuretics: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of eplerenone—avoid concomitant use

- Domperidone: ketoconazole possibly increases risk of arrhythmias with domperidone

- Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when imidazoles given with ergotamine and methysergide—avoid concomitant use

- H2-Blockers: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of alfentanil (increased risk of toxicity); ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of diletiriptan (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

- Ibavradine: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of ibavradine—avoid concomitant use

- Lanthanum: absorption of ketoconazole possibly reduced by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours apart)

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when imidazoles given with atorvastatin; increased risk of myopathy when ketoconazole given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use); possible increased risk of myopathy when miconazol given with simvastatin—avoid concomitant use

- Oestrogens: anecdotal reports of contraceptive failure when imidazoles given with oeströgens

- Parasympathomimetics: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of galantamine

- Ranolazine: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—avoid concomitant use

- Retinoids: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of altretinoin

- Sildenafil: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil

- Sirolimus: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of sirolimus—avoid concomitant use; miconazole increases plasma concentration of sirolimus Symptomimetics, Beta; ketoconazole inhibits metabolism of salmoterol (increased plasma concentration)

- Tacrolimus: imidazoles possibly increase plasma concentration of tacrolimus; ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of etacrolimus (consider reducing dose of tacrolimus)

- Tadalafil: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of tadalafil—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoid concomitant use

Antifungals, Imidazole (continued)

- Theophylline: ketoconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline

- Tolvaptan: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of tolvaptan

- Ucer-healing Drugs: absorption of ketoconazole reduced by histamine H2-antagonists, proton pump inhibitors and sucralfate

- Vardenafil: ketoconazole increases plasma concentration of vardenafil—avoid concomitant use

- Vitamins: ketoconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of paricalcitol

Antifungals, Polyene see Amphotericin

Antifungals, Triazole

Note: In general, fluconazole interactions relate to multiple-dose treatment

- Analgesics: fluconazole increases plasma concentration of celecoxib (halve dose of celecoxib); voriconazole increases plasma concentration of diclofenac, ibuprofen and oxycodone; fluconazole increases plasma concentration of flurbiprofen and ibuprofen; fluconazole increases plasma concentration of paroxetine (reduce dose of paroxetine); voriconazole increases plasma concentration of alfentanil and methadone (consider reducing dose of alfentanil and methadone); fluconazole inhibits metabolism of alfentanil (risk of prolonged or delayed respiratory depression); itraconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of alfentanil; triazoles possibly increase plasma concentration of fentanyl

- Antacids: absorption of itraconazole reduced by antacids

- Anti-arrhythmics: manufacturer of itraconazole advises avoid concomitant use with disopyramide; avoidance of itraconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole advised by manufacturer of drotedarone

- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of itraconazole increased by clarithromycin; triazoles possibly increase plasma concentration of rifabutin (increased risk of uveitis—reduce rifabutin dose); posaconazole increases plasma concentration of rifabutin (also plasma concentration of posaconazole reduced); voriconazole increases plasma concentration of rifabutin, also rifabutin reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole (increased dose of voriconazole and also monitor for rifabutin toxicity); fluconazole increases plasma concentration of rifabutin (increased risk of uveitis—reduce rifabutin dose); plasma concentration of itraconazole reduced by rifabutin and rifampicin; manufacturer of itraconazole advises avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of posaconazole reduced by rifampicin; plasma concentration of voriconazole reduced by rifampicin; avoidance of voriconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole advised by manufacturer of rivaroxaban

- Antidepressants: avoidance of triazoles advised by manufacturer of venlafaxine; plasma concentration of voriconazole reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use

- Antidiabetics: posaconazole possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of glipizide; fluconazole possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of nateglinide; itraconazole possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide; fluconazole increases plasma concentration of sitagliptin; voriconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of sulfonylureas

- Antiepileptics: fluconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of carbamazepine; plasma concentration of voriconazole possibly reduced by carbamazepine and phenobarbital—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of itraconazole and posaconazole possibly reduced by carbamazepine; plasma concentration of itraconazole and posaconazole possibly reduced by phenobarbital; fluconazole
Appendix 1: Interactions

Antifungals, Triazole

- Antiepileptics (continued) increases plasma concentration of phenytoin (consider reducing dose of phenytoin); voriconazole increases plasma concentration of phenytoin, also phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole (increase dose of voriconazole and also monitor for phenytoin toxicity), plasma concentration of posaconazole reduced by phenytoin; plasma concentration of itraconazole reduced by phenytoin—avoid concomitant use.

Antifungals: triazoles possibly antagonise effects of amphotericin; plasma concentration of itraconazole increased by micafungin (consider reducing dose of itraconazole).

- Anxiolytics: itraconazole inhibits metabolism of mizolastine—avoid concomitant use.

- Antimalarials: avoidance of triazoles advised by manufacturer of artether/lumefantrine.

Antimucosartics: avoidance of itraconazole advised by manufacturer of darifenacin and tolterodine; manufacturer of fosoterodine advises dose reduction when itraconazole given with fosoterodine—consult fosoterodine product literature; itraconazole increases plasma concentration of solifenacin.

- Antipsychotics: itraconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of haloperidol; itraconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of ziprasidone (reduce dose of ziprasidone), increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when triazoles given with cisaprid—avoid concomitant use; triazoles possibly increase plasma concentration of quetiapine (reduce dose of quetiapine).

- Antivirals: posaconazole increases plasma concentration of etanercept; plasma concentration of itraconazole and posaconazole reduced by efavirenz plasma concentration of voriconazole reduced by efavirenz, also plasma concentration of efavirenz increased (increase voriconazole dose and reduce efavirenz dose); plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when itraconazole given with fosamprenavir; itraconazole increases plasma concentration of indinavir (consider reducing dose of indinavir); plasma concentration of itraconazole possibly reduced by nevirapine—consider increasing dose of itraconazole; fluconazole increases plasma concentration of nevirapine, ritonavir and tipranavir; combination of itraconazole with ritonavir may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both); plasma concentration of voriconazole reduced by ritonavir—avoid concomitant use; triazoles possibly increase plasma concentration of saquinavir; fluconazole increases plasma concentration of zidovudine (increased risk of toxicity).

- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: itraconazole increases plasma concentration of alprazolam; posaconazole increases plasma concentration of alprazolam; fluconazole and itraconazole increase plasma concentration of alprazolam (risk of prolonged sedation); itraconazole increases plasma concentration of buspirone (reduce dose of buspirone).

- Bosentan: fluconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of bosentan—avoid concomitant use; itraconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of bosentan.

- Calcium-channel Blockers: negative inotropic effect possibly increased when itraconazole given with calcium-channel blockers; itraconazole inhibits metabolism of flecainide (increased plasma concentration); avoidance of itraconazole advised by manufacturer of lercanidipine; itraconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of dihydropyridines (increased plasma concentration).

- Cardiac Glycosides: itraconazole increases plasma concentration of digoxin.

- Corticosteroids: itraconazole increases plasma concentration of corticosteroids and methylprednisolone; itraconazole increases plasma concentration of inhaled budesonide.

- Cytotoxics: itraconazole inhibits metabolism of busulfan (increased risk of toxicity); itraconazole possibly increases side-effects of cyclophosphamide; itraconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole possibly increase plasma concentration of everolimus—manufacturer of everolimus advises avoid concomitant use; itraconazole increases plasma concentration of gefitinib; avoidance of itraconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole advised by manufacturer of apatinib; avoidance of itraconazole and voriconazole advised by manufacturer of enotinib; avoidance of itraconazole and voriconazole advised by manufacturer of pazopanib; posaconazole possibly inhibits metabolism of vinblastine and vinorelbine (increased risk of neurotoxicity); itraconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of vinflunine—manufacturer of vinflunine advises avoid concomitant use.

- Diuretics: fluconazole increases plasma concentration of eplerenone (reduce dose of eplerenone); itraconazole increases plasma concentration of eplerenone—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of fluconazole increased by hydrochlorothiazide.

- Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when triazoles given with ergotamine and methysergide—avoid concomitant use.

- H1R, Agonists: itraconazole increases plasma concentration of eletriptan (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use.

- Ivabradine: fluconazole increases plasma concentration of ivabradine—reduce initial dose of ivabradine; itraconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of ivabradine—avoid concomitant use.

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when triazoles given with atorvastatin; increased risk of myopathy when itraconazole or posaconazole given with atorvastatin (avoid concomitant use); fluconazole increases plasma concentration of fluvastatin; increased risk of myopathy when itraconazole or posaconazole given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use); possible increased risk of myopathy when voriconazole given with simvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when fluconazole given with simvastatin—avoid concomitant use.

- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of voriconazole increased by oestrogens.

- Progestogens: plasma concentration of voriconazole possibly increased by progestogens.

- Ranolazine: itraconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole possibly increase plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use.

- Sildenafil: itraconazole increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil.

- Sitagliptin: posaconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of sitagliptin—itraconazole and voriconazole increase plasma concentration of sitagliptin—avoid concomitant use.

- Tacrolimus: fluconazole, itraconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole increase plasma concentration of tacrolimus—avoid concomitant use.
Antifungals, Triazole

- Tacrolimus (continued) concentration of tacrolimus (consider reducing dose of tacrolimus)
- Tadalafil: itraconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of tadalafil
- Theophylline: fluconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of posaconazole reduced by cimetidine; voriconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of esomeprazole; voriconazole increases plasma concentration of omeprazole (consider reducing dose of omeprazole); absorption of itraconazole reduced by histamine H₂-antagonists and proton pump inhibitors; manufacturer of posaconazole advises avoid concomitant use with histamine H₂-antagonists and proton pump inhibitors (plasma concentration of posaconazole possibly reduced)
- Vardenafil: itraconazole possibly increases plasma concentration of vardenafil—avoid concomitant use with itraconazole

Antihistamines

- Note: Sedative interactions apply to a lesser extent to the non-sedating antihistamines. Interactions do not generally apply to antimuscarinics used by inhalation
- Alcohol: increased sedative effect when antihistamines given with alcohol (possibly less effect with non-sedating antihistamines)
- Analgesics: sedative effects possibly increased when sedating antihistamines given with opioid analgesics
- Antidiabetics: thrombocyte count depressed when ketotifen given with metformin (manufacturer of ketotifen advises avoid concomitant use)
- Antifungals: plasma concentration of raputadine increased by erithromycin; manufacturer of loratadine advises plasma concentration possibly increased by erithromycin; metabolism of mizolastine inhibited by erithromycin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when mizolastine given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use; effects of fexofenadine possibly reduced by antacids
- Antirhythmic: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when antimuscarinics given with trimethoprim
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of raputadine increased by erithromycin; manufacturer of loratadine advises plasma concentration possibly increased by erithromycin; metabolism of mizolastine given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when mizolastine given with mizolastine possibly increased by macrolides (avoid concomitant use) and possibly increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with MAOIs or tricyclics
- Antidepressants: increased antimuscarinic and sedative effects when antimuscarinics given with MAOIs or tricyclics; manufacturer of promethazine advises avoid for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; cyproheptadine possibly antagonises antidepresant effect of SSRIs; possible increased antimuscarinic and sedative effects when antimuscarinics given with tricyclic-related antidepressants
- Antiinflammatory: increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with antihistamines
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of chlorphenamine possibly increased by lopinavir; plasma concentration of non-sedating antihistamines possibly increased by ritonavir; decreased absorption of theophylline when mizolastine given with theophylline
- Antiinflammatory: increased sedative effect when antihistamines given with antiinflammatory drugs
- Antihistamines (continued)
- Beta-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when mizolastine given with betaxolol—avoid concomitant use
- Betahistine: antihistamines theoretically antagonise effect of betahistine
- Grapefruit Juice: plasma concentration of raputadine increased by grapefruit juice
- Histamine: antihistamines theoretically antagonise effects of histamine—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: manufacturer of loratadine advises plasma concentration possibly increased by cimetidine

Antihistamines, Non-sedating see Antihistamines

Antihistamines, Sedating see Antihistamines

Antimalarials see Artemether with Lumezantrine, Chloroquine and Hydroxychloroquine, Methotrexate, Pemetrexed, Raltezid, and Tioguanine

Antimuscarinics

- Note: Many drugs have antimuscarinic effects; concomitant use of two or more such drugs can increase side-effects such as dry mouth, urine retention, and constipation; concomitant use can also lead to confusion in the elderly. Interactions do not generally apply to antimuscarinics used by inhalation
- Alcohol: increased sedative effect when hyoscine given with alcohol
- Analgesics: possible increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with codeine; increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with nefopam
- Antihistamines: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when darifenacin given with trimetadole; increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with disopyramide
- Antibacterials: manufacturer of fosoterodine advises dose reduction when fosoterodine given with clarithromycin and telithromycin—consult fosoterodine product literature; manufacturer of tolterodine advises avoid concomitant use with clarithromycin and erythromycin; plasma concentration of darifenacin possibly increased by erythromycin; plasma concentration of active metabolite of fosoterodine reduced by rifampicin
- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of darifenacin and procyclidine increased by paroxetine; increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with MAOIs or tricyclics; possible increased antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with tricyclic-related antidepressants
- Antifungals: antimuscarinics reduce absorption of ketoconazole; manufacturer of fosoterodine advises dose reduction when fosoterodine given with itraconazole and ketoconazole—consult fosoterodine product literature; plasma concentration of darifenacin increased by ketoconazole—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of solifenacin increased by itraconazole and ketoconazole; manufacturer of tolterodine advises avoid concomitant use with itraconazole and ketoconazole; manufacturer of darifenacin advises avoid concomitant use with itraconazole
- Antihistamines: increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with antihistamines
- Antipsychotics: antimuscarinics possibly reduce effects of haloperidol; increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when antimuscarinics given with clozapine; antimuscarinics reduce plasma concentration of phenothiazines, but risk of antimuscarinic side-effects increased
- Antivirals: manufacturer of darifenacin advises avoid concomitant use with atazanavir, fosamprenavir,
Appendix 1: Interactions BNFC 2011–2012

Antimuscarinics

Antivirals (continued)
indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir and tipranavir; manufacturer of fosoterodine advises chloroquin reduction when fosoterodine given with atazanavir, indinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir and saquinavir—consult fosoterodine product literature; manufacturer of tolterodine advises avoid concomitant use with fosamprenavir, indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir and saquinavir; plasma concentration of solifenacin increased by nelfinavir and ritonavir

● Beta-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tolterodine given with

Cardiac Glycosides: darifenacin possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin

Domperidone: antimuscarinics antagonise effects of domperidone on gastro-intestinal activity

Methotrexate: antimuscarinics possibly reduce absorption of levothyroxine

Memantine: effects of antimuscarinics possibly enhanced by memantine

Metoclopramide: antimuscarinics antagonise effects of metoclopramide on gastro-intestinal activity

Nitrates: antimuscarinics possibly reduce effects of sublingual tablets of nitrates (failure to dissolve under tongue owing to dry mouth)

Parasympathomimetics: antimuscarinics antagonise effects of parasympathomimetics

Antipsychotics

Note Increased risk of toxicity with myelosuppressive drugs

Note Avoid concomitant use of clozapine with drugs that have a substantial potential for causing agranulocytosis

ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when antipsychotics given with ACE inhibitors

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when phenothiazines given with adrenergic neurone blockers; higher doses of chlorpromazine antagonise hypotensive effect of adrenergic neurone blockers; haloperidol antagonises hypotensive effect of adrenergic neurone blockers

Adsorbents: absorption of phenothiazines possibly reduced by kaolin

Alcohol: increased sedative effect when antipsychotics given with alcohol

Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when antipsychotics given with alpha-blockers

● Anaesthetics, General: droperidol enhances effects of thiopental; enhanced hypotensive effect when antipsychotics given with general anaesthetics

● Analgesics: possible severe drowsiness when haloperidol given with indomethacin; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval given with diethamide; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amisulpride, droperidol, haloperidol, phenothiazines, pimozide or zuclopenthixol given with amisulpride—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when benperidol given with amisulpride—manufacturer of benperidol

● Anti-arhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval given with anti-arhythmics that prolong the QT interval; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amisulpride, droperidol, haloperidol, phenothiazines, pimozide or zuclopenthixol given with amisulpride—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when benperidol given with amisulpride—manufacturer of benperidol

Antipsychotics

● Anti-arrhythmics (continued)

Advise avoids concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sulpiride given with amiodarone or disopyramide—increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amisulpride, droperidol, pimozide or zuclopenthixol given with disopyramide—avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when haloperidol given with disopyramide—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when phenothiazines given with disopyramide; avoidance of phenothiazines advised by manufacturer of dronedarone (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); increased risk of arrhythmias when clozapine given with dronedarone

● Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pimozide given with clarithromycin, moxifloxacin or telithromycin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of venous thromboembolism; possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pimozide given with erythromycin—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of clozapine possibly increased by erythromycin (possible increased risk of convulsions); possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pimozide given with erythromycin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sulpiride given with parenteral erythromycin; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when zuclopenthixol given with parenteral erythromycin—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of clozapine increased by ciprofloxacin; plasma concentration of olanzapine possibly increased by ciprofloxacin; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when droperidol, haloperidol, phenothiazines or zuclopenthixol given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when benperidol given with moxifloxacin—manufacturer of benperidol advises avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of antipsychotics possibly reduced by rifabutin and rifampicin—increased dose of antipsychotic; plasma concentration of clozapine possibly reduced by rifampicin; metabolism of haloperidol accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration); avoid concomitant use of clozapine with chloramphenicol or sulphonamides (increased risk of agranulocytosis); plasma concentration of quetiapine possibly increased by macrolides (reduce dose of quetiapine); manufacturer of droperidol advises avoid concomitant use with macrolides (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

● Antidepressants: plasma concentration of clozapine possibly increased by citalopram (increased risk of toxicity); metabolism of aripiprazole possibly inhibited by fluoxetine and paroxetine (reduce dose of aripiprazole); plasma concentration of clozapine, haloperidol and risperidone increased by fluoxetine; manufacturer of droperidol advises avoid concomitant use with fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, sertraline or tricyclics (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); plasma concentration of clozapine and olanzapine increased by fluvoxamine; plasma concentration of haloperidol possibly increased by fluvoxamine; plasma concentration of clozapine increased by paroxetine, sertraline and venlafaxine; plasma concentration of risperidone possibly increased by paroxetine (increased risk of toxicity); metabolism of perphenazine inhibited by paroxetine (reduce dose of perphenazine); plasma concentration of haloperidol increased by venlafaxine; clozapine possibly increases CNS effects of MAOIs; plasma concentration of pimozide possibly increased by SSRIs (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of aripiprazole possibly reduced by St John’s wort—increased dose of aripiprazole; antipsychotics increase plasma concentration of tricyclics—possibly increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias...
Antipsychotics

- Antidepressants (continued)
  
  arrhythmias; increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when phenothiazines given with tricyclics; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pimozide given with tricyclics—avoid concomitant use; possible increased anti-muscarinic side-effects when clozapine given with tricyclics

Antidiabetics: phenothiazines possibly antagonise hypoglycaemic effect of sulfonylureas

- Antiepileptics: antipsychotics antagonise anti-convulsant effect of antiepileptics (convulsive threshold lowered); metabolism of clozapine accelerated by carbamazepine (reduced plasma concentration), also avoid concomitant use of drugs with substantial potential for causing agranulocytosis; plasma concentration of aripiprazole reduced by carbamazepine; metabolism of haloperidol accelerated by carbamazepine; metabolism of hydroxychloroquine or quinine—avoid concomitant use

- Antimetabolites: metabolism of aripiprazole possibly inhibited by imidazoles or ketoconazole—avoid concomitant use

- Antivirals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when haloperidol given with abacavir, lamivudine, nevirapine, ritonavir, saquinavir or atazanavir (inhibitors of CYP3A4); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when lamivudine, zidovudine or tenofovir given with ritonavir

Appendix 1: Interactions

Antipsychotics

- Antipsychotics (continued)
  
  haloperidol; chlorpromazine possibly increases plasma concentration of haloperidol; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when droperidol given with haloperidol—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pimozide given with chlorpromazine; plasma concentration of pimozide possibly increased by atazanavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of aripiprazole possibly reduced by buspirone and nefazodone—increase dose of aripiprazole; plasma concentration of pimozide possibly increased by lopinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of clozapine reduced by ritonavir—consider increasing dose of olanzapine, plasma concentration of clozapine increased by ritonavir (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of antipsychotics possibly increased by ritonavir; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when clozapine, haloperidol or phenothiazines given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use

- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when antipsychotics given with anxiolytics and hypnotics; serious adverse events reported with concomitant use of clozapine and lorazepam (causality not established); increased risk of hypotension, bradycardia and respiratory depression when intramuscular olanzapine given with par enteral benzodiazepines; plasma concentration of haloperidol increased by buspirone

- Apruptan: avoidance of pimozide advised by manufacturer of apruptan

- Atropine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval given with atropine

- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when phenothiazines given with beta-blockers; plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when chlorpromazine given with propranolol; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amisulpride, phenothiazines, pimozide or sulpiride given with nebivolol; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when droperidol or zuclopenthixol given with nebivolol—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of clozapine reduced by ritonavir—consider increasing dose of olanzapine, plasma concentration of clozapine increased by ritonavir (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of antipsychotics possibly increased by ritonavir; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when clozapine, haloperidol or phenothiazines given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use

- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when antipsychotics given with calcium-channel blockers

- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when pheno-thiazines given with clonidine

- Cytotoxic: avoid concomitant use of clozapine with cytotoxic (increased risk of agranulocytosis); avoidance of pimozide advised by manufacturer of lapatinib; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when haloperidol given with arsenic trioxide; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval given with arsenic trioxide

- Desferrioxamine: manufacturer of levomepramine advises avoid concomitant use with desferrioxamine; avoidance of prochlorperazine advised by manufacturer of desferrioxamine

- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when pheno-thiazines given with diazoxide

- Diuretics: risk of ventricular arrhythmias with amisulpride increased by hypokalaemia caused by
Antipsychotics
- **Diuretics (continued)**
  - diuretics; risk of ventricular arrhythmias with pimozide increased by hypokalaemia caused by diuretics (avoid concomitant use); enhanced hypotensive effect when phenothiazines given with diuretics

Dopaminergics: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when antipsychotics given with amantadine; antipsychotics antagonise effects of apomorphine, levodopa and pergolide; antipsychotics antagonise hypoprolactinaemic and antiparkinsonian effects of bromocriptine and pergolide; manufacturer of amisulpride advises avoid concomitant use of levodopa (antagonism of effect); avoidance of antipsychotics advised by manufacturer of pramipexole, ropinirole and rotigotine (antagonism of effect)

Histamine: antipsychotics theoretically antagonise effects of histamine—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use

Hormone Antagonists: manufacturer of droperidol advises avoid concomitant use with anoxifen (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

Ivabradine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pimozide given with ivabradine

Lithium: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects and possibly neurotoxicity when clozapine, flupentixol, haloperidol, phenothiazines or zuclopenthixol given with lithium; possible risk of toxicity when olanzapine given with lithium; increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when sulpiride given with lithium

Memantine: effects of antipsychotics possibly reduced by memantine

Methylphenidate: increased hypotensive effect when antipsychotics given with methylphenidate (also increased risk of extrapyramidal effects)

Metoclopamide: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when antipsychotics given with metoclopramide

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when phenothiazines given with moxonidine

Muscle Relaxants: promazine possibly enhances effects of aminemethonium

Nitrites: enhanced hypotensive effect when phenothiazines given with nitrites

Penicillamine: avoid concomitant use of clozapine with penicillamine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Pentamidine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when amitriptyline or droperidol given with pentamidine isetionate—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when phenothiazines given with pentamidine isetionate

Sodium Benzoate: haloperidol possibly reduces effects of sodium benzoate

Sodium Oxybate: antipsychotics possibly enhance effects of sodium oxybate

Sodium Phenylbutyrate: haloperidol possibly reduces effects of sodium phenylbutyrate

Sympathomimetics: antipsychotics antagonise hyperensive effect of sympathomimetics; antipsychotics enhance effects of chlorpropamide; manufacturer antagonised by dexametamidine; side-effects of risperidone possible increased by methylphenidate

Tacrolimus: manufacturer of droperidol advises avoid concomitant use with tacrolimus (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

Tetrabenazine: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when antipsychotics given with tetrabenazine

Ulcer-healing Drugs: haloperidol; increased hypotensive effect when phenothiazines given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Antivirals see Abacavir, Acelovir, Adovir, Atazanavir, Cidofovir, Darunavir, Didanosine, Efavirenz, Emtricitabine, Etravirine, Famiclovir, Forsamprenavir, Foscarnet, Ganciclovir, Indinavir, Lamivudine, Lopinavir, Maraviroc, Nelfinavir, Nevirapine, Raltegravir, Ribavirin, Ritonavir, Saquinavir, Stanudine, Telbivudine, Tenofovir, Tipranavir, Valaciclovir, and Zidovudine

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with ACE inhibitors

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with alcohol

Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive and sedative effects when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with alpha-blockers

Anesthetics, General: increased sedative effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with general anaesthetics

Anxiolytics: metabolism of midazolam possibly inhibited by fentanyl; increased sedative effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with opioid analgesics

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

Antibacterials: metabolism of midazolam inhibited by thienamycin, erythromycin and clindamycin (increased plasma concentration with increased sedation); plasma concentration of buspirone increased by erythromycin (reduce dose of buspirone); metabolism of zopiclone inhibited by erythromycin; metabolism of benzodiazepines possibly accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration); metabolism of diazepam accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration); metabolism of buspirone and zaleplon possibly accelerated by rifampicin; metabolism of zolpidem inhibited by isoniazid

Anticoagulants: chloral may transiently enhance antiplatelet effect of coumarins

Antidepressants: plasma concentration of alprazolam increased by fluoxetine; plasma concentration of melatonin increased by fluvoxamine—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of some benzodiazepines increased by fluoxetine; sedation increased by fluoxetine; possible increase or decrease following fluoxetine; plasma concentration of zopiclone increased by fluoxetine; metabolism of zolpidem increased by fluoxetine; metabolism of diazepam and reduced by fluoxetine; plasma concentration of zopiclone significantly reduced by fluoxetine; metabolism of diazepam inhibited by isoniazid

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics given with nitrates: plasma concentration of midazolam possibly reduced by tranylcypromine advised by manufacturer of tranylcypromine; plasma concentration of some benzodiazepines increased by fluoxetine; plasma concentration of alprazolam increased by fluoxetine; plasma concentration of midazolam increased by tranylcypromine and valproate; plasma concentration of diazepam and lorazepam possibly increased by valproate; increased risk of side-effects when clozapine given with valproate

Antifungals: plasma concentration of alprazolam increased by itraconazole and ketoconazole; plasma concentration of midazolam increased by itraconazole, voriconazole and ketoconazole; plasma concentration of midazolam increased by flucloxazole, itraconazole and ketoconazole; plasma concentration of buspirone reduced by flucloxazole; plasma concentration of midazolam increased by posaconazole
Anxiolytics and Hypnotics (continued)

Antihistamines: increased sedative effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with antihistamines

- Antipsychotics: increased sedative effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with antipsychotics; buspirone increases plasma concentration of haloperidol; serious adverse events reported with concomitant use of lorazepam and clozapine (causality not established); increased risk of hypotension, bradycardia and respiratory depression when parenteral benzodiazepines given with intramuscular clozapine

- Antivirals: plasma concentration of midazolam possibly increased by azidovin—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam; increased risk of prolonged sedation when midazolam given with etavirenz—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of midazolam possibly increased by oomprenavir, indinavir, nelfinavir and ritonavir (risk of prolonged sedation—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam); increased risk of prolonged sedation when alprazolam given with etavirenz—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of alprazolam, diazepam, flurazepam and zolpidem possibly increased by ritonavir (risk of extreme sedation and respiratory depression—avoid concomitant use); plasma concentration of anxiolytics and hypnotics possibly increased by oomprenavir; plasma concentration of buspirone increased by ritonavir (increased risk of toxicity); plasma concentration of midazolam increased by ooxinavir (risk of prolonged sedation—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam)

Aprepitant: plasma concentration of midazolam is increased by aprepitant (risk of prolonged sedation) Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with beta-blockers

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with calcium-channel blockers; midazolam increases absorption of lercanidipine; metabolism of midazolam inhibited by diltiazem and verapamil (increased plasma concentration with increased sedation); plasma concentration of buspirone increased by diltiazem and verapamil (reduce dose of buspirone)

Cardiac Glycosides: alprazolam increases plasma concentration of digoxin (increased risk of toxicity)

Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with clonidine

Cytoxotics: plasma concentration of midazolam increased by nilotinib

Deferasirox: plasma concentration of midazolam possibly reduced by deferasirox

Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with diazoxide

Disulfiram: metabolism of benzodiazepines inhibited by disulfiram (increased sedative effects); increased risk of temazepam toxicity when given with disulfiram

Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with diuretics; administration of chloral with parenteral fosinopril may displace thyroid hormone from binding sites

Dopaminergics: benzodiazepines possibly antagonise effects of levodopa

Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of buspirone increased by grapefruit juice

Lithium: increased risk of neurotoxicity when clonazepam given with lithium

Lofexidine: increased sedative effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with lofexidine

Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with methyldopa

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with moxonidine; sedative effects possibly increased when benzodiazepines given with moxonidine

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics (continued)

Muscle Relaxants: increased sedative effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with baclofen or tizanidine

Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with nitrates

Oestrogens: plasma concentration of melatonin increased by oestrogens

Probencid: excretion of lorazepam reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration); excretion of nitrazepam possibly reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration)

- Sodium Oxybate: benzodiazepines enhance effects of sodium oxybate (avoid concomitant use)

Theophylline: effects of benzodiazepines possibly reduced by theophylline

Ulcere-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of melatonin increased by cimetidine; metabolism of benzodiazepines, clomethiazole and zaleplon inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of diazepam possibly inhibited by omeprazole (increased plasma concentration)

Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when anxiolytics and hypnotics given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Apomorphine

Antipsychotics: effects of apomorphine antagonised by antipsychotics

Dopaminergics: effects of apomorphine possibly enhanced by entacapone

Mementine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by mementine

Methyl dopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyl dopa

Apreclonidine

Antidepressants: manufacturer of apreclonidine advises avoid concomitant use with MAOIs, tricyclic-related antidepressants and tricyclics

Aprepitant

Note: Posaprepitant is a prodrug of aprepitant

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of apreclonidine possibly increased by clarithromycin and telithromycin; plasma concentration of apreclonidine reduced by rifampicin

Anticoagulants: apreclonidine possibly reduces anticoagulant effect of warfarin

Antidepressants: manufacturer of apreclonidine advises avoid concomitant use with St John’s wort

Antidiabetics: apreclonidine reduces plasma concentration of tolbutamide

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of apreclonidine possibly reduced by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin

Antifungals: plasma concentration of apreclonidine increased by ketoconazole

Antipsychotics: manufacturer of apreclonidine advises avoid concomitant use with pimozide

Antivirals: plasma concentration of apreclonidine possibly increased by ritonavir

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: apreclonidine increases plasma concentration of midazolam (risk of prolonged sedation)

Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when apreclonidine given with diltiazem

Corticosteroids: apreclonidine inhibits metabolism of dexamethasone and methylprednisolone (reduce dose of dexamethasone and methylprednisolone)

- Oestrogens: apreclonidine possibly causes contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing oestrogens (alternative contraception recommended)

Progestogens: apreclonidine possibly causes contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing progestogens (alternative contraception recommended)

Apreprozole see Antipsychotics
Appendix 1: Interactions

Aspirin
- Anticoagulants (continued) to antiplatelet effect; aspirin enhances anti- coagulant effect of 
  *heparins*
- Antidepressants: increased risk of bleeding when 
  aspirin given with *SSRIs* or 
  *venlafaxine*
- Antiepileptics: aspirin enhances effects of 
  phenytoin and 
  *valproate*
- Clopidogrel: increased risk of bleeding when aspirin 
  given with clopidogrel
- Corticosteroids: increased risk of gastro-intestinal 
  bleeding and ulceration when aspirin given with 
  corticosteroids, also corticosteroids reduce plasma 
  concentration of salicylate
- Cytotoxics: aspirin reduces excretion of 
  *methotrexate* (increased risk of toxicity)
- Diuretics: aspirin antagonises diuretic effect of 
  spironolactone; increased risk of toxicity when high- 
  dose aspirin given with *carbonic anhydrase inhibitors*
  *Iloprost*: increased risk of bleeding when aspirin given with 
  *Iloprost*
- Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists: aspirin increases 
  plasma concentration of 
  *zafirlukast*
- Metoclopramide: rate of absorption of aspirin 
  increased by 
  *metoclopramide* (enhanced effect)
- Probemecid: aspirin antagonises effects of 
  *probemecid*
- Sulfipyrazone: aspirin antagonises effects of 
  sulfipyrazone

Antazanavir
- Antacids: plasma concentration of atazanavir possibly 
  reduced by 
- Anti-arrhythmics: atazanavir possibly increases plasma 
  concentration of 
  *amiodarone* and 
  *lidocaine*
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of both drugs 
  increased when atazanavir given with 
  *clarithromycin*; atazanavir increases plasma concentration of 
  *rifabutin* (reduce dose of rifabutin); plasma concen- 
  tration of atazanavir reduced by 
  *rifampicin*—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of concomitant 
  atazanavir in severe renal and hepatic impairment advised 
  by manufacturer of 
  *elithromycin*
- Anticoagulants: atazanavir may enhance or reduce 
  antiplatelet effect; aspirin enhances anti-
  coagulant effect of 
  *warfarin*; avoidance of ataza-
  navir advised by manufacturer of 
  *rivaroxaban*
- Anti-arrhythmics: decreased plasma concentration of 
  *quinine* (increased risk of toxicity)
- Antimuscarnicins: avoidance of atazanavir advised by 
  manufacturer of 
  *darifenac*; manufacturer of feso-
  terodine advises dose reduction when atazanavir 
  given with 
  *fesoterodine*—consult fesoterodine 
  product literature
- Antipsychotics: atazanavir possibly inhibits metab-
  olism of 
  *aripiprazole* (reduce dose of aripiprazole); 
  atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of 
  *quinine*—avoid concomitant use
- Antipruritics: atazanavir increases plasma concentra-
  tion of 
  *maraviroc* (consider redu-
  cing dose of maraviroc); plasma concentration of 
  atazanavir possibly reduced by 
  *maraviroc*—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of 
  ventricular arrhyth-
  mias when atazanavir given with 
  *saquinavir*— 
  avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of 
  atazanavir reduced by 
  *tenofovir*, also plasma con- 
  centration of 
  *tenofovir* possibly increased; atazanavir 
  increases plasma concentration of 
  *tipranavir* (also 
  plasma concentration of atazanavir reduced)
- Antipsychotics: atazanavir increases plasma concentra-
  tion of 
  *midazolam*— 
  avoid concomitant use of 
  *oral* midazolam

Arsenic Trioxide
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhyth-
  mias when arsenic trioxide given with 
  *amiodarone* or 
  *disopyramide*
- Antidepressants: increased risk of ventricular arrhyth-
  mias when arsenic trioxide given with 
  *clozapine* or 
  *amitriptyline*
- Antifungals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when 
  arsenic trioxide given with 
  *amphotericin*
- Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias 
  when arsenic trioxide given with 
  *amitriptyline* or 
  *clozapine*
- Antivirals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias 
  when arsenic trioxide given with 
  *foscarnet* or 
  *saquinavir and tipranavir*
- Beta-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhyth-
  mias when arsenic trioxide given with 
  *salbutamol* or 
  *labetalol*
- Beta-blockers: prolonged QT interval; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when 
  arsenic trioxide given with 
  *haloperidol*; avoid concomitant use of 
  cytoxotics with 
  *dozapine* (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Biologics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when 
  arsenic trioxide given with 
  *foscarnet* or 
  *saquinavir and tipranavir*
- Cytotoxic: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when 
  arsenic trioxide given with 
  *amiodarone* or 
  *disopyramide*
- Diuretics: risk of ventricular arrhythmias with arsenic 
  trioxide increased by hypokalaemia caused by 
  *acetazolamide*, 
  *loop diuretics* or 
  *thiazides and related diuretics*
- Lithium: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when 
  arsenic trioxide given with 
  *lithium*
Atazanavir (continued)
- Calcium-channel blockers: atazanavir increases plasma concentration of bendroflumethiazide; atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of verapamil.
- Ciclosporin: atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin.
- Colchicine: atazanavir possibly increases risk of colchicine toxicity—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment).
- Cytotoxics: atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of everolimus—manufacturer of everolimus advises avoid concomitant use; avoidance of atazanavir advised by manufacturer of pazopanib; atazanavir possibly inhibits metabolism of vinorelbine (increased risk of toxicity).
- Ergot Alkaloids: atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ergot alkaloids—avoid concomitant use.
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when atazanavir given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when atazanavir given with rosuvastatin—manufacturer of rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when atazanavir given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use).
- Oestrogens: atazanavir increases plasma concentration of ethinylestradiol.
- Ranolazine: atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine.
- Sildenafil: atazanavir possibly increases side-effects of sildenafil.
- Sirolimus: atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of sirolimus.
- Tacrolimus: atazanavir possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus.
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of atazanavir reduced by proton pump inhibitors—avoid or adjust dose of both drugs.

Atenolol see Beta-blockers

Atorvastatin see Statins

Atozavancine (continued)
- Sympathomimetics, Beta2: increased risk of cardiovascular side-effects when atozavancine given with propafenone, salbutamol.
- Aztreonam
- Anticoagulants: plasma concentration of atovaquone reduced by warfarin.
- Aminosalicylates: increased risk of haematological toxicity when atazanavir given with aminosalicylates.
- Alpha-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when atazanavir given with alpha-blockers.
- Beta-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when atazanavir given with beta-blockers.
- Diuretics: risk of ventricular arrhythmias when atazanavir given with diuretics.

Appendix 1: Interactions
Appendix 1: Interactions

Antivirals:

Antipsychotics:

Antimuscarinics:

Antimalarials:

Antidepressants:

Beta-blockers

- Increased risk of first-dose hypotension with post-synaptic alpha-blockers such as prazosin

Anaesthetics, General: enhanced hypotensive effect when beta-blockers given with general anaesthetics

Anaesthetics, Local: propranolol increases risk of

Analgesics: hypeotensive effect of beta-blockers antagonised by NSAID; plasma concentration of esmolol possibly increased by morphine

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

Anti-arrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when beta-blockers given with anti-arrhythmics; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with amiodarone, d-cyclopramide or dronedaronae—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of bradycardia, AV block and myocardial depression when beta-blockers given with amiodarone; plasma concentration of metoprolol and propranolol possibly increased by dronedaronae; increased risk of myocardial depression and bradycardia when beta-blockers with lignocaine; propranolol increases risk of dlocaine toxicity; plasma concentration of metoprolol and propranolol increased by propafenone

Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use; metabolism of bisoprolol and propranolol accelerated by rifampicin (plasma concentration significantly reduced); plasma concentration of carvedilol, celiprolol and metoprolol reduced by rifampic

Antidepressants: plasma concentration of metoprolol increased by citalopram and escitalopram; plasma concentration of propranolol increased by fluvoxamine; plasma concentration of metoprolol possibly increased by paroxetine (enhanced effect); labetalol and propranolol increase plasma concentration of imipramine, enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with MAOIs; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with tricyclics

Anti-diabetics: beta-blockers may mask warning signs of hypoglycaemia (such as tremor) with anti-diabetics; beta-blockers enhance hypoglycaemic effect of insulin

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of propranolol possibly reduced by phenobarbital

Antihistamines: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with mizolastin—avoid concomitant use

Antimalarials: avoidance of metoprolol and sotalol advised by manufacturer of amrinone/humefantrine; increased risk of bradycardia when beta-blockers given with mephenoxine

Antimuscarinics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with atropine

Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with propranolol or doxepinol—avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with haloperidol—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when propranolol given with chlorpromazine; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with amitriptyline, pethidinetin, pimozone or sulpiride; enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with phenothiazines

Antivirals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with acyclovir—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of metoprolol for heart failure advised by manufacturer of cipranavir

Anti-lytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with anti-lytics and hypnotics

Beta-blockers

- Increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with atomoxetine

- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when beta-blockers given with calcium-channel blockers; possible severe hypotension and heart failure when beta-blockers given with nifedipine; increased risk of AV block and bradycardia when beta-blockers given with verapamil (see p. 109)

Cardiac Glycosides: increased risk of AV block and bradycardia when beta-blockers given with cardiac glycosides

Ciclosporin: carvedilol increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Clonidine: increased risk of withdrawal hypertension when beta-blockers given with clonidine (withdraw beta-blockers several days before slowly withdrawing clonidine)

Corticosteroids: hypertensive effect of beta-blockers antagonised by corticosteroids

Cytoxotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with arsenic trioxide

Diazoxide: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with diazoxide

Diuretics: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with diuretics; risk of ventricular arrhythmias with sotalol increased by hypokalaemia caused by loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics

Dopaminergics: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with levodopa

Ergot Alkaloids: increased peripheral vasoconstriction when beta-blockers given with ergotamine and methysergide

5HT3 Agonists: propranolol increases plasma concentration of rizatriptan (manufacturer of rizatriptan advises half dose and avoid within 2 hours of propranolol)

Ibuprofen: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sotalol given with ibuprofen

Methyldopa: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with methyldopa

Moxisylyte: possible severe postural hypotension when beta-blockers given with moxisylyte

Moxidine: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with moxidine

Muscle Relaxants: propranolol enhances effects of muscle relaxants; enhanced hypotensive effect when beta-blockers given with baclofen; possible enhanced hypertensive effect and bradycardia when beta-blockers given with tizanidine

Nitrates: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with nitrates

Oestrogens: hypertensive effect of beta-blockers antagonised by oestrogens

Parasympathomimetics: propranolol antagonises effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine; increased risk of arrhythmias when beta-blockers given with pilocarpine

Prostaglandins: enhanced hypertensive effect when beta-blockers given with alprostadil

Ranolazine: avoidance of sotalol advised by manufacturer of ranolazine

Sympathomimetics: increased risk of severe hyper-tension and bradycardia when non-cardioselective beta-blockers given with adrenaline (epinephrine), also reponse to adrenaline (epinephrine) may be reduced; increased risk of severe hypertension and bradycardia when non-cardioselective beta-blockers given with adrenaline; possible increased risk of severe hypertension and bradycardia when non-cardioselective beta-blockers given with norepinephrine (norepinephrine)
Ciclosporin:
Antifungals:
Antidiabetics:
Antibacterials:
Bosentan
Bortezomib
Cytotoxics:
Antipsychotics:
Bisphosphonates
Bisoprolol
see
see
see
Anticoagulants:
Cardiac Glycosides:
Iron:
Antacids:
Analgesics:
Lipid-regulating Drugs:

Bosentan (continued)
Lipid-regulating Drugs: bosentan reduces plasma concentration of simvastatin
● Oestrogens: bosentan possibly causes contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing oestrogens (alternative contraception recommended)
● Progestogens: bosentan possibly causes contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing progestogens (alternative contraception recommended)
Sildenafil: bosentan reduces plasma concentration of sildenafil
Tadalafil: bosentan reduces plasma concentration of tadalafil
Brimonidine
Antidepressants: manufacturer of brimonidine advises avoid concomitant use with MAOIs, tricyclic-related antidepressants and tricyclics
Brinzolamide see Diuretics
Bromocriptine
Alcohol: tolerance of bromocriptine reduced by alcohol
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of bromocriptine increased by erythromycin (increased risk of toxicity); plasma concentration of bromocriptine possibly increased by macrolides (increased risk of toxicity)
Antipsychotics: hyperprolactinaemic and anti-parkinsonian effects of bromocriptine antagonised by antipsychotics
Dopemide: hyperprolactinaemic effect of bromocriptine possibly antagonised by domperidone
Hormone Antagonists: plasma concentration of bromocriptine increased by octreotide
Memantine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by memantine
Methylidopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopamine antagonised by methylidopa
Metoclopramide: hyperprolactinaemic effect of bromocriptine antagonised by metoclopramide
● Sympathomimetics: risk of toxicity when bromocriptine given with oesomethyplenic
Buclizine see Antihistamines
Budesonide see Corticosteroids
Bumetanide see Diuretics
Bupivacaine
Anti-arrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when bupivacaine given with anti-arrhythmics
● Beta-blockers: increased risk of bupivacaine toxicity when given with propranolol
Buprenorphine see Opioid Analgesics
Bupropion
● Antidepressants: bupropion possibly increases plasma concentration of citalopram; manufacturer of bupropion advises avoid for 2 weeks after stopping
● MAOIs; manufacturer of bupropion advises avoid concomitant use with moclobemide; bupropion possibly increases plasma concentration of tricyclics (possible increased risk of convulsions)
Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of bupropion reduced by carbamazepine and phenytoin; metabolism of bupropion inhibited by valproate
Antivirals: plasma concentration of bupropion reduced by ritonavir
Atomoxetine: possible increased risk of convulsions when bupropion given with atomoxetine
Dopamineergics: increased risk of side-effects when bupropion given with amantadine or levodopa
● Hormone Antagonists: bupropion possibly inhibits metabolism of tamoxifen to active metabolite (avoid concomitant use)
Buspirone see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics
Busulfan
Analgiesics: metabolism of intravenous busulfan possibly inhibited by paracetamol (manufacturer of intravenous busulfan advises caution within 72 hours of paracetamol)
Appendix 1: Interactions

Busulfan (continued)
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of busulfan increased by metronidazole (increased risk of toxicity).
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of busulfan possibly reduced by phenytoin.
- Antifungals: metabolism of busulfan inhibited by itraconazole (increased risk of toxicity).
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis).
- Cytoxotics: increased risk of hepatotoxicity when busulfan given with tioguanine.

Calcium-channel Blockers
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis).

Calcium Salts
- Butyrophenones
- Antipsychotics

Antipsychotics
- Busulfan: plasma concentration of busulfan possibly reduced by macrolides (increased risk of toxicity).
- Antipsychotics: hypoprolactinaemic and anti-parkinsonian effects of cabergoline antagonised by antipsychotics.
- Dronperidone: hypoprolactinaemic effect of cabergoline possibly antagonised by domperidone.
- Memantine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by memantine.
- Methyldopa: anti-parkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyldopa.
- Metoclopramide: hypoprolactinaemic effect of cabergoline antagonised by metoclopramide.

Calcium Channel Blockers
- Note: see also Antacids.
- Antibacterials: calcium salts reduce absorption of ciprofloxacin and tetracycline.
- Bisphosphonates: calcium salts reduce absorption of bisphosphonates.
- Cardiac Glycosides: large intravenous doses of calcium salts can precipitate arrhythmias when given with cardiac glycosides.
- Corticosteroids: absorption of calcium salts reduced by corticosteroids.

Diuretics: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when calcium salts given with furosemide and related diuretics.

Ectrombopag: calcium salts possibly reduce absorption of ectrombopag (give at least 4 hours apart).

Fluorides: calcium salts reduce absorption of fluoride iron: calcium salts reduce absorption of oral iron.

Thyroid Hormones: calcium salts reduce absorption of levothyroxine.

Zinc: calcium salts reduce absorption of zinc.

Calcium-channel Blockers (continued)
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists.
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of bradycardia, AV block and myocardial depression when diltiazem or verapamil given with amiodarone; increased risk of myocardial depression and AV block when verapamil given with dipyramidole or flecainide; increased risk of bradydycardia and myocardial depression when diltiazem and verapamil given with dronedarone; nifedipine increases plasma concentration of dronedarone.

Antibacterials: metabolism of verapamil possibly inhibited by clarithromycin and erythromycin (increased risk of toxicity); metabolism of felodipine possibly inhibited by erythromycin (increased plasma concentration); manufacturer of lercanidipine advises avoid concomitant use with erythromycin; metabolism of diltiazem, nifedipine, nimodipine and verapamil accelerated by diltiazem (plasma concentration significantly reduced); metabolism of isradipine and nicardipine possibly accelerated by rifampicin (possible significantly reduced plasma concentration).

Anticoagulants: verapamil possibly increases plasma concentration of dabigatran etexilate (reduce dose of dabigatran etexilate).

Antidepressants: metabolism of nifedipine possibly inhibited by fluoxetine (increased plasma concentration); diltiazem and verapamil increase plasma concentration of mirtazapine; enhanced hypotensive effect when calcium-channel blocker and angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors; plasma concentration of verapamil significantly reduced by St John's Wort; plasma concentration of nifedipine reduced by St John's Wort; plasma concentration of amiodipine possibly reduced by St John's Wort; diltiazem and verapamil possibly increase plasma concentration of tricyclics.

Antidiabetics: glucose tolerance occasionally impaired when nifedipine given with insulin.

Antiepileptics: effects of dihydropyridines, nicardipine and nifedipine probably reduced by carbamazepine; effects of felodipine and isradipine reduced by carbamazepine; diltiazem and verapamil enhance effects of carbamazepine; manufacturer of nifedipine advises avoid concomitant use with carbamazepine and phenytoin (plasma concentration of nifedipine possibly reduced); manufacturer of nimodipine advises avoid concomitant use with phenobarbital (plasma concentration of nimodipine reduced); manufacturer of isradipine advises avoid concomitant use with carbamazepine and phenytoin (plasma concentration of nimodipine possibly reduced); manufacturer of nipecapine advises avoid concomitant use with phenobarbital (plasma concentration of nipecapine reduced). 

Antifungals: metabolism of dihydropyridines possibly inhibited by itraconazole and ketoconazole (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of felodipine inhibited by itraconazole and ketoconazole (increased plasma concentration); manufacturer of ketoconazole advises avoid concomitant use with itraconazole and ketoconazole; negative inotropic effect possibly increased when calcium-channel blockers given with itraconazole; plasma concentration of nifedipine increased by micafungin.

Antimalarials: possible increased risk of bradydycardia when calcium-channel blockers given with mefloquine.

Antimycoticarins: avoidance of verapamil advised by manufacturer of darifenacin.

Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with antipsychotics.

Antivirals: plasma concentration of verapamil possibly increased by atazanavir; plasma concentration of diltiazem increased by atazanavir; reduce dose of...
BNFC 2011–2012

Appendix 1: Interactions 679

Calcium-channel Blockers (continued)

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: diltiazem increases plasma concentration of atorvastatin and simvastatin—possible increased risk of myopathy; increased risk of myopathy when verapamil given with simvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when amlopidine given with simvastatin

Lithium: neurotoxicity may occur when diltiazem or verapamil given with lithium without increased plasma concentration of lithium

- Magnesium (parenteral): profound hypotension reported with concomitant use of nifedipine and parenteral magnesium in pre-eclampsia

Methylprednisolone: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with methylprednisolone

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with methylprednisolone

Calcium-channel Blockers (continued)

- Antivirals (continued)
  - diltiazem; plasma concentration of diltiazem reduced by efavirenz; plasma concentration of calcium-channel blockers possibly increased by ritonavir; manufacturer of lercanidipine advises avoid concomitant use with ritonavir

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with anxiolytics and hypnotics; diltiazem and verapamil inhibit metabolism of midazolam (increased plasma concentration with increased sedation); absorption of lercanidipine increased by midazolam; diltiazem and verapamil increase plasma concentration of buspirone (reduce dose of buspirone)

Aprepitant: plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when diltiazem given with aprepitant

- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with beta-blockers; increased risk of AV block and bradycardia when diltiazem given with beta-blockers; asystole, severe hypotension and heart failure when verapamil given with beta-blockers (see p. 109); possible severe hypotension and heart failure when nifedipine given with beta-blockers

Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when diltiazem given with nifedipine

- Cardiac Glycosides: nifedipine possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin; diltiazem, lercanidipine and nicardipine increase plasma concentration of digoxin; verapamil increases plasma concentration of digoxin, also increased risk of AV block and bradycardia

- Ciclosporin: diltiazem, nicardipine and verapamil increase plasma concentration of ciclosporin; combination of lercanidipine with ciclosporin may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of nifedipine possibly increased by ciclosporin (increased risk of toxicity including gingival hyperplasia)

Cilostazol: diltiazem increases plasma concentration of cilostazol (consider reducing dose of cilostazol)

Clonidine: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with clonidine

- Colchicine: diltiazem and verapamil possibly increase risk of colchicine toxicity—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment)

Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of calcium-channel blockers antagonised by corticosteroids; diltiazem increases plasma concentration of methylprednisolone

- Cytotoxics: verapamil possibly increases plasma concentration of doxorubicin; plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when verapamil given with doxorubicin; nifedipine possibly inhibits metabolism of vincristine

Diazoxide: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with diazoxide

Diuretics: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with diuretics; diltiazem and verapamil increase plasma concentration of eplerenone (reduce dose of eplerenone)

Dopaminergics: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with dopamine

Grapefruit Juice: plasma concentration of felodipine, isradipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine and verapamil increased by grapefruit juice; plasma concentration of amlopidine possibly increased by grapefruit juice

Hormone Antagonists: diltiazem and verapamil increase plasma concentration of dutasteride

- Ivabradine: diltiazem and verapamil increase plasma concentration of ivabradine—avoid concomitant use

Magnesium (parenteral): profound hypotension reported with concomitant use of nifedipine and parenteral magnesium in pre-eclampsia

Methylprednisolone: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with methylprednisolone

Muscle Relaxants: verapamil enhances effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium; enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with baclofen or tizanidine; manufacturer of verapamil advises avoid concomitant use of intravenous dantrolene; possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when diltiazem given with intravenous dantrolene—manufacturer of diltiazem advises avoid concomitant use; calcium-channel blockers possibly enhance effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants

Nitrates: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with nitrates

Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of calcium-channel blockers antagonised by oestrogens

Prostaglandins: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with alprostadil

Ranolazine: diltiazem and verapamil increase plasma concentration of ranolazine (consider reducing dose of ranolazine)

Sildenafil: enhanced hypertensive effect when amlopidine given with sildenafil

- Sirolimus: diltiazem increases plasma concentration of sirolimus; plasma concentration of both drugs increased when verapamil given with sirolimus

Sulfinpyrazone: plasma concentration of verapamil reduced by sulfinpyrazone

Tacrolimus: diltiazem and nifedipine increase plasma concentration of tacrolimus; felodipine, nicardipine and verapamil possibly increase plasma concentration of tacrolimus

Theophylline: calcium-channel blockers possibly increase plasma concentration of theophylline (enhanced effect); diltiazem increases plasma concentration of theophylline; verapamil increases plasma concentration of theophylline (enhanced effect)

Ulcer-healing Drugs: metabolism of calcium-channel blockers possibly inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration); plasma concentration of iradipine increased by cimetidine (halve dose of iradipine)

Vardenafil: enhanced hypertensive effect when nifedipine given with vardenafil

Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypertensive effect when calcium-channel blockers given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Candesartan see Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists

Cannabis Extract

Antidepressants: possible increased risk of hypertension and tachycardia when cannabis extract given with tricyclics

Capecebidine see Fluorouracil

Captopril see Captopril

Capepromycin

Antibacterials: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when capreomycin given with colistimethate sodium or polymyxins; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and
Appendix 1: Interactions

Capreomycin
Antibacterials (continued)
 ototoxicity when capreomycin given with aminoglycosides or vincamycin
Cytotoxics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity and oto-toxicity when capreomycin given with platinum compounds
Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620
Captopril see ACE Inhibitors

Carbamazepine
Alcohol: CNS side-effects of carbamazepine possibly increased by alcohol
Analgesics: effects of carbamazepine enhanced by:
- dextropropoxyphene: carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of methadone; carbamazepine reduces effects of tramadol; carbamazepine possibly accelerates metabolism of paracetamol
- Anti-arrhythmics: carbamazepine possibly reduces plasma concentration of dronedarone—avoid concomitant use
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of carbamazepine increased by:
  - eltroxyxime and eflornithine; plasma concentration of carbamazepine reduced by rifabutin; carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of doxycycline (reduced effect); plasma concentration of carbamazepine increased by:
  - etonosazid (also possibly increased isoniazid hepatotoxicity); carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of efetolsimicin (avoid during and for 2 weeks after carbamazepine)
- Anticoagulants: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of coumarins (reduced anticoagulant effect)
- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of carbamazepine increased by:
  - fentanyl and venlafaxine; carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of amitriptyline; nianserin and mirtazapine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); manufacturer of carbamazepine advises avoid for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, also antagonism of anticonvulsant effect; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John's wort; carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of tricyclics (reduced plasma concentration and reduced effect)
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of both drugs reduced when carbamazepine given with efedzipine; carbamazepine possibly reduces plasma concentration of ethosuximide; carbamazepine often reduces plasma concentration of lamotrigine, also plasma concentration of an active metabolite of carbamazepine sometimes raised (but evidence is conflicting); possible increased risk of carbamazepine toxicity when given with levetiracetam; plasma concentration of carbamazepine advised to avoid for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, also antagonism of anticonvulsant effect; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John's wort; carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of tricyclics (reduced plasma concentration and reduced effect)
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: carbamazepine often reduces plasma concentration of clonazepam; carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of midazolam
- Appetitants: carbamazepine possibly reduces plasma concentration of aprepitant
- Bupropion: carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of bupropion
- Calcium-channel Blockers: carbamazepine reduces effects of felodipine and iradipine; carbamazepine probably reduces effects of dihydropyridines, nicardipine and nifedipine; avoidance of carbamazepine advised by manufacturer of nimodipine (plasma concentration of nimodipine possibly reduced); effects of carbamazepine enhanced by estazilam and verapamil
- Ciclosporin: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of ciclosporin (reduced plasma concentration)
- Clopixogrel: carbamazepine possibly reduces anti-platelet effect of clopidogrel
- Corticosteroids: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of corticosteroids (reduced effect)
- Cytotoxics: avoidance of carbamazepine advised by manufacturer of gefitinib; carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of matinib and lapatinib—avoid concomitant use; carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of irinotecan and its active metabolite
- Diuretics: increased risk of hyponatraemia when carbamazepine given with diuretics; plasma concentration of carbamazepine increased by:
  - acetazolamide; carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of epilone—avoid concomitant use
- Hormone Antagonists: metabolism of carbamazepine inhibited by danazol (increased risk of toxicity); carbamazepine possibly accelerates metabolism of toremifene (reduced plasma concentration)
- 5HT; Antagonists: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of ondansetron (reduced effect)
Antimalarials:

Antifungals:

Anti-arrhythmics:

Cardiac Glycosides
see Carboprost
Carboplatin
see Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibitors

Ulipristal:

Ulcer-healing Drugs:

Lipid-regulating Drugs:

Carbamazepine (continued)

● Lipid-regulating Drugs: carbamazepine reduces plasma concentration of simvastatin—consider increasing dose of simvastatin.

Lithium: neurotoxicity may occur when carbamazepine given with lithium without increased plasma concentration of lithium

Muscle Relaxants: carbamazepine antagonises muscle relaxant effect of non-depolarising muscle relaxants (accelerated recovery from neuromuscular blockade)

● Oestrogens: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Oirtlstat: possible increased risk of convulsions when anti-epileptics given with oirtlstat

● Progestogens: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of progestogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Retinoids: plasma concentration of carbamazepine possibly reduced by isotretinoin

Theophylline: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of theophylline (reduced effect)

Thyroid Hormones: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of thyroid hormones (may increase requirements for thyroid hormones in hypothyroidism)

Tibolone: carbamazepine accelerates metabolism of tibolone (reduced plasma concentration)

● Uler-healing Drugs: metabolism of carbamazepine inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration)

● Ulipristal: avoidance of carbamazepine advised by manufacturer of cimeti

● Ulipristal possibly reduced)

● Vitamins: carbamazepine possibly increases requirements for vitamin D

Carbapenems see Doripenem, Ertapenem, Imipenem with Clastatin, and Meropenem

Carbolic Anhydride Inhibitors see Diuretics
Carboplatin see Platinum Compounds
Carboprost see Prostaglandins

Cardiac Glycosides
ACE Inhibitors: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by captopril

Alpha-blockers: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by prazosin

Aminosaliclylates: absorption of digoxin possibly reduced by sulphasalazine

Analgetics: plasma concentration of cardiac glycosides possibly increased by NSAIDs, also possible exacerbation of heart failure and reduction of renal function

Antacids: absorption of digoxin possibly reduced by antacids

● Anti- arrhythmics: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by amiodarone, dronedarone and propafenone (halve dose of digoxin)

Antibacterial: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by gentamicin, telithromycin and trimethoprim; absorption of digoxin reduced by neomycin; plasma concentration of digoxin possibly reduced by rifampicin; plasma concentration of digoxin increased by macrolides (increased risk of toxicity)

Antidepressants: plasma concentration of digoxin reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use

Anti-diabetics: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly reduced by acarbose; plasma concentration of digoxin increased by sitagliptin

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly reduced by phenytoin

Antifungals: increased cardiac toxicity with cardiac glycosides if hypokalaemia occurs with amphotericin; plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by miconazole

Anti-malarials: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; possible increased risk of bradycardia when digoxin given with mefloquine; plasma concentration of digoxin increased by quinine

Cardiac Glycosides (continued)

Antimuscarinics: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by darifenacin

Antivirals: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by etravirine; plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by ritonavir

Antioxidants and Hypnotics: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by alprazolam (increased risk of toxicity)

Beta-blockers: increased risk of AV block and bradycardia when cardiac glycosides given with beta-blockers

Calcium Salts: arrhythmias can be precipitated when cardiac glycosides given with large intravenous doses of calcium salts

● Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by nifedipine; plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by verapamil, also increased risk of AV block and bradycardia

● Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by ciclosporin (increased risk of toxicity)

● Colchicine: possible increased risk of myopathy when digoxin given with colchicine

Corticosteroids: increased risk of hypokalaemia when cardiac glycosides given with corticosteroids

Cytotoxics: absorption of digoxin tablets possibly reduced by bleomycin, carmustine, cyclophosphamide, cytarabine, doxorubicin, melphalan, methotrexate, procarbazine and vincristine

● Diuretics: increased cardiac toxicity with cardiac glycosides if hypokalaemia occurs with acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics; plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by potassium canrenoate; plasma concentration of digoxin increased by spirinolactone

Lenalidomide: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by lenalidomide

Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of cardiac glycosides possibly reduced by colestipol and colesterylamine; plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by atorvastatin

Muscle Relaxants: risk of ventricular arrhythmias when cardiac glycosides given with suxamethonium; possible increased risk of bradycardia when cardiac glycosides given with tizanidine

Penicillamine: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly reduced by penicillamine

Ranolazine: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by ranolazine

Sympathomimetics, Beta, plasma concentration of digoxin possibly reduced by salbutamol

Torvaptan: plasma concentration of digoxin increased by torvaptan (increased risk of toxicity)

Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of digoxin possibly increased by proton pump inhibitors; absorption of cardiac glycosides possibly reduced by sucralfate

Carmustine

● Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Cardiac Glycosides: carmustine possibly reduces absorption of digoxin tablets

Uler-healing Drugs: myelosuppressive effects of carmustine possibly enhanced by cimetidine

Carnitol see Beta-blockers

Carvedilol see Beta-blockers

Caspofungin

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of caspofungin initially increased and then reduced by rifampicin (consider increasing dose of caspofungin)

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of caspofungin possibly reduced by carbamazepine and phenytoin—consider increasing dose of caspofungin

Antivirals: plasma concentration of caspofungin possibly reduced by elavirenz and nevirapine—consider increasing dose of caspofungin
Appendix 1: Interactions

Caspofungin (continued)
- Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of caspofungin increased by ciclosporin (manufacturer of caspofungin recommends monitoring liver enzymes)
- Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of caspofungin possibly reduced by dexamethasone—consider increasing dose of caspofungin
- Tacrolimus: caspofungin reduces plasma concentration of tacrolimus

Cefaclor see Cephalosporins
Cefadroxil see Cephalosporins
Cefalexin see Cephalosporins
Cefixime see Cephalosporins
Cefotaxime see Cephalosporins
Cefradine see Cephalosporins
Ceftazidime see Cephalosporins
Ceftiraxone see Cephalosporins
Cefuroxime see Cephalosporins
Celecoxib see NSAIDs
Celeprolol see Beta-blockers

Cephalosporins
- Antacids: absorption of cefaclor and cefpodoxime reduced by antacids
- Antibacterials: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when cephalosporins given with aminoglycosides
- Anti-coagulants: cephalosporins possibly enhance anticoagulant effect of coumarins
- Probenecid: excretion of cephalosporins reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration) U-Cler-healing Drugs: absorption of cephalosporins reduced by histamine H₂-antagonists
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Cetirizine see Antihistamines
Chenodeoxycholic Acid see Bile Acids
Chloral see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

Chloramphenicol
- Antacids: absorption of chloramphenicol and hydroxychloroquine reduced by antacids
- Antibacterials: possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when chloramphenicol and hydroxychloroquine given with antibiotics
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when chloramphenicol and hydroxychloroquine given with amiodarone
- Antiepileptics: possible increased risk of convulsions when chloramphenicol and hydroxychloroquine given with antiepileptics
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine
- Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of cimetidine
- Lanthanum: absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine possibly increased by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours apart)
- Laronidase: chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine possibly inhibited by laronidase (manufacturer of laronidase advises avoidance of antimalarials)
- Parasympathomimetics: chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine have potential to increase symptoms of myasthenia gravis and thus diminish effect of neostigmine and pyridostigmine
- U-Cler-healing Drugs: metabolism of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine inhibited by cinchonine (increased plasma concentration) Vaccines: antimalarials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Chlorothiazide see Diuretics
Chlorphenamine see Antihistamines
Chlorpromazine see Antipsychotics
Chlortalidone see Diuretics
Ciclesonide see Corticosteroids

Ciclosporin
- ACE Inhibitors: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with ACE inhibitors
- Alikiren: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of alikiren—avoid concomitant use
- Allupurinol: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by allopurinol (risk of nephrotoxicity)
- Analgesics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with NSAIDs; ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of diclofenac (halve dose of diclofenac)
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Anti-arrhythmics: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by amiodarone and propafenone
- Antibacterials: metabolism of ciclosporin inhibited by daptomycin and erythromycin (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of ciclosporin accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Anti-arrhythmics: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by amiodarone and propafenone
- Antibacterials: metabolism of ciclosporin inhibited by daptomycin and erythromycin (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of ciclosporin accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with aminoglycosides, polymyxins, quinolones, sulfonamides or vancomycin; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by chloramphenicol and cyclosporin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with macrolides (increased plasma concentration); increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with macrolides.

Chloroquine and Hydroxychloroquine (continued)
- Antacids: absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine reduced by antacids
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine given with amiodarone—avoid concomitant use
- Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine given with amoxicillin—avoid concomitant use
- Antiepileptics: possible increased risk of convulsions when chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine given with antiepileptics
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine
- Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of cimetidine
- Lanthanum: absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine possibly increased by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours apart)
- Laronidase: chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine possibly inhibited by laronidase (manufacturer of laronidase advises avoidance of antimalarials)
- Parasympathomimetics: chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine have potential to increase symptoms of myasthenia gravis and thus diminish effect of neostigmine and pyridostigmine
- U-Cler-healing Drugs: metabolism of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine inhibited by cinchonine (increased plasma concentration) Vaccines: antimalarials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Chlorothiazide see Diuretics
Chlorphenamine see Antihistamines
Chlorpromazine see Antipsychotics
Chlortalidone see Diuretics
Ciclesonide see Corticosteroids

Ciclosporin
- ACE Inhibitors: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with ACE inhibitors
- Alikiren: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of alikiren—avoid concomitant use
- Allupurinol: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by allopurinol (risk of nephrotoxicity)
- Analgesics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with NSAIDs; ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of diclofenac (halve dose of diclofenac)
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Anti-arrhythmics: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by amiodarone and propafenone
- Antibacterials: metabolism of ciclosporin inhibited by daptomycin and erythromycin (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of ciclosporin accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with aminoglycosides, polymyxins, quinolones, sulfonamides or vancomycin; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by chloramphenicol and cyclosporin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with macrolides (increased plasma concentration); increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with macrolides.

Chloroquine and Hydroxychloroquine (continued)
- Antacids: absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine reduced by antacids
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine given with amiodarone—avoid concomitant use
- Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine given with amoxicillin—avoid concomitant use
- Antiepileptics: possible increased risk of convulsions when chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine given with antiepileptics
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine
- Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of cimetidine
- Lanthanum: absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine possibly increased by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours apart)
- Laronidase: chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine possibly inhibited by laronidase (manufacturer of laronidase advises avoidance of antimalarials)
- Parasympathomimetics: chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine have potential to increase symptoms of myasthenia gravis and thus diminish effect of neostigmine and pyridostigmine
- U-Cler-healing Drugs: metabolism of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine inhibited by cinchonine (increased plasma concentration) Vaccines: antimalarials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Chlorothiazide see Diuretics
Chlorphenamine see Antihistamines
Chlorpromazine see Antipsychotics
Chlortalidone see Diuretics
Ciclesonide see Corticosteroids

Ciclosporin
- ACE Inhibitors: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with ACE inhibitors
- Alikiren: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of alikiren—avoid concomitant use
- Allupurinol: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by allopurinol (risk of nephrotoxicity)
- Analgesics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with NSAIDs; ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of diclofenac (halve dose of diclofenac)
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Anti-arrhythmics: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by amiodarone and propafenone
- Antibacterials: metabolism of ciclosporin inhibited by daptomycin and erythromycin (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of ciclosporin accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with aminoglycosides, polymyxins, quinolones, sulfonamides or vancomycin; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by chloramphenicol and cyclosporin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with macrolides (increased plasma concentration); increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with macrolides.
Ciclosporin

Antibacterials (continued)
given with trimethoprim, also plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced by intravenous trimethoprim

Antidepressants: plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use

Antidiabetics: ciclosporin possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide

Antiepileptics: metabolism of ciclosporin accelerated by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin (reduced plasma concentration); plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly reduced by oxicarbamazepine

Antifungals: metabolism of ciclosporin inhibited by fluconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole (increased plasma concentration); metabolism of ciclosporin possibly inhibited by itraconazole (increased plasma concentration); increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with amphotericin; ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of caspofungin (manufacturer of caspofungin recommends monitoring liver enzymes); plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly reduced by griseofulvin and terbinafine; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by itraconazole

Antimalarials: plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine (increased risk of toxicity)

Antimuscarinics: avoidance of ciclosporin advised by manufacturer of darifenacin

Antivirals: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with aciclovir; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by azacitadine, azidovudine and ziconotide; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly reduced by efavirenz; plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by lopimavir and ritonavir; plasma concentration of both drugs increased when ciclosporin given with saquinavir

Beta-blockers: plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by carvedilol

Bile Acids: absorption of ciclosporin increased by ursoodeoxycholic acid

Bosentan: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of bosentan (also plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced—avoid concomitant use)

Calcium-channel Blockers: combination of ciclosporin with lercanidipine may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by diltiazem, mecardidine and nesrapam; ciclosporin possibly increases plasma concentration of nifedipine (increased risk of toxicity including gingival hyperplasia)

Cardiac Glycosides: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of digoxin (increased risk of toxicity)

Colchicine: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity and myotoxicity when ciclosporin given with colchicine—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment)

Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by high-dose methylprednisolone (risk of convulsions); ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of prednisolone

Cytotoxics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with melphalan; increased risk of neurotoxicity when ciclosporin given with oxaliplatin; ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of etoposide (increased plasma concentration); risk of toxicity when ciclosporin given with methotrexate; plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by imatinib; in vitro studies suggest a possible interaction between ciclosporin and docetaxel (consult docetaxel product literature); ciclosporin possibly increases plasma concentration of etoposide (increased risk of toxicity)

Diuretics: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by acetazolamide; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with spironolactone diuretics and aldosterone antagonists; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and possibly hypermagnesaemia when ciclosporin given with thiazides and related diuretics

Grapefruit Juice: plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by grapefruit juice (increased risk of toxicity)

Hormone Antagonists: metabolism of ciclosporin inhibited by danazol (increased plasma concentration); plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced by lanreotide and octreotide

Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of ciclosporin reduced by colesevelam; increased risk of renal impairment when ciclosporin given with bezafibrate or fenofibrate; increased risk of myopathy when ciclosporin given with acetazolamide (avoid concomitant use); plasma concentration of both drugs may increase when ciclosporin given with ezetimibe; increased risk of myopathy when ciclosporin given with statins

Mannitol: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ciclosporin given with mannitol

Metoclopramide: plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by metoclopramide

Milamuridine: avoidance of ciclosporin advised by manufacturer of milamuridine

Modafinil: plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced by modafinil

Oestrogens: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by oestradiol

Oxcarbazepine: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly reduced by oxcarbazepine

Potassium Salts: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when ciclosporin given with potassium salts

Progestogens: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by progesterone

Ranolazine: ciclosporin possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine

Sevelamer: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly reduced by sevelamer

Sirolimus: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of sirolimus

Sitaxentan: ciclosporin increases plasma concentration of sitaxentan—avoid concomitant use

Sulfynpyrazone: plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced by sulfapyrazole

Tacrolimus: plasma concentration of ciclosporin increased by tacrolimus (increased risk of nephrotoxicity)—avoid concomitant use

Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly increased by omeprazole

Vitamins: plasma concentration of ciclosporin possibly affected by vitamin E

Cidofovir

Antivirals: manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use of cidofovir with etecoforin

Clazapril see ACE Inhibitors

Cilostazol

Anagrelide: avoidance of cilostazol advised by manufacturer of anagrelide

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of cilostazol increased by erythromycin (consider reducing dose of cilostazol)

Antifungals: plasma concentration of cilostazol increased by ketoconazole (consider reducing dose of cilostazol)

Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of cilostazol increased by diltiazem (consider reducing dose of cilostazol)
Appendix 1: Interactions

Clonidine (continued)
Histamine: avoidance of clonidine advised by manufacturer of histamine
Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with methyldopa
Moxisylyte: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with moxisylyte
Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with moxonidine
Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with baclofen or tizanidine
Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with nitrates
Oestrogens: enhanced hypotensive effect of clonidine antagonised by oestrogens
Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with alprostadil

Antidepressants: possible risk of hypertension when clonidine given with oestrogens
Antihistamines: enhanced hypotensive effect when clonidine given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
Analgesics: increased risk of bleeding when clonidine given with NSAIDs or aspirin
Anticoagulants: manufacturer of clopidogrel advises avoiding concomitant use with warfarin; antplatelet action of clopidogrel enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins and phenindione; increased risk of bleeding when clopidogrel given with heparins
Antidepressants: antplatelet effect of clopidogrel possibly reduced by fluoxetine, fluvoxamine and moclobemide
Antiepileptics: antplatelet effect of clopidogrel possibly reduced by valproate and lamotrigine
Antimyotics: antplatelet effect of clopidogrel possibly reduced by cyclosporine
Antifungals: antplatelet effect of clopidogrel possibly reduced by itraconazole
Antivirals: antplatelet effect of clopidogrel possibly reduced by stavudine
Dipyridamole: increased risk of bleeding when clopidogrel given with dipyridamole
Iloprost: increased risk of bleeding when clopidogrel given with iloprost
Prasugrel: possible increased risk of bleeding when clopidogrel given with prasugrel
Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of clostazol increased by omeprazole (consider reducing dose of clostazol)
Cimetidine see Histamine H2-antagonists
Cinacalcet
Antiarrhythmics: metabolism of cinacalcet inhibited by ketoconazole (increased plasma concentration)
Hormone Antagonists: cinacalcet possibly inhibits metabolism of tamoxifen to active metabolite (avoid concomitant use)
Cinnarizine see Antihistamines
Ciprofibrate see Fibrates
Ciprofloxacin seequinolones
Cisatracurium
Ciprofloxacin see Citalopram see Cisatracurium
Ciprofloxacin see
Ciprofloxacin see
Ciprofloxacin see
Clarithromycin
Clarithromycin see Cefradine
Clarithromycin see Clarithromycin
Clarithromycin see
Clarithromycin see
Clarithromycin see
Clarithromycin see
Cinacalcet
Cinacalcet see
Cinacalcet see
Cinacalcet see
Cinacalcet possibly inhibits metabolism of cinacalcet

Dopaminergics: possible increased risk of colchicine toxicity when given with amiodarone
Antibacterials: possible increased risk of colchicine toxicity when given with azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin and rifampicin—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment)
Antifungals: possible increased risk of colchicine toxicity when given with itraconazole and ketoconazole—suspend or reduce dose of
Anticoagulants:
- Colestyramine
- Colestipol
- Mycophenolate
- Leflunomide
- Mycophenolate mofetil

Ciclosporin:
- Colestyramine possibly reduces absorption of ciclosporin.

Calcium-channel Blockers:
- Colestyramine may enhance or reduce absorption of calcium-channel blockers.

Antivirals:
- Colestyramine decreases absorption of antivirals.

Colchicine (continued):
- Colestyramine may enhance or reduce absorption or metabolism of colchicine.
- Colestipol reduces absorption of colchicine.
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of colchicine.
- Colestyramine and colesevelam reduce the absorption of colchicine.

Diuretics:
- Colestyramine reduces absorption of diuretics.

Cardiac Glycosides:
- Colestyramine reduces absorption of cardiac glycosides.

Antibacterials:
- Colestyramine reduces absorption of antibacterials.

Other drugs should be taken at least 4 hours before or after colesevelam to reduce possible interference with absorption.

Note:
- Oestrogens and Progestogens
  - Corticosteroids may enhance or reduce anticoagulant activity when given with oestrogens and progestogens.
  - Corticosteroids may enhance or reduce anticoagulant activity when given with contraceptive steroids.

Antifungals:
- Colestyramine significantly decreases absorption of antifungals.

Antibacterials:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

Antidiabetics:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

Antacids:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antacids.

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists:
- Colestipol reduces absorption of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists.

Beta-blockers:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of beta-blockers.

Cardiac Glycosides:
- Colestipol reduces absorption of cardiac glycosides.

Analgesics:
- Colestipol reduces absorption of analgesics.

Corticosteroids:
- Colestipol reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

Corticosteroids (continued):
- Colestevarin (continued):
  - Colestipol reduces absorption of antidiabetics.
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

Antiepileptics:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antiepileptics.

Antibacterials:
- Colesevelam may increase absorption of antibacterials.

Calcium-channel Blockers:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of calcium-channel blockers.

Diuretics:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of diuretics.

Cardiac Glycosides:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of cardiac glycosides.

Antibacterials:
- Colestipol reduces absorption of antibacterials.

Antidigoxin:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidigoxin.

Corticosteroids:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

Antiepileptics:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antiepileptics.

Antibacterials:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

Antihistamines:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antihistamines.

Antidiabetics:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

Anticoagulants:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

Ciclosporin:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of ciclosporin.

Calcium-channel Blockers:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of calcium-channel blockers.

Antivirals:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antivirals.

Colchicine:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of colchicine.

Diuretics:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of diuretics.

Cardiac Glycosides:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of cardiac glycosides.

Antibacterials:
- Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

Other drugs should be taken at least 1 hour before or after colchicine.

Note:
- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.

- Anticoagulants:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of anticoagulants.

- Corticosteroids:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of corticosteroids.

- Antibacterials:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antibacterials.

- Antidiabetics:
  - Colesevelam reduces absorption of antidiabetics.
Appendix 1: Interactions

Corticosteroids (continued)
- Aprepitant: metabolism of dexamethasone and methylprednisolone inhibited by aprepitant (reduce dose of dexamethasone and methylprednisolone)
- Beta-blockers: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of beta-blockers
- Calcium Salts: corticosteroids reduce absorption of calcium salts
- Calcium-channel Blockers: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of calcium-channel blockers; plasma concentration of methylprednisolone increased by diltiazem
- Cardiac Glycosides: increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with cardiac glycosides
- Ciclosporin: high-dose methylprednisolone increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin (risk of convulsions); plasma concentration of prednisolone increased by ciclosporin
- Clonidine: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of clonidine
- Diazoxide: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of diazoxide
- Diuretics: corticosteroids antagonise diuretic effect of diuretics; increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics
- Histamine: avoidance of corticosteroids advised by manufacturer of histamine
- Methylprednisolone: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of methylprednisolone
- Mifepristone: effect of corticosteroids (including inhaled corticosteroids) may be reduced for 3–4 days after mifepristone
- Moxonidine: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of moxonidine
- Muscle Relaxants: corticosteroids possibly antagonise hypotensive effect of muscle relaxants
- Nitrates: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of nitrates
- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of corticosteroids increased by oral contraceptives containing oestrogens
- Sodium Benzoate: corticosteroids possibly reduce effects of sodium benzoate
- Sodium Phenylbutyrate: corticosteroids possibly reduce effects of sodium phenylbutyrate
- Somatropin: corticosteroids may inhibit growth-promoting effect of somatropin
- Sympathomimetics: metabolism of dexamethasone accelerated by ephedrine
- Sympathomimetics, Beta,: increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with high doses of beta, sympathomimetics—see Hypokalaemia, p. 138
- Theophylline: increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with theophylline
- Vaccines: high doses of corticosteroids impair immune response to vaccines, avoid concomitant use with live vaccines (see p. 589)
- Vasodilator Antihypertensives: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of hydralazine, minoxidil and sodium nitroprusside

Cortisone see Corticosteroids

Co-trimoxazole see Trimethoprim and Sulfamethoxazole

Cumarins
- Note: Change in patient’s clinical condition, particularly associated with liver disease, intercurrent illness, or drug administration, necessitates more frequent testing. Major changes in diet (especially involving salads and vegetables) and in alcohol consumption may also affect anticoagulant control
- Alcohol: anticoagulant control with coumarins may be affected by major changes in consumption of alcohol
- Allopurinol: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by allopurinol

Coumarins (continued)
- Anabolic Steroids: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by anabolic steroids
- Analgesics: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by NSAIDs; increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with intravenous diclofenac (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with ketorolac; (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by tramadol; increased risk of bleeding when coumarins given with aspirin (due to antiplatelet effect); anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by prolonged regular use of paracetamol
- Anti-arrhythmics: metabolism of coumarins inhibited by amiodarone (enhanced anticoagulant effect); anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by propafenone
- Antibacterials: experience in anticoagulant clinics suggests that INR possibly altered when coumarins are given with nystatin (given for local action on gut); anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by azithromycin, aztreonam, cephalosporins, levofloxacin, nitrocyclines, tigecycline and trimethoprim; anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by eflornithine, inhibitors of calcium-channel blockers; anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by clonidine, ciclosporin (risk of convulsions); plasma concentration of prednisolone increased by ciclosporin
- Clonidine: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of clonidine
- Diazoxide: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of diazoxide
- Diuretics: corticosteroids antagonise diuretic effect of diuretics; increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics
- Histamine: avoidance of corticosteroids advised by manufacturer of histamine
- Methylprednisolone: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of methylprednisolone
- Mifepristone: effect of corticosteroids (including inhaled corticosteroids) may be reduced for 3–4 days after mifepristone
- Moxonidine: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of moxonidine
- Muscle Relaxants: corticosteroids possibly antagonise hypotensive effect of muscle relaxants
- Nitrates: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of nitrates
- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of corticosteroids increased by oral contraceptives containing oestrogens
- Sodium Benzoate: corticosteroids possibly reduce effects of sodium benzoate
- Sodium Phenylbutyrate: corticosteroids possibly reduce effects of sodium phenylbutyrate
- Somatropin: corticosteroids may inhibit growth-promoting effect of somatropin
- Sympathomimetics: metabolism of dexamethasone accelerated by ephedrine
- Sympathomimetics, Beta,: increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with high doses of beta, sympathomimetics—see Hypokalaemia, p. 138
- Theophylline: increased risk of hypokalaemia when corticosteroids given with theophylline
- Vaccines: high doses of corticosteroids impair immune response to vaccines, avoid concomitant use with live vaccines (see p. 589)
- Vasodilator Antihypertensives: corticosteroids antagonise hypotensive effect of hydralazine, minoxidil and sodium nitroprusside

Cortisone see Corticosteroids

Co-trimoxazole see Trimethoprim and Sulfamethoxazole

Cumarins
- Note: Change in patient’s clinical condition, particularly associated with liver disease, intercurrent illness, or drug administration, necessitates more frequent testing. Major changes in diet (especially involving salads and vegetables) and in alcohol consumption may also affect anticoagulant control
- Alcohol: anticoagulant control with coumarins may be affected by major changes in consumption of alcohol
- Allopurinol: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by allopurinol
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Comarins (continued)**

- Aprepitant: anticoagulant effect of warfarin possibly reduced by **apreplian**
- Azathioprine: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly reduced by **azathioprine**
- Bosentan: monitoring anticoagulant effect of coumarins recommended by manufacturer of **bosentan**
- Clopidogrel: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced due to antiplatelet action of **clopidogrel**; avoidance of warfarin advised by manufacturer of **clopidogrel**
- Corticosteroids: anticoagulant effect of coumarins may be enhanced or reduced by **corticosteroid** (high-dose corticosteroids enhance anticoagulant effect)
- Cranberry juice: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **cranberry juice**—avoid concomitant use
- Cytotoxic: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **toposide, ifosfamide** and **oralenib**; anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **fluorouracil**, anticoagulant effect of warfarin possibly enhanced by **efolinib** and **gemonitib**; anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly reduced by **mercapotumine** and **enitomate**; increased risk of bleeding when coumarins given with **lopinib**; replacement of warfarin with a heparin advised by manufacturer of **imatinib** (possibility of enhanced warfarin effect)
- Dipyridamole: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced due to antiplatelet action of **dipyridamole**
- Disulfiram: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **disulfiram**
- Dopaminergeics: anticoagulant effect of warfarin enhanced by **entacapone**
- Enteral Foods: anticoagulant effect of coumarins antagonised by vitamin K (present in some enteral feeds)
- Glucosamine: anticoagulant effect of warfarin enhanced by **glucosamine** (avoid concomitant use)
- Hormone Antagonists: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **bicalutamide** and **ostronufene**; metabolism of coumarins inhibited by **danazol** (enhanced anticoagulant effect); anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **lfroprost**; anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **iloprost**
- Lactulose: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **lactulose**
- Leflunomide: anticoagulant effect of warfarin possibly enhanced by **leflunomide**
- Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists: anticoagulant effect of warfarin enhanced by **zaflutakast**
- Levamisole: anticoagulant effect of warfarin possibly enhanced by **levamisole**
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: anticoagulant effect of coumarins may be enhanced or reduced by **colesterylamine**, anticoagulant effect of warfarin may be transiently reduced by **atorvastatin**; anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **libmates**, **fuvastatin** and **aminvastatin**; anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **ezetimibe** and **osuvastatin**
- Memantine: anticoagulant effect of warfarin possibly enhanced by **memantine**
- Oestrogens: anticoagulant effect of coumarins may be enhanced or reduced by **oestrogens**
- Orlistat: monitoring anticoagulant effect of coumarins recommended by manufacturer of **orlistat**
- Prasugrel: possible increased risk of bleeding when coumarins given with **prasugrel**
- Progestogens: anticoagulant effect of coumarins may be enhanced or reduced by **progestogens**
- Ramiflaxine: anticoagulant effect of coumarins antagonised by **ralfaxine**
- Retinoids: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly reduced by **acetretin**
- Sitaxsentan: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **sitaxsentan**

**Appendix 1: Interactions**

**Comarins (continued)**

- Sulfinpyrazone: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **sulfinpyrazone**
- Symptomathomics: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **symptomatib**
- Testolactone: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **testolactone**
- Testosterone: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **testosterone**
- Thyroid Hormones: anticoagulant effect of coumarins enhanced by **thyroid hormones**
- Ubidecarenone: anticoagulant effect of warfarin may be enhanced or reduced by **ubidecarenone**
- Uterine-Healing Drugs: metabolism of coumarins inhibited by **eptimidine** (enhanced anticoagulant effect); anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **esomeprazole**, **omeprazole** and **pantoprazole**; absorption of coumarins possibly reduced by **sulphate** (reduced anticoagulant effect)
- Vaccines: anticoagulant effect of warfarin possibly enhanced by **influenza vaccine**
- Vitamins: anticoagulant effect of coumarins possibly enhanced by **vitamin E**; anticoagulant effect of coumarins antagonised by **vitamin K**

**Cranberry Juice**

- Anticoagulants: cranberry juice possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of **cranberry juice**—avoid concomitant use

**Cyclizine**

see Antihistamines

**Cyclopenthiazide**

see Diuretics

**Cyclophosphamide**

Antifungal: side-effects of cyclophosphamide possibly increased by **traconazole**
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with **clozapine** (increased risk of agranulocytosis); Cardiac Glycosides: cyclophosphamide possibly reduces absorption of **digoxin tablets**
- Cytotoxics: increased toxicity when high-dose cyclophosphamide given with **pentostatin**—avoid concomitant use
- Muscle Relaxants: cyclophosphamide enhances effects of **suxamethonium**

**Cycloserine**

- Alcohol: increased risk of convulsions when cycloserine given with **alcohol**
- Antibacterials: increased risk of CNS toxicity when cycloserine given with **isoniazid**
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

**Cytochrome P450**

see Individual Drugs

**Cytopoietic**

see Antifungal

**Cytoxan**

see Antifungal

**Dabigatran Etexilate**

- Analgesics: possible increased risk of bleeding when dabigatran etexilate given with **NSAIDs**; increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with **intravenous diltiazem** (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with **ketorolac** (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins)
- Antiarrhythmics: plasma concentration of dabigatran etexilate increased by **sodiumenate** (reduce dose of dabigatran etexilate)
- Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of dabigatran etexilate possibly increased by **verapamil** (reduce dose of dabigatran etexilate)

**Calcium-channel Blockers**

- Antiarrhythmics: plasma concentration of dabigatran etexilate increased by **sodiumenate** (reduce dose of dabigatran etexilate)
- Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of dabigatran etexilate possibly increased by **verapamil** (reduce dose of dabigatran etexilate)
Appendix 1: Interactions

Dacarbazine
- Aldesleukin: avoidance of dacarbazine advised by manufacturer of aldesleukin
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Dairy Products
Antibacterials: dairy products reduce absorption of ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin; dairy products reduce absorption of tetracyclines (except doxycycline and minocycline)

Eltrombopag: dairy products possibly reduce absorption of eltrombopag (give at least 4 hours apart)

Dalteparin see Heparins

Danazol
- Anticoagulants: danazol inhibits metabolism of coumarins (enhanced anticoagulant effect)
- Antiepileptics: danazol inhibits metabolism of carbamazepine (increased risk of toxicity)
- Ciclosporin: danazol inhibits metabolism of ciclosporin (increased plasma concentration)
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when danazol given with simvastatin

Darconilus: danazol possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus

Dantrolene see Muscle Relaxants

Dapsone
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of dapsone reduced by rifampicin; plasma concentration of both drugs increased when dapsone given with trimethoprim
- Antivirals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when dapsone given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use
- Probenecid: excretion of dapsone reduced by probenecid (increased risk of side-effects)

Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Daptomycin
- Ciclosporin: increased risk of myopathy when daptomycin given with ciclosporin (preferably avoid concomitant use)
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of myopathy when daptomycin given with fibrates or statins (preferably avoid concomitant use)

Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Darifenacin see Antimuscarinics

Darunavir
- Anti-arrhythmics: darunavir possibly increases plasma concentration of lidocaine—avoid concomitant use
- Antibacterials: darunavir increases plasma concentration of rifabutin (reduce dose of rifabutin); plasma concentration of darunavir significantly reduced by rifampicin—avoid concomitant use
- Anticoagulants: avoidance of darunavir advised by manufacturer of rivaroxaban
- Antidepressants: darunavir possibly reduces plasma concentration of paroxetine and sertraline; plasma concentration of darunavir reduced by St John's wort—avoid concomitant use
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of darunavir possibly reduced by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin
- Antifungals: plasma concentration of both drugs increased when darunavir given with ketoconazole
- Antimalariais: caution with darunavir advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine; darunavir possibly increases plasma concentration of quinine (increased risk of toxicity)
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of darunavir reduced by efavirenz and saquinavir; plasma concentration of both drugs increased when darunavir given with indinavir; plasma concentration of darunavir reduced by lopinavir, also plasma concentration of lopinavir increased (avoid concomitant use); darunavir increases plasma concentration of maraviroc (consider reducing dose of maraviroc)

Darunavir (continued)
- Cytotoxics: darunavir possibly increases plasma concentration of everolimus—manufacturer of everolimus advises avoid concomitant use
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: darunavir possibly increases plasma concentration of pravastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when darunavir given with rosuvastatin—manufacturer of rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use
- Ranolazine: darunavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

Dasatinib
- Antibacterials: metabolism of dasatinib accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration—avoid concomitant use)
- Antifungals: plasma concentration of dasatinib possibly increased by ketoconazole
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: dasatinib possibly increases plasma concentration of simvastatin

Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of dasatinib possibly reduced by famotidine

Deferasirox
- Anticds: absorption of deferasirox possibly reduced by antacids containing aluminium (manufacturer of deferasirox advises avoid concomitant use)
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of deferasirox reduced by rifampicin
- Antidiabetics: deferasirox increases plasma concentration of repaglinide
- Anti-arrhythmics: deferasirox reduces plasma concentration of midazolam

Deflazacort see Corticosteroids

Demeclocycline see Tetracyclines

Desferrioxamine
- Antipsychotics: avoidance of desferrioxamine advised by manufacturer of levomepromazine; manufacturer of desferrioxamine advises avoid concomitant use with prochlorperazine

Desflurane see Anaesthetics, General

Desloratadine see Antihistamines

Desmopressin
- Analgesics: effects of desmopressin enhanced by indometacin
- Loperamide: plasma concentration of oral desmopressin increased by loperamide

Desogestrel see Progestogens

Dexamethasone see Corticosteroids

Dexamfetamine see Sympathomimetics

Dexibuprofen see NSAIDs

Dekketoprofen see NSAIDs

Dextromethorphan see Opioid Analgesics

Dextropropoxyphene see Opioid Analgesics

Dimorphine see Opioid Analgesics

Diazepam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

Diazoxide
- ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with ACE inhibitors
- Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with adrenergic neurone blockers
- Alcohol: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with alcohol

Aldesleukin: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with aldoseleukin

Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with alpha-blockers

Anaesthetics, General: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with general anaesthetics

Analgesics: hypotensive effect of diazoxide antagonised by NSAIDs

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Appendix 1: Interactions**

### Diazoxide (continued)

- Antidepressants: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with MAOIs or tricyclic-related antidepressants
- Antidiabetics: diazoxide antagonises hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics
- Antiepileptics: diazoxide reduces plasma concentration of phenytoin, also effect of diazoxide may be increased
- Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with phenothiazines
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with beta-blockers
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with calcium-channel blockers
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with clonidine
- Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of diazoxide antagonised by corticosteroids
- Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive and hyperglycaemic effects when diazoxide given with diuretics
- Dopaminergics: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with levodopa
- Methyl dopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with methyl dopa
- Moxisylyte: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with moxisylyte
- Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with baclofen or tizanidine
- Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with nitrates
- Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with prostaglandins
- Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when diazoxide given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
- **Diclofenac** see NSAIDs
- **Dicyclomine** see Antimuscarinics

### Didanosine

- Note: Antacids in tablet formulation may affect absorption of other drugs
- **Allopurinol**: plasma concentration of didanosine increased by *allopurinol* (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use
- Analgesics: plasma concentration of didanosine possibly reduced by *methadone*
- **Antivirals**: plasma concentration of didanosine possibly increased by *ganciclovir*; increased risk of side-effects when didanosine given with *ganciclovir*; plasma concentration of didanosine increased by *enfrovir* (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of didanosine reduced by *tibravir*
- **Cytoxics**: increased risk of toxicity when didanosine given with *hydroxy carbamide*—avoid concomitant use
- **Dienogest** see Progesterogens
- **Digoxin** see Cardiac Glycosides
- **Dihydrocodeine** see Opioid Analgesics
- **Diltiazem** see Calcium-channel Blockers
- **Dimethyl sulfoxide**
- **Analgesics**: avoid concomitant use of dimethyl sulfoxide with *sulindac*
- **Dinoprostone** see Prostaglandins
- **Diphenoxylate** see Opioid Analgesics
- **Dipyrilmidoles**

#### Antacids; absorption of dipyrilmidoles possibly reduced by antacids

---

### Dipyridamole (continued)

- **Anti-arrhythmics**: dipyridamole enhances and extends the effects of *adenosine* (important risk of toxicity)
- Anticoagulants: antiplatelet action of dipyridamole enhances anticoagulant effect of *coumarins* and *phenindione*; dipyridamole enhances anticoagulant effect of *heparins*
- Clopidogrel: increased risk of bleeding when dipyridamole given with *clopidogrel*
- **Cytoxics**: dipyridamole possibly reduces effects of *fludarabine*

### Disodium Etidronate see Bisphosphonates

### Disodium Pamidronate see Bisphosphonates

### Disopyramide

- **Anaesthetics**, Local: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or mepivacaine
- **Anti-arrhythmics**: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with other *anti-arrhythmics*; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *amiodarone* or *dronedarone*—avoid concomitant use
- **Antibacterials**: plasma concentration of disopyramide possibly increased by *clarithromycin* (increased risk of toxicity); plasma concentration of disopyramide increased by *erythromycin* (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *moxifloxacin*—avoid concomitant use; metabolism of disopyramide accelerated by *rifampicin* (reduced plasma concentration)
- **Antidepressants**: disopyramide possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of *gliclazide, insulin* and *metformin*
- **Antiepileptics**: metabolism of disopyramide accelerated by *phenobarbital* (reduced plasma concentration); plasma concentration of disopyramide reduced by *phenytoin*
- **Antifungals**: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *ketoconazole*—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of disopyramide advised by manufacturer of *itraconazole*
- **Antihistamines**: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *mizolastine*—avoid concomitant use
- **Antimalarials**: avoidance of disopyramide advised by manufacturer of *artemether/lumefantrine* (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)
- **Antimuscarinics**: increased risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when disopyramide given with *tricyclics*; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *tiletidine*
- **Antipsychotics**: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when anti-arrhythmics that prolong the QT interval given with *antipsychotics* that prolong the QT interval; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *samaualpride*
- **Beta-blockers**: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with *beta-blockers*; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *esmolol*—avoid concomitant use
- **Calcium-channel Blockers**: increased risk of myocardial depression and asystole when disopyramide given with *verapamil*
- **Cytoxics**: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *arsenic trioxide*
Appendix 1: Interactions

Disopyramide (continued)

- **Diuretics**: increased cardiac toxicity with disopyramide if hypokalaemia occurs with *acetazolamide*, *loop diuretics* or *thiazides and related diuretics*
- **Ibavradine**: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when disopyramide given with *ibavradine*

Nitrites: disopyramide reduces effects of sublingual tablets of nitrites (failure to dissolve under tongue resulting in dry mouth)

- **Ranolazine**: avoidance of disopyramide advised by manufacturer of *ranolazine*

Distigmine see Parasympathomimetics

Disulfiram see Antiepileptics

Disopyramide (continued)

Alcohol: disulfiram reaction when disulfiram given with alcohol (see BNF section 4.10.1)

- **Antibacterials**: psychotic reaction reported when disulfiram given with rifampicin; CNS effects of disulfiram possibly increased by isoniazid

- **Anticoagonulants**: disulfiram enhances anticoagulant effect of *coumarins*

Antidepressants; possible increased risk of toxicity when disulfiram given with concomitant amitriptyline; disulfiram inhibits metabolism of tricyclics (increased plasma concentration)

- **Antiepileptics**: disulfiram inhibits metabolism of *phenytoin* (increased risk of toxicity)

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: disulfiram increases risk of temazepam toxicity; disulfiram inhibits metabolism of benzodiazepines (increased sedative effects)

- **Paraldehyde**: risk of toxicity when disulfiram given with *paraldehyde*

Theophylline: disulfiram inhibits metabolism of *theophylline* (increased risk of toxicity)

Diuretics

- **Note**: Since systemic absorption may follow topical application of brinzolamide to the eye, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind

- **Note**: Since systemic absorption may follow topical application of dorzolamide to the eye, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind

- **ACE Inhibitors**: enhanced hypertensive effect when diuretics given with *ACE inhibitors*; increased risk of severe hyperkalaemia when potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists given with *ACE inhibitors* (monitor potassium concentration with low-dose spironolactone in heart failure)

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when diuretics given with adrenergic neurone blockers

- **Alcohol**: enhanced hypotensive effect when diuretics given with alcohol

- **Aldesleukin**: plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *aldesleukin*; plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *angiotensin-II receptor antagonists*; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when diuretics given with *angiotensin-II receptor antagonists*; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists given with *angiotensin-II receptor antagonists*

- **Anti-arrhythmics**: plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *amiodarone* (reduce dose of eplerene); hypokalaemia caused by acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics increases cardiac toxicity with *disopyramide*; hypokalaemia caused by acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics increases cardiac toxicity with *disopyramide*; hypokalaemia caused by acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics increases cardiac toxicity with disulfiram given with *metronidazole*; CNS effects of disulfiram increased by *erythromycin*; increased risk of otoxicity when loop diuretics given with *aminoglycosides*, *polymyxins* or *vancomycin*; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when eplerenone given with *trimethoprim*

- **Antidepressants**: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics given with reboxetine; enhanced hypertensive effect when diuretics given with MAOIs; plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *St. John’s wort*—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of postural hypotension when diuretics given with tricyclics

- **Antidiabetics**: loop diuretics and thiazides and related diuretics antagonise hypoglycaemic effect of anti-diabetics

- **Antiepileptics**: plasma concentration of eplerenone reduced by *carbamazepine*, *phenobarbital* and *phenytoin*—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of hyponatraemia when diuretics given with carbamazepine; acetazolamide increases plasma concentration of *carbamazepine*; increased risk of osteomalacia when carbonic anhydrase inhibitors given with phenobarbital or phenytoin; effects of furosemide antagonised by phenytoin; acetazolamide possibly increases plasma concentration of phenytoin; hydrochlorothiazide possibly increases plasma concentration of topiramate

- **Antifungals**: plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *itraconazole* and *ketoconazole*—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of hypokalaemia when loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics given with amphotericin; hydrochlorothiazide increases plasma concentration of *fluconazole*; plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *fluconazole* (reduce dose of eplerenone)

- **Antipsychotics**: hypokalaemia caused by diuretics increases risk of ventricular arrhythmias with *amisulpride*; enhanced hypertensive effect when diuretics given with *phenothiazines*; hypokalaemia caused by diuretics increases risk of ventricular arrhythmias with *epinolide* (avoid concomitant use)

- **Antivirals**: plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *saquinavir*—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by *saquinavir* (reduce dose of eplerenone)

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypertensive effect when diuretics given with *anxiolytics and hypnotics*
Lithium: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias with atomoxetine.

Ciclosporin: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when thiazides and related diuretics given with ciclosporin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and enhanced hypotensive effect when diuretics given with ciclosporin caused by loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics increases risk of ventricular arrhythmias with ciclosporin.

Calcium Salts: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when thiazides and related diuretics given with calcium salts.

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when diuretics given with calcium-channel blockers; plasma concentration of eplerenone increased by diltiazem and verapamil (reduce dose of eplerenone).

Cardiac Glycosides: increased cardiac toxicity with cardiac glycosides; spironolactone increases plasma concentration of digoxin; potassium canrenoate possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin.

Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive and hyperglycaemic effects when diuretics given with methyldopa.

Diuretics: diuretic effect of diuretics antagonised by corticosteroids; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics given with corticosteroids.

Sympathomimetics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis).

Antiviral: plasma concentration of docetaxel possibly increased by ritonavir (increased risk of toxicity).

Ciclosporin: in vitro studies suggest a possible interaction between ciclosporin and other cytotoxics (monitor serum potassium during first cycle).

Diuretics: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists given with potassium salts.

Muscle Relaxants: increased hypertensive effect when diuretics given with nitrates.

Oestrogens: diuretic effect of diuretics antagonised by oestrogens.

Potassium Salts: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists given with potassium salts.

Vitamins: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when thiazides and related diuretics given with vitamin D.
Appendix 1: Interactions

**Doripenem (continued)**

Probenecid: excretion of doripenem reduced by probenecid (manufacturers of doripenem advise avoid concomitant use)

Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

**Dorzolamide see Diuretics**

**Dosulepin see Antidepressants, Tricyclic**

**Doxapram**

- Anaesthetics, General: increased risk of arrhythmias when doxapram given with volatile liquid general anaesthetics (avoid doxapram for at least 10 minutes after volatile liquid general anaesthetics). Antiarrhythmics: effects of doxapram enhanced by MAOIs
- Sympathomimetetics: increased risk of hypertension when doxapram given with sympathomimetetics
- Theophylline: increased CNS stimulation when doxapram given with theophylline

**Doxazosin see Alpha-blockers**

**Doxepin see Antidepressants, Tricyclic**

**Doxorubicin**

- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with doxapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Antiarrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when doxapram given with digoxin, prilocaine or ropivacaine

**Doxycycline see Tetracyclines**

**Dronedarone**

Anaesthetics, Local: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine

Antipsychotics: increased risk of arrhythmias when anti-arrhythmics given with other anti-arrhythmics; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when dronedarone given with amiodarone or disopyramide—avoid concomitant use

Antibacterials: manufacturer of dronedarone advises concomitant use with clarithromycin or erythromycin (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

Antidepressants: plasma concentration of dronedarone possibly increased by fluoxetine; increased risk of serotonergic effects when duloxetine given with paroxetine, fluoxetine or venlafaxine

Analgesics: possible increased risk of myopathy when duloxetine given with SSRI-related antidepressants; possibly reduced by high doses of nortriptyline, amitryptiline, clomipramine, moclobemide, tryptophan or venlafaxine; duloxetine should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, also MAOIs should not be started until at least 5 days after stopping duloxetine

Anticoagulants: heparins—consult product literature

**Droperidol see Antipsychotics**

**Drosipiren see Progestogens**

**Drotrecogin Alfa**

Anticoagulants: manufacturer of drotrecogin alfa advises concomitant use with high doses of heparin—consult product literature

**Duloxetine**

Analgesics: possible increased serotonergic effects when duloxetine given with pethidine or tramadol

Antibacterials: metabolism of duloxetine inhibited by ciprofloxacin—avoid concomitant use

Antidepressants: metabolism of duloxetine possibly increased by fluvoxamine—avoid concomitant use; possible increased serotonergic effects when duloxetine given with SSRIs; St John's wort, amitryptiline, clomipramine, moclobemide, tryptophan or venlafaxine; duloxetine should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, also MAOIs should not be started until at least 5 days after stopping duloxetine

Antihistamines: when duloxetine given with SSRI-related antidepressants do not start sirolimus—consider increasing dose of sirolimus

**Dutasteride**

Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of dutasteride increased by itraconazole and verapamil

**Dydrogesterone see Progestogens**

**Edrophonium see Parasympathomimetics**

**Efavirenz**

Analgesics: efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of methadone

Antibacterials: increased risk of rash when efavirenz given with clarithromycin; efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of rifabutin—increased dose of rifabutin; plasma concentration of efavirenz reduced by rifampicin—increased dose of efavirenz

Anticoagulants: efavirenz possibly affects plasma concentration of warfarin

Antidepressants: plasma concentration of efavirenz reduced by St John's wort—avoid concomitant use

Antiparasitics: plasma concentration of efavirenz increased by ketoconazole; efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of doxapin and posaconazole; efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole

Antipsychotics: possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when antipsychotics, clozapine, risperidone or olanzapine; efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole, also plasma concentration of efavirenz increased (increase voriconazole dose and reduce efavirenz dose); efavirenz possibly reduces plasma concentration of caspofungin—consider increasing dose of caspofungin

Antipsychotics: efavirenz possibly reduces plasma concentration of aripiprazole—increased dose of aripiprazole; efavirenz possibly increases plasma concentration of metoprolol and propranolol; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when dronedarone given with amiodarone—avoid concomitant use

Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of dronedarone increased by sitagliptin; increased risk of bradycardia and myocardial depression when dronedarone given with sitagliptin and eravipamil

Cardiac Glycosides: dronedarone increases plasma concentration of digoxin (halve dose of digoxin)

Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of dronedarone increased by grapefruit juice—avoid concomitant use

Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of myopathy when dronedarone given with simvastatin

Sirolimus: manufacturer of dronedarone advises caution with sirolimus

Tacrolimus: manufacturer of dronedarone advises caution with tacrolimus

**692 Appendix 1: Interactions**
Entacapone (continued)

Methyldopa: entacapone possibly enhances effects of methyldopa; antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergic antagonists by methyldopa

Sympathomimetics: entacapone possibly enhances effects of adrenaline (epinephrine), dobutamine, dopamine and noradrenaline (norepinephrine)

Enteral Foods

Anticoagulants: the presence of vitamin K in some enteral feeds can antagonise the anticoagulant effect of coumarins and phenindione

Antiepileptics: enteral feeds possibly reduce absorption of phenytoin

Ephedrine see Symathomimetics

Epinephrine (adrenaline) see Symathomimetics

Epirubicin

Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with doxorubicin (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of epirubicin increased by ciclosporin

Ulcere-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of epirubicin increased by omeprazole

Eplerenone see Diuretics

Eprosartan see Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists

Eptifibatide

Iloprost: increased risk of bleeding when eptifibatide given with iloprost

Ergometrine see Ergot Alkaloids

Ergot Alkaloids

Anaesthetics, General: effects of ergometrine on the parturient uterus reduced by halothane

Antibacterials: increased risk of ergotamine and methysergide given with macrolides or telithromycin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ergotism when ergotamine and methysergide given with tetracyclines

Antidepressants: possible risk of hypertension when ergotamine and methysergide given with reboxetine

Antifungals: increased risk of ergotamine and methysergide given with triazoles—avoid concomitant use

Antivirals: plasma concentration of ergot alkaloids possibly increased by ritonavir—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ergotism when ergot alkaloids given with efavirenz—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ergotism when ergotamine and methysergide given with fosamprenavir, indinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir or saquinavir—avoid concomitant use

Etravirine—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ergotism when etravirine given with atazanavir reduced); efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir; efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of darunavir, fosamprenavir and indinavir; efavirenz possibly reduces plasma concentration of omeprazole—avoid concomitant use; efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of lopinavir—consider increasing dose of lopinavir; efavirenz possibly reduces plasma concentration of naratriptan—consider increasing dose of naratriptan; toxicity of efavirenz increased by ritonavir, monitor liver function tests; efavirenz significantly reduces plasma concentration of saquinavir

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased risk of prolonged sedation when efavirenz given with midazolam—avoid concomitant use

Calcium-channel Blockers: efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of diltiazem

Ciclosporin: efavirenz possibly reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when efavirenz given with ergot alkaloids—avoid concomitant use

Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of efavirenz possibly increased by grapefruit juice

Lipid-regulating Drugs: efavirenz reduces plasma concentration of atorvastatin, pravastatin and simvastatin

Progesterogens: efavirenz possibly reduces contraceptive effect of progesterogens

Tacrolimus: efavirenz possibly affects plasma concentration of tacrolimus

Efavirenz

Antipsychotics (continued)

concentration of ziprasidone; efavirenz enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin

Antidepressants: manufacturer of efavirenz advises caution with moclobemide, paroxetine, tricyclics and venlafaxine; avoid concomitant use of efavancene with non-selective MAOIs

Dopaminergic: efavirenz possibly enhances effects of apomorphine; efavirenz possibly reduces plasma concentration of rasagiline; manufacturer of efavirenz advises max. dose of 10 mg selegiline if used concomitantly

Iron: absorption of entacapone reduced by oral iron

Mernantine: effects of dopaminergic possibly enhanced by memantine

Entalapril see ACE Inhibitors

Enoxaparin see Heparins

Enoximone see Phosphodiesterase Inhibitors

Entacapone

Anticoagulants: of entacapone enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin

Antidepressants: manufacturer of entacapone advises caution with moclobemide, paroxetine, tricyclics and venlafaxine; avoid concomitant use of entacapone with non-selective MAOIs

Dopaminergic: entacapone possibly enhances effects of apomorphine; entacapone possibly reduces plasma concentration of rasagiline; manufacturer of entacapone advises max. dose of 10 mg selegiline if used concomitantly

Iron: absorption of entacapone reduced by oral iron

Mernantine: effects of dopaminergic possibly enhanced by memantine

BNFC 2011–2012
Appendix 1: Interactions

Erlotinib (continued)
- Antacids: plasma concentration of erlotinib possibly reduced by antacids—give antacids at least 4 hours before or 2 hours after erlotinib
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of erlotinib increased by cirprofloxacine; metabolism of erlotinib accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)
- Anticoagulants: increased risk of bleeding when erlotinib given with coumarins
- Antifungals: metabolism of erlotinib inhibited by ketoconazole (increased plasma concentration)
- Antiepileptics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Cytoxics: plasma concentration of erlotinib possibly increased by capecitabine
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: manufacturer of erlotinib advises avoid concomitant use with cimetidine, omeprazole, ranitidine, pantoprazole, esomeprazole, rabeprazole; plasma concentration of erlotinib reduced by omeprazole, manufacturer of erlotinib advises give at least 2 hours before or 10 hours after ranitidine; plasma concentration of erlotinib reduced by omeprazole—manufacturer of erlotinib advises avoid concomitant use
- Ertapenem
- Antiepileptics: carbapenems reduce plasma concentration of ertapenem—avoid concomitant use
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620
- Erythromycin see Macrolides
- Escitalopram see Antidepressants, SSRI
- Etoracarbazepine
- Antiepileptics:anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRI and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of both drugs reduced when eslicarbazepine given with valproate; manufacturer of eslicarbazepine advises avoid concomitant use with oxcarbazepine; plasma concentration of eslicarbazepine reduced by phenytoin, also plasma concentration of phenytoin increased
- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine, anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by metloquine
- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered)
- Oestrogens: eslicarbazepine accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)
- Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with olistat
- Etoracarbazepine (continued)
- Anticoagulants: metabolism of ethosuximide inhibited by onosini (increased plasma concentration and risk of toxicity)
- Antidepressants: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRI and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of ethosuximide possibly reduced by carbamazepine and phenobarbital; plasma concentration of ethosuximide possibly reduced by phenytoin, also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased; plasma concentration of ethosuximide possibly increased by valproate
- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by metloquine
- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered)
- Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat
- Etoracarbazepine see NSAIDs
- Etoposide
- Anticoagulants: etoposide possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of etoposide possibly reduced by phenobarbital and phenytoin
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of etoposide possibly increased by ciclosporin (increased risk of toxicity)
- Erlotinib see NSAIDs
- Etoracarbazepine
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of etravirine increased by clarithromycin, also plasma concentration of clarithromycin reduced; plasma concentration of both drugs reduced when etravirine given with clarithromycin; manufacturer of etravirine advises avoid concomitant use with rifampicin
- Antidepressants: manufacturer of etravirine advises avoid concomitant use with St John’s wort
- Antivirals: manufacturer of etravirine advises avoid concomitant use with carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of etravirine possibly reduced by abacavir and nevirapine—avoid concomitant use; etravirine increases plasma concentration of fosamprenavir (consider reducing dose of fosamprenavir); etravirine possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc; etravirine possibly increases plasma concentration of nelfinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of etravirine increased by tipranavir, also plasma concentration of tipranavir increased (avoid concomitant use)
- Cardiac: Glycosides: etravirine increases plasma concentration of digoxin
- Clopidogrel: etravirine possibly reduces antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: etravirine possibly reduces plasma concentration of atorvastatin
- Sildenafil: etravirine reduces plasma concentration of sildenafil
Antidiabetics: 
- Fibrates (continued): 
  - Cytotoxics: gemfibrozil increases plasma concentration of \( \text{clozepine} \) avoid concomitant use.
  - Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of cholelithiasis and gallbladder disease when fibrates given with \( \text{ezetimibe} \) — discontinue if suspected; increased risk of myopathy when fibrates given with \( \text{statins} \); increased risk of myopathy when gemfibrozil given with \( \text{statins} \) (preferably avoid concomitant use).

Fibrates
- \( \text{Febuxostat} \) manufacturer of \( \text{febuxostat} \) advises avoid concomitant use.
- \( \text{Fenofibrate} \)
- \( \text{Fenbufen} \) see article
- \( \text{Flavoxate} \) see Antimuscarinics

Flecainide
- \( \text{Anaesthetics, Local:} \) 
  - increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with \( \text{bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine} \).

Fibrates
- \( \text{Fibrates (continued):} \)
  - \( \text{Cytotoxics:} \) gemfibrozil increases plasma concentration of \( \text{clozepine} \) — avoid concomitant use. 
  - \( \text{Lipid-regulating Drugs:} \) increased risk of cholelithiasis and gallbladder disease when fibrates given with \( \text{ezetimibe} \) — discontinue if suspected; increased risk of myopathy when fibrates given with \( \text{statins} \); increased risk of myopathy when gemfibrozil given with \( \text{statins} \) (preferably avoid concomitant use).

Flecainide
- \( \text{Anaesthetics, Local:} \) increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with \( \text{bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine} \).

Flavoxate
- \( \text{Flecainide} \)
- \( \text{Fibrates (continued):} \)
  - \( \text{Cytotoxics:} \) gemfibrozil increases plasma concentration of \( \text{clozepine} \) — avoid concomitant use.
  - \( \text{Lipid-regulating Drugs:} \) increased risk of cholelithiasis and gallbladder disease when fibrates given with \( \text{ezetimibe} \) — discontinue if suspected; increased risk of myopathy when fibrates given with \( \text{statins} \); increased risk of myopathy when gemfibrozil given with \( \text{statins} \) (preferably avoid concomitant use).

Flavoxate
- \( \text{Antimuscarinics} \)

Flecainide
- \( \text{Anaesthetics, Local:} \) increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with \( \text{bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine} \).

Flucloxacinilin
- \( \text{Penicillins} \)

Fluconazole
- \( \text{Antifungals, Triazole} \)

Flucytosine
- \( \text{ Antifungals, Nucleosides and related diuretics} \)

Fludarabine
- \( \text{Antipsychotics:} \) avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with \( \text{clozepine} \) increased risk of agranulocytosis.

Fludrocortisone
- \( \text{Antimuscarinics} \)

Flunitrazepam
- \( \text{Anticonvulsants:} \) increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when flecainide given with \( \text{tizanidine} \) increase when ezetimibe given with \( \text{everolimus} \).
Appendix 1: Interactions

Fluorides
Calcium Salts: absorption of fluorides reduced by calcium salts

Fluorouracil
Note: Capecitabine is a prodrug of fluorouracil
• Allopurinol: manufacturer of capecitabine advises avoids concomitant use with allopurinol
• Antibacterials: metabolism of fluorouracil inhibited by metronidazole (increased toxicity)
• Anticoaguclants: fluorouracil enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
• Antiepileptics: fluorouracil possibly inhibits metabolism of phenytoin (increased risk of toxicity)
• Antipsychotics: avoidance of concomitant use of cytoxtoxics with olanzapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
• Cytoxtoxics: foscarnet enhances plasma concentration of erlotinib
• Filgrastim: neutropenia possibly exacerbated when fluorouracil given with filgrastim
• Temoporfin: increased skin photosensitivity when topical fluorouracil used with temoporfin
• Ulcer-healing Drugs: metabolism of fluorouracil inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration)

Fluoxetine see Antidepressants, SSRI
Flufenilox see Antipsychotics
Fluphenazine see Antipsychotics
Flurazepam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics
Flurbiprofen see Antipsychotics
Fluticasone see Antipsychotics
Flupentixol see Antipsychotics

Fosamprenavir (continued)
• Antimalarials: caution with fosamprenavir advised by manufacturer of artesunate/lumefantrine; fosamprenavir possibly increases plasma concentration of quinine (increased risk of toxicity)
• Antimycobacterics: avoidance of fosamprenavir advised by manufacturer of Rifampicin—avoid concomitant use
• Antipsychotics: fosamprenavir possibly inhibits metabolism of aspiraglucurone (reduce dose of aspiraglucurone); fosamprenavir increases plasma concentration of epimizide (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias)—avoid concomitant use
• Antivirals: plasma concentration of fosamprenavir reduced by efavirenz and etravirine; plasma concentration of fosamprenavir increased by dolutegravir (consider reducing dose of fosamprenavir); plasma concentration of fosamprenavir reduced by lopinavir; effect on lopinavir plasma concentration not predictable—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of fosamprenavir possibly reduced by nevirapine
• Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: fosamprenavir possibly increases plasma concentration of midazolam (risk of prolonged sedation)—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam)
• Ciclosporin: fosamprenavir increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin
• Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when fosamprenavir given with ergotamine and methysergide—avoid concomitant use
• Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when fosamprenavir given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when fosamprenavir given with rosuvastatin—manufacturer of rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of myopathy when fosamprenavir given with simvastatin—avoid concomitant use
• Ranolazine: fosamprenavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use; Sildenafil: fosamprenavir possibly increases plasma concentration of sildenafil
• Tacrolimus: fosamprenavir increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus
• Tadalafil: fosamprenavir possibly increases plasma concentration of tadalafil
• Vardenafil: fosamprenavir possibly increases plasma concentration of vardenafil

Fosaprepitant see Aprepitant

Foscarin
Antivirals: avoidance of foscarnet advised by manufacturer of lamivudine

Fosinopril see ACE Inhibitors
Fosphenytoin see Phenytoin
Framycetin see Aminoglycosides
Frovatriptan see 5HT, agonists
Furosemide see Diuretics

Fusidic Acid
Antivirals: plasma concentration of both drugs increased when fusidic acid given with ritonavir—avoid concomitant use
• Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when fusidic acid given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when fusidic acid given with simvastatin
• Sugammadex: fusidic acid possibly reduces response to sugammadex
• Vaccines: antibiotics inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Gabapentin
Analgescics: bioavailability of gabapentin increased by morphine
Antacids: absorption of gabapentin reduced by antacids
Abatacept: see Abilify

Gold see Nifedipine

Glyceryl Trinitrate see Amiodarone

Glucosamine see Garamycin

Glibenclamide see Glyburide

Gestodene see Gestational Diabetes

Gentamicin see Gentamicin

Gemfibrozil see Gemfibrozil

Antipsychotics: see Antipsychotics

Gemcitabine see Gemcitabine

Ulcer-healing Drugs: see Antacids

Anticoagulants: see Warfarin

Antibacterials: see Antibacterials

Gefitinib see Gefitinib

Antiepileptics: see Antiepileptics

Antidepressants: see Antidepressants

Tacrolimus: see Tacrolimus

Anakinra: see Anakinra

Vaccines: see Vaccines

Golimumab (continued)

Anti-arrhythmics: see Anti-arrhythmics

Grapefruit Juice

Anti-arrhythmics: see Anti-arrhythmics

Calcium-channel Blockers: see Calcium-channel Blockers

Ciclosporin: see Ciclosporin

Sirolimus: see Sirolimus

Ranolazine: see Ranolazine

Griseofulvin see Griseofulvin

Alcohol: see Alcohol

Griseofulvin (continued)

Anticoagulants: see Anticoagulants

Antiepileptics: see Antiepileptics

Antidepressants: see Antidepressants

Calcium-channel Blockers: see Calcium-channel Blockers

Ciclosporin: see Ciclosporin

Sirolimus: see Sirolimus

Ranolazine: see Ranolazine

Griseofulvin see Griseofulvin

Alcohol: see Alcohol

Appendix 1: Interactions

BNFC 2011–2012 Appendix 1: Interactions
Appendix 1: Interactions

**Heparins (continued)**
- Analgesics: possible increased risk of bleeding when heparins given with NSAIDs; increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with intravenous diclofenac (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with metotrexol (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); anticoagulant effect of heparins enhanced by aspirin
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when heparins given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

**Clodipogrel**: increased risk of bleeding when heparins given with clodipogrel

**Dipyridamole**: anticoagulant effect of heparins enhanced by dipyridamole

**Drotrecogin Alfa**: avoidance of concomitant use of high doses of heparins with drotrecogin alfa advised by manufacturer of drotrecogin alfa—consult product literature

**Epoetin**: anticoagulant effect of heparins possibly enhanced by epoetin

**Nitrate**: anticoagulant effect of heparins reduced by infusion of glyceryl trinitrate

**Histamine**

**Antidepressants**: manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with MAOIs; effects of histamine theoretically antagonised by tricyclics—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use

**Antihistamines**: manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with antihistamines—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use

**Antimalarials**: manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with antimalarials—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use

**Antipsychotics**: manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with antipsychotics—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use

**Antimalarials**: increased risk of ergotism when anticoagulants given with antimalarials—manufacturer of antimalarials advises avoidance of cimetidine, famotidine and nizatidine

**Anticoagulants**: increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with anticoagulants—manufacturer of anticoagulants advises avoidance of cimetidine, famotidine and nizatidine

**Corticosteroids**: manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with corticosteroids—manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with corticosteroids

**Calcium-channel Blockers**: increased risk of bleeding when calcium-channel blockers given with anticoagulants—manufacturer of calcium-channel blockers advises avoidance of cimetidine, famotidine and nizatidine

**Beta-blockers**: increased risk of bleeding when beta-blockers given with anticoagulants—manufacturer of beta-blockers advises avoidance of cimetidine, famotidine and nizatidine

**Cimetidine**: manufacturer of histamine advises avoid concomitant use with cimetidine

**Clotrimazole**: increased risk of bleeding when clotrimazole given with anticoagulants

**Clotrimazole**: manufacturer of clotrimazole advises avoidance of cimetidine, famotidine and nizatidine

**Ibuprofen**: increased risk of bleeding when ibuprofen given with anticoagulants

**Indomethacin**: increased risk of bleeding when indomethacin given with anticoagulants

**Aspirin**: increased risk of bleeding when aspirin given with anticoagulants

**Warfarin**: increased risk of bleeding when warfarin given with anticoagulants

**Histamine H₂-antagonists (continued)**
- **Antiepileptics**: cimetidine inhibits metabolism of carbamazepine, ethosuximide and valproate
- **Antiinflamn**: histamine H₂-antagonists reduce absorption of itraconazole and ketoconazole; avoidance of histamine H₂-antagonists advised by manufacturer of posaconazole (plasma concentration of posaconazole possibly reduced); cimetidine reduces plasma concentration of posaconazole; cimetidine increases plasma concentration of terbinafine
- **Antihistamines**: manufacturer of loratadine advises cimetidine possibly increases plasma concentration of loratadine
- **Antimalarials**: avoidance of cimetidine advised by manufacturer of arteether/lumefantrine; cimetidine inhibits metabolism of doxycycline and hydroxychloroquine and quinine (increased plasma concentration)
- **Antipsychotics**: cimetidine possibly enhances effects of antipsychotics, chlorpromazine and clozapine
- **Antivirals**: histamine H₂-antagonists reduce plasma concentration of atazanavir; histamine H₂-antagonists possibly increase plasma concentration of raltegravir—manufacturer of raltegravir advises avoid concomitant use; cimetidine possibly increases plasma concentration of saquinavir
- **Anticoagulants**: cimetidine possibly increases plasma concentration of clopidogrel
- **Antidepressants**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with clopidogrel
- **Antihistamines**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with ibuprofen
- **Anticoagulants**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with platelet inhibitors
- **Anticoagulants**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with warfarin
- **Antiallergic**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with antiallergic
- **Antiallergic**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with antiallergic
- **Antiallergic**: increased risk of bleeding when cimetidine given with antiallergic
Appendix 1: Interactions

Hydrocarbamide
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Antivirals: increased risk of toxicity when hydroxycarbamide given with ritonavir and atazanavir—avoid concomitant use

Hydroxychloroquine see Chloroquine and Hydroxychloroquine

Hydroxyzine see Antihistamines

Hyoscine see Antimuscarinics

Ibandomer see Biphosphonates

Ibuprofen see NSAIDs

Idarubicin
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of idarubicin increased by ciclosporin

Ilosamine
- Anti-inflammatories: ifosfamide possibly enhances anti-coagulant effect of coumarins
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Cytotoxics: increased risk of otoxicity when ifosfamide given with cisplatin

Ilprost
Analgesics: increased risk of bleeding when iloprost given with NSAIDs or aspirin
- Anticoagulants: iloprost possibly enhances anti-coagulant effect of coumarins and heparins;
- increased risk of bleeding when iloprost given with phenindione
- Claodiogrel: increased risk of bleeding when iloprost given with clodiogrel
- Epitibaiotide: increased risk of bleeding when iloprost given with epitibaiotide
- Tiolrban: increased risk of bleeding when iloprost given with tiolrban

Imatinib
Analgesics: manufacturer of imatinib advises caution with paracetamol
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of imatinib reduced by rifampicin—avoid concomitant use
- Anticoagulants: manufacturer of imatinib advises replacement of warfarin with a heparin (possibility of enhanced warfarin effect)
- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of imatinib reduced by St John's wort—avoid concomitant use
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of imatinib reduced by carbamazepine, oxcarbazepine and phenytoin—avoid concomitant use
- Antifungals: plasma concentration of imatinib increased by ketoconazole
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Ciclosporin: imatinib possibly increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: imatinib increases plasma concentration of simvastatin
Thyroid Hormones: imatinib possibly reduces plasma concentration of levothyroxine

Imidapril see ACE Inhibitors

Imipenem see Cilastatin

- Antiepileptics: carbapenems reduce plasma concentration of valproate—avoid concomitant use
- Antivirals: increased risk of convulsions when imipenem with cilastatin given with ganciclovir
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Imipramine see Antidepressants, Tricyclic

Immunoglobulins
Note: For advice on immunoglobulins and live virus vaccines, see under Normal Immunoglobulin, p. 622

Indacaterol see Sympathomimetics, Beta, Indapamide see Diuretics

Indinavir
- Aldesleukin: plasma concentration of indinavir possibly increased by aldesleukin

BNFC 2011–2012

Appendix 1: Interactions
Appendix 1: Interactions

Indinavir (continued)

- Anti-arrhythmics: indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of amiodarone—avoid concomitant use; indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of flecainide (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias)—avoid concomitant use

- Antibacterials: indinavir increases plasma concentration of rifabutin—avoid concomitant use; metabolism of indinavir accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration—avoid concomitant use); avoidance of concomitant indinavir in severe renal and hepatic impairment advised by manufacturer of rifampicin

Anticoagulants: avoidance of indinavir advised by manufacturer of rivaroxaban

- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of indinavir reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use

- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of indinavir possibly reduced by carbamazepine and phenytoin, also plasma concentration of carbamazepine and phenytoin possibly increased; plasma concentration of indinavir possibly reduced by phenobarbital

- Anti-fungals: plasma concentration of indinavir increased by itraconazole and ketoconazole (consider reducing dose of indinavir)

- Antimalarials: caution with indinavir advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine; indinavir possibly increased plasma concentration of dexamethasone—avoid concomitant use

Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of indinavir possibly reduced by dexamethasone

- Antipsychotics: atypical antipsychotics (dyskinesia and tardive dyskinesia) possibly increased; plasma concentration of olanzapine possibly reduced by phenytoin; plasma concentration of carbamazepine possibly increased; plasma concentration of valproic acid possibly increased

Antivirals: indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of efavirenz and nevirapine; plasma concentration of indinavir possibly reduced by maraviroc; combination of indinavir with maraviroc may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both); plasma concentration of indinavir increased by ritonavir; indinavir increases plasma concentration of saquinavir

- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased risk of prolonged sedation when indinavir given with alprazolam—avoid concomitant use; indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of midazolam (risk of prolonged sedation—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam)

Atovaquone: plasma concentration of indinavir possibly reduced by atovaquone

- Ciclosporin: indinavir increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin

- Colchicine: indinavir possibly increases risk of toxicity—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment)

Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of indinavir possibly reduced by dexamethasone

- Cytotoxic: indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of etoposide—manufacturer of etoposide advises avoid concomitant use; avoidance of indinavir advised by manufacturer of pazopanib

- Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when indinavir given with ergotamine and methysergide—avoid concomitant use

- H1 blockers: indinavir increases plasma concentration of ketotifen (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

Indinavir (continued)

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when indinavir given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when indinavir given with rosuvastatin—manufacturer of rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when indinavir given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use)

- Ranolazine: indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

- Silindafil: indinavir increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil

Tadalafil: indinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of tadalafil

- Vardenafil: indinavir increases plasma concentration of vardenafil—avoid concomitant use

Indometacin see NSAIDs

Indoramin see Alpha-blockers

Infliximab

- Abatacept: avoid concomitant use of infliximab with abatacept

- Anakinra: avoid concomitant use of infliximab with anakinra

- Vaccines: avoid concomitant use of infliximab with live vaccines (see p. 199)

Influenza Vaccine see Vaccines

Insulin see Antidiabetics

Interferon Alfa see Interferons

Interferon Gamma see Interferons

Interferons

Note: Peginterferon alfa interactions as for interferon alfa

- Antivirals: increased risk of peripheral neuropathy when interferon alfa given with telbivudine

- Theophylline: interferon alfa inhibits metabolism of theophylline (consider reducing dose of theophylline)

Vaccines: manufacturer of interferon gamma advises avoid concomitant use with vaccines

Ipratropium see Antimuscarinics

Irbesartan see Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists

Irinotecan

- Antidepressants: metabolism of irinotecan accelerated by St John’s wort (reduced plasma concentration—avoid concomitant use)

- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of irinotecan possibly inhibited by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin

- Antifungals: plasma concentration of irinotecan reduced by itraconazole (but concentration of active metabolite of irinotecan increased)—avoid concomitant use

- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

- Antivirals: metabolism of irinotecan possibly inhibited by atazanavir (increased risk of toxicity)

- Cytotoxic: plasma concentration of irinotecan increased by lapatinib—consider reducing dose of irinotecan; plasma concentration of irinotecan possibly increased by sorafenib

Iron

Antacids: absorption of oral iron reduced by oral magnesium salts (as magnesium trisilicate)

Antibacterials: oral iron reduces absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin; oral iron reduces absorption of tetracyclines, also absorption of oral iron reduced by tetracyclines

Biphosphonates: oral iron reduces absorption of biphosphonates

Calcium Salts: absorption of oral iron reduced by calcium salts

Dopaminergics: oral iron reduces absorption of entacapone; oral iron possibly reduces absorption of levodopa

Eltrombopag: oral iron possibly reduces absorption of eltrombopag (give at least 4 hours apart)
Iron (continued)
Methylene diphosphonate: oral iron antagonises hypotensive effect of methyldiphosphonate.
Mycophenolate: oral iron reduces absorption of mycophenolate. 
Penicillamine: oral iron reduces absorption of penicillamine.
Thyroid Hormones: oral iron reduces absorption of levothyroxine (give at least 2 hours apart).

Trientine: increased risk of oral iron reduced by trientine.
Zinc: oral iron reduces absorption of zinc; also absorption of oral iron reduced by zinc.

Isocarboxazid see MAOIs.
Isosorbid dinitrate see Anaesthetics, General.
Isomethyptene see Sympathomimetics.
Isoniazid see Antituberculous Agents.
Antacids: absorption of isoniazid reduced by antacids.
Antibacterial: increased risk of CNS toxicity when isoniazid given with clozercine.
Antiepileptic: isoniazid increases plasma concentration of carbamazepine (also possibly increased isoniazid hepatotoxicity); isoniazid inhibits metabolism of phenytoin (increased risk of toxicity).
Antifungal: isoniazid possibly reduces plasma concentration of ketoconazole.
Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: isoniazid inhibits the metabolism of diazepam.
Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of isoniazid possibly reduced by corticosteroids.
Disulfiram: isoniazid possibly increases CNS effects of disulfiram.

Dopaminergic: isoniazid possibly reduces effects of levodopa.
Theophylline: isoniazid possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline.
Vaccines: antibacterial inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p.620.

Isosorbide dinitrate see Nitrates.
Isosorbide mononitrate see Nitrates.
Isotretinoin see Antipsychotics.
Isradipine see Calcium-channel Blockers.
Itraconazole see Antifungals, Triazole.
Ivabradine see Antidepressants.

Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ivabradine given with eamiodarone or disopyramide.
Antibacterial: plasma concentration of ivabradine possibly increased by clarithromycin and erythromycin—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ivabradine given with amiodarone—avoid concomitant use.
Antidepressant: plasma concentration of ivabradine reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use.
Antifungal: plasma concentration of ivabradine increased by fluconazole—reduce initial dose of ivabradine; plasma concentration of ivabradine possibly increased by itraconazole—avoid concomitant use.
Antimalarial: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ivabradine given with nefinnofen.
Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ivabradine given with perampanel.
Antiviral: plasma concentration of ivabradine possibly increased by nelfinavir and ritonavir—avoid concomitant use.
Beta-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ivabradine given with esmolol.
Calcium-channel Blockers: plasma concentration of ivabradine increased by nimodipine and everapamil—avoid concomitant use.
Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of ivabradine increased by grapefruit juice.
Pentamidine isethionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when ivabradine given with pentamidine isethionate.

Kaolin
Analgesics: kaolin possibly reduces absorption of aspirin.
Antibacterial: kaolin possibly reduces absorption of tetracyclines.
Antimalarial: kaolin reduces absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine.
Antipsychotics: kaolin possibly reduces absorption of phenothiazines.

Ketamine see Anaesthetics, General.
Ketocozazole see Antifungals, Imidazole.
Ketoprofen see NSAIDs.
Ketorolac see NSAIDs.
Ketotifen see Antihistamines.
Labelatal see Beta-blockers.
Lacidipine see Calcium-channel Blockers.
Lacosamide
Antidepressant: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tetracyclines.
Antidepressant: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIIs and SNRIIs.
Antidepressant: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by delta blockers.
Antidepressant: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics.

Lamivudine
Antibacterial: plasma concentration of lamivudine increased by trimethoprim (as co-trimoxazole).
Antiviral: avoidance of lamivudine advised by manufacturer of emtricitabine; manufacturer of lamivudine advises avoid concomitant use with lacticarnet; manufacturer of lamivudine advises avoid concomitant use of intravenous ganciclovir.

Lamotrigine
Antibacterial: plasma concentration of lamotrigine reduced by trimethoprim.
Antidepressant: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tetracyclines.
Antiepileptic: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIIs and SNRIIs.
Antiviral: plasma concentration of lamotrigine reduced by valproate.
Antimalarial: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of anti-epileptics antagonised by nefinnofen.
Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics.
Antiviral: plasma concentration of lamotrigine reduced by ritonavir.
Antioestrogen: plasma concentration of lamotrigine reduced by oestradiol; consideration increasing dose of lamotrigine.
Oestradiol: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat.
Progestogens: plasma concentration of lamotrigine possibly increased by desogestrel.

Appendix 1: Interactions 701
Appendix 1: Interactions

Lanreotide
- Antidiabetics: lanreotide possibly reduces requirements for insulin, metformin, repaglinide and sulfonylureas.
- Ciclosporin: lanreotide reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin.

Lansoprazole see Proton Pump Inhibitors

Lanthanum
- Antibacterials: lanthanum possibly reduces absorption of quinolones (give at least 2 hours before or 4 hours after lanthanum).
- Antifungals: lanthanum possibly reduces absorption of itraconazole (give at least 2 hours apart).
- Antimalarials: lanthanum possibly reduces absorption of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine (give at least 2 hours apart).

Lapatinib
- Antineoplastic agents: manufacturer of lapatinib advises avoid concomitant use with doxorubicin and etoposide.
- Antidepressants: manufacturer of lapatinib advises avoid concomitant use with St John’s wort.
- Antidiabetics: manufacturer of lapatinib advises avoid concomitant use with repaglinide.
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of lapatinib reduced by carbamazepine (increased risk of agranulocytosis); manufacturer of lapatinib advises avoid concomitant use with primidone.
- Antivirals: manufacturer of lapatinib advises avoid concomitant use with ritonavir and saquinavir.
- Cyclophosphamide: lapatinib increases plasma concentration of pazopanib; possible increased risk of neutropenia when lapatinib given with docetaxel; increased risk of neutropenia when lapatinib given with paclitaxel; lapatinib increases plasma concentration of active metabolite of ritonavir; consider reducing dose of ritonavir.
- Grapefruit juice: manufacturer of lapatinib advises avoid concomitant use with grapefruit juice.
- Ucer-healing Drugs: absorption of lanthanum possibly reduced by histamine H₂-antagonists and proton pump inhibitors.

Laronidase
- Antimalarials: effects of laronidase possibly inhibited by chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine (manufacturer of laronidase advises avoid concomitant use).

Leflunomide
- Increased risk of toxicity with other haematotoxic and hepatotoxic drugs.
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of active metabolite of leflunomide possibly increased by rifampicin.
- Anticoagulants: leflunomide possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin.
- Antidiabetics: leflunomide possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of tolbutamide.
- Antiepileptics: leflunomide possibly increases plasma concentration of phenytoin.
- Cytoxotics: risk of toxicity when leflunomide given with methotrexate.
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: the effect of leflunomide is significantly decreased by colesteryamine (enhanced elimination)—avoid unless drug elimination desired.
- Vaccines: avoid concomitant use of leflunomide with live vaccines (see p. 599).

Lenalidomide
- Cardiac Glycosides: lenalidomide possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin.
- Lercanidipine see Calcium-channel Blockers

Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists
- Analgesics: plasma concentration of zafirlukast increased by aspirin.
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of zafirlukast reduced by erythromycin.
- Anticoagulants: zafirlukast enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin.
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of montelukast reduced by phenobarbital.
- Theophylline: zafirlukast possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline, also plasma concentration of zafirlukast reduced.

Levamisole
- Alcohol: possibility of disulfiram-like reaction when levamisole given with alcohol.
- Anticoagulants: levamisole possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin.
- Antiepileptics: levamisole possibly increases plasma concentration of phenytoin.

Levetiracetam
- Antidepressants: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort.
- Antiepileptics: levetiracetam possibly increases risk of carbamazepine toxicity.
- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics.
- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered).
- Orlustr: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with olsalazine.

Levodobonol see Beta-blockers

Levodopa see Adrenergic Neurone Blockers

Levodopa
- ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypertensive effect when levodopa given with ACE inhibitors.
- Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when levodopa given with adrenergic neurone blockers.
- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when levodopa given with alpha-blockers.
- Anaesthetics, General: increased risk of arrhythmias when levodopa given with volatile liquid general anaesthetics.
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypertensive effect when levodopa given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists.
- Antibacterials: effects of levodopa possibly reduced by ivermectin.
- Antidepressants: risk of hypertensive crisis when levodopa given with MAOIs, avoid levodopa for at least 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; increased risk of side-effects when levodopa given with moclobemide.
- Antiepileptics: effects of levodopa possibly reduced by phenytoin.
- Antimuscarinics: absorption of levodopa possibly reduced by antimuscarinics.
- Antipsychotics: effects of levodopa antagonised by antipsychotics; avoidance of levodopa advised by manufacturer of amisulpride (antagonism of effect).
- Antioxidants and Hypnotics: effects of levodopa possibly antagonised by benzo diazepines.
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when levodopa given with beta-blockers.
- Bupropion: increased risk of side-effects when levodopa given with bupropion.
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when levodopa given with calcium-channel blockers.
Levodopa (continued)

Clonidine: increased hypotensive effect when levodopa given with clonidine
Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with diazoxide
Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with diuretics
Dopaminergics: enhanced effects and increased toxicity of levodopa when given with selegiline (reduce dose of levodopa)
Iron: absorption of levodopa possibly reduced by oral iron
Mentamine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by mentamine
Methyl dopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with methyl dopa; antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyl dopa
Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with moxonidine
Muscle Relaxants: possible agitation, confusion and hallucinations when levodopa given with baclofen
Nitric Oxides: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with nitrates
Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when levodopa given with nitric oxide

Vitamins: effects of levodopa reduced by pyridoxine when given without dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor
Levofoxacin see Quinolones
Levofolinic Acid see Folate
Levomepromazine see Antipsychotics
Levonorgestrel see Progestogens
Levotoxovirsee Thyroid Hormones

Lidocaine

Note
Interactions less likely when lidocaine used topically
Anaesthetics, Local: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine
Anti-arrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with other anti-arrhythmics
Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when anti-arrhythmics that prolong the QT interval given with anti-arrhythmics that prolong the QT interval
Antivirals: plasma concentration of lidocaine possibly increased by stavudine and lamivudine; plasma concentration of lidocaine possibly increased by darunavir and fosamprenavir—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when lidocaine given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use
Beta-blockers: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with beta-blockers; increased risk of lidocaine toxicity when given with propranolol
Diuretics: action of lidocaine antagonised by hypokalaemia caused by loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics
Muscle Relaxants: neuromuscular blockade enhanced and prolonged when lidocaine given with axonotoxins
Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of lidocaine increased by cimetidine (increased risk of toxicity)

Linezolid

Note
Linezolid is a reversible, non-selective MAO inhibitor—see interactions of MAOIs
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of linezolid reduced by rifampicin (possible therapeutic failure of linezolid)
Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Liobionyline see Thyroid Hormones

Lipid-regulating Drugs see Colesevelam, Colestipol, Colestazymin, Ezetimibe, Fibrates, Nicotinic acid, and Statins

Liraglutide see Antidiabetics
Lisinopril see ACE Inhibitors

Lithium

- ACE Inhibitors: excretion of lithium reduced by ACE inhibitors (increased plasma concentration)
- Analgesics: excretion of lithium reduced by NSAIDs (increased risk of toxicity); excretion of lithium reduced by ketorolac (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: excretion of lithium reduced by angiotensin-II receptor antagonists (increased plasma concentration)
- Antacids: excretion of lithium increased by sodium bicarbonate (reduced plasma concentration)
- Anti-arrhythmics: avoidance of lithium advised by manufacturer of amiodarone (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)
- Antibacterials: increased risk of lithium toxicity when given with metronidazole
- Antidepressants: possible increased serotoninergic effects when lithium given with venlafaxine; increased risk of CNS effects when lithium given with SSRIs (lithium toxicity reported); risk of toxicity when lithium given with tricyclics
- Antiepileptics: neurotoxicity may occur when lithium given with carbamazepine or phenytoin without increased plasma concentration of lithium; plasma concentration of lithium possibly affected by topiramate
- Antipsychotics: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects and possibly neurotoxicity when lithium given with clozapine, fluoxetine, haloperidol, phenothiazines or zuclopenthixol; possible risk of toxicity when lithium given with olanzapine; increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when lithium given with sulpiride
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased risk of neurotoxicity when lithium given with clonazepam
- Calcium-channel Blockers: neurotoxicity may occur when lithium given with diltiazem or verapamil without increased plasma concentration of lithium
- Cytotoxics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when lithium given with arsenic trioxide
- Diuretics: excretion of lithium increased by acetazolamide; excretion of lithium reduced by loop diuretics and thiazides and related diuretics (increased plasma concentration and risk of toxicity)—loop diuretics safer than thiazides; excretion of lithium reduced by potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists (increased plasma concentration and risk of toxicity)
- 5HT, Agonists: possible risk of toxicity when lithium given with sumatriptan
- Methyl dopa: neurotoxicity may occur when lithium given with methyl dopa without increased plasma concentration of lithium
- Muscle Relaxants: lithium enhances effects of muscle relaxants; hyperkinesis caused by lithium possibly aggravated by baclofen
- Parasympathomimetics: lithium antagonises effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine
- Theophylline: excretion of lithium increased by theophylline (reduced plasma concentration)
- Lofepramine see Antidepressants, Tricyclic

Lofexidine

Alcohol: increased sedative effect when lofexidine given with alcohol
Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when lofexidine given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
Lomustine

- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: myelosuppressive effects of lomustine possibly enhanced by cimetidine

Loperamide

Desmopressin: loperamide increases plasma concentration of oral desmopressin
Appendix 1: Interactions

Lopinavir

Note In combination with ritonavir as Kaletra® (ritonavir is present to inhibit lopinavir metabolism and increases plasma-loratadine concentration)

- Anti-arrhythmics: lopinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of flecainide (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use); lopinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of lidocaine
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of lopinavir reduced by rifampicin—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of concomitant lopinavir in severe renal and hepatic impairment advised by manufacturer of etelithromycin
- Anticoagulants: avoidance of lopinavir advised by manufacturer of rivaroxaban
- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of lopinavir reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of lopinavir possibly reduced by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin
- Anti-emetics: loratadine: caution with lopinavir advised by manufacturer of arteether/lumezantrine
- Antimuscarinics: avoidance of lopinavir advised by manufacturer of darifenacin and tolterodine
- Antipsychotics: lopinavir possibly inhibits metabolism of ziprasidone (reduce dose of ziprasidone)
- Antivirals: lopinavir reduces plasma concentration of darunavir, also plasma concentration of lopinavir increased (avoid concomitant use); plasma concentration of lopinavir reduced by efavirenz—consider increasing dose of lopinavir; lopinavir reduces plasma concentration of fosamprenavir, effect on lopinavir plasma concentration not predictable—avoid concomitant use; lopinavir increases plasma concentration of maraviroc (consider reducing dose of maraviroc); plasma concentration of lopinavir reduced by nevirapine—consider increasing dose of lopinavir; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when lopinavir given with nevirapine—avoid concomitant use; lopinavir increases plasma concentration of tenofovir; plasma concentration of lopinavir reduced by ritonavir
- Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of lopinavir possibly reduced by dexamethasone
- Eltrombopag: lopinavir reduces plasma concentration of eltrombopag
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when lopinavir given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when lopinavir given with rosuvastatin—manufacturer of rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of myopathy when lopinavir given with simvastatin—avoid concomitant use
- Ranolazine: lopinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use
- Sirolimus: lopinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of sirolimus
- Loprazolam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics
- Loratadine see Antihistamines
- Lorazepam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics
- Lormetazepam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics
- Losartan see Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists
- Lumefantrine see Artemether with Lumefantrine
- Lymecycline see Tetracyclines

Macrolides

Note See also Telithromycin

Note Interactions do not apply to small amounts of erythromycin used topically

- Analgesics: erythromycin increases plasma concentration of alfentanil
- Antacids: absorption of azithromycin reduced by antacids

Macrolides (continued)

- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when parenteral erythromycin given with omithidone—avoid concomitant use; clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of disopyramide (increased risk of toxicity); erythromycin increases plasma concentration of disopyramide (increased risk of toxicity); avoidance of clarithromycin advised by manufacturer of dronedarone (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); erythromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of dronedarone (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use)
- Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when parenteral erythromycin given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use; macrolides possibly increase plasma concentration of rifampicin (increased risk of uveitis—reduce rifampicin dose); clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of rifabutin (increased risk of uveitis—reduce rifabutin dose); plasma concentration of clarithromycin reduced by rifamycins
- Anticoagulants: clarithromycin and erythromycin enhance anticoagulant effect of coumarins; azithromycin possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
- Antidepressants: avoidance of macrolides advised by manufacturer of reboxetine
- Antidiabetics: clarithromycin enhances effects of repaglinide
- Antiepileptics: clarithromycin and erythromycin increase plasma concentration of carbamazepine; clarithromycin inhibits metabolism of phenytoin (increased plasma concentration); erythromycin possibly increases metabolism of valproate (increased plasma concentration)
- Antifungals: clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of itraconazole
- Anti-histamines: manufacturer of loratadine advises erythromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of loratadine; macrolides possibly inhibit metabolism of mizolastine (avoid concomitant use); erythromycin inhibits metabolism of mizolastine—avoid concomitant use; erythromycin increases plasma concentration of ruptadine
- Antimalarials: avoidance of artemether/lumezantrine advised by manufacturer of arteether/lumezantrine
- Antimuscarinics: erythromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of darifenacin; manufacturer of fosoterodine advises dose reduction when clarithromycin given with fosoterodine—consult fosoterodine product literature; avoidance of clarithromycin and erythromycin advised by manufacturer of tolterodine
- Antipsychotics: avoidance of macrolides advised by manufacturer of droperidol (risk of ventricular arrhythmias); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when parenteral erythromycin given with zuclopenthixol—avoid concomitant use; erythromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of zuclopenthixol (possible increased risk of convulsions); possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when erythromycin given with amisulpride—avoid concomitant use; erythromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of amisulpride (reduce dose of amisulpride); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when parenteral erythromycin given with sulpiride
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of both drugs increased when clarithromycin given with atazanavir; increased risk of rash when clarithromycin given with elavirec; clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of etravirine, also plasma concentration of clarithromycin reduced; clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of maraviroc (consider reducing dose of maraviroc); plasma concen-
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Appendix 1: Interactions**

### Macrolides

- **Antivirals (continued)**
  - Treatment of azithromycin increased by nelfinavir (increased risk of toxicity); plasma concentration of clarithromycin reduced by nevirapine (but concentration of an active metabolite increased), also plasma concentration of nevirapine increased; plasma concentration of clarithromycin increased by ritonavir (reduce dose of clarithromycin in renal impairment); plasma concentration of azithromycin and erythromycin possibly increased by ritonavir; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when clarithromycin or erythromycin given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of clarithromycin increased by saquinavir (reduce dose of clarithromycin in renal impairment), also clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of tipranavir; clarithromycin tablets reduce absorption of zidovudine (give at least 2 hours apart).
- **Antioxidants and Hypnotics:** clarithromycin and erythromycin inhibit metabolism of midazolam (increased plasma concentration with increased sedation); erythromycin increases plasma concentration of buspirone (reduce dose of buspirone); erythromycin inhibits the metabolism of zipropine.
  - Aprepitant: clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of aprepitant.
- **Atomoxetine:** increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when concomitant use; possible increased risk of myopathy when erythromycin given with atomoxetine (increase plasma concentration with increased dose of atomoxetine).
- **Calcium-channel Blockers:** clarithromycin and erythromycin inhibit metabolism of felodipine (increased plasma concentration); avoidance of erythromycin advised by manufacturer of lercanidipine; clarithromycin and erythromycin possibly inhibit metabolism of verapamil (increased risk of toxicity).
- **Ciclosporin:** macrolides possibly inhibit metabolism of ciclosporin (increased plasma concentration).
- **Cilostazol:** erythromycin increases plasma concentration of cilostazol (consider reducing dose of cilostazol).
- **Clomipredol:** erythromycin possibly reduces anti-platelet effect of clomipredol.
- **Colchicine:** azithromycin, clarithromycin and erythromycin possibly increase risk of colchicine toxicity—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment).
- **Corticosteroids:** erythromycin possibly inhibits metabolism of corticosteroids; erythromycin inhibits the metabolism of methylprednisolone; clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of methylprednisolone.
- **Cytoxics:** clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of etoposide; clarithromycin avoids concomitant use; erythromycin increases plasma concentration of etoposide; avoidance of clarithromycin advised by manufacturer of ifosfamide and etoposide; reduced efficacy of ifosfamide and etoposide (consult ifosfamide product literature); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when erythromycin given with arsenic trioxide; erythromycin increases toxicity of vinblastine—avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of neutropenia when clarithromycin given with etoposide.
- **Diuretics:** clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of eplerenone—avoid concomitant use; erythromycin increases plasma concentration of eplerenone (reduce dose of eplerenone).**Dopaminergic:** macrolides possibly increase plasma concentration of bromocriptine and cabergoline.

### Macrolides

- **Dopaminergics (continued)**
  - Cabergoline (increased risk of toxicity); erythromycin increases plasma concentration of bromocriptine and cabergoline (increased risk of toxicity).
  - Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when macrolides given with ergotamine and methysergide; avoid concomitant use.
  - 5HT3 Agonists: clarithromycin and erythromycin increase plasma concentration of eletriptan (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use.
  - Ibravidine: clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of ibravidine—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when erythromycin given with ibravidine—avoid concomitant use.
  - Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists: erythromycin reduces plasma concentration of zafirlukast.
- **Lipid-regulating Drugs:** clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of atorvastatin and pravastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when erythromycin given with atorvastatin; erythromycin increases plasma concentration of pravastatin; erythromycin reduces plasma concentration of rosuvastatin; increased risk of myopathy when clarithromycin or erythromycin given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use).
  - Statins: erythromycin increases plasma concentration of estradiol.
  - Parasympathomimetics: erythromycin increases plasma concentration of galantamine.
  - Pentamidine Isethionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when concomitant use; possible increased risk of myopathy when erythromycin given with pentamidine isethionate.
  - Progestogens: erythromycin increases plasma concentration of dienogest.
  - Ranolazine: clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use.
  - Sildenafil: clarithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil; erythromycin increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil.
  - Sirolimus: clarithromycin increases plasma concentration of sirolimus.
  - Tacrolimus: clarithromycin and erythromycin increase plasma concentration of tacrolimus.
  - Vardenafil: clarithromycin and erythromycin increase plasma concentration of vardenafil.
  - Tadalafil: clarithromycin and erythromycin increase plasma concentration of tadalafil.
  - Theophylline: azithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline; clarithromycin inhibits metabolism of theophylline (increased plasma concentration); erythromycin increases plasma concentration of theophylline (also theophylline may reduce absorption of oral erythromycin).
- **Ulcer-healing Drugs:** plasma concentration of erythromycin increased by cimetidine (increased risk of toxicity, including deafness); plasma concentration of both drugs increased when clarithromycin given with mequinol.
  - Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620.
  - Vardenafil: erythromycin increases plasma concentration of vardenafil (reduce dose of vardenafil).

### Magnesium (parenteral)

- **Calcium-channel Blockers:** profound hypotension reported with concomitant use of parenteral magnesium and nifedipine in pre-eclampsia.
- **Muscle Relaxants:** parenteral magnesium enhances effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium.

### Magnesium Salts (oral) see Antacids

### Mannitol

- Ciclosporin: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when mannitol given with ciclosporin.
Appendix 1: Interactions

MAOIs

Note For interactions of reversible MAO-A inhibitors (RIMAs) see Moclobemide, and for interactions of MAO-B inhibitors see Rasagiline and Selegiline; the antibacterial Linezolid is a reversible, non-selective MAO inhibitor

ACE Inhibitors: MAOIs possibly enhance hypertensive effect of ACE inhibitors

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with adrenergic neurone blockers

- Alcohol: MAOIs interact with tyramine found in some beverages containing valine and some dealkoholised beverages (hypertensive crisis)—if no tyramine, enhanced hypertensive effect

Alpha₂-adrenergic Receptor Stimulants: avoidance of MAOIs advised by manufacturer of apraclonidine and brimonidine

- Alpha-blockers: avoidance of MAOIs advised by manufacturer of nifedipine; enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with alpha-blockers

- Antimuscarinic: CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when MAOIs given with methyldopa—avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible increased serotonergic effects and CNS excitation when MAOIs given with tramadol—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; avoidance of MAOIs advised by manufacturer of raloxifene; possible enhanced hypotensive effect when MAOIs given with opipramol—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: MAOIs possibly enhance hypertensive effect of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

- Antidepressants: increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when MAOIs given with reboxetine (MAOIs should not be started until 1 week after stopping reboxetine, avoid reboxetine for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs); after stopping MAOIs do not start clonidine, pargyline or selegiline for 2 weeks; when MAOIs given with tranylcypromine for at least 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; enhanced CNS excitation and depression (hypertension or hypotension) when MAOIs given with methyldopa—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs

Bupropion: avoidance of bupropion for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs advised by manufacturer of bupropion

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with calcium-channel blockers

Clonidine: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with clonidine

Diazoxide: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with diazoxide

Diuretics: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with diuretics

Dopaminergics: avoid concomitant use of non-selective MAOIs with dopamine agonists; risk of hypertensive crisis when MAOIs given with levodopa, avoid levodopa for at least 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; risk of hypertensive crisis when MAOIs given with selegiline, avoid MAOIs for at least 2 weeks after stopping rasagiline; enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with selegeline—manufacturer of selegiline advises avoid concomitant use; avoid concomitant use of MAOIs with tolcapone

Doxapram: MAOIs enhance effects of doxapram

Histamine: avoidance of MAOIs advised by manufacturer of histamine

5HT, Agonists: risk of CNS toxicity when MAOIs given with sumatriptan or sumatriptan (avoid ritansiptan or sumatriptan for 2 weeks after MAOIs); increased risk of CNS toxicity when MAOIs given with tolcapone

Methylp-spot: avoidance of MAOIs advised by manufacturer of methylp-spot

Moxonidine: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with moxonidine

Muscle Relaxants: phenelzine enhances effects of suxamethonium

Nicorandil: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with nicorandil

Nitrates: enhanced hypertensive effect when MAOIs given with nitrates

Phenocodine: avoidance of phenocodine for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs advised by manufacturer of pheno-

Symptomamitometrics: risk of hypertensive crisis when MAOIs given with symptomamitometrics; risk of hypertensive crisis when MAOIs given with methylphenidate, some manufacturers advise

Antidiabetics: MAOIs possibly enhance hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics; MAOIs enhance hypo-

MAOIs

Antidiabetics (continued)
glucosic effect of insulin, metformin and sulfo-
MAOIs
- Sympathomimetics (continued) avoid methylphenidate for at least 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs
- Tetrahydrozoline: risk of CNS excitation and hypertension when MAOIs given with tetrahydrozoline
  Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when MAOIs given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
MAOIs, reversible see Moclobemide
Maraviroc
- Antivirals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when maraviroc given with rifampicin
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of antipsychotics with maraviroc
  Cardiac Glycosides: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when maraviroc given with ciclosporin
Memantine
- Antiepileptics: increased risk of CNS toxicity when memantine given with antiepileptics (manufacturer of memantine advises avoid concomitant use)
- Analgesics: increased risk of CNS toxicity when memantine given with dextromethorphan (manufacturer of memantine advises avoid concomitant use)
- Anticoagulants: memantine possibly enhances antiocoagulant effect of warfarin
  Antimuscarinics: memantine possibly enhances effects of antimuscarinics
  Antipsychotics: memantine possibly reduces effects of antipsychotics
Mercaptopurine
- Antiarrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when mercaptopurine given with antipsychotics
  Cardiac Glycosides: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when mercaptopurine given with antipsychotics
  Memantine: possibly enhances effects of antimuscarinics
Muscle Relaxants: memantine possibly modifies effects of relaxants and dantrolene
Mepacrine
- Antimalarials: mepacrine increases plasma concentration of primaquine (increased risk of toxicity)
Meprobamate see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics
Meptazinol see Opioid Analgesics
Meropenem
- Antiarrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when meropenem given with antipsychotics
  Calcium-channel Blockers: possible increased risk of bradyarrhythmias when meropenem given with calcium-channel blockers
Carman: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of carman
- iOnoargin: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when metformin given with iOnoargin
Mefloquine (continued)
- Antimalarials: inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620
Mestranol see Oestrogens
Metamphetamine see Symptomimetics
Metformin see Antidiabetics
Methadone see Opioid Analgesics
Methenamine
- Antiarrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when methenamine given with antipsychotics
- Anticoagulants: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when methenamine given with anticoagulants
  Antituberculars—avoid concomitant use
Methotrexate
- Antiarrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when methotrexate given with antipsychotics
  Calcium-channel Blockers: possible increased risk of bradyarrhythmias when methotrexate given with calcium-channel blockers
Cardiac Glycosides: possible increased risk of bradyarrhythmias when methotrexate given with digoxin
  Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of histamine
- Lovadrine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when methenamine given with lovadrine
Appendix 1: Interactions
Appendix 1: Interactions

Methenamine (continued)
- Diuretics: effects of methenamine antagonised by acetylsalicylic acid
  Potassium Salts: avoid concomitant use of methenamine with potassium citrate
  Sodium Citrate: avoid concomitant use of methenamine with sodium citrate
  Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Methocarbamol see Muscle Relaxants

Methotrexate
- Anaesthetics, General: antifolate effect of methotrexate increased by nitrous oxide—avoid concomitant use
  Analgesics: excretion of methotrexate probably reduced by NSAIDs (increased risk of toxicity); excretion of methotrexate reduced by aspirin, diclofenac, ibuprofen, indomethacin, ketoprofen, meloxicam and naproxen (increased risk of toxicity)
  Antibacterials: absorption of methotrexate possibly reduced by neomycin; excretion of methotrexate possibly reduced by ciprofloxacin (increased risk of toxicity), increased risk of haematological toxicity when methotrexate given with sulfamethoxazole (as co-trimoxazole), increased risk of methotrexate toxicity when given with doxycycline, sulfonamides or tetracycline; excretion of methotrexate reduced by penicillins (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of haematological toxicity when methotrexate given with trimethoprim (also with co-trimoxazole)
  Antiepileptics: antifolate effect of methotrexate increased by phenytoin
  Antimalarials: antifolate effect of methotrexate increased by pyrimethamine
  Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with doxapamine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
  Cardiac Glycosides: methotrexate possibly reduces absorption of digoxin tablets
  Ciclosporin: risk of toxicity when methotrexate given with ciclosporin
  Cytotoxics: increased pulmonary toxicity when methotrexate given with cisplatin
  Diuretics: excretion of methotrexate increased by alkaline urine due to acetaizolamide
  Leflunomide: risk of toxicity when methotrexate given with leflunomide
  Probenecid: excretion of methotrexate reduced by probenecid (increased risk of toxicity)
  Retinoids: plasma concentration of methotrexate increased by etretin (also increased risk of hepatotoxicity)—avoid concomitant use
  Theophylline: methotrexate possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline
  Ulcer-healing Drugs: excretion of methotrexate possibly reduced by omeprazole (increased risk of toxicity)

Methoxamine
- Antidepressants: effect when methylphenidate given with adrenergic neurone blockers
- Alcohol: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with alcohol
- Aldesleukin: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with aldesleukin
- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when methyldopa given with alpha-blockers
- Antiepileptics, General: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with general anaesthetics
- Analgesics: hypotensive effect of methylphenidate antagonised by NSAIDs
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Antidepressants: manufacturer of methylphenidate advises avoid concomitant use with MAOIs

Methyldopa (continued)
- Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when methyldopa given with antipsychotics (also increased risk of extrapyramidal effects)
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when methyldopa given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when methyldopa given with beta-blockers
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when methyldopa given with calcium-channel blockers
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with clonidine
- Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of methylphenidate antagonised by corticosteroids
- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with diazoxide
- Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with diuretics
- Dopaminergics: methylphenidate antagonises anti-parkinsonian effect of dopaminergics; increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when methylphenidate given with bromocriptine, levodopa or l-dopa
- Iron: hypotensive effect of methylphenidate antagonised by oral iron
- Lithium: neurotoxicity may occur when methylphenidate given with lithium without increased plasma concentration of lithium
- Moxisylyte: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with moxisylyte
- Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with moxonidine
- Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with Baclofen or tizanidine
- Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with nitrates
- Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of methylphenidate antagonised by oestrogens
- Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with prostaglandins
- Symptomatometics, Beta,- acute hypertension reported when methylphenidate given with infusion of albuterol
- Vasodilators: Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when methylphenidate given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside
- Methylphenidate see Symptomatometics
- Methyldopa see Corticosteroids
- Methysergide see Ergot Alkaloids
- Metipranolol see Beta-blockers
- Metoclopramide
  Alcohol: metoclopramide possibly increases absorption of alcohol
  Anaesthetics, General: metoclopramide enhances effects of thiopental
  Analgesics: metoclopramide increases rate of absorption of aspirin (enhanced effect); effects of metoclopramide on gastro-intestinal activity antagonised by opioid analgesics; metoclopramide increases rate of absorption of paracetamol
  Antidepressants: CNS toxicity reported when metoclopramide given with SSRIs
  Antimuscarinics: effects of metoclopramide on gastro-intestinal activity antagonised by antimuscarinics
  Antipsychotics: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when metoclopramide given with antipsychotics
  Atovaquone: metoclopramide reduces plasma concentration of atovaquone
  Ciclosporin: metoclopramide increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin
  Dopaminergics: metoclopramide antagonises hypoprolactinaemic effects of bromocriptine and cabergoline; metoclopramide antagonises antiparkinsonian effect of pergolide; avoidance of metoclopramide
Mirtazapine
- Antidepressants (continued)
  MAOIs should not be started until at least 2 weeks after stopping mirtazapine, after stopping mirtazapine do not start moclobemide for at least 1 week
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of mirtazapine reduced by carbamazepine and phenytoin
- Antifungals: plasma concentration of mirtazapine increased by ketoconazole
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of selegiline
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
- Mitotane
  - Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
  - Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of mirtazapine increased by cimetidine
- Mivacurium
- Mivastatin
- Moclobemide
  - Analgesics: possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when moclobemide given with ketorolac or pethidine—avoid concomitant use; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when moclobemide given with opioid agonists—manufacturer of moclobemide advises consider reducing dose of opioid analogs
  - Antidepressants: moclobemide should not be started for at least 1 week after stopping MAOIs, SSRI-related antidepressants, citalopram, fluvoxamine, mirtazapine, paroxetine, sertraline, tricyclic-related antidepressants or tricyclics; increased risk of CNS toxicity when moclobemide given with escitalopram, preferably avoid concomitant use; moclobemide should not be started until 5 weeks after stopping fluoxetine; possible increased serotoninergic effects when moclobemide given with duloxetine
  - Antimalarials: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine
  - Antipsychotics: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of clozapine
  - Clopidogrel: moclobemide possibly reduces anti-platelet effect of clopidogrel
  - Dopaminergics: caution with moclobemide advised by manufacturer of entacapone; increased risk of side-effects when moclobemide given with levodopa; avoid concomitant use of moclobemide with selegiline
- 5HT, Agonists: risk of CNS toxicity when moclobemide given with ritanserin or sumatriptan (avoid ritanserin or sumatriptan for 2 weeks after moclobemide); risk of CNS toxicity when moclobemide given with zolmitriptan (reduce dose of zolmitriptan)
Appendix 1: Interactions

**Modafinil**
- Alpha-blockers: possible severe postural hypotension when moxonidine given with alpha-blockers
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxonidine given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxonidine given with beta-blockers
- Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxonidine given with nitrates
- Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxonidine given with vasodilator antihypertensives

**Moxisylyte**
- ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with ACE inhibitors
- Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with adrenergic neurone blockers
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with calcium-channel blockers
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with clonidine
- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with diazoxide
- Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with diuretics
- Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with methyldopa
- Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with moxonidine
- Nitrates: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with nitrates
- Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxisylyte given with vasodilator antihypertensives

**Moxonidine**
- ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxonidine given with ACE inhibitors
- Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when moxonidine given with adrenergic neurone blockers
- Alcohols: increased sedative effect when baclofen, methocarbamol or tizanidine given with alcohol
- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with alpha-blockers
- Analgesics: effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by volatile liquid general anaesthetics
- Analgesics: excretion of baclofen possibly reduced by NSAIDs (increased risk of toxicity); excretion of baclofen reduced by ibuprofen (increased risk of toxicity); increased sedative effect when baclofen given with fentanyl or morphine
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Anti-arrhythmics: neuromuscular blockade enhanced and prolonged when suxamethonium given with lidocaine
- Antibacterials: effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by piperacillin; plasma concentration of tizanidine increased by ciprofloxacin (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of tizanidine possibly increased by norfloxacin (increased risk of toxicity); effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by amikaglycosides; effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by clindamycin; effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by polymyxins; effects of suxamethonium enhanced by vancomycin
- Antiarrhythmics: plasma concentration of tizanidine increased by fluvoxamine (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; effects of suxa-
**Muscle Relaxants (continued)**

- Antidepressants (continued): methylenidium enhanced by phentolamine; muscle relaxant effect of baclofen enhanced by tricyclics
- Antiepileptics: muscle relaxant effect of non-depolarising muscle relaxants antagonised by carbamazepine and phenytoin (accelerated recovery from neuromuscular blockade)
- Antimalarials: effects of suxamethonium possibly enhanced by quinine
- Antipsychotics: effects of suxamethonium possibly enhanced by promazine
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with anxiolytics and hypnotics
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen given with beta-blockers; possible enhanced hypotensive effect and bradycardia when tizanidine given with beta-blockers; effects of muscle relaxants enhanced by propranolol
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with calcium-channel blockers; effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants possibly enhanced by calcium-channel blockers; possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when intravenous dantrolene given with diltiazem—manufacturer of diltiazem advises avoid concomitant use; effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by verapamil; avoidance of intravenous dantrolene advised by manufacturer of verapamil
- Cardiac Glycosides: possible increased risk of bradycardia when tizanidine given with cardiac glycosides; risk of ventricular arrhythmias when suxamethonium given with cardiac glycosides
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with clonidine
- Corticosteroids: effects of pancuronium and vecuronium possibly antagonised by corticosteroids
- Cytoxics: effects of suxamethonium enhanced by cyclophosphamide and thiopeta
- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with diazoxide
- Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with diuretics
- Dopaminergics: possible agitation, confusion and hallucinations when baclofen given with levodopa
- Lithium: effects of muscle relaxants enhanced by lithium; baclofen possibly aggravates hypokinesia caused by lithium
- Magnesium (parenteral): effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium enhanced by parenteral magnesium
- Metoclopramide: effects of baclofen and dantrolene possibly modified by metoclopramide
- Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with methyldopa
- Metoprolol: effects of suxamethonium enhanced by metoprolol
- Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with moxonidine
- Nitrites: enhanced hypotensive effect when baclofen or tizanidine given with nitrites
- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of tizanidine possibly increased by oestrogens (increased risk of toxicity)
- Parasympathomimetics: effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants possibly antagonised by donepezil; effects of suxamethonium possibly enhanced by donepezil; effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants antagonised by edrophonium, neostigmine, pyridostigmine and rivastigmine; effects of suxamethonium enhanced by edrophonium, galantamine, neostigmine, pyridostigmine and rivastigmine
- Progestogens: plasma concentration of tizanidine possibly increased by progestogens (increased risk of toxicity)
- Sympathomimetics, beta; effects of suxamethonium enhanced by bimanebutrol
Appendix 1: Interactions

Nelfinavir
Antimuscarinics (continued)
ome product literature; nelfinavir increases plasma concentration of solifenacin

- Antipsychotics: nelfinavir possibly inhibits metabolism of clozapine (reduce dose of clozapine); nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of haloperidol; also plasma concentration of active metabolite of haloperidol increased; nelfinavir increases plasma concentration of fluphenazine—avoid concomitant use

- Antivirals: plasma concentration of nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of atazanavir—avoid concomitant use; combination of nelfinavir with indinavir or ritonavir may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both); nelfinavir reduces plasma concentration of lopinavir, also plasma concentration of active metabolite of lopinavir increased; nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of saquinavir—manufacturer of saquinavir advises avoid concomitant use

- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of midazolam (risk of prolonged sedation—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam)

- Cilostazol: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of cilostazol

Corticosteroids: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of inhaled and intranasal fluticasone

- Cytotoxics: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of everolimus—manufacturer of everolimus advises avoid concomitant use; avoidance of nelfinavir advised by manufacturer of pazopanib; nelfinavir increases plasma concentration of paclitaxel

- Diuretics: nelfinavir increases plasma concentration of furosemide—avoid concomitant use

- Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when nelfinavir given with ergotamine and methysergide—avoid concomitant use

- SHT, Agonists: nelfinavir increases plasma concentration of eletriptan (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

- Ibradine: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ibradine—avoid concomitant use

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when nelfinavir given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when nelfinavir given with rosuvastatin; manufacturer of rosvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when nelfinavir given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use)

- Oestrogens: nelfinavir accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Progestogens: nelfinavir reduces contraceptive effect of progestogens

- Ranolazine: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

Sildenafil: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil

- Tacrolimus: nelfinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus

- Uleri-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of nelfinavir reduced by eomeprazole—avoid concomitant use

Neomycin see Aminoglycosides Neostigmine see Parasympathomimetics Nevirapine Analgesics: nevirapine possibly reduces plasma concentration of clarithromycin (but concentration of an active metabolite increased), also plasma concentration of nevirapine increased; nevirapine possibly increases plasma concentration of rifabutin; plasma concentration of nevirapine possibly increases plasma concentration of rifabutin

Nevirapine
- Antibacterials (continued)
  - Nevirapine reduces plasma concentration of clarithromycin and telithromycin; plasma concentration of nelfinavir reduced by ritampicin—avoid concomitant use

- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of nelfinavir reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of nevirapine reduced by carbamazepine

- Antifungals: nevirapine reduces plasma concentration of caspofungin and itraconazole—consider increasing dose of caspofungin and itraconazole

Antipsychotics: nevirapine possibly reduces plasma concentration of aripiprazole—increase dose of aripiprazole

- Antivirals: nevirapine possibly reduces plasma concentration of lopinavir—consider increasing dose of lopinavir

Oestrogens: nelfinavir accelerates metabolism of oestrogen (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Progestogens: nelfinavir accelerates metabolism of progestogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Nicardipine see Calcium-channel Blockers Nicardipine
Alcohol: hypotensive effect of nicardipine possibly enhanced by alcohol

Antidepressants: enhanced hypotensive effect when nicardipine given with MAOIs; hypotensive effect of nicardipine possibly enhanced by tricyclics

Sildenafil: hypotensive effect of nicardipine significantly enhanced by sildenafil (avoid concomitant use)

Tadalafil: hypotensive effect of nicardipine significantly enhanced by tadalafil (avoid concomitant use)

Vardenafil: possible increased hypotensive effect when nicardipine given with vardenafil—avoid concomitant use

Potassium Vasodilators: enhanced hypotensive effect when nicardipine given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Nicotine
Anti-arrhythmics: nicotine possibly enhances effects of adenosine

Nicotinic Acid
Note: Interactions apply to lipid-regulating doses of nicotinic acid

Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of myopathy when nicotinic acid given with statins (applies to lipid regulating doses of nicotinic acid)

Nifedipine see Calcium-channel Blockers Nifedipine
Nilotinib
- Antibacterials: manufacturer of nilotinib advises avoid concomitant use with clarithromycin and telithromycin; plasma concentration of nilotinib reduced by ritampicin—avoid concomitant use

- Antifungals: plasma concentration of nilotinib increased by ketoconazole—avoid concomitant use; manufacturer of nilotinib advises avoid concomitant use with itraconazole and voriconazole

- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use with cytoxica and clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

- Antiepileptics: manufacturer of nilotinib advises avoid concomitant use with carbamazepine

- Grapefruit Juice: manufacturer of nilotinib advises avoid concomitant use with grapefruit juice
Nitrazepam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

Nitrofurantoin

Antacids: absorption of nitrofurantoin reduced by oral magnesium salts (as magnesium trisilicate)

Antibacterial: nitrofurantoin possibly antagonises effects of nalidixic acid

Probeneic: excretion of nitrofurantoin reduced by probenicid (increased risk of side-effects)

Sulfinpyrazone: excretion of nitrofurantoin reduced by sulfinpyrazone (increased risk of toxicity)

Vaccines: antibiotics inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Nitroimidazoles see Metronidazole and Tinidazole

Nitrogen Oxide see Anaesthetics, General

Nizatidine see Histamine H2-antagonists

Noradrenaline (norepinephrine) see Sympathomimetics

Noradrenaline (noradrenaline) see Sympathomimetics

Norethisterone see Progestogens

Norepinephrine (noradrenaline) see Sympathomimetics

Norfloxacin see Quinolones

Norpregnate see Progestogens

Norpregnate see Progestogens

Nortriptyline see Antidepressants, Tricyclic NSAIDs

Note: See also Aspirin. Interactions do not generally apply to topical NSAIDs

ACE Inhibitors: increased risk of renal impairment when NSAIDs given with ACE inhibitors, also hypotensive effect antagonised

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of α-adrenergic neurone blockers

Alikiren: NSAIDs possibly antagonise hypotensive effect of alikiren

Alpha-blockers: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of alpha-blockers

Analgesics: avoid concomitant use of NSAIDs with diclofenac, possible increased risk of convulsions when NSAIDs given with sulindac

Analgesics: possible increased risk of convulsions when NSAIDs given with sulindac

Anticoagulants: excretion of diclofenac possibly increased by sulindac

Anticoagulants: increased risk of renal impairment when NSAIDs given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists, also hypotensive effect antagonised

Antidepressants: possible severe drowsiness when NSAIDs given with anxiolytics and hypnotics

Antifungals: NSAIDs possibly enhance effects of antifungals

Antihistamines: NSAIDs possibly enhance effects of antihistamines

Antimetics: NSAIDs possibly enhance effects of antiemetics

Antiplatelet agents: NSAIDs antagonise antiplatelet effect of aspirin

Antivirals: possible severe drowsiness when NSAIDs given with antivirals

Aspirin. Interactions do not generally apply to oral NSAIDs

Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with beta-blockers

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with calcium-channel blockers

Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with clonidine

Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of nitrates antagonised by corticosteroids

Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with diazoxide

Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with diuretics

Dopaminergics: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with levodopa

Methylprednisolone: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with methylprednisolone

Moxisylyte: increased hypotensive effect when nitrates given with moxisylyte

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with moxonidine

Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with baclofen or tizanidine

Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of nitrates antagonised by oestrogens

Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with alprostadil

Siladenal: hypotensive effect of nitrates significantly enhanced by siladenal (avoid concomitant use)

Tadalafil: hypotensive effect of nitrates significantly enhanced by tadalafil (avoid concomitant use)

Vardenafil: possible increased hypotensive effect when nitrates given with vardenafil—avoid concomitant use

Vasodilator Antihypertensives: enhanced hypotensive effect when nitrates given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Nitrazepam see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

BNFC 2011–2012
Appendix 1: Interactions

Lithium: NSAIDs reduce excretion of lithium (increased risk of toxicity); ketorolac reduces excretion of lithium (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

Cardiac Glycosides: NSAIDs possibly increase plasma concentration of cardiac glycosides, also possible exacerbation of heart failure and reduction of renal function

Clonidine: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of clonidine

Clopogrel: increased risk of bleeding when NSAIDs given with clopogrel

Corticosteroids: increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and ulceration when NSAIDs given with corticosteroids

Cytotoxic: NSAIDs probably reduce excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity); diacerein, ibuprofen, indomethacin, ketoprofen, meloxicam and naproxen reduce excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of bleeding when NSAIDs given with methotrexate

Desmopressin: indomethacin increases bioavailability of desmopressin

Diazoxide: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of diazoxide

Dimethyl sulfoxide: avoid concomitant use of sulindac with dimethyl sulfoxide

Diuretics: risk of nephrotoxicity of NSAIDs increased by diuretics, also antagonism of diuretic effect; indomethacin and ketorolac antagonise effects of diuretics; NSAIDs possibly antagonise diuretic effect of potassium-sparing diuretics; occasional reports of reduced renal function when indomethacin given with triamterene—avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of hyperkalaemia when NSAIDs given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists; increased risk of hyperkalaemia when indomethacin given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists

Iloprost: increased risk of bleeding when NSAIDs given with iloprost

Lipid-regulating Drugs: excretion of meloxicam increased by colestyramine

Lithium: NSAIDs reduce excretion of lithium (increased risk of toxicity); ketorolac reduces excretion of lithium (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

Methyldopa: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of methyldopa

Mifamurtide: avoidance of high doses of NSAIDs advised by manufacturer of mifamurtide

Moxonidine: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of moxonidine

Muscle Relaxants: ibuprofen reduces excretion of baclofen (increased risk of toxicity); NSAIDs possibly reduce excretion of baclofen (increased risk of toxicity)

Nitrates: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of nitrates

Oestrogens: etoricoxib increases plasma concentration of ethinylstradiol

Penicillamine: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when NSAIDs given with penicillamine

Pentoxifylline: possible increased risk of bleeding when NSAIDs given with pentoxifylline; increased risk of bleeding when ketorolac given with pentoxifylline (avoid concomitant use)

Prazosin: possible increased risk of bleeding when NSAIDs given with prazosin

Probenecid: concentration of desmetoprol, indometacin, ketoprofen and naproxen reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration); excretion of ketorolac reduced by probenecid (increased plasma concentration)—avoid concomitant use

Tacrolimus: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when NSAIDs given with tacrolimus; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when ibuprofen given with tacrolimus

Vasodilator Antihypertensives: NSAIDs antagonise hypotensive effect of hydralazine, minoxidil and sodium nitroprusside

Octreotide

Antidiabetics: octreotide possibly reduces requirements for insulin, metformin, repaglinide and sulfonylureas

Antidepressants: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of ACE inhibitors

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of adrenergic neurone blockers

Alpha-blockers: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of alpha-blockers

Analgesics: plasma concentration of ethinylestradiol increased by etoricoxib

Antiangiotensins-II Receptor Antagonists: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of estradiol increased by erythromycin; metabolism of oestrogens accelerated by rifamycin (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Antiocoagulants: oestrogens may enhance or reduce anticoagulant effect of coumarins; oestrogens antagonise anticoagulant effect of phenindione

Antidepressants: contraceptive effect of oestrogens reduced by St John’s wort (avoid concomitant use); oestrogens antagonise antidepresant effect of tricyclics (but side-effects of tricyclics may also be increased due to increased plasma concentration)

Antidiabetics: oestrogens antagonise hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics

Antiepileptics: metabolism of oestrogens accelerated by carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, oxcarbazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, rufinamide and topiramate (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398); oestrogens reduce plasma concentration of lamotrigine—consider increasing dose of lamotrigine; ethinylestradiol possibly reduces plasma concentration of valproate

Antifungals: oestrogens increase plasma concentration of voriconazole; anecdotal reports of contraceptive failure when oestrogens given with imidazoles; occasional reports of breakthrough bleeding when oestrogens (used for contraception) given with terbinafine

Antivirals: plasma concentration of ethinylestradiol increased by atazanavir; metabolism of oestrogens accelerated by nefinavir, nevirapine and ritonavir (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Antioxidants and Hypnotics: oestrogens increase plasma concentration of melatonin

Aprepitant: possible contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing oestrogens when given with aprepitant (alternative contraception recommended)
Oestrogens (continued)

Beta-blockers: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of beta-blockers

* Bosentan: possible contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing oestrogens when given with bosentan (alternative contraception recommended)

Calcium-channel Blockers: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of calcium-channel blockers

Ciclosporin: oestrogens possibly increase plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Clonidine: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of clonidine

Corticosteroids: oral contraceptives containing oestrogens increase plasma concentration of corticosteroids

Dopaminergics: oestrogens antagonise diuretic effect of diuretics

* Modafinil: metabolism of oestrogens accelerated by modafinil (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Moxonidine: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of moxonidine

Muscle Relaxants: oestrogens possibly increase plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity)

Nitrates: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of nitrates

Sitaxentan: plasma concentration of oestrogens increased by sitaxentan

Somatropin: oestrogens (when used as oral replacement therapy) may increase dose requirements of somatropin

Tacrolimus: ethinylestradiol possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus

Theophylline: oestrogens increase plasma concentration of theophylline (consider reducing dose of theophylline)

Thyroid Hormones: oestrogens may increase requirements for thyroid hormones in hypothyroidism

Vasodilator Antihypertensives: oestrogens antagonise hypotensive effect of hydralazine, minoxidil and sodium nitroprusside

Oestrogens, conjugated see Oestrogens

Ofoxacin see Quinolones

Olanzapine see Antipsychotics

Olmesartan see Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists

Olsalazine see Aminosalicylates

Omeprazole see Proton Pump Inhibitors

Ondansetron see 5HT3 Antagonists

Opioid Analgesics

Alcohol: enhanced hypotensive and sedative effects when opioid analgesics given with alcohol

Anaesthetics, General: fentanyl inhibits metabolism of etomidate (consider reducing dose of etomidate); opioid analgesics possibly enhance effects of intravenous general anaesthetics and volatile liquid general anaesthetics

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of alfentanil increased by erythromycin; avoidance of premedication with opioid analgesics advised by manufacturer of ciprofloxacin (reduced plasma concentration of ciprofloxacin) when ciprofloxacin used for surgical prophylaxis; metabolism of alfentanil, codeine, fentanyl, methadone and morphine accelerated by rifampicin (reduced effect); metabolism of oxycodone possibly accelerated by rifampicin; metabolism of oxycodone inhibited by telithromycin

Opioid Analgesics (continued)

* Anticoagulants: tramadol enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins

* Antidepressants: plasma concentration of methadone possibly increased by fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine and sertraline; possible increased serotonergic effects when pethidine or tramadol given with duloxetine; possible increased serotonergic effects when tramadol given with mirtazapine or venlafaxine; CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when pethidine given with MAOIs—avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when opioid analgesics given with MAOIs—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible increased serotonergic effects and increased risk of convulsions when tramadol given with MAOIs—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when opioid analgesics given with tricyclics

* Antiepileptics: effects of tramadol reduced by carbamazepine; plasma concentration of methadone reduced by carbamazepine and phenobarbital; dextropropoxyphene enhances effects of carbamazepine; morphine increases bioavailability of gabapentin; metabolism of methadone accelerated by phenytoin (reduced effect and risk of withdrawal effects)

* Antifungals: metabolism of buprenorphine inhibited by ketoconazole (reduce dose of buprenorphine); metabolism of alfentanil inhibited by fluconazole (risk of prolonged or delayed respiratory depression); metabolism of alfentanil possibly inhibited by itraconazole; plasma concentration of alfentanil and methadone increased by voriconazole (consider reducing dose of alfentanil and methadone); plasma concentration of oxycodone increased by voriconazole

* Antidepressants: increased effect of paroxetine and sertraline; possible increased serotoninergic effects and increased risk of convulsions when tramadol given with MAOIs—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when opioid analgesics given with tricyclics

* Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive and sedative effects when opioid analgesics given with antipsychotics; increased risk of venricular arrhythmias when methadone given with antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval; increased risk of convulsions when tramadol given with antipsychotics; increased risk of venricular arrhythmias when methadone given with antipsychotics; avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when opioid analgesics given with MAOIs—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible increased serotonergic effects and increased risk of convulsions when tramadol given with MAOIs—some manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when opioid analgesics given with tricyclics

* Antihistamines: sedative effects possibly increased when opioid analgesics given with sedating antihistamines

* Antimuscarinics: possible increased risk of anti-muscarinic side-effects when codeine given with antimuscarinics

* Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive and sedative effects when opioid analgesics given with antipsychotics; increased risk of venricular arrhythmias when methadone given with antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval; increased risk of convulsions when tramadol given with antipsychotics; increased risk of venricular arrhythmias when methadone given with antipsychotics; avoid concomitant use and for 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs; possible CNS excitation or depression (hypertension or hypotension) when opioid analgesics given with tricyclics

* Antivirals: plasma concentration of methadone possibly reduced by abacavir and nevirapine; methadone possibly reduces plasma concentration of didanosine; plasma concentration of methadone reduced by efavirenz, fosamprenavir, nevirapine and ritonavir; plasma concentration of dextropropoxyphene increased by ritonavir (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of buprenorphine possibly increased by ritonavir; plasma concentration of alfentanil and fentanyl increased by ritonavir; plasma concentration of pethidine reduced by ritonavir, but plasma concentration of toxic pethidine metabolite increased (avoid concom-
Appendix 1: Interactions

Opioid Analgesics

• Antivirals (continued)
  - mitan use; plasma concentration of morphine possibly reduced by ritonavir; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when alfentanil, fentanyl or methadone given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use; buprenorphine possibly reduces plasma concentration of tipranavir; methadone possibly increases plasma concentration of zidovudine.

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: increased sedative effect when opioid analgesics given with anxiolytics and hypnotics; fentanyl possibly inhibits metabolism of midazolam.

• Atorvastatin: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when methadone given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of convulsions when tramadol given with atorvastatin.

Beta-blockers: morphine possibly increases plasma concentration of esmolol.

Calcium-channel blockers: metabolism of alfentanil inhibited by diltiazem (risk of prolonged or delayed respiratory depression).

Domperidone: opioid analgesics antagonise effects of domperidone on gastrointestinal activity.

• Dopaminergic drugs: concomitant use of dextromethorphan with rasagiline; risk of CNS toxicity when pethidine given with rasagiline (avoid pethidine for 2 weeks after rasagiline); hyperpyrexia and CNS toxicity reported when pethidine given with selegiline (avoid concomitant use); avoidance of opioid analgesics advised by manufacturer of sele-giline.

5HT, Antagonists: effects of tramadol possibly antagonised by ondansetron.

• Memantine: increased risk of CNS toxicity when dextromethorphan given with memantine (manufacturer of memantine advises avoid concomitant use).

Metoclopramide: opioid analgesics antagonise effects of metoclopramide on gastrointestinal activity.

Muscle Relaxants: increased sedative effect when fentanyl or morphine given with baclofen.

• Sodium Oxybate: opioid analgesics enhance effects of sodium oxybate (avoid concomitant use).

Ulcer-healing Drugs: metabolism of opioid analgesics possibly reduced, also enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of hypertensive crisis when oxytocin given with vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics (due to enhanced vasoressor effect).

Oxcarbazepine

Antiepileptics (continued)

avoidance of oxcarbazepine advised by manufacturer of eslicarbazepine; oxcarbazepine increases plasma concentration of phenobarbital and phenytoin, also plasma concentration of an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine reduced; plasma concentration of an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine sometimes reduced by valproate.

• Antimalarias: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by mefloquine.

• Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered).

Ciclosporin: oxcarbazepine possibly reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin.

• Clopidogrel: oxcarbazepine possibly reduces anti-platelet effect of clopidogrel.

• Cytotoxics: oxcarbazepine reduces plasma concentration of mitomycin—avoid concomitant use.

• Oestrogens: oxcarbazepine accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398).

• Orlstat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat.

• Progestogens: oxcarbazepine accelerates metabolism of progestogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398).

Oxrenolol see Beta-blockers.

Oxybutynin see Antimuscarinics.

Oxycodeone see Opioid Analgesics.

Oxymetazoline see Sympathomimetics.

Oxytetracycline see Tetracyclines.

Oxytocin

Antanaesthetic: general: oxytocic effect possibly reduced, also enhanced hypotensive effect and risk of arrhythmias when oxytocin given with volatile liquid general anaesthetics.

Prostaglandins: uterotonie effect of oxytocin potentiated by prostaglandins.

Symphathomimetics: risk of hypertension when oxytocin given with vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics.

Paclitaxel

• Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis).

Antivirals: plasma concentration of paclitaxel increased by nelfinavir and ritonavir.

• Cytotoxics: increased risk of neutropenia when paclitaxel given with lapatinib.

Paliperidone see Antipsychotics.

Pancreatin

Antidiabetics: pancreatin antagonises hypoglycaemic effect of acarbose.

Pancreonulase see Muscle Relaxants.

Pantoprazole see Proton Pump Inhibitors.

Papaveretum see Opioid Analgesics.

Paracetaol

Anticoagulants: prolonged regular use of paracetamol possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins.

Antiepileptics: metabolism of paracetamol possibly accelerated by carbamazepine.

Cytotoxic: paracetamol possibly inhibits metabolism of intravenous busulfan (manufacturer of intravenous busulfan advises caution within 72 hours of paracetamol); caution with paracetamol advised by manufacturer of imatinib.

Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of paracetamol reduced by colestanil.

Metoclopramide: rate of absorption of paracetamol increased by metoclopramide.

Paraldehyde

• Alcohol: increased sedative effect when paraldehyde given with alcohol.
Antipsychotics: Penicillamine
Antimalarials: Pemetrexed
Peginterferon Alfa
see Grapefruit Juice:
Antipyschotics: Penicillamine
Antifungals: Penicillamine
Antibacterials: Paromomycin
Muscle Relaxants: Pembevredex
Paroxetine see Antipsychotics
Pentoxifylline see Antipsychotics
Pentamidine Isetionate: Penicillamine
Paracalciol see Vitamins
Paroxetine see Antidepressants, SSRI
Pentoxifylline
Penetrexed: Antimalarials: antifolate effect of pemetrexed
Penicillamine: Zinc: penicillamine reduces absorption of zinc, also absorption of penicillamine reduced by zinc
Penicillins: Allipurinol: increased risk of rash when amoxicillin or ampicillin given with allipurinol
Antibacterials: absorption of phenoxymethylpenicillin reduced by neomycin; effects of penicillins possibly antagonised by tetracyclines
Anticoagulants: common experience in anticoagulant clinics is that INR can be altered by a course of broad-spectrum penicillins such as ampicillin, although studies have failed to demonstrate an interaction with coumarins or phenindione
Cytotoxics: penicillins reduce excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity)
Muscle Relaxants: piperacillin enhances effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium
Interferons: penicillamine possibly reduces antifolate effect of pemetrexed
manufacturer of pazopanib advises avoid concomitant use with
Plaqen: effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine antagonised by
Lithium: effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine antagonised by lithium
Muscle Relaxants: donepezil possibly enhances effects of suxamethonium; edrophonium, galantamine, neostigmine, pyridostigmine and rivastigmine antagonise effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants; edrophonium, neostigmine, pyridostigmine and rivastigmine antagonise effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants
Parecoxib see NSAIDs
Paricalciol see Vitamins
Paroxetine see Antidepressants, SSRI
Pazopanib
Antiarrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when penicillamine is taken with
Antifungals: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when pentamidine is taken with amphotericin
Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when penicillamine is taken with
tiamipride or droperidol—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with par enteral erythromycin; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use
Antidepressants: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with
tricyclics
Antifungals: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when pentamidine is taken with amphotericin
Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when penicillamine is taken with
tiamipride or droperidol—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with par enteral erythromycin; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use
Antivirals: increased risk of hypocaemia when parenteral pentamidine is taken with
tosaceft; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use
Ivalbridine: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when pentamidine is taken with
Pentazocine see Opioid Analgesics
Pentostatin
Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Cytotoxics: increased toxicity when pentostatin given with high-dose cyclophosphamide—avoid concomitant use; increased pulmonary toxicity when pentostatin given with fludarabine (unacceptably high incidence of fatalities)
Pentoxifylline: Analgesics: possible increased risk of bleeding when pentoxifylline given with NSAIDs; increased risk of bleeding when pentoxifylline given with ketorolac (avoid concomitant use)
Theophylline: pentoxifylline increases plasma concentration of theophylline
Pergolide
Antipsychotics: effects of pergolide antagonised by antipsychotics
Memantine: effects of dopamine antagonists possibly enhanced by memantine
Methylpapda: antiparkinsonian effect of dopamine antagonists by methylpapda
Metoclopramide: antiparkinsonian effect of pergolide antagonised by metoclopramide
Percyzone see Antipsychotics
Parasympathomimetics
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of galantamine increased by paroxetine
Antifungals: plasma concentration of galantamine increased by ketoconazole
Antimalarials: effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine may be diminished because of potential for chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine to increase symptoms of myasthenia gravis
Antimuscarinics: effects of parasympathomimetics antagonised by antimuscarinics
Beta-blockers: increased risk of arrhythmias when plicarpine given with beta-blockers; effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine antagonised by propranolol
Lithium: effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine antagonised by lithium
Muscle Relaxants: donepezil possibly enhances effects of suxamethonium; edrophonium, galantamine, neostigmine, pyridostigmine and rivastigmine antagonise effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants; edrophonium, neostigmine, pyridostigmine and rivastigmine antagonise effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants
Parecoxib see NSAIDs
Paricalciol see Vitamins
Paroxetine see Antidepressants, SSRI
Pazopanib
Antiarrhythmics: manufacturer of pazopanib advises avoid concomitant use with
dolantin
Antifungals: manufacturer of pazopanib advises avoid concomitant use with
Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Antivirals: manufacturer of pazopanib advises avoid concomitant use with
Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Cytotoxics: plasma concentration of pazopanib increased by lapatinib
Grapefruit Juice: manufacturer of pazopanib advises avoid concomitant use with
PEGFILGRASTIM see Filgrastim
PEGINTERFERON ALFA see Interferons
Pemextrazed
Antimalarials: antifolate effect of pemextrazed increased by pyrithymetine
Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Penicillamine Analgesics: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when penicillamine given with NSAIDs
Antacids: absorption of penicillamine reduced by antacids
Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of penicillamine with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Cardiac Glycosides: penicillamine possibly reduces plasma concentration of digoxin
Gold: manufacturer of penicillamine advises avoid concomitant use with sodium aurothiomalate (increased risk of toxicity)
Iron: absorption of penicillamine reduced by oral iron
BNFC 2011-2012
Appendix 1: Interactions
Penicillamine (continued)
Paraldehyde (continued)
Disulfiram: risk of toxicity when paraldehyde given with disulfiram
Appendix 1: Interactions

Periprodil see ACE Inhibitors
Perphenazine see Antipsychotics
Peridine see Opioid Analgesics
Phenazine see Opioid Analgesics
Phenelzine see MAOIs

Phenindione

Note: Change in patient’s clinical condition particularly associated with liver disease, intercurrent illness, or drug administration, necessitates more frequent testing. Major changes in diet (especially involving salads and vegetables) and in alcohol consumption may also affect anticoagulant control.

- Alcohol: anticoagulant control with phenindione may be affected by major changes in consumption of alcohol.
- Anabolic Steroids: anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced by anabolic steroids.
- Analgesics: anticoagulant effect of phenindione possibly enhanced by NSAIDs; increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with intravenous diclofenac (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); increased risk of haemorrhage when anticoagulants given with ketorolac (avoid concomitant use, including low-dose heparins); increased risk of bleeding when phenindione given with aspirin (due to antiplatelet effect).
- Anti-arrhythmics: metabolism of phenindione inhibited by amiodarone (enhanced anticoagulant effect).
- Antibacterials: experience in anticoagulant clinics suggests that INR possibly altered when phenindione is given with neomycin (given for local action on gut); anticoagulant effect of phenindione possibly enhanced by levofloxacin and etracyclines; studies have failed to demonstrate an interaction with phenindione, but common experience in anticoagulant clinics is that INR can be altered by a course of broad-spectrum penicillins such as ampicillin; metabolism of phenindione possibly inhibited by sulphonamides.
- Antivirals: anticoagulant effect of phenindione possibly enhanced by tenofovir.
- Clopidogrel: anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced by antiplatelet action of clopidogrel.
- Corticosteroids: anticoagulant effect of phenindione may be enhanced or reduced by corticosteroids.
- Diprydamole: anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced due to antiplatelet action of diprydamole.
- Enteral Foods: anticoagulant effect of phenindione antagonised by vitamin K (present in some enteral feeds).
- Iloprofen: increased risk of bleeding when phenindione given with iloprost.
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: anticoagulant effect of phenindione may be enhanced or reduced bycolesteryramine; anticoagulant effect of phenindione possibly enhanced by rosuvastatin; anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced bylibrates.
- Oestrogens: anticoagulant effect of phenindione antagonised by oestrogens.
- Prasugrel: possible increased risk of bleeding when phenindione given with prasugrel.
- Progestogens: anticoagulant effect of phenindione antagonised by progestogens.
- Testolactone: anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced by estolactone.
- Testosterone: anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced by estosterone.
- Thyroid Hormones: anticoagulant effect of phenindione enhanced by thyroid hormones.
- VitaminK: anticoagulant effect of phenindione antagonised by vitamin K.

Phenobarbital

- Anti-arrhythmics: (continued) phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of dronedarone—avoid concomitant use.
- Antibacterials: phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of metronidazole (reduced effect); phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of rifampicin; phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of doxycycline (reduced plasma concentration); phenobarbital possibly accelerates metabolism of chloramphenicol (reduced plasma concentration); phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of ethosuximide, rifampicin and topiramate; phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of lamotrigine, tiagabine and zonisamide; plasma concentration of phenobarbital increased by oxcarbazepine; also plasma concentration of an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine reduced; plasma concentration of phenobarbital often increased by phenytin, plasma concentration of phenytin often reduced but may be increased; plasma concentration of phenobarbital increased by estradiol; plasma concentration of phenobarbital increased by valproate (also plasma concentration of valproate reduced).
- Antifungals: phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of itraconazole and posaconazole; phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole—avoid concomitant use; phenobarbital reduces absorption of griseofulvin (reduced effect).
- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of anti-epileptics antagonised by metloquine.
- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered); phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of haloperidol (reduced plasma concentration); plasma concentration of both drugs reduced when phenobarbital given with chlorpromazine; phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of aripiprazole—increase dose of aripiprazole; phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of doxapram.
- Antivirals: phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of abacavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir and saquinavir; avoidance of phenobarbital advised by manufacturer of stavudine.
- Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: phenobarbital often reduces plasma concentration of clonazepam; Aprepitant: phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of aprepitant.
- Alcohol: phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of propanolol.
- Calcium-channel Blockers: phenobarbital probably reduces effects of calcium-channel blockers; avoidance of phenobarbital advised by manufacturer of iradipine; avoidance of phenobarbital advised by...
Antibacterials: see Phenoxymethylpenicillin.

Corticosteroids: Ciclosporin: metabolism of ciclosporin (reduced plasma concentration) and its active metabolite is inhibited.

Calcium-channel Blockers: Avoidance of phenobarbital advised by manufacturer of eplerenone—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of osteomalia when phenobarbital given with carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.

Diuretics: Phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of furosemide; plasma concentration of ethacrynic acid possibly reduced; phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of ethinylestradiol; plasma concentration of estradiol possibly reduced; phenobarbital possibly increases requirement for folic acid; phenobarbital possibly increases requirement for vitamin D.

Phenothiazines: avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics given with chlorpromazine; phenobarbital possibly increases requirement for vitamin D.

Phenobarbital
- Calcium-channel Blockers (continued) manufacturer of nimodipine (plasma concentration of nimodipine reduced).
- Ciclosporin: phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of ciclosporin (reduced plasma concentration).
- Corticosteroids: phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of corticosteroids (reduced effect).
- Cytotoxic: avoidance of phenobarbital advised by manufacturer of gemtuzumab; phenobarbital possibly reduces plasma concentration of etoposide; phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of riminotecan and its active metabolite.
- Diuretics: phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of spironolactone—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of osteomalacia when phenobarbital given with carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.
- Folic acid effect: metabolised by phenobarbital; folic acid effect possibly reduced.
- Folic acid: phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of folic acid.
- Oestrogen: phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of oestrogen (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398).
- Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat.
- Progesterone: phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of progesterone (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398).
- Sodium Oxybate: avoidance of phenobarbital advised by manufacturer of sodium oxybate.
- Symphonimetics: plasma concentration of phenobarbital possibly increased by methylphenidate.
- Tacrolimus: phenobarbital reduces plasma concentration of tacrolimus.
- Thyroid Hormones: phenobarbital accelerates metabolism of thyroid hormones (may increase requirements for thyroid hormones in hypothyroidism).
- Urapidil: avoidance of phenobarbital advised by manufacturer of urapidil (concurrent use of eplerenone possibly reduced).
- Vitamins: phenobarbital possibly increases requirement for vitamin D.

Phenothiazines see Antipsychotics.

Phenoxymethylpenicillin see Alpha-blockers.

Phenylephrine see Alpha-blockers.

Phenytoin
- Note: Fosphenytoin interactions as for phenytoin.
- Alcohol: plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly reduced by chronic heavy consumption of alcohol.
- Analgesics: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of methadone (reduced effect and risk of withdrawal effects); effects of phenytoin enhanced by aspirin; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised bySSRIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John's Wort; phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of triazolam, lorazepam and nitrazepam.
- Antacids: absorption of phenytoin reduced by antacids.
- Antibacterials: phenytoin possibly increased by sulfonamides; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of telithromycin (avoid during and for 2 weeks after phenytoin); plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by trimethoprim (also increased antifolate effect).
- Anticoagulants: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of warfarin (possibility of reduced anticoagulant effect, but enhancement also reported).
- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by fluoxetine and fluvoxamine; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of venlafaxine, mirtazapine and paroxetine; plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased by sertraline, also phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of sertraline possibly reduced; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised bySSRIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John's Wort; phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of triazolam, lorazepam and nitrazepam.
- Anti-diabetics: plasma concentration of phenytoin transiently increased by tolbutamide (possibility of toxicity).
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of both drugs often reduced when phenytoin given with carbamazepine, also plasma concentration of phenytoin may be increased; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of elagarcabazine, also plasma concentration of phenytoin increased, plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased by ethosuximide, also plasma concentration of ethosuximide possibly reduced; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of lamotrigine, tiagabine and zonisamide; plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by oxcarbazepine, also plasma concentration of an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine reduced; phenytoin often increases plasma concentration of phenytoin; plasma concentration of phenytoin often increased but may be increased; phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of rufinamide, also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased; plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by anticonvulsants; plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by omeprazole (also plasma concentration of topiramate reduced); plasma concentration of phenytoin increased or possibly reduced when given with valproate, also plasma concentration of phenytoin reduced by vigabatrin.
- Anti-fungals: phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of ketoconazole and posaconazole; anticonvulsant effect of phenytoin enhanced by miconazole (plasma concentration of phenytoin increased); phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of itraconazole—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by voriconazole, also phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole (increase dose of voriconazole and also monitor for phenytoin toxicity); phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of caspofungin—consider increasing dose of caspofungin.
- Antimalarials: phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by mephenytoin; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by pyrvinium, also increased antifolate effect.
- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered); phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of haloperidol; plasma concentration of phenytoin transiently increased by tolbutamide (possibility of toxicity).

Phenylbutyrate see Antisense Drugs.
Phenytoin

- Antipsychotics (continued)
  possibly increased or decreased by chlorpromazine; phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of propafenone; increase dose of aripiprazole; phenytoin accelerates metabolism of clozapine and quetiapine (reduced plasma concentration)

- Antivirals: phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of abacavir, darunavir, lopinavir and saquinavir; avoidance of phenytoin advised by manufacturer of etravirine; phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of indinavir; also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased; plasma concentration of phenytoin reduced by nefluna; phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of ritonavir, also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly affected; plasma concentration of phenytoin increased or decreased by zidovudine

Antiarrhythmics and Antiarrhythmics: phenytoin often reduces plasma concentration of diltiazem but also effect of diltiazem reduced

Calcium-channel Blockers: phenytoin reduces effects of felodipine and verapamil; avoidance of phenytoin advised by manufacturer of isradipine; avoidance of phenytoin advised by manufacturer of nimodipine (plasma concentration of nimodipine possibly reduced); plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by nitritazem but also effect of nitritazem reduced

Cardiac Glycosides: phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of digoxin

Ciclosporin: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of ciclosporin (reduced plasma concentration)

Corticosteroids: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of corticosteroids (reduced effect)

Cytotoxics: phenytoin possibly reduces plasma concentration of busulfan and etoposide; metabolism of phenytoin possibly inhibited by fluorouracil (increased risk of toxicity); phenytoin increases anti-angiogenesis effect of methotrexate; plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly reduced by cisplatin; avoidance of phenytoin advised by manufacturer of gefitinib and lapatinib; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of omeprazole—avoid concomitant use; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of irinotecan and its active metabolite

Diuretics: plasma concentration of phenytoin reduced by diazoxide, also effect of diazoxide may be reduced

Disulfiram: metabolism of phenytoin inhibited by disulfiram (increased risk of toxicity)

Dopaminergics: plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased by apomorphine; phenytoin antagonises effects of furosemide; phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of epereonone—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of osteomalacia when phenytoin given with carbonic anhydrase inhibitors

Dopaminergic: phenytoin possibly reduces effects of levodopa

Enteral Foods: absorption of phenytoin possibly reduced by enteral feeds

Folates: plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly reduced by folates

Hormone Antagonists: phenytoin possibly accelerates metabolism of tamoxifen

SH, Antagonists: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of ondansetron (reduced effect)

Levetiracetam: plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased by levetiracetam

Levamisole: plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased by levamisole

Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of phenytoin possibly reduced by colesteval; combination of phenytoin with fluvastatin may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both)

Lithium: neurotoxicity may occur when phenytoin given with lithium without increased plasma concentration of lithium

Modafinil: plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased by modafinil

Muscle Relaxants: phenytoin antagonises muscle relaxant effect of non-depolarising muscle relaxants (accelerated recovery from neuromuscular blockade)

Oestrogens: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat

Progestogens: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of progestogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Sulfonpyrazone: plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by sulfonpyrazone

Symptomatic: plasma concentration of phenytoin increased by sulfonpyrazone

Tacrolimus: phenytoin reduces plasma concentration of tacrolimus, also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased

Theophylline: plasma concentration of both drugs reduced when phenytoin given with theophylline

Thyroid Hormones: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of thyroid hormones (may increase requirements in hypothyroidism), also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased

Ticlopidine: phenytoin accelerates metabolism of ticlopidine

Ulcer-healing Drugs: metabolism of phenytoin inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration); effects of phenytoin enhanced by omeprazole; effects of phenytoin possibly enhanced by omeprazole; absorption of phenytoin reduced by sucralfate

Ulipristal: avoidance of phenytoin advised by manufacturer of ulipristal (contraceptive effect of ulipristal possibly reduced)

Vaccines: effects of phenytoin enhanced by influenza vaccine

Vitamins: phenytoin possibly increases requirements for vitamin D

Phosphodiesterase Type-3 Inhibitors

- Anagrelide: avoidance of enoximone and milrinone advised by manufacturer of anagrelide

Physostigmine see Parasympathomimetics

Pilocarpine see Parasympathomimetics

Pimozide see Antipsychotics

Pindolol see Beta-blockers

Pioglitazone see Antidiabetics

Piperacillin see Penicillins

Pipotiazine see Antipsychotics

Piroxicam see NSAIDs

Pirmecillinam see Penicillins

Pizotifen

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: pizotifen antagonises hypotensive effect of adrenergic neurone blockers

Aldesleukin: avoidance of cisplatin advised by manufacturer of aldesleukin

Antibacterials: increased risk of nephrotoxicity and possibly of ototoxicity when phenytoin compounds with aminoglycosides or polymyxins; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity when platinum compounds given with capreomycin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and possibly of ototoxicity when cisplatin given with vancomycin
Platinum Compounds (continued)
Antiepileptics: cisplatin possibly reduces plasma concentration of phenytoin.

Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis).

Cytoxics: increased risk of otoxicity when cisplatin given with dexamethasone; increased pulmonary toxicity when cisplatin given with amphotericin B and methotrexate.

Diuretics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity when platinum compounds given with diuretics.

Polyoxymyxin B see Polyoxymyxins

Polyoxymyxins
Antibacterials: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when colistimethate sodium or polyoxymyxins given with aminoglycosides; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when colistimethate sodium or polyoxymyxins given with capreomycin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when polyoxymyxins given with vancomycin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity when colistimethate sodium given with vancomycin.

Antifungals: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when polyoxymyxins given with amphotericin B.

Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when polyoxymyxins given with ciclosporin.

Cytoxics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity and possibly of otoxicity when polyoxymyxins given with platinum compounds.

Diuretics: increased risk of ototoxicity when polyoxymyxins given with loop diuretics.

Muscle Relaxants: polyoxymyxins enhance effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants and suxamethonium.

Parasympathomimetics: polyoxymyxins antagonise effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine and enhance effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine.

Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620.

Polystyrene Sulphonate Resins
Antacids: risk of intestinal obstruction when polystyrene sulphonate resins given with aluminium hydroxide; risk of metabolic alkalosis when poly styrene sulphonate resins given with oral magnesium salts.

Thyroid Hormones: polystyrene sulphonate resins reduce absorption of levothyroxine.

Posaconazole see Antifungals, Triazole.

Potassium Canrenoate see Diuretics

Potassium Aminobenzoate
Antibacterials: potassium aminobenzoate inhibits effects of sulfonamides.

Potassium Sarcobonate see Potassium Salts

Potassium Chloride see Potassium Salts

Potassium Citrate see Potassium Salts

Potassium Salts
Note: Includes salt substitutes.

ACE Inhibitors: increased risk of severe hyperkalaemia when potassium salts given with ACE inhibitors.

Aliskiren: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium salts given with aliskiren.

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium salts given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists.

Antibacterials: avoid concomitant use of potassium citrate with methenamine.

Ciclosporin: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium salts given with ciclosporin.

Diuretics: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium salts given with diuretics and aldosterone antagonists.

Tacrolimus: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when potassium salts given with tacrolimus.

Pramipexole
Antipsychotics: manufacturer of pramipexole advises avoid concomitant use of antipsychotics (antagonism of effect).

Mernantine: effects of dopamineergics possibly enhanced by mernantine.

Pramipexole (continued)
Methylidopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopamineergics antagonised by methylidopa.

Ulcer-Healing Drugs: excretion of pramipexole reduced by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration).

Prasugrel
Analgesics: possible increased risk of bleeding when prasugrel given with NSAIDs.

Anticoagulants: possible increased risk of bleeding when prasugrel given with coumarins or phenindione.

Clopodigrel: possible increased risk of bleeding when prasugrel given with clopidoogrel.

Pravastatin see Statins.

Prazosin see Alpha-blockers.

Prednisolone see Corticosteroids.

Prednison see Corticosteroids.

Prilocaine

Antiarrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when prilocaine given with anti-arrhythmics.

Antibacterials: increased risk of methaemoglobinemia when prilocaine given with sulfonamides.

Primarine

Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of arteether/lumefantrine.

Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of histamine.

Mepactrine: plasma concentration of primamine increased with mepactrine (increased risk of toxicity).

Vaccines: antimalarials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620.

Primidone see Phenobarbital.

Probenecid

ACE Inhibitors: probenecid reduces excretion of captoprino.

Anasthetics, General: probenecid possibly enhances effects of diopental.

Analgesics: probenecid reduces excretion of dextroketoprofen, indometacin, eletroprofen and naproksen (increased plasma concentration); probenecid reduces excretion of diclofenac (increased plasma concentration)—avoid concomitant use; effects of probenecid antagonised by aspirin.

Antibacterials: probenecid reduces excretion of doripenem (manufacturers of doripenem advise avoid concomitant use); probenecid reduces excretion of meropenem; probenecid reduces excretion of cephalosporins, ciprofloxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin and penicillins (increased plasma concentration); probenecid reduces excretion of dapsone and nitrofurantoin (increased risk of side-effects); effects of probenecid antagonised by pyrazinamide.

Antivirals: probenecid reduces excretion of aciclovir (increased plasma concentration); probenecid possibly reduces excretion of famciclovir (increased plasma concentration); probenecid reduces excretion of ganciclovir and vidovudine (increased plasma concentration and risk of toxicity).

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: probenecid reduces excretion of lorazepam (increased plasma concentration); probenecid possibly reduces excretion of nitrazepam (increased plasma concentration).

Cytoxics: probenecid reduces excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity).

Sodium Benzote: probenecid possibly reduces excretion of conjugate formed by sodium benzoate.

Sodium Phenylbutyrate: probenecid possibly reduces excretion of conjugate formed by sodium phenylbutyrate.

Procarbazine
Alcohol: disulfiram-like reaction when procarbazine given with alcohol.

Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis).

Cardiac Glycosides: probcarbazine possibly reduces absorption of digoxin tablets.

Prochlorperazine see Antipsychotics.

Promyclidine see Antimuscarinics.
Progestogens see Progestogens

Progestogens

Note Interactions of combined oral contraceptives may also apply to combined contraceptive patches and vaginal rings, see p. 398. For further information on interactions of oral progestogen-only contraceptives, see also p. 403; parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives, see also p. 454; the intra-uterine progestogen-only device, see also p. 405; hormonal emergency contraception, see also p. 408

- Antimicrobial: plasma concentration of dienogest increased by cotrimoxazole; metabolism of progestogens accelerated by rifampicin (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)
- Anticoagulants: progestogens may increase hepatic clearance of warfarin; progestogens antagonise anticoagulant effect of phenindione
- Antidepressants: progestogens antagonise hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics
- Antiepileptics: metabolism of progestogens accelerated by carbamazepine, etosuximide, phenobarbital, phenytoin, cefalotin and ceftriaxone (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398); desogestrel possibly increases plasma concentration of lamotrigine
- Antifungals: progestogens possibly increase plasma concentration of voriconazole; anecdotal reports of contraceptive failure and menstrual irregularities when progestogens were given with griseofulvin; occasional reports of breakthrough bleeding when progestogens (used for contraception) were given with terbinafine
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of norethisterone increased by atazanavir; contraceptive effect of progestogens possibly increased by efavirenz and nevirapine; metabolism of progestogens accelerated by nevirapine (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)
- Antiparkinsonian: possible contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing progestogens when given with aprepitant (alternative contraception recommended)
- Bosentan: possible contraceptive failure of hormonal contraceptives containing progestogens when given with bosentan (alternative contraception recommended)
- Cisoprostol: progestogens possibly increase plasma concentration of cisoprostol
- Diuretics: risk of hyperkalaemia when drospirenone was given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists (monitor serum potassium during first cycle)
- Dopaminergics: progestogens increase plasma concentration of selegiline—manufacturer of selegiline advises avoid concomitant use
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: plasma concentration of nor-ethisterone increased by atorvastatin; plasma concentration of active metabolite of norgestimate increased by rosuvastatin; plasma concentration of norethisterone increased by rosuvastatin
- Muscle Relaxants: progestogens possibly increase plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity)
- Sibutramine: plasma concentration of progestogens increased by atazanavir
- Sugammadex: plasma concentration of progestogens possibly reduced by sugammadex—manufacturer of sugammadex advises additional contraceptive precautions
- Ulipristal: contraceptive effect of progestogens possibly reduced by ulipristal

Progynon

- Antimalarials (continued) increased antifolate effect when progynon given with pyrimethamine
- Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of histamine
- Vaccines: antimalarials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Promazine see Antipsychotics

Promethazine see Antihistamines

Propanolol

Anaesthetic, Local: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, prilocaine or ropivacaine
- Anti-arrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with other anti-arrhythmics
- Antibacterials: metabolism of propranolol accelerated by rifampicin (reduced effect)
- Anticoagulants: propranolol enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
- Antidepressants: propranolol possibly increases plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of arrhythmias when propranolol given with antipsychotics; propranolol possibly increased by paroxetine (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of arrhythmias when propranolol given with corticosteroids; propranolol possibly reduced by susacolin—avoid concomitant use
- Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when propranolol given with zoloflat—avoid concomitant use

Propafenone

- Antiarrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when propranolol given with propranolol—avoid concomitant use
- Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when propranolol given with antipsychotics that prolong the QT interval
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of propranolol possibly increased by lamivudine (increased risk of toxicity); plasma concentration of propranolol increased by ritonavir (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when propranolol given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use
- Beta-blockers: increased myocardial depression when anti-arrhythmics given with beta-blockers; propranolol enhances plasma concentration of metoprolol and propranolol
- Cardiac Glycosides: propranolol increases plasma concentration of digoxin (halve dose of digoxin)
- Cisoprostol: propranolol possibly increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin
- Parasympathomimetics: propranolol possibly antagonises effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine
- Thiohexamide: propranolol increases plasma concentration of theophylline
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of propranolol increased by omeprazole

Pronethaline see Antimuscarinics

Propiverine see Antimuscarinics

Propofol see Anaesthetics, General

Propranolol see Beta-blockers

Prostaglandins

ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with ACE inhibitors
- Alpha-Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with alpha-blockers
- Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with beta-blockers
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with calcium-channel blockers
- Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with clonidine
- Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when alprostadil given with diazoxide
Prostaglandins (continued)

Diuretics: enhanced hypertensive effect when alprenoradil given with
Methyldopa: enhanced hypertensive effect when alprenoradil given with methyldopa
Moxonidine: enhanced hypertensive effect when alprenoradil given with moxonidine
Nitrites: enhanced hypertensive effect when alprenoradil given with nitrites
Oxytocin: prostaglandins potentiate uterotonic effect of oxytocin

Vasoconstrictor Antihypertensives: enhanced hypertensive effect when alprenoradil given with hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside

Protein Kinase Inhibitors see Symptomaticimetics

Proton Pump Inhibitors

Antacids: absorption of lansoprazole possibly reduced by antacids
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of both drugs increased when omeprazole given with clarithromycin

- Anticoagulants: esomeprazole, omeprazole and pantoprazole possibly enhance anticoagulant effect of clopidogrel
- Antidepressants: omeprazole increases plasma concentration of escitalopram; plasma concentration of lansoprazole possibly increased by fluvoxamine; plasma concentration of omeprazole possibly reduced by St John’s wort
- Antiepileptics: esomeprazole enhances effects of phenytoin; omeprazole possibly enhances effects of phenytoin
- Antifungals: proton pump inhibitors reduce absorption of itraconazole and ketoconazole; avoidance of proton pump inhibitors advised by manufacturer of posaconazole (plasma concentration of posaconazole possibly reduced); plasma concentration of esomeprazole possibly increased by voriconazole; plasma concentration of omeprazole increased by voriconazole (consider reducing dose of omeprazole)
- Antipsychotics: omeprazole possibly reduces plasma concentration of clozapine
- Antivirals: proton pump inhibitors reduce plasma concentration of atazanavir—avoid or adjust dose of both drugs (consult product literature); omeprazole reduces plasma concentration of nefavir—avoid concomitant use; proton pump inhibitors possibly increase plasma concentration of raltegravir—manufacturer of raltegravir advises avoid concomitant use; omeprazole increases plasma concentration of atazanavir—avoid concomitant use; esomeprazole, lansoprazole, pantoprazole and rabeprazole possibly increase plasma concentration of atazanavir—manufacturer of atazanavir advises avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of esomeprazole and omeprazole reduced by raltegravir
- Antikoagulants: plasma concentration of warfarin
- Anti-inflammatory drugs: plasma concentration of celecoxib
- Cardiac Glycosides: proton pump inhibitors possibly slightly increase plasma concentration of digoxin
- Ciclopentol: omeprazole possibly affects plasma concentration of ciclosporin
- Clopidogrel: esomeprazole and omeprazole reduce antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel; lansoprazole, pantoprazole and rabeprazole possibly reduce antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel
- Cytotoxics: omeprazole possibly reduces excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity); avoidance of esomeprazole, lansoprazole, pantoprazole and rabeprazole advised by manufacturer of erlotinib; omeprazole reduces plasma concentration of

Proton Pump Inhibitors

- Cytotoxics (continued)
  - Erlotinib—manufacturer of erlotinib advises avoid concomitant use; proton pump inhibitors possibly reduce absorption of lapatinib
  - Tacrolimus: omeprazole possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: absorption of lansoprazole possibly reduced by sucralfate
- Ulipristal: avoidance of proton pump inhibitors advised by manufacturer of ulipristal (plasma concentration of ulipristal possibly reduced)

Pseudephedrine see Sympathomimetics

Pyrazinamide

- Probenecid: pyrazinamide antagonises effects of probenecid
- Sulfinpyrazone: pyrazinamide antagonises effects of sulfinpyrazone
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Pyridostigmine see Parasympathomimetics

Pyridoxine see Vitamins

Pyrimethamine

- Antibacterials: increased antifolate effect when pyrimethamine given with sulphonamides or trimethoprim
- Antiepileptics: pyrimethamine antagonises anti-convulsant effect of phenytoin, also increased antifolate effect
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine; increased antifolate effect when pyrimethamine given with proguaunil
- Antivirals: increased antifolate effect when pyrimethamine given with zidovudine
- Cytotoxics: pyrimethamine increases antifolate effect of methotrexate and pemetrexed
- Histamine: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of histamine
- Vaccines: antimalarials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Quetiapine see Antipsychotics

Quinagolide

- Memantine: effects of dopamine agonists possibly enhanced by memantine
- Metyldopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopamine agonists antagonised by metyldopa

Quinapril see ACE Inhibitors

Quinine

- Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when quinine given with amiodarone—avoid concomitant use; quinine increases plasma concentration of recaonide
- Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when quinine given with moxifloxacin—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of quinine reduced by sulpiride
- Anticoagulants: plasma concentration of both drugs increased when quinine given with warfarin
- Antimalarials: avoidance of antimalarials advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when quinine given with amiodarone (but should not prevent the use of intravenous quinine in severe cases)
- Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when quinine given with droperidol or pinpinoxide—avoid concomitant use; possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when quinine given with haloperidol—avoid concomitant use
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of quinine possibly increased by ritonavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, indinavir, nevirapin and etravirine (increased risk of toxicity); plasma concentration of quinine increased by ritonavir (increased risk of toxicity); increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when
Appendix 1: Interactions

Quinolones (continued)
- Cytotoxic: nalidixic acid increases risk of melphalan toxicity; ciprofloxacin possibly reduces excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity); ciprofloxacin increases plasma concentration of erlotinib; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when levofloxacin or moxifloxacin given with arsenic trioxide
- Dairy Products: absorption of ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin reduced by dairy products
- Dopaminergics: ciprofloxacin increases plasma concentration of rasagiline; ciprofloxacin inhibits metabolism of ropinirole (increased plasma concentration)
- SHIT, Agonists: quinolones possibly inhibit metabolism of zolmitriptan (reduce dose of zolmitriptan)
- Iron: absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin reduced by oral iron
- Lanthanum: absorption of quinolones possibly reduced by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours before or 4 hours after lanthanum)
- Muscle Relaxants: norfloxacin possibly increases plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity); ciprofloxacin increases plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use
- Mycophenolate: norfloxacin possibly reduces bioavailability of mycophenolate
- Pentamidine Isetionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when moxifloxacin given with pentamidine isetionate—avoid concomitant use
- Probeneclid: excretion of ciprofloxacin, nalidixic acid and norfloxacin reduced by probeneclid (increased plasma concentration)
- Sevelamer: bioavailability of ciprofloxacin reduced by sevelamer
- Strontium Ranelate: absorption of quinolones reduced by strontium ranelate (manufacturer of strontium ranelate advises avoid concomitant use)
- Theophylline: possible increased risk of convulsions when quinolones given with theophylline; ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin increase plasma concentration of theophylline

Ulcer-healing Drugs: absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin reduced by sucralfate
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Zinc: absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin reduced by zinc

Rabeprazole see Proton Pump Inhibitors

Ranolazine
- Anti-arrhythmics: manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use with disopyramide

Quinolones (continued)
- Cytotoxic: nalidixic acid increases risk of melphalan toxicity; ciprofloxacin possibly reduces excretion of methotrexate (increased risk of toxicity); ciprofloxacin increases plasma concentration of erlotinib; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when levofloxacin or moxifloxacin given with arsenic trioxide
- Dairy Products: absorption of ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin reduced by dairy products
- Dopaminergics: ciprofloxacin increases plasma concentration of rasagiline; ciprofloxacin inhibits metabolism of ropinirole (increased plasma concentration)
- SHIT, Agonists: quinolones possibly inhibit metabolism of zolmitriptan (reduce dose of zolmitriptan)
- Iron: absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin reduced by oral iron
- Lanthanum: absorption of quinolones possibly reduced by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours before or 4 hours after lanthanum)
- Muscle Relaxants: norfloxacin possibly increases plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity); ciprofloxacin increases plasma concentration of tizanidine (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use
- Mycophenolate: norfloxacin possibly reduces bioavailability of mycophenolate
- Pentamidine Isetionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when moxifloxacin given with pentamidine isetionate—avoid concomitant use
- Probeneclid: excretion of ciprofloxacin, nalidixic acid and norfloxacin reduced by probeneclid (increased plasma concentration)
- Sevelamer: bioavailability of ciprofloxacin reduced by sevelamer
- Strontium Ranelate: absorption of quinolones reduced by strontium ranelate (manufacturer of strontium ranelate advises avoid concomitant use)
- Theophylline: possible increased risk of convulsions when quinolones given with theophylline; ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin increase plasma concentration of theophylline

Ulcer-healing Drugs: absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin reduced by sucralfate
- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Zinc: absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and ofloxacin reduced by zinc

Rabeprazole see Proton Pump Inhibitors

Ranolazine
- Anti-arrhythmics: manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use with disopyramide

Antihistamines
- Antidepressants
- Analgesics
- Quinolones
- Calcium Salts
- Antiepileptics
- Antacids
- Histamine
- Avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use
BNFC 2011–2012

Appendix 1: Interactions

Ranolazine (continued)
- Antioxidants: plasma concentration of ranolazine possibly increased by l-carnitine
- Antihypertensives: ranolazine possibly increases plasma concentration of Losartan when given concomitantly. Ranolazine increases plasma concentration of Losartan possibly by inhibiting CYP3A4.
- Antacids: reduce gastric pH and reduce bioavailability of ranolazine when given concomitantly.
- Lithium: increases plasma concentration of ranolazine when given concomitantly.
- Rifamycins accelerate metabolism of ranolazine, and rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of ranolazine possibly by inducing CYP3A4.
- Posaconazole, itraconazole and ketoconazole: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when given concomitantly.
- Zidovudine: increased risk of toxicity when given concomitantly.
- Nelfinavir, indinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir and fosamprenavir: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when given concomitantly.
- Telithromycin: manufacturer of telithromycin advises avoidance of telithromycin when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Gemfibrozil: manufacturer of gemfibrozil advises avoidance of gemfibrozil when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Cholestyramine: manufacturer of cholestyramine advises avoidance of cholestyramine when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Erythromycin, clarithromycin and telithromycin: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when given concomitantly.
- Telithromycin: manufacturer of telithromycin advises avoidance of telithromycin when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Rifampicin: possibly reduced bioavailability of ranolazine when given concomitantly.
- Cyclosporine: manufacturer of cyclosporine advises avoidance of cyclosporine when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Hepatotoxic drugs: possible increased risk of hepatotoxicity when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: increased risk of skeletal myopathy when given concomitantly.
- Methadone: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Rifaximin: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Rifampicin: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when given concomitantly with ranolazine.
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of hypertriglyceridaemia when given concomitantly.
- Thyroid hormones: possible increased risk of hypothyroidism when given concomitantly.
- Thyroid suppression tests: possible increased risk of hypothyroidism when given concomitantly.
- Cyclosporine: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Analgesics: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Diuretics: possible increased risk of hypokalaemia when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
- Alcohol: possible increased risk of hypotension when given concomitantly.
Antidiabetics: rifampicin accelerates metabolism of glucose and insulin; rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of insulin.

Antihypertensives: rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of nifedipine; rifampicin possibly accelerates metabolism of atorvastatin and simvastatin.

Antimicrobial agents: rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of saquinavir; rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of efavirenz; rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of nevirapine; rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir, maraviroc and nelfinavir.

Cytotoxic drugs: rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of etoposide; rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of mitomycin; rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of tamoxifen.

Hormone Antagonists: rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of exemestane.

Lipid-regulating Drugs: rifampicin accelerates metabolism of atorvastatin and simvastatin; rifampicin correlates with increased risk of hepatotoxicity.

Antivirals (continued):
- Adefovir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of adefovir increased by ritonavir; rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of efavirenz, nevirapine and atazanavir.
- Enfuvirtide (continued): rifampicin possibly reduces plasma concentration of enfuvirtide.
- Foscarnet—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of foscarnet increased by ritonavir.
- Maraviroc—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of maraviroc increased by ritonavir.
- Maraviroc possibly reduces plasma concentration of efavirenz.
- Nelfinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of nelfinavir increased by ritonavir.
- Nelfinavir possibly reduces plasma concentration of efavirenz.
- Nelfinavir possibly reduces plasma concentration of ritonavir.
- Raltegravir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of raltegravir increased by ritonavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of efavirenz.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of etravirine.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of indinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of saquinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of etravirine.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of indinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of saquinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of darunavir.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc.
- Raltegravir possibly reduces plasma concentration of nelfinavir.
**Anticoagulants:**
- Prostogegens: rifamycins accelerate metabolism of phenprocoumon (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)
- Phenprocoumon: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of phenprocoumon—manufacturer of phenprocoumon advises avoid concomitant use
- Dabigatran: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of dabigatran—consider increasing dose of dabigatran
- Sirolimus: rifabutin reduces plasma concentration of sirolimus—avoid concomitant use
- Risedronate Sodium: rifampicin possibly increases plasma concentration of risedronate
- Tolvaptan: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of tolvaptan
- Ulipristal: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of ulipristal

**Antibacterials:**
- Bacteriostatic: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of antibiotics (continued)
- Clarithromycin, erythromycin: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of clarithromycin and erythromycin
- Dextromethorphan: rifampicin decreases plasma concentration of dextromethorphan
- Piroxicam: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of piroxicam
- Urapidil: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of urapidil

**Anti-arrhythmics:**
- Dronedarone: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of dronedarone
- Amlodipine: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of amlodipine
- Ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use
- Telithromycin: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of telithromycin

**Analgesics:**
- Lidocaine: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of lidocaine
- Dextropropoxyphene: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of dextropropoxyphene
- Codeine, Pethidine: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of codeine and pethidine

**Ulcer-healing Drugs:**
- Proton pump inhibitors: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of proton pump inhibitors
- Calcium-channel Blockers: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of calcium-channel blockers
- Cimetidine: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of cimetidine
- Ranolazine: manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use
- Midazolam: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of midazolam

**Antipsychotics:**
- Clozapine: rifampicin possibly enhances plasma concentration of clozapine
- Aripiprazole: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of aripiprazole
- Aripiprazole: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of aripiprazole
- Paliperidone: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of paliperidone
- Ziprasidone: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of ziprasidone
- Olanzapine: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of olanzapine

**Antidepressants:**
- Paroxetine: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of paroxetine
- Citalopram: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of citalopram
- Leflunomide: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of leflunomide
- Ranolazine: manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use
- Tolvaptan: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of tolvaptan
- Ulipristal: rifampicin reduces plasma concentration of ulipristal

**Antipsychotics:**
- Clozapine: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of clozapine
- Paliperidone: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of paliperidone
- Aripiprazole: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of aripiprazole

**Bupropion:**
- Rifampicin increases plasma concentration of bupropion

**Calcium-channel Blockers:**
- Calcitonin: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of calcitonin

**Antihyperglycemics:**
- Glibenclamide: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of glibenclamide

**Antihypertensives:**
- Lisinopril: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of lisinopril

**Antithrombotics:**
- Ticagrelor: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of ticagrelor

**Anticonvulsants:**
- Carbamazepine: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of carbamazepine
- Valproate: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of valproate

**Antifebrile:**
- Acetaminophen: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of acetaminophen

**Antihistamines:**
- Loratadine: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of loratadine

**Antiarrhythmics:**
- Cholinergic: rifampicin increases plasma concentration of cholinergic
Appendix 1: Interactions

Ritonavir (continued)

- Corticosteroids: ritonavir possibly increases plasma concentration of corticosteroids, dexamethasone and prednisolone; ritonavir increases plasma concentration of inhaled and intranasal budesonide and fluticasone.

- Cytotoxics: ritonavir possibly increases plasma concentration of etoposide and mitoxantrone—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of ritonavir advised by manufacturer of liposomal and intrathecal.

- Diuretics: ritonavir increases plasma concentration of eplerenone—avoid concomitant use

- Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when ritonavir given with ergotamine and methylsergide—avoid concomitant use

- 5HT Agonists: ritonavir increases plasma concentration of eletriptan (risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use

- Ibrabradine: ritonavir possibly increases plasma concentration of labradine—avoid concomitant use

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of myopathy when ritonavir given with atorvastatin; possible increased risk of myopathy when ritonavir given with rosuvastatin; manufacturer of rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when ritonavir given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use)

- Oestrogens: ritonavir accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

- Ranolazine: ritonavir possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

- Sildenafil: ritonavir possibly increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—manufacturer of sildenafil advises avoid concomitant use

- Tacrolimus: ritonavir possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus

- Tadalafil: ritonavir increases plasma concentration of tadalafil—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoid concomitant use

- Theophylline: ritonavir accelerates metabolism of theophylline (reduced plasma concentration)

- Memantine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by memantine

- Methyldopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyldopa

- Metoclopramide: manufacturer of ritonavir advises avoid concomitant use of metoclopramide (antagonism of effect)

- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of oestrogens increased by oestrogens

- Ritonavir—manufacturer of ritonavir advises avoid concomitant use with ritonavir; plasma concentration of ritonavir increased by ritonavir—manufacturer of ritonavir advises avoid concomitant use

Roflumilast

- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of roflumilast reduced by rifampicin—consider increasing dose of roflumilast

- Antidepressants: metabolism of roflumilast inhibited by fluvoxamine

- Theophylline: manufacturer of roflumilast advises avoid concomitant use with theophylline

- Ulcer-Healing Drugs: metabolism of roflumilast inhibited by cimetidine

Ropinirole

- Antibacterials: metabolism of ropinirole inhibited by ciprofloxacin (increased plasma concentration)

- Antipsychotics: manufacturer of ropinirole advises avoid concomitant use of antipsychotics (antagonism of effect)

- Memantine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by memantine

- Methyldopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyldopa

- Metoclopramide: manufacturer of ropinirole advises avoid concomitant use of metoclopramide (antagonism of effect)

- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of ropinirole increased by oestrogens

Ropivacaine

- Anti-arrhythmics: increased myocardial depression when ropivacaine given with anti-arrhythmics

- Antidepressants: metabolism of ropivacaine inhibited by fluvoxamine—avoid prolonged administration of ropivacaine

Rosuvastatin see Statins

Rotigotine

- Antipsychotics: manufacturer of rotigotine advises avoid concomitant use of antipsychotics (antagonism of effect)

- Memantine: effects of dopaminergics possibly enhanced by memantine

- Methyldopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyldopa

- Metoclopramide: manufacturer of rotigotine advises avoid concomitant use of metoclopramide (antagonism of effect)

Rufinamide

- Antidepressants: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsive threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort

- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of both drugs possibly reduced when rufinamide given with carbamazepine; plasma concentration of rufinamide possibly reduced by phenobarbital; plasma concentration of rufinamide possibly reduced by phenytoin, also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased; plasma concentration of rufinamide possibly increased by valproate (reduce dose of rufinamide)

- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of anti-epileptics antagonised by mefloquine

- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered)

- Oestrogens: rufinamide accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

- Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat

- Progestogens: rufinamide accelerates metabolism of progestogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)

Rupatadine see Antihistamines
St John’s Wort

Analgesics: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of methadone

● Anti-arrhythmics: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of dronedarone—avoid concomitant use

● Antibacterials: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of telithromycin (avoid during and for 2 weeks after St John’s wort)

● Anticoagulants: St John’s wort reduces anticoagulant effect of coumarins (avoid concomitant use)

Antidepressants: possible increased serotonergic effects when St John’s wort given with dalfopristin or venlafaxine; St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of amisulpride; increased serotonergic effects when St John’s wort given with SSRIs—avoid concomitant use

● Antiepileptics: avoid concomitant use of St John’s wort with antiepileptics

● Antifungals: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of voriconazole—avoid concomitant use

● Antimarial: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of arteether/luenefantrine

● Antipsychotics: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of aripiprazole—increase dose of aripiprazole

Antivirals: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of elvitegravir, darunavir, efavirenz,

● Fusamprenavir, indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir,

● Nevirapine, ritonavir and saquinavir—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of St John’s wort advised by manufacturer of etravirine; St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of maraviroc and tipranavir—avoid concomitant use

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of oral midazolam

● Aprepitant: avoidance of St John’s wort advised by manufacturer of aprepitant

Atomoxetine: possible increased risk of convulsions when antidepressants given with atomoxetine (avoid concomitant use)

● Calcium-channel Blockers: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of amiodipine; St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of nifedipine; St John’s wort significantly reduces plasma concentration of verapamil

● Cardiac Glycosides: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of digoxin—avoid concomitant use

● Cilostazol: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of cilostazol—avoid concomitant use

● Cytoxotics: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of everolimus and vinflunine—manufacturer of everolimus and vinflunine advises avoid concomitant use; avoidance of St John’s wort advised by manufacturer of everolimus; St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of imatinib—avoid concomitant use; St John’s wort accelerates metabolism of eflornithine (reduced plasma concentration of eflornithine—avoid concomitant use)

● Diuretics: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of spironolactone—avoid concomitant use

● SHI, Agonists: increased serotonergic effects when St John’s wort given with SHI, agonists—avoid concomitant use

Ivabradine: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of ivabradine—avoid concomitant use

● Lipid-regulating Drugs: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of simvastatin

● Oestrogens: St John’s wort reduces contraceptive effect of oestrogens (avoid concomitant use)

● Progestogens: St John’s wort reduces contraceptive effect of progestogens (avoid concomitant use)

● Tacrolimus: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of tacrolimus—avoid concomitant use

● Theophylline: St John’s wort reduces plasma concentration of theophylline—avoid concomitant use

Ulcet-healing Drugs: St John’s wort possibly reduces plasma concentration of omeprazole

St John’s Wort (continued)

● Ulipristal: avoidance of St John’s wort advised by manufacturer of ulipristal (contraceptive effect of ulipristal possibly reduced)

Salbutamol see Sympathomimetics, Beta,

Salmeterol see Sympathomimetics, Beta,

Saquinavir

● Analgesics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with mifepristone, fentanyl or methadone—avoid concomitant use

● Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with amiodarone, disopyramide, dronedarone, flecainide, lidocaine or propafenone—avoid concomitant use

● Antibacterials: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with clarithromycin, dapsone or erythromycin—avoid concomitant use; saquinavir increases plasma concentration of ritabulin (also plasma concentration of saquinavir reduced); plasma concentration of saquinavir significantly reduced by rifampicin, also risk of hepatotoxicity—avoid concomitant use; avoidance of concomitant saquinavir in severe renal and hepatic impairment advised by manufacturer of elotrustorimycin

Anticoagulants: saquinavir possibly enhances antiocoagulant effect of warfarin; avoidance of saquinavir advised by manufacturer of rivaroxaban

● Antidepressants: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with tramadol or tricyclics—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of saquinavir reduced by St John’s wort—avoid concomitant use

● Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of saquinavir possibly reduced by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin

Antifungals: plasma concentration of saquinavir increased by ketoconazole; plasma concentration of saquinavir possibly increased by imidazoles and triazoles

● Antihistamines: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with nitazoxanide—avoid concomitant use

● Antimarial: caution with saquinavir advised by manufacturer of arteether/luenefantrine; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with quinine—avoid concomitant use

Antimuscarnic: avoidance of saquinavir advised by manufacturer of darifenacin and tolterodine; manufacturer of fesoterodine advises dose reduction when saquinavir given with fesoterodine—consult fesoterodine product literature

● Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with clozapine, haloperidol or pimozide—avoid concomitant use; saquinavir possibly inhibits metabolism of aripiprazole (reduce dose of aripiprazole); saquinavir possibly reduces plasma concentration of pimozide (increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias—avoid concomitant use)

● Antivirals: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with atazanavir or ritonavir; saquinavir increases plasma concentration of saquinavir significantly reduced by efavirenz; plasma concentration of saquinavir increased by indinavir and tipranavir; saquinavir increases plasma concentration of nevirapine (consider reducing dose of maraviroc); plasma concentration of saquinavir increased by nelfinavir—manufacturer of saquinavir advises avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of saquinavir reduced by cipranarib

• Antioxidants: saquinavir increases plasma concentration of midazolam (risk of prolonged sedation—avoid concomitant use of oral midazolam)
Appendix 1: Interactions

Saquinavir (continued)
- Beta-blockers: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with β-blockers—avoid concomitant use.
- Ciclosporin: plasma concentration of both drugs increased when saquinavir given with ciclosporin—consider reducing dose of ciclosporin.
- Corticosteroids: plasma concentration of saquinavir possibly reduced by dexamethasone.
- Cytotoxic: saquinavir possibly increases plasma concentration of etoposide—manufacturer of etoposide advises avoid concomitant use; avoidance of saquinavir advised by manufacturer of lapatinib and neratinib.
- Diuretics: saquinavir increases plasma concentration of epalrestat (reduce dose of epalrestat).
- Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when saquinavir given with ergot alkaloids—avoid concomitant use.
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of ergotism when saquinavir given with cholesterol-lowering drugs—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when saquinavir given with statins—manufacturer of simvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when saquinavir given with rosuvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of myopathy when saquinavir given with simvastatin (avoid concomitant use).
- Pentamidine isethionate: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with pentamidine isethionate—avoid concomitant use.
- Ranolazine: saquinavir significantly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use.
- Sildenafil: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with sildenafil—avoid concomitant use.
- Tacrolimus: saquinavir increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus (consider reducing dose of tacrolimus).
- Tadalafil: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when saquinavir given with tadalafil—avoid concomitant use.
- Sildenafil (continued)
  - Oestrogens: plasma concentration of sildenafil increased by oestrogens—manufacturer of sildenafil advises avoid concomitant use.
  - Progestogens: plasma concentration of sildenafil increased by progestogens—manufacturer of sildenafil advises avoid concomitant use.
  - Sympathomimetics: risk of hypertensive crisis when sildenafil given with dopamine.

Selenium
Eltrobrobopag: selenium possibly reduces absorption of eltrobrobopag (give at least 4 hours apart).

Vitamins
Ascorbic acid: give at least 4 hours apart.

Sildenafil (continued)
- Dopaminergics: max. dose of 10 mg selegiline advised by manufacturer of entacapone if used concomitantly; selegiline enhances effects and increases toxicity of levodopa (reduce dose of levodopa).
- SHT: Agonists: manufacturer of selegiline advises avoid concomitant use with SHT agonists.
- Memantine: effects of dopaminergics and selegiline possibly enhanced by memantine.
- Methyldopa: antiparkinsonian effect of dopaminergics antagonised by methyldopa.
- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of selegiline increased by oestrogens—manufacturer of selegiline advises avoid concomitant use.
- Progestogens: plasma concentration of selegiline increased by progestogens—manufacturer of selegiline advises avoid concomitant use.
- Sympathomimetici: risk of hypertensive crisis when selegiline given with dopamine.

Sevelamer
Antibacterials: sevelamer reduces bioavailability of ciprofloxacin.

Ciclosporin: sevelamer possibly reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin—consider reducing dose of ciclosporin.

Mycoophenolate: sevelamer possibly reduces plasma concentration of mycoophenolate.

Tacrolimus: sevelamer possibly reduces plasma concentration of tacrolimus.

Thyroid Hormones: sevelamer possibly reduces absorption of levothyroxine.

Sevelamer see Anaesthetics, General

Sildenafil
- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when sildenafil given with α-blockers (avoid α-blockers for 4 hours after sildenafil)—see also under Phosphodiesterease type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5.
- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of sildenafil possibly increased by clarithromycin and telithromycin—reduce initial dose of sildenafil; plasma concentration of sildenafil increased by nitazoxanide—reduce initial dose of sildenafil; plasma concentration of sildenafil significantly increased by ritonavir—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sildenafil given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use.
- Bosentan: plasma concentration of sildenafil reduced by bosentan.
- Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when sildenafil given with amlopidine.
- Grapefruit Juice: plasma concentration of sildenafil possibly increased by grapefruit juice.
- Nicorandil: sildenafil significantly enhances hypotensive effect of nicorandil (avoid concomitant use).
- Nitrates: sildenafil significantly enhances hypotensive effect of nitrates (avoid concomitant use).
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of sildenafil increased by omeprazole (consider reducing dose of sildenafil).

Simvastatin see Statins
BNFC 2011–2012

Appendix 1: Interactions

Sodium Phenylbutyrate (continued)
Corticosteroids: effects of sodium phenylbutyrate possibly reduced by corticosteroids
Probeneicid: excretion of conjugate formed by sodium phenylbutyrate possibly reduced by probeneicid

Sodium Valproate see Valproate
Solifenacin see Antimuscarinics
Somatropin
Corticosteroids: growth-promoting effect of somatropin may be inhibited by corticosteroids
Oestrogens: increased doses of somatropin may be needed when given with oestrogens (when used as oral replacement therapy)

Sorafenib
Antibacterials: bioavailability of sorafenib reduced by neomycin; plasma concentration of sorafenib reduced by rifampicin

Anticoagulants: sorafenib possibly enhances anti-coagulant effect of coumarins
Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Cytototics: sorafenib possibly increases plasma concentration of doxorubicin and imotecan; sorafenib increases plasma concentration of docetaxel

Sotalol see Beta-blockers
Spiranolactone see Diuretics
Statin
Antacids: absorption of rosvastatin reduced by antacids

Anti-arrhythmics: increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with simvastatin or fluvastatin
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of atorvastatin and pravastatin increased by clarithromycin; increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with clarithromycin, erythromycin or omeprazole (avoid concomitant use); plasma concentration of rosuvastatin reduced by erythromycin; possible increased risk of myopathy when atorvastatin given with erythromycin or fusidic acid; plasma concentration of pravastatin increased by erythromycin; plasma concentration of atorvastatin and simvastatin possibly reduced by rifampicin; metabolism of fluvastatin accelerated by rifampicin (reduced effect); increased risk of myopathy when statins given with dapotycin (preferably avoid concomitant use); increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with fusidic acid; increased risk of myopathy when atorvastatin given with omeprazole (avoid concomitant use); possible increased risk of myopathy when pravastatin given with telithromycin

Anticoagulants: atorvastatin may transiently reduce anticoagulant effect of warfarin; rosuvastatin possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins and phenytoin; fluvastatin and simvastatin enhance anticoagulant effect of coumarins
Antidepressants: plasma concentration of simvastatin reduced by St John’s Wort

Antidiabetics: fluvastatin possibly increases plasma concentration of glibenclamide

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of simvastatin reduced by carbamazepine—consider increasing dose of simvastatin; combination of fluvastatin with phenytoin may increase plasma concentration of either drug (or both)

Antifungals: increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with itraconazole, ketoconazole or posaconazole (avoid concomitant use); possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with fluconazole or miconazole—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of fluvastatin increased by fluconazole; increased risk of myopathy when atorvastatin given with itraconazole or posaconazole (avoid concomitant use); possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with voriconazole; possible increased risk of myopathy when atorvastatin given with imidazoles or triazoles
Appendix 1: Interactions

Stavudine

- Antivirals: possible increased risk of myopathy when stavudine given with azidovir, lamivudine, tenofovir, or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when rosvastatin given with stavudine or ritonavir or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with stavudine or tenofovir or saquinavir — manufacturer of rosvastatin advises avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of pravastatin possibly increased by darunavir; plasma concentration of atorvastatin and simvastatin increased by diltiazem—possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with rosuvastatin or lopinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of rosuvastatin possibly increased by lopinavir or ritonavir or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with ritonavir or saquinavir — avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of pravastatin possibly increased by darunavir; plasma concentration of atorvastatin, pravastatin and simvastatin reduced by efavirenz; plasma concentration of atorvastatin possibly reduced by efavirenz; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with rosuvastatin or lopinavir — avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of rosuvastatin possibly increased by lopinavir or ritonavir or saquinavir — avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of atorvastatin possibly increased by lopinavir or ritonavir or saquinavir (consider reducing dose of atorvastatin)

BYNFC 2011–2012

Stavudine (continued)

- Antivirals: possible increased risk of myopathy when stavudine given with azidovir, lamivudine, tenofovir, or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when rosvastatin given with azidovir, lamivudine, tenofovir, or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with azidovir, lamivudine, tenofovir, or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with stavudine or ritonavir or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with efavirenz; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with efavirenz and ritonavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with ritonavir or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with efavirenz and ritonavir or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with ritonavir or saquinavir — avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of pravastatin possibly increased by darunavir; plasma concentration of atorvastatin and simvastatin increased by diltiazem—possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with rosuvastatin or lopinavir—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of rosuvastatin possibly increased by lopinavir or ritonavir or saquinavir; possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with ritonavir or saquinavir — avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of atorvastatin possibly increased by lopinavir or ritonavir or saquinavir (consider reducing dose of atorvastatin)

Bosemant: plasma concentration of simvastatin reduced by bosemant

Calcium-channel Blockers: possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with amiodipine; plasma concentration of atorvastatin and simvastatin increased by diltiazem—possible increased risk of myopathy; increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with diltiazem Cardiac Glycosides: atorvastatin possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin

Ciclosporin: increased risk of myopathy when statins given with ciclosporin, increased risk of risk of myopathy when rosuvastatin given with ciclosporin (avoid concomitant use)

Colchicine: possible increased risk of myopathy when statins given with colchicine

Cytotoxics: plasma concentration of simvastatin possibly increased by dapsatinib; plasma concentration of simvastatin increased by imatinib

Etorbomopag: plasma concentration of rosuvastatin increased by etorbomopag (consider reducing dose of rosuvastatin)

Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of atorvastatin possibly increased by grapefruit juice; plasma concentration of simvastatin increased by grapefruit juice — avoid concomitant use

Hormone Antagonists: possible increased risk of myopathy when simvastatin given with danazol

Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of myopathy when statins given with gemfibrozil (preferably avoid concomitant use); increased risk of myopathy when statins given with fibrates; increased risk of myopathy when statins given with niacin (applies to lipid regulating doses of nicotinic acid) D-destrogens: atorvastatin and rosuvastatin increase plasma concentration of ethinylestradiol Progestogens: atorvastatin increases plasma concentration of norethisterone; rosuvastatin increases plasma concentration of active metabolite of nor- gestimine; rosuvastatin increases plasma concentration of norgestrel

Ranolazine: plasma concentration of simvastatin increased by ranolazine (consider reducing dose of simvastatin)

Retinoids: plasma concentration of simvastatin reduced by altretinoin

Stavudine

- Antivirals: increased risk of side-effects when stavudine given with didanosine; increased risk of toxicity when stavudine given with abacavir; effects of stavudine possibly inhibited by didanosine (manufacturer advises avoid concomitant use)
Sulfinpyrazone (continued)

- Ciclosporin: sulfinpyrazone reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Thrombolytics: sulfinpyrazone reduces plasma concentration of thrombolytic

Sulfonamides

Anaesthetics, General: sulfonamides enhance effects of thiopental

Anaesthetics, Local: increased risk of methaemoglobinemia when sulfonamides given with prilocaine

Anti-arrhythmics: possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when sulfamethoxazole (as co-trimoxazole) given with amiodarone—manufacturer of amiodarone advises avoid concomitant use of co-trimoxazole

- Antibacterials: increased risk of crystalluria when sulfonamides given with methemamine

- Anticoagulants: sulfonamides enhance anticoagulant effect of coumarins; sulfonamides possibly inhibit metabolism of phenindione

Antidiabetics: sulfonamides rarely enhance the effects of sulfonylureas

Antiepileptics: sulfonamides possibly increase plasma concentration of phenytoin

- Antimaterials: increased antifolate effect when sulfonamides given with oxepinethamine

- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of sulfonamides with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Azathioprine: increased risk of haematological toxicity when sulfamethoxazole (as co-trimoxazole) given with azathioprine

Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when sulfonamides given with ciclosporin; sulfadiazine possibly reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Cytotoxic: increased risk of haematological toxicity when sulfamethoxazole (as co-trimoxazole) given with mercaptopurine or methotrexate; sulfonamides increase risk of methotrexate toxicity

Potassium Aminobenzoate: effects of sulfonamides inhibited by potassium aminobenzoate

Vaccines: bacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

Sulfonylureas see Antidiabetics

Sulindac see NSAIDs

Sulpiride see Antipsychotics

Sumatriptan see 5HT, Agonists

Sunitinib

Antibacterials: metabolism of sunitinib inhibited by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)

Antifungals: metabolism of sunitinib inhibited by ketoconazole (increased plasma concentration)

Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Susxamethonium see Muscle Relaxants

Sympathomimetics

- Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: ephedrine, isometheptene, metaraminol, methylphenidate, noradrenaline (norepinephrine), oxymetazoline, phenylephrine, pseudoephedrine and xylometazoline antagonise hypotensive effect of adrenergic neurone blockers; dexfametamine antagonises hypotensive effect of guanethidine

Alcohol: effects of methylphenidate possibly enhanced by alcohol

- Alpha-blockers: avoid concomitant use of adrenaline (epinephrine) or dopamine with tolazoline

- Anaesthetics, General: increased risk of arrhythmias when adrenaline (epinephrine) given with volatile liquid general anaesthetics; increased risk of hyper-tension when methylphenidate given with volatile liquid general anaesthetics

- Anticoagulants: methylphenidate possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins

- Antidepressants: risk of hypertensive crisis when methylphenidate given with MAOIs, some manufacturers advise avoid methylphenidate for at least 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, risk of hypertensive

Sympathomimetics, Beta

Antifungals: metabolism of salmeterol inhibited by ketoconazole (increased plasma concentration)

Atomoxetine: increased risk of cardiovascular side-effects when parenteral salbutamol given with atomoxetine

Cardiac Glycosides: salbutamol possibly reduces plasma concentration of digoxin

Corticosteroids: increased risk of hypokalaemia when high doses of beta, sympathomimetics given with corticosteroids—see Hypokalaemia, p. 138

Diuretics: increased risk of hypokalaemia when high doses of beta, sympathomimetics given with aceta-zolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics—see Hypokalaemia, p. 138

Methylidopa: acute hypotension reported when infusion of salbutamol given with methylidopa

Muscle Relaxants: bambuterol enhances effects of suxamethonium

BNFC 2011–2012

Appendix 1: Interactions

733
Appendix 1: Interactions

**Sympathomimetics, Beta<sub>2</sub>, (continued)**
Theophylline: increased risk of hypokalaemia when high doses of beta, sympathomimetics given with theophylline—see Hypokalaemia, p. 138

**Tacrofimus**

*Note* Interactions do not generally apply to tacrolimus used topically; risk of facial flushing and skin irritation with alcohol consumption (p. 573) does not apply to tacrolimus taken systemically

- Analgesics: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when tacrolimus given with NSAIDs; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when tacrolimus given with ibuprofen

**Antibiotics:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus increased by clarithromycin and erythromycin; plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly reduced by rifabutin; plasma concentration of tacrolimus reduced by rifampicin; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when tacrolimus given with aminoglycosides; plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by chloramphenicol and telithromycin; possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when tacrolimus given with vancomycin

- Antidepressants: plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by St John’s Wort—avoid concomitant use

**Antifungals:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus increased by fluconazole, itraconazole, posaconazole and voriconazole (consider reducing dose of tacrolimus); increased risk of nephrotoxicity when tacrolimus given with amphotericin; plasma concentration of tacrolimus reduced by ketoconazole; plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by midazolam

- Antipsychotics: avoidance of tacrolimus advised by manufacturer of droperidol (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

**Antiarrhythmics:** possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when tacrolimus given with aciclovir or ganciclovir; plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by azatidine, nefazodone and litorazine

**Calcium-channel Blockers:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by felodipine, nicardipine and verapamil; plasma concentration of tacrolimus increased by ritazem and nilfredine

**Ciclosporin:** tacrolimus increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin (increased risk of nephrotoxicity)—avoid concomitant use

**Diuretics:** increased risk of hypokalaemia when tacrolimus given with potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists

**Grapefruit Juice:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus increased by grapefruit juice

**Hormone Antagonists:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by danazol; Mifamurtide: avoidance of tacrolimus advised by manufacturer of mifamurtide

**Oestrogens:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by ethinylenestradiol

**Potassium Salts:** increased risk of hypokalaemia when tacrolimus given with potassium salts

Sevelamer: plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly reduced by sevelamer

**Ulcet-Healing Drugs:** plasma concentration of tacrolimus possibly increased by omeprazole

---

**Tadalafil**

- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when tadalafil given with doxazosin—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoidance concomitant use; enhanced hypotensive effect when tadalafil given with alpha-blockers—see also under Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5

- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of tadalafil possibly increased by clarithromycin and erythromycin; plasma concentration of tadalafil reduced by omeprazole—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoid concomitant use

**Antifungals:** plasma concentration of tadalafil increased by ketoconazole—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoid concomitant use

**Antivirals:** plasma concentration of tadalafil possibly increased by ritonavir—manufacturer of tadalafil advises avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when tadalafil given with saquinavir—avoid concomitant use

Bosentan: plasma concentration of tadalafil reduced by bosentan

Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of tadalafil possibly increased by grapefruit juice

Nicoandil: tadalafil significantly enhances hypotensive effect of nicoandil (avoid concomitant use)

Nitrates: tadalafil significantly enhances hypotensive effect of nitrates (avoid concomitant use)

**Tamoxifen**

- Antibacterials: metabolism of tamoxifen accelerated by rifampicin (reduced plasma concentration)

- Anticoagulants: tamoxifen enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins

- Anti-hypertensives: metabolism of tamoxifen to active metabolite possibly inhibited by fluoxetine and paroxetine (avoid concomitant use)

- Antipsychotics: avoidance of tamoxifen advised by manufacturer of droperidol (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

- Bupropion: metabolism of tamoxifen to active metabolite possibly inhibited by bupropion (avoid concomitant use)

- Cinacalcet: metabolism of tamoxifen to active metabolite possibly inhibited by cinacalcet (avoid concomitant use)

**Tamulosin** [see Alpha-blockers]

**Taxanes** see Docetaxel and Paclitaxel

**Tegafur with uracil** see Fluouracil

**Teicoplanin**

Vaccines: antibacterials inactive oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620

**Telbivudine**

- Interferons: increased risk of peripheral neuropathy when telbivudine given with interferon alfa

**Telithromycin**

Analgesics: telithromycin inhibits the metabolism of oxycodone

- Anti-arrhythmics: avoidance of telithromycin advised by manufacturer of troleandom (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of telithromycin reduced by ritonavir (avoid during and for 2 weeks after rifampicin)

- Anti-arrhythmics: plasma concentration of telithromycin reduced by St John’s Wort (avoid during and for 2 weeks after rifampicin)

- Antipsychotics: plasma concentration of telithromycin reduced by ritonavir (risk of ventricular arrhythmias)

- Bupropion: metabolism of telithromycin to active metabolite possibly inhibited by bupropion (avoid concomitant use)

- Cinacalcet: metabolism of telithromycin to active metabolite possibly inhibited by cinacalcet (avoid concomitant use)

---

**BNFC 2011–2012**
Telithromycin (continued)

Antimycosics: manufacturer of fosoterodine advises dose reduction when telithromycin given with fosoterodine—consult fosoterodine product literature

Antipsychotics: increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when telithromycin given with pimozide—avoid concomitant use

Antivirals: manufacturer of telithromycin advises avoid concomitant use with atazanavir, lopinavir, ritonavir, nelfinavir, saquinavir, and tipranavir in severe renal and hepatic impairment; telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of maraviroc (consider reducing dose of maraviroc)

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: telithromycin inhibits metabolism of midazolam (increased plasma concentration with increased sedation)

Aprepitant: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of aprepitant

Cardiac Glycosides: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin

Ciclosporin: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Colchicine: telithromycin possibly increases risk of colchicine toxicity—suspend or reduce dose of colchicine (avoid concomitant use in hepatic or renal impairment)

Cytotoxics: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of everolimus—manufacturer of everolimus advises avoid concomitant use; avoidance of telithromycin advised by manufacturer of lapatinib, nilotinib and pazopanib

Diuretics: telithromycin increases plasma concentration of spironolactone—avoid concomitant use

Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when telithromycin given with ergotamine and methysergide—avoid concomitant use

Ivabradine: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of ivabradine—avoid concomitant use

Lipid-regulating Drugs: increased risk of myopathy when telithromycin given with atorvastatin or simvastatin (avoid concomitant use); possible increased risk of myopathy when telithromycin given with pravastatin

Ranolazine: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of ranolazine—manufacturer of ranolazine advises avoid concomitant use

Sildenafil: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of sildenafil—reduce initial dose of sildenafil

Sirolimus: telithromycin increases plasma concentration of sirolimus—avoid concomitant use

Tacrolimus: telithromycin possibly increases plasma concentration of tacrolimus—manufacturer of tacrolimus advised by manufacturer of pazopanib

Temozolomide

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of temozolomide increased by valproate

Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Temsirolimus

Note: The main active metabolite of temsirolimus is sirolimus—see also interactions of sirolimus and consult product literature

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of active metabolite of temsirolimus reduced by rifampicin—avoid concomitant use

Antifungals: plasma concentration of active metabolite of temsirolimus increased by ketoconazole—avoid concomitant use

Tensirolimus (continued)

Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)

Tenofvir

Antivirals: manufacturer of tenofovir advises avoid concomitant use with adeovir; tenofovir reduces plasma concentration of atazanavir, also plasma concentration of tenofovir possibly increased; manufacturers advise avoid concomitant use of tenofovir with cidofovir; tenofovir increases plasma concentration of didanosine (increased risk of toxicity)—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of tenofovir increased by lopinavir

Tenoxicam see NSAIDs

Trazodone see Alpha-blockers

Terbinfine

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of terbinfine reduced by rifampicin

Antidepressants: terbinfine possibly increases plasma concentration of tricyclics

Ciclosporin: terbinfine possibly reduces plasma concentration of ciclosporin

Oestrogens: occasional reports of breakthrough bleeding when terbinfine given with oestrogens (when used for contraception)

Progestogens: occasional reports of breakthrough bleeding when terbinfine given with progestogens (when used for contraception)

Ucer-healing Drugs: plasma concentration of terbinfine increased by cinemidine

Terbutaline see Sympathomimetics, Beta,

Testolactone

Anticoagulants: testolactone enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins and phenindione

Testosterone

Anticoagulants: testosterone enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins and phenindione

Antidiabetics: testosterone possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics

Tetrabenazine

Antidepressants: risk of CNS excitation and hypertension when tetrabenazine given with MAOIs Antipsychotics: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when tetrabenazine given with antipsychotics Dopaminergics: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when tetrabenazine given with amantadine Metoclopromadine: increased risk of extrapyramidal side-effects when tetrabenazine given with metoclopramide

Tetracosactide see Corticosteroids

Tetracycline see Tetracyclines

Tetracyclines

ACE Inhibitors: absorption of tetracyclines reduced by quinapril tablets (quinapril tablets contain magnesium carbonate)

Adsorbents: absorption of tetracyclines possibly reduced by kaolin

Antacids: absorption of tetracyclines reduced by antacids

Antibacterials: plasma concentration of doxycycline reduced by rifampicin—consider increasing dose of doxycycline; tetracyclines possibly antagonise effects of penicillins

Anticoagulants: tetracyclines possibly enhance anticoagulant effect of coumarins and phenindione

Antidiabetics: tetracyclines possibly enhance hypoglycaemic effect of antidiabetics

Calcium Salts: absorption of tetracycline reduced by calcium salts

Cytotoxics: doxycycline or tetracycline increase risk of methotrexate toxicity

BNFC 2011–2012

Appendix 1: Interactions 735
Appendix 1: Interactions

Tetracyclines (continued)

Dairy Products: absorption of tetracyclines (except doxycycline and minocycline) reduced by dairy products
Diuretics: manufacturer of lymecycline advises avoid concomitant use with diuretics
Ergot Alkaloids: increased risk of ergotism when tetracyclines given with ergotamine and methysergide
Iron: absorption of tetracyclines reduced by oral iron, also absorption of oral iron reduced by tetracyclines
Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of tetracycline possibly reduced by colestipol and colesteryamine
● Retinoids: possible increased risk of benign intracranial hypertension when tetracyclines given with retinoids (avoid concomitant use)
Strontium Ranelate: absorption of tetracyclines reduced by strontium ranelate [manufacturer of strontium ranelate advises avoid concomitant use]
Ulcer-healing Drugs: absorption of tetracyclines reduced by sucralfate and tripotassium dichromate
Lanthanum: absorption of tetracyclines reduced by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours apart)

Anticoagulants:

Thyroid Hormones

Anticoagulants:

Thyroxine: possibly increased by methotrexate

Theophylline (continued)

Disulfiram: metabolism of theophylline inhibited by disulfiram (increased risk of toxicity)
Diuretics: increased risk of hypokalaemia when theophylline given with acetazolamide, loop diuretics or thiazides and related diuretics
Doxapram: increased CNS stimulation when theophylline given with doxapram
● Febuxostat: caution with theophylline advised by manufacturer of febuxostat
● Interferons: metabolism of theophylline inhibited by interferon alfa (consider reducing dose of theophylline)
Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists: plasma concentration of theophylline possibly increased by zafirlukast, also plasma concentration of zafirlukast reduced
Lithium: theophylline increases excretion of lithium (reduced plasma concentration)
Oestrogens: plasma concentration of theophylline increased by oestrogens (consider reducing dose of theophylline)
Pentoxifylline: plasma concentration of theophylline increased by pentoxifylline
Roflumilast: avoidance of theophylline advised by manufacturer of roflumilast
Sulfonpyrazone: plasma concentration of theophylline reduced by sulfonpyrazone
Sympathomimetics: manufacturer of theophylline advises avoid concomitant use with ephedrine in children
Sympathomimetacists, Beta2: increased risk of hypokalaemia when theophylline given with high doses of beta, sympathomimetacists—see Hypokalaemia, p. 138
Ulcer-healing Drugs: metabolism of theophylline inhibited by doxapram (increased plasma concentration); absorption of theophylline possibly reduced by sucralfate (give at least 2 hours apart)
Vaccines: plasma concentration of theophylline possibly increased by influenza vaccine
Thiazolidinediones see Antidiabetics
Thiopental see Anaesthetics, General
Thiotepa

● Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytoxotics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Muscle Relaxants: thiopeta enhances effects of suxamethonium

Thioxanthenes see Antipsychotics
Thyroid Hormones

Antacids: absorption of levothyroxine possibly reduced by antacids
Anti-arrhythmics: for concomitant use of thyroid hormones and amiodarone see p. 83
Antibacterials: metabolism of levothyroxine accelerated by rifampicin (may increase requirements for levothyroxine in hypothyroidism)
● Anticoagulants: thyroid hormones enhance anti-coagulant effect of coumarins and phenindione
Antidepressants: thyroid hormones enhance effects of amitriptyline and imipramine; thyroid hormones possibly enhance effects of tricycles
Antiepileptics: metabolism of thyroid hormones accelerated by carbamazepine and phenobarbital (may increase requirements for levothyroxine in hypothyroidism); metabolism of thyroid hormones accelerated by phenytoin (may increase requirements in hypothyroidism), also plasma concentration of phenytoin possibly increased
Beta-blockers: levothyroxine accelerates metabolism of propranolol
Calcium Salts: absorption of levothyroxine reduced by calcium salts
Cytotoxic: plasma concentration of levothyroxine possibly reduced by imatinib
Iron: absorption of levothyroxine reduced by oral iron (give at least 2 hours apart)
Lanthanum: absorption of levothyroxine reduced by lanthanum (give at least 2 hours apart)
Antibacterials:
- Tiotropium
- Tioguanine
- Tinidazole
- Tibolone
- Orlistat

Antidepressants:
- Tiagabine

Antiepileptics:
- Anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIIs and tricyclics (convulsive threshold lowered), avoiding concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort

Antimalarias:
- Increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered)

Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat

Ulcer-healing Drugs: absorption of levotyroxine possibly reduced by sevelamer

Tipranavir (continued)
- Anticoagulants: avoid concomitant use with metoprolol for heart failure
- Lipid-regulating Drugs: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with atorvastatin oratorvastatin; tipranavir possibly increases plasma concentration of atorvastatin—manufacturer of atorvastatin advises avoid concomitant use

BnfC 2011–2012 Appendix 1: Interactions 737
Topiramate
- Antidepressants (continued)
  lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wart
Antidiabetics: topiramate possibly increases plasma concentration of metformin; topiramate possibly reduces plasma concentration of glibenclamide
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of topiramate often reduced by carbamazepine; plasma concentration of topiramate possibly reduced by phenobarbital; topiramate increases plasma concentration of
  phenytoin (also plasma concentration of topiramate reduced); hyperammonaemia and CNS toxicity reported when topiramate given with valproate
- Antimalariais: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by phenytoin
- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered)
Diuretics: plasma concentration of topiramate possibly increased by hydrochlorothiazide
Lithium: topiramate possibly affects plasma concentration of lithium
Oestrogens: topiramate accelerates metabolism of oestrogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)
Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat
Progesterons: topiramate accelerates metabolism of progestogens (reduced contraceptive effect—see p. 398)
Torasemide see Diuretics
Toremifene
- Anticoagulants: toremifene possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
Antiepileptics: metabolism of toremifene possibly accelerated by carbamazepine; metabolism of toremifene accelerated by phenobarbital (reduced plasma concentration of topiramate possibly accelerated by phenytoin)
Diuretics: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when toremifene given with thiazides and related diuretics
Trabectedin
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Tramadol see ACE Inhibitors
Tramadol
- Antipsychotics: avoid concomitant use of cytotoxics with clozapine (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Trandolapril
- Antipsychotics: antagonised by phenothiazines (convulsive threshold lowered)
Torasemide see Diuretics
Triamcinolone
- Anticoagulants: toremifene possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
Antiepileptics: metabolism of toremifene possibly accelerated by carbamazepine (reduced plasma concentration of topiramate possibly accelerated by phenytoin)
Diuretics: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when toremifene given with thiazides and related diuretics
Trimethoprim
Antibacterials (continued) of both drugs may increase when trimethoprim given with dapsona
Anticoagulants: trimethoprim possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
Antidiabetics: trimethoprim possibly enhances hypoglycaemic effect of repaglinide—manufacturer advises avoid concomitant use; trimethoprim rarely enhances the effects of sulfonylureas
- Antiepileptics: trimethoprim increases plasma concentration of phenytoin (also increased antifolate effect)
- Antimalariais: increased antifolate effect when trimethoprim given with pyrimethamine
Antivirals: trimethoprim (as co-trimoxazole) increases plasma concentration of lamivudine—avoid concomitant use of high-dose co-trimoxazole
Azathioprine: increased risk of haematological toxicity when trimethoprim (also with co-trimoxazole) given with azathioprine
Cardiac Glycosides: trimethoprim possibly increases plasma concentration of digoxin
Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when trimethoprim given with ciclosporin, also plasma concentration of ciclosporin reduced by intravenous trimethoprim
Cytotoxics: increased risk of haematological toxicity when trimethoprim (also with co-trimoxazole) given with mercaptopurine or methotrexate
Diuretics: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when trimethoprim given with furosemide
Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620
Trimipramine see Antidepressants, Tricyclic
Tripotassium Dicitratobismuthate
Antibacterials: tripotassium dicitratobismuthate reduces absorption of tetracyclines
Tropicamide see Antimuscarinics
Tryptophan
- Antidepressants: CNS toxicity reported when tryptophan given with fluoxetine; possible increased serotoninergic effects when tryptophan given with duloxetine; CNS excitation and confusion when tryptophan given with MAOIs (reduce dose of tryptophan); agitation and nausea may occur when tryptophan given with SSRIs
- Antimalariais: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of metformin—reduce dose of metformin
- Antiarrhythmics: possible increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when trimethoprim (as co-trimoxazole) given with amiodarone—manufacturer of amiodarone advises avoid concomitant use of co-trimoxazole
Antibacterials: plasma concentration of trimethoprim possibly reduced by rifampicin, plasma concentration
Anticoagulants: toremifene possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
Antiepileptics: trimethoprim possibly enhances antiepileptics effect of antiepileptics
Diuretics: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when trimethoprim given with thiazides and related diuretics
Trilostane
- Anticoagulants: toremifene possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of coumarins
- Antihypertensives: toremifene possibly enhances antihypertensives effect of antihypertensives
- Antiprogestogens: toremifene possibly enhances antiprogestogens effect of antiprogestogens
- Antipsychotics: toremifene possibly enhances antipsychotics effect of antipsychotics
- Antitubercular: toremifene possibly enhances antitubercular effect of antitubercular
- Antiepileptics: toremifene possibly enhances antiepileptics effect of antiepileptics
- Diuretics: increased risk of hyperkalaemia when trimethoprim given with thiazides and related diuretics
- Antidepressants: CNS toxicity reported when tryptophan given with fluoxetine; possible increased serotoninergic effects when tryptophan given with duloxetine; CNS excitation and confusion when tryptophan given with MAOIs (reduce dose of tryptophan); agitation and nausea may occur when tryptophan given with SSRIs
Ulipristal (continued)
- Progestogens: ulipristal possibly reduces contraceptive effect of progestogen
- Ulcer-healing Drugs: manufacturer of ulipristal advises avoiding concomitant use with histamine H2-antagonists and proton pump inhibitors (plasma concentration of ulipristal possibly reduced)

Ursodeoxycholic Acid see Bile Acids

Ustekinumab
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with ustekinumab (see p. 599).

Tocilizumab
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with tocilizumab (see p. 599).

Leflunomide
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with leflunomide (see p. 599).

Infliximab
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with infliximab (see p. 599).

Golimumab
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with golimumab (see p. 599).

Etanercept
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with etanercept (see p. 599).

Certolizumab pegol
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with certolizumab pegol (see p. 599).

Anakinra
- Avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with anakinra (see p. 599).

Antibacterials: oral typhoid vaccine inactivated by antibacterials—see p. 620.

Anticoagulants: influenza vaccine possibly enhances anticoagulant effect of warfarin.

Antimalarials: oral typhoid vaccine inactivated by antimalarials—see p. 620.

Corticotrophins: immune response to vaccines impaired by high doses of corticosteroids, avoid concomitant use with live vaccines (see p. 599).

Etanercept: avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with etanercept (see p. 599).

Golimumab: avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with golimumab (see p. 599).

Infliximab: avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with infliximab (see p. 599).

Interferons: avoidance of vaccines advised by manufacturer of interferon gamma.

Leflunomide: avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with leflunomide (see p. 599).

Theophylline: influenza vaccine possibly increases plasma concentration of theophylline.

Tocilizumab: avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with tocilizumab (see p. 599).

Ustekinumab: avoid concomitant use of live vaccines with ustekinumab (see p. 599).

Valproate
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of valproate reduced by carbamazepine—avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with carbamazepine.

Antidepressants: anticonvulsant effect of antidepressants possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsicive threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort.

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of valproate reduced by carbamazepine, also plasma concentration of active metabolite of carbamazepine increased; valproate possibly increases plasma concentration of ethosuximide; valproate increases plasma concentration of lamotrigine; valproate sometimes reduces plasma concentration of an active metabolite of oxcarbazepine; valproate increases plasma concentration of phenobarbital (also plasma concentration of valproate reduced); valproate increases or possibly decreases plasma concentration of phenytoin, also

Appendix 1: Interactions

739

Valproate
- Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of valproate reduced; valproate possibly increases plasma concentration of rufinamide (reduce dose of rufinamide); hyperammonaemia and CNS toxicity reported when valproate given with topiramate.

- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by mefloquine.

- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsicive threshold lowered); valproate possibly increases or decreases plasma concentration of clozapine; increased risk of side-effects including neutropenia when valproate given with olanzapine; valproate possibly increases plasma concentration of quetiapine.

- Antivirals: valproate possibly increases plasma concentration of zidovudine (increased risk of toxicity).

- Antiinflammatory and Hypnotics: plasma concentration of valproate possibly increased by clozapam; increased risk of side-effects when valproate given with clozapam; valproate possibly increases plasma concentration of diazepam and lorazepam.

- Bupropion: valproate inhibits the metabolism of bupropion.

- Cytotoxics: valproate increases plasma concentration of temozolomide.

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: absorption of valproate possibly reduced by colestyramine.

- Oestrogens: plasma concentration of valproate possibly reduced by ethinylestradiol.

- Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat.

- Sodium Benzoate: valproate possibly reduces effects of sodium benzoate.

- Sodium Phenylbutyrate: valproate possibly reduces effects of sodium phenylbutyrate.

- Ulcer-healing Drugs: metabolism of valproate inhibited by cimetidine (increased plasma concentration).

- Valsartan see Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists.

Vancomycin
- Anaesthetics, General: hypersensitivity-like reactions can occur when intravenous vancomycin given with general anaesthetics.

- Antibacterials: increased risk of nephrotoxicity and otoxicity when vancomycin given with aminoglycosides, capreomycin or colistimethate sodium; increased risk of nephrotoxicity when vancomycin given with polymyxins.

- Antifungals: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when vancomycin given with amphotericin.

- Ciclosporin: increased risk of nephrotoxicity when vancomycin given with ciclosporin.

- Cytoxotics: increased risk of nephrotoxicity and possibly of otoxicity when vancomycin given with cisplatin.

- Diuretics: increased risk of otoxicity when vancomycin given with loop diuretics.

- Lipid-regulating Drugs: effects of oral vancomycin antagonised by colestyramine.

- Muscle Relaxants: vancomycin enhances effects of suxamethonium.

- Tacrolimus: possible increased risk of nephrotoxicity when vancomycin given with tacrolimus.

- Vaccines: antibacterials inactivate oral typhoid vaccine—see p. 620.

Vardenafil
- Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when vardenafil given with alpha-blockers (excludes tamulosin)—separate doses by 6 hours—see also under Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, BNF section 7.4.5.

- Antibacterials: plasma concentration of vardenafil increased by erythromycin (reduce dose of vardenafil).
Appendix 1: Interactions

Vardenafil (continued)

- Antifungals: plasma concentration of vardenafil increased by itraconazole—avoid concomitant use; plasma concentration of vardenafil possibly increased by ritonavir—avoid concomitant use.
- Antivirals: plasma concentration of vardenafil possibly increased by fosamprenavir; plasma concentration of vardenafil increased by indinavir and ritonavir—avoid concomitant use; increased risk of ventricular arrhythmias when vardenafil given with itraconavir—avoid concomitant use.
- Grapefruit juice: plasma concentration of vardenafil possibly increased by grapefruit juice—avoid concomitant use.
- Nitrofurantoin: possible increased hypotensive effect when vardenafil given with nifedipine.
- Alcohol: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with alcohol.
- Aldesleukin: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with aldesleukin.
- Alphablockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with alpha-blockers.

ACE Inhibitors: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with ACE inhibitors.

Adrenergic Neurone Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with adrenergic neurone blockers.

Alpha-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with alpha-blockers.

Antidepressants: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with MAOIs; enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine or sodium nitroprusside given with tricyclic-related antidepressants.

Angiotensin-II Receptor Antagonists: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with angiotensin-II receptor antagonists.

Antihypertensives

Vasodilator Antihypertensives (continued)

Dopaminergics: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with levodopa.

Methyldopa: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with methyldopa.

Moxisylyte: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with moxisylyte.

Moxonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with moxonidine.

Muscle Relaxants: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with alprostadil.

Nitric Oxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with nitric oxide.

Oestrogens: hypotensive effect of hydralazine, minoxidil and sodium nitroprusside antagonised by oestrogens.

Prostaglandins: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with alprostadil.

Venlafaxine: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with venlafaxine.

Antidepressants: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with MAOIs; enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine or sodium nitroprusside given with tricyclic-related antidepressants.

Antipsychotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with phenothiazines.

Anxiolytics and Hypnotics: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with benzodiazepines.

Beta-blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with beta-blockers.

Calcium-channel Blockers: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with calcium-channel blockers.

Clonidine: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with clonidine.

Corticosteroids: hypotensive effect of hydralazine, minoxidil and sodium nitroprusside antagonised by corticosteroids.

Diazoxide: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with diazoxide.

Diuretics: enhanced hypotensive effect when hydralazine, minoxidil or sodium nitroprusside given with diuretics.

Venlafaxine (continued)

- Analgesics: increased risk of bleeding when venlafaxine given with NSAIDs or aspirin; possible increased serotonergic effects when venlafaxine given with tramadol.
- Anticoagulants: venlafaxine possibly enhances anti-coagulant effect of warfarin.
- Antidepressants: possible increased serotonergic effects when venlafaxine given with St John’s wort, duloxetine or mirtazapine; enhanced CNS effects and toxicity when venlafaxine given with MAOIs (venlafaxine should not be started until 2 weeks after stopping MAOIs, avoid MAOIs for 1 week after stopping venlafaxine); after stopping SSRI-related antidepressants do not start moclomoben for at least 1 week.
- Antimalarias: avoidance of antidepressants advised by manufacturer of artemether/lumefantrine.
- Antipsychotics: venlafaxine increases plasma concentration of clozapine and haloperidol.
- Atomoxetine: possible increased risk of convulsions when antidepressants given with atomoxetine.
- Dopaminergics: caution with venlafaxine advised by manufacturer of entacapone; increased risk of hypertension and CNS excitation when venlafaxine given with selegiline (selegiline should not be started until 1 week after stopping venlafaxine, avoid venlafaxine for 2 weeks after stopping selegiline).
- SHT, Agonists: possible increased serotonergic effects when venlafaxine given with SHT, agonists.
- Lithium: possible increased serotonergic effects when venlafaxine given with lithium.

Verapamil see Calcium-channel Blockers

Vigabatrin

- Antidepressants: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics possibly antagonised by MAOIs and tricyclic-related antidepressants (convulsiv threshold lowered); anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by SSRIs and tricyclics (convulsiv threshold lowered); avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort.

Antiepileptics: vigabatrin reduces plasma concentration of phenytoin.
Anticoagulants: 
- Vitamin E
- Vitamin D
- Vitamin A

Antipsychotics:

Antifungals:

Antibacterials:

Antivirals:

Antidepressants:

Vinflunine: 
- Plasma concentration of Vinflunine possibly increased by ritonavir

Vincristine: 
- Antifungals: metabolism of vincristine possibly inhibited by posaconazole (increased risk of neurotoxicity)

Vitamins (continued): 
- Ciclosporin: vitamin E possibly affects plasma concentration of ciclosporin
- Diuretics: increased risk of hypercalcaemia when vitamin D given with thiazides and related diuretics
- Dopaminergics: pyridoxine reduces effects of levodopa when given without dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor

Retinoids: risk of hypervitaminosis A when vitamin A given with retinoids
- Selenium: ascorbic acid possibly reduces absorption of selenium (give at least 4 hours apart)

Zidovudine: 
- Note: Increased risk of toxicity with nephrotoxic and myelosuppressive drugs—for further details consult product literature

Analgesics: increased risk of haematological toxicity when zidovudine given with NSAIDs; plasma concentration of zidovudine possibly increased by methadone

Antibacterials: absorption of zidovudine reduced by clarithromycin tablets (give at least 2 hours apart); manufacturer of zidovudine advises avoid concomitant use with rifampicin

Antiepileptics: zidovudine increases or decreases plasma concentration of phenytoin; plasma concentration of zidovudine possibly increased by valproate

Zinc: 
- Antibacterials: zinc reduces absorption of ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin and aciclovir

Vitamins (continued): 
- Alicyclovir (increased risk of agranulocytosis)
Zonisamide

- Antidepressants (continued)
  lowered; avoid concomitant use of antiepileptics with St John’s wort

Antiepileptics: plasma concentration of zonisamide reduced by carbamazepine, phenobarbital and phenytoin

- Antimalarials: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine; anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by mefloquine

- Antipsychotics: anticonvulsant effect of antiepileptics antagonised by antipsychotics (convulsive threshold lowered)

- Orlistat: possible increased risk of convulsions when antiepileptics given with orlistat

Zopiclone see Anxiolytics and Hypnotics

Zuclopenthixol see Antipsychotics
A2 Borderline substances

A2.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific) 744
A2.1.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): less than 5 g protein/100 mL 744
A2.1.2 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL 747
A2.1.3 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years 750

A2.2 Nutritional supplements (non-disease specific) 756
A2.2.1 Nutritional supplements: less than 5 g protein/100 mL 756
A2.2.2 Nutritional supplements: 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL 758

A2.3 Specialised formulas 763
A2.3.1 Specialised formulas: Infant and child 763
A2.3.2 Specialised formulas for specific clinical conditions 768

A2.4 Feed supplements 771
A2.4.1 High-energy supplements 771
A2.4.2 Fibre, vitamin, and mineral supplements 776

A2.5 Feed additives 777
A2.5.1 Special additives for conditions of intolerance 777
A2.5.2 Feed thickeners and pre-thickened drinks 777
A2.5.3 Flavouring preparations 777

A2.6 Foods for special diets 777
A2.6.1 Gluten-free foods 777
A2.6.2 Low-protein foods 780

A2.7 Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases 781

General Practitioners are reminded that the ACBS recommends products on the basis that they may be regarded as drugs for the management of specified conditions. Doctors should satisfy themselves that the products can safely be prescribed, that patients are adequately monitored and that, where necessary, expert hospital supervision is available.

Foods which may be prescribed on FP10, GP10 (Scotland), or WP10 (Wales) All the food products listed in this appendix have ACBS approval. The clinical condition for which the product has been approved is included with each entry.

Note Foods included in this appendix may contain cariogenic sugars and appropriate oral hygiene measures should be taken.

Enteral feeds and nutritional supplements For most enteral feeds and nutritional supplements, the main source of carbohydrate is either maltodextrin or glucose syrup; other carbohydrate sources are listed in the relevant table, below. Feeds containing residual lactose (less than 1 g lactose/100 mL formula) are described as ‘clinically lactose-free’ or ‘lactose-free’ by some manufacturers. The presence of lactose (including residual lactose) in feeds is indicated in the relevant table, below. The primary sources of protein or amino acids are included with each product entry. The fat or oil content is derived from a variety of sources such as vegetables, soya bean, corn, palm nuts, and seeds; where the fat content is derived from animal or fish sources, this information is included in the relevant table, below. The presence of medium chain tri-glycerides (MCT) is also noted where the quantity exceeds 30% of the fat content.

Enteral feeds and nutritional supplements can contain varying amounts of vitamins, minerals, and trace elements—the manufacturer’s product literature should be consulted for more detailed information. For further information on enteral nutrition, see section 9.4.2.

The suitability of food products for patients requiring a vegan, kosher, halal, or other compliant diet should be confirmed with individual manufacturers.

Note Feeds containing more than 6 g/100 mL protein or 2 g/100 mL fibre should be avoided in children unless recommended by an appropriate specialist or dietician.

Standard ACBS indications: Disease-related malnutrition, intractable malabsorption, pre-operative preparation of malnourished patients, dysphagia, proven inflammatory bowel disease, following total gastrectomy, short-bowel syndrome, bowel fistula

Paediatric ACBS indications: Disease-related malnutrition, intractable malabsorption, growth failure, pre-operative preparation of malnourished patients, dysphagia, short-bowel syndrome, bowel fistula
# Appendix 2: Borderline substances

## A2.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific)

### A2.1.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): less than 5 g protein/100 mL

**A2.1.1.1 Enteral feeds: 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL**

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1–6 years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® Original (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed per 100 mL)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>3.8 g cows’ milk soya</td>
<td>13.8 g (sugars 3.5 g³)</td>
<td>3.4 g Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish gelatin Feed in flexible pack contains fish oil and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.78 Black currant, chocolate, mocha, nut, peach, vanilla Flexible pack: 500 mL = £3.45 1000 mL = £6.81 1500 mL = £10.23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® Original Fibre (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed per 100 mL)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>3.8 g cows’ milk soya</td>
<td>13.8 g (sugars 1 g)</td>
<td>3.4 g 2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula. Not suitable for child under 2 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £3.90 1000 mL = £7.78 1500 mL = £10.69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isosource® Fibre (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed per 100 mL)</td>
<td>422 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>3.8 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>13.6 g 3.4 g 1.4 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 2 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £3.49 1000 mL = £6.97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isosource® Standard (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed per 100 mL)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>13.6 g 3.3 g Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £3.07 1000 mL = £6.13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jevity® (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed per 100 mL)</td>
<td>441 kJ (106 kcal)</td>
<td>4 g caseinates</td>
<td>14.1 g (sugars 470 mg) 3.47 g 1.76 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula. Not suitable for child under 2 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.16 1000 mL = £7.81 1500 mL = £11.73</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Novasource® GI Control (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed per 100 mL)</td>
<td>444 kJ (106 kcal)</td>
<td>4.1 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>14.4 g (sugars 500 mg) 3.5 g (MCT 40 %) 2.2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.78</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
### Appendix 2: Borderline substances

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Nutritional Content</th>
<th>Gluten Status</th>
<th>Residual Lactose</th>
<th>Price Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrison</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal) 4 g cows' milk 12.3 g sugars 1 g</td>
<td>Nil Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £3.76 Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.17 1000 mL = £7.32 1500 mL = £10.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrison</strong> Multi Fibre (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal) 4 g cows' milk 12.3 g sugars 1 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £4.09 Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.51 1000 mL = £8.16 1500 mL = £12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Osmolite</strong> (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>424 kJ (100 kcal) 4 g caseinates soy isolate 13.6 g sugars 630 mg</td>
<td>Nil Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Can: 250 mL = £1.88 Bottle: 500 mL = £3.57 1000 mL = £6.81 1500 mL = £10.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Soya protein formula</strong> (see also section A2.3.1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fresubin</strong> Soya Fibre (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal) 3.8 g soya protein 13.3 g sugars 4.1 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also cows' milk protein intolerance, lactose intolerance</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrison</strong> Soya (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal) 4 g soy isolate 12.3 g sugars 1 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Milk protein-free</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also cows' milk protein and lactose intolerance</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £4.34 Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £8.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrison</strong> Soya Multi Fibre (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal) 4 g soy isolate 12.3 g sugars 700 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Milk protein-free</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula; also cows' milk protein and lactose intolerance</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1500 mL = £14.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peptamen</strong> (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal) 4 g whey peptides 12.7 g sugars 480 mg</td>
<td>Nil Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.83 Vanilla Flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.86 1000 mL = £11.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
### A2.1.1 Enteral feeds: 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL (product list continued)

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1–6 years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peptisorb®</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>425 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>4 g whey protein hydrolysate</td>
<td>17.6 g (sugars 1.7 g)</td>
<td>1.7 g (MCT 47 %)</td>
<td>Nil Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £5.76 Flexible pack: 500 mL = £6.31 1000 mL = £11.41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Survimed® OPD</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>4.5 g lactalbumin hydrolysate</td>
<td>15 g (sugars 300 mg)</td>
<td>2.4 g (MCT 54 %)</td>
<td>Nil Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also growth failure Flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A2.1.2 Enteral feeds: Less than 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1–6 years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Elemental 028® Extra (SHS)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>360 kJ (86 kcal)</td>
<td>2.5 g (protein equivalent)</td>
<td>11 g (sugars 4.7 g)</td>
<td>3.5 g (MCT 35 %)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula</td>
<td>Carton: 250 mL = £3.19 Grapefruit, orange and pineapple, summer fruits Sachet: 100 g = £6.01 Banana, citrus, orange, unflavoured&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
2. Flavouring: see Modji® Flavour System, p. 777
### A2.1.2 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

#### A2.1.2.1 Enteral feeds: 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1–6 years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® 2250 Complete (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>5.6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 1.5 g)</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1500 mL = £12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® Energy (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>5.6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 1.5 g)</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.78 Banana, blackcurrant, cappuccino, chocolate, lemon, neutral, strawberry, tropical fruits, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® Energy Fibre (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>5.6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 1.4 g)</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.21 1000 mL = £8.28 1500 mL = £11.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® HP Energy (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>5.6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 1.5 g)</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.63 1000 mL = £8.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isosource® Energy Fibre (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>4.9 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>20.2 g</td>
<td>5.5 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.08 1000 mL = £8.17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
2. Strawberry flavour may contain traces of wheat starch and egg

---

Appendix 2: Borderline substances

---

BNFC 2011–2012 A2.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific) 747
### A2.1.2.1 Enteral feeds: 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL (product list continued)

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1–6 years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jevity® 1.5 kcal (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>640 kJ (152 kcal)</td>
<td>6.38 g</td>
<td>20.1 g</td>
<td>4.9 g</td>
<td>2.2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.92, 1000 mL = £9.40, 1500 mL = £14.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>caseinotes and soy isolate</td>
<td>(sugars 1.47 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Novasource® GI Forte (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>631 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>6 g</td>
<td>18.3 g</td>
<td>5.9 g</td>
<td>2.2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.75, 1000 mL = £9.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 1.8 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® Energy (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>6 g</td>
<td>18.5 g</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £4.38, 1000 mL = £8.81, 1500 mL = £13.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 1.5 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>6 g</td>
<td>18.5 g</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £4.90, 1000 mL = £9.77, 1500 mL = £15.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 1.5 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osmolite® 1.5 kcal (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>632 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>6.25 g</td>
<td>20 g</td>
<td>5 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.37, 1000 mL = £8.54, 1500 mL = £12.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 4.9 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource® Energy (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>5.6 g</td>
<td>21 g</td>
<td>5 g</td>
<td>less than 500 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 4 x 200 mL = £6.97, Apricot, banana, chocolate, coffee, strawberry-raspberry, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 5.2 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
### A2.1.2.2 Enteral feeds: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1–6 years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® 1000 Complete (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>5.5 g cows' milk</td>
<td>12.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)</td>
<td>3.1 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £8.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® 1200 Complete (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>500 kJ (120 kcal)</td>
<td>6 g cows' milk</td>
<td>15 g (sugars 1.22 g)</td>
<td>4.1 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £11.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® 1800 Complete (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>6 g cows' milk</td>
<td>15 g (sugars 1.22 g)</td>
<td>4.1 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1500 mL = £11.23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jevity® Plus (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>504 kJ (120 kcal)</td>
<td>5.5 g caseinates soy isolates</td>
<td>15.1 g (sugars 890 mg)</td>
<td>3.93 g</td>
<td>2.2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2–10 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.48 1000 mL = £9.16 1500 mL = £13.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jevity® Plus HP (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>547 kJ (130 kcal)</td>
<td>8.13 g cows' milk soy isolates</td>
<td>14.2 g (sugars 950 mg)</td>
<td>4.33 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2–10 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jevity® Promote (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>427 kJ (101 kcal)</td>
<td>5.55 g caseinates soy isolates</td>
<td>12 g (sugars 670 mg)</td>
<td>3.32 g</td>
<td>1.7 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2–10 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £8.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® MCT (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>5 g cows' milk</td>
<td>12.6 g (sugars 1 g)</td>
<td>3.3 g (MCT 61%)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £8.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® Protein Plus (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>525 kJ (125 kcal)</td>
<td>6.3 g cows' milk</td>
<td>14.2 g (sugars 1.1 g)</td>
<td>4.9 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £8.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® Protein Plus Multi Fibre (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>525 kJ (125 kcal)</td>
<td>6.3 g cow's milk</td>
<td>14.1 g (sugars 1.1 g)</td>
<td>4.9 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease related malnutrition</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £9.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### A2.1.2.2 Enteral feeds: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® 1000</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ</td>
<td>5.5 g</td>
<td>11.3 g</td>
<td>3.7 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease related malnutrition in patients with low energy and/or low fluid requirements</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £8.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Multi Fibre</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(100 kcal)</td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 700 mg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrison® 1200</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>505 kJ</td>
<td>5.5 g</td>
<td>15 g</td>
<td>4.3 g</td>
<td>2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula</td>
<td>Bottle: 500 mL = £4.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Multi Fibre</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(120 kcal)</td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 1.2 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flexible pack: 1000 mL = £9.59 1500 mL = £14.41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osmolite® Plus</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>508 kJ</td>
<td>5.55 g</td>
<td>15.8 g</td>
<td>3.93 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 10 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £4.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Abbott)</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(121 kcal)</td>
<td>caseinates</td>
<td>(sugars 730 mg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1000 mL = £8.06 1500 mL = £12.07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptamen® HN</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>556 kJ</td>
<td>6.6 g</td>
<td>15.6 g</td>
<td>4.9 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Hydrolysed with pork trypsin</td>
<td>Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £6.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Nestlé)</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(133 kcal)</td>
<td>whey protein hydrolysates</td>
<td>(sugars 1.4 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perative®</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed)</td>
<td>552 kJ</td>
<td>6.7 g caseinate whey protein hydrolysates</td>
<td>17.7 g (sugars 660 mg)</td>
<td>3.7 g (MCT 42%)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 5 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.82 1000 mL = £11.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Abbott)</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(131 kcal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A2.1.2.3 Enteral feeds: More than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure® Twocal</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed)</td>
<td>838 kJ</td>
<td>8.4 g</td>
<td>21 g</td>
<td>8.9 g</td>
<td>1 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also haemodialysis and CAPD</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Abbott)</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(200 kcal)</td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td>(sugars 4.5 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Banana, neutral, strawberry, vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isosource® Energy</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>670 kJ</td>
<td>5.7 g</td>
<td>20 g</td>
<td>6.2 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £3.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Nestlé)</td>
<td>per 100 mL</td>
<td>(160 kcal)</td>
<td>cows’ milk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1000 mL = £7.53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## A2.1.3 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years

### A2.1.3.1 Enteral feeds, Child: Less than 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrin® Low Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Clinical)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>315 kJ (75 kcal)</td>
<td>2.1 g whey protein and caseinate</td>
<td>9.3 g (sugars 600 mg)</td>
<td>3.3 g</td>
<td>800 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Paediatric, p. 743 except bowel fistula, in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.16 Flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutriprem® 1</strong> (Cow &amp; Gate)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>335 kJ (80 kcal)</td>
<td>2.5 g whey protein and casein</td>
<td>7.6 g (lactose 6.3 g)</td>
<td>4.4 g</td>
<td>800 mg</td>
<td>Contains soya, fish oil and egg lipid</td>
<td>Low birth-weight formula</td>
<td>Bottle: 60 mL Hospital supply only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutriprem® 2</strong> (Cow &amp; Gate)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>310 kJ (75 kcal)</td>
<td>2 g whey protein and casein</td>
<td>7.4 g (lactose 5.8 g)</td>
<td>4 g</td>
<td>600 mg</td>
<td>Contains soya, fish oil and egg lipid</td>
<td>Catch-up growth in pre-term infants (less than 35 weeks at birth) and small for gestational-age infants up to 6 months corrected age</td>
<td>Can: 900 g = £10.64 (5.1-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SMA® Gold Prem 2</strong> (SMA Nutrition)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (14.1%) of powder (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>305 kJ (73 kcal)</td>
<td>1.9 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>7.5 g sugars 6.4 g</td>
<td>3.9 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Catch-up growth in preterm and small for gestational age infants on discharge from hospital, up to 6 months corrected age</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £4.57 (4.7-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SMA® High Energy</strong> (SMA Nutrition)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>382 kJ (91 kcal)</td>
<td>2 g whey protein and casein</td>
<td>9.8 g lactose</td>
<td>4.9 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Disease related malnutrition and malabsorption, and growth failure in child from birth to 18 months</td>
<td>Carton: 250 mL = £2.08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### A2.1.3.1 Enteral feeds, Child: Less than 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL (product list continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emso® (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (20%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>368 kJ (88 kcal)</td>
<td>2.5 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)</td>
<td>12 g (sugars 1.6 g)</td>
<td>3.3 g (MCT 83%)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Lactose-free</td>
<td>Short-bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula</td>
<td>Sachet: 100 g = £6.18 Orange, unflavoured</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Powder provides: protein equivalent 12.5 g, carbohydrate 60 g, fat 16.4 g, energy 1839 kJ (438 kcal)/100 g

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
2. Additional source of alpha linolenic acid needed if used as sole source of nutrition
3. Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777

### A2.1.3.2 Enteral feeds, Child: 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinutren® Junior (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (22%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>2.97 g whey protein and caseinate</td>
<td>13.3 g</td>
<td>3.9 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743, and growth failure in child 1–10 years</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £10.57 Vanilla (7.85-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Powder provides: protein 13.9 g, carbohydrate 62.2 g, fat 18.3 g, energy 1950 kJ (467 kcal)/100 g

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frebini® Original (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>2.5 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>12.5 g (sugars 700 mg)</td>
<td>4.4 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oils and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743, and growth failure in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.09</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frebini® Original Fibre (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>2.5 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>12.5 g (sugars 700 mg)</td>
<td>4.4 g</td>
<td>750 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oils and fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743, and growth failure in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 2: Borderline substances

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enteral feeds (non-disease specific)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infatrini</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrini</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrini Multi Fibre</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paediasure</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (Abbott)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paediasure Fibre</strong> (Abbott)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paediasure Peptide</strong> (Abbott)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Similac High Energy</strong> (Abbott)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tenfriini</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
2. Nutritional values vary with pack size—consult product literature
## Appendix 2: Borderline substances

### A2.1.3.2 Enteral feeds, Child: 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tentrini Multi Fibre</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>3.3 g whey protein and caseinate</td>
<td>12.3 g (sugars 800 mg)</td>
<td>4.2 g</td>
<td>1.1 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743, except bowel fistula, and growth failure in child 7–12 years body-weight 21–45 kg</td>
<td>Bottle or flexible pack: 500 mL = £5.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hydrolysate Formula

See also Infant Formula (Hydrolysate), section 2.3.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrin® Peptisorb</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>2.8 g whey protein hydrolysate</td>
<td>13.7 g (sugars 800 mg)</td>
<td>3.9 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743, and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £8.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peptamen® Junior</strong> (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed)</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>3 g whey protein hydrolysate</td>
<td>13.2 g</td>
<td>4 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Hydrolysed with pork trypsin</td>
<td>Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula, in child 1–10 years</td>
<td>Flexible pack: 500 mL = £7.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortini</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>3.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 7.4 g)</td>
<td>6.8 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.77 Strawberry, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortini Multifibre</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>3.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 7.4 g)</td>
<td>6.8 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.91 Banana, chocolate, strawberry, vanilla, and unflavoured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortini Smoothie</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>625 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>3.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>19 g (sugars 11.5 g)</td>
<td>6.4 g</td>
<td>1.4 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.91 Berry fruit, summer fruit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A2.1.3.3 Enteral feeds, Child: More than 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortini</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>3.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 7.4 g)</td>
<td>6.8 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.77 Strawberry, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortini Multifibre</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>3.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.8 g (sugars 7.4 g)</td>
<td>6.8 g</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.91 Banana, chocolate, strawberry, vanilla, and unflavoured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortini Smoothie</strong> (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed)</td>
<td>625 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>3.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>19 g (sugars 11.5 g)</td>
<td>6.4 g</td>
<td>1.4 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.91 Berry fruit, summer fruit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### A2.1.3.4 Enteral feeds, Child: 1.5 kcal/mL and more than 4 g protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nutritin® Energy (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>4.1 g caseinate whey protein</td>
<td>18.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)</td>
<td>6.7 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743, and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.84 Flexible pack: 500 mL = £7.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutritin® Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>4.1 g caseinate whey protein</td>
<td>18.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)</td>
<td>6.7 g</td>
<td>800 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Paediatric, p. 743 except bowel fistula; also total gastrectomy, in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £3.01 Flexible pack: 500 mL = £7.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
2. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
Appendix 2: Borderline substances

A2.2 Nutritional supplements (non-disease specific)

A2.2.1 Nutritional supplements: less than 5 g protein/100 mL

A2.2.1.1 Nutritional supplements: 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure* (Abbott)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>423 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>4 g caseinates soy isolate</td>
<td>13.6 g (sugars 3.93 g)</td>
<td>3.36 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Can: 250 mL = £2.07 Chocolate, coffee, vanilla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
### A2.2.1.2 Nutritional supplements: More than 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ensure® Plus Juice (Abbott)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>638 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>4.8 g whey protein isolate</td>
<td>32.7 g (sugars 9.4 g&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Bottle: 220 mL = £1.80 Apple, fruit punch, lemon-lime, orange, peach, strawberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fortijuce® (Nutricia Clinical)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>640 kJ (150 kcal)</td>
<td>4.0 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>33.5 g (sugars 13.1 g&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 3 years Bottle: 200 mL = £1.85 Apple, black currant, forest fruits, lemon, orange, strawberry, tropical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paediasure® Plus Juice (Abbott)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>638 kJ (150 kcal)&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.2 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>33.3 g (sugars 9.4 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg with disease-related malnutrition and, or growth failure</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £2.77 Apple, very berry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ProvideXtra® Juice Drink (Fresenius Kabi)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>525 kJ (125 kcal)</td>
<td>3.75 g pea and soya protein hydrolysates</td>
<td>27.5 g&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free Non-milk taste Sweet-flavoured products contain fish gelatin</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Carton: 200 mL = £1.75 Apple, black currant, carrot-apple, cherry, citrus-cola, lemon-lime, melon, orange-pineapple, tomato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource® Dessert Energy (Nestlé)</strong></td>
<td>Semi-solid per 100 g</td>
<td>671 kJ (160 kcal)</td>
<td>4.8 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>21.2 g (sugars 9.9 g&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>6.2 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Cup: 125 g = £1.47 Caramel, chocolate, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource® Fruit (Nestlé)</strong></td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>520 kJ (125 kcal)</td>
<td>4 g whey protein hydrolysate</td>
<td>27 g (sugars 9.5 g&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>less than 200 mg</td>
<td>less than 200 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 3 years Bottle: 4 x 200 mL = £7.02 Apple, orange, pear-cherry, raspberry-black currant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour.
2. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.
3. Fibre content varies with flavour.
### A2.2.2 Nutritional supplements: 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

#### A2.2.2.1 Nutritional supplements: 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product Type</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy (kJ, kcal)</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure® Plus Fibre</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>642 (153)</td>
<td>6.25 g cows’ milk soya protein isolate</td>
<td>20.2 g (sugars 5.5 g)</td>
<td>4.92 g</td>
<td>2.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.85 Banana, chocolate, fruits of the forest, raspberry, strawberry, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure® Plus Milkshake style</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>632 (150)</td>
<td>6.25 g cows’ milk soya protein isolate</td>
<td>20.2 g (sugars 5.6 g incl. sucrose)</td>
<td>4.92 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Can: 250 mL = £2.35 Banana, black currant, caramel, chocolate, coffee, fruits of the forest, orange, peach, raspberry, strawberry, vanilla Bottle: 220 mL = £1.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure® Plus Yoghurt style</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>632 (150)</td>
<td>6.25 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>20.2 g (sugars 11.7 g)</td>
<td>4.92 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Bottle: 220 mL = £1.85 Orange, peach, pineapple, strawberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure® Plus Commenge</td>
<td>Starter pack (5–10 day's supply), contains: Ensure® Plus Milkshake Style (various flavours), 1 pack (10 x 220-mL) = £18.52.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortisip® Bottle</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 (150)</td>
<td>6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.4 g²</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.85 Banana, chocolate, neutral, orange, strawberry, toffee, tropical fruits, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortisip® Multi Fibre</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 (150)</td>
<td>6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.4 g (sugars 7.0 g)</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>2.3 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.91 Banana, chocolate, orange, strawberry, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortisip® Yoghurt Style</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>630 (150)</td>
<td>6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>18.7 g (sugars 10.8 g)</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>200 mg</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.85 Peach-orange, raspberry, vanilla-lemon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
2. Sugar content varies with flavour
Appendix 2: Borderline substances

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
2. Fibre content varies with flavour
3. Sugar content varies with consistency
4. Fibre content varies with consistency

A2.2.2 Nutritional supplements: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinutren Dessert (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Semi-solid per 100 g</td>
<td>520 kJ</td>
<td>9.5 g</td>
<td>15.5 g</td>
<td>2.6 g</td>
<td>500 mg³</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Pot: 4 x 125 g = £5.88 Caramel, chocolate, peach, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure Plus Crème (Abbott)</td>
<td>Semi-solid per 100 g</td>
<td>574 kJ</td>
<td>5.68 g</td>
<td>18.4 g</td>
<td>4.47 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains soya</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Pot: 125 g = £1.72 Banana, chocolate, neutral, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortimel Regular (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ</td>
<td>10 g</td>
<td>10.3 g</td>
<td>2.1 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.57 Chocolate, forest fruits, strawberry, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortisip Fruit Dessert (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Semi-Solid per 100 g</td>
<td>560 kJ</td>
<td>7 g</td>
<td>16.7 g</td>
<td>4 g</td>
<td>2.6 g</td>
<td>Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula; also CAPD, haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Pot: 3 x 150 g = £6.49 Apple, strawberry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
2. Fibre content varies with flavour
3. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
### A2.2.2 Nutritional supplements: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL (product list continued)

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral Impact* (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Standard dilution of powder (74 g in 250 mL water) (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>425 kJ (101 kcal)¹</td>
<td>5.6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>13.4 g (sugars 7.4 g)</td>
<td>2.8 g</td>
<td>1 g</td>
<td>Residual lactose, contains fish oil</td>
<td>Pre-operative nutritional supplement for malnourished patients or patients at risk of malnourishment Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Sachet: 5 x 74 g = £15.41 Citrus, coffee, tropical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein 16.8 g, carbohydrate 40.2 g, fat 8.3 g, fibre 3 g, energy 1276 kJ (303 kcal)/74 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource*</td>
<td>Protein (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>530 kJ (125 kcal)¹</td>
<td>9.4 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>14 g (sugars 4.5 g)</td>
<td>3.5 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free, contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein 16.8 g, carbohydrate 40.2 g, fat 8.3 g, fibre 3 g, energy 1276 kJ (303 kcal)/74 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.

### A2.2.3 Nutritional supplements: More than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complan® Shake (Complan Foods)</td>
<td>Powder per 57 g</td>
<td>1057 kJ (251 kcal)¹</td>
<td>8.8 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>35.2 g (sugars 22.7 g)</td>
<td>8.4 g</td>
<td>Trace</td>
<td>Gluten-free, contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Sachet: 4 x 57 g = £3.44 Banana, chocolate, original, strawberry, vanilla Starter pack: 5 x 57 g = £5.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder 57 g reconstituted with 200 mL whole milk provides: protein 15.6 g, carbohydrate 44.5 g, fat 16.4 g, energy 1621 kJ (387 kcal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foodlink® Complete (Foodlink)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1838 kJ (437 kcal)¹</td>
<td>21.9 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>57.3 g</td>
<td>13.3 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Carton: 450 g = £3.29 Banana, chocolate, neutral, strawberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended serving = 3 heaped tablespoonfuls in 250 mL water provides: protein 12.5 g, carbohydrate 32.7 g, fat 7.6 g, energy 1048 kJ (249 kcal)²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foodlink® Complete with Fibre (Foodlink)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1804 kJ (428 kcal)¹</td>
<td>19.5 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>57.1 g (sugars 36.8 g)</td>
<td>12.3 g</td>
<td>8 g</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743</td>
<td>Sachet: 10 x 63 g = £6.67 Vanilla + fibre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended serving = 4 heaped tablespoonfuls in 250 mL water provides: protein 12.3 g, carbohydrate 38 g, fat 7.5 g, fibre 5 g, energy 1137 kJ (270 kcal)³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.

². Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.

³. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Nutritional Information</th>
<th>Notes</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forticreme® Complete (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Semi-solid</td>
<td>per 100 g 675 kJ (160 kcal) 9.5 g cows’ milk 19.2 g (sugars 10.6 g) 5 g 100 mg 1</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Pot: 4 × 125 g = £7.20 Banana, chocolate, forest fruits, vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortisip® Compact (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL 1010 kJ (240 kcal) 9.6 g cows’ milk 29.7 g (sugars 15 g) 9.3 g Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 125 mL = £1.85 Apricot, banana, mocha, strawberry, vanilla Starter pack: 6 × 125 mL = £11.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortisip® Extra (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL 675 kJ (160 kcal) 10 g cows’ milk 18.1 g (sugars 9 g) 5.3 g Nil 1</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.85 Chocolate, forest fruits, mocha, strawberry, vanilla Starter pack: forest fruits, 4 × 200 mL = £7.58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® 2 kcal (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL 840 kJ (200 kcal) 10 g cows’ milk 22.5 g (sugars 5.8 g) 7.8 g Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.73 Cappuccino, chocolate, lemon, vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® 2 kcal Fibre (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL 840 kJ (200 kcal) 10 g cows’ milk 22.5 g (sugars 5.8 g) 7.8 g 1.6 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Contains lactose Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.73 Fibre: Cappuccino, chocolate, lemon, vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresubin® Crème (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Semi-solid per 100 g 756 kJ (180 kcal) 10 g cows’ milk 19 g (sugars 14.4 g) 7.2 g 2 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Pot: 4 × 125 g = £7.08 Cappuccino, chocolate, praline, strawberry, vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutilis® Complete Stage 1 (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (pre-thickened) per 100 mL 1010 kJ (240 kcal) 9.6 g cows’ milk 29.1 g (sugars 5.4 g) 9.3 g 3.2 g</td>
<td>Residual lactose Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 125 mL = £2.10 Strawberry, vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renilon® 7.5 (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL 840 kJ (200 kcal) 7.5 g cows’ milk 20 g (sugars 4.8 g) 10 g Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Carton: 125 mL = £1.85 Apricot, caramel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource® 2.0 Fibre (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL 836 kJ (200 kcal) 9 g cows’ milk 21.4 g (sugars 5.5 g) 8.7 g 2.5 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Standard, p. 743 Not suitable for child under 6 years; caution in child 6–10 years</td>
<td>Carton: 200 mL = £1.80 Apricot, coffee, neutral, strawberry, summer fruits, vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource® Dessert Fruit (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Semi-solid per 100 g 678 kJ (160 kcal) 5 g cows’ milk 24 g (sugars 16.4 g) 5 g 1.4 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Standard, p. 743; also CAPD, haemodialysis</td>
<td>Cup: 3 × 125 g = £4.41 Apple, apple-peach, apple-strawberry 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### A2.2.2.3 Nutritional supplements: More than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL (product list continued)

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vegenat-med® Balanced Protein (Vegenat)</td>
<td>Powder per 110 g serving</td>
<td>1924 kJ (458 kcal)</td>
<td>18 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>62 g</td>
<td>15.35 g</td>
<td>5.8 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula Not suitable for child under 14 years</td>
<td>Sachet: 12 × 110 g = £36.26 Apple, chocolate, honey, orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegenat-med® High Protein (Vegenat)</td>
<td>Powder per 110 g serving</td>
<td>1940 kJ (463 kcal)</td>
<td>23.3 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>57.2 g</td>
<td>15.6 g</td>
<td>6 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except bowel fistula Not suitable for child under 14 years</td>
<td>Sachet: 12 × 110 g = £50.76 Chicken, chickpea, fish, fish-vegetable, ham, lentil, veal, vegetable, winter vegetable 12 × 110 g = £48.95 Curry chicken 12 × 110 g = £48.22 Lemon, rice with lemon 24 × 55 g = £46.50 Rice with apple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.
## A2.3 Specialised formulas

### A2.3.1 Specialised formulas: Infant and child

Specialised formulas are suitable for infants from birth unless otherwise indicated (see also A2.1.3.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neocate® Active (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (21 %) of powder per 300 mL serving (63-g sachet made up to 300 mL with water)</td>
<td>1255 kJ (300 kcal)</td>
<td>8.3 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)</td>
<td>34 g (sugars 3.1 g)</td>
<td>14.5 g Nil</td>
<td>Milk protein-free</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement only Not suitable for child under 1 year</td>
<td>Sachet: 15 × 63 g = £56.04 Black currant, unflavoured²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neocate® Advance (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (25%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>2.5 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)</td>
<td>14.6 g (sugars 1.3 g)</td>
<td>3.5 g (MCT 35 %)</td>
<td>Milk protein-free</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 1 year</td>
<td>Sachet: 100 g = £4.94 Unflavoured² 15 × 50 g = £38.99 Banana-vanilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neocate® LCP (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (14.7%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>293 kJ (70 kcal)</td>
<td>1.9 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)</td>
<td>7.9 g (sugars 720 mg)</td>
<td>3.4 g Nil</td>
<td>Milk protein-free</td>
<td>Cows' milk allergy, multiple food protein intolerance, and conditions requiring an elemental diet</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £23.83 (4.9-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
2. Flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777
## A2.3 Specialised formulas: Infant and child

Specialised formulas are suitable for infants from birth unless otherwise indicated (see also A2.1.3.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nutramigen® AA (Mead Johnson)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (13.6 %) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>286 kJ (68 kcal)</td>
<td>1.89 g essential and non-essential amino acids</td>
<td>7 g</td>
<td>3.6 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free</td>
<td>Lactose-free</td>
<td>Severe cows' milk protein intolerance, or multiple food intolerance, and other gastro-intestinal disorders where an elemental diet is specifically indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutramigen® LIPIL 1 (Mead Johnson)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (13.5 %) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>280 kJ (68 kcal)</td>
<td>1.9 g casein hydrolysed</td>
<td>7.5 g</td>
<td>3.4 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free</td>
<td>Lactose-free</td>
<td>Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance where additional medium chain triglycerides are not included</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Hydrolysate formula

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Aptamil Pepti® 1** (Allergy) (Milupa) | Standard dilution (13.6 %) of powder per 100 mL | 280 kJ (67 kcal) | 1.6 g whey hydrolysed | 7.1 g (sugars 3.5 g) | 3.5 g | 600 mg | Contains lactose and fish oil | Established cows' milk protein intolerance, with or without secondary lactose intolerance | Can: 400 g = £8.62 
900 g = £19.39 (4.5-g measuring scoop provided) |
| **Aptamil Pepti® 2** (Allergy) (Milupa) | Standard dilution (14.3 %) of powder per 100 mL | 285 kJ (68 kcal) | 1.6 g | 8 g (sugars 3.6 g) | 3.1 g | 600 mg | Contains lactose and fish oil | Established cows' milk protein allergy or intolerance 
Not suitable for child under 6 months | Can: 900 g = £19.39 (4.8-g measuring scoop provided) |
| **Cow & Gate Pepti-Junior** (Cow & Gate) | Standard dilution (12.8 %) of powder per 100 mL | 275 kJ (66 kcal) | 1.8 g whey hydrolysed | 6.8 g (sugars 1.1 g) | 3.5 g | Nil | Residual lactose | Contains fish oil | Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance and peptides are indicated in conjunction with medium chain triglycerides | Can: 450 g = £11.01 (4.3-g measuring scoop provided) |
| Nutramigen® LIPIL 1 (Mead Johnson) | Standard dilution (13.5 %) of powder per 100 mL | 280 kJ (68 kcal) | 1.9 g casein hydrolysed | 7.5 g | 3.4 g | Nil | Gluten-free | Lactose-free | Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance where additional medium chain triglycerides are not included | Can: 400 g = £9.29 (4.5-g measuring scoop provided) |

Powder provides: protein 13.9 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat 26 g, energy 2092 kJ (498 kcal)/100 g

Powder provides: protein 11.6 g, carbohydrate 53 g, fat 25.6 g, energy 2025 kJ (484 kcal)/100 g

Powder provides: protein 11.2 g, carbohydrate 56.1 g, fat 21.8 g, energy 1985 kJ (473 kcal)/100 g

Powder provides: protein 14 g, carbohydrate 53.4 g, fat 27.3 g, energy 2155 kJ (515 kcal)/100 g

Powder provides: protein 14 g, carbohydrate 55 g, fat 25 g, energy 2100 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g
### Nutramigen® Lipil 2 (Mead Johnson)

- **Standard dilution** (14.6 %) of powder per 100 mL:
  - 2.9 g casein hydrolysed
  - 8.6 g
  - Nil
  - Gluten-free
  - Lactose-free
- Established disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance (where additional chain triglycerides are not indicated)
- Not suitable for child under 6 months
- **Can:** 400 g = £8.95 (4.9-g measuring scoop provided)

**Powder provides:** protein 11.6 g, carbohydrate 59 g, fat 20 g, energy 1950 kJ (466 kcal)/100 g

### Pepdite® (SHS)

- **Standard dilution** (15 %) of powder per 100 mL:
  - 2.1 g protein equivalent (non-milk hydrolysate)
  - 7.8 g sugars 700 mg
  - 3.5 g Nil
  - Lactose-free
  - Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives
- Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance
- **Can:** 400 g = £15.05 (5-g measuring scoop provided)

**Powder provides:** protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 52 g, fat 23.2 g, energy 1977 kJ (472 kcal)/100 g

### Pepdite® 1+ (SHS)

- **Standard dilution** (22.8 %) of powder per 100 mL:
  - 3.1 g protein equivalent (non-milk hydrolysate, essential amino acids)
  - 13 g sugars 1.2 g
  - 3.9 g (MCT 35 %)
  - Nil
  - Lactose-free
  - Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives
- Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance, or where amino acids or peptides are indicated in conjunction with medium chain triglycerides
- Not suitable for child under 1 year
- **Can:** 400 g = £15.81 Unflavoured

**Powder provides:** protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 57 g, fat 17.3 g, energy 1844 kJ (439 kcal)/100 g

### Pregestimil® Lipil (Mead Johnson)

- **Standard dilution** (13.5 %) of powder per 100 mL:
  - 1.89 g casein hydrolysed
  - 6.9 g
  - 3.8 g (MCT 54 %)
  - Nil
  - Gluten-free
  - Lactose-free
- Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance, or where amino acids or peptides are indicated in conjunction with medium chain triglycerides
- **Can:** 400 g = £10.18 (4.5-g measuring scoop provided)

**Powder provides:** protein 14 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat 28 g, energy 2100 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g

### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Residual lactose formula

#### Enfamil® O-Lac (Mead Johnson)

- **Standard dilution** (13 %) of powder per 100 mL:
  - 1.42 g cows’ milk
  - 7.2 g
  - 3.7 g Nil
  - Gluten-free
  - Residual lactose
- Proven lactose intolerance
- **Can:** 400 g = £4.16 (4.3-g measuring scoop provided)

**Powder provides:** protein 10.9 g, carbohydrate 55 g, fat 28 g, energy 2200 kJ (524 kcal)/100 g

#### Galactomin 17® (SHS)

- **Standard dilution** (13.6 %) of powder per 100 mL:
  - 1.7 g protein equivalent (cows’ milk)
  - 7.5 g (sugars 1.4 g)
  - 3.7 g Nil
  - Residual lactose
- Proven lactose intolerance in preschool children, galactosaemia, and galactokinase deficiency
- **Can:** 400 g = £14.13 Unflavoured

**Powder provides:** protein equivalent 12.3 g, carbohydrate 55.3 g, fat 27.2 g, energy 2155 kJ (515 kcal)/100 g

---

1. Flavouring: see *Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777*
## A2.3.1 Specialised formulas: Infant and child (product list continued)

Specialised formulas are suitable for infants from birth unless otherwise indicated (see also A2.1.3.1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMA® LF (SMA Nutrition)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (13%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>281 kJ (67 kcal)</td>
<td>1.5 g casein, whey</td>
<td>7.2 g (sugars 2.6 g)</td>
<td>3.6 g Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose</td>
<td>Proven lactose intolerance</td>
<td>Can: 430 g = £4.60.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein 12 g, carbohydrate 55.6 g, fat 28 g, energy 2185 kJ (522 kcal)/100 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: MCT-enhanced formula

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caprilon® (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (12.7%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>277 kJ (66 kcal)</td>
<td>1.5 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>7 g (sugars 1.3 g)</td>
<td>3.6 g Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Disorders in which a high intake of MCT is beneficial</td>
<td>Can: 420 g = £14.62 (4.2-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein 11.8 g, carbohydrate 55.1 g, fat 28.3 g, energy 2184 kJ (522 kcal)/100 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCT Pepdite® (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (15%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>286 kJ (68 kcal)</td>
<td>2 g protein equivalent (non-milk peptides, essential amino acids)</td>
<td>8.8 g (sugars 1.2 g)</td>
<td>2.7 g (MCT 75%)</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives</td>
<td>Disorders in which a high intake of MCT is beneficial</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £16.39 (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 51.9 g, fat 18.6 g, energy 1903 kJ (453 kcal)/100 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCT Pepdite® +1 (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>381 kJ (91 kcal)</td>
<td>2.8 g protein equivalent (non-milk peptides, essential amino acids)</td>
<td>11.8 g (sugars 1.6 g)</td>
<td>3.6 g (MCT 75%)</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives</td>
<td>Disorders in which a high intake of MCT is beneficial Not suitable for child under 1 year</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £16.39 Unflavoured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 59.6 g, fat 18.6 g, energy 1903 kJ (453 kcal)/100 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monogen® (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (17.5%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>313 kJ (74 kcal)</td>
<td>2 g protein equivalent (whey)</td>
<td>12 g (sugars 1.2 g)</td>
<td>2.1 g (MCT 90%)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose Supplementation with essential fatty acids may be needed Long-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency (LCAD), carnitine palmitoyl transferase deficiency (CPTD), primary and secondary lipoprotein lipase deficiency</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £17.07 Unflavoured (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powder provides: protein equivalent 11.4 g, carbohydrate 68 g, fat 11.8 g, energy 1786 kJ (424 kcal)/100 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777
### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Soya-based formula

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Standard dilution</th>
<th>Protein (g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate (g)</th>
<th>Fat (g)</th>
<th>Energy (kJ/100 mL)</th>
<th>Lactose-free</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InfaSoy</td>
<td>12.8%</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Lactose-free</td>
<td>Proven lactose and associated sucrose intolerance in pre-school children, galactokinase deficiency, galactosaemia, and proven whole cows’ milk sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Cow &amp; Gate)</td>
<td>(66 kcal)</td>
<td>(sugars 1 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can: 900 g = £7.47 (4.3-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wysoy</td>
<td>13.2%</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Lactose-free</td>
<td>Proven lactose and associated sucrose intolerance in pre-school children, galactokinase deficiency, galactosaemia, and proven whole cows’ milk sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Wyeth)</td>
<td>(67 kcal)</td>
<td>(sugars 2.5 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can: 430 g = £6.59 860 g = £6.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Low calcium formula

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Standard dilution</th>
<th>Protein (g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate (g)</th>
<th>Fat (g)</th>
<th>Energy (kJ/100 mL)</th>
<th>Lactose-free</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Locasol</td>
<td>13.1%</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose Calcium less than 7 mg/100 mL No added vitamin D</td>
<td>Conditions of calcium intolerance requiring restriction of calcium and vitamin D intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(SHS)</td>
<td>(66 kcal)</td>
<td>(sugars 6.9 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £19.63 (4.4-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Fructose-based formula

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Standard dilution</th>
<th>Protein equivalent (g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate (g)</th>
<th>Fat (g)</th>
<th>Energy (kJ/100 mL)</th>
<th>Lactose-free</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Galactomin</td>
<td>12.9%</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose, galactose and glucose</td>
<td>Conditions of glucose plus galactose intolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(SHS)</td>
<td>(69 kcal)</td>
<td>(fructose 6.3 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £37.18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Pre-thickened infant feeds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Standard dilution</th>
<th>Protein (g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate (g)</th>
<th>Fat (g)</th>
<th>Energy (kJ/100 mL)</th>
<th>Lactose-free</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enfamil AR</td>
<td>13.5%</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose, pregelatinised rice starch</td>
<td>Significant gastro-oesophageal reflux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Mead Johnson)</td>
<td>(68 kcal)</td>
<td>(lactose 4.6 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £3.12 (4.5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMA Staydown</td>
<td>12.9%</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose, pre-cooked corn starch</td>
<td>Significant gastro-oesophageal reflux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(SMA Nutrition)</td>
<td>(67 kcal)</td>
<td>(lactose 5 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can: 900 g = £6.62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### A2.3.2 Specialised formulas for specific clinical conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alichem (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (30% of powder per 100 mL)</td>
<td>567 kJ (135 kcal)</td>
<td>4.5 g caseinate whey</td>
<td>17.4 g (sugars 3.2 g)</td>
<td>5.3 g Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose</td>
<td>Crohn’s disease Not suitable for child under 1 year; use as nutritional supplement only in children 1–6 years.</td>
<td>Powder: 400 g = £18.08 Vanilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forticare® (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>675 kJ (160 kcal)</td>
<td>9 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>19.1 g (sugars 13.6 g)</td>
<td>5.3 g 2.1 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement in patients with lung cancer undergoing chemotherapy, or with pancreatic cancer Not suitable in child under 3 years</td>
<td>Carton: 125 mL = £2.02 Cappuccino, orange-lemon, peach-ginger.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generaid® (SHS)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1586 kJ (374 kcal)</td>
<td>76 g protein equivalent (whey protein, plus branched chain amino acids)</td>
<td>5 g (sugars 5 g)</td>
<td>5.5 g Nil</td>
<td>Electrolytes/100 g: Na⁺ 6.1 mmol K⁺ 10.8 mmol Ca²⁺ 6.5 mmol P⁺ 6.45 mmol</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement for use in chronic liver disease and/or porto-hepatic encephalopathy</td>
<td>Tub: 400 g = £51.46 Unflavoured¹</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generaid® Plus (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (22%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>428 kJ (102 kcal)</td>
<td>2.4 g protein equivalent (whey protein, branched chain amino acids)</td>
<td>13.6 g (sugars 1.4 g)</td>
<td>4.2 g (MCT 32 %)</td>
<td>Electrolytes/100 mL: Na⁺ 0.7 mmol K⁺ 2.7 mmol Ca²⁺ 1.72 mmol P⁺ 1.67 mmol</td>
<td>Enteral feed or nutritional supplement in children over 1 year with hepatic disorders</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £18.40 Unflavoured¹ (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparon® Junior (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (18%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>163 kJ (86 kcal)</td>
<td>2 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>11.6 g (sugars 2.9 g)</td>
<td>3.6 g Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na⁺ 0.56 mmol K⁺ 1.9 mmol Ca²⁺ 2.3 mmol P⁺ 1.6 mmol</td>
<td>Enteral feed or nutritional supplement for children with acute or chronic liver failure</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £18.20 (4.5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777
### KetoCal® (SHS)

- **Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL**
  - 602 kJ (146 kcal)
  - 3.1 g cows’ milk with additional amino acids
  - 600 mg sugars (120 mg)
  - 14.6 g (LCT 100%)
  - Electrolytes/100 mL:
    - Na⁺ 4.3 mmol
    - K⁺ 4.1 mmol
    - Ca²⁺ 2.15 mmol
    - P⁺ 2.77 mmol

- **Powder provides**
  - Protein 15.25 g, carbohydrate 3 g, fat 73 g, energy 3011 kJ (730 kcal)/100 g

- **Enteral feed or nutritional supplement**
  - as part of ketogenic diet in management of epilepsy resistant to drug therapy, in children over 1 year, only on the advice of secondary care physician with experience of ketogenic diet
  - Can: 300 g = £25.62 Vanilla, Unflavoured

### KetoCal® 4:1 LQ (SHS)

- **Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL**
  - 620 kJ (150 kcal)
  - 3.09 g casein and whey with additional amino acids
  - 610 mg sugars (230 mg)
  - 14.8 g (LCT 100%)
  - Electrolytes/100 mL:
    - Na⁺ 4.9 mmol
    - K⁺ 4.7 mmol
    - Ca²⁺ 2.4 mmol
    - P⁺ 3.1 mmol

- **Powder provides**
  - Protein 15.25 g, carbohydrate 3 g, fat 73 g, energy 3011 kJ (730 kcal)/100 g

### Kindergen® (SHS)

- **Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL**
  - 421 kJ (101 kcal)
  - 1.5 g whey protein
  - 11.8 g sugars (1.2 g)
  - 5.3 g (LCT 93%)
  - Electrolytes/100 mL:
    - Na⁺ 2 mmol
    - K⁺ 0.6 mmol
    - Ca²⁺ 2.8 mmol
    - P⁺ 3 mmol

- **Powder provides**
  - Protein 7.5 g, carbohydrate 59 g, fat 26.3 g, energy 2104 kJ (504 kcal)/100 g

### Modulen IBD® (Nestlé)

- **Standard dilution (20%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL**
  - 420 kJ (100 kcal)
  - 3.6 g casein
  - 11 g sugars (3.98 g)
  - 4.7 g (LCT 93%)

- **Powder provides**
  - Protein 18 g, carbohydrate 54 g, fat 23 g, energy 2070 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g

### Nepro® (Abbott)

- **Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL**
  - 838 kJ (200 kcal)²
  - 7 g cows’ milk
  - 20.6 g sugars (3.26 g)
  - 9.6 g (LCT 93%)

- **Powder provides**
  - Protein 18 g, carbohydrate 54 g, fat 23 g, energy 2070 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g

### ProSure® (Abbott)

- **Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL**
  - 529 kJ (125 kcal)²
  - 6.65 g cows’ milk
  - 18.3 g sugars (2.95 g)
  - 2.56 g (LCT 93%)

1. Flavouring: see Flavour Mix®, p. 777
2. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
# A2.3.2 Specialised formulas for specific clinical conditions

## Product Formulation Energy Protein Carbohydrate Fat Fibre Special Characteristics ACBS Indications Presentation & Flavour

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renamil®</strong>&lt;sup&gt;(KoRa)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Powder (sip or tube feed when reconstituted) per 100 g</td>
<td>2003 kJ (477 kcal)</td>
<td>4.6 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>70.8 g</td>
<td>19.3 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose Gluten-free Electrolytes/100 g: Na&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 1.04 mmol K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 0.13 mmol Ca&lt;sup&gt;2+&lt;/sup&gt; 10.22 mmol P&lt;sup&gt;−&lt;/sup&gt; 1.06 mmol</td>
<td>Enteral feed or nutritional supplement for adults and children over 1 year with chronic renal failure</td>
<td>Sachet: 10 × 100 g = £25.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renapro®</strong>&lt;sup&gt;(KoRa)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1580 kJ (372 kcal)</td>
<td>90 g whey protein</td>
<td>800 mg</td>
<td>1 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Electrolytes/100 g: Na&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 23 mmol K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 2 mmol Ca&lt;sup&gt;2+&lt;/sup&gt; 4.99 mmol P&lt;sup&gt;−&lt;/sup&gt; 4.84 mmol</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement for biochemically proven hypoproteinemia and patients undergoing dialysis Not suitable for child under 1 year</td>
<td>Sachet: 30 × 20 g = £69.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renastart®</strong>&lt;sup&gt;(Vitaflo)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>411 kJ (98 kcal)</td>
<td>1.5 g cows’ milk soya</td>
<td>12.6 g (sugars 1.2 g)</td>
<td>4.6 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 2.1 mmol K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 0.6 mmol Ca&lt;sup&gt;2+&lt;/sup&gt; 0.58 mmol P&lt;sup&gt;−&lt;/sup&gt; 0.58 mmol</td>
<td>Dietary management of renal failure in child from birth to 10 years</td>
<td>Powder: 10 × 100 g = £56.93 Unflavoured (7-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Suplena®</strong>&lt;sup&gt;(Abbott)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL</td>
<td>840 kJ (200 kcal)</td>
<td>3 g caseinates</td>
<td>25.5 g (sugars 2.7 g)</td>
<td>9.6 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 3.39 mmol K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; 2.87 mmol Ca&lt;sup&gt;2+&lt;/sup&gt; 3.48 mmol P&lt;sup&gt;−&lt;/sup&gt; 2.39 mmol</td>
<td>Enteral feed or nutritional supplement in patients with chronic or acute renal failure who are not undergoing dialysis, or with chronic or acute liver disease with fluid restriction; other conditions requiring high energy, low protein, low electrolyte, low volume enteral feed Not suitable for child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years</td>
<td>Can: 237 mL = £2.47 Vanilla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## A2.4 Feed supplements

### A2.4.1 High-energy supplements

Table showing high-energy supplements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy per 100 g</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caloreen®</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>1640 kJ (390 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>96 g Maltodextrin</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>See above; Not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Powder: 500 g = £3.52 Unflavoured (10-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maxijul® Super Soluble (SHS)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1615 kJ (380 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>95 g Glucose polymer (sugars 8.6 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Sachets: 4 × 132 g = £5.44 Can: 200 g = £2.19 2.5 kg = £19.25 25 kg = £130.76 Unflavoured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maxijul® Liquid (SHS)</td>
<td>Liquid per 100 mL</td>
<td>850 kJ (200 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>50 g Glucose polymer (sugars 4.5 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Carton: 200 mL = £1.37 Orange, unflavoured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycal® (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1630 kJ (384 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>96 g Maltodextrin (sugars 6 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £3.75 Neutral (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liquid per 100 mL</td>
<td>1050 kJ (247 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>61.9 g Maltodextrin (sugars 12.2 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>See above; liquid not suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £1.50 Neutral, orange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.O.S.® (Vitaflo)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1590 kJ (380 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>95 g (sugars 9 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td></td>
<td>For use as an emergency regimen in the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism in adults and children from birth</td>
<td>Sachets: 30 × 21 g (S.O.S. 10) = £6.30; 30 × 31 g (S.O.S. 15) = £9.30; 30 × 42 g (S.O.S. 20) = £12.60; 30 × 52 g (S.O.S. 25) = £15.60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contents of each sachet should be reconstituted with water to a total volume of 200 mL.

1. Sugar content varies with flavour.
### A2.4.1.1 High-energy supplements: carbohydrate

Flavoured carbohydrate supplements are not suitable for child under 1 year; liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years.

**ACBS Indications:** disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high or readily available carbohydrate supplement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Vitajoule®  | Powder      | 1610 kJ  | Nil     | 96 g Dried glucose syrup | Nil | Nil   | Gluten-free Lactose-free | See above         | Can: 500 g = £3.66  
2.5 kg = £17.83  
25 kg = £107.39  
(10-g measuring scoop provided) |
| (Vitaflo)   | per 100 g   | (380 kcal) |         |              |     |       |                          |                  |                        |

#### Flavour

- ACBS Indications: disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high or readily available carbohydrate supplement

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature

2. Flavour not suitable for child under 3 years

### A2.4.1.2 High-energy supplements: fat

Liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years.

**ACBS Indications:** disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat (or fat and carbohydrate) supplement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Calogen®     | Liquid (emulsion) | 1850 kJ  | Nil     | 100 mg       | 50 g  | Nil   | Gluten-free Lactose-free | See above         | Bottle: 200 mL = £4.00  
500 mL = £9.83  
Bottle: 120 mL = £2.55  
Lemon, neutral |
| (Nutricia Clinical) per 100 mL |  (450 kcal) | | | (LCT 100 %) | | | | |
| Fresubin® 5 kcal Shot | Liquid (emulsion) | 2100 kJ  | Nil     | 4.0 g (sucrose) | 53.8 g | 400 mg | Gluten-free Lactose-free | See above Not suitable for child under 3 years | Bottle: 250 mL = £7.79 |
| (Fresenius Kabi) per 100 mL |  (500 kcal) | | | | | | | |
| Liquigen® | Liquid (emulsion) | 1850 kJ  | Nil     | Nil           | 50 g  | Nil   | Gluten-free Lactose-free | Steatorrhea associated with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas, intestinal lymphangiectasia, intestinal surgery, chronic liver disease, liver cirrhosis, other proven malabsorption syndromes, ketogenic diet in epilepsy, and in type 1 lipoproteinemia | Bottle: 250 mL = £7.79 |
| (SHS) per 100 mL |  (450 kcal) | | | (MCT 97 %) Fractionated coconut oil | | | | |
### Medium-chain Triglyceride (MCT) Oil (SHS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>3515 kJ (855 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>MCT 100%</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement for steatorrhoea associated with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas, intestinal lymphangiectasia, intestinal surgery, chronic liver disease and liver cirrhosis, other proven malabsorption syndromes, ketogenic diet in management of epilepsy, type 1 hyperlipoproteinaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bottle</td>
<td>500 mL = £12.34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fat and Carbohydrate

#### Duobar® (SHS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Energy (per 45 g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duobar®</td>
<td>Bar</td>
<td>1211 kJ (292 kcal)</td>
<td>Less than 20 mg</td>
<td>22.5 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>See above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Neutral, strawberry, toffee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Duocal® (SHS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duocal®</td>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>695 kJ (166 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>23.7 g (sugars 2.1 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains vitamin E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bottle</td>
<td>250 mL = £3.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Duocal® Super Soluble (SHS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duocal® Super Soluble</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>2061 kJ (492 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>72.7 g (sugars 6.5 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>400 g = £15.20 (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Energivit® (SHS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 mL)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Energivit®</td>
<td>Standard dilution</td>
<td>309 kJ (74 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>10 g (sugars 900 mg)</td>
<td>3.75 g</td>
<td>Lactose-free With vitamins, minerals, and trace elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For children requiring additional energy, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements following a protein-restricted diet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>400 g = £18.49 (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MCT Duocal® (SHS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Energy (per 100 g)</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCT Duocal®</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>2082 kJ (492 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>72 g (sugars 10.1 g)</td>
<td>23.2 g (MCT 35%)</td>
<td>See above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>400 g = £18.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A2.4.1.3 High-energy supplements: protein

#### ACBS indications:

- Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Casilan 90® (Heinz)</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>1572 kJ (370 kcal)</td>
<td>90 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>300 mg</td>
<td>1 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Electrolytes/100 g: Na⁺ 1.3 mmol K⁺ 8.7 mmol Ca²⁺ 35 mmol P⁰ 22.6 mmol</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement for use in biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia</td>
<td>Can: 250 g = £6.49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Appendix 2: Borderline substances**
## A2.4.1.3 High-energy supplements: protein (product list continued)

**ACBS indications:** disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protifar* (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1580 kJ (373 kcal)</td>
<td>88.5 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>less than 1.5 g</td>
<td>1.6 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Residual lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na+: 1.3 mmol K+: 1.28 mmol Ca2+: 33.75 mmol P: 22.58 mmol</td>
<td>Nutritional supplement for use in biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia</td>
<td>Can: 225 g = £7.44 Unflavoured (2.5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protifar* (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1506 kJ (360 kcal)</td>
<td>75 g whey protein isolate</td>
<td>9 g</td>
<td>6 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia</td>
<td>Tub: 250 g = £7.47 2 kg = £58.69 (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialamine* (SHS)</td>
<td>Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL</td>
<td>264 kJ (62 kcal)</td>
<td>4.3 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)</td>
<td>11.2 g (sugars 10.2 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains vitamin C</td>
<td>Hypoproteinaemia, chronic renal failure, wound fistula leakage with excessive protein loss, conditions requiring a controlled nitrogen intake, and haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 6 months</td>
<td>Can: 400 g = £61.74 Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calogen* Extra (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid per 30 mL</td>
<td>420 kJ (100 kcal)</td>
<td>10 g collagen protein whey protein isolate</td>
<td>15 g (sugars 8 g)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free May contain porcine derivatives</td>
<td>Biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia Not recommended for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Sachet: 100 × 30 mL = £83.36 Citrus-berry, neutral, orange creme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calogen* Extra (Nutricia Clinical)</td>
<td>Liquid per 100 mL</td>
<td>1650 kJ (400 kcal)</td>
<td>5 g cows’ milk</td>
<td>4.5 g (sugars 3.5 g)</td>
<td>40.3 g</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose Contains vitamins, minerals, and trace elements See above Not suitable for child under 3 years; may require dilution for child 3–5 years</td>
<td>Bottle: 200 mL = £4.56 Neutral, strawberry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brand</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g (kcal)</td>
<td>Cows’ milk, Soy protein isolate</td>
<td>Sugars (g)</td>
<td>Residual lactose</td>
<td>Vitamins/minerals</td>
<td>Suitable for child under 3 years</td>
<td>Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature</td>
<td>Suitable for child under 1 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calshake® (Fresenius Kabi)</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>1841 kJ (439 kcal)²¹</td>
<td>4.1 g</td>
<td>56.4 g (sugars 20 g)</td>
<td>22 g Nil</td>
<td>Contains lactose</td>
<td>Gluten-free</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 1 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powder per 87 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1893 kJ (450 kcal)²¹</td>
<td>8.4 g</td>
<td>69 g (sugars 14.5 g)</td>
<td>15.6 g Nil</td>
<td>Residual lactose</td>
<td>Contains vitamins and minerals</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>Not suitable for child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–6 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powder: one sachet reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 12 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powder: 96.5 g reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 16 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powder: one sachet reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 12 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powder: one sachet reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 12 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powder: one sachet reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 12 g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
2. Flavour not suitable for child under 3 years
## A2.4.2 Fibre, vitamin, and mineral supplements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Energy</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Carbohydrate</th>
<th>Fat</th>
<th>Fibre</th>
<th>Special Characteristics</th>
<th>ACBS Indications</th>
<th>Presentation &amp; Flavour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>High-fibre supplements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource® Optifibre® (Nestlé)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>323 kJ (76 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>19 g guar gum, partially hydrolysed</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>78 g</td>
<td>Gluten-free Lactose-free</td>
<td>Standard, p. 743 except dysphagia Not suitable for child under 5 years</td>
<td>Sachet: 16 x 10 g = £7.72 Can: 250 g = £9.51 (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin and Mineral supplements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic Mineral Mixture® (SHS)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>729 kJ (175 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Contains trace elements Electrolytes/100 g: Na⁺ 172 mmol K⁺ 212 mmol Ca²⁺ 205 mmol P⁺ 192 mmol Energy source: Calcium lactate</td>
<td>Mineral supplement for synthetic diets Suitable for infants (but may require further dilution)</td>
<td>Tub: 100 g = £10.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pediatric Seravit® (SHS)</td>
<td>Powder per 100 g</td>
<td>1275 kJ (300 kcal)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>75 g (sugars 6.75 g¹)</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin and mineral supplement in infants and children with restrictive therapeutic diets</td>
<td>Tub: 200 g = £14.37 Unflavoured² 200 g = £15.30 Pineapple³ (5-g measuring scoop provided)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sugar content varies with flavour
2. Flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777
3. Flavour not suitable for child under 6 months
### A2.5 Feed additives

#### A2.5.1 Special additives for conditions of intolerance

**Colief®** (Forum)
- **Liquid**, lactase 50 000 units/g, net price 7-mL dropper bottle = £8.40
- For the relief of symptoms associated with lactose intolerance in infants, provided that lactose intolerance is confirmed by the presence of reducing substances and/or excessive acid in stools, a low concentration of the corresponding disaccharide enzyme on intestinal biopsy or by breath hydrogen test or lactose intolerance test. For dosage and administration details, consult product literature.

**Fructose (Laevulose)**
- For proven glucose/galactose intolerance.

#### A2.5.2 Feed thickeners and pre-thickened drinks

**Carobel, Instant®** (Cow & Gate)
- **Powder**, carob seed flour. Net price 135 g = £2.97
- For thickening feeds in the treatment of vomiting.

**Nutrilis®** Powder (Nutricia Clinical)
- **Powder**, carbohydrate 86 g, energy 1520 kJ (358 kcal)/100 g, modified maize starch, gluten- and lactose-free, net price 20 × 9-g sachets = £5.88, 225 g = £4.51
- For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year except in cases of failure to thrive.

**Resource® Thickened Drink** (Nestlé)
- **Liquid**, carbohydrate 22 g, energy: orange 382 kJ (90 kcal), apple 376 kJ (90 kcal)/100 mL. Flavours; apple or orange, syrup or custard consistencies. Gluten- and lactose-free, net price 12 × 114-mL cups = £7.44
- For dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year.

**Resource® ThickenUp®** (Nestlé)
- **Powder**, modified maize starch. Gluten- and lactose-free, net price 227 g = £4.35; 74 × 4.5-g sachet = £16.66
- For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year.

**SLO Drinks®** (SLO Drinks)
- **Powder**, carbohydrate content varies with flavour and chosen consistency (3 consistencies available), see product literature. Flavours: black currant, lemon, orange; hot drinks: chocolate, white coffee, net price 25 × 115 mL = £7.50
- Nutritional supplement for patient hydration in the dietary management of dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 3 years.

**Thick and Easy®** (Fresenius Kabi)
- **Powder**, modified maize starch, net price 225-g can = £4.46; 100 × 9-g sachets = £26.35; 4.54 kg = £70.53
- **Thickened juices**, liquid, modified food starch. Flavours: apple or orange, net price 118-mL pot = 57p; apple, blackcurrant, kiwi-strawberry, orange, 1.42-litre bottle = £3.61
- For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year except in cases of failure to thrive.

#### A2.5.3 Flavouring preparations

**Flavour Mix®** (Nestlé)
- **Powder**, flavours: banana, chocolate, coffee, lemon-lime, or strawberry, net price 60 g = £6.85

**FlavourPac®** (Vitaflo)
- **Powder**, flavours: black currant, lemon, orange, tropical or raspberry, net price 30 × 4-g sachets = £11.54
- For use with Vitaflo’s range of unflavoured protein substitutes for metabolic diseases.

**Modjul® Flavour System** (SHS)
- **Powder**, carbohydrate-based flavours, black currant, orange, pineapple, 100 g = £10.24; cherry-vanilla, grapefruit, lemon-lime, 20 × 5-g sachets = £10.24
- For use with unflavoured SHS products based on peptides or amino acids; not suitable for child under 6 months.

### A2.6 Foods for special diets

#### A2.6.1 Gluten-free foods

**AcBS indications**: established gluten-sensitive enteropathies including steatorrhoea due to gluten sensitivity, coeliac disease, and dermatitis herpetiformis.

**Bread**

- **Gluten-free**
  - **Barkat** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
    - **Gluten-free**
      - Loaf, multigrain 500 g = £4.83
      - Loaf, sliced, wholemeal 500 g = £3.36
      - Loaf, sliced, part-baked, country-style 250 g = £3.69
      - Loaf, sliced, part-baked, white 550 g = £4.88
      - Rice bread, brown 500 g = £4.83
      - Rice bread, white 500 g = £4.83
  - **Dietary Specials®** (Nutrition Point)
    - **Gluten-free**
      - Loaf, sliced, multigrain, brown 400 g = £3.01
      - White 400 g = £3.01
  - **Ener-G®** (General Dietary)
    - **Gluten-free**
      - Loaf, sliced Seattle brown 600 g = £5.28
      - Rice bread, sliced, brown 474 g = £4.59
      - White 456 g = £4.59
      - Rice loaf, sliced 612 g = £4.59
      - Tapioca bread, sliced 480 g = £4.59
  - **Genius Gluten Free®** (Genius Foods)
    - **Gluten-free**
      - Loaf, unsliced, brown 400 g = £2.49
      - White 400 g = £2.49
  - **Glutafin®** (Nutrition Point)
    - **Gluten-free**
      - Loaf, sliced, fibre 400 g = £3.41
      - White 400 g = £3.41
Glutafin® Select (Nutrition Point)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sliced, fresh, brown 400 g = £3.25; white 400 g = £3.25. Loaf, sliced, fibre 400 g = £3.12; white 400 g = £3.12. Loaf, seeded 400 g = £3.39

Juvela® (Juvela)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sliced, fresh, fibre 400 g = £2.97; white 400 g = £3.23. Loaf, sliced, white 400 g = £3.10; fibre 400 g = £3.10. Loaf, part-baked, brown fibre 400 g = £3.33; white 400 g = £3.46

Lifestyle® (Ultrapharm)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sliced, brown 400 g = £2.82; high fibre 400 g = £2.82; white 400 g = £2.82. Loaf, brown 400 g = £2.82; high fibre 400 g = £2.82; white 400 g = £2.82.

Livwell® (Livwell)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sliced, brown (seeded) 200 g = £2.25; white 200 g = £2.25

Pasticely® (GFF Trade)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sandwich, sliced, white 260 g = £3.29; rustic, sliced, white 260 g = £3.29

Proceli® (Proceli)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sliced, white 165 g = £2.30; sandwich 155 g = £2.32. Rice bread, brown 220 g = £2.30; sandwich 220 g = £2.30

Sunnyvale® (Everfresh)

Gluten-free. Loaf, mixed grain, sour dough 400 g = £1.91

Ultra® (Ultrapharm)

Gluten-free. Loaf, white 400 g = £2.46; high fibre 500 g = £3.35

Wellfoods® (Wellfoods)

Gluten-free. Loaf, sliced 600 g = £4.95; unsliced 600 g = £4.85

Baguettes, buns and rolls

Barkat® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

Gluten-free. Baguette, part-baked 200 g = £3.69. Rolls, part-baked 2 x 100 g = £3.30; 6 x 50 g = £3.69

Ener-G® (General Dietary)

Gluten-free. Rolls, dinner 6 = £3.11; white, long 4 x 55 g = £2.50; round 4 x 55 g = £2.50

Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)

Gluten-free. Baguette 2 x 175 g = £3.20. Rolls, fibre 4 x 50 g = £3.41; white 4 x 50 g = £3.41

Glutafin® Select (Nutrition Point)

Gluten-free. Rolls, fibre 4 x 65 g = £3.25; white 4 x 65 g = £3.25. Rolls, part-baked, white 4 x 50 g = £3.35; long 2 x 75 g = £2.56

Juvela® (Juvela)

Gluten-free. Rolls, fresh, fibre 5 x 85 g = £4.17; white 5 x 85 g = £4.17. Rolls, fibre 5 x 85 g = £4.18; white 5 x 85 g = £4.18. Rolls, part-baked, fibre 5 x 75 g = £4.33; white 5 x 75 g = £4.33

Lifestyle® (Ultrapharm)

Gluten-free. Rolls, brown 5 x 80 g = £2.82; high fibre 5 x 80 g = £2.82; white 5 x 80 g = £2.82

Livwell® (Livwell)

Gluten-free. Baguette, 250 g = £2.50. Buns, toasting 4 x 50 g = £2.50. Rolls, white 4 x 2.25. Rolls, part-baked, circle (bagel) 2 x 90 g = £2.50; dinner (square) 2 x 80 g = £2.09

Pasticely® (GFF Trade)

Gluten-free. Baguette, part-baked, white 160 g = £1.99. Rolls, part-baked, white 2 x 80 g = £2.39; rustic, part-baked, white 2 x 105 g = £2.39

Proceli® (Proceli)

Gluten-free. Baguette, part-baked 2 x 125 g = £3.24. Buns 4 x 50 g = £3.26. Lunch rolls, white 8 x 34 g = £3.26. Rolls, part-baked, white, dinner 4 x 35 g = £2.18; hotdog 3 x 35 g = £2.24; long 3 x 83 g = £2.95

Ultra® (Ultrapharm)

Gluten-free. Baguette, 2 x 200 g = £2.46. Rolls, 4 x 70 g = £2.46

Wellfoods® (Wellfoods)

Gluten-free. Burger buns 4 x 75 g = £3.95. Rolls 4 x 70 g = £3.65

Speciality breads

Livwell® (Livwell)

Gluten-free. Flat bread (pitta) 4 = £3.00. Tear-drop shape (naan) 2 x 90 g = £3.00

Proceli® (Proceli)

Gluten-free. Flat bread (pitta), part-baked 3 x 40 g = £4.36

Cookies and biscuits

Barkat® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

Gluten-free. Biscuits, coffee-style 200 g = £2.86; digestive 175 g = £2.20

Ener-G® (General Dietary)

Gluten-free. Cookies, vanilla 435 g = £5.23

Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)

Gluten-free. Biscuits, plain 200 g = £3.77; digestive 150 g = £1.94; savoury 125 g = £1.94; savoury shorts 150 g = £2.65; shortbread 100 g = £1.60; sweet (without chocolate or sultanas) 150 g = £1.94; tea 150 g = £1.94

Juvela® (Juvela)

Gluten-free. Biscuits, digestive 150 g = £2.67; savoury 150 g = £3.35; sweet 150 g = £2.52; tea 150 g = £2.67

Ultra® (Ultrapharm)

Gluten-free. Biscuits, sweet 250 g = £2.93

Crackers, crispbreads, and breadsticks

Barkat® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

Gluten-free. Crackers, round (matzo) 200 g = £2.97

Dietary Specials® (Nutrition Point)

Gluten-free. Cracker bread 150 g = £1.94

Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)

Gluten-free. Crackers, high fibre 200 g = £2.64; plain 200 g = £2.16; mini 175 g = £2.70

Juvela® (Juvela)

Gluten-free. Crispbread, plain 200 g = £4.06

Ultra® (Ultrapharm)

Gluten-free. Crackerbread 200 g = £1.77
Flour mixes and xanthan gum

Flour mixes
- Barkat® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread 500 g = £5.74. Plain 750 g = £5.88
- Diet Specials® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread, white 500 g = £5.33. Cake, white 750 g = £5.33. Plain, white 500 g = £5.33
- Finax® (Drossa)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread, fibre 1 kg = £9.92
- Glebe Farm® (Glebe Farm)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread, brown 375 g = £1.99 (seeded); bread, white and pizza 375 g = £1.99
- Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, fibre 500 g = £5.91; white 500 g = £5.91
- Glutafin Select® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread, fibre 500 g = £6.06; white 500 g = £6.06. Cake 500 g = £6.06. Fibre 500 g = £6.06; white 500 g = £6.06. Pastry 500 g = £6.06
- Heron Foods® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, organic, bread, standard 500 g = £8.30; high fibre 500 g = £8.30
- Il Pane di Anna® (GFF Trade)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread, white 500 g = £5.25. Cake, white 500 g = £5.25. Pizza base 500 g = £5.25
- Juvela® (Juvela)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, fibre 500 g = £6.44; plain 500 g = £6.44. Harvest 500 g = £6.44
- Orgran® (Community)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread 450 g = £3.10. Self-raising 500 g = £3.10. Pastry and pizza 375 g = £3.80
- Proceli® (Proceli)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, white 1 kg = £9.95
- Pure® (Innovative)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, blended 1 kg = £3.90. Potato starch 500 g = £1.55. Rice, brown 500 g = £1.45; white 500 g = £1.55. Tapioca starch 500 g = £2.98. Teff, brown 1 kg = £4.40; white 1 kg = £4.40
- Tobia® (Tobia Teff)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, teff, brown 1 kg = £2.95; white 1 kg = £2.95
- Tritamyl® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, bread, brown 1 kg = £6.60; white 2 kg = £13.20. Plain 2 kg = £13.20
- Wellfoods® (Wellfoods)
  Gluten-free. Flour mix, plain 1 kg = £7.65
- Xanthan gum
  Ener-G® (General Dietary)
  Gluten-free. Xanthan gum 170 g = £7.25
  Pure® (Innovative)
  Gluten-free. Xanthan gum 100 g = £6.00

Pasta
- Barkat® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, animal shapes 500 g = £4.95; macaroni 500 g = £4.95; spaghetti 500 g = £4.95; spirals 500 g = £4.95; tagliatelle 500 g = £4.95. Buckwheat, penne 250 g = £2.48; spirals 250 g = £2.48
- BiAlimenta® (Drossa)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, potato-based, gnocchi 500 g = £5.59; perle di gnocchi 500 g = £5.60. Tubetti 500 g = £5.90
- Diet Specials® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, fusilli 500 g = £3.44; penne 500 g = £3.44; spaghetti 500 g = £3.44
- Ener-G® (General Dietary)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, rice-based, lasagne 454 g = £4.27; macaroni 454 g = £4.27; shells, small 454 g = £4.27. Spaghetti 454 g = £4.27; vermicelli 300 g = £4.27
- Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, lasagne 250 g = £3.21; macaroni penne 500 g = £6.13; shells, small 500 g = £6.13; spirals 500 g = £6.13; spaghetti, long 500 g = £6.13; tagliatelle 250 g = £3.21
- Juvela® (Juvela)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, fusilli 500 g = £6.31; lasagne 250 g = £3.22; macaroni 250 g = £3.21; spaghetti 250 g = £3.21; tagliatelle 250 g = £3.04. Fibre, penne 500 g = £5.79
- Orgran® (Community)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, rice and corn, lasagne 200 g = £3.03; macaroni 250 g = £2.35; Spirals, buckwheat 250 g = £2.35; corn 250 g = £2.35; rice and corn 250 g = £2.35; rice and millet 250 g = £2.35
- Pasticely® (GFF Trade)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, macaroni 500 g = £2.99; elbow 500 g = £2.99; spaghetti 500 g = £2.99
- Proceli® (Proceli)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, macaroni penne 250 g = £2.95; puntini 2 × 250 g = £5.90; spaghetti, short 2 × 250 g = £5.90; spirals 250 g = £2.59
- Rizopia® (PGR Health Foods)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, brown rice, fusilli 500 g = £2.60; lasagne 375 g = £2.60; penne 500 g = £2.60; spaghetti 500 g = £2.60
- Ultra® (Ultrapharma)
  Gluten-free. Pasta, fusilli 250 g = £2.95; penne 250 g = £2.95; spaghetti 250 g = £2.95

Pizza bases
- Barkat® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
  Gluten-free. Pizza crust, rice, brown 150 g = £4.21; white 150 g = £4.21
- Diet Specials® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Pizza base 2 × 150 g = £5.27
- Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)
  Gluten-free. Pizza base 2 × 150 g = £5.98
- Juvela® (Juvela)
  Gluten-free. Pizza base 2 × 180 g = £7.70
- Pasticely® (GFF Trade)
  Gluten-free. Pizza base 165 g = £2.99

Appendix 2: Borderline substances
A2.6.2 Low-protein foods

Proceli® (Proceli)
Gluten-free. Pizza base 2 x 250 g = £3.90

Ultra® (Ultrapharm)
Gluten-free. Pizza base 2 x 200 g = £2.65

Wellfoods® (Wellfoods)
Gluten-free. Pizza base 2 x 300 g = £8.95

A2.6.1.1 Gluten- and wheat-free foods

ACBS indications: established gluten-sensitive enteropathies with coexisting established wheat sensitivity only.

Ener-G® (General Dietary)
Gluten-free, wheat-free. Bread loaf, six flour 576 g = £3.60. Rolls, Seattle brown, round (hamburger) 4 x 119 g = £3.00; long (hot dog) 4 x 119 g = £3.00. Pizza base, 3 x 124 g = £3.75

Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)
Gluten-free, wheat-free. Flour mix, bread 500 g = £6.06; fibre 500 g = £6.06. Cake mix 500 g = £6.06. Crispbread 150 g = £3.82

Heron Foods® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
Gluten-free, wheat-free. Flour mix, organic, bread, fibre 500 g = £8.30. Bread and cake mix 500 g = £6.33

A2.6.2 Low-protein foods

ACBS indications: inherited metabolic disorders, renal or liver failure, requiring a low-protein diet

Bread

Ener-G® (General Dietary)
Low-protein. Bread loaf, six flour 576 g = £3.60. Rolls, Seattle brown, round (hamburger) 4 x 119 g = £3.00; long (hot dog) 4 x 119 g = £3.00. Pizza base, 3 x 124 g = £3.75

Glutafin® (Nutrition Point)
Gluten-free, wheat-free. Flour mix, organic, bread, fibre 500 g = £8.30. Bread and cake mix 500 g = £6.33

Loprofin® (SHS)
Low-protein. Crunch bar 8 x 41 g = £11.92. Wafers, chocolate 100 g = £2.17; vanilla 100 g = £2.17. Crackers 150 g = £3.05; herb 150 g = £3.05

PK Foods® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
Low-protein. Aminex® biscuits 200 g = £4.67; cookies 150 g = £4.67. Cookies, chocolate chip 150 g = £4.67; cinnamon 150 g = £4.67; orange 150 g = £4.67. Rusks 200 g = £4.67. Crispbread 75 g = £2.24

Promin® (Firstplay Dietary)
Low-protein. Cooked and flavoured Pasta Snax, ready-salted 12 x 25 g = £9.84; salt and vinegar 12 x 25 g = £9.84; cheese and onion 12 x 25 g = £9.84, jalapeno 12 x 25 g = £9.84

Taranis® (Firstplay Dietary)
Low-protein. Cake bars, apricot 6 x 40 g = £5.77, lemon 6 x 40 g = £5.77, pear 6 x 40 g = £5.77

Vita Bite® (Vitaflon)
Low protein. Bar, protein 30 mg (less than 2.5 mg phenylalanine), carbohydrate 15.35 g, fat 8.4 g, energy 572 kJ (137 kcal)/25 g. Chocolate flavoured, 25 g = £1.02
Not recommended for any child under 1 year

Cake, biscuits, and snacks

Harifen® (Ultrapharm)
Low protein. Cracker toast, 200 g = £2.75

Juvela® (Juvela)
Low protein. Cookies, cinnamon 125 g = £6.67; chocolate chip 110 g = £6.67; orange 125 g = £6.67

Sugars

Ener-G® (General Dietary)
Low-protein. Powder, chocolate 150 g = £4.10; strawberry 150 g = £4.10; vanilla 150 g = £4.10

PK Foods® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
Low-protein. Jelly, orange 4 x 80 g = £7.43, cherry 4 x 80 g = £7.43

Promin® (Firstplay Dietary)
Low-protein. Dessert mix, caramel 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77; custard 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77; chocolate and banana 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77; strawberry and vanilla 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77. Rice pudding imitation, apple 4 x 69 g = £5.77; banana 4 x 69 g = £5.77; original 4 x 69 g = £5.77; strawberry 4 x 69 g = £5.77

Cereals

Loprofin® (SHS)
Low-protein. Breakfast cereal flakes, apple 375 g = £6.70; chocolate 375 g = £6.70; strawberry 375 g = £6.70. Cereal loops 375 g = £6.95

Promin® (Firstplay Dietary)
Low-protein. Hot breakfast (powder sachets), apple and cinnamon 6 x 57 g = £7.35, banana 6 x 57 g = £7.35, chocolate 6 x 57 g = £7.35, original 6 x 56 g = £7.35

Desserts

Loprofin® (SHS)
Low-protein. Powder, chocolate 150 g = £4.10; strawberry 150 g = £4.10; vanilla 150 g = £4.10

PK Foods® (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)
Low-protein. Jelly, orange 4 x 80 g = £7.43, cherry 4 x 80 g = £7.43

Promin® (Firstplay Dietary)
Low-protein. Dessert mix, caramel 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77; custard 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77; chocolate and banana 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77; strawberry and vanilla 6 x 36.5 g = £5.77. Rice pudding imitation, apple 4 x 69 g = £5.77; banana 4 x 69 g = £5.77; original 4 x 69 g = £5.77; strawberry 4 x 69 g = £5.77

Flour mixes and egg substitutes

Ener-G® (General Dietary)
Low-protein. Egg replacer 454 g = £4.34

Fate® (Fate)
Low protein. All purpose mix 500 g = £6.66. Cake mix, 2 x 250 g = £6.66; cake mix, 2 x 250 g = £6.66

Juvela® (Juvela)
Low protein. Mix 500 g = £6.82
A2.7 Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases

**PN</s>**

**Low-protein**

Mix, plain 500 g = £7.09; chocolate 500 g = £7.50; lemon 500 g = £7.50. Egg replacer 2 x 250 g = £13.03. Egg white replacer 100 g = £8.38

**PK Foods**

(Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

Low-protein. Flour mix 750 g = £9.91. Egg replacer 350 g = £4.67

ACBS Indications

- **GA Gel**
  - (Vitaflo)
  - Gel, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine, and low tryptophan) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 8.6 g, fat, energy 286 kcal (120 kcal)/20 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured (flavouring: see FlavourFlax®, p. 777), net price 30 x 20-g sachets = £149.04
  - Nutritional supplement for dietary management of type 1 glutaric aciduria (type 1) in children from birth to 3 years

- **XLYS, Low TRY, Maxamaid**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine, and low tryptophan) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (309 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured, (flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £82.57
  - Nutritional supplement for dietary management of type 1 glutaric aciduria

- **XLYS, TRY, Glutaridon**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine and tryptophan) 79 g, carbohydrate 4 g, energy 1411 kJ (332 kcal)/100 g, Lactose-free. Unflavoured. (flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 2 x 500 g = £312.84
  - Nutritional supplement for type 1 glutaric aciduria in children and adults; requires additional source of vitamins, minerals and trace elements

**Pizza bases**

- **Juvela**
  - (Juvela)
  - Low-protein. Pizza base 2 x 180 g = £7.55

- **Ultra PKU**
  - (Ultrapharm)
  - Low-protein. Pizza base 5 x 80 g = £2.45

**Savoury meals and mixes**

- **Low-protein**
  - Snack pot, curry 47 g = £3.94

- **Promin**
  - (Firstplay Dietary)
  - Snack mix 2 x 62 g = £5.77, lamb & mint 2 x 62 g = £5.77. Couscous 500 g = £6.48. Pasta elbows in cheese and broccoli sauce 4 x 66 g = £7.54. Pasta meal 500 g = £6.48. Pasta shells in tomato, pepper, and herb sauce 4 x 72 g = £7.54. Pasta spirals in Moroccan sauce 4 x 72 g = £7.54. Sausage mix, apple & sage 4 x 30 g = £6.49; original 4 x 30 g = £6.49; tomato & basil 4 x 30 g = £6.49

**Spreads**

- **Taransis**
  - (Firstplay Dietary)
  - Low-protein. Spread, hazelnut 230 g = £6.80

**Glucogen storage disease**

- **Corn flour and corn starch**
  - For hypoglycaemia associated with glucogen-storage disease

**Glucose**

- **Dextrose monohydrate**
  - Net price 500 g = £1.18
  - For gluconeogenesis and sucrose/isomaltose intolerance

**Glycosade**

- **Vitaflo**
  - Powder, protein 200 mg, carbohydrate (maize starch) 47.6 g, fat 100 mg, fibre less than 600 mg, energy 803 kJ (192 kcal)/60 g, net price 30 x 60-g sachets = £92.03
  - A nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of glucogen storage disease and other metabolic conditions where a constant supply of glucose is essential. Not suitable for use in children under 2 years

**Homocystinuria or hypermethioninaemia**

- **HCU Anamix**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 400 g = £62.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)
  - Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven glutaric aciduria in children from birth to 3 years

- **Maxamaid**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein 200 mg, carbohydrate (maize starch) 47.6 g, fat 100 mg, fibre less than 600 mg, energy 803 kJ (192 kcal)/60 g, net price 30 x 60-g sachets = £92.03
  - A nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of glutaric aciduria (type 1) in children from birth to 3 years

- **XLYS, Low TRY, Maxamaid**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine, and low tryptophan) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (309 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured, (flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £82.57
  - Nutritional supplement for dietary management of type 1 glutaric aciduria

- **XLYS, TRY, Glutaridon**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine and tryptophan) 79 g, carbohydrate 4 g, energy 1411 kJ (332 kcal)/100 g, Lactose-free. Unflavoured. (flavouring: see Modjul® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 2 x 500 g = £312.84
  - Nutritional supplement for type 1 glutaric aciduria in children and adults; requires additional source of vitamins, minerals and trace elements

**Glucogen storage disease**

- **Corn flour and corn starch**
  - For hypoglycaemia associated with glucogen-storage disease

**Glucose**

- **Dextrose monohydrate**
  - Net price 500 g = £1.18
  - For gluconeogenesis and sucrose/isomaltose intolerance

**Glycosade**

- **Vitaflo**
  - Powder, protein 200 mg, carbohydrate (maize starch) 47.6 g, fat 100 mg, fibre less than 600 mg, energy 803 kJ (192 kcal)/60 g, net price 30 x 60-g sachets = £92.03
  - A nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of glucogen storage disease and other metabolic conditions where a constant supply of glucose is essential. Not suitable for use in children under 2 years

**Homocystinuria or hypermethioninaemia**

- **HCU Anamix**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 400 g = £62.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)
  - Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven glutaric aciduria in children from birth to 3 years

- **Maxamaid**
  - (SHS)
  - Powder, protein 200 mg, carbohydrate (maize starch) 47.6 g, fat 100 mg, fibre less than 600 mg, energy 803 kJ (192 kcal)/60 g, net price 30 x 60-g sachets = £92.03
  - A nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of glutaric aciduria (type 1) in children from birth to 3 years
Appendix 2: Borderline substances

2. Maxamum products are generally intended for use in children 1–8 years

XMET Homidon (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (335 kcal)/100 g. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £156.42
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hyper-methioninaemia or vitamin B_{6}, non-responsive homocystinuria in children

XMET Maxamaid (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (313 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £82.57
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hyper-methioninaemia or homocystinuria

XMET Maxamum (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 39 g, carbohydrate 34 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (302 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £133.36
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hyper-methioninaemia or homocystinuria

Hyperlysinaemia

HYPER LYS Anamix® Infant (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine) 13 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (467 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (67 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 450 g = £33.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven hyperlysinaemia in children from birth to 3 years

3. XLYS Maxamaid (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (313 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £82.57
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hyper-lysinaemia

Isovaleric acidemia

IVA Anamix® Infant (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine) 13 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (467 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (67 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 450 g = £33.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven isovaleric acidemia or other proven disorders of leucine metabolism in children from birth to 3 years

XLEU Faladon (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (313 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 200 g = £82.55
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of isovaleric acidemia in children

3. XLEU Maxamaid (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (313 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £82.57
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of isovaleric acidemia

Maple syrup urine disease

Isoleucine Amino Acid Supplement (Vitaflo)
Powder, isoleucine 50 mg, carbohydrate 4 g, fat nil, energy 64 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g, net price 30 x 4-g sachets = £44.48
Nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease and other inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in children over 1 year and adults

MSUD Aid III® (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (335 kcal)/100 g. Unflavoured. (Flavouring: see Modju® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £156.42
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease and related conditions in children and adults where it is necessary to limit the intake of branched chain amino acids
MSUD Anamix® Infant (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23.3 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 0.8 g, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 400 g = £32.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven maple syrup urine disease in children from birth to 3 years

MSUD Anamix® Junior (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 11.1 g, fat 3.9 g, energy 474 kJ (113 kcal)/29-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (flavouring: see Modju®, Flavour System, p. 777), net price 30 × 29-g sachets = £168.73
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children 1–10 years

MSUD Anamix® Junior LQ (SHS)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 15 g, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 315 kJ (75 kcal)/25 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Lactose-free. Orange flavour, net price 125-mL carton = £7.58
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children 1–10 years

MSUD express® (Vitaflo)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 10 g, carbohydrate 11.1 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 315 kJ (75 kcal)/25 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (flavouring: see Flavour Pac®, p. 777), net price 30 × 25-g sachets = £271.88
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children over 8 years and adults

MSUD cooler® (Vitaflo)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 15 g, carbohydrate 7.9 g, fat 500 mg, energy 386 kJ (92 kcal)/130-mL pouch, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Orange or red flavour, net price 30 × 130-mL = £277.20
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children over 3 years and adults

MSUD Gel® (Vitaflo)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 286 kJ (68 kcal)/20 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured. (flavouring: see Flavour Pac®, p. 777), net price 30 × 20-g sachets = £151.93
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children 1–10 years

MSUD Maxamum® (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (309 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured, (flavouring: see Modju®, Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £132.36
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease

Valine Amino Acid Supplement (Vitaflo)
Powder, valine 50 mg, carbohydrate 4.4 g, fat nil, energy 64 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g, net price 30 × 4-g sachets = £44.48
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease and other inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in children over 1 year

Methylmalonic propionic acidaemia

MMA/PA Anamix® Infant (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23.3 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 0.8 g, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 400 g = £32.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven methylmalonic acidaemia or propionic acidaemia in children from birth to 3 years

XMTVI Asadon (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (326 kcal)/100 g. Unflavoured, (flavouring: see Modju®, Flavour System, p. 777), net price 200 g = £82.55
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of methylmalonic acidaemia or propionic acidaemia in children and adults

XMTVI Maxamaid (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (297 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured, (flavouing: see Modju®, Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £132.36
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of methylmalonic acidaemia or propionic acidaemia

XMTVI Maxamum (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 39 g, carbohydrate 34 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (297 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Orange flavour or unflavoured. (flavouring: see Modju®, Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £132.36
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of methylmalonic acidaemia or propionic acidaemia

Cystine Amino Acid Supplement (Vitaflo)
Powder, cystine 500 mg, carbohydrate 3.4 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g, net price 30 × 4-g sachets = £44.48
Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in children over 1 year

Other inborn errors of metabolism
### Appendix 2: Borderline substances

#### DocOmega® (Vitaflor)
- **Powder**, protein (cows’ milk, soya) 100 mg, carbohydrate 3.2 g, fat 500 mg (of which docosahexaenoic acid 200 mg), fibre nil, energy 748 kJ (18 kcal)/4 g, with minerals, net price 30 x 4-g sachets = £32.20.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism for adults and children from birth.

#### EAA® Supplement (Vitaflor)
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (essential amino acids) 5 g, carbohydrate 4 g, fat nil, energy 151 kJ (36 kcal)/12.5 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Tropical flavour, net price 50 x 12.5-g sachets = £174.48.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of disorders of protein metabolism including urea cycle disorders in children over 3 years.

#### KeyOmega® (Vitaflor)
- **Powder**, protein (cows’ milk, soya) 170 mg, carbohydrate 2.8 g, fat 800 mg (of which arachidonic acid 200 mg, docosahexaenoic acid 100 mg), energy 80 kJ (19 kcal)/4 g, net price 30 x 4-g sachet = £32.92.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism.

#### Leucine Amino Acid Supplement (Vitaflor)
- **Powder**, leucine 100 mg, carbohydrate 4 g, fat nil, energy 64 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g, net price 30 x 4-g sachets = £44.48.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in children over 1 year.

#### Low protein drink (Milupa)
- **Powder**, protein (cows’ milk) 4.5 g (phenylalanine 100 mg), carbohydrate 59.5 g, fat 29.9 g, fibre nil, energy 2194 kJ (528 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Tropical flavour, net price 400 g = £7.76 (5 g measuring scoop provided).
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children over 1 year.

**Note** Termed Milupa® lp-drink by manufacturer.

#### Phenylalanine Amino Acid Supplement (Vitaflor)
- **Powder**, phenylalanine 30 mg, carbohydrate 3.8 g, energy 64 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g, net price 30 x 4-g sachets = £43.18.
- Nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism only.

#### ProZero® (Vitaflor)
- **Liquid**, carbohydrate 8.1 g (of which sugars 3.5 g), fat 3.8 g, energy 278 kJ (66 kcal)/100 mL. Contains lactose. Net price 18 x 250 mL = £22.50; 6 x 1 litre = £30.00.
- A protein-free nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism in children over 6 months and adults.

#### Phenylketonuria

**Add-Ins® (SHS)**
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (containing essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate nil, fat 5.1 g, energy 359 kJ (86 kcal)/18.5-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured, net price 60 x 18.2-g sachets = £315.60.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 4 years.

**Easiphen® (SHS)**
- **Liquid**, protein equivalent (containing essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 6.7 g, carbohydrate 5.1 g, fat 2.9 g, energy 275 kJ (65 kcal)/100 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Forest berries or orange flavour, net price 250-mL carton = £8.11.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 8 years.

**Lophlex® (SHS)**
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 2.9 g, fat 60 mg, fibre 220 mg, energy 385 kJ (91 kcal)/27.8-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Flavours: berry, orange, or unflavoured, net price 30 x 27.8-g sachets = £243.80.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 8 years and adults including pregnant women.

**Loprofin® PKU Drink (SHS)**
- **Liquid**, protein (cows’ milk) 400 mg (phenylalanine 10 mg), carbohydrate 9.4 g, fat 2 g, energy 165 kJ (40 kcal)/100 mL. Net price 200-mL carton = 61 p.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 1 year.

**Milupa PKU 2-prima® (Milupa)**
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 60 g, carbohydrate 10.3 g, fat nil, energy 1150 kJ (280 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Vanilla flavour, net price 500 g = £131.68.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–6 years.

**Milupa PKU 2-secunda® (Milupa)**
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 70 g, carbohydrate 6.8 g, fat nil, energy 1306 kJ (307 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Vanilla flavour, net price 500 g = £153.62.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 9–15 years.

**Milupa PKU 3-advanta® (Milupa)**
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 70 g, carbohydrate 6.7 g, fat nil, energy 1270 kJ (298 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Vanilla flavour, net price 500 g = £153.62.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 15 years.

**Phlexy-10® Exchange System (SHS)**
- **Capsules**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 416.5 mg/capsule, net price 200-cap pack = £35.77.
- **Tablets**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 833 mg tablet, net price 75-tab pack = £23.17.
- **Drink Mix**, powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 8.33 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g/20-g sachet. Apple-black currant, citrus, or tropical flavour, net price 30 x 20-g sachet = £107.86.
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria.

**Phlexy-Vits® (SHS)**
- **Powder**, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements, net price 30 x 7-g sachets = £90.00.
- For use as a vitamin and mineral component of restricted therapeutic diets in children over 11 years and adults with phenylketonuria and similar amino acid abnormalities.

**PK Aid 4® (SHS)**
- **Powder**, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 79 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1420 kJ (334 kcal)/100 g. Unflavoured, (flavouring: see Modul® Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £120.24 (5-g measuring scoop provided).
- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children and adults.
PKU Anamix® First Spoon (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 5 g, carbohydrate 4.8 g, fat 150 mg, fibre nil, energy 160 kJ (41 kcal)/12.5-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements, net price 30 x 12.5 g = £81.00

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children from 6 months to 5 years

PKU Anamix® Infant (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 48.9 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 74.8 g, fat 35.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 2873 kJ (686 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 400 g = £29.72 (5-g measuring scoop provided)

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children from birth to 3 years

PKU Anamix® Junior (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 9.9 g, fat 3.9 g, energy 474 kJ (113 kcal)/29-g sachet, net price 30 x 29-g sachets = £106.20

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–10 years

PKU Anamix Junior LQ® (SHS)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 4.4 g, fat 170 mg, energy 245 kJ (58 kcal)/62.5 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Flavours: berry, citrus, orange, or tropical, net price 3 x 125 mL = £26.04

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 4 years and adults including pregnant women

PKU cooler10® (Vitaflor)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 2.0 g, carbohydrate 2.9 g, energy 62 kJ (15 kcal)/4-g sachet, net price 30 x 4-g sachets = £4.08

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–8 years

PKU cooler20® (Vitaflor)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 4.0 g, carbohydrate 5.9 g, energy 124 kJ (30 kcal)/8.5-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Lemon, orange, tropical, or unflavoured, net price 30 x 8.5-g sachets = £164.84

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 8 years

PKU gel® (Vitaflor)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 8.6 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 286 kJ (68 kcal)/20 g, with vitamins, minerals and trace elements. Orange, raspberry, or unflavoured (flavouring: see Flavour Pac®, p. 777), net price 30 x 20-g sachets = £95.03

For use as part of the low-protein dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–10 years

PKU Lophlex® LQ 10 (SHS)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 4.4 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 2873 kJ (686 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 200 mL = £1.05

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 3 years and adults including pregnant women

PKU Lophlex® LQ 20 (SHS)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fibre 1600 mg, energy 5746 kJ (1368 kcal)/200 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Flavours: berry, citrus, orange, or tropical, net price 3 x 125 mL = £52.00

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 4 years and adults including pregnant women

PKU Start® (Vitaflor)
Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 2 g, carbohydrate 8.3 g, fat 2.9 g, energy 286 kJ (68 kcal)/100 mL with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Contains lactose and fish oil. Net price 500-mL bottle = £5.58

For the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children under 12 months

Sno-Pro® (SHS)
Liquid, protein equivalent (cows’ milk) 220 mg (phenylalanine 12.5 mg), carbohydrate 8 g, fat 3.8 g, energy 273 kJ (65 kcal)/125 mL. Contains lactose. Net price 200 mL = £1.05

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria, chronic renal failure and other inborn errors of amino acid metabolism

L-Tyrosine (SHS)
Powder, net price 100 g = £18.41

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in pregnant women with low plasma tyrosine concentrations

Tyrosine Amino Acid Supplement (Vitaflor)
Powder, tyrosine 1 g, carbohydrate 2.9 g, energy 62 kJ (15 kcal)/4-g sachet, net price 30 x 4-g sachets = £4.08

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria and other inborn errors of amino acid metabolism

XP Maxamaid (SHS)
Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (309 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Orange flavour, or unflavoured (flavourings: see Modjul®, Flavour System, p. 777), net price 500 g = £48.85

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–8 years

Maxamaid products are generally intended for use in children 1–8 years.
Tyrosinaemia

Methionine-free TYR Anamix® Infant (SHS)

Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, phenylalanine, and tyrosine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (475 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL. Unflavoured, net price 400 g = £32.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven tyrosinaemia type 1 in children from birth to 3 years

TYR Anamix® Infant (SHS)

Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 11 g, fat 3.9 g, energy 475 kJ (113 kcal)/29 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Orange or flavoured, net price 400 g = £32.70 (5-g measuring scoop provided)

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven tyrosinaemia where plasma-methionine concentrations are normal in children from birth to 3 years

TYR Anamix® Junior (SHS)

Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 11 g, fat 3.9 g, energy 475 kJ (113 kcal)/29 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured, net price 30 x 29-g sachets = £173.32

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven tyrosinaemia in children 1–10 years

TYR Anamix® Junior LQ (SHS)

Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat 4.8 g, fibre 310 mg, energy 500 kJ (120 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals and trace elements. Orange or red flavour, net price 36 x 125-mL bottle = £272.79

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia type 1 (when nitisinone (NTBC) is used, see section 9.8.1), type II, and type III, in children over 1 year

TYR cooler® (Vitaflo)

Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except tyrosine and phenylalanine) 7 g, fat 500 mg, energy 186 kJ (46 kcal)/92 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Orange or red flavour, net price 30 x 130-mL pouch = £277.20

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children over 8 years

TYR express® (Vitaflo)

Powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except tyrosine and phenylalanine) 15 g, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 315 kJ (76 kcal)/25 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Unflavoured (flavouring: see Flavour Pack®, p. 777), net price 30 x 25-g sachets = £271.88

Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children over 8 years

L-Arginine (SHS)

Powder, net price 100 g = £12.27

For use as a supplement in urea cycle disorders other than arginase deficiency, such as hyperammonaemia types I and II, citrullinaemia, argininosuccinic aciduria, and deficiency of N-acetyl glutamate synthetase

Urea cycle disorders (other than arginase deficiency)

L-Arginine (SHS)

Powder, net price 100 g = £12.27

For use as a supplement in urea cycle disorders other than arginase deficiency, such as hyperammonaemia types I and II, citrullinaemia, argininosuccinic aciduria, and deficiency of N-acetyl glutamate synthetase

 condiciones for which ACBS products can be prescribed

Note This is a list of clinical conditions for which the ACBS has approved toilet preparations. For details of the preparations see Chapter 13.

Birthmarks

See Disfiguring skin lesions, below

Dermatitis

Aveeno® Bath Oil; Aveeno® Cream; Aveeno® Colloidial; Aveeno® lotion; E45® Emollient Bath Oil; E45® Emollient Wash Cream; E45® Lotion

Dermatitis herpetiformis

See also Gluten-sensitive enteropathies, p. 777

1. Maxamum products are generally intended for use in children over 8 years

2. Maxamaid products are generally intended for use in children 1–8 years
Disfiguring skin lesions (birthmarks, mutilating lesions, scars, vitiligo)
- Covermark® classic foundation and finishing powder;
- Dermacolor® Camouflage cream and fixing powder;
- Keromask® masking cream and finishing powder; Veil®
  Cover cream and Finishing Powder. (Cleansing Creams, Cleansing Milks, and Cleansing Lotions are excluded)

Disinfectants (antiseptics)
May be prescribed on an FP10 only when ordered in such quantities and with such directions as are appropriate for the treatment of patients, but not for general hygienic purposes

Dry mouth (xerostomia)
For patients suffering from dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy, or sicca syndrome.
- AS Saliva Orthana®; Biotène Oralbalance®; BioXtra®;
- Glandosane®; Saliveze®; Salivix®
  For details of preparations see section 12.3.5, p. 548

Eczema
See Dermatitis, above

Photodermatoses (skin protection in)
- Delph® Sun Lotion SPF 30; LA Roche-Posay
- Anthelios® Melt in cream SPF 50+; Sunsense Ultra®;
- Uvistat® Lipscreen SPF 50, Uvistat® Suncream SPF 30 and 50

Pruritus
See Dermatitis, above
Appendix 3: Cautionary and advisory labels

Preparations in the BNF for Children include code numbers of the cautionary labels that pharmacists are recommended to add when dispensing. It is also expected that, when necessary, pharmacists will counsel children or their carers.

Counselling needs to be related to the age, experience, background, and understanding of the child or carer. The pharmacist should ensure understanding of how to take or use the medicine and how to follow the correct dosage schedule. Any effects of the medicine on co-ordination, performance of skilled tasks, any foods or medicines to be avoided, and what to do if a dose is missed should also be explained. Other matters, such as the possibility of staining of the clothes or skin, or discoloration of urine or stools by a medicine should also be mentioned.

For some preparations there is a special need for counselling, such as an unusual method or time of administration. Such labels include ‘Shake the bottle’, ‘For external use only’, and ‘Store in a cool place’, as well as ‘Discard . . . days after opening’ and ‘Do not use after . . .’, which are used for dosage or administration are labels 21–28. A label incorporating new advice to counsell children or their carers. The labelling is not intended it. Therefore, the BNF for Children does not include warnings against the use of a dispensed medicine by persons other than for whom it was specifically prescribed.

The label or labels for each preparation are recommended after careful consideration of the information available. However, it is recognised that in some cases this information may be either incomplete or open to a different interpretation. The BNF for Children will therefore be grateful to receive any constructive comments on the labelling suggested for any preparation.

Recommended label wordings

For BNF for Children 2011–2012, a revised set of cautionary and advisory labels has been introduced. All of the existing labels have been user-tested, and the revised wording selected reflects terminology that is better understood by patients.

Wordings which can be given as separate warnings are labels 1–19, 29–30, and 32. Wordings which can be incorporated in an appropriate position in the directions for dosage or administration are labels 21–28. A label has been omitted for number 20; labels 31 and 33 no longer apply to any medicines in the BNF for children and have therefore been deleted.
If separate labels are used it is recommended that the wordings be used without modification. If changes are made to suit computer requirements, care should be taken to retain the sense of the original.

1  Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy
   To be used on preparations for children containing antihistamines, or on preparations given to chil-
   dren where the warnings of label 2 on driving or alcohol would not be appropriate.

2  Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol
   To be used on preparations for adults that can cause drowsiness, thereby affecting coordination and the
   ability to drive and operate hazardous machinery; label 1 is more appropriate for children. It is an offence to
   drive while under the influence of drink or drugs. It should be remembered that children and adolescents
do, on occasion, consume alcohol and should be made aware of potential problems. Some of these prepara-
   tions only cause drowsiness in the first few days of treatment and some only cause drowsiness in higher doses.
   In such cases the patient should be told that the advice applies until the effects have worn off. However
   many of these preparations can produce a slowing of reaction time and a loss of mental concentration that
   can have the same effects as drowsiness. Avoidance of alcoholic drink is recommended because the
   effects of CNS depressants are enhanced by alcohol. Strict prohibition however could lead to some
   patients not taking the medication. Pharmacists should therefore explain the risk and encourage compliance,
   particularly in patients who may think they already tolerate the effects of alcohol (see also label 3).
   Queries from patients with epilepsy regarding fitness to drive should be referred back to the patient’s
   doctor.
   Side-effects unrelated to drowsiness that may affect a patient’s ability to drive or operate machinery safely
   include blurred vision, dizziness, or nausea. In gen-
   eral, no label has been recommended to cover these
   cases, but the patient should be suitably counselled.

3  Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines
   To be used on preparations containing monoamine-
   oxidase inhibitors; the warning to avoid alcohol and
   decaalcoholised (low alcohol) drink is covered by the
   patient information leaflet.
   Also to be used as for label 2 but where alcohol is not
   an issue.

4  Warning: Do not drink alcohol
   To be used on preparations where a reaction such as
   flushing may occur If alcohol is taken (e.g. metronid-
   azole). Alcohol may also enhance the hypoglycaemia
   produced by some oral antidiabetic drugs but routine
   application of a warning label is not considered
   necessary.
   Patients should be advised not to drink alcohol for as
   long as they are receiving/using a course of medica-
   tion, and in some cases for a period of time after the
   course is finished.

5  Do not take indigestion remedies 2 hours before or
   after you take this medicine
   To be used with label 25 on preparations coated to
   resist gastric acid (e.g. enteric-coated tablets). This is
to avoid the possibility of premature dissolution of
   the coating in the presence of an alkaline ph.
   Label 5 also applies to drugs such as ketoconazole
   where the absorption is significantly affected by
   antacids. Pharmacists will be aware (from a knowl-
   edge of physiology) that the usual time during which
   indigestion remedies should be avoided is at least 2
   hours before and after the majority of medicines have
   been taken; where a manufacturer advises a different
   time period, this can be followed, and should be
   explained to the patient.

6  Do not take indigestion remedies, or medicines con-
   taining iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
   To be used on preparations containing omeprazone and some other quinolones, doxycycline, lymecycline,
   minocycline, and penicillamine. These drugs chelate
calcium, iron, and zinc and are less well absorbed
when taken with calcium-containing antacids or pre-
parations containing iron or zinc. Pharmacists will be
aware (from a knowledge of physiology) that these
incompatible preparations should be taken at least 2
hours apart for the majority of medicines; where a
manufacturer advises a different time period, this can
be followed, and should be explained to the patient.

7  Do not take milk, indigestion remedies, or medicines
   containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
   To be used on preparations containing ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin, or tetracyclines that chelate calcium, iron,
magnesium, and zinc, and are thus less available for
absorption. Pharmacists will be aware (from a knowl-
edge of physiology) that these incompatible prepara-
tions should be taken at least 2 hours apart for the
majority of medicines; where a manufacturer advises a
different time period, this can be followed, and should
be explained to the patient. Doxycycline, lymecycline,
and minocycline are less liable to form chelates and
therefore only require label 6 (see above).

8  Warning: Do not stop taking this medicine unless
   your doctor tells you to stop
   To be used on preparations that contain a drug which is
   required to be taken over long periods without the
   patient necessarily perceiving any benefit (e.g. anti-
tuberculour drugs).
   Also to be used on preparations that contain a drug
   whose withdrawal is likely to be a particular hazard
   (e.g. clonidine for hypertension). Label 10 (see below) is
   more appropriate for corticosteroids.

9  Space the doses evenly throughout the day. Keep
   taking this medicine until the course is finished,
   unless you are told to stop
   To be used on preparations where a course of treat-
   ment should be completed to reduce the incidence of
   relapse or failure of treatment.
   The preparations are antimicrobial drugs given by
   mouth. Very occasionally, some may have severe side-
effects (e.g. diarrhoea in patients receiving clinda-
ymycin) and in such cases the patient may need to be
   advised of reasons for stopping treatment quickly and
   returning to the doctor.

10 Warning: Read the additional information given with
   this medicine
   To be used particularly on preparations containing
   anticoagulants, lithium, and oral corticosteroids. The
   appropriate treatment card should be given to the
   patient and any necessary explanations given.
   This label may also be used on other preparations to
   remind the patient of the instructions that have been
given.

11 Protect your skin from sunlight—even on a bright but
    cloudy day. Do not use sunbeds
   To be used on preparations that may cause phototox-
   ic or photoplastic reactions if the patient is exposed to
   ultraviolet radiation. Many drugs other than those
   listed (e.g. phenothiazines and sulfonamides) may, on
   rare occasions, cause reactions in susceptible
   patients. Exposure to high intensity ultraviolet radia-
   tion from sunray lamps and sunbeds is particularly
   likely to cause reactions.

12 Do not take anything containing aspirin while taking
   this medicine
   To be used on preparations containing probenecid
   and sulfisoxazole whose activity is reduced by
   aspirin.
   Label 12 should not be used for anticoagulants since
   label 10 is more appropriate.
13 Dissolve or mix with water before taking
To be used on preparations that are intended to be dissolved in water (e.g. soluble tablets) or mixed with water (e.g. powders, granules) before use. In a few cases other liquids such as fruit juice or milk may be used.

14 This medicine may colour your urine. This is harmless
To be used on preparations that may cause the patient’s urine to turn an unusual colour. These include triamterene (blue under some lights), levodopa (dark reddish), and rifampicin (red).

15 Caution: flammable. Keep your body away from fire or flames after you have put on the medicine
To be used on preparations containing sufficient flammable solvent to render them flammable if exposed to a naked flame.

16 Dissolve the tablet under your tongue—do not swallow. Store the tablets in this bottle with the cap tightly closed. Get a new supply 8 weeks after opening.
To be used on glyceryl trinitrate tablets to remind the patient not to transfer the tablets to plastic or less suitable containers.

17 Do not take more than . . . in 24 hours
To be used on preparations for the treatment of acute migraine except those containing ergotamine, for which label 18 is used. The dose form should be specified, e.g. tablets or capsules. It may also be used on preparations for which no dose has been specified by the prescriber.

18 Do not take more than . . . in 24 hours. Also, do not take more than . . . in any one week.
To be used on preparations containing ergotamine. The dose form should be specified, e.g. tablets or suppositories.

19 Warning: This medicine makes you sleepy. If you still feel sleepy the next day, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol
To be used on preparations containing hypnotics (or some other drugs with sedative effects) prescribed to be taken at night. On the rare occasions (e.g. nitrazepam in epilepsy) when hypnotics are prescribed for daytime administration this label would clearly not be appropriate. Also to be used as an alternative to the label 2 wording (the choice being at the discretion of the pharmacist) for anxiolytics prescribed to be taken at night. It is hoped that this wording will convey adequately the problem of residual morning sedation after taking ‘sleeping tablets’.

21 Take with or just after food, or a meal
To be used on preparations that are liable to cause gastric irritation, or those that are better absorbed with food.
Patients should be advised that a small amount of food is sufficient.

22 Take 30 to 60 minutes before food
To be used on some preparations whose absorption is thereby improved.
Most oral antibacterials require label 23 instead (see below).

23 Take this medicine when your stomach is empty. This means an hour before food or 2 hours after food
To be used on oral preparations whose absorption may be reduced by the presence of food and acid in the stomach.

24 Suck or chew this medicine
To be used on preparations that should be sucked or chewed. The pharmacist should use discretion as to which of these words is appropriate.

25 Swallow this medicine whole. Do not chew or crush
To be used on preparations that are enteric-coated or designed for modified-release.
Also to be used on preparations that taste very unpleasant or may damage the mouth if not swallowed whole.
Patients should be advised (where relevant) that some modified-release preparations can be broken in half, but that the halved tablet should still be swallowed whole, and not chewed or crushed.

26 Dissolve this medicine under your tongue
To be used on preparations designed for sublingual use. Patients should be advised to hold under the tongue and avoid swallowing until dissolved. The buccal mucosa between the gum and cheek is occasionally specified by the prescriber.

27 Take with a full glass of water
To be used on preparations that should be well diluted (e.g. chloral hydrate), where a high fluid intake is required (e.g. sulfonamides), or where water is required to aid the action (e.g. methylcellulose). The patient should be advised that ‘a full glass’ means at least 150 mL. In most cases fruit juice, tea, or coffee may be used.

28 Spread thinly on the affected skin only
To be used on external preparations that should be applied sparingly (e.g. corticosteroids, dithranol).

29 Do not take more than 2 at any one time. Do not take more than 8 in 24 hours
To be used on containers of dispensed solid dose preparations containing paracetamol for adults when the instruction on the label indicates that the dose can be taken on an ‘as required’ basis. The dose form should be specified, e.g. tablets or capsules. This label has been introduced because of the serious consequences of overdosage with paracetamol.

30 Contains paracetamol. Do not take anything else containing paracetamol while taking this medicine
To be used on all containers of dispensed preparations containing paracetamol.

32 Contains aspirin. Do not take anything else containing aspirin while taking this medicine
To be used on containers of dispensed preparations containing aspirin when the name on the label does not include the word ‘aspirin’.
**Intravenous infusions for neonatal intensive care**

**Intravenous policy** A local policy on the dilution of drugs with intravenous fluids should be drawn up by a multi-disciplinary team and issued as a document to the members of staff concerned.

Centralised additive services are provided in a number of hospital pharmacy departments and should be used in preference to making additions on wards.

The information that follows should be read in conjunction with local policy documents.

**Guidelines**

1. Drugs should only be diluted with infusion fluid when constant plasma concentrations are needed or when the administration of a more concentrated solution would be harmful.

2. In general, only one drug should be mixed with an infusion fluid in a syringe and the components should be compatible. Ready-prepared solutions should be used whenever possible. Drugs should not normally be added to blood products, mannitol, or sodium bicarbonate. Only specially formulated additives should be used with fat emulsions or amino-acid solutions (section 9.3).

3. Solutions should be thoroughly mixed by shaking and checked for absence of particulate matter before use.

4. Strict asepsis should be maintained throughout and in general the giving set should not be used for more than 24 hours (for drug admixtures).

5. The infusion syringe should be labelled with the neonate’s name and hospital number, the name and quantity of drug, the infusion fluid, and the expiry date and time. If a problem occurs during administration, containers should be retained for a period after use in case they are needed for investigation.

6. Administration using a suitable motorised syringe driver is advocated for preparations where strict control over administration is required.

7. It is good practice to examine intravenous infusions from time to time while they are running. If cloudiness, crystallisation, change of colour, or any other sign of interaction or contamination is observed the infusion should be discontinued.

**Problems**

**Microbial contamination** The accidental entry and subsequent growth of micro-organisms converts the infusion fluid pathway into a potential vehicle for infection with micro-organisms, particularly species of Candida, Enterobacter, and Klebsiella. Ready-prepared infusions containing the additional drugs, or infusions prepared by an additive service (when available) should therefore be used in preference to making extemporaneous additions to infusion containers on wards etc. However, when this is necessary strict aseptic procedure should be followed.

**Incompatibility** Physical and chemical incompatibilities may occur with loss of potency, increase in toxicity, or other adverse effect. The solutions may become opalescent or precipitation may occur, but in many instances there is no visual indication of incompatibility. Interaction may take place at any point in the infusion fluid pathway, and the potential for incompatibility is increased when more than one substance is added to the infusion fluid.

**Common incompatibilities** Precipitation reactions are numerous and varied and may occur as a result of pH, concentration changes, ‘salting-out’ effects, complexation or other chemical changes. Precipitation or other particle formation must be avoided since, apart from lack of control of dosage on administration, it may initiate or exacerbate adverse effects. This is particularly important in the case of drugs which have been implicated in either thrombophlebitis (e.g. diazepam) or in skin sloughing or necrosis caused by extravasation (e.g. sodium bicarbonate and parenteral nutrition). It is also especially important to effect solution of colloidal drugs and to prevent their subsequent precipitation in order to avoid a pyrogenic reaction (e.g. amphotericin).

It is considered undesirable to mix beta-lactam antibiotics, such as semi-synthetic penicillins and cephalosporins, with proteinaceous materials on the grounds that immunogenic and allergenic conjugates could be formed.

A number of preparations undergo significant loss of potency when added singly or in combination to large volume infusions. Examples include ampicillin in infusions that contain glucose or lactates.

**Blood** Because of the large number of incompatibilities, drugs should not be added to blood and blood products for infusion purposes. Examples of incompatibility with blood include hypertonic mannitol solutions (irreversible crenation of red cells), dextran (rheological changes and interference with cross-matching), glucose (clumping of red cells), and oxytocin (inactivated).

If the giving set is not changed after the administration of blood, but used for other infusion fluids, a fibrin clot may form which, apart from blocking the set, increases the likelihood of microbial growth.

**Intravenous fat emulsions** These may break down with coalescence of fat globules and separation of phases when additions such as antibacterials or electrolytes are made, thus increasing the possibility of embolism. Only specially formulated products such as *Vitlpid A*® (section 9.3) may be added to appropriate intravenous fat emulsions.
Other infusions

Infusions that frequently give rise to incompatibility include amino acids, mannitol, and sodium bicarbonate.

Method

Ready-prepared infusions should be used whenever available. When dilution of drugs is required to be made extemporaneously, any product reconstitution instructions such as those relating to concentration, vehicle, mixing, and handling precautions should be strictly followed using an aseptic technique throughout. Once the product has been reconstituted, further dilution with the infusion fluid should be made immediately in order to minimise microbial contamination and, with certain products, to prevent degradation or other formulation change which may occur; e.g. reconstituted ampicillin injection degrades rapidly on standing, and also may form polymers which could cause sensitivity reactions.

It is also important in certain instances that an infusion fluid of specific pH be used (e.g. furosemide injection requires dilution in infusions of pH greater than 5.5).

When drug dilutions are made it is important to mix thoroughly; additions should not be made to an infusion container that has been connected to a giving set, as mixing is hampered. If the solutions are not thoroughly mixed, a concentrated layer of the drug may form owing to differences in density. A time limit between dilution and completion of administration must be imposed. Because of the risk of microbial contamination a maximum time limit of 24 hours may be appropriate for admixtures in which degradation occurs without the formation of toxic substances, an acceptable limit is the time taken for 10% decomposition of the drug. When toxic substances are produced stricter limits may be imposed. Because of the risk of microbial contamination a maximum time limit of 24 hours may be appropriate for additions made elsewhere than in hospital pharmacy or hospital wards. Certain injections must be protected from light during continuous infusion to minimise oxidation, e.g. amphotericin and sodium nitroprusside.

Intravenous infusion information for neonatal intensive care

For information in other children, see individual drug monographs.

Table of drugs given by continuous intravenous infusion to neonates

The table lists key drugs given by continuous intravenous infusion to neonates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Concentration</th>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adrenaline/Epinephrine</td>
<td>(p. 113)</td>
<td>Dilute 3 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 100 nanograms/kg/minute; infuse through a central venous catheter. Incompatible with bicarbonate and alkaline solutions.</td>
<td>Note Usually made up with adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution; this concentration of adrenaline is not licensed for intravenous administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dobutamine (as hydrochloride)</td>
<td>(p. 111)</td>
<td>Dilute 30 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.5 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 micrograms/kg/minute; max. concentration of 5 mg/mL.</td>
<td>Note Suitable for use in neonates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glyceryl trinitrate (p. 104)
Dilute 3 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 1 mL/hour provides a dose of 1 microgram/kg/minute; max. concentration of 400 micrograms/mL (but concentration of 1 mg/mL has been used via a central venous catheter).
Note Glass or polyethylene apparatus is preferable; loss of potency will occur if PVC is used.

Heparin (as sodium) (p. 115)
Maintenance of umbilical arterial catheter, dilute 50 units to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.45% or use ready-made bag containing 500 units in 500 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9%; infuse at 0.5 mL/hour.
Treatment of thrombosis, dilute 1250 units/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 1 mL/hour provides a dose of 25 units/kg/hour.

Insulin (soluble) (p. 352)
Dilute 5 units to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/kg/hour provides a dose of 0.01 units/kg/hour.
Note Insulin may be absorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin.

Midazolam (p. 234 and p. 638)
Dilute 15 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 30 micrograms/kg/hour.

Morphine sulphate (p. 207)
Dilute 2.5 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or 10% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 micrograms/kg/hour.

Noradrenaline/Norepinephrine (p. 113)
Dilute 600 micrograms (base)/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 20 nanograms (base)/kg/minute; infuse through central venous catheter; max. concentration of noradrenaline (base) 40 micrograms/mL (higher concentrations can be used if fluid restricted). Discard if discoloured. Incompatible with bicarbonate or alkaline solutions.
Note 500 micrograms of noradrenaline base is equivalent to 1 mg of acid tartrate. Dose expressed as the base.

Vecuronium (p. 645)
Reconstitute each vial with 5 mL Water for Injections to give a 2 mg/mL solution. Dilute 5 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.5 mL/hour provides a dose of 50 micrograms/kg/hour; minimum concentration of 40 micrograms/mL. 
List of Dental Preparations

The following list has been approved by the appropriate Secretaries of State, and the preparations therein may be prescribed by dental practitioners on form FP10D (GP14 in Scotland, WP10D in Wales).

Sugar-free versions, where available, are preferred.

Aciclovir Cream, BP
Aciclovir Oral Suspension, BP, 200 mg/5 mL
Aciclovir Tablets, BP, 200 mg
Aciclovir Tablets, BP, 800 mg
Amoxicillin Capsules, BP
Amoxicillin Oral Powder, DPF
Amoxicillin Oral Suspension, BP
Amoxicillin Capsules, BP
Amoxicillin Oral Suspension, BP
Artificial Saliva Oral Spray, DPF

1. Artificial Saliva Substitutes as listed below (to be prescribed only for indications approved by ACBS):
   - AS Saliva Orthana®
   - Glandosane®
   - Biotene Oralbalance®
   - BioXtra®
   - Saliveze®
   - Salivix®

2. Aspirin Tablets, Dispersible, BP
   - Azithromycin Oral Suspension, 200 mg/5 mL, DPF
   - Beclometasone Pressurised Inhalation, BP, 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, CFC-free, as:
     - Clenil Modulite®

   Benzylamine Mouthwash, BP 0.15%
   Benzylamine Oromucosal Spray, BP 0.15%
   Betamethasone Soluble Tablets, 500 micrograms, DPF
   Carbamazepine Tablets, BP
   Carmellose Gelatin Paste, DPF

Cefalexin Capsules, BP
Cefalexin Oral Suspension, BP
Cefalexin Tablets, BP
Cefradine Capsules, BP
Cetirizine Hydrochloride Tablets, 10 mg, DPF
Chlorhexidine Gluconate Gel, BP
Chlorhexidine Mouthwash, BP
Chlorhexidine Oral Spray, DPF
Chlorhexidine Oromucosal Solution, Alcohol-free, 0.2%, DPF
Chlorphenamine Oral Solution, BP
Chlorphenamine Tablets, BP
Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP
Clarithromycin Oral Suspension, 125 mg/5 mL, DPF
Clarithromycin Oral Suspension, 250 mg/5 mL, DPF
Clarithromycin Tablets, BP
Clindamycin Capsules, BP

Co-amoxiclav Tablets, BP, 250/125 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt)
Co-amoxiclav Oral Suspension, BP, 125/31 (amoxicillin 125 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 31.25 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL
Co-amoxiclav Oral Suspension, BP, 250/62 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 62.5 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL
Diazepam Oral Solution, BP, 2 mg/5 mL
Diazepam Tablets, BP
Diclofenac Sodium Tablets, BP
Dihydrocodeine Tablets, BP, 30 mg
Dispersible Doxycycline Tablets, BP
Doxycycline Capsules, BP, 100 mg
Doxycycline Tablets, 20 mg, DPF
Ephedrine Nasal Drops, BP
Erythromycin Ethyl Succinate Oral Suspension, BP
Erythromycin Ethyl Succinate Tablets, BP
Erythromycin Stearate Tablets, BP
Erythromycin Tablets, BP
Fluconazole Capsules, 50 mg, DPF
Fluconazole Oral Suspension, 50 mg/5 mL, DPF
Hydrocortisone Cream, BP, 1%
Hydrocortisone Oromucosal Tablets, BP
Hydrogen Peroxide Mouthwash, BP
Ibuprofen Oral Suspension, BP, sugar-free
Ibuprofen Tablets, BP
Lansoprazole Capsules, DPF
Lidocaine 5% Ointment, DPF
Lidocaine Spray 10%, DPF
Loratadine Tablets, 10 mg, DPF
Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation, BP 1980
Metronidazole Oral Suspension, BP
Metronidazole Tablets, BP
Miconazole Cream, BP
Miconazole Oromucosal Gel, BP
Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Cream, BP
Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Ointment, BP
Mouthwash Solution-tablets, DPF
Nitrazepam Tablets, BP
Nystatin Oral Suspension, BP
Gastro-resistant Omeprazole Capsules, BP
Oxytetracycline Tablets, BP
Paracetamol Oral Suspension, BP
Paracetamol Tablets, BP
Paracetamol Tablets, Soluble, BP
Phenciclovir Cream, DPF
Phenoxybenzamin Tablets, BP
Phenoxybenzamin Tablets, BP
Promethazine Hydrochloride Tablets, BP
Promethazine Oral Solution, BP
Saliva Stimulating Tablets, DPF

1. Indications approved by the ACBS are: patients suffering from dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy or sicca syndrome
2. The BP directs that when soluble aspirin tablets are prescribed, dispersible aspirin tablets should be dispensed
3. This preparation does not appear in subsequent editions of the BP
4. The BP directs that when Paediatric Paracetamol Oral Suspension or Paediatric Paracetamol Mixture is prescribed and no strength stated Paracetamol Oral Suspension 120 mg/5 mL should be dispensed
Sodium Chloride Mouthwash, Compound, BP
Sodium Fluoride Mouthwash, BP
Sodium Fluoride Oral Drops, BP
Sodium Fluoride Tablets, BP
Sodium Fluoride Toothpaste 0.619%, DPF
Sodium Fluoride Toothpaste 1.1%, DPF
Sodium Fusidate Ointment, BP
Temazepam Oral Solution, BP
Temazepam Tablets, BP
Tetracycline Tablets, BP
**Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary for Community Practitioners**

Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary Appendix (Appendix NPF). List of preparations approved by the Secretary of State which may be prescribed on form FP10P (form HS21(N) in Northern Ireland, form GP10(N) in Scotland, forms FP10(CN) and FP10(PN) in Wales or, when available, WP10CN and WP10PN in Wales) by Nurses for National Health Service patients.

Community practitioners who have completed the necessary training may only prescribe items appearing in the nurse prescribers’ list set out below. Community Practitioner Nurse Prescribers are recommended to prescribe generically, except where this would not be clinically appropriate or where there is no approved generic name.

**Medicinal Preparations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Almond Oil Ear Drops, BP</td>
<td>Arachis Oil Enema, NPF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin Tablets, Dispersible, 300 mg, BP</td>
<td>Bisacodyl Suppositories, BP (includes 5-mg and 10-mg strengths)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisacodyl Tablets, BP</td>
<td>Catheter Maintenance Solution, Chlorhexidine, NPF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheter Maintenance Solution, Sodium Chloride, NPF</td>
<td>Catheter Maintenance Solution, Solution G’, NPF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheter Maintenance Solution, Solution R’, NPF</td>
<td>Chlorhexidine Gluconate Alcoholic Solutions containing at least 0.05%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorhexidine Gluconate Aqueous Solutions containing at least 0.05%</td>
<td>Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP</td>
<td>Crotamiton Cream, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crotamiton Lotion, BP</td>
<td>Dimeticone barrier creams containing at least 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docusate Capsules, BP</td>
<td>Docusate Capsules, NPF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docusate Enema, NPF</td>
<td>Docusate Oral Solution, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docusate Oral Solution, Paediatric, BP</td>
<td>Econazole Cream 1%, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econazole Cream 1%, BP</td>
<td>Emollients as listed below:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Dermamist®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Diprobath®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Doublebase®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>E45® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>E45® Inch Relief Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Emulsifying Ointment, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Eucerin® Intensive 10% w/w Urea Treatment Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Eucerin® Intensive 10% w/w Urea Treatment Lotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Hydromol® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Hydromol® Intensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Hydromol® Ointment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Hydros Ointment, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Lipobase®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Liquid and White Soft Paraffin Ointment, NPF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Neutrogena® Norwegian Formula Dermatological Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Nutraplus® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Oilatum® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Oilatum® Junior Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Paraffin, White Soft, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Paraffin, Yellow Soft, BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>3'QV® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>3'QV® Lotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Ultrabase®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Unguentum M®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>2'Zerobase® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>2'Zerocream®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>2'Zeroguent® Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Emollient Bath Additives as listed below:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Balneum®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Balneum Plus® Bath Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Cetraben® Emollient Bath Additive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Dermol® Bath Emollient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Diprobath®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Doublebase® Emollient Bath Additive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Doublebase® Emollient Shower Gel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Doublebase® Emollient Wash Gel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Hydromol® Bath and Shower Emollient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Oilatum® Emollient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Oilatum® Junior Bath Additive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Oilatum® Gel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>3'QV® Bath Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>3'QV® Wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Zerolatum® Emollient Medicinal Bath Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>2'Zeroneum® Bath Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Zerolatum® Bath Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
<td>Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Max. 96 tablets; max. pack size 32 tablets

---

2. Included in the Drug Tariff (Part IXA), the Scottish Drug Tariff (Part 2) and the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff (part III)

3. Included in the Drug Tariff (Part IXA) and the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff (part III)

4. Except pack sizes that are not to be prescribed under the NHS (see Part XVII of the Drug Tariff, Part XI of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff)
Appliances and Reagents (including Wound Management Products)

Community Practitioner Nurse Prescribers in England, Wales and Northern Ireland can prescribe any appliance or reagent in the relevant Drug Tariff. In the Scottish Drug Tariff, Appliances and Reagents which may not be prescribed by Nurses are annotated Nx.

Appliances (including Contraceptive Devices\(^1\)) as listed in Part IXA of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 3 (Appliances) and Part 2 (Dressings) of the Scottish Drug Tariff)

Incontinence Appliances as listed in Part IXB of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 5 of the Scottish Drug Tariff)

Stoma Appliances and Associated Products as listed in Part IXC of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 6 of the Scottish Drug Tariff)

Chemical Reagents as listed in Part IXR of the Drug Tariff

The Drug Tariffs can be accessed online at:

- National Health Service Drug Tariff for England and Wales: www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt_intro.htm
- Health and Personal Social Services for Northern Ireland Drug Tariff: www.dhsspsni.gov.uk/pas-tariff
- Scottish Drug Tariff: www.isdscotland.org/isd/2245.html

Nurse Independent Prescribing

Nurse Independent Prescribers (formerly known as Extended Formulary Nurse Prescribers) are able to prescribe any medicine for any medical condition, including some Controlled Drugs (see p. 798).

Nurse Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise. They are recommended to prescribe generically, except where this would not be clinically appropriate or where there is no approved non-proprietary name.

Nurse Independent Prescribers are also able to prescribe independently the Controlled Drugs in the table below, solely for the medical conditions indicated.

For information on the mixing of medicines by Nurse Independent Prescribers, see Mixing of medicines prior to administration in clinical practice—responding to legislative changes, National Prescribing Centre, May 2010 (available at www.npc.co.uk/policy/mixing/mixing_medicines.htm).

Up-to-date information and guidance on nurse independent prescribing is available on the Department of Health website at www.dh.gov.uk/nonmedicalprescribing

---

1. Except for indications and doses that are \(\text{NHF}\)
2. Max. 96 tablets; max. pack size 32 tablets
3. Nurse Prescribers in Family Planning Clinics—where it is not appropriate for nurse prescribers in family planning clinics to prescribe contraceptive devices using form FP10(P) (forms FP10(CN) and FP10(PN), or when available WP10CN and WP10PN in Wales), they may prescribe using the same system as doctors in the clinic
### Controlled drugs prescribable by Nurse Independent Prescribers solely for the medical conditions indicated

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Route of Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buprenorphine</td>
<td>Transdermal use in palliative care</td>
<td>Transdermal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlordiazepoxide hydrochloride</td>
<td>Treatment of initial or acute withdrawal symptoms caused by the withdrawal of alcohol from persons habituated to it</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codeine phosphate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-phenotrope</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamorphine hydrochloride</td>
<td>Use in palliative care, pain relief in respect of suspected myocardial infarction or for relief of acute or severe pain after trauma, including in either case postoperative pain relief</td>
<td>Oral, parenteral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diazepam</td>
<td>Use in palliative care, treatment of initial or acute withdrawal symptoms caused by the withdrawal of alcohol from persons habituated to it, tonic-clonic seizures</td>
<td>Oral, parenteral, rectal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dihydrocodeine tartrate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fentanyl</td>
<td>Transdermal use in palliative care</td>
<td>Transdermal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam</td>
<td>Use in palliative care, tonic-clonic seizures</td>
<td>Oral, parenteral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>Use in palliative care, tonic-clonic seizures</td>
<td>Parenteral, buccal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine hydrochloride</td>
<td>Use in palliative care, pain relief in respect of suspected myocardial infarction or for relief of acute or severe pain after trauma, including in either case postoperative pain relief</td>
<td>Rectal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine sulphate</td>
<td>Use in palliative care, pain relief in respect of suspected myocardial infarction or for relief of acute or severe pain after trauma, including in either case postoperative pain relief</td>
<td>Oral, parenteral, rectal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxycodone hydrochloride</td>
<td>Use in palliative care</td>
<td>Oral, parenteral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**: For the purposes of nurse independent prescribing, palliative care means the care of patients with advanced, progressive illness.
Non-medical prescribing

A range of non-medical healthcare professionals can prescribe medicines for patients as either Independent or Supplementary Prescribers.

Independent prescribers are practitioners responsible and accountable for the assessment of patients with previously undiagnosed or diagnosed conditions and for decisions about the clinical management required, including prescribing. They are recommended to prescribe generically, except where this would not be clinically appropriate or where there is no approved non-proprietary name.

Supplementary prescribing is a partnership between an independent prescriber (a doctor or a dentist) and a supplementary prescriber to implement an agreed Clinical Management Plan for an individual patient with that patient’s agreement.

Independent and Supplementary Prescribers are identified by an annotation next to their name in the relevant professional register.

Up-to-date information and guidance on non-medical prescribing is available on the Department of Health website at www.dh.gov.uk/nonmedicalprescribing.

For information on the mixing of medicines by Independent and Supplementary Prescribers, see Mixing of medicines prior to administration in clinical practice—responding to legislative changes, National Prescribing Centre, May 2010 (available at www.npc.co.uk/policy/mixing/mixing_medicines.htm).

For information on the supply and administration of medicines to groups of patients using Patient Group Directions, see p. 3.

---

**Nurses**

For further information on Nurse Independent Prescribing, see Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary, p. 797.

---

**Optometrists**

Optometrist Independent Prescribers can prescribe any licensed medicine for ocular conditions affecting the eye and the tissues surrounding the eye, except Controlled Drugs or medicines for parenteral administration. Optometrist Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

---

**Pharmacists**

Pharmacist Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine, except Controlled Drugs, for any medical condition. Pharmacist Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.
The following is an alphabetical list of manufacturers and their medicines information contact details. For information on ‘special-order’ manufacturers and specialist importing companies see p. 809.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
<th>Contact Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 3M           | 3M Health Care Ltd  
tel: (01509) 611 611 |
| A&H          | Allen & Hanburys Ltd  
See GSK |
| A1 Pharmaceuticals | A1 Pharmaceuticals Plc  
tel: (01708) 528 900  
sales@a1plc.co.uk |
| Abbott       | Abbott Laboratories Ltd  
tel: (01628) 773 355  
ukmedinfo@abbott.com |
| Abbott Healthcare | Abbott Healthcare Products Ltd  
tel: (023) 8046 7000  
medinfo.shl@abbott.com |
| Abraxis      | Abraxis BioScience Ltd  
tel: (020) 7081 0850  
abraxismedical@aidispharma.com |
| ABT Healthcare | ABT Healthcare UK Ltd  
tel: (01565) 757 783 |
| Acorus       | Acorus Therapeutics Ltd  
tel: (01244) 625 152  
enquiries@acorus-therapeutics.com |
| Actavis      | Actavis UK Ltd  
tel: (01271) 311 257  
medinfo.actavis.co.uk |
| Actelion     | Actelion Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd  
tel: (020) 8987 3333  
medinfo_uk@actelion.com |
| Activa       | Activa Healthcare  
tel: 0845 060 6707  
advice@activahealthcare.co.uk |
| ADI Medical  | ADI Medical UK  
tel: (01628) 485159  
info@adimedical.co.uk |
| Advancis     | Advancis Medical Ltd  
tel: (01623) 751 500  
info@advancis.co.uk |
| Agepha       | Agepha GmbH  
tel: (020) 3239 6241  
uk@agepha.com |
| Aquefant      | Aquefant Ltd  
tel: (01934) 835 694  
info@aquefantt.co.uk |
| Air Products | Air Products plc  
tel: 0800 373 580 |
| Alan Pharmaceuticals | Alan Pharmaceuticals  
tel: (020) 7284 2887 |
| Alcon        | Alcon Laboratories (UK) Ltd  
tel: (01442) 341 234 |
| Alexion      | Alexion Pharma UK Ltd  
tel: (01932) 359 220  
alexion.uk@alxn.com |
| ALK-Abelló   | ALK-Abelló (UK) Ltd  
tel: (01488) 686 016  
info@uk.alk-abelló.com |
| Allergan     | Allergan Ltd  
tel: (01628) 494 026 |
| Allergy      | Allergy Therapeutics Ltd  
tel: (01903) 844 702 |
| Alliance     | Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd  
tel: (01249) 466 966  
info@alliancepharma.co.uk |
| Almirall     | Almirall Ltd  
tel: 0800 008 7399  
almirall@professionalinformation.co.uk |
| Alphashow    | Alphashow Ltd  
tel: 0870 240 2775  
info@alphashow.co.uk |
| Altacor      | Altacor Ltd  
tel: (01223) 421 411  
info@altacor-pharma.com |
| Amdipharm    | Amdipharm plc  
tel: 0870 777 7675  
medinfo@amdipharm.com |
| Amgen        | Amgen Ltd  
tel: (01223) 420 305  
gbinfoline@amgen.com |
| Archimedes   | Archimedes Pharma UK Ltd  
tel: (0118) 931 5060  
medicalinformation@archimedespharma.com |
| Ardana       | Ardana Bioscience Ltd  
tel: (0131) 226 8550  
info@ardana.co.uk |
| Ark Therapeutics | Ark Therapeutics Group Plc  
tel: (020) 7388 7722  
info@arktherapeutics.com |
| Aspen        | Aspen Europe GmbH  
tel: 00800 0040142  
medinfoenquiries@pharmaer.com |
| Aspen Medical | Aspen Medical Europe Ltd  
tel: (01527) 587 728  
customers@aspenmedicaleurope.com |
| AS Pharma    | AS Pharma Ltd  
tel: 0870 066 4117  
info@aspharma.co.uk |
Aspire
Aspire Pharma Ltd
tel: (01730) 234 527
info@aspirepharma.co.uk

Astellas
Astellas Pharma Ltd
tel: (01784) 419 615

AstraZeneca
AstraZeneca UK Ltd
tel: 0800 783 0033
medical.informationuk@astrazeneca.com

Auden Mckenzie
Auden Mckenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd
tel: (01895) 627 420

Axcan
Axcan Pharma SA
tel: (0033) 130 461 900

Ayrton Saunders
Ayrton Saunders Ltd
tel: (0151) 709 2074
info@ayrtons.com

Bard
Bard Ltd
tel: (01293) 527 888

Basilea
Basilea Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01483) 790 033
ukmedinfo@basilea.com

Bausch & Lomb
Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd
tel: (01748) 828 864
medicalinformationUK@bausch.com

Bayer Schering
Bayer Schering Pharma
tel: (01635) 563 116
medinfo@bayer.co.uk

BBI Healthcare
BBI Healthcare
tel: (01792) 229 333
info@bbihealthcare.com

Beacon
Beacon Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01892) 600 930
info@beaconpharma.co.uk

Beiersdorf
Beiersdorf UK Ltd
tel: (0121) 329 8800

BHR
BHR Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (024) 7635 3742
info@bhr.co.uk

Bioenvision
Bioenvision Ltd
tel: (0131) 248 3555
info@bioenvision.com

Biogen
Biogen Idec Ltd
tel: 0800 008 7401

Biolitec
Biolitec Pharma Ltd
tel: (00353) 1463 7415
medical.info@biolitec.com

BioMarin
BioMarin Europe Ltd
tel: (020) 7420 0800
biomarin-europe@bmrn.com

Biotest UK
Biotest (UK) Ltd
tel: (0121) 733 3393
medicinesinformation@biotestuk.com

Blackwell
Blackwell Supplies Ltd
tel: (01634) 877 620

BOC
BOC Medical
tel: 0800 111 333

Boehringer Ingelheim
Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd
tel: (01344) 424 600
medinfo@bra.boehringer-ingelheim.com

Boots
Boots the Chemists
tel: (0115) 959 5165

BPC 100
The Bolton Pharmaceutical 100 Ltd
tel: 0845 602 3907
info@bpc100.com

BPL
Bio Products Laboratory
tel: (020) 8957 2622
medinfo@bpl.co.uk

Braun
B Braun (Medical) Ltd
tel: (0114) 225 9000
info@bbraun.com

Bristol-Myers Squibb
Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01895) 523 000
medical.information@bms.com

BSN Medical
BSN Medical Ltd
tel: 0845 122 3600

CareFusion
CareFusion UK 244 Ltd
tel: 0800 043 7546
enquiries@chloraprep.co.uk

Cazen-Fleet
Cazen-Fleet

tel: (0034) 913 518 800
ssi@cazenfleet.com

C D Medical
C D Medical Ltd
tel: (01942) 816 184

Celgene
Celgene Ltd
tel: 0844 801 0045
medinfo.uk.ire@celgene.com

Chemidex
Chemidex Pharma Ltd
tel: (01784) 477 167
info@chemidex.co.uk

Chiesi
Chiesi Ltd
tel: (0161) 488 5165
info@chiesi.co.uk

CHS
Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd
tel: (01603) 735 200
customerservices@typharm.com

Chugai
Chugai Pharma UK Ltd
tel: (020) 8987 5680

Clement Clarke
Clement Clarke International Ltd
tel: (01279) 414 969
resp@clement-clarke.com

Clinigen
Clinigen Healthcare Ltd
tel: (01748) 902 805
clinigenuk@professionalinformation.co.uk

Clinigent
Clinigent Healthcare Ltd
tel: (01748) 902 805
clinigenuk@professionalinformation.co.uk

Clinigen
Clinigen Healthcare Ltd
tel: (01748) 902 805
clinigenuk@professionalinformation.co.uk

Index of manufacturers

BNFC 2011–2012

Britannia
Britannia Pharmaceuticals
tel: 0870 851 0207
enquiries@medinfornt.co.uk

CareFusion
CareFusion UK 244 Ltd
tel: 0800 043 7546
enquiries@chloraprep.co.uk

Cazen-Fleet
Cazen-Fleet

tel: (0034) 913 518 800
ssi@cazenfleet.com

C D Medical
C D Medical Ltd
tel: (01942) 816 184

Celgene
Celgene Ltd
tel: 0844 801 0045
medinfo.uk.ire@celgene.com

Chemidex
Chemidex Pharma Ltd
tel: (01784) 477 167
info@chemidex.co.uk

Chiesi
Chiesi Ltd
tel: (0161) 488 5165
info@chiesi.co.uk

CHS
Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd
tel: (01603) 735 200
customerservices@typharm.com

Chugai
Chugai Pharma UK Ltd
tel: (020) 8987 5680

Clement Clarke
Clement Clarke International Ltd
tel: (01279) 414 969
resp@clement-clarke.com

Clinigen
Clinigen Healthcare Ltd
tel: (01748) 902 805
clinigenuk@professionalinformation.co.uk
BNFC 2011–2012

Index of manufacturers

Fenton
Fenton Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (020) 7224 1388
mail@Fent-Pharm.co.uk

Ferndale
Ferndale Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01937) 541 122
info@ferndalepharma.co.uk

Ferring
Ferring Pharmaceuticals (UK)
tel: 0844 931 0054
medical@ferring.com

Firstplay Dietary
Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd
tel: (0161) 474 7576

Flynn
Flynn Pharma Ltd
tel: (01438) 727 822
medinfo@flynnpharma.com

Foodlink
Foodlink (UK) Ltd
tel: (01752) 344 544
info@foodlinkltd.co.uk

Ford
Ford Medical Associates Ltd
tel: (01233) 633 224
enquiries@fordmedical.co.uk

Forest
Forest Laboratories UK Ltd
tel: (01322) 421 800
medinfo@forest-labs.co.uk

Forum
Forum Health Products Ltd
tel: (01737) 773 711
health@forumgroup.co.uk

Fox
C. H. Fox Ltd
tel: (020) 7240 3111

Fresenius Kabi
Fresenius Kabi Ltd
tel: (01928) 533 533
med.info-uk@fresenius-kabi.com

Fresenius Medical Care
Fresenius Medical Care UK Ltd
tel: (01635) 568 400
info@genuspharma.com

Frontier
Frontier Multigate
tel: (01495) 233 050
multigate@frontier-group.co.uk

Fyne Dynamics
Fyne Dynamics Ltd
tel: (01279) 423 423
info@fyne-dynamics.com

Galderna
Galderna (UK) Ltd
tel: (01923) 208 950

Galen
Galen Ltd
tel: (028) 3833 4974
customer.services@galen.co.uk

GE Healthcare
GE Healthcare
tel: (01494) 544 000

Geistlich
Geistlich Pharma
tel: (01244) 347 534

General Dietary
General Dietary Ltd
tel: (020) 8396 3323

Generics
See Mylan

Genius Foods
Genius Foods Ltd
tel: 0845 874 4000
info@geniusglutenfree.com

Genopharm
Laboratoires Genopharm
tel: (0898) 234 2664
info@genopharm.eu

Genzyme
Genzyme Therapeutics
tel: (01865) 405 200
ukmedinfo@genzyme.com

GFF Trade
GF Foods Ltd
tel: (01757) 289 207
admin@gffdirect.co.uk

Gilead
Gilead Sciences Ltd
tel: (01223) 897 555
ukmedinfo@gilead.com

Glebe Farm
Glebe Farm
tel: (01487) 773 282
office@glebe-flour.co.uk

Glenwood
Glenwood GmbH
tel: (0049) 815 199 8790
info@glenwood.de

Gluten Free Foods Ltd
Gluten Free Foods Ltd
tel: (020) 8953 4444
info@glutenfree-foods.co.uk

Goldshield
Goldshield Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: 0870 070 3033
medicalinformation@goldshieldplc.com

GP Pharma
See Derma UK

Grifols
Grifols UK Ltd
tel: (01223) 395 700
reception.uk@grifols.com

Grüenthal
Grüenthal Ltd
tel: 0870 351 8960
medicalinformationuk@grunenthal.com

GSK
GlaxoSmithKline
tel: (020) 8047 2500
customerrelations@gsk.com

H&R
H&R Healthcare Ltd
tel: (01482) 638 491

Hampton
Hampton Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01923) 251 777

Hartmann
Paul Hartmann Ltd
tel: (01706) 363 200
info@uk.hartmann.info

Heinz
H. J. Heinz Company Ltd
tel: (020) 8573 7757
farleys_heinz@heinz.co.uk

Henleys
Henleys Medical Supplies Ltd
tel: (01707) 333 164

HFA Healthcare
HFA Healthcare Ltd
tel: 0844 335 8270

HK Pharma
HK Pharma Ltd
tel: (01438) 356 926

Hollister
Hollister Ltd
tel: (0118) 989 5000
customer.services@hollister.com

Hospira
Hospira UK Ltd
tel: (01926) 834 400
medinfouk@hospira.com

HRA Pharma
HRA Pharma UK Ltd
tel: 0800 917 9548
medinfo.uk@hra-pharma.com

Huntleigh
Huntleigh Healthcare Ltd
tel: (01582) 413 104

Idis
Idis Ltd
tel: (01932) 824 000
ms@idispharma.com
Index of manufacturers

INCA-Pharm
INCA-Pharm UK
tel: (01748) 828 812
info@inca-pharm.com

Infai
Infai UK Ltd
tel: (01904) 435 228
info@infai.co.uk

Innovative
Innovative Solutions UK Ltd
tel: (01706) 746 713
enquiries@innovativesolutions.org.uk

Insense
Insense Ltd
tel: (01234) 782 870
enquiries@insense.co.uk

Insight
Insight Medical Products Ltd
tel: (01866) 500 055
info@insightmedical.net

Intrapharm
Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd
tel: (01622) 749 222
sales@intraphamlabs.com

Ipsen
Ipsen Ltd
tel: (01753) 627 777
medical-information.uk@ipsen.com

Iroko
Iroko Cardio LLC
tel: (001) 267 546 3182

IS Pharmaceuticals
IS Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01244) 625 152
enquiries@ispharma.plc.uk

IVAX
See TEVA UK

J&J
Johnson & Johnson Ltd
tel: (01628) 822 222
medinfo@congb.jnj.com

Janssen
Janssen-Cilag Ltd
tel: 0800 731 8450
medinfo@janssen-cilag.com

Jobskin
Jobskin Ltd
tel: (0115) 973 4300
dw@jobskin.co.uk

Juvela
Juvela (Hero UK) Ltd
tel: (0151) 432 5300
info@juvela.co.uk

K/L
K/L Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01294) 215 951

Kappin
Kappin Ltd
tel: (020) 8961 8511
orbiov@orbisplic.com

KCI Medical
KCI Medical Ltd
tel: (01865) 840 600

Kestrel Ophthalmics
Kestrel Ophthalmics Ltd
tel: (01202) 658 444
info@kestrelophthalmics.co.uk

King
King Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01438) 356 924

KoRa
KoRa Healthcare Ltd
tel: 0845 303 8631
info@kora.ie

Kyowa Hakko
Kyowa Hakko UK Ltd
tel: (01753) 566 020

Lantor
Lantor UK Ltd
tel: (01204) 855 000
help@lantor.co.uk

LEO
LEO Laboratories Ltd
tel: (01844) 347 333
medical-info.uk@leo-pharma.com

LifeScan
LifeScan
tel: (01494) 658 750

Lilly
Eli Lilly & Co Ltd
tel: (01256) 315 000
ukmedinfo@lilly.com

Lincoln Medical
Lincoln Medical Ltd
tel: (01748) 828 785
info@lincolnmedical.co.uk

Linderma
Linderma Ltd
tel: (01942) 816 184
linderma@virgin.net

Lipomed
Lipomed GmbH
tel: (0049) 776 155 9222
lipomed@lipomed.com

Livwell
Livwell Ltd
tel: 0845 120 0038
info@livwell.eu

L’Oréal Active
L’Oréal Active Cosmetics UK
tel: 0800 055 6822

Lornamead
Lornamead UK Ltd
tel: (01276) 674000
lornamead@dhl.com

LPC
LPC Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01582) 560 393
info@lpccpharma.com

Lundbeck
Lundbeck Ltd
tel: (01908) 638 935
ukmedicalinformation@lundbeck.com

M & A Pharmache
M & A Pharmachem Ltd
tel: (01942) 816 184
buy@mapharmachem.co.uk

Manuka Medical
Manuka Medical Ltd
tel: (01623) 600 669

Manx
Manx Healthcare
tel: (01926) 482 511
info@manxhealthcare.com

Marlborough
Marlborough Pharmaceuticals
tel: (01672) 514 187
info@marlborough-pharma.co.uk

Martindale
Martindale Pharma
tel: (01277) 256 600
medinfo@martindalepharma.co.uk

MDE
Medical Diagnostics Europe Ltd
tel: 0845 370 8077
info@mdediagnostic.co.uk

Mead Johnson
Mead Johnson Nutritionals
tel: (01895) 523 764

Meadow
Meadow Laboratories Ltd
tel: (020) 8597 1203
enquiries@meadowlabs.fsnet.co.uk

Meda
Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd
tel: (01748) 828 810
meda@professionalinformation.co.uk

Medac
Medac (UK)
tel: (01786) 458 086
info@medac-uk.co.uk

804 Index of manufacturers
BNFC 2011–2012
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Phone</th>
<th>Email</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oxford Nutrition</td>
<td>Oxford Nutrition Ltd</td>
<td>(01626) 832 067</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@nutrinox.com">info@nutrinox.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paines &amp; Byrne</td>
<td>Paines &amp; Byrne Ltd</td>
<td>(01784) 419 620</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pari</td>
<td>PARI Medical Ltd</td>
<td>(01932) 341 122</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@pari.de">info@pari.de</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkside</td>
<td>Parkside Healthcare</td>
<td>(0161) 795 2792</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peckforton</td>
<td>Peckforton Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td>(01270) 582 255</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@peckforton.com">info@peckforton.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penn</td>
<td>Penn Pharmaceuticals Services Ltd</td>
<td>(01495) 711 222</td>
<td><a href="mailto:penn@pennpharm.co.uk">penn@pennpharm.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfizer</td>
<td>Pfizer Ltd</td>
<td>(01304) 616 161</td>
<td><a href="mailto:EUMEDINFO@pfizer.com">EUMEDINFO@pfizer.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGR Health Foods</td>
<td>PGR Health Foods Ltd</td>
<td>(01992) 581 715</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@pgrhealthfoods.co.uk">info@pgrhealthfoods.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacia</td>
<td>Sea Pfizer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharma-Global</td>
<td>Pharma-Global Ltd</td>
<td>(00353) 1280 1104</td>
<td><a href="mailto:eyecare@pharmaglobal.ie">eyecare@pharmaglobal.ie</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharma Mar</td>
<td>See Idis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharma Nord</td>
<td>Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd</td>
<td>(01670) 519 989</td>
<td><a href="mailto:uksales@pharmanord.co.uk">uksales@pharmanord.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmasure</td>
<td>Pharmasure Ltd</td>
<td>(01923) 233 466</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@pharmasure.ie">info@pharmasure.ie</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinewood</td>
<td>Pinewood Healthcare</td>
<td>(00353) 523 6253</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@pinewood.ie">info@pinewood.ie</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potters</td>
<td>Potters Herbal Medicines</td>
<td>(01942) 219 960</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@pottersherbals.co.uk">info@pottersherbals.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceli</td>
<td>Proceli</td>
<td>(01226) 713 044</td>
<td><a href="mailto:admin@proceli.co.uk">admin@proceli.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procter &amp; Gamble</td>
<td>Procter &amp; Gamble (Health and Beauty Care) Ltd</td>
<td>(0191) 297 5000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile</td>
<td>Profile Pharma Ltd</td>
<td>(0800) 1300 855</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@profilepharma.com">info@profilepharma.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProStrakan</td>
<td>ProStrakan Ltd</td>
<td>(01896) 664 000</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medinfo@prostrakan.com">medinfo@prostrakan.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protex</td>
<td>Protex Healthcare (UK) Ltd</td>
<td>(0870) 011 4112</td>
<td><a href="mailto:orders@protexhealthcare.co.uk">orders@protexhealthcare.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ransom</td>
<td>Ransom Consumer Healthcare</td>
<td>(01462) 437 615</td>
<td>williamransom.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ratiopharm UK</td>
<td>Ratiopharm UK Ltd</td>
<td>(023) 9231 3592</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@ratiopharm.co.uk">info@ratiopharm.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reckitt Benckiser</td>
<td>Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare</td>
<td>(01482) 326 151</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info.MIU@reckittbenckiser.com">info.MIU@reckittbenckiser.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recordati</td>
<td>Recordati Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td>(01491) 576 336</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medinfo@recordati.co.uk">medinfo@recordati.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReSource Medical</td>
<td>ReSource Medical UK Ltd</td>
<td>(01484) 531 489</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@resource-medical.co.uk">info@resource-medical.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resprionics</td>
<td>Philips Respironics (UK) Ltd</td>
<td>(0800) 130 0840</td>
<td><a href="mailto:rukmarketing@respironics.com">rukmarketing@respironics.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richardson</td>
<td>Richardson Healthcare Ltd</td>
<td>(0870) 011 1126</td>
<td><a href="mailto:richardson@richardsonhealthcare.com">richardson@richardsonhealthcare.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riemser</td>
<td>Riemser Armeimittel AG</td>
<td>(0049) 383 517 6679</td>
<td>@RIEMSER.de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIS Products</td>
<td>RIS Products Ltd</td>
<td>(01438) 840 135</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@risproducts.co.uk">info@risproducts.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robinsons</td>
<td>Robinson Healthcare Ltd</td>
<td>(01909) 735 064</td>
<td><a href="mailto:enquiry@robinsonhealthcare.com">enquiry@robinsonhealthcare.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roche</td>
<td>Roche Products Ltd</td>
<td>(0800 328 1629</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medinfo.uk@roche.com">medinfo.uk@roche.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roche Diagnostics</td>
<td>Roche Diagnostics Ltd</td>
<td>(01444) 256 000</td>
<td><a href="mailto:burgesshill.accu-chek@roche.com">burgesshill.accu-chek@roche.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemont</td>
<td>Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td>(0800 919 312</td>
<td><a href="mailto:infodesk@rosemontpharma.com">infodesk@rosemontpharma.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rowa</td>
<td>Rowa Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td>(00353) 275 0077</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sallis</td>
<td>Sallis Healthcare Ltd</td>
<td>(0115) 978 7841</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandoz</td>
<td>Sandoz Ltd</td>
<td>(01276) 698 020</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sandoz@professionalinformation.co.uk">sandoz@professionalinformation.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanofi-Aventis</td>
<td>Sanofi-Aventis Ltd</td>
<td>(01483) 505 515</td>
<td><a href="mailto:uk-medicalinformation@sanofi-aventis.com">uk-medicalinformation@sanofi-aventis.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanofi Pasteur</td>
<td>Sanofi Pasteur MSD Ltd</td>
<td>(01628) 785 291</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schering-Plough</td>
<td>See MSD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schuco</td>
<td>Schuco International Ltd</td>
<td>(020) 8368 1642</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sales@schuco.co.uk">sales@schuco.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schülke</td>
<td>Schülke UK</td>
<td>(0114) 254 3500</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mail.uk@schuelke.com">mail.uk@schuelke.com</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

806 Index of manufacturers

BNFC 2011–2012
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Phone</th>
<th>Email</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope Ophthalmics</td>
<td>Scope Ophthalmics Ltd</td>
<td>(0161) 266 1011</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@scopeophthalmics.com">info@scopeophthalmics.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD Healthcare</td>
<td>SD Healthcare</td>
<td>(0161) 776 7626</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sales@sdhealthcare.com">sales@sdhealthcare.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septodont</td>
<td>Septodont Ltd</td>
<td>(01622) 695 520</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servier</td>
<td>Servier Laboratories Ltd</td>
<td>(01753) 666 409</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medicalinformation@uk.netgrs.com">medicalinformation@uk.netgrs.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD Healthcare</td>
<td>SD Healthcare</td>
<td>(0161) 776 7626</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sales@sdhealthcare.com">sales@sdhealthcare.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septodont</td>
<td>Septodont Ltd</td>
<td>(01622) 695 520</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servier</td>
<td>Servier Laboratories Ltd</td>
<td>(01753) 666 409</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medicalinformation@uk.netgrs.com">medicalinformation@uk.netgrs.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Seas</td>
<td>Seven Seas Ltd</td>
<td>(01482) 375 234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shire</td>
<td>Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td>(01600) 55 661</td>
<td>shire.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shire HGT</td>
<td>Shire Human Genetic Therapies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shire</td>
<td>Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td>(01600) 55 661</td>
<td>shire.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHS</td>
<td>SHS International Ltd</td>
<td>(0151) 228 8161</td>
<td><a href="mailto:nutrition@shsint.co.uk">nutrition@shsint.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siemens</td>
<td>Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics Ltd</td>
<td>(01456) 600 1966</td>
<td><a href="mailto:dx-diag_sales-uk.med@siemens.com">dx-diag_sales-uk.med@siemens.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sigma-Tau</td>
<td>Sigma-Tau Pharma Ltd (UK)</td>
<td>(01600) 043 1266</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medicalinformation@sigttau.co.uk">medicalinformation@sigttau.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin Camouflage Co.</td>
<td>The Skin Camouflage Company Ltd</td>
<td>(01507) 343 091</td>
<td><a href="mailto:smcovermark@aol.com">smcovermark@aol.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skinnies</td>
<td>Skinnies UK</td>
<td>(01562) 546 123</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@skinniesuk.com">info@skinniesuk.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLO Drinks</td>
<td>SLO Drinks Ltd</td>
<td>(01605) 222 2205</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@slodrinks.com">info@slodrinks.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMA Nutrition</td>
<td>See Wyeth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNBTS</td>
<td>Scottish National Blood Transfusion Service</td>
<td>(0131) 536 5700</td>
<td><a href="mailto:contact.pfc@snbts.csa.scot.nhs.uk">contact.pfc@snbts.csa.scot.nhs.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sovereign</td>
<td>See Amdepipharm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speciality European</td>
<td>Speciality European Pharma Ltd</td>
<td>(020) 7421 7400</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@spepharm.com">info@spepharm.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectrum Thea</td>
<td>Spectrum Thea Pharmaceuticals</td>
<td>(0845 521 1290</td>
<td><a href="mailto:theasupport@spectrum-thea.co.uk">theasupport@spectrum-thea.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpePharm</td>
<td>SpePharm UK Ltd</td>
<td>(0844 800 7579</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medinfo@spepharm.com">medinfo@spepharm.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirit</td>
<td>Spirit Healthcare Ltd</td>
<td>(01800 881 5423</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@spirit-healthcare.co.uk">info@spirit-healthcare.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squibb</td>
<td>See Bristol-Mysy Squibb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL</td>
<td>SSL International plc</td>
<td>(01800) 122 2690</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medicalinformation@ssl-international.com">medicalinformation@ssl-international.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD Pharmaceutical</td>
<td>STD Pharmaceutical Products Ltd</td>
<td>(01432) 373 555</td>
<td><a href="mailto:enquires@stdpharm.co.uk">enquires@stdpharm.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steraid</td>
<td>Steraid (Gainsborough) Ltd</td>
<td>(01427) 677 659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stiefel</td>
<td>Stiefel Laboratories (UK) Ltd</td>
<td>(01628) 612 000</td>
<td><a href="mailto:general@stiefel.co.uk">general@stiefel.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stragen</td>
<td>Stragen UK Ltd</td>
<td>(01800) 351 8744</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@stragenuk.com">info@stragenuk.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Su-Med</td>
<td>Su-Med International UK Ltd</td>
<td>(01457) 890 980</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sales@sumed.co.uk">sales@sumed.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swedish Orphan</td>
<td>Swedish Orphan Bovitorm Ltd</td>
<td>(01638) 722 380</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVHC</td>
<td>SVHC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synergy Healthcare</td>
<td>Synergy Healthcare (UK) Ltd</td>
<td>(0161) 624 5641</td>
<td><a href="mailto:healthcaresolutions@synergyhealthplc.com">healthcaresolutions@synergyhealthplc.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syner-Med</td>
<td>Syner-Med (Pharmaceutical Products) Ltd</td>
<td>(0845 634 2100</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mail@syner-med.com">mail@syner-med.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systagenix</td>
<td>Systagenix Wound Management</td>
<td>(01344) 871 000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takeda</td>
<td>Takeda UK Ltd</td>
<td>(01628) 537 900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talley</td>
<td>Talley Group Ltd</td>
<td>(01794) 503 500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taro</td>
<td>Taro Pharmaceuticals (UK) Ltd</td>
<td>(0870 736 9544</td>
<td><a href="mailto:customerservice@taropharma.co.uk">customerservice@taropharma.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teofarma</td>
<td>Teofarma S.r.l.</td>
<td>(01748) 828 857</td>
<td><a href="mailto:teofarma@professionalinformation.co.uk">teofarma@professionalinformation.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teva</td>
<td>Teva Pharmaceuticals Ltd</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="mailto:med.info@tevapharma.co.uk">med.info@tevapharma.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEVA UK</td>
<td>TEVA UK Ltd</td>
<td>(0870 502 0304</td>
<td><a href="mailto:medinfo@tevauk.com">medinfo@tevauk.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Medicines Company</td>
<td>The Medicines Company</td>
<td>(00800) 8436 3326</td>
<td><a href="mailto:GCHS.MI@quintiles.com">GCHS.MI@quintiles.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Therabel</td>
<td>Therabel Pharma UK Ltd</td>
<td>(0800 066 5446</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@therabel.co.uk">info@therabel.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Urology Co.</td>
<td>The Urology Company Ltd</td>
<td>(020) 3077 5411</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@theurologyco.com">info@theurologyco.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas Blake</td>
<td>Thomas Blake Cosmetic Creams Ltd</td>
<td>(01207) 279 432</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sales@veilcover.com">sales@veilcover.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thornton &amp; Ross</td>
<td>Thornton &amp; Ross Ltd</td>
<td>(01484) 842 217</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mail@thorntorross.com">mail@thorntorross.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tillomed</td>
<td>Tillomed Laboratories Ltd</td>
<td>(01480) 402 400</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@tillomed.co.uk">info@tillomed.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Contact Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>808 Index of manufacturers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index of manufacturers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BNFC 2011–2012</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **TMC**         | TMC Pharma Services Ltd  
tel: (01252) 842 255  
info@tmcpharma.com                                      |
| **Tobia Teff**  | Tobia Teff UK Ltd  
tel: (020) 7328 2045  
info@tobiateff.co.uk                                    |
| **Torbet**      | Torbet Laboratories Ltd  
tel: (01603) 735 200  
torbet@typharm.com                                      |
| **Transdermal** | Transdermal Ltd  
tel: (020) 8654 2251  
transdermal@transdermal.co.uk                           |
| **TRB Chemedica** | TRB Chemedica (UK) Ltd  
tel: 0845 330 7556                                      |
| **Typharm**     | Typharm Ltd  
tel: (01603) 735 200  
customerservices@typharm.com                            |
| **UCB Pharma**  | UCB Pharma Ltd  
tel: (01753) 534 655  
medicalinformationuk@ucb.com                            |
|                  |                                                           |
| **Unomedical**  | Unomedical Ltd  
tel: (01527) 587 700                                     |
| **Urgo**        | Urgo Ltd  
tel: (01509) 502 051  
medical@parema.com                                       |
| **Vegenat**     | c/o Archaelis Ltd  
tel: 0870 803 2484  
info@vegenat.co.uk                                      |
| **Vifor**       | Vifor Pharma UK Ltd  
tel: (01276) 853 633  
medicalinfo_uk@viforpharma.com                           |
| **ViV**         | ViV Healthcare UK Ltd  
See GSK                                                    |
| **Viridian**    | Viridian Pharma Ltd  
tel: (01633) 400 335  
info@viridianpharma.co.uk                               |
| **Vitaflx**     | Vitaflx International Ltd  
tel: (0151) 709 9020  
vitaflx@vitaflo.co.uk                                   |
| **Vitalize**    | Vitaline Pharmaceutica US Ltd  
tel: (01844) 269 007  
vitalineinfo@aol.com                                    |
| **Vitagraph**   | Vitagraph Ltd  
tel: (01280) 827 110  
sales@vitagraph.co.uk                                    |
| **Wallace Cameron** | Wallace Cameron Ltd  
tel: (01698) 354 600  
sales@wallacecameron.com                                |
| **Wallace Mfg** | Wallace Manufacturing Chemists Ltd  
tel: (01235) 538 700  
info@alinter.co.uk                                      |
| ** Warner Chilcott** | Warner Chilcott UK Ltd  
tel: (01932) 824 700                                     |
| **WaveSense**   | WaveSense Europe Ltd  
tel: (01235) 838 639  
enquiries@wavesense.co.uk                               |
| **Wellfoods**   | Wellfoods Ltd  
tel: (01226) 381 712  
wellfoods@talk21.com                                    |
| **Williams**    | Williams Medical Supplies Ltd  
tel: (01685) 844 739                                      |
| **Winthrop**    | Winthrop Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd  
tel: (01483) 554 101  
winthrop@professionalinformation.co.uk                  |
| **Wockhardt**   | Wockhardt UK Ltd  
tel: (01978) 661 261                                        |
| **Wyeth**       | Wyeth Pharmaceuticals  
tel: (01628) 604 377  
EUMEDINFO@pfizer.com                                    |
| **Wynlit**      | Wynlit Laboratories  
tel: (07903) 370 130                                          |
| **Wyvern**      | Wyvern Medical Ltd  
tel: (01531) 631 105                                         |
| **Zeroderma**   | Zeroderma Ltd  
tel: (01858) 525 643  
info@zdpharma.com                                        |
| **ZooBiotic**   | ZooBiotic Ltd  
tel: 0845 230 1810  
enquiries@zoobiotic.co.uk                               |
Unlicensed medicines are available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers and specialist importing companies; the MHRA maintains a register of these companies at http://tinyurl.com/cdslke.

Licensed hospital manufacturing units also manufacture ‘special-order’ products as unlicensed medicines, the principal NHS units are listed below. A database (Pro-File: www.pro-file.nhs.uk) provides information on all medicines manufactured in the NHS; access is restricted to NHS pharmacy staff.

The Association of Commercial Specials Manufacturers may also be able to provide further information about commercial companies (www.acsm.uk.com).

The characteristics of unlicensed formulations may vary, see also Unlicensed Medicines (p. 6) and Extemporaneous Preparations (p. 6).

The MHRA recommends that an unlicensed medicine should only be used when a patient has special requirements that cannot be met by use of a licensed medicine

England

Barts and the London NHS Trust
Mr J. Singh
Production Manager
Barts and the London NHS Trust
Pathology and Pharmacy Building
Royal London Hospital
80 Newark St
Whitechapel
London, E1 2BS
Tel: (020) 3246 0274 (order)
Tel: (020) 3246 0399 (enquiry)
jasdeep.singh@bartsandthelondon.nhs.uk

Guy’s and St. Thomas’ NHS Foundation Trust
Mr P. Forsey
Associate Chief Pharmacist
Guy’s and St. Thomas’ NHS Foundation Trust
Pharmacy Department
Guy’s Hospital
Great Maze Pond
London, SE1 9RT
Tel: (020) 7188 4992 (order)
Tel: (020) 7188 5003 (enquiry)
Fax: (020) 7188 5013
paul.forsey@gstt.nhs.uk

Moorfields Pharmaceuticals
Mr N. Precious
Technical Director
Moorfields Pharmaceuticals
34 Nile Street
London, N1 7TP
Tel: (020) 7684 9090 (order)
Tel: (020) 7684 8574 (enquiry)
Fax: (020) 7502 2332
nick.precious@moorfields.nhs.uk

North West London Hospitals NHS Trust
Dr K. Middleton
North West London Hospitals NHS Trust
Northwick Park Hospital
Watford Rd
Harrow
Middlesex, HA1 3UJ
Tel: (020) 8869 2295 (order)
Tel: (020) 8869 2204/2223 (enquiry)
keith.middleton@nhs.net

Royal Free Hampstead NHS Trust
Ms C. Trebano
Production Manager
Royal Free
Pond St
London, NW3 2QG
Tel: (020) 7830 2424 (order)
Tel: (020) 7830 2282 (enquiry)
Fax: (020) 7794 1873
christine.trebano@rnh.nhs.uk

St George’s Healthcare NHS Trust
Mr V. Kumar
Assistant Chief Pharmacist
Technical Services
St George’s Hospital
Blackshaw Rd
Tooting
London, SW17 0QT
Tel: (020) 8725 1770/1768
Fax: (020) 8725 3947
vinodh.kumar@stgeorges.nhs.uk

University College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
Mr T. Murphy
Production Manager
University College Hospital
235 Euston Rd
London, NW1 2BU
Tel: (020) 7380 9723 (order)
Tel: (020) 7380 9472 (enquiry)
Fax: (020) 7380 9726
tony.murphy@uclh.nhs.uk

Midlands and Eastern

Burton Hospitals NHS Trust
Mr P. Williams
Pharmacy Technical and Support Services Manager
Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit
Queens Hospital
Burton Hospitals NHS Trust
Belvedere Rd
Burton-on-Trent, DE13 0RB
Tel: (01283) 511 511 (or 566 333) Ext: 5115 (order) 5136 (enquiry)
Fax: (01283) 593 036
paul.williams@burtonh-tr.wmids.nhs.uk

Colchester Hospital University NHS Foundation Trust
Ms N. Rhodes
Production Manager
Colchester Hospital University NHS Foundation Trust
Tuner Rd
Colchester, CO4 5JL
Tel: (01206) 745 962 (order)
Tel: (01206) 742 949 (enquiry)
Fax: (01206) 841 248
nicola.rhodes@colchester.nhs.uk

Ipswich Hospital NHS Trust
Dr J. Harwood
Production Manager
Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit
Ipswich Hospital NHS Trust
Heath Rd
Ipswich, IP4 5PD
Tel: (01473) 703 440 (order)
Tel: (01473) 703 603 (enquiry)
Fax: (01473) 703 609
john.harwood@ipswichhospital.nhs.uk
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Name and Title</th>
<th>Contact Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>North</td>
<td><strong>Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Ms J. Kendall&lt;br&gt;Assistant Head of Pharmacy, Technical, and Logistical Services&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Production Units&lt;br&gt;Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust&lt;br&gt;Queens Medical Centre Campus&lt;br&gt;Nottingham, NG7 2UH.&lt;br&gt;tel: (0115) 875 4521 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (0115) 924 9924 ext: 64177 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (0115) 976 9780&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:jeanne.kendall@nuh.nhs.uk">jeanne.kendall@nuh.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>University Hospital of North Staffordshire NHS Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Ms K. Ferguson&lt;br&gt;Chief Technician&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Technical Services&lt;br&gt;University Hospital of North Staffordshire NHS Trust&lt;br&gt;City General Site&lt;br&gt;Stoke-on-Trent, ST4 6QG.&lt;br&gt;tel: (01782) 552 289 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01782) 552 290 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01782) 552 916&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:caroline.ferguson@uhns.nhs.uk">caroline.ferguson@uhns.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>The Newcastle upon Tyne Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr Y. Hunter-Blair&lt;br&gt;Production Manager&lt;br&gt;Newcastle Specials&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Production Unit&lt;br&gt;Royal Victoria Infirmary&lt;br&gt;Queen Victoria Rd&lt;br&gt;Newcastle-upon-Tyne, NE1 4LP.&lt;br&gt;tel: (0191) 282 0395 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (0191) 282 0389 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (0191) 282 0469&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:yan.hunter-blair@nuth.nhs.uk">yan.hunter-blair@nuth.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South</td>
<td><strong>Portsmouth Hospitals NHS Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr R. Lucas&lt;br&gt;Product Development Manager&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit&lt;br&gt;Portsmouth Hospitals NHS Trust&lt;br&gt;Unit D2, Railway Triangle Industrial Estate&lt;br&gt;Walton Road&lt;br&gt;Farlington, Portsmouth&lt;br&gt;Chichester, PO6 1TF&lt;br&gt;tel: (02392) 389 078 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (02392) 316 312 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (02392) 316 316&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:robert.lucas@porthosp.nhs.uk">robert.lucas@porthosp.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>East Sussex Hospitals NHS Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr P. Keen&lt;br&gt;Business Manager&lt;br&gt;Eastbourne DGH Pharmaceuticals&lt;br&gt;Eastbourne District General Hospital&lt;br&gt;East Sussex Hospitals NHS Trust&lt;br&gt;Kings Drive, Eastbourne&lt;br&gt;East Sussex, BN21 2UD.&lt;br&gt;tel: (01323) 414 906 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01323) 417 400 ext: 3076 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01323) 414 931&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:paul.keen@esht.nhs.uk">paul.keen@esht.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Torbay PMU</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr P. Bendell&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Manufacturing Services Manager&lt;br&gt;Torbay PMU&lt;br&gt;South Devon Healthcare&lt;br&gt;Kennings Close, Long Rd&lt;br&gt;Paignton&lt;br.Devon,&lt;br&gt;TQ4 7TW&lt;br&gt;tel: (01803) 664 707&lt;br&gt;fax: (01803) 664 354&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:phil.bendell@nhs.net">phil.bendell@nhs.net</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Calderdale and Huddersfield NHS Foundation Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Dr S. Langford&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Production Director&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit&lt;br&gt;Huddersfield Royal Infirmary&lt;br&gt;Gate 2-Acre Mills, School St&lt;br&gt;Lindley&lt;br&gt;Huddersfield, HD3 3ET.&lt;br&gt;tel: (01484) 355 388 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01484) 355 371 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01484) 355 377&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:stephen.langford@cht.nhs.uk">stephen.langford@cht.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Cardiff and Vale University Health Board</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr P. Spark&lt;br&gt;Principal Pharmacist (Production)&lt;br&gt;Cardiff and Vale University Health Board&lt;br&gt;20 Fieldway&lt;br&gt;Cardiff, CF14 4HY.&lt;br&gt;tel: (029) 2074 8120&lt;br&gt;fax: (029) 2074 8130&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:paul.spark@wales.nhs.uk">paul.spark@wales.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Victoria Pharmaceuticals</strong>&lt;br&gt;Ms C. McBride&lt;br&gt;Belfast Health and Social Care Trust&lt;br&gt;77 Boucher Crescent&lt;br&gt;Belfast, BT12 6HU&lt;br&gt;tel: (028) 9063 3310 (sterile)&lt;br&gt;tel: (028) 9055 3207 (non-sterile)&lt;br&gt;fax: (028) 9055 3498 (non-sterile)&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:colette.mcbride@belfasttrust.hscni.net">colette.mcbride@belfasttrust.hscni.net</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scotland**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Name and Title</th>
<th>Contact Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NHS Greater Glasgow and Clyde</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr G. Cooke&lt;br&gt;Production Manager&lt;br&gt;Western Infirmary&lt;br&gt;Dumbarton Rd&lt;br&gt;Glasgow, G11 6NT.&lt;br&gt;tel: (0141) 211 2754 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (0141) 211 2882 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (0141) 211 1967&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:graham.cooke@ggc.scot.nhs.uk">graham.cooke@ggc.scot.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tayside Pharmaceuticals</strong>&lt;br&gt;Dr B. W. Millar&lt;br&gt;General Manager&lt;br&gt;Tayside Pharmaceuticals&lt;br&gt;Ninewells Hospital&lt;br&gt;Dundee, DD1 9SY&lt;br&gt;tel: (01382) 632 052 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01382) 632 183 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01382) 632 060&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:baxter.millar@obs.net">baxter.millar@obs.net</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wales</strong></td>
<td><strong>Cardiff and Vale University Health Board</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mr P. Spark&lt;br&gt;Principal Pharmacist (Production)&lt;br&gt;Cardiff and Vale University Health Board&lt;br&gt;20 Fieldway&lt;br&gt;Cardiff, CF14 4HY.&lt;br&gt;tel: (029) 2074 8120&lt;br&gt;fax: (029) 2074 8130&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:paul.spark@wales.nhs.uk">paul.spark@wales.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yorkshire**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Name and Title</th>
<th>Contact Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Calderdale and Huddersfield NHS Foundation Trust</strong>&lt;br&gt;Dr S. Langford&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Production Director&lt;br&gt;Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit&lt;br&gt;Huddersfield Royal Infirmary&lt;br&gt;Gate 2-Acre Mills, School St&lt;br&gt;Lindley&lt;br&gt;Huddersfield, HD3 3ET.&lt;br&gt;tel: (01484) 355 388 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01484) 355 371 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01484) 355 377&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:stephen.langford@cht.nhs.uk">stephen.langford@cht.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Northern Ireland**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Name and Title</th>
<th>Contact Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Victoria Pharmaceuticals</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mrs A. Nutman&lt;br&gt;Assistant Director of Pharmacy&lt;br&gt;Preston Pharmaceuticals&lt;br&gt;Royal Preston Hospital&lt;br&gt;Fulwood&lt;br&gt;Preston, PR2 9HT&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 617 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 593 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01772) 654&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk">angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Victoria Pharmaceuticals</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mrs A. Nutman&lt;br&gt;Assistant Director of Pharmacy&lt;br&gt;Preston Pharmaceuticals&lt;br&gt;Royal Preston Hospital&lt;br&gt;Fulwood&lt;br&gt;Preston, PR2 9HT&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 617 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 593 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01772) 654&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk">angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Victoria Pharmaceuticals</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mrs A. Nutman&lt;br&gt;Assistant Director of Pharmacy&lt;br&gt;Preston Pharmaceuticals&lt;br&gt;Royal Preston Hospital&lt;br&gt;Fulwood&lt;br&gt;Preston, PR2 9HT&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 617 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 593 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01772) 654&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk">angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Victoria Pharmaceuticals</strong>&lt;br&gt;Mrs A. Nutman&lt;br&gt;Assistant Director of Pharmacy&lt;br&gt;Preston Pharmaceuticals&lt;br&gt;Royal Preston Hospital&lt;br&gt;Fulwood&lt;br&gt;Preston, PR2 9HT&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 617 (order)&lt;br&gt;tel: (01772) 532 593 (enquiry)&lt;br&gt;fax: (01772) 654&lt;br&gt;<a href="mailto:angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk">angela.nutman@ltih.nhs.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BNFC 2011–2012

Index
Principal page references are
printed in bold type. Proprietary
(trade) names and names of organisms are printed in italic type; where
the BNF does not include a full entry
for a branded product, the non-proprietary name is shown in brackets

A

Aciclovir, 322, 323
herpes simplex, 322
eye, 322, 521
genital, 395, 591
labialis, 591
skin, 591
herpes stomatitis, 545
herpes zoster, 322
varicella zoster, 322
Acid aspiration, prophylaxis,
629
Acidex, 38
Acidosis
lactic, 311
metabolic, 460, 463
Acitretin, 567, 571, 572
Acnamino MR, 276
Acne, 574
infantile, 574, 579
systemic treatment, 578
topical treatment, 574
Acnecide, 575
Acnisal, 578
Acnocin (co-cyprindiol), 578
Acrivastine, 153, 154
Acrodermatitis enteropathica,
478
ACTH see Corticotropin, 382
Actidose-Aqua Advance, 26
Actilyse, 122
Actinic keratoses, 583
Actinomycin D see Dactinomycin,
422
Actiq, 206
Activated charcoal, 25
Active, 364
Actonel, 390
Once a Week, 390
Actrapid, 352
Acular, 533
ACWY Vax, 615
Acyclovir see Aciclovir
Adalat preparations, 107, 108
Adalimumab, 509, 510
Adapalene, 576
benzoyl peroxide with, 577
Adcal, 472
Adcal-D3 preparations, 484
Adcortyl Intra-articular/Intradermal, 507
Add-Ins, 784
Addiphos, 467
Addison’s disease, 369
Additives see Excipients
Additrace, 468
Adefovir, 325
Adenocor, 84
Adenoscan (adenosine), 84
Adenosine, 83, 84
Adenovirus, 328
ADH see Antidiuretic hormone,
385
ADHD see Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, 188
Adhesive, tissue, 593
Adipine preparations, 108
Adoport, 436
Adrenal function test, 382
Adrenal insufficiency, 369

811

Adrenal suppression
metyrapone, 391
surgery, 371
systemic corticosteroids,
371
topical corticosteroids, 558
Adrenaline
anaphylaxis, 159, 160, 161
bradycardia, 82
croup, 137
hypotension, 113
infusion table (neonatal),
792
local anaesthesia, 649, 651
palliative care, 18
self administration, 160
Adrenergic neurone blocking
drugs, 98
Adrenoceptor agonists, 137
Adsorbents
gastro-intestinal, 47
poisoning, 25
Advagraf, 438
Advantage Plus, 364
Advate (factor VIII fraction), 124
Adverse reactions
prevention of, 13
reporting, 12
Advisory Committee on Borderline
Substances see ACBS
Advisory labels see Cautionary and
advisory labels
AeroChamber Plus, 145
Agalsidase
alfa, 490
beta, 490
Agammaglobulinaemia, congenital, replacement therapy, 622
Agrippal, 612
AIDS, 309
vaccines and, 600
Airomir preparations, 140
AirZone, 144
Akathisia, 173
Aknemin (minocycline), 276
Aknemycin Plus, 577
Albendazole
hookworms, 346
hydatid disease, 346
larva migrans, 346
strongyloidiasis, 347
Albumin solution, 464
Albunorm preparations (albumin),
464
Albustix, 363
Albuterol see Salbutamol
Alclometasone dipropionate,
561
Alcohol
poisoning by, 26
presence of, 3
skin, 594
Aldactone, 81
Aldara, 581
Aldioxa, 597
Aldosterone antagonists, 80, 81
Aldurazyme, 492
Alemtuzumab, 439
Alendronate sodium see Alendronic acid, 389
Alendronic acid, 389
Alfacalcidol, 483

Index

Abacavir, 310, 311, 312
lamivudine and zidovudine
with, 312
lamivudine with, 312
Abatacept, 510
Abbreviations
Latin, inside back cover
symbols, inside back cover
units, 4
Abcare, 357
Abdominal surgery, antibacterial
prophylaxis, 255
Abelcet, 306
Abetalipoproteinaemia, 485
Abidec, 487
Abilify, 178
Able Spacer, 145
Abscess, dental, 252
Absence seizures, 217
Acanthamoeba keratitis, 518
contact lenses, 533
Acarbose, 360
Acaricides, 592
ACBS
foods, 743
toilet preparations, 786
Accolate, 153
Accu-Chek products, 364
Accuhaler
Flixotide, 150
Seretide, 150
Serevent, 140
Ventolin, 140
ACE inhibitors, 100
diuretics with, 101
heart failure, 100
renal function, 101
Acea, 587
Acetaminophen see Paracetamol
Acetazolamide
diuretic, 82
epilepsy, 231, 527
glaucoma, 525, 527
intracranial pressure, raised,
527
Acetic acid, otitis externa, 534
Acetylcholine, 532
Acetylcysteine
cystic fibrosis, 165
eye, 530
meconium ileus, 165
mucolytic, 165
paracetamol poisoning, 26, 28
Acetylsalicylic acid see Aspirin

Abacavir—Alfacalcidol


index
Anticholinergic drugs see Anthracine, 421
Anthelmintics, 344
Antidiarrhoeal drugs
Antidiabetic drugs
Antidepressants see Antibiotic-associated colitis
Antibacterials
Acne, 575, 576, 578
diarrhoea, 47
Infections
Ear, 534
Eye, 518
Oral, 244
Skin, 585
Vaginal, 394
Policies, 243
Principles for selecting, 243
Prophylaxis (table), 254
Prophylaxis, surgery, 256
Therapy, initial (table), 244
Antibiotic-associated colitis see Clostridium difficile
Antibiotics see Antibacterials
Anticholinergic drugs see Anti-muscarinics
Anticholinergic syndrome, 635
Anticholinesterase, 512
Anticholinergic syndrome, 635
Muscarinics
Anticoagulant treatment booklets, 119
Anticoagulants
Orale, 118
Anaesthesia, 629
Reversal, 118
Surgery, 629
Parenteral, 114
Anticonvulsants see Antiepileptics
Antidepressants
Anaesthesia, 629
Choice, 183
Hypnotics and, 184
Monoamine-oxidase inhibitors, 186
Poisoning by, 29
Serotonin re-uptake inhibitors, 183, 186
Surgery, 629
Tricyclic, 184
Enuresis, 412
Withdrawal, 184
Antidiabetic drugs
Insulin, 349
Oral, 357
Antidiarrhoeal drugs see Diarrhoea
Antiduretic hormone, 385
Antiemetics, 215, 217
Breast-feeding and, 216
Palliative care, 19
Antiepileptics, 215, 217
Breast-feeding and, 216
Surgery, 629
Antifibrinolytic drugs, 123
Antifungal drugs, 300
Anogential, 394
Oropharyngeal, 545
Skin, 588
Antigiardial drugs, 340
Antihistamines, 153
Breast-feeding, 153
cough preparations, 167
eczema, 566
Eye, 522
Hypnotics, 170
Insomnia, 153
Migraine, 214
Nasal allergy, 538
Nausea and vertigo, 193
Nausea and vomiting, 192
Pregnancy, 153
Skilled tasks and, 153, 155
Skin, 557
Antihypertensives
ACE inhibitors, 100
Adrenergic neurone blockers, 46
Alpha-blockers, 99
Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists, 103
Beta-blockers, 87
Calcium-channel blockers, 105
centrally-acting, 98
Vasodilators, 93
Antilactose, 390
Antimotility drugs, 46, 47
Antimicrobial drugs, 329, 507
Antimalarials, 329
Antimalarials, 329, 507
Antimalarial, 329, 507
Antimalarial drugs, 181
Antimetabolites, 423
Antimigraine drugs, 212
Antimotility drugs, 46, 47
Antimuscarinics
Antipsychotics and, 173
Bronchodilator, 141
dystonias, 237
Eye, 524
gastro-intestinal, 39
Pregnancy, 153
Premedication, 635
Quaternary ammonium, 39
Urinary tract, 410
Antineoplastic drugs, 414
see also Cytotoxic drugs
Antipsychotics, 597
Antipeptide drugs, 120
Antiprotease drugs, 329
Antipsychotics, 172
Atrypical, 177
depot injections, 181
equivalent doses, oral, 174
High doses (caution), 171
Mania, 181
Withdrawal, 172
Atrypical, 177
Antirabies immunoglobulin, 625
Antiviral retrovirals, 309, 310, 320
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 319
Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 311
Protease inhibitors, 315
Antiseptics
ACBS, 787
Lozenges, 546
Mouthwashes, 546
Skin, 594
Sprays, oropharynx, 546
Antiserum, 602, 622
Antipsamomodes, 39
Antitrypsin immunoglobulin, 625
Antithymocyte immunoglobulin, 433, 434
Antithyroid drugs, 367
Antituberculous drugs, 290
Antitussives, 167
Antivirus-zoster
Immunoglobulin, 626
Antivenoms, 34
Antiviral drugs, 390
Anaesthesia, 629
Eye, 521
Mouth, 545
Skin, 589
Surgery, 629
Anugastic-HC, 66
Anusol preparations, 66
Anxiety, 171, 184
Antipsychotics, 172
Palliative care, 18
Anxiolytics, 169, 171
APD see Disodium pamidronate, 389, 390
Aphthous ulcers, 543
Apidra, 353
Aplastic anaemia, 448
Apopnea neonatal
Aminophylline, 144
Caffeine, 162
Theophylline, 142
Apothecaries, 119
Ibuprofen, 503
Apノリナックス (bendroflumethiazide), 37
Aptamil Pepti preparations, 764
Aptius, 318
Aquadrade, 553
Aquamol, 552
Aquasol-A, 479
Aqueous cream, 552
Aqueous iodine oral solution, 368
Arachis oil
Enema, 61
Presence of, 3
Aranesp preparations, 449
Arcoxia, 503
Aredia Dry Powder, 390
Arginine
Supplement, 786
Urea cycle disorders, 493, 494
Argipressin (Pitressin), 388
Aripiprazole, 177
Aripiprazole, 177
Ariton, 497
Aripicolin, 237
Arhythmias, 82
Atrial fibrillation, 83
Poisoning and, 25
Supraventricular, 73, 82
Ventricular, 83
Artelac (hypromellose) preparations, 531
Atemether
Lumefantrine with, 334, 335
Artesunate, 330
Arthritis
Juvenile idiopathic, 507
Rheumatoid, 499
Septic, 251
Arthrofen (ibuprofen), 503

Benzodiazepines—Buscopan 815

Benzodiazepines

antagonist, 647
anxiolytics, 169
palliative care, 18
clinical procedures, 637
epilepsy, 230
insomnia
palliative care, 19
mania, 181
muscle spasm, 514
neonatal seizures, 217
poisoning by, 30
premedication, 637

Benzoic acid ointment, compound, 588, 589
Benzoil tincture, compound, 166
Benzoic acid ointment, see Benzoic acid preparations
Betamethasone sodium phosphate
Betamethasone dipropionate, 562
Betarol, 539
Betaxolol, 525, 526
Betnesol
ear, 535
eye, 521
inflammatory and allergic disorders, 374
mouth, 544
nose, 539
Betnesol-N
ear, 535
eye, 521
ointment—discontinued
Betravate preparations, 562
Betoptic, 526
Betamousse, 562
Bezafibrate, 129, 130
Bezalol, 130
BiAlimenta products, 779
Bicarbonate
oral, 460
see also Sodium bicarbonate
Biganudines, 359
Bile acid sequestrants, 70, 128
Bismuth subgallate, 66
Bisacodyl, 59
Birthmarks, ACBS
Bipolar disorder, 181
Bisphosphonates
Bone metabolism, drugs affecting,
Bonefractum preparations, 141
Briend, 647
Brimonidine, 526
Brintolanide, 527
Broflex, 237
Brolene, 520
Bronchodilators
adrenergic agonist, 137
antimuscarinic, 141
compound, 144
sympathomimetic, 137
theophylline, 142
Bronchopulmonary dysplasia, 76, 78
Bronchosperm, 137
Brucellosis, 274, 294
Budepro preparations, 503
Brugia malayi, 346
Buccastem
premedication, 204
anaesthesia, 635
Buds peak, 18
Buclizine, codeine and paracetamol with, 202
Budelon Newolizer, 149
Budenoside, 53
Budesonide
asthma, 146, 148, 149
chronic, 135
formoterol with, 149
bronchopulmonary dysplasia, 148
croup, 137, 148
inflammatory bowel disease, 48
Crohn’s disease, 53
ulcerative colitis, 53
nasal
allergy, 539, 540
polyps, 539, 540

Budesonide Cyclospars—discontinued
Bumetanide, 78, 79
Bupivacaine, 650, 651
adrenaline with, 651
Buprenorphine
intra-operative analgesia, 204
pain, 203, 204
premedication, 204
Burinex, 79
Buscopan, 40
BNFC 2011–2012

Cetrimide—Cocaine 817

Cetrimide
- scalp, 584
- skin, 557, 593, 594, 595
- benzalkonium with, 557
- chlorhexidine with, 595
- dimethicone with, 557
- CFCs, 147
- Charcoal, activated, 25, 26
- Charcodate, 26
- Cheilitis, angular, 545, 559
- Cholecalciferol
- Chlortalidone, 78
- Chloramphenicol, 284
- Chlorambucil, 420
- Chloramphenicol, 284
- Chloraprep, 595
- Chlorhexidine
- bladder infections, 412
- mouth, 543, 545, 546, 547
- chlorobutanol with, 547
- nose, neomycin with, 542, 543
- skin benzalkonium with, 554
- emollient with, 554
- hydrocortisone and nystatin with, 561
- skin disinfection, 594, 595
- cetrimide with, 595
- dusting powder, 595
- Chlorine poisoning, 33
- Chlorobutanol, 547
- Chlorofluorocarbon propellants, 147
- Chlorhex—discontinued
- Chloromycetin, 519
- Chloroquine, 335
- malaria
- prophylaxis, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335
- treatment, 331, 335
- proguanil with, 335
- Chlorothiazide
- chronic hypoglycaemia, 361
- diabetes insipidus, 385
- hypertension, 77
- Chloroxylenol, 597
- Cholorphenamine, 153, 156
- allergic emergencies, 159
- Cholorpheniramine see Cholorphenamine
- Chlorpromazine
- Chlamydia
- Chloretam, 237
- Chlortetracycline, 272
- Chlophenvinpyramine, 521
- Chlophentermine
- aplastic anaemia, 448
- eczema, 572
- immunosuppression, 431, 433, 434
- nephrotic syndrome, 434
- psoriasis, 572
- rheumatic disease, 508
- ulcerative colitis, 48, 54
- Cidofovir, 324
- Cidofovir, 278
- Cigarette smoking, 238
- Clastatin, 272
- imipenem with, 272
- Cilest, 401
- Ciloxan, 519
- Cinchocaine
- rectal, 66
- [ingredient], 67
- Cinnaamin, 193
- Cipramil, 187
- Ciprofloxacin, 297, 298
- Crohn’s disease, 49
- ear, 535, 537
- eye, 518, 519
- meningococcal meningitis prophylaxis, 254
- Ciproxan, 298
- Circadin, 171
- Cisatracurium, 643, 644
- Clasinatin, 429, 430
- Citalopram, 186, 187
- Citacet preparations, 653
- Citramag, 64
- Citrulline, 493, 494
- Claviret, 578
- Clarithromycin, 280, 281, 282
- Helicobacter pylori eradication, 42
- pertussis prophylaxis, 254
- Classification changes, xviii
- Claston, 390
- Clavulanic acid, 260
- amoxicillin with, 260, 263
- ticarcillin with, 264, 265
- Cleanlet Fine, 357
- Cleansers, skin, 594
- Cholecalciferol see Colecalciferol
- Cholelithiasis, 192, 194
- psychosis, 174
- Cholelitholone, 78
- Cholera vaccine, 604
- travel, 626
- Cholestaasis, 68, 70
- Cholestatic conditions, 68
- Cholesterol, 70
- Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome, 70
- Cholesterol down see Colesterol down
- Ciprofloxacin, 254
- Chlorotic, 264
- Ciprofloxacin, 254
- Cipla Laboratories Ltd, 578
- Cimetidine—Cocaine
- Cimetidine, 147
- Cinelex, 363
- Clinate, 531
- Clinitek Microalbumin, 363
- Clinistest, 363
- ClinOtic, 467
- Clinurex preparations
- enteral feed, 752
- nutritional supplement, 759
- Cloquinol
- betamethasone with, 562
- ear, 534, 536
- fluocinolone with, 564
- Clobazam, 230
- epilepsy, 217, 230
- Clobetasol propionate, 562, 563
- neomycin and nystatin with, 563
- Clobetasol butyrate, 563
- tetracycline with, 563
- Clodronate sodium see Sodium clodronate, 390
- Clobutinol, 423, 424
- Clonazepam
- epilepsy, 217, 230, 231, 232
- status epilepticus, 231, 232
- neonatal seizures, 217
- Clonidine, 98
- Cloral betaine, 170
- Clostridium botulinum, 604
- Clostridium difficile, 49
- antibacterial therapy, 245
- metronidazole in, 295
- vancomycin in, 285
- Clostrimazole
- anogenital, 394
- ear, 536
- skin, 588, 589
- betamethasone with, 562
- hydrocortisone with, 560
- vulvovaginal candidiasis, recurrent, 394
- Clozapine, 173, 177, 178, 179
- hypersalivation, 177
- Clozartil, 179
- Cluster headache, 214
- CMV see Cytomegalovirus
- Coal tar, 566, 567, 569, 570
- dithranol and salicylic acid with, 570
- hydrocortisone with, 570
- scalp, 569, 584, 585
- zinc with, 569
- Co-amlofrase, 81
- Co-amoxiclav, 260, 263, 264
- Cobalamin—H (hydroxocobalamin), 447
- COC see Contraception, oral, combined, 396
- Cocaine, poisoning by, 31

Cetrime—Cocaine 817

Clenil Modulate, 148
Clexane preparations, 117
CliquSTAR, 357
Clindamycin, 283, 284
acne, 575, 576
bacterial vaginosis, 395
benzoyl peroxide with, 575
malaria, 330
oral infections, 283
pneumocystis pneumonia, 342
vaginal infections, 395
Clinipak syringe, 357
Cliniatax, 363
Clinitas, 531
Clinitek Microalbumin, 363
Clinistest, 363
ClinOtic, 467
Clinurex preparations
- enteral feed, 752
- nutritional supplement, 759
- Cloquinol
- betamethasone with, 562
- ear, 534, 536
- fluocinolone with, 564
- Clobazam, 230
- epilepsy, 217, 230
- Clobetasol propionate, 562, 563
- neomycin and nystatin with, 563
- Clobetasol butyrate, 563
- tetracycline with, 563
- Clodronate sodium see Sodium clodronate, 390
- Clobutinol, 423, 424
- Clonazepam
- epilepsy, 217, 230, 231, 232
- status epilepticus, 231, 232
- neonatal seizures, 217
- Clonidine, 98
- Cloral betaine, 170
- Clostridium botulinum, 604
- Clostridium difficile, 49
- antibacterial therapy, 245
- metronidazole in, 295
- vancomycin in, 285
- Clostrimazole
- anogenital, 394
- ear, 536
- skin, 588, 589
- betamethasone with, 562
- hydrocortisone with, 560
- vulvovaginal candidiasis, recurrent, 394
- Clozapine, 173, 177, 178, 179
- hypersalivation, 177
- Clozartil, 179
- Cluster headache, 214
- CMV see Cytomegalovirus
- Coal tar, 566, 567, 569, 570
- dithranol and salicylic acid with, 570
- hydrocortisone with, 570
- scalp, 569, 584, 585
- zinc with, 569
- Co-amlofrase, 81
- Co-amoxiclav, 260, 263, 264
- Cobalamin—H (hydroxocobalamin), 447
- COC see Contraception, oral, combined, 396
- Cocaine, poisoning by, 31
Co-careldopa—Cough

818

Co-careldopa, 235, 236
Co-codantramer preparations, 201
Cocaine, 468
Co-crypridol, 578
Cod liver oil zinc oxide with, 557
Codalax preparations, 59
Co-danthrusate preparations, 60
Codexal, 288
Co-fluampicil, 261, 263
Colloidal oatmeal, 552, 554
Co-dydramol, 201, 202
Codeine
Co-enzyme Q10
Colistimethate sodium, 288
Colitis
Colistin sulphomethate sodium, 288
Co-fluampicil, 261, 263
Colitis
Coloamil, 261, 263
Cologize, 50
Cold sores, 591
Colecalfitol, 482, 484
Colestid, 129
Colestipol, 128, 129
Colocytyramine
dihydroxy, 47, 70
familial hypercholesterolemia, 70
hypercholesterolemia, 128
pruritus, 70
palliative care, 19
Colic
bowel palliative care, 20
Colifene, 777
Colifoam, 53
Colistin
Cololamine, 288
eye drops, 529
Colostrine
Colitis
Scleroderma, 359
hyperglycaemic, 360
hyperosmolar nonketotic, 360
hypoglycaemic, 361
hypothyroid, 366
insulin, 360
ketoacidotic, 360
Co-magaldrox, 37
Combined hormonal contraceptives, 399
see also Contraception
Combivir, 315
Combur-3 Test, 363
Comfort Point, 357
Compact, 364
Companies, specialist-importing, 809
Complan Shake, 760
Complementary medicine, 2
Compliance, 1
Concor XL, 190
Concordance, 1
Condylomata acuminata, 581
Confluent, palliative care, 19
Congential agammaglobulinemia, replacement therapy, 622
Conjunctivitis, 251, 518
allergic, 522
Conotrane, 556
Constipation, 57
palliative care, 18
Contact lenses, 533
Cortisone, 397
Continuous infusion devices, 19
Contraception, 396
devices, 406, 407, 408
contraceptive caps, 408
contraceptive diaphragms, 408
implants, 404
intra-uterine system, 405, 406
oral, 396
combined hormonal, 396
emergency, 408, 409
missed pill, 397, 403
progesterone-only, 403
starting routines, 399, 403
surgery, 398, 403
treatment, 397
parenteral, 404, 405
spermicidal, 406
transdermal, 396, 400
patch, 397
starting routines, 399
Controlled drugs, 9
treatment abroad, 11
Conversion tables, inside back cover
Convulxin, 229
Convulsions
febrile, 235
palliative care, 18
poisoning and, 25
see also Epilepsy
Convulsive status epilepticus, 231
Co-phenotrope, 47
Cortacten preparations, 108
Cordarine X, 85
Cordilox preparations, 109, 110
Corn flour, ACBS, 781
Corn starch, ACBS, 781
Cornstarch, ACBS, 781
Corneal ulcers, 518, 521
Coronary heart disease prevention
antiplaquelet therapy, 120
diabetes, 92
dyslipidaemia, 126
hypertension, 92
non-drug treatment, 92
obesity, 92
risk assessment, 126
Coprinyl preparations, 547
Conticorein, 362, 383
Corticosteroids, 369
administration, 371
adrenal suppression, 371
allergic emergencies, 159
allergy, 371
nasal, 538, 539
anaesthesia, 371
anaesthesia, 371
anaphylaxis, 371
angioedema, 371
aphthous ulcers, 543, 544
asthma, 146
acute, severe, 134
chronic, 135
blood disorders, 448
breast-feeding, 373
cancer, 433
chickenpox, 371
conjunctivitis, 217
conjunctivitis, 217
consumption, 371
inflammatory bowel disease, 48, 53
inhaled, 146
measles, 371
mouth, 544
myasthenia gravis, 512, 513
nasal polyps, 358
neuropathic pain, 212
palliative care, 371
proctitis, 53
proctosigmoiditis, 53
psychiatric reactions, 372
renal impairment, 373
replacement therapy, 369
rheumatic disease, 506
septic shock, 370
side-effects, 373
skin
choice, 558
cecma, 558, 565
nappy rash, 558
potency, 559
psoriasis, 559, 567
steroid treatment card, 373
surgery, 371, 628
tuberculosis, 291
ulcerative colitis, 53, 54
withdrawal of, 372
Corticophrin see Corticortelin, 382
Corticophrin—releasing hormone see Corticorelin, 382, 383
Corticotropin, 362
Cortisol, 369
administration, 371
adrenal suppression, 371
allergic emergencies, 159
allergy, 371
nasal, 538, 539
anaesthesia, 371
anaesthesia, 371
anaphylaxis, 371
angioedema, 371
aphthous ulcers, 543, 544
asthma, 146
acute, severe, 134
chronic, 135
blood disorders, 448
breast-feeding, 373
cancer, 433
chickenpox, 371
croup, 137
ear, 534
equivalent doses, 370
eye, 519, 521
haemorrhoids, 66
hepatic impairment, 373
hypercalcaemia, 473
immunosuppression, 433
infantile spasm, 217
infections, 371
infusory outflow, 48, 53
inhaled, 146
measles, 371
mouth, 544
myasthenia gravis, 512, 513
nasal polyps, 358
neuropathic pain, 212
pregnancy, 373
psoriasis, 53
proctitis, 53
proctosigmoiditis, 53
psychiatric reactions, 372
renal impairment, 373
replacement therapy, 369
rheumatic disease, 506
side-effects, 373
skin
choice, 558
cecma, 558, 565
nappy rash, 558
potency, 559
psoriasis, 559, 567
steroid treatment card, 373
surgery, 371, 628
tuberculosis, 291
ulcerative colitis, 53, 54
withdrawal of, 372
Corticophrin see Corticortelin, 382
Corticophrin—releasing hormone see Corticorelin, 382, 383
Corticotropin, 362
Cortisol, 369
Co-simalcite [ingredient], 37
Cortisol, 369
administration, 371
diabetic, 371
allergic emergencies, 159
allergic emergencies, 159
anaesthesia, 371
anaesthesia, 371
anaphylaxis, 371
angioedema, 371
aphthous ulcers, 543, 544
asthma, 146
acute, severe, 134
chronic, 135
blood disorders, 448
breast-feeding, 373
cancer, 433
chickenpox, 371
croup, 137
ear, 534
equivalent doses, 370
eye, 519, 521
haemorrhoids, 66
hepatic impairment, 373
hypercalcaemia, 473
immunosuppression, 433
infantile spasm, 217
infections, 371
infusory outflow, 48, 53
inhaled, 146
measles, 371
mouth, 544
myasthenia gravis, 512, 513
nasal polyps, 358
neuropathic pain, 212
pregnancy, 373
psoriasis, 53
proctitis, 53
proctosigmoiditis, 53
psychiatric reactions, 372
renal impairment, 373
replacement therapy, 369
rheumatic disease, 506
side-effects, 373
skin
choice, 558
cecma, 558, 565
nappy rash, 558
potency, 559
psoriasis, 559, 567
steroid treatment card, 373
surgery, 371, 628
tuberculosis, 291
ulcerative colitis, 53, 54
withdrawal of, 372
**BNFC 2011–2012**

**Coumarins—Dermatophyte**

Cyclopentolate, 524
Cyclophosphamide, 420
Creeping eruption see Cryptococcosis, 301
Crotamiton, 557
Cutaneous larva migrans, 346
Cushing’s syndrome, 377, 391
Cyproterone
Cyclizine, 193, 194
CRH see Corticotropin
Cystagon
Cystadane
Cymevene
Cyklokapron
Cyanokit
CX Antiseptic Dusting Powder
Cutivate
Cu-Safe T300
Curosurf
Curatoderm
Crystacide
Crixivan
CRH Ferring
Crestor
preparations, 71, 72
Creon
preparations, 104
Cozaar
preparations,
Cow & Gate Pepti preparations, 583
Covermark
Covering creams, 583
Cradle cap, 566, 584
Crab lice, 592
Cranial irradiation
Cyanocobalamin, 446
Cyanides, poisoning by, 32
Cycloserine, 292
Cycloplegics, 524
Cystic fibrosis
delayed puberty, 377
fat malabsorption, 70
respiratory-tract infections, 247, 255, 264
Cysticide, 346
Cystinosis, nephropathic, 492
Cystitis, 412
haemorrhagic, 419
Cystin, 411
Cytarabine, 423, 424
Cytochrome oxidase deficiency, 480
Cytokine modulators
Crohn’s disease, 55
juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 509
Cytoimmunglobulin infections, 322, 324, 521
Cytotoxic drugs, 414
alopecia, 416
antibiotic, 421
bone-marrow suppression, 416
delayed toxicity, 416
extravasation, 415
handling guidelines, 414
hyperuricaemia, 417
nausea and vomiting, 415
pregnancy, 416
urothelial toxicity, 419

**De**

d4T see Stavudine, 310, 313, 314
Dacarbazine, 428
Dactinomycin, 34, 275
Dacarbazine, 428
Danazol preparations, 584
Dandruff, 583
Dapson
neurological, 580
Dapsone
neurology, 580
Dapsone
neurology, 580
Dapsone
pneumocystis pneumonia, 342, 343
poisoning, elimination, 25
Daraprim, 341
Darbepridoen, 448, 449
Darier’s disease, 567
Darunavir, 310, 316
Daunorubicin, 421, 422
DaunoXome, 422
DDAVP, 387
DDI see Didanosine, 312
Decon
Decapryl SR, 381
Decongestants
nasal, 541
systemic, 168
DEET see Diethyltoluamide, 331
Defective medicines, 13
Defenac (diclofenac) preparations, 502
Deferasirox, 451, 452
Deferiprone, 451, 452
Deferoxamine see Desferrioxamine
Deflazacort, 370, 374
Deleted preparations, xix
Delph, 582
Delta cortisol (prednisolone), 377
Deltaprin, 333
Demeclomycine, 275
Demecrom (ondanestron), 197
Demulcent cough preparations, 167
Dendritic ulcer, 521
Dental Practitioners’ Formulary, 794
Dental prescribing
abcess, 252
anaesthesia
general, 629
local, 649
vasoconstrictors, 649
angular cheilitis, 545
endocarditis prophylaxis, 256
fluoride, 476
herpes labialis, 321
herpetic gingivostomatitis, 321
infections
bacterial, 244, 251
fungal, 545
viral, 321, 545
joint prophylaxis, 257
oral hygiene, 546
pain, 199, 204, 500
postoperative, 199
sedation, 637
sinusitis, 541
Dentinox, colic drops, 38
Denzapine, 179
Dependence see Drug dependence
DepoCyle, 424
Depolarising muscle relaxants see Muscle relaxants
Depo-Medrone, 376, 506
with Lidocaine, 506
Depo-Provera, 404, 405
Depression, 183
antipsychotics, 172
manic, 181
Derbac-M, 593
Dermabond ProPen, 593
Dermacolor preparations, 583
Dermal, 584
Dermalco, 554
Dermalin, 552
Dermatitis
ACBS, 786
herpetiformis, 777
seborrhoeic, 566
see also Eczema
Dermatological preparations, special-order, 550
Dermatocos Heel Balm, 553
Dermatophyte infections, 301, 588
Dexrazoxane, 416,

Dextropropoxyphene

Dextromethorphan, 167

Dextrose monohydrate

Desferrioxamine

Desloughing agents, 596

Desflurane, 154

Diabetes insipidus, 385

Dexamethasone, 370,

DHC Continus

DF 118 Forte, 206

Dietary Specials

Dietary Specials—products, 777,

Didanosine, 312

Dienogest, estradiol with, 402

Dietary Specials products, 777,

Diethylcarbamazaine, 346

Diethylcarbamazine, 346

Differin, 576

Diffam

oral rinse, 543

spray, 544

Diffandox XL (tamsulosin), 410

Diffacan preparations, 302

Diffucortone valerate, 563

Digibind, 75

Digoxin, 73, 74, 75

arrhythmias, 83

poisoning, 74

Digoxin-specific antibody fragments, 74, 75

Dihydrocodeine, 203, 205, 206

Dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers, 105

Dihydrotachysterol, 482

Dihydroxycolecalciferol, 482

Diloxanide furoate, 339

Diltiazem, 359

Dynden, 69

Detemir, insulin see Insulin detemir

Detrol, 69

Detrusitol preparations, 411

Dexamethasone see Dexamethasone, 370, 374, 375

anorexia, palliative care, 18

bacterial meningitis, 375

cerebral oedema, 375

corticosteroid replacement therapy, 375

croup, 137

dysphagia, palliative care, 18

dyspnoea, palliative care, 19

inflammatory and allergic disorders, 375

ear, 535, 536

eye, 521, 522

malignant disease, 433

nausea and vomiting, 192

palliative care, 19

neuropathic pain, palliative care, 18

raised intracranial pressure, palliative care, 19

suppression test, 370

Dexamfetamine, 188, 189

Dexamfetamine see Dexamfetamine, 188, 189

Dexedrine—discontinued

Deximune

Dexedrine—discontinued preparations, 502

Deximune (diclofenac)

Dexmon (diclofenac)

preparations, 502

Dexrazoxane, 416, 417

Dexsol (dexamethasone), 375

Dextropropoxyphene

Dextropropoxyphene poisoning by, 28

Dextrose monohydrate see Glucose

Deflux, 206

DHC Continus, 206

Diabetes insipidus, 385

Diabetes mellitus, 349

diagnosis, 365

Dietary Specials

products, 777,

Diethylcarbamazaine, 346

Diethylcarbamazine, 346

Diethylcarbamazine, 346

Differin, 576

Diffam

oral rinse, 543

spray, 544

Diffandox XL (tamsulosin), 410

Diffacan preparations, 302

Diffucortone valerate, 563

Digibind, 75

Digoxin, 73, 74, 75

arrhythmias, 83

poisoning, 74

Digoxin-specific antibody fragments, 74, 75

Dihydrocodeine, 203, 205, 206

Dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers, 105

Dihydrotachysterol, 482

Dihydroxycolecalciferol, 482

Diloxanide furoate, 339

Diltiazem, 106

anal fissure, 67

Dietary Specials—products, 777,

Dietary Specials—products, 777,

Dietary Specials—products, 777,
Disinfecants, 594
ACBS, 787

Dishkaler
Becodisks, 148
Relenza, 327
Serevent, 141

Disodium clodronate see Sodium clodronate, 390
Disodium cromoglicate see Sodium cromoglicate
Disodium folinate, 418

Disodium hydrogen phosphate, 475
Disodium levofolinate, 419

Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome
acetylcysteine, 165
amidotrizoates, 65

Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome
acetazolamide, 475
acetylcysteine, 165
amidotrizoates, 65

Distamine
preparations, 267

DMSA see DMSA

Dopamine, 110

Dorzolamide, 527
Dorzolamide, 527, 528
Dorzolamide, 527, 528

dormenate sodium

Dystonias, 235

Dystonias, 235

Dystonias, 235

Dysmenorrhoea, 199

Dyspepsia, 35

Dysphagia, palliative care, 18

Dysphagia, palliative care, 18

Dysport

Doxapram, xix

Doxazosin, 99, 409

Doxazosin, 99, 409

Doxapram, xix

Doxapram, xix

Doxorubicin, 421, 422

Doxycycline, 275, 276

Doxycycline, 275, 276

Doxycycline, 276

Doxylar

Doxepin,

Doxapram, xix

Doxapram, xix

Doxapram, xix

Drug interactions, 655

Drug information services, 8

Drug dependence, 204

Drug interactions, 655

Drug interactions, 655

Drug interactions, 655

Drug dependence, 204

Drug interactions, 655

Drug interactions, 655

Drug information services, 8

Drug interactions, 655

Drug interactions, 655

Drug information services, 8
**Esmolol, 552**

**Emsaglan, 752**

**Emtricitabine, 310, 312, 313**

**Efavirenz and tenofovir with, 314**

**Emtriva, 312**

**Emulsiderm, 556**

**Emulsifying ointment, 552**

**Enalapril, see also ACE inhibitors**

**Enbrel, 511**

**Enbucrilate, 594**

**Encephalopathy, hepatic, 61**

**En-De-Kay preparations, 477**

**Endocarditis, 246, 277**

**Antibacterial prophylaxis, 256**

**Endothelium, 518**

**Energy, intravenous nutrition, 466**

**Enteral preparations, 765**

**Enteral thickened, 767**

**Enfuvirtide, 310, 320, 321**

**Engerix B, 609**

**Enoxaparin, 116, 117**

**Enoximone, 75**

**Enshape, 775**

**Ensure Plus preparations, 757, 758, 759**

**Ensure preparations, 750, 756**

**Entamoeba histolytica, 750, 756**

**Entecavir, 325**

**Enteral feeding tubes**

**Administering drugs via, 68**

**Clearing blockages, 68**

**Nutrition, 469**

**Foods, ACBS, 743**

**Enteric infections, 245**

**Enterobacter, 344**

**Entecocitox, necrotising, 245**

**Entocort preparations, 53**

**Entonox, 634**

**Enuresis, nocturnal, 411**

**Enzirin, 612**

**Enzyme induction, 655**

**Enzymes**

**Fibrinolytic, 121**

**Epidermal preparations, 553**

**Epanutin preparations, 225**

**Ready Mixed Parenteral, 235**

**Epaxal, 607**

**Ephedrine**

**Hypotension, 112**

**Nasal congestion, 541, 542**

**Epitol, 577**

**Epiglottis, 247**

**Epigle, 593**

**Epilepsy, 215, 217**

**Breast-feeding and, 216**

**Driving, 216**

**Neonatal seizures, 217**

**Pregnancy and, 216**

**Status epilepticus, 231**

**Non-convulsive, 232**

**Syndromes, 217**

**Epitom preparations, 228, 229**

**Epimaz (carbamazine), 218**

**Epinaistine, 522, 523**

**Epinephrine see Adrenaline**

**EpiPen preparations, 160, 161**

**Epirubicin, 421, 422, 423**

**Epionta preparations, 229**

**Epival, 229**

**Epivir, 313**

**Epoetin**

**Alfa, 449**

**Beta, 449, 450**

**Zeta, 449, 450**

**Epoprostol, 95, 96, 118**

**Infusion table (neonatal), 792**

**Eposin, 426**

**Eprex, 449**

**Eptacog alfa (activated), 124**

**Eptadone (methadone), 207**

**Equanox, 634**

**Equasym XL, 190**

**Ergocalciferol, 482, 483**

**Ergot alkaloids, 212**

**Ertapenem, 272**

**Eriminase, 428**

**Erymax, 283**

**Erypielas, 253**

**Erythema, perianal, 66**

**Erythrocin, 283**

**Erythromycin, 280, 282, 283**

**Acne, 575, 576, 577, 578**

**Tretinoin with, 577**

**Diphtheria prophylaxis, 254**

**Eye infections, 519**

**Gastro-intestinal stasis, 41**

**Pneumococcal prophylaxis, 255**

**Rheumatic fever prophylaxis, 254**

**Erythropoietin preparations, 283**

**Erythropoietins, 448**

**Esmeron, 645**

**Esmolol, 82, 88, 90**

**See also Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs**

**Esomeprazole, 45**

**Essential amino acids supplement, 784**

**Estradiol**

**Contraception**

** Dienogest with, 401**

**Drospirenone with, 401**

**Etonogestrel with, 400**

**Gestodene with, 401, 402**

**Levonorgestrel with, 401, 402**

**Norelgestromin with, 400**

**Norethisterone with, 401, 402**

**Norgestimate with, 401**

**Hormone therapy, 377, 378**

**Ethinylestradiol see Ethinylestradiol**

**Esomeprazole, 452**

**Etofoxone, 302, 503**

**Etoricoxib, 500, 502, 503**

**Etoposide, 426**

**Etoposide, 426**

**Ethambutol, 290, 292, 293**

**Tuberculosis treatment, 291**

**Ethanol, poisoning, use in, 32**

**Ethinyloestradiol**

**Acne see Co-cyprindiol, 578**

**Contraception, 396**

**Desogestrel with, 401**

**Drospirenone with, 401**

**Etonogestrel with, 400**

**Gestodene with, 401, 402**

**Levonorgestrel with, 401, 402**

**Norelgestromin with, 400**

**Norethisterone with, 401, 402**

**Norgestimate with, 401**

**Hormone therapy, 377, 378**

**Ethinyloestradiol see Ethinylestradiol**

**Ethmozil, 217, 219, 220**

**Ethyl-2-cyanoacrylate, 593**

**Ethylene glycol, poisoning by, 32**

**Ethynodiol see Etnynodiol, 404**

**Etomide, 630**

**EtopaBID—Lipuro, 630**

**Etopogestrel**

**Ethinylestradiol with, 400**

**Implant, 404, 405**

**Etopophos, 426**

**Etoposide, 426**

**Etoricoxib, 500, 502, 503**

**Etodolac, 340, 341, 320**

**Bretinate, 567**

**Ethinodiol, 404**

**Eucalyptus oil, 166**

**Eucardic, 90**

**Eucerin, 554**

**Eudine**

**Hypertension, 93**

**Hypoglycaemia, 362**

**Eumovate, 563**

**Eurax preparations, 557, 560**

**European viper venom antiserum, 34**

**Evothor, 424**

**Evox (levothyroxaime), 366**

**Eva, 400**

**Excipients**

**Details provided, 2**

**Skin preparations and, 551**

**Exelderm—discontinued**

**Exfoliative dermatitis, 370**

**Exjade, 452**

**Exocin, 520**

**Exorex, 569**

**Expectorants, 167**

**Extremesian preparations, 6**

**Eutrol, 538**

**Extrapyramidal symptoms**

**Antipsychotics and, 173**

**Treatment, 237**

**Extravasation, 516**
Eye
anaesthesia, local, 529
antibacterials, 518
frequency of administration, 519
antifungals, 520
antivirals, 521
contact lenses, 533
corticosteroids, 521
cycloplegics, 524
drops, administration, 517
glaucoma, 525
inflammation, 521
lotions, administration, 517
microbial contamination, 518
miotics, 528
mydriatics, 524
ointments, administration, 517
prostaglandins, 525, 526
Ezetimibe, 129
Ezetrol, 129

F
Fabrazyme, 490
Fabry’s disease, 490
Factor VIIa (recombinant), 124
Factor VIII fraction, 124
inhibitor bypassing, 124
Factor IX fraction, 124
Factor XIII fraction, 125
Fasclerotics, 61
Falciparum malaria, 330
Fallot’s tetralogy see Tetralogy of Fallot, 88
Famiciclovir, 322, 395
Famidom
Fenbid (diclofenac)
Femulen
Femodene
Fendrix
Fenofibrate, 129, 130
Fentals (fentanyl), 207
Fentanyl, 461
analgesia, 206, 207
peri-operative, 640, 641
palliative care, 17, 18
morphine equivalence, 18
Fentazin, 176
Fenticonazole, 395
Fenrir, 445
Ferric carboxymaltose, 444, 445
Ferriprox preparations, 452
Ferrous fumarate, 443, 444
Ferrous gluconate, 443, 444
Ferrous sulphate, 443
Fersaday, 443
Fersamal, 444
Feverfen (ibuprofen), 503
Fexofenadine, 153, 154
Fibrocut, 129
Fibrinolysis, 58
Fibrinolytic drugs, 121
Fibrogastrin P (factor XIII fraction), 125
Filgrastim, 454, 575
Finacea, 575
Finax preparations, 502
Finaplix, 587
Fiamara (diclofenac) preparations, 502
Flaimazine, 578
Flarex
Fentanyl preparations, 297
Flavonol, 518
Fleet
Flagyl preparations, 502
Finacea
Fibrates, 129
Fentanyl preparations, 125
Fleet—Flavonol preparations, 150
Diskhaler—discontinued
Filgrastim, 454
Flomaxtra XL, 410
Florinef, 370
Flowfusor, 594
Fluoxapen (fluvoxacinil), 260
Flu- Amp (co-fluampicil), 263
Flurbirine, 612
Fluvastatin, 125, 127
Fluvirin
Folic acid, 446
Folic acid, 446, 447
methotrexate, following, 508
pregnancy, 446
Folicare
Folic acid, 418
rescue, 418
Foliculitis, 585
Fomepizole, 32
Food allergy, 56
Foodlink preparations, 760
Foods
ACBS, 743
enteral, 469, 470
feed thickeners, 471
glutten-free, 777
intolerance, 470, 777
low-protein, 780
special diets, 468, 470, 777
vitamin supplements, 487, 488
thickened, 777
Foradil, 138
Forcental, 487
Formaldehyde, 580

Eye—Formaldehyde 823
Fludrocortisone, 563
Fluid and electrolyte replacement, 456
neonate, 461
oral, 457
parenteral, 460
Flumazenil, 30, 647, 648
Flumetasone, 536
Flumethasone see Flumetasone, 536
Flunisolide, 540
Fluocinolone acetonide, 564
cicloquinol with, 564
neomycin with, 564
Fluocinolone, 564
[ingredient], 67
Fluor-a-day, 477
Fluorescein, 532
lidocaine with, 529
proxymetacaine with, 529
Fluoride, 476, 477
FluorGard preparations, 477
Flurometholone, 522
Fluorouracil, 583
Fluvirin
Fluoxinetin, 186, 187
Fluorenone see Fluoroxycortic- tide, 563
Flurbiprofen
Flurix, 612
Fluvirin
Fluoximen, 186, 187, 188
FML, 522
Focal seizures, 217
Folate deficiency, 446
Folate rescue, 418
Folic acid, 446, 447
methotrexate, following, 508
pregnancy, 446
Folicare, 447
Folic acid, 418
rescue, 418
Foliculitis, 585
Fomepizole, 32
Food allergy, 56
Foodlink preparations, 760
Foods
ACBS, 743
enteral, 469, 470
feed thickeners, 471
glutten-free, 777
intolerance, 470, 777
low-protein, 780
special diets, 468, 470, 777
vitamin supplements, 487, 488
thickened, 777
Foradil, 138
Forcental, 487
Formaldehyde, 580
Glycogen storage disease
dietary supplement, 781

Granulocyte-colony stimulating factor, in, 455

Hypoglycaemia, 361

Glycopeptide antibiotics, 285

Glycopyrrolate see Glycopyrrolate

Glycopyrrolate see Glycopyrronium bromide

Glycopyrronium bromide

Airway secretions, 636

Hyperhydration, 597

Hyposalivation, 636

Neostigmine with, 647

Palliative care, 19, 20

Premedication, 635, 636

Glycogen—Homatropine 825

Homatropine, 524

Hepatids B and B, 608

Hepatitis B

Autoimmune, 371

Chronic, 313, 325

Chronic active, 439

Immunisation, 608

Immunoglobulin, 624, 625

Travel, 626

Vaccine, 607, 608

Hepatitis B

Travel, 626

Vaccine, 607, 608

Hepatitis C

Chronic, 325

Chronic active, 439

Hepatentential degeneration see Wilson's disease, 488

Hepatitis B

Autoimmune, 371

Chronic, 313, 325

Chronic active, 439

Immunisation, 608

Immunoglobulin, 624, 625

Travel, 626

Vaccine, 607, 608

Hepatitis C

Chronic, 325

Chronic active, 439

Histamin H1-antagonists, 153

Histamine H2-antagonists, 43

Histology

Histiocytes, 322, 395

Histiocytoma, 439

Histoplasmosis, 301

HIV infection, 309

Hodgkin's disease, 428

Hodgkin's disease, 428

Hepatic encephalopathy, 61

Impairment, prescribing in, 14

Hepatitis A

Immunisation, 607

Immunoglobulin, normal, 622

Travel, 626

Vaccine, 607, 608

Hepatitis B

Autoimmune, 371

Chronic, 313, 325

Chronic active, 439

Immunisation, 608

Immunoglobulin, 624, 625

Travel, 626

Vaccine, 607, 608

Hepatitis C

Chronic, 325

Chronic active, 439

Hepatentential degeneration see Wilson's disease, 488

Hepatitis B

Autoimmune, 371

Chronic, 313, 325

Chronic active, 439

Immunisation, 608

Immunoglobulin, 624, 625

Travel, 626

Vaccine, 607, 608

Hepatitis C

Chronic, 325

Chronic active, 439

Hepatentential degeneration see Wilson's disease, 488

Histamine H1-antagonists, 153

Histamine H2-antagonists, 43

Histology

Histiocytes, 322, 395

Histiocytoma, 439

Histoplasmosis, 301

HIV infection, 309

Hodgkin's disease, 428

Hodgkin's disease, 428
Iodine
radioactive, 367
skin disinfection, 596
thyrotoxicosis, 367, 368
Iopidine, 532
Iopocil, 51
Iprapatropium
asthma, 141, 142
acute, 134
rhinorrhoea, 541, 542
Steri-Neb, 142
IPV see Poliomyelitis, immunisation, 617
Iron
deficiency, 442
neonatal, 443
oral, 442, 443, 444
overload, 451
parenteral, 444, 445
poisoning by, 30
Iron dextran, 444, 445
Iron sucrose, 444, 445
Ironorm, 443
Iriclens, 594
Irripod, 594
Irritable bowel syndrome, 39, 49
Isentress, 321
Isoflurane, 633, 634
Isogel, 58
Isoleucine Amino Acid Supplement, 782
Isoniazid, 292, 293
tuberculosis prophylaxis, 255
isophane treatment, 290, 291
Isophane protamine insulin see Insulin, isophane
Isoplex, 465
Isoprenaline, 110
Isoprotrine, 110
Isotret
Alkaline, 531
Plain, 531
Isosource preparations, 744, 747, 750, 755
Isotretinoin, 574
acne
erthromycin with, 577
oral, 578, 579
 topical, 576, 577
Isotrex, 577
Isotretin, 577
Isovaleric acidemia, 782
Isovorin, 419
Ispagel Orange, 58
Ispaghula
constipation, 57, 58
diarrhoea, 47
mebeverine with, 41
Istam, 106
Itraconazole, 300, 301, 303, 304
oropharyngeal candidiasis, 545
IUDs see Intra-uterine devices
IVA Anamix preparations, 782
Ivermectin
larva migrans, 346
onchocerciasis, 346
scabies, 592
strongyloidiasis, 347
IZS see Insulin, zinc suspension

J
Japanese encephalitis, 627
Jet nebulisers, 146
Jevvy preparations, 744, 748, 749
Jex preparations, 160, 161
Joy-Rides, 198
Juvela products
gluten-free, 778, 779
low-protein, 780, 781

K
Kala-azar, 340
Kalipes-D, 484
Kaltrin, 217
Kaolin, 47
Kaplon (captopril), 102
Katyra 30/75, 401
Kawasaki syndrome
 aspirin, 120
immunoglobulin, 120
Kay-Cee-L, 457
Kefadon, 270
Keflex, 268
Kefid (cefadroxil), 267
Kemadrin preparations, 237
Kemicetine, 284
Kenaryoga Intra-articular/Intra muscular, 507
Keppara, 223
Keratitis, 518
Keratoconjunctivitis, vernal, 522
Keratolytics, warts and calluses, 580
Keratosis follicularis, 567
Keromask preparations, 583
Ketalar, 631
Ketamine, 631
abuse, 10
anaesthesia, 630
clinical procedures, 637
palliative care, 18
sedation, 630
Ketocidosis, diabetic, 360
KetoCal preparations, 769
Ketoconazole, 305
anogenital, 395
Cushing’s syndrome, 391
sculp, 584
skin, 588, 589
Ketodactil, 363
Ketones
monitoring, 365
tests
blood, 363
urine, 363
Ketorolac
eye, 533
pain, postoperative, 640
Ketotix, 363
Ketotifen, 157
allergy, 156
eye, 522, 523
Ketovite, 488
Ketur Test, 363
KeyOmega, 784
Kindergarten, 769
Kivox, 624
Klaveno, 312
Klaricid preparations, 282

L
Labelling of medicines, 7
Labelling, cautionary and advisory see Cautionary and advisory labels
Labetalol, 87, 90, 91
see also Beta-adrenocceptor blocking drugs
Labial adhesions, 393
Labour, analgesia, 203
Labyrinthine disorders, 193
Lacosamide, 220, 221
Lactare-Lube, 531
Lactase, ACBS, 777
Lactate see Sodium lactate, compound
Lactic acid
hydrocortisone and urea with, 560
salicylic acid with, 580
urea with, 553
Lactic acidosis, 311
congenital, 480
Lactose, presence of, 62
Lactagal (lactulose), 62
Lactulose, 61, 62
Ladropen (fluoxacillin), 260
Laevulose see Fructose
Lamicatil, 222
Lamisil
oral, 309
topical, 590
Lamivudine, 313
abacavir and zidovudine with, 312
abacavir with, 312
chronic hepatitis B, 313, 325
HIV infection, 310
zidovudine with, 315
Lamotrigine, 217, 221, 222
Lancets, sterile, 357
Landau-Kleffner syndrome, 217
Lanolin, excipient, 553
Lanoxin preparations, 75
Lansoprazole, 45, 46
Lantus preparations, 354
Lanvis, 426
Larapam SR, 211
Largeactil, 174
Larixan, 336
Laronidase, 491, 492
LarvE, 596
Laryngojet, 652
Lasix, 80
Lassa fever, 328
Lassar’s paste, 571
Latanoprost, 526
Latin abbreviations, inside back cover
BNFC 2011–2012

Laxatives, 57
bulk-forming, 57
faecal softeners, 61
osmotic, 61
palliative care, 18
stimulant, 59
palliative care, 18
Lexpar, 62
Leclaire, 33
Ledermc—discontinued
Legionnaires’ disease, 280
Leishmaniasis, 340
Legionnaires’ disease, 280
Ledermycin—discontinued
Ledclair
Laxido Orange
Laxatives, 57
BNFC 2011–2012 Laxatives—Magnesium 829
Lorazepam
anxiety, palliative care, 18
convulsions, 25
dyspnoea, palliative care, 19
epilepsy
status epilepticus, 231, 233
premedication, 638
Loron, 390
Losartan, 103, 104
Losec, 46
Lotions
definition, 551
eye, 517
suitable quantities, 551
Lotriderm, 562
Low calcium infant formula, 767
Low-protein foods, ACBS, 780, 781
Lp-drink, 784
LSD see Lysergide, 10
Lugol’s solution see Aqueous iodine
oral solution, 368
Lumecare preparations, 530, 531
Lumefantrine
artemether with, 334, 335
Lupus erythematosus
systemic, 371, 508
Lustral, 188
Luvinsta® XL, 127
Lycear, 593
Lyflex (baclofen), 514
Lyme disease, 261
Lymecycline, 276
acne, 578
Lymphogranuloma venereum, 274
Lynrel XL, 411
Lysergic acid diethylamide see Lysergide, 10
Lysergide, regulations, 10
Lysofred, 429
Lysoosomal storage disorder, 490, 491
M
Maalox preparations, 37
MabCampath, 439
Mabtron, 211
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Magnaspartate
Magnesium hydroxide, 63
Magnesium salts
constipation, 63
MabCampath, 439
MabThera, 439
Macrobid, 300
Macrodantin, 300
Macrofol, 61
bowel cleansing, 64
constipation, 62
faecal impaction, 62
Macrolides, 280
Magnapen, 263
Magnesium—discontinued
Magnesium citrate,
Index

830

Magnesium—Methylene

Magnesium sulphate
arrhythmias, 473
asthma, 134
hypocalcaemia neonatal, 473
hypomagnesaemia, 473, 474
pulmonary hypertension, 95,
97
torsade de pointes, 473
Magnesium trisilicate, 37
Magnesium-L-aspartate, 474
Malabsorption syndromes, 49
electrolytes, 457
vitamin K, 486
Malaria
falciparum, 330
prophylaxis, 331
treatment, 329, 331
Malarivon, 335
Malarone, 337
malaria prophylaxis, 331, 332,
333, 334, 336
malaria treatment, 330, 336
Paediatric, 337
Malathion, 592, 593
Malignant disease, 414
pain, 203
bone, 199
Malignant hyperthermia, 648
Maltitol, 2
Manevac, 60
Mania, 172, 181
Manic depression see Bipolar disorder, 181
Mannitol, 81
diuresis, 81, 82
glaucoma, 525
presence of, 2
Mantoux test, 603
Manufacturers
index of, 800
Manufacturers, special-order, 809
Maple syrup urine disease, 480,
782
Maraviroc, 310, 321
Marcain preparations, 651
Marevan (warfarin), 119
Marine stings, 34
Marketing authorisation, 2
Marol, 211
Marvelon, 401
Mastaflu, 612
Matrifen (fentanyl), 207
Maturity-onset diabetes of the
young see Genetic defects of betacell function, 348
Maxidex, 521
Maxijul preparations, 771
Maxitram SR, 211
Maxitrol, 522
Maxolon preparations, 196
Maxtrex (methotrexate), 509
McCune-Albright syndrome, 380
MCT Oil, 773
MCT Pepdite preparations, 766
MDMA see Methylenedioxymethamfetamine
Measles
corticosteroids, 371
immunisation, 612
immunoglobulin, normal, 623
vaccines, combined, 612, 613,
614

Measles, mumps and rubella
vaccine, 613
Mebendazole, 344, 345
hookworm infections, 346
roundworm infections, 345
threadworm infections, 344
whipworm infections, 344
Mebeverine, 40, 41
ispaghula with, 41
Mecasermin, 391, 392
Mecillinam, 265
Meconium
aspiration syndrome, 163
ileus, uncomplicated
amidotrizoates, 65
Mecysteine, 166
Medac, 428
Medi, 144
Medicaid, 557
Medical emergencies in the community, inside back cover
Medicated bandages, 566
Medicines information services,
inside front cover
Medicines, unlicensed, 2, 6
Medikinet preparations, 190
Medinol (paracetamol)
preparations, 201
Medi-Test products, 363
Medrone, 376
Medroxyprogesterone, 404, 405
Mefenamic acid, 504
dysmenorrhoea, 504
menorrhagia, 504
pain, 500
rheumatic disease, 500
Mefloquine, 335, 336
malaria prophylaxis, 331, 332,
333, 334
malaria treatment, 330
Megaloblastic anaemia, 445
Meglumine amidotrizoate, 65
Melatonin, 171
Meloxicam, 500, 504, 505
Melphalan, 421
Menadiol sodium phosphate, 486
Mendelson’s syndrome, 43, 629
Meningitec, 614
Meningitis
antibacterial therapy, initial, 248
bacterial
dexamethasone in, 375
cryptococcal, 301
fungal, 301
haemophilus, 248
listerial, 248
meningococcal, 248
prophylaxis, 254
travel, 614, 626
vaccine, 614, 615
vaccine, Hib with, 607
pneumococcal, 248
streptococcal, 248
Meningococcal see Meningitis
Menitorix, 607
Menjugate, 615
Menorrhagia, 405, 406
antifibrinolytics, 123
Menstruation
postponement of, 378
Menthol, eucalyptus with, 166
Menveo, 615

BNFC 2011–2012
Mepacrine, 507
Mepact, 441
Mepivacaine, 649, 653
Mepradec (omeprazole), 46
Merbentyl preparations, 39
Mercaptamine (cysteamine), 492,
493
Mercaptopurine
Crohn’s disease, 54, 55
inflammatory bowel disease,
48, 49
malignant disease, 423, 424,
425
ulcerative colitis, 54, 55
6-Mercaptopurine see Mercaptopurine
Mercilon, 401
Meronem, 273
Meropenem, 272, 273
Mesalazine, 48, 49, 50, 51
Mesna
cystic fibrosis, 165
urothelial toxicity, 419
Mesren MR, 51
Mestinon, 513
Mestranol, norethisterone with,
401
Metabolic acidosis, 463
Metabolic Mineral Mixture, 776
Metals, poisoning by, 32
Metanium, 557
Metaraminol, 112, 113
Meted, 584
Metenix-5, 78
Metformin, 359, 360
Methadone
neonatal abstinence syndrome,
238
oral solution (1 mg/mL), 207
pain, 203, 207
poisoning by, 28
Methaemoglobinaemia, treatment
of, 653
Methanol, poisoning by, 32
Metharose (methadone), 207
Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus see MRSA
Methionine, 27, 28
Methotrexate
Crohn’s disease, 48, 54, 55
folic acid with, 508
malignant disease, 423, 425
psoriasis, 572, 573
rheumatic disease, 507, 508,
509
Methotrimeprazine see Levomepromazine
Methyl alcohol see Methanol, 32
Methyl cysteine see Mecysteine,
166
Methyl salicylate, 594
dithranol and salicylic acid with,
571
Methyl salicylate [ingredient], 570
Methylated spirit, industrial, 594
Methylcellulose, 58
diarrhoea, 47
Methylcysteine see Mecysteine,
166
Methyldopa, 98
Methylene blue see Methylthioninium chloride, 653


Methylenedioxymethamphetamine—MPD

831

Methylenedioxymethamphetamine, 831

controlled drug, 9

poisoning by, 31

Methylophenidate, 188, 189, 190

Methylprednisolone, 376

Miconazole, 295

Micosure (aspirin), 121

Microlance, 301, 306

Microlax Micro-enema, 407

Miconel-Test II, 384

Micro-Pralide, 303

Micronor, 407

MicroPeak, 144

Microphallus, 379

Miconaprin, 214

Methylpropanol, 379

Metingral, 121

Metformin, 360

Mexitol, 639

Methylthioninium chloride, 653

Mepoliz-lumartudine, 441

Miglustat, 491, 496

Migraine, 214

acute attack, 212

beta-blockers, 88

prophylaxis, 214

Migraleve, 202

Mildison, 560

Milex, 529

Minozole, 196

Minozole, 207

Mitosil, 529

Mizollen, 155

MMA/PA Anamix preparations, 783

MMR vaccine, 612, 613, 614

MRHA, 614

Mobile, 505

Mobile, 364

Modafinil, 188, 190, 191

Modigraf, 437

Modulflavour System, 777

Modular test, 561

Modulen IBD, 769

Moduret 25 (co-amizolide), 81

MODY see Genetic defects of beta-cell function, 348

Molaxole, 62

Molcr, 538

Mometasone, 540

oral allergy, 135

nasal allergy, 540

skin, 565

Methaonine, 540

Monoamine-oxidase inhibitors, 186

Monofoourphonase, 476

Monogen, 357

Monoject, 357

Monotherapy (factor IX fraction), 125

Montelukast, 152

Morhulin, 557

Morococoula, 124

Morphine, 207, 208, 209

cough, palliative care, 19

cyclizine with, 209

infusion table (neonatal), 793

neonatal abstinence syndrome, 238

oral solutions, 208

pain, 203

chronic, 203

diamorphine equivalence, 20

fentanyl equivalence, 18

palliative care, 17, 18

postoperative, 203

Motifen, 502

Motifum, 196

Motinase, 196

Mouth ulceration, 543

Mouthwash solution-tablets, 548

Mouthwash, 546

Movicol preparations, 62

Moxifloxacin, 518, 520

Moxivig, 520

MPD Ultra Thin, 357

Index
BNFC 2011–2012

Nicardipine, 105, 106, 107
see also Calcium-channel blockers
NicAssist preparations (nicotine replacement therapy), 240, 241
NICE see National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 3
Nicef (cefradine), 269
Niclosamide, 345
Nicorette preparations, 240
Nicotine
smoking cessation products, 240, 241
Nicotine replacement therapy, 239
Nicotinell preparations, 240
Nicotinamide
Nicotine replacement therapy, 107
Nifedipine,
496
Nitisinone,
381
Nivestim
Nivaquine
Nitronal
Nitrocine
Niquitin
preparations, 241
Nicotinell
preparations, 240
Nicef (cefradine), 269
preparations (nicotine
Nicardipine, 105,
BNFC 2011–2012 Nicardipine—Oftaquix 833
Nicotine
oral contraceptives, 396
Notifiable diseases, 243
Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary, 796
Nurse independent prescribing,
797
Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary, 796
Nu-Seals Aspirin
Nurtec
Nutritional Interventions
palliative care, 18
skin, 588, 590
clohexidine and hydrocortisone with, 561
clobetasol and necronycin with, 563
clopcorticosterone with, 561

Nutrition
preparations, 745, 748,
749, 750
soya formula, 745
Nutrition
ACBS, foods, 743
tenteral, 468, 469, 743
intravenous, 466
oral, 468, 469
total parenteral, 466
Nutrizym preparations, 71, 72
NutropinAg, 384
NuvaRing, 400
Nyoget, 526
Nystaform, 590
Nystaform-HC, 561
Nystan
mouth, 546
Nystatin, 305
mouth, 545, 546

Obesity, 191
Obstetric surgery, antibacterial prophylaxis, 256
Occlusal, 580
Octagam—discontinued
Octatbin preparations (albumin), 464
Occlusal

Obesity, 191
Obstetric surgery, antibacterial prophylaxis, 256
Occlusal, 580
Octagam—discontinued
Octatbin preparations (albumin), 464
Occlusal

Octylcyanoacrylate, 593

Oedema

cerebral, 81, 375
pulmonary, 76
Oesophageal varices, 385
Oesophagitis see Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, 35
Oestrogens
hormone therapy, 377
labial adhesions, 393
oral contraceptives, 396
Ofoxacin
ear, 537
eye, 518, 520
Oftaquix, 520
Plasma concentrations, electrolytes, 456
Pollen extracts, 157
Poliomyelitis
Poisons information services, 24
Poisoning, 24
Podophyllotoxin, 581
Polyarteritis nodosa, 371
Polystyrene sulphonate resins, 585
Polysaccharide-iron complex, 444
Polyps, nasal, 538
Polyoxyl castor oil, presence of, 3
Polyene antifungal drugs, 305
Polyethylated castor oil, 779
Polyethylene glycols, 62, 64
Polyacrylic acid, 365
Ponstan preparations, 504
POP see Progestogens, contraceptives, oral, 396, 403
Poractant alfa, 163
Porphyrrias, acute, 497
drugs to be avoided in, 497, 498
Posafillin—discontinued
Potassium acid phosphate, 475
Potassium bicarbonate, 460
tabs, effervescent, 460
Potassium canrenoate, 383
Potassium chloride
infusion
sodium and, 463
potassium and, 463
oral, 457, 458
parenteral, 463
Potassium citrate, 412
Potassium iodide, 368
Potassium supplements, 457
Povidone-iodine
skin, 594, 596
shampoo, 584
Prader-Willi syndrome, 383
Pralidoxime chloride, 34
Pramecaine [ingredient], 66, 67
Pramocaine, 66, 67
Pravastatin, 126
Pravastatin sodium, 126
Pravastatin tablets, effervescent, 460
Prazosin, 224
Praziquantel
sciatosis, 346
tape worm, 346
Prazosin, 99, 100
Precocious puberty, 380
Pred Forte, 522
Prelenena, 54
Prelox cream, 54
Prednisolone, 370, 376, 377
asthma, acute, 134
Crohn’s disease, 54
ear, 536
eye, 522
haemorrhoids, 67
hepatitis, 377
infantile spasms, 217, 377
inflammatory and allergic disorders, 377
malignant disease, 433
nephrotic syndrome, 377
palliative care, 18, 19
pneumocystis pneumonia, 342
rectal, 54, 67
ulcerative colitis, 54
withdrawal of, 372
Predsol
ear, 536
eye, 522
rectal, 54
Predsol-N
ear, 536
eye, 522
Pre-eclampsia, 617
Pregestimil
Primodone, 223
Primogel, 224
Primolut N, 379
Primires, 614
Primone, 345
Privigen, 624
Pro-Banthine, 144
Pro-Calc preparations, 775
Pregnancy
anti-coagulants, 119
antihistamines, 153
asthma, 497
corticosteroids, 373
cytotoxic drugs, 416
ejaculitis and, 216
folate supplements, 446
HIV infection, 310
hypertension in, 92
immunosuppressants, 431
iron, 442
malaria, 331
prophyaxis, 332
treatment, 330
nausea and vomiting, 192
prescribing in, 16
tuberculosis and, 291
urinary infections, 299
Prevgyn, 383
Premedication, 635, 637
Prescribing
ACBS, 743
breast-feeding, 16
children, 1
classified drugs, 10
hepatic impairment, 14
independent, 799
installments, 10
palliative care, 17
pregnancy, 16
renal impairment, 14
repeat prescriptions, 10
supplementary, 799
Prescription forms
controlled drugs, 9
European Economic Area (EEA), 3
nurses, 796
security, 3
Switzerland, 3
Prescription only medicines see preparations identified by throughout BNF for Children
Prescription writing, 4
Presinex (desmopressin), 387
Prestige products, 365
Pre-thickened infant feeds, 767
Prevenar 13, 460
Prezista, 183
Prix, xvi
Primocaine, 653
dental, 653
felypressin with, 649, 653
dicaine with, 651, 652
Primaxine (erythromycin), 283
Primacor, 76
Primatime
malaria treatment, 331, 336
pneumocystis pneumonia, 342
Primaxin, 273
Primene, 467
Primidone, 223, 224
Primoliat N, 379
Priorix, 614
Pripson, 345
Privigen, 624
Pro-Brandine, 40
Procaaine benzylpenicillin, 249, 257
Pro-Cal preparations, 775

836 Plasma—Pro-Cal

BNFC 2011–2012

Index
Syringes

insulin, 357
blind patients, 357
oral, 2
Systane, 530
Sytron, 444

T

Telangiectasia, hereditary
Teicoplanin, 285
Tamsulosin, 409
Tar
Tapeworm infections, 345
Tazobactam
Tartrazine, presence of, 3
Terminal care see Palliative care
Testolactone, 380
Testosterone, 379, 380
enante, 379
esters, 379
propionate, 379, 380
undecanoate, 379
Testotoxicosis see Puberty, precocious, 380, 381
Tetanus
antibacterial treatment, 257, 296
immunisation, 619, 625
immunoglobulin, 625
tavel, 626
vaccines, combined, 605, 606, 619
wounds, 619
Tetracaine
eye, 529
local anaesthetic, 654
rectal, 66
Tetracosactide, 217, 382
Tetracosactrin see Tetracosactide, 217, 382
Tetracycline, 274, 275
acne, 578
oral infections, 274
skin, cloboatsenbury butyrade, with 563
Tetrahydrobiopterin, 469
Tetrahydrofolate reductase deficiency, 495
Tetrylogy of Fallot, 88
Tetrahydralolol, 300, 276
Tetraplas, 465
Tetrastarch, 465, 466
Tevagrain, 450
T-Gel, 385
Thalassaemia, 451
THAM see Tometamol, 463, 464
Theophylline, 142, 143
poisioning by, 31
poisioning, elimination, 25
see also Aminophylline
Thiabendazole see Thiabendazole, 346
Thiamine, 479, 480
Thiazides, 76
diabetes insipidus, 385
see also Diuretics
Thick and Easy, 777
Thickened foods, 777
Thickened supplements, 759, 761
Thioguanine see Thioguanine, 423, 425, 426
Thiopental
anaesthesia, 630, 632
status epilepticus, 213, 632
Thiophenone see Thiopental
Thiopurine methyltransferase, 431
Thioanethenes, 173
Terbinafine, 590
dermatophyte infections, 301, 308
systemic treatment, 309
Topical treatment, 588, 590
Terbutaline, 141
asthma, 137
acute, 134
Terlipressin, 385, 387
Terminal care see Palliative care
Testolactone, 380
Testosterone, 379, 380
enante, 379
esters, 379
propionate, 379, 380
undecanoate, 379
Testotoxicosis see Puberty, precocious, 380, 381
Tetanus
antibacterial treatment, 257, 296
immunisation, 619, 625
immunoglobulin, 625
tavel, 626
vaccines, combined, 605, 606, 619
wounds, 619
Tetracaine
eye, 529
local anaesthetic, 654
rectal, 66
Tetracosactide, 217, 382
Tetracosactrin see Tetracosactide, 217, 382
Tetracycline, 274, 275
acne, 578
oral infections, 274
skin, cloboatsenbury butyrade, with 563
Tetrahydrobiopterin, 469
Tetrahydrofolate reductase deficiency, 495
Tetrylogy of Fallot, 88
Tetrahydralolol, 300, 276
Tetraplas, 465
Tetrastarch, 465, 466
Tevagrain, 450
T-Gel, 385
Thalassaemia, 451
THAM see Tometamol, 463, 464
Theophylline, 142, 143
poisioning by, 31
poisioning, elimination, 25
see also Aminophylline
Thiabendazole see Thiabendazole, 346
Thiamine, 479, 480
Thiazides, 76
diabetes insipidus, 385
see also Diuretics
Thick and Easy, 777
Thickened foods, 777
Thickened supplements, 759, 761
Thioguanine see Thioguanine, 423, 425, 426
Thiopental
anaesthesia, 630, 632
status epilepticus, 213, 632
Thiophenone see Thiopental
Thiopurine methyltransferase, 431
Thioanethenes, 173
Thixo-D, 777
Threadworm infections, 344
Throat infections
antibacterial treatment, 252
fungal, 545
gonorrhoea, 249
viral, 545
Thrombocytopenias, 448
Thrombocytopenic purpura, 453
immunoglobulins, 622
prednisolone, 377
Thrombo-embolism, 118
Thrombolytics, 121
Thrombosis
antiplatelet drugs, 120
dee-vein, 114, 118
prophylaxis, 115
Thrush see Candidiasis
Thymoglobuline, 484
Thymol, 548
Thyroid
antagonists, 367
hormones, 365
storm, 367
Thyroidectony, 367
Thyroiditis, Hashimoto’s, 365
Thyroxicotic crisis, 367
Thyrotoxicosis, 367
beta-blockers, 88, 367
Thyrotoxicosis, neonatal, 367
Thyroxine see Levotyroxine, 366
Tiabendazole, 346
Tiagabine, 217, 226
Ticarcillin, 264
clavulanic acid with, 264, 265
Tick-borne encephalitis
immunisation, 619
travel, 627
vaccine, 620
TicoVac, 620
Tics, 237
Tilade, 152
Tildem preparations, 106
Tilofyl (fentanyl), 207
Tiloryth (erythromycin), 283
Timentin, 265
Timogide, 561
Tinmolol, eye, 526
dorzolamide with, 528
Timo-top preparations, 526
Tinea infections, 301, 308
Tindazolone, 340
amoebiosis, 339, 340
giardiasis, 340
protozoal infections, 340
trichomoniaseis, 340
Tinzaparin, 116, 117
Tioconazole, 588, 590
Tioguanine, 423, 425, 426
Tipronavir, 310, 318
Tisept, 595
Tissue adhesive, 593
Tissue-type plasminogen activator see Alteplase, 122
Titanium dioxide, 557, 582
Tobi, 280
Tobia products, 779
Tobramycin, 277, 279, 280
eye, 518, 520
Tobrovacic, 520
Tocopherol, 485
Tocopheryl—Ursodeoxycholic

**Toilet preparations, ACBS, 786**

**Tolbutamide, 358, 359**

**Toxoplasmosis, 341**

**Toxoplasma choroidoretinitis, 341**

**TOXBASE, 24**

**Tourette syndrome, 237**

**Total parenteral nutrition, 466**

**Tramadol**

**Tramserve preparations, 211**

**Tramake preparations, 211**

**Tramaket SR**

**Tramacet**

**Tradorec XL**

**Tracrium**

**Tracleer**

**Toradol**

**Topamax**

**Topal**

**Tolbutamide, 358, 359**

**Tolazoline, 95, 98**

**Topical preparations, 786**

**Tocopheryl—Ursodeoxycholic, 68, 69**

**Tricyclodecane, 497**

**Ubiqunone, 497**

**Ucerax, 156**

**Uncerative colitis, 48**

**Ulcereative gingivitis, 395**

**Urinary infections, 252, 296**

**Mouthwashes, 546**

**Ulcere-healing drugs, 42**

**Ulcers**

**aphthous, 543**

**corneal, 581**

**duodenal, 43**

**gastric, 43**

**mouth, 543**

**neuropathic, diabetic, 596**

**NSAID-associated, 43**

**Ulipristal, 409**

**Ulnova, 642**

**Ultra products, 786**

**gluten-free, 786**

**low-protein, 786**

**Ultrasorb, 553**

**Ultralam Plain, 564**

**Ultraproct, 67**

**Ultrasound, 582**

**Umbilical granulomas, 581**

**Undecenoates, 591**

**Twinrix, 620**

**Unifine products, 357**

**Unilet products, 357**

**Uniphyl Linus Continus, 143**

**Uniront-HC, 67**

**Unisept, 595**

**Unistik products, 357**

**Unithiol, 32**

**Univer, 110**

**Universal, 357**

**Unlicensed medicines, 2, 6**

**Urodex, 69**

**Urea, 552, 553, 554**

**emollient with, 553**

**hydrocortisone and lactic acid with, 560**

**hydrocortisone with, 560**

**Urea cycle disorders, 493**

**Arginine supplement, 786**

**Essential amino acids supplement, 786**

**Urethritis, non-gonococcal, 250, 274**

**Uriflex preparations, 412**

**Urine tests, 546**

**Uristix, 363**

**Uro-Tainer preparations, 412**

**Ursodeoxycholic acid, 68, 69**
V

Vaccination
HIV-positive subjects, 600
schedule, 601
tavel, 626
Vaccines
active immunity, 599
allergen extract, 157
breast-feeding, 600
cautions, 599
contra-indications, 599
post-immunisation pyrexia, 600
preparation, 600
side-effects, 600
storage and use, 602
Vaginal infection
oral treatment, 394
Vaginitis
candidal, 394
Vaginosis, bacterial, 395
Vaginosis (metronidazole), 297
Valaciclovir, 322
Valine Amino Acid Supplement
Valproate
Valproic acid
Variceal bleeding, 385
Valsartan, 103
Urticaria, 153
Valsartan, 103
Vasodilators
Vasopressin
shock, 111
Varicellae bleeding, 385, 387, 388
Vezetavir, 591
Vecuronium, 643, 645
infusion table, 793
Vedrop, 485
Vegennet-med preparations, 762
Vena preparations, 583
Valglucerase alfa, 480, 491
Valbe, 427
Venofar, 445
Ventric, 97
Ventricmax SR, 139
Ventolin preparations, 159, 140
Vepsid, 426
Veracur, 580
Verapamil, 109, 110
arrhythmias, 82, 84, 105
beta-blockers and, 109
hypertension, 105
poisoning by, 30
see also Calcium-channel
blockers
Verapress MR, 110
Vermox, 345
Verrucas, 322
Vestibular disorders, 193
Viper venom antiserum,
European, 34
Viraexpert, 317
Viramune, 320
Virazole, 329
Viread, 314
Virocit, 612
Virostone, 380
Virovit (aciclovir), 323
Virus infections, 309
Vistavir, 166
Vizotes, 530
Vizimed preparations, 531
Vismethasone
ear, 535
eye, 521
nose, 539
Vita-Bite, 780
Vitajoule, 772
Vitalgaph, 144
Vitamin A, 478, 479
vitamin D and, 479
Vitamin B group, 479
preparations, 481
Vitamin B12, 445, 447
Vitamin C see Ascorbic acid
Vitamin D, 482, 483
psoriasis, 566, 567, 568
Vitamin D, see Ergocalciferol, 482, 483
Vitamin D, see Colecalciferol
Vitamin deficiency, 478
Vitamin E, 485
Vitamin K, 486, 487
deficiency bleeding, 486
palliative care, 18
Vitamins, 478
children's drops, 479
multivitamins, 487, 488
parenteral, 467
Vitaprop, 774
Vitaquick, 777
Vitasavoury, 775
Vitiligo, 583
ACBS, 787
Vitlipid N, 468
Vitrex products, 357
Vivadox, 438
Vivaglobin, 624
Vividrin (sodium cromoglicate), 523, 524
Vivitolf, 621
Volplex, 465
Volsaid (diclofenac) preparations, 502
Voltoleral preparations, 502
see, 533
Optha, 533
Rapid, 501
Volulyte, 465
Volumatic, 145
Volume expansion, 464
Volvan, 466
Vomiting
cytotoxic drugs, 415
motion sickness, 193
nausea and, 192
opioid-induced, 192
palliative care, 19
postoperative, 19
pregnancy, 192
Von Willebrand's disease, 385
Voriconazole, 300, 301, 304, 305
VPRIV, 491
Vulvitis, candidal, 394
Vulvovaginal candidiasis, recurrent, 394
VZIG see Immunoglobulins, vari-
cella-zoster, 625, 626

U

Ursodiol, 69
Ursodiol, 69
Urticaria, 153
UT 380 devices, 408
Uteol, 379
UVB, psoriasis, 567
Uvistat preparations, 583

W

Warticon preparations, 581
Warts, 580
anogenital, 581
Wasp sting allergy preparations, 157
Water for injections, 464
WaveSense products, 357, 365
Waxsol, 538

Usorofalk—Waxsol 843
Wellvone, 343
West’s syndrome, 229
Whitfield’s ointment, 588
Whooping cough see Pertussis
Wilate (factor VIII fraction), 124
Wilson’s disease, 488
Wysoy, 767
X
Xagrid, 453
Xamol, 568
Xanethine bronchodilators see Theophylline
Xenical, 191
Xepin, 548
Xerotin, 549
XLEU preparations, 782
XLYS Low TRY preparations, 761
XLYS preparations, 782
XLYS TRY preparations, 781
XMET preparations, 782
XMETVI preparations, 783
Xolair, 159
Xomalol, 195
XP preparations, 785, 786
XPHEN TYR preparations, 786
XPTM preparations, 786
Xylitol, presence of, 2
Xylocaine, 652
Xylometazoline
eye, 522
nose, 541, 542
Xyloproct, 67
Xyzaal, 155
X
XV (factor VIII fraction), 124
Yasmin, 401
Yeasts, 305
Yellow cards
adverse drug reporting, 12
reporting cards, inside back cover
Yellow fever
immunisation vaccine, 621, 622
tavel, 626
Z
Zaditen, 157, 523
Zafirlukast, 152, 153
Zamadol preparations, 211, 212
Zanamivir, 326, 327
Zantac, 44
effervescent tablets—discontinued
Zaponec, 179
Zarontin, 220
Zarzio, 456
Zavesca, 496
Zefix, 313
oral solution—discontinued
Zenalb preparations (albumin), 464
Zerdlame SR, 211
Zent, 314
Zerobase, 553
Zerocream, 553
Zeroguent, 553
Zerolatium preparations, 555, 556
Zeroneum, 555
Zerozole, 556
Zestril, 103
Zicron (gliclazide), 359
Zidovudine, 310, 314, 315
Zinacef, 271
Zinc
bandages, 566
deficiency, 478
skin
castor oil and, 556
coal tar with, 559
cod liver oil with, 557
cream, 556
dimeticone with, 557
ichthammol with, 565, 566
ointment, 556
salicylic acid with, 571
Wilson’s disease (zinc acetate), 489
Zindacin, 576
Ziney, 576
Zinnat, 271
Zithromax, 281
Zocor, 128
Zofran, 197
Zoladex preparations, 381
Zoligera—Ellison syndrome, 45
Zolmitriptan
cluster headache, 213, 215
migraine, 213, 214
Zolvers (verapamil), 109
Zomacton, 385
Zomig preparations, 214
Zostere see Herpes infections
Zoton FasTab, 46
Zovirax preparations, 323
cold sore cream, 591
cream, 591
eye ointment, 521
Zuvogen, 591
Zydol preparations, 211, 212
Zyloprim, 417
Zyomet, 588
Zyprexa, 179
Zyvox, 288
**SUSPECTED ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS**

If you suspect an adverse reaction may be related to one or more drugs/vaccines/complementary remedies, please complete this Yellow Card. See ‘Adverse reactions to drugs’ section in BNFC or www.yellowcard.gov.uk for guidance. Do not be put off reporting because some details are not known.

**PATIENT DETAILS**
- Patient Initials: __________
- Sex: M / F
- Ethnicity: ________________
- Weight if known (kg): _______
- Age (at time of reaction): ________________
- Identification number (e.g. Your Practice or Hospital Ref): ________________

**SUSPECTED DRUG(S)/VACCINE(S)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)</th>
<th>Batch</th>
<th>Route</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Date started</th>
<th>Date stopped</th>
<th>Prescribed for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUSPECTED REACTION(S)**

Please describe the reaction(s) and any treatment given:

Outcome
- Recovered
- Recovering
- Continuing
- Other

Date reaction(s) started: ________________ Date reaction(s) stopped: ________________

Do you consider the reactions to be serious? Yes / No

If yes, please indicate why the reaction is considered to be serious (please tick all that apply):
- Patient died due to reaction
- Life threatening
- Congenital abnormality
- Involved or prolonged inpatient hospitalisation
- Involved persistent or significant disability or incapacity
- Medically significant; please give details: ________________
It's easiest to report online at www.yellowcard.gov.uk

OTHER DRUG(S) (including self-medication and complementary remedies)
Did the patient take any other medicines/vaccines/complementary remedies in the last 3 months prior to the reaction? Yes / No
If yes, please give the following information if known:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)</th>
<th>Batch</th>
<th>Route</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Date started</th>
<th>Date stopped</th>
<th>Prescribed for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional relevant information e.g. medical history, test results, known allergies, rechallenge (if performed), suspect drug interactions. For congenital abnormalities please state all other drugs taken during pregnancy and the last menstrual period.

Please list any medicines obtained from the internet:

REPORTER DETAILS
Name and Professional Address:

Postcode:        Tel No:
Email:           
Speciality:      
Signature:       Date:

CLINICIAN (if not the reporter)
Name and Professional Address:

Postcode:        Tel No:
Email:           
Speciality:      
Date:

Information on adverse drug reactions received by the MHRA can be downloaded at www.mhra.gov.uk/daps
Stay up-to-date on the latest advice for the safe use of medicines with our monthly bulletin Drug Safety Update, at www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate

Please attach additional pages if necessary. Send to: FREEPOST YELLOW CARD (no other address details required)
NEWBORN LIFE SUPPORT

Dry the baby
- Remove any wet towels and cover
- Start the clock or note the time

Assess (tone), breathing and heart rate

If gasping or not breathing:
- Open the airway
- Give 5 inflation breaths
- Consider SpO2 monitoring

Re-assess
- If no increase in heart rate
- Look for chest movement

If chest not moving:
- Recheck head position
- Consider 2-person airway control
- and other airway manoeuvres
- Repeat inflation breaths
- Consider SpO2 monitoring
- Look for a response

If no increase in heart rate
- Look for chest movement

When the chest is moving:
- If heart rate is not detectable or slow (< 60 min⁻¹)
- Start chest compressions
- 3 compressions to each breath

Reassess heart rate every 30 s
- If heart rate is not detectable or slow (<60 min⁻¹)
- Consider venous access and drugs

Acceptable pre-ductal SpO2
- 2 min 60%
- 3 min 70%
- 4 min 80%
- 5 min 85%
- 10 min 90%

Birth
- AT
- ALL
- STAGES

ASK:

DO
- YOU
- NEED
- HELP?
PAEDIATRIC BASIC LIFE SUPPORT
(Healthcare professionals with a duty to respond)

UNRESPONSIVE?

Shout for help

Open airway

NOT BREATHING NORMALLY?

5 rescue breaths

NO SIGNS OF LIFE?

15 chest compressions

2 rescue breaths
15 compressions

Call resuscitation team

Reproduced with the kind permission of the Resuscitation Council (UK) from Resuscitation Guidelines, October 2010
PAEDIATRIC ADVANCED LIFE SUPPORT

Unresponsive?
Not breathing or only occasional gasps

CPR
(5 initial breaths then 15:2)
Attach defibrillator/monitor
Minimise interruptions

Call Resuscitation Team
(1 min CPR first, if alone)

Assess rhythm

Shockable
(VF/pulseless VT)

1 Shock
4J / kg
Immediately resume
CPR for 2 min
Minimise interruptions

Return of spontaneous circulation

Non-shockable
(PEA/Asystole)

Immediately resume
CPR for 2 min
Minimise interruptions

Immediate post cardiac arrest treatment
• Use ABCDE approach
• Controlled oxygenation and ventilation
• Investigations
• Treat precipitating cause
• Temperature control
• Therapeutic hypothermia?

During CPR
• Ensure high-quality CPR: rate, depth, recoil
• Plan actions before interrupting CPR
• Give oxygen
• Vascular access (intravenous, intraosseous)
• Give adrenaline every 3-5 min
• Consider advanced airway and capnography
• Continuous chest compressions when advanced airway in place
• Correct reversible causes

Reversible causes
• Hypoxia
• Hypovolaemia
• Hypo-/hyperkalaemia / metabolic
• Hypothermia
• Tension pneumothorax
• Toxins
• Tamponade - cardiac
• Thromboembolism

Reproduced with the kind permission of the Resuscitation Council (UK) from Resuscitation Guidelines, October 2010
### BODY SURFACE AREA IN CHILDREN

**Body-weight under 40kg**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body-weight (kg)</th>
<th>Surface area (m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>0.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>0.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>0.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body-weight (kg)</th>
<th>Surface area (m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are calculated using the Boyd equation

**Note** Height is not required to estimate body surface area using these tables

BODY SURFACE AREA IN CHILDREN

Body-weight over 40kg

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body-weight (kg)</th>
<th>Surface area (m²)</th>
<th>Body-weight (kg)</th>
<th>Surface area (m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are calculated using the Boyd equation

Note  Height is not required to estimate body surface area using these tables
Medical emergencies in the community

Drug treatment outlined below is intended for use by community healthcare professionals. Only drugs that are used for immediate relief are shown; advice on supporting care is not given. Where the child’s condition requires investigation and further treatment, the child should be transferred to hospital promptly.

Anaphylaxis
(section 3.4.3)

Adrenaline injection (1 mg/mL (1 in 1000))
- By intramuscular injection
  Child under 6 years 150 micrograms (0.15 mL), repeated every 5 minutes if necessary
  Child 6–12 years 300 micrograms (0.3 mL), repeated every 5 minutes if necessary
  Child 12–18 years 500 micrograms (0.5 mL), repeated every 5 minutes if necessary; 300 micrograms (0.3 mL) should be given if child is small or prepubertal

Hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate) by intravenous injection (section 6.3.2) has delayed action but it should be given to severely affected children to prevent further deterioration.

Chlorphenamine injection by intramuscular or intravenous injection (section 3.4.1) may help counter histamine-mediated vasodilation and bronchoconstriction.

High-flow oxygen (section 3.6) should be given as soon as available.

Asthma: acute
(section 3.1)

Regard each emergency consultation as being for severe acute asthma until shown otherwise; failure to respond adequately at any time requires immediate transfer to hospital.

Either salbutamol aerosol inhaler (100 micrograms/ metered inhalation)
- By aerosol inhalation via large-volume spacer (and a close-fitting face mask if child under 3 years)
  Child under 18 years 2–10 puffs each inhaled separately, repeated at 10–20 minute intervals or as necessary

Or salbutamol nebulised solution (1 mg/mL, 2 mg/mL)
- By inhalation of nebulised solution (via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available)
  Child under 5 years 2.5 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary
  Child 5–12 years 5–10 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary
  Child 12–18 years 10 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

Plus (in all cases)
Either prednisolone tablets (or prednisolone soluble tablets) (5 mg)
- By mouth
  Child under 12 years 1–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) once daily for up to 3 days or longer if necessary; if the child has been taking an oral corticosteroid for more than a few days, give prednisolone 2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) once daily
  Child 12–18 years 40–50 mg once daily for at least 5 days

Or hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate)
- By intravenous injection
  Child up to 18 years 4 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) every 6 hours, until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible; alternative dose if weight unavailable, Child under 2 years 25 mg, 2–5 years 50 mg, 5–18 years 100 mg

High-flow oxygen (section 3.6) should be given if available

Monitor response 15 to 30 minutes after nebulisation; if any signs of acute asthma persist, arrange hospital admission. While awaiting ambulance, repeat nebulised beta agonist (as above) and give with ipratropium nebuliser solution (250 micrograms/mL)
- By inhalation of nebulised solution (via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available)
  Child under 12 years 250 micrograms repeated every 20–30 minutes for the first 2 hours, then every 4–6 hours as necessary
  Child 12–18 years 500 micrograms every 4–6 hours as necessary

Convulsive (including febrile) seizures lasting longer than 5 minutes
(section 4.8.2 and section 4.8.3)

Either midazolam buccal solution (5 mg/mL, 10 mg/mL) or injection solution given by buccal route
- By buccal administration, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  Neonate 300 micrograms/kg
  Child 1–6 months 300 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg)
  Child 6 months–1 year 2.5 mg
  Child 1–5 years 5 mg
  Child 5–10 years 7.5 mg
  Child 10–18 years 10 mg

Or diazepam rectal solution (2 mg/mL, 4 mg/mL)
- By rectum, repeated once after 10 minutes if necessary
  Neonate 1.25–2.5 mg
  Child 1 month–2 years 5 mg
  Child 2–12 years 5–10 mg
  Child 12–18 years 10–20 mg
Croup
(section 3.1)
Dexamethasone oral solution (2 mg/5 mL)
- By mouth
  Child 1 month–2 years 150 micrograms/kg as a single dose

Diabetic hypoglycaemia
(section 6.1.4)
Glucose or sucrose
- By mouth
  Child 2–18 years approx. 10–20 g (55–110 mL Lucozade® Energy Original or 100–200 mL Coca-Cola®—both non-diet versions or 2–4 teaspoonfuls of sugar or 3–6 sugar lumps), repeated after 10–15 minutes if necessary
  or if hypoglycaemia unresponsive or if oral route cannot be used
Glucagon injection (1 mg/mL)
- By subcutaneous, intramuscular or intravenous injection
  Child body-weight under 25 kg 500 micrograms (0.5 mL)
  Child body-weight over 25 kg 1 mg (1 mL)
  or if hypoglycaemia prolonged or unresponsive to glucagon after 10 minutes
Glucose intravenous infusion (10%)
- By intravenous injection into large vein
  Child 1 month–18 years 5 mL/kg (glucose 500 mg/kg)

Meningococcal disease
(Table 1, section 5.1)
Benzylopenicillin sodium injection (600 mg, 1.2 g)
- By intravenous injection (or by intramuscular injection if venous access not available)
  Neonate 300 mg
  Child 1 month–1 year 300 mg
  Child 1–10 years 600 mg
  Child 10–18 years 1.2 g
  Note A single dose can be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer
  or if history of allergy to penicillin
Cefotaxime injection (1 g)
- By intravenous injection (or by intramuscular injection if venous access not available)
  Neonate 50 mg/kg
  Child 1 month–12 years 50 mg/kg (max. 1 g)
  Child 12–18 years 1 g
  Note A single dose can be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer
  or if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction (including anaphylaxis, angioedema or urticarial reaction) to penicillin or to cephalosporins
Chloramphenicol injection (1 g)
- By intravenous injection
  Child 1 month–18 years 12.5–25 mg/kg
  Note A single dose can be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer
Approximate conversions and units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lb</th>
<th>kg</th>
<th>stones</th>
<th>kg</th>
<th>mL</th>
<th>fl oz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6.35</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12.70</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>19.05</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>25.40</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.27</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>31.75</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>17.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2.72</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>38.10</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>35.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>3.18</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>44.45</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>3.63</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>50.80</td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>57.15</td>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>4.54</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>63.50</td>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>4.99</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>69.85</td>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>5.44</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>76.20</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>5.90</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>82.55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>6.35</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>88.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>6.81</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>95.25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Length

1 metre (m) = 1000 millimetres (mm)
1 centimetre (cm) = 10 mm
1 inch (in) = 25.4 mm
1 foot (ft) = 12 inches
12 inches = 304.8 mm

Mass

1 kilogram (kg) = 1000 grams (g)
1 gram (g) = 1000 milligrams (mg)
1 milligram (mg) = 1000 micrograms
1 microgram = 1000 nanograms
1 nanogram = 1000 picograms

Volume

1 litre = 1000 millilitres (mL)
1 millilitre (1 mL) = 1000 microlitres
1 pint ≈ 568 mL

Other units

1 kilocalorie (kcal) = 4186.8 joules (J)
1000 kilocalories (kcal) = 4.1868 megajoules (MJ)
1 megajoule (MJ) = 238.8 kilocalories (kcal)
1 millimetre of mercury (mmHg) = 133.3 pascals (Pa)
1 kilopascal (kPa) = 7.5 mmHg (pressure)

Prescribing for children

Weight, height, and gender

The table below shows the mean values for weight, height and gender by age; these values have been derived from the UK-WHO growth charts 2009 and UK1990 standard centile charts, by extrapolating the 50th centile, and may be used to calculate doses in the absence of actual measurements. However, the child’s actual weight and height might vary considerably from the values in the table and it is important to see the child to ensure that the value chosen is appropriate. In most cases the child’s actual measurement should be obtained as soon as possible and the dose re-calculated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
<th>Height cm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full term neonate</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 months</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 months</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 years</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 years</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 year-old boy</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 year-old girl</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adult male</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adult female</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plasma-drug concentrations in BNF for Children are expressed in mass units per litre (e.g. mg/litre). The approximate equivalent in terms of amount of substance units (e.g. micromol/litre) is given in brackets.
Recommended wording of cautionary and advisory labels

For details see Appendix 3

1. Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy
2. Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol
3. Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines
4. Warning: Do not drink alcohol
5. Do not take indigestion remedies 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
6. Do not take indigestion remedies, or medicines containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
7. Do not take milk, indigestion remedies, or medicines containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
8. Warning: Do not stop taking this medicine unless your doctor tells you to stop
9. Space the doses evenly throughout the day. Keep taking this medicine until the course is finished, unless you are told to stop
10. Warning: Read the additional information given with this medicine
11. Protect your skin from sunlight—even on a bright but cloudy day. Do not use sunbeds
12. Do not take anything containing aspirin while taking this medicine
13. Dissolve or mix with water before taking
14. This medicine may colour your urine. This is harmless
15. Caution: flammable. Keep your body away from fire or flames after you have put on the medicine
16. Dissolve the tablet under your tongue—do not swallow. Store the tablets in this bottle with the cap tightly closed. Get a new supply 8 weeks after opening
17. Do not take more than... in 24 hours
18. Do not take more than... in 24 hours. Also, do not take more than... in any one week
19. Warning: This medicine makes you sleepy. If you still feel sleepy the next day, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol
21. Take with or just after food, or a meal
22. Take 30 to 60 minutes before food
23. Take this medicine when your stomach is empty. This means an hour before food or 2 hours after food
24. Suck or chew this medicine
25. Swallow this medicine whole. Do not chew or crush
26. Dissolve this medicine under your tongue
27. Take with a full glass of water
28. Spread thinly on the affected skin only
29. Do not take more than 2 at any one time. Do not take more than 8 in 24 hours
30. Contains paracetamol. Do not take anything else containing paracetamol while taking this medicine
32. Contains aspirin. Do not take anything else containing aspirin while taking this medicine
Abbreviations and symbols

Internationally recognised units and symbols are used in the *BNF for Children* where possible.

**ACBS** Advisory Committee on Borderline Substances, see Appendix 2

**ACE** Angiotensin-converting enzyme

**ADHD** attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

**AIDS** Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome

**approx.** approximately

**AV** atrioventricular

**BAN** British Approved Name

**BMI** body mass index

**BP** British Pharmacopoeia 2010, unless otherwise stated

**BPC** British Pharmaceutical Codex 1973 and Supplement 1976, unless otherwise stated

**CAPD** Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis

**CHM** Commission on Human Medicines

**CHMP** Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use

**CNS** central nervous system

**CSM** Committee on Safety of Medicines (now subsumed under Commission on Human Medicines)

**d. c.** direct current

**DMARD** Disease-modifying antirheumatic drug

**DPF** Dental Practitioners’ Formulary

**e/c** enteric-coated (termed gastro-resistant in BP)

**ECG** electrocardiogram

**EEG** electro-encephalogram

**f/c** film-coated

**G6PD** glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase

**HIV** Human immunodeficiency virus

**HRT** Hormone replacement therapy

**i/m** intramuscular

**i/v** intravenous

**INR** international normalised ratio

**MAOI** Monoamine-oxidase inhibitors

**max.** maximum

**MHRRA** Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency

**m/r** modified-release

**NCL** no cautionary labels, see Appendix 3

**NHS** National Health Service

**NICE** National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence

**NPF** Nurse Prescribers’ Formulary

**NSAID** non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug

**PGD** patient group direction

**i** trade mark

**rINN** Recommended International Non-proprietary Name

**RSV** respiratory syncytial virus

**s/c** sugar-coated

**SLS** Selected List Scheme

**SMC** Scottish Medicines Consortium

**SPC** Summary of Product Characteristics

**spp.** species

**SSRI** Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors

**UK** United Kingdom

**Units** for SI units see Prescription Writing

**WHO** World Health Organization

▼ limited experience of the use of this product and the CHM requests that all suspected adverse reactions should be reported, see Adverse Reactions to Drugs

▼ considered by the Paediatric Formulary Committee to be less suitable for prescribing, see How to Use the *BNF for Children*

Latin abbreviations

Directions should be in English without abbreviation. However, Latin abbreviations have been used when prescribing. The following is a list of appropriate abbreviations. It should be noted that the English version is not always an exact translation.

a. c. = ante cibum (before food)

b. d. = bis die (twice daily)

o. d. = omni die (every day)

o. m. = omni mane (every morning)

o. n. = omni nocte (every night)

p. c. = post cibum (after food)

p. r. n. = pro re nata (when required)

q. d. s. = quater die sumendum (to be taken four times daily)

q. q. h. = quarta quaque hora (every four hours)

stat = immediately

t. d. s. = ter die sumendum (to be taken three times daily)

t. i. d. = ter in die (three times daily)

E numbers

The following is a list of common E numbers and the inactive ingredients to which they correspond.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>E number</th>
<th>Ingredient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E102</td>
<td>Tartazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E104</td>
<td>Quinoline Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E110</td>
<td>Sunset Yellow FCF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E123</td>
<td>Amaranth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E124</td>
<td>Ponceau 4R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E127</td>
<td>Erythrosine BS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E132</td>
<td>Indigo Carmine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E142</td>
<td>Green S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E171</td>
<td>Titanium Dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E172</td>
<td>Iron oxides, iron hydroxides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E200</td>
<td>Sorbic Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E211</td>
<td>Sodium Benzoate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E223</td>
<td>Sodium Metabisulphite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E230</td>
<td>Butylated Hydroxyanisole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E321</td>
<td>Butylated Hydroxytoluene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E332</td>
<td>Lecithins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E420</td>
<td>Sorbitol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E421</td>
<td>Mannitol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E422</td>
<td>Glycerol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E491</td>
<td>Beeswax (white and yellow)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>